EUROPE IS TWO VOLUMES, WITH SIXTY EIGHT MAPS, SANSON'S TABLES, &C: 1.2

Digitized by Google



Digitized by Google

* 31. D. 20.
6 Vol.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

in St. *Paul*'s Church-yard; *Richard Parker* and *Ralph Sm.* Piazza of the *Royal-Exchange*; and *John Morphew* ne *Hall*. MDCCXI.

995579-B.

Digitized by Google



Digitized by Google

398378-B.

ATLAS GEOGRAPHUS:

OR, A COMPLEAT

System of Geography,

ANCIENT and MODERN.

CONTAINING

What is of most Use in *Bleau*, *Varenius*, *Cellarius*, *Cluverius*, *Baudrand*, *Brietius*, *Sanson*, &c.

WITH THE

Discoveries and Improvements of the best Modern AUTHORS to this Time. Illustrated with about 100 New MAPS, done from the latest Observations, by *Herman Moll*, Geographer; and many other CUTS, by the best *Artists*.

EUROPE is Two Volumes, with Sixty eight MAPS, *Sanson's* TABLES, &c.

VOL. I.

In the *SAVOY*:

Printed by *John Nutt*; and Sold by *Benjamin Barker* and *Charles King* in *Westminster-Hall*; *Benjamin Tooke* at the *Middle-Temple* Gate; *William Taylor* at the *Ship* in *Pater-Noster-Row*; *Henry Clements* at the *Half-Moon* in St. *Paul's* Church-yard; *Richard Parker* and *Ralph Smith* under the Piazza of the *Royal-Exchange*; and *John Morphew* near *Stationers-Hall*. MDCCXI.

398378-B.

Digitized by Google

ADVERTISEMENT.

EUROPE being finiſh'd, except *Great Britain* and *Ireland*, which is now preparing for the Preſs; and as Informations and Accounts of Places come in, they are inſerted in their County, *&c.* It is entituled, *Britannia & Hiberniæ Antiqua & Nova*; in which will be a new and accurate Map of each County, with the Wapentacks, Laths, Hundreds, *&c.* and all the Roads exactly mark'd. In the Whole will be about 100 Maps, and many Cuts. We have receiv'd Accounts from above 100 Perſons, each giving an Account of ſome or more conſiderable Places, and many more are doing; as, a Gentleman will give a particular Account of *Eaton* College, how endow'd, what Livings in their Gift, *&c.* another that of *Winchester*, with *William* of *Wickham*'s Life, his Foundations, Charities, *&c.* and ſo of moſt other Places in *Great Britain* and *Ireland*. In leſs than Six Months we ſhall begin to print, and ſhall do the Counties in Alphabetical Order, as *Bedfordſhire*, *Berkſhire*, *Buckinghamſhire*, *Cambridgeſhire*, *Cheſhire*, *Cornwal*, &c. Gentlemen are deſired to ſend in what Accounts they think proper for this Deſign to *John Nutt*, Printer, in the *Savoy*, paying Poſtage.

Digitized by Google

THE PREFACE.

THE *Uſefulneſs of* Geography *is ſo well known, and the Study of it ſo general among all Perſons of Education, that 'tis needleſs to enlarge upon that Head, to inſiſt upon the Uſe of it to Stateſmen, Scholars of all Sorts, Merchants and Tradeſmen, or to ſay that 'tis both profitable and pleaſant to Perſons of all Ranks, who by reading a Work of this Nature may know all that is curious in the World, without the Fatigue or other Inconveniencies of Travelling.*

The Turks *have a Proverb,* That thoſe who never ſaw the World, think 'tis made like their Father's Houſe; *and they have a particular Reaſon for it, ſince one of their late great Courtiers, when he heard the Siege of* Vienna *was rais'd by the King of* Poland, *fell into a great Rage againſt the* French *King for ſuffering that Prince, as he ſuppos'd, to march thro' his Dominions, in order to do it. M.* Martineau du Pleſſis, *in the Preface to his Three Volumes of Geography, takes Notice of ſeveral groſs Errors of Authors for Want of a competent Knowledge in this Science, and eſpecially of the Ancients,* French *as well as others; ſome of whom talked of burning the* Pont-Euxin, *becauſe* Pont *in that Language ſignifies a Bridge. Some thought the* Morea *to be the Country of the* Moors; *and others, when they heard of* Venice, Genoa, *and* Lucca, *took them to be rich* Italian *Ladies. That ſame Author relates a very pleaſant Miſtake of an Ambaſſador of our own Country through Ignorance of Geography. He happened to be at the Court of* Rome *when M.* Bethancourt, *a* Frenchman, *diſcover'd the* Canaries, *which were the* Fortunate Iſlands *of the Ancients, Pope* Clement VI. *having made a Grant of them under that Name in* 1343 *to the Count* de Clermont, *Son to* Alphonſus de la Cerda, *a Prince of the Blood Royal of* France *and* Spain. *The Ambaſſador thinking there were no other Fortunate Iſlands but thoſe of* Great Britain, *left* Rome in *Diſguſt, and made Haſt to* England, *to acquaint his Maſter that the Pope had given away his Crown.*

The Want of a ſufficient Knowledge in this Science, has led even ſome late Authors into ſuch groſs Miſtakes, as to talk of Veſſels ſailing from the Caſpian *into the*

Euxin *Sea, without conſidering that they have no Communication with one another, and that the Mountains of* Elbours *lie betwixt them.*

We have Reaſon to be thankful that we live in an Age of more Knowledge, towards which the many learned Books of Geography have not a little contributed.

And we have Ground to hope, that the following Work will advance that uſeful Science further among us than any Thing which has yet appeared in Engliſh; *not that we would diſparage the Endeavours of ſuch of our Countrymen as have gone before us, which have all of them been uſeful in their Way and Time.*

But we may preſume to ſay without Vanity, That as we have taken a larger Field than any of our Predeceſſors, we have likewiſe had better Opportunities to improve it; for the greateſt Part of the modern Diſcoveries have been printed ſince any Work of this Nature was done in Engliſh. *Becauſe Geography of it ſelf is looked upon by all but the Curious to be a dry and unpleaſant Study, we have taken Care to mix it with ancient and modern Hiſtory in their proper Places; and beſides the General Hiſtory at the Beginning of each Country, we have taken Notice of the remarkable Actions that have happened in or near any of the Places we deſcribe, as well as of every Thing that is curious in Art or Nature, in order to make this Work pleaſant as well as inſtructive to the Reader; ſo that it contains a View of Univerſal Hiſtory of all Sorts, as well as of Geography.*

Some of our Subſcribers have indeed complain'd of our being too prolix; but if they conſider the great Number of Authors we had to peruſe, and that our Plan was to take in Ancient Hiſtory and Geography as well as Modern, with Natural Hiſtory, and an Account of the Religion and Government of every Country, we hope they will excuſe us, and particularly as to the ancient Geography of Germany, *the* Netherlands, France, Spain, Portugal, Swiſſerland, Italy, *and* Greece, *becauſe thoſe Countries having been the Scene of great Actions, the ancient Hiſtorians and Geographers who treat of 'em cannot be underſtood without ſuch Helps as are here afforded.*

The Learned know how much Baudrand *is valued upon that Account, tho' he has little elſe but a bare Deſcription of the Places he treats of; what Pains* Valeſius, Papyrius Maſſon, *and others, have taken upon the ancient Geography of* France; *what Eſteem* Cluverius *has juſtly acquir'd for his* Germania Italia, *and* Sicilia Antiqua. Wormius *is deſervedly praiſed for his Antiquities of* Denmark, *&c. and* Brietius *did very much oblige the learned World by his* Parallela Geographiæ Veteris & Novæ. Buno, *and the other Annotators on* Cluverius's *Introduction, have had their deſerv'd Applauſe; and* Cellarius's Notitia Orbis Antiqui *comes ſhort of none of them. The* Atlas Hiſtorique *furniſhes us with many Curioſities in Relation to Genealogy, Hiſtory and Geography, that had not been taken Notice of in other Works of this Nature; which, together with* Bleau's Atlas *in Eleven great Folio Volumes, and the Four of 'em that were done into* Engliſh *with Improvements, beſides the Geographies of* Varenius, Luyts, La Forreſt, Du Pleſſis, *&c. and the celebrated Travels of* Monconys, *Dr.* Brown, *Mr.* Ray, *Mr.* Laſſels, *Mr.* Miſſon, *Mr.* Willoughby, *Dr.* Northleigh, *Mr.* Wheeler, *and* Mr. Spon, *with the Hiſtories of the* French *Royal Academy, our own Philoſophical Tranſactions, and others whom we can't now ſtay to name, have all of them been carefully conſulted, in order to make this Work compleat.*

Particu-

Digitized by Google

Particular Care has likewise been taken to make our Descriptions agree with our Maps, a Thing too much neglected by those who went before us, which made their Descriptions the less intelligible; and where our own Maps were wanting in any Place because of the Smallness of the Scale, we always consulted those of Sanson *and* Bleau *to supply that Defect, as to the Distance and Bearing of Places; and have taken Notice of any considerable Difference betwixt their Maps and* Moll's, *which being from the latest Discoveries, and engraven on Purpose for this Work, are much more exact than theirs. We must own, that we were very much obliged to the learned Dr.* Nicholson, *now Lord Bishop of* Carlisle's *Volume of the great* English Atlas *for our Account of* Germany, *that learned Person having very much improved the Account which* Bleau *and others had given of it before him: And besides what Books the Proprietors could purchase at Home and Abroad to carry on the Design, which already amount to* 150 l. *we have been obliged to publick Libraries in this City as well as to private Ones, and particularly to those Two learned and communicative Gentlemen, Dr.* Hans Sloan, and *Dr.* Tancred Robinson, *whose Libraries are as well furnished for this Sort of Learning, as any perhaps in* Europe. *We could do no less in Justice, than to take this Way of returning our Thanks to those Two worthy Gentlemen, and to let the Publick know, how much they are obliged to them for many curious Things in this Work, which we could not be furnished with elsewhere.*

By this it appears, that our Materials are much better than ever were used for any Work of this Nature done in England, *and that we have likewise been supplied with the best that could be had for Money Abroad. The Authors we made Use of are too many to enumerate here; but when the whole is compleated, a Catalogue of them will be printed, and such as belong to the Proprietors sold by publick Auction, for which End they are carefully preserved, and lock'd up as they are done with; and those which are lent by private Gentlemen duly return'd.*

Modesty will not allow us to commend our own Performance; but this we can truly say, That we have not been wanting in Pains; and by the good Reception it has met with from the Publick, and above 100 *Letters we can produce, which commend it to be the largest and most compleat System of this Nature in all Parts yet extant, we have no Reason to doubt of the like Encouragement for the remaining Parts of the World.*

'Tis Seven Years since this Work was first undertaken; and that Mr. Moll *begun to engrave the Maps, which he has now compleated, for the Four Parts of the World.*

The Introduction which relates to the Scientifical Part, was done by the Direction of the learned Dr. Gregory, *late Astronomy Professor at* Oxon, *who likewise gave his Advice as to the Choice of Books and Materials; and for the History and Geography he recommended Two ingenious Gentlemen, who, with some others of University and liberal Education, have been employed in it; and if Health permit, will go through with the Whole.*

We are not so vain as to think our Performance without Faults; for to pretend to that, especially in a Work of this Nature, were to suppose our selves to be more than Men, but we have been as careful to avoid Errors as we could. We invited Gentle-

men from Time to Time to send us an Account of what Mistakes they found, but very few of 'em have thought fit to oblige us in that Matter. We were indeed challenged by a Gentleman for saying, the Muscovites *deny Transubstantiation; and giving this as one of the Reasons, That they had their Religion from the* Greeks, *who never believed any such Thing. Our Authority for saying so of the* Muscovites, *was the Earl of* Carlisle's *Embassy; but we own there are Writers who say otherwise. Yet that the Ancient* Greek *Church believed no such Thing, is evident from the Account we have given of their Religion in its proper Place.*

The same Gentleman complains that we say, Pag. 948. *the* English *Seminary at* Doway *is under the Conduct of Jesuits, but mistakes us; we said it was so at its first Institution by* Philip II. *and thought we had Reason, since* William Allen, *afterwards Cardinal, who founded that Seminary, wrote a Book entituled,* Apologia pro Sacerdotibus Societatis Jesu, *as appears by the* Athenæ Oxonienses. *The* English *Priests, &c. who fled thither in Queen* Elizabeth's *Time, were afterwards obliged by* D. Lewis de Requiesens, *Governour of the* Spanish Netherlands, *to retire from thence and went to* Rheims; *but what Alteration has been made in the House at* Doway *since, we know not. As to what that Gentleman says further, that we are too partial against the* Roman *Catholicks when Matters of Controversie come in our Way: We shall only reply, that we act as Historians, and not Criticks, and quote our Authors of both Communions. However, we shall always be thankful to him or any other Gentlemen that inform us of what they think Mistakes, and shall impartially consider them.*

Another Gentleman was so kind as to inform us of a Mistake and an Omission in our Accounts of the Dukes of Holstein, Pag. 549. *They were occasioned by misplacing an Insertion in the Copy; and to be corrected thus:* Col. 1. Pag. 549. *towards the Close, after* Christian Albert, *read,* Who was born in 1641, expelled his Dominions by the King of *Denmark,* his Brother-in-Law who demolished his Strong Towns, *&c. Then after the Words* on both Sides *in the last Line, add, Christian Albert* died in 1694, and was succeeded by his Son *Frederic,* who married *Hedwige Sophia,* Daughter to King *Charles* XI. of *Sweden,* was killed at the Battle of *Clissou* in *Poland, in* 1702. and succeeded by his Son *Charles Frederic,* born at *Stockholm* the 10th of *April,* 1700.

The same Gentleman took Notice that we had omitted, 1. *The County of* Weringen *in* Lower Saxony, *Pag.* 543. *and its chief Town* Elbingerode. *The Reason was, that 'tis now an obsolete Distinction, not mention'd in* Sanson's *Maps, or the* Matricula *of the Empire; the Town inconsiderable, and that this Division is included in the Counties of* Blankenburg *and* Reinstein. 2. *That we had omitted the Town and County of* Pappenheim. *To this the same Answer may serve, that Count being more noted for his Post as Hereditary Marshal of the Empire, than for his Territory, which is very small, and lies betwixt those of* Oettingen *and* Newburg *in* Franconia. *The Family has also some Lands about* Donawert *and* Memmingen. *The Town of* Pappenheim *lies about* 12 *Miles S. E. from* Donawert, *but does not merit a Description.*

We

Digitized by Google

We were obliged for gaining Time and Room to forbear giving the Long. and Lat. of every Place, but satisfied our selves with giving those of the Capital or most remarkable Towns, from which we give the Distance and Bearing of others; so that they will be as readily found by the Scale and Compass, as if the Long. and Lat. had been set down.

The Account of Great Britain *and* Ireland *is reserved for a Volume by it self, for the Reasons which have been published in several of the preceding Months. We shall begin it as soon as our Materials are all come to Hand, of which we receive more or less from Gentlemen in the Country every Post. In the mean Time we go on with* Asia, *for which the 12 following Maps are done by Mr.* Moll, *viz.* 1. Asia *in General.* 2. Turkey *in* Asia, *or* Asia Minor. 3. Arabia. 4. Persia. 5. *The West Part of* India, *or the Empire of the* Great Mogul. 6. *The East Part of* India, *or that beyond the* Ganges. 7. *Independant* Tartary. 8. China. 9. *The Principal Islands of the* East-Indies. 10. *The Isle of* Japan. 11. North Guinea. 12. North Britain, *the* Ladrones, *&c. The Maps of the Ancient Geography of* Asia, *&c. are,* 1. Asia Antiqua & Nova, Cluver. 2. Scythia & Tartaria, Cluver. 3. India Orientalis & Insularum Antiqua & Nova, Cluver. 4. Persia, Armenia, Assyria, Mesopotamia & Babylonia, Cluver. 5. Chersonesi hodie Natolia, Cluver. 6. Terra Sancta, Cluver. 7. Syria, Cluver.

Besides these, we take in Sanson's *Tables with many Cuts, and shall bring the Whole into one Volume of 12 or 14 Months.*

Africa *will be contained in such another; and* America, *with* Great Britain *and* Ireland, *will be Two Volumes more.*

To each Volume there will be an Alphabetical Table like this, and a general Index of Omissions and Errata *to the Whole; with Tables for reducing Foreign Weights, Coins, and Measures, to those of* Great Britain.

We shall take Care when the Work is finished to collect the Errata of the Whole; in the mean Time the Reader is desired to read, *Introduct. pag.* 21. *l.* 38. for 16. 61. to observe that *pag.* 235 *and* 236 are Twice number'd; and therefore if he seek for any Place referred to in those Numbers, he must look to both. And in the Table, add *Kingdom* to *Astracan.*

It would have swelled the *Index* too much to insert the Name of every particular Prince, but the Reader may easily find them in the History of the Counties to which they belong.

The

The NAMES of ſo many of the SUBSCRIBERS as have ſent them in to the Undertakers.

Note: *Thoſe that are omitted, (for we are informed ſeveral were ſent that never came to our Hand) ſhall be inſerted when* Aſia *comes out, if they pleaſe to ſend them.*

A.

SIR Hugh Acland, *of* Devonſhire, *Bar.*
William Abboll, *of* Eaſt-Claydon, *Eſq;*
------ Abell *Eſq; at* Aylesbury.
William Acton *Eſq;*
John Alexander, *of* Black-houſe *near* Glaſgow *Eſq;*
Edmund Arblaſter, *of* Longdon *in* Staffordſhire, *Eſq;*
Nathaniel Axtell, *of the* Inner-Temple, *Eſq;*
Matthew Aylmer *Eſq; Commander in Chief of Her Majeſty's Fleet at Sea.*

Mr Thomas Agnes *of* Colcheſter.
Mr Thomas Anger *at* Colcheſter.
John Alder, *of* St. Andrew's Holborn, *Gent.*
Thomas Alleſtree, *of* Alvaſton, Derbyſhire, *Gent.*
Mr Robert Alexander, *Merchant in* Glaſgow.
Mr John Andrews, *Teacher of the Mathematicks in* James-Deeping, Lincolnſhire.
The Rev. Mr Iſrael Antony Aufere, *Miniſter of the* French *Church in the* Savoy.
Mr Matthew Appleyard, *of* St. Margaret's, Weſtminſter.
Mr Peter Aram, *Gardiner, at* Newly, Yorkſhire.
The Rev. Mr George Arnett, *of* Roxham *near* Sleiford, Lincolnſhire.
Timothy Aſh, *of* Gunthorp *near* Peterborough, *Gent.*
Mr Edmund Aſheton.
Mr Atkins *of* Dounham-Market.
Mr Henry Atkins *of* Exon.
Mr Aſhworth, *Bookſeller in* Durham.

B

THE *Rt Hon.* William Henry Granville, *Earl of* Bath.
The Rt. Hon. Charles *Lord Marquiſs of* Beverley
Sir Edward Bagot *Bar.*
Robert Balch, *of* Bridgewater, *Eſq;*
Richard Barker, *of* Great Horwood, *Eſq;*
Richard Barker *Eſq; at* Aylesbury.
William Barret, *of the* Inner-Temple, *Eſq; Solicitor of the Treaſury.*
John Beaccroft *Eſq;*
Francis Boynton *Eſq;*
John Bridges *Eſq;*
Joſeph Brown, *of* Shepton-Mallet *in* Somerſetſhire, *Eſq;*
William Burton, *of* Bullwell-Park, Nottinghamſhire, *Eſq;*
William Busby *Eſq; at* Aylesbury.
Thomas Byrc, *of* Shepton-Mallet *in* Somerſetſhire, *Eſq;*
Mr George Baker *of* Durham.
Mr Samuel Ball *of* Briſtol.
Gabriel Ballam *Gent.*

William

William Banks, *of* Wike, *Gent.*
Mr Barber.
The Rev. Mr Thomas Barbon, *Vicar of* Burton *in* Kendall
The Rev. Mr John Barker *of* Peterborough.
Mr Benjamin Bartlett *of* Bradford.
Mr Moses Bartlet *of* Biddeford.
Mr Samuel Barton *at* Keverston *in the County of* Durham.
Mr Roger Basket *of* Sarum.
Mr James Baskervile *of* Bristol.
Mr Stephen Bass.
Mr William Bass *of* Aunby, Lincolnshire, *Clerk.*
The Rev. Mr Basset
Mr Batchelor.
The Rev. Mr Paul Batchelor.
The Rev. Mr Thomas Battersby *in* Durham.
Mr George Batton *of* Bishopton *near* Sarum.
Mr Thomas Baxter.
William Baynes, *of the* Custom-House, *Gent.*
Mr William Beamond *of* East-Bargholt *near* Colchester.
Mr John Beaufoy *of* Evesham.
Mr Jonas Beaver *of* Cullingworth.
Mr Martin Bedwell, *of* St. Margaret's Westminster, *Brewer.*
The Rev. Mr Belgrave, *Rector of* North-Kilworth, Leicestershire.
Mr James Belts *of* Diss *in* Norfolk.
The Rev. Mr Edward Bentley *at* Coggeshall *in* Essex.
Cha. Benskin, *of* Alvaston, Derbyshire, *Gent.*
Thomas Benskin *of* Leicester, *M. D.*
William Benson, *of* St. Andrew's Holborn, *Gent.*
\- - - - Berbeare, *of* St. Margaret's, Westminster.
The Rev. Mr Best.
Dr Bierman
Mr George Billamy.
The Rev. Mr William Bishop.
Mr Orlando Birch.
Mr William Blount *of* Horsham *in* Suffex.
Mr Thomas Blyth.
Captain Richard Boswell.
Mr William Bothway *of* Crowland, Lincolnshire.
Simon Boulte, *of the* Exchequer, *Gent.*
Edward Boulte, *of the same, Gent.*
John Boulte, *of the same, Gent.*
The Rev. Mr Samuel Bourne, *Fellow of* Christ-Church *College*, Oxon.
John Bowden, *of* Derbyshire, *Gent.*
The Rev. Mr John Bower, *Rector of* Roas.
Mr William Boyer, *Printer.*
The Rev. Mr Edward Boys.
The Rev. Mr William Bracket.
Mr James Braine *Junior.*
Mr Nicholas Braman, *A. M. of* Wadham *College*, Oxon.
Mr Richard Braxton *of* Bristol.
Mr Brayman *of* March-Gibbon *near* Aylesbury.
Dr. Robert Bredy *in* Newcastle upon Tine.
Thomas Brerewood *Gent.*
Mr John Brook.
The Rev. Mr Brookes *of* Norton, Leicestershire.
The Rev. Mr Broughton *of* Leicester.
John Brown, *of* Peterborough, *Gent.*
Mr . . . . Brown *of* Exon.
Mr William Brown *of* Alhweek.
The Rev. Mr Brundish, *Rector of* Welham.
Mr Morgan Bruton.
Mr John Bryars.
Mr George Buchan, *Clerk to the Lords of the Session at* Edinburgh.
Robert Buckbury, *of* Sleiford, Lincolnshire, *Gent.*
Mr Joseph Bully, *Woollendraper in* Dartmouth.
Mr William Busby, *of* Marsh-Gibbon.
Mr John Bushell *of* Hackney *in* Middlesex.
The Rev. Mr Burnet *of* Uttoxeter, Staffordshire.
The Rev. Mr Burrough, *Rector of* Depden.
Mr Robert Burroughs.
The Rev. Mr Burton, *Rector of* Lofthouse.
Mr John Butcher *of* Colchester.
Mr Robert Butterworth.
Mr William Baily, *Bookseller in* Lichfield.
Mr Benjamin Barker, *Bookseller.*
Mr John Barksdall, *Bookseller in* Cirencester.
Mr Barnes, *Bookseller in* Pall-mall.
Mr Andrew Bell, *Bookseller at the* Cross-Keys *and* Bible *in* Cornhil.
Mr Francis Blith, *Bookseller in* Colchester.
Mr Bodington, *Bookseller.*
Mr James Bonwick, *Bookseller in* London.
Mr John Bouchier, *Bookseller in* Peterborough.
Mr Godfrey Bouchier, *Bookseller in* Peterborough.
John Bushel *of* Hackney, *Gent.*
Mr Boyer, *Bookseller in* Ludgate-street.
Mr Joseph Button, *Bookseller in* Newcastle.

Sir

Digitized by Google

C.

SIR Marmaduke Conſtable *Bar.*
Richard Camell, *of* Kilkenny, *Eſq;*
John Cathcart, *of* Calaltoun *near* Glaſgow, *Eſq;*
John Clerk *Eſq;*
Robert Corker, *of* Falmouth, *Eſq;*
John Crawford, *of* Chelſea, *Eſq;*
. . . . . Crauford, *of* Chelſea, *Eſq;*
John Cuthberts *Eſq; Recorder of* Newcaſtle *upon* Tine.

Mr Alexander Caldwell.
Mr William Carelyll, *Merchant in* Glaſgow.
Mr Ger. Carmichall, *Philoſophy Profeſſor in* Glaſgow.
Edward Carter *Gent.*
Mr Carter, *Supervifor of the Excife.*
The Rev. Mr Cartwright, *Rector of* Kelham, Nottinghamſhire, *and Prebendary of* Southwea.
The Rev. Mr Caſtell.
Mr John Cauley *of* Lincoln.
Mr Sheppard Cerne.
Mr Edward Chaloner *at* Gisborough *in* Yorkſhire.
Mr Henry Chandler *of the* Bath.
Mr Samuel Chandler *of the ſame.*
The Rev. Mr Benjamin Chandler *at* Worth *in* Suſſex.
The Rev. Mr Thomas Chapham, *Maſter of the Free-School in* Bradford, *and Lecturer there.*
Mr Thomas Chapman, *of* Inglesby *in* Lincolnſhire, *Philomat.*
Mr Nathaniel Charnels *of* Nottingham.
Al. Chaulk, *of the* Exchequer, *Gent.*
Mr Richard Chauncy.
Edward Checkley, *of* Allerton *near* Peterborough, *Gent.*
William Chetwood, *M. D.*
Mr James Clapham, *Mathematician.*
Mr Edmund Claypot.
Samuel Clark, *of* Cheſterfield, Derbyſhire, *Gent.*
The Rev. Mr Clement *of* Long-Sutton *in* Lincolnſhire.
The Rev. Mr Robert Clerk, *Rector of* Barford *and* Baverſtock *near* Sarum.
Mr Nathaniel Cock *of* Chunligh.
The Rev. Mr Francis Coleman, *Fellow of* Corpus Chriſti *College,* Cambridge.
Mr Richard Collet *of* London, *Vintner.*
The Rev. Mr Philip Collier, *Rector of* St. Columbe, Cornwal.
Mr John Collins, *of* St. Margaret's, Weſtminſter, *Gent.*
Mr Nathaniel Collins, *of the ſame, Diſtiller.*
Henry Coltman, *of the* Exchequer, *Gent.*
The Rev. Mr John Comin *of* Kingsbridge.
Mr Conduit *at* Stauton, Leiceſterſhire.
The Rev Mr William Cooke *of* Clare, Suffolk.
Mr Jonathan Cotton *of* Kidder.
Mr Coulſon *of* Lichfield.
The Rev. Mr Cowper, *Rector of* Scole *in* Norfolk.
Mr Cox, *of* Molton, Lincolnſhire.
Mr William Craige, *Merchant in* Glaſgow.
The Rev. Mr John Creed.
Dr Cromwell *of* Mansfield.
Mr James Croſland, *Miniſter of the Goſpel.*
The Rev. Mr Thomas Crowther.
William Curtis *Gent.*
Mr Thomas Curtis
Mr Patrick Campble, *Bookſeller in* Dublin.
Mr Clayton, *Bookſeller in* Mancheſter.
Mr Samuel Crouch, *Bookſeller in* Pope's-head Alley, Cornhil.

D.

HEnry Darby *Eſq;*
Chriſtopher Duffeild *Eſq;*

Mr William Dadley.
Mr Thomas Dalgarno.
Mr John Darby *of* Diſs *in* Norfolk.
Mr Darch *of* Glaſtenbury.
Capt. Darlignevare.
Robert Darwent, *of* Rotheram, Yorkſhire, *Gent.*
James Deacon *Gent.*
Capt. Nicholas Dearcing, *of* St. Margaret's Weſtminſter.
Mr Deniſon *of* Great Wigborough *near* Colcheſter.
Mr William Dickſon.
The Rev. Mr Thomas Dixon *at* Whitehaven *in* Cumberland.
Mr John Dougharty *of* Bewdly.
James Douns, *of* Red-Lion-Square, *Gent.*
The Rev. Mr Drury, *Rector of* Keyworth *in* Nottinghamſhire.
Mr Alexander Dunlop, Greek *Profeſſor in* Glaſgow.

Mr Wil-

Digitized by Google

Mr John Davis.
Mr Duſauret *in* Berwick-ſtreet *near* Soho-Square.
Mr William Dunlop, *Bibliothecarius*, Glaſgow.
Mr Matthias Dagnell *of* Aylesbury, *Bookſeller.*
Mr John Darby, *Bookſeller.*
Mr Dickie, *Bookſeller in* Glaſgow.

E.

WIlliam Eberall, *Clerk.*
Mr Thomas Edmonds, *Surgeon at* Kingſton *in* Warwickſhire.
Mr John Edwards *of* Briſtol.
Mr Thomas Ellerby, *Writing-Maſter.*
Mr Thomas Ellis *of* Werne, Carnarvonſhire.
Mr Thomas Elliſon *of* Bingley, *Maſter of the Free School there.*
Mr Elly *of* Hinkley, Leiceſterſhire, *Apothecary.*
George Empſon, *of* Wike, *Gent.*
Mr Thomas Eiſenton *of* Cirenceſter, Gloceſterſhire.
The Rev. Mr Hugh Evans.
The Rev. Mr David Evans *at* Cheſham *in* Hertfordſhire.
The Rev. Mr. John Eveleigh *of* Brixham.
Mr John Exton *of* Lynn *in* Norfolk.
Capt. David Eyton, *of* Mairegwaylodd *in* Flintſhire.

F.

SIR Thomas Franklyn, *of the County of* Middleſex, *Bar.*

John Forcer, *alias* Foſſour, *at* Harberus *nigh* Durham, *Eſq;*
William Fecke, *of* Hinton St. Mary's, Dorſet, *Eſq;*
Mr John Fabyan *of* Totnes.
Mr George Faithing *of* Worceſter.
Mr Farrer, *Apothecary in* Mansfield.
Mr Lawrence Faſhion.
Mr Timothy Felton *at* Sudbury *in* Suffolk.
The Rev. Mr Bradgate Ferrand, *Vicar of* Bradford, Yorkſhire.
The Rev Mr Thomas Ferrand *of* Bingley, *Parſon of* Thornton.
Mr Robert Few *of* Lynn *in* Norfolk.
Mr Nicholas Field, *Surgeon.*
Mr Thomas Fincher *of* Worceſter.
Dr Fitzgarrell.
Mr John Fleming *of* Stamford, Lincolnſhire.
Thomas Fletcher, *of the* Exchequer, *Gent.*
Mr Thomas Fletcher *of* Mansfield, *Clerk.*
Mr Fonvive *in* Leiceſter-Fields.
The Rev. Mr Thomas Forbes, *Rector of* Biceſter, Oxfordſhire
Mr John Forth *of* Staindrop *in the County of* Durham
The Rev Mr Thomas Foſter, *Vicar of* Clyffe-Pypard *near* Marlborough *in* Wiltſhire.
The Rev. Mr Peter Foulks, *Canon Reſidentiary of* St. Peter's, Exon.
The Rev Mr Frankland, *Rector of* Oſwaldkirk.
Mr Sam. Freeman, *Miniſter in* Nottingham.
Mr Frickleton *of* Lidford.
Mr Tho. Frye *of* Collumpton, Devonſhire,
Mr John Full *Jun. of* Dounton, *in the Pariſh of* Dittiſham
The Rev. James Fymey, *D. D. Prebendary of* Durham.
Mr David Fueebain, *Bookſeller in* Edinburgh.
Mr John Fowler, *Bookſeller in* Northampton.
Mr William Freeman, *Bookſeller in* Durham.

G.

JOhn Gaſcoigne *Eſq;*
William Gee *Eſq;*
John Godfrey *at* Norton-Court *in* Kent, *Eſq;*
Thomas Green *at* Eaſthorp *near* Colcheſter, *Eſq;*
Thomas Greſley, *of* Neatherſeale, Leiceſterſhire, *Eſq;*
Nehemiah Griffith, *of* Rhual, *Eſq;*
Joſeph Guildford *Eſq;*
The Rev. Mr Miles Gale, *Parſon of* Kighley, Yorkſhire.
John Gallop, *Jun. of* Dorcheſter, *Gent.*
Mr Charles Garboo *near* Thorney-Abbey.
Thomas Gardener, *of the Tower of* London, *Gent.*
Mr Maurice Gardiner.
Mr Francis Garnet, *of* Idle *in* Yorkſhire.
Ephraim Garthwaite, *of* Rapſley, Lincolnſhire, *Clerk.*
Mr Robert Geldart.
The Rev. Mr Ralph Gladman.
Mr Edward Gataker, *of* Swanburn *near* Ailesbury.
The Rev. Mr Thomas Gibſon Rector *of* Peopleton.
Mr John Gilman, *B D. Fellow of* St. John's *College*, Oxon.

Digitized by Google

Mr Ralph Gladman, *Clerk, at* Ailesbury.
Eman. Gladurin, Derbyſhire. *Gent.*
Mr Richard Godſon.
Mr William Goldwyn, *of* Briſtol.
Mr Le Grand.
Mr Green, *of* Sandingham.
Mr Gregory, *Son to Dr.* Gregory.
The Rev. Mr Griffith, *Rector of* Whitwell.
Francis Guyton, *M. D. of* Diſs *in* Norfolk.
Mr Luellen Gwillim.
Mr Thomas Gittins, *Bookſeller in* Salop.
Mr Goodwin, *Bookſeller in* Fleetſtreet.
Mr Richard Gravet, *Bookſeller in* Briſtol.

H.

THE *Hon.* William *Lord Marquis of* Hartington.
Sir John Holland *Bar.*
John Hall, *of* Pitcombe, *Eſq;*
Richard Haynes, *of* Briſtol, *Eſq;*
Carew Hervey, *alias* Mildmay, *of* Marks *near* Rumford *in* Eſſex, *Eſq;*
Thomas Hewit, *of* Shire-Oakes, Nottinghamſhire, *Eſq;*
John Hill *Eſq;*
Robert Holt *Eſq;*
Thomas How *Jun. of* Grays-Inn, *Eſq;*
The Rev. Mr Charles Hacker, *Vicar of* Lawdham *in* Nottinghamſhire.
Mr Roger Hainſworth, *of* Lynn *in* Norfolk.
Jeremiah Halfehide, *of* Orſdale, Nottinghamſhire, *Gent.*
John Hall *Gent.*
Mr Ezekiel Hall.
John Hamilton *Gent.*
Mr Thomas Hamilton, *Son of Sir* David.
Thomas Hancock *M. D.*
Mr William Hardeſly, *M. D. of* Aſhburn, Derbyſhire.
Mr Richard Hardwick, *of* Lynn *in* Norfolk.
Mr Thomas Hariſon, *Mathematician.*
Mr Hawker, *of* Luppit, Devonſhire.
Mr Walter Hawkeſworth, *of* Briſtol.
The Rev. Mr Thomas Hawkins, *A M. Prebendary of* Southwell, Nottinghamſhire.
Mr Hawkins, *of* Wisbich *in the Iſle of* Ely, Cambridgeſhire.
Mr John Hawky.
The Rev. Mr Richard Haworth, *Rector of* Eaſt-Hoadly *in* Suſſex.
Mr John Hayes, *Merchant.*
The Rev. Mr John Hayes, *of* Whopland, Lincolnſhire.
Mr Abraham Hayman, *Attorney at Law in* Dodbrooke.
Mr Haywood, *A. M. of* Dronfield, Derbyſhire.
Mr John Heales, *of the Cloſe,* Sarum.
Dr. Heburne, *of* Lynn *in* Norfolk.
Mr Thomas Helcoate, *of* Litcham.
Mr Hemus, *Apothecary in* Nottingham.
Mr Henry Heylin.
Mr Heywood *of* Mansfield.
Mr Samuel Hillary.
Mr Richard Hill.
Mr Harry Hill, *of* Banwell.
Mr Hill, *of* Pepper-Hill.
Mr Hoare, *of* Bridgewater.
The Rev. Mr William Hodſon, *A. M. Rector of* Salſtaby St. Peter's, *in the County of* Lincoln, *and Chaplain to the Right Hon. the Earl of* Lincoln.
The Rev Mr Hodſon, *Rector of* Baynton.
Mr Hoyle.
The Rev. Mr Holland, *Rector of* Waltham, Leiceſterſhire.
Thomas Holland, *Surgeon, of* Cheſterfield, Derbyſhire.
Iſaac Hollings, *of* Shipley, *Gent.*
Mr Tempeſt Holms.
Mr Hook, *of* Bridgewater.
The Rev. Henry Hootton, *M. A. Rector of* Peddletown, Dorſetſhire.
Mr Thomas Horne.
The Rev. Mr Howell, *of* Abrighton, Staffordſhire.
Mr Francis Howgrave, *of* Gainsborough.
Mr Samuel Hyghmore, *at* Darking, Surrey.
The Rev. Mr John Hughes, *at* Ware *in* Herefordſhire.
Mr Adiel Humphrey, *of* Linton, Cambridgeſhire.
Mr Chriſtopher Hunter *in* Durham.
The Rev. Mr Chriſtopher Hunter, *A. M. Curate of* Ledgfield, Durham.
The Rev. Mr Hunter, *Prebendary of the Cathedral Church of* Litchfield.
Mr Hurdman, *of* Stone *in* Staffordſhire.
Mr Robert Hutton, *of* Houghton Leſpring *in the County of* Durham.
Mr Hamond, *Bookſeller, at* Bath.
Mr Harding, *Bookſeller, in* St. Martin's-Lane.

Mr Hart-

Digitized by Google

Mrs. Hartford, *Bookſeller in* Portſmouth.
Mr Joſeph Hodgſon, *of the City of* Cheſter, *Bookſeller.*
Mr Thomas Horne, *Bookſeller, at the South Entrance of the* Royal Exchange.
Mr. James Howard, *Bookſeller in* Kiderminſter.
Mr John Hunt, *Bookſeller in* Hereford.
Mr Thomas Hurt, *Bookſeller in* Coventry.

I.

ALexander James, *of* Briſtol, *Eſq;*
Thomas Jenkins, *of* Burwaſh, *Eſq;*
Thomas Jeynſon *Eſq;*
Mr Robert Jackſon, *Cuſtomer, of the Port of* Hull.
Mr Theodore Jacobſen, *Merchant.*
Henry Jeſcott *Gent.*
Mr John Jennings, *of* Briſtol.
The Rev. Mr. Jenkinſon, *Miniſter of* Datchet.
Mr Peter Jennings.
Mr Stephen Jeudwin.
Mr Martin Innis, *of* Briſtol.
John Jobber, *of the* Pipe-Office, *Gent.*
Mr Johnſon, *Maſter of the Free-School in* Nottingham.
Mr James Johnſon, *of* Nottingham.
Mr —— Johnſon.
Mr John Johnſon, *Merchant.*
Dr. John Johnſton.
Mr Thomas Jones, *A. B.*
Mr Edmond Ireland, *of* Oundle, Northamptonſhire.
Mr Edmond Jeffreys, *Bookſeller, in* Cambridge.
Mr Michael Johnſon, *Bookſeller, in* Litchfield.

K.

SAmuel Kemp *Eſq;*
Charles Killigrew *Eſq;*
Charles Knotesford *Eſq;*
The Rev. Mr John Keighby, *Miniſter, at* Worſbrough.
Mr Henry Kelſhal, *of* Trinity-*College*, Cambridge.
Mr Chriſtopher Kemp.
Mr Robert Kendale, *Curate of* Fiſcarton.
Mr Stephen Kenward.
John Kighley, *of* Gray's-Inn, *Gent.*
Mr Nevil King, *of* Aſhby *in* Lincolnſhire.
Mr William King, *of* Eaſt-Ham.
John Kingſtone, *Jun. of* Thorney-Abbey, *Gent.*
Mr John Kinnes, *of* Belgrave, Leiceſterſhire.
Mr John Kirke, *A. B.*
Mr Thomas Kneaton, *Writing-Maſter in* Rumford, Eſſex.
Mr George Knyſton, *of* Uphill *in* Somerſetſhire.
Mr King, *Bookſeller.*
Mr Knaplock, *Bookſeller, in* St. Paul's Churchyard.
Mr Knapton, *Bookſeller, in* St. Paul's Churchyard.

L.

FRevill Lambton *Eſq; at* Hardwick *in the County of* Durham.
Marmaduke Langdale *Eſq;*
Francis Lindley, *of* Bouling *in* Yorkſhire, *Eſq;*
Robert Lounds *Eſq; at* Ailesbury.
Robert Lownds, *of* Winſlow, *Eſq;*
Mr William Lacey, *of* Falkingham, Lincolnſhire.
Mr Henry Lane, *Merchant in* Dartmouth.
Valentine Lane, *of* Dodford, Northamptonſhire, *Gent.*
Mr John Lamb, *of* Nottingham.
Mr John Lambert.
The Rev. Mr. Laughton, *Rector of* Ipſtock, Leiceſterſhire.
Anthony Lawrence, *M. D. of* Tewkesbury.
The Rev Mr. Thomas Leavelly, *at* Malden *in* Eſſex.
Mr. Edward Leeds, *Jun. of* London.
Mr Leeds, *Uſher of* Bury *School.*
Mr John Levit, *Merchant.*
The Rev. Mr. Lewis, *of* Benifield, *near* Oundle.
The Rev. Mr Samuel Ley, *of* Exeter-College.
The Rev. Mr. Lloyd, *Rector of* Thraudiſton *in* Suffolk.
Mr James Loddington.
The Rev. Mr. John Loder, *M. A. Vicar of* Napton, Warwickſhire.
James Loet *Gent.*
Francis Loggin, *of* Gray's-Inn, *Gent.*
Mr John Looker, *Surgeon.*
Mr Caleb Loudham, *Surgeon, of* Exon.
Mr William Loupe, *of* Briſtol.
Mr John Lowdon, *Philoſophy Profeſſor in* Glaſgow.

Digitized by Google

Mr Robert Low, *of* Ufford, *near* Stamford.
Mr George Low, *of* Litchfield.
Mr Thomas Ludwell, *of* Bruton.
Mr Lawrence, *Bookſeller, in the* Poultry.
Mr William Lewis, *Bookſeller in* Ruſſel-ſtreet, Covent-Garden.
Mr Loveday, *Bookſeller in* Eveſham, Worceſterſhire.

M

THE Rt. Hon *the Earl of* Meath.
The Lord Viſcount Morpeth, *Son to the preſent Earl of* Carliſle.
Robert Macllelan, *of* Barclay *near* Glaſgow, *Eſq.*
Gideon Maynard, *of* Brodridge *in the Pariſh of* Corneworthy, *Eſq;*
Charles Milbourne, *of the* Pipe Office *in* Grays Inn, *Eſq;*
Thomas Moore, *of* Briſtol, *Eſq;*
George Moreland, *at* Winiſſon *in the County of* Durham, *Eſq;*
Francis Mundy, *of* Osbaſton, Leiceſterſhire, *Eſq;*
Mr Hugh Mack Bryd, *Merchant in* Glaſgow.
James Mainwaring, *Alderman of* Cheſter.
The Rev. Mr John Mandevill, *Rector of* Waſſop, Nottinghamſhire.
Mr B. Marten, *Phyſician in* Broad-ſtreet.
Mr George Martin *of* St. Margaret's, Weſtminſter, *Brewer.*
The Rev. Mr Thomas Martin.
Mr John Martin, *Surgeon in* Hatton-Garden.
Mr Thomas Mayers.
The Rev. Mr Samuel Maynard *of* Totnes.
The Rev. Mr Daniel Mayo *at* Kingſton, Surrey.
The Rev. Mr. Micklewaire, *M. A. Rector of* Gilling, Yorkſhire.
The Rev. Mr. John Miller, *M. A. Vicar of* Effingham, Surrey.
Mr John Mitchel *of* Lewis *in* Suſſex.
Mr Mitchell *of* Eveſham.
The Rev. Mr Edw. Moiſes, *Vicar of* Wimeſwold, Leiceſterſhire.
The Rev Mr Mompeſſon, *Vicar of* Mansfield, Nottinghamſhire.
Mr More *of* Netherſeale, Leiceſterſhire.
Mr William Mores *of* Kilmarnock.
The Rev. Mr Morgan *of* Lichfield.
The Rev. Mr Roger Morgan, *M. A.*
Mr Cha Morley, *of* Lincoln's-Inn-Fields.
Thomas Moor *Gent*
Mr John Moor *of* Bridgewater.
Mr Francis Moore, *M. D. in* Chriſt-Church *Pariſh*, Southwark.
Mr Morris *of* Exon, *Druggiſt.*
Mr John Moulton *of* Diſs *in* Norfolk.
Mr John Mowbray, *Attorney at Law*, Durham.
Mr Thomas Metcalfe, *Bookſeller in* Drury-Lane.
Mr Daniel Midwinter, *Bookſeller*, St. Paul's Church-yard.
Mr Mortlock, *Bookſeller in* St. Paul's Church-yard.
Mr John Mountfort, *Bookſeller in* Worceſter.

N.

WIlliam Nelſon *Eſq;*
Mr Thomas Naylor, *of the Pariſh of* Eccleſs, Lancaſhire.
Mr John Newbold, *Officer of the* Exciſe.
The Rev. Mr Newcome, *Vicar of* Hunmandly.
Mr Nichols, *of* Stone *in* Staffordſhire.
Mr Robert Nichols.
Mr Iſaac Noble *of* Briſtol.
Mr Henry Norbone, *of* Chute *in* Wiltſhire.
Mr Thomas Norbury.
Mr John Norman, *of* Briſtol.
Mr John Norman *of* Biddeford, Devonſhire.
Mr Thomas Normandy, *Merchant.*
Mr Norris, *of* Eveſham.
The Rev. Mr North.
George North, Derbyſhire, *Gent.*
Mr John Daviſon Norton, *in the County of* Durham.
Mr —— Noy, *of* Exon.
Mr Thomas Norman, *Bookſeller in* Lewis *in* Suſſex.

O.

THE *Right Hon. the Lord* Orery.
William Oaker *Gent.*
The Rev. Mr. Offley.
The Rev Mr Oldfeild, *Rector of* Brome *in* Suffolk.
Mr Oldfeild *of* Uttoxeter, Staffordſhire.
The Rev. Mr John Olive.
Mr Thomas Oliver *of* Worceſter.
Mr John Ore, A. M. *at* Glaſgow.

The

Digitized by Google

The Rev. Mr. Charles Owen *at* Warrington *in* Lancaſhire.
Mr John Owen *of* Hemſted *in* Hertfordſhire
Mr Thomas Osborne, *Bookſeller.*

P.

SIR Thomas Powell, *Knt. and Bar. at his Seat at* Broadway *in* Caermarthenſhire.
William Player, *of* Hatſpen *in* Somerſetſhire, *Eſq;*
James Prefcot *Eſq;*
Mr Robert Packer *of* Shellingford.
The Rev. Mr Simon Paget, *Rector of* Truro, Cornwall.
Edmund Parker, *of* Derby, *Gent.*
Thomas Parker, *of* Stockport, *Gent.*
Mr William Parker, *Merchant.*
---- Parſons, *M. D.*
Eliſha Paul, *Maſter of the Free-School at* Shepton-Mallet *in* Somerſetſhire.
Mr John Peade *Jun. Merchant in* Glaſgow.
The Rev. Mr William Peake.
Mr ---- Peale, *of* Exon, *Grocer.*
Mr Pearce *of* Trinity College, Cambridge.
Mr Zachariah Pearce.
Mr Edward Pearſe *of* Briſtol.
Mr Pearſon *of* Middleton.
Mr Samuel Pendleton, *Apothecary in* Peterborough, Northamptonſhire.
The Rev. Mr John Penn, *Vicar of* Edwinſtow, Nottinghamſhire.
The Rev. Mr John Penneck, *Chancellor and Canon Reſidentiary of St.* Peters, Exon.
Mr John Penny *of* Cotteburg, *in the Pariſh of* Blackawton.
The Rev. Mr Perith *of* Alder.
William Perkins, *of* Colſwörth, Lincolnſhire, *Clerk.*
Mr Thomas Peſtell, *Jeweller, in* Coleman-ſtreet.
John Petchel, *Gent. of* Hunington, Lincolnſhire.
Sylveſter Petyt *Gent. of the Society of* Bernard's-Inn, London.
Mr Phillips, *Chaplain to my Lord* Fitz-Williams, *near* Peterborough.
Mr *John* Phillips.
Mr R. Hearon Pictor.
Mr James Pidding *of* Briſtol.
Mr John Pierſe *of* Sherborne.
Alexander Pope *Gent.*
The Rev. Mr Joſ. Porter *at* Alceſter, Warwickſhire.
Mr John Porter, Nottinghamſhire.
Mr Robert Porter *of* Colcheſter.
Mr Pouſſted *of* Litchfeild.
Mr Poultney *of* Eveſham.
The Rev. Mr Powell, *Rector of* North Winfeild, Derbyſhire.
Mr Thomas Preſton, *Uſher of the Free-School in* Bradford.
Mr Pretty *of* Little Cornard *near* Colcheſter.
John Prichard *Gent.*
Cæſar Primroſe, *Dr. of Phyſick, in* Lincoln.
The Rev. Mr William Pritchard, *Vicar of* Townſtall *and St.* Saviour *in* Dartmouth.
Mr. William Proves, *Jun.*
Mr Conyer Purſhall *of* Worceſter.
Mr Michael Puxton *of* Briſtol.
The Rev. Mr Thomas Pyle, *of* Lynn *in* Norfork.
Mr. John Phillips, *Bookſeller.*
Mr Pieſley, *Bookſeller in* Oxon.

Q.

MR. Quant of Litchfeild.
Francis Quyno *Gent.*

R.

SIR John Rous *Bar.*
Sir Robert Raymond *Knt. Her Majeſty's Solicitor General.*
Walter Radenig, *of* Leiceſter, *Eſq;*
Mr George Righton, *of* Peckham, *Eſq;*
David Rowlands, *of* Hinton-Hall *in the Iſle of* Ely, *Eſq;*
Mr Randall, *Maſter of* Bury *School.*
Thomas Rawlins, *of* Pophills, Warwickſhire, *Gent.*
Richard Rawlinſon *Gent.*
William Rawſon, *of* Bradford *in* Yorkſhire, *Gent.*
The Rev. Mr. Raynes, *Rector of* Cranwell, Nottinghamſhire.
The Rev. Mr Samuel Renſhaw, *of* Thorney-Abbey *near* Peterborough.
Mr Reynolds, *of* Monks, Risborough.
Mr John Reynolds.
Mr James Reynolds, *of* Monks Risborough.
---- Mr Revell, *of* Heath *in* Derbyſhire.
The Rev. Mr Rice *at* Standiſh.
Mr William Rippon *of* Nottingham.
Mr Edward Rifhton.
Tancred Robinſon, *M. D.*
Stephen Roſe, *of* Eaſt Rhetford *in* Nottinghamſhire, *Gent.*

Mr Andrew Roſs, *Humanity Profeſſor in* Glaſgow.
Mr. Francis Roſs, *of* Exon *near* Stamford.
Mr Will. Roſs, *of* Peterborough, *Carpenter.*
Guideon Royer *Gent.*
The Rev. Mr Tho. Rudd, *A. M. Maſter in the Free-School,* Durham.
Mr Rudd, *Fellow of* Trinity-College *in* Cambridge.
Mr Lewis Ruſh, Strand.
Mr. Richard Randall, *Bookſeller, in* Newcaſtle upon Tine.
Mr Robinſon, *Bookſeller, in St.* Paul's *Church-yard.*
Mr John Rogers, *Bookſeller, in* Salop.
Mr James Round, *Bookſeller, in* Exchange-Alley.
Mr Thomas Ryles, *Bookſeller, in* Hull.

S.

William Sacheverill, *of* Derby, *Eſq;*
Francis Sittwell *Eſq; of* Renilhaw, Derbyſhire.
Thomas Slater *Eſq;*
Tyringham Stephens, *of* Leiceſter, *Eſq;*
Henry Summers, *at* Hedingham-Sible, Eſſex, *Eſq;*

Capt. Salter *of* Collumpton, Devonſhire.
Mr Robert Sampſon.
The Rev. Mr Robert Sandiland, *Vicar of* Speen, Berks.
Dr Savage.
Mr Robert Savell *of* Colcheſter.
Mr Robert Say, *of* Lynn *in* Norfolk.
Mr Daniel Scarlet, *of* Lynn *in* Norfolk.
Mr John Seobble *of* Nutcombe, *in the Pariſh of* Eaſt Allington.
Mr John Seabourne, *of* Lynn *in* Norfolk.
The Rev. Mr Nathaniel Seaman, *Rector of* Kings-Bridge.
Mr John Seawell *at* Windſor Caſtle.
The Rev. Mr Sedgwick, *Rector of* Walkington.
Mr Thomas Seed.
Mr. William Sexty *of* Worceſter.
The Rev Mr Sharp, *Rector of* Weſt Stowe.
Abraham Sharp, *of* Little Horton, *Gent.*
William Sharpe *Gent.*
Samuel Shaw, *M. D in* Tamworth.
Mr Samuel Shaw *of* Briſtol.
The Rev. Mr John Shepard, *Rector of* Brockhall, Northamptonſhire.
Mr Ralph Shepherdſon, *of* Halgarth *nigh* Durham

Mr Bennet Sherrard, *M. D.*
The Rev. Mr Sherwin, *of* Colby, Derbyſhire.
Joſeph Shibbing *Gent.* Derbyſhire.
Mr Shibbins *of* Braughton, Derbyſhire.
Mr Shipman *of* Waſſop, Nottinghamſhire.
Mr Short *of* Uffcolme, Devonſhire.
Mr Robert Shorthoſe, *of* Peterborough, *Hat-Maker.*
Mr Henry Sikes.
Mr John Simſon, *Divinity Profeſſor in* Glaſgow.
Mr Robert Simſon, *Merchant in* Glaſgow
John Sinclair, *Jun. of* Srinſon *near* Glaſgow, *Eſq;*
Mr Joſeph Singleton *of* Darlington, Yorkſhire.
William Singleton, *of* Eaſt Rhetford *in* Nottinghamſhire, *Sub-Schoolmaſter.*
Mr Joſeph Singleton, *of* Darlington *in the County of* Durham.
The Rev. Mr Skinner, *at* Sunbury *in* Middleſex.
Mr George Slea, *of* Lynn *in* Norfolk.
Hans Sloane, *M. D.*
The Rev. Mr Smalwood, *of* Mare *in* Staffordſhire.
Mr Francis Smith, *alias* Carington, *of* Huddleſtone *in* Yorkſhire.
Mr George Smith.
Mr Thomas Smith, *Merchant in* Glaſgow.
Richard Smith, *M. D. at* Aylesbury.
The Rev. Mr Smith, *of* Morton *in* Derbyſhire.
Mr Poſtumous Smith *at* Durham
The Rev. Mr Henry Snook, *Vicar of* Ringmear *in* Suſſex.
The Rev. Mr Spademan *of* Aſton Abbots, *near* Aylesbury.
The Rev. Mr Joſeph Sparks *of* Peterborough.
The Rev. Mr Sparling, *M. A.*
The Rev. Mr Beckwith Spencer, *Vicar of* Southwell.
John Spicer, *of* Leiceſter, *Gent.*
John Spencer, *of* Peterborough, *Gent.*
Mr Jo. Stainforth
Mr Rutter Stalbridge.
John Stanhope *of* Eccleſhill, *Jun. Dr. of Phyſick.*
Mr Francis Stapleton *of* Bradford.
William Stephens, *of* Worceſter, *Gent.*
Mr. Henry Stevenſon, *Maſter of the Free-School at* Eaſt Rhetford, Nottinghamſhire.
Mr Thomas Stockdale.
Mr Robert Stone.

Digitized by Google

Mr Thomas Stoneſtreet, *of* Lewis *in* Suſſex, *Surgeon.*
The Rev. Edward Storer, *Rector of* Buckminſter, Leiceſterſhire.
Thomas Storey *of* Hallaxton, Lincolnſhire, *Clerk.*
Mrs Sarah Stuart, *of* Lynn *in* Norfolk
Mr Stubbins *of* Braughton, Derbyſhire.
Mr John Stuckey, *Schoolmaſter in* Stoke-Newington
Mr John Sturt, *Engraver, in* Alderſgate-ſtreet, London.
The Rev. Mr Swaine *of* Farmarke, Leiceſterſhire.
William Swaine, *of* Bradford *in* Yorkſhire, *Gent.*
The Rev. Mr Timothy Swift, *M. A. at* Ringſtead
The Rev. Mr Sye, *Rector of* Winteringham.
Matthew Symonds, *of* Hawksbury, Glouceſterſhire, *Gent.*
Mr Nevil Symonds, *Bookſeller in* Sheffield.

T.

SIR Thomas Tanckred *Bar.*
Thomas Thoroton *Eſq; Recorder of* Lincoln.
John Thoroughgood, *of* Sampſon's-Hall *near* Colcheſter, *Eſq;*
Thomas Tonkin, of Lambrigan, Cornwal, *Eſq;*
John Turner, *at* Stainsby *in* Yorkſhire, *Eſq;*
Thomas Tankard *Gent.*
Francis Tanner *Gent.*
The Rev. Mr John Tarran, *A.M. at* St. John's Chappel *in the County of* Durham.
The Rev. Mr Taſſell, *of* Goreing, *and Maſter of the Free-School in* Newberry.
Thomas Tax *of* London, *Surgeons Inſtrument-maker.*
Francis Taylor, *at* South-Littleton, Worceſterſhire, *Gent.*
The Rev. Mr John Taylor, *Vicar of* Sutton *ſuper* Lound, Nottinghamſhire.
Mr Richard Taylor
Mr Charles Taylor *of* Mariage.
Mr Abdias Taylor.
Mr Richard Taylor *of* Kirkham *in* Lancaſhire.
The Rev. Mr Taylor.
Mr John Taylor.
The Rev. Mr Elias Thomas, *Rector of* East-Allington.
Mr Thomas, *D. M. in* Cheſterfield, Derbyſhire.
The Rev. Mr William Thomas, *at* Exall, Warwickſhire.
The Rev. Mr John Thompſon, *at* Biſhops-Itchington, Warwickſhire.
The Rev Mr Richard Thompſon, *Rector of* Hawerbie.
Mr George Thompſon, *Miniſter of* Darlington *in the County of* Durham.
Edmund Thorp *Jun. M D.*
Mr Rowland Thruppe *of* Briſtol.
Mr Thomas Tilladam *of* Briſtol.
Mr John Tillotſon *at the Queen's Warehouſe,* Guſtom-Houſe.
The Rev. Mr Jacob Tireman.
The Rev. Mr. Marcus Toller, *M. A.*
Mr Henry Torkington, *Apothecary in* Totnes.
The Rev. Mr Andrew Tooke, *one of the Maſters of the* Charter-Houſe.
Mr Marmaduke Tounſon.
Mr John Towne *of* Horne-Caſtle, Lincolnſhire.
The Rev. Mr. Toy.
Mr George Traverſe.
The Rev. Mr Robert Trayle.
The Rev. Mr Trever, *of* Litchfield.
Mr Edward Tucker, *of* Weymouth, *Merchant.*
Capt. John Turner *of* Lynn *in* Norfolk.
Mr James Taylor, *Bookſeller in* Chatham.
Mr Thurlebaine, *Bookſeller in* Cambridge.
Mr Benj. Tooke, *Bookſeller.*

V.

WIlliam Vane, *Eſq;*
Mr. John Valange, *Bookſeller in* Edinburgh.
The Rev. Mr George Vernon, *Rector of* Hanbans.

W.

WIlliam Wakefield, *Eſq;*
Benedict Wakeman, *Eſq;*
Hovenden Walker *Eſq; Super-Intendant at* Plimouth.
John Walkinſhaw *of* Scotſtoun *near* Glaſgow. *Eſq;*
John Walter *Eſq;*
Edmond Waterſon, *Eſq;*
Matthew Whitfield, *Eſq; at* Woolſingham *in the County of* Durham.

Mr. Ti-

Digitized by Google

Mr Timothy Wales *of* Beverley *in* Yorkshire.
Mr. George Walker.
Mr John Walker, *at* Brentford.
Mr Thomas Wall *of* Rouselench.
Mr John Wall *of* Crombe.
Mr. Humphrey Wall *of* Doveridge, Derbyshire.
Mr Wall *of* Doveridge, Staffordshire.
Mr John Wallis.
Mr. Henry Walter.
Mr John Wallworth, Charles-street, Westminster.
Mr Ward *of* Shenston, Staffordshire.
The Rev. Mr Ward *of* Blithfield, Staffordshire.
Mr Ambrose Warren.
The Rev. Mr James Waters *at* Uxbridge, Middlesex.
The Rev. Mr Weaver.
The Rev. Mr Francis Webber, *Prebendary of St.* Peters, Exon.
James Webster *of* Brampton, Derbyshire, *Gent.*
Mr Stephen Weelks.
Mr Welbarne *of* Cherry Burton.
Edward Welchman, *Clerk*,
The Rev. Mr Wells.
Mr Walter West, *at the Receiver-General's Office*, Custom-House.
Mr Samuel Westley, *Clerk.*
Mr Geo. Wharton.
Mr Samuel Wheatly.
Mr White.
Mr Whitely.
Dr. Wickham.
Mr Wigmore, *of* Stamford *in* Lincolnshire.
Mr Richard Wilcocks.
The Rev. Mr John Wilcox, *Rector of* Exburne, Devonshire.
The Rev. Mr. John Wilcox, *Rector of* Morehard, Devonshire.
John Wilkins *of St.* James's Westminster, *Gent.*
Edward Willes *Junior*, *Gent.*
The Rev. Mr. Richard Wilson *Rector of* Babworth, Nottinghamshire.
The Rev. Mr Wilson, *Minister at* Whitby.
The Rev. Mr John Wilson *M. A. at* Ringstead.
Mr John Withers *of Exon.*
John Woodhouse, *M D.*
Samuel Wright, *of the* Middle-Temple, *Gent.*
Mr Wright *of* Vineton, Devonshire.
The Rev. Christopher Wyvill, *Dean of* Rippon.
Mr Walthoe, *Bookseller in the* Temple-Cloysters.
Mr John Ward, *Bookseller in* Leicester.
Mr William Ward, *Bookseller in* Nottingham.
Roger Warne, *Bookseller in* Chipenham.
Mr *Watson*, *Bookseller in* Bury.
Mr Ralph Watson *Junior*, *of* Bury, *Bookseller.*
Mr Webster, *Bookseller in* Cambridge.
Mrs West, *Bookseller in* Oxon.
Mr Wilkins, *Bookseller in St* Paul's Church-Yard.
Mr Nicholas Woolfe *of London*, *Stationer.*
Mr Wyatt, *Bookseller in St.* Paul's Church-Yard.

Y.

EDward Yard, *of* Churston, *Esq;*
Mr. —— Young, *Clerk.*

Note, If any of these Gentlemen or their Friends will communicate any Thing remarkable relating to any Part of *Great Britain* or *Ireland*, it shall be faithfully inserted in *Britannia Antiqua & Nova*, now preparing for the Press; or to any Part of *Asia*, *Africa*, or *America*.

Digitized by Google

ATLAS GEOGRAPHUS:

OR, A COMPLEAT

System of Geography,

ANCIENT and MODERN.

Containing what is of most Use in *Bleau*, *Varenius*, *Cellarius*, *Cluverius*, *Brietius*, *Sanson*, &c.

With the Discoveries and Improvements of the best Modern Authors to this Time.

CHAP. I.

An INTRODUCTION to Ancient and Modern GEOGRAPHY in General.

SECT I.

The Antiquity of GEOGRAPHY.

THIS Science appears to be as ancient as the Use of Letters. The Invention of it is ascrib'd to the *Egyptians*; at least they are supposed to be among the first who made use of it, and not only wrote on this Subject, but convey'd it to Posterity by Figures and Charts. *Homer*, as he was the first noted Author among the *Greeks*, was also their first Geographer, and carefully described their Towns and Country, and that Part of *Asia* which lies on the *Hellespont*: He was followed by others of his Countrymen, who gave learned Descriptions of the World, as appears by *Strabo*, *Pliny*, *Stephen* of *Byzantium*, and others: But their Works, together with most of their Names, are lost. The Industry of the Ancients in this Matter is evident from their Tables or Charts, and Spheres. *Anaximander* the *Milesian*, Scholar to *Thales*, one of the Seven Sages, is reckoned the first who attempted to draw the Earth on a Map. *Laertius* says, he likewise drew the Sea, and prepared a Terrestrial Globe, which *Eratosthenes* corrected. *Aristagoras*, the *Milesian* Tyrant,

is said to have shewn the *Spartans* a Brass Table, in which the Circumference of the whole Earth was engraved. *Socrates* shew'd *Alcibiades* at *Athens* a Chart, containing a Description of the Earth. *Theophrastus* had several of them, which he ordered by his Will to be hung up in his Gallery.

That the *Romans* understood and practised this Science, is evident from *Varro*, who says, They had Tables or Maps in the Temple of *Tellus*; and *Suetonius* mentions a Map of the Earth in Parchment by *Metius Pomposianus*, in *Domitian*'s Reign: Nor had they only Maps of Kingdoms, and of the whole World, in those Days; but likewise Globes, the Way of Projecting which on a Plain was taught by *Ptolomy*. From *Rome* this Science was derived to the Provinces, as appears by *Eumenius Rhetor*, who mentions such Maps to be hung up in the Galleries of the School of *Autun*, in his Oration to the President of *Gaul*, exhorting him to restore the Schools, in the Reigns of *Constantius* and *Diocletian*. The Curious may see more on this Subject in *Cellarius*'s *Notitia Orbis Antiqui*, *Cap.* 1. and in *Varenius*, published by Mr. *Newton*, (now Sir *Isaac*) *Lib.* 1. *p.* 5. which is the Edition we make use of.

SECT. II.

The Definition of GEOGRAPHY.

THE Literal Signification of the *Greek* Word, implies no more than a bare Description of the Earth; and so *Cluverius* defines it to be a Description of the whole Earth, as far as 'tis known to us. In *Varenius* 'tis defin'd *to be a mix'd Mathematical Science, which teaches the Qualities of the Earth and of the Parts of it, depending on Quantity*; viz. *Figure, Place, Magnitude, Motion, the Heavenly Appearances*, and other such Qualities. But *Baudrand*, and other modern Geographers, understand by the Word *Geography* the Description of the Terraqueous Globe, as it contains both Land and Water; and 'tis now become customary to intermix with Geographical Descriptions something of the Political and Natural History of Countries, which is more instructing and diverting to the Reader than meer Geography.

SECT. III.

The Division of GEOGRAPHY.

IT differs from Cosmography as a Part from the Whole, and from Chorography as the Whole from the Part; for Cosmography implies a Description of the whole World, as composed of Heaven and Earth. Chorography is the Description of particular Countries, as *Great Britain*, *France*, &c. Topography is the Description of a particular Place or District; and some add *Topothesia* as a Special Description of the Situation of a particular Place. *Varenius* divides it into General and Special: By General Geography, he understands a Description of the Earth, and its Qualities in general, without Relation to any particular Country; and Special Geography he divides into Chorography and Topography. To General Geography he assigns Three Parts, *viz.* Absolute, Respective, and Comparative. The Absolute Part considers the Body of the Earth, and its Parts, with their proper Qualities, as Figure, Magnitude, Motion, Lands, Seas, Rivers, *&c.* The respective Part relates to those Qualities and Accidents which happen to the Earth from Celestial Causes. The Comparative Part contains an Explication of those Properties which flow from a Comparison of divers Places of the Earth with one another.

SECT. IV.

The Object and Properties of GEOGRAPHY.

THE Object is chiefly the Surface of the Earth, and its Parts. *Varenius* divides the Things which are principally

10

to be considered in every Country into *Celestial*, *Terrestrial*, and *Humane*. The Celestial are those Properties which depend on the apparent Motion of the Sun and Stars, *viz.* 1. The Elevation of the Pole, the Distance of the Place from the Equator and the Pole. 2. the Obliquity of the Diurnal Motion of the Stars over the Horizon of the Place. 3. The Quantity of the longest and shortest Day. 4. The Climate and Zone. 5. Heat, Cold, and the Seasons of the Year; also Rain, Snow, Winds, and other Meteors. 6. The Rising, Appearance, and Continuance of the Stars over the Horizon. 7. The Stars passing through the Vertical Point of the Place. 8. The Swiftness of the Motion, by which, according to *Copernicus*, each Place is wheeled about every Hour. The 9th Property, added by some Astrologers, of a peculiar Planet that rules and governs every Country, he rejects as frivolous.

The Terrestrial Properties are reckoned 10.

1. The Limits. 2. Figure. 3. Magnitude. 4. Mountains. 5. Waters, *viz.* Rivers, Fountains, and Bays. 6. Woods and Deserts. 7. Fruitfulness and Barrenness, and the Sorts of Fruit. 8. Minerals. 9. Animals. 10. The Longitude of the Place.

The Humane Qualities he divides into 10.

1. The Stature, Shape, Complexion, Length of Life, Origine and Diet, of the Inhabitants. 2. Their Commerce, Trades, and Commodities. 3. Their Virtues, Vices, Learning, Genius, and Schools. 4. Their Customs at Child-bearing, Marriages, and Funerals. 5. Their Language. 6. Their Civil Government. 7. Their Religion and Ecclesiastical Polity. 8. Their Towns and Places of most Note. 9. Their most remarkable Histories. 10. Their Famous Men, Artists, and Inventions.

SECT. V.

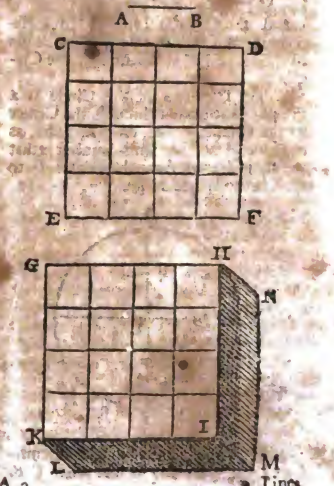
The Principles of GEOGRAPHY.

GEographers make use of Three Sorts of Principles, to confirm the Truth of their Propositions. 1. Of Geometrical, Arithmetical, and Trigonometrical Propositions. 2. Of Astronomical Precepts and Theorems. 3. Of Experience; for the greatest Part of particular Geography depends on the Experience of Men who have described the several Countries.

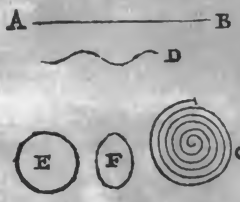
SECT. VI.

Some Things of Geometry *and* Trigonometry, *necessary to be known by those who study* GEOGRAPHY.

1. GEOMETRY has Three Species of Magnitude, by which all Things are measured; *viz. Lines*, *Surfaces*, and *Solid Bodies*, as *AB*, *CDEF*, and *GHIKLMN*.

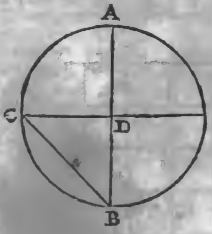


2. Lines are divided into ſtraight and crooked, as the Lines *A B* and *D*; and the crooked Line is Uniform or Circular, as the Line *E*; or different, *i. e.* of a Diſſimular Form, as Oval Lines, *F*. Conchoides and Spiral Lines, as *G*.



3. A Circle is a Space or Plain Surface and Figure included in a crooked Line; in which Space there is a certain Point, from which the ſtraight Lines being drawn to that crooked Line, which includes the Space, are all equal; and that crooked Line, including the Space, is called the Circular Line, or Circumference of the Circle; and the Point in the Middle is called the Centre of the Circle.

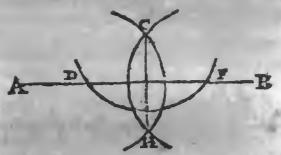
4. The Diameter of the Circle is a ſtraight Line drawn through the Center to the Circumference on both Sides, as the Line *A B*. The Semi-diameter is that which is drawn from the Center *D* to the Circumference *A B C*.



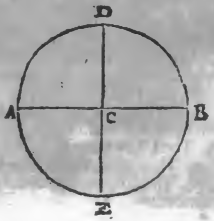
5. The Arch is a Part of the Circumference of a Circle, as the Arch *C B*. The Quadrant is the Fourth Part of the whole Circumference, as *C D A*. The Complement of any Arch, is an Arch by which it differs from a Quadrant, or falls ſhort of it. The Exceſs is that by which it exceeds a Quadrant.

PROBLEMS.

6. *A Straight Line being given, and a Point in it, or out of it, to draw a Perpendicular Line from that Point*, let the Line given be *A B*, the Point *C*: Take any open Space of the Compaſſes, put one Foot in *C*, and with the other cut the Line in *D* and *F*, then on *F* deſcribe the Arch *C H*. Likewiſe on the Center *D* deſcribe another Arch, cutting the former at *C* and *H*, and let *C H* be drawn; and this will be the perpendicular Line.



7. *To divide a Circle and Circumference into Four Parts*, draw a Diameter *A B*, and from the Center *C* raiſe a perpendicular Line upon it, *D C E*. This will alſo be a Diameter, and the Circumference and Circle will be divided into Four equal Parts or Quadrants.

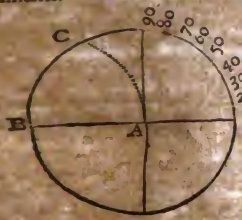


Note,

Digitized by Google

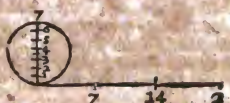
Note, That Mathematicians cut a *Circumference* into 360 Parts, which they call *Degrees*. These Degrees they divide into 60 *First Minutes*, and the *First Minutes* they divide into 60 *Seconds*.

8. *To divide the Circumference of a Circle into Degrees*; first take the *Quadrant of a Circle*; then by your Compasses take the *Semi-Diameter A B of the Circle*, and by this Space of the Compasses take away the *Arch C B* from the *Circumference*. This *Arch* will contain 60 *Degrees*, and there remains in the Quadrant 30 *Degrees*; which being divided into Two Parts, you have 15 *Degrees*; and these being mechanically divided into Three Parts, you have 5 *Degrees*; and these being, again divided into Five Parts, are the *Degrees* themselves. But these Things are best performed by Mathematical Instruments.



9. *To find out the Area or Content of a Right-angled Quadrangle, two Sides of the Quadrangle being given*; multiply the one Side into the other, and the Product is the Contents. *Note*, That *Lines* are measured by *Lines*, *Surfaces* by *Measures* which are *Surfaces*, and those also square. Bodies and Solids are measured by Measures which are Bodies, and indeed solid Cubes. Thus we measure the Sides of an House by Foot-Lines, but the Floor with Square-Feet; and the Capacity or Solidity of the House with Cubick-Feet.

10. *The Half-Diameter or Diameter of a Circle being given, to find out in the same Measure the Circumference of the Circle; and on the contrary, the Circumference of the Circle being given, to find the Diameter near enough to any Geographical Purpose*, depends on the Proportion of the Diameter to the Circumference, which according to *Archimedes*'s Demonstration, is much as 7 to 22, or more exactly, as 10000000000 to 3,1415926535. So let there be given a Diameter of 12 Foot: Let it be done by the Golden Rule, as 7 to 22; so let 12 be to the Circumference of that Circle; or as 10000000000 to 3,1415926535; so 12 to the same Circumference. Contrariwise, if the Circumference be given, and the Diameter sought for, let it be worked as 22 to 7, or as 3,1415926535 to 10000000000; so a Circumference given to the Diameter sought for.



11. *The Circumference of a Circle being given in Feet or Miles, and a Diameter: Or a Circumference alone, or a Diameter alone being given, to find out the Area of the Circle in square Feet or Miles*: In the first Case, multiply the given Circumference into the 4th Part of the Diameter, or half the Circumference into half the Diameter, and the Product is the Area or Space demanded. In the Second Case, 'tis better to find out first the Half-Diameter, or Half-Circumference, by the foregoing Problem, tho' it may be done without it.

12. The

Digitized by Google

12. *The Half Diameter, or Diameter, of any Globe, ABCD, being given, to find its Surface in Square Measure, and its Solidity in Cubical Measure.* First, let the Circumference of the Circle be found out by the Diameter given, then multiply the Diameter into the Circumference, and the Surface of the Globe will be the Product in Square Measure. Further, multiply this Surface by the 6th Part of the Diameter, and the Product is the Solidity of the Globe in Cubick Measure.



13. *A Triangle is called Rectangular; one Side of which stands perpendicularly upon the other Side, or with it makes a Right Angle of 90 Degrees.* These Two Sides *AB* and *AC* are called *Cathetî*; and the Third, *CB*, *Hypotenusa*. The Measure of the Angles is the Arch described, the Center being taken in the Top of that Angle; *viz.* Of how many Degrees that Arch intercepted between the Legs of the Angle is, of so many Degrees that Angle is said to be. So a Right Angle is said to be 90 Degrees, because the Arch so describ'd is always the Quadrant or 4th Part of the Circumference of the Circle.



The *Sine* of any Arch is call'd a straight Line, which is drawn perpendicular from the Extreme of the Arch upon the Diameter, drawn through the other Extreme of the Arch.

The Tangent of an Arch is the straight Line touching the Arch at one Extremity, and terminated by another straight Line drawn from the Center through the other Extremity of the Arch: And this Line so drawn is called the Secant of the Arch.

But the *Sine* of an Angle is said to be the Sine of that Arch which measures that Angle: So the Tangent of the Angle, and its Secant.

'Tis further to be observed, That, by the Industry of Mathematicians, there are Tables made, in which the Semi-Diameter of 100000 (or of more Cyphers) being taken, the Sines, Tangents, and Secants, of all the Arches of the Circumference are found out. For Instance, 2 Degrees, 10 Degrees, 20 Degrees 32 Minutes, *&c.* These Tables are called the Mathematical Canon, and are of infinite Use in all Mathematical and Natural Sciences. Therefore 'twas proper to inform the Students of Geography of those few Things; but they are of principal Use in the measuring Spherical and Plain Triangles: Since the measuring of Spherical Triangles is attended with some Difficulty, and is only necessary for those who would dive deep into this Art, we shall only treat of Rectangular Plain Triangles, whose Dimension is easy to be apprehended by any Body.

SECT. VII.

Two Theorems of frequent Use in GEOGRAPHY.

14. *Three Angles of any Triangle whatever are equal to Two Right Angles, or* 180 *De-*

Digitized by Google

Degrees; and therefore Two Acutes in a Rectangular Triangle make 90 Degrees. Further, *If a ſtraight Line touch a Circular Line, and from the Point of Contact or Meeting, a ſtraight Line be drawn to the Center of the Circle, it makes a Right Angle with the Tangent-Line.*

The Problems of moſt Uſe are thoſe which follow:

16. I. *The Hypotenuſa, together with the Cathetus of a Rectangular-Triangle, being given, to find out the Angle contained, or the other Acute Angle:* For the finding out of this, let it be done by the Golden Rule: As the given *Hypotenuſa* is to the given *Cathetus*; ſo the whole Sine 100000 (which Number is the Semi-Diameter taken in the Table of Sines) is to the Sine of the other Angle. This Sine, ſought for in the Canon, will ſhew the Arch or Quantity of the Angle which joins to the *Hypotenuſa*. But the Angle contained is the Compliment of the Angle found out, to 90 Degrees: Therefore if you ſubſtract the Angle found out from 90 Degrees, the Remainder is the Angle ſought for.

II. *A Cathetus and the Acute adjacent Angle being given, to find out the Hypotenuſa*; Do it by the Golden Rule: As the Sine of the Compliment of the Angle given, is to the whole Sine 100000, or 10000000 in the greater Canon; ſo is the given *Cathetus* to the *Hypotenuſa* demanded.

17. III. *Two Cathetus's being given, to find the Angle adjacent to either of them*; Work thus: As one *Cathetus* is to another; ſo is the whole Sine 100000 to the Tangent of the Angle, which is adjacent to the firſt aſſumed *Cathetus*.

18. IV. *A Hypotenuſa, and one Acute Angle being given, to find out either Cathetus*; Work thus: As the whole Sine 100000 is to the Sine of the Angle, which is oppoſite to the *Cathetus* demanded, ſo is the given *Hypotenuſa* to that *Cathetus*.

SECT. VIII.

Of the different Meaſures made uſe of in GEOGRAPHY.

THE Famous Meaſure is, *The Length of a Foot*; but differs according to the Cuſtom of Nations. Mathematicians now make uſe of *Snellius*'s *Rheinlandiſh* Foot, which he ſays is equal to the ancient *Roman* Foot.

The Rod or Perch for meaſuring Land contains 10 *Rheinlandiſh* Feet; but Surveyors make their Perch of 12 ſuch Feet, or of 16 Foot and a half *Engliſh*.

The Perch and Mile ariſe from the Multiplication of Feet. A Foot is divided into Hand-breadths, Inches, and Grains: A Hand-breadth is 4 Digits or Inches, a Foot 12, and a Grain the 4th Part of an Inch; but 'tis better to divide a Foot into 10 Inches, and an Inch into 10 Grains. Theſe Meaſures are ſufficient for Modern Geography.

The Meaſures of the Ancients were thoſe of the *Egyptians, Greeks, Romans, Perſians, &c.* and the Meaſures of theſe of later Times are thoſe of the *Turks, Poles, Germans, Muſcovites, Italians, Spaniards, French, Engliſh, &c.*

The *Greek* Stadium or Furlong is reckoned 600 *Greek* Feet, which make 625 *Roman* or *Rheinlandiſh* Feet.

The *German* Mile (of which Geographers allow 15 to a Degree) contains 14000 $\frac{2}{3}$ Feet, and is reckoned 4000 Paces, or 32 Furlongs, and bears Proportion to the *Rheinlandiſh* Mile, as 19 to 15. The *Italian* or *Roman* Mile is 1000 Paces, or 8 Furlongs.

A Geometrical Pace is 5 Foot.

A Fathom is 6 Foot, and by ſome reckoned to have been the *Greek* Pace.

A Cubit is reckoned one Foot and a half.

Paraſange, or the *Perſian* Mile, is reckoned 30 Furlongs, or 300 *Perſian* Paces.

Schœnus

Digitized by Google

Schoenus, the *Ægyptian* Measure, is, according to *Herodotus*, 60 Furlongs; but, according to *Pliny*, 40; which is supposed to arise from different Customs of Places, or else is a Mistake in the Books.

The *French* League is to the *Rheinlandish* Mile, as 19 to 25. The *Spanish* League is to the same Mile as 17 ½ to 19; but because there is a Difference of Leagues both in *France* and *Spain*, these Things are uncertain.

The *English* Mile is to the *Rheinlandish*, as 19 to 55 or 60: But the *English* have Two Sorts of Miles, Computed and Measured: Of the first Sort 50, and of the last Sort 55 or 60 make a Degree.

Morden, in his Introduction to Geography, says, 'Tis a common Opinion, that 5 of our *English* Feet make a Geometrical Pace, 1000 such Paces make an *Italian* Mile, and 60 of those Miles, in any great Circle upon the Spherical Surface of the Earth or Sea, make a Degree: So that a Degree of the Heavens contains, upon the Surface of the Earth, according to this Account, 60 *Italian* Miles, 20 *French* or *Dutch* Leagues, 15 *German* Miles, 17 ½ *Spanish* Leagues, and 56 ½ *English* Miles.

But, according to several Experiments made, the Quantity of a Degree is variously accounted for thus; By *Alhazard*, an *Arabian*, 333333 *Arabian* Feet in one Degree, which reduced to our *English* Measure, is 367283 Feet, or 70 Miles and $\frac{4}{5}\frac{4}{5}\frac{3}{5}$ Parts of a Foot. By *Ptolomy*, 360000 *Rheinland* Feet, which reduced to our *English* Feet is 371900, or 70 Miles $\frac{1}{5}\frac{1}{5}$. By *Willebrordus Snellius*, *Anno* 1613, 342000 *Rheinland* Feet; in *English* 353306 Feet, or 67 Miles. *Norwood*, by his Experiment betwixt *York* and *London*, finds one Degree upon the Earth to contain 367200 Feet, which makes 69 ½ Miles. *Picart*, a *Frenchman*, makes it about 73 *Italian* Miles, and is the nearest Measure yet found by these Experiments to answer to a Degree of the Heavens.

The *Danish* or *Swedish* Miles are to the *Rheinlandish*, as 19 to 10; but in some Places the *Danes* and *Swedes* use the *German* Mile.

The *Russian* Miles, called *Versts*, are to the *Rheinlandish* Mile as 19 to 80.

The *Turkish* Miles are the same with the *Italian*.

The old *Arabian* League was reckoned the 25th Part of a Degree; but they used another Measure, 55 of which made a Degree.

Indian Miles are 100 to a Degree; for the *Indians* commonly measure their Distances by Journeys of Hours or Days.

Those of *Camboa* and *Guzarata* have a Measure called *Cosa*, 30 of which are a Degree.

The *Chinese* use Three Measures for Journeys; (1.) *Li*, the Space as far as a Man crying aloud in a Plain may be heard in a calm Day, supposed to be 300 Geometrical Paces; (2.) *Pu*, which contains 10 *Li*'s; (3.) *Uchan*, which contains 10 *Pu*'s, and by them is reckoned one Day's Journey.

The Square *Rheinlandish* Mile consists of Square Feet: The Cubick *Rheinlandish* Mile of Cubick Feet. The Amount of the Square *Rheinlandish* Mile arises from multiplying the same Mile into it self, and that of the Cubick Mile by multiplying the Square Mile by a Simple Mile. The like is to be said of Square and Cubick Feet.

Cluve-

Digitized by Google

Cluverius *gives us the following* SCHEME *of the Measures us'd by several Nations.*

DEGREES.	1	2	3	4
Russian Miles.	20 40 60 80	120 160	200 240	280 320
Italian Miles.	10 20 30 40 50 60	90 120	150 180	210 240
English Miles.	27½ 55	82½ 120	165	220
Scottish Miles.	10 20 30 40 50	100	150	200
French Leagues.	5 10 15 20 25	50	75	100
Leagues of an Hour.	5 10 15 20	30 40	50 60	70 80
Spanish Leagues.	17½	35	52½	70
German Miles.	5 10 15	30	45	60
Swedish and *Danish* Miles	2 4 6 8 10	20	30	40

Digitized by Google

For the Benefit of thoſe that read the ancient Geographers in Greek or Latin, we thought fit to ſubjoin a more particular Account of their Geographical Meaſures from *Brietius*, *Part* I. *Lib.* 3. *Cap.* 6.

The ancient Meaſures of the *Greeks* are comprehended in theſe Technical Verſes.

Quatuor ex digitis conſtabat Græca Paleſte
Illa ter in Spitame: *juſto quater in* Pede: *Senos*
Fert Orgia *Pedes*: Pelethro *centeſimus eſt Pes*:
Arvus *dimidium eſt*: Stadiumque *coercet Achivum*
Sexcentos: *Stadia Aſſyriis ignota Phariique*
Triginta antiquis Paraſanga, *&* Schoenus *habebant.*

Paleſte is tranſlated by the Latins *Palmus parvus*, and was of Two Sorts, the leſſer conſiſting of 4 Fingers, and the greater, which *Pliny* confounds with *Spitame*.

Spitame contains 12 Fingers, or Inches; is tranſlated by the Latins *Dodrans*, and ſometimes *Pedalis*, and at other times *Semipedalis*, a Foot, or half a Foot

Pes, Πους, according to *Herodotus*, *Lib.* 2. contains 4 *Paleſtes*, which is 16 *Digits*, and therefore ſomething larger than the *Roman* Foot.

Orgia, ὀργια, tranſlated by the Latins *Ulna*, from the Arms extended, contain'd 6 Foot, or 4 Cubits; and this was of Two Sorts, one called the *Juſt Orgia*, of 6 Foot; and the other, call'd the *Great Orgia*, contain'd 10, according to *Theophraſtus*.

Plethrum, or *Pelethrum*, by the Latins call'd *Jugerum*, contain'd 100 Foot.

Arvus, ἀρουρα, 50 Foot; but by ſome extended to 100 Cubits.

Stadium, σταδιον, or the proper Greek *Stadium*, meaſured by *Hercules* with his Feet in the *Olympick* Field, was 600 Foot; when doubled, it was called *Diaulos*; and the *Diaulos* doubled, was call'd *Dolichos*.

Paraſanga, a *Perſian* and *Egyptian* Meaſure, according to *Herodotus*, conſiſted of 30 *Stadia*; but this Meaſure was various, according to *Pliny*, *Lib.* 6. *Cap.* 26.

Schoenus: Of this Meaſure there are Three different Opinions; the Firſt, according to *Ptolomy*, *Pliny*, *Artemidorus*, and *Strabo*, was of 30 *Stadia*: The Second, according to *Pliny*, who ſeems to have forgot himſelf, *Cap.* 14. *Lib.* 12. is 40 *Stadia*; and this he ſays was taken from *Eratoſthenes*; though in the ſame Place he ſays it was contracted to 32 *Stadia*, which is a Miſtake, for it ought to be 30. The Third Opinion is that of *Herodotus*, who, *Lib.* 2. ſays it was 60 *Stadia*; and with this *Hermogenes* is ſaid to agree. *Strabo* ſeems to reconcile all thoſe Opinions, *Lib.* 17. when he obſerves from *Artemidorus*, That this Meaſure was various; that from *Peluſium* to *Memphis* it contain'd 30 *Stadia*; that from *Memphis* to *Thebais* it was 120; and from *Thebais* to *Syene* it was 60. He adds, That he has found it elſewhere to be 40.

The Meaſures uſed by the ancient *Roman* Geographers, are contained in the following Technical Verſes.

Quatuor ex granis Digitus *componitur unus*:
Eſt quater in Palmo *digitus*: *quater in* Pede *Palmus*.
Quinque Pedes Paſſum *faciunt*: *Paſſus quoq*; *centum*
Viginti quinq; Stadium *dant*: *at* Milliare.
Octo dabunt Stadia: *duplicatum dat tibi* Leucam.

Digitus, the leaſt of the Country-Meaſures, according to *Frontinus*, contained 4 Grains of Barley laid Longwiſe.

Uncia

Uncia was more than a Digit, and the 12th Part of a Foot. This he says was us'd in *Apulia*: But in the rest of *Italy*, they divided a Foot into 16 Digits; so that the *Uncia* answer'd to the *French* Inch.

Palmus contain'd 4 Digits, and therefore was call'd *Quadrans*.

Pes, or a Foot, of 16 Digits, or 12 *Unciæ*, *Brietius* says he finds to answer to the ancient *Roman* Foot, and is 5 *Paris* Lines less than the *Paris* Foot.

PACE, Single, Of the 1st Difference, contain'd 2 Foot.
Of the 2d Difference, 2 Foot and half.
Of the 3d Difference, 3 Foot, or the *French* Pace.
Double, Of the 1st Difference, 4 Foot.
Of the 2d Difference, 5 Foot, or the Geometrical Pace.
Of the 3d Difference. 6 Foot.

Pertica, a Perch, by *Isidorus*, *Lib.* 15. *Orig. Cap.* 15. is reckon'd 2 Paces, or 10 Foot, and seems to answer to the Measure call'd a *Reed* in Scripture.

Stadium was 125 Geometrical Paces, or 625 Foot, according to *Pliny*, *Columella*, and *Julius Frontinus*. *Bergerius* gives the Reason why 25 *Roman* Feet were added to the 600 *Grecian*, because the *Roman* was less than the *Greek* Foot.

Milliare, or *Milliarium*, a Mile, was so call'd, because it contain'd 1000 Geometrical Paces: But there are Three Opinions as to the Number of *Stadia* in a Mile; the *First* is that of *Polybius*, in *Strabo* 7 *Geogr.* who says, 8 *Stadia* make only 960 Paces, each *Stadium*, according to the *Greek* Measure, containing 600 Foot. The *Second* is that of *Plutarch*, in *Camillus*, who says, 7 *Stadia* and an half are equal to a *Roman* Mile. *Suidas*, *Phocius*, and all the Greek Authors, are of this Opinion. The *Third* is that of the *Roman* Writers, and of the *Roman* Empire it self, when the Mile-Stones were fix'd, from whence Miles were call'd *Stones*, and these Miles contain'd 8 *Stadia*; and into this Computation *Polybius* had slip'd many times unawares.

Cubitus, a Cubit, contain'd a Foot and half, that is, *from the End of the Middle-Finger to the Elbow*.

Passus, or a Pace, is the Step of a Man as he walks, and by the Ancients was divided into the lesser and the Greater; the Lesser contain'd a Foot and a half, and was call'd *Gressus*; the Greater was twice as large, and was call'd the *Geometrical Pace*, or *Pace simply*; but afterwards the Pace was thus divided:

The Measures for Voyages *and* Journeys.

The *Sea-Journey* of the Ancients.

- *Herodotus* reckons — 70000 *Orgiæ* by Day, 60000 by Night; that is, 700 *Stadia*, or 84 *Roman* Miles, by Day; and 600 *Stadia*, or 72 *Roman* Miles, by Night.
- *Polybius*, — In *Strabo*, denies that in one Day they can sail 2000 *Stadia*, or 240 Miles.
- *Aristides* — Thought, that with a fair Wind they might sail 1200 *Stadia*, that is, 144 Miles.
- *Marinus*, — In *Ptolomy*, thought they might sail 1000 *Stadia*, that is, 120 Miles, in one Day.
- *Strabo* — Thought, that in a Day and a Night they might sail 1000 *Stadia*.
- *Scylax* — Compares the Voyage of a Day and a Night to a Journey of 3 Days, which he does not compute at above 108 Miles.

Digitized by Google

The *Sea-Journey* of the Moderns.

The *Arabians* reckon'd 10000 Paces in a Day, perhaps 145 Miles. Mariners reckon'd a *German* Mile for every one of our Hours; but when the Wind was very brisk, they reckon'd 60 *German* Leagues in a Day.

In the *Mediterranean* they ſail 16 Miles an Hour; but no Ship can hold that Courſe long there without Danger.

Journeys on Foot.

Strabo in his firſt Book ſeems to hint, That one Day's Journey is 333 *Stadia*, or 20 Leagues, or at leaſt 250 *Stadia*, *i. e.* 15 Leagues; but in his 7th Book, he makes one Day's Journey 310 *Stadia*, *i. e.* 37 Miles.

Herodotus, *Lib.* 4. reckons it 200 *Stadia*, *i. e.* 12 *French* Leagues. *Polybius* and *Livius*, *Lib.* 5. reckon it 150 *Stadia*, that is to ſay, a Journey through *Cilicia*, which is ſomething above 9 *French* Leagues. *Xenophon*, in the ſame 5th Book, concerning the Way through *Armenia*, which is 120 *Stadia*, *i. e.* 7 *French* Leagues and an half, is of the ſame Opinion.

Procopius, *Lib. Rerum Goth.* reckons 100 Miles, from *Ravenna* to the *Tuſcan* Sea, to be 8 Days Journey to an expedite Man, though it ſeems to require no great Expedition to travel 12 Miles and a half *per* Day.

Military Journeys.

The *Romans* commonly reckoned this to be 20 Miles; but *Claudius Druſus Nero* reckoned it 33.

Alexander, to ſuppreſs the Rebellion of the *Arei*, travelled 600 *Stadia* in two Days, that is, each Day 72 Miles: But now, becauſe of Baggage and Artillery, an Army can ſcarce march 10 Miles in a Day.

Thoſe who have Occaſion to read ancient Authors, or thoſe of the middle Age, and ſince, for the better underſtanding them, may obſerve, That the ancient *German Raſta* contained Three Miles.

The *Arabians* make uſe of Three Sorts of Meaſures: The *firſt* contains 12000 Cubits; their Cubit 24 Inches; their Inch 6 Grains of Barley laid Broadwiſe, and 25 of this Firſt Meaſure make a Degree. The *Second* Meaſure contains 6000 Feet, or 4000 of our Cubits, and 56 of this Second Meaſure make a Degree. The *Third* Meaſure uſed by thoſe who inhabit *Arabia*, is by them called *Jom*, and contains 3 *Paraſangæ*, or 9 Miles.

The *Jews*, who are ſcattered in the Eaſt, meaſure the Diſtance of Places by *Stations*, *Paraſangæ*, *Miles*, and *Cubits*. Their *Station*, or one Day's Journey, contains 9 *French* Leagues and an half, or 150 *Stadia*. Their *Farſange*, or *Paraſangæ*, contain 4 Miles; their Mile 2000 Cubits; the common Cubit 5 Hand-breadths; the greateſt 10 Hand-breadths, or 40 Inches; their Inch is either that which is common to all Nations, or the great Inch, by which all Things are meaſured in the Law, and anſwers to the Thumb of a Man's Hand.

All the *Aſiatick* Moors reckon by *Paraſangæ*, each of which contains 3 *Italian* Miles.

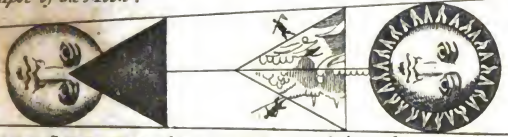
The *Tartars*, and thoſe of *Canada*, meaſure their Journey by Days, which contain 15 *French* Leagues, or 13 where the Ways are bad.

'Tis

Hic Schema demonstrat terram esse globosam
This Scheme demonstrates ye Earth to be of a Globular form.



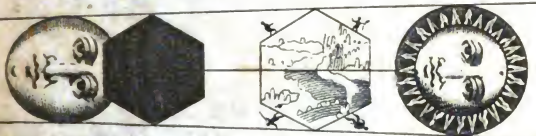
Si terra esset trigona umbra quoque triangulari figura in eclipsi Lunæ appareret.
If the Earth were of a Triangular form ye Shadow would appear so in the Eclipse of the Moon.



Si terra esset tetragona umbra quoque tetragona haberet formam.
If the Earth were four Square, the Shadow would also be four Square.



Si terra hexagonæ esset figuræ, cujus quoque umbra in defectu Lunari hexagona appareret, quæ tamen rotunda



If the Earth were Six-Square ye Shadow would be Six Square in the Eclipse of ye Moon, which however appears to be round.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

'Tis to be obſerv'd, That the Leagues of an Hour, which are frequently ſet down in Maps, are not always alike; and the common Rule of meaſuring them is according to the Strength or Weakneſs of the People... Thus the *French*, ſays *Brietius*, reckon one of their Leagues to an Hour, and the *Engliſh* reckon two. Hence it comes to paſs, that the Leagues of ſeveral Countries are unequal; but Aſtronomers always reckon 20 Leagues of an Hour to a Degree; and ſo 'tis always to be underſtood in Geographical Maps, where the Scale of Miles is mark'd with the Leagues of an Hour.

SECT. IX.

Of the Figure of the EARTH.

THE Ancients had different and very odd Opinions concerning the Figure or Form of the Earth. *Cleomedes* ſays, ſome of the Ancients thought it to be plain; others thought it hollow, becauſe Water ſtays upon it; but both thoſe Opinions were ſoon found to be abſurd. Some were ſtill more abſurd, and thought it to be quadrangular; but *Cleomedes* tells us, in his Κυκλικῆς Θεωρίας, That all his Countrymen, the Mathematicians, and *Socrates*'s Followers, held it to be of the Figure of a Globe. *Agathemerus* tells us, there were thoſe who held it to be of an oblong Form, and that it was one half longer than broad: Others alledg'd it to be twice as long as broad; and others gave the Length a greater Proportion. *Crates* reſembled it to a Semi-Circle; *Hipparchus* to a Table; *Poſidonius* to a Sling, whoſe Breadth or Middle lay South and North, and its narrower Ends Eaſt and Weſt. The Curious may ſee more of this in *Cellarius*'s *Notitiâ Orbis Antiqui*, *Cap.* 2. *Varenius* tells us, The Vulgar commonly thought it to be a broad circular Plain. *Lactantius* and others of the Fathers were of the ſame Opinion, and thought the Earth extended downward with infinite Roots, becauſe of certain Places of Scripture which they miſunderſtood. Some thought the ancient Heathen Philoſopher *Heraclitus* to be of the ſame Opinion; and others ſay, he alledg'd it was ſhap'd like a Boat. *Anaximander* is ſaid to have aſcrib'd it to the Form of a Rolling-pin; but this is deny'd, becauſe he underſtood Aſtronomy. *Leucippus* thought it of the Shape of a Drum.

Coſma the *Egyptian*, who flouriſhed about the Sixth Century, in his *Chriſtian Topography*, thought the Earth to be twice as long as broad, and to be in Form like an oblong Square; and that the Heaven was railed in Form of an Arch over it: He conceived it to be repreſented by the Table in *Moſes*'s Tabernacle, which was two Cubits in Length, and one in Breadth: He was ſo very zealous for his Opinion, that he would ſcarcely allow thoſe who were for *Ptolomy*'s Syſtem the Name of Chriſtians. He had a particular Fancy of a certain Mountain of a prodigious Height, in Form of a Cone, round which he ſuppoſ'd the Sun and Moon to take their Courſe; and by this he endeavoured to account, for the Seaſons of the Year, the Length and Shortneſs of Days and Nights, and the Eclipſes, *&c.* He founded his Syſtem on the Authority of *Patricius*, a *Chaldean* Doctor, whom he reckon'd to be a Divine Man. Thoſe who have a Mind to ſee more of his Syſtem, may find it in his *Topography* inſerted in the Second Volume of Father *Montfaucon*'s New Collection of the Greek Fathers and Writers, lately printed at *Paris* in Folio; where that Author tells us, That *Ptolomy*'s Syſtem was not admitted into the Schools till very late; And that about the End of the 14th Century, 'twas the common Opinion of Divines, That the Earth was flat; and that even *Toſtatus*, a few Years before the Diſcovery of *Ame-*

Digitized by Google

America, rejected the Opinion of the Spherical Figure of the Earth as a raſh Doctrine, and inconſiſtent with the Chriſtian Faith.

SECT. X.

Arguments to prove that the WORLD *is round.*

VARENIUS, in his Third Chapter concerning the Figure of the Earth, rejects the Sophiſtical Arguments brought by ſeveral Authors for the Roundneſs of the Earth, and prefers *Archimedes*'s Demonſtration of thoſe of *Ariſtotle*; tho' he owns that they alſo have their Difficulties: Therefore he proves the Earth to be round, becauſe all the *Appearances*, as well *Celeſtial* as *Terreſtrial*, are moſt commodiouſly explained by the Round or Spherical Form, as is evident from the Conſideration of all other Figures. The Celeſtial Appearances he reckons to be the different Elevations of the Pole, the different Altitudes of the Sun, in one and the ſame Day in different Countries, the Proportion and Shadows, the Difference and Increaſe of the longeſt Days towards the Pole, the appearing of more or fewer Stars about the Poles, the different Times of the Riſing and Setting of the Stars, *&c.* The *Terreſtrial* he reckons to be the Directions of Navigation, the Appearing and Diſappearing of Towers and Mountains, the Diſtances of Places, the Winds, *&c.* He adds, That our artificial Terreſtrial Globe repreſents all Things ſo as they are to be really found in the Earth, which certainly could not be if the Earth were not round. Beſides, whatever other Form we chuſe, 'twill be attended with innumerable Abſurdities; for 'tis manifeſt from the Appearances, that 'tis not plain: Nor can it be hollow, becauſe the Sun and Stars muſt then appear to thoſe who inhabit the Weſt, before they appear to thoſe in the Eaſt; as we ſee the Sun illuminates the Vallies before it appears to thoſe on the oppoſite Side of the Mountains.

Some of theſe Arguments are more particularly illuſtrated thus:

The Earth is prov'd to be of a Spherical Form, becauſe the Sun and Stars riſe and ſet a great deal ſooner to thoſe who live Eaſt from us, than to thoſe who live Weſt from us; and on the contrary, to thoſe who live Weſt from us, they riſe and ſet later than to us, according to the Proportion of Time which the Diſtance of their Meridians have from ours. Thus if two Places be taken from ours, *viz.* the Diſtance of the Meridian of one towards the Eaſt 225, and the Diſtance of the other 450, then we ſhall find that in the latter the Sun riſes two Hours ſooner than with us, and in the former only one Hour. The Argument is ſtill more clear, if it be propos'd according to the Sun's Arrival or coming to the Meridians of different Places; for whatever the Diſtance is betwixt their Meridian and ours, or Proportion between the Arches of the Equator intercepted between their Meridian and ours, the different Time of the Sun's Arrival will be found to be the ſame, which is plain from the Eclipſes; for theſe Things are demonſtrated by the artificial Globe, if we aſcribe a Spherical Form to the Earth; whereas no other Form can do it.

The Globular Form of the Earth may be alſo prov'd by the Latitude of Places only, if any Difficulty be found to ariſe from their Longitude; for all Sections of the Earth, which are made according to its Latitude in different Places, are the Circumferences of Circles, and paſs thro' the ſame Point of Heaven, *viz.* the Pole of Converſion, which lies near to the Polar Star. From theſe two Reaſons it may be ſolidly infer'd, that the Figure of the Earth is Spherical; for this is a Gemetrical Propoſition which Geometricians

Digitized by Google

metricians ought to demonstrate. If any solid Body be cut with what Number of Planes you please, passing through some one Point, and that all those Sections do make Circles in the Surface of the Body, that Body is Spherical.

Another Argument of yet greater Force is brought from the Shadow, which the Earth, from the Side opposite to the Sun, casts upon the Moon; by which means she is eclips'd: For this Shadow being round and circular, it proves the Form of the Earth to be so.

Other Arguments are brought for the Spherical Form of the Earth, from the following Considerations:

1. From sailing round it. Our *Europeans* parted from *Europe* 8 times, steering directly to the West and South as far as the Streights of *Magellan*, and afterwards to the West and North, and return from the East into *Europe*; and all these *Phenomena* happen'd to them that rise from the Properties of a Globe, which could never have happen'd, had not the Earth been of a Spherical Form: For since upon this Supposition these Voyages were undertaken, the Sailors could never have succeeded in 'em, had the Earth been of another Form.

2. When either by Land or Sea we go from high Towers and Mountains, the lower Parts of them disappear first, and then they go out of View more and more, till the whole of them disappear. In the same Manner when we travel towards a Tower or Mountain, the Tops of them first appear to our View, and then the lower Parts, according as we draw nearer, until we see the lowermost Parts of them; and the appearing or disappearing of those Mountains or Towers is in Proportion to the Spherical Tumor of the Earth: Nor can this *Phenomenon* be explain'd by any other Way or Figure. The like is to be said as to Ships, which go from or come towards the Shore: When they sail from us, the Hulk first disappears, then their Sails, and at last their highest Masts, the natural Convexity of the Water appearing betwixt them and our Sight; but when a Ship comes towards the Shore, the Masts appear first, then the Sails, and at last the Hulk. To this may be added, That to those who live more or less Northward, the Pole is more or less elevated; for the Inhabitants of *Island* and *Lapland*, &c. who live about 1000 Miles more Northward than we, do see the Pole Star 15 Degrees higher than we can. And those who sail hence for those Countries, do find that this Variation comes to about a Degree and a half at the End of every 100 Miles, which could not be, except the Body on which they mov'd were Spherical. The Curious may see more of this in Dr. *Gregory*'s Learned and Elaborate Work, Entituled, *Astronomia Geometrica & Physica*; where he lays down a Method to determine the Figure of the Earth exactly.

SECT. XI.

Of the Dimensions and Magnitude of the EARTH.

THIS Noble Property of the Earth hath exercis'd the Wits of the greatest Men in all Ages. *Anaximander*, who liv'd about 550 Years before Christ, is said to be the first who described the Circumference of the Earth and Sea; and his Dimensions were follow'd by succeeding Mathematicians, till the Time of *Eratosthenes*; and therefore is thought to be the same which *Aristotle* takes Notice of in the Close of his Second Book concerning the Heavens; *viz.* That the Circumference of the Earth was 400000 Stadia. *Eratosthenes*, who lived about 200 Years before Christ, and was an expert Mathematician, assign'd 250000, or, as some say, 252000 Stadia, to the Circumference of the Earth, which according

Digitized by Google

ding to *Pliny*, makes 315000 *Roman* Miles. *Hipparchus*, who lived 100 Years after *Eratosthenes*, added 25000 Stadia to *Eratosthenes*'s Number. *Posidonius*, a learned Philosopher, and particularly well vers'd in Astronomy, who lived in the Time of *Cicero* and *Pompey* a little before our Saviour, said the Circumference of the Earth was 240000 Stadia, as *Cleomedes* relates; but 180000 according to *Strabo*, which seems to be truest. However, *Eratosthenes*'s Dimension was follow'd by most till the Time of *Ptolomy*, who lived 144 Years after Christ, and asserted the Circumference to be 180000 Stadia. *Maimon*, King of the *Arabians*, order'd some learned Mathematicians to meet in the Fields of *Mesopotamia*, and enquire into the Circumference of the Earth, which they determined to be 20660 or 20340 Miles. From that Time till our Days this Problem lay neglected; the *Arabians* follow'd their own Mathematicians, and the *Latins* follow'd *Ptolomy*. But about 60 Years ago, *Snellius*, Professor of Mathematicks at *Leyden*, a very learned Man, finding these Computations defective, demonstrated one Degree in the Earth to consist of 28500 Perches of 12 *Rheinlandish* Feet each, which make 19 *Dutch* Miles; and by Consequence the whole Circumference of the Earth to be 8640 Miles, each Mile containing 18000 *Rheinlandish* Feet. The Curious may find the several Ways of making up those Computations in Sir *Isaac Newton*'s Edition of *Varenius*, *Lib.* 1. *Cap.* 4. with his own Opinion and Animadversions upon them. The Surface of the Earth, Mr. *Keil*, in his Examination of Dr. *Burnet*'s *Theory*, makes to be 170981012 *Italian* Miles. The Circumference of the Earth, according to the *French* Measure, is 123249600 *Paris* Foot, or 24649$\frac{1}{5}$ *English* Miles. The mean Semi-Diameter of the Earth is 19615800 *Paris* Foot, or 3933 Miles, of 5000 Foot to a Mile; but the Earth is higher at the Equator than at the Poles by 85200 Foot, or 17 Miles; so that the Radius of the Earth may be taken in a round Number as 200000000 Feet. The solid Content of the Globe of the whole Earth is 30000.000000.000000.000000 Cubick Feet.

Since in Geography we not only consider the greater Circles of the Earth, as the Equator, *&c.* but also the Parallels of the Equator; therefore we must also determine how many Miles or Perches answer to one Degree in each Parallel. I took, says *Varenius*, the Computation of the Perches from *Snellius*; but I computed the Miles my self; *viz.* 1900 Perches for a *German* Mile, 1500 for a *Dutch* Mile, and 475 for an *Italian* Mile.

A TABLE

Digitized by Google

A TABLE *of the Quantity of One Degree in every Parallel*

	Perches in one Degree.	*Holland Miles and Perches.*		*German Miles and Minutes.*		*Italian Miles and Minutes.*	
Latitude.	28500	19	0	15	0	60	0
1	28496	18	1496	14	59	59	56
2	28483	18	1483	14	59	59	55
3	28461	18	1461	14	58	59	52
4	28431	18	1431	14	57	59	50
5	28392	18	1392	14	56	59	46
6	28344	18	1344	14	55	59	40
7	28288	18	1288	14	53	59	37
8	28223	18	1223	14	51	59	24
9	28149	18	1149	14	48	59	12
10	28067	18	1067	14	46	59	4
11	27976	18	976	14	43	58	52
12	27877	18	877	14	40	58	40
13	27769	18	769	14	37	58	28
14	27653	18	653	14	33	58	12
15	27529	18	529	14	29	58	0
16	27396	18	396	14	25	57	40
17	27255	18	255	14	21	57	20
18	27105	18	105	14	16	57	4
19	26947	17	1447	14	11	56	44
20	26781	17	1281	14	6	56	24
21	26607	17	1107	14	0	56	0
22	26425	17	925	13	54	55	36
23	26234	17	734	13	48	55	12
24	26036	17	536	13	42	54	48
25	25830	17	330	13	36	54	24
26	25616	17	116	13	29	54	0
27	25394	16	1394	13	22	53	28
28	25164	16	1164	13	15	53	0
29	24927	16	927	13	7	52	28
30	24681	16	681	12	59	51	56
31	24429	16	429	12	51	51	24
32	24169	16	169	12	43	50	52
33	23902	16	1402	12	35	50	20
34	23628	15	1128	12	26	49	44
35	23346	15	846	12	17	49	8
36	23057	15	557	12	8	48	32
37	22761	15	261	11	59	47	56
38	22458	14	1458	11	49	47	16
39	22149	14	1149	11	39	46	36
40	21832	14	832	11	29	46	0
41	21509	14	509	11	19	45	16
42	21180	14	180	11	9	44	36
43	20843	13	1343	10	58	43	52
44	20501	13	1001	10	47	43	8
45	20152	13	652	10	36	42	24
46	19798	13	298	10	25	41	40
47	19437	13	0	10	14	41	0
48	19070	12	1070	10	2	40	8
49	18698	12	698	9	50	39	20
50	18319	12	319	9	38	38	32

Digitized by Google

Latitude.	*Perches in one Degree.*	*Holland Miles and Perches.*		*German Miles and Minutes.*		*Italian Miles and Minutes.*	
51	17936	11	1436	9	26	37	44
52	17 46	11	1046	9	14	37	0
53	17162	11	662	9	2	36	8
54	16752	11	252	8	49	35	26
55	16347	10	1347	8	36	34	24
56	15937	10	937	8	23	33	32
57	15522	10	522	8	10	32	40
58	15103	10	103	7	57	31	48
59	14679	9	1179	7	44	31	0
60	14250	9	750	7	30	30	0
61	13817	9	317	7	16	29	4
62	13380	8	1380	7	2	28	8
63	12939	8	939	6	48	27	12
64	12494	8	494	6	34	26	16
65	12045	8	45	6	20	25	20
66	11592	7	1092	6	6	24	24
67	11136	7	636	5	52	23	28
68	10676	7	176	5	38	22	32
69	10213	6	1213	5	23	21	32
70	9748	6	748	5	8	20	32
71	9279	6	279	4	38	19	32
72	8807	5	1307	4	23	18	32
73	8333	5	933	4	8	17	32
74	7846	5	346	4	52	16	32
75	7376	4	1376	3	36	15	32
76	6895	4	895	3	53	14	32
77	6411	4	411	3	38	13	32
78	5925	3	1425	3	23	12	32
79	5438	3	938	2	8	11	28
80	4949	3	449	2	53	10	24
81	4458	2	1458	2	20	9	20
82	3966	2	966	2	5	8	20
83	3473	2	473	1	50	7	20
84	2979	1	1479	1	34	6	12
85	2484	1	984	1	18	5	12
86	1988	1	488	1	3	4	12
87	1492	0	1492	0	47	3	12
88	995	0	995	0	31	2	4
89	497	0	497	0	16	1	4
90	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

SECT.

Digitized by Google

SECT. XII.

Of the Motion of the EARTH.

THE *Copernicans* say, That the Pythagorical Motion or Circumrotation of the Earth is the Cause of most of the Celestial Appearances; otherwise every Place would have a perpetual Constancy of those *Phenomena*. But no Property of the Earth has been more warmly disputed than this; and it was formerly condemned by the Church of *Rome*.

Every Body knows that the Sun, Moon and Stars, seem, in 24 Hours time, to be moved from East to West, and to return to the same Places of the Heaven; therefore of Necessity either they or we *must* be moved. 'Tis the common Opinion of those who follow *Ptolomy*, that the Heavens with the Stars are moved, and that the Earth stands still; yet the *Pythagoreans* maintained the contrary long ago, for which *Aristarchus* of *Samos* was accused of prophaning Religion, before the *Areopagites*, who acquitted him: Yet this Opinion lay buried in Oblivion till that eminent Astronomer *Copernicus* revived it about two or three Ages ago, wherein he was followed by many excellent Astronomers. Their Reasons in brief are these:

1. Because of the Number of Stars which seem to perform their Circuit round the Earth in 24 Hours, that it seems to be more reasonable to explain it by the Motion of the Earth, which is but one, tho' still keeping its own Place; as when we sit in a Ship, and sail near a Harbour of Ships, which seem to move towards us, tho' it be we that move towards them. And since Nature does not use to effect that by many Things which may be done by a few, we have Reason to think she observes the same Rule in this Case.

2. Because such a swift Motion of the Stars seems to be incredible, and to surpass all Imagination; for since they are almost at an infinite Distance from the Earth, and run through such a vast Orb, they must run in a Minute's Time at least 100000 Miles: If this Motion be ascribed to the Earth, it continues still in its Place; nor is there any Thing to be apprehended from its Swiftness, because it's carried round its own Axis.

3. This Argument appears yet more strong, if we compare the Vastness of the Celestial Bodies with that of the Earth; for since the Sun is at least 200 times bigger than the Earth, and the fix'd Stars above 1000 times bigger, it seems much more probable that the Earth turns round its Axis with a natural Motion, than that such huge Bodies are moved from Place to Place with that incredible Swiftness.

4. Because all the greatest Astronomers find themselves obliged, with *Tycho Brache*, to deny those solid Orbs which the Ancients made use of to maintain their Hypothesis of the Motion of the Stars, their Circumrotation about the Earth seems much more incredible: For if they should allow those solid Orbs, they must grant a mutual Penetration of those Orbs, since certain Planets are frequently found in the Sphere of another.

5. No Reason can be given why the Stars should be moved round the Earth; whereas there are some to be assign'd why the Earth and the rest of the Planets may be moved round the Sun.

6. Because neither the Pole nor the Axis is real, about which the Stars are said to move; whereas there is a Pole and an Axis in the Earth.

7. Because all the Celestial Appearances, the Rising and Setting of the Stars, and the Lengthening of Days, may be easily explain'd, if we allow the Earth to move, especially since the Convenience and Necessity of this Hypothesis is easily perceived in those admirable Properties of the Planets; to explain which

Digitized by Google

Ptolomy's Followers have been forced to invent many Excentrick Circles and Epicicles, without any Reaſon; but the *Copernicans* do ſo eaſily deduce thoſe Appearances from the Earth's ſecond Motion round the Sun, as to make them intelligible to the Unlearned; *viz.* 1. Why the Planets ſeem ſometimes to go retrograde, and *Saturn* oftner and for a longer Continuance than *Jupiter*, and *Jupiter* than *Mars*; and why ſometimes they ſeem to be carried with a more rapid Motion, and ſometimes to be Stationary? 2. Why *Venus* and *Mercury* can never be ſeen during the whole Night? 3. Why *Venus* is never at more than 60 Degrees Diſtance from the Sun, and *Mercury* no more than 30; and therefore are never ſeen oppoſite to the Sun.

Theſe Arguments, tho' not demonſtrative, yet make the Motion of the Earth more probable than the Motion of the Sun.

The Arguments brought againſt this Syſtem are;

1. That the Weight of the Earth makes it unfit for Motion.

2. That the Parts of the Earth are naturally carried in a ſtraight Motion towards the Center; therefore a Circular Motion is contrary to its Nature.

3. If the Earth were moved, a Stone let fall from the Top of a Tower could not fall at the Foot of it.

4. A Bullet ſhot towards the Weſt at any Mark, or a Bird flying Weſtward to any Place, they could not hit it, if the Mark or Place were moved with the Earth towards the Eaſt; or at leaſt they would reach it ſooner than if the Bullet were ſhot towards the Eaſt.

5. Neither Towers nor other Buildings could ſtand, but muſt be overturn'd by ſuch a Motion; and all Men would be troubled with a *Vertigo*.

6. Becauſe we ſee plainly, ſay they, that the Stars change their Place; but we do not perceive that the Earth does ſo.

7. Becauſe the Earth is in the Center of the World, and the Center is not moved.

8. Becauſe the Scriptures aſſert the Stability of the Earth.

To theſe Arguments, the *Copernicans* anſwer thus:

To the Firſt, by denying the whole Earth to be heavy; for Gravity or Weight is the Tendency of the Parts to the Whole of the ſame Nature, and ſuch a Gravity is diſcovered in the Parts of the Sun and Moon; yet neither of them is ſaid to be heavy.

To the Second they anſwer, That this ſtraight Motion is of the Parts of the Earth, and not of the Whole; and that the Circular Motion of the one does not hinder the Rectilineal Motion of the other; which is plain from the Parts of the Sun and Moon.

To the Third they give Three Anſwers: 1. That ſuch heavy Things are not primarily carried to the Center, but to the Earth it ſelf, and therefore by the Shorteſt Line to its Surface. The Shorteſt is that which anſwers to the Tower; as Iron tends not to the Center of the Load-ſtone, but to the Load-ſtone it ſelf. 2. The whole Air adheres to the Earth, and is moved with it; therefore ſuch heavy Things thrown down, do, together with the Earth, acquire its Circular Motion, and are moved, as 'twere, in a Veſſel. 3. *Gaſſendus* has demonſtrated, by frequent Experiments, That if any Thing be thrown from a moving Body, the Thing thrown is moved with the ſame Motion as the moving Body: For Inſtance; a Stone thrown from the Top of a Maſt of a Ship under Sail, falls down at the Foot of the Maſt; and a Bullet being ſhot up perpendicularly from the Foot of a Maſt, falls down again perpendicularly: So that this Objection has nothing in it.

To the Fourth Objection they give the ſame Anſwer as to the Third.

To

To the Fifth, they say, There is no Room for it, because the Motion of the Earth is equal, and it dashes against no other Body; and Buildings being heavy Bodies, of the like Nature with the Earth, are moved with it, as in a Ship; for if a Ship be moved slowly or swiftly, if the Motion be equal in calm Water without Waves, we find that erected Bodies are not overturn'd by the Motion; nor will a Cup full of Liquor on board any Ship spill one Drop.

To the Sixth, they answer, That the Change of Place in the Stars is not perceiv'd, but only the Change of their Situation, with respect to our selves; and this Change of Situation may both be observ'd, and have a Being, whether we move *with* the Earth, or whether the *Stars move*, and we continue fix'd, or *whether* both we and the Stars do so.

To the 7th, they answer, That both the Major and Minor of the Argument are false, or at least doubtful.

To the Eighth, they answer, 1. That the Scripture speaks in natural Things according to Appearance, and the Capacity of the Vulgar: For Instance, The *Moon* as *well* as the Sun is call'd a great Light, because 'twas created to give Light to the Night; tho' the Moon cannot be call'd great, if compared to the Stars; nor has it any Light of its own, or does illuminate the Earth every Night. So the Scripture says, The Sun goes from the one End of the Earth to the other, and returns again; whereas in Truth there is no such End. So in the Book of *Job* a plain and square Figure is ascribed to the Earth, with Pillars to support it; yet every body knows, that this must not be understood in the literal Sense. Other Places of the like Nature might be brought; but these are enough; for the Scriptures are design'd not to teach us Philosophy, but Piety. 2. *Ptolomy*'s Followers use to bring some Places of Scripture to prove the Earth to be unmoveable, which are not to be understood with respect to its Motion, but to its Duration and Constancy; and such is that Place of *Job* just now mention'd. Thus we have briefly explain'd the Motion of the Earth according to the *Copernican* Hypothesis; but must refer the further Explication of it to Astronomy; and this Motion being suppos'd, all those Things are to be applied to the Earth, which use to be consider'd in a Globe turn'd round; *viz.* The Axis, round which 'tis turn'd, is one of its Diameters: The Poles, or the Extremities of the Axis, are two Points which are not moved. In the Third Place we are to consider the greatest Circle or Circumference, according to which its Circumrotation is made, and its Parallels. Then as to the Quantity or Swiftness of its Motion. The First Motion, by which the Earth is turn'd round its Axis, cannot be perceiv'd in the whole Earth, but is different according to the Difference of Places; *viz.* the nearer any Place is to the Equator, with so much the greater Swiftness 'tis mov'd; and the nearer the Pole, with so much less Swiftness: For because in 24 Hours every Place of the World is turn'd round by the Space of the whole Circumference, to wit, 360 Degrees, the Space mov'd in 1 Hour is found thus; if we divide 360 by 24, the Quotient will be 15 Degrees, the Number by which a Place lying in or out of the Equator is turn'd round in one Hour: And if the Place lie in the Equator, they make 225 *German* Miles; from whence, in 4 Minutes, it is turn'd round one Degree, that is, 15 *German*, or 16 *English* Miles; and in one Minute, 3 ¾ *German*, or 15 *English* Miles.

But Places lying out of the Equator, towards either of the Poles, are in an Hour's Time turn'd round so many Degrees, but such as are, much less; for the Proportion is the same betwixt the Swiftness of the Motion, and the Distance of two Places, as it is betwixt the Sines of the Arches by which those Places are distant from the Pole: For Instance, The Distance of *Amsterdam* from the Equator, or

Digitized by Google

or the Elevation of the Pole is 52 Deg. 23 Min. therefore its Diſtance from the Pole is 37 Deg. 37 Min. whoſe Sine is 61037. Let us take another Place in the Equator, whoſe Diſtance from the Pole is 90 Deg. its Sine is 100000. But a Place under the Equator is in 4 Minutes turn'd round 15 *German* Miles, and in an Hour 225. Therefore by the Golden Rule;

As 100000 to 61037, ſo 15 to 9 Miles.
Or thus: So is 225 to 137 Miles.

Therefore *Amſterdam* is turn'd round every Hour 137 *German* Miles, and 9 Miles in every 4 Minutes of Time.

But the Diſcovery of this is much eaſier by the Table at the End of the preceding Section; for 360 Degrees being divided by 24 Hours, we find that any Place is turn'd round 15 Deg. of its own Circle every Hour, and 1 Degree in 4 Minutes: Therefore if we enter the Table with the Elevation of the Pole, or Diſtance from the Equator, we ſhall find the Number of Miles ſet down at the Degrees of the Elevation given, that the Place propos'd is turn'd round in 4 Minutes. For Inſtance, at *Stockholm*, the Elevation of the Pole is about 60 Deg. and in the Table at 60 Degrees, I find 7 *German* Miles anſwer one Degree: Therefore I ſay that *Stockholm* is turn'd round ſo many Miles in 4 Minutes.

So great is the *Firſt Motion* conſider'd in the Place of the Earth: But the *Second Motion* is that of the whole Earth from Place to Place, and all Parts or Places are mov'd with equal Swiftneſs, and by equal Circumferences. The Quantity of this depends on the Diſtance of the Earth from the Sun, and is perform'd in a whole Year; and therefore every Day the Earth is turn'd round about one Degree; and in one Hour, two Minutes and an half of a Degree.

The *Third Motion* of the Earth we leave to Aſtronomers.

SECT. XIII.

Of the Situation of the EARTH, *with reſpect to the Planets and fix'd Stars.*

PTolomy, and thoſe that follow him, place the Earth in the Center of the World, in the middle of the Stars and Planets; but the ancient *Pythagoreans* and *Copernicans* place the Sun in the Center, and the Earth as a Planet betwixt *Mars* and *Venus*, and alledge it to be carry'd round the Sun in one Year; which will be better underſtood by the following Diagrams. In this however they agree, that the Center of the Firſt Motion is in the Earth, by which the Stars ſeem to be carry'd round in 24 Hours: For both Aſtronomy and Geography require this Hypotheſis; ſo that whether you follow *Ptolomy* or *Copernicus*, it detracts nothing from the Certainty of General Aſtronomy or Geography. The Difference being only this, That *Ptolomy* aſcribes this Motion to the Stars, and *Copernicus* to the Earth.

According to *Ptolomy* the Situation of the Earth, with reſpect to the Planets and fix'd Stars, is thus: The *Earth*, the *Moon*, *Mercury*, *Venus*, the *Sun*, *Mars*, *Jupiter*, *Saturn*, the *fix'd Stars*.

According to *Copernicus*, the Sun is plac'd in the middle of the World, as the Heart; next to him, the Orb of *Mercury*, then *Venus*, the *Earth*, *Mars*, *Jupiter*, *Saturn*, the *fix'd Stars*.

If the Diſtance betwixt the Earth and Planets be demanded, it muſt be obſerv'd, that it is not always the ſame, but changes every Day: Therefore Aſtronomers reckon three Degrees of Diſtance, *viz.* the Leaſt, the Mean, and the Greateſt. The Mean Diſtance of the Earth, from the other Planets, according to moſt Aſtronomers, is thus:

From

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

The Figure of the World

According to the System of Ptolomee who holds that the Earth is unmoveable in the Centre of y^e World.



From the Moon, 60 of its Semi-Diameters.
From *Mercury*, 110.
From *Venus*, 700.
From the *Sun*, 1150.
From *Mars*, about 5000.
From *Jupiter*, about 11000.
From *Saturn*, 18000.

But the Distance of *Mars*, *Jupiter*, *Saturn*, and the *fix'd Stars*, is very uncertain, because of the Want of the Parallaxis. In the *Copernican* Hypothesis, the Distance is varied, not only from the Motion of the Planets, but from the Motion of the Earth. The Reasons for both Opinions are much the same with those in the preceding Section about the Motion of the Earth; for if you ascribe the Second, which is called the proper Motion to the *Sun*, the Earth, and not the Sun, will be in the middle; If otherwise, the Sun will be in the middle. The *Copernicans* offer the following Arguments for their System:

1. The Sun is not only the Fountain of Light, which, as a clear shining Torch, illuminates the Earth, the Moon, *Venus*, and the rest of the Planets; but is the *Focus* of Heat, and Vital Spirits by which the Universe is nourished and sustained: Therefore 'tis probable 'tis in the middle.

2. 'Tis more likely that the Earth turns round the Sun, that, with the rest of the Planets, she may receive Light and Heat from him, than that the Sun goes round the Earth, since he receives nothing from it.

3. The Sun being placed in the middle, furnishes us with a Reason how the Earth and the rest of the Planets are carried round him; *viz.* Because the Sun is a most vast Body, and endowed with great Force, and therefore puts the rest in Motion. This Argument will appear still more strong, if we consider *Kepler's* Hypothesis concerning the Motion of the Planets.

4. The Sun is turned round his Axis, as is proved by *Galileus* and *Scheinerus*, concerning the Spots of the Sun.

5. If we place the Earth betwixt *Mars* and *Venus*, and the Sun in the Center, the Motions of each of the Planets commodiously answer their Distance from the Center; which cannot be done by *Ptolomy's* System, as is evident from the Consideration of the Motion of the *Sun*, *Venus* and *Mercury*.

6. Those Celestial Appearances made use of in the former Section, to prove the Motion of the Earth, do likewise conclude for this Situation of it; *viz.* the retrograde Course of the Planets, and their Station, and the wonderful Appearances and Motions of *Venus*, *Mercury*, &c. For this Second Motion of the Earth presupposes the Situation of it. And this Argument, in my Opinion, is one of the chief; for from the First Motion of the Earth, nothing can be inferr'd concerning its Situation; for the Earth might be in the Center of the World, if it wanted the Second Motion, as *Origanus* has also laid down.

7. Thus also the Variation of the Distances of Planets from the Earth is commodiously explained.

The *Aristotelians*, and those who follow *Ptolomy*, offer the following Arguments to prove the Earth to be in the Center: 1. Heavy Things are carried to the Center of the World; but the Earth is the heaviest Body; therefore it is in the Center. 2. Heavy Things would descend from the Earth towards the Center of the World, except the Center were in the Earth. 3. The Center is the ignoblest Place; but the Earth is the most ignoble Place of the Universe; therefore 'tis the Center. 4. If the Earth were without the Center of the World, and of the Motions of the Stars, then the Stars and Constellations would at some Seasons and Days of the Year appear greater than at others. 5. Neither would one half of the Heaven be always conspicuous; so that when *Taurus* rises, *Scorpius* should set, *&c.* 6. Nor would there be Equinoxes. 7. Nor when the Moon

Digitized by Google

Moon rises in an Eclipse, would the Sun set, &c. 8. Nor would an equal Number of Miles in the Earth answer to every Degree of the Heaven.

To these Arguments, the *Copernicans* answer thus: The First and Second are easily refuted, because the Motion of heavy Things is not to the Center of the World, but to Bodies of the same Nature; as is proved by the Parts of the Moon, Sun, and Loadstone. The Third is false, both in the Major and Minor; for the Center is a noble Place, and the Earth not ignoble. The rest of the Arguments are easily confuted by the Diagrams; at least if this be pre-supposed, that tho' the Distance of the Earth from the Sun or Center be very great, yet if compared to the Distance of the fix'd Stars from the Sun, 'tis so small, that it bears no Proportion: And this by some is reckon'd the great *Postulatum* in the *Copernican* Astronomy.

To this Place belongs the Explication of the Theorem, that the Distance of the fix'd Stars, and superior Planets, *Mars*, *Jupiter*, and *Saturn*, is so great from the Earth, that the Semi-Diameter of the Earth bears no Proportion to it; but that the Distance of the Moon, *Venus*, and *Mercury*, is not so great. As to the Sun, 'tis still in doubt; but certainly if there be any Proportion of the Semi-Diameter of the Earth to the Distance of the Earth from the Sun, it must be very small.

The Theorem is thus proved: 1. The fix'd Stars and superior Planets appear to us to rise in the same Moment, as by Computation they would appear to rise if we were placed in the Center of the Earth. Therefore the Distance of the Place where we are from the Center of the Earth, *i. e.* the Semi-Diameter, bears no Proportion to the Distance of the fix'd Stars. 2. If we take the Meridian, or any other Altitude, of a fix'd Star, or of one of the superior Planets, with an Instrument, we find it to be the same as if we had observed it in the Center of the Earth: Therefore the Semi-Diameter of the Earth is nothing at all, if compared to that Distance. 3. If there were any Proportion, then the Distance of Two Stars would be found less about the Horizon than about the Meridian; because in this Situation, they are nearer to the Earth almost by one Semi-Diameter. The same holds as to the Sun; for his Diameter is not found to be greater in the Meridian, than when he is in the Horizon; but the Diameter of the Moon in the Meridian is observed to be something greater than when it is in the Horizon; and therefore in the Meridian 'tis nearer us almost by one Semi-Diameter of the Earth.

SECT. XIV.

Of the Substance and Constitution of the EARTH.

Proposition I. *To explain of what Simple and Similar Parts the Earth is composed.*

PHilosophers are divided in this Matter: The *Peripateticks* reckon Fire, Air, Water and Earth, to be the Four Elements of all the Sublunary World. Many of the Ancients, as *Democritus* and *Leucippus*, held, that the World consisted of little solid Particles, differing only in Figure and Magnitude. They have been followed in this by many of the Moderns; and *Cartes* lately endeavoured to explain all natural *Phenomena* by such an Hypothesis.

Chymists lay down three Principles, *viz.* Salt, Sulphur, and Mercury; to which some add, *Caput Mortuum*.

But *Varenius* is of Opinion, That there are five First Simple Bodies, *viz.* Water, Oil of Sulphur, Salt, Earth, and a certain Spirit which some call Acid, and perhaps is the Mercury of the Chymists: For all Bodies and Parts of the Earth are resolved into those Elementary Substances;

Digitized by Google

ſtances; yet he owns, that they differ not ſo much in Eſſence, as in Figure and Magnitude. Of theſe Bodies, he holds the Earth to conſiſt; and which being differently mix'd, produce ſuch a Variety of Bodies, that being compared with one another, appear different or ſimilar.

Prop. II. *The Earth is divided into dry and Liquid, or into Earth and Water; to which ſome join the Atmoſphere.*

Water in this Senſe is taken for all that's Liquid, and the Earth for every Thing that's Dry, and conſiſts of Earthy Parts; as, 1. Sand, Loam, Clay and Mineral Earths, Chalk, Cinnaber, Ochre, *Terra-Lemnia*, brought from the Iſle of *Lemnos*, called likewiſe *Terra-Sigillata*, Earth of *Samos*, *Armenia*, and many other different Species of Earth. 2. Stones, of *which* there is great Variety. 3. Metals, as Gold, Silver, Copper, Tin, Lead, Mercury or Quick-ſilver, or Metalick Ores; ſuch as of Gold, Silver, *&c.* 4. Sulphur, Salts, Nitre, Allom, Bitumen, Vitriol, Antimony. 5. Herbs and Animals.

To the Water are referr'd, 1. Seas, and the Ocean. 2. Rivers and freſh Water. 3. Lakes and Marſhes. 4. Mineral Waters, as Baths, *&c.*

The Atmoſphere is that thin and ſubtil Body which encompaſſes the Earth towards the Heavens, and comprehends the Air, Clouds, Rains, *&c.* Philoſophers differ in their Opinion as to the Height of the Atmoſphere: *Kepler* makes it 8 Miles; and *Ricciolus* makes it probable, that 'tis at leaſt 50 Miles high. The late Honourable Mr. *Boyle* makes the common Height of the Atmoſphere, when the Mercury in the Baroſcope is at 30 Inches, to be 7 Miles; upon a Suppoſition, that all our Air is of the ſame Denſity and Weight, from the Surface of the Earth to the Top of the Atmoſphere: But ſince this cannot be ſuppoſed, he ſuggeſts it muſt be much more; and in his Book againſt *Linus*, he ſuppoſes it to be probable it may be ſome Hundreds, nay Thouſands, of Miles high, in caſe the Atmoſphere be not a bounded Portion of the Air, but reaches as high as the Air.

Prop. III. *How Earth and Water cohere, and conſtitute the Earth.*

1. The dry Part of the Earth has not always a regular Surface, but many Cavities and raiſed Parts. In the Cavities, which are round the whole Earth, is contained the Sea or Ocean: Therefore Part of the Surface of the Earth is covered with Water, and Part riſes above it. The Cavities are not all equally hollow, but here and there have Rocks and raiſed Parts, and in ſome Places very deep Gulphs: So the dry Land is ſome Parts higher, and ſome Parts more depreſſed than others. Hence it comes to paſs, that the Water which encompaſſes the Earth is hinder'd from overflowing it.

2. Beſides that continued Cavity in the Surface of the Earth, there are alſo in the inner Part or ſolid Body of it many Hiatus's, Receſſes, Windings, Conveyances, Gulphs, Conduits, and vaſt Receptacles; in ſome of which there is Sea, which is join'd to the Channel of the common Sea by ſome ſecret Conveyance: In ſome of them there is freſh Water, Rivers and Streams; in ſome of them Spirit, or a ſulphurous ſmoaking Subſtance. This was alſo *Seneca*'s Opinion, and 'tis proved by the following Arguments: 1. Becauſe of the Rivers found in many Places, when the Earth is dug to any conſiderable Depth, as happens frequently in Mines. 2. Becauſe in ſome Places the Sea is of an unfathomable Depth. 3. Becauſe of Streams that are found in Caves of the Earth; particularly there is a Mountain in the Weſt Part of *Hiſpaniola* of a conſiderable Height, with many Caves, into which Streams fall with ſuch a Noiſe, that 'tis heard for 5 Miles. 4. Several Whirlpools are found in the Sea, particularly in that called *Pentland-Frith*, betwixt the

Digitized by Google

Orkney Isles, and *Caithnes* in the North of *Scotland*. 5. Because several Rivers hide themselves under Ground, such as the *Niger* and *Tygris*, &c. 6. Salt Fountains are found in many Places, which, doubtless, for the most Part come from the Sea. 7. Earthquakes prove the Existence of Subterranean Cavities. 8. In many Places the Earth shakes, as at *St. Omers* in the *Netherlands*, and *Peel* in *Brabant*.

From hence 'tis plain, That the Opinion of some ancient Philosophers was false, who alledged, That the Earth swims upon the Water. Some of them were likewise of Opinion, That the Earth was of old mix'd with the Water, so that it was of a middling Nature, betwixt Dry and Liquid, and of a Spherical Form: But at last the Watery Particles gathered together by Degrees into one Body, by that natural Property of joining together which is discerned in Water, that the Terrestrial Parts became thus condens'd, and that the Waters, as they retired, made Channels in the Earth. Some Modern Christian Philosophers defend this Opinion, and thus they understand that Text, *Let the Waters be gathered together into one Place, and let the dry Land appear*, Genesis 1. 9. But most of the Primitive Fathers thought otherwise, for they were of Opinion, That the Water at first was separated from the Terrestrial Parts, and covered the whole Earth; but upon this Saying of *Jehovah*, the Waters retired miraculously, and the Earth was discovered, and that hitherto they are hindered by the singular Providence of God from overflowing the Earth again: And thus they look upon this Constitution of the Earth and Sea to be a Miracle. But *Varenius* shews, That there is no need of having Recourse to that, because the Inundation of the Sea is hindered by the Height and Consistency of the Land, which if at any Time removed, as by Earthquakes, *&c.* the Sea immediately overflows such Parts: And as to the Opinion of the ancient Philosophers, there can no Reason be given why the Terrestrial Parts might not as well have sunk down, and have been wholly covered with Water, as that the Water should remove, and leave the Earth dry.

Prop. IV. *'Tis uncertain how those Parts of the Earth which lie towards the Centre are constituted.*

Some think there is Water about the Centre of the Earth; but 'tis more likely, that the Earth possesses that Place. Mr. *Gilbert*, an *Englishman*, was of Opinion, That the innermost Body of the Earth is a very hard Loadstone, and that those Parts which we dig, and upon which Herbs and Trees grow, is like the Bark or Crust of the Earth, wherein there happens continual Generation and Corruption. *Cartes* differs not much from this: He thinks there are Three Regions of a different Substance in the Body of the Earth; the innermost, about its Centre, like the Substance of the Sun and fix'd Stars: The Second, which is thick and opaque, consists of very minute Particles; and the Third, upon which we live, consists of Particles that have not so close a Coherence: But there is nothing certain about these Things. That there is Fire in many Subterranean Places, and Smoak which proceeds from Sulphur, is manifest from the Baths: And *Thurnheuserus* affirms, That he found by Experience, that the nearer Mines are dug to the Centre of the Earth, the less Water is found in them.

Prop. V. *The Consistency and Coherence of the Earth proceeds from Salt.*

The Artificial Dissolution of the Parts of the Earth shews, that in all of them there is a certain Species of Salt to be found, and the harder the Body is, so much the more Salt, (a few oily Parts excepted) as in Metals, Rocks, *&c.* And that the Consistency or Concretion of all Things proceeds from Salt, is manifest from the very hard Stones that are made

Digitized by Google

made of Salt by Art. If you ſeparate Salt from the Earth, it will no more ſtick together, but becomes meer Duſt, and cannot be reduced to Hardneſs without a Mixture of Salt.

Prop. VI. *The Sorts of Earth are differently mix'd among one another in the Bowels of it.*

Thus in Mines there are found Particles of Gold, Silver, and Lead, not ſeparate from other Particles, but ſometimes mutually mix'd with one another, and ſometimes with the Earth; and in ſome ſmall Particles, that Artiſts cannot diſcover at firſt Sight but by other Ways of Trial, what it is that is contained in any Mineral Earth. When at *Amſterdam* a Well was dug 232 Foot deep, the Veins of Earth appeared as follows: 7 Foot of Garden Mold; 9 of Turf, or Peat: 9 of ſoft Clay; 8 of Sand; 4 of Earth; 10 of Clay; 4 of Earth; 10 of Paving Sand; 2 of Clay; 4 of White Loam; 5 of dry Earth; 1 of muddy Earth; 14 of Sand; 3 of ſandy Clay; 5 of Sand mix'd with Clay; 4 of Sea-Sand mix'd with Shells; and then Clay of 102 Foot deep; and at laſt 31 Foot of Loam, where the Digging ceaſed.

Prop. VII. *The Cavities of the Earth, and its internal and external Diſpoſition and Situation of Parts, are not always the ſame, but differ at different Times:*

For not only the Sea makes ſeveral Changes in Parts of the Earth, by ſtopping up ſome Cavities, and enlarging others, but Spirits and Sulphureous Subſtances lurking here and there in the Earth, when they begin to kindle, and to be reſolved into Vapours, they impetuouſly move and thruſt forward the Parts of the Earth, as is plain from Earthquakes; and 'tis very probable there are ſuch Motions in the innermoſt Parts of the Earth, of moſt of which we perceive nothing.

SECT. XV.

Of the Diviſion of the EARTH *by the Ocean.*

THE Terraqueous Globe is divided into Earth covered by the Water, into Earth ſtanding out of the Water, and Water it ſelf. The Surface of the Earth ſtanding out of the Sea, is divided into theſe Four Parts by the Interflux of the Water.

I. Into great Continents, or greateſt Iſlands; of which we reckon Four:

1. The Old World, whoſe Parts are, *Europe*, *Aſia*, *Africa*. The Boundaries of this Continent, are, On the North, the Northern, Frozen, and *Tartarian* Sea. On the Eaſt, the *Pacifick* and *Indian* Sea. On the South, the South Sea. On the Weſt, the *Atlantick*.

2. The New World, or *America*, whoſe Parts are, *Northern*, and *Southern*. Its Boundaries are, On the North, *Davis*'s Streights. On the Eaſt, the *Atlantick* Sea. On the South, the *Magellanick* Streights. On the Weſt, the *Pacifick* Sea.

3. The Land of the North Pole, or *Greenland*, is every where encompaſſed by the Sea and Streights.

4. The South Land, or Land of *Magellan*, not yet diſcovered.

Digitized by Google

II. The Second Diviſion is *Peninſula's*, or *Cherſoneſi*, which are Parts of theſe Continents, and join'd to them by narrow Necks of Land: They are divided into Round, Oblong, and into ſuch as have an Affinity with *Peninſula's*.

The round ones, whoſe Latitude and Longitude are almoſt equal. { *Africa*, *Peloponneſus*, or the *Morea*; the *Cherſoneſus* of *Grecia*, *Cherſoneſus Taurica*, or *Tartaria Precopenſis*. *Cambaia*.

The oblong are many in Number. { 1. The *Golden Cherſoneſus*, or *Malacca*, adjoining to *India*. 2. *Cimbrica*, or *Jutland*, adjoining to *Holſtein*. 3. *Corea*, adjoining to *Tartary*. 4, 5. *North* and *South America*. 6, 7, 8. *California*, *Jucatan*, the *Cherſoneſus* of *Thracia*. 9, 10. *New France*, *Ionia*, *Cnidenſis*, *Myndenſis*.

Thoſe which have an Affinity to *Peninſula's*. { *Italy*, *Greece*, *Achaia*, *Spain*, *Aſia Minor*, *Arabia*, *Norway*, with *Sweden* and *Lapland*; *Beach*, a Country of *Magellan*; *New Guinea*, *Indoſtan*, *Cochinchina*, *New England*, *Monomotapa*, and *Cambaia*.

III. The Third Diviſion is Iſlands, of which there are,

Nine great ones; { *Great Britain*, *Japan*, *Iſland*, *Canada*, *Sumatra*, *Madagaſcar*, *Borneo*, *Nova Zembla*, *California*.

Thirteen middling ones; { *Sicily*, *Ireland*, *Hiſpaniola*, *Cuba*, *Java Major*. *Celebes*, *Crete*, *Laconia*, *Sardinia*, *Friſeland*, *Terra Nova* near *New France*, *Mindanao*, and *Ceilan*.

Nine little ones; { *Gilolo*, *Amboina*, *Timor*, lie among the *Indian* Iſlands. *Corſica*, *Majorca*, *Cyprus*, *Negropont*, lie in the *Mediterranean*. *Daniſh Zealand*, and *Jamaica* which lies in the Bay of *Mexico*.

Very ſmall ones; { 1. Thoſe of moſt Note which lie alone, as *Rhodes*, *Malta*, *Lemnos*, *St. Helen's*, *St. Thomas's*, *Madera*, &c. 2. Thoſe which lie together in great Numbers very near one another, *viz.* the *Canary* Iſlands, the *Caribbee* Iſlands, the *Heſperides*, thoſe in the Bay of *Mexico*, the *Maldiva* Iſlands, thoſe about *Madagaſcar*, the *Molucca's*, and Iſles of *Banda*, the *Philippin* Iſlands, thoſe of *Japan*, the Iſles of *Theeves*, thoſe of the *Ægean* Sea, thoſe about *Great Britain*, and the Iſlands of *Solomon*.

IV. The Fourth Diviſion is *Iſthmi*, or narrow Necks of Land, which are thoſe betwixt *Egypt* and *Arabia*, or betwixt *Africa* and *Aſia*; the *Corinthian Iſthmus*, betwixt *Peloponneſus* and *Achaia*; the *Iſthmus* of *Panama*, or *Darien*, in *America*, the longeſt of them all; that betwixt *Jutland* and *Holſtein*; that betwixt *Malacca* and *India*, &c.

SECT.

Digitized by Google

SECT. XVI.

Of MOUNTAINS *in General.*

TIS needless to insist on the Description of Mountains, and how they differ from little Hills, since that is known to every Body. The natural Use of them is very well described by *Kircher Lib.* 2. *Mund. Subter. viz.* That they are the same to the Earth as Bones are to the Body, and fasten the Globe so as it cannot be dissolved: For since the Earth is compos'd of Soil of different Sorts, and produces innumerable Species of different Things, as Minerals, and Mineral Fluors, these Things could not consist together, except they were kept in by the firm Structure of the Mountains. 2. Since the Sea flows perpetually round the Land, and is in continual Motion by the Winds and Tides, the Earth could not last without the Mountains, which keep the Sea within Bounds like so many Barriers; and, as *Job* expresses it, sets Bars and Doors to it. 3. Mountains are absolutely necessary to further and regulate the Course of Fountains and Rivers, since their Water would stagnate or overflow the Country, if the Surface of the Ground were altogether level: Therefore, says he, the Mountains are like Dugs in the Bosom of the Earth, and serve as the Repositories of Nature to supply the Earth perpetually with Liquor, and to fructify the neighbouring Vallies. 4. Mountains are necessary for breaking high Winds, and for producing Variety of Herbs, which could not subsist without them. 5. Mountains are the Repositories of Minerals, in whose Cavities the Subterranean Fire matures them, as in a Furnace, for humane Use. We need say nothing of the pleasant Prospects they afford, and of the useful Shade they give, at some Times of the Day and Year, to the neighbouring Valleys, to prevent their being parch'd up; and of the Heat of the Sun, which at other Times they reflect upon them, to prevent their being absolutely drowned with Moisture: And, in the last Place, they make the Air serene and healthful. Tis evident, That most Countries rise from the Shore towards the Inland Places, it being necessary that it should be so for the Course of the Rivers and Brooks: So that the Proportion of Height betwixt the Midland and Maritime Places may be known by the Declivity of the Rivers. For the Way of measuring the Height of Mountains, we refer to *Varenius, Lib.* 1. *cap.* 9.

Tis evident, by the Reasons that Author gives us, That the Height of Mountains bear so small a Proportion to the Semi-Diameter of the Earth, that they hinder its Roundness no more than a Grain of Sand does that of an Artificial Globe: For since we find by Experience, that there is no Mountain which exceeds an *English* Mile and an half in Height, and that the Semi-Diameter of the Earth is 860 *German* Miles, the Proportion betwixt the highest Mountain and that can be no more than 1 and an half to 860.

Philosophers differs as to the Origin of Mountains. Some think they were created at first: But 'tis evident, that several of them have fallen down by the Decay of the Rocks which supported them, from whatever Cause that Decay proceeded; and since there are natural Causes for their Corruption, there may be the like for the Generation, at least of some of them: For that several Mountains have been generated by Progress of Time, is inferr'd from the Shells that are found in the Tops of many of them, particularly in *Gelderland*: And their Way of Formation, seems to be by Heaps of Sand and Dust being blown together by strong Winds, and brought to a Consistency by Rain: But this must only be understood of the lesser Sort, since

Digitized by Google

since 'tis more reasonable to conclude, that the greater Sort were concreted with the Earth.

The same Author considers the Reason why there is frequently Rain, Clouds and Snow, on the Tops of Mountains, when the Air is clear in the neighbouring Valleys. He rejects their Opinion, who think that Mountains attract the Air and the Clouds, because they give no Reason for it. He gives his own Opinion thus: He thinks that the Vapours and Exhalations being condens'd into Drops in the middle Region of the Air, they begin to fall downward, and because the Tops of the Mountains are nearer them than the Valleys, those Drops which fall on the Mountains leave their Place in the Air, which is immediately filled by those that are next, being either pushed forward by what Philosophers call *Fuga Vacui*, or because the Nature of Water is such, that it flows to that Place where the Flux first begins.

In his 10th Chapter he treats of the Difference of Mountains, which are either in single or long Tracts, and particularly of burning Mountains, which we refer to the Description of those Countries they belong to, and shall only take Notice here, That he assigns the Cause of those *Vulcano's*, or burning Mountains, to be the Sulphurous and Bituminous Substance contained in them.

Every one knows, that Mountains which run into the Sea, or rise very high on the Shore, are called *Promontories*, or *Capes*.

To Mountains are opposed Gulphs, Caves, Abysses, and deep Valleys: The most remarkable of which, we shall treat of in their respective Countries; and the like as to Mines, Woods, and Deserts.

In his 12th Chapter he treats of the Division of the Ocean by the Earth, and proves, That the Ocean encompasses the Earth, and the Parts of it, by a continued Tract, and that its Surface is no where totally interrupted by Lands interposed, but only its larger Continuity, and coming together freely, a little hinder'd. This is evident from the Experience of those that sail round the Earth. As to the Seas of different Denominations, and the Division of the Ocean into particular Seas, Bays and Friths, we refer them to the particular Countries from whence they take their Name, and shall only take Notice here, That the Ocean is divided into 4 great Seas, sometimes also called Oceans, *viz.* the *Atlantick* Ocean, which lies betwixt the West Shore of the Old World, and the Eastern Shore of the New, and is commonly, though improperly, called the *Northern Sea*, and therefore is more rightly divided into Two Parts, one lying from the Equator Northward, where it joins with the North Sea, and the other Southward, where it joins with the South Sea. 2. The *Pacifick* Ocean, commonly called the *South Sea*, which lies betwixt the Western Shore of *America* and *Asia*, as far as the *Indian* and *Philippine* Islands and *China*. 3. The *Hyperborean*, or Northern Ocean, which lies about the North Pole. 4. The Southern Ocean, that lies about the *Terra Australis*, of which the *Indian* Ocean is a Part.

In his 13th Chapter he treats of some Properties of the Ocean, and its Parts, wherein he proves, That the Surface of the Ocean, and of all Liquids, is round, or a Part of the Spherical Surface, whose Center is the same with that of the Earth. He makes use of the same Arguments that were formerly brought, to prove the Roundness of the Earth, and likewise of *Archimedes*'s Demonstration, which supposes Three Things: 1. That the Earth has some Center in its Middle, and therefore is Spherical. 2. That 'tis the Nature of all Fluids, that their Parts lying equal, and continued among themselves, at an equal Distance from the Center of the Earth, that which is less press'd is

Digitized by Google

is expelled by that which is more preſſed, as is plain from Experience. 3. That every Part of a Fluid is preſs'd by the Fluid above it perpendicularly, with reſpect to the Center of the Earth, if this Fluid deſcend, or be preſs'd by another Body. For his Geometrical Demonſtration of this, we refer to the Book it ſelf.

He likewiſe proves, That the Ocean is no higher than the Shores of the Land; and therefore that the Land and the Sea are every where almoſt of the ſame Height, excepting high Mountains. This is proved *a Priori* by the preceding Propoſition; and he proves it alſo *a Poſteriori* by the following Arguments:

1. We find by Experience, that Water, unleſs it be ſtop'd, runs from higher to lower Places: Therefore if the Places about the Shores were lower than the middle of the Ocean, Part of the middle of the Sea would flow to the Shores.

2. If the Ocean far from the Shore were much higher than the Sea at the Shore, that Height would be perceiv'd at a greater Diſtance than a Spherical Surface admits of: Nay, it muſt be ſeen at the ſame Diſtance from which the intercepted Parts of the Ocean are ſeen betwixt that Height and the Shore. But we find by Experience, that 'tis not ſeen at a greater Diſtance, but that the more remote Part is gradually ſeen after the nearer Part, when we come to the Shore from Inland Places; and the nearer that any Part is to the Shore, ſo much the ſooner 'tis ſeen at the greater Diſtance from the Shore.

3. When Mariners ſail in the middle of the Ocean or deep Sea, tho' they make uſe of Mathematical Inſtruments, they find it no higher there than in the Parts next the Shore; which could not be, if the Sea were elevated like a Tower or high Mountain: For as by Inſtruments we diſcern the Height of Towers or Mountains above the lower Parts of the Earth, we muſt of Neceſſity by the ſame Inſtruments perceive the middle of the Ocean to be higher than the neighbouring Parts, if it were really ſo.

4. In the middle of the Ocean Iſlands are found here and there, and that alſo in great Numbers in ſome Parts near the Continents: Therefore the middle of the Ocean is not higher than the Earth, becauſe 'tis not higher than the Shores of thoſe Iſlands.

5. No Wave of the Ocean continues long in the Form of a Heap or Hill, but is immediately diſperſed, ſo as to make an Equality with the neighbouring Parts. Therefore there can be no ſuch Height in the middle of the Ocean above the adjacent Parts of it.

6. If the Water were higher in the middle of the Ocean, no Reaſon can be given why it ſhould not flow into the Channels of the Rivers, if their Waters were lower; for we find by Experience, that Water, wherever it is, flows into the lower Parts; and hence Inundations are occaſioned. It makes nothing againſt this, that in ſome few Places the Shores are higher than the neighbouring Inland Parts, ſince in moſt Parts 'tis otherwiſe; and 'tis evident in the main, from the Courſe of Rivers, that the Midland Places are higher than the Shores. He does not however deny, that there are Countries ſomewhat lower than the Water of the Ocean; but they are either defended by the Height of the Shores, or by Ramparts made on Purpoſe, which for moſt part are not caſt up, becauſe the Ocean is higher than that Part of the Shore in its natural and calm State; but to ſave the Country from being overflowed, when the Sea is ſwollen by tempeſtuous Weather.

From all this he concludes, That the Waters of the Ocean are no higher than the Earth; and that there is no need of having Recourſe to the miraculous Providence, which prevents the whole Earth from being overflow'd.

In the next Place, he gives us the Reaſon why the Sea, view'd from the Shore, ſeems to riſe higher and higher the more remote

Digitized by Google

remote it is; and concludes, that this proceeds from a *deceptio visus*, or rather from a Miſtake of our Conception, which led many into that Error, that the middle of the Ocean is higher by many Furlongs than the Shore; and wonders they were not convinced of this Fallacy by daily Experience: For if we look at an *Area* extended to a conſiderable Length, any Body would think that the remote Parts ariſe gradually higher than thoſe which are next us, though they be all of an equal Height. He ſays, 'tis the ſame with the Waters of the Ocean; and that if we make uſe of a proper Mathematical Inſtrument on the Shore, we ſhall find no Part of the remote Ocean to be higher than the Shore, but rather a ſmall Depreſſion; ſo that the Water ſinks beneath the Horizon of the Shores.

He explains this Fallacy of our Sight by the Opticks, and demonſtrates it by a Figure; for which we refer to the Book it ſelf.

In the Fourth Propoſition of this Chapter, he explains the Cauſes and Riſe of the Bays and Friths of the Ocean, which he thinks ought more properly to be called the Bays of the Earth, and Arms or Branches of the Sea; and that thoſe are more properly call'd Bays of the Sea, where *Peninſula's* run into it from the Land.

The Cauſe of thoſe Bays he aſcribes to the Separation of ſome Part of the Earth from others; and that thoſe ſeparated Parts are lower than the Surface of the Sea: And hence it comes to paſs, that the Water overflows thoſe depreſſed and ſeparated Parts, until it meet with a higher Land, which fixes its Boundary; and the Cauſe of Friths is the ſame.

He aſſigns the Cauſe of the Separation of the Parts of the Earth to the impetuous Motion of the Sea, by Winds or otherwiſe; which happening almoſt every Day, in Progreſs of Time ſome Parts of the Shore are ſo ſhook by the Waves, that they give Way to the Sea; and the more depreſſed the Shore is, the more eaſily Bays are form'd, eſpecially if the Matter of the Shore be ſuch as may be waſted by the Water: Yet we muſt not conclude, that all Bays and Friths have been ſo form'd; for 'tis probable, that ſome of them are as old as the Creation. We have no Account in Hiſtory of any new Bay or Frith's being formed; tho' the ancient *Greeks* tell us ſome ſuch Fables concerning the Streights of *Calix* or *Hercules*; *viz.* That *Calpe*, a Mountain on the *Spaniſh* Shore, and *Abyle*, another on the *African* Shore, were formerly one, but ſeparated by *Hercules*, from whence they were called his Pillars; and the Streights were alſo call'd by his Name.

The Opinion of the Ancients, concerning that Streight betwixt *Sicily* and *Italy*, is much more probable, becauſe 'tis but ſmall.

In the Fifth Propoſition of this Chapter, he handles that Queſtion, Whether the Sea be every where of an equal Height? That it is ſo, is proved by the Firſt Propoſition, (provided there be no Impediment or Stop) wherein he ſhews the Surface of the Ocean to be Spherical, and that it has the ſame Center with the Earth. But ſince 'tis doubted whether there are not ſome Cauſes which may make ſome Parts of the Ocean higher than others, he thinks it a Matter of Moment that deſerves Conſideration, eſpecially to thoſe who have occaſion to dig through Iſthmus's for a Communication of Trade, *&c.*

Many are of Opinion with *Ariſtotle*, That the Ocean and Earth are higher towards the North, but lower towards the Equator. The Reaſon is, that the Ocean ſeems to flow from the Northern Regions as from its Fountain; but from this he can infer no certain Concluſion, becauſe 'tis ſtill a Queſtion, whether the Northern Countries, eſpecially the Northern Channels, be higher or lower than thoſe next to the Equator? Nor is it ſufficiently proved from this Motion of the Sea, becauſe

becauſe 'tis not general, nor perceiv'd in all Northern Countries; but tho' this Motion be allow'd, it will not follow that the Ocean is higher there, becauſe to avoid this Exceſs of Height, the Ocean flows from thoſe Places to the Equator.

This Opinion, That the Northern Regions are higher than the reſt, ſeems to have taken its Riſe from this; That when we travel to the Northward, we conceive the Pole to be elevated above the Horizon, and the Place where we are; and therefore, that the Pole of the Earth and the neighbouring Countries are higher than others.

Some think, that the *Indian* Ocean, betwixt *Africa* and *India*, is higher than the *Atlantick*, and endeavour to prove it from the *Arabian* and *Mediterranean* Seas: Where, at the ſame time, we are to conſider, whether Bays be higher or lower than the Ocean, eſpecially in the extream Parts of thoſe Bays, and particularly thoſe which are join'd to the Ocean by narrow Streights.

'Tis not unlike, that the *Atlantick* and *Indian* Oceans are higher than the *Mediterranean*, eſpecially the extream Parts of it, towards *Aſia Minor*, and *Egypt*: For the *Atlantick* Ocean flows into the *Mediterranean* by the Streights of *Cadix*; and 'tis likely that the Ocean is ſomewhat higher than *Friths*, becauſe the Water has not a Free Influx into them. At the Streights, indeed, the Difference can be but ſmall; but as we advance further into that long and broad Tract betwixt *Europe* and *Africa*, this Bay ſeems to be lower depreſs'd than the Ocean, eſpecially when it is ſtop'd by Rocks, Iſlands, and Promontories, which repel the Water, and leſſen the Influx. And if it be true what credible Writers ſay of *Darius*, *Seſoſtres*, and other Kings of *Egypt*, we are not to doubt of this Inequality of Height; for thoſe Kings attempted to dig a Canal betwixt the *Red Sea* and the *Nile*, that Ships might ſail this Way from the *Indian* and *Red Seas* by *Egypt*, and from thence by the Mouth of the *Nile* into the *Mediterranean*, which would have been of vaſt Advantage to *Egypt*, and to many Countries on the *Mediterranean* Sea: but they deſiſted, upon Information by Perſons of Skill, that the *Red Sea* was much higher than the Land of *Inner Egypt*: Therefore if the *Red Sea* be higher than *Egypt*, it muſt be higher than the *Nile*, and by Conſequence than the *Mediterranean*: For 'tis plain, that the *Nile* is not lower than the *Mediterranean*, becauſe it flows into it. Therefore the *Indian* and *Red Seas* are higher than the *Mediterranean*, at leaſt than the extream Parts of it about *Egypt*, *Syria*, *Thracia*, and the *Ægean* Sea. Beſides, not only the ancient *Egyptian* Kings, but their later Sultans, and the Emperors of the *Turks*, are ſaid to have attempted the ſame Thing, and to have forborn it for the ſame Reaſons.

But what we have ſaid concerning the *Red Sea*'s being higher than the *Mediterranean*, is queſtioned by ſome, ſince they are both Bays of the Ocean, the *Mediterranean* of the *Atlantick*, and the *Red Sea* of the *Indian* Ocean. *Varenius* thinks the Cauſe to be, that tho' both of them are Bays from the Ocean, and are therefore probably ſomewhat lower than the Ocean; yet it is not ſo ſenſible in the *Red Sea*, becauſe 'tis of a much leſs Length than the *Mediterranean*, and therefore a great deal nearer to the Ocean than the extream Parts of the latter.

Therefore if a Canal were dug from the *Red Sea*, the *Indian* Ocean would ſend in abundance of Water into the *Mediterranean*; but he queſtions whether it would ſend ſo much as to overflow the Countries which lie upon the *Mediterranean*; for it might perhaps be, that if the *Indian* Ocean ſent in more through that Canal, the *Atlantick* would ſend in leſs through the *Streights*; becauſe the Height of the *Atlantick* would be leſſen'd if the Motion were from the *Indian* Ocean into the *Mediterranean*.

Digitized by Google

Therefore he thinks, thoſe Princes gave over the Attempt rather from Political Reaſons: And,

1. Becauſe of the Trouble and Charge; for the *Iſthmus* is at leaſt 40 *German* Miles broad where 'tis narroweſt; the Ground is full of Rocks; and Ramparts muſt have been caſt up in many Places by ſkilful Engineers, which thoſe Governments had not.

2. Becauſe the Chriſtians, particularly the *Venetians* and other *Italians*, the *French* and *Spaniards*, would have reap'd more Advantage by it than *Egypt*, and other of the *Turkiſh* Dominions; for the Chriſtian Merchants would have ſail'd that Way to and from *Perſia* and the *Indies*, and brought home thoſe Goods in Ships, which the *Turks* had rather ſhould be brought through their Dominions on Camels which by the Toll they pay in ſeveral Places, bring much Money into their Treaſury. *Maffe*, in his Hiſtory of the *Indies*, confirms this Conjecture, when he tells us how ill *Campſon*, the Sultan of *Egypt*, took the Navigation and Trade of the *Portugueze* to the *Indies*.

3. He ſuppoſes the Sultans and *Turks* were afraid that the Chriſtians, whom they knew to be ſtrong in Shipping, would make themſelves Maſters of that Canal, and the adjacent Countries, together with *Medina* and *Mahomet*'s Sepulchre; ſince it would have been eaſy for them to have tranſported Armies by their Fleets for that End.

Alphonſus Albuquerque, the *Portugueze* Governor of the *Indies*, is ſaid to have form'd another Deſign, *viz.* to turn the Courſe of the *Nile* from *Egypt*, and by that Means to have render'd it barren and uſeleſs to the *Turks*, by digging a new Channel for it from *Abaſſia* into the *Red Sea*; but he dy'd without doing any Thing in it.

This may be confirm'd by another Inſtance: The *German* Ocean, which is Part of the *Atlantick*, running in between *Friſland* and *Holland*, makes a Bay; which tho' comparatively ſmall in reſpect of others, yet is called a Sea, and comes up to *Amſterdam*, the famous *Emporium* of *Holland*. Not far from thence is the Lake of *Haerlem*, which is alſo call'd a Sea; 'tis as high as the Bay juſt now mentioned, and ſends out a Branch to the City of *Leyden*, where 'tis divided into ſeveral Canals. Therefore ſince neither this Lake nor that Bay overflow the adjacent Countries, except in caſe of Tempeſts, againſt which Ramparts and Dikes are provided, 'tis plain that they are not higher than the Land of *Holland*. But that the *German* Ocean is higher, the Citizens of *Leyden* found by Experience, when they attempted to dig a Canal from that City to the ſaid Ocean, near *Catwick*, which is but 2 Miles diſtant, in order to let in the Sea by that Canal, that they might have ſent Ships from thence into the ſaid Ocean; but when they dug a great Way, it was diſcovered by Obſervation, that the *German* Ocean was higher than the Land betwixt it and *Leyden*; and therefore they gave it over.

'Tis otherwiſe with thoſe Bays which flow in, not by an oblong and narrow Channel, but by one that is large and broad betwixt Lands; ſuch as thoſe of *Bengall*, *Mexico*, *&c.* for 'tis not to be doubted that they are of the ſame Height with the Ocean, from which they are not ſeparated by any Streights. I know 'tis ſaid, the *Spaniards* doubted whether the *Pacifick* Sea was higher than the Bay of *Mexico*, when they thought of digging a Canal through the *Iſthmus* of *America* or *Darien*, for the Conveniency of a free Navigation to *Peru*, *China*, and the *Indian* Iſlands; but the true Reaſons of their forbearing it were found to be Political, becauſe they were afraid leſt the *Engliſh*, *Dutch*, and other Nations, ſhould make themſelves Maſters of this Canal, fortify it at both Ends, and invade *Peru*, &c. For 'tis certain, in this Caſe, the *Dutch* had been under no Neceſſity to undertake long and dangerous Voyages by the Streights of *Magellan* and

Digitized by Google

and *Le Maire* to attack *Peru*, and weaken the Strength of the *Spaniards* in those Parts.

The continual Flux and Reflux, and other Motions of the Sea, occasion a different Height of the Ocean, in the same Part, at different Times and Hours of the Day; but these are external Causes; but we speak of the natural Constitution of the Water. Besides, they do not so much vary the Height in the Ocean it self, as they do near the Shores.

In his Sixth Proposition he asserts, That the Depth of the Ocean may be sounded in most Parts by a Line; and that there are few Places where the Bottom has not been found.

The Depth of the Sea is various, according as the Channel is more or less depressed, $\frac{1}{20}$ of a *German* Mile, $\frac{1}{12}$, $\frac{1}{6}$, $\frac{1}{4}$, $\frac{1}{3}$, *&c.* and in some Places it is found to be about a whole *German* Mile, where Lines are not long enough to found it; tho' probably it is not much deeper. We don't deny however, but that in some deep Channels there are a certain sort of Whirlpools and Subterranean Passages.

The Depth is much less in Bays than in the Ocean, because the Channel is more shallow on Account of the Nearness of the dry Land; and for the same Reason, the Ocean is shallower towards the Shore than in Places more remote, because of the hollow Figure of the Channel.

Mariners sound the Depth with a Plummet of a Pyramidical Form, weighing about 12 lb. If the Line be of 3 lb. or more, such as is sufficient for 200 Perches, the others require a Plummet of more Weight. Yet there may be a Mistake in this Observation, if the Line be hinder'd to descend perpendicularly by the Waves or Vortices of the Water.

From the Depth hitherto observ'd in most Places, 'tis manifest, that it is very near equal to the Height of Mountains and Inland Places, *viz.* As much as they are elevated above the Horizon of the Shores, so much are the Channels depressed below it; but the Depth is sometimes alter'd by the Flux and Reflux, by the Increase and Decrease of the Moon, by Winds, and by the settling of Sand and Slime in the Channels.

His Seventh Proposition is, That the Ocean has no Fountains, but is contain'd within the Cavities or Channels of the Earth.

Varenius has a long Dissertation upon this Subject, with the Arguments *pro* and *con*, but determines nothing. He takes Notice, that some of the Ancients thought the Ocean flow'd from 4 Conduits under the North Pole, and represented it so in Maps; but he accounts for the Motion of the Sea from North to South, that is often observ'd in the Northern Parts by the following Reasons:

1. The Frequency of the Northern Winds.

2. The great and perpetual Quantity of Snow and Rain in those Places, which increases the Water, and makes it flow towards the South. Upon the whole, he says, he will not controvert the Opinion of those who assert, That the Fountains of all the Rivers which disburden themselves into the Ocean, are the Fountains which supply it; nor that the Water returns again to those Fountains and Rivers by Subterranean Passages, and the Vapours rais'd from the Sea, which occasion Rain. The Curious, who would see more of it, we refer to the Book it self.

In his Eighth Proposition, he asserts, That the salt Taste of the Sea-Water proceeds from the Particles of Salt mix'd with it: But whence those Particles come, or how they are augmented and preserv'd, is doubtful.

The First Part of the Proposition is plain from Experience, and known to the Vulgar, that Salt is made by the boiling of Sea-Water, and by the Heat of the Sun and Fire. In *Germany*, and many other Places, 'tis separated from the Water by Fire: In *France*, where

the Sun is hotter, the Sea-Water is let into Pits made on purpose, where, in some Months time, the Water being dry'd up by the Heat of the Sun, there is Salt found at bottom. In the Shores of many Countries, there is found Plenty of Black Salt; for the Sea flowing frequently upon the Coast, and leaving some Particles or Moisture behind it, the Water, or more subtil Part, exhales from it, and leaves Salt behind it, the Blackness of which is cured by boiling; tho' in most Shores 'tis carried off again, and dissolv'd by the Sea, which is the Reason that 'tis not found on all Shores. Hence 'tis plain, that the immediate Cause of the Saltness of the Sea-Water is the Salt Particles contain'd in it. Therefore *Aristotle* and his Followers were in the Wrong to ascribe this Saltness to the Heat of the Sun, or adust Particles.

The chief Controversy is about the other Member of the Proposition, from whence these Salt Particles come. *Aristotle* says, That dry Exhalations of a Saline Nature, rais'd from the Earth, mix'd with moist Vapours, and meeting with Rain, fall together with it into the Sea, and there produce Salt Particles, which occasions this Saltness of the Water.

Other Peripateticks alledge, That the Saltness of the Sea is occasion'd by the scorching Heat of the Sun, because the Surface of the Water is found to be most Salt.

But both these Opinions are attended with Absurdities. *Aristotle*'s Opinion is confuted thus: 1. That the Sea-Water was never yet found without a Salt Taste; so that it cannot proceed from Salt Rains. 2. That the Sea would be less Salt when Rain is not frequent; which is contrary to Experience.

The Arguments of the other Peripateticks are answer'd thus: 1. That 'tis not true that the nearer the bottom, the Waters are the less salt; and there are but very few Places where fresh Springs are found in the bottom of the Sea. 2. Experience shews, that fresh Water, tho' long expos'd to the Heat of the Fire or Sun, does not thereby become salt. *Scaliger*'s Objection against this, That the fresh Water, because of its small Quantity, does not grow thick, but dissolve, is likewise answer'd by Experience; for tho' you take a great Quantity of Water, and set it over a gentle Fire to prevent its Dissolution, yet the Water does not grow salt. 3. Lakes and Marshes, tho' scorch'd by the Sun, do not grow salt. *Scaliger*'s Objection against this, That it proceeds from a Succession of Rain-Water, is likewise easily answered; for those Pools and Lakes which proceed from Rain and Snow, are dry'd up during a long Intermission of Rain or Snow, without growing salt.

From hence *Varenius* infers, That these Salt Particles were created with the Ocean; and that we are no more to dispute this, than the Origine of the Ocean it self, or the Origine of the Earth and Generation of the World. 2. If this seem less probable, he adds, that these Salt Particles may be deriv'd from the Earth, and dissolv'd in the Sea; for he tells us, 'tis certain there are many Salt Mountains or Rocks in the Bosom of the Ocean. The whole Isle of *Ormus* is a white hard Salt Rock, of which they build the Walls of their Houses; and there is no fresh Water found in that Island. He adds, That none can be ignorant that many Salt Mines are found on the Land; but there is no need of being particular in this, for the greatest Part of the Earth is nothing but Salt: And as the Chymical Philosophers have prov'd, that every Thing owes its Consistency to Salt, Experience makes good their Assertion; for if we take a Piece of hard Earth, and burn it to Ashes, we shall find much Salt in them. To the Objection, That those Salt Parts of the Earth could not perpetually supply the Sea with Salt Particles, but they would in Time be consumed by the Ocean; he answers, That the Salt of the Sea-Water is not consum'd in such A bun-

Digitized by Google

dance, as to need much Supply; and if any be dissolv'd, it still remains in the Bottom, and supplies the Saltness of the Sea.

In his Tenth Proposition, he asserts, That the Water of the Ocean is so much the less salt, the nearer 'tis to the Poles; and becomes more salt, the nearer it lies to the Equator or Torrid Zone. But tho' this may be understood of most Parts of the Ocean, yet he owns, that it admits of some Exceptions. He assigns Six Causes why the Ocean is more salt in some Places than others.

1. Under and near the Torrid Zone, where the Sun is hotter, the fresh Vapours are more separated by the Heat; and hence it comes to pass, that the Water is more salt there than in the Northern Places, where there is not so much *fresh* Water separated, because of the weak Heat of the Sun.

2. The Second Cause is the Heat or Coldness of the Water; for the same Numerical Water, or Salt Meat, *&c.* is more Salt to the Taste when hot, than when cold; for the Heat or Particles of Fire make the Salt more acute and sensible to the Taste; and this is the Reason why the Waters near the Equator seem more salt to the Taste, than those which are near the Poles, even though they should contain the same Quantity of Salt.

3. It proceeds from the greater or less Quantity of Salt in the different Parts of the Channel of the Ocean; for as we find that there are not Pits of Salt in all Places of the Earth, and that those Pits do not all contain a like Quantity, we must judge the same of the Channel of the Sea; and by Consequence, where there is most Salt in the Channel or Shore, there the Water is more salt. Thus the Isle of *Ormus* being all Salt, the neighbouring Ocean is very salt: But whether there be more Salt in the Channels and Shores in the Torrid Zone than in the North, is doubtful; tho' some are of Opinion, that there is more Salt in those Places, because the greater Heat of the Sun separates the Water from the Earthy and Salt Parts: But this is not to be depended on, because we have no Observations to confirm it.

4. It proceeds from the unequal Frequency of Rain and Snow. In the Northern Places, Rain and Snow is frequent. In the Torrid Zone, they are less frequent some Parts of the Year, and at other Times they are almost continual; and in the rainy Months the Water of the Ocean is less salt; as is plain from the Coasts of *Malabar*, where the Ocean is fresh, in rainy Months, because of the great Quantity of Water that flows into the Sea from the Mountain *Gatis*.

5. It proceeds from the unequal Faculty of the Water to dissolve the Salt, and unite it to it self; and since hot Water dissolves the Salt better, therefore the Ocean is more salt under the Torrid Zone.

6. It proceeds from the more or less Quantity of fresh Water that flows into the Ocean from Rivers: Thus Mariners affirm, That on the Coast of *Brasile*, where the Silver River falls into the Sea, the Ocean loses its Saltness, and affords fresh Water 15 Miles from the Shore. 'Tis the same on the *African* Coast, where the River *Zaire* discharges it self into the Ocean: And to these we may add, the fresh Water Fountains that spring up in some Parts of the Bottom of the Sea.

From hence, says *Varenius*, 'tis easy to give an Account why Salt is not so easily separated by boyling from the *German* and Northern Ocean, as from the *Spanish* Sea, and that about the *Canary* Isles and Cape *Verd*, (from whence the *Dutch* fetch great Store of Salt) because this Ocean is nearer the Torrid Zone: Yet he does not deny the Channels themselves to be more or less salt in their Constitution; for the Sea-Water at *Guinea*, in the *Ethiopian* Sea, produces Salt at one Boiling as white as Snow; such as neither the *Spanish* Ocean, nor any other

Digitized by Google

other in *Europe*, produces at one Boiling.

In his Eleventh Propoſition, he conſiders why Rain in the middle of the Ocean is ſweet, tho' it proceeds from the Vapours rais'd out of the Sea; and yet Sea-Water is continually ſalt, tho' boil'd or diſtill'd: And here he tells us, That Chymiſts have hitherto laboured in vain to extract freſh Water from that of the Ocean; for tho' both when they boil and diſtil it, they find Salt left in the bottom of the Veſſel; yet Water ſeparated either Way, is ſtill found to be ſalt, and not fit for Men to drink. The Chymiſts, he ſays, tho' it ſeems ſtrange to others, have found the Reaſon of it; *viz.* That there are two Kinds of Salts in Bodies, which tho' they agree in Taſte, yet differ in other Qualities. The one they call Fix'd Salt, the other Volatile. The Fix'd Salt, by reaſon of its Weight, is not rais'd by Diſtillation, but remains in the bottom of the Veſſel; whereas the Volatile Salt is full of Spirit, and in Reality is nothing elſe but a moſt ſubtil Spirit rais'd by a gentle Fire; and therefore in Diſtillation aſcends with the Water, and is more firmly united to it by the Subtilty of the Atoms. Nor is this Volatile Salt found only with Fix'd Salt in Sea-Water, but almoſt in all Bodies, as Chymiſts find by Experience in greater and leſſer Quantities. Thus ſharp-taſted Herbs are found to have a greater Quantity of Salt than thoſe which are oily.

He aſſigns Four Reaſons why Rain-Water is as freſh by Sea as by Land, tho' it be extracted from the Exhalations of the Sea by the Heat of the Sun, or Subterranean Fires: 1. From the Slowneſs of the Operation, by which the more ſubtil Part is only rais'd from the Ocean; which, tho' it contains a Salt Volatile Spirit, yet has it in leſs Quantity than it would have were the Exhalation occaſion'd by a ſtronger Heat. 2. 'Tis probable, that before theſe Vapours arrive at that Region of the Air where they are condens'd into Rain, the Salt Spirit is ſeparated by Degrees from the watery Parts. 3. The Mixture of other watery Particles which exiſt in the Air. 4. The cooling and condenſing of the Vapours; for theſe Exhalations, rais'd from the Ocean by Degrees, are more and more cool'd, and being join'd with other Vapours in their Way, they are condens'd into a more thick Cloud; and in this Condenſation of the Salt Spirit with the fiery Particles, they fly into the higher Part of the Air.

He gives us Two Reaſons why the ſame is not perform'd in Diſtillation, where the exalted Vapours are alſo condens'd. 1. Becauſe of the Smallneſs of the Paſſage, the Salt Spirit is too ſtraitly conjoin'd to the watery Parts. 2. Becauſe the Vapours reſtrain'd in the Veſſel allow not a free Paſſage to the Volatile Spirits.

In his Twelfth Propoſition, he lays down, That the Sea-Water is more heavy than freſh Water; and that the Water of one Sea is heavier than another. The Cauſe of this, he ſays, is manifeſt from what has been ſaid already, becauſe the Sea-Water contains a fix'd Salt, which is a heavier Body than freſh Water; and that the Sea is not equally ſalt in all Places: Yet he alledges, it does not follow, the more ſalt the Water is, the more heavy it is, becauſe Salt does not augment the Weight, but leſſens it, and yet makes the Water very ſalt.

In his Thirteenth Propoſition, he aſſigns the Reaſon why ſalt Water does not ſo eaſily freeze as freſh Water; *viz.* Becauſe in the Salt there is a certain Spirit which reſiſts Congelation, and being ſeparated from the Salt, cannot be frozen by the hardeſt Froſt, as Chymiſts very well know.

In his Fourteenth Propoſition, he gives us the Reaſon why the Ocean is not made bigger, tho' it receives ſo many Rivers. 1. Becauſe the Water returns from the Sea through Subterranean Paſſages. 2. Becauſe much of the Rain which

is

Digitized by Google

is rais'd from the Vapours of the Sea falls on the Land.

In his Fifteenth and Sixteenth Propositions he gives an Account why the Sea differs in Colour, which he assigns to the different Colours of the Sand at Bottom. Thus the *Red Sea* appears always of that Colour, because the Red Sand is kept in continual Motion by the violent Flux and Reflux of the Water there; which being taken up in a Vessel, the Red Sand sinks to the bottom. In other Places, 'tis occasioned by multitudes of small Red Worms, which Mariners call Sea-Fleas. About Cape *Verd* in *Africa*, the Sea appears Green, from a Green Herb which lies in the Surface of it, and is troublesom to Sailors. We pass by the several Things which are found in the Sea, and the different Sorts of Animals which are bred in it, till we come to the particular Countries most noted for those Animals.

In his Eighteenth Proposition he gives us the Reason why the Ocean, or rather all Water, casts Terrestrial Bodies ashore, especially in the full Moon. He ascribes this to the Motion of the Water, which if it be swift, and towards one Quarter, it carries Terrestrial Bodies with it until they come to the Shore, where the strong Motion of the Water ceasing, those Bodies are laid down; and because all Waves tend to some Coast, therefore all Terrestrial Bodies are carried to the Shore; and this happens at the Full Moon, because then the Motion of the Sea is greatest.

SECT. XVII.

Varenius, *in the Fourteenth Chapter of his First Book, treats of the Motions of the* Sea *in general, and particularly of its Flux and Reflux.*

IN the First Proposition of this Chapter, he asserts, That Water has only one natural Motion, *viz.* from a higher to a lower Place; and if the neighbouring Body or Place be either equal with, or higher than the Surface of the Water, then the Water rests, except it be put in Motion by a violent Cause. This being plain from Experience, there is no need to insist upon the Proof of it.

In his Fifth Proposition, he divides the Motion of the Sea into General, Proper, and Contingent Motions. The General Motion is that which is found at all Times in all Parts of the Ocean. The proper Motions are those by which some Parts of the Ocean are only moved, and those Motions are either perpetual or anniversary; the latter being found only at certain Months and Days of the Year. The Contingent Motions are such as begin and end without any certain Order, and these are infinite; the Cause of which is the Wind, which drives the Sea before it to an opposite Point; and from this, the Sea is never free in one Part or other.

In his Seventh Proposition, he divides the General Motion of the Sea into two Sorts: The one is continual from East to West; and the other consists of two contrary Motions, call'd Flux and Reflux.

That the Ocean moves continually from East to West, is proved chiefly from the Motion of that Sea which lies in the Torrid Zone, betwixt the two Tropicks. This Motion is plainly perceived by those who sail from *India* to *Madagascar* and *Africa*; and likewise in the *Pacifick* Ocean, betwixt *New-Spain* and *China*, and the *Moluccas*; and likewise in the Ocean betwixt *Africa* and *Brasile*. For the particular Instances of this, we refer to the Account of the several Countries, and of the Seas adjoining to them.

In his Eighth Proposition, he shews us, That the Winds frequently alter this Motion of the Sea, especially stated Winds: For because those Winds blow for most Part from South and North, or from their collateral Points; hence it comes to pass, that the Sea, which by its

its General Motion tends to the West, is carried towards the collateral Points of the West; and likewise because the General Wind blows very rarely from the East it self, but for most Part from the collateral Points of the East, it changes the General Motion of the Sea. The Northern Winds change this Motion more frequently in the Northern Sea, where the General Motion of the Ocean is sensible but in a few Parts.

In his Ninth Proposition, he tells us, That the Cause of this General Motion of the Sea from East to West is uncertain. Here he informs us, that the *Aristotelians* think it proceeds from the first Motion of the Heavens, which is not only common to all the Stars, but also in Part to the Air and Ocean, by which all Things are carried from East to West; tho' this was unknown to *Aristotle* himself, and all our *European* Philosophers, until the *Portugueze* sail'd through the Ocean under the Torrid Zone. Some of the *Copernicans*, tho' they ascribe this Motion to the Moon, yet they think the Motion of the Earth contributes much towards it; for they suppose the Water cannot follow the Circumrotation of the Earth, and that it stops towards the West, while the Earth is carried Eastward; and that so the Sea is not mov'd from one Part of the Earth to another, but that the Earth leaves Parts of the Water, one after another, behind it. Others, who are neither satisfied with *Aristotle* nor *Copernicus*'s Opinion, have Recourse to the Moon, as that which governs all Moistures; and therefore they will have it, that she carries the Sea about from East to West: But if you ask them how, they tell you, 'tis by *an occult Quality, Influence, Sympathy, her Nearness to the Earth, and such like*; which is as much as to say, they knew not how. 'Tis indeed very probable, that the Moon is the Cause of those Motions, because at the New and Full Moon the Motion is much more violent than in the Quarter Moons, when 'tis commonly very small.

The acute Mr. *des Cartes* explains, in a Mechanical Manner, how the Moon occasions this Motion both in the Water and Air: For he supposes, according to his general Hypothesis, that infinite Numbers of Atoms are carried round the Earth, by which the Space, which he calls the Vortex of the Earth, is filled up, without any *Vacuum*, as far as the Moon; *viz.* Let the Earth be FEHG, the Water 2143, the Air 6587, the Vortex of the Earth BADC, the Moon B.



If therefore in the Vortex BADC, there were no Moon, says he, the Particles of that Vortex would, without any Let, be turn'd round the Center T: But because the Moon is in it, therefore the Space by which the Celestial Matter flows, betwixt B and T, is made more strait; and hence it follows, that the Celestial Matter flows more swiftly there, (betwixt B and T) and therefore presses more both the Surface of the Air in 6, and the Surface of the Water in 2, than if the Moon were not in the Diameter of the Vortex BD: And since the Bodies of the Earth and Air are fluid, and easily give Way to that Pressure, they could not be so high above the Parts of the Earth F and H, as if the Moon were without the Diameter B D; and on the contrary they must be higher towards E and G. But while the Earth is carried from E by Way of F towards G, or from West to East, the Tumor of the Water 412, and like-

Digitized by Google

likewise of the Air 856, which now lie upon the Part of the Earth E, do move by Degrees towards more Western Parts; so that in 6 Hours Time they come to the Part of the Earth H, and in 12 Hours to the Part of the Earth G. Hence it comes to pass, that the Water and Air are carried from the East Parts of the Earth to the West, by a continual Flux. Thus, says *Cartesius*, the Force of the Demonstration lies in this; because the Earth E F G H is carried round with the Water 1234, together with the Celestial Matter of the Vortex betwixt B A D C and 6587; but the Moon being in B, makes the Space B 6 more straight; therefore the Celestial Matter, with a certain Pressure passing through the straighter B 6, the Air and Water, while F passes through below B, must be pressed forward towards H G E, and while E passes through under B, must be pressed forward towards H G F, and so on. Nor can the Part of the Celestial Matter which reaches the Moon in B D resile back, tho repell'd, because all is full of Bodies: And tho' it press the Air and Water from 62 F, not only towards the West E 15, but also towards the East 73 G. Yet because the Parts situated from 62 F towards the East 73 G, do more and more recede from those Streights, but the Parts situated towards E 15 do more and more approach 'em; therefore this Force is principally received by them.

But there are several Things wanting in this Explication of that ingenious Person.

1. It would follow from hence, That the Sea should fall as the Moon approaches it, and rise in those Parts which are a Quarter or 6 Hours distant from it; that is to say, the Tumor is in E 15; but in F 26, where the Moon is Vertical, there's the less Height: But this is contrary to Experience; for in F 26, the Sea swells; but in E 15, there's the least Swelling. How this Absurdity may be avoided, shall be observ'd in the following Proposition.

2. 'Tis not sufficiently shew'd (*Cartes* himself has plainly omitted this) why when the Celestial Matter presses the Air in the straight Space B 6, and the Water 2, that it is not equally moved towards G 37; since, with the Earth it self, both the Air and the Water, as well as the Celestial Matter, are carried towards G 37; and therefore the Water and Air are rather carried towards the East than towards the West. I doubt, says *Varenius*, whether this Objection can be sufficiently remov'd, meerly by the Subduction of the Parts from 6 B, towards G 3.

3. When the Moon approached any Sea, the Wind would be found more vehement in that Part towards the West from the East, than at another Time: But it is not so.

4. It is more manifest, that the Sun occasions that Motion in the Air, or rather General Wind, from the East towards the West, because we perceive it in the Morning, before and at the Rising of the Sun, in most Places; for then it is a Quarter distant from the Vortex of the Place. These Things deserve to be consider'd in Mr. *des Cartes*'s Explication, to say nothing of the Hypothesis it self.

Varenius doubts whether this Motion of the Ocean can be ascrib'd to a general East-Wind; for since that Wind is perpetual under the Torrid Zone, it would seem that it might also occasion that perpetual Motion of the Sea. 'Tis certain, that this Motion is encreas'd with the Highness of the Wind; but that's no sufficient Proof that the Motion it self depends on the Wind. The Connexion which this Motion has with the Moon seems to oppose this, because when the Moon approaches the Sea, it makes it swell. 2. Because in the Full and New Moon that Motion is more vehement than in the Quarter Moons. This is excellently explained by Mr. *des Carte*'s Demonstration; *viz.* because in the New and Full Moon, the Moon is nearer the Earth; and thus the Passage B 6 is made

Digitized by Google

more ſtrait for the Celeſtial Matter to paſs through, and therefore there is the greater Preſſure. And tho', when the Moon is Full, the Swelling of the Sea may be aſcrib'd to her greater Light, yet when the Mooh is New, this Reaſon ceaſes; and ſo 'tis plain, that the Light of the Moon is not the Cauſe of this Motion, but it muſt rather come from *Cartes*'s Preſſure; as we ſhall have Occaſion to ſhew in what follows.

In his Tenth Propoſition, he lays down, That the Second General Motion of the Sea is its Flux and Reflux, by which in 12 Hours and an half 'tis perceiv'd to flow and ebb; *viz.* it flows when the Moon comes to the higheſt or loweſt Meridian, and it ebbs when the Moon retires from the Meridian towards the Weſt or Eaſt.

Here he propoſes to be enquir'd, in the firſt Place, Whether the Ocean by this Motion be carried towards one certain Point, *i. e.* from Eaſt to Weſt, and from Weſt to Eaſt?

For the Shores of Bays, and the Channels of Rivers, in which the Flux and Reflux is more diſcernable than in the Main Sea, lie towards different Points; ſome from Weſt to Eaſt, as the *Mediterranean* Sea; ſome from South to North, as the *Arabian* Gulph: And in each of thoſe Bays and Shores, the Waters flow according as they lie; and by Conſequence, in thoſe different Bays and Shores, the Motion of the Ocean is towards different Points: Therefore 'tis to be enquired in the firſt Place, Whether this Motion of the Ocean obſerves no certain Point, or is in ſome Places carried to different Points, or whether it obſerves two Points, *i. e.* the Weſtern Point in the Flux, and the Eaſtern Point in the Reflux, or whether 'tis carried to the Weſtern Point both in the Flux and Reflux? He anſwers, That the whole Ocean by the Flux is carried from Eaſt to Weſt, and the like in the Reflux; but in the latter by a leſs Quantity of Water: And therefore he concludes, That the Flux and Reflux of the Sea is not to be reckon'd diſtinct from that General Motion by which it is continually carried from Eaſt to Weſt, but only as a Modification of that General Motion, and is more properly called a Riſing and Falling, than Flux and Reflux; but 'tis call'd Flux and Reflux, becauſe it ſeems to approach to, and retire from the Shore, not from the Quality of the Motion it ſelf, but becauſe of the Situation of the Shores, tho' the Ebb be not occaſion'd by that Situation, but by the Nature of the Motion it ſelf. Nor can the Motion of the Sea be conſider'd from its flowing to the Shore; for whatever the Motion of the Sea be, and to what Point ſoever it tends, the Flux is always towards the Shore, becauſe of the fluid Nature of the Water.

He ſays, That the Flux and Reflux of the Sea is prov'd to be always from Eaſt to Weſt, by the following Arguments: 1. In the Ocean remote from the Shore, under the Torrid Zone, there is no other Motion perceiv'd but that from Eaſt to Weſt. 2. In ſuch Friths as are directly extended from Eaſt to Weſt, and by which the Parts of the Ocean are join'd, as the Streights of *Magellan*, *Manile*, and *Java*, &c. the Sea riſes and falls 12 Hours; but in the Fall it does not flow back out of the Friths from Weſt to Eaſt, but flows out by the other Mouth of the Frith into the Weſt; which is a manifeſt Proof, that this Riſing and Falling of the Sea is not a peculiar Motion, but a Modification of the General Motion; and that the Sea does not flow back towards the Eaſt. But we are to obſerve as before, That when we ſay the Sea flows from Eaſt to Weſt, we underſtand not only the Cardinal, but alſo the Collateral Points.

In the Eleventh Propoſition, he explains the Cauſe of the Flux and Reflux of the Sea, or rather of its Riſing and Falling: And here he tells us, That no Phenomenon in Nature has more exerciſed the Pens and Thoughts of the Learned,

Digitized by Google

Learned, tho' for moſt Part to little Purpoſe. Some were ſo weak as to fancy the Sea and Earth to be an Animal, and that the Flux and Reflux of the Sea was occaſioned by its Reſpiration. Others fancied there was a great Vortex in the Sea near *Norway*, which ſwallowed up the Water for 6 Hours, and threw it out again as many. *Scaliger* and others aſcrib'd it to the Shores, particularly to thoſe of *America*, which repell'd the Sea when it was carried towards them by its General Motion; but moſt when they perceived the Connexion of the Riſing and Falling of the Sea with the Motion of the Moon, concluded it to depend intirely on that.

Mr. *des Cartes* deduces this Motion from his general Hypotheſis thus: Look back into the Diagram of the Ninth Propoſition, in which let A B C D be that Vortex, which has the Earth for its Center, and which, with it and the Moon, is carried round the Sun in the greater Vortex. M the Center of this Vortex, E F G H the Earth, 1234 the Surface of the Sea; by which, for the better Perſpicuity, we ſuppoſe the Earth to be every where covered, and 5678 to be the Surface of the Air which encompaſſes the Sea: Therefore if there were no Moon in that Vortex, the Point T, which is the Center of the Earth, would be in the Point M, which is the Center of the Vortex; but the Moon being towards B, this Center of the Earth T ought to be betwixt M and D; becauſe when the Celeſtial Matter of this Vortex is moved any thing quicker than the Moon and Earth, which it carries with it, except the Point T be ſomewhat more diſtant from B than from D, the Preſence of the Moon would hinder it to flow ſo freely betwixt B and T, as betwixt T and D: And ſince the Place of the Earth in that Vortex is not determined, except from the Equality of the Force of the Celeſtial Matter which flows about it; therefore 'tis evident, that it ought ſomewhat to approach towards D: And the ſame Way when the Moon is in C, the Center of the Earth ought to be betwixt M and A; and ſo the Earth always departs a little from the Moon. Moreover, becauſe by the Moon's being towards B, not only that Space by which the Celeſtial Matter flows betwixt B and T, but alſo that by which it flows betwixt T and D, is made ſtraiter. Hence it follows, that that Celeſtial Matter flows more ſwiftly there; and therefore does the more preſs both the Surface of the Air in 6 and 8, and likewiſe the Surface of the Water in 2 and 4, than if the Moon were not in the Diameter of the Vortex B D: And ſince the Bodies of the Air and Water are fluid, and eaſily ſubmit to that Preſſure, they ought to be leſs high over the Parts of the Earth F and H, than if the Moon were without this Diameter B D, and on the contrary muſt be higher towards G and E; ſo that the Surface of the Water 1, 3, and of the Air 5, 7, would be protuberant there. But becauſe the Part of the Earth which is now in F oppoſite to the Point B, where the Sea is loweſt, will after 6 Hours be in G, oppoſite to the Point C, where the Sea is higheſt, and in 6 Hours more in H, oppoſite to the Point D, and ſo on: Or rather, becauſe the Moon does in the mean time move ſomething forward from B to C, and in the Space of a Month runs through the Circle A B C D. The Part of the Earth which is now in E, oppoſite to the Body of the Moon, will be in 6 Hours and about 12 Minutes beyond the Point G, in that Diameter of the Vortex A B C D, which cuts the Diameter of the Vortex, in which the Moon will then be at Right-Angles, then the Water will be moſt high there, and after 6 Hours and 12 Minutes, it will be beyond the Point H, in the Place where the Water will be loweſt, *&c.* From whence 'tis clearly underſtood, that the Water of the Sea muſt in every 12 Hours and 24 Minutes flow and ebb in one and the ſame Place.

Digitized by Google

This is *Cartes*'s Demonſtration, in which 'tis particularly ingenious, becauſe it very aptly ſhows not only how the Afflux of the Sea is made towards a Place when the Moon is moved towards the Vortex or Meridian of it, but alſo when the Moon is mov'd below the Horizon to the Midnight Meridian.

We told in the Cloſe of the Ninth Propoſition what was wanting in this Demonſtration: And 'tis chiefly to be wonder'd at, that *Cartes* did not obſerve, that, according to his Demonſtration, the Height of the Water muſt be leaſt, and the Swelling intirely ceaſe, when the Moon came to the Meridian; as when the Moon is in B, the Water is loweſt in 2 and 4, and on the contrary the Water ſwells at the Departure of the Moon or Earth; ſo that when F is in G, that is, 6 Hours from the Moon, it will be at the higheſt: Which is manifeſtly contrary to Experience; for when the Moon approaches the Meridian, the Water increaſes, and when ſhe goes from it, it decreaſes; yet *Cartes* aſſerts the contrary, both in his Words and Diagram. But I think, ſays *Varenius*, that the Abſurdity may be removed from the Demonſtration thus: Let us ſuppoſe that the Vortex of the Earth A B C D is without the Moon, and that the Water 1234 is equally diſtant from the Center T, without any Tumor, but carried about with the Earth and Celeſtial Matter betwixt A B C D and 5678. Let the Body of the Moon approach in this Vortex; for Inſtance, in B, and thus the Space T B is made ſtraiter, and the Celeſtial Matter, as it endeavours to get through that Paſſage, will preſs the Water in 2 towards I.

Therefore whilſt the Water is preſſed from 2 towards I, 'tis to be enquired where the greateſt Swelling of the Water will be, whether in the Place E, which is a Quarter diſtant from the Place F, (to which the Moon is Vertical) or in the Place near unto, or which is next to F towards E? If we aſſert the Firſt, to wit, the Tumor, muſt be in E, Experience gainſays it; but that the Second is truly ſo, is confirm'd by Experience, and proved by Reaſon, *viz.* while the Moon is over the Place E, the Water will be expell'd from 2 towards I; but the greateſt Swelling will be in the Place next to 2, not in I; but the leaſt Increaſe will be in I. This is manifeſt from Experience, becauſe in the Weſtern Places, the Swelling of the Sea is lateſt perceived. Reaſon it ſelf, and the Nature of the Motion of the Water, require this: For if the Water be poured out into 2, that it may flow towards E, the greateſt Plenty will be in the Place E, a little leſs in the neighbouring Place, and ſtill a little leſs in the Place next to that, and the leaſt in E: Therefore when the Water is thus preſſed from 2 towards E, the greateſt Quantity of it will be in the Place next to 2, and the Tumor will be ſo much the leſs, the more remote the Tumor is from 2: For becauſe the Earth is carried round, that E might come to F, then the greateſt Tumor will be in E, and the Water will be thruſt towards H.

Therefore *Cartes*'s Diagram and Demonſtration is ſo to be chang'd, that the Tumor may be in the neighbouring Place to 2; that is, to the Place to which the Moon is Vertical.

In his 12th Propoſition, he informs us, That in the Full and New Moon, the General Motion of the Sea from Weſt to Eaſt is moſt vehement, and the Swelling of the Sea is in moſt Parts perceiv'd to be greater; but in the Quarter-Moons, the Motion and Swelling are both leaſt.

Experience proves this Propoſition; for Mariners teſtify, That the Sea ſwells at New and Full Moon, but is calmer in the Quarter-Moons. This is alſo demonſtrated eaſily, according to the Hypotheſes of the foregoing Propoſitions: For the Moon, when Full and New, is nearer to the Earth than at any other Time, and further off in the Quarters, as Aſtronomers demonſtrate: For when the Moon

Digitized by Google

Moon is nearer to the Earth, that is, when the Space B T is leſs, the Celeſtial Matter being ſtop'd, preſſes the Water with more Force from 2 to 1, (becauſe 'tis nearer;) but in the Quarters 'tis contrary.

Yet the Motion is obſerv'd to be more violent at the Full than at the New Moon, at leaſt in ſome Places; for which, ſays *Varenius*, he can ſee no Cauſe, except it be aſcrib'd to the Light of the Moon. Nor can it be otherwiſe explain'd, why at Full Moon both Trees and Animals are more impregnated with the Moiſture of the Ocean than in the New Moon, tho' the Sea does equally ſwell then. Yet he ſays, 'tis wonderful what *Twiſt*, a *Netherlander*, ſays in his Deſcription of *India*, of the Kingdom of *Guzaretb*, in which he lived many Years, *viz.* That Cockles, Crabs, and other *Shell-Fiſh*, have leſt Moiſture and Fleſh in the Full Moon, but moſt in the New Moon; which is contrary to what is perceiv'd in all other Countries. Nor is it leſs wonderful, that at the Shores next to the Mouth of the River *Indus*, in that ſame Kingdom, the Sea increaſes and ſwells at the New Moon; and that not far from thence, in *Calecut*, the Sea increaſes at the Full Moon.

In the Time of the Equinoxes, the Floods are greater and ſtronger than at other Times; but during the Solſtices, they are leſs. *Carteſius* thinks, this Phenomenon is only to be accounted for from his Hypotheſis; but his Account of it is very obſcure, and far from a Demonſtration: 'Tis probable, the Sun and General Winds contribute much towards the Swelling of the Sea during the Equinoxes, the Sun being directly over the Sea under the Torrid Zone; ſo that either through Influence of the Sun or Wind, the Sea cannot fail to ſwell more then, than at other Times: Or we may ſay, That the Swelling of the Sea, great Rains, Winds, and Inundations, at that Time, are to be derived all from the ſame Cauſe.

In ſome Bays, Shores, and Parts of the Ocean, there's a great Increaſe and Decreaſe of Water in the Ebbs and Floods: In ſome, it is very ſmall; and in others, there's no ſenſible Flood or Ebb.

Thoſe Places have the greateſt Flood and Ebb, 1. That are in the Torrid Zone, within the Tropicks. 2. Thoſe lying directly Eaſt and Weſt, or towards the Collateral Points. 3. Bays that are very long, and not broad. 4. Places that have few Iſlands or Promontories.

The moſt remarkable Flood and Ebb hitherto known is in the Bay of *Cambaia*, in one of the Mouths of the River *Indus*; for it ebbs ſpeedily, and the Water retires a vaſt Way: Whence 'tis reaſonably thought to be the Place where *Alexander the Great* arrived with his Fleet, in order to tranſport his Army; but finding the Water to retire all of a ſudden, and his Fleet to be leſt on dry Land, he judg'd it was the Mind of Heaven that here he ſhould put a Stop to his Progreſs: And this is alſo reported by the Inhabitants of *Cambaia*. For the higher the Channel is, the more it is uncover'd at the Tide of Ebb; but 'tis probable there may alſo be ſome other Cauſe.

At the Town of *Damma* in *India*, near *Surrat*, the Height of the Water is varied to Two Fathom and an half, and the Sea retires half a *German* Mile from the Shore.

In the Bay of *Cambaia*, the Water riſes ſometimes 5, and at other Times 7 Fathom high, which Strangers not knowing, do many Times loſe their Ships; which, upon the retiring of the Sea, are daſh'd againſt the Rocks.

There is a vaſt Irregularity of the Tides in the Bays and Shores of the Streights of *Magellan*; ſometimes the Tide of Ebb and Flood laſts 3 Hours, and ſometimes 12, which is aſcrib'd to the violent Irruptions of the Sea into that Frith, and to the frequent tempeſtuous Winds.

About

Digitized by Google

About *Malacca*, and the Streights of *Sunda*, there are very great Floods and Ebbs.

Some of the Ancients (as *Scaliger* informs us) said, there was so great an Ebb in the *Arabian* Gulp, or *Red Sea*, that *Moses* and the Children of *Israel* passed it without a Miracle; but this is false, because the Sea never ebbs there so much as to leave the Channel dry.

Thomas Button, an *Englishman*, when he winter'd at *Nelson*'s Bay in *Hudson*'s Streights, at 57 Degrees of Northern Latitude, observ'd, that every 12 Hours the Water rose 15 Foot and more; and next Summer he found it much the same in the 60th Degree: But in *Hudson*'s Bay, and in that of *Sirame*, the Water did not rise above Two Foot.

Along the Coasts of *China*, and in the Islands of *Japan*, the Tides are very discernable.

They have great Tides at *Panama*, a Town in *America*, upon the *Pacifick* Ocean, the Water rises very high, and immediately falls: At Full Moon, the Floods are so great, that the Water enters the Houses of the Town. Along all the Coasts of the South Sea, they have very great Floods and Ebbs; and at low Water, the Sea retires Two *German* Miles, that it cannot be seen by those who stand on the Shore.

In the Gulph of *Bengal*, upon the Coasts of *Siam*, the Water rises 10 Foot.

In the *Mediterranean*, the Floods are not perceived, because the Situation is contrary to the Point towards which the Sea is carried; therefore the Water is so little augmented by the Flood, that it is not perceptible, except in the Gulph of *Venice*, which, because of its great Length, and small Breadth, shews the Flux and Reflux of the Sea, which is not perceiv'd in the rest of the *Mediterranean*, because of its great Breadth. Hence it comes to pass, that this Flux and Reflux of the Sea was unknown to the *Greeks*, and likewise to the *Romans* in the Time of *Scipio Africanus*: So that both of them, when they perceived it in other Places, look'd upon it as a Miracle; as is evident from *Alexander the Great*'s Expedition, and *Scipio*'s Siege of *Carthage*: But in *Cicero*'s Time, it was well enough known to the *Romans*. Some small Fluxes were observ'd at *Marseilles*; and in some Coasts of *Barbary*, it is said to be remarkable enough.

But in the *Baltick* Sea, and likewise in the whole *North* Sea, beyond *Great Britain*, *Norway*, and *Greenland*, and in the Northern Shore of the *Pacifick* Sea, no Flood or Ebb has hitherto been observed. The Cause of this is not yet very well known, except we ascribe it to their being far remote from the Course of the Moon, that they are extended from the West to the East and North, and that the Tides are hindered by Multitudes of Islands and Promontories. These Three together must be assigned as the Causes which hinder the Tides in those Seas. Thus the Objection, as to the Tide in *Hudson*'s Bay, will be removed, because it lies from East to West; and when the Sea is carried to the latter, it is no wonder that the Flood is more perceptible there than in the Sea of *Norway*, the *Baltick*, and other Northern Places.

In his 16th Proposition, he shews, That in those Places to which the Moon is Vertical, the Flood and Ebb is greatest, except other Things hinder it, as we mention'd in the 14th Proposition: From whence it comes, that the more remote those Parts of the Sea are from that Place, so much the less is the Flood and Ebb.

In his Eighteenth Proposition, he shews us, That the greatest Flux of the Sea in any Place, and the Time of it, ought to be when the Moon is in the highest or lowest Meridian of that Place; but in many Parts it is found in another Situation of the Moon.

For then the Moon is nearest to any Place when she is in the Meridian of it, because the *Hypotenusa* of a Right-Angled Triangle is longer than the *Cathetus*: From whence it is inferr'd by the 16th Pro-

Digitized by Google

Proposition, That when the Moon is in the Meridian, then the Flood ought to be highest, and an Ebb immediately follows; but when the Moon is in the low Meridian, then the narrow Part of the Vortex of the Earth opposite to it is in the high Meridian, and effects the same Thing as if the Body of the Moon were there.

But here we meet with a great Difficulty; for there are many Shores of the Earth, where we find that the Flood is not highest when the Moon comes to the Meridian, (as the Philosophers of former Ages taught) but sooner or later, *viz.* as the Moon comes to a certain Vertical Circle, or to a Point that is not Cardinal. Nor is this Point constantly observ'd; but for most part at New and Full Moon the Flood is highest, and the Ebb begins before the Moon comes to this Quarter or Vertical Circle. Thus at *London*, the Water is at highest when the Moon comes to the Point betwixt the South and West, or betwixt the North and East; that is, to the South-West, or North-East Point. For *Varenius*'s other Instances to prove this Proposition, we refer to the Book it self.

It is very difficult to explain the Cause of this remarkable Difference in all Places, tho' it be incumbent on a natural Philosopher or Geographer to do it. It is probable, that the various Windings of the Shores, their Situation with respect to the Sea, the Obstructions occasion'd by Islands, the Meeting of different Tides, the Distance of Places from the Course of the Moon, the various Winds, especially the Constant and General Winds, and the Declivity of the Shores, contribute much to the remarkable Difference above-mentioned. For Instance; At the Port of *London*, the Tide flows till the Moon comes to the South-West; *viz.* she declines from the Ecliptick towards the South; for then the Water begins to ebb, but not when the Moon comes to the Meridian; therefore we must say, That while the Moon moves from the Meridian of *London* towards *Brasile*, (or from *Brasile* towards *London*) therefore the Sea does not ebb from *London*, but still flows, because the Shores of *America*, towards which the Ocean is mov'd by the Moon, repels that Water towards *England*. But why, whilst the Moon declines from the Ecliptick to the North, is the Flood greatest, and the Beginning of the Ebb observ'd, before the Moon comes to the Meridian, *viz.* in the North-East Quarter?

I answer, That it is because the Moon is much nearer *England* when she declines from the Ecliptick towards the South, and therefore hastens the Flood; but the Cause why 'tis not continued till the Moon comes to the Meridian, may be, because the Moon moves the Sea more towards the Sea of *Mexico* and *Hudson*'s Bay, where a great Flood and Ebb is observ'd. But *Varenius* owns, that these Reasons do not satisfy him; and therefore he leaves it to further Observation and Enquiry.

In his 19th Proposition, he lays down, That in most Places, the Sea flows Six Hours and Twelve Minutes, and ebbs as much.

In some few Places it flows longer, and ebbs in a shorter Time; and on the contrary, in some few Places it flows a shorter Time, and ebbs longer, but so as the Flood and Ebb together make 12 Hours, with 24 ½ Minutes; so that it flows and ebbs twice in 24 Hours and 48 ½ Minutes; that is almost 25 Hours; so that each Day High-Water happens almost a whole Hour later; because the Moon returns every Day to the same Point of the Compass so much later.

Varenius thinks it difficult to assign the Causes of this Difference: Some are of Opinion, That the impetuous Current of some Rivers is one Cause why the Time of Flux and Reflux is so unequal. For Instance; the *Garonne* flows 7 Hours, and ebbs in 5; for the Violence

lence of the Stream bears againſt the Tide, and ſtops its Moſion when it flows.

In the 21ſt Propoſition, the Hour being given when it is High Water or Loweſt Ebb in the Day of the New or Full Moon, where the Flood and Ebb is ordinary, *viz.* 6 Hours 12 Minutes, he ſhows how to find the Hour and Minute of High or Low Water any Day of the Moon.

It was ſaid before, That the Time of High and Low Water is every Day later by 48 ¼ Minutes; or, to ſpeak more accurately, 48 ½ Minutes, than it was the former Day.

If therefore the Time of High Water at any Place on the Day of the Full Moon be at 12 of the Clock, the High Water will be the following Days of the Moon's Age, according to the following Table.

Moon's Age.	*Hours.*	*Minutes.*
1	12	48
2	1	37
3	2	27
4	3	16
5	4	5
6	4	55
7	5	44
8	6	34
9	7	23
10	8	12
11	9	1
12	9	51
13	10	40
14	11	29
14½	12 at Midnight.	
15	12 of the Day.	

This Calculation ſuppoſes an equal Motion of the Moon from the Sun, which however is unequal; ſo that the Moon in her *Perigæum* moves much more ſwiftly from the Sun, than when ſhe is in her *Apogæum*; and then the Flood is longer than 6 Hours and 12 Minutes: But when the Moon is in her *Apogæum*, the Flood is ſooner; for ſome of the Lunar Months exceed 30 Days, and others are leſs than 29, and the Medium is reckon'd 29 Days, 12 Hours, and 44 Minutes.

But this Matter of the Tides is more clearly and accurately deſcribed by the Learned and Ingenious Captain *Edmund Halley*, in his true Theory of the Tides, extracted from Sir *Iſaac Newton*'s admirable Book, Entituled, *Philoſophiæ Naturalis Principia Mathematica*: Being a Diſcourſe preſented with that Book to the late King *James*, thus:

He explains this, and moſt of the great and ſurprizing Appearances of Nature, by the ſole Principle of *Gravity*, whereby in the Earth all Bodies have a Tendency towards its Center; and having demonſtratively prov'd the Law of the Decreaſe of Gravity, he enquires into the neceſſary Conſequences of this Suppoſition, whereby he finds the genuine Cauſe, and diſcovers the hitherto unknown Laws of the Ebbing and Flowing of the Sea.

He

Digitized by Google

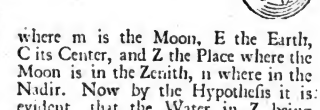
He ſhews the Theory of the Motion of the Primary Planets to be nothing elſe but the Contemplation of the Curve Lines; which Bodies caſt with a given Velocity in a given Direction, and at the ſame Time drawn towards the Sun by its gravitating Power, would deſcribe; or, which is all one, that the Orbs of the Planets are ſuch Curve Lines as a Shot from a Gun deſcribes in the Air, being caſt according to the Direction of the Piece, but bent in a crooked Line by the ſupervening Tendency towards the Earth's Center; and the Planets being ſuppoſ'd to be projected with a given Force, and attracted towards the Sun after the aforeſaid Manner, are prov'd to deſcribe ſuch Figures as anſwer punctually to all that the Induſtry of this and the laſt Age has obſerved in the Planetary Motions: So that it appears, that there's no Need of ſolid Orbs and Intelligences, as the Ancients imagin'd; nor yet of Vortices or Whirl-pools of the Celeſtial Matter, as *Des Cartes* ſuppoſes: But the whole Affair is mechanically perform'd upon the ſole Suppoſition of a Gravitation towards the Sun.

He proves, That all the Inequalities of the Motion of the Moon riſes from the ſame Principles; only here the Effect of Two Centers operating on, or attracting a projected Body, comes to be conſider'd; for the Moon, tho' principally attracted by the Earth, and moving round it, does, together with the Earth, move round the Sun once a Year, and is, according as ſhe is nearer or farther from the Sun, drawn by him more or leſs than the Center of the Earth, about which ſhe moves; whence ariſe ſeveral Irregularities in her Motion.

All the ſurprizing *Phænomena* of the Flux and Reflux of the Sea, are in like Manner ſhewn to proceed from the ſame Principle.

If the Earth were alone, that is to ſay, not affected by the Actions of the Sun and Moon, 'tis not to be doubted but the Ocean, being equally preſs'd by the Force of Gravity towards the Center, would continue in a perfect Stagnation, always at the ſame Height, without either ebbing or flowing: But it being here demonſtrated, That the Sun and Moon have a like Principle of Gravitation towards their Centers, and that the Earth is within the Activity of their Attractions, it will plainly follow, that the Equality of the Preſſure of Gravity towards the Center will thereby be diſturb'd: And tho' the Smallneſs of theſe Forces, in reſpect of the Gravitation towards the Earth's Center, renders them altogether imperceptible by any Experiments we can deviſe, yet the Ocean being fluid, and yielding to the leaſt Force by its Riſing, ſhews where 'tis leſs preſs'd, and where it is moſt preſs'd by its ſinking.

Now if we ſuppoſe the Force of the Moon's Attraction to decreaſe, as the Square of the Diſtance from its Center increaſes, (as in the Earth and other Celeſtial Bodies) we ſhall find, that where the Moon is perpendicularly either above or below the Horizon, either in Zenith or Nadir, there the Force of Gravity is moſt of all diminiſh'd; and conſequently, that there the Ocean muſt neceſſarily ſwell by the coming in of the Water from thoſe Parts where the Preſſure is greateſt, *viz.* in thoſe Places where the Moon is near the Horizon: But that this might be better underſtood, I though it needful to add the following Figure;



where m is the Moon, E the Earth, C its Center, and Z the Place where the Moon is in the Zenith, n where in the Nadir. Now by the Hypotheſis it is evident, that the Water in Z being nearer, is more drawn by the Moon, than the Center of the Earth C, and

Digitized by Google

that again more than the Water in n: Wherefore the Water in Z hath a Tendency towards the Moon, contrary to that of Gravity; being equal to the Excess of the Gravitation in Z, above that in C: And in the other Case, the Water in n, tending less towards the Moon than the Center C, will be less pressed, by as much as is the Difference of the Gravitations, towards the Moon in C and n. This rightly understood, it follows plainly, That the Sea, which otherwise would be Spherical, upon the Pressure of the Moon, must form it self into a Spheroidal or Oval Figure, whose longest Diameter is where the Moon is Vertical, and shortest where she is in the Horizon; and that the Moon shifting her Position as she turns round the Earth once a Day, this Oval of Water shifts with her, occasioning thereby the Two Floods and Ebbs observable in each 25 Hours.

And this may suffice as to the General Cause of the Tides. It remains now to shew how naturally this Motion accounts for all the Particulars that have been observ'd about them; so that there can be no Room left to doubt, but that this is the true Cause thereof.

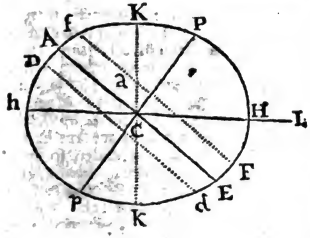
The Spring-Tides upon the New and Full Moons, and Neap-Tides on the Quarters, are occasion'd by the attractive Force of the Sun in the New and Full, conspiring with the Attraction of the Moon, and producing a Tide by their united Forces: Whereas in the Quarters, the Sun raises the Water where the Moon depresses it, and the contrary; so as the Tides are made only by the Difference of their Attractions. That the Force of the Sun is no greater in this Case, proceeds from the very small Proportion the Semi-Diameter of the Earth bears to the vast Distance of the Sun.

'Tis also observ'd, That *cæteris paribus*, the Equinoctial Spring-Tides in *March* and *September*, or near them, are the highest, and the Neap-Tides the lowest; which proceeds from the greater Agitations of the Waters, when the fluid Spheroid revolves about a great Circle of the Earth, than when it turns about in a lesser Circle; it being plain, that if the Moon were constituted in the Pole, and there stood, that the Spheroid would have a fix'd Position, and that it would be always High Water under the Poles, and Low Water every where under the Equinoctial: And therefore the nearer the Moon approaches the Poles, the less is the Agitation of the Ocean, which is of all the greatest when the Moon is in the Equinoctial, or farthest distant from the Poles: Whence the Sun and Moon being either conjoin'd or opposite in the Equinoctial, produce the greatest Spring-Tides: and the subsequent Neap-Tides, being produc'd by the Tropical Moon in the Quarters, are always the least Tides: Whereas in *June* and *December*, the Spring-Tides are made by the Tropical Sun and Moon, and therefore less vigorous; and the Neap-Tides by the Equinoctial Moon, which therefore are the stronger. Hence it happens, that the Difference between the Spring and Neap-Tides in these Months, is much less considerable than in *March* and *September*. And the Reason why the very highest Spring-Tides are found to be rather before the Vernal, and after the Autumnal Equinox, *viz.* in *February* and *October*, than precisely upon them, is, because the Sun is nearer the Earth in the Winter Months, and so comes to have a greater Effect in producing the Tides.

Hitherto we have considered such Affections of the Tides as are universal, without Relation to particular Cases. What follows, from the different Latitudes of Places, will be easily understood by the following Figure.

Let

Digitized by Google



Let A p E P, be the Earth cövered over with very deep Waters, C its Center, P, p its Poles, A E the Equinoctial, F f the Parallel of Latitude of a Place, D d another Parallel, at equal Diſtance on the other Side of the Equinoctial, *H*, *h* the Two Points where the Moon is Vertical, and let K K be the great Circle wherein the Moon appears Horizontal. It is evident, That a Spheroid deſcrib'd upon H h and K K, ſhall nearly repreſent the Figure of the Sea, and C f, C D, C F, C d, ſhall be the Heights of the Sea in the Places *f*, D, F, d; in all which it is *High Water*: And ſeeing that in 12 Hours Time, by the Diurnal Rotation of the Earth, the Point F is transferr'd to f, and d to D, the Height of the Sea C F will be that of the High Water when the Moon is preſent, and C f that of the other High Water when the Moon is under the Earth; which, in the Caſe of this Figure, is leſs than the former C, F; and in the oppoſite Parallel D d, the contrary happens. The Riſing of the Water being always alternately greater and leſs in each Place, when it is produced by the Moon declining ſenſibly from the Equinoctial, that being the greateſt of the Two High Waters in each Diurnal Revolution of the Moon, wherein ſhe approaches neareſt either to the Zenith or Nadir of the Place: Whence it is, that the Moon in the Northern Signs, in this Part of the World, makes the greateſt Tides when above the Earth, and in Southern Signs when under the Earth; the Effect being always the greateſt where the Moon is furtheſt from the Horizon, either above or below it. And this alternate Increaſe and Decreaſe of the Tides has been obſerved to hold true on the Coaſt of *England*; at *Briſtol* by Captain *Sturmy*, and at *Plimouth* by Mr. *Colepreſſe*.

But the Motions hitherto mention'd are ſomewhat alter'd by the Libration of the Water, whereby, tho' the Action of the Luminaries ſhould ceaſe, the Flux and Reflux of the Sea would continue for ſome Time. This Conſervation of the impreſs'd Motion diminiſhes the Differences that otherwiſe would be between two conſequent Tides, and is the Reaſon why the higheſt Spring-Tides are not preciſely on the New and Full Moons, nor the Neaps on the Quarters; but generally they are the third Tides after them, and ſometimes later.

All theſe Things would regularly come to paſs, if the whole Earth were cover'd with Sea very deep; but by reaſon of the Shoalneſs of ſome Places, and the Narrowneſs of the Streights, by which the Tides are in many Caſes propagated, there ariſes a great Diverſity in the Effect, and not to be accounted for without an exact Knowledge of all the Circumſtances of the Places, as of the Poſition of the Land, and the Breadth and Depth of the Channels by which the Tide flows; for a very ſlow and imperceptible Motion of the whole Body of the Water, where it is (for Example) 2 Miles deep, will ſuffice to raiſe its Surface 10 or 12 Foot in a Tide's Time: Whereas if the ſame Quantity of Water were to be convey'd upon a Channel of 40 Fathoms deep, it would require a very great Stream to effect it in ſuch large Inlets as are the Channel of *England* and the *German Ocean*: Whence the Tide is found to ſet ſtrongeſt in thoſe Places where the Sea grows narroweſt; the ſame Quantity of Water being to

Digitized by Google

paſs thro' a ſmaller Paſſage This is moſt evident in the Streights between *Portland* and Cape *de Hague* in *Normandy*, where the Tide runs like a Sluce; and would be yet more between *Dover* and *Calais*, if the Tide coming about the Iſland from the North did not check it; and this Force being once impreſſed upon the Water, continues to carry it above the Level of the ordinary Height in the Ocean, particularly where the Water meets a direct Obſtacle, as it is at *St. Maloes*; and where it enters into a long Channel, which running far into the Land, grows very ſtreight at its Extremity, as it is in the *Severn* Sea, at *Chepſtow* and *Briſtol*.

This Shoalneſs of the Sea, and the intercurrent Continents, are the Reaſon that, in the open Ocean, the Time of High Water is not at the Moon's Appulſe to the Meridian, but always ſome Hours after; as it is obſerved upon all the Weſt Coaſt of *Europe* and *Africa*, from *Ireland* to the *Cape of Good Hope*: In all which, a S.W. Moon makes high Water; and the ſame is reported to be on the Weſt Side of *America*. But it would be endleſs to account all the particular Solutions which are eaſy Corollaries of this Hypotheſis; as, why the Lakes, ſuch as the *Caſpian* Sea, and *Mediterranean* Seas; ſuch as the *Black Sea*, the *Streights*, and the *Baltick*, have no ſenſible Tides: For Lakes having no Communication with the Ocean, can neither encreaſe nor diminiſh their Water, whereby to riſe and fall; and Seas that communicate by ſuch narrow Inlets, and are of ſo immenſe an Extent, cannot in a few Hours time receive or empty Water enough to raiſe or ſink their Surface any thing ſenſibly.

Laſtly, To demonſtrate the Excellency of this Doctrine, the Example of the Tides in the Port of *Tunking* in *China*, which are ſo extraordinary and differing from all others we have yet heard of, may ſuffice. In this Port there is but one Flood and Ebb in 24 Hours, and twice in each Month; *viz.* when the Moon is near the Equinoctial, there is no Tide at all, but the Water is ſtagnant; but with the Moon's Declination, there begins a Tide, which is greateſt when ſhe is in the Tropical Signs; only with this Difference, that when the Moon is to the Northward of the Equinoctial, it flows when ſhe is above the Earth, and ebbs when ſhe is under, ſo as to make High Water at Moon's Setting, and Low Water at Moon's Riſing: But on the contrary, the Moon's being to the Southward, makes High Water at Riſing, and Low Water at Setting; it ebbing all the Time ſhe is above the Horizon, as may be ſeen more at large in the *Philoſophical Tranſaction*, Numb. 162.

The Cauſe of this odd Appearance is propoſed by Sir *Iſaac Newton* to be from the Concurrence of Two Tides; the one propagated in 6 Hours out of the great *South* Sea, along the Coaſt of *China*; the other out of the *Indian* Sea, from between the Iſlands, in 12 Hours, along the Coaſt of *Malacca* and *Cambodia*. The one of theſe Tides, being produc'd in North Latitude, is, as has been ſaid, greater when the Moon, being to the North of the Equator, is above the Earth, and leſs when ſhe is under the Earth. The other of them, which is propagated from the *Indian* Sea, being raiſ'd in South Latitude, is greater when the Moon, declining to the South, is above the Earth, and leſs when ſhe is under the Earth: So that of theſe Tides alternately greater and leſſer, there comes always ſucceſſively Two of the greater, and Two of the leſſer, together every Day, and the High Water falls always between the Times of the Arrival of the Two greater Floods; and the Low Water between the Arrival of the Two leſſer Floods. And the Moon coming to the Equinoctial, and the alternate Floods becoming equal, the Tide ceaſes, and the Water ſtagnates: But when ſhe has paſſed to the other Side of the Equator, thoſe Floods which in the former Order

Digitized by Google

were the leaſt, now becoming the greateſt: That that before was the Time of High Water, now becomes the Low Water on the Converſe. So that the whole Appearance of theſe ſtrange Tides, is without any forcing naturally deduc'd from theſe Principles, and is a great Argument of the Certainty of the whole Theory.

For other ſpecial Motions of the Sea, we ſhall take Notice of them in the Deſcription of the particular Counties where they are obſerv'd.

SECT. XVIII.

Of LAKES.

Varenius gives it as his Opinion, That *ſuch* Lakes as are not nouriſhed by Rivers, and yet are never dried up, are fed by Rain, Snow, and Springs, which yield as much Water as the Sun exhales from them; and for Salt Lakes, ſuch as that of *Harlem*, *&c.* he ſuppoſes they have a Communication with the Sea: For thoſe Lakes and Pools that are dried up in the Summer, there can be no Doubt but they proceed from Rain and Snow, or ſmall Fountains, which are conſum'd by Drought, till again ſupplied by Rain, *&c.* For the particular Lakes which are remarkable, we ſhall treat of them in their reſpective Countries. For ſuch as ſend out Rivers, tho' they receive none, it's natural to ſuppoſe that they proceed from large, or at leaſt many Fountains; which filling up the low Ground in the Neighbourhood, form a Lake; and that overflowing its Banks at the loweſt Place, becomes a River. Such of them as ſend out large Rivers, are thought to be ſupplied by large Streams, thro' Subterranean Paſſages. Thoſe which receive Rivers, and ſend out none, muſt have what's more than ſufficient to fill them, convey'd likewiſe from them by Conduits under Ground. The few that there are of this Sort, ſhall be taken Notice of in their proper Places. Such as ſend out greater Rivers than they receive, muſt be ſupplied by Fountains, or Streams under Ground.

SECT. XIX.

Of RIVERS.

OF ſuch as proceed from known Fountains, and are encreas'd by many Brooks, Streams, and other Rivers, there is no need to ſay any thing, the Cauſe of their Riſe and Encreaſe being viſible. The like may be ſaid as to thoſe ſmall Rivers which run by Day, and are dried up by Night, becauſe they proceed from Snow melted by the Heat of the Sun: And from the ſame Cauſe it is, that ſome great Rivers encreaſe by Day, and decreaſe by Night, and are greater in the Spring and Summer than in Winter.

SECT. XX.

Of the Origine of FOUNTAINS.

THE Learned differ very much upon this Subject. Some think they proceed from Rain and melted Snow, becauſe great Rivers decreaſe, and ſmall ones are dried up by a long Drought; and becauſe in Places where it ſeldom rains, there are few Fountains and Rivers, as in *Inner Africa*: But this proceeds from a Miſtake, and Want of due Conſideration, becauſe Rivers are found where there's ſeldom any Rain, and never any Snow. Nor does Rain moiſten the Earth above 10 Foot deep; whereas many Fountains ſpring much lower. They miſtake the Queſtion, who ſay, That Water being an Element, we are no more to enquire into its Origine, than into that of other Elements; for the Queſtion is, how the Water comes to the Places from whence the Fountains ſpring.

Ariſtotle

Digitized by Google

Ariſtotle and his Followers think, That Water is generated from Air in the Bowels of the Earth, *De Meteor. Lib* 1. *Cap.* 11. as Rain is from Air above the Earth; and that the Air is condens'd in both by Cold. 2. They appeal to Experience, becauſe in the Earth ſmall Drops running together, drop down into Cavities; and that the Beginning of Rivers is from Springs of Water that run together in one Part. Thus they, who make Aqueducts, perceive it to ſweat, as it were, from the Bowels of the Earth, and to fall down into the Conduits. 3. Becauſe many Fountains, and thoſe too of the greateſt Rivers, are in Mountainous Places, and few of them in Plain Ground; which they think is a manifeſt Proof, that Water is generated from the Air and Vapours, which move to the higher Places; and that the Mountains, like Spunges, ſuck up the Moiſture from the low Grounds. To which may be added, That when the Air is cloudy and condens'd, Mineral Fountains are found to be leſs Acid; which is a Proof, that they are encreas'd by the Air.

Cardan and others think, That Fountains proceed from little Rivulets, generated by Watery Vapours, both within and without the Earth; and that Fountains alone can ſcarce make Rivers without Rain or melted Snow, becauſe, 1. Mountains are found to be moiſt in the Morning. 2. Rivers encreaſe in the Morning, and ſo much the more as the Fountains are nearer; but it is not probable, that perpetual Fountains can be thus ſupplied.

Some of the Ancients thought, That Rain being gather'd together in the Cavities of the Earth, did at laſt break out as from a Channel, and that no Water is generated; but the Water being thus gather'd together into thoſe Repoſitories during the Winter, ſerves to ſupply Fountains and Rivers; And hence they think it proceeds, that Rivers are greater in Winter than Summer, and that ſome Fountains and Rivers are conſtant, and others not: But *Ariſtotle* rejects this Opinion, becauſe he ſays, there flows a greater Quantity of Water from one River in a Year, than the Bulk of the whole Earth.

Some Modern, as well as ancient Philoſophers, think the Earth receives again from the Sea whatever Water the Rivers pour into it; and that being convey'd by Subterranean Paſſages through Sand, Clay, *&c.* as through a Strainer, it loſes its ſalt Taſt. This Opinion *Varenius* approves, tho' he will not exclude Rain, melted Snow, and Vapours, from having their Share in it; and his Reaſons are, 1. Above 1000 Rivers disburthen themſelves into the Sea, and the greater ones in ſuch Plenty, as would in one Year's Time cover the whole Earth, as the *Wolga* into the *Caſpian* Sea, and others. Were it otherwiſe, no Reaſon can be given why the Sea ſhould not encreaſe infinitely, and why Fountains ſhould not ceaſe to flow. 'Tis in vain to ſay, That as many Vapours are raiſed from the Sea, as there comes Water into it from the Rivers; for thoſe Vapours only make Rain, and are nothing in Quantity compar'd to the Water of the Rivers. 2. Becauſe Fountains near the Sea are ſalt or brackiſh, and the nearer, the ſalter, as in the Shores of *Africa*, *India*, &c. 3. Becauſe 'tis manifeſt, from the Salt-Pits of *Lunenburg* and *Hall* in *Germany*, &c. that the Sea conveys its Water into the Earth by Subterranean Conduits. 4. Becauſe, when we dig deep, we find Plenty of Water in Mines, *&c.* which we cannot ſuppoſe to proceed from the Air.

The principal Objections made againſt this Opinion are, 1. That moſt Fountains riſe in Mountainous Places, which are higher than the Surface of the Sea; therefore Water cannot flow from the Sea to thoſe Places, becauſe 'tis the Nature of Water to flow towards lower Places, and not to thoſe which are higher; as is plain from the Courſe of

Digitized by Google

of Rivers and Water-works made by Engineers. 2. If the Bottom of the Sea be clayie, ſlimy, or ſandy, ſo that the Water may ſink through it, 'tis more reaſonable to think, that it ſhould moiſten the Earth under it, than flow upwards to the Place of Fountains, eſpecially ſince that is many times full of Stones and Rocks, as appears by the Mountains of the Iſland of St. *Helena*. 3. No Reaſon can be given, why Water coming thus from the Sea, ſhould not burſt out Mid-way betwixt the Sea and the Fountain. In the deepeſt Mines, there is little or no Water found, as *Thurnheuſerus* teſtifies. 5. The Water of Fountains would be ſalt, if it came from the Sea. To which *Varenius* anſwers, 1. Thoſe who maintain the Ocean to be higher than the Earth, deny the *Aſſumption*; and, according to them, 'tis eaſy for the Water of the Sea to flow to the Tops of the higheſt Mountains. This they maintain from an Experiment made by *Olearius*, in his *Perſian* Journey, who, going to the Top of a Mountain that lies on the *Caſpian* Sea, found, by a Mathematical Inſtrument, that the extreme Surface of that Sea ſeem'd to be higher than the Top of the Mountain where he ſtood: But *Varenius* does not allow this, becauſe 'tis contrary to the frequent Obſervations of other Mathematicians, as has been mentioned already; and therefore thinks *Olearius* was deceiv'd by the Refraction or Waves, and that the Mountain he ſtood on was not ſo high as others upon the *Caſpian* Sea.

Others perceiving the Weakneſs of this Solution, argue thus; That the natural Place of the Water is about the Earth, and therefore ought to cover the whole Earth, becauſe 'tis higher than it. But becauſe 'tis hinder'd from coming to this its natural Place by Mountains, and the Height of the Earth, which riſes towards the Inland Places; therefore that Part of the Ocean which ought to be where the Mountains and high Grounds lie, not being in its natural Place, preſſes the Water that lies under it, which indeed is in its natural Place; but is preſſed by the other incumbent Water towards the Bottom, and finding no Paſſage, moves towards the Sides and Roots of the Mountain, where, being gather'd together as in a Ciſtern, 'tis thruſt by the Water of the Ocean, which preſſes it, towards the Top of the Mountain, juſt as in a Veſſel, which has a Pipe in the Side of it, that reaches from the Bottom: If we put Liquor into it, and throw a Stone into the Veſſel, the Liquor will flow out at the Mouth of the Pipe or Spout. This is a Subtilty of *Scaliger's*; but *Varenius* rejects it, becauſe Experience ſhews the contrary: And beſides, if the Water were thus preſſed towards the Tops of the Mountains, the Water of all Fountains muſt be ſalt. Moreover, what he aſſumes is falſe, *viz.* That the Water is not in its natural Place, as is plain from Experience; becauſe Water does not preſs upon the Part which lies under it, except it be higher than the neighbouring Water, and therefore reſts where the Surface of the Ocean is Spherical; and if any Motion were occaſion'd by the Preſſure, it would rather thruſt the Water to the Shore, where there is more Room, and not through the ſmall Caverns of the Earth. 'Tis certain, that Water flows into the Earth by great Cavities from the Bottom of the Sea; but they do not make a Sweet-Water Fountain, becauſe the Saltneſs of the Water ſtill continues.

Varenius thinks the Solution not difficult, if we conſider how Water comes to the Fountain, not by any Channel or Conduit from the Bottom of the Sea, or Foot of the Mountains, (for ſo 'twould retain its Saltneſs) but by a continual Progreſſion or creeping of the Water through the Earthy Matter to the Places near the Fountain, till at laſt it falls into ſome Cavity, and by a continual Succeſſion of Water forms a Fountain. This, he ſays, is found to be true, by digging the

Digitized by Google

the Earth to any conſiderable Depth, where we find little Drops of Water; which being preſſed by others, make little Streams or Veins; and if many of them come together, form a Fountain, as is very well known to thoſe who dig Wells or Conduits.

If it be objected, That many Fountains are diſcover'd in the Middle of Rocks, through which 'tis not probable the Watery Particles could creep in this Manner; *Varenius* anſwers, That in thoſe Mountains where Springs are found, the Rocks do not lie very deep, or only cover the Surface; whereas the Earth within is either more ſoft, or the Rock is of that Nature, as it may be pierced by the Water; and when it comes to thoſe Places which are more hard, there it ſtops, and forms a Fountain, which ſends forth a Stream, if it finds a Paſſage through the Rocks. He adds, That the Mountains and Rocks of the Iſland of St. *Helena*, and others, are not ſo rocky and hard in the Inſide, becauſe moſt of thoſe Mountains have ſent forth Smoak at ſome Time or other; and 'tis likewiſe plain from the Aſhes of Earth or Sulphur found in thoſe Places. To this he ſubjoins, That the Fountain, as has been already mention'd, is not always in that Place where it ſeems to be, but comes by ſome Subterraneous Paſſage from a higher Place to that from whence it flows out: And hence it comes, that many Wells break out with great Force.

He anſwers the Second Objection thus; That the Water does not ſo much deſcend into the Earth under the Sea, becauſe 'tis found by Experience, that the Earth in the Bottom of the Sea is more hard, and full of Metal; but where 'tis not ſo hard, there the Water penetrates: And this he thinks to be the Reaſon why, in ſome Places at the Bottom of the Sea, there are found ſometimes Rivers, and at other Times Lakes, of freſh or ſalt Water. But becauſe there are few ſuch Cavities in the Bottom of the Sea, it cannot but continually imbibe the Water, and then it proceeds towards higher Places. This he thinks to be much promoted by the different Height of the Sea, ſometimes here, and ſometimes there, occaſion'd by Waves and Tempeſts; for the Water being thus made higher, preſſes that which lies under it ſo much the more, and promotes its Paſſage through the Earth to Fountains; but this he thinks cannot effect much.

To the Third Objection, he anſwers, That the Moiſture is carried to the Fountains, and does not break out at any other Place betwixt them and the Sea, becauſe of the Nature and Situation of the Places.

He thinks the Solution of the Fourth Objection to be ſomewhat more difficult, becauſe it would ſeem, that the Saltneſs could not be remov'd meerly by the Water's being ſtrain'd thro' the Earth: For tho' that might ſtrain away the Fix'd Salt, it could not remove the Volatile Salt; which we find by Experience cannot be remov'd by Diſtillation, how frequent ſoever repeated: But he thinks it a ſufficient Anſwer, 1. That 'tis ſo in Fact, tho' we do not know the Manner how 'tis done; and therefore 'tis not to be denied, becauſe we find the Separation made by Nature in thoſe freſh Rains which fall into the Middle of the Ocean, tho' they were generated by Vapours rais'd from the Sea. 2. Thoſe Particles of Sea-Water which enter the Earth, are, before they reach the Fountain, mix'd here and there with other freſh Moiſtures, proceeding from Rain and Vapours; and ſo the ſmall Saltneſs which they retain becomes imperceptible. 3. 'Tis not true, that the Saltneſs is wholly imperceptible in all Fountains, becauſe, as has been already mentioned, ſome of them are ſenſibly ſalt, and ſo much the more as they lie nearer the Sea. Therefore there is a Neceſſity of a long and very ſlow Straining and Evaporation, to ſeparate the Water from the Volatile Salt, ſince 'tis known, that by Art we can make the Sea-Water leſs ſalt; and 'tis pro-

Digitized by Google

probable, that this is alſo the Reaſon why Rain that falls into the middle of the Ocean is ſometimes found to be more ſalt than at other times, becauſe the Vapours rais'd from the Sea had not Time enough to evaporate the volatile Salt.

From all this *Varenius* concludes, That the Water of Fountains comes partly from the Sea, partly from Subterraneous Waters, and partly from Rain, Snow, and Dew, which moiſten the Earth; and that the Water of Rivers proceeds partly from Fountains, and partly from Snow and Rain.

Such Rivers as hide themſelves under Ground, and flow out again in another Place, we ſhall account for in the reſpective Countries where they are found.

In his 18th Propoſition, he gives an Account of many Rivers which carry down with them Particles of ſeveral Metals, and of oily or fat Bodies; and ſome of them have Gold Duſt mix'd with their Sands, becauſe they flow through Places in which there are Gold Mines: But we refer the Particulars to the Deſcription of their reſpective Countries.

Rivers that carry down Particles of Silver with their Sand, are not taken Notice of by Writers, becauſe of the Difficulty to diſtinguiſh the Sand from the Silver, and partly becauſe it would not be worth while to ſeparate the one from the other. From the ſame Cauſe, thoſe Rivers which carry down Particles of Iron, Copper and Tin, have been omitted by Authors, except a very few; and where Men perceive their wonderful Effects, they are amazed, and Philoſophers ſtraitways have Recourſe to occult Quality. We ſhall only take Notice at preſent of a River in *Upper Germany*, which changes Iron into Copper, as is commonly thought; ſo that if you put a Horſe-ſhoe of Iron into it, you find it immediately transform'd into Copper, as the Vulgar think; whereas the Particles of Copper and Vitriol in the River, with the Help of the Water, corrode the Iron, and ſucceed in its Place; which our modern Natural Philoſophers and Chymiſts have found out by another Experiment.

Water thus impregnated with different Particles has different Effects. Some Waters give all Things boil'd in it a black Colour; Some will never boil Peaſe ſoft, *&c.* becauſe ſuch Water is full of Particles of Iron or Vitriol, and has no Mixture of oily Subſtances. This Variety proceeds from the Difference of the Soil the Rivers run through.

In his 19th Propoſition, he ſhews, That Waters differ in Colour, Weight, and other Qualities, from the ſame Reaſon: The Inſtances we refer to the particular Countries, and ſhall only obſerve here, That the Water of the *Ganges* is ſo light and wholeſom, that the Great Mogul carries ſome of it always with him wherever he is.

In the 20th Propoſition, he diſcourſes of ſome Rivers which overflow their Banks at ſtated Seaſons; among which the *Nile* is moſt remarkable. The particular Inſtances we refer likewiſe to the reſpective Countries.

In the 21ſt Propoſition, he gives us an Account how Fountains break out, thus: 1. If there be a Cavity in any Place, the Water drops into it till it be full, and then forces its Paſſage. 2. The Spirits mix'd with the Water remove the Earth, and the Water being rarified in the Earth, makes further Room to it ſelf; and Subterraneous Fires contribute alſo towards this. 3. Rains do ſometimes make Way for Fountains, by opening the Pores of the Earth. 4. Fountains are ſometimes open'd by Earthquakes. 5. A Paſſage is frequently open'd by the Induſtry of Men. 6. They are ſometimes diſcover'd by Animals, who open the Ground by digging with their Snouts. Thus the ſalt Fountains of *Lunenburg* were diſcover'd by a Hog, which having dug up the Ground, the Water iſſued, and making a Puddle, the Hog, as is uſual with thoſe Creatures, laid down and wallowed in it, and when its Back was dry'd by the Heat of the Sun, the

Digitized by Google

People perceived Salt upon it; upon which they went to the Place, and, by digging, diſcover'd ſeveral other ſuch Fountains. In Memory of this, they kill'd the Hog, and having dry'd his Quarters, hung them up in the Town-Houſe, where they are ſtill kept, as a Memorial of this Diſcovery; but by Length of Time are reduc'd to meer Skins.

In his 22d Propoſition, he gives us an Account, from *Vitruvius*'s Architecture, *Lib.* 8. *Cap.* 1. how to diſcover where Water or Fountains may be found; which in brief is thus: Lie down, ſays he, upon your Face on the Ground, before the Sun riſe, and fixing your Chin upon the Earth, look about, and where you perceive Vapours gathering together, and riſing in the Air, 'tis a certain Sign of Water in the Place. Small Ruſhes, Willows, Elder-Tree, Withies, Reeds, Ivy, are alſo Signs of Water. But where there are none of thoſe Signs, he adviſes to dig a Hole 3 Foot broad, and 5 deep, and about Sun-ſet to place in it a Baſon of any Metal, anointed with Oil in the Inſide, and its Mouth turn'd downward: Cover the Hole with Reeds, or Leaves of Trees, throw Earth over them; open the Hole next Day, and if you find in the Veſſel Drops of Water reſembling Sweat, 'tis a Sign of Water. A Veſſel of Chalk, not bak'd, put in the Hole, and found to be moiſt or diſſolv'd next Day, is alſo a Sign of Water. A Fleece of Wool, if put into the Hole, and found to be ſo moiſt next Day, as you may preſs Water out of it, is a Sign of a plentiful Fountain. If a Lamp full of Oil, and lighted, be put into the Hole, and cover'd, and found next Day not to be quite ſuck'd up, it is likewiſe a Sign of a Fountain. If when a Fire is made upon any Place, the Earth, when it's heated by the Fire, ſends out a Cloudy Vapour, 'tis a Sign of a Fountain.

In this Propoſition, and likewiſe in the 23d, he lays down Rules for judging if Water be wholeſom; the chief of which are as follow: 1. If the Soil be chalky, the Water is thin, in no great Plenty, and ill taſted: The like if the Soil be a looſe Sand. 2. Water found in low Places is generally ſlimy, and ill taſted. 3. If the Soil be black, the Water has a very good Taſte. 4. If the Soil be full of Pebbles, the Water is not very plentiful, nor certain, but very ſweet. 5. If it be gravelly, and mix'd with Slates and Sand, the Water is more plentiful, and very good. 6. Where there are red Rocks, the Water is generally plentiful and good. 7. That which flows from the Roots of Mountains, and flinty Rocks, is cold and wholeſom: But Fountains in Plains or Champion Places are generally brackiſh, hot, and ill taſted, except they proceed from the Roots of Mountains, and break out in the neighbouring Fields, ſhaded with Trees; in which Caſe they are generally ſweeter than thoſe which immediately proceed from the Roots of Mountains. 8. If the People who dwell near Fountains be of ſtrong Bodies, good Limbs, and a clear Complexion, 'tis a Sign that the Water is very good. 9. If the Water be put into a Veſſel of *Corinthian*, or other good Braſs, and leave no Stain behind it, 'tis a Sign that 'tis very good. 10. If the Water be heated in a Kettle, and poured out when ſettled, and leave no Sand or Slime behind it, 'tis very good. 11. Water which ſpeedily boils Peaſe or Beans, is certainly good. 12. When Fountains are clear, and the Streams which flow from them have no Moſs or Ruſhes in them, 'tis a Sign that the Water is pure and wholeſom.

On this Occaſion, he takes Notice of dangerous Vapours that proceed from the Earth, and ſometimes kill thoſe who dig Wells and Mines. The Earth, he ſays, as other Things, is compos'd of Four Principles; the Firſt is the Terrene Part; the Second is the Moiſt Part, which produces Fountains. It has likewiſe Heat, from whence proceed Sulphur, Allum, Bitumen, and great Spirits of the

Digitized by Google

the Air, which, when they pierce thro' the porous Part of the Earth that lies betwixt the Veins, kill the Diggers, and ſtop their Breath by theſe Vapours, if they do not make a ſpeedy Eſcape. The Way to avoid this Danger, he ſays, is to let down a burning Lamp, and if it continue burning, the Workmen may deſcend without Danger; but if the Lamp be put out, they muſt dig other Holes on the Right and Left of the Well, which will let out thoſe Vapours.

In his 17th Chapter, he treats of Mineral Waters, Baths, and thoſe properly call'd Medicinal Waters; and becauſe their Effects are much admir'd, he undertakes to treat of them, and of their Cauſes, with more Clearneſs and Exactneſs than former Geographers.

In his firſt Propoſition, he lays down, That there is no Water ſo pure but is mix'd with ſ Particles, ſuch as are found in Earthy Bodies; yet thoſe Particles are not Earth, but Spirits, Oils, *&c.* He calls that Mineral Water, which has ſo many Particles of a different Nature from the Water as endow it with ſome remarkable Quality perceptible to our Senſe.

The Truth of the Propoſition is manifeſt from Experience, and proved by the Difference of Taſtes and Diſtillation. The Cauſe of the Difference is the various and perpetual Agitation of the Particles; but the Mixture is not alike in all Waters: Therefore he calls thoſe only Mineral Waters, which have ſome remarkable Quality beyond common Water.

In his Second Propoſition, he divides Mineral Waters into Three Sorts; the Firſt he calls *Corporeal*, for Want of a better Word; the Second he calls *Spiritous*; and the Third *Corporeal* and *Spiritous*. He calls thoſe Mineral Waters *Corporeal*, which contain ſolid and fix'd Parts of Minerals, that may be ſeparated from the Water, and diſcerned by the Eye. Theſe he divides into Two Sorts; the Firſt contains thoſe Particles of Minerals, ſo large, that they may be eaſily ſeen in the Water, and, properly ſpeaking, are not mix'd with it, nor do any way impregnate the ſame: Such are thoſe in whoſe Sand Gold and other Minerals are found. To this laſt, Bituminous Fountains muſt be reduced.

Therefore thoſe are more properly call'd *Corporeal* Mineral Waters, which contain indeed ſolid Mineral Particles, but ſo ſmall, and ſo much mix'd with the Water, that they are not ſtraitway to be diſcover'd by the Eye, but by Art; or when, after a long time, they ſettle to the bottom, and grow together, as in Salt and Sulphureous Fountains, and Chymical Waters, in which Metal is diſſolv'd.

Theſe he calls *Spiritous* Waters, which contain only a Volatile Spirit, ſuch as is found in Minerals; but no fix'd Particles that are to be ſeen.

Thoſe he calls both *Corporeal* and *Spiritous* which contain Solid and Volatile, or Spiritous Particles of Minerals.

In his Third Propoſition, he explains how Mineral Waters are generated. 1. If Water be carried with a rapid Stream by Subterraneous Paſſages, in which Metallick Earths and Minerals are not very thick, the Water may eaſily carry with it Grains of thoſe Minerals. 2. If Water come through Minerals that are imperfect, and not very thick, as Vitriol, Sulphur, Salts, *&c.* which are eaſily united to Moiſture, it muſt neceſſarily be mix'd with the Atoms of thoſe Minerals. There are ſome indeed who call this in Queſtion, becauſe the Mineral Particles being hard and ſolid, are not eaſily united to Water: But *Varenius* thinks, that it may eaſily be done, not indeed by meer Water, but by that which is mix'd with Vitriol and a Spiritous Salt, and is like the *Aqua-Fortis* of the Chymiſts. For as *Aqua-Fortis* diſſolves Metals into Atoms, and unites them to it ſelf, ſo that they do not fall to the bottom, except they be ſeparated

Digitized by Google

by Art: In the ſame Manner, Water, which flows through Mineral Earth, may diſſolve Mineral Particles into Atoms, and unite it to it ſelf. 3. In the Bowels of the Earth, before Metals be generated, Vapours and Fumes are conden's'd upon the Corners of the Rocks to which they adhere; ſo that if Water flow through thoſe Places where ſuch Vapours are, they are impregnated by them, and become Spiritous Mineral Waters. But imperfect Minerals make Mineral Waters of the ſame Nature with themſelves, in another Manner thus: Thoſe Minerals being heated by a Subterranean, or their own proper Heat, ſend forth Spirits and Vapours, as Sulphur, Vitriol, Salt, Coals, *&c.* And ſuch Fumes and Exhalations are conſtantly found where ſuch Minerals are; by which Means, Water which flows through thoſe Places is impregnated with thoſe Spirits.

Varenius rejects the Opinion of thoſe who think, that ſuch Spiritous Waters may be generated by Waters meerly flowing through that Metallick Earth, or ſtanding long upon it in Mines, *&c.* becauſe he ſays, 'tis contrary to Experience, by which we find, that Water receives no Quality by Minerals, how long ſoever they may be ſteep'd in it; and therefore he ſays, that Water is impregnated, 1. By the Seeds of Metals. 2. That Water being already impregnated by other ſubtile Spirits, as of Vitriol, Salt, *&c.* by their Aſſiſtance the Spirits are extracted from hard Metals; yet he is not poſitive in this, becauſe the Queſtion will ſtill recur, how thoſe Waters are impregnated with the Spirits of Salt or Vitriol, *&c.*

In his Fourth Propoſition, he gives an Account of the innumerable Species of Mineral Waters, which 'tis needleſs to inſiſt on, ſince 'tis obvious to every body, that the Difference ariſes from their being impregnated with one or more of thoſe Minerals, which we ſhall have occaſion to treat of in the Deſcription of thoſe Countries where ſuch Mineral Waters are found. He reduces them into 11 Claſſes. 1. Acids. 2. Bitter. 3. Hot. 4. Very Cold. 5. Oily and Fat. 6. Poiſonous, or Deadly. 7. Thoſe which are Coloured. 8. Thoſe which boil up. 9. Such as make Things which are leſs hard more hard, or that change or die Things thrown into them. 10. Salt. 11. To theſe may be added ſuch as are endowed with ſome other wonderful Qualities. To theſe Claſſes may be reduc'd all the Waters which are deſcrib'd by Authors. We ſhall briefly ſhew their Generation and Difference, and give ſome Inſtances.

In his Sixth Propoſition, he accounts for the Cauſes, Difference, and Species, of Acid Waters.

They proceed from a Mixture of the Spirit of Vitriol, Salt, Allum, *&c.* His Reaſons are; 1. Wherever ſuch Waters are found, Mines of Vitriol, Salt, and Allum are found. 2. Becauſe the Spirit of Vitriol, Salt, and ſome Sort of Sulphur, is Acid. 3. Becauſe no Acid Body can be ſeparated from thoſe Waters, but only Spirits very like thoſe of Vitriol, *&c.*

There are reckoned in *Germany* alone about 1000 Springs of Acid Waters: They abound moſt where there are Mines.

The Difference of thoſe Waters is very great: Some are nothing ſhort of Vinegar in Sharpneſs, and are uſed inſtead of it. Of this Sort, there is a Fountain in *Sicily*. Some have much the Taſte of Wine: Near *Lions* in *France* there is ſuch a Fountain, called *Fontaine forte*, which ſometimes ſupplies the Want of Wine; ſo that if a Fourth Part of it be mix'd with Three Parts of Wine, the Strength of the Wine is nothing abated: It ferments when Meal is mix'd with it. Meat cannot be boil'd in it, for it evaporates, becauſe of its great Subtilty. 'Tis ſo very healthful, that the People there ſeldom make uſe of Phyſicians.

Some are Aſtringent, and contract the Pallat, which is a Sign that they are mix'd.

mix'd with Particles of Iron, Vitriol, or Allum. If they be expos'd to Heat, or not covered close, they lose that Acidity, which shews, that it proceeds from a subtile Spirit.

He thinks, the Reason why they are seldom found in Countries far North, is the Want of Subterranean Fires, and the Thickness of the Earth; and this he takes also to be the Reason why there are no Gold Mines in those Countries.

In his Seventh Proposition, he gives us the Causes of Hot Baths.

In *Japan*, there is a Fountain so prodigiously hot, that no Water can be made so hot by the most violent Fire: The Natives call it Hell. The Hot Fountains of *Baden* in *Switzerland*, and those at *Buda*, are remarkable: In the latter, they boil Eggs to any Degree of Hardness they please.

The Cause of the Hotness of those Fountains, according to *Varenius*, is a Mixture of Sulphur. 2. The Fumes, Vapours, and Exhalations of Sulphur, Coal, Amber, *&c.*

In his Eighth Proposition, he says, That Oily and Bituminous Fountains proceed from Sulphureous and Bituminous Matter, melted in the Bowels of the Earth by Heat and Spirits, and their Difference proceeds from the different Matters they flow through, as Ambergreece, Amber, Petroleum, Pitch, Naphtha, Bitumen, *&c.*

In his Ninth Proposition, he says, That Bitter Waters proceed from a Sort of impure Sulphur, Bitumen, Nitre, Vitriol, and Copper.

His Tenth Proposition is about very cold Springs. Near *Vienne* in *Dauphiny*, there is a Spring so extraordinary cold, that no Man can endure to put his Hands in it, and it makes the Faces of those who drink it swell. This proceeds from a Mixture of Nitre, Allum, Mercury, or Iron. Sometimes it proceeds from the Deepness of the Spring, and the Want of the Heat of the Sun and Subterranean Fires. Some Fountains are hot and cold by Turns. The Cause of this, he says, is, That the Pores of the Earth being open in the Summer, the hot Spirits evaporate; but being shut in the Winter, they make the Water warm: And thus some Fountains are hotter by Night than by Day.

In his Eleventh Proposition, he treats of those Waters which change the Nature of Things thrown into them.

In the Province of *Ulster*, in the North of *Ireland*, there's a Lake which, in Seven Year's time, turns Timber thrown into it into Stone. Some again don't change the Timber into Stone, but the stony and salt Particles in the Water cleave to the Wood, and cover it with a Crust of Stone. Others don't change the Timber, but make it as hard as Stone. *Varenius* thinks, the Change of Timber into Stone is effected thus: The Mineral Waters entring the Pores, dissolve, or at least alter, the Form of the long Fibres by which the Parts of the Timber cohere; and at the same Time condense the Timber more, and communicate to it their Mineral Particles. For such as change Iron into Copper, his Opinion is, That they communicate Particles and Spirit of Copper and Vitriol to the Iron.

In his 12th Proposition, he explains the Cause of poisonous Waters, and says, they flow through Soil mix'd with Arsenick, Mercury, and Antimony.

The Thirteenth Proposition treats of the different Colours of Waters, which proceed from the different Colours of the Soil.

The Fifteenth Proposition is about Fountains that boil up, and send forth a great Quantity of Spirit. *Varenius* says, this is occasioned by Sulphureous and Nitrous Spirits; that such of them as are hot, are impregnated with Sulphur; and those that are cold, with Nitre. In *Westphalia*, there is a Fountain of this Sort, which, because of the Noise it makes as it bubbles up, is call'd *Bolderborn*.

Mr. *Edmund*

Mr. *Edmund Halley*, in his Eſtimate of the Quantity of Vapours rais'd out of the Sea, together with an Account of the Circulation of thoſe Vapours, and of the Cauſe of Springs, preſented to the Royal Society, ſays, This Matter has not been any where well examined, tho' it ſeems to be one of the moſt neceſſary Ingredients of a Real and Philoſophical Meteorology: Therefore he made the following Experiment:

He took a Pan of Water about 4 Inches deep, and 7 Inches $\frac{7}{8}$ Diameter, in which he placed a Thermometer, and by means of a Pan of Coals brought the Water to the ſame Degree of Heat with our Air in the hotteſt Summer, the Thermometer nicely ſhewing it; then he fix'd the Pan of Water, with the Thermometer in it, to one End of the Beam of a Pair of Scales, and exactly counterpois'd it with Weights in the other Scale; and by the Application or Removal of the Pan of Coals, 'twas eaſy to maintain the Water in the ſame Degree of Heat preciſely. He found the Weight of the Water ſenſibly to decreaſe; and at the End of two Hours he obſerv'd, that there wanted half an Ounce Troy all but 7 Grains, or 233 Grains of Water, which in that Time had gone off in Vapours, tho' one could hardly perceive it ſmoak, and the Water was not ſenſibly warm. This was little leſs than 6 Ounces in 24 Hours, from a Circle of 8 Inches Diameter. He quotes the Experiment to have been made in the *Oxford* Society, by Dr. *Edward Bernard*, That the Cube Foot *Engliſh* of Water weighs 76 Pound Troy: This, divided by 1728, the Number of Inches in a Foot, will give 253 $\frac{1}{2}$ Grains, or $\frac{1}{3}$ Ounce 13 $\frac{1}{2}$ Grains, for the Weight of a Cube Inch of Water: Wherefore the Weight of 233 Grains is $\frac{233}{253\frac{1}{2}}$ or 35 Parts of 38 of a Cube Inch of Water. Now the Area of the Circle, whoſe Diameter is 7 $\frac{7}{8}$ Inches, is 49 Square Inches; by which, dividing the Quantity of Water evaporated, *viz.* $\frac{1}{38}$ of an Inch the Quote $\frac{1862}{1862}$, or $\frac{1}{53}$ ſhews, that the Thickneſs of the Water evaporated was the 53d Part of an Inch; but he ſuppoſes it only the 60th Part, for the Facility of Calculation. If therefore Water, as warm as the Air in Summer, exhales the Thickneſs of a 60th Part of an Inch in Two Hours, from its whole Surface in 12 Hours it will exhale $\frac{1}{5}$ of an Inch; which is abundantly ſufficient to ſerve for all the Rains, Springs, and Dews, and to account for the *Caſpian* Sea's being always at a ſtand, neither waſting nor overflowing; as likewiſe for the Current ſaid to ſet always in at the Streights of *Gibraltar*, tho' thoſe *Mediterranean* Seas receive ſo many and ſo conſiderable Rivers.

In eſtimating the Quantity of Water ariſing by Vapours out of the Sea, he conſiders it only for the Time the Sun is up, becauſe the Dews return in the Night as much, if not more, Vapours than are then emitted; and in Summer, the Days being longer than 12 Hours, this Exceſs is ballanc'd by the weaker Action of the Sun, eſpecially when riſing, before the Water be warm'd: So that he allows $\frac{1}{10}$ of an Inch of the Surface of the Sea to be rais'd *per Diem* in Vapours, as a probable Conjecture. Upon this Suppoſition, every 10 Square Inches of the Surface of the Water yields in Vapour *per Diem* a Cube Inch of Water, and each Square Foot half a Wine Pint; every Space of 4 Foot Square a Gallon; a Mile Square 6914 Tuns; a Square Degree, ſuppoſe of 69 *Engliſh* Miles, will evaporate 33 Millions of Tuns. It is fit to obſerve, That when Mr. *Halley* made the ſaid Experiment, the Water he made uſe of was ſalted to the ſame Degree with common Sea-Water, by the Solution of about a 40th Part of Salt.

Having thus ſhew'd, by Experiment, the Quantity of Water rais'd in Vapour from the Surface of the Sea in a Day's Time, he was order'd by the *Royal Society* to enquire how Nature returns thoſe Vapours again to the Sea, which he ſays is

ſo

Digitized by Google

so justly perform'd, that in many Hundreds of Years we are sufficiently assur'd, that the Sea has not sensibly decreas'd by the Loss in Vapour, nor yet abounded by the immense Quantity of fresh it receives continually from the Rivers. Upon this he gave the Society what to him seem'd the most satisfactory Account of this grand Phenomenon, in Substance thus: He attempted in another Place to explain the Manner of the Rising of Vapour by Warmth; by shewing, That if an Atom of Water were expanded into a Shell or Bubble, so as to be 10 times as big in Diameter as when it was Water, such an Atom would become specifically lighter than Air, and rise so long as that *Flatus* or warm Spirit, that first separated it from the Mass of Water, shall continue to distend it to the same Degree; and that Warmth declining, and the Air growing cooler, and withal specifically lighter, the Vapours consequently stop at a certain Region of the Air, or else descend, which may happen on several Accounts: Yet he does not assert, that this is the only Principle of the Rise of Vapours, or that there is not a certain Sort of Matter whose *Conatus* is contrary to that of Gravity; as is evident in Vegetation, wherein the Tendency of the Sprouts is directly upwards, or against the Perpendicular. But whatever is the true Cause, 'tis certain in Fact, That Warmth doth separate the Particles of Water, and emit them with a greater Velocity, as the Heat is more and more intense, as is evident in the Steam of a boiling Cauldron, wherein likewise the Velocity of the Ascent of the Vapours does visibly decrease, till they disappear and are dispersed, and assimulated with the ambient Air.

Now the Ocean being divided with wide and spacious Tracts of Land, and high Ridges of Mountains, which surpass the usual Height to which the aqueous Vapours of themselves ascend, and on the Tops of which the Air is so cold and rarified, as to retain but a small Part of those Vapours brought thither by Winds. Those Vapours therefore that are rais'd copiously in the Sea, and by the Wind are carried over the low Land to those Ridges of Mountains, are there compelled by the Stream of the Air to mount up with it to the Tops of the Mountains, where the Water presently precipitates, gleeting down by the Crannies of the Stone; and Part of the Vapour entring the Caverns of the Hills, the Water gathers into the Basons of Stone it finds, which being once fill'd, the Overplus runs over at the lowest Place, and breaking out by the Sides of the Hills, forms Springs. He says, This Theory of Springs is not a bare Hypothesis, but founded on Experience; for when he was at St. *Helena*, on the Tops of the Hills, at Night, making his Celestial Observations, his Glasses were covered with Drops, so that he was oblig'd to wipe them each half quarter of an Hour; and his Paper was so wet with Dew, that it would not bear Ink.

Thus one Part of the Vapours is return'd by Rivers into the Sea, and the greatest Part by the Cool of the Night falls into it by Dew or Rain before it reaches the Land; and this is the Reason why Rivers do not return so much into the *Mediterranean* as is extracted into Vapour. A Third Part falls on the low Lands, and is the *Pabulum* of Plants, where yet it does not rest, but is again exhal'd in Vapour by the Heat of the Sun, and is either carried by the Winds to the Sea in Rain or Dew, or else to the Mountains, where 'tis form'd into Springs: And thus, after several Vicissitudes, each Particle of the Water is return'd to the Sea from whence it came. Add to this, That the Rain-Waters, after the Earth is fully sated with Moisture, does, by the Vallies, find its Way into Rivers, and so is compendiously sent back to the Sea. After this Manner, he says, Circulation is perform'd; and he doubts not but this Hypothesis is more reasonable than that which derives all

Digitized by Google

all Springs from Rain, tho' many of them be perpetual, and without Diminution, even when no Rain falls for a long Time. He thinks it also more reasonable than that Hypothesis which derives them from the Sea through certain imaginary Passages within the Earth, where they lose their Saltness: This, besides many others, labouring under this principal Absurdity, That the greatest Rivers have their most copious Fountains fartheſt from the Sea, whither so great Quantities of fresh Water cannot reasonably be deriv'd any other Way than in Vapour. This, if we may allow final Causes, seems to be the Design of the Hills, That their Ridges being plac'd through the midst of the Continents, might serve, as it were, for Alembicks, to distil fresh Water for the Use of Man and Beast, and their Heights to give a Descent to those Streams to run gently like so many Veins of the Macrocosm, to be the more beneficial to the Creation.

Varenius, in his 18th Chapter, gives an Account how the Earth and Water may change their respective Places.

In the Third Proposition, he advances a Conjecture about the Quantity of Water and Earth the Globe may contain; but several Things hinder a demonstrative and satisfactory Account of this Matter, as, the Uncertainty of the Deepness of the Sea in different Places, our Ignorance of what Water may be contain'd in the Abyss, and what Proportion the Water may bear to the Earth: But upon Supposition that the Water covers the one half of the Surface of the Earth, and that the Sea may, by a Medium, be computed at a quarter or half a Mile deep, the Calculation may be thus; Substract from the Semi-Diameter of the Earth a quarter or half a Mile, and the Solidity of the Sphere may be found, whose Semi-Diameter is equal to the Remainder: Let this Solidity be substracted from the Solidity of the Earth, the one Half of the Remainder will be the Quantity of Water: The same Half being substracted from the Solidity of the whole Earth, there will remain the Quantity of the Earth; to which, upon the Account of the Height of Mountains, must be added a Fourth or Fifth Part of the Quantity of the Water, or of the former Half: But this Calculation is very uncertain, tho' it may be near the Truth.

The Fourth and Fifth Propositions are concerning the deserting of their former Channels, by Seas, Rivers, and Lakes. Many Lakes have been drein'd by the Industry of Men; of which, 'tis needless to give Instances. Rivers change a Part of their Channel, 1. When they carry down with them Quantities of Earth and Mud, which settling to the bottom of the Channel, makes it as high as its Banks. 2. When they take another Course, by Inundations, Winds, or Earthquakes. 3. The Mouths of Rivers are sometimes stop'd by violent Tempests, which choak them up with Sand.

In the Seventh Proposition, he acquaints us, That Friths are dried up sometimes, and turn Isthmus's, or Parts of the Continent. Thus 'tis probable, That the Isthmus of *Suez*, which divides the *Red Sea* from the *Mediterranean*, was formerly Sea. So the *Zuider-Zee* in *Holland* is shallower than formerly; which seems to presage, That some time or other it will be quite dried up.

In the Ninth Proposition, *Varenius* gives the Reasons why the Sea sometimes retires from the Shore. 1. If the Shore be of a rocky hard Substance, that the Sea can wash nothing away from it, but brings Slime and Sand, *&c.* towards it, the Shore cannot fail to become higher than the Sea. 2. If the opposite Shore be of a soft porous Soil, then what the Sea washes away from that, it will restore to another, and overflowing the Shore so wasted, leaves the opposite Shore dry. 3. When great Rivers bring down vast Quantities of Mud, Earth, *&c.* it subsides, and makes the Shores higher.

Digitized by Google

higher. 4. If great Storms and Winds blow from the Sea to the Shore, and if the Shore be hard and rocky, or of firm Earth, it muſt be enlarged by Slime and Sand from the Sea. 5. If the Flood be ſwift, and the Ebb ſlow, then the Slime and Sand ſettles on the Shore, and adds to the Land.

Thus *Homer* and *Ariſtotle* were of Opinion, That *Egypt* formerly was almoſt all cover'd with Sea, but at laſt was made higher than the Sea, by the Mud and Slime that the *Nile* left Annually behind it. Ancient Hiſtories tell us, That a great Part of *Holland*, *Guelderland*, and *Zealand*, were formerly under Water. The Shells of Sea-Fiſh, found in the Hills above *Nimeguen*, ſeem to be a Proof of this.

In the 19th Propoſition, he enquires into the Reaſons why there are more Iſlands near the Continent than in the middle of the Ocean. In the *Pacifick* Ocean there is ſcarce an Iſland to be ſeen. In the Ocean betwixt *Africa* and *Brazile*, there's few, except the Iſlands of St. *Helena* and *Aſcenſion*. The *Azores* are the only Iſlands betwixt *Europe* and *America*.

The Cauſe of this, he ſays, is, becauſe the Ocean, by its Irruptions, ſeparates Parts from the Continents, which become Iſlands; but the Ocean not being high enough to cover thoſe ſeparated Parts, therefore great Numbers of them are about Continents: Others again are form'd of the Slime and Mud brought down by Rivers, or of that which the Sea waſhes from the neighbouring Continent, but ſettles down again, and by the Addition of Slime, *&c.* riſes higher than the Surface of the Water: Some Iſlands have likewiſe been raiſed in the Sea by Earthquakes, and Mines of Sulphur, which have taken Fire, as one lately in the *Archipelago*.

SECT. XXI.

Of the ATMOSPHERE *and* WINDS.

VARENIUS, in his 19th Chapter, gives an Account of the Atmoſphere and Winds: He deſcribes the Atmoſphere thus; That 'tis a Space round the whole Earth, which contains the Exhalations that are rais'd from it; but 'tis uncertain whether it contains any other Body beſides. 'Tis alſo taken for the Exhalations themſelves; and, by no mean Philoſophers, is confounded with the Air; beyond which they immediately place what they call the Etherial Subſtance. That Vapours are continually exhaled both from Earth and Water, is too evident to be denied; and theſe Exhalations are occaſioned, 1. By the Heat of the Sun, Moon and Stars. 2. By the Heat of the Earth, mix'd with its Parts, or by Subterranean Fires: For we perceive, that Fire put to any Body, cauſes it to ſend out Exhalations; and Experience ſhews us, that by Night, when the Moon ſhines, Vapours are rais'd from Water. But other Philoſophers ſuppoſe, that, beſides thoſe Exhalations in the Space about the Earth, there is ſome peculiar and ſimple Body, which they call Air; altho' they freely grant, that Exhalations may be changed into Air; and on the other hand, that Air may be changed into Clouds, and thicker Vapours. Exhalations are more or fewer, according to the different Elevation of the Sun above the Horizon, or its Depreſſion under it, according to the different Age and Elevation of the Moon, according to the Riſing, Setting, and Conſtitution, of the Stars above the Horizon, and according to the Nature of the Soil; for moiſt Places ſend forth more than dry, and the

Digitized by Google

Exhalations are of different Kinds, *viz.* Watery, Salt, Sulphurous, Earthy, Spiritous, *&c.* according to the Bodies they are rais'd from. From those Sulphurous Particles, fiery Meteors, Lightening, *Ignis fatui*, and Thunder, proceed. And the Difference of Air is occasion'd by those different Vapours.

He affirms in the Sixth Proposition, That Exhalations don't ascend of their own Nature, but by a violent Motion from another Cause; or that Air is not light, but heavy, absolutely speaking; and proves it thus: Every Thing is to be call'd heavy, which moves towards the Center of the Earth, except it be hinder'd: But Air does so; for if a Hole be dug in the Earth, Air descends into the Hole; and the Reason of its being carried upwards, is, 1. Because 'tis rarified by the Heat, which makes it seek for a larger Space. 2. Because it is thrust upwards by other Vapours. Hence 'tis, That in cold Places, such as *Nova Zembla*, and with us in the Night-Time, Clouds don't ascend; but when the Sun approaches, they are rarified, so as one Part pushes another forward.

In his Seventh Proposition, he proves, That the uppermost Parts of the Atmosphere are more subtle than the lower Parts; yet it may so happen, that the middle Parts are more gross than the lowermost Parts which are next the Earth, because the lighter Parts tend naturally to the higher Place; but those in the Middle may easily come together again, and so be more gross, the hot Particles which were carried up with them having left them, and the Beams of the Sun reflected from the Earth having no Power in the middle Region, because of their Distance. Hence it is, that the middle Air is more clear after Rain, because the grosser Parts are separated.

In his Eighth Proposition, he proves, That the Atmosphere or Air, when warm, takes up a greater Space than before; and the colder it is, the more 'tis contracted, and requires the less Space. This is plain from the Thermometer; for the colder the Air is, the less Space it takes up in the Glass; and the warmer it is, the more. The Cause is this, the warm Particles of the Beams of the Sun, or of any other Fire, are the most subtile Particles of the World, and in continual Motion. Therefore while they are mix'd with the Atmosphere, they separate those Particles with great Force, and make more Pores; but when those fiery Particles are gone, the Particles of the Air, being left to themselves, do again unite.

In his Tenth Proposition, he asserts, That a clear Air may be so rarified by a violent Fire, as to take up 70 times more Space than it did before, and may be so condens'd in an Air-Pump, as only to take up the 60th Part of what it did before; but the Heat of the Sun never occasions a Rarefaction, nor the Coolness of the Air a Condensation, to that Degree. This is prov'd by the *Æolopila*, which being made hot by the Fire, will contain 13 Ounces of Water; but when cold, contains half a Dram over: Therefore the Air, while warm, took up so much more Space in the *Æolopila* when hot, than when it was cold; which answers to the Quantity above-mention'd.

In the Eleventh Proposition, he gives the Reasons why in the Frigid Zone, when they have no Sun, the Air is sometimes clear, but for most Part thick and cloudy. The latter, he says, proceeds from the small Subterranean Heat of the Earth, and of the Moon and Stars, which continue, while the Sun is absent, many Days and Nights above the Horizon; and that the Air is sometimes clear, is either because the thick Vapours fall down to the Earth, or are carried elsewhere by the Winds.

In his Twelfth Proposition, he gives the Reason why, many times in the coldest Days of Winter, the Air is clear, and not condens'd by the Cold. A Middling Cold,

Digitized by Google

Cold, he says, does not make the Air clear, but cloudy; because the small Heat still left in the Air raises the Vapours, but does not dispel them; but a vehement Cold makes the Air clear. 1. By making the gross Matters yet more gross; by which means they settle and fall to the Earth. 2. By shutting up the Pores of the Earth, so that the Vapours cannot rise.

In the Eighteenth Proposition, he gives an Account of the Three Regions of the Air. The First is that in which we live, and reaches to the Middle Region. The Middle is that wherein Snow, Rain, and Hail, are generated. The Third is that which begins at the highest Part of the Middle Region, and reaches to the highest Part of the Surface of the Air; above which the *Aristotelians* place what they call the Sublunary Fire.

The Middle Region is reckon'd colder than the First and Third. 'Tis colder than the First, because the Earth reflects the Beams of the Sun, and so doubles the Heat, besides what it receives from the Particles of the Subterranean Fire. 'Tis colder than the Third, because that contains the more subtile fiery and sulphureous Parts of the Exhalations, which are carried thither from the Place of the watery Particles. The Middle Region is colder, because it is neither reach'd by the Beams of the Sun reflected from the Earth, nor by the fiery Particles, *&c.* of the Upper Region.

In his 41st Proposition, he gives us the Observation made by one *David Frelichius* upon the Mountain *Carpathus* in *Hungary*, which is the highest in that Country, and gives Name to all that Tract of Mountains which divide *Hungary* from *Poland*, *Moravia*, *Silesia*, and that Part of *Austria* which lies beyond the *Danube*. He thinks this Observation very proper to help us to make a Judgment concerning the Height of the Air, and the Constitution of its Regions.

In *June* 1615, he went up with Two Companions to view those high Mountains, and when, with great Fatigue, he came to the Top of the first Rock, which, from the low Ground, he thought was as high as he needed to go, he perceived another Rock much higher, which he also climb'd up, through vast loose Rocks; of which, if any fell down, it carries Hundreds of others with it, of a much larger Size, with such a terrible Noise, as if the whole Mountain were tumbling down. When he came to the Top of that, he still found another higher, till at last he came to the Top of the highest. When from the lower Hills he look'd down to the Vallies, which were full of large Trees, he could perceive nothing but what either resembled dark Night, or the blue Sky in a clear Day, the visible Species were so much extenuated by the vast Declivity. Whilst he climb'd up the higher Mountain, he found himself encompass'd with thick Clouds. When he got through them in some Hours time, and drew near the highest Summet, he sat down and view'd the Place, where he was encompass'd with Clouds, and there he saw thick white Clouds moving; over which, for some Miles, he had a pleasant Prospect, and perceiv'd some Clouds higher, some lower, and some that mov'd at an equal Distance from the Earth; from whence he inferr'd these Three Things: 1. That he was enter'd the Middle Region of the Air. 2. That the Distance of the Clouds from the Earth was not equal, but some higher, and others lower, according to the Nature of the Vapour. 3. That the Distance of the Clouds nearer the Earth was much less than some Natural Philosophers say, and, instead of 72 *German* Miles, is only half a *German* Mile. When he came to the highest Summet, he found the Air so calm and subtile, that it did not so much as move a Hair; whereas in the lower Mountains there was a very high Wind. From this he conjectur'd, That this Summet was a

Ger-

Digitized by Google

German Mile from the Root of the loweſt Hill, and that it reach'd above the Region of the Air where the Winds come. He fir'd a Piſtol on the Top of it, which at firſt made no greater Report or Noiſe than if he had broke a little Stick; but in a ſmall Time the Sound increaſed, and fill'd the lower Parts of the Mountain, the Vallies, and the Woods. As he came down through Snow, which had lain ſome Years in the Diſtances and Clefts of the Mountains, he fir'd another Piſtol, which made a greater Noiſe than the largeſt Gun. This put him in Fear that the Mountain would fall with him. The Noiſe continued half a Quarter of an Hour, and went through all the Caverns of the Mountains, which multiplied it; there being no ſuch Cavities in the Top of the Mountain, the Sound at firſt was very ſmall; but meeting with Reſiſtance in the Caves and Diſtances between the Rocks, it became louder. He adds, That in thoſe high Mountains, there is Snow and Hail in the middle of Summer, as often as it Rains in the neighbouring Vallies: And he perceiv'd, by the Colour and Hardneſs of the Snow in ſeveral Parts, that it had lain there for ſome Years.

Varenius, in his 20th Chapter, treats of Winds in general, and of the Quarters of the World, or 32 Points of the Compaſs; of which he gives us the following Table, with their Diſtances from each Pole, *viz.* of the firſt 16 from the *Antartick*, and of the reſt from the *Artick*.

	Degr.	*Min.*
Eaſt	90	0
Eaſt by South	78	45
Eaſt-South-Eaſt	67	30
South-Eaſt and by Eaſt	56	15
South-Eaſt	45	0
South-Eaſt by South	33	45
South-South-Eaſt	22	30
South and by Eaſt	11	15
South	0	0
South by Weſt	11	15
South-South-Weſt	22	30
South-Weſt and by South	33	45
South-Weſt	45	0
South-Weſt by Weſt	56	15
Weſt-South-Weſt	67	30
Weſt and by South	78	45
Weſt	90	0
Weſt by North	78	45
Weſt-North-Weſt	67	30
North Weſt and by Weſt	56	15
North-Weſt	45	0
North-Weſt by North	33	45
North-North-Weſt	22	30
North and by Weſt	11	15
North	0	0
North by Eaſt	11	15
North-North-Eaſt	22	30
North-Eaſt and by North	33	45
North-Eaſt	45	0
North-Eaſt by Eaſt	56	15
Eaſt-North-Eaſt	67	30
Eaſt and by North	78	45

Brietius, *lib.* 2. *p.* 32. gives us the following Account of the Winds, according to the Ancients. *Ariſtotle de Meteor. lib.* 1. *Cap.* 13. ſays, ſome Philoſophers allowed only one Wind, becauſe Wind was only the Motion of the Air. *Therialces*, in *Strabo*, makes only Two, oppoſite to one another, according to the Poles, *Boreas*, *Notus*. The Greek and Latin Poets allow Four, which they place thus; *Auſter* or *Notus*, oppoſite to *Aquilo* or *Boreas*; *Eurus*, oppoſite to *Favonius* or *Zephyrus*. The latter, in Time of a Tempeſt, they call *Africus*.

Andronicus Cyrrheſtes, in *Strabo*, drew Eight, upon an Eight-corner'd Tower in *Athens*, pointed out by a Triton, with a moveable Rod.

Pliny, *Seneca*, and *Ariſtotle*, make 12, which *Seneca* collected from the Points of the Tropicks, of the Polar Circles, and of the Meridian interſecting the ſaid Circles; and *Vitruvius* made 24.

Digitized by Google

SECT. XXII.

The Causes of WINDS *in General.*

Varenius, Cap. 20. Prop. 10. gives an Account of the Causes of Wind thus: The First and General Cause is the Sun, who by its Heat rarifies the Air, which obliges it to seek a greater Space, and one Part of the Air to thrust forward another. Thus, when the Sun moves from East to West, the principal Impulse of the Air is towards the West. A Proof of this is, That in most Places by Land, under the Torrid Zone, and every where by Sea, the Wind blows continually from the East; that is to say, the Sun thrusts the Air from East to West, but does not exceed the Torrid Zone. The Rarified Air is indeed thrust forward toward all Quarters, *viz.* N. S. E. W. and the intermediate Points; but 'tis not admitted in all Points, the greatest Impulse or Protrusion being to the West, because the Sun moves that Way. It is almost continually so in the Torrid Zone; but in ours it blows generally before the Rising of the Sun, and after it, when most other Winds cease. Some Points are sometimes more disposed to receive this Impulse of the Air than others; and thus, when the Impulse is most towards the North, it is call'd a South Wind, *&c.* Here it is to be observ'd, That when this Impulse is towards any of the Points without the Four Cardinal Ones, then in different Countries the Wind seems different; for tho' that Point be one with respect to the Place to which the Sun is vertical, yet in respect to the other Places it is different; and this is the Reason why the same Wind is call'd by different Names in different Countries: But this is either assisted or hinder'd by other Causes; if it be assisted, then the Wind becomes violent; but if hindered, it becomes less violent from that Quarter, and frequently another Wind blows then, which is rather assisted by the General Cause. The Second Cause of Winds, he says, is frequent Exhalations rais'd plentifully from the Sea and Earth with great Force; but they scarcely occasion a Wind till they begin to be rarified. The Third Cause is the Rarefaction of greater and lesser Clouds, either by the Sun and other Stars, or by the Fiery and Sulphureous Particles contain'd in themselves. The Fourth is the Dissolution of Ice and Snow, especially in Mountainous Places; for they are not altogether dissolv'd into Water. The Fifth is the Rising and various Situation of the Moon, and of the rest of the Stars. The Sixth is the Condensation and Rarefaction of the Air and Vapours by any Heat or Cold. The Seventh is the Descent of Clouds, by which the Air is pressed. These Things are better understood by the Consideration of the Instrument call'd *Æolopila*, in which Water being inclos'd, and the Instrument put to the Fire, it sends forth Wind with a great Force, until all the Water be exhal'd. He thinks, the Part of the small Orifice of the *Æolopila* is perform'd, 1. By the thicker neighbouring Air. 2. If that Air be pressed or hindered to give Way by other Vapours or Clouds. 3. If the Air be more condensed towards one Quarter, and so make Way for Blasts or Gusts of Wind.

In Prop. 11. he accounts for the Winds blowing so as to form a perpendicular Line above the Horizon. He says the Cause is, because the Air goes round the Earth in a Spherical Form, and the Protrusion is for most part made through the greatest Circle of the Sphere; but this will be better apprehended, if we consider the First Cause of the Wind: For the Sun thrusts the Air towards all those Quarters of the Places to which it is vertical; but the Impulse is not receiv'd in all those Places, as has been said already. Then if we consider the greatest Circles drawn from that Place, and among those such as receive the Protrusion and Impulse of the Air, all those Places of the Earth, situated in this Circle or Semi-Circle, will have the Wind perpendicular; because every great Circle of the Earth passing thro' any Place of it, is perpendicular to the Horizon of that Place. 'Tis the same when a Gust of Wind breaks out from a Cloud; but the Places situated without those Circles are not sensible of the Wind, tho' the Air be moy'd above their Horizon, because it is not perpendicular to that Horizon, but oblique: Yet he owns, 'tis not generally true that the Wind moves perpendicularly to the Horizon, because we many

Digitized by Google

times perceive the Wind to blow Croſswiſe in the Air; and thus Smoak from a Chimney is ſometimes carried to different Points by the Wind at the ſame time.

In Prop. 12. he gives the Reaſon why, during a Wind, the Blaſts ſometimes ceaſe, and of a ſudden renew their Force; and thinks, it's occaſion'd by the ceaſing of the Cauſe, and that Time is requir'd for collecting the Vapours to break thro' the Air with ſuch Force: Therefore the Wind is more continued at Sea, becauſe the Exhalations there are ſo.

The Cauſe why Weſterly Winds are leſs frequent than the Eaſterly, is accounted for in the 10th Propoſition.

The Cauſe why North and Eaſt Winds are more ſtrong than the South and Weſt Winds, he accounts for thus: The Northern Air is more thick, becauſe of the Cold; and the Southern Wind in our Zone is thinner, becauſe the Air is rarified by the Heat of the Sun, *&c.* But it muſt be obſerv'd, That the South Winds are as dry, cold and impetuous, in the Temperate Zone, oppoſite to ours, as the North Winds are to us; but the Eaſt Wind is ſtronger for another Reaſon, becauſe it riſes for moſt part from the Rarefaction of the Air by the Sun, which being continually carried from Eaſt to Weſt, blows the more ſtrong; tho' there may be other Cauſes which either further or hinder it.

In Prop. 16. he gives the Cauſe why the South and Weſt Winds are warmer than thoſe of the Eaſt and North: But he ſays, this is only to be underſtood of the Places in our Zone; for in the other Temperate Zone, ſituated from the Equator towards the South, it is contrary, becauſe in thoſe Places the North Winds are more warm, and the South Winds more cold. This, he ſays, muſt be ſo, from the Nature of the Thing; for the South Winds are more warm to us, and the North Winds colder, becauſe our South Winds come from the Places which are nearer to the Torrid Zone, or the Courſe of the Sun; but it is otherwiſe as to the Northern Winds. In Places ſituated from the Equator towards the Antartic, 'tis juſt the contrary, becauſe the North Wind blows upon them from the Torrid Zone, and the South Wind from Places which are nearer the Antartic Pole.

But we muſt anſwer otherwiſe as to the Eaſtern and Weſtern Winds, becauſe the Diverſity of the Places of ours and the oppoſite Zone has no room here. In the firſt Place, 'twas ſaid in the former Propoſition, That the Weſtern Winds are leſs frequent, and they are more warm, becauſe they blow for moſt part by Night, after the Sun ſets; and the Air which comes from that Quarter is warmer than ours, becauſe we are further from the Setting Sun. Here's another Cauſe (which holds alſo in the Difference betwixt the North and South Winds) why the Weſtern Winds are leſs ſtrong; for 'tis known, that any Air or Wind is found to be the more or leſs cold, according as it blows more or leſs ſtrong; tho' it be in Reality neither colder nor hotter, as we may perceive by our own Breath, which we can blow both hot and cold, as we pleaſe.

In Prop. 17. he gives us the Signs of approaching Wind. When Mariners ſee a pale or blackiſh little Cloud, they look upon it as a Sign of Wind from that Quarter; for Clouds of that Colour are a Sign that they are forthwith to be diſſolv'd into Blaſts, or the Clouds themſelves ſettling downwards, becauſe of their Weight; and being ſeparated from other Clouds, they preſs the Air which is under them, and ſo occaſion it to blow. Other Signs are; 1. If the Sun when it riſes appear with Spots, and lurk under a pale or black Cloud, it foretels either Wind or Rain. 2. If the Riſing Sun appear Concave, ſo that it ſhines in the middle, and caſts out Rays, it foretels a Moiſt and Windy Tempeſt: The like if the Setting-Sun look pale. 3. But if it look red, the Air will be calm and clear next Day. 4. If the Sun look pale, and ſet in a black Cloud, it preſages a North Wind. 5. If the Moon be of a Gold Colour, it's a certain Sign of Wind, according to the Verſe:

Pallida Luna pluit, rubicunda flat, alba ſereuat. i. e.

A Pale Moon Rain foretels, the Red brings Wind;
But when there's White, the Air is clear we find.

6. A Circle round the Moon. 7. If the Horns of the Moon be ſharp. 8. If the Nor-

Digitized by Google

Northern Horn of the Moon be longer than the other, it preſages a North Wind; but if the Southern Horn be more erected, a South Wind. 9. The Riſing of the Moon and more noted Stars, as *Arcturus*, *Orion*, and of thoſe little Stars call'd *Hædi*, with the Sun. 10. If the little Stars in *Cancer*, which are call'd *Aſſes*, be cover'd with a ſmall Cloud, eſpecially if the Northermoſt of the two be cover'd, it preſages a South Wind; but if the other, a North Wind. 11. When Rain ceaſes, Wind begins to blow for moſt part. 12. When a Sound or Noiſe, like bubbling up of Water, is heard in the Sea. 13. The Ancients took Marks of approaching Winds from Animals, as the Crow, the Dolphin-Fiſh, *&c.* 14. From Fiery Meteors and Lightning.

In Prop. 18. he gives the Reaſons why Winds are more frequent in Spring and Autumn, and blow harder than in a hot Summer or cold Winter.

This happens in the Spring, partly from the Diſſolution of Snow, eſpecially in Mountainous Places, partly becauſe the Pores of the Earth are then open, and ſend forth more Exhalations, and partly becauſe the Air and Vapours are then more rarified than in Winter. Add, That in the Month before the Spring begins, and in the Spring it ſelf, there happens for the moſt part to be much Rain, becauſe the moiſt Conſtellations are in thoſe Places of the Zodiac; into which, when the Sun enters, we reckon the Spring begins. The ſame Frequency of Rain and Exhalations is the Occaſion of Wind in Autumn, becauſe the middling Heat of the Sun does indeed raiſe the Vapours, but thick, and not enough rarified: But in a hot Summer, Winds and Rains are leſs frequent, becauſe the Sun attenuates the Exhalations too much, and does not ſuffer them to come together in ſuch Plenty as is required to the Generation of Wind. In a hard Winter, the Winds are more ſeldom, becauſe the Pores of the Earth being ſhut, there are few Vapours rais'd: and ſuch as are, do either condenſe into Snow, or are hinder'd by the Froſt from rarifying ſo much as to occaſion Wind.

In Prop. 19. he gives an Account how high in the Air Winds blow, or in what Region of the Air they begin. Some think, that Winds don't go above the Lower Region of the Air, becauſe none is perceiv'd in the Tops of high Mountains, ſuch as *Olympus*, *&c.* But *Varenius* doubts of this, becauſe Smoak iſſuing from the Top of Mount *Ætna*, is carried about by the Wind.

In Prop. 20. he gives an Account how far one and the ſame Wind may extend, and tells us, there's a great Diverſity in this Matter: For Winds which blow from Eaſt to Weſt, under the Torrid Zone, ſeem to go round the whole Earth; and thoſe which blow from South and North, Mariners find to continue many Days, and to blow thro' a great Space of the Globe. The ſame ſeems to hold of Collateral Winds, but with this Diverſity, that the ſame Wind is different in different Places, as was mention'd in the 10th Propoſition.

SECT. XXIII.

Varenius, Cap. 21. *Treats of* Winds *in Particular, and of* Tempeſts.

THE Second Propoſition treats of General and Particular Winds.

A General or Trade Wind is ſo call'd, becauſe it blows from the ſame Point in many Places at the ſame time over large Tracts of the Earth, and for moſt part of the Year; but is moſt diſcernable at Sea. A Particular Wind is juſt the contrary.

The General Wind at Sea is interrupted ſometimes by an oppoſite Land-Wind from Places near the Sea; ſo that this Wind is moſt conſtant in the middle of the Sea: Such Winds are found only in the Seas under the Torrid Zone, or in Seas within the Tropics, and ſometimes 7 Degrees without the Tropics. All theſe General Winds are from the Eaſt, and its Collateral Points, *viz.* Eaſt. North-Eaſt, and South-Eaſt. They are moſt conſtant in the *Pacifick* Ocean; ſo that Ships bound from *Aquapulco* in *New-Spain* to the *Philippine* Iſlands, which lie from Eaſt to Weſt, frequently perform this great Voyage of 1650 Leagues in 60 Days, without ſhifting their Sails, the Wind being all that time at Eaſt or North-Eaſt; ſo that the Seamen ſay, they may ſleep ſecurely all that Voyage, till they come in Sight of the *Philippine* Iſlands, where this Wind is interrupted by others. The ſame General Wind

's observ'd betwixt the Cape of *Good Hope* and *Brasile*, betwixt whom lies the Island of St. *Helena*. They sail from this Island to the Cape of *Good Hope* (which is 350 Leagues) very often in the Space of 12 or 16 Days; but if they fail beyond this Island the 8th Part of a League, they cannot tack about to make it again, the Wind blows so hard from the East.

The Causes of these Winds are accounted for thus: Some are of Opinion, That the Motion of the Sun from East to West carries the Air along with it, and with more Force in the Torrid Zone than in other Places. Those who are of Opinion, That the Earth moves round the Sun, say, The Air, when carried about with the Earth, moves slower than the Earth. Hence it is, That when we are carried with the Earth from West to East, the Air moving with less Swiftness, seems to be against us, and to move from East to West. *Cartes* advances a new Solution of this Phenomenon, Part 4. Prop. 49. of his Principles, where he ascribes this to the Moon, as well as the Motion of the Sea from East to West.

In the 3d Prop. *Varenius* discourses of Fix'd and Periodical Winds, and of such as are unconstant; some are Anniversary, some return every six Months, some once *per* Month, and some every Day. The most remarkable are the *Monsons*, (as the *Dutch* call them) or Trade-Winds, for their Usefulness in Trade. In the *Indian* Ocean, they have this Wind constantly for some Months, and when they cease, a contrary Wind begins, and lasts as long; and sometimes there is a Cessation of both for some Days: During which, sometimes there are Calms and variable Winds, and frequent Storms. In that Part of the *Atlantick* which lies in the Torrid Zone, and sometimes in the Temperate Zone, the North Wind blows during *October*, *November*, and *January*, which is therefore a fit Time for a Voyage from *Europe* to *India*. *Varenius* thinks, the Dissolution of Snow, the Plenty of thick Vapours, and the continual Pressure of heavy Clouds, during those Months, many occasion the said Winds, especially since they blow for most part from the North and South Quarters; but refers the Matter to further and more accurate Observations of the Seasons of the Year, and the Mountains in those Places.

In the 4th Proposition, we have an Account of those Winds the *Greeks* call'd *Etesiæ*, or Anniversary: They were of Two Sorts; the Summer Winds, which blow from the North, begin about the 6th or 15th of *July*, and last 40 Days, or longer: They blow only in the Day-time; nor do they begin early in a Morning. This Wind is observ'd not only in *Greece*, but in *Thrace*, *Macedonia*, in the *Archipelago*, *Egypt*, and *Africa*. *Varenius* thinks they proceed from the melted Snow and Rain in the neighbouring Mountains; and the Reason why they don't blow in the Night-time, is, because the Snow does not melt then, or at least not so much, because of the Absence of the Sun. The South Winds begin after Winter, and are very low. The *Greeks* call'd the former *Etesiæ*, by way of Eminence, because they are the strongest; and the latter they call *Chelidonius*, or *Ornithias*, because they foretel the coming of the Birds call'd *Chelidonæ*, or Swallows. He thinks those Winds proceed from the melting of the Snow in the Mountains of the Moon in *Monomotopa*, it being Summer there when it is Winter in *Europe*. These Winds begin in *Congo* and *Guzarate* in *September*, and continue till *March*. He is doubtful how to give Reasons why these Winds are not equally observable in *Italy*, *Germany*, *France*, &c. as in *Greece*, &c.

In the 6th Proposition, he gives an Account of some Winds that are peculiar to some Places, *viz.* On the Coasts of *Peru*, *Chili*, and the adjacent Sea, the South Wind, or South-West Wind, is perpetual. It begins at 46 Degrees of Latitude, and reaches beyond *Panama*, in the Isthmus of *America*. Hence it is, That Ships from *Lima* to *Panama*, in a very few Days compass their Voyage; but from *Panama* to *Lima*, much more Time is requir'd. This Wind blows only near the Coasts of *Peru*. Upon the Coasts of the *Terra Magallanica*, or *del Fuego*, about the Frith of *Le Maire*, the West Winds are very frequent. On the Coasts of *Malabar* in *India*, the North and North-East Winds blow all the Year. Our Author believes his former Hypothesis of the melting of Snow in the Mountains, will answer this, and all other Difficulties of that Sort.

In the 7th Proposition, he speaks of Winds that blow at certain Times of the Day and Night;

Digitized by Google

Night; as on the Coasts of *Malabar*, from *September* to *April*, the Wind begins to blow at East from Midnight till Noon from the Land; but from Noon till Midnight, there blows from Sea a Westerly Wind.

On the Coasts of *New Spain*, they have Land-Winds all Night, and Winds from the Sea all Day. In the Kingdom of *Congo*, they have Winds from the Land all Night, but cool refreshing Breezes from the Sea all Day; which is a great Comfort to the Inhabitants of those sultry Countries.

In the 8th Proposition, he observes, the nearer we come to the Equator from the North Pole, the North Winds are the less violent; and when we pass the Equator, in Part of the *Terra Australis*, we find the South Winds strong, which are cold and dry in those Places, especially in *Chili* and *Peru*. He thinks the Cause of both to be the same, because they come from the Polar Places.

In the 10th Proposition, he discourses of Winds remarkable for their fatal Effects, as Whirl-Winds, Hurricanes, *&c.*

The Winds which Mariners call *Travado's*, break out suddenly from a Cloud; and while they last, carry all before them: They are very frequent betwixt the Cape of *Good Hope* and *Brasile*, and on the other Side of *Africa* as far as the Country of *Natal* and *Guinea* under the Equator. Mariners, as soon as they observe the black Clouds gather together, they know it is their immediate Concern to provide against the Storm; upon which they furl their Sails. Before the Mariners knew the Signs and Travado's, many Ships were lost. The *Portuguese* were first acquainted with these Winds, being the first *Europeans* who sail'd over the *Ethiopick* Ocean. Upon the Discovery of the Way to the *Indies* by the Cape of *Good Hope*, by *Vasco de Gama*, the King of *Portugal* set out 13 stout Ships of great Burden in the Year 1500, which was the first Fleet from *Europe* that arriv'd at *Brasile*. They continu'd there during *April*, and sail'd in *May* for the Cape of *Good Hope*: Tho' they saw the Signs of the approaching Storm, they did not understand them. Before the Storm, they were becalmed, and spread all their Sails, to gather what Wind they could; but all of a sudden a furious North-Wind blew, and sunk 4 of their Ships immediately. The whole Fleet had been irrecoverably lost, if they had not straightway furl'd their Sails. In the Ocean betwixt *America* and *Africa*, under the Equator, these Winds are very frequent, especially in *April*, *May*, and *June*. They are also observ'd upon the Coasts of *Guinea*. In the *Arabian* Gulph, in *Arabia* it self, and *Ethiopia*, those Winds are frequent; so that in one Year's time 6000 Travellers, with their Camels, have been buried under vast Mountains of Sand. 'Tis probable the Mummies are nothing else, but such Corps which are immediately dried by the scorching Sand.

Varenius thinks these Winds may be produc'd, 1. By the sudden falling down of Clouds, because of their Weight. 2. By the sudden breaking out of Spirits, Fire, or Sulphureous Matter; as Spouts proceed from Watery Clouds, which fall down with great Force perpendicularly when they become too weighty to be supported by the neighbouring Air.

Hurricanes are very frequent in the Eastern Ocean. In the Seas of *Japan* and *China* they begin at West, and go over all the Points of the Compass in 24 Hours. This makes Voyages from the *East-Indies* to *Japan* extreamly dangerous; so that they reckon it a prosperous Voyage if one Ship in three returns safe. These Winds have prodigious Effects, pull up Trees by the Roots, overturn Houses, and throw huge Ships quite out of the Water a great way into the Land. *Varenius* thinks, the Cause of these Whirlwinds and Hurricanes to be a Wind which breaks out with great Violence from some Quarter, and meeting with a Stop, is whirl'd round into it self, as we see Water in a Whirlpool; or that they proceed from opposite Winds, which blow fiercely at one and the same time.

Prop. 13. He thinks that Wind may proceed from the Earth and Water: For since there are Cavities in both, with Spirits and Sulphureous Substances, he sees no Reason why we may not think, that strong Blasts of Wind are generated there; that is to say, if it be hinder'd from coming out by Degrees as it generates, or if so much be generated at once as is sufficient to form a Wind. Thus when Wind is stop'd in the Bowels of the Earth, it occasions Earthquakes; and the same is the Occasion of Smoak's rising frequently out of the Sea in fore-

Digitized by Google

ſeveral Places of the World: But he owns, he never read of any Winds breaking out of the Sea.

Prop. 14. Upon the Queſtion, Whether Wind riſes from the Flux of the Sea and Rivers? He ſays, 'tis plain from Experience, That when the Sea flows and ebbs, if the Air be free from other ſtronger Winds, there's generally a Wind from the Sea with a Tide of Flood: Therefore he thinks 'tis probable that the Air, becauſe of its Contiguity, is carried towards the ſame Quarter with the Water; or, he thinks, the Air may be thruſt from its Place by the flowing Water; for the Air is mov'd with a very ſmall Impreſſion.

Prop. 15. He gives the Reaſon why *Ignes-fatui*, *Caſtor*, *Pollux*, and *Helena*, are perceiv'd during Tempeſts. The *Portugueſe* call 'em *Corpo Santo*; the *Spaniards*, St. *Elmo*. Many of them are ſometimes ſeen moving about the Maſts of Ships, with a wandering and uncertain Motion, like other *Ignes-fatui*; tho' at other times they reſt upon the Maſts and Sails, and give a faint Light, like a Candle that burns dark. If 5 of them be ſeen together, the *Portugueſe* call them, *Our Lady's Crown*, and take them as a certain Token that the Tempeſt will immediately ceaſe. The Cauſe of theſe Fires he thinks to be a Sulphureous Bituminous Matter, thruſt downward by the great Motion of the Air, and being gather'd together, is ſet on fire by the Agitation and coming together of the Particles.

Prop. 16. He thinks the Cauſe of the frequent and long Calms in the Sea near *Guinea*, and under the Equator in the *Atlantic*, eſpecially in *April*, *May* and *June*, to be, that there's no Snow upon the Mountains in thoſe Parts, which, by its Diſſolution, may generate Winds.

SECT. XXIV.

HEre 'tis fit to add what Mr. *Edmund Halley* ſays, in his *Hiſtorical Account of the Trade Winds and Monſoons obſervable in the Seas between and near the Tropics; with an Attempt to aſſign the Phyſical Cauſe of the ſaid Winds.*

He ſays, This is a Part of Natural Hiſtory, no leſs deſirable and uſeful, than hard to obtain: That *Varenius*'s Account of it is not accurate, but full of Miſtakes, which he will endeavour to rectify, from the Accounts of experienc'd Sailors, and his own Obſervations whilſt he liv'd between the Tropics.

The Subſtance of what he had collected, is briefly as follows:

The Univerſal Ocean may moſt properly be divided into 3 Parts, *viz.* 1. The *Atlantic* and *Ethiopic* Sea. 2. The *Indian* Ocean. 3. The great South Sea, or the *Pacifick* Ocean. And tho' theſe Seas do all communicate by the South yet, as to our preſent Purpoſe of the Trade-Winds, they are ſufficiently ſeparated by the Interpoſition of great Tracts of Land; the firſt lying between *Africa* and *America*; the ſecond between *Africa* and the *Indian* Iſlands, and *Hollandia Nova*; and the laſt between the *Philippine* Iſles, *China*, *Japan*, and *Hollandia Nova*, on the Weſt, and the Coaſt of *America* on the Eaſt. Now following this Natural Diviſion of the Seas, ſo will we divide our Hiſtory into 3 Parts in the ſame Order.

I. In the *Atlantic* and *Ethiopic* Seas, between the Tropics, there is a general Eaſterly Wind all the Year long, without any conſiderable Variation, excepting that it is ſubject to be deflected there from ſome few Points of the Compaſs towards the North or South, according to the Poſition of the Place. The Obſervations which have been made of theſe Deflections are the following:

1. That near the Coaſt of *Africa*, as ſoon as you have paſs'd the *Canary* Iſles, you are ſure to meet a freſh Gale of N. E. Wind, about the Latitude of 28 Degrees North, which ſeldom comes to the Eaſtward of the E. N. E or paſſes the N. N. E. This Wind accompanies thoſe bound to the Southward to the Latitude of 10 North, and about 100 Leagues from the *Guinea* Coaſt, where, till the 4th Degree of North Latitude, they fall into the Calms and Tornado's: Of which more hereafter.

2. That thoſe bound to the *Caribbe* Iſles, find, as they approach the *American* Side, that the aforeſaid N. E. Wind becomes ſtill more and more Eaſterly, ſo as ſometimes to be E. ſometimes E. by S. but yet moſt commonly to the Northward of the Eaſt a Point or two, ſeldom more. 'Tis likewiſe obſerv'd, That the Strength of theſe Winds does

Digitized by Google

does gradually decreaſe as you ſail to the Weſtward.

3. That the Limits of the Trade and variable Winds in this Ocean are farther extended on the *American* Side than the *African*; for whereas you meet not with this certain Wind till after you have paſs'd the Latitude of 28 Deg. on this Side, on the *American* Side it commonly holds to 30, 31, or 32 Degrees of Latitude: And this is verified likewiſe to the Southward of the Equinoctial; for near the Cape of *Good Hope*, the Limits of the Trade-Winds are 3 or 4 Degrees nearer the Line than on the Coaſt of *Braſile*.

4. That from the Latitude of 4 Degrees North, to the aforeſaid Limits on the South of the Equator, the Winds are generally and perpetually between the S. and E. and moſt commonly between the S. E. and E. obſerving always this Rule, That on the *African Side* they are more Southerly, on the *Braſilian* more Eaſterly, ſo as to become almoſt due Eaſt; the little Reflection they have being ſtill to the Southward. In this Part of the Ocean it has been my Fortune to paſs a full Year, in an Employment that oblig'd me to regard more than ordinary the Weather, and I found the Winds conſtantly about the S. E. the moſt uſual Point S. E. by E. When it was Eaſterly, it generally blew hard, and was gloomy, dark, and ſometimes rainy Weather: If it came to the Southward, it was generally ſerene, and a ſmall Gale next to a Calm; but this not very common: But I never ſaw it to the Weſtward of the South, or Northward of the Eaſt.

5. That the Seaſon of the Year has ſome ſmall Effect on theſe Trade-Winds; for that when the Sun is conſiderable to the Northward of the Equator, the S. E. Winds, eſpecially in the Streight of this Ocean, (if I may ſo call it) between *Braſile* and the Coaſt of *Guinea*, do vary a Point or two to the Southward, and the N. E. become more Eaſterly: And on the contrary, when the Sun is towards the Tropic of *Capricorn*, the South-Eaſterly Winds become more Eaſterly, and the North-Eaſterly Winds on this Side the Line vere more to the Northward.

6. That as there is no general Rule that admits not of ſome Exception, ſo there is in this Ocean a Tract of Sea wherein the Southerly and S. W. Winds are perpetual, *viz.* all along the Coaſt of *Guinea*, for above 500 Leagues together, from *Sierra Leona* to the Iſle of St. *Thomas*; for the S. E. Trade-Wind having paſs'd the Line, and approaching the Coaſt of *Guinea* within 80 or 100 Leagues, inclines towards the Shore, and becomes S. S. E. and by degrees, as you come nearer, it veres about to S. S. W. and in with the Land S. W. and ſometimes W. S. W. which Variation is better expreſs'd in the Map hereto annex'd, (*Vide Map*) than it can well be in Words. Theſe are the Winds which are obſerv'd on this Coaſt when it blows true; but there are frequent Calms, violent ſudden Guſts call'd *Tornado's*, from all Points of the Compaſs, and ſometimes unwholeſome foggy Eaſterly Winds, call'd *Hermitan* by the Natives, which too often infeſt the Navigation of theſe Parts.

7. That to the Northward of the Line, between 4 and 10 Degrees of Latitude, and between the Meridians of Cape *Verde* and of the Eaſtermoſt Iſlands that bear that Name, there is a Tract of Sea wherein it were improper to ſay there is any Trade-Wind, or yet a variable; for it ſeems condemned to perpetual Calms, attended with terrible Thunder and Lightning, and Rains ſo frequent, that our Navigators from thence call this Part of the Sea the Rains: The little Winds that are, be only ſome ſudden uncertain Guſts, of very little Continuance, and leſs Extent; ſo that ſometimes each Hour you ſhall have a different Gale, which dies away into a Calm before another ſucceed; and in a Fleet of Ships in ſight of one another, each ſhall have the Wind from a ſeveral Point of the Compaſs. With theſe weak Breezes, Ships are oblig'd to make the beſt of their Way to the Southward thro' the aforeſaid 6 Degrees, wherein 'tis reported ſome have been detained whole Months for want of Wind.

From the 3 laſt Obſervables, is ſhewn the Reaſon of two notable Occurrents in the *Eaſt-India* and *Guinea* Navigations: The one is, why notwithſtanding the narroweſt Part of the Sea between *Guinea* and *Braſile* be about 500 Leagues over, yet Ships bound to the Southward ſometimes, eſpecially in the Months of *July* and *Auguſt*, find a great Difficulty to paſs it. This happens becauſe of

Digitized by Google

of the S. E. Winds, at that time of the Year commonly extending ſome Degrees beyond the ordinary Limit of 4 Degrees North Latitude; and withal, they come ſo much Southerly, as to be ſometimes South, ſometimes a Point or two to the Weſt: There remains then only to ply to Windward; and if on the one Side they ſtand away W. S. W. they gain the Wind ſtill more and more Eaſterly; but there is Danger of not weathering the *Braſilian* Shore, or at leaſt the Shoals upon that Coaſt. But if upon the other Tack they go away E. S. E. they fall into the Neighbourhood of the Coaſt of *Guinea*, from which there is no departing, without running Eaſterly as far as the Iſle of St. *Thomas*, which is the conſtant Practice of all the *Guinea* Ships, and which may ſeem very ſtrange without the Conſideration of the 6th Remark, which ſhews the Reaſon of it: For being in with the Coaſt, the Wind blows generally at S. W. and W. S. W. with which Winds they cannot go to the Northward for the Land; and on the other Tack they can lie no nearer the Wind than S. S. E. or S. With theſe Courſes they run off the Shore; but in ſo doing they always find the Winds more and more contrary: So that when near the Shore they could lie South, at a greater Diſtance they can make their Way no better than S. E. and afterwards E. S. E. with which Courſes they fetch commonly the Iſle of *St. Thomas* and Cape *Lopez*, where, finding the Winds to the Eaſtward of the South, they keep them favourable, by running away to the Weſtward in the South Latitude of 3 or 4 Degrees, where the S. E. Winds are perpetual.

For the Sake of theſe General Winds, all thoſe that uſe the *Weſt-Indian* Trade, even thoſe bound to *Virginia*, count in their beſt Courſe to get as ſoon as they can to the Southward, that ſo they may be certain of a fair and freſh Gale to run before it to the Weſtward: And for the ſame Reaſon, thoſe homeward-bound from *America* endeavour to gain the Latitude of 30 Degrees as ſoon as poſſible, where they firſt find the Winds begin to be variable; tho' the moſt ordinary Winds in the Northern Part of the *Atlantic* Ocean come from between the S. and W.

As to thoſe furious Storms call'd Hurricanes, which are, as it were, peculiar to the *Caribbe* Iſles, and which ſo dreadfully afflict them in the Month of *Auguſt*, or not much before or after, they do not ſo properly belong to this Place, both by reaſon of their ſmall Continuance and Extent, as likewiſe becauſe they are not Anniverſary; ſome Years having more than one, and ſometimes, for ſeveral Years together, there being none at all. But their Violence is ſo unconceivable, and their other *Phænomena* ſo ſurpriſing, that they merit well to be conſider'd apart.

What is here ſaid, is to be underſtood of the Sea-Winds at ſome Diſtance from the Land; for upon and near the Shores, the Land and Sea Breezes are almoſt every where ſenſible; and the great Variety which happens in their Periods, Force and Direction, from the Situation of the Mountains, Vallies and Woods, and from the various Texture of the Soil, more or leſs capable of retaining and reflecting Heat, and of exhaling or condenſing Vapours, is ſuch, that it were an endleſs Task to endeavour to account for them.

II. In the *Indian* Ocean, the Winds are partly General, as in the *Ethiopic* Ocean partly Periodical; that is, half the Year they blow one Way, and the other half near upon the oppoſite Points; and theſe Points, and Times of Shifting, are different in different Parts of this Ocean: The Limits of each Tract of Sea, ſubject to the ſame Change or Monſoon, are certainly very hard to determine; but the Diligence I have us'd to be rightly inform'd, and the Care I have taken therein, has, in a great Meaſure, ſurmounted that Difficulty; and I am perſwaded, that the following Particulars may be rely'd upon.

1. That between the Latitudes of 10 Degrees and 30 Degrees South, between *Madagaſcar* and *Hollandia Nova*, the General Trade-Wind about the S. E. by E. is found to blow all the Year long, to all Intents and Purpoſes, after the ſame Manner as in the ſame Latitudes in the *Ethiopic* Ocean, as it is deſcrib'd in the 4th Remark aforegoing.

2. That the aforeſaid S. E. Winds extend to within two Degrees of the Equator, during the Months of *June*, *July*, *Auguſt*, &c. to *November*; at which Time, between the South Latitudes of 3 and 10 Degrees, being near the Meridian of the North-end of *Madagaſcar*, and between 2 and 12 South Latitude,

Digitized by Google

tude, being near *Sumatra* and *Java*, the contrary Winds from the N. W. or between the N. and W. set in and blew for half a Year, *viz.* from the Beginning of *December* till *May*: And this Monsoon is observed as far as the *Molucca* Isles; of which more anon.

3. That to the Northward of 3 Degrees South Latitude, over the whole *Arabian* or *Indian* Sea, and Gulph of *Bengal*, from *Sumatra* to the Coast of *Africa*, there is another Monsoon, blowing from *October* to *April* upon the N. E. Points; but in the other half Year, from *April* to *October*, upon the opposite Points of S. W. and W. S. W. and that with rather more Force than the other, accompanied with dark rainy Weather; whereas the N. E. blows clear. 'Tis likewise to be noted, That the Winds are not so constant, either in Strength or Point, in the Gulph of *Bengal*, as they are in the *Indian Sea*, where a certain and steady Gale scarce ever fails. 'Tis also remarkable, That the S. W. Winds in these Seas are generally more Southerly on the *African* Side, more Westerly on the *Indian*.

4. That as an Appendix to the last described Monsoon, there is a Trade of Sea to the Southward of the Equator, subject to the same Changes of the Wind, viz. near the *African* Coast, between it and the Island *Madagascar* or *St. Lawrence*, and from thence Northward as far as the Line. Likewise, from *April* to *October*, there is found a constant fresh S. S. W. Wind, which, as you go more Northerly, becomes still more and more Westerly, so as to fall in with the W. S. W. Winds, mention'd before in those Months of the Year to be certain to the Northward of the Equator. What Winds blow in these Seas for the other half Year, from *October* to *April*, I have not yet been able to obtain to my full Satisfaction; for that our Navigators always return from *India* without *Madagascar*, and so are little acquainted in this Matter. The Account that has been given me is only this, That the Winds are much Easterly hereabouts, and as often to the North of the true East, as to the Southward thereof.

5. That to the Eastward of *Sumatra* and *Malacca*, to the Northward of the Line, and along the Coast of *Cambaia* and *China*, the Monsoons blow North and South, that is to say, the N. E. Winds are much Northerly, and the S. W. much Southerly. This Constitution reaches to the Eastward of the *Philippine* Isles, and as far Northerly as *Japan*; the Northern Monsoon setting in, in these Seas, in *October* and *November*, and the Southern in *May*, blowing all the Summer Months. Here it is to be noted, That the Points of the Compass, from whence the Wind comes in these Parts of the World, are not so fix'd as in those lately describ'd; for the Southerly will frequently pass a Point or two to the Eastward of the South, and the Northerly as much to the Westward of the North; which seems occasion'd by the great Quantity of Land which is interspers'd in these Seas.

6. That in the same Meridian, but to the Southward of the Equator, being that Tract lying between *Sumatra* and *Java* to the West, and *New Guinea* to the East, the same Northerly Monsoons are observ'd, but with this Difference, That the Inclination of the Northerly is towards the N. W. and of the Southerly towards the S. E. but the *Plage Venti* are not more constant here than in the former, *viz.* variable 5 or 6 Points: Besides, the Times of the Change of these Winds are not the same as in the *Chinese* Seas, but about a Month or 6 Weeks later.

7. That these contrary Winds do not shift all at once; but in some Places the Time of the Change is attended with Calms, in others with variable Winds: And it is particularly remarkable, That the End of the Westerly Monsoon on the Coast of *Coromandel*, and the two last Months of the Southerly Monsoon in the Seas of *China*, are very subject to be Tempestuous. The Violence of these Storms is such, that they seem to be of the Nature of the *West-India* Hurricanes, and render the Navigation of these Parts very unsafe about that Time of the Year. These Tempests are by our Seamen usually term'd, *The Breaking up of the Monsoons*.

By reason of the shifting of these Winds, all those that sail in these Seas, are oblig'd to observe the Seasons proper for their Voyages; and so doing, they sail not of a fair Wind, and speedy Passage: But if so be they chance to out-stay their Time till the contrary Monsoon set in, as it frequently happens, they are forc'd to give over the

Digitized by Google

Hopes of accomplishing their intended Voyages, and either return to the Port from whence they came, or else put into some other Harbour; there to spend the Time till the Wind shall become favourable.

III. The 3d Ocean, call'd *Mare Pacificum*, whose Extent is equal to that of the other Two, (it being from the West Coast of *America* to the *Philippine* Islands not less than 150 Degrees of Longitude) is that which is least known to our own or the neighbour Nations: That Navigation that there is on it, is by the *Spaniards*, who go Yearly from the Coast of *New Spain* to the *Manilha's*, but that but by one beaten Track; so that I cannot be so particular here, as in the other Two. What the *Spanish* Authors say of the Winds, they find in their Courses; and what is confirm'd by the old Accounts of *Drake* and *Candish*, and since by *Schouten*, who sail'd the whole Breadth of this Sea in the Southern Latitude of 15 or 16 Degrees, is, That there is a great Conformity between the Winds of this Sea, and those of the *Atlantic* and *Ethiopic*; that is to say, That to the Northward of the Equator, the predominant Wind is between the E. and N. E. and to the Southward thereof there is a constant steady Gale between the E. and S. E. and that on both Sides the Line with so much Constancy, that they scarce ever need to attend the Sails; and Strength, that 'tis rare to fail of crossing this vast Ocean in 20 Weeks time, which is about 130 Miles *per Diem*. Besides, 'tis said, That Storms and Tempests are never known in these Parts; so that here is the very best of Sailing, no Want of a fresh fair Wind, and yet no Danger of having too much; Wherefore some have thought it might be as short a Voyage to *Japan* and *China*, to go by the Streights of *Magellan*, as by the Cape of *Good Hope*.

The Limits of these General Winds are also much the same as in the *Atlantic* Sea, *viz.* about the 30th Degree of Latitude on both Sides; for the *Spaniards* homeward-bound from the *Manilha's*, always take the Advantage of the Southerly Monsoon, blowing in there in the Summer Months, and run up to the Northward of that Latitude, as high as *Japan*, before they meet with variable Winds, to shape their Course to the Eastward. And *Schouten* and others, that have gone about by the *Magellan* Streights, have found the Limits of S. E. Winds much about the same Latitude to the Southward. Besides, a farther Analogy between the Winds of this Ocean, and the *Ethiopic*, appears in that upon the Coast of *Peru*, they are always much Southerly, like as they are found near the Shores of *Angola*.

Thus far Matter of Fact, wherein if the Information I have receiv'd be not in all Parts accurate, it has not been for want of Enquiry from those I conceiv'd best able to instruct me; and I shall take it for a very great Kindness if any Master of a Ship, or other Person, well inform'd of the Nature of the Winds in any of the aforemention'd Parts of the World, shall please to communicate their Observations thereupon; so that what I have here collected, may be either confirm'd or amended, or, by the Addition of some material Circumstances, enlarged. 'Tis not the Work of one, nor of few, but of a multitude of Observers, to bring together the Experiments requisite to compose a perfect and compleat History of these Winds. However, I am not much doubtful that I have err'd in, or omitted, any of the principle Observables, whatever lesser Particles may have escap'd my Knowledge.

To help the Conception of the Reader in a Matter of so much Difficulty, I believ'd it necessary to adjoin a Scheme, shewing at one View all the various Tracts and Courses of these Winds; whereby 'tis possible the Thing may be better understood, than by any Verbal Description whatsoever.

The Limits of these several Tracts are design'd every where by prick'd Lines, as well in the *Atlantic* and *Ethiopic*, where they are the Boundaries of the Trade and variable Winds, as in the *Indian* Ocean, where they also shew the Extent of the several Monsoons. I could think of no better Way to design the Course of the Winds on the Map, than by drawing Rows of Strokes in the same Line that a Ship would move, going always before it; the sharp End of each little Stoke pointing out that Part of the Horizon, from whence the Wind continually comes: And where there are Monsoons, the Rows of the Strokes run alternately backward and forward; by which Means

Digitized by Google

Means they are thicker there than elsewhere. As to the great South Sea, considering its vast Extent, and the little Variety there is in its Winds, and the great Analogy between them and those of the *Atlantic* and *Ethiopic* Ocean; besides that the greatest Part thereof is wholly unknown to us; I thought it unnecessary to lengthen the Map therewith.

In the foregoing History are contain'd several Problems, that merit well the Consideration of our acutest Naturalists, both by reason of the Constancy of the Effect, and of the immense Extent thereof; near half the Surface of the Globe being concern'd. The chief of these Problems are, 1. Why these Winds are perpetually from the E. in the *Atlantic* and *Ethiopic*, as likewise in the *Pacific* Ocean, between the Latitudes of 30 N. and 30 S? 2. Why the said Winds extend *no farther* with Constancy than to the Latitudes of 30 Degrees? 3. Why there should be a constant South-Westerly Wind upon and near the Coast of *Guinea*? 4. Why in the North Part of the *Indian* Ocean the Winds, which for one half Year do agree with those of the other two Oceans, should change in the other half Year, and blow from the opposite Points, whilst the Southern Part of that Ocean follows the General Rule, and has perpetual Winds about S. E? 5. Why in these General Trade-Winds it should be always true, That to the Northward of the Equator, it is inclined to the Northward of the East; and in South Latitudes, to the Southward thereof? 6. Why in these Seas of *China*, there should be so great an Inclination from the E. to the N. more than elsewhere? With many more, which it would be much easier to propose, than answer.

But lest I should seem to propose to others, Difficulties which I have not thought worth my own Time and Pains, take here the Result of an earnest Endeavour after the true Reason of the aforesaid *Phænomena*: wherein if I am not able to account for all Particulars, yet 'tis hoped, the Thoughts I have spent thereon will not be judged wholly lost by the Curious in Natural Enquiries.

Wind is most properly defin'd to be the Stream or Current of the Air: and where such a Current is perpetual and fix'd in its Course, 'tis necessary that it proceed from a permanent unintermitting Cause. Wherefore some have been inclin'd to propose the Diurnal Rotation of the Earth upon its Axis, by which, as the Globe turns Eastward, the loose and fluid Particles of the Air, being so exceeding light as they be, are left behind; so that in respect of the Earth's Surface, they move Westward, and become a constant Easterly Wind. This Opinion seems confirmed; for that these Winds are found only near the Equinoctial, in those Parallels of Latitude where the Diurnal Motion is swiftest; and I should readily assent to it, if the constant Calms in the *Atlantic* Sea near the Equator, the Westerly Winds near the Coast of *Guinea*, and the Periodical Westerly Monsoons under the Equator in the *Indian* Seas, did not declare the Insufficiency of that Hypothesis. Besides, the Air being kept to the Earth by the Principle of Gravity, would acquire the same Degree of Velocity that the Earth's Surface moves with, as well in respect of the Diurnal Rotation, as of the Annual about the Sun, which is about three times swifter.

It remains therefore to substitute some other Cause, capable of producing a like constant Effect, not liable to the same Objections, but agreeable to the known Properties of the Elements of Air and Water, and the Laws of the Motion of fluid Bodies. Such an one is, I conceive, the Action of the Sun-Beams upon the Air and Water, as he passes every Day over the Oceans, consider'd together with the Nature of the Soil, and Situation of the adjoining Continents. I say therefore, 1. That, according to the Laws of Statics, the Air, which is less rarified, or expanded by the Heat, and consequently more Ponderous, must have a Motion towards those Parts thereof which are more rarified, and less Ponderous, to bring it to an *Equilibrium*: And, 2. That the Presence of the Sun continually shifting to the Westward, that Part towards which the Air tends, by reason of the Rarification made by his greatest Meridian Heat, is with him carried Westward; and consequently the Tendency of the whole Body of the lower Air is that Way.

Thus a General Easterly Wind is form'd, which being impress'd upon all the Air of a vast Ocean, the Parts impel one the other,

Digitized by Google

and so keep moving till the next Return of the Sun, whereby so much of the Motion as was lost, is again restor'd; and thus the Easterly Wind is made perpetual.

From the same Principle it follows, That this Easterly Wind should, on the North Side of the Equator, be to the Northward of the East, and in South Latitudes to the Southward thereof; for near the Line, the Air is much more rarified than at a greater Distance from it, because of the Sun twice in a Year vertical, and at no Time distant above 23 Deg. and a half; at which Distance the Heat, being as the Sine of the Angle of Incidence, is but little short of that of the perpendicular Ray. Whereas under the Tropics, tho' the Sun stays long vertical, yet he is as long 47 Deg. off; which is a kind of Winter, wherein the Air so cools, as that the Summer-Heat cannot warm it to the same Degree with that under the Equator. Wherefore the Air to the Northward and Southward being less rarified than that in the middle, it follows, that from both Sides it ought to tend towards the Equator: This Motion, compounded with the former Easterly Wind, answers all the *Phenomena* of the General Trade-Winds; which if the whole Surface of the Globe were Sea, would undoubtedly blow all round the World, as they are found to do in the *Atlantic* and *Ethiopic* Oceans.

But seeing that so great Continents do interpose and break the Continuity of the Oceans, Regard must be had to the Nature of the Soil, and the Position of the high Mountains, which I suppose are the two principal Causes of the several Variations of the Winds, from the former General Rule: For if a Country lying near the Sun prove to be flat, sandy, low Land, such as the Deserts of *Lybia* are usually reported to be, the Heat, occasion'd by the Reflexion of the Sun's Beams, and the Retention thereof in the Sand, is incredible to those that have not felt it; whereby the Air being exceedingly rarified, it is necessary that the cooler and more dense Air should run thitherwards to restore the *Equilibrium*. This I take to be the Cause why, near the Coast of *Guinea*, the Wind always sets in upon the Land, blowing Westerly instead of Easterly; there being sufficient Reason to believe, that the inland Parts of *Africa* are prodigiously hot, since the Northern Borders thereof were so intemperate, as to give the Ancients Cause to conclude, That all beyond the Tropic was made inhabitable by Excess of Heat: From the same Cause it happens, that there are so constant Calms in that Part of the Ocean call'd the *Raines*, (describ'd in the 7th Remark on the *Atlantic* Sea:) For this Tract being plac'd in the middle, between the Westerly Winds blowing on the Coast of *Guinea*, and the Easterly Trade-Winds blowing to the Westward thereof, the Tendency of the Air here is indifferent to either, and so stands in *Equilibrio* between both; and the Weight of the incumbent Atmosphere being diminish'd by the continual contrary Winds blowing from hence, is the Reason that the Air here holds not the copious Vapour it receives, but lets it fall into frequent Rains.

But as the cool and dense Air, by reason of its greater Gravity presses upon the hot and rarified, 'tis demonstrative, that this latter must ascend in a continued Stream as fast as it rarifies; and that being ascended, it must disperse it self to preserve the *Equilibrium*; that is, by a contrary Current, the upper Air must move from those Parts where the greatest Heat is: So by a kind of Circulation, the N. E. Trade-Wind below will be attended with a South-Westerly above, and the South-Easterly with a N. W. Wind above. That this is more than a bare Conjecture, the almost instantaneous Change of the Wind to the opposite Point, which is frequently found in passing the Limits of the Trade-Winds, seems to assure us. But that which above all confirms this Hypothesis, is the *Phenomenon* of the Monsoons, by this Means most easily solv'd, and without it hardly explicable.

Supposing therefore such a Circulation as above, 'tis to be consider'd, That to the Northward of the *Indian* Ocean, there is every where Land within the usual Limit of the Latitude of 30, *viz. Arabia, Persia, India, &c.* which for the same Reason as the *Mediterranean* Parts of *Africa* are subject to unsufferable Heats when the Sun is to the North, passing nearly vertical; but yet are temperate enough when the Sun is remov'd towards the other Tropic, because of a Ridge of Mountains at some Distance within the Land, said to be frequently in

Winter

Winter cover'd with Snow; over which the Air, as it passes, must needs be much chill'd. Hence it comes to pass, That the Air coming according to the general Rule, out of the N. E. in the *Indian* Seas, is sometimes hotter, sometimes colder, than that which by this Circulation is return'd out of the S. W. And by Consequence, sometimes the under Current of the Wind is from the N. E. sometimes from the S. W.

That this has no other Cause, is clear from the Times wherein these Winds set in, *viz.* in *April*, when the Sun begins to warm those Countries to the North, the S. W. Monsoon begins, and blows during the Heats till *October*; when the Sun being retired, and all Things growing cooler Northward, and the Heat encreasing to the South, the N. E. Winds enter, and blow all the Winter, till *April* again. And it is undoubtedly from the same Principle, That to the Southward of the Equator, in Part of the *Indian* Ocean, the N. W. Winds succeed the S. E. when the Sun draws near the Tropic of *Capricorn*: But I must confess, That in this latter occurs a Difficulty, not well to be accounted for, which is why this Change of the Monsoon should be any more in this Ocean than in the same Latitude in the *Ethiopic*, where there is nothing more certain than a S. E. Wind all the Year.

'Tis likewise very hard to conceive, why the Limits of the Trade-Wind should be fix'd about the 30th Degree of Latitude all round the Globe, and that they should so seldom transgress or fall short of those Bounds: As also, That in the *Indian* Sea, only the Northern Part should be subject to the changeable Monsoons, and in the Southern there be a constant S. E.

These are Particulars that merit to be consider'd more at large, and furnish a sufficient Subject for a just Volume, which will be a very commendable Task for such, who, being us'd to Philosophical Contemplations, shall have Leisure to apply their serious Thoughts about it.

SECT. XXV.

An Account of Meteors, from Monsieur Bion's *Use of the* Globes; *approv'd by Monsieur* de la Hire, *the* French *King's Professor of Mathematicks, and one of the Royal Academy of Sciences.*

Of DEW.

DEW is occasion'd thus: The Cold which is upon the Surface of the Earth during the Winter, covers it on all Parts, and concenters the Heat in low and subterraneous Places; and in the Spring, the Cold being abated, and the Pores of the Earth open, it has a Sort of Sweat or Perspiration: From whence it is, That many Vapours must then of Necessity flie up into the Air; and the Nights of that Season being still cold, condense those Vapours and Exhalations that are rais'd by Day, and change them to a very small and insensible Rain, of a short Continuance, that falls early in the Morning, and is found in Drops of Water like Pearl upon the Tops of Herbs and Flowers. But the Exhalations which are easily rais'd with those Vapours, are more subtile, and less corrosive: Whence it is, that they make a very healthful Water upon the Tops of tender and blooming Flowers, which is indeed so very healthful, that it is gather'd to be made use of on many Occasions.

Of MISTS, *or* FOGS.

The Mists in Winter are form'd of Vapours rais'd in that Season, and condens'd by the Cold in the lower Region of the Air: Whence it comes, That tho' fewer Vapours are then rais'd than in other Seasons, we have yet more frequent Mists.

Mists in Summer are partly form'd of Vapours, and partly of Exhalations, rais'd in the Day-time by the Heat of the Season; and because the Mist, by reason of the Grossness

Groſſneſs and Weight of the Exhalations, cannot eaſily mount to the higher Region, where the Air is more ſubtile; and ſo the Coldneſs of the Night condenſes thoſe Exhalations and Vapours, which in the Morning appear to be Miſts. But the Air which has been cool'd in the Night, and but little warm'd by the Morning-Sun, has then only a ſmall Heat; which if it have Force enough to raiſe the Fog, then we have either bad Weather, or many Clouds: But if the Morning Sun cannot draw it up, the Miſt falls down again upon the Earth by its natural Gravity, and is a Sign of fair Weather.

Of MILDEW.

This is a kind of Fog that happens in the middle of Summer, when, by the Heat of the Seaſon, many corroſive Exhalations are rais'd with the Vapours; which falling upon the growing Corn, blaſts and ſcorches it, eſpecially if heated by the Sun, which makes them ſtill more corroding. Therefore skilful Countrymen kindle great Fires of Straw on that Side of their Corn from whence the Winds blow, to protect it from the Mildew.

Of FROST *and* ICE.

Froſt comes from a violent North Wind that brings a colder Air with it than what we had, which, by the Violence of that Wind, only glances upon the Surface of the Earth: It ſtops the Motion of the ſmall Particles of the Earth and Water, and by this Means hardens and condenſes them. Ice comes from the ſame Cauſe, but with this Difference, That the Air which the Wind brings from the North is very cold; and it being the ſame in the Place where it comes, thoſe two concurring Winds freeze the Water.

Of CLOUDS.

They are form'd when Vapours being drawn up into the Air from all Parts, their Motion is leſſen'd, and their Parts come nearer together, and reaching the middle Region of the Air, they become more united, and form thoſe Clouds which we ſee move in the Air when driven by Winds.

Of RAIN.

Rain comes from Clouds driven from one Point of the Air to another more cold, or from Vapours elevated from the lower to the middle Region of the Air, which is more cold: Theſe Clouds being condens'd by this Cold, turn to Water, which, by its Gravity, falls to the Earth in ſmall Parcels call'd Drops, form'd by the Agitation of the Air. Hence it is, That Rain for moſt part follows a South, but ſeldom a North Wind; tho', from particular Cauſes, it may happen, that the Air is more warm ſometimes in a more Northern, than in a more Southerly Place. In *France*, they have ſeldom Rain when the Wind is in the Eaſt, but frequently when in the Weſt; becauſe the Sea is on that Quarter, from whence a great Quantity of Vapours ariſe, which form Clouds, and are brought into *France* by that Wind.

Rain is alſo form'd from Clouds elevated to the middle Region of the Air, which is more cold than ordinary at ſome times. Hence it is, that thoſe Vapours are haſtily condens'd as they riſe, and before the other Vapours can arrive there. Thus they form little Clouds heap'd one upon another, that makes the Sky look as if it were curdl'd. This ſhews, that Vapours are riſing from the Earth; that the middle Region is more cold than ordinary, and preſages Rain. When that Part of the Horizon where the Sun riſes or ſets is of a pale or yellowiſh Colour, it ſhews, that there are many Vapours in the Air, and foretels bad Weather: But when the ſame Parts of the Horizon are of a bright Red, there are few Vapours in the Air, and thoſe very ſubtile; the Rays of the Sun coming then to us Horizontally, they meet the better with thoſe few ſubtile Vapours and Exhalations, which denotes a Continuation of good Weather, eſpecially if the Wind in the South or Weſt Points has not begun to blow.

Of

Digitized by Google

Of SNOW.

Snow comes from this, That in the Winter, the Regions of the Air are altogether cold, and the Clouds meeting that great Cold every where, paſs very ſoon from that Degree of Condenſation which is requiſite to change them to Rain, to that which is neceſſary to change them to Ice; ſo that in Winter, as ſoon as the Clouds begin to change into Rain, the ſmall Particles of Water immediately freeze, and turn to Snow, which touching upon one another, make Flakes; and having ſmall Intervals, like ſo many Pores, are therefore very light.

All theſe Flakes continuing for moſt part together, have ſtill Intervals betwixt one another, and together form a Cloud, which, tho' it appear thick, yet, becauſe of thoſe *ſmall Intervals*, is eaſily carried about: Therefore thoſe Flakes take ſome Time before they fall to the Ground.

The Snow is not chang'd into a ſenſible Body of Ice during that Time, becauſe when it is once form'd, the ſmall Intervals, which are only fill'd with a ſubtile Air, hinder it to be chang'd into any other Form.

It falls when the Wind divides its Flakes into other ſmaller ones, which then fall to the Ground, not ſo much by their Gravity, which is very little, but becauſe they are driven towards the Ground by the Air of the middle Region, which is repelled it ſelf by the Wind which blows beneath the Cloud.

And as the ſmall Particles of the Ice that compoſe theſe Flakes are hard, ſolid, tranſparent, and all of different Figures and Poſitions, they reflect the Light from every Part, ſo appear white, juſt like white Sand, which is only a Heap of little tranſparent Bodies, as we perceive by the Microſcope; but with this Difference, That Snow being form'd of Vapours, and having no Mixture of Earthy Parts; therefore it is of a very bright White.

If it happen that the Coldneſs of the Air that form'd the Snow be abated, then ſome of the Flakes melt, and dividing thoſe that are not melted, inſinuate ſome Water into the Intervals, which freezing, they become heavier; then both the Snow which is melted, and that which is not, fall: And thus it both ſnows and rains at the ſame time.

Of HAIL.

Hail is form'd under the Clouds, thus: The Air of the middle Region is very cold in Summer, and in the temperate Seaſons; and when that Air is under a great and thick Cloud, which deprives it of the Rays of the Sun, by this means it grows cold to a great degree. Hence it is, That if that Cloud fall down in Rain, it neceſſarily happens, that the Drops of Water, as they paſs thro' the cold Air under that Cloud, muſt freeze, and fall down in little Particles of Ice, much of the Figure and Greatneſs with the Drops of Rain.

Of THUNDER.

Thunder is form'd of Exhalations, which are rais'd in great Abundance by the Heat of Summer. Theſe Exhalations cannot be rais'd, eſpecially in that Seaſon, but their Particles muſt receive agitation, and begin to grow warm; ſo that being in the middle Region, among the Vapours which are there chang'd into Clouds, theſe Exhalations being mix'd with them, diſperſe the Vapours hither and thither, and gathering together in the Center of the Clouds, they continually grow more and more hot, to that degree, that they ſwell thoſe Clouds; and if other Clouds beat againſt them, they burſt out with great Force: And this is always followed by a great Noiſe, and with Lightning, which appears to us before the Noiſe; becauſe Light, being more ſubtile than the Air which occaſions our Hearing, reaches our Eyes ſooner than that does our Ears.

The Continuation and Repetition of the Noiſe of Thunder is from a ſort of Echo in the Clouds. Sometimes we ſee Lightning without Thunder, becauſe that Cloud has no Vapours; tho' enough to condenſe the Circumference, ſo as to make it uneaſy to burſt: Not but that at the ſame time it makes

Digitized by Google

makes a Noise, but so small, that we cannot hear it at so great a Distance.

Lightning without Thunder happens ordinarily in a Time of great Heat, because then there are more Exhalations than Vapours rais'd: And hence we observe, That when there is Lightning without Thunder, there is no Rain, because there is not Vapours enough to make Rain.

But when Lightning is accompanied with great Thunder, 'tis a Sign there are a great many Vapours condens'd round the Circumference of the Cloud, and almost form'd into Rain already; because the Heat concentring in the Center of the Cloud, leaves a greater Cold to the Vapours in the Circumference. Thus we find every time the Thunder shakes and bursts the Cloud, the Rain encreases the more: For these Reasons, the Water being almost form'd, falling by the shaking of the Cloud, must needs fall in very great Drops; which passing thro' the middle Region of the Air, are many times, by the great Cold there, immediately turn'd to very big Hail, which frequently makes terrible Devastations.

The more thick and condens'd the Circumference of the Cloud is by the Vapours, the Exhalations burst out with the greater Force; the Lightning is carried further, and sometimes touches the Surface of the Earth; and then it is call'd a Thunder-bolt, and burns and overturns Buildings, sets all in a Flame where it comes, and kills Men and Beasts.

Lightning has frequently surprizing and prodigious Effects, as melting the Blade of a Sword in the Scabbard, and Money in one's Pocket, without hurting the Scabbard or Pocket. This happens when the Particles that compose the Lightning are so subtile and small, as to make no Impression upon Bodies that have large Pores, to give a Passage to them; so that they spend their Force upon those Bodies that resist them. On the contrary, sometimes it burns Men's Clothes and Hair, without hurting their Flesh: The Reason of which is, That the Particles and Exhalations which compose that Lightning, are more gross, fat and oily.

SECT. XXVI.

The Definition of the GLOBE, *and its Parts.*

THE Terrestrial Globe is a Spherical Body, made by Art, upon whose Surface the Parts of the Earth, and their Situation with respect one to another, are represented as they really are, according to the Proportion the Surface of the Terrestrial Globe bears to that of the Earth.

A Map, Chart, or Geographical Table, is a plain Figure, in which the Parts of the Earth are placed, according to their real Situation, *viz.* their Situation as to North, South, East and West, and their Distance from other Places. The Advantage of Maps is this, That they lay the Globe of the Earth before us at once. In all Maps, the Places on the Right Hand lie East, and those on the Left lie West, the Top of the Map is the North, and the Bottom the South. But the Terrestrial Globe most naturally shews the different Situations of Places, the Motion of the Sun, the Difference of Climates, the Inequality of Days, and many other Parts of pleasant and useful Learning, which cannot be understood without it. The Difference betwixt a Map and a Globe, is much the same with that betwixt a Picture and a Figure in *Basso-Relievo*.

Maps are either General or Particular; the General Map shews us the whole Surface of the Earth; and a Particular Map is that of a particular Kingdom or Country.

The Poles of the Earth are two fix'd Points, Diametrically opposite to one another, directly under the Poles of the World. The Pole of the Earth, under the Constellation of *Ursa Major*, is call'd the North or Artic Pole: It is represented in the Heavens by the Polar Star, in the Extremity of the Tail of *Ursa Minor*, and is distant from the true North Pole about 2½ Degrees. This Star may easily be known; for it makes almost a Right Line with the two last Wheels

Wheels of *Charles's Waine*, in the Conſtellation of *Urſa Major*.

The South or Antartic Pole is known by 4 Stars in the Southern Hemiſphere. The Mariners, who lately diſcover'd them, call them the *Croiſade*, becauſe they are in Form like a Croſs. Theſe two Poles are 180 Degrees diſtant from one another. The People who live under the Poles have but one Day of 6 Months length, and one Night of the ſame: This is eaſy to be conceiv'd; for when the Sun takes his Courſe to the North of the Equator during thoſe 6 Months, it is above the Horizon of thoſe who live under the N. Pole; and for the ſame Reaſon, the Stars that are near the Pole never ſet. The Doctrine of the Poles is eaſily underſtood by the Terreſtrial Globe; for when it is turn'd round, we ſee the two Poles fix'd. If we conceive a Line to be drawn through the Center of the Earth from one Pole to another, this is call'd the Axis, becauſe the Heavens and the Stars move round that Line, as a Wheel does round its Axle-Tree. This Motion may be eaſily explain'd by the familiar Experiment of piercing a round Orange through the middle with a long Needle: The Needle repreſents the Axle-Tree of the World; its two Extremities repreſent the two Poles; and if you move the Orange round the Needle, it reſembles the Motion of the Earth.

The Globe is ſurrounded with many imaginary Circles, which are divided into Greater and Leſſer: The Greater have the ſame Center with the Globe, and divide it into two equal Parts, as the Equator, the Zodiac, the Horizon, the Meridian, and the two Coluri: The Leſſer Circles have a different Center from that of the Globe, and divide it into two unequal Parts; they are the 2 Tropics, and the 2 Polar Circles. They are alſo divided into 5 Parallel and 3 Oblique Circles: The Parallels are the Equator, the two Tropics, and the two Polar Circles, ſo call'd, becauſe all the Parts of theſe Circles are equally diſtant from one another, and becauſe they have the ſame Poles with the World. The 3 Oblique Circles, ſo called, becauſe their Poles are not the ſame with thoſe of the World, are the Zodiac, the Meridian, and the Oblique Horizon.

Of theſe Circles, ſome are call'd Right Circles, becauſe they make Right Angles with the Equator; *viz.* the two Coluri, the Meridian, and the Horizon when Right.

The Equator is the greateſt Circle of the 5 Parallels, and is equally diſtant from both Poles: Seamen call it the *Line*. This Circle divides the World into two equal Parts, of which the one is called the Northern, and the other the Southern Part: The Extent of the Northern is from the Equator to the North Pole, and that of the Southern from the Equator to the South Pole: It is call'd the Equinoctial, and the Equator, becauſe it ſhews when the Equinoxes are to come, *viz.* when the Sun comes to that Part of the Ecliptic where the Ecliptic and Equator interſect each other.

There are two Equinoxes, one in Spring and the other in Autumn; the firſt is about the 20th of *March*, when the Sun enters the firſt Degree of *Aries*; and the ſecond is when the Sun enters the firſt Degree of *Libra*, which is about the 12th of *September*. All the People of the World, except thoſe under the Poles, have at the ſame time of the Year their Day and Night of an equal Length; for at that Time the Sun moves in a middle Courſe, betwixt the two Poles. Thoſe who live under the Equator, have equal Days and Nights all the Year, becauſe their Horizon divides all the Diurnal Circles of the Sun into two equal Parts. The Equator is the Meaſure and Rule of the Diurnal Motions of the Stars; for every Star, by its Diurnal Motion, deſcribes a Circle parallel to the Equator. When they aſcend 15 Degrees of the Equator above the Horizon, we reckon it an Hour; for by this Account, the Sun runs through all the 360 Degrees in 24 Hours. The Equator has mark'd upon it the Degrees of Longitude from W. to E. Places under the Equator have no Latitude.

The Parallel Circles are of great Uſe to ſhow the Latitude of Places, and for this Reaſon are called the Circles of Latitude.

The Tropics are the two greateſt Circles parallel to the Equator, which touch the Ecliptic in the Signs of *Cancer* and *Capricorn*: They are diſtant from the Equator 23 Deg. and a half. The Sun, on the 11th of *June* and 11th of *December*, deſcribes thoſe Circles. The Tropic of *Cancer* is neareſt us. When

Digitized by Google

the Sun comes to the first Degree of *Cancer*, then we have the longest Day, and shortest Night: It is also call'd the High-Solstice; for then the Sun is in his greatest Height with regard to us. Some call it the Tropic of Summer, or the Northern Tropic. The other is call'd the Tropic of *Capricorn*, because when the Sun enters the beginning of that Sign, he returns, and goes no further Southward from the Equator. Some call it in regard to us, the Low-Solstice; for the Sun being then at the greatest Distance from our Zenith, we have the shortest Days.

The Tropics are the Boundaries of the Course of the Sun, and have their Name from a Greek Word, which signifies to return; for whenever the Sun touches those Points, he returns towards the Equator, and goes no further either Northward or Southward. The Tropics do likewise shew the Place in the Ecliptic where the Solstices are celebrated; and in the Horizon, they shew the greatest Eastern and Western Amplitude of the Sun: In the Meridian, they discover the least and greatest Distance of the Sun from the Zenith of those who live in an Oblique Sphere. They also shew the Breadth of the Torrid Zone, which is 47 Deg Betwixt them and the Equator lies the Torrid, and betwixt the Polar Circle and Tropics lie the Temperate Zones. The Northern Parts of *Africa*, some Places of *Asia*, and North *America*, are under the Tropic of *Cancer*. The Southern Places of *Africa*, *Terra Magellanica*, and South *America*, are under the Tropic of *Capricorn*.

The Polar Circles are the two least of the Parallel Circles, and neareſt the Poles, being distant from them 23½ Degrees, and 66½ Degrees from the Equator, and are call'd the Artic and Anrartic Polar Circles, from those two Poles: They terminate the Frigid and Temperate Zone. They who live under those Circles, or (which is the same thing) are 66. Degrees distant from the Equator, have their longest Day 24 Hours, and their longest Night the same. If the North Pole be elevated 66½ Degrees, by this Position we may see, That the Artic Polar Circle passes through the Zenith, and the Antarctic through the Nadir, the Tropic of *Cancer* will be entirely above the Horizon, and the Tropic of *Capricorn* quite below it; so that the Sun, when in the Tropic of *Cancer*, will be 24 Hours above the Horizon.

The Meridian is a great Circle, passing through the Poles of the World, and takes its Name from the Latin Word *Meridies*, Mid-day, or Noon: For whenever the Sun touches the Meridian of any Place, then it is Noon to the Inhabitants. We change Meridians when we go from E. to W. or from W. to E. but if we go streight N. or S. we are still under the same Meridian, though we change our Zenith and Nadir. Globes have a great Brazen Meridian fix'd to them, having the same Poles with those of the World: It divides the Globe into two equal Parts, *viz.* the Eastern and Western: It shews the Latitude of Places, or their Distance from the Equator.

To know the Latitude of any Place, or the Altitude of the Pole in that Place, turn the Globe about, till the Place whose Latitude you want touch the right Side of the Meridian. Observe the Figure upon the Meridian which the Place given touches, and you have its Degrees of Latitude. One half of the Meridian is above the Horizon, and the other half below, which shews the same thing in that Hemisphere.

Geographers have invented a First Meridian, to be the Boundary and Measure of all other Meridians. Authors are not agreed which is the First, so that every one may follow their own Judgment in this Matter; but they generally plac'd the First Meridian in the most Westerly Place of our Continent. *Ptolomy*, and others of the Ancients, plac'd the First Meridian in the *Canary* Islands; but *Ptolomy* was mistaken, when he thought all those Islands to be of one Longitude. The *French* King, *Lewis* XIII. by an Edict of the 25th of *April*, 1634. order'd his Subjects to place the First Meridian in the Island of *Fer*, the most Westerly of all the *Canaries*, by the Advice of the ablest Mathematicians of *Europe*, who came to *Paris*, at the Invitation of Cardinal *Richlieu*. The *Hollanders* make it the Pic of *Teneriff*, which is two Degrees more to the E. Others make the First Meridian to pass thro' the Islands of *Corvo* and *Flores*, part of the *Azores*. The Reason they give, is, That they observe the Needle of the Compass has no Decli-

Digitized by Google

Declination in that Place. Aſtronomers ordinarily make the Places of their Obſervations the Firſt Meridian; as *Ptolomy* made *Alexandria*; *Tycho Brahe* a ſmall Iſland belonging to *Denmark*, call'd *Uranibrug*; but moſt People make the Cape of *Teneriff* their Firſt Meridian. Mr. *Moll* makes it at *Ferro* Iſland, the ſame that the *French* call *Fer*.

In general Maps, all the different Meridians meet in one Point in the Poles of the World. The nearer thoſe Meridians are to the Poles, the leſs Diſtance they have from one another; ſo that one Degree of Longitude near the Equator contains many more Miles than one Degree of Longitude near the Poles. Tho' Meridians might be drawn through every Point of the Equator, yet for Orders-ſake the Makers of Maps have contracted them to 36, 10 Degrees diſtant from each other, of which they give *18* to the Upper, and as many to the Lower *Hemiſphere*.

The Meridian touches the Horizon in two Points, *viz.* the N. and S. and the Equator interſects the Horizon at E. and W. which are the 4 Cardinal Points.

The Meridian is of Uſe to ſhow the Elevation of the Pole above the Horizon, which is an Arch of the Meridian from the Horizon to the Pole; and as many Degrees as the Pole is above the Horizon, ſo many it is *ſaid to have* of Altitude.

The Meridian and the Horizon divide the Heavens into 4 Parts, *viz.* the E. and W. of the higheſt Hemiſphere, and the E. and W. of the lower.

This Circle is alſo of Uſe to ſhow the greateſt Height or Aſcenſion of the Sun and Stars, and the Beginning of the natural Day. Aſtronomers begin the Day when the Sun is in the Meridian; but moſt Nations of *Europe*, with *Copernicus*, begin the Day at Midnight: The *Jews* begin theirs at the Setting of the Sun; and the *Greeks* begin theirs at the Riſing of it. This Circle divides alſo the Day into the Morning before the Sun comes to the Meridian, and the Afternoon after it has paſs'd the ſame.

The Meridian ſhows alſo the Latitude of Places, which is nothing but an Arch of the Meridian from the Zenith of the Place where we are, to the Equator.

The Meridians are reckon'd from W. to E. and ſhow the Longitude of Places, which is their Diſtance Eaſtward and Weſtward from one another. The more Eaſtward any Place is, the ſooner the Sun and Stars come to the Meridian. If one Place be 15 Degrees more to the E. than another, it will be Noon there an Hour ſooner than at the Place more Weſterly: And if one Place be 90 Degrees more E. than another, it will be Noon there 6 Hours ſooner. Thus if two Ships ſail round the Earth, one of them ſteering E. and the other W. and if they meet at the 180th Degree of Latitude, the Ship that ſail'd E. reckons one Day more than the Ship that ſail'd W. The Reaſon is plain; for the Eaſtward-bound Ship ſails towards the Day, and has the Sun-riſing and ſetting every Day ſooner; whereas the other has them every Day later, and by Conſequence loſes Time.

The Zodiac is ſo call'd, becauſe the 12 Parts it is divided into have their Names from living Creatures; for the ancient Aſtronomers thought the Stars which compoſe the Conſtellations of *Aries*, *Taurus*, &c. had ſomething of the Reſemblance of thoſe Creatures.

The Zodiac is the only Circle in the Sphere which has Breadth aſſign'd it, and is reckon'd 16 Degrees broad, *viz.* 8 on each Side the Ecliptic: It is in Form more like a Girdle than a Circle. The Ecliptic divides the Equator obliquely; ſo that theſe 2 Points of it which are moſt diſtant from the Equator are 23½ Deg. diſtant from it. The Equator interſects the Zodiac in the Points of *Aries* and *Libra*; and by this the Zodiac is divided into two Parts, the one N. and the other S. This Circle is plac'd obliquely betwixt the two Poles, and touches the Tropics in two oppoſite Points. The Breadth of the Zodiac is of uſe to terminate the Courſe of the Planets: But upon the Globes and Maps, the Zodiac is repreſented by a Line in the middle of it, call'd the Ecliptic; becauſe the Eclipſes of the Sun and Moon are upon the Plain of it.

The Sun makes his Annual Courſe upon the Ecliptic without ever leaving it, and every Day runs over almoſt one Degree of this Circle; but not one intire Degree, otherwiſe he would run thro' all the 360 Degrees of the Ecliptic in ſo many Days: Whereas he requires 365 Days and 5¼ Hours to compleat his Courſe. The Cir-

Digitized by Google

cle the Sun makes every Day upon the Globe is not a perfect one; for he changes every Day the Place of his Rising and Setting in the Horizon, as he does his Place in the Meridian.

The Northern Part of the Zodiac has 6 Signs, and the Southern Part the like. The Names and Figures of these Signs, upon the Horizon of the Globe, are thus:

The 6 Northern Signs, and their Characters, are these:

Aries.	♈
Taurus.	♉
Gemini.	♊
Cancer.	♋
Leo.	♌
Virgo.	♍

The 6 Southern Signs, and their Characters:

Libra.	♎
Scorpius.	♏
Sagittarius.	♐
Capricorn.	♑
Aquarius.	♒
Pisces.	♓

Each of these 12 Signs has 30 Degrees.

The Sun runs through one of these Signs every Month: The Constellations which formerly answered to these Signs do not so now; for they are 28 Degrees more Eastward than anciently. Thus the Constellation of *Aries*, which formerly answer'd to the first Sign of the Zodiac, is now 28 Degrees more towards the E. in the Place where *Taurus* was formerly.

When the Sun is in the Northern Signs we have the longest Days, and the shortest when he is in the Southern.

When the Sun is in *Aries*, *Taurus*, and *Gemini*, we of the Northern Hemisphere have Spring; when in *Cancer*, *Leo*, and *Virgo*, we have Summer: When in *Libra*, *Scorpius*, and *Sagittarius*, we have Autumn; when the Sun is in *Capricorn*, *Aquarius*, and *Pisces*, we have Winter: But in the Southern Hemisphere our Winter-Signs are those of their Summer; and *vice versa*, our Autumn is their Spring.

The Obliquity of the Ecliptick is the Cause of the Variety of Seasons, and of the Inequality of Days and Nights.

The Horizon is so call'd from a Greek Word, signifying to limit or bound, because it bounds our Sight, when we view the Heavens round from any Part of the Earth or Sea. This Circle in the artificial Globe is of Wood, supports the Globe, and has usually 3 Circles on its Surface: The innermost represents the Figures of the Signs of the Zodiac, with their Names and Degrees: That in the middle has the Months of the Year, and the Days of every Month, according to both *Julian* and *Gregorian* Accounts; and the outermost has the Quarters of the World, and the Names of the principal Winds.

The Horizon is either Rational or Sensible: The Rational, so call'd because we conceive it only by our Understanding, is a great Circle, which we apprehend to pass through the Center of the Earth, and by Consequence divides the World into two equal Parts or Hemispheres; the one above, and the other below. The sensible Horizon is a small Circle parallel to the Rational Horizon, that touches the Surface of the Earth in a Point, which is that where our Feet stands. This is the Reason that it does not divide the Heaven into two equal Parts, as the Rational Horizon does: But the Difference of those two Horizons is insensible, being only occasion'd by the Semi-diameter of the Earth, which is only a Point, compar'd to the immense Extent of the Firmament, since we see the half of the Heaven above the Surface of the Earth, the same as if we were at its Center.

The Rational Horizon, with respect to the Equator, may be divided into Right, Oblique, and Parallel.

Both the Sensible and Rational Horizon have the same Poles, which are call'd Zenith and Nadir, the Names given them by the *Arabians*, under whose *Kaliphs* Astronomy and other Sciences flourish'd. The Zenith is the Point of the Heavens which is over our Head; the Nadir is that below our Feet, and is at the same time the Zenith of our Antipodes: The Meridian and Horizon are both changeable Circles; for every different Place hath a different Horizon and Zenith.

The

Digitized by Google

The Right Horizon passes through the Poles of the World, and has its Zenith in the Equator, which it divides at Right Angles, and into equal Parts. The Oblique Horizon has its Zenith betwixt one of the two Poles and the Equator; so that one Pole is nearer its Zenith than the other: It cuts the Equator obliquely. The Parallel Horizon has one of the Poles for its Zenith, and the Equator for its Horizontal Circle.

The 3 different Horizons make 3 different Positions of the Sphere, *viz.* the Right, Oblique, and Parallel Position, which are useful to explain the different Appearances of the Sun, as to its Rising and Setting, Length of Days, Heat, *&c.* The Right Sphere has a Right Horizon, because the Equator, Tropics, and Polar Circles, cut the Horizon at Right Angles. This Position belongs to those who live under the *Equator*: They have always their Days and Nights equal, and the Sun is twice a Year perpendicularly over their Heads, *viz.* the 11th of *March*, and the 12th of *September*. All the Stars rise and set to them, and are the same Number of Hours above as below the Horizon.

The Oblique Sphere has an Oblique Horizon; and all the Circles, as the Equator, Tropics, and the Polar Circles, cut this Horizon at Oblique Angles. It agrees to those who live betwixt the Equator and the Poles: They have equal Days and Nights only during the Equinoxes. In the Summer their Days are shorter than their Nights, because the Horizon doth not divide the Tropics into equal Parts. In this Position some Parts of the Heavens are never seen, and some Parts are always visible.

The Parallel Sphere has the Horizon parallel to the Equator, and all the Circles and Revolutions are parallel to the Horizon. This Position agrees to those who live under the Poles, (if there be any such) and they have only one Day and one Night in the Year of 6 Months each; because the Sun never rises with them, but at one of the Equinoxes, and sets not till the other. The Axis of the World in this Sphere is perpendicular, one of the Poles the Zenith, and the other the Nadir of the Place. When the Sun enters *Aries*, he rises to those under the North Pole, and sets when he enters *Libra*. The Moon is 15 Days above their Horizon, and so many below it; *Saturn* 15 Years, and *Jupiter* 6.

From what has been said, it appears that the Horizon has many Uses; 1. It divides the World into two Hemispheres, *viz.* those of the Day and Night. 2. It shews us the Elevation of the Pole; for so many Degrees as the Pole is above the Horizon, so many Degrees it is said to be elevated. 3. It shews us the Place and Time of the Rising and Setting of the Sun, Moon, and Stars; for when they come to the East Part of the Horizon, they are said to rise; and when they go below the Western Part, they are said to set. It determines the ending of the Morning *Crepusculum*, or Dawning of the Day, which is before the Rising of the Sun; and of the Evening *Crepusculum*, or Twilight, when the Sun is about 18 Degrees below the Horizon. This Circle is the Seat of the 4 Cardinal Points, North, South, East, and West, which are 90 Degrees distant from each other. The South is the Point the Sun is in when it is Noon: The true East is that Point of the Horizon where the Sun rises in the time of the Equinoxes: The true West is the Point where the Sun sets at the same time. These Points make 4 Collateral Points, *viz.* the Place where the Sun rises in the Summer Solstice, which is N. E and where it rises in the Winter-Solstice, which is S. E. The Place in the Horizon where the Sun sets in Summer, which is N. W. and the Place where it sets in Winter, which is S. W. The Sun's rising in the N. E and setting in the N. W. shows us that Part of the Tropic of *Cancer* that is above our Horizon; and his rising in the S. E. and setting in the S. W. shows his Motion in the Tropic of *Capricorn*.

The ZONES.

The 4 small Circles, *viz.* the two Tropics, and the Polar Circles, divide the Globe of the Earth into 5 Parts, call'd Zones by the Ancients, from a Greek Word which signifies a Girdle. The Space betwixt the Tropics is call'd the Torrid Zone, and is divided by the Equator into two equal Parts. The Ancients, because little of the World was discover'd in their Time, thought the Zone.

Digitized by Google

Zone was not habitable, because of the violent Heat of the Sun; but 'tis now found to be otherwise. 'Tis true, the Heat of the Sun there is violent; but the Length of their Nights, frequent Rains, Winds and Dews, make it supportable. The Sun raises a great Quantity of Vapours, which occasion those frequent Rains, Dews, and Winds; so that after the setting, and before the rising of the Sun, they have constantly fresh Breezes, which make their Nights cool. The Dews do likewise contribute towards it; which, with the Rains, refresh the Inhabitants, and make the Soil produce abundance of Provisions. They have two Summers, *viz.* when the Sun enters the Equinoctial Signs. Their Winters are, when the Sun is in the Tropics, because then he is at the greatest Distance from their Zenith. The Air under the Tropics is more violently hot than that in the Torrid Zone, because the Sun is longer above their Horizon. They who have their Zenith betwixt the Equator and the Tropics, are in an Oblique Sphere: Therefore all the Places of the Heavens do not rise and set to them; and having one of the Poles above their Horizon, their Days and Nights are unequal, except in the Time of the Equinoxes. They who have their Zenith in the Tropics, have but one Summer, because the Sun is but once vertical to them, *viz.* when he is in the Tropic they live under, and when the Sun is in the opposite Tropic, it is 47 Degr. from their Zenith; so their shortest Day is 10½ Hours, and their longest Day 13½ Hours: But to those who live betwixt the Tropics, the Sun is twice a Year in their Zenith.

The two Zones betwixt the Tropics and Polar Circles are call'd the Temperate Zones, because they are not liable to such excessive Heat and Cold as the other Zones: One of these is betwixt the Tropic of *Cancer*, and the Artic Polar Circle; and the other Temperate Zone is betwixt the Tropic of *Capricorn*, and the Antartic Polar Circle. They have their Zenith betwixt the Tropics and the Polar Circles: Their Sphere is extreamly oblique, and so are all the Revolutions of the Heavens. A great Part of the Heaven is never seen in their Hemisphere: They have their Days and Nights more unequal than in the Torrid Zone; the Sun is never in their Zenith; and they have four Seasons in the Year. The Air is more temperate than in the Torrid Zone, because the Beams of the Sun fall more obliquely upon them; whereas in the Torrid Zone they are more perpendicular.

The People who live under the Polar Circle, or, which is the same, are 66 Degr. and a half distant from the Equator, their Pole is of the same Altitude above the Horizon: They have a more oblique Sphere than any of the other preceding Zones: They have one Tropic entirely above the Horizon, and the other Tropic altogether below it. Therefore they have one Day in the Year, *viz.* when the Sun is in the Tropic next to them, of 24 Hours; and one Night of the same, when the Sun is in the opposite Tropic. They have 4 Seasons in one Year. Having a very oblique Sphere, the opposite Places of the Heavens are never seen by them: The greatest Ascension of the Sun at Noon, when it is in the Tropics, is only 47 Degrees; and so is 43 Degrees from their Zenith. From the 5th of *April* to the 9th of *September*, they have Twilight all the Night over, because the Sun, during that Time, is never 18 Degrees perpendicularly below their Horizon.

They who have their Zenith betwixt the Polar Circles and the Poles, are in the Frigid Zone: Their Sphere is more oblique than any of the former; so that their Days and Nights are more unequal. In the Summer they have many Days without any Night at all; and likewise many Nights without any Day. Since they want little of having a Parallel Sphere, they never see the opposite Part of the Heavens. Their Air is warmer in Summer than under the Polar Circles, because the Sun is longer above their Horizon.

They who have for their Zenith the Poles of the World, are in the middle of the Frigid Zones: Their Sphere is parallel. And hence it is, that all the Revolutions of the Heavens are parallel to the Horizon. They have 6 Months of Day, and as much Night: The Sun, when in the Tropic nearest them, is in its greatest Height only 23½ above the Horizon, which is the same Height the Sun makes with us an Hour and an half after his rising. They constantly see the same

Digitized by Google

ſame Half of the Heavens; and the ſame Fix'd Stars, which never ſet with them.

The CLIMATES.

The Zones being only of uſe to diſtinguiſh the Places of the World with regard to their different Degrees of Heat and Cold, ancient Geographers invented Climates, to determine the Difference of the Length of Days. The Climates are reckon'd from the Equator to the Poles. Under the Equator, their Day is always 12 Hours in Length: Under the Polar Circle, the longeſt Day is 24 Hours. Geographers have made 24 Climates betwixt the Equator and each of the Polar Circles, becauſe there are 24 half Hours of Difference betwixt the Length of the Day under the Equator, and the longeſt Day under the Polar Circles: So that any Place having its longeſt Day half an Hour longer or ſhorter than that of another Place, is of a different Climate. The firſt Climate begins at the Equator: The ſecond begins where the longeſt Day is 12 hours and an half; and the third where the longeſt Day is 13 Hours: And ſo on.

The firſt Climate begins at the Equator, and ends at 8 Degrees 34 Minutes of Northern Latitude: The longeſt Day is $12\frac{1}{2}$ Hours. It comprehends the *Moluccs*, *Maldivs*, and *Sumatra* Iſles, in the *Eaſt-Indies*.

The 2d Climate begins at 8 Deg. 34 Min. of Northern Latitude, and reaches to 16 Deg. 43 Min. Their longeſt Day is 13 Hours. It comprehends *Abiſſinia*, *Aden*, *Siam*, *Coromandel*, and the Iſle of *Ceilon*.

The 3d Climate reaches from 16 Deg. 43 Min. to 24 Deg. 11 Min. Their longeſt Day is $13\frac{1}{2}$ Hours. It contains *Mecca*, *Arabia Fœlix*, *Bengal*, *Mexico*, and *Tunquin*.

The 4th Climate is betwixt 24 Deg. 11 Min and 30 Deg. 47 Min. Their longeſt Day is 14 Hours. It paſſes over *Ormus* in *Perſia*, *Agra* belonging to the great Mogul, *Fochen* in *China*, *Alexandria* in *Egypt*, and the *Canary* Iſlands.

The 5th Climate is extended from 30 Deg. 47 Min. to 36 Deg. 30 Min. Their longeſt Day is $14\frac{1}{2}$ Hours. It comprehends *Babylon*, *Tunis* in *Barbary*, *Niceſia* in the Iſle of *Cyprus*, *Nankin* in *China*, *Rhodes*, *Iſpahon* in *Perſia*, and *Pekin*.

The 6th Climate begins at 36 Deg. 30 Min. and ends at 41 Deg. 22 Min. The longeſt Day is 15 Hours. To this Climate belong *Lisbon* in *Portugal*, *Palermo* in *Sicily*, *Madrid* in *Spain*, and *Meshet* in *Perſia*.

The 7th Climate is from 41 Deg. 22 Min. to 45 Deg. 29 Min. Their longeſt Day is $15\frac{1}{2}$ Hours. It comprehends *Marſeilles*, *Rome*, *Conſtantinople*, and *Tanchut*.

The 8th Climate is from 45 Deg. 29 Min. to 49 Deg. 1 Min. The longeſt Day is 16 Hours. *Paris*, *Vienna*, the *Crim Tartars*, and the *Eaſtern Tartars*, are in this Climate.

The 9th Climate is from 49 Deg. 1 Min. to 51 Deg. 58 Min. Their longeſt Day is $16\frac{1}{2}$ Hours. *London*, *Prague* in *Bohemia*, *Cracow* in *Poland*, *Rouen*, *Amiens*, *Francfort*, belong to this Climate.

The 10th Climate is from 51 Deg. 58 Min. to 54 Deg. 29 Min. Their longeſt Day is 17 Hours. This Climate contains *York*, *Dublin*, *Amſterdam*, *Warſaw*, and *New France*.

The 11th Climate is from 54 Deg. 29 Min. to 56 Deg. 37 Min. Their longeſt Day is $17\frac{1}{2}$ Hours. It contains *Edinburgh*, *Vilna* in *Lithuania*, *Smolenſko* on the *Boriſthenes* in the Weſt of *Muſcovy*, and the *Tartars* of *Mordwa*.

The 12th Climate begins at 56 Deg. 37 Min. and reaches to 58 Deg. 26 Min. Their longeſt Day is 18 Hours. *Aberdeen*, *Copenhagen*, and *Riga*, are in this Climate.

The 13th Climate is from 58 Deg. 26 Min. to 59 Deg. 59 Min. Their longeſt Day is $18\frac{1}{2}$ Hours. *Stockholm*, and *Revel* in *Livonia*, are in this Climate.

The 14th Climate is from 59 Deg. 59 Min. to 61 Deg. 18 Min. The longeſt Day is 19 Hours. This Climate paſſes thro' the *Orkney* Iſlands of *Scotland*, *Anſtoie* in *Norway*, and *Muſcovy*.

The 15th Climate is from 61 Deg. 18 Min. to 62 Deg. 25 Min. Their longeſt Day is $19\frac{1}{2}$ Hours. *Bergen* in *Norway*, *Nottemburg* in *Finland*, and *Ouſtioug* in *Muſcovy*, are in this Climate.

The 16 Climate begins at 62 Deg. 25 Min. and ends at 63 Deg. 23 Min. Their longeſt Day is 20 Hours. *Perma Wellick*, a Town of *Muſcovy*, belongs to this Climate.

The 17th Climate is from 63 Deg. 23 Min to 64 Deg. 16 Min. The longeſt Day is $20\frac{1}{2}$ Hours. This Climate paſſes thro' the Country of *Finland*, belonging to the *Swedes*.

The

Digitized by Google

The 18th Climate is from 64 Deg. 16 Min. to 64 Deg. 55 Min. Their longeſt Day is 21 Hours. *Dronthein* in *Norway* belongs to this Climate.

The 19th Climate is from 64 Deg. 55 Min. to 65 Deg. 25 Min. Their longeſt Day is 21½ Hours. *Tobol* in *Siberia* belongs to it.

The 20th Climate is from 65 Deg. 25 Min. to 65 Deg. 47 Min. The longeſt Day is 22 Hours. The North of *Finland* belongs to it.

The 21ſt Climate is from 65 Deg. 47 Min. to 66 Deg. 6 Min. The longeſt Day is 22¼ Hours. *Torna* in *Botnia*, a conſiderable Harbour belonging to the *Swedes*, is in this Climate.

The 22d Climate is from 66 Deg 6 Min. to 66 Deg. 20 Min The longeſt Day is 23 Hours. *Caienbourg* in *Muſcovy* belongs to this Climate.

The 23d Climate is from 66 Deg. 20 Min to 66 Deg. 28 Min. The longeſt Day is 23½ Hours. *Skaibot* in *Iſland* is in this Climate.

The 24th Climate is from 66 Deg. 28 Min. to 66 Deg. 31 Min. Their longeſt Day is 24 Hours. This Climate paſſes thro' *Hola*, a ſmall Town of *Iſland*.

To know what Climate any Place is in, ſee how many Hours the longeſt Day of that Place is more than 12, the Number of half Hours contain'd in the Difference, is the Number of Climates that Place is diſtant from the Equator.

There are alſo 24 Climates in the Southern Hemiſphere: The Ancients did not reckon ſo many Climates, becauſe they thought the Places beyond their own Number of Climates were quite deſolate; little of the World being then known. They had only 7 Climates; their firſt Climate paſs'd thro' *Meroë*, an Iſland and City in the *Nile* in *Africa*; the 2d Climate went by *Siene*, a City of *Egypt*; the 3d Climate by *Alexandria*, a City of *Egypt*; the 4th Climate by the Iſland *Rhodes*; the 5th Climate by *Rome*; the 6th Climate by the *Euxine* Sea; and the 7th by the Mouth of the *Boryſthenes*. *Strabo* adds two more: He tells us, the 8th Climate went thro' the *Palus Meotis*; but does not tell us where the 9th ended.

Near the Equator, the Climates are very much larger than towards the Polar Circles; the firſt Climate is 8 Deg. 34 Min. broad; the 24th Climate is but 3 Min in breadth. To explain this Inequality, it muſt be obſerv'd, That in a Right Sphere, which is under the Equator, the Half of the Tropic of *Cancer*, which is below the Horizon, is divided into 48 equal Parts; each of theſe Parts conſiſt of 3 Deg. and 45 Min. which make one Quarter of an Hour: The Tropic of *Cancer* has one of theſe Parts, which is neareſt the Horizon on the Eaſt Side, and another neareſt the Horizon on the Weſt Side. Theſe two Parts together make up one half Hour, which is the Diſtance of one Climate from another. This being laid down, it is eaſie to conceive, That the Inequality of the Extent of the Climates proceeds from the more or leſs oblique Interſection of the Tropic by the Horizon, according to the different Elevation of the Pole. The Ancients made no Account of the Climates on the S. Side of the Equator, becauſe they had no Knowledge of thoſe Places. There are 48 Climates in all, *viz.* 24 betwixt the Polar Circle and the Equator in the Northern Hemiſphere, and as many betwixt the Equator and the Polar Circle in the Southern Hemiſphere, which are called Climates of Hours.

The 12 Climates betwixt the Polar Circles and the Poles are call'd Climates of Months, becauſe the longeſt Day in the ſecond Climate is one full Month longer than the longeſt Day of the firſt Climate.

The firſt Climate begins at 66 Deg. 31 Min. Northern Latitude, and ends at 69 Deg. 48 Min. The longeſt Day is 1 Month, or 31 Days, without Night. This paſſes thro' *Lapland*, belonging to *Muſcovy*.

The 2d Climate begins at 69 Deg. 48 Min. and ends at 73 Deg. 37 Min. They have Day without Night for 2 Months, or 62 Days. This Climate paſſes thro' *Greenland*, a Country ſo cold, that the Sea is almoſt conſtantly frozen there.

The 3d Climate begins at 73 Deg. 37 Min. and ends at 78 Deg. 30 Min. They have a Day of 3 Months, or 93 Days. This Climate belongs to the South Part of *Nova Zembla*.

The 4th Climate begins at 78 Deg. 30 Min. and ends at 84 Deg. 5 Min. They have a Day of 4 Months continuance, without

Digitized by Google

without any Night. This Climate passes through the North Part of *Nova Zembla*.

The 5th Climate begins at 84 Deg. 5 Min. and ends at 90. They have a Day of 5 Months, or 155 Days.

The 6th Climate is at 90 Deg. The Day there is of 6 whole Months, *i. e.* 186 Days, or 4464 Hours.

SECT. XXVII.

Of the Longitude *and* Latitude *of Places.*

THE Earth being a Globe, in a ſtrict Senſe, it can neither have Longitude, nor Latitude; yet Geographers, for very good Reaſons, have introduc'd the Doctrine of *Longitude* and Latitude: The Uſefulneſs of knowing the Longitude and Latitude of a Place, is great; for when we know that, we know the Situation of it by Sea or Land.

The ancient Geographers knew more of the World from Weſt to Eaſt, than they did from South to North; therefore they had more Degrees of Longitude than Latitude. In *Ptolomy*'s Time, there were only 80 Degrees of Latitude, taking in all then known on both Sides the Equator; whereas they had 180 Degrees of Longitude.

The Latitude of a Place is its Diſtance from the Equator; or, properly ſpeaking, an Arch of the Meridian from the Zenith of a Place to the Equator; or, which is the ſame, it is the Elevation of the Pole above the Horizon of any Place. They who are under the Equator, have no Latitude; for none of the Poles are elevated above their Horizon: But when we go from the Equator towards any of the Poles, one of the Poles aſcends above the Horizon, and the other deſcends. The Latitudes of Places are reckon'd from the Equator to the Poles; tho' in every Point of the Meridian, and in every Point of the Equator, different Degrees of Latitudes and Longitudes may be reckon'd: Yet Geographers, to avoid Confuſion, have reckon'd 90 Degrees from the Equator to the North-Pole; and from the North-Pole to the Equator, in the ſame Hemiſphere, 90 Degrees, which make 180. And the ſame Way they reckon 180 Degrees for the Southern Hemiſphere, which make up 360, the Number of Degrees every Circle contains. But the Degrees of Longitude are reckon'd from the firſt Meridian, from Weſt to Eaſt, quite round the Globe; and the Reckoning ends at the firſt Meridian where it began, at 360 Degrees. The Degrees of Longitude are reckon'd upon the Equator; tho' they might alſo be reckon'd on the parallel Circles of Latitude.

The Longitude of a Place is an Arch of the Equator betwixt one Place and another, or the Diſtance of one Place from another, from W. to E. The Places more Eaſtward have Noon ſooner than the Places more to the Weſt, becauſe they have different Longitudes. A Place 15 Degrees more to the Eaſt than another, will have Noon one Hour ſooner than another Place. From what has been ſaid before, this Queſtion, which to many appears very unaccountable, may eaſily be anſwer'd; *viz.* If Twins born at the ſame Hour, and both dying at the ſame Minute, one of theſe Children can, at his Death, be two Days older than the other: For if the one be carried round the World in a Ship from W. to E. and the other from E. to W. the Child which went the Eaſtern Voyage will be two Days older than the other, for the Reaſons before given.

One Degree of Longitude under the Equator is reckon'd about 60 *Italian* Miles; but the further you go from the Equator, either Northward or Southward, a Degree of Longitude contains fewer Miles: For Inſtance, under the Equator, one Degree of Longitude contains 25 *French* Leagues; but at *Paris*, one Degree of Longitude contains only 16 *French* Leagues. Under the Poles, they have no Longitude, becauſe all the Meridians or Circles of Longitude meet there in a Point. We refer to the Table, *Page* 17. to ſhew the Number of Miles a Degree of Longitude contains, with Regard to the different Latitude of Places.

The Knowledge of the Longitude of Places is very neceſſary, and of great Uſe in Navigation and Geography: The Longitude is not ſo certainly known as the Latitude. For this Reaſon, the greateſt Part of the People in *Europe* concern'd in Trade, as the *Engliſh*, *French* and *Dutch*, have offer'd a Reward of 10000 Florins to thoſe who ſhall

Digitized by Google

find out the Way to adjuſt the Longitude of Places by Sea with equal Exactneſs to what we have of the Latitude of Places. Many who have attempted this, gave out they had ſucceeded, and laid down a great many Rules, which, upon Trial, did not anſwer Expectation. This may be owing in part to the great Difficulty in taking Obſervations at Sea; for Inſtruments of a neceſſary Length cannot be us'd there with that Steadineſs requiſite to compaſs the Deſign. The Longitude of Places at Land may be found out to a ſufficient Degree of Exactneſs, by obſerving the Eclipſe of the Moon, and the Eclipſe of the firſt Satelles of *Jupiter*. The *French* Miſſionaries to *Siam*, &c. from their Obſervations of the Eclipſes of the Satellites of *Jupiter*, are poſitive that *China*, *Siam*, and *Japan*, and thoſe Eaſtern Countries, are plac'd in all our Globes and Maps many Degrees more Eaſtward than they ought to be.

To find out the Longitude of any Place, is not to find, as ſome imagine, the Eaſt and Weſt of it, for that may be known by the Compaſs; for if your Face be towards the North, the Eaſt will be on your Right Hand, and the W. on your Left: But it is to know the Diſtance any Place of the Land or Sea is from another from Weſt to Eaſt, or the Diſtance of any Place from the firſt Meridian.

The moſt ſure Way to know the Longitude of any Place, is from the Appearances of the Stars: Ephemerides are a great Help in this Matter; for when we know the Hour and Minute of the Eclipſe in a certain Place, and by Obſervations find that the Eclipſes of the Moon, Satellites of *Jupiter*, &c. are ſooner or later than in the Place given, we infer, that the one Place is more Eaſtward or Weſtward than the other.

Obſervations from the Motions of *Saturn* are altogether unſerviceable on this Head, becauſe he does not move above 5 Seconds in an Hour; for which Cauſe we can make no comparative Judgment betwixt the Time of his Appearance in one Place and another.

Obſervations from the Motion of the Sun are not to be depended upon; becauſe the Sun, by its diurnal Motion, moves only one Degree in the Ecliptic in 24 Hours. This Motion is too ſlow to anſwer the Obſervations above-mention'd, which ought to be ſo accurate, that in a Minute we may obſerve a ſenſible Motion in that Star from which we make our Obſervations; otherwiſe we may miſtake the $\frac{1}{4}$ of a Degree of Longitude. So Obſervations muſt be taken, 1. From the Beginning, Middle, and End, of the Eclipſe. 2. From the Moon's Place in the Zodiac. 3. From the Moon's Diſtance from a Fix'd Star. 4. From the Moon's Entrance into the Ecliptic. 5. From the Eclipſes of the Satellites of *Jupiter*, which are obſerv'd by the Help of a Teleſcope.

To know the Longitude of any Place by the Eclipſes of the Satellites of *Jupiter*, Two Things muſt be obſerv'd; 1. The Manner of obſerving the ſaid Eclipſe. 2. The preciſe and exact Time of the Obſervation of thoſe Eclipſes. The Satellites of *Jupiter* are ſmall Planets, which are turn'd round *Jupiter*, according to theſe Periods:

	Days.	*Hours.*	*Min.*
The firſt Satelles of *Jupiter* makes its Revolution in	1	18	29
The 2d, in	3	13	19
The 3d, in	7	4	0
The 4th, in	16	18	5

Jupiter being an opac groſs Body, like the Earth or the Moon, muſt neceſſarily occaſion an Eclipſe of his Satellites ſometimes, as the Earth occaſions an Eclipſe of the Moon.

When the Satellites of *Jupiter* are in his Shadow, they ſuffer an Eclipſe of a longer or ſhorter Continuance, according to the ſlower or ſwifter Motion of each of the Satellites. Their Eclipſe commences when they enter the Shadow of *Jupiter*, and ends when they go out of it. The Entry of theſe Satellites into the Shadow is call'd Immerſion, and their going out of it Emerſion. The fitteſt Time for obſerving the Immerſion is, when *Jupiter* riſes after the Sun; and their Emerſion is beſt obſerv'd, when *Jupiter* ſets before the Sun.

That theſe Obſervations may be more eaſie, M. *Caſſini*'s Tables are neceſſary, which tho' calculated for the Meridian of *Paris*, yet may anſwer any other Meridian, by knowing the Difference betwixt the Meridian of *Paris*, and that of the other Place given.

But

But to prevent being surpriz'd and unprepar'd for these Observations, it is most advisable to be ready an Hour before the Time given by the Tables. As the first of the Satellites is the swiftest of 'em all, it is by much the more fit for Observation of the Longitude of Places; for being 16 times swifter than the Moon, its Motion is so many times the more sensible. Telescopes from 18 to 21 Foot in Length are us'd for this purpose. By reason of the great Rapidity of the Motion of the first of the Satellites of *Jupiter*, it is easie to observe the first Moment of its Immersion or Emersion. Pendulum Clocks exactly rectified, having the Minutes and Seconds, must be us'd in this Matter. Such Clocks are of great use in all Astronomical Observations: The Length of the Pendulum ought to be 36 $\frac{1}{2}$ Inches. The Way of regulating Pendulum Clocks, is known to those who are acquainted with Astronomical Observations.

All these Precautions being taken, it is very easie to know the Longitude of a Place: Let there be two Observers in two different Places, they must both observe the Hour and Minute of the Immersion and Emersion of the first of the Satellites of *Jupiter*. The Difference of the Time of the two Observations shews the different Longitude of Places; for if the Immersions, and Emersions are at the very same Minute then these two Places are of the same Longitude, or under the same Meridian: But if two Persons, the one at *Paris*, the other at *Lisbon*, with Pendulum Clocks well rectified, observe at the same time the Immersion or Emersion of the first Satelles of *Jupiter*; if the Immersion or Emersion be at *Paris* at 10 at Night, and as *Lisbon* at 9, we may conclude, That *Paris* is more Eastward than *Lisbon* by one Hour, which answers to 15 Degrees: So that if the Longitude of Paris be 23, the Longitude of *Lisbon* must be 8 Degrees.

To find the Longitude of Places by the Eclipses of the Moon, we must observe, by the Assistance of a Telescope, the Beginning, the Continuance and End of the Eclipse, and the Elevation of the Pole. The Hour and Minute being known by the Altitude of any Fix'd Star, or if a Star be in the Meridian of the Place, we may easily know the Hour and Minute: But now Pendulum Clocks rectified are us'd in such Matters. Then compare the Time of the Beginning of the Eclipse in one Place, with that of another, for whose Meridian Ephemerides are calculated; for if the Eclipse begin in one Place $\frac{1}{4}$ of an Hour sooner than in the other, that Place must be 3 Deg. 45 Min. more Eastward than the other; But if the Eclipse of the Moon begin one Hour sooner in one Place, that where the Eclipse is sooner by an Hour is 15 Deg. more Eastward than the other. This has been the ordinary Way to find the Longitude of Places; which tho' useful by Land, yet it will not answer the Seamens Purpose, because the Eclipses of the Moon seldom happen. Astronomers make use of another Way to find out the Longitude of Places: When the Moon is in the Meridian of a Place, whose Longitude we want, then find what Hour this happens at, by the Altitude of any Fix'd Star then in the Meridian of the Place; the Hour being found, we may know what Part of the Ecliptic is in the Meridian of the Place we are in: So by knowing the Place of the Zodiac the Moon is in at that Time by Ephemerides, we know at what Time the Moon comes to that Place of the Zodiac for which the Ephemerides were calculated. By this means we have two different Times of the Moon's coming to a Place in the Zodiac; and by the former Principles, the Longitude of the Place where we are may be found out. Some are of Opinion, That if Watches and Clocks were made with that Equality and Justness of Motion as is requisite, we might easily know the Longitude of Places. When Ships are to go off from any Port, let the Watch or Clock be exactly 12 when the Sun is in the Meridian of the Place the Ship parts from; keep the Clock or Watch a going: When you want the Longitude of any Place, observe exactly when the Sun is in the Meridian of that Place; compare the Difference of Hours and Minutes betwixt the Times of the Sun's being in the Meridian of the Place you left, and in the Meridian of the Place you are then in: By the former Principles you will easily know the Difference of Longitude.

The Distance of Places in particular Maps, is easily known by a Scale of Miles which such Maps always have: Take the Distance

Digitized by Google

of two Places by your Compaſs, then bring the Diſtance taken to the Scale of Miles or Leagues; if the Diſtance be greater than the Scale, then by another Pair of Compaſſes you may take the Exceſs, and bring it to the Scale, and adding it to the Number of Miles or Leagues the Scale contains, you have the Diſtance of one Place from another. But upon Planiſpheres, if the Diſtance of two Places be only in Latitude, then allowing 60 *Italian* Miles for one Degree, the Number of Miles the two Places are diſtant may be known. If two Places differ in Longitude, knowing their Latitude, and obſerving by the Table of the Diminution of Longitude, how many Miles one Degree of Longitude contains in ſuch a Latitude; by this means you have the Diſtance of theſe two Places. But when Places differ both in Longitude and Latitude, the ordinary Method is to take their Diſtance by your Compaſſes: Bring this Diſtance to the Side or Circumference; if the Map be a Planiſphere, then reckon how many Degrees that Diſtance makes, and for every Degree allow 60 *Italian* or *Engliſh* Miles.

SECT. XXVIII.

Of the Aſcii, Heteroſcii, Periſcii, Amphiſcii, Periæci, Antiæci, *and* Antipodes.

THE Inhabitants of the Earth are thus diſtinguiſh'd, with regard to the Points their Shadows go to, when the Sun is in the Meridian: This Difference proceeds from the Obliquity of the Ecliptic, and from the Spherical Figure of the Earth.

The *Aſcii* are thoſe who live betwixt the Equator and the Tropics, who ſome Days in the Year, when the Sun is in the Meridian, have no Shadow at all. Thoſe under the Equator, the two Days of the Equinoxes, have no Shadow at Noon, the Beams of the Sun falling then perpendicular. Thoſe under the Tropic of *Cancer*, when the Sun is in the firſt Degree of that Sign, have no Shadow at Noon: The Tropic of *Capricorn* the like. At other Times, under the Tropic of *Cancer*, their Shadow at Noon points to the North; but under that of *Capricorn*, towards the South; and then they are call'd *Heteroſcii*. The ſame in both the Temperate Zones.

The *Periſcii* are thoſe whoſe Shadow, in 24 Hours, is carried round all the Points of the Compaſs. The Inhabitants of the Frigid Zones, the Sun being ſome time of the Year all the 24 Hours above their Horizon, are ſo call'd.

The *Amphiſcii* have their Shadow at Noon, ſometime towards the North, and ſometime towards the South. The Inhabitants of the Torrid Zone, are therefore call'd by this Name.

The People of the Earth, with reſpect to their Situation, are *Periæci*, *Antiæci*, and *Antipodes*.

The *Periæci* are thoſe who dwell in the ſame parallel Circle of Latitude, but in oppoſite Points of the ſame, *viz.* in oppoſite Meridians. Hence it is, That when the one, *viz.* thoſe who are 180 Degrees of Longitude further Eaſt have Noon, the other have Midnight, their Days are of equal Length, their Seaſons are the ſame, becauſe the ſame Pole is equally elevated in both Places: But in Places that belong to the Frigid Zone, this Difference of Day and Night is not obſerved, becauſe the Sun is 24 Hours or more above their Horizon.

The *Antiæci* are thoſe who live under the ſame Meridian, but in oppoſite Parallel Circles of Latitude, and they are equally diſtant from the Equator; ſo if one live in a Northern Latitude, the other live in a Southern, and have the ſame Elevation of different Poles, they have Noon and Midnight at the ſame time; but 'tis not ſo as to the Riſing and Setting of the Sun. The Seaſons of the Year are alſo oppoſite; for when it is Winter in the one Place, it is Summer in the other; and when the one has the longeſt Days, the other has the ſhorteſt.

The *Antipodes* are the People who are Diametrically oppoſite to one another, at the Diſtance of one half of the Circumference of the Earth: They have contrary Parallels and Meridians. If the one Place have ſo much Southern Latitude, their *Antipodes* have the ſame Northern Latitude; their Meridians are 180 Degrees diſtant. Hence it is, That when the one have Night, the other have Day; when the one have Summer, the other have Winter. Our *Antipodes* can

Digitized by Google

can see no more of our Stars than we can of theirs; and the Stars that never set to us, never rise to them.

The Ancients could not believe the Doctrine of the *Antipodes*; so that whoever maintain'd that Opinion in the first Times of Christianity, were accounted Hereticks. *Virgilius*, Bishop of *Saltzburg*, in 745, upon the Complaint of *Bonifacius*, Archbishop of *Mentz*, to the Duke of *Bohemia*, and afterwards to Pope *Zachary*, was by him condemn'd of Heresie on that Account; as *Aventinus* says. *Annal Boicit*, *Lib.* 3.

The Venerable *Bede* reckon'd the Opinion of the *Antipodes* a meer Fable. *Lactantius* and *Augustine* were of the same Mind; and 'tis no Wonder, since they thought the Earth was shap'd like a Table.

Those who live under the Equinoctial, have no People who are their *Antiaci*. *Periœci* and *Antipodes* under the Equator are the same.



SECT.

SECT. XXIX.

Of the Uſe of the Terreſtrial GLOBE.

HAving explain'd the Circles of the Sphere, we come now more particularly to the Uſe of the Terreſtrial Globe: Some few Things belonging to it, which could not fall in ſo naturally before, are firſt to be explain'd.

The Horary Circle is a ſmall Circle of Braſs, and ſo affix'd to the Brazen Meridian, that the Pole (or End of the Axis) is its Center. The 24 Hours of the Natural Day are at equal Diſtances from one another; the 12th Hour for Noon being in the upper Part of the Circle towards the Zenith, and the other 12th Hour for Midnight in the lower Part towards the Horizon: So that from 12 to 12 on the Eaſt-Side, are the Hours from Midnight to Noon; and from 12 in the upper Part to 12 in the lower on the Weſt Side of that Horary Circle, are the Hours from Noon to Midnight. The Index to this Circle is fix'd upon the End of the Axis, and turns round with the Globe. The Uſe of this Circle will appear afterwards.

The Quadrant of Altitude, or the Vertical Circle, is a narrow thin Plate of pliable Braſs, exactly anſwerable to a fourth Part of the Equinoctial. Upon this Quadrant are inſcrib'd 90 Degrees, each of them being according to the ſame Scale with thoſe upon the Equator. Of its Uſe, we ſhall ſpeak afterwards.

The Semi-Circle of Poſition is a narrow ſolid Plate of Braſs, exactly anſwerable to one half of the Equator. Upon this Semi-Circle are inſcrib'd 180 Degrees, exactly the ſame with thoſe upon the Equator. We may term it a double Quadrant of Altitude: Its greateſt Uſe is in Aſtronomy.

The Mariners Compaſs, Horizontally fix'd upon the Pedeſtal of the Globe, is frequently needful for the Solution of ſeveral Problems, and for placing the Poles North and South.

Prob. I. *To rectifie the Globe.*

The Globe being upon a true Plain, elevate the Pole above the Horizon, according to the Latitude of the Place given; fix the Quadrant of Altitude in the Zenith, the Mariners Compaſs upon the Pedeſtal, the Brazen Meridian ſtanding due North and South.

Prob. II. *To find the Longitude and Latitude of a Place.*

Turn about the Globe, 'till the Place whoſe Longitude and Latitude you want touch the Eaſt-Side of the Brazen Meridian: Obſerve what Degree of the Equator touches the ſaid Meridian, and that Degree is the Longitude of the Place. See what Degree of the Meridian touches the Place, and the Degree found is the Latitude of the Place. When the Longitude and Latitude of a Place is known, to find the Place upon the Globe, turn the Globe, 'till the Meridian touch the Equator in the Degrees of Longitude of the given Place; find upon the Meridian the Degrees of Latitude of the Place, and the Place you want is exactly under the Latitude found. For Inſtance; To find *Paris* on the Globe, its Longitude is 23¼ Deg. and Latitude 48 Deg. 51 Min. I turn the Globe round till the Meridian touch the Equator in 23¼ Deg. then I trace up the Meridian till I come to 48 Deg. 51 Min. and the Place of the Globe exactly under that Deg. of the Meridian is *Paris*.

Prob. III. *To find the Diſtance of two Places, as of* Amſterdam *and* Conſtantinople.

Set one Foot of the Compaſs in the Point of the Globe that ſhews *Amſterdam*, open your Compaſs till the other Foot touch *Conſtantinople*, bring the Compaſs thus open'd to the Equator, and count the Deg. it contains, you will find 21 Deg. Or, inſtead of Compaſſes, it may be known by the Quadrant of Altitude, thus: Bring to the Meridian one of the Places, as *Amſterdam*, put the Quadrant of Altitude upon that Place, extend it to *Conſtantinople*, and you will find 21. Deg. of Diſtance. When Places differ only in Latitude or Longitude, the Way to know their Diſtance has been ſhewn before.

Prob. IV. *The Latitude of a Place being given, to know all the Places on the Earth that have the ſame Latitude.*

Find the Latitude in the Brazen Meridian, then turn the Globe round, and all

Digitized by Google

Places touching the Deg. of Latitude in the Meridian are of the ſame Latitude.

Prob. V. *The Longitude of a Place being known, to find all Places upin the Globe that have the ſame Longitude.*

Bring the Longitude of the Place upon the Equator to the Brazen Meridian; then all Places that touch the Meridian quite round the Earth are of the ſame Longitude.

Prob. VI. *To find the Sun's Place in the Zodiac on the 18th of* Auguſt, *N. S.*

Seek for the Day of *Auguſt* in the Wooden Horizon: In the Circle of Months, obſerve the Difference betwixt the *Julian* and *Gregorian* Calendar, and you find over againſt it, in the Circle of the Signs, the 25th Degree of *Leo*; find that Degree of *Leo* in the Ecliptic of the Globe, and that is the Place of the Sun the 18th of *Auguſt*: But in Leap-Year, for the 29th of *February*, you muſt ſeek the firſt of *March*.

Prob. VII. *To know on what Day of the Year the Sun is at Noon perpendicular above any Place given in the Torrid Zone.*

Let the Place be *Goa*, which is in the 16th Deg. of Northern Latitude; mark upon the Brazen Meridian that Latitude; turn the Globe quite round, and obſerve what Signs of the Zodiac paſs under that Latitude of the Meridian, and you will find two that touch that Deg. of the Meridian, *viz.* the 13th Deg of *Taurus*, and the 18th of *Leo*: Look on the Wooden Horizon, and you will find the Days that anſwer thoſe Degrees, *viz.* the 3d of *May*, and the 11th of *Auguſt*, N. S.

Prob. VIII. *The Month and Day, and Time of the Day, being known, to find thoſe Places on the Globe, in whoſe Meridian the Sun is at that Time.*

The Pole being elevated according to the Latitude of the given Place, bring the ſaid Place to the Brazen Meridian, ſet the Index of the Horary Circle at the Hour of the Day of the given Place, turn the Globe till the Index point at the upper Figure of 12; which done, fix the Globe in that Situation, and obſerve what Places are exactly under the upper Semi Circle of the Brazen Meridian, and thoſe Places have the Sun in their Meridian at that Time.

Prob. IX. *To know the Length of the Day and Night in any Place of the Earth at any Time.*

Elevate the Pole according to the Latitude of the Place whoſe Length of Day you ſeek for; find the Sun's Place in the Ecliptic at that Time; which being brought to the Eaſt-Side of the Horizon, ſet the Index of the Horary Circle at the upper Figure of 12; and turning the Globe about till the ſaid Place of the Ecliptic, where the Sun is at that Time, touch the Weſtern Horizon, reckon the Number of Hours the Index of the Horary Circle has paſs'd from the Figure of 12, and that is the Length of the Day.

Prob. X. *To find on the Globe the* Antiſci, Periæci, *and* Antipodes.

Bring the Place whoſe *Antiſci* you want to the Brazen Meridian, by which you will know its Northern Latitude; ſee what Place touches the ſame Deg. of Southern Latitude, and that Place is the *Antiſci*: Bring the Place given to the Brazen Meridian, in the ſame Parallel Circle of Latitude, and that Place that touches the oppoſite Part of the Meridian, in the ſame Hemiſphere, is the *Periſci* of the Place: Or add 180 Deg. to the Longitude of the Place given; turn about the Globe till that Deg. of Longitude upon the Equator touch the Meridian, and under that Latitude, upon the Meridian of the Place given, the *Periſci* are to be found; Or having brought the Place given to the Brazen Meridian, obſerve the Place of the Meridian it touches, ſet the Index of the Horary Circle at 12, and turn the Globe till the Index come to the oppoſite 12, the Place that touches the ſame Deg. of Latitude in the Meridian is the *Periſci*.

Prob. XI. *To find the Antipodes of any Place; for Inſtance, the Antipodes of* London.

Turn the Globe round, either towards the Eaſt or Weſt, till *London* touch the Horizon; count upon the Horizon the Deg that that Place of the Horizon which *London* touches is diſtant from the Brazen Meridian, if *London* touch the Horizon in the Eaſt-Side of the Meridian, reckon the ſame Number of Deg. from the Weſt-Side of the Meridian, and where the Reckoning ends, that Place is the Antipodes of *London*. Or having found out the Latitude of the Place, by bringing

Digitized by Google

bringing the Place to the Brazen Meridian, ſet the Index of the Horary Circle at the upper 12, turn round the Globe till the Index touch the lower 12; then whatever Deg. of North Latitude the Place given has, ſeek in the Brazen Meridian for the ſame Deg. of South Latitude; which being found, is the Antipodes of the given Place.

Prob. XII. *To find the Sun's Declination.*

The Sun's Declination is its Diſtance from the Equator, either Northward or Southward; firſt ſeek, according to the former Directions, the Place of the Sun in the Ecliptic for that Day; the Sign and Deg. of it being found for that Day, bring that Sign and Deg. to the Brazen Meridian, then ſee what Deg. of Latitude it touches; which being found, is the Sun's Declination from the Equator. Take the Sun's Declination from the Latitude of the Place, the Remainder will be the Diſtance of the Sun from the Zenith of the Place given at Noon: But if the Sun is not on the Side of the Equator we are on, then add the Sun's Declination to the Latitude of the Place, and this makes the Diſtance betwixt the Sun and the Zenith of the Place.

Prob. XIII. *To find the Time of the Sun's Riſing and Setting in Places that are betwixt the Equator and the Polar Circles.*

Elevate the Globe according to the Latitude of the Place: For Inſtance; *Amſterdam*, the 30th of *July*, N. S. Seek the Sun's Place in the Wooden Horizon, according to the former Directions, and you will find it to be then the 7th Deg. of *Leo*: Bring that Place of the Zodiac to the Brazen Meridian, ſet the Index of the Horary Circle at the upper 12, turn the Globe from W. to E. till the Place of the Ecliptic, where the Sun is for that Day, touch the Eaſtern Horizon; ſee what Hour the Index of the Horary Circle points at, which is 4 Hours 17 Min. in the Morning; and this in the Place ſought for is the Hour of the Sun's Riſing. Turn the Globe Weſtward, till the ſame Point of the Ecliptic touch the Weſtern Horizon; obſerve what Hour the Index of the Horary Circle points at, which is 7 Hours 43 Min. in the Evening; and that is the Hour of the Sun's Setting.

Prob. XIV. *To find the longeſt Day of any Place betwixt the Equator and the Polar Circles.*

Elevate the Pole according to the Latitude of the Place, *viz. Paris*; if it be of Northern Latitude, the longeſt Day is when the Sun enters the firſt Deg. of *Cancer*, which bring to the Brazen Meridian; ſet the Index to the upper 12, turn the Globe round Eaſtward, till the firſt Deg. of *Cancer* touch the Eaſtern Part of the Horizon; ſee what Hour the Index points at, which is 4 Hours for the Riſing of the Sun; turn the Globe Weſtward, till the ſame Degree of *Cancer* touch the Weſtern Horizon, the Index will point at 8, which is the Hour of the Sun-ſetting for the longeſt Day at *Paris*: So the longeſt Day there is 16 Hours, which is 8 half Hours longer than their Day under the Equator, by which we know, that *Paris* is in the 8th Climate. Obſerve the ſame Way of Operation for Places that have Southern Latitude, whoſe longeſt Day is when the Sun is in the firſt Deg. of *Capricorn*.

Prob. XV. *To find in what Climate any Place, lying betwixt the Polar Circles and the Poles, is.*

Elevate the Pole according to the Latitude of the Places, *viz.* 69 Deg. 30. Min. Northern Latitude; turn the Globe Eaſtward, till the Ecliptic touch the Northern Point of the Horizon; obſerve the Deg. of the Ecliptic that touches the Horizon, and you will find it to be the firſt Deg of *Gemini*; count how many Deg. there are from that to the firſt Deg. of *Cancer*, and you will find it 30 Deg. which doubled, makes 60, the Number of Days without any Night for their longeſt Day; and you find that Place to be the End of the ſecond Climate of Months.

Prob. XVI. *To know what Hour it is in one Place, when it is Noon in another.*

Let the Example be, to know what Hour it is at *Conſtantinople*, when it is Noon at *Paris*: Bring *Paris* to the Brazen Meridian, ſet the Index at the upper 12, move the Globe from E. to W. (becauſe *Conſtantinople* is E. from *Paris*) till *Conſtantinople* touch the Brazen Meridian; obſerve what Hour the Index touches, which is 2 in the Afternoon, and that is the Time of the Day when it is

is 12 at *Paris*, becauſe *Conſtantinople* is 30 Deg. more Eaſtward than *Paris*, and ſo has Noon two Hours ſooner.

Prob. XVII. *To know what Hour it is in all Places of the Earth, when you know what Hour it is in a particular Place.*

When it is 10 in the Morning at *Paris*, to know what Hour it is at that Time all the World over; Bring *Paris* to the Brazen Meridian, ſet the Index at 10 of the Morning, turn the Globe round; the Index will mark what Hour it is in all Places that come under the Brazen Meridian. If you turn the Globe towards the Weſt, you will find, for Example, that when it is 10 of the Morning at *Paris*, it is Noon at *Conſtantinople*; 2½ in the Afternoon at *Iſpahan*, the Capital City of *Perſia*; 4¼ after Noon at *Siam*; and 7 at Night at *Meaco*, the Capital of *Japan*. If you turn the Globe towards the Eaſt, you will ſee, that when it is 10 of the Morning at *Paris*, it is only 9½ at *Lisbon*; 5½ of the Morning at *Quebec*; 4½ of the Morning at *Carthagena* in *America*; and 2½ at *Compoſtella* in *Mexico*.

Prob. XVIII. *To find the Beginning and Ending of the Twilight in any Place, and at any Time of the Year.*

The Twilight is before the Sun's riſing, and after its ſetting. When the Sun is 18 Deg. perpendicularly below the Horizon in the Morning, the Twilight begins; and when the Sun is 18 Deg. perpendicularly below the Horizon after its ſetting, the Twilight ends. In a direct Sphere near the Equator, the Twilights are of ſhorter continuance, becauſe the Sun then goes below the Horizon in a perpendicular Line. But in an oblique Sphere, the Twilight is longer; and longeſt of all in a parallel Sphere. For Inſtance:

To know when the Twilight begins and ends at Amſterdam *the 5th of* October.

Elevate the Pole according to the Latitude of the Place; ſeek the Place of the Sun for that Day, according to the Directions above, which is the 12th Degree of *Libra*; bring this to the Meridian, and ſet the Index to 12 at Noon; turn the Globe towards the Eaſt, till the 12th of *Aries*, which is diametrically oppoſite to the Place the Sun is then in, be elevated 18 Deg. above the Weſtern Point of the Horizon; which done, you will ſee, 1. That the Place of the Sun is 18 Deg. below the Eaſtern Horizon. 2. That the Index points at 4 Hours 26 Min. after Midnight for the Beginning of the Morning Twilight. Turn about the Globe till the 12th of *Aries* be elevated 18 Deg. above the Eaſtern Horizon; which Elevation is known by the Quadrant of Altitude: Then the Index ſhows 7 of the Clock and 37 Min. after Noon for the End of the Evening Twilight.

Prob. XIX. *To find theſe Places that have Twilight all the Night at a certain Day.*

Seek, by the Directions above, the Declination of the Sun from that Day; elevate the Pole ſo many Deg. above the Horizon, as the Declination of the Sun is Deg. from the Equator; which being done, all the Circles of Latitude that are not 18 Deg. below the Horizon, have Twilight all the Night over.

Prob. XX. *To find the Hour of the Day by the Globe at any Time when the Sun ſhines.*

Divide your Equinoctial Line into 24 equal Parts, and in ſmall Figures ſet down the Hours of the natural Day after the following Manner: At the Interſections of the Ecliptic and Equator, place the Figure 6, and bring theſe Places to the Brazen Meridian, one being in the upper, and the other in the lower Hemiſphere; which done, place the 12 Figures in the Weſtern Hemiſphere in this Order following; 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6; then beginning at the ſame Figure of 6, and proceeding Eaſtwards, ſet down the other 12 Figures thus; 6, 5, 4, 3, 2, 1, 12, 11, 10, 9, 8, 7, 6. The Equator being thus divided and mark'd, elevate the Globe according to the Latitude of the Place where you are, and bring the Interſection of the Vernal Equinox to the upper Part of the Brazen Meridian; and placing the Globe duly South and North, obſerve exactly that half of the Globe upon which the Sun doth actually ſhine; for the laſt Part of the enlighten'd Hemiſphere doth always ſhew the Hour of the Day upon the Equinoctial Line.

Digitized by Google

Prob. XXI. *The Latitude of the Place, and Height of the Sun, being known, to find thereby the Hour of the Day.*

The Pole being elevated according to the Latitude of the Place, and the Height of the Sun being found by an exact Quadrant, mark his Place in the Ecliptic for the given Day, and bring the ſame to the Brazen Meridian; after this, fix the Quadrant of Altitude at the Zenith, and mark in the ſaid Quadrant the particular Degree of the Sun's Altitude; ſet the Index of the Horary Circle at Noon; move the Globe, together with the Quadrant of Altitude, till the Sun's Place mark'd in the Ecliptic, and his Deg. of Altitude mark'd upon the Quadrant of Altitude, do come both in one: Which done, obſerve what Hour the Index pointeth at, and that is the Hour wanted.

Prob. XXII. *The Latitude of the Place being given, as alſo the true Bearing of the Sun in the ſaid Place at any Time, to find thereby the Hour of the Day.*

The Pole being elevated according to the Latitude of the Place, and the Sun's Place in the Ecliptic for that Day being found and mark'd, fix the Quadrant of Altitude to the Zenith, and by the Mariners Compaſs obſerve the true Bearing of the Sun; and then bring the Quadrant of Altitude to the obſerv'd Point of the Compaſs upon the Wooden Horizon, and move the Globe till the Sun's Place in the Ecliptic coincide with the ſaid Quadrant: Which done, and the Globe continuing in that Poſition, the Index of the Horary Circle will point at the Hour of the Day at the Time deſir'd.

Prob. XXIII. *The Latitude of a Place, and the Sun's Place in the Ecliptic, being given, to find thereby the Hour of the Day.*

Elevate the Pole according to the given Latitude, and place the Globe directly South and North by the Mariners Compaſs; then fix a ſmall Needle perpendicularly in the Sun's Place in the Ecliptic, and bringing the ſame to the Brazen Meridian, ſet the Index at Noon; turn the Globe till the Needle caſt no Shadow; and then what Hour the Index points, is the Hour of the Day.

When any Place is 90 Deg. above the Horizon, the Wooden Horizon is the Horizon of that Place.

Prob. XXIV. *To find the Meridian Line by the Globe in any Place, and at any Time of the Day.*

The Latitude of the Place being known, and the Pole elevated anſwerably, obſerve the Height of the Sun above the Horizon at that Time, and draw upon a true Horizontal Plain a ſtreight Line in, or parallel to, the Shadow of a Stile perpendicularly erected upon that Plain; in which deſcribe a Circle at any opening of the Compaſſes, and finding the Sun's Place in the Ecliptic, mark his obſerv'd Height in the Quadrant of Altitude; then move the Globe, together with the ſaid Quadrant, till that Mark in the Quadrant, and the Sun's Place in the Ecliptic, come both in one; which done, count upon the Wooden Horizon the Number of Degrees between the Quadrant of Altitude and the Brazen Meridian, and ſet off the ſame Number of Degrees upon the aforeſaid Circle drawn upon the Plain, by making a viſible Point in the Circumference, where the Reckoning ends, (beginning ſtill at the Side towards the Sun, and proceeding E. or W. according to the Time of the Day;) then draw a Line from that Point in the Circumference through the Center of the ſaid Circle, and the ſame will prove the true Meridian Line of that Place, at what Time ſoever the Obſervation is made.

Prob. XXV. *The Month and Day being given; to find by the Globe thoſe Places of the North Frigid Zone, where the Sun begins to ſhine conſtantly without ſetting; as alſo thoſe Places of the South Frigid Zone, from which the Sun begins at that Time totally to abſent himſelf.*

Find the Sun's Place in the Ecliptic, bring it to the Brazen Meridian, and reckon the ſame Number of Degrees on the Meridian from the North Pole to the Equator, as the Sun's Place in the Ecliptic is Degrees from the Equator: Obſerve, that in all Places, when the Globe is turn'd round, that touch that Degree of the Meridian, the Day in thoſe Places begins to be continual.

Prob. XXVI.

Digitized by Google

Prob. XXVI. *A Place being given in the North Frigid Zone, to find by the Globe what Number of Days the Sun doth conſtantly ſhine upon the ſaid Place, and what Days it is abſent; alſo the firſt and laſt Days of its Appearance.*

Bring the given Place to the Brazen Meridian, and obſerving its Latitude, elevate the Pole accordingly; then turn the Globe about, till the firſt Deg. of *Cancer* come under the Meridian, and count the ſame Number of Deg. upon the Meridian from each Side of the Equator, as the Place is diſtant from the Pole; and making a Mark where the Reckoning ends, turn the Globe round, and carefully obſerve what two Degrees of the Ecliptic paſs exactly under the two Points mark'd in the Meridian; for the Northern Arch of the Circle, (*viz.* that comprehended between the two mark'd Degrees) being reduc'd to Time, will give the Number of Days that the Sun doth conſtantly ſhine above the Horizon of the given Place; and the oppoſite Arch of the ſaid Circle will give the Number of Days that he is abſent. The Pole continuing in the ſame Elevation, bring the beginning of *Cancer* to the Brazen Meridian, and obſerve the two Points of the Ecliptic, which in the mean time coincide with the Horizon; then ſearch upon the Wooden Horizon for thoſe Days that the Sun doth enter into the aforeſaid Degrees of the Ecliptic, and theſe are the Days of his firſt or laſt Appearance in the given Place.

Prob. XXVII. *The Hour of the Day being given, according to our Way of Reckoning in* England, *to find thereby the* Babylonick *Hour at any Time.*

The *Babylonians* of old, and the People of *Nuremberg* now, commence their Hours from the Appearance of the Sun in the Eaſtern Horizon. For the finding this Hour at any Time, and at any Place, elevate the Pole according to the Latitude of the Place; note the Sun's Place in the Ecliptic at that Time, bring the ſame to the Brazen Meridian, and ſet the Index of the Horary Circle at Noon: After this, turn the Globe either Eaſtward or Weſtward, according to the Time of the Day, till the Index point the given Hour; then fix the Globe in that Poſition, and bring back the Index to Noon, and move the Globe from Weſt to Eaſt, till the Sun's Place mark'd in the Ecliptic coincide with the Eaſtern Horizon: Which done, reckon upon the Horary Circle the Number of Hours between the upper Figure of 12, and the Index; for that is the Number of Hours from Sun-riſing for that Day in the given Place, or the true *Babylonick* Hour deſir'd.

Prob. XXVIII. *The* Babylonick *Hour being given, to find the Hour of the Day at any Time, according to our Way of Reckoning in* England.

Elevate the Pole according to the given Latitude, and marking the Sun's Place in the Ecliptic, bring the ſame to the Brazen Meridian, and ſet the Index of the Horary Circle at Noon; then turn the Globe Weſtward, till the Index point at the given Hour from Sun-riſing; and fixing the Globe in that Situation, bring the Index back again to Noon, and turn the Globe backwards, till the Sun's Place mark'd in the Ecliptic return to the ſame Semi-Circle of the Brazen Meridian from whence it came: Which done, obſerve what Hour the Index of the Horary Circle points at, and the ſame is the Hour deſir'd.

Prob. XXIX. *The Hour of the Day being given, according to our Way of Reckoning in* England, *to find thereby the* Italick *Hour at any time.*

The *Italick* Hour is the Number of Hours from Sun-ſetting at all Times of the Year, to Sun-ſetting the next following Day: For the finding ſuch Hours, elevate the Pole according to the Latitude of the Place; and noting the Sun's Place in the Ecliptic upon the given Day, bring the ſame to the Brazen Meridian, and ſet the Index of the Horary Circle at Noon; then turn the Globe either Eaſt or Weſt, according to the Time of the Day, till the Index point at the given Hour; and fixing the Globe in that Situation, bring the Index back to Noon: Which done, turn the Globe Eaſtward, till the Mark of the Sun's Place in the Ecliptic coincide with the Weſtern Horizon, and obſerve how many Hours there are between the upper Figure of 12 and the Index (reckoning them Eaſtward as the Globe mov'd) for theſe are the Hours from Sun-ſet, or the *Italick* Hour deſir'd.

Prob. XXX. *The* Italick *Hour being given, to find thereby the Hour of the Day at any Time, according to our Reckoning in* England.

Elevate the Pole according to the Latitude of the Place; note the Sun's Place in the Ecliptic, bring the ſame to the Weſtern Horizon, ſet the Index at Noon, turn the Globe Weſtward, till the Index point at the *Italick* Hour given; then fixing the Globe in that Poſition, bring the Index back to Noon, and turn the Globe backward, till the Mark of the Sun's Place return to the Semi-Circle of the Brazen Meridian, from whence it came: Which done, obſerve how many Hours there are between Noon and the Index, (reckoning them from W. to E.) for thoſe are the Hours deſir'd, according to our Way of Reckoning in *England*.

Prob. XXXI *The Hour of the Day being given, according to our Way of Reckoning in* England, *to find thereby the* Judaical *Hour at any Time.*

The *Jews* divided their Artificial Day into 12 Hours, which muſt be unequal according to the Length of the Days in the particular Places: For finding which, elevate the Pole according to the Latitude of the Place, mark the Sun's Place in the Ecliptic at that Time, bring it to the Eaſtern Horizon, and ſet the Index at Noon; then turn the Globe about, till that Place mark'd in the Ecliptic come to the Weſtern Horizon, and obſerve the Number of Hours betwixt Noon and the Index, theſe being the Hours of which the given Day doth conſiſt; which Number you are to note down, and to find what Hour from Sun-riſing correſponds with the given Hour, or from Sun-ſetting, if the given Hour be after Sun-ſet: Which done, work by the following Proportion: As the Number of Hours whereof the Day given conſiſteth (*viz.* thoſe noted down) is to 12; ſo is the Number of Hours from Sun-riſing, (if it be an Hour of the Day) or from Sun-ſetting, (if an Hour of the Night) to a 4th Proportional; which is the Number deſir'd, *viz.* the *Judaical* Hour at the Time given.

Prob. XXXII. *The* Judaical *Hour being given, to find thereby the Hour of the Day at any Time, according to our Way of Reckoning in* England.

Elevate the Pole according to the Latitude of the Place, find the Sun's Place in the Ecliptic at that Time, bring the ſame to the Eaſtern Horizon, and ſet the Index at Noon; then turn the Globe Weſtward, till the Sun's Place coincide with the Weſtern Horizon; then the Index points at the Number of equal Hours whereof the Day conſiſteth; which Number you are to note down, and bring the Sun's Place to the Brazen Meridian, and ſetting the Index again at Noon, turn the Globe till the Sun's Place coincide with the Eaſtern Horizon, and the Index will point at the Hour when the Sun riſeth in the given Place. Which done, work by the following Proportion: As 12 is to the given Number of *Judaical* Hours; ſo is the Length of the Day in equal Hours (formerly found out) to a 4th Proportional; which is the Number deſir'd, *viz.* the Hour of the Day according to our Way of Reckoning in *England*: Only note, That if the 4th Proportional be leſs than 12, you are to add the ſame to the Hour of Sun-riſing, and the Product will give the Number of Hours before Noon for that Day; but if it be more than 12, then ſubſtract it from 12, and the Remainder will give the Hour of the Day for Afternoon.

Prob. XXXIII. *The Day and Hour of either a Solar or Lunar Eclipſe being known, to find by the Globe all thoſe Places in which the ſame will be viſible.*

Mark the Sun's Place in the Ecliptic for the given Day, as alſo the oppoſite Point thereunto, which is the Place of the Moon at that Time; then find that Place of the Globe to which the Sun is vertical at the given Hour, and bring the ſame to the Vertical Point or Pole of the Wooden Horizon, and fixing the Globe in that Situation, obſerve what Places are in the upper Hemiſphere; for in moſt of them the Sun is viſible during his Eclipſe. As for the Lunar Eccliplſe, you are to find the Antipodes of that Place, which hath the Sun vertical at the given Hour, and bringing the ſame to the Pole of the Wooden Horizon, obſerve, as formerly, what Places are in the upper Hemiſphere of the Globe, for in ſuch will the Moon be viſible during her Eclipſe, except thoſe that are very near unto, or actually in the Horizon.

Digitized by Google

Prob. XXXIV. *To know all the Places that have Day, or the Sun shining upon them, at the same Time.*

The Globe being rectified, *i. e.* the North Pole standing due North, and elevated according to the Latitude of the Place, bring the Place you are in to the Brazen Meridian, expose the Globe to the Sun; all Places on the Globe that are illuminated, have Day at that Time, and those that are not, have Night at that Time: Then bring the Index of the Horary Circle to Noon; bring that Point of the Equator, where the Sun's shining ends, to the Brazen Meridian, the Index shews how many Hours the Sun is distant from the Meridian.

Prob. XXXV. *A Place being given, to find the Situation of another, according to the Angle of Position.*

Let the given Place be *Paris*, to know what Point the Cape of *Good Hope* is in regard to it; elevate the Globe according to the Latitude of *Paris*, which is 49 Deg. bring *Paris* to the Brazen Meridian, fix the Quadrant of Altitude in the Zenith, *i. e.* upon *Paris*, and make the Quadrant touch the Cape of *Good Hope*; then you will find that the Arch of the Horizon, betwixt the Zenith of the Cape of *Good Hope* and that of *Paris*, or the Brazen Meridian, is 18 Deg. for the Angle of Position; so that we find that the said Cape is in a Point a little less Easterly than South South-East.

It being troublesome to quote Authors for every Particular, we think it proper to acquaint the Reader, That in the Description and Use of the Globes, we have made use of *Blaw*, *Varenius*, *Oxenam*, *Brietius*, *Brion*, *Martineau de Plessis*, besides *English* Authors who have wrote on that Subject.

CHAP. II.

Of the Origine of Mankind, *and Peopling the* World.

THAT Mankind had their Original at the Time so particularly accounted for in the sacred History, can be doubted by none who believe the Divine Authority of the Scriptures. But abstracting from that unquestionable Authority, we may prove the Truth of it, as Men, by the following Arguments: 1. That in all Ages, and among all Nations, there has been a constant Tradition, That Mankind had its Original from some first Parents, not begot in the common Way, but immediately created by God. 2. That by Observation, we find the Increase of People daily exceeds their Decrease: From whence 'tis, That Nations usually double their People in 360 Years, or sooner. If we enquire into the Original Invention of Arts and Sciences, we shall find by History, That they all had their Rise within the Compass of 5 or 6000 Years. 4. By consulting the Histories of the most ancient Times, it will appear, That we have no Authentic Account of any Originals of Kingdoms, Wars, Institutions of Laws or Governments higher than that Time; but that the Plantations of all the known Parts of the World, nay, even of the Original and Apotheoses of the Heathen Deities, do all fall within that Period. By Consequence 'tis evident, That *Moses*'s History, abstracting from its Divine Authority, is not only the most ancient, but the most valuable Piece now extant: For 'tis plain, That to him alone we are indebted for our Knowledge of the Time and Manner of the Beginning of the World; of our first Parents; of the Frailty and Depravation of humane Nature; of the Inventors of Arts; of the Original of Nations; of the first Founders of Empires and Kingdoms; and of the Institutions of Laws and Government. These Things in all other ancient Histories are so blended with Fables and ridiculous Stories, that we may easily perceive the Authors knew nothing of the Matter,

Digitized by Google

Matter, but what they ſtole from him, or had conve,'d to them by uncertain Tradition.

Moſes's Account of the Situation of *Paradiſe*, the Original Seat, and Dwelling-Place of our firſt Parents, is very Particular. He tells us, That it was in *Eden* Eaſtwards; *i. e.* Eaſtwards from *Judea*, or from the Deſart of the *Amorites*, where he wrote his Account. Some are of Opinion, That the Name *Eden* is deriv'd from the Pleaſantneſs of the Place. We read of the Country of *Eden* in ſeveral Places of Scripture, as in 2 *Kings* 19. 12. *Iſa.* 37. 12. *Ezek.* 27. 23. and this lay Eaſtwards of *Judea*. That it was Part of the Kingdom of *Aſſyria*, ſeems plain from 2 *Kings* 19. 12. and that Kingdom contain'd anciently not only the Country then call'd *Aſſur*, but alſo *Meſopotamia*, *Babylonia*, &c. And Dr. *Patrick*, Biſhop of *Ely*, in his Commentary on *Geneſis*, alledges, That *Paradiſe* was ſituated in Part of the latter; tho' moſt Authors think it was in *Meſopotamia*.

Moſes ſays, a River went from *Eden*, and from thence was parted into two Heads. This River, according to the beſt Accounts, was a Conjunction of *Euphrates* and *Tigris*, which meet in *Apamia*, according to *Ptolomy*; which the Learned *Bochart* ſays, is the Place now by the *Arabians* call'd *Alcatfar*, about 45 Miles from *Bagdat*; and then they run together for a great Way. 'Tis probable, this united Stream ran through the Country of *Eden*, and that the Garden lay on the Eaſt-Side of it, and its Southern Boundary at the parting again of the two Rivers.

This River, *Moſes* ſays, became into 4 Heads, which Sir *Walter Raleigh* underſtands to be Streams; and theſe 4 Streams were *Tigris* and *Euphrates* before they join'd, and *Piſhon* and *Gihon* afterwards. *Piſhon* was probably the Weſtern River *Paſitigris*, the ſame with *Orontis*, according to *Salmaſius*, Sir *Walter Raleigh*, and *Bochart*. Mr. *Carver* obſerves from *Xenophon*, That this River was call'd ſimply *Phyſcus*; and *Bochart* ſays, There was a Place call'd *Paſimum* lying near *Euphrates*: In all which Names, there are ſome Footſteps of the Name *Phiſon*, or *Piſon*. *Moſes* informs us in the 2d of *Geneſis*, That this River encompaſs'd the whole Land of *Havilah*: And in the 10th of *Geneſis*, he mentions two *Havilah*'s, one deſcended from *Joktan*, v. 29. but this cannot be the *Havilah* here mention'd, becauſe his Poſterity were planted Eaſtward: But the other *Havilah*, mention'd *v.* 7. is ſaid to be deſcended from *Cuſh*, and gave Riſe to a more Weſtern People, ſeated on that Part of *Arabia Felix* which borders on this Stream; for we read, *Gen.* 25. 18. That the *Iſhmaelites*, who were certainly Inhabitants of *Arabia Deſerta*, are bounded by *Shur* towards *Egypt*, and by *Havilah* in the Way to *Aſſyria*: And after this, we read, 1 *Sam.* 15. 7. That *Saul* found *Havilah* in the ſame Situation. The next Stream *Moſes* calls *Gihon*, of which Name there are ſcarce any Footſteps left; but by the Country 'tis ſaid to encompaſs, muſt be the Eaſtern Diviſion of the River after its parting at *Eden*. This Country he calls *Ethiopia*, or *Cuſh*, by which we are not to underſtand that *Ethiopia* in *Africa*, but *Ethiopia* in *Aſia*: For the Ancients mention two *Ethiopia*'s, as *Bochart* informs us; and *Steph. Morinus*, in his Treatiſe of *Paradiſe*, proves it to be the Country of *Suſiana*, which the *Greeks* call *Kiſſia*; and the *Perſians* at this Time call it *Chuzeſtan*, or the Country of *Chus*.

The Name of the 3d River *Moſes* ſays is *Hiddekel*, which, *Dan.* 10. 4. is call'd the great River, and therefore muſt be *Tigris*. *Rauwolf*, in his Travels, *P.* 11. *Ch.* 9. ſays, That in his Time, the River *Tigris* was by the People of *Carnch*, on the Confines of *Media*, call'd *Hiddekel*. *Plin. Lib.* 6. *Cap.* 27. ſays, That *Tigris* is ſo call'd from its Swiftneſs; but where it runs ſlower, 'tis call'd *Diglito*; and the *Arabians* call it *Deglat*, and *Degela*: All which are evident Corruptions of the Name *Hiddekel*, which the Targum of *Onkelos* and *Jonathan* render *Diglat*.

The 4th River, *Euphrates*, is only mention'd by *Moſes*, becauſe it was well known at the Time when he wrote. The Seat therefore of *Paradiſe* was thus: The Rivers *Euphrates* and *Tygris*, i. e. *Hiddekel*, joins ſomewhere in ancient *Babylonia*, or, as ſome call it, *Meſopotamia*, in one great Stream; on the Eaſt-Side of whoſe Banks lay the Garden of *Eden*; at the South End of which the River parted again into two Streams, then call'd *Piſhon*, and *Gihon*, but in Proceſs of Time *Euphrates* and *Tigris*, as before their Conjunction; and this Name we find given them both in *Greek* and *Roman* Authors. Mr. *Whiſton*, in his new Theory of the Earth, *Pag.* 104. ſuppoſes the ancient *Paradiſe* to be

Digitized by Google

be at the Confluence of the *Tigris* and *Euphrates*, either before they fall into the *Perſian* Gulph, where they now unite, and ſeparate again, or rather where they anciently divided themſelves below the Iſland *Ormus*, where the *Perſian* Gulph under the Tropic of *Cancer* falls into the *Perſian* Sea: So that the exact Place of *Paradiſe*, according to him, is now under Water. For his Reaſons, we refer to the Book it ſelf.

There is little more of Geography taken Notice of before the Deluge, but *Cain*'s going out of the Preſence of the Lord into the Land of *Nod*, on the Eaſt of *Eden*; his dwelling there, and building a City, which he call'd *Enoch*, after his Son's Name. *Nod*, which is as much as to ſay, the Land of Vagabonds, probably took its Name from his wandering up and down in it. *Junius* thinks, the firſt *Nomades* liv'd in this Country, and perhaps took their rambling Way of Living from this firſt Vagabond *Cain*; and he ſuppoſes it lay near *Suſiana* or *Chuzeſtan*.

There is nothing certain of the Hiſtory of thoſe before the Deluge, but what's to be found in the 6 firſt Chapters of *Geneſis*. This Period of Time is ſaid to have conſiſted of 1656 Years, which is prov'd from the Hiſtory of *Geneſis*, by taking the Years which *Adam* and his Deſcendants liv'd before they had thoſe Children, which make up the Liſt of the Patriarchs till *Noah*, *Gen.* 5, 6, and 7. *viz.*

	Years.
Adam had *Seth* at the Age of	130
Seth was Father at	105
Enos at	90
Cainan at	70
Mahalaleel at	65
Jared at	162
Enoch at	65
Mathuſelah at	187
Lamech at	182
	1056
Noah's Age at the Time of the Flood	600
In all	1656

Moſes tells us, That after the Flood, the Ark reſted on the Mountains of *Ararat*, which the Learned agree is that long Ridge of Mountains now call'd *Taurus*, as it was in the Time of *Pliny*, and runs through *Armenia*, *Aſſyria*, *Meſopotamia*, *Media*, *Suſiana*, &c. from *Cilicia* to *Parapomiſus*. The Ark is thought to have reſted on the higheſt and more Eaſterly Part of this Tract of Hills, call'd by *Epiphanius* and *Bochart* the *Gordiean* Mountains; and obſerv'd by *Tavernier*, on *Iſai.* 16. and 13. to have been always reckon'd the higheſt in the World. *Portius Cato* ſays, That about 250 Years before *Ninus*, the Earth was drown'd by a Deluge, and that Mankind was reſtor'd again in *Scythia Saga*, which, according to Sir *Walter Raleigh*, is under the Mountain *Parapomiſus*. Dr. *Heylin* mentions a Tradition of the Inhabitants of that Country, That near the Foot of Mount *Caucaſus*, there was a large Vineyard in *Margiana*, of *Noah*'s planting. Mr. *Whiſton*, in his New Theory of the Earth, thinks it plain from the Text and the Nature of the Thing, That the Ark reſted on the higheſt Hill of *Aſia*; for the Water was 15 Cubits above the Tops of all the other Mountains, when the Ark reſted on Mount *Ararat*: Therefore *Parapomiſus*, the ancient *Caucaſus*, muſt be the Place. *Bochart* ſays, theſe Mountains were not above 200 or 300 Miles from *Eden*, and probably about half as far from the Place where *Noah* built the Ark. The Courſe of the Rains, and the Riſe of the Water coming from the South, might gently drive the Ark ſo far Northerly, as to ſet it down on the Top of thoſe vaſt Hills. That it was the moſt Eaſterly Part of thoſe Mountains on which the Ark reſted, ſeems plain from the Account which *Moſes* gives us of the firſt Removal after the Deluge, which was from the Eaſt to the Plains of *Shinar*, *Gen.* 11. 2.

The Waters being aſſwag'd, and the Earth become dry, we are not to doubt that *Noah*'s Family ſeated themſelves in the Neighbouring Country, where they judged it moſt for their Conveniency, and ſpread as their Poſterity encreas'd, till they came to repleniſh the whole Earth; as *Moſes* informs us, *Gen.* 9. 19. 'Tis more than probable, that from *Ararat* they mov'd firſt towards the South, Peopling by degrees *Aſſyria*, *Babylon*, *Syria*, *Egypt*, and *Ethiopia*: So that the *Egyptians* were in the Wrong to pretend to be the moſt ancient People of the World. *Bochart* takes notice of the Difficulty Interpreters meet with to reconcile this with the Scripture Account;

Digitized by Google

Account, in *Gen.* 11. 2. where those who came from the Mountains of *Ararat* into the Valley of *Sinnar* are ſaid to journey from the Eaſt, becauſe thoſe Mountains do not lie to the Eaſt, but to the North of *Babylon*; and on this Occaſion he gives us the Opinion of thoſe who think *Noah*'s Family firſt came down into the Plains of *Aſſyria* and *Suſiana*, and afterwards mov'd Weſtward to *Babylon*. He acquaints us alſo with the Solution of this Difficulty, by *James Cappell*, his Kinſman, in his Notes on *Geneſis*, which were not then publiſh'd; *viz.* 'That the Poſterity of *Noah* went from the Mountains of *Armenia* into that Country afterwards called *Kedem*, from *Kedma*, *Iſhmael*'s youngeſt Son, *Gen.* 25. 15. *Iſhmael*'s ſecond Son was *Kedar*; and that thoſe two Brothers liv'd near one another, is inferr'd from *Jer.* 29. 48. *Ariſe ye, go up to Kedar, and ſpoil the Men of the Eaſt.* So that when *Moſes* ſays, Gen. 11. 2. 'They journey'd from *Kedem*, or the Eaſt, and found a Valley in the Land of *Shinar*, he thinks this Place is to be underſtood in this Manner.' *Bochart* adds his own Conjectures thus: 'That he thinks the Scripture ſpeaks here according to the Cuſtom of the *Aſſyrians*, who call'd that Part of their Empire beyond the *Tigris* the Eaſt, and that on this Side of it the Weſt: And therefore, according to this Diviſion, the Mountains of *Ararat* are rightly ſaid to be in the Eaſt. The firſt Thing they undertook after their Arrival here, was to build a Tower, whoſe Top might reach to Heaven. The Town is by *Moſes* call'd *Babel*, *Gen.* 11. 9 which all agree to be *Babylon*. *Bochart*, *Lib.* 1. *Cap.* 8. takes Notice of the Miſtake of thoſe who confound *Babylon* with *Suſa*, the Metropolis of *Suſiana*; and of ſuch as will have it to be *Nineveh*, from the Authority of an Anonymous Writer in *Suidas*, who ſays, That *Semiramis* firſt encompaſs'd *Nineveh* with Wals, and then chang'd its Name into *Babylon*. He likewiſe confutes thoſe who will have *Bagdad* to be *Babylon*, an Error which many Learned Men fell into; but the Miſtake is evident from the different Situation of the Places, *Babylon* being on the *Euphrates*, and *Bagdad* on the *Tigris*. And *Teixeira*, an Eye-Witneſs, ſays, That the Ruins of *Babylon* were to be ſeen in his Time, and were 40 Miles diſtant from *Bagdad*. For the Way how they came to fall into this Miſtake, we refer to the Book it ſelf; and likewiſe for his exact Deſcription of the Situation of the ancient *Babylon*, and of the Diviſion of the *Euphrates* into many different Streams in that Country. In his 9th Chapter he proves, That the Tower was built in the City, and made Part of it; and Chap 10. he proves, that it was built in the 101ſt Year after the Deluge, becauſe it's ſaid, *Gen.* 10. 25. That to *Heber* two Sons were born, one of whom was call'd *Phaleg*, becauſe in his Time the Earth was divided; which is the ſame as if he had ſaid, This happen'd when *Phaleg* was born, becauſe his Father gave him this Name at his Birth: And that *Phaleg* was born in the 101ſt Year after the Deluge, appears from *Gen.* 11. 10. to the 16th Verſe. This firſt Century is what the Poets call the *Golden Age*, becauſe the Earth not being then divided, they enjoy'd all Things in common; and *Noah*, who was the Saturn of the Heathens, govern'd Men not as a King does his Subjects, but as a Father does his Children; not ſo much by Fear, as by Love, and the Reſpect which is due to a Parent.

Bochart is not of their Opinion, who think that the Tower was immediately deſtroy'd by ſtrong Winds, or Fire from Heaven; but believes it ſtood long after the Diſperſion; that it was the ſame which was conſecrated to *Belus*, and is deſcrib'd at large by *Herodotus*, *Lib.* 1. Nor does he think that *Noah*, or any of his Religious Poſterity, was concern'd in this impious Undertaking, but that it was ſuch of his Poſterity as had caſt off the Fear of God; becauſe *Gen.* 11. 5. they are call'd the Children of Men, in the ſame manner as *Gen.* 6. 2. The Sons of God are oppos'd to the Daughters of Men, as Believers to Unbelievers: And hence it came to paſs, That all thoſe who were Partakers of the Covenant, *i. e. Abraham*'s Forefathers, as high as *Noah*, were exempted from the Puniſhment inflicted upon the reſt; for when the Language of others was confounded, they retain'd their own Language in its Purity, *viz.* the Hebrew, ſo call'd from *Heber*, and was tranſmitted to his Poſterity. In like manner, when the reſt were diſpers'd, they continu'd in their ancient Habitations.

At

At leaſt 'tis plain, that *Ur* of the *Chaldees* where *Abraham*'s Anceſtors liv'd, *Gen.* 11.28. was not far from *Corduena*, where *Noah*'s Ark reſted. This is plain from *Ammianus*, *Lib* 5. where he ſays, the *Romans* paſs'd the *Tigris* about 100 Miles from *Corduena*, and after 6 Days Journey came *to a Perſian Caſtle call'd Ur*; from whence they march'd firſt to *Thilalpata*, and then to *Niſibis*: Therefore *Ur* muſt lie about *Niſibis*, and nearer at leaſt to the *Tigris* and *Corduena* by two Stations. He is alſo of Opinion, That *Nimrod* was not among the Builders of this Tower, otherwiſe he muſt have been obliged to remove with the reſt. Therefore he thinks that the Plain of *Shinar* lay deſolate for ſome Years, the Memory of ſuch a Diſperſion having frighted Men from repoſſeſſing it, till obſtinate *Nimrod* ventur'd to go thither with a great Number of *Cuſhites* to *continue and* perfect the Work, and to *make that very* Place, from whence Mankind was diſperſed, the Metropolis of his Kingdom: To which he was perhaps induc'd by the extraordinary Fruitfulneſs and Pleaſantneſs of the Country.

As to the Confuſion of Tongues, *Bochart* is of Opinion, That 'tis not to be taken as if every one concern'd in that Attempt ſpoke a diſtinct Language, and then none of them could underſtand another; for by that Means all *Societies* muſt have periſh'd, if the Huſband could not have underſtood the Wife, nor the Children the Parents, and *vice verſa*. But he thinks every Family had a diſtinct Language. He is alſo of Opinion, That there is nothing certain to be determin'd as to the Number of Languages then ſpoke, tho' they are commonly ſaid to be 70, or 72, but without any good Foundation, as the Curious may ſee by his Book, to which we refer. 'Tis enough that the Confuſion was ſuch as made them give over the Work; for when they could not underſtand one another, and when one ask'd for Brisk, another brought Mortar, it muſt needs occaſion Contention, and make them think they were mock'd, which muſt be attended by an Alienation of Mind, and mutual Averſion; from whence a Diſperſion muſt naturally enſue.

He confutes the Opinion of *Epiphanius*, who thinks they divided the World among them by Lot in the Town of *Rhinocolura*, and judges rather that they were drove aſunder into the remoteſt Parts of the World by the ſecret Impulſe of the ſame Spirit which confounded their Tongues. Nor is it likely, after they were Barbarians to one another in Language, that they could agree to meet together in one Place to divide the World among them by Lot: But there is nothing more certain, than that they could not meet at *Rhinocolura*; for *Diodorus* tells us, *Lib.* 1. *Cap.* 38. That that Town was not built till many Ages after, by *Artiſanes*, King of *Ethiopia* and *Egypt*.

In his 16th Chapter, he deſcribes the Boundaries of the Diſperſion thus: On the North, *Thracia*, where *Thiras* fix'd; and *Caucaſus*, where *Magog* ſettled: On the South; *Lybia*, where *Phut* planted himſelf; *Æthiopia*, whither *Ludim* went; and *Arabia the Spicey*, where *Jeſſan* and his Children choſe their Seats. On the Weſt, *Gaul*; where *Rhodanim* poſted himſelf; and *Spain*, the Habitation of *Tharſis*. On the Eaſt, *Media*, the Country which *Madai* took for the Place of his Abode; *Perſis* and *Elymais*, where *Elam* pitch'd his Tents; and *Carmania*, the Country where *Sabthaca* dwelt. He diſſents from thoſe who, following *Joſephus*, alledge thoſe Colonies went as far as *India*. He adds, That ſince many of *Cham*'s Poſterity went into *Africa*, and many of *Japhet*'s Poſterity into *Europe*, it was peculiar to the Poſterity of *Sem*, that they did not go out of *Aſia*. Yet he does not think that this was done by joint Conſent, or any fix'd Purpoſe, but that each of them poſſeſſed themſelves of ſuch Countries as firſt fell in their Way. This does not agree very well with his fixing *Rhodanim* in *France*, and *Tharſis* in *Spain*, at the firſt Diſperſion; for they muſt have travelled thro' many Countries before they came thither: Therefore 'tis more probable, that the firſt Colonies which went from *Babylon* ſettled themſelves much nearer it than either *France* or *Spain*, eſpecially conſidering how little they underſtood of Navigation.

'Tis plain from the Writings of the ancient Heathens, both Poets and Hiſtorians, That they knew of the Deluge, and of the Diſperſion after it; tho' they mix their Accounts of it with Fables, and give *Noah* and his Sons other Names. *Bochart* proves this undeniably, *Lib.* 1. *Cap.* 1. by the following

Digitized by Google

Arguments: 1. *Noah* was the common Parent of Mankind after the Deluge; and ſo *Saturn* is call'd in *Orpheus*'s Hymns the Father of all Men, and his Wife *Rea* their Mother. 2. *Noah* is call'd in *Scripture* a juſt Man, and a Preacher of Righteouſneſs. *Diodorus* and *Aurelius Victor*, and *Juſtin*, &c. ſay much the ſame of *Saturn*. 3. *Noah* was a Husbandman, and planted a Vineyard; and the Poets aſcribe the Teaching of Agriculture to *Saturn*, and make his Wife *Rea* and *Tellus*, *i. e* the Earth, the ſame Thing. 4. *Noah* was overtaken with Drink, and the Heathens make *Saturn* to preſide over Drunkenneſs; from whence came their Debauches call'd *Saturnalia*. 5. *Noah* curs'd his Son *Cham*, for looking upon his Nakedneſs when drunk. The Poets ſay, *Saturn* made a Law to puniſh thoſe who look'd upon the Gods naked. 6. *Noah* and his Family eſcap'd the Deluge. The Poets make *Saturn* and his Wife *Rea* the Children of the Sea, which they call *Oceanus* and *Thetis*; and the old *Romans* made a Ship the Symbol of *Saturn*; and the *Aſſyrians*, as *Alexander Polyhiſtor* in form us, ſaid that *Saturn* foretold the Deluge, and order'd an Ark to be built for preſerving ſo many Men, and other living Creatures. 7. *Noah* foretold the Deſtruction of Mankind by the Deluge, and accordingly none were ſav'd but himſelf and his Family. The Heathens ſay, *Saturn* deſtroy'd all his Children but three, *viz.* *Jupiter*, *Neptune*, and *Pluto*, which anſwers to *Noah*'s three Sons, *Shem*, *Cham*, and *Japhet*. We refer the Curious, who would ſee more of this, to the Book it ſelf.

CHAP. III.

Of the WORLD *in General.*

HAving accounted for the Peopling of the World after the Deluge, and how much of it appears then to have been known according to the Scriptures, we come next to conſider how much of it was taken notice of by the ancient Heathen Writers.

Their Knowledge of it appears to have been very indiſtinct, and their Sentiments about it very different. *Agathemerus* and others thought there was not above a 4th Part of it habitable; as we find in his Geography, *Lib.* 1. *Cap.* 6. Moſt of them agreed, That the Temperate Zones were only habitable; and of this Opinion was *Strabo*, *Lib.* 1. *P.* 44. They were not ignorant, that the World was inhabited as far South as the Tropic of *Cancer*; but how far it was habitable Northward, they were altogether uncertain, becauſe neither the *Greeks* nor *Romans* had gone far that Way. *Saluſt*, in his *Jugurthin War*, *Cap.* 19. ſays, That beyond *Numidia*, the *Getuli* dwelt, ſome in Cottages, and others wander'd up and down. Next to them are the *Ethiopians*, and beyond *Ethiopia* are the Places which are ſcorch'd with the Heat of the Sun. Thus it appears he thought *Ethiopia* to be on this Side the Torrid Zone; but *Ptolomy*, *Lib.* 4. *Cap.* 6, and 9. places the *Ethiopians* for moſt Part in the Torrid Zone, and not only as far as the Equator, but ſome of them beyond it; tho' by why Authority, we are not certain.

They were yet more in the Dark as to the Northern Parts, which is plain from this, That *Strabo*, *Dionyſius*, *Periegeta*, *Pomponius Mela*, *Pliny*, and *Solinus*, took the *Caſpian* Sea to be a Bay of the *Scythian* Ocean; tho' they might have been better inform'd by *Herodotus*, *Lib.* 1. *Cap.* 203. where he ſays, That it has no Communication with any other Sea. Nor do they write with any greater Certainty as to the Places beyond the *Black Sea*, or beyond *Germany* in *Scandinavia*: And what they write concerning the further Parts

Digitized by Google

Parts of *Scythia*, is equally doubtful and fabulous. *Agathemerus* and *Ptolomy* indeed seem'd to have had better Information, and perhaps from some of the Inhabitants; but that they knew all *Scythia*, we cannot be perswaded, because the Eastern Part of it, or *Great Tartary*, is not fully known to us *Europeans* at this very Day. So far as *Alexander* carried his Arms to the East, was pretty well known: But what the Ancients wrote of Places beyond the Limits of that Expedition, is altogether fabulous and uncertain; which is the Occasion of their differing so frequently from one another, as we find in *Strabo*, *Lib.* 2. and 15. They are plain and clear enough as to the Western Boundary of the World in *Mauritania*, *Spain*, *Gaul*, the *British* Isles, the *Atlantic*, *Aquitain*, and *British* Ocean; but they were at no Certainty as to the Places which lay further South or North of those Boundaries.

And tho' the Form of this Part of the World known to them had much more Length than Breadth, yet the Latin Writers call it always *Orbis Terrarum*: Nor are we to wonder at it, since they frequently call lesser Divisions by the Name of *Orbis*. as *Europæus Orbis*, *Africanus Orbis*, *Orbis Persicus*, and *Orbis Iberus*, &c. 'Tis known, That the *Romans* call'd their Empire *Orbis Romanus*; and so 'tis call'd in the 2d of *Luke*, and not undeservedly, since it comprehended the greater and more noble Part of the then known World. And thus *Augustin* elegantly calls the Church of Christ, dispers'd through the World, *Orbis Christianus*.

The Navigation of the Ancients is as imperfect and full of Errors, as their Geography: Nor could it be otherwise, since they knew not the Use of the Compass, and never durst venture far from Shore. 'Tis not certain when Men began first to sail in the *Atlantic*, which lies betwixt *Europe*, *Africa*, and *America*. The Scriptures mention the sailing to *Ophir* by the Kings, *Solomon*, *Hiram* and *Jehosaphat*; and *Job* speaks of the Gold of *Ophir*. St. *Jerom* and *Strabo* mention Voyages from *Egypt* into *India*. *Pliny* says, The Trade of *Egypt* was thereby much augmented; and describes the Way of travelling to the *Indies*, *Lib.* 6. *Cap.* 23. *Reiskius*, in his Notes on *Cluverius*, *Lib.* 1. *Cap.* 13. thinks that the Voyage to *Ophir* in *Solomon's* Time was only made by Coasting; and that it is not to be doubted, if we place *Ophir* in the *Golden Chersonesus*, or *Taprobam*: Nor could the Voyage from *Egypt* to *India*, mention'd by St. *Jerom* and *Strabo*, be perform'd otherwise, if there were any such Thing. *Bochart. Lib.* 2. *Cap.* 27. takes Notice of two *Ophirs*, one in *Arabia*, the other in *India*. He takes the former to be that mention'd by *Job*, because in his Time, which was much about that of the Patriarch *Jacob*, *India* was not known to the People of *Judea*, or at least they had no Commerce with it. He is likewise of Opinion, That the 3000 Talents of the Gold of *Ophir*, given by *David* towards the building of the Temple, came from *Arabia*, where there was great Plenty of excellent Gold, as is plain from *Strabo*, *Diodorus*, and others. He owns however, that *Ophir* to which *Solomon* and *Hiram* sent Ships, was That in the *Indies*, because there were three Years spent in the Voyage; whereas *Arabia* was near him, and the Journey must have been perform'd by Land: Nor was there any Ivory there, because no Elephants. He is not positive in what Part of *India* this *Ophir* was; but, after having given the different Opinions of the Learned about it, he thinks it most probable to be *Taproban*, which he elsewhere proves to be *Ceilon*, where 'tis very well known there is Plenty of Gold, Ivory, Jewels, abundance of Peacocks and Apes, which are mention'd to be brought from *Ophir* by *Solomon's* Ships.

The *Phœnicians* are reckon'd by the Ancients to be the first who understood Navigation; and of them, the *Tyrians* are said to be the first who taught the Art of Sailing, according to that of *Tibullus*.

Prima Ratem Ventis credere docta Tyros.

Sidon however is with good Reason thought to have produc'd the first Navigator's; for in *Joshua's* Time, *Cap.* 11. 'tis called the *Great Sidon*; and this is reckon'd to be the 2500th Year after the Creation. 'Tis also mention'd to be famous for Trade in *Isaiah* and *Ezekiel*, and was so considerable, that *Artaxerxes Ochus*, King of *Persia*, about the Year of the World 3590, could not take it with a mighty Land Army, 300 Gallies, and 500 Ships of Burden, till they were betray'd by *Tennis*, the chief Man of their Republick, and *Mentor* their General, as we are inform'd by *Diodorus Siculus*. *Tyrus* came

Digitized by Google

next to it in Reputation, and is ſuppoſed to have been built by the firſt Inhabitants, to ſecure themſelves from the *Iſraelites*, under the Conduct of *Joſhua*, there having been firſt a Town of that Name on the Continent; but the People thought they would be more ſecure by removing to the neighbouring Iſland: 'Tis call'd by the Name of the *Strong City*, *Joſhua* 19. and by *Iſaiah*, *Cap.* 23. *a Crown of Glory*, whoſe Merchants were Princes, and her Traffickers the Honourable of the Earth. The Power of that City muſt needs have been very great, ſince they gave *Alexander* a Repulſe, and held out 7 Months Siege before he could take it: Both thoſe Cities flouriſh'd again afterwards by their Navigation, till they fell under Arbitrary Government. *Bochart*, in his *Canaan*, *Lib.* 1. *Cap.* 2. gives an Account of a Multitude of Colonies planted by the *Phœnicians* in *Europe*, and of their Navigation as far as the *Caſſiterides*, now call'd the *Scilly* Iſlands; or, as ſome ſuppoſe, the County of *Cornwal*, where he and other Authors ſay, they traded for Tin.

Pliny, *Lib.* 11. *Cap.* 69. ſays, That in his Time, the *Romans* ſail'd round *Spain* and *France*; and that in *Auguſtus*'s Time, they ſail'd as far North as the Promontory of the *Cimbri*, now called *Scagen*, in *North-Jutland*, about 9 Miles Weſt from *Norway*: And *Velleius*, in his 2d Book, ſays, That in *Tiberius*'s Time, they ſail'd as far North as the *Scythian* Country, now *Tartary*; but this latter is very improbable, and may as juſtly be exploded as the Voyage of *Hanno* the *Carthaginian*, and that of *Eudoxus*, who is ſaid to have ſail'd from the *Red Sea* round *Africa*, to have doubled the Cape of *Good Hope*, and afterwards arriv'd at *Cadiz*. Nor can we give any Credit to the Story, That the King of the *Suevi* ſent ſome *Indians* (who were drove aſhore on the Coaſt of *Germany* by Storm) to *Quintus Metellus Celer*, the *Roman* Conſul; tho' all theſe Things be aſſerted by *Cornelius Nepos*, ſince the *Engliſh* and *Dutch*, tho' incomparably beyond the *Romans*, or any of the Ancients, in Navigation, have never yet been able to find out a Paſſage to the *Indies* by the North-Eaſt; ſo that 'tis next to impoſſible the *Indians* could in thoſe Days find a Paſſage that Way from their own Country to the North of *Germany* on the *Baltick*, which was the Seat of the ancient *Suevi*.

But that the Miſtakes of the ancient Geographers may the better appear, we ſhall give the following Account of their moſt remarkable Errors from *Strictius*.

The firſt and moſt groſs Miſtake was of thoſe who plac'd the New World, the Habitation of the *Antichtones*, or *Antipodes*, below *Africa*: So *Pomponius Mela*, *Macrobius*, *Manilius*, and moſt of the Ancients. They made *Taproban* the Beginning of this New World, and fancied the *Nile* had its Fountains there; which paſſing thro' the Ocean by ſecret Conduits, broke out again in *Africa*. And they run into the like Miſtake, who let the Ocean in between the two Tropics, and fill'd it with Monſters, which hinder'd any further Navigation that Way; of which Opinion were many of the Ancients. Their 2d Miſtake was, That they ſeparated the *Arabian* Gulph from the Ocean, and made it a Lake full of Trees and wild Shrubs; as *Damaſtes* does in *Strabo*. Their 3d Error was, That they denied the *Mediterranean* Sea to have any Communication with the Ocean towards *Spain*; and alledge, That what is now called the *Mouth of the Streights*, was a Canal dug by Humane Induſtry. Moſt of them were of the like Opinion as to the *Black Sea*, as we find in *Strabo*, *Lib.* 1. But thoſe Fictions, together with the Fables, That *Italy* and *Sicily*, and *France* and *England*, were formerly one Continent, are eaſily refuted by the Courſe of the Rivers which fall into thoſe Friths on both Sides; of which, *Cluverius* diſcourſes at large in his Deſcription of *Sicily*. Their 4th and moſt abſurd Error is, That they join the *Mediterranean* Sea with the *Perſian* Gulph; So *Diotimus*, in *Strabo*, *Lib.* 1. who pretended, That when he went Ambaſſador from *Athens*, he ſailed up the *Cydnus*, a River in *Cilicia*, and by that means falling into *Coaſpe*, a River of *Perſis*, ſailed down the ſaid River to *Suſa*. Their 5th Error is, That they join'd the North Sea with the *Caſpian* Sea, by a narrow Canal or River; which Miſtake they were led into by one *Patrocles*, an Admiral of the *Macedonian* Fleet; for before his Time *Ariſtotle* and *Herodotus* divided the *Caſpian* from the other Seas: But after that fabulous Author ſaid, he ſail'd from the *Caſpian* Sea into the Northern Ocean, all the Geographers, till *Ptolomy*'s Time, fell into that Error. Their 6th

Miſtake

Miſtake was, That they made *Scandia* and *Fennigia* two Iſlands, both divided from *Europe*, the former more to the Weſt, and the latter more to the Eaſt, according to *Pliny*. Their 7th Error is, That they brought the River *Tanais* from the remoteſt Places of the North, as *Strabo*, *Pliny*, and almoſt all of them do. An 8th Miſtake was, That ſome of the Poets made the *Ganges* fall into the *Mare Euxum*; whereas it certainly falls into the Southern or *Indian* Sea.

Time diſcover'd theſe and many more Errors, as Colonies remov'd into unknown Countries; for it was not ſo eaſy for a Multitude to agree in a Lie, as ſingle Travellers, who by thoſe Fables think to acquire Glory to themſelves. *Strabo* is in the right, when he ſays, Thoſe Diſcoveries were perfected by the Conqueſts of Princes; that the Eaſt was made known by *Alexander the Great*, the Weſt by the *Romans*, the North by *Mithridates Eupator*, and the South by the Kings of *Alexandria*.

The Ancients, who fell into theſe Miſtakes, drew the Map of the World in an Oval Form; the Length of which lay from E. to W. the *Mare Euxum* being the Eaſtern, the *Atlantic* the Weſtern, the *Mare Cronium* the Northern, and the Mountains of the Moon the Southern Boundary; and betwixt *Africa* and the *Antichtones*, they brought the Ocean into the Torrid Zone, for the Boundary betwixt themſelves and the Southern People, or Antipodes, as we find by *Macrobius*, *Lib* 1. in *Somnio Scipionis*. This is the oldeſt Map of the World now extant. The Curious may find it in *Brietius*, *de primo Orbis Notitia*, *Part.* 1. *Lib.* 5. *Cap.* 2.

We come next to the Miſtakes of *Ptolomy*, who corrected many of thoſe before him, and yet fell into other very great ones, which they had avoided.

All the ancient Maps being loſt, there remain'd only one of *Agathidæmon* of *Alexandria*, compos'd from *Ptolomy*'s Obſervations, which is neceſſary to be taken notice of by thoſe who would compare the Ancient and Modern Geography.

Ptolomy's firſt Error, and which appears by this Map, is, That he repreſents *Africa* as a Country that was not to be ſail'd about, tho' ſome of his Predeceſſors had juſtly repreſented it otherwiſe. Beſides, whereas he ought to have drawn it decreaſing, in Form of a Wedge, he enlarges it on the South Side; and towards the Equator, he ſtrangely alters the Form of it, and omits ſome of the greateſt Rivers; tho' he ought to have been better inform'd of thoſe Parts, which were ſo near his own Country. The 2d Error is, That whereas he ought to have extended *Albion* or *Scotland* towards the North, he brings it Eaſt towards *Germany*: and aſſigns the ſame Elevation of the Pole to *Ireland*, as he does to *Scotland*. The 3d Error is, That inſtead of placing the *Cherſoneſus Cimbrica*, now *Jutland*, Weſtward, he makes its Situation lie Eaſt, and too much contracts the *Sinus Venedicus*, now the Gulph of *Dantzick*. His 4th Miſtake is, That he repreſents *Scandia*, now *Sweden* and *Norway* a very large *Peninſula*, as a ſmall Iſland; to which he joins three leſſer ones on the Eaſt, quite contrary to the true Situation of the Country. A 5th Miſtake is, That he thinks the Northern Parts of *Europe* and *Aſia* terminate in the *Terræ Incognitæ*, or unknown Countries; tho' many of the Ancients own'd there was a Sea on the Northern Parts of both, as in Truth there is. His 6th Miſtake is, in placing *China* South from *India*, and bringing it beyond the Equator, does, by a very groſs Miſtake, thereby join *Africa* and *Aſia*; whereas *China* lies North from *India*. This occaſion'd ſome People, out of Reſpect to the Name of this great Author, to ſtrike this Miſtake out of his Geography, *Lib.* 7 *Cap* 3. His 7th Miſtake is, That he extends *Taproban* too much, whether we take it to be *Ceylan* or *Sumatra*; and the leſſer Iſlands he places about it, neither agree in Situation nor Number with the late Diſcoveries made by the *Portugueſe* and *Dutch*. His 8th Miſtake is, in repreſenting the Southern Tracts and Coaſts of the *Indies*, quite otherwiſe than they are. He divides *India* on this Side the *Ganges* into two Promontories, tho' there be but one large one, call'd Cape *Commorin*; and that this Place was then well known to the *Romans*, who had traded thither ever ſince *Claudius*'s Time.

'Tis fit to obſerve further, That his Map of the World has 180 Degrees of Longitude, about 60 of North, and ſomewhat more than 10 of South Latitude.

Others

Others of the Ancients divided the World in Six different Manners.

The first we find in *Strabo*, where *Eratosthenes* confutes those who divided the whole World into *Greeks* and *Barbarians*; and therefore advis'd *Alexander* to use the *Greeks* as his Friends, and the *Barbarians* as his Enemies. But whether the *Greeks* accounted the *Romans* Barbarians, is not clear; yet *Plutarch*, in the Life of *T. Flaminius*, seems to be for the Negative.

The 2d Division is that of *Ephorus*, in *Strabo*, who divides the World into four People, *viz.* the *Indians*, *Ethiopians*, *Celtæ*, and *Scythians*. *Scymnus*, who formerly went under the Name of *Marcennus Heracleota*, was of the same Opinion; but *Cluverius* was in the wrong to join *Dionysius Halicarnassensis* with him: And some are of Opinion, That this Division was only to be understood of the *Barbarians*, and not unjustly, since *Homer* makes no mention of it.

The 3d was of those who divided it only into two, calling the Northern Part *Europe*, and the Southern *Asia*. This we find in *Varro*, *Lib.* 1. *De Re Rustica*, where he commends *Eratosthenes* as the Author of it. *Isocrates*, in his Panegyrick, hints this to have been the Opinion of the *Persians*; and the same is mention'd by *Silius Italicus*, *Lucan*, *Augustin*, *Orosius*, &c. But these again are divided in their Opinion; some of them join'd *Africa* to *Asia*, as we find in *Pliny*, *Lib.* 3. *Cap.* 1. And *Silius*, *Lib.* 3. expresses it thus:

Æstivo Libye torretur subdita Cancro,
Aut lugens Asiæ latus, aut Pars tertia rerum.

Others again join'd *Africa* to *Europe*, as we find in *Sallust. De Bello Jugurthino*, which *Lucan*, *Pharsal.* 9. expresses thus:

Tertia Pars rerum Libye, si credere famæ
Cuncta velis, at si ventos, cælumque sequaris
Pars erit Europæ.

A 4th Division was into *Asia*, *Europe*, *Africa* and *Egypt*, which is mention'd by *Ortelius* and *Cluverius*; but they do not give their Authors. It may also be inferr'd from *Pliny*, *Lib.* 5 *Cap.* 9. who divides *Egypt* from *Asia* by the Eastern Mouth of the *Nile*, called then *Ostium Pelusiacum*, and now *Carabes*; and from *Africa*, by the *Ostium Canopicum*, the Western Mouth of the *Nile*, now call'd *Bochir*: And the Reason why they call so small a Country a 4th Part of the World, seems to be, that there were then more Towns in it than in all the rest, as *Eusebius* testifies. *Pliny* says, it had 2000 Towns in the Reign of *Amasis*; and *Diodorus Siculus* says, there was 3000 remaining when he wrote.

The 5th Division was likewise into four Parts; but they made *Gracia* one instead of *Egypt*. This we find by *Herodotus* in *Melpomene*, where he divides *Crete*, which is a Part of *Greece*, from *Europe*; and *Aristotle* more plainly in his *Republick*, *Lib.* 7. divides the *Greeks* from the *Europeans* and *Asiaticks*.

The 6th and most common Division, which was generally receiv'd by all, is into *Europe*, *Asia*, and *Africa*. *Europe* they represented lying West and North; and sometimes they divided it from *Asia* by the River *Tanais*; and at other Times, enlarging its Boundaries, they parted them by the River *Carambyce*, now call'd *Oby*, and by *Constantinople*.

To *Asia*, was ascrib'd the Eastern Part of the World, extending far North and South, and equal almost to both *Africa* and *Europe* in Breadth.

Africa was divided from *Europe* by the *Mediterranean*; from *Asia*, by the *Arabian* Isthmus, according to the Learned; but by the River *Nile* according to the Vulgar.

Whether *America* was known to the Ancients under the Name of *Atlas*'s Island, or an Island in the *Atlantic*, shall be consider'd when we come to treat of *America*.

Of the Roman *World, or* Empire.

POets and Flatterers gave out, That the *Romans* possess'd the whole World; That they seiz'd what Part of it they thought fit, and rather despis'd the rest than despair'd of reducing it. History tells us, That they set the following Boundaries to their Empire, *viz.* the *Rhine*, the *Tigris*, or, as others say, the *Euphrates*, and the Mountain *Atlas*. We shall give the following succinct Account of it from *Brietius*, and the *Notitia Imperii*.

This Empire increas'd to so great a Bulk thus: The *Romans* having struggled 600 Years

Digitized by Google

Years with their Neighbours, firſt reduc'd *Sicily* into a Province, when call'd into that Country as Auxiliaries; *Sardinia* and *Corſica* follow'd the Example of *Sicily*. *Gallia Narbonenſis* opened *Julius Cæſar*'s Way into the other Parts of *Gaul*, call'd *Aquitania*, *Celtica*, and *Belgica*. He likewiſe attempted *Britain*, moſt of which was conquer'd by ſucceeding Emperors, and ſeparated from the *Scots* and *Picts*, whom they call'd *Barbari*. *Agrippa* conquer'd *Spain* in the Reign of *Auguſtus*, and divided it into *Boetica*, *Luſitania*, and *Tarraconienſis*. *Juba* being conquer'd, they became Maſters of both the *Mauritania's*. *Antiochus* loſt to them moſt Part of *Aſia Propria*. *Nicomedes* yielded *Bithynia*. *Mithridates* on his Death-Bed left 'em *Pontus*. *Auguſtus* took all or moſt of *Galatia*, *Cappadocia*, and *Armenia Minor*, from *Antony*'s Favourers. The Barbarity of the Inhabitants gave them *Thracia*. The Covetouſneſs of *Perſeus* brought them *Macedonia*. The Raſhneſs of the *Ætoli* poſſeſs'd them of *Epirus*, *Hellas*, and *Peloponneſus*. The Credulity of *Gentius* made them Maſters of *Illyricum*. Their Victory over *Jugurtha* ſubjected *Numidia*. The demoliſhing of *Carthage* added *Africa Propria*. They obtain'd *Cyrenaicum* by the Liberality of *Ptolomy Apion*. They poſſeſs'd themſelves of *Egypt* after *Cleopatra's* Death. And *Pompey* made a very eaſy Conqueſt of all *Syria* and *Armenia*, with *Colchis*, *Iberia*, and *Albania*.

When they came to have Emperors, and that the Empire ſubſiſted chiefly by the Army, the Adminiſtration was committed to the *Præfecti Pretorio*, who were a Sort of Lieutenant-Generals. At firſt there was no certain Number of them, nor was the Time of their Government fix'd; but *Conſtantine* made four of them, whoſe Office was to be perpetual. When the Empire was divided betwixt *Honorius* and *Arcadius*, each of them had two of thoſe *Præfecti* under them. Their Juriſdictions were as follow:

The Weſtern *Empire.*

1. The *Præfectus Pretorio* of *Italy* had under his Juriſdiction,

The Dioceſe of *Italy*.		Conſul.		*Latium & Campania*, *Roma*, now *Rome*.
	The *Vicarius*, or Lieutenant of *Roma*.	Conſul.		*Tuſcia & Umbria*, *Sena*, now *Sienna* in *Tuſcany*.
		Conſul.		*Picenum*, *Suburbicarium*, *Ancona*.
		Præſes.		*Valeria*, *Reate*, now *Rieti*.
		Præſes.		*Samnium*, *Corfinium*, the Ruins of *Corfinium* near *Pentmia*.
		Corrector.		*Apulia & Calabria*, *Brunduſium*, now *Brindes*.
		Corrector.		*Lucania & Brutium*, *Conſentia*, now *Conſenza*.
		Conſul.		*Sicilia*, *Syracuſæ*, now *Syracuſe*.
		Præſes.		*Sardinia*, *Caralis*, now *Caglieri*.
		Præſes.		*Corſica*, *Aleria*, where there are now the Ruins of *Aleria*.
		Conſul.		*Venetia & Iſtria*, *Aquileia*.
		Conſul.		*Æmilia*, *Bononia*, now *Bologna*.
	The *Vicarius* of *Italy*.	Conſul.		*Flaminia & Picenum Annonarium*, where *Ravenna* lies; and *Senagallica*, now *Senigaglia*.
		Conſul.		*Liguria*, *Genua*.
		Præſes.		*Alpes Cotiæ*, *Auguſta Taurinorum*, now *Turin*.
		Præſes.		*Rætia prima*, *Curia*, now *Coire*. (*burg*.
		Præſes.		*Rætia ſecunda*, *Auguſta Vindelicorum*, now *Augs*
The Dioceſe of *Illyricum*.	*Vicarius*.	Præſes.		*Noricum*, *Ripenſe*, *Arelape*, now *Paklarn* on the *Erlap*.
		Præſes.		*Noricum Mediterraneum*, *Juvava*, now *Saltzbourg*.
		Præſes.		*Pannonia prima*, *Sabaria*, now *Saricuar*.
		Conſul.		*Pannonia ſecunda*, *Sirmium*, now *Sirmich*.

The

The Diocese of *Illyricum*.	*Illyrici.*	Dux Limit.	*Valeria, Aquincum*, now *Buda.*
		Corrector.	*Savia, Siscia*, now *Sisseg.*
		Præses.	*Dalmatia Salona*, now *Spalatto.*
		Præses.	*Liburnia, Jadera*, now *Zara.*
	Proconsul *Africæ.*		*Africa, Carthago*, now the Ruins of *Carthage*, near *Tunis.*
The Diocese of *Africa.*	The Lieutenant of *Africa.*	Consul.	*Numidia, Cirta*, now *Constantine.*
		Consul.	*Byzacium, Adrumetum*, now *Souse.*
		Præses.	*Tripolitana, Tripolis*, now *Tripoli* in *Barbary.*
		Præses.	*Mauritania, Sitifensis*, now *Sitif*, or *Esseso.*
		Præses.	*Mauritania Cæsariensis, Julia Cæsarea*, now *Algier.*

2. The *Præfectus Prætorio* of *Gaul.*

The Diocese of *Gaul.*	The Lieutenant of *Gaul.*	Consul.	*Lugdunensis prima, Lugdunum*, now *Lions.*
		Præses.	*Lugdunensis secunda, Rotomagus*, now *Rouen.*
		Præses.	*Lugdunensis tertia, Cæsarodunum*, now *Tours.*
		Præses.	*Lugdunensis quarta, Agendicum*, now *Sens.*
		Præses.	*Maxima Sequanorum, Visontio*, now *Besançon.*
		Consul.	*Belgica prima, Augusta Trevirorum*, now *Trevez.*
		Consul.	*Belgica secunda, Durocortorum*, now *Rheims.*
		Consul.	*Germania prima, Moguntia*, now *Mentz.*
		Consul.	*Germania secunda, Colonia Agrip.* now *Cologne.*
		Præses.	*Aquitania prima, Avaticum*, now *Bourges.*
		Præses.	*Aquitania secunda, Bourdegala*, now *Bourdeaux.*
		Præses.	*Novem Populania, Augusta Auscriorum*, now *Auch.*
		Consul.	*Viennensis prima, Vienna, Vienne* in *Dauphine.*
		Præses.	*Viennensis secunda, Narbo*, now *Narbonne.*
		Præses.	*Viennensis tertia, Aquæ Sextiæ*, now *Aix.*
		Præses.	*Alpes Maritimæ, Ebrodunum*, now *Ambrun.*
		Præses.	*Alpes Gratæ, Tarantasia*, now *Moustier* in the *Tarentaise.*
The Diocese of *Spain.*	The Lieutenant of *Spain.*	Consul.	*Bætica Hispalis*, now *Seville.*
		Consul.	*Lusitania, Emerita*, now *Merida.*
		Præses.	*Mauritania Tingitana, Tingis*, now *Tangier.*
		Consul.	*Gallæcia, Braccara*, now *Bragues.*
		Præses.	*Tarragonensis, Cæsaraugusta*, now *Saragossa.*
		Præses.	*Carthaginiensis, Carthago Nova*, now *Carthagena.*
		Præses.	*Baleares, Palma, & Majorca.*
The Diocese of *Britain.*	The Lieutenant of *Britain.*	Præses.	*Britannia prima, Londinium, London.* (ned.
		Præses.	*Britannia secunda, Isca Silurum, Caerleon*, now ruin-
		Præses.	*Flavia Cæsariensis, Verolamium*, now *St. Albans.*
		Consul.	*Maxima Cæsariensis, Eboracum*, now *York.*
		Consul.	*Valentia, Alata Castra*, now *Edinburgh.*

The Eastern *Empire.*

3. The *Præfectus Prætorio* of the East.

		Asiæ Ephesus.	
The Diocese of *Asia.*	The Proconsul of *Asia.*	Consul.	*Hellespontus, Cyzicus*, now *Cyzico.*
		Præses.	*Insula Rhodus*, now *Rhodes.*

The

Digitized by Google

The Dioceſe of *Aſia.*	The Lieutenant of *Aſia.*	Præſes.	*Phrygia, Salutaris Pergamus,* now *Pergamo.*
		Præſes.	*Phrygia Pacatiana Synnada.*
		Conſul.	*Lydia Sardis.*
		Præſes.	*Caria Laodicea,* now *Laodichi* or *Leuſke.*
		Præſes.	*Lycia Mara,* now *Strumita.*
		Conſul.	*Pamphylia Perge,* now *Perges,*
		Præſes.	*Piſidia Antiochia Piſidiæ, Amioch* in *Piſidiæ.*
		Præſes.	*Lycaonia Iconium,* now *Cogne.*
The Dioceſe of *Pontus.*	The Lieutenant of *Pontus.*	Conſul.	*Bithynia Nicomedia,* now *Comedia.*
		Præſes.	*Honoriæ Heraclea Ponti,* now *Pendarachia.*
		Corrector.	*Paphlagonia Pompeopolis,* now *Tarachipoli: Gangra,* now *Caſtemoni.*
		Conſul.	*Galatia Ancyra,* now *Angori.*
		Præſes.	*Galatia Salutaris Peſſinus,* now *Peſſino.*
		Præſes.	*Helenopontus Amaſia,* now *Amaſee.*
		Præſes.	*Pontus Polemoniacus Neocæſarea,* now *Tocat.*
		Præſes.	*Cappadocia prima Mazaca Cæſarea,* now *Sermuzad.*
		Præſes.	*Cappadocia ſecunda Tyana,* now *Tyagna.*
		Præſes.	*Armenia prima Sebaſtia,* now *Syvas*
		Præſes.	*Armenia ſecunda Melotene,* now *Malatic.*
The Dioceſe of the *Eaſt.*	*Comes Orientis.*	Conſul.	*Cilicia prima Cæſare and Anazarbum,* now *Ainzarbe,* or *Aixar.*
		Præſes.	*Cilicia ſecunda Tharſus,* now *Tarſo,* or *Treſe.*
		Præſ. Perf.	*Iſauria Seleucia,* now *Selechia.*
		Conſul.	*Syria Antiocha,* the *Great Antiochia.*
		Præſes.	*Comagena,* or *Euphratenſis Samoſata,* now *Samuſat.*
		Præſes.	*Syria Salutaris Palmyta,* now *Faid.*
		Conſul.	*Phœnice Sidon,* now *Siden,* or *Said.*
		Præſes.	*Phœnice Libani Damaſcus,* now *Damas.*
		Conſul.	*Paleſtina prima Cæſarea,* now *Azar.*
		Præſes.	*Paleſtina ſecunda Sebaſte,* anciently *Samaria,* now *Napolitza.*
		Præſes.	*Paleſtina Salutaris Hieroſolyma, Jeruſalem.*
		Præſes.	*Oſrhoene Edeſſa,* now *Rhoas.*
		Præſes.	*Meſopotamia Niſibis,* now *Niſibi.*
		Præſ. Perf.	*Arabia Petræa,* now *Arach.*
		Præſes.	*Cyprus Salamis,* near *Famagouſta.*
The Dioceſe of *Egypt.*	*Comes Egypti.*	Præſes.	*Egyptus Alexandria.*
		Corrector.	*Auguſtannica Pelaſium,* now *Damieta.*
		Præſes.	*Arcadica Memphis,* now *Grand Caire.*
		Præſes.	*Thebais, Thebæ, Thebes.*
		Præſes.	*Libya Superior, Cyrene,* now *Corene.*
		Præſes.	*Libya Inferior, Parætonium,* now *Abreton.*
The Dioceſe of *Thracia.*	The Lieutenant of *Thraceia.*	Conſul.	*Europa Conſtantinopolis,* by the *Turks* call'd *Stamboul.*
		Conſul.	*Thracia Philippopolis,* now *Philippopoli* and *Philibe.*
		Præſes.	*Hæmimons Hadrianopolis, Adrianople.*
		Præſes.	*Rhodope Maximianopolis,* now *Maminopoli.*
		Præſes.	*Myſia ſecunda Martianopolis,* now *Prevaz.*
		Præſes.	*Scythia Tomi,* now *Conſtantia,* or *Temeſwaer.*

Digitized by Google

4. The *Præfectus Prætorio Illyrici.*

The Diocese of *Dacia*.
- The Lieutenant of *Dacia*.
  - Præses. — *Mœsia prima Viminacium*, now *Uzezidernam.*
  - Præses. — *Dacia Ripensis Oescus*, now *Iscar.*
  - Consul. — *Dacia Mediterranea Nessus*, now *Nyssa.*
  - Præses. — *Dardania Scupi*, now *Uscup*, or *Uscopie.*
  - Præses. — *Prævalitana & Pars Macedoniæ Salutaris*: *Justiniana prima Ochrida*; *Scodra*, now *Scutari.*

The Diocese of *Macedonia*.
- The Proconsul of *Achaia*. — *Achaia*: *Patræ*, now *Patras*; *Athenæ*, now *Setines.*
- The Lieutenant of *Macedonia*.
  - Consul. — *Macedonia Parva Thessalonica*, now *Salonichi.*
  - Præses. — *Thessalia Larissa*, now *Larizo.*
  - Consul. — *Creta Gnossus*, now *Cynosa.*
  - Præses. — *Old Epirus*, or the *Inferior Nicopolis*, now *Prevexa.*
  - Præses. — *New* or *the Upper Epirus*, and Part of *Macedonia Salutaris*: *Dyrrachium*, now *Durat.*

This was the Division of the *Roman* World or Empire. By the Map that was made of it, according to the *Notitia Imperii*, it was extended from the 14th to the 75th Degree of Longitude; *viz.* from *Atlas Major* in *Africa*, to *Arabia Felix*; from *Spain* in *Europe*, to the *Tigris* in *Asia*, it was extended from the 14th Degree of Longitude to the 75th: From *Atlas Major* in *Africa*, to the *Thule* in *Europe*, which they place where the *Schetland* Isles, now belonging to *Scotland*, lie, it reach'd from the 25th to the 61st Degree of North Latitude; and on the East, from *Arabia Felix* to the Head of the River *Euphrates*, it reach'd from the 25th to the 45th Degree of the same Latitude.

The Modern Division of the World is well enough known to be into *Europe*, *Asia*, *Africa*, and *America*; and, according to the receiv'd Custom among Geographers, we shall begin with the first.

CHAP. IV.

Of EUROPE *in General.*

Ortelius, *Maginus*, *Merula*, and others, think it was formerly called *Japetia*, because most of it fell to *Japhet*'s Lot. *Theocritus* says, it was call'd *Tyria*, from the *Tyrian* Damsel, who, the Poets say, was ravish'd by *Jupiter*. *Diodorus Siculus* says, it was call'd *Galatia*, and that most of its Inhabitants had the Name of *Galatians*. *Ptolomy*, *Lib.* 2. *Op. Quadri-partit.* says it was call'd *Celtica*, because the *Celtæ* were spread through the most part of it, which is confirm'd by *Ortelius* and *Cluverius*. As to its present Name *Europe*, some derive it from *Europa*, the *Tyrian* Damsel above-mention'd: Others from *Europus*, a King mention'd by *Troges*, who perhaps was the King of the *Scicyonians*, spoken of by *Pausanias* and *Eusebius*. Others derive it from the Beauty of the Country.

The Extent of ancient *Europe* was reckon'd by old Authors thus: *Strabo* accounts it about

Digitized by Google

about 30000 Stadia in Length, which is about 3750 *English* Miles. *Pliny* reckons it 8414000 Paces; *i. e.* 8414 Miles and *Ptolomy* 24000 Stadia, or 3000 Miles.

Strabo reckons the Breadth of it 14100 Stadia, about 1712 Miles. *Pliny* makes it 618000 Paces, or 6018 Miles; and *Ptolomy* 14000 Stadia, or 1750 Miles.

As to the Qualities of *Europe*, the Ancients reckon'd a very remarkable. 1. That it was the wholesomeſt of all the Diviſions of the World. So *Varo de re Ruſtica*, *Lib.* 1. reckons it wholſomer than *Aſia*, becauſe it lies more to the North; and *Strabo*, *Lib.* 2. ſays, 'tis every where habitable. 2. That it abounded with all Neceſſaries for Life: So *Herodotus*, *Varo*, and *Strabo*. The latter adds, That it communicates its Product to the other Parts of the World, and needs nothing from them but what her Inhabitants may very well want. 3. That her People excel the reſt in Learning, Valour and Politicks, as appears by *Manilius*, *Strabo*, and *Ariſtotle*, who aſſerts it of the *Greeks*; and every one knows, the *Romans* deſerv'd the Character as well. The 4th Quality they aſcribe to *Europe*, was, That in it only Amber was found. They ought to have added a 5th, That it gave Riſe to two of the greateſt of thoſe call'd Univerſal Monarchies, *viz.* the *Grecian* and *Roman*; and a 6th, That for many Ages, it has been the chief Seat of the Chriſtian Religion.

For the Boundaries of Ancient *Europe*, they reckon'd them thus: *Pliny*, *Mela*, and *Stephanus*, own'd, That on the North, it was bounded by the Northern Ocean, tho' *Herodotus* and *Ptolomy* doubted it. On the Weſt, it had the Weſtern Sea, beſides Part of the North Sea, elſewhere call'd the *Britiſh*. On the South, it was bounded by the *Mediterranean*, as at preſent. On the Eaſt, it was divided from *Aſia* as at preſent, by Part of the *Mediterranean*, call'd the *Mare Ægeum*, the *Helleſpont*, *Propontis*, the *Thracian Boſphorus*, and the *Euxine* Sea. But as to the other Boundaries towards the North, the Ancients were divided into Five different Opinions. 1. *Herodotus*, *Dionyſius*, and others mention'd by *Euſtathius*, thought *Europe* to be bounded on the Eaſt by the Conjunction of the Northern and *Caſpian* Sea; and others divided *Europe* from *Aſia* by an Iſthmus between the *Caſpian* and the *Euxine*. 2. Some made the River *Phaſis*, call'd otherwiſe *Hypanis*, the Boundary of *Europe* on that Side: So *Herodotus*, *Procopius*, and others. 3. *Seneca*, *Lib.* 4. *Nat. Quæſt.* makes the River *Danube* the Eaſtern Boundary of *Europe*; but this perhaps is to be underſtood of the River *Tanais*, which is ſometimes called the *Danube*, as *Acron* obſerves in his Notes on *Horace*, which *Ortelius* ſeems to approve: And this is alſo favour'd by *Iſid. rus*, *Orig. Lib.* 17. *Cap.* 9. where ſpeaking of Rhubarb, he ſays, that it grows in the Country of the Barbarians beyond the *Danube*; ſince 'tis known, that that Plant is now found on the *Volga*, which lies near the *Tanais*. 4. Some added to the *Euxine* Sea the *Boſphorus Cymmerius*, the *Palus Mæotis*, and all the River *Tanais*, with a Line drawn from its Fountains Northward; and of this Opinion were moſt of the Ancients. 5. Some take in only Part of the *Tanais*, and add to it a Line as far as the River *Rha*, now the *Volga*; and from hence they draw another Line to the River *Caramlyce*, by moſt now reckon'd the *Oby*; and they take in all this River as far as the Mouth of it, above the Iſland *Elixona*, which moſt think to be *Nova Zembla*. *Ortelius* and *Cluverius* in his *Germania Antiqua*, endeavour'd to fix this Opinion on *Pliny*, becauſe he makes the Promontory *Litarmis* and *Caramlyce* the Boundary of *Celtica*, which is the ſame with *Europe*: And this River is now call'd *Oby*; and, according to *Stephanus*, above *Caramlyce* lies the Iſland *Elixona*, equal in Extent with *Sicily*: And here there is none, except *Nova Zembla*, which lies almoſt at the Mouth of the *Oby*. They argue likewiſe, That *Pliny* places the End of the *Riphæan* Mountains on the River *Caramlyce*; and theſe Mountains are now called by the *Ruſſians*, *Kameny Poyas*, which end at the Mouth of the *Oby*, To this they add from *Pliny*, That thoſe who come from *Aſia* into *Europe*, muſt paſs the *Ryphæan* Mountains, which cannot be, except *Europe* be extended to the River *Oby*.

Brietius having diligently conſider'd the Matter, gives his Opinion thus: That *Carambyce* is the River *Dwina*; near the Mouth of which lies *Archangel*, where the Line drawn from the Fountains of the *Tanais* towards the North by the Ancients commonly ends. His Reaſon is, becauſe the Ancient:

Digitized by Google

cients did always call *Tanais* the Boundary of *Europe*, which would have been very improper, had the leaſt Part of that River only ſeparated *Europe* from *Aſia*: And he thinks *Pliny*, *Lib.* 4 *cap. ult.* to be of his Opinion, ſince he reckons the Length of *Europe* from *Cales* to the *Tanais*; for 'twould have been a very groſs Error in him to have extended *Europe* as far as the *Oby*, and then to have out off the Country betwixt the *Tanais* and the *Oby*: Beſides, what Occaſion had there been for the Diviſion of *Sarmatia*, made uſe of by moſt, into *European* and *Aſian*, if *Sarmatia* had been all in *Europe*?

To the Objection which *Cluverius* makes from the *Riphæan* Mountains, he anſwers, That the Ancients ſpeak of their Situation with very great Uncertainty, as he himſelf confeſſes; and that *Pliny*, *Lib.* 4. *Cap.* 12. brings the *Tanais* from thoſe Mountains, which cannot agree with the Stone Girdle, or *Kameny Poyas*: And *Mela*, *Lib.* 3. *Cap.* 5. places the *Hyperborei* on the *Aſian* Shore, tho' he extends them above the *Riphæan* Mountains. How then can the *Hyperborei* be in *Aſia*? As to the *Elixona* of *Stephanus*, ſome think it not improbably to be that Iſland which we firſt meet with as we go out of the *Sinus Granducus*, now the *White Sea*; for 'tis large enough to have given the Ancients, who were ignorant of that Country, Ground to compare it with *Sicily*; but certainly no Man of Senſe will think *Stephanus*'s *Elixona* to be the *Nova Zembla* of the Moderns: And for the Promontory *Lytarmis*, no body will place that out of *Europe*, ſince *Ortelius* thinks that call'd *Kibarnes*, near the Iſland *Wardhuys*, to be the ſame. Others do more probably take it to be Cape *Orloganar*, in the Mouth of the *White Sea*.

The Languages of Ancient *Europe* were reckon'd Four, of which the reſt were only Dialects. 1. The *Sermatian* Tongue, or, as ſome call it, *Riphæum*; from whence they derive the *Sclavonic*. 2. The *Celtic*, from whence came the *German* or *Tutonic*, the *Gaulic* and *Britiſh*, which ſome ſay are one, and the *Illyric*. 3. The *Latin* Tongue, the Ancient call'd *Oſca*, and the New call'd *Romana*. 4. The *Greek*, with its 5 Dialects, *viz.* 1. The *Common*, made up of them all. 2. The *Attic*, from whence came the *Bœotic*, *Calcydic*, *Pamphylian*, and *Cyprian*. 3. The *Ionic*, from whence, mix'd with the *Doric*, came the *Theſſalian*, and from it the *Macedonian*. 4. The *Æolic*, from whence *Dion Halicarnaſſeus* thinks the *Latin* took its Riſe. 5. The *Doric*, from whence the *Peloponneſian* ſubdivided into the *Common*, *Argive*, *Laconic*, or *Spartan*, the *Libyc*, and by thoſe of *Cyrene* and *Pentapolis*. The *Rhodian*, *Cretian*, and *Sicilian*, ſubdivided into the *Common*, and thoſe call'd *Rhegina* and *Tarentina*.

The Ancients divided *Europe* into Weſt, North, and South: In the Weſt, they placed the *Britiſh* Iſles, *Spain* and *Gaul*; in the North, *Germany* and *Sarmatia*; in the South, *Dacia*, *Illyricum*, *Greece* and *Italy*.

According to the ancient Map of *Europe*, exhibited by *Brietius*, it lay betwixt 35 and 70 Degrees of North Latitude; but the Longitude was very uncertain.

The Deſcription of EUROPE, *according to Modern Authors.*

AS to its ancient Name, it has ſtill retain'd it, none of the greateſt Princes that ever rul'd in it having attempted a Change. Tho' this holds among our ſelves, yet thoſe of *Aſia* and *Africa* call us by ſeveral Names. The *Aſiatics* call us in general *Franks*, becauſe the *French* made the greateſt Appearance of any of the Chriſtian Princes who attempted the Recovery of the *Holy Land*. At preſent, the *Turks*, who follow the *Latin* Way of Speaking in that reſpect, call us *Romei*; and thoſe who follow the *Greek* Way of Speaking, call us *Franki*. The *Ethiopians* call us *Alfranguez*; and ſome of the *Turks* call us *Cauri*; *i. e.* Infidels, becauſe we do not believe in their *Mahomet*: And others call us *Dzinzis*, which ſignifies a Pagan, as *Brietius* informs us.

The Boundaries and Extent of Modern EUROPE.

TOwards the North, it is bounded by the Northern or Frozen, call'd by the Ancients the *Hyperborean* Ocean. On the Weſt, by the *Atlantic*: On the South, by the *Mediterranean*: On the Eaſt, 1. By the *Archipelago*, anciently call'd the *Ægean* Sea, from a Greek Word ſignifying Goats, becauſe the Iſlands ſcatter'd up and down in it

Digitized by Google

it resembled a Flock of Goats. 2. By the *Hellespont*, where were *Cestos* and *Abydus*, on the opposite Shores, now call'd the Streights of *Gallipoli*, or of the *Dardanelles*. 3. By the *Propontis*, now the Sea of *Marmora*, or the *White Sea*. 4. By the *Bosphorus Thracius*, now the Streights of *Constantinople*. 5. By the *Pontus Euxinus*, now the *Black Sea*. 6. By the *Bosphorus Cimmerius*, now the Streights of *Caffa*. 7. By *Palus Maotis*, or the Sea of *Zabaque*. 8. By the *Tanais*, or River *Don*. 9. By a Line drawn from the most Easterly Turnings of that River to the *Obi*. 10. By a Line from the *Obi* to the Northern Ocean.

The Length of *Europe* is variously calculated by Geographers. *Cluverius* says, That from the Cape of St. *Vincent* to the Mouth of the River *Obi*, it is 900 *German* Leagues, or 3600 *Italian* Miles. *Morden* says, there is but 50 Degrees of Longitude from the Cape of St. *Vincent* to the Mouth of the River *Obi*; but *Sanson* makes the Distance 55 Degrees, and Mr. *Moll* 68.

Cluverius reckons the Breadth of *Europe* from the Cape of *Matrapan*, a Promontory in the *Morea*, or ancient *Peloponnesus*, to the North Cape in *Norway*, to be 550 *German* Leagues, or 2200 *Italian* Miles. *Morden* says, from the most Southerly to the most Northerly Parts of *Europe*, there are only 35 Degrees of Latitude; *Sanson* makes them 38; the Great Atlas makes them 44; and Mr. *Moll* makes them 42.

Europe, in respect of Government, is divided into Empires, Kingdoms, Republicks, and Principalities. Of the first, there are Three, *viz.* The Empires of *Germany*, *Muscovy*, and *Turky*. The Kingdoms are Nine: 1. *Spain*. 2. *France*. 3. *Portugal*. 4. *Britain* and *Ireland*. 5. *Hungary*. 6. *Bohemia*. 7. *Poland*. 8. *Swedeland*. 9. *Denmark* and *Norway*. The Commonwealths are, *Venice*, *Genoa*, *Lucca*, the *Swiss Cantons*, the *United Netherlands*. Some add *Ragusa*, *St. Marino*. The Principalities are, the *Patrimony of the Church*, the Great Dukedom of *Tuscany*, the Dukedoms of *Savoy*, *Modena*, *Parma*, *Mantua*, *Mirandola*, *Transilvania*, *Moldavia*, *Walachia*, *Malta*, *Lorrain*, *Curland*, and *Lesser Tartary*. Some add the Nine Electorates, *viz.* *Mentz*, *Treves*, *Cologne*, *Bohemia*, *Bavaria*, *Saxony*, *Brandenburgh*, Palatinate of the *Rhine*, *Hanover*.

The principal Languages spoke now in *Europe* are, the *Latin*, *Greek*, *Teutonic*, and *Sclavonic*. The *Teutonic* is of Three Sorts; *High Dutch* in *Germany*, *Saxon* in *England*, *Danish* in *Denmark*, *Sweden*, and *Norway*: The *Latin* is corrupted into *French*, *Italian*, and *Spanish*: The Modern *Greek* is much different from the School *Greek*: The *Sclavonic* Language is used in *Sclavonia*, *Bohemia*, *Poland*, *Muscovy*, and *Turky* in *Europe*: The *Tartarian* Language is a Dialect of the *Sclavonic*. There are several Languages of less Note which are used in *Europe*: The *Albanian* or *Epirotic* in *Epirus* and *Macedonia*: The *Cossack* and *Tartarian* in Part of *Poland* and *Tartary*: The *Hungarian* or *Bulgarian* in *Servia*, *Bosnia* in *Bulgaria*, and *Hungary*, &c. The *Finnick* in *Finmark* and *Lapland*: *Irish* in the Highlands of *Scotland*, and amongst the ancient *Irish* in *Ireland*: The *British* is spoken in *Cornwall*, *Wales*, and *Britany* in *France*: The *Biscaian* is spoken only in *Biscay*, near the *Cantabrian* Ocean or Bay of *Biscay*; and *Arabic* in Part of *Spain*.

The Religions in *Europe* are the *Christian*, which is divided into *Papists* and *Protestants*; the *Jewish*, the *Mahometan* and *Pagan*. There are some of the last in *Lapland*.

Of the Quality of EUROPE, *according to the Moderns.*

THE Ancients having been much too short in the Account they give of the distinguishing Qualities of this most famous Part of the World, we think it proper to enlarge a little upon it.

Bochart says justly, That though it be the least of the Principal Divisions of the World, it is by far the best cultivated, and most populous; has for many Ages been the Seat of Civility or good Breeding, as well as of polite Learning; and was the Mother of the *Greeks* and *Romans*, who extended their Empire to the remotest Parts of *Asia* and *Africa*. To which we may add, That she has likewise brought the far greatest Part of what is known in *America* under her Subjection, and introduced Civility and the Christian Religion among the Inhabitants of that Part of the World. Which, taken all together, is by *Bochart* and other Interpreters understood to be the Accomplishment of that Prophecy, *Gen.* 9. 27. That

Digitized by Google

That *God shall enlarge* Japheth, *and he shall dwell in the Tents of* Shem, *and* Canaan *shall be his Servant*. *Bochart* agrees with those who think the Meaning of this to be, That in the Diviſion of the Earth, *Japheth* ſhall have the largeſt Share; which he ſays every one muſt own to have been abundantly fulfilled, when they conſider, That, beſides *Europe*, which fell to *Japheth*'s Lot, his Poſterity likewiſe inhabited *Aſia Minor*, *Media*, Part of *Armenia*, with *Iberia* and *Albania*, and thoſe vaſt Countries towards the North, formerly inhabited by *Scythians*, and now by the *Tartars*. To ſay nothing of the new World, or *America*, into which 'tis very probable the *Scythians* ſent a Colony by the Streights of *Anian*.

Dr *Heylin* is of the ſame Opinion in his General Deſcription of *Europe*, as to the Enlargement of *Japheth*'s Borders, and the dividing the Iſles of the *Gentiles* among his Sons, which he takes to include all the Continent of *Europe*, and the Iſles adjacent: And he further obſerves, That the great Countries of *Anatolia*, *Greece*, *Spain*, and *Italy*, all which did fall to the Poſterity of *Japheth*, are but ſo many Peninſula's, inviron'd round almoſt with one Sea or other. Nor was, ſays he, the Name and Memory of *Japheth* ſo much forgot by the Children who deſcended of him; but that the *Greeks*, who were the firſt Colony they ſent into *Europe*, retain'd it a long Time in their *Japetus*, whom they make to be the Son of *Celum* and *Terra*, and the Father of *Prometheus*, whom *Ovid* therefore calls *Satus Japeto*, in the Firſt Book of his Metamorphoſis.

The Doctor adds, That the Second Part of the Propheſy, *That he ſhould dwell in the Tents of Shem*, though it was long before it came to the Accompliſhment, yet it was fulfilled at laſt, and that both in the literal and myſtical Senſe: 1. In the literal Senſe, when the Poſterity of *Japheth*, both *Greeks* and *Romans*, made themſelves Maſters of *Judea*, and of the Land of *Canaan*, and the Eaſtern Parts promiſed to him, and poſſeſſed by the Seed of *Shem*. Next in the myſtical, when God was pleaſed to break down the Partition-Wall, and to incorporate the *Gentiles* of the Houſe of *Japheth* into the Body of the Church, which for a long time was reſtrained to the Line of *Shem*.

We may add to the other Qualities of *Europe*, eſpecially of its Northern Parts, what *Jornander*, an ancient *Gothick* Writer, ſays of it deſervedly, *viz. Eſſe Officinas Gentium & velut Vaginas Nationum*; *i. e.* That they are the Nurſeries and Seminaries of Nations and People, becauſe of their being ſo extraordinary Prolific.

Ortelius alſo takes Notice, That *Pliny* called *Europe*, *Altricem Victoris omnium Gentium Populi*, *Terrarumque pulcherrimam*; the Nurſe of that People (the *Romans*) which have conquer'd all the reſt, and the moſt beautiful of all Lands that are known. And tho' it is certainly the leaſt of all the Four great Parts into which the World ſtands now divided; yet, as *Ortelius* goes on, it is of great Fertility, naturally temperate, (being ſeated in the Northern Temperate Zone) and therefore enjoying the Bleſſings of a temperate Air, and its Soil producing Fruits of all Sorts, Wine and Trees equal to the beſt, which make it extreamly pleaſant to the Eye. It is alſo adorn'd with Cities, Towns and Villages, and a numerous Progeny of Men beyond any of the reſt. Its Inhabitants are not only more numerous in Proportion, but much more civil and ingenious; ſo that tho' it is leſs than any of the other Three in Extent, yet it is, and ever was, thought much more excellent than any of the other; and beſides its preſent Grandeur, it is venerable on the account of the *Macedonian* and *Roman* Empires. Thus far that great Man.

There are many other Authors who have given *Europe* the Preference of the other Diviſions of the World, particularly *Boiſſardus*, in his Epigrams, *Lib.* 2. *Epig. ult.* who writes concerning the Four Parts of the World thus:

Artium Genetrix, Scientiarumque
Europa, *ut fuit, eſtque, erit que ſemper.*
Rerum Stamine fulgido celebris.
Et dente Indo, Aſia *eſt, ordoribuſque.*
Auro fertilis atque Margaritis
Eſt, & Murice dives, Afra Tellus.
Balſamum Americi *legunt*, *Piperque*
Thus & Zinziber, & fragrans Amomum.

Brietius tells us, the *Saracens* own Four remarkable Qualities in *Europe*: 1. That 'tis very fruitful; 2. That it breeds Warlike Inhabi-

Digitized by Google

habitants; 3. That they are very Religious; 4. That they are fit to govern the reſt of the World.

As to its *Fruitfulneſs*, he obſerves, That there is ſcarcely any Country of *Europe*, which is not commendable for ſome Product or other; yet he might have excepted, as to the general Qualification of Fertility, ſome of thoſe Countries which lie near the North Pole, as well as he does Part of *Spain*. 'Tis true however, with reſpect to thoſe which he calls the moſt cultivated Nations, *viz. Greece*, *Italy*, *France*, and Part of *Spain*. What he ſays of *England*'s Fruitfulneſs in Corn and Cattle, every one knows to be true; but he might have extended it to the whole Iſland in general, and ought not to have omitted its Naval Strength, our Materials for building of Ships, our Fiſhery, Mines, and Fruit-Trees; and *Ireland* ought at leaſt to be allowed its Share of thoſe Qualifications.

What he ſays of the Fruitfulneſs of *Germany*, is true, as to many Parts of it; but he has omitted their Forreſts, Vines, and Minerals. That 'tis a Nurſery of Soldiers, and has maintained many great Armies at one and the ſame time, is not to be denied.

To what he ſays of *Poland*, That in time of a Famine it furniſhed Proviſions to a great Part of *France*; he might have added, That it has been juſtly eſteemed the Granary of *Europe*, tho' it has ſuffered much in that Reſpect by the preſent War, which obſtructs their Cultivation.

He takes Notice of the Fruitfulneſs of *Hungary*, though ſubject to frequent Devaſtations by the *Turks* and *Germans*.

He obſerves of *Europe* in general, That for the Advantage of mutual Commerce, and publick Society, *Spain* furniſhes Iron, dry Fruits, and fine Wool; *England*, Hides, Wool, Tin, and Lead; *France*, among other Things, furniſhes Corn, Salt, and very fine Oil; *Germany*, Horſes, Arms, Iron, and Silver; the *Netherlands*, Manufactures; *Italy* and *Greece*, Silks; the Northern Kingdoms, Hides, Tallow, Copper, and Timber for Shipping; *Poland* and *Ruſſia*, rich Furs and Skins, Honey, and Wax. He concludes this Head of *Europe*'s Fertility thus; That it produces all Things neceſſary for Life, except Drugs; the Reaſon of which he alledges to be, That it is not ſo obnoxious to Diſeaſes as other Parts of the World, except ſuch as are introduced by Intemperance and Luxury. What he ſays as to its Want of Drugs, may be juſtly diſputed, ſince in general it produces many excellent Simples, which are of Uſe in Phyſick.

For his other Defects in the general Deſcription, they ſhall be ſupplied in the particular Accounts of the ſeveral Countries.

As to the Second Head, That the *Europeans* are a Warlike People, he ſays 'tis plain from this one Inſtance, That though they be all good Soldiers, and have each had their Share in Military Glory; yet hitherto none of the Warlike Nations, of which 'tis compoſed, have been able to obtain the Sovereignty of the whole: And when the *Turks* and *Saracens* have joined their Forces againſt them, yet they were not able to ſtand before them in *Europe*, *Aſia*, or *Africa*.

He likewiſe takes Notice of the particular Military Virtues of its ſeveral Nations thus: The Inhabitants of *Great Britain* deſpiſe Dangers; the *French* are quick and fierce; the *Spaniards* are extraordinary patient; the *Germans* are ſtedfaſt; the *Netherlands* are ſagacious; the *Hungarians* vigilant; the *Poles*, *Ruſſians* and *Swedes*, tenacious; and all of them are ready to conquer or die: Only the *Grecians* and *Italians*, formerly the Glory of War, do now underſtand better to obey than to fight, ſome of them excepted: Yet both of them, he ſays, ſeem to be born for Empire, would they reſume their ancient Courage. He adds, That 'tis certain, ſince the *Ottomans* fixed the Seat of their Government in *Europe*, and choſe their Janizaries from among the *Europeans*, they have had much braver Armies than before, and make very little Account of their *Aſian* Troops.

In his Account of the *Religion* of the *Europeans*, he governs himſelf by the Principles of the Church of *Rome*, and is very liberal of his Cenſures upon *Luther* and *Calvin*, and thoſe who are called their Followers.

The Proteſtant Religion has its chief Seat in the Empire, *Switzerland*, the Vallies of *Piedmont*, the *United Netherlands*, *Great Britain* and *Ireland*, *Denmark*, *Norway*, and *Sweden*. It had formerly a very large Footing in *France*, *Bohemia*, *Hungary*, and *Poland*; but has loſt much of it (at leaſt as to the external Profeſſion in thoſe Parts) by the violent Perſecution of Popiſh Princes.

The

Digitized by Google

The principal Seat of Popery, is *Italy*, *France*, *Spain*, *Portugal*, and in thoſe Parts of the Empire which are the Hereditary Dominions of the Houſe of *Auſtria*, the Electorate of *Bavaria*, the Dominions of the Three Eccleſiaſtical Electors, and the *Spaniſh Netherlands*.

As to that which is called the *Greek* Church, the principal Seat of their Religion is *Greece* it ſelf, with ſome of the neighbouring Iſlands, and ſuch Parts of the *Muſcovite* Dominions as are in *Europe*. 'Tis obſerved by ſome, That the prevailing Languages in thoſe Parts, which are the principal Seat of Popery, are derived from the *Latin*: The Langnages of thoſe who have chiefly embraced the Reformation, are derived from the *Teutonic*; and where the *Greek* Church prevails, the *Sclavonic* Language is moſt in Uſe. There are ſome Exceptions however to theſe Generals, which ſhall be taken Notice of in the particular Countries.

Though it muſt be owned, That there is more true Religion in *Europe* than in all the reſt of the World; yet 'tis juſtly obſerved by ſome, That the Luſtre of Chriſtianity is very much eclips'd by the unnatural Diviſions among Proteſtants, about Things of leſſer Moment, by the groſs Idolatry and Superſtition among the Papiſts, and by the ſcandalous Lives of too many of both: And had it not been for thoſe Things, *Europe* might truly have been accounted the Temple of Religion, the Court of Policy and Government, and the Paradiſe of Human Felicity.

The *Mahometan* Religion is only profeſſed in ſome of thoſe Parts of *Europe*, which are ſubject to the *Turks*.

The *Jewiſh* Religion is in a vagabond State like themſelves, the viſible Effects of the Curſe of God upon them for their blaſpheming and crucifying our Saviour; which being foretold ſo many Ages ago, as appears by the Hiſtory of the Goſpels, is, together with the Apoſtacy of the *Roman* Church, foretold likewiſe ſo expreſly in other Parts of the New Teſtament, an undeniable Proof of the Truth and Divine Authority of the Chriſtian Religion.

As to the Fourth Head, which is *Policy*, *Brietius* inſtances, 1. In the *Spaniards*, who, he ſays, in the Memory of our Fathers, did with admirable Prudence govern a large Empire, diffus'd through the World, and made up of disjointed Parts, and carried War every where, while they themſelves were at Peace. His 2d Inſtance is that of the Commonwealth of *Venice*, than which he ſays there can be nothing better conſtituted; and that their Senators reſemble ſo many wiſe and prudent Kings. His 3d Inſtance is of the *Dutch*, who being, according to him, nothing at firſt but a Mob of rebellious Fiſhermen, have ſpread their Commerce and Victories thro' the World, to the great Damage of the *Spaniards*; which is a plain Argument, that the latter had declined very much in the Politicks and Prudence that he aſcribes to them, when they provok'd the *Dutch* to revolt by their Bigotry and Tyranny. His 4th Inſtance is of the *Greeks* and *Italians*, who, by their too great Prudence, (which he ought rather to have call'd Effeminacy and ſlaviſh Principles) are kept from knocking off their Shackles. His 5th Inſtance is of the *French*, who, in his own Time gave a ſufficient Proof of what they were capable to do in Government under the Adminiſtration of the Great Cardinal. The Book being publiſhed in 1648, 'tis ſuppoſed he meant Cardinal *Mazarin*. 'Tis evident however, That he might have very well allow'd Cardinal *Richlieu* a Share; tho' the Adminiſtration of *Henry* IV. commonly call'd the *Great*, ſeems to be a more proper Inſtance than either of them. But 'tis probable, a few Years will demonſtrate to the World, That the *French* have been guilty of as great a Failure in Politicks, in graſping at the univerſal Monarchy, and perſecuting their Proteſtant Subjects, as the *Spaniards* were before them: And had not our Author been carried away with Partiality towards his own Country, he might have added the Inſtance of the Great *Guſtavus Adolphus*, who gave ſignal Proofs of his Ability both for Government and War: And we may add, for the Honour of our own Country, without Flattery, (ſince 'tis known to all the World) That *Great Britain* has oftner than once held the Ballance of *Europe* in her Hand, and is always capable of doing ſo, under a good Government, as is evident (to go no higher) from the Inſtances of *Henry* VIII. Queen *Elizabeth*, the late King *William*, and Her preſent Majeſty Queen *Anne*.

CHAP. V.

Digitized by Google

CHAP. V.

Of GREENLAND.

HAving given a Deſcription of *Europe* in General, we come now to the particular Countries; and, according to the Method of *Blaeu*'s Atlas, ſhall begin with thoſe which lie next the North-Pole, and firſt with *Greenland*.

GREENLAND.

'TIS ſuppoſed this Country was ſo called by the *Engliſh* Diſcoverers, becauſe the Water of the neighbouring Sea appear'd to them as green as Graſs. The *Dutch* call it *Spitsbergen*, becauſe of its ſharp-pointed Rocks and Mountains. What Part of it is yet diſcovered, lies from 76 to 82 Deg. N. Lat. and from Long. 30 to 50. How much further North it runs, or whether it be an Iſland or Continent, is not known. Our Mariners take it to be an Iſland; but the *Dutch* think it goes much further North, becauſe they found the Ice not floating as at Sea, but firm and ſtable, as it uſes to be near the Shore. The South Part of it looks towards the Promontories of *Finland* and *Lapland*, *North Cape*, *North-Kin*, &c. On the Weſt lies the large Country of *Groneland*; and on the Eaſt *Nova-Zembla*.

The *Dutch* aſcribe the firſt Diſcovery to Three of their Pilots, and have given Names to the Bays, Creeks and Promontories, according to their own Fancy. They oblige their Maſters of Ships to make Charts of the Places they diſcover; and had we done the like, ſeveral of our Diſcoveries had been aſcertain'd, which are now diſputed. *Purchas* obſerves, That the *Dutch* have given Names to Places long before diſcovered by the *Engliſh*, as if they themſelves had been the firſt Diſcoverers.

The *Dutch* ſay, That *Jacob Heemskirk*, *Barents* and *Cornelius Ryp*, ſearching for a N. E. Paſſage, diſcovered *Greenland* in 1596; tho' Sir *Hugh Willoughby* was the firſt Diſcoverer of it in 1553, as is probable by the ſhort Notes found upon his Table after his Death, which tells us, That *Aug.* 14. they were 160 Leagues N. and E. from *Seynam*: They continued ſailing till the 14th of *September*, when they landed on a Country, high, rocky, and uninhabited; from whence, by Cold and Ice, they were forced to return more S. till they came to *Arzina* River in *Lapland*, where next Spring they were found all frozen to Death in their Ship. Captain *Stephen Burroughs*, afterwards Comptroller of the Navy to Queen *Elizabeth*, in 1556, ſearching a N. E. Paſſage to the *Indies*, arrived in 112 Deg. of Long. and 76 of Lat. and ſailed to 80 Deg. 11 Min. of N. Lat. where he ſays the Country was deſolate, the Ice of a blue Colour, and great Store of Fowls, which can be no other Place but *Spitzbergen*.

The beſt Account of this Country, is the Voyage of *Frederic Martens*, an *Hamburger*, who ſailed from the *Elb April* 5. 1671. and arrived at *Charles-Iſle*, 70 Miles long, and 10 Miles broad, ſeparate from *Greenland* by a narrow Streight, called *Foreland's-Ford*.

The External Appearance, or Face of the Country, is in general Rocks and Mountains, riſing above one another, from the Shore to the Inland Parts, to a prodigious Height: And thoſe next the Shore, tho' ſo high, that the talleſt Ship with her Maſts is no more, when compar'd with them, than a little Cottage to a Steeple, are as much inferior to thoſe which riſe higher in the Country behind them. The Rocks being red, the Foot of thoſe Mountains look like Fire, eſpecially before a Storm. The Tops of them are cover'd with Fogs and Snow; and the latter is marbled as if it were

Digitized by Google

Branches of Trees, and gives as glorious a Light by Reflexion on the Sky, as if the Sun ſhin'd on them. Below, at the Foot of thoſe Mountains, there are others of Ice, of a great Height, which increaſe continually by the Rain and Snow that falls and freezes upon them: And during the Summer, when the Snow melts elſewhere, it continues in the Clefts, which makes thoſe Mountains appear at a Diſtance like dry Trees, with Branches, and Twigs; and when new Snow falls upon them, at firſt it reſembles Leaves. There are 7 of thoſe Icy Mountains in a Line, that lie betwixt the high Rocks, are reckoned the higheſt Mountains in the Country, and appear of a glorious blue Colour, with abundance of Cracks and Holes in them. Some of the Rocks are one continued Stone from Top to Bottom, look like a decay'd Wall, and ſmell very ſweet, as the green Fields do with us after Rain in the Spring. The Stones for moſt part are vein'd like Marble, with white, red, and yellow. They ſweat at the Alteration of Weather, which gives the Snow upon them a red Colour; and the Rain does the like when it runs down from the Rocks. At the Foot of the Mountains, where there are no Hills of Ice, there lie great looſe Rocks, as they had fallen by Chance upon one another, which form Caves and Holes, ſo that 'tis very tickliſh walking upon them. They are mix'd with Stones of a grey Colour, with black Veins, and glifter like Silver Ore. They ſeem to be much of the Nature of our Pebbles, with which we pave the Streets. Thoſe Mountains look as if there were Earth on the Tops of them, becauſe of their great Height; but are found to be Rock at Top as well as Bottom. Stones flung down from them, or Pieces that fall off, make a Noiſe like Thunder. Thoſe Mountains are full of Cracks, where the Birds build their Neſts. They are very difficult and dangerous to climb or walk up, and thoſe who do ſo, mark the Way they go with Chalk, that they may find it again when they return. They are ſo high, that when the Day is not clear, one half of them ſeem to be above the Clouds; and ſome of them look as if they would tumble down every Moment. The Sharpneſs of the Rocks, looſe Pieces of Ice, and Want of Paths, do ſoon fatigue and heat thoſe that travel on them, be it ever ſo cold, and quickly wear out their Shoes.

Great Pieces break off many times from the Ice Hills, fall into the Sea, are far more firm and compact than the other Ice, and are form'd by the Water of the Sea into ſeveral Shapes: Some of them reſemble Churches with arch'd Windows, and Doors and Pillars within of a curious Blue: Others reſemble round and ſquare Tables with blue Pillars underneath, and Icicles on the Sides, and look like fring'd Table-Cloths; ſmooth and white on the Top with the Snow, and ſometimes Pieces of Ice of various Shapes lying upon them. The Country at a diſtance looks like a Cloud, and is ſcarce to be diſtinguiſhed from the Air.

The Soil, ſo far as yet diſcovered, is in moſt Places nothing but Rock, Heaps of big Stones and Slates ſtanding Edge-wiſe. What Mould there is, comes from Moſs, waſh'd down from the Hills, and the Dung of Birds: It bears Heath, Moſs, Graſs, and ſome Plants. The Herbs produc'd here are fit for the Diſtempers of the Climate. In *June* and *July* they grow up to bear Seed: The moſt remarkable are, ſmall Houſe-Leek, 4 Sorts of Crow's-Foot, Sorrel, Scurvy-Graſs in great Quantities, but ſo mild, that they eat it for Sallads; Snake-Weed, an Herb like Mouſe-Ear, another like Periwinkle, Cabbage-Lettice, which taſtes like Creſſes; Ranunculus's of ſeveral Sorts, Sempervives, Herbs like Aloes, Wall-Pepper, Prick-Madam, and others unknown to our Climate.

The Sun appears about the Middle of *February*, and leaves them the Firſt of *October*; but they have a Twilight when the Sun comes near their Horizon. From the Beginning of *May* to the Firſt of *Auguſt*, the Sun never ſets; yet they reckon Night and Day all that Time, thus; when the Sun is Weſt, they call it Night; and when it comes about to the Eaſt, they call it the Beginning of another Day. *Martens* obſerves, That the Light of the Sun is then like that of a clear Moon, and Men may look on it without dazzling their Eyes. It riſes no more than 33 Deg. above their Horizon, and ſo is not warm enough totally to melt the Snow and Ice, nor to raiſe the Vapours ſo high as to make the Air tempe-

Digitized by Google

temperate; ſo that they hang for moſt part in thick dark Miſts, and to that Degree ſometimes, as a Man cannot ſee from one End of a Ship to another. The Cold is ſo violent here, that it immediately freezes dead Corps; and ſome ſay, they have found them entire after having been buried 30 Years.

No Springs of freſh Water are yet diſcover'd in the Country; ſo that what freſh Water they have comes from melted Snow and Ice, that runs down from the Mountains.

The AIR.

THE Air here is ſo cold, that the Froſt is almoſt continual, and ſtrongeſt in *April* and *May*, when Men can hardly keep Heat within them: Their Teeth chatter, and their Appetite is greater than in other Countries. During thoſe Two Months, the Weather is very unconſtant. When the Wind blows hard from North and Eaſt, it's ſcarce poſſible for Men to live. Weſt and South Winds, if any Thing conſtant, bring much Snow, ſometimes Rain, and moderate the Cold. In *June*, *July*, and *Auguſt*, the Air is for moſt part pretty calm. The Winds are ſtrangely chang'd by the Clouds, ſo that when it is South-Weſt in one Place, at a few Miles diſtance it blows quite another Way. The Air over thoſe Places called Ice-fields appears white, and by this Mariners know where the fix'd Ice lies. In the Two laſt Months of the Summer, eſpecially in *July*, the Sun ſhines ſo warm, ſays *Martens*, as to melt the Tar of the Ships betwixt the Seams, where the Wind cannot come at it. There is hardly any Difference of Cold betwixt Night and Day. The Meteors generated in the Air fall down like ſmall Needles of Snow into the Sea, and cover it as if it were ſprinkled with Duſt, or a tender Ice, which taſtes freſh. This is eaſily perceiv'd in a clear Sun-ſhine, when one looks towards a ſhady Place, and they ſparkle like Diamonds; but the Particles are ſo ſmall, as not to ſtick to or wet ones Clothes. When the Sun ſhines warm towards Noon, they melt in the Air, fall like Dew, and ſometimes occaſion a Reflexion like a Rainbow. They have another which they call a Sea-Bow, that appears in the Atmoſphere of the Water, blown up by the Wind. In the Clouds near the Sun, they have *Parelia*, or Mock-Suns, which the Seamen call Weather-Galls. They move about with the Sun Day and Night, and are much bigger in the Morning, Evening, and Night, than in the Day-time. When the Cold increaſes, the Sea and other Waters ſend forth a Vapour, which is turn'd into Rain or Snow in the Air, and ſmells like Fog. When great Vapours riſe conſtantly during the Shining of the Sun, 'tis a Sign the Cold is remitting. When the Air is over-burthen'd with them, they laſt a great while with a conſtant Wind. From thoſe ſmall Vapours, the Snow is firſt generated, and falls down in various Shapes like Needles, Croſſes, Roſes, and Stars, according as the Cold is more or leſs ſtrong; but if not diſpers'd by Wind, it falls down in Cluſters.

Their HARBOURS.

1. *South-Haven*, where they commonly repair their Ships: It is large and commodious, ſo that ſometimes 40 Ships at a Time have Anchor'd conveniently in it. Here they take in freſh Water, which runs plentifully from the melted Snow and Ice on the Mountains; for the Rivers, as far as has yet been diſcovered, are brackiſh. It has high Mountains on both Sides, eſpecially on the Left, there is one call'd the *Bee-Hive*, and another the *Devil's-Huck*, which is commonly covered with a thick Miſt, that darkens the Haven when driven into it by the Wind. Within this Harbour lies the Iſland of *Deadmen*, ſo called, becauſe it is the Burying-place for ſuch as die there: They dig no Graves, but heap Stones upon the Coffin. Here are ſeveral others call'd *Fowl-Iſlands*, becauſe of the vaſt Multitude of Fowls that breed there.

Maurice's-Bay, where ſome People have Winter'd. Near this are the only Houſes in the Country, being a few Cottages and Warehouſes built by the *Dutch* for making their Oil, where they have a great Gun to defend them. This Place they call *Smearbourg*, and the *Harlingiſh Cookery*. All other Nations burn their Houſes when they leave the Place.

Digitized by Google

3. The Northern Bay, in which there is an Iſland by the *Dutch* called *Vogel-Song*, becauſe of the great Noiſe which the Fowls make there. This, with *South-Haven*, and one called *Safe-Harbour*, are the moſt known of any Harbours of the Country.

4. *Monyers-Bay*, which lies furtheſt North on the Weſt Part of *Greenland*.

5. *Roſefield*, ſo call'd, becauſe it abounds with Deer.

6. *Muſcle-Haven*, which lies at the Mouth of the *Weygatt*: North of which, *Martens* ſays, he ſail'd to 81 Deg. and ſaw 7 Iſlands further North, but could not approach them becauſe of the Ice. The loweſt Part of the Country lies about this Harbour.

7. Alderman *Freeman's Inlet*, by the *Dutch* called *Walter Thymen's Port*: It is the large Mouth of a River, which is not yet diſcovered.

The Voyages mention alſo the *Engliſh*, *Hamburg*, *Daniſh*, and *Magdalen* Havens, with one called the *Bay of Love*; but not ſo diſtinctly as to enable us to judge whether they be different from thoſe already mention'd with *Dutch* Names. They take Notice likewiſe of the Haven of *Weygatt*; as to which, they do not know whether it goes through the Country, but ſay it is not the Streights of *Weygatt*, of which ſo many Things are writ: They call it by this Name, becauſe of the Winds which frequently blow there: And about this Place, they tell us the Country is low, and adorn'd with ſmall Hills.

The whole Country is encompaſſed with Ice, which makes the Approach difficult.

Their BEASTS.

1. WHite Bears, which are quite otherwiſe ſhap'd than thoſe commonly ſeen with us: They have long Heads like Dogs, and bark like a hoarſe Dog: They are ſlenderer, and much ſwifter than other Bears. Their Hair is long and ſoft, like Wooll; their Noſes, Mouths and Talons, are black. Their Skins make comfortable Clothes for thoſe that travel in the Winter, and are dreſs'd at *Spitzbergen*, by treading them in hot Saw-Duſt, which ſucks up the Fat, and dries them. The Fat of their Feet melted out is uſed for Pains in the Limbs, and given to Women in Child-bed to haſten Delivery. It likewiſe occaſions plentiful Sweat. It is ſpungy, and feels very ſoft, and is beſt when tried up there; for if it be long kept, it grows foul and ſtinking. Their other Fat is like Sewet; when tried up, it becomes thin like Train-Oil, and the Skippers many Times ſell it as ſuch; yet it is nothing ſo good, and is chiefly uſed for Lamps, becauſe it does not ſtink ſo much as the other. *Martens* ſays, if it were tried up with Orris Root, it would keep better, and ſmell well. Their Fleſh is whitiſh and fat, like that of a Sheep. The Seamen ſay, That it makes the Hair of thoſe who eat it grey. The Milk of the Females is very white and fat, and they are ſo fond of their Young, that they will rather be kill'd than leave them. Their Teeth burn'd and powder'd, and taken inwardly, diſperſes congeal'd Blood. They feed upon the Carcaſſes of Whales, and likewiſe upon Birds and Eggs. They eat Men alive when they can maſter them; ſo that when Sailors travel any where in the Country, they carry Guns and Lances for their Defence. Their Heads are very ſtrong, and when ſtruck with ſuch Cudgels as would knock down a Bullock, they don't matter it. They roll away the Stones of Burying-places, tear up the Coffins, and eat the dead Men. They dive under Water when purſued, or in Search of their Prey at Sea.

Some of them are 6 Foot high, and 14 Foot long. An Hundred Pound Weight of Fat has been taken out of one of them. When any of them are killed, and not carried off, others run away with them in their Mouths, and eat them. When they are attacked, they run to help one another, and the old Ones will rather ſuffer themſelves to be killed, than leave their Young. The largeſt are thoſe called Water Bears, which live upon what they catch at Sea, and have ſometimes been ſeen 12 Miles from Shore. The Story, That they lick their Young into Shape, is falſe; for the Cubbs are found in the Bellies of their Dams perfectly form'd.

2. Deer of a greyiſh yellow Colour, with Cloven Feet, and Horns like a Hart or Elk: They have three or four Branches on each Side about two Inches broad, and a Foot long. They have long Ears, and ſhort Tails.

Digitized by Google

Tails. When they ſee Men, they run away; and if you ſtand ſtill, they do ſo, which is the Time to fire at them. They feed on Graſs and Moſs, and grow very fat in three Months time, which enables them to hold out during the Winter; yet many of them are then ſtarved; and in the Spring they are generally lean. They are very good Meat when roaſted.

3. Foxes, which don't much differ in Shape from ours; ſome of them have their Heads black, and their Bodies white; and they make a Noſe at a Diſtance as if a Man laugh'd: They feed generally upon Birds and Eggs, but for moſt Part have ſhort Commons.

4. Sea-Dogs, called Rubbs or Seals: They are reckon'd among Beaſts, becauſe they live by Land as well as by Water. On their Feet they have 5 Claws, like Fingers join'd together, with a thin Skin like that on a Gooſe's Foot. The moſt known is the Seal, called Sill-Dogs and Rubbe by the *Germans*. Their Heads are like that of a Dog with cropp'd Ears, but not all of one Shape. They have Beards about their Mouths, and Hair on their Noſes and Eye-Lids, but ſeldom above 4 on the latter. Their Eyes are large, hollow, and clear; their Skins cover'd with ſhort Hair, and of ſeveral Colours; ſome of them ſpotted like Tygers: They have ſharp Teeth, with which they will break a Stick as thick as one's Arm. Their Tails are ſhort; they bark like a hearſe Dog, and their young ones mew like Cats. They are very numerous in ſome Places of this Country, and lie in Multitudes on the Ice-Fields. Where they abound moſt, there are but few Whales, becauſe there is no Food for them. The Seals live on ſmall Fiſh and Sea-Worms. They will ſtand upon their Defence, purſue and bite Men. The biggeſt are from 5 to 8 Foot long, and ſome of them yield half a Barrel of Fat, which lies about Three Inches thick betwixt the Skin and Fleſh, and makes the beſt Train-Oil. Their Fleſh is black, and they abound with Blood. They have large Livers, Lungs and Hearts, which the Sailors eat ſometimes, after they draw out the Rankneſs with Water; but it is loathſome Food. They are hard to be killed, and are generally knock'd down with long Poles upon the Ice-Fields: The Sailors firſt raiſe them with a Shout, upon which they ſtretch out their Necks like Dogs, and bark, which gives them the better Opportunity to fell them. When they run away, they ſquirt out a yellow Dung, and ſtink abominably.

Their BIRDS.

THey ſaw no Land-Fowls here, but one of the Bigneſs of a Lark, with a ſquare Bill, which feeds upon Worms; and another they call Snow-Fowl, of the Size and Colour of a Sparrow, with a white Belly: Being almoſt ſtarv'd, they flee to the Ships in great Numbers, and are ſo tame, that the Mariners take them as they pleaſe; but as ſoon as they are fed, they flee away. There is great Variety of Water-Fowl, and in ſuch Numbers, that when they ſlie they darken the Sun; and at riſing make ſuch a Noiſe, that one cannot hear another ſpeak: The moſt remarkable are, 1. One by the *Dutch* call'd *Raadtjheer*, white as Snow, except his Bill, Feet and Eyes. 2. A *Diver*, almoſt as big as a Duck, with a thin crooked ſharp Bill Two Inches long, black Feathers, and red Legs and Feet. They ſwim very faſt: They have little Horns above their Eyes, and a croſs one underneath them; continue a long Time under Water, and are tolerable Meat. 3 The *Lumb*, much like the other, but his Belly is white, and he croaks like a Frog: They build in the Mountains, and carry their Young Ones in their Beaks to the Sea, to teach them to ſwim and dive, and will be kill'd rather than abandon them. They are not good Food. 4. A *Mew*, with a crooked Bill, and a Bunch under it, a white Belly, grey Wings and Back, black Pinnions, Legs and Feet, and a red Ring about his Eyes: The Seamen take them with Hooks baited with Whales Fleſh. 5. The *Dung-hunter*, that purſues the *Mew* for his Dung, which, as ſoon as he drops, the other eats it, and leaves him: 6. The *Allen*, which purſues and beats the other Birds, till they vomit their Prey, which he eats. 7. *Mallemucks*, which feed on dead Whales, and are ſo greedy of their Prey, and loth to leave it, that they ſuffer the Seamen to fell them with Sticks in great Numbers. They eat till they vomit, and tumble about in it. 8. *Mountain-Ducks*, which

Digitized by Google

which are very good Meat, but their Fat is thrown away, becauſe it taſts like Train-Oil, and makes Men ſick. The Birds of Prey are not ſo good to eat as others, till they be hung up by the Legs, that the Train-Oil may run out, and the Air blow through them. All theſe Birds come at certain Times, and abide here as long as the Sun ſhines, and then return to their former Places altogether in great Flocks.

Of their Fish, *and the* Whale.

THE Whale-Fiſhing being the chief Occaſion of People's going to *Greenland*, we ſhall give a brief Account of them from *Martens*. He ſays, they differ from other Whales in their Fins and Mouths, which are without Teeth; but inſtead of them, have long black horny Flakes, all jegg'd like Hair, and ſomewhat broad: They differ from the Fin-Fiſh in their Fins; the Fin-Fiſh has a great Fin on his Back, where the Whale has none; but he has Two behind his Eyes, cover'd with a thick black Skin, delicately marbled with white Strokes, or Repreſentations of Trees, Houſes, *&c.* With theſe he ſteers himſelf, as a Boat is row'd with Oars. He ſays, in the Tail of one of them, there was marbled very delicately and exactly the Number 1222. Their Tails don't ſtand up as the Tails of moſt other Fiſh, but lie Horizontally, as thoſe of the Fin-Fiſh and Dolphin, and are from 3 to 4 Fathoms broad. The Head is the 3d Part of the Fiſh, and ſome of them more. Their Lips are plain, ſomewhat bended like an S, and end underneath the Eyes before the Two Fins: They are ſmooth, and quite black, round like the Quarter of a Circle; and when they draw them together, they lock in one another. Within, in the uppermoſt Lip, is the Whale-bone, of a brown, black, and yellow Colour, with Streaks of ſeveral Colours. The Whale-bone of one of the young ones is blue. Juſt before, in the under Lip, there is a Cavity or Hole, which fits the upper Lip exactly as a Sheath does a Knife, and through this Hole he draws the Water he ſpouts out. The Whale-bone hangs down on both Sides within his Mouth, all hairy, like a Horſe's Hair. The Whale-bone of ſome of them is bended like a Scymiter, and in others like a Half-Moon: In one Side, all on a Row, there are 250 Pieces of Whale-bone, and as many on the other, beſides the ſmall Whale-bone which is not regarded, becauſe they cannot well come at it to cut it out. The middlemoſt is the greateſt and longeſt, and is ſometimes two or three Mens length: It lies in a flat Row, one Piece by another, is broad at Top, where it ſticks to the upper Lip, and towards the Root cover'd with white Sinews; which, when boil'd, ſmells pleaſantly. There grows ſmall Whale-bone at the Root of the greater, and they make of it Boxes, Handles for Knives, Walking-Sticks, *&c.* *Martens* is of Opinion, That Packthreads and Clothes might be made of their Hair, as the *Spaniards* do of the *Sempervive Aloes*, which they dreſs like Hemp. It is a peculiar Trade to cut out the Whale-bones, and requires abundance of Iron Tools. The Tongue lies among the Whale-bones, is cloſe fix'd to the under Chop, is very large and white, with black Spots at the Edges; it has a ſoft ſpungy Fat, and cannot be eaſily cut, ſo that it is generally flung away, tho' it would yield 6 or 7 Barrels of Train Oil: It is pleaſant Food to the Sword-Fiſh, the Whale's mortal Enemy. Upon his Head there is a Bump. Before his Eyes and Fins, at the Top of this Bump, on each Side, there is a Spout-hole bended like an S, out of which he blows the Water ſo fiercely, that it roars like a great Wind. When he is wounded, his blowing reſembles the Roaring of the Sea in a great Storm. His Head is ſomewhat flat, and ſlopes downward like the Ridge of a Houſe to the under Lip, which is broader than any Part of the Whale's Body, and broadeſt in the Middle behind the Bump; and between that and the Fins are his Eyes, not much bigger than thoſe of a Bullock, with Eye-lids and Hair like Men's. The Chryſtal of the Eye is not much bigger than a Pea, clear and tranſparent, and in ſome white, and in others yelloviſh. The Eyes lie low, almoſt at the End of the upper Lip. He does not hear when he ſpouts the Water, and is eaſieſt ſtruck at that Time. His Belly and Back are quite red; but under the Belly they are commonly white, and ſome of them Coal-Black. They look very beautiful when the Sun ſhines on them, and the

ſmall

Digitized by Google

ſmall clear Waves over them gliſter like Silver: Some of them are white all over, and ſome of them are half white; but they loſe much of their beautiful Colour when they grow dry. The outward Skin is thin, like Parchment, and is eaſily pulled off when the Fiſh grows hot, which they frequently do by hard ſwimming, and then ſtink alive. The Yard of the Whale is a ſtrong Sinew, and from 6 to 8 Foot long. Where the Yard is fix'd, the Skin is doubled, ſo that it lies like a Knife in a Sheath. The *Pudenda* of the Female is ſhap'd like that of Four-leg'd Beaſts: They have Breaſts, with Nipples at the Sides of it, like thoſe of a Cow. When they couple, they ſtand upright, with their Heads out of the Water. How long they carry their Young, is uncertain. They are never obſerv'd to have more than two young ones at a time. Their Sperm, when freſh, ſmells like Wheaten Flower boil'd in Water, and may be drawn out in Threads, like hot Sealing-Wax, or Glue. When cold, it turns to a Muſk Colour, and ſmells ſtrong. *Martens* ſays, he has try'd ſeveral Ways to keep it ſweet and freſh, but could never make it like that *Sperma Ceti* which the Apothecaries ſell in their Shops. He ſays, they may take whole Pails full of it out of the Water, for it ſwims upon the Sea like Fat; as does that of the Sea-Horſes and Seals. The Seamen make twiſted Whips of the Sinews of the Yard. The Bones of the Whales are hard, like thoſe of great Four-footed Beaſts; but porous like a Spunge, and fill'd with Marrow; and when that is conſum'd, the Holes are as big as thoſe of a Honey-Comb. They have Two great and ſtrong Bones, which hold up the under Lip: They lie againſt one another in Form of a Half-Moon: Some of them are 20 Foot long of a Side. The Fleſh of the Whales is coarſe and hard, like that of a Bull, mix'd with many Sinews: It is very dry and lean when boil'd, becauſe their Fat lies wholly betwixt the Fleſh and the Skin. When the Sailors have a mind to eat of it, they cut great Pieces off before the Tail, which is tendereſt, and boil it: Some of it looks green and blue, like powder'd Beef: The Fat is mix'd with Sinews, which holds the Oil as a Spunge does Water. The other ſtrong Sinews are chiefly about the Tail, with which he turns and winds himſelf as a Rudder does a Ship. He ſwims as ſwiftly as a Bird flies, and makes a Track in the Sea like a great Ship under Sail. The middling Sort of Whales here are about 50 or 60 Foot long, and commonly yield 70, 80, or 90, Kardels of Fat. *Martens* mentions one Whale that yielded 130. Beſides the uppermoſt thin Skin, there is another of about an Inch thick, and of the ſame Colour with the other; but both are ſo brittle when dry, that they are of no Value; and the Softneſs of the Skins is reckoned to be the Cauſe why the Whale, tho' the ſtrongeſt and biggeſt of all Creatures in the Water, cannot make much Uſe of his Strength. He ſays nothing of the inward Parts, but only that the Guts are of a Fleſh Colour, and the Dung within them yellow. Their Food is Sea-Snails, Herrings, and other ſmall Fiſh. They are not very couragious, conſidering their Strength; for when they ſee a Man, or a Long-Boat, they dive and run away: But when he is in Danger, he values a Man no more than a Straw, and frequently beats the Long-Boats to pieces; but great Ships are too hard for him, and when he ſtrikes againſt them with his Tail, he receives more Hurt than he does. Sometimes he runs away with Thouſands of Fathoms of Rope-Line, a great deal ſwifter than a Ship can ſail, or a Bird fly. In the Spring they keep Weſtward from *Spitzbergen*, near *Old Greenland*, and the Iſland of *John Mayen*, and then run Eaſtward to *Spitzbergen*. After them come the Fin-Fiſh, and then the Whales do probably retire to warmer Seas. They have Ailments as well as other Beaſts, and are mightily tormented by Lice, and ſometimes leap out of the Water as if they were in an Agony. Before a Tempeſt, they beat the Water about with their Tails like Duſt. They are obſerv'd to have the greateſt Strength when they ſtrike Side-ways. If they eſcape, their Wounds are ſoon heal'd, becauſe of their Fat; but the Wound always leaves a white Scar behind it.

The young ones, when brought forth, are as big as an Hogſhead, and they ſuck their Dams, whoſe Milk is very white and ſweet, but taſtes Fiſhy.

Of

Of the Taking of the WHALE.

WHEN the Fiſhermen hear a Whale blow or ſpout, they call into the Ship, *Fall, Fall*; then every one gets into their Long-Boats, which for moſt part contain 6 or 7 Men: They tow till they come near; then the Harponier takes his Harpoon, or ſharp Iron, which reſembles an Arrow fix'd to a Stick, and ſtrikes him. They take Care to have Rope enough, otherwiſe, when the Whale dives ſtraight down, as he frequently does, he would ſink the Boat: And to prevent the Rope's ſetting the Boat on Fire when it is drawn quick, they take Care to Water it ſufficiently; for he draws many Hundred Fathom of Rope under Water with incredible Force. The Line faſten'd to the Harpoon is 6 or 7 Fathom long, and called the Forerunner: It is made of the fineſt and ſofteſt Hemp, and not Pitch'd, that it may the more eaſily follow the Harpoon. Join'd to this, there's a whole Heap of Lines, divided into 3, 4, or 5 Parts, of 80, 90, and 100 Fathoms each, made of ſtrong Hemp well Tarr'd. If the Whale run under Water, they tie more and more to it, and if there be not enough in one Long-Boat, they make uſe of that which is in the next; and they take ſpecial Care that they don't entangle and overſet the Boat. The Steerſman obſerves which Way the Rope goes, and ſteers the Boat accordingly, that it may run exactly out before; for the Whale runs away with the Long-Boat as faſt as the Wind, and would overturn it, if the Line be not kept ſtraight. If the Harpooner can, he darts the Harpoon juſt behind the Spout-hole, or in the thick Fat of the Whale's Back, which makes him ſpout more Blood, and dye ſooner than when wounded in the Belly, or through the Guts, except they be wounded in the Privy-Parts, which puts them to extream Pain; and even when they are almoſt dead, if they be wounded there, it cauſes their whole Body to tremble. About the Head, the Harpoon does them but little Hurt, of which the Whale ſeems to be ſenſible: And therefore when ſtruck at, rather expoſes his Head than any other Part, becauſe the Harpoon gets out eaſier there, and ſo he eſcapes. When the Whale is ſtruck, the other Long-Boats row before, and take Notice which Way the Line ſtands, and ſometimes pull at it. If they find it ſtiff, 'tis a Sign the Whale ſtill pulls with Strength; but if it hang looſe, and the Long-Boat lie equally high before and behind in the Water, they pull it in, but lay it in Order, that the Whale may have it eaſily again if he recover Streagth. If he run on a Level, they take Care not to give him too much, leſt he ſhould entangle himſelf about a Rock, and pull out the Harpoon, which he does ſometimes. 'Tis obſerv'd, That the fat ones don't ſink immediately when dead, but the lean do, and come up again after ſome Days. When dead, they immediately begin to ſtink, and their Fleſh ferments like Beer or Ale, and the Steam enflames Men's Eyes if they be weak. When he runs under Ice, where he cannot be follow'd, they cut off their Line, if they cannot pull out the Harpoon; for they always retire to the Ice if it be near, and frequently endanger the Boats. When they are wounded, they ſpout ſo loud, that one may hear them as far as a Cannon; but when he grows feeble, the Noiſe decreaſes, and ſounds like the bubbling of an empty Bottle in the Water, which is a Sign of his being juſt a dying. Some of them ſpout Blood to the laſt, cover the Men and Sloops, and tinge the Sea with it. They likewiſe fling up a fartiſh Subſtance, which looks like Sperm, and is greedily devour'd by the Birds call'd *Mallemucks*, and others, who eat them while alive. Sometimes they are ſurrounded with Boats, and kill'd with Lances; but this is a dangerous Way for the Men and Boats. The Females, when with Young, are the moſt dangerous, and make the longeſt Defence.

2. The Fin-fiſh is as long as a Whale, but ſcarce ſo bulky by two Thirds: He is known by the Fins on his Back near his Tail. The Knob on his Head has a long Hole, thro' which he blows up the Water higher, and with more Force, than the Whale. His Back is not ſo much bended as that of the Whale. His Lips are brown, and twiſted like a Rope, and the Whale-bone hangs to the upper Lip. He is not black like the Whale, but colour'd like a Tench. He is not ſo fat as the Whale, yet is more dangerous to take, becauſe he moves quicker, and

Digitized by Google

and is ſooneſt kill'd by Lances. 'Tis dangerous to ſtrike him with a Harpoon, eſpecially near the Ice; for by his quick Motion, he ſometimes pulls the Boat and Men under it. When thoſe Fiſh appear, there are no more Whales to be ſeen.

The Ships that go a Whale-fiſhing carry 30 or 40 Men, and ſometimes more, and have generally 5 or 6 Sloops apiece. The largeſt Ships hold from 800 to 1000 Cardels or Barrels of Fat, and the leſſer from 400 to 700. In each Ship there are 60 Lances, 6 Sea-Horſe Lances, 40 Harpoons, and 10 long ones to ſtrike Whales under Water, 6 ſmall Sea-Horſe Harpoons, and 30 Lines of 80 or 90 Fathom each. The Scurvy is the common Diſtemper in this Voyage, beſides Fevers and Impoſthumes; and the Surgeons provide accordingly.

3. The *Sea-Horſe*, by ſome call'd the *Morſe*, *Mahruſh*, and *Horſe-Whale*, is ſhap'd much like the Seal, but as big as an Ox. Their Legs and Claws are like the Seals, but their Nails ſhort. Their Head is thicker, rounder and ſtronger: Their Skin an Inch thick, chiefly about the Neck, cover'd with ſhort Hair. They have two great long Teeth in their upper Jaw, about a Foot and two Foot long, and ſometimes longer: They hang below their under Lips. They are more eſteem'd than Ivory, as being whiter, firmer and heavier, and fit for Handles of Knives, Boxes, &c. The *Jutlanders* make Buttons of them, and uſe them againſt Poyſon and malignant Diſeaſes, wherein they excel that called the *Unicorn's Horn*. Their Mouth is broad before, like a Bullock's, with Briſtles above and below, hollow within, and as big as a Straw: The Seamen make Cramp-rings of them. He has two Semi-circular Noſtrils, from which he blows the Water like the Whale, but with leſs Noiſe. Their Eyes are at a good diſtance from their Noſe, and red like Blood. Their Eye-lids are like thoſe of Four-footed Beaſts. Their Eyes are like the Seals: Their Tongues as large as a Neat's-Tongue, and when new boil'd, eatable; but if kept two or three Days, taſts like Train-Oil. Their Necks are thick, ſo that they ſeldom turn their Head about. Their Fleſh is like that of a Hog, and their Heart and Liver eatable. Of their Yards, which are hard Bone, Handles of Knives are made. They feed upon Herbs and Fiſh. They lie in great Numbers upon the Ice, and roar moſt terribly. They ſleep and ſnore either upon the Water or Ice, and dive like the Seals. They are ſtout, undaunted Creatures, and ſtand by one another as long as they have Life; and tho' wounded, make to the Boats, endeavour to get in, purſue them a great way, and ſometimes ſtrike Holes in them with their Teeth, or jump in and overſet them. They defend their Young as long as they have Breath. They are chiefly taken for their Teeth, of which there are many that are hollow, and worth nothing. When they lie upon the Ice in Numbers, one of them keeps Watch, and when Boats come near, he ſtrikes the next Morſe with his Tooth, and ſo the Signal goes round; upon which they riſe up, ſtand on their fore Foot, look and roar terribly, and make to the Water. The Skin about their Neck is thicker than that of an Elk, and if dreſſed, would be as good as the beſt Buff, and very light. They frequently ſleep on the Shore, and if they can, get up to high Places. They ſcarcely value Shot, or Blows, but are eaſieſt kill'd with Javelins. Sometimes Sailors make a good Voyage with their Oil and Teeth, when the Whale-Fiſhing does not anſwer.

4. The *Dragon-Fiſh* has two Fins on his Back, the foremoſt of which has long Strings, about two Inches high above the Back. He has no Gills, but blowing Holes in his Neck, and on each Side of them two ſhort Fins, and underneath a broad one. Beneath his Belly he has a long narrow Fin, that reaches to his Tail. His Head is oblong, compoſed of many Bones. He has a raiſed Part before his Noſe. His Tail is about an Inch broad. His Body is long, thin and round; and his Skin is greyiſh, and ſhines like Silver.

5. The *Butskopf*, or *Place's-Head*: His Head is blunt, with a Beak of an equal bigneſs all along, and of a brown Colour marbled. His Fins are like the Dolphin's: His Tail like a Whale's. He has a Spout-Hole above in his Neck, out of which he ſpouts Water. They are from 16 to 20 Foot long. His Back brown, and his Belly white. They run near the Ships, and keep Company with them a long time.

Digitized by Google

All theſe Fiſhes ſwim againſt the Wind, as do the Whales, Fin Fiſh, and Dolphins, Mr. *Martens* is of Opinion, That when they tumble, it is not by Way of Play or Diverſion, but that they run away before the Storm, and are ſenſible of it by ſome Pain in their Bodies a while before it comes, becauſe they generally continue to tumble till the Eaſt Wind, which torments them, ceaſes. They ſaw another Fiſh here reſembling the Butſkopf, but larger, and with a Fin three times as high, by which they may eaſily be taken as they tumble.

6. *White-Fiſh*, as large as a *Butſkopf*, ſhap'd like a Whale, without Fins on his Back, but two on his Belly, and a Tail like a Whale's. He has a Spout-Hole on his Head, is of a yellowiſh Colour, and one of them yields a Barrel of Fat, which is ſoft, and not much valued. When there's Plenty of them, 'tis a Sign of a good Whale-Fiſhing, for their Food is the ſame.

7. The *Unicorn*, has no Fin on his Back, but a Spout-Hole in his Neck. When they ſwim ſwiftly, they ſay they hold up their Horns, or rather Teeth, out of the Water, and go in great Shoals. They are ſhap'd like a Seal. Their undermoſt Fins and Tail are like the Whale's; ſome of them are white, others a dappled grey. Their Bellies are white, and they are from 16 to 20 Foot long.

8. The *Saw-Fiſh*, or *Sword-Fiſh*, has a long broad Bone fix'd to his Noſe, with ſharp Teeth like a Saw on each Side of it. He has two Fins on his Back; that next the Tail is hollow, like a Sickle. He has four underneath his Belly, *viz.* two on each Side. His Tail is like a Piece of Board pointed behind and underneath, but not divided. His Shape, from Top to Tail, is like a Man's Arm. His Eyes ſtand high out of his Head. His Noſtrils are oblong. His Mouth is directly under his Eyes; and the Fiſhes are from 2 to 20 Foot long. They are mortal Enemies to the Whale and Fin-Fiſh, about which they gather in great Numbers, and when they kill them, eat only their Tongue. Sometimes they will ſing'y attack a Whale; and in calm Weather the Whale-Fiſhers lie by till they kill the Whale; and upon the Approach of the Boats, the Sword-Fiſh being frighted, retires.

9. The *Hay*. Of this Fiſh there are ſeveral Sorts: They have two Fins on their Backs, and 6 underneath their Belly. Their Tail is of a peculiar Shape, one Part like half of that of the Sword-Fiſh, and the other ſhap'd like a Lilly. He has a long Noſe. His Mouth is ſhap'd like the Sword-Fiſh, is full of ſharp Teeth, of which there are three Rows above and below. His Eyes are oblong, and very clear. He has 5 Gills on each Side. His Skin is hard and thick, and rough if ſtruck upwards. They are of a grey Colour, and from one to three Fathom long. They bite great Pieces from the Whale, as if they had been dug out with Shovels, and they devour all the Fat of the Whales under Water; whence Seamen take them up ſometimes half devour'd. The Hays have large Livers, which yield Oil. The Fleſh of their Backs being cut off, and hung up ſome Days in the Air, the Seamen think good Meat, and boil or roaſt it when ſcarce of other Proviſions. The leaſt are beſt. They devour and eat Men if they catch them ſwimming in the Sea. They are caught by a great Hook baited with Fleſh, and faſten'd to a ſtrong Iron Chain.

The other Fiſh here are the *Craw-Fiſh*, without a Tail, otherwiſe call'd the *Sea-Spider*. They are ſhap'd like Lobſters, and eatable. They have alſo *Garnels* or *Prauns*; and a Fiſh call'd the *Louſe of the Whale*, with Scales as hard as Prauns. Their Head is like that of a Louſe, with 4 Horns. The two ſhort ones, which ſtand out before, have Knobs like the Sticks of Kettle-Drums. They have 6 Plates on their Backs: Their foremoſt Legs are crooked, like a Half-Moon, with ſharp Points, by which they faſten in the Skin of the Whale, and bite pieces out of them. Whales are moſt annoy'd with them in warm Weather. They have alſo thoſe call'd the *Star-Fiſh*, of two Sorts, ſome larger, and ſome leſſer, of a reddiſh Colour, with 15 Rows of Knobs, which together make the Form of a Star of 5 outward bended Points.

They have alſo Fiſhes here call'd *Rotz-Fiſh*, *Sea-Qualms*, or *Slime-Fiſhes*, of ſeveral Sorts: They ſeem to be nothing elſe but Slime, and are tranſparent. Some of them reſemble flat Snails, and inſtead of Fins, have Stalks like Feathers. Some call them *Sea-*

Digitized by Google

Sea-Nettles, becauſe they occaſion a burning Pain like a Nettle. They cleanſe the Sea mightily, for all ſort of Filth ſticks to them, as a Bur does to Cloth. The firſt of them is call'd a *Sea-Mayfly*, are tranſparent, and diſſolve, if held in one's Hand. They have two Fins under their Neck, reſembling thoſe of Whales. They are ſhap'd like white Rowls, broad and thick in the middle. The Head is broad and round, ſplit in the middle, and has ſmall Horns of the breadth of a Straw. They have 6 little red Knobs on their Heads, ſuppoſed to be Eyes. Their Mouth is ſplit, and from thence to the Belly are its Guts, which are eaſily ſeen, becauſe he is tranſparent. The Colour of the Fiſh is like the White of an Egg: It moves in the Water like a Sea-Nettle, and the Birds feed on them. The 2d is call'd the *Snail-Slime-Fiſh*: He is tranſparent, flat and round about, like a Snail; and upon the Land are found Shells of ſuch flat Snails; on each Side are Stalks, with which he moves in the Sea. They are of a brown Colour, and are as numerous in thoſe Seas, as Atoms of Duſt in the Sun. 'Tis ſuppos'd, the Whales feed on them, as well as the Birds. The 3d is the *Hat-Slime-Fiſh*; his upper Part reſembles a Toad-ſtool. They go up and down perpendicularly in the Water, and have a blue Knob in the middle. The 4th is call'd the *Roſe-Slime-Fiſh*, being round as a Circle, and indented on the Edges. There is another call'd the *Slime-Fiſh like a Cap*; and a 6th call'd the *Slime-Fiſh like a Fountain*, reſembling a Fountain with 8 Streams or Spouts. Their Body is as white as Milk; but their Streams ſometimes change into all the Colours of the Rainbow.

Of the SEA.

THE Colour of the Sea changes here according to that of the Sky: If the Air be clear, the Sea is as blue as Saphir; if cloudy, it is green as an Emerald; if foggy with Sun-ſhine, 'tis yellow: if it be dark, it looks like Indigo. In ſtormy and cloudy Weather, 'tis of the Colour of black Lead. The Stream among the Ice is obſerv'd to run Southward, and at the *Muſcle-Haven* it runs Northward. There is nothing certain as to its ebbing and flowing; but when the Winds are high, the Water is obſerv'd to be higher about the Land than at other Times. The Water in a Calm is very clear, ſo that one may ſee 12 or 14 Fathom deep. The Waves begin to riſe firſt from a ſmall Breeze of Wind; and as the Wind increaſes, they grow higher and bigger, till they grow as high as Mountains, and break with Foam, which in a hard Wind blows like Duſt, and the Waves fall over one another with great Noiſe. At Night, when it daſhes much, it ſhines like Fire.

Of the ICE.

THE Weſt-Ice begins to break in *April* and *May*. The Ice here is not ſo ſmooth as to ſlide on, nor tranſparent, but looks like Loaf-Sugar. Where 'tis fix'd on the Sea, it reflects a Snow-white Brightneſs on the Sky. The Sea daſhes againſt thoſe Ice-fields, which occaſions ſeveral fine Figures, like Mountains, Tables, Chapels, and all ſorts of Beaſts. They are much deeper under the Water than high above it, and as hard as Stone. The ſmall Ice-fields are dangerous for Ships, and many times break them to pieces; but they faſten themſelves to the greater ones with large Ice-hooks fix'd to ſtrong Cables. Their beſt Defence againſt the ſmaller Pieces of Ice are dead Whales, or their Tails and Fins hung round their Ships; and ſometimes they keep them off with long Poles and Hooks. The Ice riſes ſometimes 16 Fathoms above the Water, and often freezes to the bottom, and at other times about 35 Fathoms under Water; and that below is more ſalt, and eaſier melted than that above. It makes a terrible Noiſe when it freezes or breaks, is ſometimes of a delicate blue Colour, and the deeper the bluer.

The Trade from *England* to thoſe Parts, begun a little before. *Stephen Burroughs* had been there in ſearch of a N. E. Paſſage to the *Indies*: For we find, That in 1553, King *Philip* and Queen *Mary* gave Commiſſion to certain Merchants to trade to *Ruſſia*, and made them a Corporation, which not only begun a profitable Trade to thoſe Northern Countries, but employ'd ſeveral Ships

Digitized by Google

to find out a N. E. Paſſage to the *Indies*, particularly *Arthur Pett* and *Charles Jackman* about 1580, who 'tis probable were alſo upon *Greenland*. None but the *Engliſh* frequented thoſe Seas till 1578, that a *Dutch* Ship came to *Cola*, and a Year or two after another to *St. Nicholas*, by the Advice of an *Engliſhman*, who oppos'd the Company. In 1594, the *Dutch* employ'd *Barents* and others to find out a Paſſage to the *Indies*; and in 1596, they ſent 3 Pilots upon the ſame Deſign, who firſt came to *Bear* Iſland, and then to *Greenland*. In 1603, *Stephen Bennet* went as far as *Cherry* Iſland, from whence he brought Lead-Oar. In 1608, *Henry Hudſon* was ſent to diſcover the North Pole, went to 82 Deg. where he ſaw ſeveral Iſlands beyond that, and gave Names to ſeveral Places of *Greenland* formerly diſcover'd.

The Company being inform'd of the great Number of Morſes and Whales in thoſe Parts, they ſent two Ships thither, which kill'd many Morſes. In 1610, they ſent out the Ship *Amity*, *Jonas Pool* Commander, a Whale-fiſhing, who ſell upon the Land formerly diſcover'd, tho' not regarded, and call'd it *Greenland*, either becauſe of the green Moſs, or becauſe the Sea about it look'd green. He call'd it alſo, *King James's New Land*; but that Name was ſoon forgot. He ſeiz'd the Country for the Uſe of his Maſters, and for that end ſet up a red Croſs, with Writing upon it. He made ſome Oil there, and brought home one of thoſe called *Unicorn's Horns*. In 1611, the Company ſent two Ships more thither, where they killed ſeveral Whales, and 500 Morſes. In 1612, they ſent two more, which killed 17 Whales, with ſome Morſes, and made 180 Tun of Oil. That ſame Year, a *Dutch* and a *Spaniſh* Ship were conducted thither by two *Engliſh* Pilots, who were threaten'd by the *Engliſh* Ships; but notwithſtanding made a good Voyage. In 1613, the Company ſent 7 Ships, with a Patent to prohibit all Strangers to fiſh there, except the *Muſcovia* Company. They found 15 *Dutch*, *French* and *Flemiſh* Ships there, with ſome *Engliſh* Interlopers: To ſome of them the General gave Liberty, with others he compounded for half their Fiſh, and others he drove away, after taking the *Engliſh* Sailors from them. This Year they diſcover'd *Hope* Iſland, and others to the Weſt, but returned home not very well laden. In 1614, the Company ſent 13 great Ships, and two Pinnaces well arm'd, and the *Dutch* ſent 18, 4 of which were Men of War; ſo that being ſtronger than we, they ſtay'd and fiſh'd, as we alſo did; but both return'd poorly laden. Our Men diſcover'd the Country then to 80 Degrees. They took poſſeſſion of ſeveral Parts of the Coaſt for the King, and ſet up a Croſs with his Arms upon it in Lead; and the *Dutch* did the like afterwards in the ſame Places for the Prince of *Orange*. In 1615, the Company ſent two great Ships and two great Pinnaces; but the *Dutch* having 14 Ships there, ours had not their full Loading. That Year the King of *Denmark* ſent 3 Men of War there, with an *Engliſh* Pilot, to demand Cuſtom for fiſhing on his Iſland, as he call'd it; but it was deny'd him, and the Right of the *Engliſh* aſſerted. In 1616, the Company ſent 8 great Ships, and 2 Pinnaces, which being appointed to ſeveral Harbours, they return'd full laden. The *Dutch* ſent 4 Ships, which made but a bad Voyage. In 1617, the Company ſent 14 Ships and 2 Pinnaces. They met 11 Sail of *Dutch* in *Horn-ſound*, from whom they took their Fiſh, and their *Engliſh* Sailors, and then forc'd them away. This Year the Company's Ships made 1900 Tun of Oil. In 1618, the *Engliſh* forc'd the *Dutch* again from *Horn-ſound*, and took from them ſome of their Goods, with Ordnance and Ammunition, which were afterwards reſtor'd.

A new Company of *Engliſh*, *Scots* and *Zealanders*, procur'd a Grant to fiſh in thoſe Parts: Upon which the former Adventurers join'd with the *Eaſt-India* Company, and ſent out 13 Ships and 2 Pinnaces; but they were worſted by 23 *Zealanders*, which made it an unfortunate Voyage. In 1619, the Company ſent 9 Ships; but the *Dutch* being there before them, they made a loſing Voyage; and one of their great Ships lying at Anchor under a Mountain, a great Piece of Ice fell down from it, kill'd and wounded ſeveral of their Men, and ſhatter'd their Ship ſo much, that ſhe was with Difficulty repair'd. The *Dutch* at the ſame time being fully laden, did ſo much underſell them, that they gave over trading thither as a Company.

But

But Mr. *Ralph Freeman*, and others of the Company, continu'd it, and in 1620 ſent 7 Ships, who return'd but with half Loading. In 1621, they ſent 8 Ships, which, notwithſtanding the Harm done them by the *Dutch*, brought home 1100 Tun of Oil. In 1622, they ſent out 9 Ships, one of which was loſt in the Ice, and the reſt brought home 1300 Tun of Oil.

We find nothing more worth relating till 1630, when the Company ſent a Ship commanded by *William Goodler*, who quickly made up his Lading; and ſending 8 of his Men on Shore to kill Deer, they loſt their Way in a Fog; and the Ships going off becauſe of the Ice, they were forc'd to Winter there, and took up their Habitation in the Couper's Tent, within which they built another with 4 Cabbins, which they furniſh'd with the Skins of Bears, Deer and Foxes, and Pieces of old Sails. Having loſt their Sloop, with the Deer they had formerly kill'd, in the Ice, they went out a hunting for more, and kill'd 2 Morſes, which they roaſted, and eat at leiſure.

Finding that their Proviſions were not enough for half the Winter, they made it up with Fritters of Whales, and reſerv'd their Deer for Sickneſs and Holy-days, which they preſerv'd by roaſting, and ſtowing it in the empty Casks they found there. The Want of Light was a great Hindrance to their getting Proviſions; for from the 14th of *October* to the 3d of *February*, they ſaw not the Sun; but in clear Weather, they had Moon-light; and the Bears coming towards their Tent, at ſeveral times they kilPage_rotation value="0" />led 8 of them: They found their Fleſh wholeſome; but when they eat their Liver, it made their Skins peel off. When the Sun began to appear, the Fowls and Foxes came abroad, for which they ſet Traps. They catch'd abundance of Fowl, and about 50 Foxes, which being roaſted, were good and pleaſant Meat, and reliev'd them much againſt the Scurvy. The firſt of *May*, the Weather being ſomewhat warm, they went abroad for Proviſions, and found great Quantities of Willocks Eggs, which were very refreſhing. That ſame Day two *Engliſh* Ships arriv'd in the *Sound*, which took them on board, and brought them ſafe to *England*. The Cold was ſo ſevere during the Winter, that it rais'd Bliſters on their Fleſh, as if they had been burnt. If they touch'd Iron, it ſtuck to their Fingers; and while they ſat by a great Fire, which they made of broken Sloops, *&c.* tho' their Stockings were burnt, their Feet were numb'd with Cold, and their Backs frozen, ſo that they were forc'd to heat Stones at the Fire to apply to their Feet, and other Parts of their Bodies, to keep them from freezing.

'Tis proper here to obſerve, That the *Dutch*, in order to deprive Sir *Hugh Willoughby* of the Honour of firſt diſcovering *Greenland*, call an imaginary Iſland by his Name, alledging that was the Place he diſcover'd: They place it near *Nova-Zembla*. But tho' *Hudſon* ſail'd in queſt of it, he could never find it.

CHAP. VI.

NOVA-ZEMBLA.

NOva-*Zembla* is ſeparated from *Samoieda* by the Streights of *Weygates*. On the N. E. is the *Stilla Sea*, into which the River *Oby* runs. The Lat. is from 68 to 78 Deg. and the Long. from 70 to 98. *Morden* ſays, in all the Maps he ever ſaw, it is plac'd 120 or 150 Deg. too far E. and thinks this Miſtake was the chief Cauſe of Captain *Wood*'s failing in his Search of a N. E. Paſſage to *China*. It was firſt diſcovered by the *Engliſh* in 1556, and has oft been viſited both by them and the *Dutch*, to find out a N. E. Paſſage; but this Deſign has always been

Digitized by Google

been defeated, by the Flakes of Ice. The Misfortune of that worthy Pilot *William Barents* has alſo been diſcouraging to others: He adventur'd ſo far, that his Ship was firſt hemm'd in, then frozen and broken in the Ice, ſo that he was forc'd to Winter upon the Land, where he loſt his Life.

Thoſe that Winter'd in *Nova-Zembla* in 1596, in 76 Deg. on *Nov.* 2. N. S. ſaw the Sun not fully above the Earth: It roſe S. S. E. and ſet S. S. W. After *November* 4, they ſaw it no more; but the Moon, from the firſt Quarter to the laſt, is to be ſeen Night and Day. *January* 24, they ſaw the Edge of the Sun above the Horizon; and the 27th, they ſaw his whole Body: He was in 5 Deg. 25 Min. of *Aquarius*. They farther obſerv'd, by an Ephemerides they carried with them, that at *Venice* there would be a Conjunction of the Moon and *Jupiter* that very Day at One a Clock in the Morning, which they in *Nova-Zembla* ſaw at Six in *Taurus*: So that the Difference of Longitude of thoſe two Places is 5 Hours, or 75 Deg. *Venice* being in Long. 37 Deg. 25 Min. *Nova-Zembla* muſt be 112 Deg. 25 Min. But theſe Obſervations are contrary to the Opinion of all Aſtronomers. There is publiſh'd lately in *Holland* a new Chart of *Nova-Zembla*, which places the N. of it in the ſame Parallel with Part of *Greenland*. A late *French* Traveller, who was Chirurgeon in a *Daniſh* Ship, affirms, That *Nova-Zembla* is join'd to *Samoieda* on the South by the *Pater-Noſter* Mountains, and on the North to *Greenland*; But this is contrary to the Obſervations of both *Engliſh* and *Dutch* Mariners. *Nova-Zembla* ſignifies in the *Ruſſian* Language a *New Land*. Some *Daniſh* Seamen, ſent out by their King's Order in 1653, ſay, they paſſed the *Weygats* Streights, and found ſome Inhabitants of *Nova-Zembla* in their Canoes. They add, That they are very nimble Footmen; That their Clothes were made of the Skins of great Birds, like Penguins and Pelicans, with the Feathers on them. Their Boots were of the Hides of Morſes, or great Seals: That they had Quivers at their Backs full of Arrows, with a Hatchet of Fiſh-Bones: That their Temper is untractable and indocil; and they abhor our Beer, Spirits and Meat. The *Dutch*, who Winter'd there, mention no other Beaſts than Bears, Foxes, and ſuch others as live upon Prey. They add, That there is neither Leaves nor Graſs for other Beaſts to feed upon. But Mr. *Huaſon*, who was there in the Summer, ſaw ſome green Places, and Deer feeding in them. 'Tis probable, upon the Approach of Winter, the Deer retire to *Samoieda*, or other neighbouring Places. Our Merchants who have liv'd in *Ruſſia* ſay, That in *Nova-Zembla* there is a great Lake, where a great Number of Geeſe and Swans breed, which moult about St. *Peter's* Day; and then the *Ruſſes* go thither to gather the Feathers, and kill the Fowls, which they dry and bring home for Winter Proviſion.

CHAP. VII.

Of Attempts to diſcover a North-Eaſt Paſſage to China, *&c. by* Nova-Zembla.

WE ſhall paſs by the Attempts of others, and only take Notice of thoſe mention'd by Captain *John Wood*, beginning with that made by himſelf in the Ship *Speedwell*, by the Order of King *Charles* II. *of Great Britain*. The Captain was induc'd to this by ſeveral Relations ſent from *Holland* and elſewhere, which made him believe that ſuch a Paſſage had been found, and in a great meaſure diſcover'd by others. Therefore he ſet out with the *Speedwell*, and another Ship call'd the *Proſperous* Pink, fitted for the Voyage at the Charge

Digitized by Google

Charge of the Duke of *York* and others, the 28th of *May*, 1676. On the 29th of *June* after, the *Prosperous* struck on a Ledge of Rocks, and sunk, and the Men escap'd with Difficulty on Shore in *Nova-Zembla* with part of their Provisions; but were brought off by Captain *Flaws*, after having stay'd on Shore some Time. Captain *Wood* gives the following Account of the Voyage, and of the Reasons of their Miscarriage. He says, it was their following the Opinion of *William Barents*, which was to steer directly N. E. from the North Cape, and to fall in betwixt *Greenland* and *Nova-Zembla*, which he attempted accordingly. He continued coasting the Ice sometimes with great Hopes of a clear Sea, and then again was disheartened by more Ice; but at last lost all Hopes, when he saw *Nova-Zembla*, and the Ice join'd to it; by which he found that *Barents* was mistaken, and that all the *English* and *Dutch* Relations, which encourag'd him to the Undertaking, were meer Forgeries; for he could get no further than 76 Deg. and found the Sea frozen without Intermission, which would have taken some Centuries of Years to thaw it. He concludes *Nova-Zembla* and *Greenland* to be the same Continent; for had there been a Passage, there would have been some Current, which he could not find, but only a small Tide, which rises about 8 Foot. He thinks 'tis not certainly known whether *Nova-Zembla* be an Island, or join'd to the Continent of *Tartary*; but says, 'tis no great matter, since 'tis the most miserable Country upon Earth, most of it always cover'd with Snow; and what is not so, is not to be walk'd on, being like Boggs, with a Moss on the Surface, that bears a small blue and yellow Flower, which is all the Product of the Earth here. Upon digging two Foot deep, they came to a firm Body of Ice, the like of which he thinks was never heard before; and shews their Mistake, who think Men might preserve themselves there during the Winter, by digging Caves in the Earth. The Snow lies there contrary to what it does in other Climates, where it melts soonest near the Sea; but here it washes under the Snow a prodigious way, and the Snow hangs over in a manner fearful to behold. The Mountains are cover'd all the Way up with Snow, which he thinks has lain there ever since the Creation. On the Top of the Mountains they found it bare, and had indifferent good walking upon Slates; but they durst not go far, lest they should have lost their Way in the Fogs. The Beasts of the Country, he says, are large white Bears and Deer, with some Foxes, a little Creature resembling a Cony, but not so big as a Rat; and they saw no Fowls, but little Birds about the Size of a Lark. Every quarter of a Mile, there runs down from the Hills into the Sea a small River of very good Water, melted from Snow; and where those Rivulets fall into the Sea, they found black Marble with white Veins. The Westermost Point of *Nova-Zembla*, where he lost his Ship, he call'd *Point-Speedill*. It lies in 74 Deg. 30 Min. N. Lat. and in Long. E. from *London* 63 Deg. The Tide rises 8 Foot, and sets directly upon the Shore, which, he says, is a certain Sign that there is no Passage to the Northward. The Sea about the Ice and Land is the saltest that ever he tasted, and the heaviest and clearest Water in the World; for he could see the Bottom with Shells upon it at 80 Fathom Water, which is 480 Foot deep.

The Captain takes Notice of the like Attempts made formerly by others, as follows:

The First that ever attempted the said Voyage was Sir *Hugh Willoughby*, in the Year 1553, with 3 Sail of Ships, and he sail'd to the North-Cape of *Finmarke*, and then into the Lat. of 72, where he says he saw Land; but to this Day it cannot be found again; And I am of Opinion, says the Captain, That it was some Fog-Bank that he saw; for in my Return home, I run over the same Place where our Chart-makers lay down that Land: But certain it was, that by foul Weather he was forc'd into a Harbour in *Lapland* call'd *Arzena*, whence, by the continuance of bad Weather, he could never return out, but was there frozen to Death with all his Ship's Company: So that by this Voyage, there was no Light given to find a Passage that Way.

The Second that attempted it was one Capt. *Stephen Burroughs*, afterward Comptroller of the Navy to Queen *Elizabeth*. In the Year 1556, he set forward, and passed the North-Cape; and sailing farther Easterly, discu-

Digitized by Google

diſcover'd the *Weygates*; that is, the Streight that runneth between the South Part of *Nova-Zembla*, and the *Samoieds* Country, where he entred; and believing that *Sinus*, or by the Eaſtward of the Streights, to be a free and open Sea, he return'd with Hopes of Paſſage that Way to *China* and *Japan*.

The Third that attempted it was Captain *Arthur Pett*, and Captain *Charles Jackman*, in the Year 1580. being ſent out by Queen *Elizabeth* to follow the Track of *Burroughs*: So ſetting forwards, they came to the *Weygates*, paſſed the Streights, and came into the Sea to the Eaſtward, where they met with ſuch a vaſt Quantity of Ice and bad Weather, that they with great Hazard, Peril, and Labour, were forc'd to return; but by foul Weather loſt one the other, and *Pett* was never heard of ſince: So the Paſſage through the *Weygates* was in *England* laid by, as thought not poſſible that Way; and then the *Hollanders* undertook it.

The Fourth that attempted it was *William Barents*, a well experienc'd Navigator and Artiſt, ſent out of *Holland* by Prince *Maurice* in the Year 1606. He ſailed into the *Weygates*; but being entred, he found the ſame Incumbrance with Ice that *Pett* and *Jackman* had done before: So taſting of the Water, and finding it freſh, which neither *Burrough*, *Pett*, nor *Jackman*, had obſerv'd, he return'd without any Hope or Probability of a Paſſage that Way: But this not diſcouraging him, he reſolv'd a ſecond Adventure to the Northward of *Nova-Zembla*, to ſee what might be perform'd that Way.

So in the Year 1607, he ſet forward, and arriv'd on the Coaſt of *Nova-Zembla* in the Lat. of 73, where he met with Ice; and ſo coaſted the Shore till he came to the Lat. of 76, where he could get no farther, and by the Ice was there driven on Shore, and his Ship broke in pieces by it, and he confin'd to Winter there, where they all endur'd the greateſt Extremity of Cold that ever Mortals did. The Winter being paſt, they with Difficulty, in two Boats, got to *Cola* in *Lapland*; but before their Arrival there, *William Barents* dy'd, to the great Grief of all his Company.

The next that attempted it, was that famous Diſcoverer of our Nation, Mr. *Henry Hudſon*, in the Year 1610; but he being diſhearten'd by the Voyage of *Barents*, attempted but little.

So the Thoughts of a Paſſage by the N.E. was wholly laid aſide, till Captain *Wood* undertook it again; of whoſe ill Succeſs, we have heard already.

Cherry Iſland.

THis Iſland lies in 74 Deg. 30 Min. N. Lat. and in Long. 40. It was firſt ſo call'd, and diſcover'd to be of any Profit, in 1603. A Ship then ſet out at the Charge of Sir *Francis Cherry* touch'd upon it, and call'd it by his Name.

May 1. 1604. *Stephen Bennet* ſail'd from *London*, and *July* 8. came in Sight of this Iſland; and going aſhore, one of his Men with a Gun kill'd as many Fowls as almoſt laded the Boat: They found likewiſe many Foxes. In another Bay, they ſaw an incredible Number of Morſes ſwimming in the Sea, and 1000 lying on the Ground like Hogs. They kill'd 15, and found as many of their Teeth as fill'd a Hogſhead.

In 1605, the ſame Perſons flew there abundance of Morſes with Lances, which they found did greater Execution than Guns. They made 11 Tun of Oil of their Blubber. In 1606, they return'd, and in 6 Hours flew 800 Morſes, and 2 great Bears: Of which they made 22 Tun of Oil, and 3 Hogſheads of Teeth. In 1608, they flew 900 Morſes in 7 Hours, which made 31 Tun of Oil. They brought one Male Morſe to *England*, which liv'd 10 Weeks, and was taught many Things. In 1610, two Ships arriv'd there, and found three Lead-Mines. They ſet up an Enſign, as a Token of their taking Poſſeſſion of the Iſland for the *Ruſſia* Company. Three other Ships kill'd 800 Morſes there that ſame Year.

It is worth Obſervation, That both the Whale and Morſe-fiſhing was known and practis'd 800 Years ago, as appears by the Relation which *Other* the *Norwegian* made to *Alfred* King of *England*, when he acquainted him, that the Morſes were hunted for their Teeth, which were then mightily eſteem'd.

Mayen's

Digitized by Google

Mayen's *Iſland.*

John Mayen's Iſland has its Name, as the *Dutch* pretend, from the firſt Diſcoverer, their Countryman. Some take it to be what the *Engliſh* call *Hope* Iſland. It is of no great Conſequence now, ſince the Whales have left it; but formerly it was frequented in the Summer-time on the Account of Whale-fiſhing, and was well known to moſt of the Northern Adventurers of *Europe*. On the Weſt-Side 'tis not ſo much inclos'd with Ice as on the North, and therefore Mariners ſteer their Courſe to the Weſt-Side; but if by Miſtake they come to the Eaſt-Side, they are forc'd to ſail North about the Iſland, which is very dangerous, by reaſon of the Ice and high Winds. The Sea flows here from S. to N. and ebbs from N. to S. At the North-End lies *Bears* Mountain, which takes up the whole Space betwixt the two Shores: 'Tis very ſteep, and ſo high, that 'tis ſeen 30 Miles off at Sea. It derives its Name from the many Bears ſeen upon it. There are ſeveral Bays in this Iſland, to which the *Dutch* have given Names; one of them is call'd the *Engliſh* Bay. The Sea is 60 Fathom deep about a Musket-ſhot from the Shore; but a little further, the Sounding-Line cannot reach the Bottom. It lies from S. W. to N. E. and the further it ſhoots in Length, the narrower it grows. The Northermoſt Point of it lies in 71 Deg. 23 Min. N. Lat.

CHAP. VIII.

GRONELAND.

CAll'd alſo *Groinland*, *Groenland*, and anciently *Engroenland*, lies (as the Iſlanders ſay) like a Half-Moon, about the North of their Country, at the Diſtance of 4 Days ſailing; yet it ſeems not to lie ſo much Eaſt, but rather on the North of *America*. The Lat. of it, from Cape *Farewil* to the moſt Southerly Point, is 60 Deg. 30 Min. It is unknown how many Deg. it lies North. The Eaſt and Weſt are encompaſſed by two great Oceans; but at what Deg. of Longitude, is not yet diſcover'd: Only Mr. *Fotherby* found it near the Coaſt of *Groneland* in 71 Deg. and the South of *Groenland* to be above 200 Leagues. Common Maps place the moſt Eaſtern Parts in 15 Deg. of Longitude.

It is ſaid to have been firſt diſcover'd by a *Norwegian* nam'd *Eric Rotcep*, who having committed a Murder in *Iſeland*, reſolv'd to fly to ſome ſtrange Country. He landed here, and, becauſe of its Greenneſs, call'd it *Groenland*. He ſent his Son to *Olaus Trygger*, King of *Norway*, to get his Pardon, which was obtain'd. Upon this, many Gentlemen adventured to plant there, ſettled Chriſtianity, and built two Towns, called *Garde* and *Albe*. The King ſent thither a Vice-Roy, who had his Seat at *Albe*, which was alſo made a Biſhop's See, and had a Cathedral. They write alſo of a Monaſtery dedicated to St. *Thomas*, which they pretend was built of Pumice-Stone, and that it had a Spring ſo hot, as to boil their Meat, and being convey'd into the Rooms by Pipes, warm'd them as well as Stoves; but this ſeems fabulous. This ſmall Colony fail'd about 1349, whether by a Diſeaſe they call'd the *Black Plague*, or the Barbarity of the Natives, is not certain. In 1406, the Biſhop of *Dromtheim* ſent one *Andreas* to bring an Account of the State of Chriſtianity there; but he never return'd.

The late Voyages to thoſe Coaſts were to find out a N. W. Paſſage to *China*, after the N. E. Paſſage had been long ſought in vain.

Digitized by Google

Martin Frobisher was the first who set out for that Design in 1576, and he came to a great Inlet in 62 Deg. call'd by him *Frobisher's Streights*. He sail'd 60 Leagues into it, and had main Land on either Side. He found an Oar, which he thought to be Gold, but it prov'd only Black Lead. They found a Silver Mine; but it lay so deep in the Rocks, that they could not dig it. They melted also Gold, but in very small Quantities, out of Stones they found in *Smith's* Isle. They found a dead Fish 12 Foot long, not unlike a Porpus, with a Horn growing out of his Snout like that call'd the *Unicorn's Horn*, which is still kept at *Windsor*. In 1578, he took Possession of the Land in the Name of Queen *Elizabeth*, and call'd it *Meta Incognita*.

In 1585, 1586, and 1587, Mr. *John Davis* was employ'd in this Design. He enter'd a Streight on the West-Side of *Groenland*, call'd after him, *Davis's Streights*; then into a wide Sea, 72 Deg. 12 Min. Westward, where there was 40 Leagues betwixt Coast and Coast. Mr. *Hudson*, in 1610, went to the S. W. of *Davis's Streights*, 100 Leagues further than any had done, which he call'd *Hudson's Streights*. And in 1615, and 1616, Mr. *Baffin* discover'd that there was no Passage in the North of *Davis's Streights*. He found Rocks of white Stone, finer and purer than Alabaster, and Plenty of Angelica, which the Natives us'd to eat.

In 1605, the King of *Denmark* set out 3 Ships, *John Cuningham*, a *Scots-man*, was Admiral: They went a great way up *Davis's Streights*. In a Place they call'd *Cuningham-Ford*, they found Stones, out of 100 Weight of which they extracted 26 Ounces of fine Silver. They brought with them 3 of the Natives of *Groenland* to *Denmark*.

In 1619, *John Munch*, with 2 Ships, was sent thither by the King of *Denmark*. They arrived at Cape *Farewell* in 60 Deg. 30 Min. They could not handle their Tackle for Icicles. He call'd that Part of *Hudson's Bay* towards *Groenland*, *Mare Christianum*; and the South Part of the Bay he call'd, *Mare Munum*. As to the 3 *Groenlanders* transported at several times to *Denmark*, the King commanded them to be treated with all possible Humanity. They lov'd Flesh and Fish raw better than all other Meats. They abhorr'd Wine and Brandy. Train-Oil was their favourite Drink; but no Offices of Kindness or Care could take off their Melancholy and Chagrin, for the Want of their belov'd Country. Two of 'em were dextrous at rowing. They often had a Design to make their Escape home, and were excellent in diving for Pearl-Muscles; but the Governor's Covetousness and Cruelty, in making them dive in Winter, kill'd one of them. The other never enjoy'd himself after: He was resolute to go home, and told those who dissuaded him, That he would go Northward so far, and then the Stars would direct him to his own Country.

The Country is almost all high Land, cover'd with Snow. It has little or no Wood, except some few Bushes, and not many Plants or Herbs. They live upon Fish, and have but few Beasts. The Country is subject to Earthquakes, but healthful. The Natives neither plant nor sow, tho' the Soil seems to be fertile and pleasant betwixt the Mountains. The North Parts are undiscover'd, because of the Ice; and the Southern Part consists of many Islands, which occasion Variety of strong Currents.

Their Beasts are Foxes, Bears, Black Rain-Deer, and Dogs; the bigger Sort of which draw their Sleds; the lesser kind they feed for Meat. All those who have been there talk of a North Light, as they call it, because it appears in that Point. They say it resembles a great Pillar of Fire, darts out Streams every way, moves from Place to Place, leaves behind it a Mist or Cloud, appears usually about the Time of the New Moon, enlightens the whole Country, and continues till it be hid by the Beams of the Sun.

Their Fish are Whales, Dog-Fish, and Sea-Unicorns; the Horns, growing in their Snouts, are kept as Rarities in Princes Cabinets. The Natives use them to head their Darts and Arrows, and when sharpen'd and ground on Stones, are as piercing as ours. This Creature fights the Whale with his Snout.

They have Fowls here in great Number, particularly *Solan* Geese, such as are in the Island of the *Bass* near *Edinburgh*. The Natives use their Skins for Clothes, with the Feathers inwards in Winter, and outwards in Summer. Two or Three of our Men kill'd 150 of these Geese with their Guns in

Digitized by Google

in one Day. Their Skins are thicker, and their Flesh worse tasted, than those elsewhere.

The *Norwegians* found several Nations there, govern'd by different Kings, who all join'd in War against them. Our late Discoverers found a Country in 66 Deg. 50 Min. the Natives call themselves, as they thought, *Scraanga*, and said they had a great King call'd *Cachico*, who was carried on Men's Shoulders.

Their RELIGION.

THey seem to worship the Sun; for when our Men invited them to Conversation, they held up their Hands toward it, crying, *Totan*, and would not come near till they did the like. Yet some, who have been further in the Country, say, they found such Images as we make of the Devil, with Altars, and the Bones of many Beasts by them. The Natives are given to Inchantment and Sorcery, and when they worship the Devil, lie flat on their Bellies, and mutter their Prayers into the Ground, under which they conceive the Devil to have his Abode. In some Diseases they tie a Stick to a great Stone, and pray to it, and if they can lift it up easily, they think their Prayers are heard.

Their STATURE *and* TEMPER.

THey are generally low, have black Hair, flat Noses, broad Faces, Lips turn'd up, of a ripe Olive Colour, and some of them quite black. The Women stain their Faces with blue, and sometimes with black Streaks, which they let into the Skin, by pricking it with a sharp Bone, so as it can never be taken out again. They very much resemble the *Samoeids* and *Laplanders*. They are active, strong, courageous, and desperate, so that many of them chuse rather to throw themselves Head-long from the Rocks, than be taken by our Men. They are theevish, revengeful, and treacherous, and not to be gain'd by any Civilities; so that frequently after they have been kindly entertain'd, they would shoot at, sling Stones, and kill our Men if they could. They delight exceedingly in Musick, and keep Time to it with Voice, Hands and Feet. They are so very affectionate one to another, that meeting a *Danish* Seaman, who looked somewhat like them in his Features, they gave him all possible Demonstration of Kindness.

Their HABITATIONS.

IN the Summer, when they fish, they have Tents, which they remove from Place to Place in their Boats: They consist of 4 Poles, which they cover with Skins. In the Winter, they retire to the Vallies, and their Houses are round Caves at the Foot of an Hill, near together, and Passages from one to another within. Their Doors open to the S. and, with the Entries, stand without the Caves, and are made artificially with Ribs of Whales, cover'd with Seal-Skin. The Place where they lie is rais'd higher than the rest, and cover'd with Moss.

Their Way of TRADING.

THey make two Heaps, one of such Things as they want, and the other of what they would part with, and they ballance the Account, by adding or taking away from the respective Heaps.

Their CLOTHES.

THey wear either the Skins of Birds, as has been mention'd already, or those of Seals, Dog-Fish, *&c.* with the Fur outward, the better to deceive the Seals when they fish for them. They sow their Clothes with the Sinews of Beasts, and with Needles made of Fish-Bones.

Their BOATS.

THey make them of Whale-Bone, stitch'd with Sinews of Beasts, and cover'd with Seal-Skins. They are shap'd like a Weaver's Shuttle, so that they can row 'em either way. In the middle are the Ribs, to keep the Sides asunder, and to make a Hole

Digitized by Google

in the Covering where the Rower ſits. They have a Deck of the ſame Materials. In the middle there's a Hole as big as a Man's Waiſte. When he goes to Sea, he ſets himſelf in that Hole, ſtretching his Feet forward into the Hollow of the Boat, and ſtops the Hole ſo cloſe with his Frock, that no Water can enter, tho' it were at the bottom of the Sea. His Frock is ſtreight ty'd at the Wriſts and to his Neck, and his Capouch is alſo ſew'd cloſe to it; ſo that if his Boat be overturn'd in the Sea, he riſes again without any Wet, either upon his Skin, or in his Boat. They have but one Oar, 6 Foot long, with a Paddle 6 Inches broad at either End. This ſerves both to ballance his Boat, and to move it, which he does with ſuch incredible Swiftneſs, that one of our Boats with 10 Oars is not able to keep Company with them. The *Daniſh* Relation ſays, they row'd ſo ſwift, that they dazzled the Eyes of the Spectators; and tho' they croſs'd frequently, they never interfered or hit one another. They fiſh ordinarily with long barb'd Darts, with Bladders ty'd to them, that when they have ſtruck the Fiſh, he may ſpend himſelf by ſtruggling to get under Water, which yet he cannot do, and ſo is eaſily taken. Their Fiſhing-Boats are from 10 to 20 Foot long, and their larger Boats are 30 or 40, with 10 or more Seats for Rowers. *Bembus*, in his *Venetian* Hiſtory, ſays, That one of theſe Boats, with 7 Perſons in it, was by Storm caſt upon the Coaſts of *Britany*.

CHAP. IX.

FREESLAND.

SOme ſay, this Iſland lies 60 Deg. more Weſtward than any other Part of *Europe*. Mariners are not agreed about its Extent: Some ſay, it is not much leſs than *England*. There are Maps which place it from Lat. 60 to 63, 30 Min. and in Long. from 340 to 347.

It was firſt diſcover'd by *Nicolao* and *Antonio Zani*, two *Venetian* Gentlemen, that were ſhipwreck'd here.

They ſay, the Inhabitants are very good Chriſtians, and civil, govern'd by a great Lord call'd *Lichamay*. The People our Men ſaw reſembled the *Groenlanders* in every thing, and were perſwaded it join'd to *Groenland*; in which they were confirmed, by the many Iſlands of Ice they ſaw there; which coming from the North, ſhews that there is Land that way. There is ſome pale Coral here, and little Stones, clear as Chryſtal, in a Place they call *Weſt-England*. There is good fiſhing every where upon the Coaſt, which is ſo full of Ice, that 'tis almoſt inacceſſible. The Land is rugged and high, and the Mountains cover'd with Snow.

CHAP.

Digitized by Google

CHAP. X.

Of ISELAND, *or rather* ICELAND.

THis Country, according to ſome Maps, lies from 64½ Deg. to 68 N. Lat. and from Long. 345 to 4. *Moll* from 355 to 8. *Buno* on *Cluverius* ſays, it is 144 *German* Leagues long, and 65 broad. It lies 420 Miles W. from the Coaſt of *Norway*, and 360 N. from *Scotland*.

It was firſt diſcover'd by *Nadoccus*, a Privateer of *Norway*, in 860, who, becauſe of the great Quantity of Snow there, call'd it *Snowland*. Some Years after, *Flacco*, another *Norway* Privateer, gave it the Name of *Iceland*, from the great Quantity of Ice he found there.

It was firſt inhabited by the *Norvegians* in 874, who were led thither by *Ingulphus*, one of their Lords.

Their Government was an Ariſtocracy till the Year 1262, that the Kings of *Norway* ſubdued them.

They continued in Idolatry till the beginning of the 11th Century, that *Olaus Trygger the Pious* planted Chriſtianity among them, which occaſion'd 20 Years Civil War with the Natives. *Chriſtian* III. about 1550, introduc'd the Reformation. *Chriſtian* IV. cauſed the Scriptures to be tranſlated for the Uſe of the Illanders into their own Language.

Of the AIR, SOIL, *and* PRODUCT.

THE Air is very cold, and the Country Mountainous; but in the Southern Parts of the Iſland, where it is more level, the Meadows are ſo rich, that Beaſts put into them muſt be fed by Meaſure, otherwiſe they would burſt themſelves. The Natives love the Fleſh of Bears, Wolfs and Foxes, which they catch upon the Ice, better than Beef. The Oxen of this Iſland have no Horns. There are ſcarcely any Trees, ſave low Birch, and Juniper Buſhes. Horſes and Cows are their only Cattle, which feed on dry'd Fiſh when they want Hay. They have excellent little Dogs, not unlike thoſe of *Malta*. They have alſo Falcons and White Bears. There is a ſmoaking Fountain, whoſe Exhalations turn every thing into Stone, without altering the exteriour Form. There is alſo another Fountain, whoſe Water kills all that drink of it. It has 3 very high Mountains, cover'd with Snow at Top, which at Times vomit Fire: The moſt noted is *Heela*, in which there are rich Mines of Brimſtone. It often throws out Flames and Stones at a prodigious diſtance, ſo that thoſe who adventure too near, are frequently ſwallow'd up in Gulphs of Brimſtone, which are ſo cover'd with Aſhes, that one cannot perceive them. The Natives call this Place the *Mouth of Hell*: And the frequent Apparition of Ghoſts there, (if we may believe *Olaus Magnus*) confirms them in that Opinion. *Groſius* thinks, that *Mexico* was Peopled from this Place. In 982, *Ericus Rufus* Peopled *Greenland* from hence.

The Inhabitants were formerly accounted nothing inferior in Wit and Underſtanding to any of the Northern Countries, and were ſaid to be skill'd in the Greek. They have writ the Hiſtory of their Country in their own Language. They are very ſtrong, but of low Stature, the talleſt not above 5 Foot high. *Olaus* ſays, They have Spirits that ſerve the Natives in their ordinary Affairs. The People are long liv'd, ſome of them living to 150 Years.

Their TRADE.

THeir principal Traffick conſiſts in Butter, Tallow, Sulphur, dry'd Fiſh, and ſmall Cod, of which Stock-Fiſh is made. They

Digitized by Google

They have Whales, but not of ſuch Value as thoſe about *Greenland*. An Ancient Poem, writ about 1449, call'd, *The Engliſh Policy*, ſays, That we then drove a conſiderable Trade by fiſhing there.

The Inhabitants dwell in Caves, and, for want of Wood, build their Tents of Fiſh-Bones, which they alſo grind, and make Bread of.

Of the Diviſion of ISELAND.

THis Iſle is divided into 4 Parts, nam'd according to the 4 Quarters of the World they lie towards. The Inhabitants call them thus: The North Quarter, *Nordlendinga Fiordung*; the Southerly, *Sudlendinga Fiordung*; the Weſterly, *Weſtlendinga Fiordung*; the Eaſterly, *Oſtlendinga Fiordung*. Thoſe 4 Parts are ſubdivided into 12 Bailiwicks, which contain about 330 Pariſhes, and have their particular Governor, ſubordinate to the Governor-General of the Iſle, under the King of *Denmark*.

1. *North-Quarter.*

Is the greateſt and beſt Peopled of the whole Iſle. *Holar*, or *Hola*, ſeated upon the Gulph *Skaga*, is the chief Town here, and a Biſhop's See. 'Tis a ſmall Town without Walls, and has a good and well frequented Harbour.

2. *The Eaſt-Quarter.*

The chief Town is *Kurbar*, which is but ſmall.

3. *The South-Quarter.*

The chief Town of this Quarter, and of the whole Iſle, is *Shalbot*, which lies in 66 Deg. 25 Min. The longeſt Day is 23 ¼ Hours. 'Tis ſituated among Mountains, and has no manner of Fortifications. It is a Biſhop's See, and the chief Court of Juſtice for the whole Iſle is kept here. It is 160 *Engliſh* Miles from *Hecla*. *Haner* and *Keplawick* are two commodious and well frequented Harbours. *Beſtede*, or *Coningſgard*, is a ſmall Fortreſs, where the Governor keeps his Court.

4. *The Weſt-Quarter.*

Gils, a ſmall Hamlet, is the Chief of this Diviſion.

CHAP. XI.

Of the THULE of the ANCIENTS.

THis Country having by many Authors been taken for the *Thule* of the Ancients, we think proper to ſay ſomething in this Place as to the Opinions both of the Ancients and Moderns about it. Some derive the Name from the *Arabian* Word *Tule*, which ſignifies Far off. This is ſupported by ſome Authorities; for the *Carthaginians* ſeem to have called *Ireland* by that Name, becauſe it was the fartheſt of their Diſcoveries: But the Opinion of *Bochart*, as to the Name *Thule*, ſeems to bid faireſt for the Truth: He thinks *Thule* is a *Phœnician* Word, (the *Phœnicians* being the firſt Diſcoverers of the Place) which ſignifies an Iſland of Darkneſs, becauſe of the Length of their Nights. Both Greek and Latin Authors were of Opinion, That Northern Places were condemn'd to perpetual Darkneſs, as *Pliny* and *Solinus*, &c. *Tibullus* ſpeaking of the Frigid Zone, ſays,

Illic & denſâ Tellus abſconditur Umbrâ.

In thickeſt Darkneſs, there the Earth's involv'd.

Strabo

Digitized by Google

Strabo tells us, That in *Homer*, the North and Darkneſs are the ſame thing. The *Arabians* alſo call the Northern Sea the Dark Sea. The Poet *Statius*, ſpeaking of *Thule*, has the ſame Notion of its Darkneſs, in his 3d Book, *Heſperiæ vada caligantia Thules*; *i. e.* the dark Friths of Weſtern *Thule*; and in his 4th Book to *Marcellus*, *Nigræ Littora Thules*; *i. e.* the Coaſts of dark *Thule*.

Authors are not agreed where the *Thule* of the Ancients was; ſome are for having *Iſland* to be it. *Pythias Maſſilienſis* ſeems to favour this Opinion, for he places *Thule* under the Polar Circle; but the Character that *Polybius* and *Strabo* give him, leſſens his Credit, for they call him a trifling lying Author. It is not probable, that the *Romans* durſt loſe the Sight of the Land, and venture into thoſe dangerous and frozen Seas; far leſs could they be acquainted with the Inhabitants of *Iſland*, and defeat them in Battles, as we find by their Authors they did thoſe of *Thule*. Others maintain, That *Ireland* was the *Thule* of the *Romans*; but tho' the *Phœnicians* have been in *Ireland*, it is certain the *Romans* never were there. The *Glacialis Ierne*, *i. e.* the Frozen *Ierne*, of *Claudian*, in Verſe 33, of the 4th Conſul. of *Honor.* cannot be *Ireland*, becauſe it deſerves not the Epithet of *Glacialis*, or *Icy*; for their own Writers ſay, That Froſt and Snow don't continue long there: But *Claudian* in this Place gives an Account how *Theodoſius* paſs'd the Friths of *Forth* and *Clyde* in *Scotland*, which are his *Hyperboreæ Undæ*, the *Hyperboreum* Seas; and *Theodoſius* upon that Account is call'd *Veſtator Boreæ*, *D. bellatorque Britanni Littoris*; *i. e.* the Conqueror of the North, and the Subduer of the *Britiſh* Coaſts. That he enter'd *Strathern*, which to this Day bears the Name of *Ierne*, the *Roman* Medals, Camps, and Military Ways, ſtill to be ſeen there, put it beyond Controverſy; whereas *Ireland* has no Monuments to prove that ever the *Romans* were in that Country.

Others, with greater Probability, think that *Schetland*, or ſome of the *Orkney* Iſlands, was the *Thule* of the Ancients. *Marinus* was of this Opinion, and alſo *Ptolemy*, who ſays *Thule* was a little Iſland in 62 Deg. of North Latitude, not above a Day's Voyage from *Britain*, where the longeſt Day is 20 Hours, which agrees to *Schetland*. *Agathemerus* agrees with this. *Stephanus Byzantin* allows only 20 Hours to the longeſt Day in *Thule*. The Learned *Cambden* is poſitive in this Matter, and obſerves, That Mariners call *Schetland*, *Thylenſel*, which is deriv'd from *Thyle*, or *Thule*.

This Opinion ſeems to be ſupported with very good Reaſons. *Tacitus*, in the Life of *Julius Agricola*, ſays, when the *Roman* Navy ſail'd about *Britain*, *Deſpecta eſt & Thule quam hactenus Nix & Hiems abdebat*; i. e. *Then* Thule *was diſcover'd, which hitherto was unknown, becauſe of its Snow and conſtant Winter.* This puts it out of doubt that it could not be *Iſland*, which was impoſſible to be ſeen by the *Roman* Fleet when ſailing about *Britain*. Further, *Silius Italicus* gives the ſame Deſcription of the Way of Fighting by the Natives of *Thule*, that *J. Cæſar*, *Mela*, *Martial*, and *Tacitus*, give of the Old *Britains*. In his 17th Book he ſays,

Cærulus haud aliter cum dimicat Incola Thules,
Agmina falcifero circumvenit eſſeda covino.

The Thule-*Men, whoſe Face has a blue Dy,*
With Chariots hook'd ſurround their Foes that fly.

Seneca calls alſo one of the Tribes of the *Scots*, *Cæruleos Scoto Brigantes*; the Blue *Scoto Brigantes*: And *Claudian*, in the above-mention'd Place, ſtrengthens this Opinion, by joining the *Orcades* and *Thule* together; for he ſays,

——— *Maduerunt Saxone fuſo*
Orcades? Incaluit Pictorum Sanguine Thule.

The Orkney *Iſles were drench'd with* Saxon *Gore,*
And Pictiſh *Blood did thaw cold* Thule's *Shore.*

The Circumſtances of the Story make it plain, that *Thule* can only be in ſome of the Northern Places of *Scotland*. Beſides, *Claudian* in many Places makes the *Orcades* lie over againſt *Thule*. We refer the curious Reader to Dr. *Wallace*'s Deſcription of the Iſlands of *Orkney*, where there are ſtrong Arguments to prove, that the *Thule* of the *Romans* was the Eaſtern Coaſt of *Sutherland*, and the adjacent Country in the North of *Scotland*.

C. H. A. P.

Digitized by Google

CHAP. XI.

Of MUSCOVY.

The Ancient and Modern EXTENT.

Muſcovy is a great Part of the Old *Sarmatia Europea*, the ancient Boundaries of which were upon the Weſt, 1. The River *Viſtula*. 2. The Gulph of *Finland*. 3. A Line from that Gulph to the *White Sea*. The Northern Limits were the *Sarmatian* or Frozen Sea. Upon the Eaſt, it had the ſame Boundaries with *Europe*, *viz.* the *Palus Meotis*, the Iſthmus of *Taurita Cherſoneſus*, now called *Crim-Tartary*. On the South, it had the *Euxine Sea*, the *Iſter* or *Danube*, the River *Hieroſus*, now *Prut*, and that Part of the *Carpathian* Mountains betwixt the River *Patiſſus*, now *Teys*, and the *Danube*.

The Length of the *European Sarmatia*, from the Conflux of the Rivers *Iſter* and *Patiſſus*, to the Mouth of the *Obi*, is 540 *German* Leagues. Its Breadth, from the *Wolga* to the *White Sea*, 360.

It comprehended Part of the Modern *Moldavia*, lying betwixt the Rivers *Nieſter*, *Danube*, and the *Prut*; a Part of *Hungary* betwixt the *Danube* and the *Teys*; and that Part of *Poland* beyond the *Viſtula*. It comprehended *Pruſſia*, *Livonia*, *Lithuania*, and *Muſcovy*.

The ancient *Greeks* knew little or nothing of the old *Sarmatians*; but becauſe they reſembled the old *Parthians* in Manners, they thought they were of the ſame Origine: The Inhabitants of *Sarmatia Europea* were the *Iſtrici*, ſo call'd from the River *Iſter*: the *Boriſthenitæ*, from the *Boriſthenes*; the *Neuri*, living near that River; the *Alani*, who dwell above the Sea of *Sabach*, near the *Tanais*, or *Don*; the *Roxalani*, who lay to the Weſt of them; the *Geloni*, who inhabited Part of *Mazovia* and *Podolia*; the *Agathyrſi*, who liv'd about the *Palus Meotis*; and the *Hyperborei*, a Name us'd for all Northern Places, Seas and People, that the Ancients were not acquainted with.

The Modern *Muſcovy*, otherwiſe call'd *Ruſſia Alba*, from the white Caps worn by the Natives, is bounded on the N. by the Frozen Sea, by *Great Tartary* on the E. by *Poland*, *Turky*, *Georgia*, and the *Caſpian* Sea, on the S. *Sweden* and *Livonia* on the W.

The Latitude is from *Aſtracan* in 46 Deg. to 73, which reckoning 60 Miles to a Degree, makes 1620 *Engliſh* Miles. The Longitude is from the outmoſt Boundaries of the Dutchy of *Pleſkow*, in 47 Deg. to *Wiatka*, a Biſhoprick, in 80, which makes 1980 *Engliſh* Miles. Others reckon the Extent of *Muſcovy* from the the N. W. to the S. E. *viz.* from the outmoſt Parts of *Muſcovite-Lapland*, to the moſt Eaſterly winding of the *Donn*, 589 Leagues; and from the S. W. to the N. E. *viz.* from the Shore of the *Boriſthenes* or the *Nieper* in *Ukrania*, to the Mouth of the River *Oby*, 460 Leagues. The Czar's Dominions reach to *Argunſkoi* in *Aſia*, upon the Borders of *China*, Lat. 50. Long. 125. according to the Account of *Tybrant Ides*, Ambaſſador to *China* from his Czariſh Majeſty. Some place *Aſtracan* in Long. 90; but Mr. *Moll*, whoſe Maps we follow, places it in 73, and *Morden* in 78.

Of the ORIGINE *of the* Muſcovites.

Some, from the Similitude of the Name, fancy that *Meſech*, or *Moſoc*, the Son of *Japhet*, Peopled this Country. We find alſo in *Strabo* frequent Mention of the *Moſchi*, tho' he is not poſitive where their Country was. *Mela* places them near the *Caſpian* Sea; *Pliny* near *Iberia*, which is now call'd *Georgia*:

Digitized by Google

Georgia: *Lucan*, and after him *Sidonius*, ſay, they dwelt near the *Sarmatæ*: So that the *Moſchi* were ſome of thoſe many Nations that dwelt in the Southerly Parts of the *Ruſſian* Empire. But their old Hiſtories ſay, they were moſt anciently call'd *Ruſſes*. *Pliny* and *Ptolomy*, as well as ſome Modern Latin Authors, call them *Roxalani*, and think they are the Poſterity of the ancient *Roxalani*, who dwelt about the *Taurica Cherſoneſus*. Others ſay, this Country was call'd *Roſſia*, which ſignifies Diſperſion, or Scattering, becauſe they liv'd diſpers'd, without any certain Government, in continual Quarrels and Diſſentions one with another, till *Genareta Daniel*, or *Ivan* his Son, ſirnam'd *Caleta*, gather'd and join'd them together in one Government and Body; and for their better Union, he built almoſt in the middle of the Country the City *Moſcow*, upon a River of that Name, and made it the Metropolis of the Empire; from whence they began to be call'd *Muſcovites*. *Bochart* thinks, in *Phaleg. Lib.* 3. *Cap.* 13. they are from ראש משך, i. e. *Rhos* and *Meſech*. *Ezech. Cap.* 38. *v.* 2. who were the ſame with the *Roſſi* and *Moſchi*, People that dwelt near the River *Araxes*. He quotes the *Nubian* Geographer and *Tzetzes* for this, who call the *Scythians* of *Taurica*, *Rhos*. *Strabo* and *Pomponius Mela* call them the *Aſiatick Moſchi*. The *Sclavonian* Hiſtories ſay, they have the Name of *Ruſſes* from one *Ruſſus*, the Brother of *Lechus*; but the *Muſcovites* themſelves boaſt that they are deſcended from the ancient *Greeks*.

The PRODUCT.

THE Commodities of this Country are *Sturgeon*, *Pot-Aſhes*, *Hemp*, ſuch Plenty of *Honey* in the Woods, that hollow Trees are filled with it; *Salt-Fiſh*, *Soap*, *Ruſſia-Leather*, *Elkes-Hides*, Fine *Furs*, as *Ermins*, *Martens*, *Sables*, *Black Foxes-Skins*, *Beavers*, *White Bears*, *Squirrels*, *Welvarin*, and *White Foxes-Skins*; as alſo that of a *Water-Rat*, which ſmells like Muſk. *Siberia* is the moſt famous Province of *Muſcovy* for Furs: The Czar has the Monopoly, and makes Preſents of them. *Wax*, of which they have Ship'd in one Year 50000 Pood Weight, each Pood containing 40 lb. Weight. *Tallow*, of which in one Year they have exported 100000 Pood. *Hides* of *Black-Cattle*, of which they have ſold in a Year 100000, beſides 30000 Hides of *Loſh* (*Lozzi*) and *Buff*; with multitudes of *Goat-Skins*, and others: *Train-Oil*, made of *Seals*; *Caviar*, made ordinarily at *Aſtracan* of the Roes of *Sturgeon* and *Beluga*, a Fiſh 15 Foot long, much like a *Sturgeon*, but without Scales. They ſalt and preſs the Roes, and put them up in Casks. In one Fiſh, they find ſometimes 150 or 200 lb. Weight of Spawn. The *Caviar* of *Sturgeon* is ſmall, black, and waxy: That of *Beluga* is darkiſh, grey, and the Grain as large as Pepper. This Spawn they cleanſe from its Strings, ſalt it, and drein away the oily Part, by laying it on ſhelving Boards; then they put it into Casks, and preſs it till it grow hard. *Iſinglaſs*, or *Ichthyocolla*, made of the Sounds of Fiſh. This Trade is reſerv'd to the Emperor himſelf. *Salt*, of which they have great Plenty: *Tar*: *Morſes-Teeth*, tranſported into *Turky* and *Perſia*: *Slude*, which is a ſoft Rock in *Corellia*, that they cut out in Lumps, and afterwards into ſmall Pieces, we call it *Muſcovy-Glaſs*; it can neither be broken nor burnt: 'Tis the *Lapis Specularis*, and is us'd for Lanthorns, Windows, *&c.* *Salt-Petre*, and *Maſts*, better than thoſe of *Norway*. The Commodities of this Country are tranſported by the Way of *Archangel* to all Parts of *Europe*; and by *Aſtracan* and the *Caſpian* Sea to *Perſia*, and other Places in *Aſia*.

Their AIR, *and* SOIL.

THey differ according to the Situation of the Places; ſome are in the 8th Climate, and ſome beyond the Polar-Circle. It is generally marſhy, full of Forreſts, Pools, and Lakes, which hinders its being populous. Towards the North, the little Corn they ſow never comes to Perfection; for they have 9 or 10 Months Froſt and Snow. Towards the South, they have Plenty of Corn, with which they furniſh *Lapland*, and the North of *Sweden*. The *Dutch* alſo tranſport Corn from this Place. The Heat is intolerable in Summer, being reflected from the Sandy Ground. This likewiſe makes their Corn to ripen very ſoon. They ſow in the end of *May*, and reap in

Digitized by Google

July. In Winter, the Froſt is ſo violent, that the Rain freezes as it falls, and the Earth chaps, by reaſon of Cold, ſometimes above 20 Fathom long, and a Foot broad: Travellers are found dead in their Sleds, and ſometimes are frozen to Death, ſtanding like Statues. Their Houſes are lin'd with Furs, and they are obliged to make uſe of Stoves. When they travel on the Road, they rub their Noſes and Ears with Snow, as a Remedy againſt their freezing. The *Turk*'s Ignorance of this, occaſion'd that of 70000 Men who invaded *Muſcovy*, 40000 were deſtroy'd by the Cold. In Winter, they lay the Bodies of their dead Friends on Heaps in the Belfries of their Churches: But when they deſign to bury them immediately, they put a great Fire of Wood for a long time upon the Place where they are to dig their Graves. Becauſe of the great Cold, they never putrify nor ſtink; but their uſual Time of burying after Winter is in the beginning of *April*, when the Earth is fit for digging. It is ſurprizing to Strangers to ſee Fields all covered with Graſs and Plants, that a few Days before were cover'd with Snow and Froſt. In Winter, they travel conveniently on Sledges, wrapt up in Furs. In Summer, they have prodigious Quantities of Gnats and other Inſects, which are very troubleſome. The Heat in Summer is extraordinary, for nothing leſs can melt their Ice and Snow. Sometimes their Corn is burnt up by the Heat. The Country is in general overgrown with Wood. Parts of the great *Hercinian* Forreſt, which anciently over-run all the North, are more viſible here than in other Places. This proceeds either from the Idleneſs of the People, or becauſe the Country is not populous enough to cut it down. The talleſt Trees of the World grow here. Their Forreſts conſiſt moſt of Firs and Birch, which love a light ſandy Soil. They have Apples, Pears, Plumbs, Cherries; yet they are never quite ripe, nor can they be preſerved as in other Places. Fruits and Herbs of ſudden Growth are very good here, as all ſorts of Berries, Gourds, Melons, which are exceeding large, and eat well; ſome of them weigh 40 lb. *Olearius*, and other Authors, ſpeak of a certain Melon and Gourd found near *Aſtracan*, *Samara* and *Caſan*, called by the Natives *Boranetz*, or a Lamb, that grows upon a Stalk. Others call it *Zoophyton*, which ſignifies the Animal Plant. It withers, or, as ſome ſay, eats up all the Graſs within its reach; after which the Stalk withers, and the Fruit ripens. The outward Rind of this Melon is cover'd with a kind of Hair, which they uſe inſtead of Fur.

They ſhew'd us, ſay the *Holſtein* Ambaſſadors, ſome of thoſe Skins, which were cover'd with a ſoft frizling Wool, not unlike that of a Lamb newly taken out of a Sheep's Belly, and ſwore that they came from that Fruit. *Julius Scaliger* ſays, the Wolf is the only Beaſt that will feed upon this Lamb, and therefore 'tis us'd as a Bait to catch him. The *Muſcovites* affirm the ſame.

In the Time of the Great Duke *Michael Federowitz*, who began his Reign in 1613, and was a great lover of Gardening, Flowers and Sweet-Herbs, were firſt tranſported into *Muſcovy*, and planted there; and it is but few Years ago ſince the firſt *Provence*. Roſes were brought hither by *Peter Marcellis*, the *Daniſh* Commiſſary. Some of the *Germans* and *Dutch* have lately ſhow'd them the Way of managing the *Aſparagus* Beds; ſo that they grow now to the Thickneſs of 2 Inches. The *Muſcovites* were averſe to all Sallad-Herbs till of late.

Their TRADE *of* IMPORT.

THE Commodities imported to them, are *Silk*, *Suffi*, *Cloth of Gold*, *Cloth of Silver*, *Engliſh Cloth*, *Tapeſtry*, *Pearls* and *Precious Stones*, *Spices*, *Wine*, *Brandy*, and *Hot Liquors*. In 1634, the Emperor diſcharg'd, by an Edict, the Uſe or Importation of any Tobacco, on Pain of being whip'd, or having their Noſtrils bor'd; but the preſent Czar has allowed the *Engliſh* and *Dutch* to import it into his Dominions. Their Trade is always by Barter. They are not allow'd to buy Foreign Goods with Money, and muſt not export Coin. Before the Diſcovery of the Paſſage by Sea to *Archangel*, their Trade was carried on by Way of *Narva* and *Revel*; which tho' nearer, yet Merchants chuſe to go to *Archangel*, to avoid the great Impoſts by the *Swedes* and *Danes*.

The

The ESTABLISHMENT *of the* Engliſh Ruſſia *Company.*

THE firſt Diſcoverers of the Way by the North Cape were the *Engliſh*. In the laſt Year of *Edward* VI. *viz.* 1553, *The Company of Merchants Adventurers for the Diſcovery of unknown Places* ſet forth 3 Ships, under the Command of Sir *Hugh Willoughby* and *Richard Chancellour*. Sir *Hugh* and the other Ship put into a River on the Deſart-Coaſts of *Lapland*, where they were ſoon frozen in, and their Bodies were found dead next Summer by *Ruſſian* Fiſhermen. Mr. *Chancellour* purſued his Voyage, and firſt diſcover'd the Bay of St. *Nicholas*. The Fiſhermen there were frighted at the Greatneſs of his Ship, and endeavour'd to fly from him; but he overtook them, and was inform'd the Country was call'd *Ruſſia*, and the Duke's Name was *Juan Vaſſilwick*. He was honourably conducted to Court, and ſplendidly entertain'd by the Duke; and having obtain'd a Privilege written in *Ruſſe*, with the Great Duke's Seal, they return'd in 1554. In 1555, the ſame Emperor granted the firſt Privileges to the *Engliſh* Merchants, *viz.* That they ſhould not be liable to the Payment of any Toll or Subſidy for ever; That they ſhould not need to ask any Licence or ſafe Conduct; That they might ſell their Goods to whom they pleas'd, of whatever Country; That all *Engliſhmen* there ſhould be under the Company's Government; That no *Engliſhmen* ſhould be impriſon'd for Debt, upon finding Bail; That he would aſſiſt the Governor and Chief Factor, if any rebell'd, and refus'd to obey their Commands; And that they ſhould have Diſpatch and ſpeedy Juſtice when cited to *Ruſſian* Courts. The ſame Year *Philip* and *Mary* granted a Charter to the *Ruſſian* Company, by which they were empower'd to make Conqueſt of undiſcover'd Places; and all others not of that Company were diſcharg'd, and prohibited Trading to *Muſcovy*. In 1556, the Company ſent two Ships: At their Return, they brought with them an Ambaſſador from the Czar. The *Edward* on the 10th of *November*, arrived in the Bay of *Pitſlego*, in the North of *Scotland*, where ſhe was ſplit upon Rocks in the Night: Mr. *Chancellour*, with 7 *Ruſſes*, and divers Mariners, were drown'd, the Ambaſſador hardly eſcaping. Many of the Preſents deſign'd for the King and Queen were loſt, *viz.* 6 Timbers of rich Sables; 1 Timber is 80 Skins; 20 entire Sables, with Teeth, Ears, and Claws; 4 living Sables, with Chains and Collars; 30 large and beautiful Luſorns; 6 large and great Skins, ſuch as are only worn by the Emperor; a large and fair white Jer-Faulcon, for the Wild-Swan, Crane, Gooſe, and other great Fowls; with a Drum of Silver, us'd as a Lure to call the Hawk. Theſe Privileges from the Czar were ſometimes renewed and augmented, with the Excluſion of all other Nations from that Trade: Sometimes they were retrench'd and leſſen'd, according to the Intereſt of the Czar. Upon the Murther of King *Charles* I. the then Czar revok'd all the former Privileges granted to our Merchants, the *Dutch* having aggravated that Matter to our Loſs, and their own Advantage.

Of the MANNERS *of the* Muſcovites, *from the Travels of the* Holſtein *Ambaſſadors, and the Earl of* Carliſle, *&c.*

MOſt of them are very barbarous: They deſpiſe all Arts and Sciences. They look upon a Mathematician as a Sorcerer. A *Dutch* Surgeon, for having a Skeleton in his Room there, was accu'd of Magic, and in great Danger of Death; and, after all could be done by his Friends, he was baniſh'd the Country, the Skeleton dragg'd thrô the Streets, and afterwards burnt. Dr. *Fletcher* ſays, ſome of them have very good Parts. A Merchant there is not thought to underſtand his Buſineſs, if he be not Crafty, and well skill'd in Cheating. A *Dutch* Merchant, noted for this Quality, was the more valued for it by the *Ruſſians*; ſo that many of them deſir'd to be his Partners, that they might be perfected in the Way of Cheating. They are much given to Lies and Calumny; inſolent both to Foreigners and one another. They are very quarrelſome, and liberal of

Digitized by Google

their brutiſh Reproaches. Their Reſentments never go the Length of Blood, but end in a Kick or two. Their *Boiars*, or Noblemen decide their Differences upon Horſe-back with Whips. 'Tis but of late they made uſe of Phyſicians, Garlick and Strong-Waters were then their only Remedies for all Diſeaſes; and they are not aſham'd to belch the Exhalations of their Garlick and Onions into the Faces of People of whatever Quality. Their Ignorance of Sciences, and of the World, makes their Converſation run generally upon nothing but Brutality and Vices not to be nam'd, which they commit when Drunk. Men and Women are not aſham'd to come to the Streets ſtark naked from Brothel-Houſes. Drunkenneſs is ſo modeſt a Vice here, that none are free from it, Men or Women. The Wives, after their Husbands are fallen aſleep on the Floor with Drink, ſit upon them, and continue drinking till they themſelves tumble alſo down. They bow their Heads to the Ground to their Superiors, after they have been ſoundly cudgell'd, which is a Demonſtration of the Lowneſs of their Spirits. The greateſt *Boiar*, when he writes to the Czar, expreſſes his Name in the Diminutive, as, *Petrunke twoy Golop, I Petrillo your Slave*, inſtead of *I Peter*. They are perſwaded Phyſicians can cure all Diſeaſes if they pleaſe, and puniſh them ſeverely if their Patients die. The *Boiars* keep great Numbers of Slaves both in City and Country, which commit great Diſorders, and frequently murther People in the High-Ways. Becauſe they us'd to approach their Images with their Breaths ſtinking of Tobacco, the Patriarch obtain'd from the Czar a Prohibition of it. All Strangers admire, that from ſweating in a hot Stove, they frequently go out naked, and wallow in Snow, and return to it again without any Harm.

Reading and Writing is the heigheſt Degree of Learning among them: They count by Forties and Nineties; ſo that their Arithmetick can be none of the beſt. Their Prieſts go no further in Learning than to be able to read a Chapter in the Bible. They have their Characters from the *Greeks*, but have much alter'd and augmented them, for they have 39 Letters. They reckon their Years from the Creation of the World, and maintain that Chriſt was born in the Year 5508, after the Creation. Our preſent Year 1708 is their 7216. Their Year commences the firſt of *September*. They begin their Day at Sun-riſing, and end it at Sun-ſetting. They write upon long Scrolls of Paper glu'd together, ſometimes 25 or 30 Ells. Endeavours have been us'd to reform them from this ſcandalous Ignorance. *Ivan Beoiſſowitz Cirkaſi* got divers Hiſtories and Books of Learning tranſlated into the *Ruſſian* Language, and after that a *Greek* and *Latin* School was erected in *Moſcow*. The preſent Czar gives Leave to his Nobility to acquire the Liberal Sciences, particularly the Mathematicks, to acquaint themſelves with Foreign Countries, and has ſet them an Example in his own Perſon, with a Deſign to underſtand Sea-Affairs and Shipping. The *Muſcovites* are jealous. Some ſay, they uſe *Italian* Locks, to enſure the Chaſtity of their Wives. They are cruel and bloody minded, inſolent in Proſperity, and cowardly in Adverſity; yet have ſuch an Opinion of their own Abilities and Merits, that you can ſcarce ever pay them enough of Reſpect.

The *Muſcovites* in general are of a very healthful Conſtitution, and long liv'd: Their Bodies are robuſt, and ſtrong built, but not tall.

They are frugal in their Houſe-keeping: They live in wretched Wooden Houſes; but their Merchants and Lords have of late built Houſes of Stone. Their Houſhold-Stuff conſiſts in 2 or 3 Pots, and as many Wooden or Earthen Diſhes. Some of the better ſort have Pewter. They hang their Rooms with Mats, and ſleep on Benches. The whole Family is ſqueez'd together into the ſame Room. In the Country, the Pigs and Poultry are lodg'd in the ſame Place with the Family. Their Food is Turnips, Colworts, and Cucumbers. Their Salt Fiſh, tho' it ſmell ſtrong, becauſe not well ſalted, is to them a great Rarity. Their Beef is good, but their Mutton indifferent. The greater Part of the Year is ſpent in Faſts, and then they eat Fiſh and Pulſe, but no Fleſh: Therefore they dreſs Fiſh better than Fleſh. Their ordinary Drink is a ſort of ſmall Mead call'd *Quaz*. They brew ſtrong Beer in *March*, and make a Bed of Ice and Snow mix'd together, upon which they

Digitized by Google

they lay Barrels. Over them they lay another Bed of Ice, and then another Row of Barrels. They cover all with Straw and Planks, for their Cellars are not cover'd. They prefer Metheglin to *French* and *Rhenish* Wines. The put one lb. of Honey to every three lb. of Water, and add the Juice of Raspberries, Cherries, and Strawberries. They make it ferment with a Toaſt dip'd in the Dregs of Beer: Some put into in a Bag with Cloves, Cinnamon, and Grains of Pepper.

All *Muſcovites*, of what Quality ſoever, muſt have their Afternoons Sleep. They are all fond of hot Baths, and diſcover'd the Impoſture of the falſe *Demetrius*, by his Averſion to thoſe Cuſtoms.

There are ſome Authors, and particularly Dr. *Fletcher*, who ſoften this Character, and ſay, That among the Nobility, there are very many of excellent Parts, Courage and Diſcretion; and among the People, ſome who are not Strangers to thoſe Qualities; but they own, that many of thoſe Things they are charg'd with proceed from their Want of Education, and the Oppreſſion of their Superiors.

Their RELIGION.

BEfore Chriſtianity was known in *Muſcovy*, the *Ruſſians* were involv'd in the thickeſt Darkneſs of Paganiſm; for, beſides ſuch Gods as *Jupiter*, *Saturn*, and *Mars*, known to the ancient Pagans, they ador'd their peculiar Idols of monſtrous and terrible Shapes, under the Names of *Pioruni*, *Stribi*, *Corſi*, *Mecoſti*, all ſet on Pedeſtals. The firſt reſembles a Dog with two big Breaſts, his Tongue hanging out, and his Ears long. The 2d is like a Satyr, with two Feet like a Horſe: It has 4 Horns, and a Tail. The 3d is alſo like a Satyr ſitting, and has two Feet like a Horſe, the Body like a Man's, with an open Mouth, flaming Eyes, and 4 Horns; in one Hand holding ſomething like a Scepter, and the other Hand is like the Claws of a Fowl. The 4th is a big Head, with a wide Mouth, glaring Eyes, and Ears reſembling Wings.

P. Wolodimer, who married *Anna*, the Siſter of *Baſilius Porphyrogenneta*, about the Year 989, introduc'd the Chriſtian Religion into this unpoliſh'd Nation; but they themſelves boaſt that their Nation was converted by St. *Andrew*; upon which Account the preſent Czar hath erected an Order of Knighthood, called, the *Order of St.* Andrew's *Croſs*. When they embrac'd Chriſtianity, it was much allay'd with a mixture of Superſtitions and Follies, which are ſince improv'd by the modern *Muſcovites*. They are of the *Greek* Church, becauſe converted by the *Grecians*. Their Monks are all of the Order of St. *Baſil*. Their Sermons are from St. *Chryſoſtom*, tranſlated into their own Language. The Patriarch of the *Greek* Church reſided formerly at *Conſtantinople*; but being forc'd from thence by the *Turk*, he remov'd to the Iſle of *Scio*, whither the Emperors of *Ruſſia* and their Clergy were wont to ſend Gifts every Year, in Acknowledgment of their Spiritual Subjection. In 1588, one *Hieronymo* came to *Moſcow*, pretending to be Patriarch of *Conſtantinople*, and that he was baniſh'd by the *Turks*. Some ſay, he was depos'd by his own Clergy. He came by the Way of *Italy*; and the Pope, by his Practices and Intrigues, engag'd him in a Deſign to reconcile the Church of *Ruſſia* with that of *Rome*; but this not ſucceeding, he propos'd the Tranſlation of the See of the Patriarch from *Scio* to *Moſcow*, and to reſign his Patriarchate. This was very well receiv'd by the Czar. The Reaſons *Hieronymo* alledg'd for removing this See, were theſe: 1. Becauſe *Scio* was under the *Turk*. 2 Becauſe the *Ruſſian* Church was the only natural Daughter of the *Greek* Church; and agreeing with her in Doctrine and Ceremonies, 'twould be a great Honour to the Emperor and the Country of *Ruſſia*. The Reſignation in Writing, and the Patriarchal Staff, were delivered to the Metropolitan of *Moſcow* with great Solemnity, before the Clergy of *Ruſſia*, on the 25th of *January*, 1588. who by this became Patriarch, and was immediately inaugurated. *Hieronymo* got a deal of Money by the Bargain; upon which Account the *Ruſſians* think it valid. The Patriarch of *Conſtantinople* never quarrels at it; and to bribe him to Silence, a Preſent of 500 Crowns is ſent him every Year: Beſides, the *Greeks* ſend frequently conſecrated Toys and Relicks to *Moſcow*, for which they get conſiderable Gifts.

The Invocation of Saints is a principal Part of their Devotion; every Family has the

Digitized by Google

the Picture of ſome Saint in their Houſes, and a Wax Candle before it lighted in the Time of Worſhip. The Pictures are flat, and wretchedly done. They uſe none in *Baſſo-Relievo*. The Picture of St. *Nicholas*, and of the Virgin *Mary*, is over their Church-Porches, and City-Gates, through which no *Muſcovite* paſſes without bowing to them. They bow likewiſe to all Croſſes, and frequently make the Sign of the Croſs. When they purchaſe an Image, they will not ſay they bought it, but exchang'd it for Silver. When they are old, they bury them under Ground, or throw them into Rivers. They go thrice to Church on *Sundays* and Holidays, and attend Divine Service ſtanding. Their Churches have no Seats. The Women ſtand in the Porch, becauſe they reckon them all impure. They know not what Preaching is. Their Service conſiſts only in reading Pſalms or Chapters in the Bible, ſome of *Chryſoſtom*'s Homilies, and *Athanaſius*'s Creed. They ſing certain Hymns. When they ſay the *Goſpels*, i. e. *Lord God have Mercy on me*, they beat their Foreheads to the Ground. They have 15 Feſtivals: and beſides their ſtated Faſt-Days, as *Wedneſdays*, *Fridays*, and the *Eves* before Holidays, they have four ſevere *Lents*, in which the Uſe of Butter, Milk, and Eggs, is forbidden, except the firſt Week of their great *Lent*, in which they commit all manner of Debaucheries; and to make Amends for this, all the reſt of that *Lent* they live upon Pulſe, Herbs, Garlick, and Onions. During their *Lents*, the Husband is not to converſe with his Wife, on Pain of Excommunication for a whole Year. Their Penance conſiſts, 1. In abſtaining from hot Liquors. 2. From the Pleaſures of Matrimony. 3. To ſay the *Goſpels* with the uſual Reverence: (The Emperor *Ivan Baſilowick* had his Forehead ſwell'd by knocking it on the Floor upon this Occaſion.) 4. To ſtand in the Porch during Divine Service. 5thly, and chiefly, To waſh with Holy Water, conſecrated on the *Epiphany*; the ſelling of which is Part of the Clergy's Perquiſites. That they don't believe Tranſubſtantiation, is evident, 1. Becauſe on all Occaſions they ſpeak of the Abſurdity of that Doctrine. 2. They never adore the Hoſt. 3. The *Greeks*, from whom they had their Religion, never believ'd any ſuch thing. As Followers of that Church, they deny the Holy Ghoſt to proceed from both Father and Son. They deny Purgatory, but pray for the Dead. They communicate in both Kinds, with Leaven'd Bread, and with Wine mix'd with Water. They mix the Bread and Wine together, and make uſe of Spoons when they communicate. Some ſleep after it, to prevent any Occaſion of ſinning. Children of Seven Years of Age are admitted to the Sacrament in both Kinds, becauſe, according to them, they begin then to ſin. Before that Age, they communicate only in one Kind. They forbid Extreme Unction, and puniſh fourth Marriages with Death. They admit none to Orders but thoſe who are married. They divorce their Wives upon ſlight Occaſions, and never fail to do it if a Woman be barren, and then ſend her to a Monaſtery, which they call ſending her to her Prayers. They hate the *Roman-Catholicks*, *Jews* and *Turks*: Therefore the *Ottoman* Ambaſſadors are not admitted to kiſs the Czar's Hands. Whoever embraces the *Ruſſian* Religion, muſt be re-baptized. The Czar gives great Gifts to Proſelites. *Lutherans* and *Calviniſts* are tolerated, and have Churches in his Dominions.

If any Stranger enter their Churches, they think them polluted, and afterwards purify them with ſtrange Ceremonies. It is a known Story at *Moſcow*, That a Monky belonging to an *Engliſh* Ambaſſador entred a Church, and tore an Image of St. *Nicholas*. The *Muſcovites* were perſwaded that it was an old Heretick, and, by a particular Order from the Patriarch, it was carried in Shew through the Streets, and afterwards put to Death.

They look upon Baptiſm as abſolutely neceſſary to Salvation: They baptize in the Church, and have two Godfathers, who are obliged to be ſo to all Children as long as they live. They conſecrate the Water firſt, then the Father and Godfathers renounce the Devil and all his Works; and at naming the Devil, they ſpit upon the Ground. The Prieſt exorciſes the Child at the Church-Door, becauſe they believe all Children are poſſeſſed with the Devil: Therefore they are not allowed to enter the Church till the Devil is thrown out. The Prieſt hangs a Croſs of Gold, Silver, or Lead, about the Child's Neck, which it muſt wear till Death; and

Digitized by Google

and ſuch as want this, cannot have Chriſtian Burial. The Prieſt aſſigns a Saint to the Child, whom he muſt ever after reverence as his Patron. They dip the Child three times in the Water, put ſome Salt in his Mouth, make the Sign of the Croſs on his Forehead, Hands, Breaſts and Back, with conſecrated Oil, and put a clean Shirt on him, ſaying, *Thou art as clean and as clear of Original Sin as this Shirt.* They plunge Proſelytes over Head and Ears in Water.

Their MARRIAGES.

THE young People are not allow'd to ſee one another; but the Relations of the Bridegroom ſee the Bride naked, and give an Account of their Remarks to the Bridegroom. Young Women are not allow'd to come abroad. The Nuptial Bed is made upon 40 *Sheaves* of Rye, laid in good Order, and encompaſs'd with ſeveral Barrels of Wheat, Barley, and Oats. The Bridegroom near Night goes from his own Houſe to the Bride; the Prieſt leads the Van on Horſeback; a Piece of Taffeta is held betwixt the Bride and Bridegroom, that they may not ſee one another; then the Bride is painted, has her Hair ty'd up in two Knots; and, if a Perſon of Note, has a Coronet of Leaf-Gold, or of *Silver-gilt*, lin'd with Silk, put upon her Head, having on both Sides near the Ears 5 or 6 Rows of Pearls hanging down in Strings to her Breaſt: The upper Garment ſometimes coſts 1000 Crowns, and is richly embroider'd. Then the Bridegroom is painted: After that they go to Church, and there a Canopy of Taffeta is put over them. When they have made the uſual Offerings, the Prieſt gives them his Bleſſing, by holding Images over their Heads, and taking the Man by the Right, and the Woman by the Left Hand, asks them three times, If they be willing to be married? When both anſwer, Yes, the whole Company join Hands; then the 128th *Pſalm* is ſung, the Prieſt ſinging one Verſe, and the Company the next; and they dance all the time. Then he puts a Garland of *Rue* upon their Heads, and about their Shoulders, if they have been married before, and ſays, *Multiply and Increaſe*; and diſmiſſes them, ſaying theſe Words, *Whom God hath joined together, let no Man ſeparate.* One of the Company gives a Glaſs of Wine to the Prieſt, and he drinks to the married Couple. The Bridegroom throws down the Glaſs on the Ground, and they both tread upon it, and ſay, *May they thus fall under our Feet, and be trod to pieces, who ſhall endeavour to ſow Diviſion between us.* Then the Women throw ſome Flax and Hemp-ſeed at the young Couple, wiſhing them much Proſperity: Others pull the Bride by the Robe; but ſhe embraces the Bridegroom, and will not part from him. She is conducted home in a Sledge, with an old Woman in Company, who entertains her with ſmutty Converſation. As ſoon as the Marriage-Feaſt is done, they go to Bed. The Gueſts in the mean time uſe many Charms, which they think advantagious to the Conſummation. An old Servant of the Houſe, that attends at the Door, asks the Bridegroom if the Buſineſs is done. As ſoon as the Bridegroom anſwers, Yes, the Trumpets and Timbrels ſound till they have conducted them to the Stoves; then the Bride ſends the Bridegroom a Shirt richly embroider'd. The two next Days they ſpend in Merry-making. If the Husbands happen to be drunk, the Wives never fail to improve that Time to vicious and lewd Purpoſes. The Wedding-Day may be ſaid to be the laſt Day of Pleaſure to the Women, for after that they muſt not ſtir abroad, except on extraordinary Occaſions. They know nothing of Houſe-keeping, but are employ'd in embroidering, or making Purſes, or ſuch Toys. Their Diverſion within Doors is in ſwinging. Their Wives are hardly uſed, and ſometimes beat. The Husbands excuſe themſelves, alledging, that they are addicted to ſtrong Liquors, have lewd Tongues, and are not chaſte. They have no other Notion of Adultery, but marrying another Man's Wife. Tho' they be much given to Luſt, they will not lie with a Woman till ſhe take off the Croſs from her Neck, and the Images in the Room be cover'd, leſt they ſhould inform againſt them.

Of their CHURCHES.

THoſe of their Churches that are built of Stone, are round, and vaulted, that they may reſemble the Heavens. They have

Digitized by Google

have no Seats nor Organs, nor any other Inſtruments of Muſick. Their Patriarch, in 1636, forbad the Uſe of Muſical Inſtruments in private Houſes, and order'd 5 Waggons full of them to be burnt. Each Church has a Tower, with a triple Croſs at Top. If a Dog chance to get into the Church, they not only ſweep it, but purify it with Incenſe. Nor are any allow'd to make Water in the Church-Yards. Their Bells are not hung in the Steeples, but in certain Engines built for that purpoſe near the Church, and are commonly ſmall, of 150 or 200 Pound. They toll them at the beginning of the Service, and the Elevation of the Chalice, which is done but once, becauſe they put the Bread into it immediately after the Conſecration. Every Church has an Image over the Door. The Corners of the Streets, and the very Gates of the Cities, are beſet with Images, which the *Muſcovites* reverence as they paſs along, as well as the Croſſes on their Churches, and never forget at ſuch Times to ſay their *Goſpods*.

Of their BURIALS.

WHen a Man dies, the Kindred and Friends are ſent for by the Widow, who ask the Deceaſed, Why he would die? Whether he wanted any thing? Whether his Wife was not young and handſome enough? Whether ſhe had been inconſtant? Then they waſh the Body, and put on it a clean Shirt and Shrowd, with a new Pair of thin Shoes on his Feet. They lay him with his Arms acroſs in his Coffin. The Prieſt is to pray for his Soul, and to purifie the Corps with Holy Water and Incenſe. The Burial is perform'd thus: The Prieſt goes firſt with the Image of the Saint, Patron of the Deceas'd; then 4 Virgins that are neareſt of Kin to the Deceas'd, who make mournful Lamentations; next comes the Body, carried by 6 Men upon their Shoulders; but if a Monk, he is carried by thoſe of his own Profeſſion: The Corps is ſurrounded by Prieſts, who burn Incenſe, to keep off evil Spirits. When they come to the Grave, the Coffin is uncover'd: The Widow ſtill asks the Former Queſtions; and the Prieſt, with an Image in his Hand, repeats often theſe Words, *Lord, look upon this Soul in Righteouſneſs*. The Friends take their Leave, by kiſſing the Corps or Coffin; then the Prieſt puts a Piece of Paper betwixt his Fingers, which is his Paſs to the other World, certifying St. *Peter*, That upon ſeeing this, he may open the Gates of Heaven to him. The Certificate is ſign'd by the Metropolitan or Patriarch, and Confeſſor: It ſhews, That the Bearer has behav'd himſelf like a good Chriſtian of the *Greek* Religion, and that he was abſolv'd of his Sins; then the Coffin is put in the Grave; after which, the Friends drown their Sorrow in good Liquor. Prayers are made for the Deceas'd 40 Days, at which Time the *Muſcovites* believe their Sins are expiated.

Of their CLERGY.

THE Patriarch is oblig'd to reſide conſtantly at *Moſcow*: He is next in Dignity to the Czar, who leads his Horſe by the Head at the Proceſſion on *Palm-ſunday*. He determines all Eccleſiaſtical Affairs, wears a long black Robe, and always has a Croſs carried before him. They have 4 Metropolitans, and 7 Biſhops, who dare not reſide in their Dioceſes, becauſe the Czar is jealous leſt they ſhould excite the People to Rebellion. Next to them are the Prieſts, call'd by them Popes, or *Papa's*. No other Qualification is requiſite for this Office, but ſome ſmall Skill in Reading, Writing and Singing. As a Badge of their Office, a *Calot*, or Cap, is put upon their Heads at their Conſecration, and they are obliged to wear it while they are Prieſts. When Laymen deſign to beat a Clergyman, they firſt ſecure his Calot, beat him to purpoſe, and then put it on again. The Prieſts bleſs the People as they paſs along the Streets with the Sign of the Croſs. This Country ſwarms with Monks.

The Biſhops live upon Tithes; but the Prieſts have no other Maintenance except what private Perſons think fit to beſtow upon them; yet by what they get at Baptiſms, Marriages, Burials, by Prayers for the Dead, or upon People's undertaking any Journey, and by bleſſing of Houſes, they obtain a competent Livelihood.

Of

Digitized by Google

The Czar's TITLES, *from* Ysbrant Ides's *Dedication of his Travels to his Czariſh Majeſty.*

THE moſt Serene and moſt Potent Sovereign Czar, and Great Prince *Peter Alexewitz*, by the Grace of God, Emperor of the *Whole, Great, Little,* and *White Ruſſia*, Monarch of *Moſcow, Kiow, Wolodimer*, and *Novogorod*, Czar of *Caſan*, Czar of *Aſtracan*, Czar of *Sibiria, Dawr, Samoiedia*, Lord of *Pleiskow*, Great Duke of *Smolenſko, Twere, Jugoria, Permia, Wiatka, Bulgaria*, &c. Lord and Great Prince of *Novogorod*, of the *Nederigen* Countries, *Czernikow, Rezan, Poloſko, Roſtkow, Jarollaw, Bigla-Ozara, Udoria, Obdoria, Condoria*, and of the whole *North Sea*, Commander and Lord of the *Iwerſkian* Countries, the *Kartalinſkian, Gruſinſkian Czars, the Kabardinſkian* Dominions, the *Czarkaſſian* and *Gorſkian* Princes, and many other Countries and Territories Eaſt, Weſt, and North, the Inheritance of his Anceſtors.

Thoſe who treat with his Ambaſſadors, have the greateſt Trouble in the World to give him his Titles, becauſe of his extraordinary Pretenſions. In 1654, to give ſome Colour to his making War upon *Poland*, and to aſſiſt the *Coſacks*, the Czar pretended that ſome of the *Poliſh* Lords had not given him his due Titles, and that they had printed Books in *Poland* in Derogation of his Honour. One of his Predeceſſors was ſo cruel, that he caus'd the Hat of a *French* Ambaſſador to be nail'd to his Head, becauſe he refus'd to be uncover'd in his Preſence.

Of the Czar, *and his Method of Government.*

THE *Moſcovites* have a great Reverence and Regard to the Czar, and look upon his Will as the Will of Heaven. They call him *God Almighty's Chamberlain*, ſo that it is a Proverb among them, *God only knows it, and the Great Duke.* Perſons of the chief Rank in the Empire approach him with the ſame Reverence they do God. If he gives them the leaſt Mark of his Diſpleaſure, they are ready to expiate their Faults with the Loſs of their Lives. He is Arbitrary in all Parts of his Government, and abſolute Lord of the Lives and Eſtates of his Subjects.

His REVENUES.

1. THE Crown-Lands are 136 Towns with their Territories, of which ſome pay Money, and others Corn and Proviſions: This being more than is ſpent in his Houſhold, the Surplus is ſold at 230000 Rubles *per Ann.* a Ruble being a Mark Sterling; and commonly pays his Servants 2. An Impoſition upon every Meaſure of Grain that grows in the Kingdom, and a Tax on every Town and Precinct, which is commonly 400000 Rubles *per Ann.* 3. The Cuſtoms, which riſe or fall according to Trade; thoſe of *Archangel* amount ſometimes to 600000 Rubles *per Annum*, and the Cuſtoms of other Towns to about 340000. Theſe are levied by the Court of the *Great Income*, which alſo levies the Tax on Bath-Stoves and Publick-Houſes. There are 3 in *Novogorod*, which pay 4000 Rubles *per Annum*; and it is ſaid, there are 1000 ſuch in the Empire, which pay the like in Proportion. They collect alſo 10 *per Cent.* upon thoſe that are caſt in Law-Suits, and an Impoſt for every Name contain'd in Writs that paſs out of the Courts, amounting commonly to 3000 Rubles *per Ann.* 4. The Half of Felons Goods, the other Half going to the Judge and Informer. 5. Rents of Lands, allow'd for maintaining Soldiers. Theſe Branches of the Revenue abovemention'd were ſometimes reckon'd to bring in 1400000 Rubles *per Annum*. 6. The Monopoly of *Caviare, Iſinglaſs*, and Fiſhing, for which he pays the Labourers, and ſometimes farms the fiſhing of Rivers and Lakes. 7. By Furs from all Parts of his Dominions, which he ſells by his Merchants, and no other muſt ſell till all his be diſpoſed of; ſo that he rates them as he pleaſes. 8. The Preemption of all Goods that come to his Country, which he ſells as he thinks fit. He generally purchaſes with his own Commodities, and ſeldom ſuffers Gold or Silver to be carried out of his Dominions. 9. Sables, the beſt Trade of his Country, are all his own, as Tribute, or purchas'd by him at a ſmall ſet Rate. 10. Five *per Cent.* of all Goods exported and imported.

Digitized by Google

His Expences are answerable to his Revenues, his Family being at least 1000 Persons, besides 16000 Muſquetiers, and 5000 Horſe, for his Guards, and 100000 Men in Gariſons. His Table conſiſts uſually of 50 Diſhes. He defrays the Charges of all Ambaſſadors from their entring his Country till they go out.

The vaſt Extent of his Dominions, his unlimited Power, and the Splendour of his Court, make ſuch Impreſſions upon his Subjects, that they glory in their Chains, and deſpiſe all other Nations. 'Tis common to hear them ſay, *I have had, or ſhall have, the Honour of ſeeing the bright Eyes of his Czariſh Majeſty.*

His tyrannical Government is ſupported by the following Methods: 1. His Subjects are not allowed to travel, leſt having ſeen and taſted Liberty abroad, they ſhould not reliſh Slavery at home. 2. The Czar never marries a Foreign Princeſs, for fear ſhe ſhould introduce Cuſtoms deſtructive to his abſolute Power. 3. Their Ignorance contributes much to this, for they know nothing of the Foundations of Government, and the Privileges of Human Nature.

The famous Tyrant *John Baſilowitz* was the firſt Inventer of the Czar's Arms, in Imitation of the *German* Emperors: He bears a Spread-Eagle, but the Wings ſomewhat leſs than the Imperial Eagle, having on the Breaſt, in an Eſcutcheon, one on Horſeback fighting with a Dragon, repreſenting St. *Michael*, or rather St. *George*. Above and between the Eagles-Heads, are 3 Crowns, ſignifying *Muſcovy*, and the two *Tartarian* Kingdoms, *Aſtracan* and *Caſan*.

Their POLICY.

THE Czar himſelf beſtows all Places of Honour and Profit on whom he pleaſes. This breeds a Dependance on him, that he may oblige more of his Subjects, and hinder them from growing too powerful. No Governor is to keep his Poſt above 3 Years. Tho' the Czar may, yet he ſeldom takes the Lands of Fathers from their Children. Dr. *Fletcher* ſays, They paſs their Lands by Deſcent of Inheritance to which of their Sons they pleaſe, and commonly after our Gavel kind, and diſpoſe of their Goods by Gift or Teſtament, without any Controul: Yet they pay the Czar an Acknowledgment after the Nature of an Herriot or Releef.

Their LAWS.

NO Law of any Conſequence is determined without the Approbation of the Czar: The Chief Juſtice receives Appeals from all Places, and acquaints his Majeſty with them. In 1647, the Czar, with the Advice of his Counſellors, publiſh'd a Code, containing the Laws the Judges were to obſerve in all their Sentences, which are printed in Folio, by the Title of, *Soborna Uloſſenia*, or Univerſal Right. The Czar makes Peace or War, and ſends Ambaſſadors ordinarily of the richeſt of his *Boiars*, who are able to bear their own Charge. When they are recall'd, he takes to himſelf what he pleaſes of the Preſents that are given them. When extraordinary Laws or Conſtitutions are to be made, the Czar ſummons a Meeting of the Clergy, and ſuch of the Nobility as he pleaſes. One of the Secretaries propoſes the Matters that are to paſs into Acts; the Clergy are firſt aſk'd their Opinions: If all agree, the Propoſals paſs into a Law. When the Czar conſents, the Secretaries draw them up into the Form of a Proclamation, and ſend them to the great Cities, with Charge to the Governors to ſee them obſerv'd.

The Great COUNCIL.

THE Czar gives the Title of Counſellors to many that never come to Council. Thoſe that belong to the Council, are called *Dumney-Boyaren*, and are ſuch as the Czar pleaſes to call. The Great Officers of State belong to this Council. He has alſo his Privy-Council, who for the moſt part rather conſent and approve of the Czar's Reſolves, than argue or give their Opinion. The Patriarch's Advice is aſk'd in Matters of Conſequence.

Particular COUNCILS.

THE Principal Councils are ſix; the firſt is for Ambaſſadors, and Foreign Affairs; the 2d for Matters of War; the 3d for the Revenues of the Crown; the 4th for Trade and Merchandize; the 5th for Determination

Digitized by Google

tion of Civil Affairs among themſelves; the 6th for Criminal Matters. Every Province is aſſign'd to a certain Council. They uſe Tortures if the Criminal deny the Fact. Oaths there are perform'd in the Church, by kiſſing a Croſs; but ſuch as ſwear thus frequently, become infamous, are prohibited Entrance into the Church, and Perſons of Condition will not converſe with them. Falſe Swearing, and frequent ſolemn Oaths, are very ſcandalous here.

Their PUNISHMENTS.

A Robber is broke on the Wheel; a Sacrilegious Perſon impal'd; a Traytor and Servant that murthers his Maſter, beheaded: Thoſe in Debt, are kept Priſoners to the Time appointed for paying the Debt: If they fail then, they are every Day brought into the Court, and beat for an Hour upon the *Shins* and the Calves of their Legs, ſent back to Priſon againſt Night, and ſo on till the Debt be paid; but if they be unable to pay it, they are made Slaves to the Creditor.

OFFICERS *of* STATE.

1. THE Chancellor preſides in the Office of Ambaſſadors, preſents Petitions to the Czar, and returns the Anſwer, which muſt be in the Czar's own Words. 2. The Treaſurer, takes Care of the Revenue. 3. The Conſtable, who looks after Military Affairs. 4. The Maſter of the Horſe, who, beſides commanding the Czar's Guards, overſees his Stables. 5. The Chief Juſtice, who is always preſent with the Czar.

Inferior MAGISTRATES.

IN all great Frontier Cities, they have Weywodes, who are Governors of great Quality and Experience. In leſſer Cities, the Czar appoints Governors, by delivering them, as a Badge of their Power, a Staff, which at their Return they reſtore to him again.

Of their COIN.

THeir Coin is Silver only, and of an Oval Figure: (No Gold is coin'd here, except Medals upon extraordinary Occaſions) It is very ſmall, ſo that the biggeſt Piece, called a *Copee* or *Deening*, is worth no more than a Penny. This Money is very troubleſome, by reaſon of its Smalneſs: 'Tis mark'd with the Arms of *Muſcovy*, and has on the other Side the Name of the Reigning Czar, and of the City where it was coin'd. Four Cities only enjoy this Privilege, *viz. Moſcow*, *Novogorod*, *Twere*, and *Pleskow*. Rix-Dollars of all ſorts, *Joachim* Dollars, and *Spaniſh* Reals, paſs current in *Muſcovy*.

Of their NOBILITY.

THE Nobility were formerly younger Branches of the Royal Family, and had great Power; but ſince the Days of *Ivan Baſilowick*, they have been mortified and kept under. Now the chief Degree of Nobility is that of the *Boiars*, or *Boiarens*, who are of the Emperor's Council, and delight in having great Bellies, as generally all *Muſcovites* have; by tying their Belts below their Bellies. They who have born any Office in War, as General, Governor, *&c.* leave ſomething of Title to their Poſterity. They alſo carry a Kettle-Drum at the Pummel of their Saddles, and beat with the End of their Whip, to make Way for them in Crouds in the Streets; and in Wars, to give Notice of Marching, Halting, or the like: The firſt that bears the Command, beats, and all the reſt anſwer him. The Czar obliges them to conſtant Attendance at Court, leſt they ſhould foment Inſurrections among the Subjects.

Of their MILITARY DISCIPLINE.

IN Field-Battles and Sieges, they were formerly reckon'd nothing, being ſoon brought into Confuſion; ſo that they own'd other Nations were their Maſters in this Point: But they defend a Fortreſs to the utmoſt, not only becauſe they are able to undergo Hardſhips of all Sorts, but becauſe they know it is preſent Death for them if they return home, after they have ſurrendred a Fortreſs by Capitulation; ſo that their Women ſometimes fight ſtoutly upon the Works, and defend Breaches. They endeavour now to bring the Soldiers under better Diſcipline; for which End they

Digitized by Google

make uſe of a great many *Scots* and *German* Officers, who inſtruct them in all the War-like Exerciſes that are practis'd by other *European* Nations. The Martial Genius of the preſent Czar has accuſtomed them more to the Uſe of Arms, than any of his Predeceſſors. He has alſo improv'd their Naval Affairs. They fight beſt under the Command of Strangers. They have four Potent Enemies, the *Turks*, *Tartars*, *Polanders*, and *Swedes*. The Czar maintains 16000 *Strolitzes*, or Guards, and 4 or 5000 Foot, in the City of *Moſcow*, and 100000 Men upon the Frontiers. He has alſo a Militia, who are to rendezvous and march as he ſhall command them. They are maintain'd by a great Part of the Empire, let out to thoſe call'd *Sinabaieresky*, on Condition that they themſelves, their Sons and Farmers, ſhall ſerve him with Horſe and Arms at their own Chage in the Wars. All their Sons are *Sinbeiars*, or Gentlemen, and as ſoon as able to bear Arms, enter themſelves in the Great Conſtable's Office, petition for Maintenance, and are frequently put into mean Employments, till they can be better provided. When the Empeſor makes War in Perſon, he has a ſelect Guard of 15000 Horſe, who have from 12 to 70 Rubles *per Annum* each, according to their Degree, beſides their Lands. His Nobles and Officers maintain alſo 60000 Horſe at their own Charge, who Muſter once a Year on the Borders of *Tartary*: So that beſides 200000 Men in Garriſon, he has 300000 Horſe ready on all Occaſions. Their Foot have a Gun, a Sword, and an Ax behind them: Their Horſe have Helmets, Corſlets, Bows, Arrows, Iron Maſſes, Scymeters, Targets, Lances; and now they have Fire-Arms. They had formerly a great Drum, carry'd upon 4 Horſes, faſten'd together, and 8 Men to beat it. They had in their Wars with the *Tartars* a double Wall, or Fortification of thick Pales, ſo contriv'd, that it might in a ſhort Time be ſet up 7 Miles in length, with Holes for their Muſquets to fire through. This defended them from the Arrows of the *Tartars*, who had no Fire-Arms. Hiſtory informs us, That in ſome Invaſions, the *Tartars* have carried off 400000 Captives from that Country.

Of their HISTORY.

ALL that we can be inform'd of as to this vaſt Monarchy, is, That it was formerly divided into ſeveral Principalities and Governments; which being united, brought it to its preſent Bulk. As to the Origine of their governing Families, Authors are at an Uncertainty; ſome derive their firſt Governors from *Beala*, a King of *Hungary*; and 'tis certain, their Imperial Family bore that Name. Queen *Olga*, one of them, went to *Conſtantinople* in 876, where ſhe embrac'd Chriſtianity, brought it into *Ruſſia*, and is now one of their Saints. They keep her Anniverſary on the 11th of *July*. To her ſucceeded ſeveral other Princes; but the firſt, of whom we have any Certainty, is, Prince *Woladimer*, who, in 988, married *Anna*, the Siſter of *Baſilius Porphyrogeneta*, introduc'd the Chriſtian Religion into this unpoliſh'd Nation, was baptized at *Conſtantinople*, in the Preſence of the two Emperors, and nam'd *Baſil*. Their Hiſtory is very confus'd after this; till they became a Prey to the *Tartars*, when their Prince *George* was defeated by the *Tartarian* King *Batte* in 1223. The whole Country was miſerably enſlav'd, and burden'd with an inſupportable Tribute for about 300 Years. This *Batte* impos'd very hard Terms on the *Moſcovites*, *viz.* That the *Tartars* ſhould chuſe from Time to Time the Princes of *Muſcovy*; That when the *Tartars* ſent an Ambaſſador, the Prince ſhould go to meet and wait upon him on Foot, offering the Ambaſſador a Platter of Mare's-Milk; That if the Ambaſſador let any of the Milk fall upon the Mane of his Horſe, the Prince of *Muſcovy* ſhould lick it up; and that he ſhould be bare Headed, and give the *Tartarian* Ambaſſador's Horſe his Provender out of his Cap. But the hardeſt of all was, That the *Tartars* had a Houſe and Guard in the Caſtle of *Moſcow*. But in 1450, *John*, the Son of *Baſilius the Blind*, became their Deliverer, and erected the numerous ſcatter'd Provinces into a great Principality. After a bloody War with the Great Maſter of the *Teutonick* Order in *Livonia*, he made a Truce with him for 50 Years. He ſubdued the Dukes of

of *Tver* and *Great Novogorod*, in which City it is ſaid he got a Booty of 300 Cart-load of Gold and Silver: He built *Ivanogorod*, a Caſtle near *Narva*. In 1509, his Son *Baſilius* took *Pleskow* from the *Poles*: He afterwards took *Smolensko*; but was beat by the *Caſan Tartars*, who at the ſame time ranſack'd the City of *Moſcow*. His Succeſſor was his Son, *John Baſilowitz*, or *Baſilides*, who rais'd the Empire of *Muſcovy* to its Height, ſubdued the Kingdoms of *Caſan* and *Aſtracan*, which alarm'd his Neighbours, eſpecially *Selimus*, the Emperor of the *Turks*, who in 1569 ſent 340000 Men to recover *Aſtracan*, which was bravely defended by *Serebrine*, the *Muſcovite* General: So that this vaſt Army was partly by their unſucceſsful Rencounters with him, and chiefly for Want of Proviſions, for moſt part conſum'd, and the remainder of them was caſt away in the *Black Sea* as they return'd; ſo that few of them eſcap'd. He alſo obtain'd a Victory over the Maſter of the *Teutonick* Order, *William Von Furſtenbourg*, whom he took, and ſuffer'd to periſh in a miſerable Priſon; which was the Occaſion that the City of *Revel*, and all *Eſtein*, ſurrender'd themſelves to *Sweden*, as the reſt of *Livonia* did to *Poland*. He was at firſt victorious over the *Poles*; but afterwards *Stephen Batori* took *Plotzko*, and ſeveral other Places, from him. He died in 1584, and was one of the moſt cruel Tyrants that ever liv'd. To him ſucceeded his Son *Theodore Juanowitz*, a mild and ſimple Prince, againſt whom the *Swedes* wag'd War about *Ingermanland*. He left the Nation involv'd in grievous Troubles.

This *Theodore*, who was the laſt of the Houſe of *Baala*, dying without Iſſue, his Siſter's Husband, *Boris Gudenow*, did, by his clandeſtine and unwarrantable Intrigues, obtain the Empire, but reign'd with very indifferent Succeſs. Before he was Emperor, by his covetous and oppreſſive Practices, he had gathered together an Eſtate of 93700 Rubles *per Annum*; upon which, and other Accounts, many did afterwards favour the falſe *Demetrius*. After his Death, his Son *Fedor Boriſſowitz* took the Title of *Grand Duke*, when the Impoſtor *Demetrius* (whoſe true Name was *Gregorius Uttrepeja*) perſonated his murther'd Brother *Demetrius*, and carried the Matter ſo far, thro' the Aſſiſtance of *Poland*, that he took *Fedor* Priſoner, and cauſing him to be ſtrangled, proclaim'd himſelf Czar, *July* 29. 1605. And the better to eſtabliſh himſelf by Foreign Alliances, he married *Maria*, the Daughter of *George Minzack*, Weywode of *Sendomir*, ſoon after. This alienated the Affections of the *Muſcovites*, becauſe by this Alliance they thought he deſign'd to bring in Popery: And they likewiſe ſuſpected him of being an Impoſtor, becauſe he did not conform himſelf to their Cuſtoms of ſleeping after Dinner, *&c.* So that a few Days after, *Baſilius Ivanowitz Zuski*, (a *Ruſſian* Prince, of the Royal Family by the Mother's Side) with 20000 Men, ſurpriz'd and cut in pieces the Bridegroom, impriſon'd the Bride, with ſeveral of the Nobility, and was proclaim'd Czar, *June* 1. 1606. but ſoon after was oppos'd by another Counterfeit *Demetrius*, (*Gregorius Schacopski*, formerly Secretary of *Moſcow*) who pretended to be *Demetrius*: That he had eſcap'd from *Baſilius*, inſtead of being kill'd, as the other reported, and claim'd his impriſon'd Wife. All theſe Diviſions were fomented by *Charles* IX. King of *Sweden*, who at length offer'd his Aſſiſtance againſt the ſecond *Demetrius*. *Zuski* at firſt refus'd to accept it; but when the other began to grow powerful, he earneſtly deſir'd it, and promiſing to deliver *Keckholm* to *Charles* as an Acknowledgment, purſuant to his Requeſt, the King ſent to his Aſſiſtance *Pontus de la Gardie*, with ſome Thouſands of Men, that were very ſerviceable to the *Muſcovites*; who refuſing, upon ſeveral frivolous Evaſions, to deliver up the Places ſtipulated to *Charles*, he took them by Force, and by ſo doing, annex'd *Carelia*, and the reſt of *Ingermanland*, to the Kingdom of *Sweden*. Then the *Swedes* were defeated by the *Poles* near *Cluſin*; the Effects of which were the depoſing of *Zuski*, whom they ſhav'd, and ſhut up in a Monaſtery, and offer'd the Crown of *Muſcovy* to *Uladiſlaus*, the Prince of *Poland*, who accepted it, on Condition of delivering up *Zuski*. Soon after this, the *Poliſh* Army being admitted into the City, they quarrell'd with the Inhabitants, and in diſpight of their General plunder'd and burnt it; at which Time 200000 Perſons periſh'd, the Treaſury was pillag'd, and the Wealth of the Emperor was divided amongſt the

Poles.

Digitized by Google

Poles. In this miserable Condition, a *Muscovite* Butcher gave out among the People, That if they could find an honest Treasurer, they would soon get good Officers and Soldiers of their own Nation to recover their Country. The People laying hold of this, bid him name a General; and accordingly he nam'd a very worthy, but mean Gentleman, whom they approv'd, and made himself Treasurer. They paid him all that was in Arrear to the Emperor, and what else they could, with which he rais'd an Army, attack'd the *Poles*, and forc'd them to leave the Country. After this, the Nobility chose *Michael Feodorowitz*, (the Son of *Feodor Mikilowitz*, the Patriarch of *Moscow*) Nephew to the Tyrant *John Basilides*, who, by his Accession to the Throne, began the Race of *Alexiewitz*, the present Royal Family: He began to Reign in 1613: and by making Peace with *Sweden* and *Poland*, and a long Reign of 33 Years, he settled the Country in a prosperous Condition. He was succeeded by his Son *Alexius Michaelowitz*, who, in 1653, falling upon the *Poles*, took from them *Smolensko* and *Kiow*, and committed great Depredations in *Lithuania*. Then invading *Livonia*, he took *Dorpt*, *Kokenhusen*, and several other Places of less Note; but was oblig'd to raise the Siege of *Riga* with great Loss. Soon after a Peace ensu'd, by which he restor'd to the *Swedes* all the Places he had taken from them. In 1669, one *Stephen Ratzin*, a Seditious Rebel, disturb'd the Repose of his Government, and made him very uneasy; for having master'd *Casan* and *Astracan*, he committed great Depredations all over *Muscovy*, till at last he was taken, and brought to condign Punishment; upon which all the Countries he had overrun return'd to their Obedience. Soon after this, many of the *Cossacks* submitted themselves to the Protection of *Alexius*, who was thereby engag'd in a War with the *Turks*; but not to his Advantage. He died in 1675, leaving his Empire to his Son *Theodore Alexowitz*, a sickly Prince, who was succeeded in 1682 by his Brother *Peter Alexiowitz*, the present Czar, who govern'd in Conjunction with him before, and narrowly escap'd the treacherous Designs of his Sisters *Sophia* and *Maria*, with their Confederate *G. Galtzin*. He at present sways the Scepter alone, and vigorously endeavours, as much as possible, to polish his rude Subjects, by Introduction of Learning and Arts among them.

Their LANGUAGE.

THeir Language has nothing common with the *Greek*, but comes so near to the *Sclavonian* and *Polish*, that whoever knows the one, may understand the other.

A SUPPLEMENT, *from the Travels of the Baron* de Mayerberg, *the Emperor's Ambassador into* Muscovy, *Printed at* Leyden *in* 1688.

Of their MANNERS.

HE says, there is great Impurity of Crimes among 'em, and that prodigious Villanies are not punish'd there according to Merit. He gives an Instance of a Criminal, who was apprehended in the very Act of Sacrilege; and, when brought before a Judge, he frankly own'd the Fact, and without the least Concern laid the Blame upon the Infirmity of Human Nature, and told, that a Priest was his Accomplice. He also own'd what he had done; upon which he was sent to a Monastery, to bolt Flower for 6 Weeks; and after that, when he said *Gospodi* for some Time, he was absolv'd. The other Fellow was deliver'd to his Master, who was oblig'd to pay the Value of what he had stole.

The Czar washes his Hands after he has saluted Ambassadors of the Popish Religion, because he looks upon them as Pagans, and thinks the Touch of them defiles him.

The *Muscovites*, from their Cradles, are so addicted to Lying, that it is not safe to trust any of them. Not only the Boors and meaner sort are addicted to this Vice, but their Ministers of State. They maintain one Lie with a Hundred; and if they happen to be convicted, they don't blush at it, but smile, as if they had done some worthy Action.

The People drink in Publick-Houses till their Money is gone, and frequently sell all their

Digitized by Google

their Clothes to pay their Reckoning. Their Prieſts outdo the People in Drunkenneſs. It is very ordinary for them, when drunk, to wallow in a Kennel, and then Hackney-Carmen or Coachmen carry them off to ſome By-way, and rob them.

Their People of Note have many Servants, but are at ſmall Charge for their Maintenance or Cloathing. Their Drink is Water, unleſs on ſome Holiday, when they mix a little Leaven with it. They have no Wages, becauſe they are for the moſt part either Slaves, or the Sons of Slaves. They are much inclin'd to Drunkenneſs, and ſet Fire to Houſes, that in the Time of the Hurry and Confuſion they may have Occaſion to rob; and frequently the Guards or Watch go Shares with them in their Robberies and Murthers by Night; ſo that every Morning almoſt the Corps of murther'd People are found in the Streets.

Their Beggars ordinarily ſteal Children, break their Arms and Legs, and ſometimes dig out their Eyes, to move the People to Compaſſion, by pretending they were born ſo. Their uſual Stile of begging is, *For the Sake of God, and the Great Duke.*

The greateſt Part of their Knowledge of the Affairs of *Europe* comes from *Pruſſian* or *Dutch* Gazets, which Merchants bring ſometimes to *Moſcow*; and they implicitely believe them as Articles of Faith. Sometimes they uſe this Method to know the Secrets of State of Foreign Kingdoms. When they take any Priſoners, tho' but common Soldiers, they threaten to torture them, if they will not diſcover the preſent State of Affairs in the Countries they belong to; tho' poor Souls they know nothing of the Matter themſelves; but underſtanding the Simplicity of the *Muſcovites*, they tell them any thing they know will pleaſe them. When their Affairs are proſperous, they are unſufferably inſolent; but when otherwiſe, they are as much dejected; which makes the Negociations at the Czar's Court very troubleſome and uncertain.

No Man is advanc'd to any Buſineſs or Command in the Army for Merit and Abilities, but on Account of his Birth, how inſufficient ſoever for the Poſt. This damps all Courage and Bravery in the Vulgar, becauſe they have no Hopes of raiſing their Fortune.

Foreign Ambaſſador are in effect Priſoners here; all Commerce with their Acquaintance by Letters is forbid, and the Letters from their Maſters to them are intercepted.

Of their WOMEN.

THey have more Monaſteries for divorc'd Wives than for Maids. The Carriage of both is very ſcandalous; for after their *Matins*, they walk abroad, and having no Guardians of their Chaſtity, upon the firſt Temptation they comply with any lewd Propoſal, and gratify their own vicious Inclinations.

The Women have not that Regard and Reſpect paid them here as in moſt other Nations of *Europe*. No Man here will undervalue his Sex ſo much as to bow to any Woman, of what Quality ſoever. There is nothing heard in *Muſcovy* of admiring the Female Sex, or of adoring their Divine Beauty and Charms; for they are not liberal in beſtowing Incenſe of that ſort.

The Czar's Siſters and Daughters are for moſt part ſhut up in Monaſteries, or in the Palace, where they are forc'd to continue in Virginity. The Reaſon is, becauſe the Czar will not marry them to any Prince that is not of their Faith, for all ſuch they reckon Pagans, and all the Children begot of ſuch Marriages they think Baſtards. Neither are they allow'd to marry any Subjects, for they are accounted the Czar's Slaves.

The *Muſcovite* Women are not aſham'd to be ſeen naked by Men when in the Bath, and very often go naked into the ſame Bath with them.

The Czar does not ſuffer his Wife, Sons or Daughters, to eat with him; nor are his Wife, Siſters and Daughters, ſeen by any. Tho' he has above 1000 Courtiers, yet ſcarce any one of them ever ſee them. If the Grand Dutcheſs be ſick, when a Phyſician comes into the Room, the Windows are all ſhut, that he may not ſee her. If he wants to feel her Pulſe, ſhe holds out her Arm, cover'd with a Veil of fine Silk.

Of

Of their RELIGION.

ON *Wednesdays* and *Fridays* they abſtain from Eggs, Fleſh and Milk. Some of the more Religious will not on thoſe Days uſe refin'd Sugar, becauſe they are inform'd that it is purified with the White of an Egg.

The Week after *Eaſter*, they abandon themſelves to all ſorts of Riots and Extravagancies, and commit the maddeſt and moſt fooliſh Things imaginable. All Buſineſs is then at a ſtand, their Shops are ſhut; but the Taverns, Publick-Houſes, and Stews, are open. The Air reſounds with their confus'd Cries; and when they meet one another, one ſays, *Chriſt is riſen again*; and the other anſwers, *He is certainly riſen.* The Prieſts have their large Share in the Debaucheries of that Time: They have a young Man who goes before them with a Crucifix. They viſit their Friends and Acquaintance, and are ſure to be drunk. Their Bells toll Day and Night, for they are perſwaded that it contributes to the Eaſe and Comfort of the Souls of their deceas'd Friends.

Their Prieſts account all thoſe Pagans who are not of the *Muſcovite* Faith. A Curate, ſays the Ambaſſador, refus'd to give us his Hand, leſt by touching us he ſhould be defil'd. None of their Boors, and but very few of their Citizens or Monks, can repeat the *Lord's-Prayer*.

When a *Muſcovite* enters a Room, he takes no Notice of the Company, but looks about till he perceives an Image; then he bows to it three times, makes the Sign of the Croſs, and afterwards ſalutes the Company. If any be found worſhipping ſecretly an Image erected at the Charge of another, the Owner upbraids him with Injuſtice, in deſigning to have a Share in the Favour of that Image, which is only due to the Proprietor; and they are often oblig'd, by way of Puniſhment, to pay the Owner ſome Part of the Money he has laid out for the Image.

When a Man is excommunicated by the Church, his Saint muſt alſo partake of the Diſgrace, and is allow'd no Place in the Church till the Man be reſtor'd to Communion, and then the Image is replac'd. Our Landlord, ſays the Ambaſſador, took all the Images out of our Rooms, for fear they ſhould be provoked, if he ſuffer'd them to lodge with Pagans.

They allow no Preachers, leſt they ſhould teach the People Hereſie. They are oblig'd to confeſs before they receive the Sacrament, but are ſure to conceal their greateſt Sins.

Many of the *Muſcovites* are not call'd by the Names they receiv'd in Baptiſm, for their Parents conceal their true Names, and give them others, leſt Magicians, or other wicked Perſons, knowing their true Names, ſhould make uſe of them to their Ruine.

Of the RIVERS *of* Muſcovy.

Ptolmy ſays, the *Rha* is the greateſt River of *Sarmatia Aſiatica*, and has its Riſe in *European Sarmatia*. The *Muſcovites* now call it *Wolga*: the *Tartars*, *Edel*; the *Armenians*, *Thamar*. Its Source is in the Province of *Reſchow*, from the Lake *Fornow* in the Forreſt of *Volkonk*. Out of this Lake runs a ſmall River, which, after a Courſe of 8 *Engliſh* Miles, falls into a Lake call'd *Volga*, with which it joins its Waters for 30 *Engliſh* Miles, comes out greater than it enter'd, and has the Name of *Volga* from that Lake: Then it runs E. and waters *Jeroſlaw* and *Niſi-Novogorod*, where the *Occa* falls into it: It alſo runs by *Caſan*. A little lower, the great River *Koma*, that divides *Europe* from *Aſia*, falls into it. Then its Courſe is S. till it reach *Samara*, and runs S. W. to the City *Saratoff*. Then it runs S. and waters *Zarina* and *Aſtracan*. The *Volga* there is 2216 Foot broad. Twelve Leagues below this, it falls into the *Caſpian* Sea, by 25 Mouths, in Lat. 46. Long. 76 ½. and makes it leſs brackiſh for many Leagues. From its Source to the *Caſpian* Sea, it runs 2900 Miles.

Occa. The Source of this River is not far from the Borders of the *Precopian Tartars*, about Lat. 49. It runs N. till it comes to *Kolm*, in Lat. 55. and Long. 56. Then it turns E. and waters *Roſan*, *Caſigored*, and *Niſi-Novogorod*, where it falls into the *Volga*, in Long. 64.

Duina, ſignifies in the *Ruſſian* Language Two, from two Rivers of which it is made up,

Digitized by Google

up, *viz.* *Suchina* and *Juga*: The firſt riſes in the Province of *Vologda*, and waters the City of that Name; then it runs N. to the City *Uſtiugh*, where the *Juga* falls into it, whoſe Courſe is from S. E. to N.W. At this Place it is call'd *Duina*, from the Conflux of thoſe two Rivers. A little lower fall into it the River *Wizegda*, whoſe Courſe is from N. E. to S. W. the *Waga*, that runs from S.W. to N. E. and the *Pinega*, that runs from E. to W. Then it waters *Archangel*, and falls below it into the *White Sea*, in Lat. 64½. and Long. 58.

Oby. *Ptolomy*, and others of the Ancients, call'd it *Corambucis*; and their Iſland *Corambyce* is now call'd *Nova-Zembla*. It has its Source from the Lake *Oſero-Kankiſan*, in Lat. 48. and Long. 95. and runs from S. W. to N. W. 'Tis the moſt conſiderable River in *Siberia*. In ſome Places 'tis half a League, and in other Places a whole League broad. This River has many Cataracts, which makes the Navigation of it very troubleſome. Many great Rivers fall into it, as the *Keta*, which riſes in Lat. 51. and Long. 98. It runs N. to *Makoſikoi*, in Lat. 56. and Long. 97. From thence it takes its Courſe W. and falls into the *Oby* at *Keetskoi*, in Lat. 55. and Long. 90. This River has Plenty of Fiſh, and walhes conſiderable Towns, as *Tomsko*, *Narum*, *Surgut*, *Kozkoſa*, and *Bereſowa*. It falls into the *Icy-Sea* by ſix Mouths, in Lat. 68. and Long. 83. The Way by this River to the Sea is ſeldom paſſable, becauſe of the Mountains of Ice that for moſt part choak up the Mouth of it.

Irtu, has its Riſe from the Lake *Oſero-Suſan*, about Lat. 46. and Long. 92. It runs from the S. to the N. W. till it joins with the *Tobol*: From thence, till it falls into the *Oby*, it runs N. E. Its whole S. E. Shore is all high Hills, on which grow ſome Cedars. The N. W. Shore is low Paſture Ground; and on this Side there's a prodigious Number of great Black Bears, Wolves, Red and Grey Foxes. It falls into the *Oby* N. from *Samaroſikoy*, in Lat. 64. and Long. 84. *Tura*, *Tobolika*, and *Samaroſikoy*, are ſeated on this River.

Tobol, has its Source in Lat. 51. and Long. 80½. It runs N. W. till it joins with the River *Tura*, near *Tumeen*: Then it takes its Courſe N. E. till it falls into the *Irtis* at *Tobliko*, in Lat. 56½. and Long. 81.

Jeniſia, riſes out of the *Kalmachian* Mountains, in the S. of *Tartary*, in Lat. 40. Long. 101. and runs N. almoſt in a ſtraight Line to the *Icy-Sea*. The Water of this River is white and light; but it does not much abound in Fiſh. It falls into the *Icy-Sea* in Lat. 70. and Long. 92. None have travelled further, either by Water or Land, than to the River *Tarſida*, on the E. of *Jeniſia*, becauſe Ice from the Sea drives into it, and makes it utterly unnavigable. Moſt of the Inhabitants between *Tarſida* and *Jeniſia* are *Samoiedes*, and *Tunguzian Tartars*. Three very fine Rivers fall into the *Jeniſia*, which are, the *Werguaja-Tunguska*, *Podkamenna Tunguſk*, and *Niſnaja-Tunguska*; on all which dwell great Numbers of a barbarous wild ſort of *Tunguzians*, which may be ranked with the *Samoiedes*; but are of a leſs Size, and weaker.

Lena, riſes in Lat. 56. and Long. 114. N. from the Lake *Baikala*, and falls into the *Icy-Sea* in Lat. 73. and Long. 123. It is a great River. Small Barks coaſt it along by the Shore, and go through the Cape to *Sabazia*, *Onodieskoy*, and *Kamſatka*, in ſearch of Sea-Calves, Teeth, and Train-Oil. The neighbouring *Tartars* make uſe of little Leathern Boats on this River, which ſail very ſwift. The Rivers which run from the S. and fall into the *Lena*, are, the *Wittim*, which riſes in Lat. 55. Long. 121. and falls into the *Lena* in Lat. 63½. and Long. 115. Its Courſe is to the N. W. The *Olockma* has the ſame Courſe, riſes in Lat. 60. Long. 124. and falls into the *Lena* in Lat. 65¼. and Long. 118. *Maia* has alſo the ſame Courſe, and riſes in Lat. 63. Long. 126. and falls into the *Lena* in Lat. 70. and Long. 120. All theſe Rivers fall into the Right Side of the *Lena*.

Theſe are the moſt remarkable Rivers belonging to the vaſt Empire of *Muſcovy*; concerning which 'tis obſerv'd, that moſt of them have their Source from Lakes, are broad and ſhallow, full of Iſlands, Flats, and deep Holes.

Of the LAKES.

Uan-Oſero, is a great Lake, 8 Miles E. from *Tula*, in the Province of *Reſan*: It is near 500 *Engliſh* Miles long. From this the *Donn* takes its Riſe.

Bielosera, is 64 Miles long, and 48 broad: It lies S. from *Archangel*, in Lat. 60. The River *Schexma*, which falls into the *Wolga*, 4 Leagues below *Mologa*, rises from this Lake.

Ilmin, is 48 *English* Miles long, and as many broad, and ends about 2 Miles from *Novogorod-Weliki*. It receives the River *Schalona*, and the *Lowat*, which rises in the Forreſt of *Wolkowsky*, from a Lake call'd *Fornow*.

Ladoga, is 400 *Engliſh* Miles long, and 240 broad, is full of Iſles. The *Neva*, which falls into the *German* Ocean, riſes from this Lake.

Muſcovy is divided by ſome into 4 Parts, *viz. Weſt-Muſcovy*, or *Ruſſia*, bordering on *Poland*, containing 22 Provinces. 2. *Eaſt-Muſcovy*, or *Ruſſia*, which reaches to the Streights of *Weygates*, and contains 7 Provinces. 3. *Muſcovian-Tartary*, comprehending the Kingdom of *Aſtracan*, the Kingdom of *Bulkar*, the Kingdom of *Caſan*, the Kingdom of *Siberia*, the Country of the *Samoieder*, the *Tartarian* Fortification *Aſoph*, and all its Dependencies, with the demoliſh'd Places *Towan* and *Kaſikermen*, and has a free Commerce with the *Black Sea*; all which were confirmed to the Czar, by the Peace with the *Turks* in 1700. 4. The *Muſcovite-Lapland*, extending along the *White Sea* to the *Swediſh* Borders.

Some divide *Muſcovy* into Southern and Northern: The Northern Part contains 16 Provinces, *viz.*

1. *Lapland*, belonging to *Muſcovy*; chief Town *Kola*.
2. *Kargapol*, S. E. from *Lapland*, near *Archangel*; chief Town *Kargapol*.
3. *Duina*, N. E. from *Kargapol*; chief Town *Archangel*.
4. *Condora*, E. from *Archangel*; chief Town *Wrzaturia*.
5. *Juhorski*, N. from *Condora*, near *Weygates* Streights; chief Town *Juhora*.
6. *Petzora*, E. from *Condora*, near the *Samoieder*; the chief Town *Petzora*.
7. *Obdora*, N. E. from *Condora*, near the Mouth of the *Oby*; chief Town *Bereſof*.
8. *Permski*, S. E. from *Condora*, near *Siberia*; chief Town *Perma Weliki*.
9. *Wiatka*, S. from *Permski*; chief Town *Wiatka*.
10. *Niſi-Novogorod*, S. W. from *Wiatka*, near the *Volga*; chief Town *Niſi-Novogorod*.
11. *Onſtiough*, W. from *Wiatka*; chief Town *Onſtiough*.
12. *Wologda*, S. W. from *Onſtiough*, near the Lake *Onega*; chief Town *Wologda*.
13. *Biela-Ozera*, S. from *Wologda*, near the *Wolga*; chief Place *Biela-Ozera*.
14. *Novogorod-Weliki*, on the E. of the Lake *Ladoga*; chief Town *Novogorod-Weliki*.
15. *Pleskow*, near *Riga* in *Livonia*; chief Town *Pleskow*.
16. *Czeremiſſet-Logowey*, W. from *Caſan*, upon the *Wolga*.

The Southern Provinces are alſo 16.

1. *Reſchow*, S. E. from *Pleskow*; chief Town *Reſchow*.
2. *Bielka*; chief Town *Bielka*.
3. *Smolensko*, S. from *Reſchow*, upon the *Nieper*; chief Town *Smolensko*.
4. *Novogorod-Sewierski*, S. E. from *Smolensko*; chief Town *Novogorod-Sewierski*.
5. *Czernikow*, W. from *Novogorod-Sewierski*; chief Place *Czernikow* River.
6. *Ukrain*, belonging to *Muſcovy*, S. from *Smolensko*, upon the *Nieper*; chief Town *Kiow*.
7. *Worotin*; chief Town *Worotin*.
8. *Rezan*, S. from *Wolodimer*; chief Town *Reſan*, on the S Side of the *Wolga*.
10. *Moſcow*, N. E. from *Reſchow*; chief Town *Moſcow*.
10. *Twer*, N. from *Reſchow*; chief Town *Twer*.
11. *Roſthow*, N. from *Moskow*; chief Town *Roſthow*.
12. *Jaroſlaw*, N. from *Roſthow*, on the N. Bank of the *Wolga*.
13. *Suſdale*, E. from *Roſthow*, upon the *Wolga*; chief Town *Suſdale*.
14. *Wolodimer*, E. from *Suſdale*, upon the S. Bank of the *Wolga*; chief Town *Wolodimer*.
15. *Czerimiſſet-Nawornay*, S. W. from *Caſan*, betwixt the *Wolga* and *Donn*.
16. *Mordwa*, W. from *Czerimiſſet-Nagornay*, upon the *Donn*.

Of LAPLAND.

The *Muſcovite-Lapland* is much leſs than that belonging to *Sweden*. On the Weſt, it has *Swediſh Lapland*: On the N. and N. E. the *Frozen Sea*; and on the S. and S. E. the *White*

White Sea. Its Latitude is from 64 to 72 Deg. N. Lat. and its Long. from 43 to 58. It is divided into 3 Parts, *viz.* 1. *Mourmansky-Leporie*, the moſt Northern Part, in which lies *Kola*, a Sea-Port Town, upon a River of the ſame Name, which runs into the *Frozen Sea* a little below it. This Port is well known to the *Engliſh* and *Dutch*, who buy Furs here. 2. *Terskoy-Leporie*, N. from the *White Sea*. In this Part, there's a little Town call'd *Warſiga*. 3. *Bellamoreſky*, S. W. from the *White Sea*. In this are the Towns of *Kandalax* and *Ombay*. This Country is barren; the Inhabitants are the wickedeſt of all the *Laplanders*. We refer the particular Account of the Manners, Cuſtoms, Religion, and Natural Hiſtory, &c. of the *Laplanders*, till we come to treat of *Swediſh Lapland*, which is larger by much than the other two *Laplands*.

KARGAPOL. This Province is deſart, and has a Town of the ſame Name. The Lake *Onega* is on the W. of it: The Town is on the River *Onega*, which runs into the *White Sea*.

DUINA. This Country is ſo called from the River *Duina*, that runs through it. It abounds with Iſinglaſs and Pitch; but is otherwiſe barren, and ill inhabited, tho' 100 Leagues long: 'Tis very cold, which hinders their having any Corn. The People live on dry'd Fiſh and Veniſon, and their chief Commodity is Salt. *Archangel* is the chief Town, and lies upon the *Duina*, which runs into the *White Sea* 6 Miles below it. It has a good Trade with the *Engliſh* and *Dutch*, and is the greateſt Staple-Port belonging to the *Muſcovites*, which makes it populous, tho' but ſmall: 'Tis ſo called from the Archangel St. *Michael*. Cuſtoms are very heavy here upon all Commodities. *St. Nicholas* is a Sea-Port, on the Left Branch of the *Duina*, ſo call'd from a Saint of that Name, in whom they truſt more than in St. *Peter* or St. *Paul*, becauſe he is their Countryman.

CONDORA. We know little of it, but that it is over-run with Woods. On the North, it has the *Frozen Sea*. This Country and *Obdora* receiv'd the Chriſtian Faith in 1618, and were not amongſt the Czar's Titles till the Reign of *Ivan Baſilowick*. Some ſay, the Inhabitants are *Samoiedes*, and barbarous Cannibals. *Wergaturia* is their chief Town.

JUHORSKI. It is uncertain where it is ſituated; but ſome Maps place it on the *Frozen Sea*. *H. Smith*, who liv'd in *Petzora* in 1580, ſays, That it lies over againſt the Streights of *Weygates*. The Baron of *Herbeſtein* thinks, 'twas from this Place that *Attila* over-ran *Europe*, and call'd *Pannonia*, *Hungary*, from the Name of their own Country. He thinks it is evident from this alſo, that the Remainder of the ancient *Hungarians*, who live betwixt the *Danube* and *Tibiſcus*, ſpeak the ſame Language with the Natives of *Juhorski*. They live after the Manner of the *Samoiedes*. *Jubora* is their chief Town.

PETZORA. It is bounded by a River of the ſame Name, and is on the W. of *Obdora*. *Petzora* is their only Town, which has 3 Churches: They are a ſort of Chriſtians ſince 1581, and live chiefly upon Geeſe and other Fowls, which they catch in the Spring and Summer. They ſell the Feathers to Merchants; the Fleſh they dry and ſalt for Winter: They are deſcended of the *Samoiedes*, but civiliz'd a little by the *Muſcovites*. They have many Salmon, and great Plenty of Sables.

OBDORA. It has the River *Oby* on the E. and is inhabited by *Samoiedes*, who are Idolaters and Savages. The *Muſcovites* have ſome Caſtles built there, to keep them in Subjection, and ſecure their Tribute.

PERMSKI. They have little Bread here, live upon Hunting, and have their Sleds drawn by Dogs, in which they ſlide over the Snow with great Expedition. *Perma-Weliki*, their chief Town, was formerly very conſiderable, but now is ruinous: 'Tis a Biſhop's Seat. The People have a peculiar Character and Language, and pretend to be very ancient.

WIATKA. It abounds with Honey, Wax, and Furs. *Wiatka* is the Capital. The Country in general is marſhy and barren.

NISI-NOVOGOROD: Is one of the beſt Countries belonging to *Muſcovy*. The chief Town is of the ſame Name, and lies upon the S. Side of the *Wolga*, at the Conflux of that River, and the *Occa*, 100 *German* Leagues from *Moſcow* to the N. E. 'Tis

Digitized by Google

great City, fortifi'd with ſtrong Stone Walls, has a Caſtle built of Stone, and a famous Church, built like that of St. *Sophia* in *Conſtantinople*. *Vaſſilgorod* is a ſmall Town upon the *Volga*, and belongs to that Province.

OUSTIOUGH. The Natives there had a Language of their own; but the Czar introduc'd the *Ruſſian*, the People being willing to uſe it, becauſe it is more advantagious to their Trade. They have Black Foxes, and famous Fairs and Marts. The chief Town is *Ouſtiough*, a noted Place for Trade in Furs.

WOLOGDA. This Country is marſhy, and full of thick Woods. They ſell much Tallow to Strangers. The chief Town is of the ſame Name, and fortified with a Stone-Wall. The Czar, in Time of Danger, uſes to ſecure Part of his Treaſure here. Many Places of this Country are unpaſſable, except on Sleds, during the Winter. It formerly belong'd to the Dutchy of *Novogorod*.

BIELA-OZERA. This is the moſt ancient Dutchy of *Muſcovy*: It has its Name from a Lake, in the middle of which the Capital is built: They think it impregnable, being advantagiouſly ſituated, and having ſtrong Fortifications. The Czar keeps his Treaſures here, under the Guard of his principal Officers, and a ſtrong Gariſon. It is one of the Titles of the Czar, and is diſtant from *Moſcow* and *Novogorod* 100 *German* Miles.

NOVOGOROD-WELIKI. 'Tis fertile in Flax, fine Hemp, and has Honey, Wax, and Leather. The Capital is of the ſame Name, well built, ſtrong, and has a good Caſtle. It is ſituated upon the River *Wolkou*, in a great Plain. It was formerly an Independent Republick, under its own Prince, and then was ſo wealthy and ſtrong, that it became a Proverb, *Who can do any thing againſt God and* Great Novogorod? The *Hanſe-Towns* drove a great Trade here; and the River being navigable, contributed much to its Strength and Riches. *Ruſſia* Leather is better dreſs'd here than any where elſe. The Cauſes of its Decay were, 1. That in 1477, *Ivan Vaſili Groſdein* forc'd them to receive a Governor; after which, pretending a Pilgrimage, he pillag'd it, and carried away 300 Cart-load of Jewels, Gold and Silver, beſides many others fill'd with rich Stuffs and ſumptuous Moveables. He tranſported the Inhabitants, and ſent *Muſcovites* to dwell in their Place. 2. *Ivan Baſſilowick*, in 1569, upon Pretence of a Revolt, cut off the greateſt Part of the Inhabitants; upon which there follow'd a great Plague; and then a Famine, ſo that they eat one another: Then, pretending to puniſh their Inhumanity, he deſtroy'd the greateſt Part of thoſe that were left. In 1611, the *Swedes* took it by Storm, but it was redeliver'd by Treaty to the *Muſcovites*. There are about 100 Monaſteries, Churches and Chapels here, that have their Steeples and Towers cover'd with gilt Copper. The Cathedral Church is that of St. *Sophia*. On the other Side the River, there's a ſtrong Stone Caſtle, join'd to the City by a large Bridge.

PLESKOW. It abounds with Wax and Honey: The chief Town is *Pleskow*. It is 36 *German* Miles S. W. from *Novogorod*, and 27 E. from the Borders of *Livonia*. In 1509, it came under the Power of the *Muſcovites*, by a Civil War among the Citizens, and was once the only Town in *Muſcovy* that had Walls. It is divided into three Parts, every one of which is ſurrounded with ſtrong Walls. It was beſieged by *Stephen* King of *Poland* in 1581, when ſome ſay the Gariſon conſiſted of 70000 Foot, and 7000 Horſe, beſides the Citizens.

Southern *Muſcovy* has the 16 Provinces following:

RESCHOW. The *Volga* begins in this Province, in Lat. 55. Long. 55. and falls into the *Caſpian* Sea, Lat. 46. Long. 76¼. It has alſo the Fountains of the *Duina*, *Nieper*, and *Lowat*, all great Rivers. The Hares in this Province are White. Some ſay, That all Beaſts brought hither turn of that Colour. The Inhabitants have a Language proper to themſelves. The chief Town is *Reſchow*, on the Borders of *Lithuania*, 40 *Engliſh* Miles from *Twer* to the S. W. and 50 from *Bielka* to the E. *Wyſchkyeluki* and *Toropyecz*, large Cities with Caſtles, are alſo in this Country.

BIELKA. This Country has *Lithuania* on the W. and S. and *Twer* on the E. The chief Town is *Bielka*, with a Caſtle, ſeated on a River of the ſame Name.

The

The Dukedom of SMOLENSKO. It belong'd formerly to *Lithuania*; but has been ſubject to the *Muſcovites* ſince 1654, that the Czar *Alexius Michaelowitz* took from the *Poles* the chief Town of the ſame Name, and united it to *Muſcovy*. It was taken in 1611 by the *Poles*, after a Siege of 2 Years, with the Slaughter of 200000 *Muſcovites*. The *Muſcovites* beſieg'd it in 1633, but were defeated before it. 'Tis 150 Miles E. from *Warſaw*, 100 Miles from *Vilna*, and 150 N. from *Kiow*. 'Tis a great City, but not populous: The Walls are 6 Cubits broad, and have 52 Towers. There's a ſtrong Caſtle in the middle of the City. They have Plenty of Wild Beaſts, whoſe Skins are much valued. Here the Czar once a Year diverts himſelf and the Foreign Ambaſſadors by Hunting. *Drohobus*, *Wieſma*, and *Muſaisko*, are Cities belonging to this Province.

NOVOGOROD-SEWIERSKI. It has *Worotin* and *Reſan* upon the E. *Lithuania* on the W. from which the *Nieper* divides it, and *Smolensko*, to which it formerly belong'd, on the N. The chief City is of the ſame Name, and is diſtant from *Moſcow* 150 Leagues. The Inhabitants are Warlike, being kept in conſtant Exerciſe of their Arms by the neighbouring *Tartars*. The City and Caſtle are well fortified after the *Ruſſian* Manner.

CZERNIKOW. It belong'd once to *Lithuania*, and is ſo call'd from its chief Town on the River *Denza*, N. from *Kiow*, two *Poliſh* Miles from the *Nieper*, and 17 W. of *Novogorod-Sewierski*.

The Muſcovite UKRAIN: Was formerly a Part of the *Lower Volhinia*, and is divided in the middle by the *Nieper*. The chief Town is *Kiow*, which was given by the *Poles* to the *Muſcovites* for 700000 Florins. *Little Tartary* is on the S. of it.

WOROTIN. Its chief Town is *Worotin*, with a Caſtle, upon the River *Occa*.

REZAN. *Wolodimer* lies N. of this Province, and *Ukrania* and the *Precopian Tartars* to the South. It is ſituated betwixt the *Don* and the *Occa*: It had formerly a Prince of its own, but is now ſubject to the *Muſcovites*. The River *Don* has its Source in this Province, which is fruitful in Corn, Honey, Wax, Fiſh and Fowl, beſides Ermins, Beavers, and other Furs. The chief Town is *Reſan*, 36 Miles N. W. of *Muſcow*. It was formerly conſiderable, but is now ruin'd by the Neighbourhood of the *Tartars*. *Perejlow*, *Colluga*, and *Tulla*, are Cities in this Province; and *Czirpac*, where they have Iron Mines.

MOSCOW. This Province is bounded on the N. by *Roſthow* and *Suſdale*, on the E. by *Reſan*, on the W. by *Bielka*, on the S. by *Worotin*. It is ſo healthful a Country, that they reckon it a Wonder to hear of any Epidemical Diſeaſe here. The great Number of navigable Rivers contribute much to their Plenty of Proviſions in Summer; and their Sledges, drawn by Deer or Horſes upon the Ice, bring them all Neceſſaries at eaſie Rates in the Winter. The Deer are fed with Moſs, of which they have abundance in their Woods. Their Horſes travel 50 of our Miles without baiting; ſo that a Countryman will conduct one 11 or 1200 Miles for 4 Crowns, beſides the paſſing and repaſſing of ſo many Governors to and from their Poſts, for their Commiſſions laſt only for two or three Years, makes Travelling both ſafe and cheap. The chief City of this Province, and of all the Empire, is *Moſcow*. It is in Long. 59. Lat. 56. Some ſay, That in 1571, when it was burnt down, 80000 Souls were deſtroy'd in the Flames. It was twice as large then as now. In 1611, 41000 Houſes were reduc'd to Aſhes, and 200000 Perſons ſlain by the *Poles*. It is ſituated upon the River *Moskua*, which begins to be navigable 6 Miles above it. It is 16 Miles in Compaſs, but not Peopled in Proportion; for within the Walls, they have many Gardens and Meadows. The Streets are not pav'd, except in ſome Places with round Fir-Trees. People of Faſhion ride here in Summer, and are carry'd in Sledges in Winter. Their Houſes are ill contriv'd, built of Fir-Timber, ſquar'd and Dovetail'd one into another. The Chinks between are ſtopt up with Moſs, and the Rooſs are cover'd with Bark. Many *Tartars*, *Greeks* and *Perſians*, live here. Some reckon the Number of the Inhabitants to be about 700000. The *Lutherans* and *Calviniſts* are allow'd the Exerciſe of their Religion here. Their Houſes are liable to Fire, becauſe built of Wood, and by the Drunkenneſs of the People. To prevent

ics

its ſpreading, thoſe upon the Guard are provided in the Night-time with Pole-Axes, to break down the next adjoining Houſes. New Houſes are purchas'd here at an eaſie Rate. The Great Duke's Palace, called *Cremelena*, takes up one half of the City: It is fortified with 3 Walls, and a good Ditch, and well provided with Cannon. All the Steeples within the Caſtle are cover'd with Copper-gilt: One of them, called *Ivan-Veliki*, i. e. *Great John*, is remarkable for its great Height; and another for its Bell, which weighs 33600 lb. and what is more ſurprizing, was caſt by a *Ruſſian* Founder: 'Tis bigger than the great Bell of *Peking* in *China*; than that in *Rouen*, called *George d'Amboiſe*, and is probably the greateſt in the World: Its Height 19 Foot, its Diameter within 18, the external Circumference 64, and the Thickneſs 2. It was caſt in 1653, in the Reign of *Alexis Michaelowitz*. 'Tis never toll'd but upon extraordinary Occaſions, when 24 Men pull the Rope below, and ſeveral others above. There is a very fine Piece of Architecture of Stone, built after the *Italian* Manner, for the young Prince; but the Czar continues in his Wooden Palace. On the South-Side of the Caſtle-Gate, without the Walls, there's a Church dedicated to the Bleſſed *Trinity*, and by ſome called *Jeruſalem*, built by the famous *Ruſſian* Tyrant *John Baſilowitz*, who caus'd the Architect's Eyes to be put out, to prevent his undertaking any thing like it for the future. Every Trade have their own Station and Place in this City.

The 2d Quarter is call'd *Czar-Gorod*, or the City-Royal: It encompaſſes the other like a Semi-Circle, and is walled about with white Stone. The Arſenal, and the Place where the great Guns are caſt, are here. The *Muſcovites* are now as expert in caſting Guns as other Nations.

The 3d Quarter, which encompaſſes the former from the E. along the N. to the W. is call'd *Skeradam*: The River *Jaguſa* paſſes through it. Here they have a Market for Houſes ready built, which are taken to Pieces, and tranſported to any Place in the Town.

The 4th Quarter, which lies to the S. on the oppoſite Side of the River *Moſcua*, is fortified with Wooden Walls and Ramparts. It is the Habitation of the Czar's Guards. The Chapels and Churches in this City are 2000, and, by Order of the Patriarch, are now all built of Stone. This City lying betwixt *Narva*, *Archangel*, and *Aſtracan*, makes it a Place of great Trade.

TWER: Is ſituated betwixt the Provinces of *Reſelow* and *Novogorod-Weliki*. Near this Province riſes the *Wolga*, which runs 2400 Miles before it falls into the *Caſpian* Sea. This Province is rich in Corn and Merchandize, and very populous. They can furniſh their Prince with 40000 good Horſes, and 80000 Foot. The Capital City is *Twer*, 140 Miles from *Moſcow*, and ſituated on the River *Twertza*, where it runs into the *Volga*. It has about 60 Churches, is a Biſhop's See, and has a Mint.

ROSTHOW. It has *Suſdale* on the E. and *Twer* on the W. This Province was the Inheritance of ſome Princes of the Blood of *Ruſſia*; but they were entirely rooted out, and the laſt Heir murther'd in 1565, by *John Baſilowick*. They have Plenty of Salt. The chief Town is of the ſame Name, lies 26 Miles S. from the *Wolga*, 36 *Poliſh* Miles from *Moſcow*, and 48 S. of *Jaroſlaw*. *Pereſlaw*, *Uglitz*, and *Chlopigrod*, are Towns in this Province.

JAROSLAW. It is ſituated betwixt *Wologda* to the N. and *Roſthow* to the S. The chief Town is of the ſame Name; lies upon the River *Volga*. They had Princes of their own, till *John Baſilowick* deſtroy'd them. Some ſay, the City is well fortified, and contains about 40000 Inhabitants: It is 45 *Poliſh* Miles N. of *Moſcow*. They have a great Trade in Leather, make much Linen, and abound with Corn, Cattle, and Honey. They have an eaſie Paſſage to *Archangel*. *Romanowa* belongs to this Province, and lies alſo upon the *Volga*.

SUSDALE. It has *Roſthow* on the W. and *Wolodimer* on the E. The chief Town is *Suſdale*, an Archbiſhoprick, 80 Miles N. E. from *Moſcow*, and 130 Miles S. W. from *Niſi-Novogorod*. It has a famous Nunnery.

WOLODIMER. *Suſdale* is on the W. *Mordwa* on the E. *Reſan* on the S. and *Niſi-Novogorod* on the N. of this Province. The principal Town is of the ſame Name. It is 190 Miles S. from *Niſi-Novogorod*, and was formerly the Metropolis of *Muſcovy*, and the

Digitized by Google

the Reſidence of the Great Dukes, till the Seat of the Empire was tranſlated to *Moſcow*, by *John* the Son of *Daniel*, becauſe *Wolodimer* was too near the *Tartars*. It is now the ſecond City of the Empire. The Czar ſtiles himſelf Duke of this Place. 'Tis an exceeding fruitful Country, and yields frequently thirty for one. It abounds with Honey and Wax.

CZEREMISSES-NAGORNAY. They are People who live on the E. of *Muſcovy*, and on the S. of the *Wolga*. Some of them are Mahometans, but moſt of them Pagans. They live on Mountains; and thoſe called *Logoway* live in Champaign Countries.

The MORDWA TARTARS: Are planted betwixt the *Volga* and the *Don*, where it begins to turn Weſtward towards the *Euxine* Sea. They have the *Czeremiſſes-Nagurnay* to the E. *Wlodimer* to the W. and are near *Little Tartary*, and the Provinces of *Roſan* and *Worotin*. They are ſavage idolatrous People: They practice Polygamy, and divorce when they are wearied one of another. When a rich Man dies, they kill his beſt Horſe to ſerve him in the other World, and then they eat the Horſe. Both Men and Women are good Archers. They pay Tribute to the Czar.

Having thus given an Account of the Provinces belonging to the *Muſcovites* in *Europe*, we come now to thoſe they poſſeſs in *Aſia*, which formerly belong'd to *Tartary*, as the Kingdoms of *Coſan* and *Aſtracan*, *Samoieda*, *Siberia* and *Daiiria*.

SAMOIEDA.

THE Lat. and Long. of this Country is not very certain. *Iſaac Maſſa* makes it to lie both on the W. and E. Side of the *Oby*. *Petzora* lies on the W. but what Countries are to the E. is not known. The Northern Boundaries are, the Streights of *Weygates*, and the *Frozen Ocean*. Their Country extends to Lat. 72. The Ambaſſadors from the Duke of *Holſtein*, in their Travels to *Muſcovy* in 1643, tell us they had occaſion to diſcourſe in the Czar's Anti-Chamber with two of the Deputies of the *Samoiedes*, who underſtood the *Ruſſian* Language; and from them they give us this Account: They were anciently comprehended under the ancient *Scythæ*. Their preſent Name ſignifies *Cannibals*, or Man-Eaters; but the *Hollanders*, who were ſhipwreck'd on their Coaſts, ſpeak much of their Humanity and Kindneſs.) The *Muſcovites* call'd them ſo, becauſe they us'd to mix the Fleſh of their deceas'd Friends with Veniſon. Their Huts have Paſſages under Ground, by which they converſe one with another during the Winter, when the Sun leaves them for ſeveral Months; for their Huts being then cover'd with Snow, they cannot walk abroad, but viſit their Friends by thoſe ſubterranean Walks. The Want of Light they ſupply by Lamps, fed with the Oil of Fiſh they take in Summer. This gives Riſe to the Fable, That they ſleep ſix Months in Winter, and riſe again in the Spring. They don't cultivate the Ground, nor have any Cattle. They eat dry'd Fiſh inſtead of Bread. They have alſo Veniſon and Honey. They cloath themſelves with the Skins of Rain-Deer. They are low of Stature, with broad flat Faces, little Eyes, ſhort Legs, and wear their Hair long, not unlike the *Greenlanders*. When the Sun returns, they creep out of their Huts by the Tops of their Chimnies. They wear large Caps made of Furs, or Pieces of Cloth of divers Colours, which fall down about their Shoulders. Their Shirts are made of the tender Skins of Rain-Deer, and are ſofter than Linen, under which they wear Drawers, and over their Shirts certain Caſſocks, reaching down to their Mid-leg, with Furs on the outſide. They put them on in very cold Weather over their Heads, ſo that their Faces appear only thro' the Cleft at the Neck; which has occaſion'd ſome Hiſtorians to ſay, They were without Heads, and had Faces on their Breaſts. The *Samoiedes*, as well as the *Laplanders* and *Finlanders*, wear a kind of Pattins, of an Ell and an half long, made of the Barks of Trees, with which they ſlide on the Snow without ſinking. The *Laplanders* and *Finlanders* have theirs as long behind the Heel as before the Toe; but the *Samoiedes* have them only turn'd forwards. Colonel *Porter*, Governor of *Riga*, gave the *Holſtein* Ambaſſadors the Diverſion of ſeeing two *Finlanders* belonging to his Gariſon run down a Hill with thoſe Pattins; which they did with ſo much Swiftneſs, that a Horſe in a Gallop could ſcarcely keep Pace with them.

They

Digitized by Google

They uſe the Nerves and Veins of the Rain-Deer inſtead of Thread, and the Shavings of Beach-Bark ſerves them for Napkins. When one of thoſe *Samoiedes* was ask'd, What he thought of *Muſcovy*? He anſwer'd, That tho' *Muſcovy* was a Country pleaſant enough, yet he was confident, if the Czar was ſenſible of their ſecure and quiet Life, he would chuſe their Retirement before all his Grandeur. They were all Pagans till within theſe few Years, that they were converted by a *Muſcovite* Biſhop of *Wolodimer*. They pay Tribute in Furs to the Czar, who has Gariſons there. *Stephen Burroughs*, an *Engliſhman*, in 1556, firſt diſcover'd them in his Voyage to find out a N. E. Paſſage. *Richard Johnſon* was alſo there: His Relation of them is in *Hackluit*. Afterwards, in 1596, *William Barents* gave ſome Account of them.

Pitt's Atlas has this further Account of them. They have different Languages, but how many, and the Place where each Language is ſpoken, is not ſo well known. When the Weather is tolerable, they go from Place to Place, where they can find beſt Paſture for their Rain-Deer, by which they are carried in Sleds, and can travel 200 *Italian* Miles in one Day. This frequent ſhifting of their Quarters enables them to be Guides to Merchants; and they ſeldom miſtake their Way in the greateſt Miſt. They are very nimble, and excellent Archers. Some of them at *Moſcow*, for an Eſſay of Skill, ſet up a ſmall round Piece of Tin, from which they retir'd as far as they could diſcern it, yet never fail'd to hit it with their Arrow. The Women have the ſame Garments with the Men, and are not eaſily diſtinguiſh'd from them: Only they have on either Side a Lock of Hair hanging down below their Ears, and make blue Lines in their Faces, by drawing a Thread dip'd in blue Paint lightly under the Skin. The Faſhion of their Habits is not the ſame in all Places. They have no Bread, or any thing like it. Their Food is Train-Oil and Honey, with raw Fleſh and Fiſh; but they uſually dry it in the Sun and Wind.

Their QUALITIES *and* CUSTOMS.

THey are ſtrong and healthful: The Husbands are their Midwives: The Mother waſhes the Child as ſoon as born in cold Water or Snow, and next Day is able to wait upon her Rain-Deer and Sleds. They are ſtout, though not quarrelſome. Their Weapons, beſides Bows and Arrows, are long Spears, and ſhort Swords. Thoſe who are not ſubject to the Czar, are under no Government. They conſult the moſt ancient Perſons in Affairs of Difficulty, who are alſo their Prieſts. They aſk them, which Way they ſhall move? What Succeſs they are like to have in Hunting, or in Journies? They have but few Controverſies, which are determined by a ſort of Oath, in this Manner: They make an Image of a Man in Snow, and lay before it a Wolf's Snout: He who is to ſwear takes a Sword, and tells over the Names of his Wives, Children and Friends; wiſhes, if he ſwear falſly, they may be all cut to pieces, as he cuts that Image with his Sword, which he immediately performs. He alſo wiſhes, That the Wolf may deſtroy his Rain-Deer; That hence-forward he may never kill any Beaſt. Then he cuts the Wolf's Snout to pieces; and ſo the Controverſy is ended.

Their MARRIAGES *and* BURIALS.

THey buy as many Wives as they can purchaſe for Deer. Perſons of Note have 4 or 5. He is reckon'd the richeſt Man that has moſt Deer and Daughters, and they ſell both to thoſe that bid moſt. Their Marriages are celebrated without much Ceremony. The Bridegroom makes a Feaſt, which ſometimes laſts 7 Days. After this the Bride, adorn'd with many Braſs Rings and Bells, Fiſh-Bones, *&c.* is deliver'd to her Husband: Then all the Friends depart from their Tent till next Morning. If they like not their Wives after half a Year or a Year's Trial, they return them to their Friends, and receive back the Deer they paid

Digitized by Google

paid for them. When a rich Man dies, they ſtrangle one of his Slaves, and bury him beſide his Maſter, to do Drudgery for him in the next World; and they kill 3 of his Deer, with which they feaſt themſelves. If a Child die under 7 Years of Age, they hang it by the Neck on a Tree, and ſay, it muſt ſlee to the other World.

Their RELIGION.

THey ſeem to acknowledge a God, but repreſent him by ſuch Things as they receive moſt Benefit from. In a Morning, as ſoon as they go out, they fall on their Knees, and hold up their Hands to the Sun. They have Images, reſembling Men as near as they can make them, to which they ſacrifice, and beſmear them with Blood. Many Bones and Aſhes lie before them; and there's a Chopping-Block by them, on which they kill and divide the Beaſts that they ſacrifice; as *Richard Johnſon* tells us in *Hackluit*, *Page* 283. The Prieſt wears on his Head a Garland, and a Piece of a Coat of Mail, with Fiſh-Bones and other Trinkets faſten'd to it. He firſt beats upon an Inſtrument like a Half Drum with a little Mawl; after that he whoops and hollows as our Hunters do, and the People anſwer him. He roars with great Violence, till he becomes hoarſe, and lies as if he were dead for ſome time. When he recovers, he riſes up, and commands 3 Deer to be killed; then he takes a Sword of near a Yard long, and ſeems to thruſt it ſeveral times into his own Belly, but without any Wound. He afterwards heats it in the Fire, thruſts it in at his Navel, and out at his Fundament; when, ſaith *Johnſon*, I laid my Finger upon it, but no Wound was to be ſeen. The Prieſt being wearied, repoſes himſelf, whilſt they heat a Kettle of Water; which being hot, they ſing again, and bring a Thing like the Frame of a Sedan, into which the Prieſt, putting off his Clothes and Shirt, ſits down, and puts a Rope about his Neck, and under his Left Arm, with a Slip-knot, gives one End to one luſty young Fellow, and the other End to another: Then they ſet the boiling Water before him, and cover both the Frame wherein he ſits, and the Kettle, ſo as no Man can ſee thoſe dreadful Myſteries. The People begin again to ſing furiouſly, and the two young Men draw the Cord cloſe: Whereupon, hearing ſomething fall into the Water, I aſk'd, ſaid *Johnſon*, what it was? They told me it was the Prieſt's Head and Left Shoulder, which the Cord had cut off; but they would not ſuffer me to go and ſee if it was ſo. After more furious ſinging, the Prieſt comes from behind the Curtain ſafe and well. I demanded what their God had ſaid, and whither they were to go? They anſwer'd, That it was not for them to know what their God had ſaid, but they were to obey what the Prieſt commanded. This was before their Submiſſion to the Czar; but ſince that Time, he has ſent Preachers amongſt them to convert them. We leave the Readers to judge whether theſe Things be fabulous, if perform'd by Juggling, or by the Aſſiſtance of the Devil.

Their Submiſſion to the Czar.

IN the Time of *Ivan*, or *John Baſilowitz*, there liv'd a Husbandman call'd *Onyka*, on the River *Witzogda*, who by his Induſtry became rich. Among other Children, he had 3 Sons, nam'd *Jacove*, *Grégory*, and *Simon*, who were Partners in Trade. They dwelt chiefly with the *Samoiedes*, that came Yearly to the Fairs of *Oſel* and *Ouſting*. *Onyka* had not only a Deſign to carry on his Trade, but had alſo the Curioſity to enquire from whence they came, and prevail'd with them that 12 of his Servants might go home with them, to whom he gave Orders how they ſhould behave themſelves, and make their Obſervations. At their Return, he treated the *Samoiedes* very kindly, and forbad his Servants to diſcover what they had obſerv'd. The next Year he ſent more Servants, and ſome of his Relations, with Goods that the *Samoiedes* wanted, at very low Rates. They went as far as the River *Oby*, and found Furs there to be of ſmall Price; That the People were barbarous, without Cities or Bread, without Laws or Property. Thus *Onyka*, with his Sons and Kindred, manag'd this Trade till they were extream rich. They built many Churches, and ſome Towns, and acquir'd 300000 Rubles or Marks in Money. They had conſtantly at work 10000 Men, beſides 5000 Slaves, and paid the Emperor Yearly 23000

Rubles for Cuſtoms. They alſo maintain'd ſeveral Gariſons on the Confines of *Siberia*. At length they diſcover'd this Trade to *Boris Godenow*, the Emperor's Brother-in-Law, the Advantage that might be reap'd from it, and the Way to thoſe Countries. The Emperor *Theodor Juanwitz* was ſo well pleas'd, that he granted *Onyka* and his Family all the Privileges and Honours that Subjects were capable of, and ſent him in Quality of Ambaſſador to *Samoiedes*, with ſome Soldiers and Gentlemen, who had Toys of ſmall Value to give the Natives, in order to gain their Affections. They behav'd themſelves with ſo much Kindneſs and Humanity towards the *Samoiedes*, and gave them ſuch an Account of the great Power of the Czar, that they perſwaded them at length to give him a Yearly Tribute of a Pair of Sables for every Perſon that could ſhoot. Tho' this was a ſmall Matter to the *Samoiedes*, it turn'd to a vaſt Advantage to the Czar. Some of the Natives came to ſee the Czar's Court at *Moſcow*, and thought the *Muſcovites* were happy under ſuch Government.

Tybrant Ides, in his Travels, gives this further Account of the *Samoiedes*:

They are under the *Siberian* Government, and ſubject to the Weyvode of *Pelum* as far as the Sea. There are ſeveral Sorts of them, different both in Language and Cuſtoms, as the *Berefofskians*, ſo called from *Berefowa*, a Town on the *Oby*, Lat. 64. and Long. 85. and *Puſtoſerſians*, who ſay they are of the ſame Nation. Another Sort live on the Sea-Coaſt beyond the E. Side of the *Oby*, as far as *Truckanſkoy* or *Mangazeiskoy*. Others reſide for the greateſt Part of the Year about *Archangel*, near the River *Duina*; and in Summer live in Huts. There are other *Samoiedes* who inhabit the Icy-Coaſt of the Province of *Siberia*, which has the *Icy* or *Frozen Sea* on the N. and extends to the *Holy Cape* in the Eaſtern Ocean, which lies in Lat. 73. Long. 147. They can ſcarce pretend to any thing of Men, but Face and Shape, have little Underſtanding, and, like Wolves and Dogs, eat the dead Carcaſſes of Horſes, Aſſes, Dogs or Cats, Whales, Sea-Cows, Sea Calves, and Sea-Horſes, raw. Their Country abounds however with Fowls, Fiſh and Fleſh; but they are too idle to furniſh themſelves with it.

Their Governors receive their Tribute of Furs, and are obliged to carry the ſame to the Czar's Cities or Gariſons. A Gentleman who had been among them told the Ambaſſador, That their Hart-Sleds were very convenient, and they run prodigiouſly faſt over Mountains cover'd with Snow. Their Clothes are Buck-skins, with the Hair outward. Their Governors travel in Sleds drawn by 6 or 7 harneſs'd Bucks, and are cloath'd in Scarlet. The Arrows of the Natives are pointed with the Bones of Sea-Calves, or ſome other Animal.

They make a very diſagreeable Figure, inſomuch that ſuch ill-look'd People are not to be found in the whole Earth. Their Stature is ſhort, their Shoulders broad, their Faces flat, with broad Noſes, great hanging Lips, and frightful Eyes, like thoſe of the Linx. Their Complexion is brown, their Hair diſhevell'd; ſome of them have it red or pale, but moſt of them black as Pitch. They have very ſmall Beards, and are ſwift Runners. The Roebucks, which draw their Sleds in Winter, are horn'd and ſhap'd like Harts, but have crooked hanging Necks like Dromedaries: They are as white as Snow in Winter, and greyiſh in Summer. They feed on Moſs, which grows in Woods.

The *Samoiedes* are groſs Idolaters; they worſhip the Sun and Moon: Their Tents are cover'd with Birch-Barks ſew'd together, and their Fire is in the middle of their Tent, round which both Men and Women lie naked in the Night. They lay their Children in Boxes or Cradles made of Birch-Bark ſew'd together, fill'd with Shavings of Trees, which are as ſoft as Wool; and they cover them with Buck-skin. When they deſign to be merry, they ſtand in Couples oppoſite to each other, throw up one of their Legs, and clap the Soles of one another's Feet ſo hard with their Hands, that it may be heard at a good diſtance. Inſtead of ſinging, they howl like Bears, neigh like Horſes, or chirrup like young Birds. They marry within the Degrees of Conſanguinity; they buy their Wives with Bucks and Hides, and marry as many as they can keep. They have Conjurers, that play all ſorts of Diabolical and Juggling Tricks.

Near

Digitized by Google

Near this Coaſt, as far as the Streights of *Weygates*, their Beaſts are Wolves, Bears, Foxes and Hares, *&c.* The Fowls are Ducks, Partridges, *&c.* that are as white as Snow in Winter, which is ſo ſevere, that Rooks and Magpies fall down dead as they fly.

Of the Streights of Weygates.

A Great deal has been ſaid on this Subject by *Engliſh*, *Dutch*, and *Danes*, who have twice paſſed this Icy Channel, to find out a N. E. Paſſage to *China* and the *Indies*, but were forced to return by the great Fields of Ice; ſo that from *Weygates* to the *Icy* or *Holy Cape*, the Sea is utterly unnavigable. The Sea of *Siberia* is ſo full of Ice, that no Ship can come to the Mouth of the River *Jeniſea*, which lies 15 Deg. further E. than *Weygates*: Much leſs can they go farther Northward, or by the Way of the *Icy Cape* ſail round *Japan* and *Jedzo*.

The Ambaſſador adds what he had learn'd from the *Ruſſians*, who have ſeveral times ſail'd through thoſe Streights, which lie in Long. 75. to the Mouth of the *Oby* in 84.

We go, ſay they, with our Barks to *Weygates*, to fiſh for Sea-Calves: If we meet with great Quantities of them, we ſail directly into *Weygates*; But if the Wind blows from the Sea, the whole Coaſt is cover'd with Ice; ſo we are obliged to put into ſome Creeks or little Rivulets, where we dare not venture too far, but ſtay till the Wind blows from the Shore, which clears the Streights of Ice, and drives it ſeveral Miles out to Sea: And if we find not ſuch a Creek, our Barks are ſhatter'd to pieces by the Ice. This Sea, as far as the *Icy Cape*, is ſometimes frozen up two or three Years ſucceſſively, as it was from 1694 to 1697.

About 50 Years ago, the *Ruſſians* that dwelt in *Siberia*, had free Liberty to fetch their Proviſions from the Sea-Ports, and to carry their *Siberian* Commodities thither through the *Weygates*, provided they paid the Toll to the Czar: But they brought great Quantities of Goods by Stealth into *Ruſſia* by other Ways and Rivers, whereby the Czar ſuffer'd much in his Revenues; for which Reaſon the Importation of Goods to *Ruſſia* thrô the Streights of *Weygates* has been prohibited ever ſince.

Of SIBERIA.

IT has on the W. the River *Kama*: *Wirgaturia* is the firſt conſiderable City on that Side, in Lat. 55. Long. 73. and the N. Parts reach to Lat. 73. the N. E. Parts to Long. 140. The Lake of *Baikala*, which borders on the Province of *Dauri*, and the Town of *Jeknitskoy* near that Lake, are the furtheſt Places towards the S. E. This Town lies in Lat. 54. Long. 110. The Places furtheſt to the S. W. border upon the *Kalmuck Tartars*, in Lat. 50.

Father *Avril*, a Jeſuit, ſent by Order of the *French* King to diſcover a Way by Land to *China*, gives the following Account of the firſt Diſcovery of *Siberia*:

The *Zaporagian Coſſacks*, who liv'd beyond the *Nieper*, being ſubdu'd by the *Muſcovites*, were reſolved to ſhake off that Yoke. In order to this, they advanc'd by the Way of *Kaſan*, near the River *Kama*; from thence to the River *Iriſh*, at the Conflux of which with the River *Tobol* they built *Tobolski*, the chief Town of *Siberia*, which is 3000 Miles from *Moſcow*. They extended their Conqueſts to the River *Oby*. The adjacent Country they call'd *Siberia*, from *Sibor*, which in the *Sclavonick* ſignifies North. But after all, to carry on their Fur-Trade to the greater Advantage, they thought fit to ſubmit to the Czar. As ſoon as the *Muſcovites* got Poſſeſſion of this Country, they improv'd it to great Advantage, by ſending their Sable-hunters, and baniſhing their Priſoners of State to this Place. The Deſire of getting Sables brought thoſe Hunters by degrees to the River *Yamour*, that runs into the *Amoerſham* or *Japan* Sea. Upon this River liv'd thoſe *Tartars* that conquer'd *China* in 1644. So that now the Way to *China* by Land is perfectly known by the *Muſcovites*.

Tybrant Ides's Account how *Siberia* became ſubject to the Czar, is thus:

About 100 Years ago, *Jeremak Timiefwitz*, a Robber in the Reign of *Ivan Baſilowitz*, plunder'd the neighbouring Countries ſubject to the Czar; and being purſued, he and his Companions fled up the River *Kama*, and from thence to the River *Juzawaja*, which falls into the *Kama*, where are the

Lands of *Stroginoff*, famous for his vaſt Eſtate, which take up the greateſt Part of the Shore, and reach 70 *German* Miles in Length. The Robber apply'd himſelf to this rich Man's Grandfather for Protection, beg'd his Intereſt to procure him the Czar's Pardon, and offer'd at the ſame time, by way of Atonement, to reduce the whole Province of *Siberia* for his Czariſh Majeſty. Purſuant to this, he obtain'd from *Stroginoff* Barks, Arms, and Men. Being thus provided, and accompanied with his Fellow-Robbers in light Barks, he ſail'd up the River *Serebrenkoy*, which runs N. E. of the *Wergaturian* Hills, and falls into the *Iucawaja*; thence he convey'd his Equipage by Land to the River *Tagin*, on which he ſail'd to the *Taura*, took the Fort of *Tumeen*, that lies upon it, raz'd it to the Ground, and advanc'd up the *Tobol* to *Tobolsko*, the Reſidence of a *Tartarian* Prince, aged about 12 Years, whoſe Name was *Altani Kuxzumowitz*, whoſe Grandſon at preſent lives at *Moſcow*, and is honour'd with the Title of the *Siberian Czarewitz*. This City he took with ſmall Loſs; ſent the Prince to *Moſcow*, and put the conquer'd City into a better Poſture of Defence.

After this he went down the River *Jetiſch*, but was attack'd in the Night by a Party of *Tartars*, not far from *Tobolsko*, who cut off a great many of his Men; and as he endeavour'd to ſtep from one Bark to another, he fell into the River, and was drown'd. In the mean while *Stroginoff* had obtain'd the Czar's Pardon for *Jeremak*; and ſeveral Hundreds of *Muſcovite* Officers arriv'd, who fortify'd and gariſon'd the Places he had taken, which compleated the Reduction of the Country.

He ſays, That the Frontiers of *Siberia* in general are every where well gariſon'd; That the Circuit of this Kingdom is very large; That he took the Latitude of Places with a Mathematical Inſtrument, and was the firſt *German* that ever went through this vaſt Country to *China*. He owns that the Learned World is obliged to *Nicholas Witzen*, Burgher-Maſter of *Amſterdam*, who firſt drew a Map of thoſe Countries, and diſcover'd to the *Europeans* all *Siberia*, the *Calmuckan*, *Mugalian*, and other Provinces, as far as the *Chineſe* Wall.

The Natives of *Siberia* are Pagans; but the Cities are fill'd with *Ruſſians* and *Coſſacks*. They pay Yearly 200000 Rubles in Sables, Martens, and Black Fox-Skins, found no where but here and in *Kitay*. They are ſold from 20 to 30 Rubles apiece. They catch the Ermins in Traps, but ſhoot the Sables with Arrows in the Noſe, for fear of ſpoiling their Skins. They alſo make Fire under Trees where the Sables haunt, and being ſtifled with the Smoak, they fall down and are catch'd. Thoſe who are baptiſh'd hither, muſt ſtay 7 Years. The Czar's Officers, to encourage the People's Diligence, allow them to kill ſome Sables for their own Advantage.

Ysbrant Ides's *Account of the Country and People of* Siberia.

THE Weſtern Part of this Country lies on the E. Side of the *Kama*, which is a pleaſant and beautiful River: It ſeparates *Europe* from *Aſia*, and abounds with all ſorts of Fiſh. The Banks of it are very populous, and noted for Salt-works. The firſt *Siberian Tartars* are call'd *Wogulskoi*: They live on the Banks of this River, which are the moſt charming in the World: The Hills are covered with beautiful Flowers and Plants, and all Sorts of great and ſmall Wild-Beaſts in great Numbers. The Inhabitans are ſtupid Heathens. They are naturally ſtrong, and have large Heads. Their Worſhip conſiſts in having once a Year an Offering. Then they go to the Woods, and kill one of each Species of Beaſts, but prefer the Horſe and Tyger: They flea off their Skins, and hang up the Carcaſſes on Trees, and pray to 'em, falling proſtrate to the Earth; then they eat the Fleſh together, and return home, and at once finiſh one whole Year's Devotion. They own a God, that made the World: They deny Devils, becauſe they ſay they never ſaw them: They acknowledge a Reſurrection, but know nothing of the Rewards or Puniſhments of a future State. They bury Money, Apparel and Ornaments, with the Body of the Deceas'd. They cry over their Dead in a diſmal manner, and the Husband is obliged to continue a Widower a whole

a whole Year. If a favourite Dog die, that has been a good Hunter, they erect a Hut to his Memory. They marry as many Wives as they can keep, and when any one is near her Time, she muſt retire to a Hut in the Wood, and there be delivered. Her Husband muſt not come near her for two Months. When any one deſires to marry, he is to buy his Wife from her Father. They have no Prieſts, and marry no nearer than the Fourth Degree of Conſanguinity. The Ambaſſador recommended the Chriſtian Religion to them, as the Way both to ſecure their Temporal and Spiritual Welfare; but they told him, They daily ſaw ſome *Ruſſians* who were in a ſtarving Condition; and as for Things of another Life, they would adhere to the Opinion of their Forefathers.

Their Dwellings are ſquare Wooden Huts. As ſoon as the Wood upon the Hearth is burnt to a Coal, they cover the Smoak-hole in the Roof with Ice, which reverberates the Heat into the Room, and alſo lets in Light.

Their chief Game is Elks, of which they have whole Herds: They cut them in pieces, and hang them round their Houſes to dry. If they ſtink by the falling of Rain upon them, they dry them again, and eat them as a great Delicacy. They don't eat Cocks, Hens, nor Hogs. Their Way of catching Wild-Beaſts is very pleaſant, for they plant a ſort of Bows in the Woods, faſtening a String to them, to which they fix ſome Corn or other Bait, leaving only a Place for the Game to enter; ſo that the Beaſt that comes in cannot paſs without touching the String, which makes the Bow diſcharge the Arrow, and it enters the fore Part of their Body. They alſo dig Pits in the Woods, which they cover with Reeds and Graſs; ſo that if any Beaſt comes thither, he is ſure to fall in. They live along the River *Juzawaia* to the Caſtle of *Utika*, 240 *Engliſh* Miles S. E. from *Kama*. Their Country reaches Northward to the *Samoiedes*. This Caſtle is a Frontier Gariſon againſt the *Bankirian* and *Uffimiſchian Tartars*. The latter live upon the *Wolga*, as far as *Saratoff*, in Lat. 52. and along the Banks of the River *Kama*, to Lat. 58. the Czar is oblig'd to keep them in awe by Gariſons, otherwiſe they would not pay their Tribute of Furs and Honey. They are ſometimes join'd by a Clan of their own Nation near *Aſtracan*, and together rob *Siberia* N. from the Conflux of the *Kama* and *Juzawaia* lies *Solikamskoi*, in Lat. 59. Long. 70. 210 Miles from that Confluence, and 211 N. W. from *Werganuria*. Travellers to *China* muſt lie here all the Summer, becauſe of the Moraſſes, till they freeze in the Winter. Here are many Salt-Works or Pits, beſides above 50 Salt-Springs, from 25 to 35 Ells deep. Great Quantities of Salt are boil'd there, and ſtow'd in long Ships, mann'd with 800 Sailors each, and carry 1600 or 2000 Tun. They ſail down the *Kama*, till it fall into the *Wolga*, and from thence go to *Caſan*, *Niſna*, &c. Thoſe Veſſels have Kitchins, Bagnio's, and other Conveniencies on board.

Neuianskoi, is 240 Miles S. E. from *Utka*. The moſt charming Fields in the World are betwixt theſe Places: The Ground is fertile, well cultivated, and inhabited by *Ruſſians*. *Tumcen* is 180 Miles N. E. from *Neuianskoi*; the Country all along pleaſant and fruitful: The Town lies in Lat. 55. Long. 76. is ſtrong and populous, moſtly inhabited by *Ruſſians*; the reſt are *Mahometan Tartars*: They drive a Trade with *Bulgaria*. The *Kamack* and *Coſſack-Orda Tartars* make frequent Irruptions into *Siberia*, lay the Villages waſte, and cut the Inhabitants in pieces. This and the neighbouring Places afford red Foxes, Bears, and Wolves-Skins. *Heetkoy Wolluck*, a Wood 5 Miles diſtant from this Place, abounds with the very fineſt grey Squirrels, which keep their Colour both Summer and Winter: They are as large as common Squirrels, and are no where in the *Muſcovite* Empire but here. They are all kept for the Czar's Uſe, and none muſt ſell them to Merchants.

Tobolsko, is ſeated upon the Confluence of the *Tobol* and *Irtis*. The Courſe of the *Irtis* is N. W. to *Tobolsko*, and from thence till it fall into the *Oby* N. E. *Tobolsko* lies in Lat. 58. Long. 81. It is the chief City of *Siberia*, and its Juriſdiction of a vaſt Extent. This Province is every where well Peopled by *Ruſſians*, *Tartars*, Heathens, and all ſorts of Nations, who pay Tribute to the Czar. An Hundred *German* Pounds of Rye may be bought here for 16 Stivers, a fat Ox for 11 Shillings Sterling, a large Hog for 30 Stivers. The River *Irtis* produces ſuch a

a prodigious Quantity of Fish, that a Sturgeon of 40 Pound Weight may be had for 5 Stivers: When boil'd, their Fat swims above the Water an Inch thick. Elks, Stags, Deer, Hares, and other Wild-Beasts, abound here, as do Pheasants, Partridges, Swans, Wild-Geese, Ducks, Storks, &c. which are cheaper than Beef. This City is naturally strong, and is seated on a Hill: They have a strong Garison of well arm'd Soldiers, and can bring 9000 Men to the Field, besides some Thousands of *Tartars* on Horseback, when the *Kalmuck*, *Kosack-Orda*, *Bucharian*, and *Bakirian Tartars*, invade them. The Metropolitan of all *Siberia* and *Dauria* resides here.

The *Tartars* that live round *Tobolsko* are all Mahometans, and the Mufti is an *Arabian*.

The Countries betwixt the *Tobol* and *Oby*, as far as the *Jamuschowa-Ofer* Lake, which lies about Lat. 48. and Long. 93. 900 Miles from *Tobolsko* to the S. E. are inhabited by *Kalmakians*. This Lake abounds with hard Salt, which is dug like Ice from the Shore. The *Russians* come here in a Military Way, and load their Vessels in spight of the Natives.

Tora, upon the River *Irtis*, in Lat. 56. Long. 83. is 300 Miles S. E. from *Tobolsko*: It is inhabited by a People call'd *Barabinskoy*. Their Country is extended Eastward to the River *Oby*, and the City of *Tomskoi*. They are a sort of the *Kalmakian Tartars*, and pay Tribute to them and to the Czar.

They have great Numbers of Cattle, as Camels, Horses, &c. They don't eat Hogs. Their Country abounds with fine Sables, Martens, Squirrels, Ermins, Foxes, Hyæna's, Beavers, Minks, Otters, &c. of all which they pay a Tribute.

When they hunt, they carry their Idols with them, and if they have good Luck, their *Saitan*, or Image of Wood, carv'd with a Knife, is set up in a high Place of the House, and cover'd round with fine Furs, which must stay there till they rot; for to take any of them away, would be thought great Sacrilege. This is their Way of Gratitude to their Gods.

Their Drink is *Arak*: They eat the Bulb of yellow Lillies, dry'd, stamp'd, and boil'd with Milk. *Tora* is their Frontier Place. The *Kalmakians* live on the S. and S. W. of it.

Tomskoi lies on the River *Tom*, which falls into the *Oby*, a little below it, in Lat. 52. Long. 95. 660 Miles S. E. from *Tora*, and 200 N. E. from the Lake *Jamisowa-Ofera*. It is a Frontier Place belonging to the Czar, and garison'd by *Russians* and *Cossacks*, to prevent the Incursions of the *Tartars* into *Siberia*.

Samorofskoy-Jami, lies on the River *Irtis*, N. E. from *Tobolsko*, in Lat. 63. Long. 83. *Kasanka*, a Rivulet that runs into the *Oby*, not far from this Town, affords fine grey Squirrels. Most of the Inhabitants are *Russian Jemskicks*, and supply the Weyvodes, and other Persons concern'd in the Czar's Affairs, with Carriages over the Ice in Winter, and by Water in Summer, at reasonable Rates. They draw their Sleds with Dogs, of a strange sort, which couple with Wolves and Foxes. Horse-Sleds are unserviceable here, because the Snow on the Oby is sometimes more than a large Fathom deep. The Sleds are light and thin, and can carry from 2 to 300 *German* Weight. Two yoked Dogs draw one. They run very swiftly, and leave only a Track of an Inch deep in the Snow. If they be inclin'd to hunt, their Master unyokes them, takes his Gun, and puts on his long sliding Shoes, and sometimes in the Woods kills fine black Foxes, which he flea's, and gives the Flesh to his Dogs.

Surgut, lies in Lat. 62. Long. 84. It is seated on the famous River *Oby*, 300 *English* Miles N E. from *Tobolsko*, and 180 S. E. from *Samorofskoy-Ami*. Here are great Numbers of those call'd Cross-Foxes, whose Skins are of a mix'd black and grey, but few black; They have red Foxes, and Hyæna's, that are very mischievous, and live by Prey. They place themselves in the Trees, like the Linx, and lie very still, till a Hart, Elk, Doe, or Hare, runs under the Tree, from which they leap upon him, and eat a Hole in his Body, which by the Pain forces it to lie down. One of the Weyvodes there kept a Hyæna, which he put into the Water, and let two Water-Dogs loose at him: He held one of them so long under Water, till he drown'd him, and would have done so by the other, if he had not been interrupted by throwing Wood at him. They have great Plenty of Beavers, of which the Inhabitants tell incredible Stories:

Digitized by Google

ries: For which, we refer the Reader to the Ambaſſador's Travels.

Narym, lies on the E. Side of the *Oby*, 300 Miles E. from *Tobolsko*, and 270 S. E. from *Surgut*, in Lat. 58. Long. 89½. It has a ſtrong Gariſon of *Coſſacks*, and a Caſtle. All the neighbouring Country abounds with Croſs and Red Foxes, Beavers and Sables, ſome of which are pale, others as black as Pitch, and the fineſt and largeſt Ermins in all *Siberia* and *Ruſſia*; but above all, Black Fox-Skins, which are the fineſt and richeſt in the World; the beſt are reſerv'd for the Czar: Some are valued from 2 to 300 Rubles a Skin, and are ſo very black, that the blackeſt *Daurian* Sable is not comparable to them. Theſe Foxes are caught by Dogs.

The Southern Banks of the *Oby*, as far as this Place, are inhabited by a People call'd *Oſtiacks*: They worſhip Gods of Wood and Earth, of the Shape of Men and Women, and ſometimes dreſs them in Silks after the *Ruſſian* Faſhion: They are plac'd in their Huts, made of the Barks of Trees, ſew'd together by Hart's Guts. On one Side of the Idol hangs a Bunch of Humane and Horſe Hair, and next that a Wooden Veſſel with Milk-Pap, which they thruſt into its Mouth with a Spoon, till it runs out in ſuch a manner as is enough to make one vomit. When this cleanly God is to be ador'd, they ſtand upright, and toſs their Head up and down without bending their Back, and chirrup or whiſtle through their Lips, as we do when we call a Dog.

They call their God *Saitan*. Several of 'em came aboard our Ship to ſell Fiſh, ſays the Ambaſſador, where one of my Servants had a *Nuremberg* Bear in Clock-work, which he wound up, and made him drum, and turn his Head backwards and forwards, and move his Eyes. As ſoon as the *Oſtiacks* ſaw it, they perform'd their wonted Religious Worſhip, and danc'd exceſſively to the Honour of the Bear, nodding their Heads, and whiſtling at a great rate. They all ſaid, our Bear was a right *Saitan*, crying out, *What are our* Saitans *which we make? If we had ſuch a* Saitan, *we would hang him all over with Sables and Black Fox-Skins*. They ask'd if the Bear was to be ſold; but the Ambaſſador order'd it out of ſight, to avoid their Idolatry.

They marry their neareſt Relations without any Scruple, and have as many Wives as they can keep. They are a poor People, and live in ſorry Huts: They are lazy, and lay up no more Fiſh or Fleſh than will barely ſuffice them in Winter. All Places here about the *Oby* abound with rich Furs. They have Plenty of Fiſh, and ſometimes ſell 20 great Sturgeons for 3 Pennyworth of Tobacco.

They are of a middle Stature, their Hair yelloviſh or red, their Faces and Noſes agreeably broad: They are weak, and not inclin'd to War, being utterly uncapable of Military Exerciſes. Their Weapons are Bows and Arrows, with which they ſhoot ſome Beaſts. Their Clothes are of Sturgeon and other Fiſh-Skins: Their Shoes and Stockings are faſten'd together; and their Shoes are of Fiſh-Skins. If they are overtaken with a ſevere Froſt when a Hunting, which is frequent on the *Oby*, they immediately throw off their Clothes, and leap into the deep Snow, and ſo freeze to Death. They pull off their Coats, that they may die the ſooner, and with leſs Pain. The Women's Clothes are like the Men's.

Their greateſt Diverſion is Bear-hunting: Their Arms on this Occaſion is a large Knife fix'd to a Stick of a Fathom long.

They have ſome petty Princes; one of whom is call'd *Knetka*, whoſe Authority extends over ſome Hundreds of Huts, and he levies the Tribute which they pay to the Czar's Weyvodes. This Prince came aboard the Ship, and invited the Ambaſſador to his Palace, which was made, as the reſt of the Houſes, of the Barks of Trees ſew'd together. He had four Wives, two old, and two young: One of the young ones had a Red Cloth Coat, and was adorn'd with Glaſs Corals about her Neck and her Middle, and in the Curls of her Hair, which hung down on both Sides of her Head in two Rows. She had in her Ears great Thread Rings, with long Strings of the ſame Coral hanging at them. Each of the old ones preſented the Ambaſſador with a Barrel of Birch-Bark ſew'd together, full of dry Fiſh. The youngeſt gave him a Barrel of Sturgeon-Fat, as yellow as Gold. The Ambaſſador treated them with Brandy and Tobacco, which is to them a great Delicacy. The whole Furniture of the Palace was ſome-

Digitized by Google

ſome Cradles and Cheſts, of Barks of Trees ſew'd together, in which the Bed-Clothes lie, being of Wood-Shavings, yet almoſt as ſoft as Feathers. The Children lie naked in the Cradles. They ſmoak Tobacco thus: Inſtead of Pipes, they uſe a Stone Kettle, in which they ſtick a Pipe made for that purpoſe. They take ſome Water in their Mouths, then ſuck out at once a whole Pipe, and ſwallow the Smoak; upon which they fall down as if they were dead; their Eyes are diſtorted, and their Hands and Feet tremble for half an Hour; they foam at the Mouth, and are like People in an Epilepſie. We could not ſee, ſays he, where the Smoak vented it ſelf. Some of them loſe their Lives this way, by falling into the Water when they travel, or into the Fire when at home; and thoſe of weak Conſtitutions are frequently ſuffocated with the Smoak.

They don't till their Land, and have neither Temples nor Prieſts. Their Shipping or Boats are of Barks of Trees ſew'd together; the inſide Ribs are of very thin Wood, two or three Fathom long, and one Ell broad. They can ſecure themſelves in the greateſt Storms in thoſe Boats. In Winter, they live under Ground in Caves; the Entrance is a Hole in the Surface of the Earth, which alſo lets out their Smoak. The Snow ſometimes falls two or three Inches thick upon that Part of their Bodies which is furtheſt from the Fire when they are aſleep, and when they awake, they turn that Side to the Fire, and warm it by turns.

When an *Oſtiack* is jealous of his Wife, he offers the ſuſpected Perſon ſome of the Hair of a Bear-Skin: If he be innocent, he takes it; but if not, he confeſſes; for they are perſwaded, if a guilty Perſon take that Hair, the Bear whoſe it was will revive, and within 3 Days tear them to pieces, and revenge the Affront for taking his Hair, in order to deny the Truth. They alſo offer Bows and Arrows, Knives and Axes, to the ſuſpected Perſon, and believe, that if they be guilty, and take any of them, they ſhall die by that individual Inſtrument. The Eaſtern Shore of the *Oby* is all untill'd, from the *Icy-Sea* to the River *Tom*, (on which lies the City *Tomiksi*) by reaſon of the extream Cold; ſo that there's no Honey, Corn or Fruit, here, except a few Nuts, which grow on the Cedar-Tree.

The Ambaſſador ſail'd up the River *Xeta*, which falls into the *Oby* near *Narim*: The moſt Eaſterly Winding of it is near the great River *Jeniſa*, which runs into the *Icy-Sea*, in Lat. 70. and Long. 92. The City *Makoikow* is 360 *Engliſh* Miles E. and by S. from *Narim*. The Inhabitants are *Oſtiacks*. Here are great Numbers of Woodcocks, Pheaſants, Partridges, and other Wild-Fowl, which come in flocks to the River to drink. About the Banks of it grow Strawberries, black and red Currans, and Blackberries.

The City *Jenizeiskoy* is 60 Miles E. from *Makoikow*, in Lat. 57. Long. 99. on the River *Jeniſa*. Below the City, the River is the third Part of a Mile broad. This City is large and populous; the Citadel indifferent ſtrong. All Proviſions are plentiful here; but they have no large Fruit-Trees, by reaſon of the Cold, only ſome Strawberries, Gooſeberries, Currans, *&c.* From this City to the Lake *Baikal*, there's a continu'd Ridge of Hills, where there are Sables and Cabandines.

The City *Illimskoy* is in Lat. 56. Long. 105. 360 Miles S. E. from *Jenizeiskoy*. It lies on the River *Ilym*, which runs from the S. S. W. to the N. N. W. and falls into the *Tunguſka*. Some few Days Journey from hence, is the great Rocky Water-fall, call'd *the Negromantick-Fall*, becauſe a Conjurer lives there, who deludes the People. It is a Deſcent of half a Mile long; the Shore and Ground of the River is rocky: The Noiſe it makes, may be heard in calm Weather 3 *German* Miles. They cannot perform the Voyage againſt the Stream in leſs than 5, 6, or 7 Days; the Ships muſt be empty, and are frequently obliged to caſt Anchor, and in ſome Places they muſt tow a whole Day, before they can get forward the Ship's Length; but they ſail down this Torrent in 12 Minutes; the Ships muſt have Rudders fore and aft, and Rowers on both Sides: The Pilots give their Orders by a Handkerchief, for no Voice can be heard; the Ships are cloſely ſhut up, that the raging Waves may not enter and ſink them. Many Ships are caſt away here every Year.

The

The Natives are call'd *Tunguſians*: Their Country reaches 600 Miles further North and Eaſt to *Argunskoy*. They pay a Tribute of Furs to the Czar for every Bow. The Men are tall and ſtrong, have long black Hair, which is bound up like a Horſe's Tail, and hangs down upon their Backs: They are broad Fac'd, have flat Noſes; but their Eyes are larger than thoſe of the *Kalmachians*. Both Men and Women go naked in Summer, except only a Leathern Girdle of 3 Hand-breadths, that they cut in the Shape of Ribands, and wear it about their Waſte. They carry a Pot on their Left Arm full of old Smoaking-Wood, to prevent the biting of the Moskitoes. They admire Beauty in their own Way; and to improve it, they adorn their Forehead, Cheeks and Chins, with ſeveral Figures, which they make by running a Needle with Threads greas'd with black Greaſe thrô the Skin, and leave the Threads there for ſeveral Days; which, when drawn out, leave Marks behind them. Some of thoſe Figures are Lozenge-wiſe, and others Semi-circular.

Their Winter-Habits are of Doe-Skins, border'd with Dog-Skins: Their Breaſt-Piece is hung with Horſe-Tails: They know not the Uſe of Flax or Wool. Their Nets and Sowing-Thread are of Fiſh-Skins: Their Caps are a Roebuck's-Skin, with the Horns ſticking out on the Crown of their Heads. By this means, and by creeping on the Graſs, they deceive the Beaſts, and get near enough to ſhoot them. They lay their Dead upon Trees, and after they are rotten, burn their Bones.

The Conjurers are their only Prieſts. In their Huts they have Wooden Idols, of half an Ell long, of a Humane Figure, which they feed as the *Oſtiacks*. Their Huts are made of Birch-Bark, and are hung round with Horſes-Mains, Tails, and other Baubles. Before the Doors they hang their Bows and Quivers, and young dead Dogs by 'em. Their Boats are made of the ſame Materials with their Houſes, are long, ſlender, and without Benches. They ſit upon their Knees, and can bear up againſt violent Streams. They ſubſiſt chiefly by Hunting and Fiſhing. There's another Clan of them near the Borders of *China*.

They marry as many Wives as they pleaſe, buy them one of another, and think nothing the worſe of 'em for having liv'd with another Man. They acknowledge a God, but perform all their Worſhip to their *Saitans*, in the Night-time, by beating Drums, and Exorciſms, when they are to go a Hunting or Robbing. They fuddle themſelves now and then with *Arak*, a ſort of Brandy, made of diſtill'd Mare's-Milk. Men, Women and Girls, drink it to that Exceſs, that they become inſenſible for a long while. Both Sexes ride on Horſeback, arm'd with Bows and Arrows. Their Bread is a refin'd Flower, of the Bulbs of yellow Lillies, of which they make alſo a ſort of Pap; and ſometimes eat the Bulbs dry. They know nothing of Agriculture: Their Trade is by bartering Furs with the *Targafinians* and *Xixigarthians*, who live under the *Chineſe*, for Blue Callicoes, Linen and Tobacco.

The City *Buratskoy* is S. from *Ilimskoy*, upon the River *Angora*. *Bulaganski* is on the ſame River, 90 Miles S. from *Ilimskoy*. The *Buratians* live here. Their Country reaches S. from this Place 360 Miles. They have great Plenty of Cows: Their Bulls are more hairy than Goats. Their Dwellings are low, made of Wood join'd together, and cover'd with Earth, and are commonly near Rivers. They have nothing of Agriculture. In Spring and Harveſt, they go a Hunting by Hundreds together. When they have found out their Game, as Wild-Sheep, Stags, or Roebucks, they form themſelves into a Circle, ſurround the Beaſts, and ſhoot them; each Hunter having 30 Shot. When the Hunting is over, every one finds his own Arrows by his Mark. Both Men and Horſes are frequently wounded by this confus'd Method. They hunt no more till all their Proviſions be done. Their Hills are full of Wild-Sheep, as white as Snow. They furniſh Travellers to *China* with Oxen and Camels of an extraordinary Size. They deal by Barter, and truck Pale-Sables for Pewter and Copper Baſins, Red *Hamburgh* Cloths, Otters-Skins, *Perſian* Shaggy Silk of all Colours, and Gold and Silver Bullion. An Ox of 800 or 1000 *German* Pound Weight, is valu'd at 5 Rubles; a Camel at 10 or 12. One of their Rubles

is two Rix-Dollars. The Men are robuſt, large, and have handſome Faces, as Beauty goes here. They are ſomething like the *Chineſe Tartars*.

In Winter, both Sexes wear Coats made of Sheep-Skins, and in Summer of Red Cloth. They never waſh their Face, or any Part of their Body, nor do they cut the Nails of Hands or Feet; ſo that they look ſtrangely. The Hair of their young Women ſticks cloſe together in Plaits, and ſtands on End, which makes them look as Envy is repreſented by Painters. Married Women have two Plaits that hang down on each Side their Head, adorn'd with Tin-Figures. When they die, they are buried with their Ornaments, Clothes, Bows and Arrows.

Their Religion conſiſts in worſhiping dead Bucks and Sheep, ſtuck on Poles before their Doors, till they be putrified, and then they put others in their ſtead. Their Adoration is perform'd by bowing their Heads, and ſitting on their Knees with their Hands join'd, without ſpeaking a Word.

They have ſome Prieſts, whom they kill now and then, and bury them with their Clothes and Money. The Reaſon they give for it is, That they need Prieſts to go before them to the other World, and pray for them. When they take an Oath, they go to the Lake *Baikal*, near which there's a Hill, which they account Sacred. There they take the Oath, and are perſwaded, that thoſe who ſwear falſly, can never come down alive. To this Hill they offer up all ſorts of Cattle, and have done ſo for many Years.

They have Store of Musk-Cats, which look like young Bucks without Horns, only their Hair is ſomewhat black, and their Head much like that of a Wolf. The Musk is contain'd in a Swelling at their Navel, like a little Purſe, of a thin Skin, cover'd with very fine Hair. The *Chineſe* call it a Musk-Hart, becauſe it reſembles that Creature. It has two Tusks, like thoſe of a Wild-Boar. *Philip Martinus*, in his *Chineſe* Atlas, ſays, this Animal is found chiefly near the City of *Lao*, in the Province of *Xanxi*, and in *Xenxi*, but eſpecially in that of *Hanching-Fu*. He deſcribes it thus: It is like a young Doe or Hart, but more brown, ſlow and unactive; ſo that the greateſt Difficulty is to put him up; but when that is done, he ſuffers himſelf to be tamely ſhot. His Blood is drawn off and reſerv'd. They take off a Bladder near his Navel, which is fill'd with Blood, or ſome other odoriferous Liquor that gathers naturally there; after which they flea and cut him to pieces.

When the *Chineſe* deſign to make the beſt Sort, they take the hinder Part of the Animal, beginning from the Kidneys, which they ſtamp and bruiſe to a Jelly; then they dry it, and put it in ſmall Bags, which they make of his Skin.

But if they deſign a coarſer Sort, which is ſtill very good, and not ſophiſticated, they beat all the Parts of the Animal together to a Jelly in a Mortar, with a little of his Blood, and put in Bags as before.

There's yet another Sort of Musk, highly valued, tho not ſo good as the former: This is prepared from the fore Part of the Animal to the Kidneys, which they particularly lay by, in order to make the common Musk; ſo that none of this Creature is thrown away, all Parts of it being good for Musk. But whether the Barbarians make the ſame Uſe of the Musk-Cat as the *Chineſe* do, is not known.

Jekutſkoi, is ſituated on the River *Angora*, whoſe Courſe is from N. to S. Its Source is from the Lake *Baikala*, 8 Miles from this Place, in Lat. 54, Long. 110. This City is lately rebuilt, and ſtrongly fortified; the Suburbs are large, and there is great Plenty of all Grain here; ſo that 100 *German* Pound Weight of Rye is ſold for 7 Stivers. On the E. of this City, there's a burning Cove, which flam'd very much formerly; but now is almoſt extinguiſhed, and little or no Smoak iſſues out of it at preſent. In Harveſt, Earthquakes are frequent, but not very prejudicial in this Country. A *Mogalian* Baron reſides here, who embrac'd the *Grecian* Faith, under the Protection of the Czar. His Siſter was a Pagan Devoto, and well nigh perſwaded to receive the Chriſtian Faith. She ſaid, The Chriſtians God muſt neceſſarily be a ſtrong God, ſince he hath beat their God out of Heaven; but alledg'd, he would return thither, and be beat out the ſecond time. The Rules of her *Order* would not allow her to ſalute any body. She had a *Roſary*, or String of Beads, which

Digitized by Google

which ſhe inceſſantly turn'd round her Fingers. I found a Prieſt with her, ſays the Ambaſſador, who by the ſame Practice had his Thumb worn up to the Knuckle; which rubbing off by Degrees, did not at all pain him.

Of the Province of DAURI.

THE Lake of *Baikala* is the Weſtern Frontier of this Province, and the River *Gobritza* the Northern. The W. and N. Side of this River belong to the Czar, and the Eaſtern to *China*; but the Southern Boundary is not ſo well known. The River *Argun* is its Boundary on the S. E. 'Tis a fine Country, well water'd with Brooks: The Hills and Vallies abound with the moſt charming Herbs and Flowers; and in ſome of the Vallies, there's long Graſs about half a Man's Height. Tillage is not much practis'd here, the People being lazy: They are *Tartars*, ſubject to his Czariſh Majeſty.

The Lake *Baikala* is 6 *German* Miles broad, and 40 long. The Ice about the beginning of *March* was full two *Dutch* Ells thick, and dangerous, when Paſſengers are overtaken with a great Snow or high Wind. The Ice is ſlippery, ſo that the Horſe muſt be ſharp ſhod. The Camels have a high Shoe or Boot ty'd about their Legs, and ſharp at Bottom. The Oxen have Irons ſtruck thro their Hoofs. The Ice of this Lake is ſometimes tore open for ſeveral Fathoms by ſtormy Winds, with a Noiſe as loud as Thunder-Claps; but after a few Hours, the Ice joins cloſe as before. About this Lake, there are very fine Black Sables and Caberdines.

The Water of the Lake taſts freſh, is clear, and of a deep green Colour, where the Ice is open. Sea-Dogs appear blackiſh here, and not variegated as in the *White Sea*. They have great Plenty of Jacks and Sturgeon, ſome of which weigh 200 *German* Pounds.

Ilunskoy, lies on the S. E. of the Lake, Lat. 53 ½. Long. 116. It is a very large Town. Moſt of the Inhabitants are *Ruſſians*. In Winter, they go a Sable-hunting, and till no more Ground than Neceſſity requires. The Caſtle of *Tanzienskoy*, near this Place, is provided with a ſtrong Gariſon of *Coſſacks*, to cover this Country from the Incurſions of the *Mongalians*, who border on it. *Udinskoy*, a Fortreſs N. E. from *Ilunskoy*, is ſituated on a Hill; but moſt of the Inhabitants live at the Foot of it. This Place has alſo a ſtrong Gariſon of *Ruſſian Coſſacks*, becauſe they border on the *Mongalians*, who in Summer carry off their Horſes. No Trees are to be ſeen here: They have abundance of Carrots, Cabbage, and Turneps.

Jarauna, is 120 *Engliſh* Miles S. E. from *Udinskoy*. The Country betwixt them is uninhabited: It is alſo gariſon'd with *Coſſacks*, and inhabited by *Ruſſians*, who live by Sable-hunting. The Heathens here are called *Koni-Tunguzi*. When any one dies, he is buried, with his Clothes and Bows, under Ground. Stones are laid upon his Grave, and a Pole erected, to which they tie his beſt Horſe, being firſt ſhot to Death.

A *Tunguſian* Prince came to viſit me, ſays *Tybrant Ides*, who had prodigious long Hair, bound up with Leather, tied three times about his Shoulders. I was very curious to ſee if his Hair was really ſo long as I was told, and drunk him with Brandy, for which Favour he allow'd me to looſe his Hair. I found it to be all natural, and 4 *Dutch* Ells long. He had a Son of 6 Years of Age, whoſe Hair was near an Ell long. They live on the Hills, and grow rich by catching fine and beautiful black Sables, inferior to none in the Province of *Siberia*. Here are alſo very fine Linxes, and a ſort of Squirrels, for which the *Chineſe* are their chief Merchants.

Nerzinskoy, lies on the River *Nerza*, (that runs N. N. E.) in Lat. 53. Long. 124. 540 Miles from *Jekutskoi*. 'Tis the chief City of *Dauria*, is pretty ſtrong, with Braſs Guns, and a great Gariſon of *Daurian Coſſacks*, both Foot and Horſe. The Fields about it are very fruitful. Above and below the City, for ſome Miles, dwell ſeveral *Ruſſian* Gentlemen and *Coſſacks*, that live by Tillage, grazing of Beaſts, and Fiſhing. Among the Hills, and round the City, there are very fine Garden-Trees and Plants, as *Baſtard-Rhubarb*, of an extraordinary Thickneſs and Length, fine White and Yellow *Lillies*, vaſt Quantities of Red and Snow-

Digitized by Google

white *Pæonies*, which have a fragrant Scent. Here's Plenty of *Marjoram*, *Roſemary*, *Lavende*, *Thyme*, and ſeveral other odoriferous Plants and Flowers, unknown to our Authors. Their Fruits are only Red and Black Currans.

The *Konni-Tunguzians* are obliged to be ready on Horſeback at the Command of the Weywode, when the roving *Tartars* make any Incurſions on the Frontiers; and the *Olenni-Tunguzians* muſt be ready on Foot when there is any Occaſion in the City. The Prince of the former was under the Emperor of *China*; but falling into Diſgrace, he and his Clan retir'd to *Dauria*, put himſelf under the Protection of the Czar, and embrac'd the *Greek* Religion. He can in one Day raiſe 3000 well appointed Horſemen. They are good Soldiers, and 50 of them will rout 400 *Mongalians*. They live chiefly by grazing; but thoſe on the River *Schilka* and *Amur* maintain'd themſelves by hunting Black Sables.

Their Religion is much the ſame with the other *Daurian* Heathens; for throughout all *Great Tartary*, to the beginning of the *Mongalian Tartars*, there's a great Similitude in Religion.

Their common Drink is Water; but the better Sort drink Black Tea: They boil it in Mare's Milk and Water, to which they add a little Butter or Lard: They alſo uſe *Arak*. None of the Cows in *Siberia* or *Dauria* will ſuffer themſelves to be milk'd; for which Reaſon Mare's Milk is much uſed by thoſe People.

In Spring and Harveſt, they go a hunting to provide Fleſh againſt Winter, which they dry in the Sun. They gather the Pulp of yellow Lillies, and when dry'd and beaten to Meal, they make 'em into ſeveral ſorts of Diſhes.

They are dextrous at ſhooting Fiſh in the Water, with a ſort of Arrows that are heavy, round, ſolid, and about 3 Fingers thick at the Head. At the End of 'em, under the Iron Point, there's a Ball of Bone bored through, that makes a loud whiſtling Noiſe as the Arrow flies, which is commonly no more than 15 or 20 Fathom. When they hit the Fiſh, they make a very large Orifice.

Their Way of Exculpation by Oath is very extraordinary: The accus'd Perſon takes a live Dog, lays him on the Ground, pierces him in the Belly with a Knife, claps his Mouth to the Wound, and ſucks out the Dog's Blood as long as he can; after which he lifts him up on his Shoulders, and claps his Mouth to the Wound, in order to ſuck out the remaining Blood. When he has gone thrô this Trial, he is ſet at Liberty, and the Accuſer is puniſh'd for his falſe Accuſation.

Argunskoy, is on the River *Argun*, which runs from S. W. to N. E. and falls into the *Amur*. By a Treaty betwixt the Czar and the Emperor of *China* in 1689, this River was made the Boundary of their Dominions on that Side. The W. of the River belongs to the Czar. On the E. of it, begins the great uninhabited *Tartarian* Wilderneſs: It lies about Lat. 50. and Long. 125. This Country is very populous. The *Tunguzians* pay a voluntary Tribute to the Czar of Linxes and grey Ferrets, which are very fine here.

The Country betwixt the Rivers *Tugur* and *Uda*, and further North, belongs to the Czar. There's great Plenty of Black Sables here. The Natives are *Tunguzians*, *Jakutiſians*, *Alemurians*, and *Korliziens*. They are under the Juriſdiction of the Governor of *Jekutzkoy*, on the River *Lena*, which is the Capital of thoſe Northern Provinces. All the Woods here are ſtrongly guarded, to prevent the *Chineſe Tartars* from hunting Sables.

The Country on the Rivers *Lena* and *Amga* is inhabited by a ſort of People called *Jakutiſians*: Their upper Coats are Furs of different Colours, border'd with Buck-Skin. They have long Hair, and wear no Shirts. They believe there is a great Being above in Heaven, who gives them Wives and Food. They celebrate a great Feſtival in the Spring, when they offer *Arak* to that Being. During this Feaſt, they dont drink themſelves, but make great Fires, and continually ſprinkle the *Arak* towards the E. When any of them dies, his neareſt Relation is buried alive with him. About one half of their Language agrees with that of the *Mahometan Tartars* near *Tobolskoy*, which

is

Digitized by Google

is derived from the *Bulgarian*. They take as many Wives as they can maintain. Stags are their chief Beasts of Burden, upon which they also ride, and make great Journies in a little Time. They are a valiant quick-witted People, and seem to be great Lovers of Truth. When the Governors of *Jekutzkoi* are remiss, they do one another all possible Mischief. They say, their Ancestors came from *Kalmuckia*, from whence they were driven by the *Russians*, and were forc'd to take up their Abode in that cold District. They are much afflicted with the Scurvy, which they soon drive away by eating raw Fish, and a sort of Tar.

The *Jugogayers* are Heathens, and inhabit Part of this Country. They cut off all the Flesh of their dead Relations, dry the Skeleton, hang it with Glass-Corals of all Colours, carry it round their Huts, and worship it.

To the Shores of *Tugur* and *Uda*, come Yearly a tall People out of the Island in the Neighbourhood, well dress'd in fine Fur-Surtouts, under which they have Silken Coats, as rich as those of *Persia*. They come in small Barks to the *Siberian Tartars*, buy Girls and Women of them, and give 'em in Exchange rich Sables of Black Fox-Skins, which they have in great Quantities in their Islands. These two Rivers fall into the *Amurschoan* or *Chinese* Ocean, Long. 150. The Mouth of the *Uda* lies in Lat. 58.

Northwards of those two Rivers rises the *Ogola*, which runs N. E. and falls into the *Chinese* Ocean, in Lat 64. and Long. 145. All the Coast from the Mouth of this River to the *Icy-Cape* abounds with Whales, Sea-Horses, and Sea-Dogs.

KAMSATKA,

Lies in Lat. 71. and Long. 146. near a River of that Name, that falls into the *Chinese* Ocean. The People are call'd *Xuxi* and *Kooliki*, and have each a peculiar Language. Those who live near the Sea are cloath'd in Seal-Skins, and dwell in Caves. Those who inhabit the Inland Country, are generally rich. They hunt Harts, eat Flesh and Fish raw, and wash themselves with their own Urine. They are a false and treacherous People.

CASAN.

THis Province reaches on the Left of the *Volga* as far as *Siberia* to the North, and to the *Nagayan Tartars* on the East. It was formerly under the *Crim Tartars*, and was capable of bringing 60000 Men to the Field. The Great Duke *Basil Juanowitz*, Father to the famous Tyrant *John Basilowitz*, after a Victory over these *Tartars*, made one *Sheale*, a weak Man, their Governor, whom the *Casan Tartars*, join'd by the *Crim Tartars*, obliged to quit the Country, and give up all their Conquests. Not contented with this, they march'd their Army into the Heart of *Muscovy*, under the Conduct of two Brothers, called *Mendigleri* and *Sapgeri*, forced the *Muscovite* Lines near the River *Occa*, and had the Chase of them to *Nisi-Novogorod*. Having thus master'd all Difficulties, they marched streight to *Moscow*, which they besieged, took and plunder'd. The Castle was also obliged to capitulate on scandalous Terms, *viz.* That the Czar and his Subjects should be Tributaries to them for ever; and as a Sign of their Subjection, the Great Duke should be obliged to smite his Head before the Statue of *Mendigleri*, erected in the Market-place of *Moscow*, as often as the Tribute should be paid to the *Tartars*; and these Articles were sign'd and sworn to by the Czar; so the Kingdom of *Casan* fell to the Share of *Sapgeri*, and *Crim Tartary* to *Mendigleri*; who proposing nothing less than the entire Conquest of *Muscovy*, they invaded the Country again, sat down before *Resan*, summoned *Kowar*, the Weywode of the Castle, to surrender, and told him the Czar himself was now his Subject. The Weywode pretended Ignorance, desired to be satisfied about it, and then promised to surrender. *Mendigleri* sent him the Instrument of Subjection, sign'd and seal'd by the Czar. *Kowar* having gain'd this Point, he sent him Word, That he would keep both the Czar's Original Letters and the City to the last Drop of his Blood; which he did accordingly,

Digitized by Google

dingly, and obliged the *Tartars* to raiſe the Siege with great Loſs. He ſent the Original Letter to the Czar; upon which the Statue of *Menaiglovi* was broke down; and the Czar afterwards laid Siege to *Caſan*: But after much Bloodſhed on both Sides, he was forced to raiſe it. His Son *John Baſilowitz*, to revenge this Affront, began his Reign with the Siege of that Place. He batter'd the City furiouſly two Months, and offer'd 'em honourable Terms, if they would ſurrender; which they rejected, in hopes of being relieved by the *Crim-Tartars*. Upon this he immediately order'd his Mines to be ſprung, buried a vaſt Number of *Tartars* in the Ruins, and ſo took it by Storm on the 9th of *July*, 1552. The *Tartars* defended themſelves with the utmoſt Bravery in two Intrenchments within the City, after the *Muſcovites* made themſelves Maſters of the Breach, and at laſt forced their Way at one of the Gates through the *Muſcovite* Camp to the other Side of the River *Caſanka*. The Czar order'd the Breaches to be immediately repaired, becauſe the whole Province depended on the Fate of this City, which has remained in the Poſſeſſion of the *Muſcovites* ever ſince.

Caſan is ſituated in a large Plain on the River *Caſanka*, about 7 Verſts from the *Volga*, in Lat. 55½. Long. 69½. This City is conſiderable for its Extent and Situation, as well as its Strength: The Caſtle and its Fortifications are of Stone, well provided with Artillery, and a good Gariſon of *Muſcovites*. The *Tartars*, who are allowed to live here, are forbid, on pain of Death, to ſet a Foot between the Walls of the Caſtle. The Country is fertile, eſpecially of all Sorts of Fruits, and Melons of an extraordinary Taſt, as big as our Pompions; but it is not populous, becauſe frequently ravaged by the *Coſſacks*. The Duke of *Holſtein*'s Ambaſſadors obſerve, That the Courſe of the River *Volga* from *Niſi-Novogrod* to *Caſan* is E. and S.E. but from *Caſan* to *Aſtracan*, and to the *Caſpian* Sea, it runs from N. to S. Seventy Miles from *Caſan* ſtands *Rockſchagra*, and 130 to the N. *Malmiſch*, on the *Caſanka*. On the W. Side of the *Volga* lies *Tetuc*, on the Borders of *Bulgaria*. 'Tis irregularly built, and reſembles a Village rather than a City.

BULGARIA.

THis *Tartarian* Province is South from *Caſan*. *Bulgar* is the Capital; and the River *Ulka* riſes in its Neighbourhood. The Ruins of many Cities deſtroyed by *Tamerlane* are to be ſeen all along the Banks of the *Volga*. *Samara* lies on the E. Side of the *Volga*, about two Miles from the Shore, Lat. 52 ⅔. and Long. 70 ⅔. about 200 Miles S. from *Caſan*. It is ſquare, and built all of Wood, except the Churches and Monaſteries. The River *Samar*, from whence it has its Name, falls into the *Wolga* 3 Miles below it.

They have Plenty of Fiſh and Caviar in this Country. The Soil is fruitful: They have fine Meadows and Paſtures, and Plenty of Apple-Trees in the Vallies, of which they make Cyder. Their Mountains are cover'd with Pine-Trees; but much infeſted by the *Coſſacks*, who lurk there.

ASTRACAN.

THE Kingdom of *Aſtracan* has the *Caſpian* Sea on the S. the Kingdom of *Bulgaria* on the N. the *Nogaian Tartars* and the River *Don* on the W. and the *Kalmuck Tartars* on the N. E. The Duke of *Holſtein*'s Ambaſſadors are ſingular in their Obſervation, That the Elevation of the Pole in the City of *Aſtracan* is only 26 Degrees 22 Minutes; and Dr. *Connor* follows them in this Miſtake: But Father *Avril* ſays, the Lat. is 48 Degrees. Mr. *Moll* makes it 47. They had a King of their own; but in 1554, the City and whole Kingdom was taken by *John Baſilowitz*. Before this it belonged to the *Tartars* of *Nagaia*, and had its Name from a *Tartarian* Prince named *Aſtra-Can*, its Founder. It is ſituate in the Iſle of *Dolgoi*, in the *Volga*, which is all over ſandy and barren, except ſome Gardens and Grounds cultivated with great Care: So that *Herbeſtein* is miſtaken when he ſays, that it

Digitized by Google

it lies ſome Days Journey from that River. The Ambaſſadors obſerve, That the Heats were as exceſſive there in *September* and *October*, as in *Germany* in the middle of Summer. The Winter laſts only two Months; but is ſo exceeding cold, that the River is frozen up, and bears Sledges. On this Side the *Volga*, there's a Heath extending 70 *German* Leagues to the W. and another of 80 *German* Leagues to the S. Thoſe Heaths are remarkable for Salt-Pits. The Heat of the Sun bakes the Salt, ſo that it ſwims upon the Surface of the Water an Inch thick, and appears like Rock-Chryſtal. They have ſuch Quantities of it, that for an Half-penny one may buy 40 Pound Weight. The *Volga* ſome Miles lower abounds with Salmon, Sturgeon, white Fiſh, and Belluga, of the Roes of which Caviar is made. Twelve large Carps may be had for Two Pence, and 200 young Sturgeons for half a Crown. They have an incredible Number of Wild-Fowl, eſpecially Geeſe and Ducks, which the *Tartars* hunt with Hawks, whereof each Houſe has one, and they are very expert in breeding them.

The Fruits about *Aſtracan* are equal in Goodneſs and Beauty to thoſe of *Perſia*, eſpecially their Apples, Quinces, Nuts, Peaches, and Melons; but chiefly that Sort called *Carpus*, whoſe Rind is of a lively Green, and the Meat of a Carnation Colour. Grapes were firſt brought hither in 1613, by ſome *Perſian* Merchants, and planted by an old *German* Monk. Now they have a Vineyard, that produces 60 Pipes of excellent Wine in one Year; and every Houſe has its Walks or Arbours of Vines. The Herb *Eſula* grows here as high as a Man, and the Root of *Angelica* as big as one's Arm. About *Aſtracan*, and many Miles further N. there grows a prodigious Quantity of *Liquoriſh*: The Stalks are ſometimes above four Foot high, and very thick; yet 'tis inferior both in Bigneſs and Taſt to that in *Aſia*, near the River *Araxes*. They have 500 great Braſs Cannon, beſides many Mortars, in *Aſtracan*. The Gariſon conſiſts of 9 Regiments, of 500 Muſqueteers each, to keep the neighbouring *Tartars* in Awe. The Town is fortified with a double Wall, and ſome Towers, within half a Muſquet-ſhot of one another. The Fortifications are all very high, and of Stone, which make a noble Figure, eſpecially towards the River; but the Town is not anſwerable, becauſe the Houſes are low, and of Wood. *Michael Theodorowitz* built that Part of the City called *Stelitza-Gorod*, *i. e.* the Soldiers-Town. The Ruins of the great City *Czareſgorod*, with its Palace, and Walls of Brick, demoliſh'd by *Tamerlane*, have furniſhed the City of *Aſtracan* for many Years with Materials for their Publick Buildings.

The City is inhabited by *Muſcovites*. The *Armenians* and *Nagaian Tartars* have each of them a peculiar Suburb. The *Tartars* have 1000 Houſes, which are moſt Part of Bulruſhes; but they are not allow'd to come within the Walls.

As this City is in a manner the common Frontier on this Side betwixt *Aſia* and *Europe*, not only the *Crim*, *Precopenſe*, *Bulgar*, and *Nagaian Tartars*, but alſo the *Armenians*, *Perſians* and *Indians*, have a particular Place aſſign'd them, and drive a conſiderable Trade here; ſo that the Cuſtoms of this Place, when at the loweſt, amount to 250000 Crowns *per Annum*. Others of the moſt remarkable Towns belonging to this Kingdom are, *Soratoff*: It lies in Lat. 52. and Long. 67 ¾. in a large Plain upon a Branch of the *Volga*, about 4 Miles from the main Stream. 'Tis gariſon'd and inhabited only by *Muſcovites*, who ſerve as a Guard againſt the Invaſions of the *Kalmuck Tartars*, that inhabit a vaſt Country N. and E. from the *Caſpian* Sea. *Zariza* lies in Lat. 49. Lon. 42. and is ſituated on the W. Bank of the *Volga*. It is fortified with ſeveral Baſtions and Towers of Wood, and is a Frontier Gariſon againſt the neighbouring *Tartars* and *Coſſacks*. The Soldiers alſo convoy the Veſſels that paſs up and down the River. The Soil here is barren *Szarnagor* lies on the Right Side of the *Volga*, on a high Ground: It is ſquare, fortified with Wooden Towers and Ramparts; and is alſo a Frontier Gariſon againſt the *Coſſacks* and *Tartars*.

The *Nagaian-Coſſan Tartars* were unknown to ancient Geographers. They are ſaid to have been *Indians*, who revolted from

from their Kings, and about 1212 ſettled near the *Euxine* Sea, upon the *Palus Meotis*, where the ancient *Getæ* dwelt, and extended their Conqueſt firſt to the River *Don*, and afterwards to the *Volga*, where they now inhabit. Thoſe of *Nagaia* lie betwixt the *Volga* and *Jaika*, as far as the *Caſpian* Sea. Their principal City then was *Aſtracan*.

They live in round Huts of Bulruſhes, about 12 or 13 *Engliſh* Yards in Compaſs. The *Muſcovites* call them Vagabonds, becauſe they ramble in Summer from Place to Place, to ſeek Graſs for their Cattle, and carry their Huts in Carts. In Winter they dwell near *Aſtracan*. They pay no Tribute to the Czar, but are obliged to ſerve him in his Wars. They have petty Princes of their own, ſome of whom the Czar keeps as Hoſtages in the Caſtle of *Aſtracan*.

They are generally *Mahometans*, and very few of them of the *Muſcovite* Faith: They vow ſome of their Children to God, or to ſome Saint, which are diſtinguiſhed by a Ring in their Noſtrils, if Girls; and in their Right Ear if Boys.

They eat Fiſh dry'd in the Sun inſtead of Bread, and have ſometimes Cakes of Meal and Rice. Their Drink is generally Milk and Water; but there is Beer, Wine, Mead, and *Aqua-Vitæ*, at *Aſtracan*. Their Cattle are large, and the Tails of their Sheep ſo fat, that ſome of them are 30 Pound Weight: Their Ears hang down like Spaniel-Dogs. Their Horſes, thô ſmall and ill ſhap'd, are hardy and ſtrong. Thoſe *Tartars* have bad Lineaments, are low and fat, with large Faces, and little Eyes, of an Olive Complexion, and full of Wrinkles. They wear little Beards, and keep their Heads ſhaven; but the Women are tolerably handſome. The Men's Clothes are a looſe Coat of coarſe Cloth, with a ſhort Cloak of Sheep-Skins, the Wool outwards, and a Cap of the ſame, but commonly black. The Women wear white Linen, and have plaited Coifs on their Heads, with a great many *Muſcovian* Pence hanging down on both Sides.

CHAP.

Digitized by Google

CHAP. XII.

LITTLE TARTARY.

THIS Country had anciently ſeveral Names: 1. *Cherſoneſus-Taurica*, from the *Tauri*, or the *Tauro Scythæ*, who inhabited there, as *Pliny*, *Ptolomy*, and *Ovid*, inform us, and *Cherſoneſus*, becauſe it was a *Peninſula*. 2. *Crim-Tartary*, from a City of that Name. 3. *Precopian-Tartary*, from the City *Precopz*. 4. *Little Tartary*, to diſtinguiſh it from the *Great Tartary*. 5. *Strabo* calls it *Cherſoneſus-Scythica*. 6. Others call'd it *Gazavia*. It has the *Euxine* Sea on the S. which *Pliny* tells us was formerly called *Axtnos*, *i. e.* Inhoſpitable. On the E. it has the *Boſphorus Cimmerius*, ſo call'd from the *Cimmerii*, a People inhabiting there, now call'd the Streights of *Caffa*. It has the *Sinus-Carcinitus*, the Mouth of the *Boryſthenes*, on the W. and the Rivers *Pſol* and *Deſna* on the N. W. They both fall into the Left Side of the *Nieper*, and run from N. E. to N. W. The Boundary on the N. E. is the *Great Donn*, and the *Leſſer*, call'd ſometimes the *Donetz*. On the N. lies the Province of *Muſcovy*, call'd *Rezan*. The Mouth of the *Nieſter* is 150 *Engliſh* Miles S. W. from the *Taurica-Cherſoneſus*; and the Mouth of the *Donn* is 135 N. E. from it. The moſt Southern Promontory of that *Cherſoneſus* is 315 N. E. from *Conſtantinople*. The Town *Precopz* is 580 S from *Moſcow*. According to *Brietius*, from the Mouth of the *Nieper* to the Conflux of the *Greater* and *Leſſer Donn*, *i. e.* from 49 to 60 ½. Long. is 11 ½. Degr. which make 690 Miles. But he not obſerving the Diminution of the Degrees of Long. is out in his Reckoning: The Mouth of the *Nieper* is in 50, and the Conflux of the *Donn* and *Donetz* in. 61 ½. Long. ſo that the Diſtance is only 375 *Engliſh* Miles; and the Breadth is from the moſt Southern Part of the *Cherſoneſus* in Lat. 46. to the moſt Northerly Winding of the *Little Donn* in Lat. 52. about 360 Miles. The moſt Southerly Promontory of the *Cherſoneſus* is in Lat. 44 ½. and that Confluence in Lat. 49 ½. makes 320 Miles.

Of the Hiſtory of Little Tartary.

THis Country was famous for its fruitful Soil, and Plenty of Fiſh. It was ſubject to ſeveral Maſters, call'd the Princes of *Boſphorus*; but had no certain Form of Government. After that, the *Tauri*, a *Scythian* People, conquer'd it, and call'd it *Taurica*, as formerly mention'd. It is probable they were the *European Scythians*, whom *Darius*, the Son of *Hyſtaſpes*, made War upon with an Army of 700000 Men, and was routed by them, as *Herodotus* informs us. *Mithridates*, King of *Pontus*, defeated them, and annex'd *Taurica-Cherſoneſus* to his own Dominions. But being overcome by the *Romans*, he not only loſt his new Conqueſts, but alſo his Kingdom of *Pontus*. After that, the *Romans* ſet up Kings there, whom they called the Kings of *Boſphorus*. Upon the Diviſion of the Empire among the Sons of *Conſtantine the Great*, thoſe Provinces fell to the Share of the Eaſtern Emperors. (The *Tartars* now inhabiting *Crim-Tartary* are originally from *Aſia*, and began to be famous about 950, in the *Greek*, *Latin*, and *Arabian* Hiſtories.) The *Genoeſe* taking Advantage of the Confuſion and Diſorders among the *Greeks*, about the Time of the Holy War, and being then powerful at Sea, poſſeſs'd themſelves of the greater Part of *Crim-Tartary*, and eſpecially of *Caffa*, call'd by the *Greeks*, *Theodoſia*. In 1250, the *Tartars*, puffed up with the great Victories they had gain'd under their Prince *Batu*, who ravag'd for two Years together *Hungary*, *Sclavonia*, *Boſnia*, *Raſcia*, *Bulgaria*, and the Countries on both Sides the *Danube*, and alſo waſted great Part of *Ruſſia*, they invaded the

Places belonging to the *Genoese*; and tho' not able to expel 'em, yet they oblig'd them at length to pay Tribute. Some are of Opinion, that the *Tartars* suffer'd the *Genoese* to continue in that Country, because of the Gain they made by their Traffick, principally of Slaves, which the *Genoese* furnish'd to a great Part of the World, but especially to *Egypt*, who generally had all their *Mamalukes*, as long as that Government lasted, from *Caffa*; or rather, the *Tartars* having no Skill in besieging Towns, especially such as might constantly be relieved, could not totally drive them out. Those Plantations were very convenient for the *Genoese*; for they had a great Colony at *Pera* near *Constantinople*, by which they enjoyed the whole Trade of the *Black Sea*. At this Time the *Tartars* were Masters of the other Coasts of that Sea, of the *Palus Meotis*, and of many Places in the *Peninsula* and Continent, together with those where the *Nogaian Tartars* now live. But when the Emperor of the *Turks*, *Mahomet* II. had taken *Constantinople* in 1452 by Storm, he applied his utmost Force to drive the *Genoese* from his Neighbourhood, which by degrees he effected, and took *Caffa*, their principal Town, in 1475, after a Siege of 14 Years, when some say the Garison was brib'd to betray the City. 'Tis now the Residence of a *Beglerbeg*.

The *Tartars* of this Country acknowledg'd the Superiority of the Great Cham till 1400, that *Lochlon Cham*, one of the Descendants of *Batu*, refus'd Obedience, and took upon himself the absolute Dominion over all those Parts, except some few Places in *Taurica*, which still remain'd in the Power of the *Genoese*. But in 1584, their Independency was taken from them by *Amurath* III. who order'd their Prince's Throat to be cut, and set up *Islan*, the Brother of *Mahomet*, their last Prince, under such Conditions and Marks of Slavery as the Grand Seignior pleas'd. The *Tartars* then were possessed of all the Country of *Budziack*, which lies between the *Niester* and *Borysthenes*; but the Turk seiz'd upon that; so that their Dominions reach only from the *Borysthenes* or *Nieper* to the *Donn* or *Tanais*, of which the *Peninsula* is the chief Part. This Conduct of *Amurath* III. was contrary to a League betwixt *Selim* I. and the *Crim Tartar*, who married the Daughtre of the Grand Seignior, and assisted him with an Army of 150000 Men against his Father; by which League it was provided, That the *Tartars* should assist the *Turk*, when required, with 50000 Horse, headed by the Cham's Son, or some principal Officer; but when the Grand Seignior went to War in Person, the Cham was oblig'd to attend him with 100000 Horse. The Turk sometimes keeps the young Princes as Hostages for Performance of the Conditions: One of which is, not to make War, except against the *Muscovites*, without Consent of the Turk; and that they should pay him Yearly a Tribute of 300 Christians, some Furs, Butter, and such other Things, for which the Turk is to pay them 5500 Ducats: And the Cham is to succeed to the *Turkish* Empire, if the Males of the *Ottoman* Line fail. In 1663, the *Tartars*, being call'd to the Assistance of the *Turks*, made Incursions into *Hungary*, *Moravia*, and *Silesia*, sack'd and burn'd Cities and Towns, and carried off in one Year 160000 Captives, that they sold to the *Turks*, who trade with them for this Merchandize; as Sir *Paul Ricaut* informs us.

Of the MANNERS *of the* Tartars.

THis Country is very populous, by reason of their Polygamy; so that they talk of a *Tartar* who had 40 Children born in one Year by his Wives. They endure Thirst, Hunger, and Toil, with great Patience, and feed upon raw Flesh and Mare's Milk. A Horse's Head is a choice Dish with them: They prepare their Horse-Flesh thus; They cut it out in thin Pieces, lay it upon their Horses Back, ride on it all Day, and at Night eat it. They think the Heat of their Thighs, and the Sweat of the Horse, gives it a pleasant Taste. This is all their Cookery. They eat Garlick in abundance, which they say helps them to digest their raw Meat. They reckon it unworthy of a Man to till the Ground; and have no fix'd Habitations, but with their Flocks and Families wander from Place to Place over the large Countries betwixt the *Donn* and the *Nieper*. They think it the greatest Curse they can give their Enemies and Children, when angry with them, to wish,

Digitized by Google

wish, *That they may live as long in one Place as the Christians do.* They use no Finery in Apparel, but are great Slovens. Most of them are Atheists, and place their Happiness in the Pleasures of Sense; but some of them are *Mahometans*; yet *Jews*, *Armenians*, and other Christians, dwell in *Caffa*, &c. and are allow'd the Freedom of Worship. The Natives have no Table-Cloths: They fast long, and when they get Meat, eat so much, that they sleep for two Days. During this Surfeit, the *Poles* frequently surprize and kill them. Their Drink is Water, Milk, and Ale of Millet. They are mighty Lovers of sour Milk, think it a great Cordial, a Help to Digestion, and use it also as a Purge. They feed likewise upon Herbs that grow on the Banks of the *Donn*, but chiefly on one call'd *Paltraca*, which they say is nourishing, and makes them sprightly. If they have enough of this Herb, they are not afraid to go thro' the most wild and desolate Places of *Tartary*. They are, generally speaking, of an ordinary Stature, well set, have short Necks, broad Faces, large Foreheads, Eyes black and hollow, but very lively, with other Features peculiar to themselves, by which they may be distinguish'd from other Nations. They have long Beards, but shave all other Places of their Bodies. They have no Notion of Justice and Equity, but take any thing they want, without any Scruple, wherever they find it: Yet they keep their Promise to their Enemies; so that the *Poles* often let the *Tartarian* Prisoners go upon their Parole of Honour, to endeavour the Recovery of their Liberty by Exchange of Prisoners, which if they cannot obtain, they never fail to return by the Day prefix'd. When any of them are summoned before a Judge, and convicted of Theft or Robbery, they do not deny the Fact, but insist upon this as an Excuse, That they needed those Things; upon which the Judge gives Sentence, by telling the Plaintiff, That if he wants any thing, he may also furnish himself from his Neighbour's Goods. They sell *Polish* Virgins, whom they take Captives, at great Prices to the *Persians* and *Indians* for their Seraglio's, after the Cham has had his Share of them. If Murtherers be apprehended, their Punishment is to take from them their Clothes, Arms, and Horses, and then absolve them, and sometimes allow them a Horse and a Bow; and the Judge discharges them, with an Advice to go and mind their Affairs. They know no such thing as Boundaries and Limits of Lands, but live where they can. It is reported by most Authors, That for some Days after their Birth, they don't open their Eyes. Their Mothers and Nurses wash them every Day in salt Water, to harden and thicken their Skins against Cold, which is absolutely necessary; for from 7 Years old, that they leave their Huts of Osiers or Reeds, of about 12 or 14 Foot wide, and cover'd with a coarse Hairy Felt, or Cloth; they never sleep in an House, but in the open Air, tho' it be Frost and Snow; nor do they eat any thing but what they shoot with their Arrows. At 12 or 15 Years of Age, they go with their Fathers to the War. Their Cloathing is a short Shirt, with coarse Drawers, and a Sheep-Skin with the Wool on it over their Shoulders. The Women are distinguish'd from the Men by a Linen-Coif, or a Piece of Cloth round their Heads. The Wives of the Cham, and of Persons of Note, wear a Veil over their Faces when in publick, and are cloath'd in Silks, Callicoes, *&c.* The chief Men have their Horses of *Arabian* Breed, and use *Turkish* Saddles. They allow no Change in the Fashion of their Clothes, and punish Adultery with Death.

Of their SOIL.

THE Country is plain, and the Air unhealthful, because they don't cultivate the Ground. Tempestuous Winds rage frequently here. The *Chersonesus* is the most fruitful and best improv'd of all the Dominions of the *Crim-Tartars*. They say, the Country is naturally fertile, yields 100 Measures of Millet for one, and 50 for one of other Grain. Their Horses are little, ill shap'd, have ugly low Necks, but are strong, and endure Cold and Hunger without much Prejudice. They are very swift, and ride sometimes 20 or 30 Leagues without baiting. Their Food oftentimes is nothing but Leaves, Branches and Bark of Trees; and sometimes they dig up the Roots of Grass with their Hoofs, which altogether makes them preferable to any other Horses in the World. The *Tartars* are most terri-

Digitized by Google

ble, and do moſt Execution, when mounted on their own Horſes. Their Oxen are large, and grow very fat, upon the good Paſtures on the Banks of the *Boryſthenes*.

Their MILITARY AFFAIRS.

THeir Arms are Bows, Arrows, and Darts, in the Uſe of which their Women are expert. The *Tartars* Way of Fighting is to diſſemble a Flight, and then throw their Darts behind them with great Dexterity. When they are at the Point of Death, they will fight with their Teeth and Heels, and then are moſt revengeful. Their Saddles and Stirrups are of Wood, and they breed their Horſes to ſwim Rivers. When their Enemies chaſe, and are ready to catch 'em, they throw away their Saddles, Clothes, and every thing elſe but their Arms, that they may ride off with the greater ſpeed. They frequently retire on purpoſe to make their Enemies break their Ranks, and then they rally, and attack them with great Fury. When they fight in a plain Country, they don't draw up their Forces as other Nations; but when within Arrow-ſhot, they endeavour to ſurround the Enemy, that they may have the greater Opportunity of throwing their Darts and Arrows upon them from all Sides. Their Method of advancing and retiring is very ſurprizing: They carefully follow their Leaders; but if they be ſhot, or miſtake, their whole Army is diſorder'd, and can never rally again. They cannot fight in narrow Paſſes, becauſe they have no Arms of Defence. They uſe ſhort Stirrups, and are ſuch excellent Horſemen, that if any thing fall to the Ground, they can take it up again, tho' their Horſe run at full ſpeed. They can avoid the Enemy's Spears, by throwing themſelves to the other Side of the Horſe, where they hang by one Hand and one Foot; and when the Danger is over, ſpeedily mount again. When they make Inroads into the neighbouring Provinces, each Man provides himſelf with two or three Horſes, that when one is wearied, he may have another at hand. They don't uſe Spurs, but have fine Whips, ſo well twiſted, that ours are much ſhort of 'em. Their Saddles ſerve 'em at Night for Pillows, and they tie their Horſes to their Legs. If the Cham go in Perſon upon an Expedition, he ſeldom has fewer than 80, and ſometimes more than 100000, under his Command; but if a Mirza be General, he has never more than 50000. They chuſe to march in the Winter, when the Rivers are frozen, and, as much as they can, take unfrequented Ways, to ſhun the Scouts of the *Coſſacks*, and have a Compaſs to direct them through thoſe Deſarts. An Army of 80000 has commonly 200000 Horſes. They return always by another Way than they came. The Wings of their Army divide themſelves into ſmall Troops, ravage and burn the Country all round for 10 or 12 Leagues, and kill all that reſiſt. Such as yield, they bind, and carry away Priſoners, with all their Cattle, except Swine, which they burn as unclean Creatures. As ſoon as thoſe Wings have done with their Ravage, they return to the Body of the Army, and others are ſent out in their Turn. To prevent the Conſequences of ſuch Invaſions, their Neighbours have always their Houſes fortified, or Places of Strength and thick Woods, to which they retire. The *Coſſacks* fill their Grounds full of Trenches and Hedges, to hinder their March, and keep very diligent Watches every where. If they cannot overtake them, they repair to the Paſſages of the *Nieper*, where they lie in Ambuſh, and frequently recover much of the Prey. When the *Tartars* return to their own Country, they divide the Plunder, and firſt conſider thoſe who have loſt their Horſes in the Service: In the next place they give a Share to the Kindred of the Slain; then the Cham has his; after him the Officers; and the reſt is divided among the Soldiers. If any of the Captives be old, they give them to their Boys, that they may learn to ſhoot, throw Darts, and kill them, which is charming Sport to their Youth. They carry their Houſhold-Furniture over Rivers by tying Branches of Trees twiſted together to the Tails of Horſes, upon which they lay their Goods, and ferry them over; but if the River be broad, they kill their worſt Horſes, and make Boats of their Hides.

Of

Of the REVENUES *of the* Cham.

HE has no certain and fix'd Revenue; but his Funds are, 1. The Tenth of all Captives; for every Captive of Diſtinction, 3 Sequins; and a Dollar for every one elſe. 2. One half of the Tribute of the *Tauricæ-Cherſoneſus*, the Grand Seignior having the other. 3. The Grand Seignior pays him every Day 25 Dollars, to the Sultan *Galga* 12 ½, and to the Sultan *Huſtage* 12 ½, beſides Lands; and all the great *Tartars* have Salaries from him, but uncertain. 4. Donatives ſent him Yearly by neighbouring Princes. The *Muſcovites* and *Poles* having given Money to the Cham, to prevent his Invaſions, they afterwards claim'd it as a Tribute. The Prince of *Moldavia* preſents him Yearly with 20 Cart-load of Honey, each Cart drawn by 4 Oxen. 5. For every Well in the Country, he has a Horſe. 6. The richer and better Sort of *Tartars* furniſh him with Proviſions, and in caſe of Neceſſity, all the Nation contribute towards it. 7. He has vaſt Flocks and Herds kept by his Factors. 8. He coins Copper Money, which is only current in his own Dominions, and once in 4 or 5 Years he calls it all in, and coins a new Sort. The Forces of the Cham are reckon'd to amount in all to 300000 Horſe. He has no Foot, but a few Janizaries he borrows from the Turk for the Guard of his Perſon when he goes to War. He has alſo a green or purple Standard ſent him from the *Port*; and the Grand Seignior obliges ſuch *Tartars* as are his Tributaries to join the Cham with ſome Auxiliaries, when he deſigns any Invaſion upon Chriſtians. The *Beglerbeg* of *Caffa* manages the *Turkiſh* Affairs in theſe Parts.

Of the Diviſion of Leſſer Tartary.

IT is divided, 1. Into *Gazaria*, or *Precopia*, belonging to the *Turks*. The chief Towns are *Caffa*, *Segdat*, and *Sarigermen*. This Country is call'd the *Peninſula*, or *Cherſoneſus*.

The *Precopia*, or *Cumania*, belonging to the *Tartars*: The chief Towns are *Precope*, *Crim*, and *Baccaſar*. All theſe Places are in the *Peninſula*.

2. Into *Crim-Tartary*, properly ſo called. The chief Towns are *Okzakow* and *Aſoph*.

Of the CHERSONESUS.

THE *Cherſoneſus* is 140 *German* Leagues in Compaſs, 180 *Engliſh* Miles long, 120 where broadeſt, and one Mile over where narroweſt. This is the fruitfuleſt Country that belongs to the Cham. Towards the S. it is Mountainous, and well Water'd: The reſt is Champaign, and ill Water'd, ſo that they are oblig'd to dig deep Wells. The principal Cities are, 1. *Caffa*, anciently call'd *Theodoſia*. *Pliny*, *Strabo*, *Ptolemy*, and *Ammianus*, mention it. *Appian*, and *Stephanus Byzantinus*, call it *Theudoſia*: 'Tis in Lat. 44 ½. Long. 55 ½. a great City, a noble Mart, with a large and ſafe Port, and lies 380 Miles N. E. from *Conſtantinople*. Here are many *Armenians* and *Greek* Chriſtians; all of them, when above 15 Years of Age, pay a Tribute of a Piaſter and a half to the Grand Seignior, as Lord of the City, tho' the Cham's Juriſdiction reaches to the very Walls of it. Sir *John Chardin* gives this Account of *Caffa*: 'Tis a great City, built at the Bottom of a little Hill, upon the Sea Shore, and encompaſs'd with ſtrong Walls, that advance a little into the Sea. It has two Caſtles, one of them the Reſidence of the Baſha, and about 4000 Houſes, 3200 of which belong to *Turks* and *Tartars*, the reſt to Chriſtians. The Houſes, Bazars, Moſques, and Baths, are ſmall, and built of Earth. The Soil about it is dry and ſandy, the Water bad; but the Air pure and wholeſome. Proviſions are very cheap; good Mutton not above a Farthing a Pound, and other Things in proportion. The Harbour is ſafe, where Ships lie cloſe to the Shore, in 10 or 12 Fathom Water. They have a great Trade in Fiſh and Caviar taken in the Lake *Meotis*; 26 Miles diſtant from it, and tranſported into *Europe* and the *Indies*. They likewiſe export Corn, Butter, and Salt, to *Conſtantinople*, and other Places. Their Butter is the beſt in *Turkey*. 2. *Ingermen*, on the S. W. where there's now only a Caſtle, poſſeſſed by the *Turks*. It has been a great Town, as appears by its Ruins; among which are many Caves cut out of the Rocks, with Wells, and old *Greek* Buildings,

Digitized by Google

dings, as appears by the Inſcriptions. 3. *Sarigermen*, anciently call'd *Corſuna*, and then the nobleſt and moſt populous City of all the *Peninſula*, but now deſolate: 'Tis ſtill compaſs'd with a Stone Wall; and ſeveral Aquæducts, with other noble Buildings, remain entire. It lies W. from *Caffa* 120 Miles. 4. *Wolodimer*: The Czar took this Town from *Joannes Zimiſces*, and, with other rich Plunder, carried off two large Brazen Gates to *Kiow*; from whence *Boleſlaus* II. King of *Poland*, tranſported them to *Gneſna*, where they ſtill remain.

Of the Places belonging to Crim-Tartary *in* Taurica-Cherſoneſus.

1. *Precopz*, anciently call'd *Taphræ*, or *Taphre*. The *Tartars* call it Or, and the *Polanders*, *Precop*, which ſignifies a Ditch: It was taken by the Emperor *Trajan*'s Army. 'Tis the chief City of the Country, and gives it the Name of *Precopian Tartary*. It has the Gulph of *Nigropoli* on the W. and the Lake of *Bugey* on the E. This City lies 90 Miles N. W. from *Caffa*, 120 W. from the *Boſphorus Cimmerius*, 380 S. W. from the Mouth of the River *Donn*, and is ſituate in the *Iſthmus*, near the Ditch, built by the *Tartars* to defend the *Cherſoneſus*: It is not well fortified, but has a ſtrong Caſtle, the Reſidence of the Governor, who commands the Guards upon the *Donn* and *Nieper*; examines all Strangers, and ſuffers none to paſs without the Cham's Letters. 2. *Sachingerai*, where the Great Cham overthrew the *Nagay-Tartars*, and rais'd 17 Forts upon the Dyke, ſome of them of the Skulls and Bones of the Slain. 3. *Sach.ngeri*, on the *Black Sea*: It has 2000 Houſes, and a good Trade. 4. *Balcala*, call'd *Jombeli* by the *Genoeſe*, now poſſeſs'd by the *Turks*, who build their Gallies here. 5. *Mongut*, an Inland Town, once a great City, but now in Ruins: It is inhabited by *Turks* and *Greeks*. 6. *Pontico*, anciently called *Panticapeum*, and formerly the chief City of this Country, on the Mouth of the Streights of *Caffa*. 7. *Kerſa*, S. E. from *Precop*, on the Streights, and has above 1000 Houſes. 8. *Arbetok*, on the S. of the *Palus Meotis*, 60 Miles S. E. from *Precop*: It has two Caſtles, and the Cham keeps 70000 Studs here. Other Towns belonging to the *Cherſoneſus* are, *Koſtof*, S. W. from *Precop*, on the *Black Sea*: *Boluſnaf*, S. E. from *Koſtof*: *Belbeg*, S. from *Boluſnaf*, and S. W. from *Caffa*: *Karabes*, E. from *Boluſnaf*: But we forbear the Deſcription of them, becauſe they have nothing remarkable. 9. *Crim*, 25 Miles from *Caffa*, formerly a large City, but now almoſt reduc'd to a Village: It gives the Name of *Crim-Tartary* to the Country. The Cham has his Mint and Seraglio here. 10. *Bacca-Saray*, or *Paccaſar*, alias *Boſtan-Serail*, the Reſidence of the Cham: It has about 4000 Houſes, and a Moſch, with a magnificent Palace, and divers ſtately Sepulchres of the Chams. This City lies in a Country proper for Hunting and Fowling, in which the *Tartars* are very skilful. It is adorn'd with Baths, Gardens, Orchards, *&c.* ſtands 55 Miles N. W. of *Caffa*, and about 50 S. from *Precop*.

Of CRIM-TARTARY, *properly ſo call'd.*

IT lies N. from *Precop*, and has but few Towns. The Soil is fertile, and had formerly many Colonies of *Greeks*, moſt of 'em being now demoliſh'd. The Town of *Nigropoli* is near the Sea, and gives Name to the Gulph. *Ozzakow*, was once a Town of *Podolia*, and taken from the *Lithuanians* by the *Tartars*. It is ſometimes the Seat of the Cham, and lies near the Mouth of the *Nieper*, on the *Sinus Carcinatis*. The Inhabitants are *Tartars*; but it is garriſon'd with *Turks*, and lies in Lat. 46. Long. 51 ½. Betwixt the *Nieper* and *Nieſter* live the *Tartars* of *Ozzakow*, otherwiſe call'd the *Tartars* of *Budziack*. The *Nieſter* parts them from *Beſſaraba* on the S. They are ſubject to the Turk; and to ſecure their Dependance, the Grand Seignior has built Towns on the Sea-Coaſts, and along the Rivers. They are ſaid to be a Nation of Banditi and Libertines, who regard neither God nor Man. They go to their Rendezvous in ſmall Parties. All Authors take Notice of an Advantage they have over other Nations, *viz.* That they can ſee further and better, inſomuch

Digitized by Google

much that a *Tartar* will discern a single *Ruſs* further than a *Ruſſian* can discern a whole Troop of *Tartars*. Sometimes the *Coſſacks* purſue them in their own Country, and when they do ſo, march always in their Tabor; that is, in the middle of their Chariots, and ſend out Centinels on every Side at a good Diſtance. If they firſt ſpy the *Tartars*, they leave their Tabor, and fall upon them, and commonly have the Advantage; but if the *Tartars* firſt ſee the *Coſſacks*, they aſſault them in their Tabor with their Arrows, which, though they reach further than the *Coſſacks* Guns, yet their Tabor is ſo good a Defence, that 50 *Coſſacks* will not flee from 500 *Tartars*.

Of the RIVERS *of* Leſſer Tartary.

1. *Tanais*, ſo called by the Ancients, as *Strabo*, *Pliny*, and *Pomponius Mela*, was the old Boundary betwixt *Europe* and *Aſia*. 'Tis now called *Donn* by thoſe of the Neighbourhood. The *Italians* call it *La Tana*. Its Source is in the Province of *Rhoſan* in *Muſcovy*, in Lat. 54 ½. Long. 58. 110 Miles from *Muſcow*, and riſes from the Lake *Iwanowwa Lezora*, which is 500 *Ruſſian* Verſts broad. The Ancients believed this River had its Fountain in the *Ripheam* Mountains. It runs firſt Eaſtward. Some Maps place the moſt Eaſterly Winding of that River in Lat. 53. but Mr. *Moll* places it in 48. then it turns S. W. runs through the Country of the *Precopian Tartars*, and falls into the *Palus Meotis*, according to Mr. *Moll*, in Lat. 46. but according to others, in 50. Near the Mouth of this River is the City of *Aſoph*, as the *Germans* call it. *Ptolomy*, and *Stephen* of *Byzantium*, name it *Tanais*; the Natives *Azack*; and the *Italians*, *La Tana*. The River *Donn* divides it: It is ſituated at the Foot of a Hill, is of a ſquare Figure, and has a Caſtle of great Strength. It is 300 Miles N. E. from the Streights of *Caffa*. It was formerly taken by the *Muſcovites*, and retaken by the *Turks*. But the preſent Czar deſigning to make War upon the *Crim-Tartars*, and propoſing no leſs than the Conqueſt of their Capital City *Precop*, he reſolved firſt on the Siege of *Aſoph*; which being ſituated upon the Mouth of the River *Donn*, is an Inlet to *Leſſer Tartary*. 'Tis ſtrange that the *Turks*, who are ſo much bent on Conqueſts, were ſo careleſs of ſuch a conſiderable Place as *Aſoph*, and did not improve the Opportunity they had of joining the Rivers of *Donn* and *Wolga* together by means of a Canal, which was very practicable, becauſe there are two Rivers there of leſs Note; one call'd *Ilaffa*, which falls into the *Donn* from the N. E. the other, call'd *Camiſinca*, falls into the *Wolga* from the N. W. Thoſe two Rivers are not above 5 *Engliſh* Miles aſunder, which is not taken notice of by ordinary Maps; but they mention the Canal of *Camous*, which has no Being. The Ground betwixt theſe two Rivers is eaſy to be dug; and by this Canal, they might have open'd their Way into the Heart of *Muſcovy*; and by the *Wolga*, into *Perſia*. The *Turkiſh* Garriſon conſiſted of 10000 Men; the Czar's Army was 100000 Foot, and 20000 Horſe; but being deſtitute of Shipping, the *Turks* got in Supplies whenever they pleas'd, and the approaching Winter oblig'd the *Muſcovites* to raiſe the Siege: But the Czar being eager to repair that Diſgrace, made greater Preparations of Artillery and Bombs than formerly, and alſo of large Gallies, ſome of them 100 Foot, which in a Sea-Fight took or ſunk the *Turkiſh* Saiques, laden with Supplies and Proviſions. The Czar himſelf boarded the *Turkiſh* Admiral, and gave 50000 Ducats, found in the Enemy's Ships, to his Men. Upon this Naval Victory, the Garriſon capitulated: The Czar, after taking this City, order'd it to be repair'd, and fortify'd more regularly; then he commanded, 1. The Building of 80 Gallies, and 150 Brigantines. 2. The making a good Harbour on that Side. 3. The Conjunction of the two Rivers *Wolga* and *Donn*, and immediately 20000 Men were employ'd in that Work. A new Draught of that artificial Channel, and the Dams and Locks, *&c.* in order to a Paſſage of Ships through the Rivers of *Ilaffa* and *Camiſinca*, and to the *Wolga*, as alſo to the *Donn*, for a Communication betwixt the *Euxine* and *Caſpian* Seas, is drawn by Mr. *Moll*. 2. The *Boryſthenes* of *Ptolomy*, which the Natives call *Nieper*, the common Boundary of *Lithuania* and *Muſcovy*, riſes in *Muſcovy*, in the Dutchy of *Bielka*, near the Village of *Dnieperſco*, in Lat. 56 ½. Long. 55. 10 Leagues from the Lake of *Fromowo*; from whence, continuing its Courſe to the S. near *Wiefmo*, it runs Eaſtward,

Digitized by Google

ward, and passes by the Cities *Progobus*, *Smolensko*, *Orska*, *Du*, *Crowna*, and *Mohilouw*: From thence it runs S. and passes by *Kiow*, near the *Circassian Tartars*, and from thence towards *Oczakow*, a City of the *Precopian Tartars*, and disembogues into the *Euxine* Sea, 50 Miles from the Mouth of the *Niester*, and 100 N. from the Mouth of the *Ister* or *Danube*. Seventy five Miles above the Mouth of the *Nieper*, there are 13 Cataracts, which hinder the Navigation of this River; the Fountain of which was unknown to *Herodotus*. 3. The *Niester*, call'd the *Tyras*, by *Ptolomy*, *Strabo*, *Herodotus*, and *Pliny*. The Spring of this River is in *Red Russia* in *Poland*, from a small Lake 9 Miles E. from *Preslow*, and 4 from *Leopold*; then it runs E. and separates *Podolia* and the Palatinate of *Braclaw* from *Moldavia*, and falls into the *Euxine* Sea 6 Miles N. from the Mouth of the River *Danube*. *Ovid* makes mention of this River in *Lib.* 4 *de Ponto*.

Of the COSSACKS.

SOme say, the Word *Cossack* is *Russian*, and signifies Free-booter, or Banditi. Others derive it from *Cosa*, signifying a Goat, because of their Nimbleness. Some say, that *Cosa*, in the *Sclavonian* Language, signifies a Sythe, their ordinary Weapon. They are thought to have come first from the Islands of the *Borysthenes*, near the Mouth of that River, and were called *Zaporienses*, from the *Porowis*, or Cataracts and Rocks in the *Nieper*. The *Turks* call them *Russians*: They dwell in a Part of *Red-Russia* in *Poland*, and in *Bessarabia*, betwixt the Rivers *Borysthenes* and the *Niester*. They are terrible to the *Turks*, because of their Invasions by way of the *Black Sea*. In 1548, in the Time of *Sigismund* I. King of *Poland*, these *Cossacks* were only Volunteers of the Frontiers of *Russia*, *Volhinia*, *Podolia*, and the other Provinces of *Poland*, who assembled together, partly to defend themselves from the *Tartars*, by fighting them at the Passes of the *Nieper*, as they returned with their Prey, and partly to rob upon the *Black Sea*, where, getting rich Booty, they drew more into their Association. Sometimes they made Descents upon *Natolia*, and plundered the great Towns, as *Trebisond* and *Sinope*. At other Times they advanc'd within two Miles of *Constantinople*, and brought off Booty and Prisoners. At first they were about 6000, under *Eustachius Doskowicius*, their General; but their Numbers were quickly increas'd by their Neighbours, because of the Gain they made by their Pyracies, part of which they laid in their *Sborbinza Woskowa*, or Magazine, and the rest they brought home to their Houses. About the end of the Season, these Adventurers separate, and agree upon the Time and Place of Rendezvous next Spring in the Isles and Rocks of the *Nieper*, whence they return to their Pyracy. *Stephen Battori*, King of *Poland*, who began his Reign in 1576, considering the Service that might be made of those Thieves, for guarding the Country and Frontiers against the Inroads of the *Tartars*, formed them into a regular Body, and they serv'd him as Foot-Soldiers; for the *Polish* Army consists of Horse for most part. He gave them the Town and Territories of *Trebinorow*, about 80 Miles in length, in the Palatinate of *Kiow*, upon the *Borysthenes*; which Town they made their Magazine, and the Residence of their Governor-General, whom they nam'd, and gave him Power to chuse Subalterns. *Stephen Battori* also join'd 20000 Horse to this *Cossack* Infantry, to whose Maintenance he assigned the 4th Part of his Royal Revenues; whence they are called *Quartani*. These Forces did so secure the Frontiers, that the Country beyond *Breclaw*, *Bar*, and *Kiow*, betwixt the *Niester* and *Nieper*, was re-peopled, the Towns rebuilt, and Colonies planted there from the neighbouring Places. The *Cossacks* being thus brought into good Discipline, did frequently considerable Service to the Crown of *Poland*, but have since done the Republick much Mischief by their frequent Rebellions; for the *Cossacks* knowing their own Strength, and of what Importance they were to the *Poles*, began to set up for themselves, and would not obey the Orders of their Superiors, nor acknowledge the Power of the *Poles* over them. Their first Rebellion was in 1587, under their General *John Podkowa*, who was taken, and his Head struck off in 1596. *Sigismund* III. upon the Complaints and Threats of the Grand Seignior, forbad them to pillage any more upon the *Black Sea*. They obey'd his Orders for a while; but then turn'd their Force against

againſt *Ruſſia* and *Lithuania*, under the Command of their General *Nalevaiko*; and having had ſome Advantages over the *Poliſh* Army, commanded by General *Zolkiewki*, they look'd upon themſelves as invincible; yet that able Warriour found Means to block them up ſo cloſe, that he forced them to deliver him their General, who was beheaded.

In 1673, the Ground of a new War with the *Coſſacks* was laid thus: The Numbers of the *Coſſacks* being greatly increas'd, by the Multitude of Boors who frequently ran over to them to ſhare their Privileges, ſome great Men in *Poland*, who had got Eſtates in the Places appointed for the Quarters of the *Coſſacks*, were of Opinion that their Revenues would be conſiderably increaſed, if the Liberties of the *Coſſacks* were abridg'd. Whereupon they adviſ'd the King to reſtrain 'em, and began to uſe the ſame Severity to the *Coſſacks*, as to the *Poliſh* Boors, who are oblig'd to work 3 Days in a Week with Man and Horſe for their Lords, and to pay ſo much Corn, Poultry, *&c.* to carry home their Maſter's Wood, to pay him ſo much Money, and the Tenth of their Poſſeſſions. The *Poliſh* Lords being abſolute at home, and not puniſhed for killing their Slaves, they repreſented, That the *Coſſacks* deprived them of all the Advantages they could expect from their Lands in the *Ukrain*; for when the Boors were diſoblig'd, they went over to them. Therefore they reſolv'd to build a Fort at *Kudac*, a Place near their *Porooghi*, at a Point where the River *Zwamer* falls into the *Dnieper*, or *Boryſthenes*, and therefore very convenient to bridle the *Coſſacks*; who underſtanding the Deſign, cut in Pieces 200 Men that guarded the Builders; but being attacked by the *Poliſh* General *Potoski*, and divided among themſelves, they were routed at *Korſun*, and forc'd to deliver up their General, and four more of their Chief Officers, who were put to Death at *Warſaw*, tho' *Potoski* had promis'd them their Lives. After this, all their former Privileges were taken from them, with their Fortreſs *Tetchtimorawia*, and in their ſtead a new Body of Militia was ſettled there. This more and more enraged the *Coſſacks*, who again tried their Fortune with *Potoski*; but were worſted, tho they fought with great Bravery; then they fortified themſelves upon the River *Starexa*, beyond the *Boryſthenes*. After this, the *Poles* having loſt ſo many Men by endeavouring to ſuppreſs them, they were forced to promiſe, That their ancient Privileges ſhould be reſtor'd, and that their Militia of 6000 ſhould be re-eſtabliſh'd, under a General appointed by the King. The *Coſſacks* returning to their Homes, and laying down their Arms upon the Faith of this Treaty, were kill'd or plunder'd by the *Poliſh* Soldiers, and another Militia ſet up, excluding the ancient and true *Coſſacks*; and, among other oppreſſive Methods, the *Poles* took from them ſome of their *Greek* Churches. But the *Tartars* afterwards ruining a great Part of the *Ukrain*, convinc'd the *Poles* of the Neceſſity of reſtoring the *Coſſacks*. *Uladiſlaus* IV. making War upon the *Tartars*, was very careful to ſee it done, and gave them for General, *Pogdan*, (or *Theodore Chmielnuski*) and granted him a Privilege to build ſome Mills; but a *Poliſh* Gentleman nam'd *Jarinski* burnt them, raviſh'd his Wife, and afterwards kill'd both her and her Son. The *Coſſacks* were alſo highly provok'd by their Landlords, who had farm'd out their Lands to the *Jews*, that monopoliz'd all the Trade and Advantage of the Country, and got ſo much Power, that they would not ſuffer them to marry or baptize, but upon their own Terms. *Theodore* and his *Coſſacks* obtaining no Redreſs or Satisfaction for thoſe Injuries, rais'd an Army of 200000 Men, who burn'd, plunder'd, and ravag'd, the Country, and did what Miſchief they could to the *Poliſh* Nobility. Upon which the Senators deſired the King to march againſt them, who anſwer'd, That they ought not to have burnt down their Mills. King *John Caſimir* did alſo favour them under-hand, and deſign'd to make uſe of them for the Conqueſt of *Crim-Tartary*; at which the *Poles* being diſſatisfied, they levied an Army of 50000 Men, whom the *Coſſacks* defeated, kill'd 10000 upon the Spot, and took the City of *Kiow*. To revenge this Affront, the *Poles* ſummon'd the 7th Man throughout the Kingdom, and march'd againſt the *Coſſacks*, without the Conſent of the King, and were again defeated by them. But

Digitized by Google

while *Chmielinski* was celebrating the Nuptials of his Son with the Daughter of the Prince of *Wallachia* at *Kiow*, the *Poles* surpriz'd the *Coſſacks*, plunder'd the City, and took the *Grecian* Patriarch Priſoner. The *Coſſacks* ſent to the King, to know whether this had been done by his Authority? He anſwer'd, No; and that it was done by the Nobility out of Revenge. Upon this, *Chmielinski* called in the *Crim-Tartar* with 100000 Horſe, againſt whom the King went in Perſon, at the Head of the Nobility; and having routed them, though they were three to one ſtronger than the *Poles*, *Chmielinski* gathered up the Remainders of his ſcatter'd Army, and continually haraſs'd the Country, ſo that the King was oblig'd to make an Agreement with them; but the Nobility were diſcontented at it, and alledg'd, the King had granted too much to the *Coſſacks*. This Peace was made in 1649. *Chmielinski* fearing the *Poles* would not obſerve that Treaty, made an Alliance with the Grand Seignior and the Prince of *Moldavia*; and at a Diet he propos'd ſuch Terms as ſhew'd he intended to make himſelf an abſolute Prince, under the Protection of the *Turks*. Thus a new War broke out in 1651, when the *Coſſacks* and their Confederates beſieged *Smolensko*, took it next Year; and having ravaged *Lithuania*, they took *Wilna*, and ſome other Cities, where they committed great Barbarities. It was chiefly owing to them that the *Muſcovites* got Poſſeſſion of the Provinces of *Smolensko* and *Severia*, and the greateſt Part of the Palatinate of *Kiovia*, which were confirmed to them by the Treaty of Peace at *Oliva* in 1666. What became of *Chmielinski* and his *Coſſacks* ſince, we have little Account; only, that Part of them have ſubmitted themſelves to the *Muſcovites*, who gariſon many of their Cities in *Siberia* and other Places that border upon the *Aſiatick Tartars*. By an Agreement in 1677, betwixt the Grand Seignior and the King of *Poland*, *Ukrain* and the *Coſſacks* were to be under the *Turks*. They have alſo a Prince of their own, ſubject to the Grand Seignior: Some of them are alſo under the *Tartars*, and ſome continue ſubject to the *Poles*, who on that Account are called the *Loyal Coſſacks*.

Their RELIGION.

THE Common Sort are of the *Greek* Church; their Worſhip is the ſame with that of the *Ruſſians*: Their Metropolitan reſides at *Kiow*, is conſecrated by the Patriarch of *Conſtantinople*, and ſubject to him. The whole of their Religion conſiſts in Faſts and Holidays; but the greater Part of the Gentry are Papiſts, and a few of them Proteſtants.

Their MARRIAGES.

THey differ in this from the *Poles*: 'Tis very common in this Country for Maids to woo the Men. If a young Woman be in Love with a young Man, ſhe is not aſham'd to go to his Father's Houſe, and reveal her Paſſion in the moſt touching Expreſſions, and promiſes all Love and Obedience, if he pleaſes to accept of her in Marriage. If ſhe be rejected by the young Man, becauſe he is too young, or not diſpos'd to marry, or the like, ſhe tells him, That ſhe is reſolved never to go out of the Houſe till he conſent, and accordingly takes up her Lodgings there. To force her out, would be to provoke all her Kindred: Nor would the Church ſuffer them to uſe any Violence to her, without inflicting heavy Penances, and branding the Houſe with Infamy; ſo that after two or three Weeks, the Parents, or the young Man himſelf, being mov'd with the Conſtancy of the Woman, accommodate Matters as well as they can, and make up the Match.

Of their MANNERS.

THeir Manners are like thoſe of Soldiers, not ſollicitous for what's to come, but ſpend freely what they have among their Companions, and leave Futurity to ſhift for it ſelf. They are very inconſtant, mutinous, and purſue their preſent Advantage, rather than their Faith or Promiſe. They are great Drinkers; but by reaſon of their Labour and Hardſhips, they have ſo much Health, that Phyſicians are of little uſe among them. They are of a good Stature, ſtrong,

Digitized by Google

ſtrong, nimble, great Lovers of Liberty, uneaſie under any Yoke, and indefatigable. They are much given to Fiſhing and Hunting. None know better than they the Way of preparing Salt-Petre, and making Gunpowder. Their Country abounds with Salt-Petre, and ſeveral Parts of *Europe* are furniſh'd from thence. They have an odd kind of Diſtemper, particular to themſelves; the Country-People call it *Goſchetz*; and the Phyſicians, *Plica*. They that are troubled with it, loſe the Uſe of their Limbs, as if they had a Palſie, and feel great Pains in their Nerves, which commonly continues a whole Year: After that they fall into a great Sweat at Night, and next Morning their Hair is glu'd together, and has a nauſeous Smell, which remains for ever. From this, ſome think the *Poles* firſt made uſe of Powder for their Hair. The Humour falls on their Eyes, and deprives them of their Sight if they cut their Hair. This Diſtemper is infectious, and, like the Venereal Diſeaſe, communicated by Coition. Some Children bring it with them into the World, but it decreaſes by degrees. The great Numbers of Arſenical Mines in *Poland*, which communicate their poiſonous Qualities to the Waters, ſeem to be the Cauſe of this Diſtemper. Their Horſes alſo have it, and have ſuch a Knot in their Manes or Fore-top, of which, if the leaſt Part be cut off, the Horſe either dies, runs mad, or becomes blind or lame. Dr. *Connor* ſays, That Foreign Phyſicians have cur'd this Diſtemper by the ſame Medicines as are uſed in Venereal Caſes.

Of their Soil.

THis Country was almoſt a Deſart, till improv'd by the Induſtry of the *Coſſacks*, and other Colonies. The many Rivers add much to its Fruitfulneſs. They have ſome Animals peculiar to their Country. 1. A Beaſt call'd *Bobac*, not unlike a *Guiney* Pig: It makes Holes in the Earth, which it enters in *October*, and comes not abroad till *April*. Within theſe Holes, there are many little Apartments, for they diſpoſe of their Proviſions, Lodgings, and Dead, in ſeparate Places. Eight or Nine Herds of thoſe Beaſts live together in ſuch Caves: They are eaſily tam'd, and are very diverting. When they go out for Proviſions, they ſet a Centinel, who, as ſoon as he ſpies any Body, gives a Signal, by making a Noiſe, and they all run to their Caves. 2. *Sounaky*, a kind of Goat, remarkable for his beautiful Fur, reſembling Sattin, and white, ſhining, ſmooth, delicate Horns. He has no Horn in his Noſe, as ſome report; but as he feeds, goes backward. They have many Wild-Horſes, of no Value but for their Fleſh, which they ſell in their Markets, and think it better than Beef or Veal. When thoſe Horſes come to be old, their Hoofs never being par'd, do ſo contract their Feet, that they cannot go. In Summer, they are mightily incommoded with Flies and Graſshoppers, in ſuch vaſt Numbers, that they form a Cloud of 5 or 6 Leagues long, and 3 or 4 broad, darken the Air in the cleareſt Day, and deſtroy the Corn they light on in leſs than two Hours time.

Of their Sea Affairs.

WHen they rendezvous upon the Iſlands of *Sharbniza-Woſkowa*, the firſt thing they do is to chuſe their General for that Expedition, and to make their Boats, which they call *Colna*, of about 60 Foot long, 12 Foot deep, and as many wide. They are built very light, one Plank being pinn'd on the Edge of another, and widening upwards. They have a Stern at each End, and about 12 or 15 Oars of a Side. They have no Deck; but to prevent their ſinking, tho' full of Water, they encompaſs them round with a Border of Reeds, as big as a Barrel, ty'd together, and faſten'd to their Boats with Ropes. They have a ſorry Maſt and Sail, but ſeldom uſe them, except in fair Weather. Their Proviſion is a Tun of Biſket, which they take out of the Bung as they uſe it; a Barrel of boil'd Millet, and another of Paſte, made with Water, which they eat with their Millet. Every Boat carries about 60 Perſons, every Man having two Guns, and each Boat five or ſix Falconets. They ſet out about the beginning of *June*, and return about the firſt of *Auguſt*. They wait for a dark Night, that they may paſs undiſcovered by the *Turks* Gallies, which lie at *Oczakow* to intercept them.

them. With these Boats they cruise over the *Black Sea*. If they spy a Galley, they keep at a Distance till Night, observe the Course of the Vessel, and when it is dark, come up and board it: They take out all the Cannon, Money, and Merchandize, and sink the Ship, because they have neither Skill nor Opportunity to use it. No sooner have the *Turks* Intelligence that the *Cossacks* are abroad at Sea, but the Alarm is taken immediately, which reaches quickly to *Constantinople*: From thence Couriers are dispatched to the Coasts of *Natolia*, *Romelia*, and *Bulgaria*, to bid them be upon their Guard; but the *Cossacks* are generally too nimble for them, and are 40 Hours upon the Coast of *Natolia* before them. If a Galley spy them in the Day-time, which is not ordinary, for their Vessels are not above 2½ Foot above Water, they avoid fighting, by rowing away from her, or retiring to Shallows and among Reeds, where the Gallies cannot follow them. This was their Way of living, till the Grand Seignior oblig'd *Sigismund* King of *Poland* to prohibit those Pyracies, as was said before. 'Twas bad Policy in the *Poles* to suffer them to chuse their own General; for their General being their own Creature, is forc'd to comply with their Methods. They handle their Guns very dexterously, and have Sythes set long-ways upon Poles, with which they fight very fiercely and skilfully.

Their Manner of Fighting by Land.

THey are very indifferent Horsemen, but excellent Soldiers on Foot. They are inur'd to all manner of Fatigues and Hardships, obedient to their Commanders, active and dexterous in intrenching themselves, not only in the ordinary Way, but also by making a Fence of their Baggage-Waggons as they march. These moving Intrenchments are absolutely necessary for them when they march without Horse in open Plains, and the Desarts of the *Tartars*, against whom they are forced to stand wherever they meet them. There have been several Instances, that 1000 *Cossack* Foot, marching betwixt their Chariots and Waggons, have in a Plain repuls'd 5 or 6000 *Tartars* on Horseback. Their Horses, tho' swift, are but weak, and stopp'd by the least Barricado. This Way of marching in the midst of their Baggage and Ammunition-Waggons, would scarcely be practicable in any other Country but *Poland* and the Desarts of *Tartary*, which lie all upon a Level.

Of the Country of the Cossacks.

THE *Ukrain* signifies a Frontier Country, and lies betwix 48 and 52 Deg. of N Latitude; the *Niester* is the Western, and *Nieper* their Eastern Boundary, according to some; but *Baudrand* says, it divides the *Ukrain*; the East-Side belongs to the *Muscovites*; *Ranzkow*, *Kuinick*, *Broclaw*, *Kimirow*, *Bialocerkiew*, *Pawvolocz*, *Koresteſow*, *Mohilow*, and other Places, belong to *Poland*: *Kiow* is the chief Town, and belongs to the *Muscovites*, being taken from the *Poles* in 1653, by the Confederate Army of the *Muscovites* and *Cossacks*. This City gives Name to the Palatinate of *Kiow*, which had Princes of its own, till 'twas reduced to a Province by *Casimir* III. who began his Reign in the Year 1333. *Pitt*'s Atlas says, this City was the Metropolis of the *Russians*; but being ruin'd by War, *Vol. domir* translated the Seat of the Empire to *Volodomir*. The Ruins of the Walls shew it to have been 8 Miles in Compass. Here are to be seen still the Ruins of many Arcades, high Walls, Churches, and the Sepulchres of many Kings, with Greek Inscriptions. The Church of St. *Sophia*, whose Walls are lin'd with excellent Mosaick Work, and that of St. *Michael*, remarkable for its gilded Roof, are still in a tolerable Condition. Betwixt this Town and the *Nieper*, lies *New Kiow*, along the Banks of the *Nieper*, which has about 6000 Inhabitants. The Papists have 4 Churches, and the Greeks 10, with a sort of an University. The second Town of Note is *Pereſlaw*, on the E. Side of the *Nieper*, upon the River *Trubiez*, which falls into the *Nieper* two Miles below it: It lies 10 *German* Leagues S. E. from *Kiow*, is a strong Town, and contains 6000 Families. Here the *Cossacks* have a Regiment, and another at *Kaniow*, a little lower on the E. Bank of the *Niepar*. On the same Side is *Cirkaſe*, the Center of all their Retreats, which was burnt

Digitized by Google

burnt by the *Polanders* in 1637. On that ſame Side lies *Kirlow*, and below that *Cremiercow*, the loweſt Town upon the River, all the Country below it being deſart. Further down the River, there are many Iſles, moſt of them uninhabited, becauſe overflow'd in the Spring, but much frequented by Fiſhers. Several other Rivers increaſe the *Nieper* at *Romanow*, but chiefly *Samar*, which ſupplies the Country not only with Fiſh, but with other Commodities, as Honey, Wax, Veniſon, and eſpecially Timber. The *Coſſacks* call this River the *Holy River*. In the Spring, they catch Sturgeons and Herrings here, A little below this, the *Poles*, in 1635, built a Fort at *Kudac*, which is the firſt of the *Porohi*. *Conſtantinow*, on the River *Slicz*, which runs into the *Nieper* N. from *Kudac*, is a ſmall Town, in Lat. 54. *Braclovia* lies upon the River *Bog*. *Winnecza*, *Human*, *Czernikow*, *Lubnie*, *Powolocz*, and *Chwaſtow*, are other Towns, but inconſiderable, and not worth inſiſting upon.

Porohi, or *Porohi*, in the *Ruſſian* Language ſignifies a Rock: Of theſe there are 13 Chains that croſs the *Nieper*, and render the Navigation from the *Ukrain* to the *Black Sea* impoſſible; ſo that tho' the *Ukrain* be fruitful in Corn, yet the Inhabitants not being able to export it, ſuffer much of it to lie untill'd. Of theſe Rocks, ſome are under Water, ſome above it, as big as Houſes, very near to one another, and ſtop the Courſe of the River; ſo that when it is low, they make Cataracts ſometimes of 15 Foot high; but in the Spring, when the melted Snow ſwells the River, all the Rocks are cover'd with Water, except the 7th, which ſtill hinders the River to be navigable. Near the loweſt *Porohi*, the River is not above 150 Paces broad, and is the beſt Paſſage for the *Tartars*. Below that lies the Iſle *Tomahouka*, the Place where the *Coſſacks* rendezvous: But their chiefeſt Retreat is below the *Czertomelick*, (about 11 *German* Leagues from the Mouth of the *Nieper*) upon an Iſland, ſurrounded with a vaſt Number of ſmall ones, ſome of them dry, and others overflowed in the Spring: Some of them are Moraſſes, but all of them cover'd over with Reeds and Canes, as big as Pikes, which hide the Paſſages between the Iſlands, and make it a Labyrinth, known only to the *Coſſacks*, who call it *Scarbniza-Woyſkowa*, or the Treaſure of the Army. Here they lay up their Money and Ordnance. The *Turks* have loſt many Gallies among theſe Iſlands, which not being able to diſentangle themſelves, fell into the Hands of the *Coſſacks*.

From theſe *Porohi*, the *Coſſacks* are called *Zaporowski*, which is the great Body of the Nation, and none can be liſted among that Number, till he has paſſed in his little Boat all the *Porohi's*, and from thence by the Mouth of the *Nieper* to the *Black Sea*. The River there is 3 Miles broad, yet both the *Coſſacks* and others paſs it in this manner: They furniſh themſelves with Flat-bottom'd Boats, at the Stern of which they faſten croſs Poles of a good length, to which they tie the Heads of their Horſes, as many on the one Side as on the other, to ballance them; and putting their Baggage in the Boat, they row over, the Horſes ſwimming after them.

The *Ukrain* is a very fertile Country, tho the third Part of it is ſcarcely cultivated: It produces ſuch a vaſt Quantity of Grain of all Sorts, that the Inhabitants are at a loſs how to conſume it. They cannot export any of it, becauſe their Rivers are not navigable. They abound in Honey, Wax, Wood, Cattle, Fowl, and Fiſh. *Hungary*, *Tranſilvania*, *Wallachia*, and *Moldavia*, ſupplies them with Wine. They alſo make good Beer and *Aqua-Vitæ* out of their Corn. They have much Mead. The Salt-Pits near *Cracow* furniſh them with Salt. They have alſo ſome out of the Country of *Pokutia*, on the Borders of *Moldavia* and *Tranſilvania*, where there are Salt-Springs. Their Houſes are of Wood, and their Fortifications of Earth and Wood, which they account better againſt Cannon than Brick-Walls; but they are ſoon ſet on Fire.

The Rivers of Note here are, the *Boryſthenes*, or *Nieper*; the *Bog*, *Tyras*, or *Nieſter*, the common Border betwixt them and *Wallachia*; the *Dezna*, the *Ros*, the *Horin*, the *Stuez*, and the *Ster*, near which was fought the laſt Battle betwixt the *Poles* and *Coſſacks* in 1651, which oblig'd the *Coſſacks* to ſeek Protection among the *Muſcovites* and *Turks*.

The Language of the *Coſſacks* is a Dialect of the *Poliſh* Tongue, as the *Poliſh* is of the *Sclavonian*: But that of the *Coſſacks* is much more ſmooth, and full of Diminutives, which makes it very agreeable.

CHAP.

Digitized by Google

CHAP. XIII.

Of POLAND.

POLAND was anciently a Part of the *Sarmatia Europea*. The old Inhabitants were the *Corini*, who dwelt in the N. of *Poland*, on the E. of the *Oder*. The *Burgundiones* lay S. W. from them, according to ſome; but the Seats of thoſe People are not very certainly deſcrib'd, becauſe the *Romans* went no further that Way than the *Elbe*. *Zozim. Lib.* 1. *Cap.* 67. ſays, That the Emperor *Probus* fought with the *Burgundi* and the *Vandali*: But *Valeſius* thinks the *Germans* and *Sarmatians Burgundi* are different People. The *Lugii* were S. E. from the *Burgundiones*, upon the Banks of the *Viſtula*. *Cluverius* joins them with the *Vandali*, and ſays, that ſome Places betwixt the *Oder* and *Viſtula* have ſtill a Reſemblance of thoſe Names. The *Burii* lay S. W. from the *Lugii* on the *Oder*. *Tacitus*, *Cap.* 43. places them N. E. from the *Marcomanni* and *Quadi*. The *Logiones* were ſituated E. from the *Burii*, and the *Oſi* S. from them, on the *Oder*, near the Head of the *Viſtula*. The *Gothini* were near the *Quadi* to the E. and the *Oſi* to the N. They ſeem to be the ſame whom *Pliny* calls *Gutones*. *Cluver. Germ. Antiq. Cap.* 34. is at much Pains to prove that the *Goths*, who over-ran the *Roman* Empire, came from this Place; but moſt encline to follow *Jornandes*, who tells us they came from *Scandinavia*. The *Baſtarni* were on the E. Side of the *Viſtula*, and had the *Carpathian* Mountains, and the River *Nieſter*, anciently called *Tyras*, on the S. the *Venedi* on the N. and the *Peucini* on the W. *Cluverius* thinks they poſſeſſed the Countries of *Red-Ruſſia*, *Podolia*, and *Volhinia*, where lay *Ptolomy's Oppida Baſtarnica*, as *Carrpdunum*, now *Lemberg*; *Clepidavia*, now *Cominiec*; and *Vibantworium*, now *Bar*. The *Venedi*, *Jornandes* calls *Winidi*: This Name is preſerv'd in their Succeſſors ſtill, call'd *Dis Winden*. They had the *Alauni* on the N. the *Æſtiæi* on the W. the *Hamaxobii* on the E. and the *Baſtarni* and *Peucini* on the S. *Brietius* and *Cluverius* think they inhabited the Great Dutchy of *Lithuania* and *Livonia*, where lay Part of the *Hercinian* Forreſt; and from this People the *Sinus Venedicus*, now the Gulph of *Dantzick*, had its Name. The *Æſtii* were to the N. W. of the *Venedi*, near the *Inſulæ Electrides*, ſo call'd from the Plenty of Amber. They inhabited along thoſe Coaſts in Part of *Poland*, *Pruſſia*, and *Samogitia*. *Cluverius* thinks that *Eſthonia*, a Part of *Swediſh Livonia*, derives its Name from them. The *Peucini* had the *Baſtarni* to the E. the *Venedi* to the N. the *Lygii* to the W. and *Dacia* to the S. Their Country, according to *Sanſon*, and *Ortelius*, is that now call'd *Leſſer Poland*.

Poland is by the Natives call'd *Polska*, and as ſome think from *Pole*, which in the *Sclavonian* Language, commonly ſpoke here, ſignifies a Champaign Country, as *Poland* is known to be. Others derive that Name from *Polinoza*, a little Town on the *Viſtula*: And ſome will have it that *Polachi*, or *Polacki*, ſignifies the Poſterity of *Lechus* 'Tis urg'd in Favour of this Opinion, that they are by themſelves call'd *Polacki*; by the *Italians*, *Polacchi*; and by the *Muſcovites*, *Greeks*, *Tartars*, and *Turks*, *Lachi*. *Cromerus* ſays, the preſent Name is not old; for in the Time of *Alfred* King of *England*, about 880, this Country was call'd *Wenedland*, which ſeems to have been derived from the *Winidi*.

This Nation did formerly inhabit nearer to the Country of the *Tartars*; but after vaſt Numbers of People from *Germany*, as *Goths*, *Vandals*, &c. enter'd the *Roman* Provinces, the ancient Inhabitants mov'd further to the W. The *Poles* are undoub edly the Poſterity of the *Slavi*, or *Sclavonians*. For-

Digitized by Google

Jornandes tells us, That in *Justinian*'s Time, they were seated on the N. of the *Carpathian* Mountains, from the Fountain of the *Weissel* to the *Niester*, and thence extending themselves Westward to the *Danube*, and Eastward to the *Euxine* Sea; from whence they made Inundations upon the *Roman* Provinces, being join'd by others of the ancient Inhabitants. Some think this People, after their Conquests, took the Name of *Slavi*, which in their Language signifies *Fame*, or *Glory*; and their Posterity, as *Cromerus* observes, still retain it in their Compound Names, as *Stoni-Slaus*, *Wence-Slaus*.

The Extent of *Poland* was not formerly so large, as *Cluverius* informs us: The Length then from *Schwibussen* in *Silesia*, 30 Miles S. E. from *Frankfort* on the *Oder*, to *Leuczna* on the Borders of *Russia*, was not above 80 *German* Leagues; and the greatest Breadth, from the Springs of the *Vistula*, to *Wangrow* in *Masovia*, was 60 Leagues: But since that Time, *Lithuania*, *Black Russia*, *Podolia*, *Volhinia*, *Masovia*, *Samogitia*, and Part of *Livonia*, have been added at different Times to this Kingdom. *Brietius* says, the Length of it, from the most Westerly Place of *Silesia*, to *Smolensko* in *Muscovy*, is 690 *English* Miles; and the Breadth of it, from the Mouth of the *Niester*, to the most Northerly Parts of *Livonia*, is 640. The Longitude, according to *Strawolscius*, quoted by *Pitt*'s Atlas, is from the Marquisate of *Brandenburgh*, in Deg. 38. to the Mouth of the *Borysthenes* or *Nieper*, in Deg. 54. and the Lat. from the Palatinate of *Posenie* in *Red Russia*, in Deg. 48. to the most Northerly Place of *Livonia* subject to this Crown, in 58. According to Mr. *Moll*, the Long. is from 36 to 53 Deg. and the Lat. from 46½. to 56½. *Du Plessis* says, the Situation is betwixt *Posnan* in *Great Poland*, in Long. 38. to *Kudack*, a Fort upon the *Nieper*, in Long. 60. The Lat. is from the most Southerly Point of the Palatinate of *Red Russia*, in 47. to the most Northerly Place of *Curland*, in 58.

The Boundaries of *Poland* on the N. are the *Baltick*, the *Swedish* Sea, the Gulph of *Finland*, *Swedish Livonia*, and a Line drawn from *Pernow* in *Livonia*, to the Fountains of the River *Dwina*. *Muscovy* is upon the N. E. and E. *Little Tartary* on the S. E. The Limits on the S. are *Bessarabia*, *Moldavia*, from which it is separated by the River *Nestor*; *Transylvania*, and Part of *Hungary*, from which it is divided by the *Carpathian* Mountains. On the W. the Marches are *Silesia*, the Marquisate of *Brandenburgh*, and the further *Pomerania*.

Of the HISTORY *of* Poland.

Dugloss says, the Reason why we have no early Account of *Poland*, is, That they had few Governors who left any Fame behind them; but 'tis rather to be charg'd upon the Ignorance and Barbarity of those Times. Historians reckon four remarkable Changes in *Poland*: The first began in 550, under *Lechus*: His Posterity, call'd *Lechidæ*, continued till 830; then *Piastum*, a private Man, succeeded, and his Line was call'd *Piasti*. Others say, the second Race began in *Cracus*, in 700, who built *Cracow*. The *Jagellonian* Family began in 1386, in *Uladislaus Jagello*. Their Elective Kings began in the Person of *Henry Valois*, Duke of *Anjou*, in 1574.

Of the LECHIDÆ.

In 550, *Lechus* and his Followers possess'd themselves of this Country, and laid the Foundation of Government: Finding it abandon'd by the old Inhabitants the *Vandals*, or *Venedi*, he took up his Residence at *Gnesen*, where finding an Eagle's Nest, he call'd the Place *Gniasdo*. This he took for a good Omen, and made a Spread-Eagle the Arms of this new Commonwealth. He also built *Posnan*. Their Limits then reach'd no further than the *Greater* and *Lesser Poland*.

Historians are not agreed about the Country of *Lechus*, whether he was a *Croatian* or not, when he began his Reign; nor who were his Successors, and what Actions they perform'd. Their first Governors did not assume the Name of King, but only that of Dukes. After the Race of *Lechus* was extinguish'd, they chose 12 Governors, call'd Woiewodes, *i. e.* Captains of War, who polish'd this rude and barbarous People by good Laws; but at last, falling into Parties, the People were forced to chuse a King, who was *Cracus*, a Man of great Interest and Prudence, and well vers'd in the Arts of Government. He restor'd the Republick to

to its former Tranquillity, built the City of *Cracow*, ſo call'd from his own Name, and there kept his Court. *Lechus* II. his ſecond Son, ſucceeded him, having firſt murther'd his elder Brother to make Way for himſelf: Upon the Diſcovery of which, he was baniſh'd. His Siſter *Wenda*, a Virgin, ſucceeded, who choſe rather to rule alone, than to be the Wife of a King. She defeated one *Ridiger*, a *German* Prince, who would have oblig'd her to marry him; upon which he kill'd himſelf; and the Queen, leſt any adverſe Fate ſhould endanger her Honour and Virginity, leap'd from the Bridge of *Cracow* into the *Weiſſel*, and drown'd her ſelf. After this, the Government was for ſome Time in the Hands of 12 Waywodes or Palatines. Then, in 760, the People elected *Premiſlaus*, or *Leſcus* I. a Goldſmith, in Conſideration that he routed, by a Stratagem, the *Hungarians* and *Moravians*, who invaded their Country. He died without Iſſue. The People, to determine who ſhould ſucceed, appointed a Horſe-Race, and declar'd, he that won it ſhould be King: Upon this one of the Candidates ſtrow'd Iron Hooks in the Ground, which he knew, and therefore avoided; but the other Horſes were lam'd, and he came firſt to the Mark: But the Fraud being diſcover'd, he was kill'd on the Spot; and a poor Fellow call'd *Leſcus*, who had run the Race on Foot, being next to the Impoſtor, the People ſaluted him Prince in 776. He always kept his ſorry Clothes, to put him in Mind of the Meanneſs of his Original. This *Leſcus* II. was ſlain in the Wars with *Charles the Great*, and his Son *Leſcus* III. in 804, made Peace with him, and acknowledg'd himſelf his Vaſſal. He left *Poland* to his lawful Son *Popiel* I. and *Pomerania*, *Mark*, *Caſſubia*, and other Places, to his Baſtards. *Popiel* II. ſucceeded his Father *Popiel* I. and, by the Perſwaſion of his Lady, murther'd his Father's Brethren; after which he with his Wife and Children were eat up by Rats or Mice, which ſome ſay came out of the Corps of his Uncles.

In 820, the *Poles* exalted to the Royal Dignity *Piaſtum*, or *Piaſtus*, a Wheelwright, Son to *Caſſicon*, a Citizen of *Cruſwic*, of noted Hoſpitality and Charity; and he being the firſt King of that Name, all Natives that came to the Crown after him were call'd *Piaſti*; and thus began the ſecond Period. Others place this in 843. 'Tis ſaid, that he was 120 Years old before he died: His Poſterity reigned long in *Poland*, and from them deſcended the Race of the Dukes of *Lignitz* and *Brieg* in *Silеſia*, which is but lately extinguiſh'd. When *George William*, the laſt of that Houſe, dy'd in 1675 without Iſſue, the Dukedom fell to the Emperor. His Son *Ziemovitus* ſucceeded in 895, a Prince of a Martial Spirit. After him reign'd his Son *Leſcus* IV. of a peaceable Genius. His Son *Ziemomyſlus*, of the ſame Temper, ſucceeded him in 921. He had but one Son, who was born blind; but at 7 Years of Age he got his Sight; and being the Time when, according to their Cuſtom, he was to be ſhav'd and nam'd, 'twas look'd upon as an Omen that he ſhould be enlighten'd with the Chriſtian Faith: His Name was *Miceſlaus* I. He began to reign in 962. He had no Children for ſome time by his many Wives; upon which ſome *Germans* told him, That if he left Paganiſm, and turn'd Chriſtian, he would be bleſs'd with Children: But ſome ſay, his Converſion was owing to the Arguments of his Wife *Dambrawca*, the Daughter of *Boſiſlaus* Duke of *Bohemia*. He firſt introduced the Chriſtian Religion into *Poland*, as alſo the Cuſtom of drawing out half their Swords when the Goſpel is read at Maſs, to ſignify they were ready to fight for the Chriſtian Faith. He founded the Archbiſhopricks of *Gneſna* and *Cracovia*, and gave the Tythes of the whole Kingdom to the Clergy.

His Son *Boleſlaus Chrobry* was, in 999, by the Emperor *Otto* III. created firſt King of *Poland*, (his Predeceſſors being only Dukes) in Conſideration of his Devotion to the Shrine of St. *Adelbert*, Biſhop of *Gneſnen*, then famous for Miracles, and at that time viſited by the Emperor, to fulfil a Vow made in his Sickneſs. This firſt King of *Poland* enlarg'd his Dominions by his Wars againſt the *Red Ruſſians*, the *Bohemians*, *Saxons*, and *Pruſſians*. But his Son *Miceſlaus*, who began his Reign in 1025, loſt all his Father's Conqueſts: He died in 1034, leaving one Son, call'd *Caſimir*, and his Queen *Rixa*, behind him, who, during her Son's Minority, had the Adminiſtration of the Gover-

Digitized by Google

vernment. Her bad Conduct occasion'd Factions and Parties against her, which oblig'd her to leave the Kingdom, with her Son: He travell'd thro' *Hungary*, *Germany*, *Italy*, and *France*, where he assum'd the Order and Habit of a Monk in the *Benedictine* Convent at *Cluny*; but he was invited from thence by the *Poles*, who, to procure the Pope's Dispensation, promis'd a perpetual Tribute of a Farthing for each Head, except those of the Nobility and Clergy towards the maintaining of a perpetual Lamp in St. *Peter*'s Church, from thence called *Peter*'s *Pence*; and also to cause their Heads to be shaved above their Ears like Monks. After he came to the Throne, he defeated *Mastaus* and the *Prussians*, and restor'd the Kingdom to its former Tranquillity.

His Son *Boleslaus* II. called the *Bold*, began to reign about 1059. At first he made War successfully against the *Prussians*, *Bohemians*, and *Russians*; but having order'd *Stanislaus*, Archbishop of *Cracow*, who exhorted him to mend his vicious Life, to be cut in Pieces before the Altar, the See of *Rome* took it so ill, that Pope *Gregory* VII. excommunicated and deposed him; upon which he murther'd himself. This Bishop *Stanislaus* was canoniz'd by Pope *Gregory* VII. and has since that Time been receiv'd as the Patron of *Poland*. *Boleslaus*'s Successors were depriv'd of the Title of King, and the Bishops were forbid to anoint any of them. This continued 213 Years, till the Reign of *Premislaus*.

Uladislaus I. in 1082, succeeded him, but durst not take the Title of King, for fear of offending the Pope. He was successful both in his Foreign and Civil Wars. In 1103, *Boleslaus* III. his Son, succeeded, a brave Prince, and good Soldier, famous for 47 Battles, in most of which he was victorious: The greatest was that at *Huntsfield* near *Breslaw*, against the Emperor *Henry* V. In his last Battle against the *Red Russians*, he was defeated, by the Cowardice of the Weywode of *Cracow*; for which, as a Mark of Disgrace, the King sent him a Hare Skin, and a Spinning-Wheel, which did so vex him, that he hang'd himself; and the King was so much troubled at this Defeat, that he died of Grief.

He left four Sons behind him, one of whom, *Uladislaus* II. in 1139, obtain'd a great Part of the Kingdom, with the Name of Prince, and the other Brothers shar'd several Provinces among them, according to their Father's Last Will. This occasion'd Civil Wars between them and *Uladislaus*, who pretending to dispossess the rest, was himself oblig'd to quit the Country. After him, his Brother *Boleslaus Crispus*, or the *Curl'd*, was in 1146 made Prince of *Poland*: He was engag'd in a War against the Emperors *Conrade* III. and *Frederick* I. who design'd to restore *Uladislaus*: But at last a Peace was concluded, by which *Poland* remain'd to *Boleslaus*; but he was oblig'd to surrender *Silesia*, that then depended on *Poland*, to *Uladislaus*; which being afterwards divided into a great many Dukedoms, at last fell to the Crown of *Bohemia*, and has never since been in the Possession of the *Poles*. This *Boleslaus* receiv'd a great Overthrow from the *Prussians*, his Army, by the Treachery of a Guide, being misled into Morasses and Bogs. His Brother *Micislaus*, *Senior*, so called for his Prudence, thô but a young Man, succeeded in 1174; but was depos'd, because he follow'd the Advice of evil Counsellors, and twice, by his Cunning, regain'd the Kingdom. In 1178, his Brother *Casimir* succeeded. This Prince having received a Box on the Ear from one of his Pages, whose Money he had won at Play, pardon'd the Boy, saying, *That the Lad was enrag'd with the Loss of his Money, and that he himself had been justly punish'd for prostituting his Dignity.* He is famous for curbing the *Prussians* by War: He also made a City of *Dantzick* in *Prussia*, which before was only a poor Fisher-Town. He died in 1194. His Son *Lescus the White* succeeded in 1195; but was oblig'd to contend with the banish'd *Micislaus* for the Kingdom, with various Success, till *Micislaus* died. This *Micislaus* is noted for saying, *That a King was no longer oblig'd to keep his Oath, when while it was neither safe nor beneficial for him to break it.* *Uladislaus*, *Micislaus*'s Son, gave him some Disturbance for a while; but at last was forc'd to leave him in quiet Possession. In the Reign of this *Lescus*, the *Tartars* made their first Inroads into *Russia*, and have since prov'd very troublesome to *Poland*. *Lescus* was forc'd to make War against *Suentopoick*, whom he had made Governor of *Pomerania*, where

where he set up for himself, under the Title of Duke of *Pomerania*, and dismembred it from *Poland*. *Conrade*, the Brother of *Lescus*, possess'd himself of *Masovia* and *Cujavia*; but not being strong enough to make Head against the *Prussians*, who invaded his Country, he invited in the Knights of the *Cross*, and of the *Teutonick* Order, who were driven by the *Saracens* out of *Syria*. To them he surrender'd the Country of *Culm*, on Condition, That such Places as by their Assistance were conquer'd in *Prussia*, should be divided betwixt them; which afterwards prove an Occasion of great Wars betwixt those Knights and the *Poles*.

In 1226, *Boleslaus the Chast* succeeded his Father *Lescus*. In his Reign, the *Poles* receiv'd so great a Defeat from the *Tartars* in a Battle near *Lignitz*, that they fill'd 9 great Sacks with the Ears of the *Poles* they cut off. His Reign was also disturb'd by Civil Wars. In 1279, succeeded his Cousin *Lescus*, firnam'd the *Black*, who was very fortunate against the *Russians*, *Tartars*, and *Lithuanians*. The *Russians* were headed by *Leo* their Duke: The Place of their Defeat was call'd from him *Leopol*. They invaded *Poland* a second time, with a far greater Number of Men, and an innumerable Company of Mastiff-Dogs, train'd to War. He also rooted out the *Jazygians*, who inhabited *Podolia*. During his Reign, the *Tartars* made another Incursion, and carried away so many Captives, that there were reckon'd 21000 Virgins among them. They murther'd the Men, and poisoning their Hearts, cast them into the Waters, from whence several new Diseases were occasion'd in the Country, and among others (as some say) the *Plica Polonica*.

After the Death of *Lescus*, there were great Contests in *Poland* concerning the Succession, till at last *Premislaus*, Lord of *Great Poland*, carried it in 1295. He re-assum'd the Title of King, after it had been disus'd for 213 Years, and was crown'd by the Archbishop of *Gnesnen*. One Reason why his Predecessors were not ambitious of that Title, was, because the Country was divided among several Princes; but *Premislaus* thought himself powerful enough to re-assume it. He was barbarously murther'd by Assassins, Servants to the Marquis of *Brandenburg*. After him succeeded *Uladislaus Lochim*, so call'd from the Shortness of his Stature; *Lokiek* in their Language signifying an Ell. He did not assume the Title of King, but of Heir of *Poland*, and was deposed for Male-Administration. In 1300, *Wenceslaus*, King of *Bohemia*, was elected in his stead: He died in 1309, when *Lochim* was restor'd, and had long Wars with the Knights of the *Teutonick* Order, whom at last he vanquish'd in a great Battle. In his Reign, the Dukes of *Silesia*, who were formerly Vassals of *Poland*, submitted to the Crown of *Bohemia*. He died in 1333, and was succeeded by *Casimir* III. firnam'd the *Great*, the last of the *Piastian* Race: He introduced the Laws of the *Teutonick* Order, call'd *Magdeburg Laws*, and invited the *Germans* to till the Ground, by whose Industry and Example the Villages grew into great Towns; and several wall'd and fortified Cities, as well as Churches and Monasteries, were built. He very much improv'd and enrich'd his uncultivated Country. In his Reign, the Duke of *Masovia* did first submit himself as a Vassal to the Crown of *Poland*. He died in 1370, without Issue.

After his Death, the *Poles* were displeas'd with his Successor, *Lodowick*, King of *Hungary*, his Sister's Son, because he prefer'd his *Hungarian* before his *Polish* Subjects. This Prince being very curious to know what Opinion People had of him, he frequently disguis'd himself, and ask'd the People, *How they lik'd their King, and what they thought amiss in him*; and according to their Answer, reform'd Grievances. He died in 1382; and for want of Male-Heirs, they crown'd his Daughter *Hedwig* Queen. She married *Jagello*, Duke of *Lithuania*, on Condition that he should embrace the Christian Religion, oblige his Subjects to do the same, and annex his Dutchies of *Lithuania*, *Samogitia*, and Part of *Prussia*, to the Kingdom of *Poland*. The first Condition was immediately perform'd, for he was baptiz'd, and call'd *Uladislaus* IV. The Kings of *Poland*, his Successors, delay'd the Performance of the other Condition, on Pretence that the *Lithuanians* were not satisfied with it: But the true Reason was, That they were unwilling to surrender their Right of Succession to the Dukedom of *Lithuania*; so that this Union was not perfected till the Reign of King *Sigismundus Augustus*. *Uladi-*

slaus

ſtus was oblig'd likewiſe to pay 200000 Florins to *William* Duke of *Auſtria*, forfeited by *Hedwig*, who was before-hand contracted to that Duke. *Uladiſlaus* defeated the Knights of the *Teutonick* Order, kill'd 50000 of their Men in one Battle, took from them a great many Cities in *Pruſſia*, and had certainly deſtroy'd that Order, had not the Emperor *Sigiſmund* come to their Relief; ſo that they afterwards recover'd themſelves. He founded the Univerſity of *Cracow*, and died in 1434. In him commenc'd the 3d *Epocha* of the *Poliſh* Hiſtory. His Son *Uladiſlaus* V. ſucceeded, and was afterwards made King of *Hungary*, where he was engag'd in a War with the *Turks*. During this War, *John Hunniades* firſt defeated the *Turks* near the River *Meravia* in *Hungary*, where they loſt 30000 Men, and *Uladiſlaus* beat them upon the Frontiers of *Macedonia*; ſo that they were forced to make a Truce for 10 Years: But by the Perſwaſion of the Pope, who ſent Cardinal *Julian* to abſolve the King from his Oath, the Truce was broken; and not long after, that memorable Battle was fought near *Varna*, where the King himſelf was kill'd, and his Army defeated, to the great Shame and Prejudice of *Chriſtendom*. After this, the *Turks* were implacable againſt the Chriſtians, becauſe they thought they would never keep their Oaths or Word: And not long after, in 1453, *Mahomet the Great* took *Conſtantinople*.

Caſimir IV. was made King in 1445. A great Part of *Pruſſia*, weary of the Government of the Knights of the *Teutonick* Order, ſubmitted to him. This occaſion'd a War betwixt the *Poles* and thoſe Knights, which was carried on with various Succeſs, till a Peace was at laſt concluded, the Pope Mediator; by which the *Poles* got *Pomerellia*, *Culm*, *Marienburg*, and *Elbing*; and the reſt remain'd to the Knights, on Condition that the Maſter of the Order ſhould be a Vaſſal of *Poland*, and a Duke and Senator of that Kingdom, and maintain the King and his Court for 4 Days, whenever he ſhould be pleas'd to come among them. Much about the ſame Time, the Dukes of *Wallachia* and *Moldavia* ſubmitted themſelves, did Homage to the King of *Poland*, and paid him Tribute. In this Reign, the Deputies of the Provinces firſt appear'd at the Diets of the Kingdom. *Loccenius* reports of this King, That meeting with *Charles* King of *Sweden* at *Dantzick*, *Caſimir* was forc'd to get a Monk to talk *Latin* with him, becauſe he underſtood no *Poliſh*, but ſpoke *Latin* accurately; upon which *Caſimir* was ſo aſham'd of the Ignorance of himſelf and his Retinue, that when he return'd home, he iſſued a Proclamation, *That from thence forward, no Man ſhould be advanc'd to any Dignity, except he were able to ſpeak Latin.* Hence it came, ſays *Loccenius*, that the *Polanders* have ever ſince excell'd in the *Latin* Tongue. *Caſimir* died in 1492, and was ſucceeded by his Son *John Albert*, who was defeated by the *Turks* and rebellious *Wallachians*, when they carried away about 100000 Captives. The former invaded *Poland* again; but by a ſudden great Froſt, above 40000 of them were ſtarv'd to Death. The *Tartars* alſo in his Reign laid waſte *Red Ruſſia*, *Podolia*, and ſeveral other Parts of the Kingdom; but they were beaten back with Loſs, and about 20000 of them killed. His Brother *Alexander* ſucceeded in 1501, and was ſo great a Prodigal, that had he rul'd long, he would have beggar'd the Kingdom. His Queen *Helena* was nor Crown'd, becauſe being Daughter to *John*, Great Duke of *Muſcovy*, and a *Greek*, ſhe would not conform to the *Roman* Church. He died in 1506. *Sigiſmund* I. his Succeſſor, was the greateſt Prince in his Time. *Paulus Jovius* ſays, That the Emperor *Charles* V. *Francis* I. of *France*, and this King, being cotemporary, were the three Worthies of *Europe*; and that each of them deſerv'd to be Univerſal Monarch. *Sigiſmund*, beſides the great Abilities of his Mind, was alſo remarkable for his vaſt Strength; for in his Youth, he was able to break Horſe-ſhoes and ſtrong Ropes in pieces with his Hands. He had three ſeveral Wars with the *Muſcovites*, whom he always beat in the Field, but the *Muſcovites* got *Smolensko* by Treachery, and kept it. His War in *Pruſſia* with the Knights of the *Teutonick* Order was concluded, on Condition that *Albert* Marquis of *Brandenburgh*, who was then Maſter of that Order, ſhould hold the Eaſtern Parts of *Pruſſia* of the King of *Poland* as an Hereditary Fief, and acknowledge himſelf a Vaſſal of that Crown. In his Reign, the whole Country of *Maſovia* was reunited to *Poland*. He had great Succeſs againſt the *Wallachians*, and died in 1548.

Digitized by Google

His Son *Sigiſmund Auguſtus* ſucceeded. About this Time *Livonia* ſubmitted to the Crown of *Poland*, becauſe not able to defend it ſelf againſt the *Muſcovites*, who had taken *Dorpt*, *Felin*, and ſeveral other Places, from them. During this publick Conſternation, *Eſtland* and *Revel* ſurrender'd to *Erick* King of *Sweden*: But the Archbiſhop of *Riga* and the Maſter of the *Teutonick* Order fought the Protection of the King of *Poland*, which he would not grant on any other Terms, than that they ſhould ſwear Fealty to him: Whereupon the Maſter of that Order having abdicated the Dignity, ſurrender'd the Caſtle of *Riga* and other Places; in lieu of which, he was created Duke of *Semigal* and *Curland*. This gave Riſe to a War betwixt the *Muſcovites* and *Poles*, in which the latter loſt *Plotzo*. This King encourag'd the *Lutheran* and *Reform'd* Religion. He died without Iſſue, and put an End to the *Lithuanian* or *Jagellon* Line, which made Way for the 4th and laſt Revolution: Since which, their Kings have been elected out of ſeveral Nations.

After his Death, there were great Contentions about the Election of a new King. At laſt *Henry de Valois*, Duke of *Anjou*, Brother to *Charles* IX. of *France*, was elected; and after a Reign of 5 Months, the Throne of *France* being vacant by his Brother's Death, his private and haſty Retreat convinced the World, that he did not think the one worth keeping, when he could come at the other: He made his Eſcape in the Night, during a thick Fog, leſt the *Poles* ſhould detain him. He travell'd thro' *Auſtria* and *Italy* into *France*, and was thereupon depoſed by the *Poles* in 1574. The *Poles* falling into Diſſention, choſe two Kings; the Archbiſhop of *Gneſnen* and his Followers adher'd to *Maximilian* of *Auſtria*, and the Nobility to *Stephen Bathori*, Palatine of *Tranſilvania*, who was declar'd King in 1576, by Plurality of Votes. He married *Anna*, the Siſter of *Sigiſmund Auguſtus*, to confirm his Title, and became famous for many great Actions. He reduc'd the City of *Dantzick*, which ſided with *Maximilian*, and took *Polzko* and the neighbouring Countries from the *Muſcovites*. The Articles of the Peace he made with the *Muſcovites* were, That they ſhould reſign to him the whole Country of *Livonia*; in lieu of which, he was to reſtore all the Places he had taken from them. He made good Laws, and eſtabliſh'd the Soldiery of the Republick upon a good Foot. What he did towards bringing the *Coſſacks* under Diſcipline, has been mention'd before in the Hiſtory of the *Coſſacks*. This brave King, while he was making Preparations againſt the *Turks*, died in 1586. After his Death, there was another double Election, in which *Sigiſmund* III. the Son of *John* III. King of *Sweden*, who pretended to be deſcended of the *Jagellonick* Race by his Mother *Catherine*, whom he gave out to be Siſter of *Sigiſmundus Auguſtus*, was choſen. *Maximilian* of *Auſtria* was elected by the other Party, but defeated and taken by *Sigiſmund*, and obliged to ſign a Reſignation of the Crown. *Sigiſmund*, after his Father's Death, went to *Sweden*, where, in 1592, he was crown'd King; but was depos'd by his Subjects for attempting to introduce Popery, and his Uncle *Charles* IX. Duke of *Sudermania*, was elected in his Place. This occaſion'd a War betwixt *Poland* and *Sweden*: In the beginning of which, *Charles* IX. took a great many Places from the *Poles* in *Livonia*, which were all retaken by the *Poliſh* General *Zamoiski*. The King of *Sweden* was alſo routed in a Battle near *Riga*: But *Sigiſmund* being in Danger of his Life, by ſome Broils betwixt himſelf and the Nobility, it gave King *Charles* an Opportunity to recover himſelf, and recruit his Army.

At this Time began a new War betwixt the *Muſcovites* and *Poles*, becauſe the latter concern'd themſelves in the Affair of the falſe *Demetrius*, who pretended to be the Son of *John Baſilowitz*, Grand Duke of *Muſcovy*, ſaid to have been murther'd by the Order of *Boris Gudenow*, who hop'd thereby to ſucceed to the Empire after the Death of *Theodore*, the eldeſt Son of the ſaid *John Baſilowitz*. *George Minzeck*, Weyvode of *Sendomir*, gave *Demetrius* great Encouragement, on Promiſe to marry his Daughter. Upon the Hopes of ſo honourable a Match, the Weyvode, with other *Poliſh* Lords, gather'd an Army, and marched with *Demetrius* into *Muſcovy*. The Czar, *Boris Gudenow*, happening to die ſuddenly at that Time, *Demetrius* was well receiv'd by the *Ruſſians*; and having worſted thoſe that declar'd again him, he marched to *Moſcow*, where he w

pr

Digitized by Google

proclaim'd Czar: But he preſently became odious to the *Muſcovites*, who ſuſpected him to be an Impoſtor, becauſe of his Averſion to their Cuſtoms, as mention'd already in the Hiſtory of *Muſcovy*. They conceal'd their Reſentment till the Arrival of his *Poliſh* Bride, when the *Muſcovites*, headed by ſome of the Houſe of *Zuki*, related to the Czars by the Mother's-Side, aſſembled an Army of 20000 Men; and while the Nuptials were celebrating, they rais'd a Tumult, attack'd the Caſtle, kill'd *Demetrius*, and a great many *Poles* of his Bride's Retinue. Some of the Chief of them defended themſelves bravely, and got off. Then *Baſilius Zuki* was proclaim'd Czar, who caus'd the Body of *Demetrius* to be expos'd in publick; but his Face being much wounded, the Multitude could not diſcern his Features; upon which a Report was immediately ſpread, That *Demetrius* had eſcap'd: And ſoon after another appear'd who gave himſelf out to be the Man; but whether he was ſo, is not yet determin'd. The *Poles* acknowledg'd him, and gave him all the Titles and Regard due to the Czar. Some ſay, their Deſire to revenge the former Affront, and the Death of their Friends, inclin'd them to declare for him. This *Demetrius*, with an Army of *Poles* and *Coſſacks*, march'd into *Muſcovy*, beat *Zuki* in ſeveral Engagements, and oblig'd him to reſtore the Captive Bride, who acknowledg'd this *Demetrius* for her true Husband, which ſtrengthen'd his Party both in *Muſcovy* and *Poland*; ſo that had not the King of *Sweden* ſent *Pontus de la Gardie* to reinforce *Zuki's* Army, he muſt have been ruin'd. *Sigiſmund* III. of *Poland* deſign'd to make his own Advantages of thoſe Civil Wars, and had the Recovery of *Smolensko* and *Severia* in View. He inveſted *Smolensko* in 1609, and took it by Storm in 1611, when he recalled his Forces that had hitherto ſupported *Demetrius*, not thinking it fit that ſuch a conſiderable Army of his Subjects ſhould be under the Command of a Foreigner. The *Poliſh* Army being thus withdrawn, *Zuki* had Time to recruit his Troops; and being join'd by *Swediſh* Auxiliaries, he march'd to *Smolensko*, to oblige the *Poles* to raiſe the Siege; but was routed near *Cluſin*. After this Defeat, *Zuki's* Affairs were in great Diſorder, the *Poles* gain'd Ground, and they who formerly declar'd for him, now depos'd him, to avoid the Threats of the *Poles*, and offer'd the Crown of *Muſcovy* to *Uladiſlaus*, the Prince of *Poland*; by which they hop'd to be reconcil'd to the *Poles*, and to ruin *Demetrius*; and when their Affairs were in a better Poſture, they doubted not to get rid of the *Poles*. This had the deſir'd Effect, for immediately the *Poles* abandon'd *Demetrius*. *Zuki* was ſurrender'd to them, and the *Poles* promis'd to the *Muſcovites*, who had ſworn Allegiance to *Uladiſlaus*, that he ſhould appear in Perſon in 1610. But King *Sigiſmundus* refus'd this Offer of the *Muſcovites*, inclining rather to found his Right to that Kingdom upon Conqueſt, than on the Conſent of the People; and 'tis ſaid, had he march'd his Army ſtraight to *Moſcow*, he might have taken it at the firſt Aſſault: But as ſoon as the *Muſcovites* diſcover'd his Deſign, they revolted from *Uladiſlaus*; but before this Revolt, *Demetrius* was murther'd by his *Tartar* Guards. The *Muſcovites* attacked the *Poliſh* Gariſon in the City of *Moſcow*, conſiſting of 7000 Men, who defended themſelves bravely, and ſet Fire to the Town, which then had 180000 Houſes, where abundance of People were burnt: But notwithſtanding this, the *Muſcovites* recover'd themſelves, and beſieg'd the Caſtle of *Moſcow*; and *Sigiſmund*, by not ſending Supplies to them after the taking of *Smolensko*, made all his Affairs miſcarry; for he march'd his Army back to *Poland*, and ſent the Beſieged neither Men nor Money, who, after they had plunder'd the Treaſury of the Great Duke, left ſome to guard the Caſtle, fought their Way through the *Muſcovites*, and came to *Sigiſmund* to demand their Pay. He apply'd himſelf afterwards to retrieve his Affairs in *Muſcovy*; but his Deſigns were baffled by Jealouſies betwixt his Generals, ſo that his Guards in the Caſtle of *Moſcow* were forc'd to ſurrender by Famine. Thus all *Sigiſmund's* Expectations came to nothing, which griev'd him the more, becauſe he promis'd to himſelf that the Conqueſt of *Muſcovy* would open his Way to that of *Sweden*. That ſame Year, the *Poles* were worſted in *Moldavia*. In 1617, Prince *Uladiſlaus* undertook another Expedition into *Muſcovy*, but to no purpoſe; then he made a Truce with them for 14 Years: The Articles of which were, That the

Poles

Digitized by Google

Poles ſhould keep Poſſeſſion of *Severia*, *Zarnigo*, and *Novogorod*, which they had taken in the laſt War. In 1620, the *Poles* were engag'd in a War againſt the *Turks*, by the Practices of *Bethlem Gabor*, Prince of *Tranſilvania*, becauſe the King of *Poland* aſſiſted the Emperor in his War againſt him. Upon this the *Turks* enter'd *Moldavia*, with an Intention to baniſh the Duke of that Country, becauſe he ſided with the *Poles*. The *Poliſh* General *Zolkiewski* marched to the Duke's Aſſiſtance, but advanc'd too far into the Country; and as he retir'd, his Army was totally routed, and himſelf ſlain on the Spot. In 1621, the *Turks* marched againſt the *Poles* with 392000 Men; the *Poliſh* Army conſiſted of 65000. The *Turks*, commanded by their Emperor *Oſman*, aſſaulted the *Poliſh* Lines three times; but were as often repuls'd with great Loſs, tho' the *Poles* at that time ſuffer'd much by Want of Proviſions and Ammunition, Sickneſs, and a great Mortality among their Horſes. In theſe three Attacks, the *Turks* loſt 60000 Men, and were forc'd to make Peace upon Terms very honourable to the *Poles*. They alſo loſt a far greater Number in their Return to *Conſtantinople*. In 1621, *Guſtavus Adolphus* took *Riga* without any great Reſiſtance, and conquer'd all the reſt of *Livonia*, except *Dunneburgh*. That ſame Year he enter'd *Pruſſia*, and took *Marienburg* and *Elbing*. In 1629, *Hans Wrangel*, the *Swediſh* General, defeated the *Poles* near *Gorzno*. The Emperor ſent Auxiliaries to the *Poles*, who in a Battel near *Stum* had almoſt taken *Guſtavus* Priſoner; but they loſt the Day. By thoſe Defeats, and other Diſcouragements, the Affairs of the *Poles* were in a very bad Condition, which obliged them to make a Truce with the *Swedes* till 1634; the *Poles* being allow'd to keep *Elbing*, *Memel*, *Braunsberg*, *Pillau*, and what elſe they had taken in *Livonia*. *Sigiſmund* King of *Poland* died in 1632.

His Son *Uladiſlaus* IV. ſucceeded in 1633. He obtained a great Victory over the *Muſcowites*, who beſieg'd *Smolensko*, forc'd them to raiſe the Siege, and then to ſurrender their Army Priſoners of War. The *Turks*, who deſign'd to give him a Diverſion, were alſo repuls'd. This *Uladiſlaus* (who, as we ſaid before, was elected Czar) made Peace with the *Muſcowites* on Terms very honourable to himſelf, by which *Smolenſko*, *Czernickow* were granted to the *Poles*. Fame of this martial Prince ſo terrifie *Turks*, that the Grand Seignior allow'd the Charges of the War; and to pacify ſtrangled the Baſhaw that commande Forces againſt him. His Truce with *den* was renew'd for 26 Years; and *Swedes* were obliged to reſtore to the the Places they held in *Pruſſia*; for *Swedes* being defeated at *Norlingen* by *Germans*, were much mortified; and alſo embroil'd with the *Engliſh* and *D* who were diſpleas'd with the Tolls paid them in *Pruſſia*. In 1637, begar War betwixt the *Poles* and *Coſſacks*, r tion'd already in the Hiſtory of the lat

In 1637, *Uladiſlaus* died: *John Caſimir*, Brother, ſucceeded: He was deſign'd f Monk, and had liv'd two Years of his vitiate among the Jeſuits. *Hartknock Innocent* X. made him Cardinal. He af wards married his Brother *Uladiſlaus*'s dow. His Wars with the *Coſſacks* we related before in their Hiſtory. In 1 *Charles Guſtavus*, King of *Sweden*, ent *Poland* with an Army of choſen Men. conquer'd *Great Poland*, *Maſovia*, *Leſſer Pol* and the Capital City *Cracow*; and all Cities of *Pruſſia*, except *Dantzick*, ope their Gates to him. Many of the Citiz of this Town were alſo inclinable to fol the Example of the reſt; but by the I ſwaſion of ſome Miniſters, were kept Obedience. This put a Stand to the Vi ries of the *Swedes*, and alter'd the Fac Affairs to that degree, that they could maintain themſelves in *Pruſſia*, tho' the litia of *Poland* and *Lithuania* was under th Command, and that they had obliged *C Caſimir* to flee to *Silefia*. After the Conſ nation was over, the *Poles* join'd the *Tart* and kill'd ſuch of the *Swedes* as they fou ſtraggling; and the *Lithuanians* kill'd all *Swedes* in Winter-Quarters among th *Charles Guſtavus* had alſo weaken'd his my by his great March to *Jeroſlaw* and Ca *miski*; ſo that the *Poliſh* General, by Light Horſe, cut off the Rear of the *Swe* At this Time the *Poles* retook *Warſaw*; I King *Charles* being joined by the *Bran burghers* at *Warſaw*, fought that memora Battle, which laſted 3 Days, wherein *Poles* and *Tartars* were routed; upon wh

Digitized by Google

all the Princes and States of *Europe* began to look upon the Succeſs of *Sweden* with a jealous Eye, and thought the Greatneſs of that Prince inconſiſtent with the Ballance of *Chriſtendom*. The *Muſcovites*, to give them a Diverſion, fell into *Livonia*, and beſieg'd *Riga*; and the *Hollanders* did as much as they could to hinder the King of *Sweden* to be Maſter of *Pruſſia*. At the ſame Time the *Danes* made War againſt the *Swedes*, which obliged them to leave *Poland*. At this Time *Ragotzi*, Prince of *Tranſilvania*, enter'd *Poland*, fancying he might get the Crown to himſelf; but was routed, and forc'd to make Peace on diſadvantageous Terms. Upon this, *Cracow* and *Thorn* were recover'd by the *Poles*; the *Swedes* were forc'd to quit all their Conqueſts in *Curland*, and the *Poles* took the Duke of *Curland* Priſoner; but were obliged to riſe from before *Riga*. By the Peace of *Oliva*, the *Poles* recover'd all *Pruſſia*, but were oblig'd to quit their Pretenſions to *Livonia*: The *Muſcovites* got *Smolenſko*, *Severia* and *Kiow*: And how the *Coſſacks* diſpos'd of themſelves, has been told before. In ſhort, *John Caſimir*'s Reign was very unhappy, ſo that at laſt, being tir'd with the *Coſſackian*, *Muſcovian*, *Tartarian*, *Swediſh*, *Siebenburgian*, and Civil Wars, he voluntarily reſign'd the Crown in 1668, retir'd to the Abby of *St. Germain*, and there died a few Years after. He was ſucceeded by two *Piaſti*, or Natives; the firſt was *Michael Koributh*, Duke of *Wiſnowiski*, whoſe Reign was diſturb'd with Civil Wars; and by his Male-Adminiſtration, the *Turks*, in 1672, took *Caminiec*, which was formerly thought impregnable, and by this means open'd their Way into *Poland*. He concluded a Peace with them, by which the ſaid Town was left in their Hands, and the *Poles* were alſo obliged to pay them a Yearly Tribute. He died in 1673, and was ſucceeded by *John Sobieski*, who was formerly General againſt the *Turks*. In 1673, he forced the Camp of the *Turks* at *Kotchim*; ſo that of 32000, ſcarce 1500 eſcap'd. This War with the *Turks* continu'd till 1676, when a Peace was concluded, by which they kept *Caminiec*; but the *Poles* got off the Yearly Tribute. In 1683, when *Vienna* was beſieg'd, the Relief of it was chiefly owing to his timely Succour; for it could not have held out much longer againſt the *Turks*, if he had not marched in Perſon with his *Poles*, and routed their Army. Tho' he was married to a *French* Lady, ow'd his Exaltation to the Throne to the Intrigues of *France*, and had vaſt Promiſes made him by that Crown if he would invade *Sileſia*, when the *Turks* fell into *Hungary*, he diſdain'd thoſe Offers, would not in the leaſt aſſiſt the Common Enemy of *Chriſtendom* in their Deſigns againſt the Empire, but enter'd into a League Offenſive and Defenſive with the Emperor. He alſo had his Share with the Duke of *Lorrain* in the Victory obtain'd over the *Turks* at *Barkan*, where 10000 *Turks* were cut to Pieces. Theſe great Actions vex'd the Court of *France*, who deſign'd to ruin the Houſe of *Auſtria*. Therefore they form'd all the Factions and Parties they could againſt the King of *Poland*, which was the Occaſion that his following Campaigns had not the wiſh'd-for Succeſs; ſo that ſeeing himſelf thus embroil'd, he thought it moſt adviſable to apply himſelf to enrich his Family. In 1684, he made himſelf Maſter of the Fortreſs of *Jaſlowits*, marched to *Caminiec*, bombarded it, and routed a ſtrong Detachment of *Tartars*. In 1685, the *Tartars* ravag'd *Podolia*. In 1686, the King marched in Perſon at the Head of a great Army into *Moldavia*, and took the City of *Jaſſi*, the Reſidence of the *Hoſpodar*, who fled upon the Approach of his Army. He then marched to the Country of the *Budziack Tartars*, where the Court-Marſhal routed 8000 of them; but when the *Poliſh* Army marched further, they found the Country laid deſolate, and burnt by the *Tartars*; ſo that they were oblig'd to march back to *Jaſſi* in ſix Days; but all the Foragers were intercepted by the *Tartar*, Sultan *Muradin*. Some Time after, a *Moldavian* Spy brought him an Account, That a Detachment of 4000 *Tartars* were poſted at ſome Diſtance from their main Body. The King ſent the Court-Marſhal with ſome ſelect Troops, who ſurpris'd and routed them. The King himſelf marched up to their main Body, and oblig'd the Sultan to leave his Camp to the Mercy of the *Poles*; but this Action was more glorious than advantagious to them; for the advanc'd Seaſon oblig'd the King to quit *Moldavia*, and march back his Army to *Poland*. While his Army was buſy with the *Tartars*, the Gariſon of *Caminiec* har-

Digitized by Google

raſs'd the Country, and committed great Outrages. In 1687, the King's eldeſt Son, Prince *James*, bombarded *Caminiec*, but with no Succeſs. The Diet of *Grodno* broke up in Confuſion, which diſabled the *Poles* from appearing againſt the *Tartars* next Year. The *Tartars* and *Turks* perceiving the King of *Poland* embarraſs'd, ſent an Envoy to perſwade him to a ſeparate Peace; but finding themſelves diſappointed, they laid waſte the Province of *Volhinia*, before the *Poles* were ready to march out of their Winter Quarters; but when they took the Field, they obliged the *Tartars* to repaſs the *Nieper*; who perceiving the *Poliſh* Army in Diſorder, they were encourag'd to repaſs it, and fall upon the *Poles* before they were drawn up, when they cut 17 Companies of them to pieces, and made a new Invaſion. This obliged the King to march an Army of 19000 into *Moldavia*, where he gariſon'd *Seckow*, upon the S. Bank of the River *Sereth*; and ſo this Campaign ended. In 1691, the King enter'd *Moldavia*, took *Jaſſi*, *Nimick*, and ſeveral other Places, without Oppoſition: But the Seaſon being far ſpent, and the *Tartars* ſtill troubleſome on his Rear, it diſappointed his Deſign of invading the *Budziack Tartars*; only the Chaſtellan of *Chelm*, aſſiſted by the *Coſſacks*, defeated 4000 *Tartars*, and made himſelf Maſter of the Fortreſs of *Serock* upon the *Nieſter*. In 1692, the *Poles* block'd up *Caminiec* in *September*, but to no purpoſe; and doing nothing remarkable that Campaign, the Imperial Court were jealous that they inclin'd to a ſeparate Peace with the *Turks*. The Ground of this Suſpicion was, beſides ſome Differences betwixt the King and Emperor, That the King of *Poland* had ſent an Envoy to *Adrianople*, to whom the Cham of *Tartary* made ſeveral Propoſals for a ſeparate Peace; but they did not take. The *Tartars*, in 1694, with an Army of 20000 Men, relieved *Caminiec*, and furniſh'd it with Men and Proviſions; but going on to plunder and harraſs the Country, according to their uſual Cuſtom, they were routed by the *Poles*, and 2000 of them ſlain. In 1695, the Conteſts betwixt the General of *Lithuania* and the Biſhop of *Wilna* defeated all the King's Deſigns for that Campaign; and in 1696, the King's Death put a Stop to all his Projects of War. He was 71 Years of Age when he died, was a Prince of great Bravery, and ov Advancement chiefly to his own Mer Valour.

After his Death, ſeveral Competito pear'd for the Crown, among whon his Son, Prince *James*; but he had n tereſt enough. The *French* King ſet u Prince of *Conti*, who was elected by a that was not able to ſupport him; ſ thô he was ſent to *Poliſh Pruſſia* by a Squadron, he was obliged to return out being put in Poſſeſſion. *Frederic guſtus*, Elector of *Saxony*, having reno his Religion to make himſelf capable ing choſen, carried it by the Aſſiſtan the Allies, notwithſtanding the long ar gorous Oppoſition by Cardinal *Raaz* and the *French* Faction; and probably have continued in peaceable Poſſeſſion he not made War upon the *Swedes*, brought their young King *Charles* XII on him, who in 1704 ſet up *Staniſl Poliſh* Nobleman, Palatin of *Poſen*, a him; and by ſeveral Battles, and at la invading *Saxony*, has obliged King *Au* to ſurrender all but the Title, tho' *Staniſlaus* is not yet in quiet Poſſeſſio the Crown, the Chief General, and a Part of the *Poles*, having form'd a Con racy againſt him. Theſe Things being in Memory, we need inſiſt no longer them.

Of the AIR.

THE Air of this Country is accor to the Differences of the Climate, ſometimes ſo very cold, that Rain fr ere it falls to the Ground; and Lakes Rivers are ſo frozen, that Coaches loaded Carts paſs over them for five o Months together. The Air of *Pola* more healthful than that of *Lithuania* cauſe of the many Moraſſes there. Cold is not ſo much to be imputed Northerly Situation, as to its Nearn the vaſt and cold Countries of *Muſcovy*, whence the cold Wind blows.

Of the SOIL.

THE Soil for moſt part is Chan and open; but towards the Bord *Hungary*, Mountainous and Woody; ſ

Digitized by Google

'tis obſerved, the Places furtheſt diſtant from *Hungary*, are moſt fruitful. There is only one great Mountain in the middle of *Leſſer Poland*, call'd *Mons Calvus*: It has a Monaſtery on the Top, famous, as they pretend, for the real Croſs of Chriſt. What other Hills one meets with here, are rather to be eſteem'd riſing Grounds than Mountains. The Eaſtern Part of the Kingdom is full of Woods, Foreſts, Lakes, Marſhes, and Rivers, which afford a delightful Proſpect to the open Country.

The PRODUCT.

Poland is ſaid to have been formerly almoſt all Wood; but now, being cultivated by the Inhabitants, it is very fertile, and produces every where all kinds of Fruit, Corn and Herbs. A great Part of the Corn made uſe of in *Holland* comes from this Country, by Way of *Dantzick*. They have a good Breed of Horſe, ſo that their Cavalry is numerous, and well mounted. Their Paſtures are good, and feed a great many Cattle, which they export to Foreign Countries. The Foreſts abound with Wild-Beaſts, and alſo with Bees, that afford vaſt Quantities of Honey and Wax. They have alſo abundance of Flax and Hemp, and Vines in many Places, whoſe Grapes are grateful to the Taſt, eſpecially if the Summer and Harveſt be favourable; but the Wine is generally very ſharp when drawn off. In the Mountains, there are Mines of Lead, Silver, Copper, and Iron, with other kinds of Minerals, as Quickſilver at *Tuſtan* in *Red Ruſſia*, and Vitriol near *Bieez* in the Palatinate of *Cracovia*. But the moſt conſiderable of all, are the Salt-Mines at *Bochnia* and *Veliſca* in *Leſſer Poland*, which are the chief Riches of the Country, and bring moſt Money into the *Exchequer*. They work in thoſe Mines as we do in our Coal-Pits; the Salt is generally of a bluiſh Colour, but ſome of it white and tranſparent, like Chryſtal. When it is new dug, it has a brackiſh Taſt; but when expos'd to the Air, becomes brittle, and more ſweet. They have alſo ſome Veins of *Sal Gemme*.

Of their BEASTS.

THE Woods are well ſtor'd with Hares, Conies, Squirrels, Deer, Foxes, Bears, Wolves, and Boars. The *Maſovian* Foreſts have Plenty of *Elks*, *Wild Aſſes*, *Uri*, which Dr. *Charlton* interprets *Owres*; and the *Biſontes*, *Jubati*, by ſome rendred Buffs. *Aldrovand* ſays, theſe *Biſontes* in Shape and Horns reſemble an Ox, have Manes like Horſes, Beards on their lower Jaws, Tongues rough, like a File, and very hard; a Bunch upon their Backs, and their Hair ſmells like Muſk. They are incredibly ſtrong. The *Poliſh* Nobility hunt them, and eſteem their Fleſh when powder'd a great Dainty

The *Owr*, or *Urus*, call'd by the *Polanders*, *Thur*, is a kind of Wild-Ox, bigger, ſtronger, and ſwifter than the Tame. He has a ſhort black Beard, a Buſh of Hair upon his Forehead, and Horns very wide and large. *Pliny* ſays, the *Romans* made Lanthorns of them.

The *Elk*, call'd by the *Poles*, *Loſt*; by the *Germans*, *Ellend*, which ſignifies Miſerable, becauſe of the Falling-Sickneſs it is troubled with; is about the Size of a large Horſe, Bodied like a Stag, but broader; its Legs longer, and its Feet cloven, and large. Their Hoofs are reckon'd a Specifick againſt the Falling Sickneſs. In the Deſarts near the *Nieper*, *Herberſtein* ſays, there's a Sort of Wild-Sheep call'd *Solhac*, ſhap'd like a Goat, but with ſhorter Legs and Horns, growing ſtrait up. They are exceeding ſwift, and leap very high. They have a Sort of Wild-Horſes in the *Ukrain*, call'd by them *Dzikie-Komil*, which their Nobles eat for a great Rarity.

In *Lithuania* and *Muſcovy*, there's a voracious unſerviceable Beaſt, not found elſewhere, as *Mat. a Michovia* tells us, called *Roſſomaka*, with the Body and Tail of a Wolf, and the Face of a Cat: It feeds on dead Carcaſſes, and eats till its Belly is ſwelled to the utmoſt Stretch; then it ſqueezes it ſelf betwixt two Trees, forces the Load from its Stomach, and returns to its Prey, devouring and diſgorging ſucceſſively, till all is conſumed.

Digitized by Google

The *Wolf*, reſembling a Hart, or the *European* Lynx, call'd by the *Latins*, *Lupus Cervarius*, and by the Natives, *Ris*, with Spots on its Belly and Legs; affords the beſt Furs in *Poland*.

The *Quails* in *Podolia* have green Legs: Their Fleſh is unwholeſome, and if immoderately eaten, breeds the Cramp.

Their Trade of EXPORT.

THE Weſtern Parts of this Kingdom produce a great deal of Corn of all Sorts, which is exported from *Dantzick*; as alſo Honey, Wax, Amber, Hides, Tann'd Leather, *Muſcovite* and *Poliſh* Furs, Oak, Wainſcot, Maſts, Planks, Fir, Deal, Pitch, Tallow, Salt-Petre, Hops, Hemp, Flax, Salt, Beer, Pot-Aſhes, Opium, *Pruſſia* Wool for coarſe Manufactures, Vitriol, *Lapis Lazuli*, Vermilion, Braſs, Lead, Iron, Copper, Glaſs and Earthen Ware, Oxen, Sheep, Hogs, *&c.*

Their Trade of IMPORT.

STuffs of Silk and Worſted, *Engliſh* Cloths, Tapeſtry, Jewels, Sables, Salt-Fiſhes, Tin, Steel, Martens, *&c.* Iron Ware, *Rheniſh*, *French*, *Spaniſh*, and *Hungarian* Wines, *Spirits*, *Aqua Vitæ*, Brandy, Spices, of which they make a great Conſumption. They might be much richer, if they were induſtrious and frugal, and applied themſelves to Manufacturies: But the *Poles* are little inclin'd to either; for the Gentry are abſolutely forbid to follow Trade of any kind, on Pain of forfeiting their Honour; and the Commonalty want Funds; ſo that all the Trade there is chiefly carried on by Foreign Merchants: Beſides, ſuch of the *Poles* as have any Fortunes, ſpend too much of their Revenues in coſtly Habits and Luxury, to be able to undertake any conſiderable Traffick; nor have they any good Ports except *Dantzick*, which is not enough to improve the Trade of ſo large a Country.

The Complexion, Conſtitution, Genius, and Manners, of the Poles

THeir Complexion is generally inclini to Fair, and their Hair of a pale Y low. Their Stature is commonly ſomewh above the middle Size. Their Conſtitutio are generally good, and their Bodies gro ſo that the Women of Quality make it the chief Study to be lean and thin. They a hor Painting and Waſhes to improve th Complexion; nor have they any occaſi for it.

The Gentry are civil, value themſelv upon their Honour, are affable to Stra gers, brave, ſincere, not vers'd in the A of Diſſimulation, but exceſſively jealous their Liberty, and rather compel than i vite their Kings to obſerve their Laws. T Gentry claim ſuch Prerogatives, as th can ſcarce be found guilty of any Crim and when they happen to be, the Prince h ſcarce Power enough to puniſh them. Th have no manner of Regard to their Clerg but talk and act as they pleaſe againſt the and think themſelves ſufficient to be th own Guides.

The *Poles* exceed moſt Nations of *Eur* in Vivacity of Spirit, Strength of Bo and long Life, which cannot be occaſio by their Climate, becauſe the *Swedes*, *M covites*, and *Germans*, thō they live under t ſame Parallel, yet enjoy not the like Vigo and Health; ſo that 'tis reckon'd to p ceed, 1. From their Diet, which is gen rally freſh Meat, or Fowls roaſted. 2. Fro their Drink, which is ſpiritous and ſtro as *Hungarian* Wine, Anniſeed Water, The poorer Sort have a Liquor diſtil from Wheat, Barley, Oats, and Cyder, wh the Gentry rectify with Anniſeeds and S ces, 3. From their hard Way of Livi for they hate Effeminacy, and love a C tage as well as a Palace. The comm People frequently weave Tapeſtry and Ar as they travel. They ſleep frequently Snow and Froſt without any Bed, or ot Conveniency; and Children of two Mon old are carried about ſtark naked. 4. Fr th

Digitized by Google

their Hunting much. 5. From their Exercises, for they are much inclin'd to Dancing and Vaulting, and are expert Horsemen. 6. From their hard Beds, which contribute much towards strengthening their Bones. Their Slaves have no Beds, and their Gentry seldom any but Quilts. 7. From their Freedom and Liberty, for Slavery dulls the Mind, and enervates the Body.

Of their NOBILITY.

Klein, in his Titles of Honour, says, in *Poland* and the Great Dutchy of *Lithuania*, there are many Weyvodes, which is not a Feudal or Hereditary Title, but Officiary, and for Life only. They command the Territories committed to them, like the Lords Lieutenants in *England*, and have Castellans under them in all Places but *Cracow*, where the Weyvode is subject to the Castellan, in Memory of the dishonourable Flight of the Weyvode of *Cracow*, under King *Bolestaus Krziwousti*, from a *Russian* Ambush. This Office and Title is almost of 1000 Years standing. The modern *Greeks* make use of the Word Βοέβοδος, to denote a Weyvode.

In the Laws of *Poland*, the Secular States are call'd *Comites*, *Barones*, *Principes*, *Nobiles*, & *Milites*: But the Archbishop of *Gnesna* signs himself, *Legatus Natus*, & *Regni Poloniæ Primas*, & *primus Princeps*. *Cromerus* says, the different Titles us'd there import no Distinction of Honour, and that all their Noblemen have equal Power as such; so that what Inequality is among them, proceeds from their publick Employment.

Dr. Connor's *Account of their* NOBILITY.

HE says, they engross all Preferments and Posts of Honour; and no Foreigner, however Noble and deserving, can rise higher than a Colonel, or at most to be a Major-General, which is much the same as our Brigadier. Their common People can have no Possessions, unless a few Houses in a City, or a small Piece of Land about a League off in the Country: But the Citizens of *Dantzick*, and other Places of *Prussia*, with those of *Cracow*, *Leopol*, and *Vilna*, are excepted from this Badge of Slavery.

Every Gentleman, or Nobleman, which is the same thing there, has his Coat of Arms granted by the Republick; but then he or some of his Family must have an Estate there in Land. They are capable of the greatest Employments and Offices in the Kingdom, and may buy Lands where they please all over the Country, and have a Right to be elected King, if their Credit and Interest can procure it. Every Gentleman is a Sovereign Prince in his own Lands, and has Power of Life and Death over his Tenants, or rather Slaves, who have no Laws nor Privileges to protect 'em. They dare not leave his Lands to go to another's, on Pain of Death, unless he sells them; and if he do, his Tenants are made over with his Lands. But if their Lord ravish their Wives or Daughters, the Tenants may leave his Service; and they are many times glad when their Wives or Daughters give them such an Opportunity.

If one Lord kills another's Slave, he is not punish'd for it, but only obliged to give another in his room, or as much Money as will buy one, and to maintain the Family of him that is kill'd. If he kills one of his own Slaves, he only pays 15 Livres. Nay, if one Gentleman kills another, he cannot be apprehended or imprison'd, unless convicted by a Court of Justice, which gives him Time enough to escape; and when condemn'd, he cannot be executed without the King's Consent. No Soldiers can be quarter'd upon the Gentry: If any Officer do it, the Diet either sentences him to die, or declares him infamous. Since 1433, the King himself cannot lodge at a Nobleman's House without asking his Leave. If a Foreigner dies without Heirs, his Estate falls to the Lord of the Manor where he died, and not to the King. The Houses of the Nobility are Sanctuaries; so that no Delinquent can be taken thence by Force, tho' he may be arrested.

If a Nobleman will swear that his Goods were not bought, but are the Product of his Lands, he may send them any where out of the Kingdom without Custom, and after he has sworn, his Certificate suffices to exempt the Purchaser from the Duty. In *Prussia*, the Nobles are not only free from

Digitized by Google

Customs, but likewise all the other Inhabitants, by the *Magna Charta* of *Culm*. The *Polish* Noblemen have also the Privilege of Pre-emption.

All the Gentry of *Poland* are equal by Birth: They don't value Titles of Honour, and think that of a *Noble Pole*, or *Gentleman of Poland*, the greatest they can have. Neither the King nor Republick creates any with the Title of *Prince*, which belongs only to the Sons of the Royal Family; for tho' some are made Princes of the Empire, and enjoy the Title of Prince, as we shall afterwards hear, they have no Precedency upon that Account; nor have they any Dukes, Marquisses, Counts, Viscounts, or Barons, but what have Foreign Titles, which the rest generally despise; for they don't value any borrow'd Character, or external Denomination, but say, that 'tis only intrinsick Worth, and Services done to their Country, that deserves Preferment.

King *Sigismund* III. establish'd an Order of Knighthood of the *Immaculate Conception*, created several Knights, and allow'd them Privileges and Superiority above others; but they were so much undervalued and despised by the rest of the Gentlemen, that the Order soon came to nothing.

When they travel into *France*, *Italy*, or *Germany*, they assume the Titles of *Counts* and *Barons*, because they are admitted more easily to People of Quality, especially in *Germany*, where they scarce think any a Gentleman under a Baron, and consequently not fit for their Conversation.

Those great Privileges make the *Polish* Gentry powerful. Many of them have also large Territories, with a Despotick Power over their Tenants, whom they call their Subjects. Some of them have 5, some 15, some 20, and some 30, Leagues of Land, contiguous; but the poor Gentry have their Votes in the Diet as well as the richest. Some of them are Hereditary Sovereigns of Cities, with which the King has nothing to do. *Lubomirski* possesses above 4000 Cities, Towns and Villages. Some of them can raise 5, 6, 8, and 10000 Men, and maintain them at their own Charge. Dr. *Connor* says, Prince *Lubomirski* had actually in his own Pay, when he was in *Poland*, 7000 Horse, Foot and Dragoons.

The Gentry of Note have Horse a Foot Guards, which keep Centry Nig and Day at their Gates. They make an e traordinary Figure when they come to t Diet: Some of them have 5000 Guard and *Hautevill* says, some of them had fo merly 10000. They esteem themselv especially the Senators, above any Prince *Germany*, and want nothing of Sovereig Power, but the Liberty of coining Mone which is reserved to the Republick. F reign Ambassadors are oblig'd to make great Figure here, otherwise the Gent despise them. When great Men have Su at Law, and the Diet or other Tribun decide it, yet the Execution of the Se tence must be left to the longest Swor for the Justice of the Kingdom is comme ly too weak for the Grandees. Sometim they raise 5 or 6000 Men of a Side, plu der and burn one another's Cities, and l siege Castles and Forts; for the Grand think it below 'em to submit to the Se tence of a Company of Judges withou Field Battle.

Yet formerly their Noblemen were lit better than Slaves. *Cromerus* says, they w oblig'd to keep the King's Dogs. Th first Rise is ascrib'd to the Privileges gran by *Boleslaus the Chast* to the Clergy; and terwards, when *Poland* was harrass'd by vil Wars, the Gentry obtain'd many Pri leges from their Kings, which they h since taken Care to get augmented at ev new Election.

The most flourishing Families in *Pol* are, 1. That of *Radzivil*, which has Title of Prince. 2. The Dukes of *Wi owec* and *Zbaraw*, one of which Family elected King of *Poland* in 1664. 3. Princes of *Lubomirsky*, who are Princes the Empire. 4. The Princes of *Czartory* 5. The Princes of *Sapieha*, Great Go nors of *Lithuania*. 6. The Family of *zinski*. 7 The Family of *Jablonowsky*. 8. Family of *Przyemski*. 9. That of *Lipsk*

Those that are not Noble by Birth, be created Noblemen. This was forme at the King's Pleasure, but of late is at Disposal of the Senate or Diet. All litttle Diets of the Republick must give Consent, which must afterwards be proved by the great Diet, before they

Digitized by Google

their Patent. A Jew is made a Gentleman by turning Chriſtian, and by ſignalizing himſelf in the Wars; but the King muſt propoſe it, and the Diets approve it. The new-made Nobility are liable to ſeveral Impoſitions and Inconveniencies, from which the others are exempted. If any one be a Magiſtrate in *Cracow* or *Vilna*, he and his Poſterity are Noblemen.

Nobility is forfeited here three Ways: 1. By ſome heinous Crime; for Inſtance, when a Nobleman permits one that is Ignoble to uſurp his Coat of Arms. 2. By exerciſing any Trade or Merchandize. Sometimes Poſterity are reſtor'd, when Parents have quitted their Title thro' Poverty: And, 3. By bearing Office in any City that is not privileg'd.

Of the PEASANTS.

THey are born Slaves, have no Notion of Liberty, but lie very well ſatisfied without it. In *Courland*, they are as ſubject to their Landlords as in *Poland*, and in both Countries almoſt adore them. They love their Landlords, fight willingly for them, and all they have is abſolutely at their Devotion. When they debauch their Wives or Daughters, thoſe poor Wretches don't think their Women the worſe, or that they themſelves are injur'd or diſhonour'd by it. They have ſcarce any Religion, but, like Brutes, work on *Sundays* for their own Subſiſtence, being obliged to work 3 or 4 Days each Week for their Maſters, without Meat or Wages. Each of them earns his Maſter at leaſt 100 Livres *per Ann.* They have no Property, nor can they be made free, except they get into ſome Convent, be ordain'd Prieſts, or that their Maſters debauch their Wives or Daughters, as has been already mention'd.

When a Lord lets any Ground to a Peaſant, he orders his other Peaſants, at their own Charge, to build him a Houſe, to give him a Cow, Hens, Geeſe, and as much Rye as will keep him a Year. A Slave cannot ſend his Son to the Univerſity without buying a Liberty from his Lord. They reap their Maſter's Corn, and have rigid Tax-Maſters over them, who puniſh them ſeverely if they don't work as much as is requir'd of them. Their Maſters commonly boaſt of their Clemency, and ſay, That tho' they have an abſolute Power over them, they ſeldom make uſe of it, any more than other Chriſtians do over their Horſes and Dogs.

Dr. *Connor* ſays, he ask'd ſome *Poliſh* Noblemen, Why they ſo inhumanely treated and underva'ued their Boors? Who anſwer'd, That formerly all the Boors revolted from their Landlords, and conſpir'd to extirpate and deſtroy them, and murther'd ſo many, that the reſt were oblig'd to hide themſelves, or to leave the Kingdom; but at laſt, the Gentry getting together from all Parts, and being aſſiſted by their Neighbours, they quelled the poor Peaſants, who intended to have ſet up a Commonwealth of their own; and brought them to ſuch Extremities, that ever ſince they have been contented to live like Slaves.

Of the APPAREL *of the Gentry.*

ALL of them love to make a Show, and to be ſplendidly clad: They formerly delighted in Foreign Faſhions. When they had Wars with the *Muſcovites*, they follow'd theirs; and when with the *Turks*, they took their Habits. Their preſent Faſhion is, a Veſt that reaches to the middle of their Legs, with a long Robe lin'd with Fur, and ty'd about the Middle with a Saſh: Little Boots, with Iron Heels, and Furr'd Caps, and a Sabre by their Side. When they ride, they have a ſhort Cloak like an *Iriſh* Mantle, furr'd within and without. The better Sort have rich Furs from *Muſcovy*; but the poorer Gentry content themſelves with the Skins of Tygers, Leopards, Panthers, and a kind of grey Furs. The fineſt of their Furs coſt above 1000 Crowns, are worn only at Diets, and deſcend from Father to Son. Some of the *Poliſh* Gentry imitate the *French* Faſhion, and wear Linen, Lace, Point, Perukes, and Swords. The ordinary ſort of Gentry put Chaff into their Boots, which ſerves them inſtead of Socks. Some of the Nobles have 50 Suits of Clothes, all as rich as poſſible; and they love to have their Servants as well apparell'd almoſt as themſelves.

Of

Of the HABITS *of the Boors.*

IN Winter, they wear a Sheep-Skin, with the Wool inwards; and in Summer, a Close-body'd Coat of coarse Stuff, of a Colour much like our Chimney-Sweepers, with sorry Caps: Their Boots are ordinarily the Rinds of Trees wrapp'd about their Legs, with the thicker Part to guard the Soles of their Feet against the Stones. They cut their Hair close like Monks, and shave all from their Faces but a large Whisker. They walk gravely, with a Poll-Ax in their Hand, and a Sabre by their Side, which they never put off till they go to Bed: It hangs by a Strap of Leather, to which there is fasten'd a Handkerchief and Knife and Sheath, and a small Stone to whet their Knives.

In *Lithuania*, the Boors Shoes are of the Barks of Trees, and their Stockings of thin Bark, which they wrap about the Calves of their Legs. Before they enter any Town, they always take Care to put on fresh Shoes. They also wear a Sort of Ash-colour'd Habit, with Sleeves woven all of a Piece. The Boors here are more miserable than in *Poland*, for Gentlemen commonly go into Boors Houses, tho' not their own, take all they have, and beat and wound them shamefully, because they are not able to bribe such as have Power to do them Justice.

The *Prussian* Gentry are not so gaudy in their Habits as those of the more Southerly Parts of *Poland*. Their Peasants differ also in Habit from those of *Poland*, and wear sometimes long straight Coats of Leather.

Of their Meat, Drink, Houses, Marriages, and Burials, &c.

THE *Poles* never live above Stairs, and their Apartments are not united: The Kitchin is on one Side, the Stable on another; the Dwelling-House on the third, and the Gate in the Front. Their Houses are for most part of Wood; but they have some of Brick and Stone.

Their Houses are generally hung with Tapestry or Arras; but towards *Tartary*, they keep no extraordinary Furniture, because of the Incursions of that barbarous People. They content themselves with a few small Beds with Taffety Curtains; and if any one lodge at their Houses, they must carry their Bedding with them.

The Moveables of the Peasants are a few Earthen and Wooden Dishes, a hard Bed, and a wretched Coverlet. Their Children are not allow'd Beds till they marry, but lie upon Boards by the Fire. They have no Chimnies, but little Holes in the Tops of their Houses.

The Peasants Children go naked till they are 4 or 5 Years old, and frequently eat in the same Trough with the Pigs. They crawl on Hands and Feet till they are strong enough to walk; and when they are dirty, the Mother washes them in cold Water, which makes them exceeding hardy. *Hoüeville* says, he has seen Children there stark naked slide upon the Ice a great Way.

The Peasants of *Lithuania* and *Samogitia* build their Houses round, narrow, and open at Top, to let out the Smoak and Stink: They are generally cover'd with Boards, Straw, or Bark of Trees, and, with the Family and Cattle, are under the same Roof.

The *Polish* Gentry have seldom any Gardens or Orchards, tho' their Country be very proper for it, and might, by making Cyder and Perry, save a great deal of Corn, which they consume in Beer.

Their ordinary Meat is Beef and Veal, and they leave the Mutton to their Servants. They have Store of grey, but no red Partridges; many Hares, but no Rabbets, than which, they say, they would sooner eat Cats; but they breed white Rabbets for the Sake of their Furs. They have many Roebucks, but few Stags, Plenty of Wild-Oxen, Wild-Boars, Hogs, Poultry, Pigeons, *&c.* There are many Heath-Cocks and Pheasants in *Lithuania*, and Bustards in *Prussia*.

The *Baltick* Sea has scarce any Fish; but that Defect is supplied by great Plenty of Fresh Water Fish from Lakes and Rivers. The *Poles* have a peculiar Way of preserving Cabbage: They chop it small, put it into a Tub between Lays of Salt, press it very hard, and afterwards pour warm Water upon it, which makes it ferment, and serves them for Pickles. This they preserve all Winter, and sometimes the whole Year. Tho'

Digitized by Google

Thô it ſmells ſtrong at a diſtance, yet they think it a great Dainty.

Their uſual Drink is Beer, which in *Pruſſia* is made only of Malt; but in the reſt of *Poland*, of Wheat ground ſmall, and boil'd with Hops. Sometimes they mix it with Oats, and Spelt, a kind of Wheat which grows in *Italy* and *Flanders*.

In *Lithuania*, *Ruſſia*, and *Ukrain*, they make both a red and a white Liquor with Honey, which they call Mead. At *Warſaw*, they mix it with Spice and Juice of Cherries and Blackberries.

The *Lithuanians* and *Poles* have Wine from *Hungary*, *Italy*, *France*, and *Germany*. That of *Hungary* exceeds *Spaniſh* Wine in Strength, is brought to *Cracow* over the *Carpathian* Mountains in large Casks drawn by Oxen, and ſold at 20 Shillings the *Poliſh* Pot, which is about 3 Quarts. The *Italian* Wine is alſo brought over Land, and on that Account is dearer than the other.

In the Morning, both Men and Women generally drink Ginger, Yolks of Eggs and Sugar Boil'd together in Beer. They are immoderate Lovers of ruſty Bacon and Peaſe. They eat all manner of Muſhroms, and preſerve them for Pickle. They eat great Quantities of Poppy-Seed, drink the Milk of them, and make it into ſeveral Diſhes and Sauces. They make likewiſe abundance of Oil of the Seed of Hemp and Flax, which they eat on Faſt-Days. They uſe Spice to that Exceſs, that ſome great Men ſpend above 50000 Livres *per Ann* in that ſingle Commodity. They uſe Spice and Pickles in all their Sauces, which differ much from ours: Some of them are yellow, made with Saffron; others white, made with Cream: ſome grey, made of Onions; and others black, made of the Juice of Plumbs. They have all Sorts of choice Pot-Herbs, and ſome that are found no where elſe. They have alſo Confections of ſeveral kinds, and make much uſe of *Piſtacho-Nuts*.

They generally eat a great deal of Meat to a little Bread, tho' they have Plenty of Corn, eſpecially Rye, which is much better than in other Countries. They are great Admirers of Roots, have a Diſh call'd *Orachat*, made of coarſe Flower of Wheat, Barley, Millet, or Oats, and ſometimes of a ſmall Grain they call *Manna*. On Fleſh-Days, they eat it with Milk and Butter; and on Faſt-Days, with Oil. When the Boors want Bread, they make it of Acorns dry'd and ground.

Near the Mountains of *Hungary*, there are Wild-Goats, which they admire as very good Meat. They alſo make a Diſh of Beavers-Tails, but throw away the Body. Bears-Paws pickled they reckon a great Dainty. When they kill Elks, they don't gut 'em for 14 or 15 Days; and in Winter not in a Month. When the Grandees come to the Diet, they bring them in their Skins and Guts, and hang them at their Windows by 5 or 6 at a time, till they grow rank; then they roaſt ſome, and dreſs others like Beef *A-la-Mode*; and none but great Men have this Diſh at their Tables.

The *Poles* are generally open-hearted, courteous and hoſpitable to Strangers, invite them to their Houſes, converſe with them freely, and endeavour to imitate 'em. *Hauteville* ſays, he has known them entertain Strangers whom they knew nothing of, meerly becauſe they were out of Employment.

The Slavery of their Boors is ſo much the more tolerable to them, becauſe they ſeldom want Victuals and Drink: They have generally three or four Sorts at a Meal, one of Peaſe with ſlic'd Bacon, another of *Orachat*, and two more of ſeveral Sorts of ſtrengthening Roots, which they have in great Plenty.

In *Lithuania*, their Bread is coarſe and black, made of Rye, Smutty Wheat, and Barley, all ground together. They have abundance of Fleſh, Fiſh, and Fowl; and what Cattle or Poultry they think they cannot keep in Winter, they kill in Harveſt. They are good Marks-men, and maintain their Families in a great Meaſure by Fowling. Every Houſe has 4 or 5 Hand-Mills to grind their Corn.

The Peaſants of *Samogitia* are not ſo laborious as thoſe of *Lithuania*, and conſequently have not ſuch Plenty. Inſtead of Bread, they eat a Sort of Turnep as big as one's Head, which grow of themſelves, without Cultivation. They quench many red-hot Stones one after another in their Beer, Metheglin, and Mead, after they have boil'd

Digitized by Google

boil'd it a whole Night, in order to make their Bellies ſoluble. This Liquor they put up in Veſſels made of Barks of Trees.

They reward the ſtouteſt Drinkers at their Merry-meetings with a Shirt, Handkerchief, Frock, or the like. They live longer here than in *Lithuania*, and many of 'em reach to 120 Years of Age.

Formerly, the *Pruſſians* dwelt in Waggons, or Huts made of Boughs; and the Peaſants are not yet much improv'd in Architecture, for they generally live in Hovels built of Stakes, Roof and all twiſted over with Rods, without other Covering. Their Furniture is not much improv'd, for the old *Pruſſians* ſlept on the Ground, or on the Skins of Beaſts, and theſe lie upon the Straw.

They are content with a ſpare Diet, and more addicted to Sloth than Gluttony; yet, like the *Poles* and *Lithuanians*, they drink hard, eſpecially at Feaſts, where they frequently get drunk. Their former Drink was Water, or Mare's Milk, mix'd ſometimes with Blood; but now it is Mead and Beer. Their ordinary Food is Fiſh. They knew not the Uſe of Roots, till the Knights of the *Teutonick* Order came among them; but now the Peaſants make them their chief Dainties.

When the Gentry make a Feaſt, they never ſupply their Gueſts with Spoons, Knives, or Forks, ſo that they muſt bring them with them. They have a broad Piece of ſtarch'd Linen ſow'd round the Table-Cloth for Napkins: The Reaſon they give for it, is, to prevent their Servants from ſtealing 'em: Their Servants have their Meat reach'd them by their Maſters, which they eat behind their Backs. They bring twice as much Wine as their Maſters need, and drink the Remainder themſelves. They ſeize on what is left after Dinner. And their Ladies each of them carry a Napkin to prog for dry'd Sweet-meats or Fruits.

Theſe Feaſts are made by Friends and Neighbours to one another by turns. Full Brimmers are much in uſe among the *Poles*, for they will ſcarce excuſe a Man unleſs he pledges them *Super-Naculum*. This Vice reigns equally in Feaſts and Taverns; and Saints-Days are not excepted out of their Drunkards Calendar. Thoſe Diſorders are tolerated, becauſe of the great Exciſe they bring to the State. The Maſter of a Fea is eſteem'd an unreaſonable Niggard, tha does not allow his Gueſts as much as will ſufficiently fuddle them.

The Inns in this Country are long Stables, built up with Boards, and cover'd with Straw, without Furniture or Windows, There is a Chamber at one End, but none can lodge there becauſe of Flies, Fleas, Bugs, and noiſome Smells; ſo that Strangers chuſe rather to lodge among the Horſes, where there is alſo an intolerable Smell of rotten Cabbages, which thoſe People keep always by them. Travellers are obliged to carry Proviſions with them, and when Foreigners want, they apply themſelves to the *Lord of the Village*, who forthwith ſupplies them *gratis*.

Poland being for moſt part a Champagne Country; a Calaſh and two Horſes will rid a great deal of Ground there in a Day.

Travellers ought to take more than ordinary Care as they paſs Bridges in this Country, becauſe they are generally very bad, and ſeldom repair'd. In Winter, they uſe a furr'd Sack for their Feet; but there is no reſting at Nights in their Inns, eſpecially on Holidays, the Boors make ſuch a continual Noiſe with their exceſſive Singing, Drinking, and Dancing, in the ſame common Room where you are oblig'd to lodge; for they have no Fire elſewhere.

When they go a hunting for Bears, they take thoſe of the biggeſt Size with Nets; and when they have hamper'd him, all the Hunters ride about him, and having pinn'd down his Head and Feet with great Wooden Forks, they bind him ſo about with ſtrong Hempen Cords, that he is not able to ſtir; then they roul him into a great Wooden Cheſt: The Knots of the Cords are ſo contriv'd, that with one Pull they may be untied. The Bear is kept thus till they have a mind to hunt him, and then they let him out at a Trap-Door made on purpoſe.

They ſurround their Wild-Bulls with a great Number of Horſemen, when each of them rides up and darts an Arrow at him: Upon this the Ox purſues his Enemy; then another darts him behind; and as he turns about to purſue him, they dart him ſo by turns, till the Beaſt being tired with purſuing ſo many Aſſailants, falls down, and is eaſily taken or killed. They have another

Digitized by Google

Way of hunting, by making the Boors fell a great Number of Trees, and encloſe 'em: Each Hunter has his Poſt aſſign'd him, at which they throw Darts; and as the Bull runs towards his Enemy, the Hunter from behind gives him his Death's Wound: But if he breaks thro' the Incloſure, the next Hunter holds out a Piece of red Cloth, againſt which the Beaſt having an Antipathy, he forthwith leaves that Perſon, and runs at another, who being provided for him, commonly kills him. If the Beaſt catch a Man by the Cloaths, he pulls him to him with his Teeth or rough Tongue, and endangers his Life, if he be not ſpeedily reſcued.

Of their WOMEN.

THE *Poliſh* Ladies are generally very modeſt, and do not abuſe the great Liberty allow'd them. They ſeldom ſtir out of Doors without a Coach and Six, to Church, or to viſit a near Neighbour, and are always attended by a great Number of Servants. When they go abroad at Night, they have 24 or more Flambeaus carried before their Coach. Their Train is born up by He or She Dwarfs; and they have always an old Woman attending them, whom they call *Governante*, and an old Gentleman for their Uſher.

Notwithſtanding all thoſe Honours done the Women, they are intirely managed by their Husbands, and diſpoſe of no Money without his Leave. When they want any thing, they muſt ask him for it kneeling, embrace his Knees, and call him their Benefactor: But ſome few Trifles are allow'd them of courſe. The Faſhion of the Women's Cloaths comes nearer to that of the Men, than in moſt other Countries. They formerly wore Garlands on their Heads, compos'd of Gold, Jewels, Flowers, Silk, and the like; but now they wear Silk Caps lin'd with Fur, like the Men. In King *John* III.'s Time, they imitated the *French* Mode, becauſe the Queen was of that Nation.

The Peaſants Daughters are ſo extreamly reſerv'd, that they will draw a Knife at any Man that offers to kiſs them: Beſides, their Mothers have a watchful Eye over them, and make them wear little Bells before and behind, to give Notice where they are, and what they are doing; but thoſe Precautions don't always preſerve their Chaſtity.

The Country Women are habited as in other Countries, but that their Petticoats are very ſhort. Thoſe in *Red Ruſſia* go generally in Summer with an Apron before them, that reaches lower than ordinary.

Their MARRIAGES.

THE Wedding-Feaſts of the Gentry laſt ordinarily three Days. If a Lady marry any of her Waiting-Maids, ſhe coſts her almoſt as much as one of her Daughters. On the ſecond Day all the Gueſts preſent the Bride with ſomething new, which makes commonly a good Part of her Portion. The late Princeſs of *Poland*, when married to the Elector of *Bavaria*, had above 100000 Crowns preſented her.

Among the Boors, a Maid never marries till ſhe be 24 or 30 Years of Age, and has wrought with her own Hands ſeveral Basketsfull of Cloth of different Sorts, which, at the Time of her Eſpouſals, ſhe is to diſtribute among the Gueſts that her Husband brings with him. She muſt alſo have ſerv'd her Mother in all Domeſtick Affairs for a certain Time. The ſame Rule is obſerv'd with reſpect to their Sons. 'Tis alſo obſervable, that thoſe employ'd to make up the Match, always enquire more ſtrictly into the Manners and Behaviour of the Perſons, than after their Stock of Corn and Cattle, which is their uſual Allotment.

Their Godfathers and Godmothers are always accounted Relations, tho' they be nothing a-kin, and cannot marry this ſuppos'd Kindred, without a Diſpenſation from the Biſhop.

The Sieur *de Beauplan* gives this Account of the Weddings of the *Coſſacks*: After the Married-Couple go to Bed, the Company wait in the ſame Room till the Marriage is conſummated, and the Bride ſhifts her ſelf. If they find the Tokens of Virginity, they make joyful Acclamations, in which all the Kindred join, and next Day carry her Shift publickly about the Town like a Banner, that all the People may be Witneſſes of the Bride's Virginity: and the People follow with Muſick, Singing, and Dancing.

Digitized by Google

But if they don't find those Marks, every Man throws down his Glass, all the Jollity is at an end, and the Bride's Kindred out of Countenance: Then the Guests commit a thousand Extravagancies in the House, break the Pots and the Earthen Cups, put a Horse's Collar about the Bride's Mother's Neck, make her drink out of one of those broken Cups, and upbraid her for not having been more watchful of her Daughter's Chastity; and after they have treated her with all the vile Language imaginable, the Company breaks up: The Friends of the Bride keep within Doors for some Time, being asham'd to go abroad. The Bridegroom may put away his Bride if he pleases; and if he keeps her, he must resolve to put up abundance of Affronts.

Of their BURIALS.

THE Burials of those of Quality are celebrated with such Pomp and Magnificence, that they are more like Triumphs than Interments. The Corps is carried in a Herse or Chariot with six Horses, all cover'd with Black: The Coffin has a large black Velvet Pall over it, with a Cross of red Sattin in the Middle, and six long black Silk Tassels, supported by as many of the Deceased's Domestick Servants in close Mourning. Several Priests, Monks, and others, march before the Herse, each of 'em having a white Wax Torch in their Hand. Immediately before the Herse come three Men on Horseback, who carry the Arms of the Deceased, one his Sword, another his Lance, and the third his Dart. After the Burial-Service is over, those that carry the Armour enter the Church on Horseback, and riding furiously up to the Coffin, break the Arms of the Deceased upon it; after which the Body is interr'd. Then there is a Feast, where the Lay-Guests not only drink to Excess, but likewise force the Clergy to follow their Example. When the King dies, he is laid on a Bed of State, and a certain Number of Senators, Ecclesiastical and Temporal, are appointed to attend his Corps. The Republick defrays the Expences out of the Revenues of the Crown. The deceased Queen has the same Ceremonies and Honours allow'd her.

When Women of Quality mourn, they are apparel'd in a coarse black Stuff, and their Linen is not much finer than Canvas; and the greater their Quality, their Mourning Weeds are the coarser. All Senators, Deputies and others, that appear at the Diet for electing the next King, must be in Black.

The King's TITLES.

THE Titles given him by Ambassadors, and commonly made use of in the Acts of the Diet, are, *King of Poland, Great Duke of Lithuania, Duke of Russia, Prussia, Masovia, Samogitia, Kiovia, Volhinia, Podolia, Podlachia, Livonia, Smolensko, Severin,* and *Czernichovia.*

Of the ELECTION *of the King.*

WHen the Throne becomes vacant by Death, Deposition, or voluntary Abdication, the Archbishop of *Gnesna*, as *Inter Rex*, issues Circular Letters to acquaint the Provinces with it, and to summon a General Convocation of the Gentry to meet at *Warsaw*. Before this Meeting, the little Diets take Care to secure the Roads from Thieves, and to guard the Frontiers against Invasions; and Spies are sent into all neighbouring Countries to discover their Designs. They suffer none to go out or come into the Kingdom without Passports, till the Election is over: All Foreign Letters, tho' to Senators, are intercepted: the High-Ways are block'd up with Trees; and Ambuscades are plac'd about them. None must write to the Army during this Time; the Use of Fire-Arms is forbid to the People; and all Taverns are shut up.

The Diet consists of the Archbishop of *Gnesna*, who represents the King; and the other Senators, with the Deputies of the Provinces.

In the first Place, they send some of the Senators to the Army to direct the Affairs of War; Others have the Charge of the Treasure; and, till a King is elected, the Senate claims the Title of *Serene* from Foreign Governments. The Diet for ordering Affairs relating to the Election sits only a Fortnight, during which Time all Courts of Judicature cease, except that of the Marshals.

Digitized by Google

shals. Most Crown'd Heads, Princes and States, send Ambassadors at such Times to the Senate, and the Pope sends his Nuncio. A Gentleman is appointed to attend every such Foreign Minister, to prevent their corrupting the Electors with Money: But this Precaution is of little Use now, since Avarice bears so great Sway here.

When the Diet ends, the Deputies retire to their respective Provinces, acquaint their Constituents with their Proceedings, and of the Day appointed for the Election; and then the Gentry advise what is fit to be propos'd in the Diet.

This Diet of Election, before the Union of *Poland* with the Great Dutchy, was held at *Petrsow*; but since that Time, it is kept in an open Field half a League from *Warsaw*, near the Village *Vola*, and must not continue above six Weeks. There is a great Hall of Boards erected here for the Senate. They first go to Church, to pray God to direct them in their Choice: Then the Nobility chuse their Speaker, who takes an Oath that he will receive no Bribes, keep no Correspondence with any of the Competitors, and do nothing without Consent of the Republick. The Deputies sit in the open Field.

After they have appointed a Court of Justice during the *Interregnum*, all the Senators and Deputies take an Oath on their Knees, administred by the Primate, to maintain an Union among themselves, and to acknowledge none for King but him who is lawfully and unanimously elected; and swears to preserve inviolable the Rights and Privileges of the Republick. Then they oblige themselves not to give their Votes for any, till all the Disorders and Irregularities of the former Reigns be consider'd and redress'd. They annul all the Decrees of Tribunals, and all the Statutes of Kings that intrench on their Liberties; and the Generals are sworn to remove the Forces from the Place of the Diet.

Then the Diet gives Audience to Ambassadors from the Competitors or others, who must be very liberal to the Deputies, by giving Presents, and keeping an open Table, *&c.* After the Ambassadors have Audience, they proceed to the Election. If the Votes be equal, the Archbishop of *Gnesna* demands three times, If the Exorbicancies and Grievances be redressed. And if answer'd in the Affirmative, he declares the King Elect, which is also done by the Marshal of the Crown, and the Great Dutchy: and then *Te Deum* is sung.

'Tis a Rule with the *Poles*, never to elect any powerful neighbouring Prince, lest they be subdued, and brought under an absolute Power. Hence it is, that they never elected a King of the House of *Austria*, lest they should be treated by them as are the *Hungarians* and *Bohemians*. The Candidates must not only bribe the Senators and Deputies, who have a Vote in the Election, but also the other Gentlemen, who come in great Numbers to the Diet; for they often threaten the Senators and Deputies, if they don't elect whom they please.

The Qualifications now requir'd in a Candidate are, That he must not be a Native, nor present at the Election; but must be rich, and no absolute or neighbouring Prince. He must either actually be a Roman-Catholick, or promise to become one before he be Crown'd. He must also have the Reputation of a great Soldier. The Person elected commonly expends some Hundred Thousand Pounds Sterling, and the other Competitors generally as much a-piece; so that the Members of the Diet make great Advantage of the Election; and this seems to be one main Reason why they keep their Kingdom Elective.

Their chief Reasons are, 1. That they will rather obey a King that is their own Creature, than a Prince whom Hereditary Succession obliges them to obey. 2. They think this Form of Government not liable to the Inconveniencies and Hazards of a King's Minority, which is always attended with Confusions and intestine Broils. 3. They say, when a King owes his Crown to the free Election of the People, he will be more like, in common Gratitude, to make suitable Returns by Clemency and Justice. 4. That no Princes take so great Care to educate their Children as theirs, that they may set up for the Succession on the Bottom of their own Merit, and not on the Plea of Blood. 5. The Power they have of limiting their Kings by the Diet, and redressing the Grievances of former Reigns.

At the Time of this Election, the Diet forms an Act for the Security of their Rights and Privileges, which are call'd

Pacta Conventa. The King Elect's Ambaſſador ſigns thoſe Articles, and takes the Oath for him: Then the King himſelf ſwears to keep this Contract inviolable before the Altar in the Church of St. *John* at *Warſaw*. The Form of the Contract is, 1. *That the King ſhall not appoint any Succeſſor, but preſerve all the Laws made for the Freedom of Election.* 2. *That he ſhall pretend to no Right of Coining of Money, but leave that, and the Profits ariſing from it, in the Hands of the Republick.* 3. *That he will ratify and confirm all the former Articles of Peace made with Foreign Princes* 4. *That he will maintain the Peace and Tranquility of the Publick.* 5. *That he will not declare War againſt any Prince, bring Foreign Troops into the Kingdom, or ſuffer any to go out, nor levy any new Troops without Conſent of the Diet.* 6. *That all Field-Officers ſhall be either* Poles *or* Lithuanians, *or Natives of thoſe Provinces depending on the Crown of* Poland. 7. *That all the Officers of the Guards ſhall be* Poles *or* Lithuanians, *and their Colonel a* Poliſh *Nobleman, who muſt all ſwear to be ſubject to the Grand Marſhal* 8 *Not to uſe his Privy-Seal in Affairs that concern the Republick.* 9. *That he ſhall give no Man more Places than the Law allows.* 10. *After a Place has been vacant ſix Weeks at furtheſt, he ſhall beſtow it on ſome well qualify'd* Poliſh *Gentleman.* 11. *That he ſhall not marry without Conſent of the Senate, who ſhall aſſign him what Retinue they pleaſe.* 12. *That, by Conſent of his Council, he ſhall regulate the Number of his Troops, and preſerve good Diſcipline among them.* 13. *That he ſhall build no Fleet without the Advice of his Senate and Gentry.* 14. *That he ſhall not diminiſh his Treaſure in the Caſtle of* Cracow, *but rather increaſe it.* 15. *That he ſhall borrow no Money without Conſent of the Diet.* 16. *That he ſhall always adminiſter Juſtice, by the Advice of his Senators.* 17. *That he ſhall be content with thoſe Revenues his Predeceſſors had.* 18. *That no Strangers be introduc'd into his Council, and that he ſhall beſtow no Offices or Dignities upon them.* 19. *That he ſhall not diminiſh any of the Offices at his diſpoſal, in the Republick or Court.* 20. *That he ſhall maintain and defend all Rights, Liberties, Immunities, and Privileges, granted by former Kings to the* Poles *or* Lithuanians, *or to any of the Provinces that depend on thoſe two Nations.* To theſe Articles they commonly add others, according to the Circumſtances of Time, or the Quality of the Perſon elected. When the King has ſworn to obſerve the *Pacta Conventa*, the Chancellor preſents him with the Decree of his Election, ſign'd by all the Senators; and the King Elect may appoint a Day for his Coronation, which is now perform'd at *Cracow*. When the King is in the Church, the Archbiſhop of *Gneſna* asks him. If he will ſupport and maintain the Catholick Faith? If he will rule according to Equity and Juſtice? Then the King Elect kneels, kiſſes the Archbiſhop's Hand, and laying his own upon the Evangeliſt, ſwears *to perform all that he had before ſworn at* Warſaw: The Subſtance is, *That he will maintain all the Rights and Liberties of both theſe Nations granted at any Time to them, or agreed to by his Ambaſſadors, and to perform whatever has been enacted in the Diet of Election; to reſtore to the Kingdom whatever has been alienated or diſincumbred from their Lands and Revenues; not to leſſen the Boundaries of the Kingdom, but to defend and enlarge them; to eſtabliſh Courts of Juſtice throughout the Kingdom and Great Dutchy; and to ſee that Juſtice be render'd without Delay, without any Favour to Perſons or Things; And laſtly, he conſents, That if it ſhould happen, which GOD forbid, that he the ſaid King Elect ſhould violate this his Oath, or any Part of it, that the Inhabitants of the Kingdom, and all his Dominions, ſhall be totally diſcharg'd from paying him Obedience and Fidelity.*

After the King is thus ſworn, he riſes, hears the *Pacta Conventa* read again, and confirms the Oath which he had taken concerning them. Then kneeling, he receives the Benediction of the Archbiſhop and Biſhops; and his upper Garment being put off, the Archbiſhop anoints his Right Hand and Arm up to his Elbow, and his Shoulder, with conſecrated Oil, with theſe Words, *I anoint thee King with conſecrated Oil, in the Name of the Father, Son, and Holy Ghoſt. Amen.* Then he is led to a Chapel, where he is habited much like a Biſhop: After which, he has other Ornaments put on by the two Marſhals of the Kingdom and Great Dutchy; and then he is convey'd to the Throne erected in the Church, by the Senators, who are Officers of State, the Standard-Bearer of the Kingdom walking before. After hearing Maſs, he is brought back to the Altar, where the Archbiſhop delivers a drawn Sword into his Right Hand, ſaying, *Receive this*

Digitized by Google

this Sword, and cordially protect and defend the Holy Church againſt all Unbelievers. Then the King delivers the Sword to the Great Sword-Bearer of the Kingdom: He puts it up in the Scabbard, and returns it to the Archbiſhop, who girds it to the King's Side; upon which the King riſes, and drawing it again, flouriſhes it three times over his Head, to ſignify that he will defend the Trinity and Church againſt all Unbelievers. Then the King kneels, and the Archbiſhop puts the Crown on his Head, which the Biſhops of *Cracow* and *Cujavia* ſupport with their Hands. In the mean time the Archbiſhop ſays ſome Prayers; after which he puts the Scepter into the King's Right Hand, and the Globe into his Left. Then his Majeſty is brought back between the Archbiſhop and the two Biſhops to the Throne, where he is plac'd by the Archbiſhop, with theſe Words, *Sit, and maintain the Place given you by GOD*, &c. The King being thus ſeated, the Archbiſhop and Biſhops return to the Altar, where they ſing *Te Deum*; which being ended, the King comes and offers him Gold, kiſſes his Hand, and having made his Confeſſion, receives the Sacrament and Benediction from him. Then the Court-Marſhal cries, *Vivat Rex, Vivat Rex.*

Next Day the King goes in great Pomp to the Town-Houſe, the Senators carrying the *Regalia* before him; and the Great Treaſurer of the Kingdom ſcatters among the People a great Number of Gold and Silver Medals. He is then habited anew with his Royal Robes, and ſeated on a ſplendid Throne. Then the Magiſtrates of Cities pay him their Homage, aſſure him of their Fidelity, and preſent him with the Keys of their City-Gates: Then they take the Oath of Fealty on their Knees. After this the Primate lays down his Authority as *Interrex*, and all the Members of the Diet take the Oath of Allegiance to the King.

The ARMS *of* Poland.

ARE Quarterly: In 1ſt and 4th *Gules*, an Eagle-Argent Crown'd and Arm'd *Or*, for *Poland*. In the 2d and 3d *Gules*, a Cavalier arm'd Cap-a-pee Argent. In the *Dexter*, a naked Sword of the ſame. In the *Sinifter*, a Shield-Azure charg'd with a double-barr'd Croſs *Or*, mounted on a Courſer of the 2d, barb'd of the 3d, and neil'd of the 4th, for *Lithuania*. For the Creſt, a Crown heighten'd with 8 Flurets, and clos'd with 4 Demi-Circles, ending in a *Mond*, *Or*, which is the Creſt of *Poland*: The Motto is, *Hubent ſua ſidera Reges.*

Piaſecki, in his Chronicle, ſays, That after the Defeat over *Varus*, the *Germans* took a black Eagle, one of the *Roman* Standards, and the *Sarmatian* Auxiliaries a White one. Upon this Account the *Poles* have ſtill for their Arms, in a *Field-Gules*, an *Eagle-Argent*, and the *Germans* a *Black Eagle*.

Of the King's REVENUES.

WHen the King is Crown'd, the Diet allows him a Penſion of above 140000 *l. per Annum*, which, together with his Patrimonial Eſtate and Crown Lands, maintains him a very ſplendid Court in that cheap Country. He has beſides great Sums of Money for Nominations to Employments, Civil and Military. *John Sobieski* had in Revenues, Penſions, his own Eſtate, and other Caſualties, about 300000 *l.* Sterling *per Annum*. The Crown Revenues are Impoſts on Merchandizes and the *Jews*, Part of the Cuſtoms of *Dantzick*, and the Revenues of the Salt-Mines of *Cracow* and other Places. The Republick frequently allows the Queen an Annual Penſion, which is generally computed at 30000 *l.* Sterling. The King has his *Poliſh*, *German*, and *Hungarian* Guards, and the ſame Officers of his Houſhold as other Kings.

The Power of the King is much limited, for the Subjects have all along ſecur'd their Liberties by their Prudence and Valour. They don't reliſh the ſlaviſh Temper of the *Turks* and *Muſcovites*, who ſuffer themſelves to be govern'd according to the Humour or Pleaſure of their Prince. He cannot name any of his Children to Places of Profit or Honour, nor purchaſe Land for them in any Place of the Kingdom, without Conſent of the Diet. When a *Poliſh* Nobleman is in any Preferment, thô he commit Crimes againſt the Crown or State, the King has no Power to turn him out, without the unanimous Conſent of the Diet; for every Member has a negative Voice, which occaſions great Inconveniencies; for neither the King nor the State are well ſerv'd.

of

Of the SENATE *of* POLAND.

THE Government is intirely in the Hands of the Gentry, who are not the tenth Part of the Kingdom. Their Vassals or Slaves have no more Property, or Benefit of the Laws, than our Negroes in the *West-Indies*. The Senators are nam'd by the King, and continue for Life: They take an Oath to conserve inviolable the Rights and Liberties of the Republick; by which they think themselves oblig'd to contradict the King when he designs to invade their Rights: Even the Nuncio's in the Diet assume this Liberty. They have the same Power the *Tribuni Plebis* had among the *Romans*. These Nuncio's or Deputies sometimes affront and huff their Kings; as they did to *John Sobiesky*, whom they call'd a *Nero* and a Tyrant. Four of the Senators always attend the King, and he is oblig'd to consult 'em in all Affairs.

There are 17 Ecclesiastical Senators. The Archbishop of *Gnesna* is Primate of the Kingdom, and stiles himself, *The Pope's Legate born*. He can reverse whatever is done in any of the Bishops Courts; and it is Death to draw a Sword in his Presence. A Golden Cross is carried before him when he goes to the Diet, or to the King; and when he sits, his Chaplain holds it behind his Chair. His Marshal, who is a Senator, carries a Staff before his Coach, and salutes none with it but the King. He visits no Ambassadors, tho' they visit him. During the *Interregnum*, he may coin Money in his own Name, the Revenues of the Crown belong to him, and he has then the same Officers with the King; but at all times he has Drums beating and Trumpets sounding within and without, before he sits down to Table; and he may visit the King when he pleases.

The Lay-Senators are 128. The Diet or Parliament consists of King, Senators, and Deputies. The King is oblig'd every 3d Year to call a Diet; two must be held at *Warsaw*, and the 3d at *Grodno* in *Lithuania*; because, at making the Union, the *Lithuanians* alledg'd it was inconvenient for them to come always as far as *Poland*. The King must send his Circular Letters six Weeks before the Session, and a List of all the Affairs and Articles he proposes to be treated in the Diet. Upon this, a little Diet, of all the Gentry in each Palatinate, meets, and resolves what is to be done about the Articles sent by the King, and chuse Nuncio's or Deputies to represent their Decisions to the Diet. The Decision here, as well as in the great Diet, goes not by Plurality of Votes, but by Unanimous Consent; which often occasions great Confusions, and the Diets to break up without doing any thing. The Number of those Deputies is, 178 for *Poland*, and 70 for *Prussia*, according to the Number of their Provinces and Towns. Sometimes they disagree about chusing a Speaker, and break up as in the Grand Diet in 1693. *Hauteville* says, *the Poles employ more Time in drinking and feasting, than in debating Matters of State; for they never think on that Work, till they begin to want Money and* Hungarian *Wine*. In the Grand Diet, the Lower House is made up of the Deputies, and the Higher of the Senators: The latter are Judges of Criminal Affairs, and the Deputies bring up Bills to them to be debated. Five Days before the Conclusion of the Diet, the Senators and Deputies meet together in the Upper House. The Diet is not to sit above six Weeks, and when that Time is expir'd, the Deputies send their Speaker to the King, to take Leave of him in their Name, and will not sit any longer, be the Affairs of the Republick ever so pressing; as they did in 1649, when the *Tartars* and *Cossacks* had almost over-run the Kingdom. The Reason of this is, that by this Time their Provisions are spent by their great Train of Guards and Domesticks. The King, during the Diet, is obliged to increase his Guards, otherwise he might be expos'd to the Insults of the Gentry, who frequently take Liberty in the Diet to threaten and abuse him to his Face.

There is no Assembly in *Europe* more subject to Disorders, Factions, and Bribes; so that it seldom concludes in Peace. These Intrigues and Mismanagements are generally fomented by the *French* and *Austrian* Factions.

Their LAWS.

THey bear Date from the Time of *Casimir the Great*, before whose Time they have none in Writing; being then govern'd by the Customs of their Ancestors: But

Digitized by Google

But he brought in the *Magdeburgh* Laws, which are now call'd the *Conſtitutions of Poland*. *Lithuania* and *Volhinia* have ſtill their own Laws and Cuſtoms: And the Regal and Ducal *Pruſſians* have alſo their own Municipal Laws, call'd the *Laws of Culm*.

The *Poles* admire this Form of Government, becauſe it defends them againſt the Oppreſſions and Tyrannies of abſolute Governments; of which their Neighbours, the *Turks* and *Muſcovites*, are miſerable Examples. Their former Miſeries, under the Weywodes, made them abhor *ariſtocracy*, and their Gentry are averſe to *Democracy*, becauſe of its levelling Principles.

Of their MILITARY AFFAIRS.

IN the Infancy of the *Poliſh* Government, the *Poles* were obliged to fight their King's Quarrels whenever requir'd. *Boleſlaus Chrobry* firſt inſtituted a Militia of Horſe and Foot, to be levy'd out of every Palatinate and Diſtrict. *Boterus* ſays, the *Poles* can raiſe above 100000 Horſe, and the *Lithuanians* 70000. Their Foreign hir'd Foot have ſometimes exceeded 30000. The *Coſſacks*, when ſubject to the *Poles*, ſerv'd on Foot, and were of great Uſe in their Wars, eſpecially in thoſe againſt the *Tartars* and *Turks*. *Amurath the Great* uſed to ſay of 'em, *That in ſpite of the other Potentates of* Europe, *he could ſleep on both Ears, but that thoſe* Gad-flies, *meaning the* Coſſacks, *would ſcarce ſuffer him to ſleep on either*. They had at one time, when in Rebellion againſt *Poland*, an Army of 100000 Men.

The *Poliſh* Armies are badly pay'd, which occaſions frequent Mutinies: The Soldiers are alſo obliged to rob for Suſtenance. They ſeldom make uſe of Spies, ſo that they know little of the Deſigns of their Enemies. Proviſions are frequently ſcarce in their Army, becauſe they have no ſuch Thing as Sutlers or Magazines; and, which is extremely impolitick, if their Army conſiſt of 20000 Men, they have certainly 20000 more Servants and idle Fellows attending them.

It is not in the King's Power to chuſe Men of greateſt Experience and Merit for Generals; but he is often obliged to give the Charge of the Army to a rich Nobleman, who knows nothing of the Matter; and when he once gets his Commiſſion, the King cannot recal it. The Subalterns don't come to the Place of Rendezvous till ſix Weeks after the Time appointed, and leave the Army a Month before the Campagne is ended, which Grievance is not to be redreſs'd without great Danger.

Monſieur Dalerac's *Account of their* Military Affairs.

THE Republick has two ſeparate Armies, under two different Generals, who are not ſubordinate nor dependant upon one another: The firſt is that of the Kingdom of *Poland*, and the ſecond is that of the Grand Dutchy of *Lithuania*, which is an Auxiliary State, and Ally to the other, and not a ſubjected Province; ſo that their beſt concerted Expeditions frequently miſcarry, for want of Union and Expedition: For Inſtance; At the Siege of *Vienna*, in 1683, the King was returning back to *Poland*, when the *Lithuanians* join'd him in *Hungary*. The Army of the Kingdom is to conſiſt of 36000 Men, and that of *Lithuania* of 12000.

Each Army has a great and little General; and their Badge of Command is a great Lance, adorn'd at the End with Feathers or Knots of Ribbons, under a great Ball of ſome rich Stuff: It is carried before the two Generals. The King's has a Plume of Heron's or Eagle's Feathers; and when he commands in Perſon, his only is carried aloft. They have alſo a Battoon given them, as the Marſhals of *France*. A Great General is only accountable to a General Diet, and has an Allowance of 60000 Francs, at 10 Sous *per* Franc.

The *Huſſars* are the beſt *Gens d'Armes* of the Kingdom, and the fineſt Cavalry in *Europe*: They are compos'd of handſome Men, mounted on the fineſt Horſes of the Kingdom, with Led-Horſes richly capariſon'd; their Bridles adorn'd with Plates and Nails of Silver, or Vermilion gilt; embroider'd Saddles, with gilt Bows; Houzes according to the *Turkiſh* Faſhion, with Fringes of Gold and Silver; and a rich Sword fix'd to the left Side of the Saddle, under the Horſeman's Thigh. They have alſo Piſtols; do no Duty, are all of them Exempts, and referr'd

Digitized by Google

ſerv'd for Battle, and other diſtinguiſhing Actions. The King and Generals call them *Towariches*, which ſignifies Comrade. They have much Equipage, fine Tents, and a great Number of Servants. They are arm'd with Back and Breaſt, a ſcal'd Head-piece, adorn'd with Pendants of Iron Plates quilted, which come down to their Shoulders: They have a Gantlet of Malt: Over this they wear a great Leopard's or Tyger's Skin, in Form of a looſe Coat, made in a Warlike Faſhion.

Their Lances are larger than the *French* great Pikes, and pointed with Iron; the upper Part has a Streamer of Taffeta, in Form of a Standard, 3 or 4 Ells long: Becauſe of its Weight, it muſt be carried in a Boot fix'd to the Saddle. When they attack their Enemies, they never retire, but break through all that oppoſe them, except they be encompaſs'd; but if their Enemies open their Ranks, the Danger from them is over. If the Horſe be kill'd, the *Huſſar* cannot raiſe himſelf, becauſe of the Weight of his Armour; ſo that they are only of Service in Plains.

They have two Servants, each arm'd with Head-pieces and Lances, have Coats of the Skins of White Wolves, and behind their Backs a great Wing of Eagles Feathers, which is good for nothing but to frighten Children. The King, the Princes of the Blood, the Senators, Biſhops, and Miniſters of State, have all Companies of them to attend them.

The ſecond Sort of *Gens d'Armes* is the *Pancernes*, inferior to the *Huſſars*, but above the reſt of the Cavalry: They have a Coat of Mail, with an Iron Cap, cover'd with a Net-work of the ſame, which comes down to their Shoulders, and ſhewing only half their Viſage, with their great Whiskers, makes them look like Satyrs. They have Faulchions and Muskets: They are as well mounted as the *Huſſars*, but not ſo richly equipp'd. In lieu of a Trumpet, they have an Inſtrument of Copper, not much bigger than a Flageolet, crook'd and hollow like a Cornet, which makes a ſhrill and ſavage Noiſe. 'Tis ſuppos'd to be the *Lituus* of the Ancients.

The reſt of the *Poliſh* Army conſiſts of *Walachians*, *Coſſacks*, *Poles*, and ſometimes *Tartars*.

That which they call the Foreign Army, has another ſort of Diſcipline than the former: They are arm'd like thoſe of *Germany* and *France*; only the Dragoons are mounted on ſorry Jades, and are almoſt naked. The Infantry is more tatter'd than any *Spaniards* or *Italians*, and not uniform in their Cloaths. They have no Swords, but long Battle-Axes, which are of admirable Uſe: They ſerve as Reſts to their Muskets, and there's nothing comparable to them for covering a Battalion, and defending them againſt Horſe. All Foreigners may be employ'd in this Army. In a Word, they are the Safety of the Whole, and do all the Service, the reſt being little more than Ornament.

The old Weapons of the *Poles* were Scimiters, Lances, Gides, Javelins, Bows and Arrows. At preſent they uſe Fire-Arms; ſo that now they have nothing of the old *Sarmatian* Armour left but the Bow and Arrow. The *Poles* had formerly Bucklers of Oſier of a round Figure, cover'd with Skins a little rais'd and pointed in the Middle, where there was a piece of Iron, but is now almoſt quite out of Uſe. Some of theſe Bucklers coſt 300 Ducats of Gold. At the Siege of *Vienna*, *John Sobieski* had one of beaten Gold fix'd to his Saddle: It had upon it the Repreſentation of the Battle of *Kotchim* in *Baſſo-Relievo*.

The *Poles* have a Scimiter longer and heavier than thoſe of the *Turks*, but they don't cut ſo well.

The *Coſſacks* are the only Perſons employ'd to bring them Intelligence; of which our Author gives a pleaſant Inſtance: One of them having catch'd a *Turk*, threw him down like a Bundle into King *John Sobieski*'s Tent, went to the Treaſurer for his *Præmium*; which having receiv'd, he went back to the King's Tent, and ſaid, *John, they have paid me, God reſtore it thee, and good Night.* The *Poles* know little of the Stratagems of War, or of carrying on Sieges. 'Till of late, they had neither main nor ordinary Guards, nor Convoy for their Foragers. Their Intrenchments were like the Tabor of the *Coſſacks*. The Marches of their Army ruins the Country more than the Incurſions of the Enemy: For if an Officer be only to march from *Warſaw* to *Leopol*, which is but 50 Leagues, he is ſure to march to the Left and to the Right, and

make a long Tour, for they have no ſuch thing as a Route appointed; ſo that he will ſpend in that Journey two or three Months, eating up the Peaſants at Diſcretion: And if he does but come at the Time appointed, there is no Enquiry made; ſo that an Officer will make 5 or 6000 Francs by a ſmall Journey.

Their RELIGION.

THE *Poles* were firſt converted in 964, in the Reign of *Miceſlaus* I. as is ſaid already in the Hiſtory of his Reign. The Day of that Prince's Converſion is obſerv'd as an Anniverſary, when the Boys dip Statues in Rivers in Memory of his Baptiſm. Together with Chriſtianity, they receiv'd all the Errors and Corruptions of the then Church of *Rome*. Thoſe of *Red Ruſſia* entertain'd the Faith of the *Greek* Church, which they follow in many Places to this Day, and call the *Roman*-Catholicks *Latins*, by way of Contempt. Some of the *Greek* Church in this Kingdom are called *Uniats*, and differ only from the Papiſts by having their Worſhip in the *Greek* Language. Their Prieſts are call'd *Popi*.

Formerly *Poland* ſwarm'd with *Anabaptiſts*, *Arians*, *Tritheiſts*, *Photinians*, *Ebionites*, *Neſtorians*, and *Socinians*. The laſt were expelled by *John Caſimir*, who obliged them by an Edict to leave the Kingdom, and allow'd them 3 Years to remove their Effects. Notwithſtanding this, they were encourag'd by ſome of the Gentry, and among others by *George Blandrata*, a Phyſician, till *John Sobieski*, publiſh'd a more ſevere Edict, whereby the *Socinians* were immediately driven out. One Reaſon was, that they publiſh'd a Book, Entituled, *Tormentum Trinitatem Throno deturbans*.

The *Lutherans* are tolerated in *Poliſh Pruſſia*, the King being oblig'd to it by his Coronation-Oath. There are alſo ſome *Calviniſts* in this Kingdom. *Nicholas Radzivil* was the firſt *Poliſh* Gentleman that embrac'd *Calviniſm*, in the Reign of *Sigiſmundus Auguſtus*, and protected all of that Profeſſion.

They have alſo *Arminians*, chiefly in the Towns of *Ruſſia* and *Podolia*. They have their Worſhip in their own Language, but acknowledge the See of *Rome*. There are *Jews* every where in *Poland*; but they muſt not trade within 12 Leagues of *Warſaw*. They pay about 120000 Florins *per Annum* to the State. In the Great Dutchy of *Lithuania*, there are about 30000 *Tartars*, who are *Mahometans*, and are oblig'd to ſend 1200 Men yearly to the Wars againſt the *Turks* and *Tartars*. There are many Pagan Idolaters on the Frontiers of *Livonia*, *Pruſſia*, and *Samogitia*, who ſtill retain their ancient Superſtitions, whereof one is, That when any one dies, they dig up the Body of the laſt deceaſed of that Family, and cut off its Head, to prevent the Death of any more of their Friends.

The *Poles* are generally bigotted Papiſts, and formerly would make no Alliance with Proteſtants: So that *Uladiſlaus Jagello* rejected the Crown of *Bohemia*, becauſe the *Huſſites* had then over-run that Kingdom.

Biſhops preſide in the Aſſembly of their States, that the Church may receive no Prejudice. The leſſer Clergy have Seats in all Tribunals, and the Great Secretary of the Kingdom is always a Churchman.

The Regular Clergy are more eſteem'd than the Secular. Fryars-Mendicants may enter the privateſt Part of any Houſe without knocking at the Door. The Regulars there are all rich, but debauch'd, immodeſt, and avow'd Drunkards: Nor do their Superiors or the People rebuke them for it.

On Faſt-Days, the *Poles* abſtain from Milk, Eggs, Fleſh and boil'd Fiſh, at Night only; but may drink all Day if they pleaſe. On *Fridays* and *Sundays*, they forbear Butter, Cheeſe, Milk, and Eggs. On Faſt-Days, they won't eat Butter or Cheeſe, tho' the Pope give them a Diſpenſation, as he did in Cardinal *Radziouski's* Time; for which they call'd the Pope a Heretick.

The inferior Secular Clergy never attend at the Offices of their Church, but give poor Scholars Two-pence a Day to ſay their *Hours* for them in the Quire. All the Prieſts here neglect their Cures, and the Biſhops never correct the Inferior Clergy when they do amiſs.

The *Poles*, at the Elevation of the Hoſt, beat themſelves, and knock their Heads againſt the Pavement, or the Benches where they ſit, with ſo great Violence, that it may be heard at a conſiderable Diſtance. In Winter, the Ladies, and ſome of the ni-

Digitized by Google

ceſt Men, have Furr'd Bags in Church, to preſerve their Feet from the exceſſive Cold. Their Churches are fine, and well adorn'd. The Jeſuits of *Leopol* have a Cope they wear at Maſs, ſo thick ſet with Pearls, that a Man is ſcarce able to bear its Weight.

Their LEARNING.

IN the Univerſities of *Cracow* and *Vilna*, their chief Study is to ſpeak *Latin*; but they are Strangers to polite Learning. They diſregard the Oriental Languages; but are ſo fond of *Latin*, that their Servants and common People ſpeak it fluently, and ſo much the more eaſily, that the *Latin* Syntax agrees with that of their native Tongue: In every Village, they have School Maſters to teach it; and the Jeſuits in all Towns of Note have Colleges to inſtruct their Youth in that Language. The *Poles* value themſelves upon this as the greateſt Improvement of humane Nature.

Their Theology is a Mixture of *Ariſtotle's* Logicks and Metaphyſicks with School-Divinity. They talk conſtantly of *Quiddities*, *Modes*, *Entities*, *Subſtantial Forms*, and *Eſſences*. They quote *Albertus Magnus* upon all Occaſions, and admire *Thomas Aquinas* and *Scotus*. Their Divines know little of the Scriptures, Practical Divinity, Church Hiſtory, or Antiquities; but give an implicit Faith to Councils and Church Deciſions.

Dr. *Connor* ſays, they have few Phyſicians except Foreigners. The Gentry have little Opportunity to improve themſelves at home, and none but the richer Sort can go abroad, who are generally too lazy or proud to give the neceſſary Application to that Study: Though ſuch of the Natives as are Phyſicians uſe ſome of the ſame Medicines that we do, they know not how to apply them. They don't uſe Salivation in Venereal Diſtempers, but pretend to cure it by Sweating or Bathing in a hot Decoction of Herbs. The *Poles* are ſeldom troubled with the Scurvy or malignant Fevers. Pleuriſies are not ſo dangerous there as in other Countries; but they think Wounds and Ulcers in the Legs incurable.

The Sieur *de Beauplan* ſays, he has ſeen *Coſſacks* ſick of a Fever, who us'd no other Medicine but half a Bandaleer of Gunpowder, diſſolv'd in half a Pint of *Aqua-Vitæ*, mix'd well together, which they drank off, went to Bed, and roſe next Morning in perfect Health. He ſays, others mix Aſhes with *Aqua Vitæ*,, and it has the ſame Effect. Many of their Diſeaſes proceed from Drunkenneſs, to which they are generally ſo much addicted, that they have a Proverb, *That a Man had as good drink Water, if he does not feel the Effects of drinking.*

They have had ſome very great Scholars however, as *Stanislaus Hoſius*, Cardinal and Legate at the Council of *Trent*, and *Matthias à Michovia*; *Johannes Dglugoſſius*, *Martinus Cromerus*, and *Staravolſcius*, reckon'd good Hiſtorians; *Nicholaus Copernicus*, the great Aſtronomer; *Martinus Smiglecius*, a Logician; *Abr. Bzovius*, the Continuator of *Baronius's* Annals; *Sarbrevius*; and *Johannis a Lasco*, a Nobleman, a famous Reformer. *Caſimir* has in his Odes endeavour'd to imitate *Horace*, and his Language is not contemptible.

Their LANGUAGE.

AS the *Poles* have the ſame Origin with the *Muſcovites*, *Bohemians*, *Croatians*, *Moravians*, *Sileſians*, *Caſſubians*, *Bulgarians*, *Raſcians*, *Servians*, *Illyrians*, &c. *Cromerus* ſays, they have the ſame *Sclavonian* Language, but differ ſo much in Dialects, that they ſcarce underſtand one another. The Terms of Mechanick Arts are *German*, and in ſome Towns and Villages they ſpeak that Language. Many of the Gentry ſpeak *French* and *Italian*. The *Poliſh* Tongue is not copious, and very harſh, and difficult to pronounce, and abounds ſo with Conſonants, that ſome Words, for Inſtance, *Chrzeſzcz*, a Gad-fly, have 7 or 8 Conſonants without any Vowel; yet in ſpeaking, they ſound them with Vowels.

Of the Diviſion of POLAND.

IT is divided into the Kingdom of *Poland* and Dukedom of *Lithuania*, which was united to that Kingdom in 1560, by the Diet of *Lublin*, in the Reign of *Sigiſmundus Auguſtus*. The Kingdom of *Poland* contains *Great* and *Little Poland*, *Red Ruſſia*, and *Pruſſia*. The Dutchy of *Lithuania* is divid.d into *Lithuania*, *White Ruſſia*, *Samogitia*,

Digitized by Google

tia, *Poliſh Lithuania*, and *Curland*. Theſe are divided into Provinces, which are ſubdivided into Palatinates or Governments.

GREAT POLAND.

IT is bounded on the N. W. by *Pomerania*, on the W. by the Electorate of *Brandenburg* and *Sileſia*, on the S. by Part of *Sileſia*, on the S. E. by *Little Poland*, on the E. by *Maxovia*, and on the N by *Regal Pruſſia*: 'Tis generally a level and champaigne Country, has pleaſant Rivers, Lakes and Ponds, and is well furniſh'd with all manner of Fiſh and Fowl. Some Parts of *Cujavia* are more mountainous: The Hills there abound with Sheep and other Cattle, and the Vallies have Plenty of Corn. *Great Poland* is ſo call'd, becauſe *Lechus* choſe *Gneſna*, a City belonging to this Country, for his Reſidence: It comprehends 3 Provinces, *viz. Poland*, properly ſo call'd, *Cujavia*, and *Maxovia*: The Metropolis is *Poſna*, or *Poſnan*, in Lat. 52 ½. Long 37. and gives Name to a Palatinate. 'Tis ſeated upon the River *Warta*, 10 *German* Miles S. W. of *Gneſna*, and 50 N. from *Cracow*. This City is famous for Trade, and for an Univerſity, founded by Biſhop *John Lubraniski*. The Jeſuits College is a fine Place, where Learning is much encourag'd, and the Monaſtery is neatly built. The People here are richer in their Apparel than in any other Place of *Poland*, except *Cracow*, to which it is not inferior in Trade, Beauty or Riches. The Inhabitants are moſt Papiſts. Here are alſo many Jews, who have greater Privileges than the Citizens. The Biſhop is ſubject to the Archbiſhop of *Gneſna*. This City is ſtrong, and has a good Caſtle: It is ſurrounded with a double Wall, and a deep Ditch. The Suburbs are encompaſs'd by a Moraſs and deep Lake, and are frequently laid under Water by the overflowing of the *Warta*. Other Towns of Note are, 1. *Koſcien*, built among Marſhes, defended with a broad and deep Ditch, and a double Wall, and lies 28 Miles from *Poſnan*. 2. *Uskow*, a Wall'd Town, in a Plain, 44 *Engliſh* Miles from *Poſnan*, 3. *Sremsk*, *Krzwin*, *Premeck*, Timber-Towns belonging to this Diſtrict. 4. *Miedzyrzecze*, on the Confines of *Sileſia*, 60 *Engliſh* Miles from *Poſnan*: The Caſtle is thought impregnable, and ſeveral *German* Princes have found it ſo. 5. *Slupcza*, upon the *Warta*, with a very ſtrong Wall, and other Fortifications. 6. *Plydra*, a Wall'd Town upon the *Warta*, 36 Miles from *Kaliſh*. Moſt Towns of this Palatinate are built of Wood, except the publick Edifices.

The Senators are, the Biſhop, Palatine and Caſtellan of *Poſnania*, the Caſtellans of *Miedzirzec*, *Ragozna*, *Santre*, *Krawin*, *Premeez*, and *Srymik*.

The Standard and Arms of this Palatinate are, in a *Field Gules*, an Eagle expanded *Argent*.

Of the Palatinate of KALISH.

IT has the Palatinate of *Poſna* to the W. that of *Siradia* to the S. and *Lencicia* to the E. has its Name from the City of *Kaliſh*, mention'd by *Ptolomy*, on the River *Proſne*, which a little lower falls into the *Warta*: It is fortified with a ſtrong Brick Wall. *Staniſlaus Karncow* founded here the ſtately College of Jeſuits. It is 20 Miles E. from the Confines of *Sileſia*, and as many N. from *Siradia*. It has the Ruins of a ſtrong Caſtle, deſtroy'd by the *Teutonick* Knights. The other remarkable Towns are, 1. *Gneſen*, or *Gneſna*, in Lat. 52 ½. Long. 38. It was formerly the Metropolis of all *Poland*, but now only of *Great Poland*: It was built by *Lechus*. In the Cathedral, there's ineſtimable Treaſure of Gold, Silver, and curious enamell'd Veſſels, left by *Sigiſmund* III. other Princes of *Poland*, and the Archbiſhops of this See; but moſt of it is owing to the Tomb of St. *Adelbert*, which is cover'd with Silver. The Legacies of *Henry Firley*, late Archbiſhop, have greatly increas'd it; for beſides many coſtly Veſſels and Prieſts Veſtments, he gave them his own Mitre, worth 23000 *l.* Sterling. The Gates of the Cathedral are of *Corinthian* Braſs, curiouſly wrought: They were brought from the *Grecian* Monaſtery of *Corſuna*, in the *Taurica Cherſoneſus*, to *Kiow*, and from thence to this Place, by *Boleſlaus* II. In 1612, this City was burnt down, dail'y loſes Part of its ancient Glory,

Digitized by Google

and is now only considerable for being the Seat of the Cardinal Primate. 'Tis 28 *English* Miles N. W. from *Kaliſh*, 28 E. from *Poſna*, 132 N. W from *Warſaw*, 120 S. from *Dantzick*, and 52 from *Thorn*. 2. *Kelo*, a Timber-built Town, on the *Warta*, 20 *English* Miles from *Kaliſh*. 3. *Land*, on the *Warta*. 4 *Nakle*, a Timber-Town, near the Lake *Gopło*, with a Wall'd Caſtle, ſituated among Marſhes. 5. *Gheeia*. *Andrew Lipiki*, Biſhop of *Cracow*, founded a Collegiate Church here, with vaſt Expence.

The Senators are, the Palatine and Caſtellan of *Kaliſh*, and the Caſtellans of *Land*, *Nakle*, and *Kamin*.

The Standard and Arms of the Palatinate are, in a *Field-Argent* and *Gules*, a Buffalo's Head eras'd *Sables*, with a Crown betwixt his Horns, all in a *Cheeky*.

Of the Palatinate of SIRADIA.

IT has *Sileſia* on the W. and *Little Poland* on the S. and S. E. *Kaliſh* on the N. and *Lencicia* on the E. The chief Town is *Sirad*, 24 *Engliſh* Miles S. from *Kaliſh*, and 40 S. W. from *Lencicia*. It is ſituated upon the River *Warta*, fortified with a ſtrong Brick Wall and a Caſtle: The Houſes are of Wood, very mean, and low. This City, and the Territories about it, was made formerly a Dukedom, and was uſually given to the King's ſecond Son. Other Towns of Note are, 1. *Petrikow*, 28 *Engliſh* Miles E. from *Sirad*, and 16 *Engliſh* Miles N. from the Frontiers of *Leſſer Poland*. 'Tis ſituated in a fenny Place, but is a neat well-built City. The Diet of *Poland* ſits once *per Ann.* here, as does one of the great Tribunals in the Suburbs. In 1640, this City was burnt down. The King had a Palace here, which is now gone to Decay. 2 *Vielum*, which borders on *Sileſia*. 'Tis not equal in Beauty to the other Cities of theſe Parts, tho' its Houſes are of Brick. A great Part of it was burnt in 1656, during the *Swediſh* War; but 'twas afterwards repair'd. 3. *Roſprizа*, ſeated among Marſhes, 4. *Spicimir*, built of Wood. 5. *Wort*, built on a River of the ſame Name. 6. *Lusk*, where *Johannes Laſcus*, Archbiſhop of *Gneſna*, founded a Church, and richly endow'd it at his own Charge. 7. *Oſtrefow*, built of Timber, on the Borders of *Sileſia*, and encompaſs'd with Woods.

The Senators are, the Palatine and Caſtellan of *Siriad*, the Caſtellans of *Roſprizа*, *Spicimir*, and *Konarzew*.

The Arms of this Palatinate are, in a *Field Vert*, a *Lion-Gules*, and *Eagle Sables*, both Counter-coup'd in the Middle.

Of the Palatinate of RAVA.

IT is ſituated between *Leſſer Poland*, *Maſovia*, *Cuſavia*, and the Palatinate of *Lanſchet*. It is ſo called from its principal Town *Rava*, on the River of that Name, 60 Miles S. W. from *Warſaw*, and 44 S. from *Ploczo*: It is built for the moſt part of Wood, and tolerably populous. Priſoners of Quality, and Part of the Revenues of the Crown, are kept in the Caſtle. In this City, the Jeſuits have a College much viſited by learned Men.

Other Towns are, 1. *Lowitz*, more populous than the former, and lies 20 *Engliſh* Miles from it. The Caſtle is ſurrounded by the River *Bſura*. The Archbiſhop of *Gneſna* has his ordinary Reſidence in his Palace built here among the Marſhes. The Church is a beautiful Structure. In this City are many great Fairs, frequented by Merchants from all Places. 2. *Volhovia*, a populous Town, where the Biſhop of *Cujavia* has his Palace. 3. *Gombin*, a large Town, built with Timber. 4. *Sochaczew*, defended with Paliſadoes, and a Caſtle built on a Rock. 5. *Goſtinin*, built of Wood, among Marſhes. *Demetrius Zurki*, Czar of *Muſcovy*, was impriſon'd and dy'd here. 6. *Wieſdun*, remarkable for its Strength, and the Beauty of its Caſtle. It lies near *Rava* to the W.

The Senators are, the Palatine and Caſtellan of *Rava*, and the Caſtellans of *Goſtinin* and *Sochaczew*.

The Standard and Arms are, in a *Field-Gules*, an *Eagle-Sable*, with the Letter *R.* on his Breaſt.

The

Digitized by Google

The Palatinate of LENCICIA, or LANSCHET.

IT is ſituated betwixt *Rava* to the S. E. *Siradia* to the S. W. *Kaliſh* to the W. and *Little Poland* to the S. The chief Town is *Lencicia*, ſeated upon the River *Bſure*, among Lakes. It has a Caſtle built upon a Rock, is encompaſſed with a Ditch and Brick Wall, and has a great Fair once a Year. It was burnt in 1656. 'Tis about 10 *Engliſh* Miles from the River *Warta*, and 40 Miles S. E. from *Gneſna*. One of the little Diets meet here. *Orlow*, is built of Timber, ſeated among Lakes, and is 16 Miles from *Lanſchet*. *Pientkum*, built among Marſhes, on the Banks of the River *Bſure*. Beer is tranſported from this Place all the Kingdom over. Here is alſo a Monaſtery. *Uniejovia* has a famous Caſtle, founded on the *Warta*.

The Senators of this Palatinate are, the Palatine and Caſtellan of *Lanſchet*, and the Caſtellans of *Breſna*, *Inowlocz*, and *Biechovia*.

Their Arms are, in a *Field-Gules*, an *Eagle Argent*, and *Lion-Sables*, both Counter-coup'd in the middle, and the latter crown'd Or.

The Province of CUJAVIA.

IT has *Maſovia* on the E. *Kaliſh* on the S. and *Regal Pruſſia* on the N. It contains two Palatinates, *viz. Brzeſtye*, which lies to E. and S. and *Inowladiſlow*, or *Inowlocz*, to the S.

The Palatinate of BRZESTYE.

THis Palatinate is ſo call'd from *Brzeſtye*, a ſmall Town, 16 *Engliſh* Miles W. from the *Weiſſel*, 32 S. from *Thorn*, and 40 from *Lencicia*. It is ſituated in ſenny Ground, is built of Brick, and Wood interlaid, and defended with a very ſtrong Wall, and deep Ditch. Other Towns are, 1. *Uladiſlaw*, the chief Town of the Province of *Cujavia*, lies upon the *Weiſſel*, and is the Seat of the Biſhop of this Province, and of *Pomeren*, who have been under the Archbiſhop of *Gneſna* ſince 1173. The Cathedral is a ſorry old faſhion'd Building, but well furniſh'd with Plate, rich Ornaments, and Relicks. The Houſes are generally of Brick, and it has a Caſtle indifferently fortified. *Matthias Golanciew*, 42 Years Biſhop of this See, built a ſtately Palace here, and founded the Church of St. *Vital* the Martyr. This City lies betwixt *Thorn* and *Polotzko*, 20 *Engliſh* Miles S. W. from the firſt, and 20 S. E. from the latter, 60 Miles N. E. from *Gneſna*, and 88 S. E. from *Warſaw*. 2. *Cruſwic*, upon the North Bank of the Lake *Goplo*: It has a Brick Caſtle in the middle of the Lake, to which *Popiel* retir'd, and was deſtroy'd by Mice and Rats, as a Puniſhment from Heaven for poiſoning his Relations in a Banquet. It is next to *Gneſna* for Antiquity. Upon the ſame Shore with *Uladiſlaw*, and not far from it, lies, 3. *Niſſovia*, a Wall'd Town. 4. *Radzizw*, built of Timber, near a very great Lake. The Diets of this Palatinate, and of *Inowladiſlow*, are kept in this Town. 5. *Koſinow*, which has a ſtrong Caſtle. 6. *Kowalow*, built of Timber, among Marſhes.

This Palatinate is very fertile, and abounds with all Sorts of Grain, which not only ſuffices the Inhabitants, but is tranſported in vaſt Quantities to *Dantzick* by ſeveral navigable Rivers.

The Senators are, the Biſhop of *Uladiſlaw*, the Palatine and Caſtellan of *Brzeſtye*, and the Caſtellans of *Cruſwic* and *Cowal*.

The Arms are, in a *Field-Or*, an *Eagle-Gules*, and *Lion-Sables*, Counter-coup'd in the middle.

The Territory of *Dobrzin* is ſeparated from *Cujavia* by the *Weiſſel*, and is ſo call'd from the chief Town of that Name, on the River *Weiſſel*, betwixt *Poloczo* and *Uladiſlaw*. 'Tis fortified with Paliſadoes, and is ſeated on a Hill. It had formerly a Caſtle, and was given to the Knights of the *Teutonick* Order by the Duke of *Maſovia*.

The Palatinate of INOWLADISLOW.

IT has *Pruſſia* on the N. *Brzeſtye* on the S. E. the *Weiſſel* on the E. and *Kaliſh* on the S. It contains the Territories of *Bydgoſt*, *Belzo*,

Bobro, and *Inowlocz*. This Palatinate ſends to the Diet of *Poland*, beſides the Palatine, four Caſtellanis, *viz.* of *Inowlocz*, *Bydgoſt*, and *Conarow*; the chief Town is *Inowlocz*, on the River *Notez*: It is little, but has a ſtrong Caſtle, and is 28 *Engliſh* Miles W. from *Uladiſlaw*. *Bydgoſt* is a Wall'd Town on the River *Barde*, by which all Sorts of Merchandize are brought to it from the *Weiſſel*. It has a good Trade in Salmon.

The Province of MASOVIA.

THis Province had Dukes of its own till 1526, that, by the Death of its Duke, it fell to the Kings of *Poland*, who now reſide frequently there. It has *Lithuania* on the E. *Pruſſia* on the N. *Great Poland* on the W. and *Little Poland* on the S. It contains three Palatinates. It was ſubjected to *Poland* by *Caſimir the Great*. 'Tis ſaid, there are 40000 Nobles in this Province, and that 15000 of them met at the Election of *Sigiſmund* III.

The Palatinate of MASOVIA.

IT has *Polachia* on the E. and *Lucal Pruſſia* on the N. and is very fruitful in Corn. *Warſaw* is the chief City, ſeated upon the *Weiſſel*, in Lat. 32 Long 59 ½. in the very Center of the *Poliſh* Dominions: It is encompaſſed with a doub'e Wall, and deep Ditch. The Diet of *Poland* meets here, and the King keeps his Court in a large Palace built by *Sigiſmund* III and beautified by his Succeſſors. The Wooden Bridge over the River is of admirable Workmanſhip. St. *John Baptiſt*'s Church here is a fine Structure In the Suburb call'd *Cracow* there's built, as a Trophy of the Victory over the *Muſcovites*, a ſmall Chapel, for the Sepulchre of *Joannes Demetrius Zuski*, Czar of *Muſcovy*, who, with his two Brothers, died in the Caſtle of *Goſlowin*. It lies 12 *Engliſh* Miles N E from the Borders of *Little Poland*, 96 E. from *Lancicia*, 132 E. from *Gneſna*, 160 from *Poſna*, 116 S E. from *Thorn*, 96 N. from *Lublin*, and 160 N. from *Cracow*. In the Neighbourhood of this Place, the Kings of *Poland* are elected in the Fields; the Nobility have their Tents, and are encamp'd during that Time. Merchant Goods are brought by a River from the neighbouring Provinces, and from hence to *Dantzick*. This City was taken by the *Swedes* in 1655. Other Towns of Note are, 1. *Czarsko*, 40 *Engliſh* Miles S from *Warſaw*, upon the River *Weiſſel*. 2. *Wiſna*, in a Plain, near the River *Narew*, with a Caſtle on an adjoining Hill. 3. *Wiſſegrod*, built of Timber, on a Plain, has a ſtrong Caſtle, and lies 48 *Engliſh* Miles from *Warſaw*. 4. *Ciekanow*, at the like Diſtance from *Warſaw*, and has a ſtrong Caſtle in the middle of a Moraſs. 5. *Lombze*, on the River *Narew*, handſomely built, and about 96 *Engliſh* Miles from *Warſaw*. 6. *Rozan*, in a Plain near the River *Narew*. 7. *Liw*, built of Timber, with a Caſtle, on the Banks of the River *Liwiecz*. 8. *Pultovia*, the Biſhop of *Plosko*'s Reſidence: The Houſes are of Brick; the Caſtle is ſtrong, and the publick Edifices ſtately. 9. *Akreczim*, built with Timber, on the *Weiſſel*, with a good Caſtle, 32 *Engliſh* Miles from *Warſaw*. 10. *Varka*, a large Town, near the River *Pilcza*, about 37 *Engliſh* Miles from *Warſaw*. 11. *Blonye*, 16 Miles from *Warſaw*. 12. *Pultowsko*, a Wall'd Town, with a Caſtle, on the River *Narew*. 13. *Tarcin*, 20 *Engliſh* Miles from *Warſaw*. 14 *Grodzyecc*, 28 *Engliſh* Miles from *Warſaw*, and 8 from *Tarcin*. 15. *Praſnitz*, a large Town, with many fair Edifices of Stone.

The Palatine of *Maſovia*, the Caſtellans of *Cyrna*, *Warſaw*, *Wiſſegrod*, *Wiſna*, *Liw*, *Cieckanow*, and *Zakrotzin*, are the Senators of this Palatinate.

The Arms are, in a *Field-Gules*, an *Eagle* expanded *Argent*.

The Palatinate of PLOCZKO.

IT lies E. from *Maſovia*, between the *Weiſſel* and *Ducal Pruſſia*, and has its Name from *Ploczko*, the chief City, ſeated on a high Bank of the *Weiſſel*, from whence there's a Proſpect of a pleaſant and fruitful Country. It is a Biſhop's See, and very populous: It has Churches very well endow'd beſides the Cathedral, and alſo many Religious Houſes, eſpecially the Abbey of the *Benedictines* in the Suburbs, where they keep

4 the

Digitized by Google

the Head of St. *Sigiſmund* in a Gold Shrine, given by *Sigiſmund* III. The Church is dedicated to him. It has a Caſtle on the *Weiſſel*, and lies 56 *Engliſh* Miles S. W. from *Warſaw*, 36 S. E. from *Thorn*, and 40 N. E. from *Lencicza*. This City is enriched by the *Weiſſel*, which is navigable here. The other Towns are, 1. *Siepreez*, built with Timber, among Marches, 20 *Engliſh* Miles from *Plozkow*. 2. *Srensko*, alſo of Timber, with a Caſtle: It lies among Bogs, 40 Miles from *Plozkow*. 3. *Mlaw*, on the Confines of *Pruſſia*, ſeated on a River of the ſame Name, 40 *Engliſh* Miles from *Plozkow*. 4. *Radzanow*, a Timber Town, on the River *Ukra*, with a Caſtle, on a Rock.

The Senators are, the Biſhop, the Palatines and Caſtellan of *Plozkow*, the Caſtellans of *Siepreez* and *Radzanow*.

The Arms are, in a *Field Gules*, an *Eagle* expanded *Sables*, with a *P.* on the Breaſt.

The Palatinate of DOBRINA.

IT lies towards the W. between *Cujavia* and *Pruſſia*, and abounds with all Sorts of Fruit and Fiſh. *Dobrina* is the chief Town, built of Timber, on the *Weiſſel*: The Caſtle was demoliſh'd by the Knights of the *Teutonick* Order. The other Towns are, 1. *Ripin*, 20 *Engliſh* Miles from *Dobrina*, on the River *Odieck*. 2. *Slouk*, on the *Weiſſel*, 8 Miles from *Dobrina*. 3. *Gorzno*, a Town built of Wood, and ſtrong both by Nature and Art. This Palatinate was formerly the Cauſe of many Quarrels betwixt the *Teutonick* Knights and *Poland*.

The Senators are, the Caſtellans of *Dobrina*, *Ripin*, and *Slouck*.

The Arms are, in a *Field Gules*, a *Man's Head Proper*, doubly Crown'd Or and *Argent*.

The Palatinate of POLACHIA.

IT has *Lithuania* to the E. and *Maſovia Proper* to the W. and was united to the Crown of *Poland* in 1569. The chief Town is *Bielsko*, on the River *Biela*, with the Fortifications and Caſtle of Timber, formerly burnt by Lightning. It has *Grodno* on the N. and *Breſte* on the S. Other Towns are, *Mielnick*, *Dogoczin*, and *Tykoczin*, where they coin Money, and keep the King's Treaſure.

LITTLE POLAND,

HAS Part of *Hungary*, and the Mountains of *Crapack*, on the S. *Sileſia* on the W. and *Great Poland* on the N. from ſome Part of which it is ſeparated by the River *Worta*, and from others by the *Polcza*. It has *Red Ruſſia* on the E. and contains three Palatinates, *viz. Cracow*, *Sendomir*, and *Lublin*; is about 50 *German* Leagues in Length, and as many in Breadth. This Country was formerly overgrown with vaſt Foreſts, in which Robbers skulked, and laid many Places under Contribution. In 1450, *Caſimir* call'd an Aſſembly of the Nobles of *Little Poland*, to conſider of Ways and Means to ſuppreſs them; but not being then ſatisfied with *Caſimir*'s Title to the Crown, they did not fall in with his Propoſals, by which the Robbers increas'd in Number and Boldneſs, and under the Conduct of two Noblemen, *Cawca Swboranski*, and *John* his Brother, they fortified the Mountain *Zebrace*, near *Oſwenskim*; and other Places, where they intrench'd; and great Numbers of *Ruſſians* joining them, they were not ſuppreſs'd without great Bloodſhed and Hazard. The chief City of *Little Poland* is *Cracow*.

The Palatinate of CRACOW.

IT has *Sileſia* on the W. the Palatinate of *Sendomir* on the E. *Hungary* on the S. and *Siradia* on the N. It takes Name from *Cracow*, the Metropolis of the Kingdom, 36 *Engliſh* Miles E. from the Confines of *Sileſia*, 86 S. W. from *Sendomir*, 44 from the Borders of *Upper Hungary*, 160 S. W. from *Warſaw*, 140 S. E. from *Breſlaw*, 120 W. from *Olmutz*, 160 N. E. from *Vienna*, and 200 from *Buda*. It is in Lat. 50. and Long. 38½. Some think it to be the *Carodunum* of *Ptolomy*. It is ſeated on a rocky Bank of the *Weiſſel*, and is the largeſt and beſt built City in *Poland*; the Houſes are of Free ſtone,

Digitized by Google

4 or 5 Stories high, cover'd with Boards. There are many *Italian* and *German* Merchants here, who import ſuch Foreign Goods as the Country needs. 'Tis very populous, and divided into four Parts; 1. *Cracow*, or the ancient City. 2. *Caſimiria*, join'd to the other Parts by a Wooden Bridge over the *Wiſſel*. 3. *Stradonia*, which lies betwixt *Cracow* and the Bridge. 4. *Cleporia*. The King's Palace is on the Top of an high Hill, and overlooks both City and Country. It was rebuilt by *Sigiſmund* the Elder, who added the Gallery on the North Side, which has one of the beſt Proſpects in *Europe*. The Univerſity of *Cracow* was firſt begun by *Caſimir the Great*, finiſh'd by *Uladiſlaus Jagello*, in Performance of the laſt Will of his Queen *Hedwig*, and had its Privileges confirm'd by Pope *Urban*. All Sorts of Learning are taught here, and it contains 11 Colleges. In 1549, the Students leſt the Univerſity, becauſe the Magiſtrates would not puniſh the Servants of *Andrew Czarnecowſki*, who had murther'd many of the Scholars. They diſpers'd themſelves over *Germany*, where they learn'd the *Lutheran* Principles, and on their Return, ſpread them all over *Poland*. There are 14 Grammar-Schools in the City, and Univerſity Learning is taught in ſome of them. *Cracow* was made an Archbiſhoprick when Chriſtianity was firſt planted here. But 100 Years after, *Lampert Zula* refuſing to receive his Pall from the Pope, as his Predeceſſors had done, it was degraded into a Biſhoprick. In the Reign of *Boleſlaus the Chaſt*, which began in 1226, a Conteſt ariſing betwixt *Ivo* Biſhop of this See, and the Biſhop of *Breſlaw*, about Precedency, the Biſhop of *Cracow*, upon his Submiſſion, was reſtor'd to the Dignity of an Archbiſhop; which laſted only during his Life. At this Time, the Biſhops of *Cracow* wear an Archbiſhop's Pall, ſet richly with Jewels; which is the only Relick they have of their ancient Honour. The Streets are badly pav'd, tho' broad and ſtraight. The Market-Place is one of the greateſt in *Europe*, and has a ſtately Church dedicated to the Virgin. Thoſe of the Jeſuits and Dominicans are very fine, and well built. The Cathedral is within the Caſtle, but neither great, nor of good Architecture. 'Tis remarkable for being the Sepulchre of the Kings of *Poland*, and the Place of their Coronation. The Relicks of St. *Staniſlaus*, once Biſhop of this See, to whom it is dedicated, are kept there. This Saint is the Patron of the *Poles*; and being murther'd, in 1079, in this Church, by *Boleſlaus the Bold*, the Kings of *Poland* go to his Shrine upon Foot in Proceſſion, with all the Nobility, the Day before the Coronation; which they do to expiate that cruel Action. *Sigiſmund* III. and *Uladiſlaus* VII. offer'd on that Tomb many Gold and Silver Veſſels. *Sigiſmund* I. built a Silver Altar over it, with Golden Crucifixes, and many Veſtments embroider'd with Jewels of all Sorts; ſo that this Cathedral is remarkable for its Chapter and Treaſury. There are 50 other Churches in the Town and Caſtle. The Archbiſhop of *Cracow* is the Chancellor of the Univerſity.

The Caſtellan here has the Precedency of the Palatine, and takes Place of all the Lay-Senators of the Kingdom: The Reaſon is, becauſe a former Palatine deſerted King *Boleſlaus* in the *Muſcovite* War, as has been already mention'd. *Cracow* was taken by the *Swedes* in 1655, but was retaken in 1657.

Dr. *Connor* gives this Account of the Salt Mines near *Cracow*: The Depth is about 300 Geometrical Paces. One can ſcarce go over all the Alleys and Paſſages of them in a Week's Time. There are ſometimes ſuch fierce Winds in 'em, that nothing can withſtand them; and the Cold, in general, is hardly to be endur'd. The yearly Revenue of theſe Mines is about 400000 *French* Livres; of which 50000 go to the King, 10000 to the Queen, and ſome Thouſands more to the Officers of the Crown. Beſides which, the Proprietor is oblig'd to make a yearly Preſent to all the Cities of *Poland*, and to their Staroſta's. They were diſcover'd in 1548. There are four Kinds of Salt here; one is extream hard and rocky, like Chriſtal; another leſs hard, and clearer; a third white and pure, but brittle and ſofter. They are all brackiſh; but the fourth is ſomewhat freſher. In theſe Mines, there's on one Side a Stream of Salt Water, and on the other one of Freſh. There are ſome Places in theſe Mines where none can work, becauſe they dare

Digitized by Google

not carry a Candle for fear of ſetting the Vapours on Fire; which being nitrous, are eaſily inflam'd.

Other Towns in this Palatinate are; 1. *Zator*, upon the *Weiſſel*, 24 *Engliſh* Miles W. from *Cracow*, and 20 from the Confines of *Sileſia*. It has a ſtrong Caſtle, and gives Name to a Dutchy. 2. *Severil*, which gives Name alſo to a Dutchy, has a ſtrong Caſtle, and Mines of Silver and Lead. 3. *Biecz*, a Wall'd Town, water'd by the River *Rapa*, a Branch of the *Weiſſel*, of the Froth of which they make Sulphur: It is 60 *Engliſh* Miles from *Cracow*. 4. *Woyniez*, built of Timber, on the River *Dunieez*, 36 *Engliſh* Miles from *Cracow*. 5. *Sandecz*, a Wall'd Town, on the former River, 44 *Engliſh* Miles from *Cracow*. It has a Collegiate Church, with ſeveral Monaſteries, and its Inhabitants are induſtrious. 6. *Lelow*, ſurrounded with an old Wall, and has a ſtrong Caſtle on a Hill, with a Palace and Gardens after the *Italian* Manner. 'Tis ſeated on the River *Lelow*, 44 *Engliſh* Miles from *Cracow*. 7. *Oſwieczin*, upon the *Weiſſel*, the Capital of the Dutchy of the ſame Name, built of Timber, among Marſhes, with a Wooden Caſtle, plaiſter'd only with Clay: It is 28 *Engliſh* Miles from *Cracow*, and 12 from the Borders of *Sileſia*, to which it formerly belong'd; but ſince 1454, it has been poſſeſs'd by the *Poles*. 8. *Czentochova*, famous for good Beer, tranſported to moſt Places of *Poland*, and the neighbouring Countries of *Germany*. Without this Place ſtands a famous Monaſtery, where they have a Picture of the Virgin *Mary*, ſaid to be painted by St. *Luke*, to which Pilgrims come from all Places and make their Offerings. It has vaſt Quantities of Gold and Silver Plate, many rich Ornaments for Altars, and Habits ſet with all Sorts of Jewels, and particularly Pearl. Not only great Families give large Gifts to this Convent, but the Commons impoveriſh themſelves to enrich it. The Monks are Maſters of a great Territory near it, and maintain a Garriſon of 300 Men, which are in a better Condition than any other Soldiers of the Republick. In a Word, this is the *Loretto* of *Poland*. 9. *Slaucovia*, in the ſame Dutchy, famous for Silver Mines. 10. N. of *Cracow* lies *Proſzovice*, built of Timber. The King has a Palace here, on the Banks of the River *Sozeniova*. 11. *Ilkuſik*, 20 *Engliſh* Miles from *Cracow* to the W. is famous for Mines of Silver and Lead. This Town is encompaſſed with a Wall of Brick. Their Bread is extraordinary good, and their Beer the beſt in *Poland*. 12. *Wielickz*, and *Bochna*, remarkable for Quarries of excellent Rock-Salt. Theſe two Mines were diſcover'd in 1252. This is the only Province in *Poland* that has Metals and Minerals; and, beſides thoſe already mention'd, has Marble, Salt-Petre, Vitriol, Braſs, and Gold.

The Philoſophical Tranſactions of the *Engliſh* Royal Society, *N.* 61. *P.* 1099. gave this Account of the Salt-Gemme Mines of *Wilizka*: The Mines are below the Town, out of which they dig and cut three Sorts of Salt; one common, coarſe, and black; another ſomewhat finer and whiter; the third very white and clear, like Cryſtal. The coarſe and black is cut out in great Pieces, 3 *Poliſh* Ells long, and one thick, which coſt from 50 to 70 *Poliſh* Florins; but the Inhabitants of *Cracow* have them at 8 Florins apiece. They lay the greateſt Pieces before their Doors, that their Cattle may lick them. They uſe Mills and other Engines for grinding it. The Mine belongs to the King, and is one of the beſt Branches of his Revenue. A thouſand Men are conſtantly employ'd in theſe Mines. The Horſes that work below Ground grow blind by the Sharpneſs of the Salt. The Salt-work has beneath it ſeveral Salt Springs, whence the Salt Water is convey'd by Chanels to the Places where it is boil'd to Salt.

The Mineral Salt-work at *Bochna* is not ſo well order'd as the former.

The Senators of this Province are, the Biſhop, Caſtellan, and Palatine of *Cracow*; the Caſtellans of *Woumitz*, *Oſwieczin*, *Sandez*, and *Biecz*. The King names the Mayor of *Cracow*, who was a *Scots-man* when Dr. *Connor* was there.

The Arms are, in a *Field Gules*, an *Eagle* expanded *Argent*, Crown'd *Or*, with a *Baton* croſs its Wings of the Second.

In this Palatinate there is a particular Sort of *Manna*, which they gather in *May* and *June*, and ſweep it off the Graſs, with

Sieves, together with the Dew. They eat this *Manna*, and make ſeveral Diſhes of it for their Table.

The Palatinate of SENDOMIR.

IT has *Red Ruſſia*, and the Palatinate of *Lublin*, on the E. *Mazovia* and *Great Poland* on the N. the Palatinate of *Cracow* on the W. and *Hungary* on the S. It has its Name from *Sendomir*, the chief Town, upon the Bank of the *Weiſſel*, where that River receives the *San*, and has a ſtrong Caſtle. This City was ſack'd by the *Tartars* in 1240, taken by the *Swedes* in 1655, and retaken the following Year. 'Tis 112 *Engliſh* Miles N.E. from *Cracow*, and 128 S. from *Warſaw*. The Fortifications and Caſtle were built by *Caſimir the Great*, who died of a Surfeit, by eating too liberally of the Fruits of this Country, which are reckon'd the faireſt and beſt in *Poland*. The Aſſizes are kept here by the Magiſtrates of the Palatinate. Other Towns are, 1. *Kunow*, famous for its Marble. 2. *Schydlowietz*, which has Store of Iron and Steel in its Neighbourhood. It formerly belong'd to the Dukes of *Radzivil*, and is encompaſſed with an old Wall. The Caſtle is pretty well fortified. 3. *Optatow*, 16 *Engliſh* Miles from *Sendomir*, in a pleaſant Country, and waſh'd by the River *Pilcza*. 4. *Viaſden*, a new built Town, which has a good Trade, and is well fortified. 5. *Radom*, Capital of that Diſtrict, built in a Plain, ſurrounded with ſtrong Walls, and other Fortifications. 6. *Jedlink*, famous for a School, and a well built Church. 7. *Solecia*, on the *Weiſſel*, has a noted Caſtle, which was repair'd and beautify'd by its ancient Duke *Chriſtopher Zboravius*. 8. *Ilza*, a neat Town, built with Brick, belonging to the Biſhop of *Cracow*. It is remarkable for Earthen Ware, with which it furniſhes all *Poland*. The Caſtle is an old Building; but the Biſhop's Palace is new, and very ſtately. 9. *Rozentin*, which has great Plenty of Iron: It belongs alſo to the Biſhop of *Cracow*, who has a Houſe and pleaſant Garden here. 'Tis beautiful, and well fortified, and lies near the Bottom of *Mons Calvus*, which is by much the higheſt in *Poland*. 10. W. from this Town lies *Kielcz*, famous for Mines of Copper, and *Lapis Lazuli*. The Biſhop of *Cracow* has a fair Collegiate Church here. 11. *Chencin*, 12 *Engliſh* Miles from *Kielcz*: It abounds with Lead, Marble, and Silver, belongs to the King, and has a Caſtle on a Rock. Juſtice is adminiſtred here to the Diſtrict. 12. *Malagoſch*, noted for being a Caſtellany, and is built of Wood. 13 *Stenzicz*, Capital of the Diſtrict of that Name. It has a ſtately Monaſtery of *Benedictine* Monks. 14 *Slupicz*, ſituate alſo at the Foot of *Mons Calvus*; at the Top of which is the Abbey of the *Holy Croſs*. 15. *Racovia*, formerly a Neſt for *Socinians* and *Photinians*, and the Center of their Religion. It was pretty populous, and had a conſiderable Academy to inſtruct Youth, which was prohibited, on Account of their Errors, by a publick Edict. 16. *Corzin*, Capital of the Diſtrict of the ſame Name, a new Town, built with Timber. It has a Caſtle, lies near the River *Wiſlock*, and is ſurrounded with Marſhes. 17. *Wiſticz*, on the River *Nida*, built of Wood, and ſituated on a Rock: The Cathedral is built of ſquare Stone, with beautiful Cloyſters for the Canons. The adjacent Country abounds with all Sorts of Serpents and Inſects; but the ignorant Inhabitants ſay, that being interdicted by the See of *Rome*, they have no Power to do any Harm. When they are tranſported elſewhere, they immediately die. 18 *Pilzno*, a Timber Town, on the River *Wiſtock*. 19 *Bolowice*, alſo built of Timber, among the Hills, and is a Caſtellany. 30. *Zwichoſt*, alſo of Wood, lies on the *Weiſſel*, and has a Caſtle, with a double Wall, on the other Side of the River. 'Tis likewiſe a Caſtellany. 21. *Zaliſin*, famous for a conſiderable Market. 22. *Lezaisk*, has a noted Monaſtery, where they pretend ſeveral Relicks are miraculouſly kept, which draw thither great Crowds of People from all Parts.

The Senators are, the Caſtellan and Palatine of *Sendomir*, and the Caſtellans of *Wiſlicz*, *Radom*, *Zarnow*, *Sczcbow*, *Polowice*, *Malogoſch*, and *Zwichoſt*.

The Arms are, *Party per Pale Argent* and *Azure*; in the firſt 3 *Bars Gules*, and in the ſecond 3 *Stars Sables*, two and one.

The

Digitized by Google

The Palatinate of LUBLIN.

THis Palatinate was taken out of that of *Sendomir* by *Caſimir Jagellonides*, becauſe too big for one Palatinate. It has adjoining to it the Territory of *Lucovia*, which contains near 2000 Gentlemens Houſes. This Palatinate, and the other two, is the Dioceſe of *Cracow*, which comprehends 1018 Churches, 13 of which are Collegiate. It has *Red Ruſſia* and *Sendomir* on the S. E. and *Maſovia* on the N. It takes Name from the chief City, *Lublin*, 20 *Engliſh* Miles from the Frontiers of *Red Ruſſia*, 96 S. from *Warſaw*, 48 W. from *Chelm*, 154 N. E. from *Cracow*, 56 N. from *Sendomir*, in Long. 42. and Lat 51 ½. It is a well-built City, and pleaſant, but not large. The Moraſſes about it are a greater Fortification than its Walls. *Caſimir the Great* wall'd it, and the *Ruſſians* built the adjoining Caſtle. The great Church was built by *Leſcus the Black*, upon a Conqueſt obtain'd over the *Lithuanians* near this Place: He dedicated it to St. *Michael*, who they ſay appear'd before the Caſtle. St. *Bridget*'s Monaſtery was founded by *Uladiſlaus Jagello*. Two Courts of Judicature are kept in *Lublin*, from which there's no Appeal, except to the Diet of *Poland*. It lies on the River *Ryſtrice*, and is a Place of great Trade, and frequented by *Turkiſh*, *Armenian*, *Muſcovite* and *German* Merchants, eſpecially at the four Yearly Fairs, of a Month's continuance each. The *Jews* poſſeſs the Suburbs. Other Towns of Note are, 1. *Caſimir*, a very fair Wooden City, with a beautiful Palace, built by *Henry Erleſius*, Archbiſhop of *Gneſna*, and adorn'd with delightful Gardens. 2. *Urzendow*, a large Town, built of Timber, on a Lake, 28 *Engliſh* Miles from *Lublin*. 3. *Lulow*, Capital of the Territory of *Leucovia*, defended partly by Bogs, and partly by Paliſadoes, 56 *Engliſh* Miles from *Lublin*. It has a conſiderable Juriſdiction. 4. *Parkow*, alſo built of Wood, near a very large Lake, 36 Miles from *Lublin*.

The Senators are, the Palatine and Caſtellan of *Lublin*.

The Arms are, in a *Field-Gules*, a *Stag Paſſant Argent*, Collar'd *Or*.

RED RUSSIA.

OTherwiſe called *Roxalania*, from the ancient Inhabitants. The Southerly Boundaries are a Part of *Hungary*, *Tranſilvania*, *Moldavia*, and *Beſſarabia*; on the N. *Poleſia*; on the W. *Little Poland*; and on the E. the Deſarts of *Little Tartary*. It abounds in Corn, Beaſts of all kinds, Fiſh, and Honey. There are Trees found in the Banks of the River *San* very hard, and black as Ebony. The Country People ſay, they have lain there ſince the Deluge; but it is probable they have been waſh'd down by the Courſe of the River many Years ago. The Capital is *Leopol*, or *Lemberg* according to the *Germans*; but the *Poles* call it *Lnow*, or *Lunow*. 'Twas called *Leopolis*, becauſe founded by Prince *Leo* about 1289. It was made an Archbiſhoprick in 1414. It is built among Hills, on the River *Peltew*, and is a Place of Strength, with two Caſtles, one within, and the other without the Walls, on a high Mountain. It lies in Lat. 49 ½. Long. 42 ½. 60 Miles N. from the *Carpathian* Mountains, 60 N. E. from *Premiſlaw*, 160 E. from *Cracow*, 200 S. E. from *Warſaw*, and 120 N. W. from *Camimiec*. It was beſieged in vain in 1648 by *Chmielnicz*, the General of the *Coſſacks*, with an Army of 120000 Men. In 1672, the *Turks* took it, but quitted it again by Treaty. It has loſt much of its ancient Splendour, being impoveriſh'd, as the whole Province is, by the Civil Wars, and the Incurſions of the *Turks* and *Tartars*. Many *Turkiſh*, *Moldavian*, *Armenian*, and *Greek* Merchants, reſide here, and drive a conſiderable Trade. This City gives great Encouragement to learned Men, who are very civilly entertain'd by their Academy, which is ſupply'd with Profeſſors from that of *Cracow*. The River *Roxalania* is near it, where are taken Barbels of a great Size. It has likewiſe a vaſt Number of Fiſh-Ponds, full of ſeveral Sorts of fat Fiſh, which are ſalted, and tranſported all over *Poland*. The Churches are generally fair, and well built, and abound with coſtly Ornaments. 2. *Godick*, a Paliſado'd City, with a Caſtle, built in a Plain, and ſurrounded with Bogs: It lies

Digitized by Google

about 10 *Engliſh* Miles from *Leopol*. 3. *Javerifvia*, famous for a natural Bath in a neighbouring Village, which diſperſes ſeveral ſtubborn Diſtempers, as *Sixtus Leo*, a Phyſician of great Experience, teſtifies in his Treatiſe concerning it. 4. *Zolkiew*, a Town defended by a Caſtle, has many pleaſant Gardens, and a Church built with various Sorts of Marble. This City was the Seat of *John Sobieski*. The Arms of this Diſtrict are, in a *Field-Azure*, a *Lion-Paſſant*, crown'd Or, by a *Rock-Sables*.

Other Towns are, 1. *Premiſlaw*, upon the River *San*, a Biſhop's See, with a Caſtle, on a Hill. It is a pleaſant and populous City, and lies in Lat. 49 ½. and Long. 41. 48 *Engliſh* Miles N. from the Borders of *Hungary*, 40 Miles E. from the Frontiers of the *Leſſer Poland*, and 64 S. E. from *Sendomir*. They have one Biſhop of the *Ruſſian* Church. The Jeſuits have a College here. The Citizens are addicted to Trade. Near this City the King has a Park, full of all kinds of Wild Beaſts; and the Country has many Caſtles for fear of the *Tartars*. 2. *Chelm*, an Epiſcopal See, 40 *Engliſh* Miles E. from *Lublin*, 96 N. from *Premiſlaw*, and 48 N. from *Beltz*. It has been oft laid waſt of late by the *Tartars* and *Turks*. It is of no great Compaſs, has a Caſtle of Wood, and is the Capital City of a Territory of the ſame Name, which has *Volhinia* to the E. *Little Poland* to the W. *Lithuania* to the N. and *Bielza* to the S. 3. *Kraſneſtaw*, on the River *Wieprz*, 20 *Engliſh* Miles S. W. from *Chelm*, and 20 S. E. from *Lublin*. It is a ſtrong, tho' ſmall Town. 4. *Sambor*, a Paliſado'd City, with a Caſtle, upon the River *Tyra*, near the Borders of *Hungary*. 5. *Jaroſlaw*, famous for a Fair on *Lady day*, which is the moſt celebrated in *Poland*. Goods are brought hither from *Perſia*, *Conſtantinople*, *Venice*, *Muſcovy*, and *Amſterdam*. They ſay, there is uſually brought hither above 400000 Black Cattle, and 200000 Horſes. The Jeſuits have a College here, and without there is a ſtately Nunnery of modern Architecture. The Caſtle is ſeated on the River *San*. 6. *Lancut*, noted for ſeveral magnificent Churches, founded by *Ladiſlaus Lubomirski*, Palatine of *Cracow*. It has a Caſtle well fortified, as a Security againſt the *Tartars*. 7. *Reſovia*, which has a good Caſtle, many Monaſteries, and a Fair on the Feaſt of St. *Albert*. This Town is famous for a Linen Manufactory, manag'd by *Germans*, whoſe Anceſtors were taken Priſoners by *Caſimir the Great*, and ſettled in and about this Place.

The Arms of the Diſtrict of *Premiſlaw* are, in a *Field-Azure*, an *Eagle* expanded with two Heads, both crown'd Or.

HALICZ, is the Metropolis of a Diſtrict of that Name, which compaſs'd towards the W. with the Mountains of *Tranſilvania*; on the S. by the Beech Woods of *Tranſilvania*: Towards the E. it is divided in two Parts by the *Nieſter*, a rapid River, which has its Riſe among the *Carpathian* Mountains. The S. Diviſion of this Diſtrict is call'd *Pocuce*, or *Pocutio Halicz*, was formerly the Metropolis of the *Ruſſian* Kingdom, then divided into ſeveral Tetrarchies, each of which had its proper Duke. It is a large Town, built with Timber, and ſeparated from *Moldavia* by the River *Prut*, and on the other Side waſh'd by the *Nieſter*. The Inhabitants are Booriſh, and more inclin'd to Husbandry than Trade. Other Towns are, 1. *Coloni*, near the River *Prut*. It is much frequented on Account of its fine Salt, with which it furniſhes all the reſt of *Ruſſia* and *Lithuania*, there being none in thoſe two Provinces, except in the Diſtrict of *Premiſlaw*. All over this Country there are deep Wells, whoſe Waters are boil'd up into Salt. 2. *Martinow*, with a Caſtle, ſituated among Marſhes. 3. *Dolina*, ſeated among Hills. 4 *Podock*, on the other Side of the *Nieſter*, defended by a Caſtle, and has a fair Monaſtery, built by *Stephen Potucius*, Palatine of *Breclaw*, who is buried here. 5. *Brezana*, a populous Town, with a Caſtle, on a Hill. 6. *Buczavia*, or *Buske*, built among Marſhes, near the Spring of the River *Bog*, by which Goods are carried to *Lemberg*. 7. *Sannock*, is another Diſtrict of *Red Ruſſia*, near the Mountains of *Hungary* and *Tranſilvania*. The Town of *Sannock* lies near the River *San*, and has a Caſtle, pretty ſtrong, founded on a Rock. 8. *Croſna*, the Staple of *Hungary*, whither they bring all their Merchandize and Wines.

There-

Digitized by Google

Therefore the Marts and Fairs here are more celebrated than thoſe of their Neighbours. The Jeſuits have a College in this City. The other Cities of *Brozovia*, *Rimanovia*, *Dinovia*, and *Leske*, are Places of Strength, to prevent the Incurſions of the *Tartars*.

The Palatinate of BELCZ.

THis Palatinate lies near that of *Leopol* and *Cholm*, and contains 4 Territories: It has its Name from *Belcz*, the chief Town, 20 Miles from the River *Bog*. *Lemberg* is on the S. E. *Sendomir* on the N. W. and *Samoſcie* on the N. *Samoſcie* ſtands upon a Lake, and is erected into a Principality: It lies 56 *Engliſh* Miles E. from *Sendomir*, 60 N. from *Lemberg*, and 36 S. from *Lublin*. It was built by *John Samoſky*, Great Chancellor of *Poland*, in a pleaſant Plain, not far from the River *Vapr*. The *Coſſacks* beſieg'd it in 1651, but were oblig'd to raiſe the Siege. There is an Univerſity in this City. *Brody* belongs to this Palatinate, and lies E. from *Belcz*. 60 *Engliſh* Miles. *Olesko* lies 50 N. E. from *Lemberg*. There's another Town call'd *Grobs*. with a Caſtle, but otherwiſe of no great Note.

The Palatinate of UPPER VOLHINIA.

IT has *Red Ruſſia* on the W. *Podolia* on the S. *Ukrain* on the E. The chief Town is *Lucko*, on the River *Ster*, near a Lake, 24 *Engliſh* Miles E. from *Red Ruſſia*, and 100 N. from *Lemberg*. The City is large, and has a greater Number of *Greeks*, *Jews*, and *Proteſtants*, than *Papiſts*. The Trade is manag'd by the *Jews*. *Uladzimerz* lies on the River *Lug*, which falls into the *Bog* a little lower, and is 48 Miles W. from *Lucko*. *Crzeminiec*, is a little Town, upon a Hill, 32 Miles from *Lucko*. The *Tartars* have often viſited this Place, and done it much Miſchief. *Baranouka* is 80 *Engliſh* Miles N. E. from *Lucko*, and 44 W. from the Caſtle of *Korſec*. I lies on the River *Horin*. The *Turks* have done great Damage to this City. Other Towns are, *Oliko*, *Zaſſow*, *Oſtrog*, and *Lytozierem*.

LOWER VOLHINIA, *or the Palatinate of* KIOW.

THis Palatinate was Part of the *Ukrain*, the Country of the *Coſſacks*, which we have deſcrib'd in the former Account of the *Coſſacks*. The *Poles* have only now ſome ſmall Towns here, as *Bialozerkiew*, 64 *Engliſh* Miles S. W. from *Kiow*, and 140 N. from *Braclaw*; *Zarkaſſi*, and *Czernobel* upon the River *Uſz*, 72 *Engliſh* Miles W. from *Czernikow*, and 8 from the *Nieper* and *Kudac*.

The Province of *Podolia* is divided into *High* and *Low*.

HIGH PODOLIA,

HAS *Red Ruſſia* on the W. *Upper Volhinia* on the N. *Lower Podolia* on the S. E. and the *Nieſter* on the S. It is a fruitful Country, tho' mountainous, and has Plenty of Honey. The Vallies are well water'd. It has been the Seat of the *Tartarian*, *Coſſackian*, and *Turkiſh* Wars, for many Years, and expos'd to their Barbarities. The chief City is *Kaminiec*, upon the River *Smotrick*, which a little lower runs into the *Nieſter*. The City lies 120 *Engliſh* Miles N. E. from *Lemberg*, and is a Town of the greateſt Strength of any in *Poland*, defended by high Rocks, ſo that the Tops of the Houſes cannot be ſeen. It has held out many Attacks of *Tartars*, *Turks* and *Walachians*, and was much damaged by Fire in 1669. It has two Biſhops, one a *Papiſt*, the other an *Armenian*. It was taken by the *Turks* in 1672, and all the adjacent Country was ſubject to them, till the Peace of *Carlowitz* in 1699. by which this City, all *Podolia*, and the *Ukrain*, were reſtor'd to the *Poles*, who frequently endeavour'd to retake it, but in vain. It lies 60 *Engliſh* Miles S. W. from *Bar*. 280 S. W. from *Kiow*. 120 S. E. from *Lemberg*. 320 S. E. from *Warſaw*, and 680 N. from *Conſtantinople*. The other Cities here are, 1. *Trembowla*; which lies under a great Mountain, with a ſtrong Caſtle upon it. 2. *Latyczow*; which is well fortified, has

Digitized by Google

has a ſtrong Caſtle, and warlike Inhabitants. 3. *Bar*, a ſtrong Town, on the River *Kiow*, and is ſurrounded with Lakes. It lies 72 *Engliſh* Miles N. E. from *Kaminiec*, and 72 N. W. from *Broclaw*. The Caſtle is built upon a Rock. This City was founded by *Bonna Sforſa*, the Duke of *Milan*'s Daughter, Wife to King *Sigiſmund*. 4. *Huſiatnow*, well fortified. 5. *Czortikow*, with a ſtrong Caſtle, and well fortified. 6. *Chmielnick*, on the River *Bog*, defended only with Paliſadoes, and a Wooden Caſtle. 7. *Miedzibioſe*, with a large Wooden Caſtle. 'Tis ſituated among Marſhes, and has no Avenue but over Bridges. This Place was formerly much infeſted by *Tartars*. The Senators are, the Biſhop, Palatine, and Caſtellan of *Kaminiec* and *Podolia*. The Arms are, in a *Field Azure*, the *Sun* in its full Glory. Moſt of the Cities of *Podolia* are fortified, to protect them from the Inroads of the *Tartars*. This Country is ſo fertile, that it may vie with *Italy* or *Hungary*.

LOW PODOLIA, *or the Palatinate of* BROCLAW.

THis Palatinate has the ancient *Tyras* or *Nieſter* on the S W and *Lower Volhinia* on the E *Upper Podolia* on the N. and *Budziack Tartary* on the S. and S. E. The chief Town is *Broclaw*, on the River *Bog*, in Lat. 48 ½. and Long 47. In 1672, it was taken and plunder'd by the *Turks*. *Winniczа* is a fortified Town, upon the *Bog*, 48 *Engliſh* Miles E. from *Bor*, and 40 N. from *Broclaw*. In 1560, it was taken by the *Coſſacks*. This City is famous for a Meeting of the Gentry, and a Court of Juſtice. The Jeſuits have a College here. This City has been very much infeſted by the *Tartars*. The Senators are, the Palatine and Caſtellan of *Broclaw*. The greateſt Part of *Podolia* was reſtor'd by the *Turks* to the *Poles*, Sept. 22. 1699. by the Peace of *Carlowitz*.

Of the RIVERS *of* Poland.

THE chief Rivers in *Poland* are, 1. The *Weiſſel*. *Ptolomy* makes it a River of *Germany*, and calls it *Viadus* and *Suevus*. *Pliny* calls it *Viſtillus*; and *Mela*, *Viſula*. 'Twas the ancient Boundary of *Germany* and *Sarmatia*, according to *Agathamerus*. The *Poles* and *Sclavonians* name it *Wiſla*; the *Germans*, *Der Weiſſel*. It has its Source in the *Higher Sileſia*, from the *Carpathian* Mountains in the Borders of *Hungary*, now call'd *Krapac*, about Lat. 49 ¾. and Long. 41. *Mol* makes it Long. 38. It takes it's Courſe N. E. runs into *Poland*, and waters *Oſwiecin*, (near which the *Sola* falls into it) *Zator*, and *Cracow*, where it begins to be navigable; then the River *Nida*, whoſe Courſe is S. E the *Daniac*, near to *Polaniec*, and the *Wiſlick*, which runs N. E. fall into it. Below *Sendomir*, it is augmented by the *San*, which has alſo its Source in the Mountains of *Krapack*, and runs N. After this the *Weiſſil* runs N. The River *Viepriz*, which riſes in the Palatinate of *Belza*, and runs thro' that of *Lublin*, falls into it near the W. Borders of that Palatinate. Next, the *Pilcza*, which riſes in the Palatinate of *Cracow*, and runs by the N. Borders of *Sendomir*, falls into it 15 *Engliſh* Miles above *Czerſko*. After this, the *Weiſſil* runs thro' the Province of *Maſovia*, and waters *Czerſko* and *Worſaw*: Then it runs N.W thro' the Palatinate of *Plockſko*, and runs by *Plockſko*, *Dobrzin*, and *Wladiſlaw*. Next it goes thro' *Poliſh Pruſſia*: Then its Courſe is N. E. and waters *Thorn*, *Culm*, *Graudentz*, and *Newenburgh*. Twenty *Engliſh* Miles below that Town, it divides it ſelf into two Streams; the Eaſterly one, call'd *Nogatz*, runs by *Marienburgh* and *Elbing*, and falls into the Bay of *Friſch Haff*, or the *Cold Bay*, in Lat. 54 ½. and Long. 42 2. according to *Jaillot*'s Map; but Long. 38. by *Mol*'s Map. The Weſterly Stream waters *Dirſaw*; then, at the Caſtle of *Heuſt*, it divides again into two: That to the E. falls alſo into the *Friſch Haff*: The Weſterly Branch waters *Dantzick*, and falls into the *Baltick*, after a Courſe of more than 400 *Engliſh* Miles, in Lat. 54 ¾. and in Long. 37. near the Fortreſs of *Munda*, or *Weiſſelmund*, and ſurrounds the greateſt Part of the Iſland *Neringa*.

The *Romans* had no certain Knowledge of this, or of other Rivers beyond the *Elbe*.

The ſecond River is *Warta*, which riſes in the Palatinate of *Cracow*, in Lat. 52 ½. near the City of *Cromlow*. It runs N. thro' the

Digitized by Google

the Palatinate of *Soradia*, and waters *Sirad*, *Worta*, and *Kamia*; then it runs W. croſſes the Palatinate of *Kaliſch*, and waters *Landick*, *Pfydry*, and *Srim*: Next it runs thro' the Palatinate of *Poſna*, takes its Courſe N. and waters *Poſnan*. The *Noteez*, which riſes in the Palatinate of *Cujavia*, and runs through that of *Poſna*, falls into this River at *Zantoſk*. The *Obra* has its Spring in the Palatinate of *Poſna*, runs N W. and falls into the *Worta*, three *Engliſh* Miles S of the Mouth of the *Noteez*. Afterwards it runs through ſome Part of the Marquiſate of *Brandenburgh*, and waters *Landſperg* and *Kuſtrin*; not far from whence it falls into the *Oder*.

3. *Tyras*. *Pliny* calls it *Tyra*; *Mela*, *Tyras*; *Ptolemy* and *Scimmus Chius* call it *Turetz*. This laſt gives a Deſcription of it, and ſays, it was a deep navigable River, and had Plenty of Fiſh. *Ovid* ſpeaks of it, *Lib.* 4. *de Ponto*, *Epiſt.* 10. *Verſ* 50.

—— *Nullo tardior amne Tyras.*

It riſes in *Black Ruſſia*, in the Palatinate of *Lemberg*, from the Lake of *Leopol*, 16 Miles S. from *Lemberg*, about Lat. 49 3. and Long. 46 ½. according to ſome Maps; but *Moll* makes it Long. 48. It runs S. E. thro' the Province of *Poccuce*, and waters *Halicz*: Then it runs through *High Podolia*, or the Palatinate of *Caminiec*, and waters *Crudeck*, *Dzwingrod*, *Zwaniecz*, *Kylaigrod*, and *Ladawa*: Then it runs through *Lower Podolia*, and waters *Lampol*, *Kaminicze*, *Ruzkow*, and *Tekin*, or *Bender*. Then it takes its Courſe through the *Tartars* of *Ozzakow*, and falls into the *Black Sea* near *Buslogrod*, in Lat. 47 ¾. and Long 56 ⅔. according to *Jaillot*'s Map. Its Mouth lies 60 Miles N. from the Mouth of the *Danube*; whereas *Strabo* makes it but 300 Furlongs.

4. The *Bug*, which has its Spring in *Red Ruſſia*, near the Town of *Oleſko*, in Lat. 49 ⅔. and Long. 48. but according to *Moll*, in Long. 44. It runs N. through the Palatinate of *Belcz*, and waters *Krylow*: Then it runs through the Palatinate of *Chelm*, and waters *Dubna*, and other ſmall Towns; and taking its Courſe N. W. it divides the Palatinate of *Belzk*, where it waters *Mielneck* and *Grodeck*: Then it runs through the Palatinate of *Czerſko*, where the *Narew* falls into it; whoſe Courſe is S. W. and is noted for this, That no venomous Creature will live in its Streams; ſo that Snakes, ſticking to the Sides of the Boats that come out of the *Bug*, as ſoon as they enter this River, give a Hiſs, and ſwim back to the *Bug*; which falls into the *Weiſſel* near *Wiſchegorod*, in Lat. 52 ½. and Long. 43. but in *Moll*'s Map in Long. 39.

5. The *Bog*. *Herodotus* and *Pliny* make mention of it, and call it a River of *Sarmatia Europea*. Its Spring is in the Borders of *Podolia*, (in Lat. 49 ¾. Long. 50. *Moll* makes it lie in Long. 45.) which it ſeparates from *Volhinia*. It waters *Chmielnick*, *Winnitza*, and *Braclow*; runs through the Palatinate of that Name, and at laſt falls into the *Nieper* near *Ozzakow*; and a little lower, both of them fall into the *Euxine* Sea, in Long. 57 ½. after it has run a Courſe of more than 400 *Engliſh* Miles from W. to S. E.

6. The *Niemen*, anciently call'd *Chronus* by *Ptolomy*, who ſays it is a River of the *Venedi*, in *Sarmatia Europea*. *Ammianus Marcellinus* makes mention of it. The *Germans* call it *Memel*. It riſes in the Palatinate of *Minſki*, near the Borders of that of *Novogrodeck*, and is the Boundary of thoſe two Palatinates. Its Spring is in Lat. 53 ⅔. and Long 51 ⅔. It runs N. W. and waters *Bielcz*, where it enters the Palatinate of *Troki* in *Lithuania*, and there begins to run W. till it reach *Grodno*, which it waters: Then it takes the Northerly Courſe, till it comes to *Kouno*, where it enters *Samogitia*: Then it runs W. and waters *Goerſeburg*, on the Borders of *Ducal Pruſſia*, where it is call'd *Ruſs*. Next it waters *Tilſe*, and afterwards is divided into two Branches, which fall into the Lake call'd *Kuriſch-Haff*, and both they and the Lake fall into the *Baltick*, near *Memel*, in Lat. 55 ½. Long. 44 ¾ but in Long. 40. by *Moll*'s Map. Some think the *Mare Cronium* has its Name from the ancient Name of this River.

7. *Duina*. The *Poles* call it *Duna*. It has its Spring in *Novogrod*, a Province of *Muſcovy*, near the Lake *Wolga*, and the Fountains of the River *Wolga*. It runs S W. and croſſes the Palatinate of *Witepſk*, waters the City of *Witepſk*, turns N. W. and enters

ters the Palatinate of *Poloczk*, which it divides, and waters the City of *Poloczk*. Afterwards the River *Dryssa*, which runs S W. and the *Dzicona*, which runs E. fall into it. Then it goes through *Livonia*, which it ſeparates from *Semigallia*, waters *Duneburg*; and, ſtill keeping the ſame Courſe, runs by *Riga*; below which it falls into the Bay or Gulph of *Riga*, the ancient *Sinus Clilipenus*, in Lat. 57. and Long. 47 ½. but according to *Moll*, in Long 43. after a Courſe of 130 Leagues. It was anciently call'd *Rubo*, as ſome Moderns think.

The LAKES.

GReat *Poland*, *Cujavia*, and the Territory of *Lublin*, have ſeveral great and remarkable Lakes, abounding with freſh Fiſh of all Sorts. The chief of them is *Gopło*, in the Palatinate of *Brzeſty*, five Miles in Length, and half a Mile in Breadth. It lies 24 *Engliſh* Miles W. from *Brzeſty*, and 32 N. from *Lanſchet*.

2. *Bralet*, or the *White Lake*, ſo call'd by an *Antiphraſis*, becauſe, in *April* and *May*, it dies the Skins of thoſe that waſh in it of a ſwarthy Colour.

Puffendorf ſays, That *Poland* is very populous, and full of Towns and Villages. Some have computed, that the King and the Nobles have in their Poſſeſſion Ninety thouſand Cities and Villages: The Biſhops and Canons, One hundred thouſand five hundred and fifty: The reſt of the Clergy, Monks and Nuns, Sixty thouſand nine hundred and fifty: Which in all amount to Two hundred fifty one thouſand and five hundred Towns and Villages: But he ſays, he will not be anſwerable for the Exactneſs of this Account.

CHAP.

Digitized by Google

CHAP. XIV.

PRUSSIA in General.

PRUSSIA in general has on the N. the *Baltick* Sea for near 200 *English* Miles; on the N. E. the River *Memel*, which, at its Mouth, is called *Ruſs* and *Chronon* by the Ancients. On the S. lie *Podlachia* and *Lithuania*; and on the W *Great Poland*, *Maſovia*, *Coſſubia*, and *Pomerellia*. *Cluverius* ſays, the Extent of it, from *Thorn* upon the *Weſſel*, to the Mouth of the *Ruſs*, is 45 *German* Leagues, or 180 *Engliſh* Miles: The Breadth, from *Raigrodt* in *Polachia*, to the Mouth of the *Weiſſel*, as many. Its Long. according to Mr. *Moll*'s Map, is from *Thorn* in 38, to the *Ruſs* or *Memell* in 41 Deg. and its Lat. from *Raigrodt* in 53 ½. to the Mouth of the *Ruſs* in 55 ½.

Whence *Pruſſia*, *Boruſſia* or *Preuſſen*, has its Name, is not certain. *Cluverius*, in his *Germ. Antiq.* thinks *Helmoldus* (who flouriſh'd in the 12th Century) to be the firſt who makes mention of *Pruſſia*; but *Dithmarus*, who liv'd in the 11th Century, and the Anonymous Author of the Life of St. *Adelbert*, in the End of the 10th, ſpeak of it. *Marianus Scotus* ſays, the Name came from the City *Aprutis*, where *Adelbert* ſuffer'd Martyrdom in 995. But this Opinion is rejected, becauſe none elſe make mention of any ſuch City. The moſt probable Opinion is, That they derive their Name from the *Borruſſi*, who dwelt, as *Ptolomy* ſays, in *Ruſſia*, near the *Riphæan* Mountains, and remov'd from thoſe cold Places to *Pruſſia*. The Affinity of the Name and Language, (for the ancient *Pruſſian* is only a Dialect of the *Ruſſian*) makes ſome People to embrace this Conjecture. Others ſay, the *Venedi*, a Colony of the *Slavonians*, planted this Country, and quote *Polemul* for it, who ſays, That the *Venedi*, upon the *Viſtula* or *Weiſſel*, had the *Phynni* and *Gythones* on the S. which is favoured by *Cluverius*'s Obſervation, That ſeveral Places in *Liefland* ſtill retain the Name of *Wenden*, *Windaw*, *Uſchewinde*, &c. All Geographers, ancient and modern, place the *Eleſtrides Inſulæ* over againſt the Mouth of the *Weiſſel*, from whence Amber was carried all over *Greece* and *Italy*. This occaſion'd ſome Latin Poets, who read that Amber came from the *Venedi*, to confound them with the *Venetians*. *Hartknock* alledges, from the idolatrous Worſhip us'd anciently in *Pruſſia*, That the *Goths* were ſometimes Maſters of that Country.

The HISTORY *of* Pruſſia.

THE Origine and earlieſt Times of this People, as of moſt others, are very obſcure. Hiſtory tells us, they were at firſt a free and independent State, and had many Wars with their Neighbours; then they united with the *Slavi*. After 997, they were harraſs'd with Invaſions by the *Poles*, till at laſt *Boleſlaus Chrobry* conquer'd and impoſed a Tribute upon 'em, becauſe, as ſome ſay, they murther'd St. *Adelbert* at *Fiſchauſen*. This perfidious Pagan Nation, tho' frequently worſted by their Chriſtian Neighbours, did ſtill diſturb the Peace of all Kingdoms within their reach, which induc'd *Conrade*, the Duke of *Maſovia*, to invite the Knights of the *Croſs*, or of the *Teutonick* Order, to aſſiſt in reducing them: But the Preſent State of *Europe*, printed in *Germany*, gives this Account of it, *viz.* That the uneaſie *Pruſſians* endeavour'd often to free themſelves from the *Poliſh* Slavery; and in 1300, in order to moderate the *Poliſh* Rigour, *Conrade* Duke of *Maſovia* invited *Herman van Saltza*, Great Maſter of the *Teutonick* Order, and his Knights, to his Aſſiſtance, on Condition. That if, by their ſucceſsful Arms, they ſhould wreſt *Pruſſia* and

Digitized by Google

and *Culm* from the *Poles*, half the former ſhould remain to them, as a Reward of their Valour, and the other half, with the latter, ſhould continue to the *Pruſſians* themſelves. Theſe Terms were accepted, but not perform'd by the Knights; for in 53 Years Time, they extirpated the old *Pruſſians*, and became abſolute Maſters of the Country, as we ſhall hear more at large anon. This Order was inſtituted in 1191, by *Henry*, Patriarch of *Jeruſalem*, and other Chriſtian Princes, in Favour of the *German* Nation, upon this Occaſion. When the Emperor *Frederick* took the Croſs to recover *Jeruſalem*, and the *Holy Land*, whereof *Saladin*, Sultan of *Egypt*, had made himſelf Maſter in 1187, a great many *German* Noblemen and Gentlemen follow'd him as Voluntiers, who ſignaliz'd themſelves upon all Occaſions; and wanting a Leader after the Emperor's Death, when the Chriſtians beſieg'd *Acre*, they choſe *Frederick* Duke of *Suabia*, ſecond Son of the Emperor, and *Henry* Duke of *Brabant*, for Captain-Generals of their Nation, under whom they diſtinguiſh'd themſelves with ſo much Bravery at the taking of *Acre*, and other Places of that Country, that *Henry* King of *Jeruſalem* propos'd the inſtituting of an Order in their Favour, and, with the Patriarch and other Princes, form'd the Statutes according to the Model of the Knights of St. *John* of *Jeruſalem*, and excerpted what they thought moſt agreeable to an Order both Military and Hoſpitable; ſo that the Prieſts of this Order might celebrate Maſs arm'd Cap-a-pee. The Statutes, among other Things, bore, That the Knights ſhould be of a Noble Race; That they ſhould vow the Defence of the Chriſtian Religion, and the *Holy Land*; and finally, That they ſhou'd call themſelves, *Knights of our Lady of Mount Sion*. The Emperor *Henry* VI. and Pope *Celeſtin* III. approv'd the Inſtitution, order'd that they ſhould be clad in White, and wear a Black Croſs, like that of St. *John* of *Jeruſalem*, in their Habits, Standards and Arms, and live according to St. *Auſtin's* Rule. Hereupon the King of *Jeruſalem*, with *Frederick* Duke of *Suabia*, created the firſt Knights, to the Number of 40, making *Walpot* their Great Maſter. All Chriſtian Princes ſhew'd their Affection to this Order by their Gifts, which began to be conſiderable under their fourth Great Maſter, *Herman* of *Saltza*, in whoſe Time theſe Knights reſcu'd *John*, Son of *Henry* King of *Jeruſalem*, in a Battle which the Chriſtians loſt againſt *Conradin* King of *Syria*; in Acknowledgment of which good Service, the ſame *John* honour'd them with the proper Arms of the Kingdom of *Jeruſalem*. This Order conſiſted of 12 Provinces, *viz.* that of *Alſace* and *Burgundy*, *Auſtria*, *Coblentz* and *Eſch*, ſtill call'd Provinces of the Juriſdiction of *Pruſſia*; the Provinces of *Franconia*, *Heſſe*, *Weſtphalia*, *Lorrain*, *Thuringia*, *Saxony* and *Utrecht*, which are of the Juriſdiction of *Germany*; but now the *Hollanders* are Maſters of all that belong'd to them in the Province of *Utrecht*: Each Province had its Commanderies, and the ancienteſt of the Commanders was called the *Provincial*; but all are under the Great Maſter, as their Chief. The 12 Provincial Commanders aſſembled together to chuſe a Great Maſter or Coadjutor. The Great Maſter keeps his ordinary Reſidence at *Mariendal* in *Franconia*, ſince the Order was forc'd out of *Pruſſia*, and is worth about 20000 Crowns *per Annum*. The moſt Part of the Commanderies are poſſeſs'd by *German* Lords, or Princes younger Sons. To return to the Hiſtory of *Pruſſia*; The Duke of *Maſovia* in *Poland* gave theſe Knights a Grant of what Lands they cou'd conquer from the Pagans in *Pruſſia*, which the Pope and Emperor confirmed. They engag'd them in ſeveral Encounters, defeated them intirely, and in leſs than 60 Years drove the Pagans out of *Pruſſia*, and made themſelves Maſters of *Pomerelia*, *Samogitia*, *Livonia*, and *Curland*; and having built ſeveral Towns, Churches and Caſtles, and planted ſeveral *German* Colonies, they enter'd *Ruſſia*, where they eſtabliſh'd the Chriſtian Religion. Whilſt they were victorious here in *Europe*, in 1291 the Town of *Acre* was taken by the Sultan of *Egypt*, and the Knights were oblig'd to return to *Germany*. About 1400, their Affairs were very proſperous: They then made a conſiderable Figure in *Europe*; but at laſt, being ſlush'd with their frequent Victories, and a long Succeſſion of good Fortune, they attempted to conquer *Lithuania*, and were very troubleſome to all the neighbouring States, till in 1410, they were intirely routed by *Boleſlaus* King of

Digitized by Google

of *Poland*, at the River *Debrantz*, on the Borders of *Maſovia*. Upon this they loſt a great Part of *Pruſſia*, and would have loſt all their Conqueſts, if their Subjects had not been true to their Intereſt. After this they fell into Civil Wars, and, by their great Exactions and Severities, they alienated the Hearts of their Subjects. Moreover, ſome of their Commanders having Deſigns upon the Liberties of the People, built Citadels and Caſtles in Cities, to bridle the Citizens. They invited alſo ſome of the Senators and chief Citizens of *Dantzick* into the Caſtles there, on Pretence of Kindneſs and Friendſhip; but when they came into the Caſtle, they murther'd them. After this they ſtuck at no Villany, but debauch'd the Wives and Daughters of honourable Citizens, and us'd their Subjects as Slaves. The Nobility and Citizens, exaſperated with ſuch Tyrannical Government, aſſembled at *Culm*, and enter'd into a League, obliging themſelves to defend their common Liberty and Privileges, and agreed to give in a Memorial to the Provincial Meeting of the Eſtates, of their Sufferings from the Maſter of the Order and the Commanders. The Emperor *Frederick* III. declar'd what they had done was a rebellious Confederacy, and by his Edict commanded them to abjure that League, to obey the Maſter of the Order without Reſerve, fin'd them in great Sums, and depriv'd them of their Liberties and Privileges. Upon this they renounc'd their Allegiance to *Lewis Erliſtus*, the Grand Maſter of the Order, who defeated the *Poles* in a Battle, kill'd 30000 on the Spot, and took 136 of their Noblemen Priſoners; but was at laſt worſted by them. In 1454, the *Pruſſians* revolted to *Caſimir* King of *Poland*, and ſwore Allegiance to him. In 1466, when the Knights of the Order had loſt many of their Caſtles and Places of Strength, they were obliged to enter into Articles with the ſaid *Caſimir*, by which they quitted all Pretences for ever to the Territories of *Culm*, *Michelaw*, *Pomerellia*, *Elbing*, *Chriſtburg*, *Stum*, *Tolkomith*, and all the Caſtles and Dependencies of thoſe Places, with *Nerurg*, an Iſland in the *Baltick*, which has the *Weiſſel* on the S. W. with the Dioceſe of *Varmia*; reſerving to themſelves only that Part of *Pruſſia* of which *Koningsberg* is the Capital, and held it of the King of *Poland* by a Feudal Tenure. Moſt of the Knights ſwore Fealty to the Republick, except *Frederick* the Duke of *Saxony*, and Grand Maſter of the Order, who relying upon the Friendſhip and Aſſiſtance of the Emperor and Princes of the Empire, ſtill aſſerted the Independency of *Pruſſia*; but when he ſaw the Military Preparations of the *Poles*, who deſign'd to decide that Controverſy by the Sword, and knowing he was not able to encounter them, he fled to *Germany*. After his Death, he was ſucceeded by *Albert* Marquis of *Brandenburgh*, the 34th Great Maſter, who alſo refus'd to do Homage to the King of *Poland*, and gave this for Reaſon, That both the Emperor and Pope forbad him. This brought on a War betwixt the Marquis and *Poland*, which he carried on for ſome Time with great Vigour; but finding himſelf over-match'd, he made Peace with *Poland*, on theſe Terms, That he ſhould be made Hereditary Duke of *Pruſſia*, and hold it as Vaſſal to the King of *Poland*. Thus in 1525, he was created the firſt Hereditary Duke of that Part of it he then poſſeſs'd, which was afterwards call'd *Ducal Pruſſia*, to diſtinguiſh it from that Part of the *Poliſh* Dominions which was called *Regal Pruſſia*: And thus the Knights were wholly drove out of that Country. His Succeſſors thought this Treaty too favourable to the *Poles*, as they believ'd it too advantagious for him: But *George William*, Elector of *Brandenburgh*, and his Son *Frederick William the Great*, ſucceeded ſo well in their Deſign, that in 1657, at a Treaty then on foot, the Sovereignty of *Pruſſia* was afterwards at *Koningsberg*, *October* 18, 1663, confirm'd to him and his Heirs by the *Poliſh* Ambaſſador, on Condition, That in caſe of the Failure of his Heirs, it ſhould return to the *Poles*, and become a Fief of that Crown. This proſperous State of *Pruſſia* has been highly improv'd by the Son of that great Prince, who ſo far honour'd this Country, as to cauſe himſelf to be proclaim'd King of it, with an unuſual Magnificence, *January* 18, 1701.

Digitized by Google

Of the RELIGION *of the* Pruſſians.

WE have no certain Accounts of the Manner of their Worſhip while Pagans, nor at what Time, or by whoſe Means, they embrac'd Chriſtianity: But all agree in this, That towards the End of the 10th Century, St. *Aldbert*, or *Adalbert*, Biſhop of *Prague* in *Bohemia*, and afterwards Archbiſhop of *Gneſna*, as the *Poles* ſay, came thro' *Poland* into *Pruſſia*, where he either firſt planted or reſtor'd Chriſtianity. But the Pagan Prieſts ſeeing their Gain ſtruck at, ſo inflam'd the People againſt St. *Albert*, that they murther'd him barbarouſly at *Biſchauſen* in *Sambland*, in 997. Upon which, *Boleſlaus* King of *Poland*, as has been already ſaid, conquer'd them, and oblig'd them to embrace Chriſtianity; and to prevent their Relapſe into Idolatry and Superſtition, he burnt the great Oak at *Romanove*, the Temple of three of their Superior Gods: Yet no ſooner had the *Poles* withdrawn their Troops, but they return'd to Paganiſm. In the Beginning of the 13th Century, the Civil Broils among the *Poliſh* Nobility occaſion'd the Neglect of the Converſion of the *Pruſſians*. About 1215, *Chriſtianus*, a *Ciſtertian* Monk, endeavour'd to re-convert them, and for that End, by the Pope's Command, took upon him the Office of a Biſhop; but finding his own Power inſignificant, he was quickly forc'd to beg the Aſſiſtance of *Conrade* Duke of *Maſovia*. This Expedient alſo prov'd unſucceſsful; for the Knights of *Dobrin*, whom the Duke had oppos'd to the Fury of the *Pruſſians*, making Incurſions into *Maſovia*, were all vanquiſh'd and ſlain by the Idolaters. When all thoſe Expedients prov'd unſucceſsful, the Chriſtians began to conſider of ſome other Means of converting the *Pruſſians*, and pitch'd upon the Knights of the *Teutonick* Order, who were famous at that Time over all *Chriſtendom*, as moſt likely either to perſwade or force them to Chriſtianity. *Conrade* Duke of *Maſovia*, pleas'd with theſe Propoſals, immediately diſpatch'd Letters to the Maſter of the Order, profering him the Land of *Culm*, and Auxiliary Forces, in caſe he ſhould meet with any Oppoſition. Upon this, in 1226, *Herman de Saliza*, 4th Great Maſter of that Order, forthwith ſends *Herman de Balke*, one of his Knights, among the *Pruſſians*, with the Title of *Superintendant*, (afterwards chang'd into *Provincial* of *Pruſſia*:) But ſo vigorouſly did the Heathens oppoſe thoſe Undertakings, that it was 53 Years before they could be brought to renounce their Idolatry. After Chriſtianity began to take Root among them, ſeveral Biſhopricks and Monaſteries were founded; notwithſtanding which, many Heathens were wink'd at; for the barbarous Commonalty could not be brought from their ancient Folly but by degrees. Beſides, the Maſters of the Order minded the Enlargement of their own Power and Dominion, more than the Preaching of the Goſpel, and (tho' Papiſts) deſpis'd the Canons and Conſtitutions of the Church of *Rome*, and mock'd the Pope's Threats and Excommunication, which made Way for many Diviſions: And at this Time the *Waldenſes*, *Wickleſites*, and *Huſſites*, prevail'd mightily in *Pruſſia*. However, the *Teutonick* Order ſtill profeſs'd Popery, till the Time of *Albert* Marquis of *Brandenburgh*, laſt Maſter of that Order, and firſt Duke of *Pruſſia*, who having caſt off the *Poliſh* Yoke, not without a great deal of Blood, about 1520, he embrac'd the Proteſtant Religion, and, by his own Authority and Example, perſwaded the greateſt Part of the Knights to marry; and by degrees brought over the whole Country to Lutheraniſm. *Frederick William the Great*, who died in 1688, was a Calviniſt, and countenanc'd Calviniſm in *Koningsberg*, and other chief Cities of *Ducal Pruſſia*: But in *Dantzick*, and the other Towns upon the *Weiſſel* which are ſubject to the Crown of *Poland*, the People are Lutherans.

Of the MANNERS *of the* Pruſſians.

THE Inhabitants are generally ſtrong Body'd, and long-liv'd. *Adam Bremenſis*, in his Deſcription of *Denmark*, and the Northern Parts of *Europe*, tells us, the *Pruſſians* were grey Ey'd, and yellow Hair'd. The Ancients, as *Sidonius Apollinaris*, and *Auſonius*, had the ſame Opinion of all the Northern Nations: But ſince the *Pruſſians* have

Digitized by Google

have mix'd with other People, and admitted the modern Luxury of other *European* Countries, they are neither so healthy, nor of the same Complexion, as formerly. The Apparel of the *Prussian* Gentry is not much different from that of the more Southern Nations, thô not altogether so gaudy. The Boors wear long and strait Coats, of coarse Wool or Leather, after the Fashion of their Forefathers; but their rich Yeomen wear coarse *English* Cloth for a Holiday Suit. *Tacitus* tells us, the *Venedi* were the first of the *Scythian* Race that forsook their Waggons, and began to build Houses; yet their Successors are not arriv'd at any great Skill in Architecture. Near the *Weissil*, which is the ancient Seat of the *Venedi*, the Houses are magnificent, compar'd with the Wooden Huts which you meet with towards the wild Confines of *Lithuania*. *Tacitus* tells us, the *Phenni*, who dwelt in those Parts, had no other Shelter from the Injuries of the Weather and Wild-Beasts, but the Boughs of Trees twisted together: And to this Day the Invention is not much improv'd; for the Boors now have no other Houses than Hovels made of Stakes, interwoven with Rods, and cover'd with Earth, or, at best, a little Fern. The many Incursions which have been made into this Country upon the several Quarrels of the Electors of *Brandenburgh* with the *Poles* and *Swedes*, have forc'd them to raise some Castles and Fortifications of Stone; but otherwise, a Stone House here is a Rarity. The ancient *Prussians* slept on the Ground, or sometimes on the Skins of Beasts; and now they sleep on Straw, as was mention'd before.

Of the AMBER *in* Prussia.

THE old *Prussians* traded by exchanging one Commodity for another: Their chief Trade was the *Electrum*, or Amber, so famous among the Ancients; but was at last neglected by the Idleness of the People, who contented themselves with bare Necessaries. All those who have wrote of *Prussia*, have endeavour'd to find out the Nature of this *Electrum*. *Ovid* feign'd it to be the Tears of the *Heliades*, deploring the Fate of their Brother *Phaeton*. Some-Philosophers fancied it to be the Fat of the Sea: Others alledg'd it to be the Gum of a Tree; but could not say of what kind, whether Cedar, Poplar, or Elm. *Kircher* thinks 'tis a Bituminous Substance, which rising from the Bottom of the Sea, is toss'd by the Waves till it be brought to a Consistency; but none that liv'd on the *Baltick* could ever yet observe any such Bitumen in those Seas. Besides, the Veins of Amber, found under Ground in Places far distant from the Sea, do sufficiently prove the contrary: So that when 'tis found in the *Baltick*, and in the adjoining Lakes and Rivers, we must suppose 'tis broke off from some Vein under Ground by Floods or Tempests. Mr. *Hartman*, in his Treatise *De Succino Prussico*, gives this Account of it: Since (says he) it can neither be melted, nor is malleable, 'tis impossible it should be Metal: And because it is too solid a Body to come under the Species of Sulphur or Bitumen, it must needs be rank'd among Precious Stones. Amber, or *Succinum*, is a Coagulation of *Petrolum*; which being of divers Colours, White, Yellow, Red, and Black, accordingly grows into several Substances of those Colours. While 'tis very liquid, like Oil, it is call'd *Petrolum*: When somewhat thicker and clammy, 'tis call'd *Naptha*: When still more thick, we call it *Bitumen*: But when it comes to be a hard or stony Substance, it becomes White, Yellow, Red or Black Amber. If very Black, it is call'd *Gagates*, or Jet. When our Men broke the Rocks near *Tangier*, to form the Mole, they frequently found Amber in the Clefts of the Stones. The Marquis *de Bonac*, Envoy Extraordinary from the King of *France* to the King of *Sweden*, in a Letter to the Royal Academy of Sciences at *Paris*, says, he saw in some Places near *Dantzick* yellow Mineral Amber, of the same Sort with that found on the Sea-Coast. The Academy gave their Opinion about it: Messieurs *Cassini* and *Geraldi* observ'd, That Jet, and a sort of yellow Amber, was found at *Bugatch* in *Languedoc*, 27600 Fathom from the Sea; and that it is also found in the Rocks of *Provence*, and in *Sicily* along the Coasts of *Agrigento*, *Catanea*, *Leocata*, and on the Shores of *Corsica*, *Bononia*, *Ancona*, and *Umbria*. They further observ'd, That the Insects inclos'd in the Amber were of the Terrestrial kind, as Bees, Emmets, *&c.* and that none ever observ'd

Digitized by Google

obſerv'd Trees diſtilling Amber, as they do Pitch, Roſin, *&c.* From whence they infer, That Amber may probably be an Oil diſtill'd from Rocks, like *Petreolum*, and that thoſe Inſects are entangled in it when 'tis liquid. Amber is alſo found ſometimes in great Lumps on the Coaſts of the *Scottiſh* Iſlands. *Pliny* tells us, the ancient *Germans* call'd it *Gleſſum*, or Glaſs, becauſe of its Tranſparency; whence the *Romans* call the Iſland where it was gather'd *Gleſſaria*, and the *Barbarians* call'd it *Auſtronia*: But ſome think, the true reading of that Word in *Pliny* is *Auſtania*, becauſe the ordinary *German* Word for Amber is *Augſteyn*; and they are ſuppos'd to have given it that Name, on Account of its being good for the Eyes. *Tacitus de Moribus German. Cap.* 25. ſays, the *Æſtii* dwelt in that now call'd *Pruſſia* and *Curland*, and were ſo call'd, becauſe they lay Eaſtward from the *Suevi*. He adds, That they ſearch'd the neighbouring Sea, and were remarkable for their peculiar Skill in gathering Amber. *Caſſiadorus*, who liv'd in the 6th Century, quotes a Letter which *Theodorick*, a King of the *Goths*, wrote to thoſe *Æſtii*, thanking them for their Preſent of Amber, which he told them was very acceptable. Their Ambaſſadors, who brought it, could not inform him how it was generated; but told him that it was only found in their Country. *Heylin* thinks Amber proceeds from the Juice of a Stone, which grows like Coral, in a Mountain on the *Baltick*; but by the Violence of Storms is tore from the Rock, and is caſt out on the Coaſts of this Country, and ſometimes on thoſe of *Pomerania* and *Sweden*. The People who gather it leap into the Sea, tho' ever ſo raging, from whence they firſt take up ſome Weeds, after that this Liquor; which being expos'd to the Air, turns hard like Coral. It is good againſt bleeding at the Noſe, Agues, Falling-Sickneſs, Dropſies, Stone, Cholick, Weakneſs of the Stomach, Head-Ach, and the Yellow-Jaundice.

Of their MONEY.

THE *Pruſſians* had little or no Knowledge of Money before the Arrival of the *Teutonick* Order in 1230, who coming out of *Germany*, brought with them the Coin of their Country. Among the reſt of their Pieces, the broad *Bohemian Groſs* was long current both in *Pruſſia* and *Poland*: But knowing that this ſmall Stock would not go far, they ſet up Mints, and coin'd Pieces of their own, which they did ſo exactly, that moſt Nations have own'd that they firſt brought the Art of Coining to Perfection. Hence the learned Sir *Henry Spelman* thinks, that our *Engliſh* Word *Sterling* is deriv'd from the *Eaſterlings*, who coming out of *Pruſſia*, firſt taught the Art of Refining and Coining purer Silver in *England*, than before their coming had been made uſe of. The Species of Money now current in *Pruſſia* are;

1. A *Schilling*, which contains Six-pence, or Pfennings; no ſingle Pence being now in uſe there.

2. A *Groſs*, which conſiſts of 3 Schillings, and 20 of them make one Mark.

3. A *Mark*.

4. A *Gulder*, which contains 30 Groſſes,

5. A *Dollar*, (or *Thaler*) worth 3 Gulders.

6. A *Ducate*, equal to 2 Dollars, and is valued at 9 Shillings *Engliſh*.

Sweditſh and *Daniſh* Money is alſo current here. Some late *Pruſſian* Writers derive the Word *Schilling* from one *Bernhard Schilling*, who firſt ſtamp'd this ſort of Coin; but this is confuted by *Schuttelius*. The *Groſs* was ſo call'd, becauſe it was the greateſt Piece in the Infancy of their Coinage, and from thence perhaps we have our Groat. A *Mark* was no peculiar Piece of Coin, but a certain Weight, equal to 36 of the now *Pruſſian* Marks; ſo that it had not its Name, as *Loccenius* thinks, from the *German* Word *Mark*, becauſe 'twas mark'd or ſtamp'd with ſome particular Impreſſion, but was only us'd in that Country in reckoning of Money, as we do by Pounds and Marks, and the *French* by Livres; tho' neither of us have any Piece of that Value. *Gulder* ſignifies no more than a Piece of Gold Coin. The *Dollar*, (or *Thaler*) as the *Germans* call it, has its Name from the *German* Word *Thal*, a Valley, or Dale, becauſe that Piece was firſt coin'd at the Mines in *Joachim's* Dale in 1517; whence for ſome Time, inſtead of the Word *Thalerus*, they us'd *Joachimicus*

Digitized by Google

chimicus for a Dollar. The Value of these is alter'd frequently by Allays of Brass and Copper, according to the Humour of several States or Sovereigns.

Their LANGUAGE.

THat the *Venedi*, the first Inhabitants of some Parts of *Prussia*, spoke *Sclavonick*, is beyond all Controversy. After them, the *Goths* brought in a Dialect of the *Celtick*, differing a little from the *German*: But this did not take with the *Prussians*; for till the Arrival of the Knights of the *Teutonick* Order, they spoke, as they do still in many Places, a Language materially the same with what the *Muscovites*, *Poles* and *Lithuanians*, now use. *Grenovius*, a *Prussian* by Birth, is of another Opinion, because the *Poles* do not at all understand the *Prussian*, and scarce any thing of the *Lithuanian* Tongue: But this Argument is not conclusive, if we consider what Difficulty an *Austrian*, *Lunenburgher*, and *Fleming*, have to understand one another; and how much harder 'tis for a *Dane*, *German*, and *Englishman*, to discourse together, tho' their Language be of one Origine: So that a Mixture of the *German* and *Sclavonian* Tongues, and a Revolution of perhaps 2000 Years, must needs have much alter'd the *Prussian* Language from what it was at first.

This Country is large and fertile, being water'd with 2037 Rivers and Lakes, as their Monks have reckon'd, which afford them Store of Fish for their ordinary Food. This Province has no great Store of Mines, but abounds with Cattle, Wild-Beasts, Fish and Fruit of all Sorts, and enjoys a very temperate Climate. The Goods they have from *Poland*, *Russia*, and *Lithuania*, they export in great Quantities, and import whatever *Europe* or the *Indies* afford, but chiefly by Way of Exchange; whence the Inhabitants live richer and better than in any other Province of *Poland*. In this Country they make Glass of Ashes of a certain sort of Wood, or of the largest sort of Pebbles, which they boil 12 Hours before they vitrify. When they would have their Glass clearer than ordinary, they mix with the Ashes a certain sort of Earth of the Hardness of Tartar, which renders the Glass of different Colours, according to the Quantity mix'd with the Ashes. They observe, that if Salt be mix'd with Glass, it is much easier blown by the Artificer.

The principal Rivers of this Province are, the *Weissel*, the *Memel*, *Nogat*, *Elbing*, *Wisser*, *Passer*, *Alla*, *Pregel*, *Ossa*, *Drebnicz*, *Lico*, and *Lavea*.

The chief Lakes are, *Habus*, near 15 Miles long, and two broad, disjoin'd from the Sea by the Peninsula *Neringa*, which has a Communication with the Sea, where the Inhabitants gather Amber in Nets of a Conick Figure, with a large Mouth, and narrow at Bottom, which they tie to a long Pole, and put into the Sea when it begins to flow, and sometimes hale up Pieces of Amber as big as one's Fist. *Connor* was of Opinion, That the Amber was form'd by great Quantities of Resin or Turpentine, which drop'd from the Fir-Trees into the Lake, and being carried into the *Baltick*, was by the Waves congeal'd into Amber; but was afterwards inform'd, that Amber is a Mineral Juice that runs into the Sea, which at first taking up is soft, but is quickly harden'd by the Air.

Of POLISH PRUSSIA.

THis Country is divided into three Palatinates, *Pomerellia*, *Culm*, and *Marienburgh*.

The Palatinate of POLISH POMERANIA, *or* POMERELLIA.

THis is the most Easterly and least Part of *Pomerania*: It has *Brandenburgh Pomerania* on the W. the *Baltick* on the N. the *Weissel* on the E. and *Great Poland* on the S. When the *Goths* abandon'd this Province, the *Burussians* and *Scythians* settled here. The Palatine of *Pomerellia*, and the Castellan of *Dantzick*, are the Senators of this Palatinate. The chief City is *Dantzick*, which lies in Lat. 54 ½. Long. 38. call'd in Latin *Gedinum*; by the Natives, *Gdansk*; by the *Poles*, *Danske*; by the *Germans* and *French*, *Dantzig*. 'Tis one of the chief Hans-Towns, and has the greatest Part of the Trade of *Poland*. It is seated upon the *Weissel*, which 4 *English* Miles below falls into the Gulph of *Dantzick*,

Digitized by Google

zick, anciently call'd *Venedicus Sinus*. When and by whom this City was built, is not certain. *Becanus* and *Pontanus* think it was built by the *Danes*, about 1165, when *Woldimar* King of *Denmark*, having then War with *Sobeſlaus* I. Prince of *Pomerania*, built a Fortreſs here, and call'd it *Daneſwick*, which *Sobeſlaus* took from them in 116. Some think it is more probable, that to the Word *Dan*, *Cadan*, *Cdan*, or *Gdan*, the *Sclavonian* Termination *Ske* was added, which made it *Danske*, or *Gdanske*, and was afterwards chang'd into *Dantſick*. *Cluverius* is of this Opinion, and thinks the Name is deriv'd from the *Sinus Codanus*, ſo call'd from an ancient Idol of the *Germans*. It continued a Village till 1295, that *Premiſlaus* King of *Poland* made himſelf Maſter of it, and, by adding many Buildings to it, gave it the Form of a City. In 1343, it was wall'd, as *Cluverius*, in his *Germ. Antiq.* informs us. The chief Part of the City, call'd *Die Rechte Stadt*, was built by *Conrad Wallenrodt*, Maſter of the *Teutonick* Order, about 1390. In 1454, it ſubmitted to *Caſimir* King of *Poland*. They afterwards declar'd for the *Augſburg* Confeſſion, and ſided with *Maximilian* of *Auſtria* againſt *Stephen Battori* King of *Poland*, who proſcrib'd and beſieg'd them in 1577. but was oblig'd to raiſe the Siege In 1579, they were reſtor'd to their Privileges, with a Reſervation of many more; for they have a Suffrage in the Diet of that Kingdom, and are govern'd by their own Magiſtrates, who finally determine all Criminal Cauſes without Appeal, and all Civil Cauſes not exceeding 1000 Livres; and, with the Approbation of the Council of 100, impoſe neceſſary Taxes upon the Inhabitants. It lies 24 *Engliſh* Miles N. W. from *Marienburg*, 32 W. from *Elbing*, 88 N. from *Thorn*, 120 N. from *Gneſna*, and 200 N. W. from *Warſow*. In 1626, during the *Pruſſian* War, it was faithful to the Intereſt of the King of *Poland*: And lately, in 1655, when *Charles Guſtavus*, King of *Sweden*, had over-run *Poland*, all the Cities open'd their Gates to him except *Dantzick*, which put a Stand to the *Swediſh* Victories: So that the Faithfulneſs of this City retriev'd the Affairs of *John Caſimir*, when almoſt deſperate. It is water'd by the *Motlawe* and *Rodaun*, and is built partly of Stone, and partly of Brick. The Houſes are generally 6 or 7 Stories high. It conſiſts of 3 Cities; the firſt called *Voorſtat*, or the *Fore City*; the 2d *Aſtat*, or the *Old City*; the 3d *Rechte Stadt*, or the *Emperor's City*. All the three are encompaſſed with a high Wall, ſo broad, that Coaches eaſily go round it, and the Fortifications are of a vaſt Extent; but being commanded by two Hills on the S. W. it cannot well hold out a Siege. St. *Mary*'s Church in *Dantzick* is the ſtateſieſt Fabrick in *Pruſſia*, has 48 Altars, and 3722 Windows. The Font was made at *Antwerp*, and coſt 24000 Rix-Dollars. The principal Trade here is in Corn, which comes from *Poland*; and one Year with another, 'tis computed that they export 730000 Tuns of Wheat, two Tuns making up a Laſt. The Citizens have many Privileges, and particularly this, That they may buy up Corn as ſoon as it enters the Haven. This City is the Granary of *Holland*, and of other Northern Countries. Travellers and Merchants tell us, That the Granaries of *Dantzick* are generally 7, and ſome 9 Stories high, having each of them a Funnel to let the Corn run down from one Floor to another, to ſave the Labour and Charge of Carriage. Theſe Graharies are ſurrounded with Water, ſo that Ships lie cloſe to them to take in their Loading; and no Houſes are ſuffer'd to be built near them, for fear of Fire, as we are inform'd by *Phil. Tranſact.* of *R. S. N.* 25. *P.* 466. Merchants import Foreign Commodities to this Place, which furniſhes all *Poland*; and this contributes to the enriching of it. One Half of the Port-Cuſtoms belongs to the King of *Poland*, ſince the Reign of *Sigiſmundus Auguſtus*: And one Mill brings him in every Hour of the Day and Night 24 Gold Ducats. It is built on the *Rodaun*, which runs through the City. The yearly Revenue of this Mill is 4320 *l.* Sterling to the State, beſide the Profit it brings to the Proprietors. The Harbour is not deep, ſo that Ships of Burden can ſcarce reach the City. Tho' it is ſubject to the King of *Poland*, their Form of Government is Republican: The Eſtabliſh'd Religion here is Lutheraniſm ſince 1525; the Calviniſts are tolerated; and ſome Papiſts and Anabaptiſts are allow'd the Exerciſe of their Religion. *Cluverius*, the moſt eminent Geographer of his Time, was born here. There

Digitized by Google

are 20 Parishes in the City and Suburbs. One Half of the latter belongs to the Crown of *Poland*, and the other to *Dantzick*. The Streets are dirty in Winter, as in most Towns of *Poland*. The greateſt Part of the Inhabitants are *Germans*, and are reckon'd above 200000 in all. The Town-Houſe, where the Magiſtrates meet, is a very magnificent Structure, and has an exceeding high Spire. This City has 3 Magazines, well provided with Stores and Ammunition for Land-Forces. They have a College, with Profeſſors of all Faculties; but don't give the Degree of Doctor. The Juriſdiction of this City extends above 40 *Engliſh* Miles in Circumference. They ſend two Deputies to the Diet of *Poland*. The Senators, when once created, continue for Life: Four of the Senate are Calviniſts. Out of the four Proconſuls or Burgomaſters, the King nominates a Burgrave to repreſent him in the Senate, who ſigns all Sentences of Death. To repreſent the Grievances of the People, and to maintain their Privileges, there are 100 Burghers choſen to inſpect the Conduct of the Senate. The *Centum Viri* and Senate chuſe their Miniſters, which is the Manner in all *Lutheran* Countries. When the King comes hither, the City treats him for 3 Days; but he is allow'd only to bring a few Guards with him. They have a Secretary always at the Court of *Poland*. They can coin their Money without the King's Leave: His Effigies is on one Side, and their own Arms on the other. If any Appeal to the Tribunal of *Poland*, he is to lay down 100 Guilders in the Town-Houſe of *Dantzick*, to prevent the Frequency of ſuch Appeals. They have conſtantly above 200 Soldiers in Pay, can eaſily maintain 12000, and ſometimes they have had an Army of 60000. They have no Men of War, but abundance of Merchant-men of 3 or 400 Tuns, and 30 or 40 Guns apiece. They never trade into the *Eaſt* or *Weſt Indies*, but into the *Streights*, and all over *Europe*. In 1642. the Declination of the Magnet here was 3 Deg. 5 Min. W. In *July*, 1670, it was 7 Deg. 20 Min. The *Scots*, in Conſideration of the eminent Service they did to this City againſt the *Poles*, under the Conduct of one of the Family of *Douglas*, were allow'd to be Freemen of the Town, and other Privileges, beyond other Foreigners, and one of the Suburbs is ſtill called *Scotland*, in Remembrance of this Exploit, and was moſtly inhabited by *Scots*. The Arms of *Scotland* was alſo ſet up over the Gate, from whence they ſallied upon the *Poliſh* Army, and continued there till lately, that the Gate was rebuilt.

Not far from *Dantzick* to the E. is *Oliva*, an Abbey of the *Benedictines*, remarkable for a Peace concluded there in 1660, betwixt the Emperor, the King of *Poland*, and the Elector of *Brandenburgh*, on the one Side, and the King of *Sweden* on the other. *Munde*, or *Weiſſelmunde*, is a ſtrong Fortreſs, upon the Mouth of that Branch of the *Weiſſel* which runs by *Dantzick*, and can hinder the Entry of Ships. *Conitz* lies upon the Borders of *Brandenburgh Pomerania*, upon the River *Bro*, 32 *Engliſh* Miles W. from *Culm*. *Dirſchow* is ſeated upon the *Weiſſel*, 12 *Engliſh* Miles W. from *Marienburgh*, and 24 S. from *Dantzick*; was once a Place of Strength, but now diſmantled. 'Tis an ancient Monument of the Magnificence of the *Teutonick* Knights. *Pautzke* lies upon the Gulph of that Name, which is a Part of the *Baltick* near *Dantzick*: It has a ſtrong Caſtle, which was taken by the *Swedes* in 1626, and retaken in 1627. In 1655 the *Swedes* beſieg'd it, but were obliged to raiſe the Siege. *Hella* is a ſmall Town near *Pautzke* to the W. *Schlorn* belongs alſo to this Palatinate.

The Palatinate of CULM.

IT lies betwixt the *Weiſſel*, *Great Poland*, and *Ducal Pruſſia*, and was one of the 12 Parts of *Pruſſia*. It has its Name from *Culm*, the chief City, in Lat. 53 ½. Long. 39. 16 *Engliſh* Miles N. from *Thorn*, and 60 S. from *Dantzick*. This City was built by the *Teutonick* Knights in 1223, is ſituated upon a Hill, the Foot of which is waſhed by the *Weiſſel*, and was an Epiſcopal See, under the Archbiſhop of *Gneſna*. It has few Inhabitants, and no Trade ſince the *Swediſh* Wars; therefore the Biſhop's See is tranſlated to *Colmenſee*, 12 *Engliſh* Miles S. E. from it. *Herman de Saltza*, Maſter of the *Teutonick* Order, gave Laws and Conſtitutions for the Government of this Town; a Specimen

Digitized by Google

of which is given by *Lambecius*, from an old *Dutch* MSS. in the Emperor's Library at *Vienna*. The Municipal Laws of this Place are famous all over *Pruſſia*. It is ſtill reckon'd one of the Hans-Towns. *Thorn* is a Hans-Town, on the *Weiſſel*, which divides it: It lies in Lat. 53. and Long. 39. 16 *Engliſh* Miles S. from *Culm*, 72 S. from *Marienburgh*, 88 S. from *Dantzick*, 60 N. from *Lencicia*, and 116 N.W. from *Warſaw*. It was built at the ſame Time with *Culm*, by the Knights of the *Teutonick* Order, as a Garriſon to curb the Pagan *Pruſſians*, but not in the Place where it now ſtands. *Old Thorn* was ſeated a Mile W. from the *New*; but by whom and when *New Thorn* was built, is not certain. *Cluverius* ſays, it was a famous Mart, long before *Dantzick* was conſiderable for Trade. It has a Bridge over the *Weiſſel*. In 1454. both *Old* and *New Thorn* revolted from the *Teutonick* Knights to the *Poles*, who allow'd them great Privileges; whereas the Knights govern'd them in an arbitrary Manner. It had its Name from the *German* Word *Thor*, a Gate, becauſe built by the Knights to receive ſuch Forces into their Dominions as they needed. Hence the Arms of *Thorn* are a Caſtle and a Gate half open. This City is the neateſt and beſt built of any in *Pruſſia*: The Houſes are more ſtately, and the Streets broader, than at *Dantzick*. It owes much of its Beauty to *Henry Stroband*, Burgo-Maſter of the Town, who died in 1609. He built the Univerſity, and endow'd it with a conſiderable Revenue. The Profeſſors here are Men of great Learning. He founded alſo the Town-Hall, which, next to the *Stadthuis* in *Amſterdam*, is reckon'd the ſtatelieſt in *Europe*. He built a Hoſpital, and founded a Library, where two of *Cicero*'s Epiſtles are preſerv'd upon Tables of Wax. *Nicolaus Copernicus*, the great Aſtronomer and Mathematician, and remarkable alſo for his Piety, was born here in 1473, and died here in 1543.

In 1645, by Order of the King of *Poland*, a Conference was held here betwixt Lutherans, Calviniſts, and Papiſts, which had no Succeſs. The Acts of this Conference were printed at *Warſaw* in 1646, and *Georgius Calixtus* wrote Animadverſions upon it. This Place is famous for holding out a long Siege againſt the *Swedes*, who took it in 1655. The *Poles* retook it in 1658, after a Siege of 6 Months. The *Swedes* recover'd it afterwards; but in 1665, the *Poles* ſurpris'd it. The Fortifications were formerly very conſiderable; but *Charles* the XIIth, the preſent King of *Sweden*, having taken it *October* 14, 1703. diſmantled it.

Other Towns of Note here are, 1. *Graudentz*, a pleaſant and ſtrong Town, upon the *Weiſſel*, where the *Oſſa* falls into it, and is now well fortified; ſo that it is in no Danger from any Surprize. It lies 36 *Engliſh* Miles N. from *Thorn*, and 44 S. from *Marienburgh*. 2 *Strasburg*, is ſeated on the River *Debrentz*, E. from *Culm*, which in the laſt Age was frequently taken and retaken by the *Swedes* and *Poles*. 3. *Chouza*, one League from *Culm*, on the oppoſite Bank of the *Weiſſel*, has now nothing remarkable but a fine Church; tho' during the Government of the *Teutonick* Knights, 'twas the moſt flouriſhing Town of *Pruſſia*, as is evident from ſome of its ſtately Ruins. 4. *Novi*, two Leagues below *Graudentz*, is built on a Hill, the Foot of which is waſh'd by the *Weiſſel*. 5. *Ghmief*, a ſmall Town, with a ſtrong Caſtle, where *John Sobieski* kept his Treaſures.

The Territory of *Michalovia* in this Country is a ſtrait Neck of Land between the Rivers *Brodna* and *Drebentz*, and was the Occaſion of bloody Wars betwixt the *Poles* and *Teutonick* Knights.

The Senators of this Palatinate are, the Biſhops of *Culm* and *Warmia*, and the Palatine and Caſtellan of *Culm*.

The Palatinate of MARIENBURGH.

IT lies betwixt the *Weiſſel*, the *Baltick*, and *Ducal Pruſſia*, and has its Name from *Marienburgh*, the chief City, in Lat. 54. Long. 38½. It lies upon the *Negat*, a Branch of the *Weiſſel*, which loſes it ſelf in *Friſch-Haff*. The Natives call it *Margenburgh*. It derives its Name from an Image of the Virgin *Mary*, found there when the Fortifications were built. It lies 24 *Engliſh* Miles S.E. from *Dantzick*, 16 S.W. from *Elbing*, and 44 N. from *Thorn*. In 1281, the Caſtle was built by the *Teutonick* Knights, to ſtop the Inroads of the *Pruſſians*, and was the Capi-

Digitized by Google

Capital of their Dominions, and reckon'd impregnable. *Casimir* IV. King of *Poland*, took it in 1460. The *Swedes* took it in 1626, after 5 Months Siege. In 1640, it was burnt down by the *Germans*. In 1655, the *Swedes* took it; but it was restor'd again to the *Poles* in 1660, by the Peace of *Oliva*. The Town is but meanly built; most of its Houses are of Wood, and the Inhabitants poor; for thô the Island of *Marienburgh*, which is made by the *Weissel*, be rich, its Revenues are spent in casting up great Banks to preserve it from the Inundations of the River. The best Mead in *Prussia* is made here. The fruitful Island of *Zulna* lies near this City. *Elbing* lies in Lat. 54 $\frac{1}{2}$. Lon. 40. on a small River of the same Name, which falls into the *Frisch-Haff*. *Ptolomy* seems to place his *Ælvaonæ*, and *Tacitus* his *Helvecones*, near this Town. *Fredericus Zamalius* calls this City *Augusta Ælvaonum*, and *Ælvepolis*, not doubting but it had its Name from those ancient People. *Hennebergus* more properly derives the Name from *Oehlfisg*, *Olsany*, or *Oelsang*, *i. e.* a Place where Eels are caught. *Cromingius* says, it is from *Elst*, a Name given to Rivers by the *Goths*. It was built in 1239, by the Burghers of *Lubeck*, who obtain'd from the Knights, that it should enjoy the same Privileges and the same Laws that the Emperor *Frederick* II. had granted to *Lubeck*. The Master of the Order gave them for their Arms two Crosses and a Net, from the Arms of *Lubeck*. Their great Trade made it in a small Time one of the most considerable Cities on the *Baltick*. In 1454, they put themselves under the Protection of the King of *Poland*, and levelled their Castle, because the *Teutonick* Knights invaded their Privileges: It continued faithful to the *Poles* till 1525. *Albert* Marquis of *Brandenburgh*, and first Duke of *Prussia*, built an University here in 1542. In 1629, it was taken by the *Swedes*, who restor'd it in 1636. After this, they open'd their Gates to *Charles Gustavus*, King of *Sweden*; but it was restor'd again to the *Poles* by the Peace of *Oliva*: It now belongs to the King of *Prussia*; thô they never own'd that Prince till 1698, that General *Brant* laid Siege to it, and oblig'd them to surrender, having then but a small Garison. It is the chief Town of *Hockerland*, and lies near the *Baltick*. When *Stephen* King of *Poland* besieg'd *Dantzick* in 1577, he made *Elbing* the Staple of Trade. At that Time the *English* set up there, and brought their Cloths to it; and *Gustavus Adolphus* design'd also to make it the Staple during his *Prussian* Wars. This City is well built, and very clean. Many *English* trade here, thô their Number is abated since the Staple of our Cloth was fix'd at *Dantzick*. The Boors in the Neighbourhood of *Elbing* have as good Clothes and Houses almost as the Noblemen in *Courland*; and one cannot distinguish a Boor from a Burgher by their Apparel. The Country is Champagne and Level, like *Holland*, and as fruitful and well Peopled as any Part of that Province, *Amsterdam* excepted.

WARMIA, by some reckon'd the 4th Palatinate of *Polish Prussia*, is a Bishoprick, where the Gentry are exempt from the Regal Jurisdiction, and govern'd by the Laws of *Prussia*, under their Bishop, who is a Prince of the Empire. His Seat is *Heilsberg*, on the River *Aller*, 32 *English* Miles S. from *Koningsberg*. 'Twas built in 1240. *Frauenburgh*, or *Froubergh*, lies upon the Bay called *Frisch-Haff*, where the River *Schen* falls into it: It has a convenient Harbour, is 11 *English* Miles N. E. from *Elbing*, and as many from *Pillau*. The Cathedral Church of *Warmia* is here, of which the famous *Copernicus* was a Canon. *Braunsberg* lies betwixt *Marienburgh* and *Koningsberg*, upon the *Baltick* Sea, near the Bay of *Frisch-Haff*. 50 Miles E. of *Dantzick*, and 25 E. of *Elbing*. It has been morgaged to the King of *Prussia* for many Years, is populous, and has a famous University.

The Senators of the Palatinate of *Marienburgh* are, the Palatine and Castellan of that City.

Digitized by Google

CHAP. XV.

The Great Dutchy of LITHUANIA.

IT has *Muſcovy* on the E. ſome Parts of it on the N. E *Livonia* on the N. *Samogitia* on the N. W. *Ducal Pruſſia* and *Maſovia* on the W. *Little Poland* on the S. W. *Red Ruſſia* on the S. and the *Ukrain* on the S. E. This is the greateſt Province belonging to *Poland*. *Starovolſcius*, whoſe Opinion in this is moſt to be truſted, ſays, the Length of *Lithuania*, from the Borders of *Ducal Pruſſia*, which joins the Palatinate of *Troki*, in Long. 43. to the Frontiers of *Muſcovy*, or the Borders of the Dutchy of *Novogerod*, in Long. 54 is 660 *Engliſh* Miles; and the Breadth, from the Borders of *Red Ruſſia*, in Lat. 30. to the Borders of *Muſcovy* in 56. is 360 *Engliſh* Miles. In the Time of its Great Duke *Vitoldus*, it reach'd from the *Euxine* Sea to the *Baltick*. *Cluverius* ſays, the Length of it is, from the Fountains of the River *Polot*, in the Confines of *Livonia* and *Muſcovy*, to the Town of *Daſſow* near the *Black Sea*, 260 *German* Leagues; and the Breadth, between the *Memil* and the *Nieper*, 80. which makes *Lithuania* much larger than really it is; for it does not come near the *Black Sea* by many Miles. The Natives call it *Litwa*; the *Germans*, *Die Littawen*; the *French*, *La Lituanie*; the *Italians*, *Lituania*; and the *Poles*, *Litewsky*.

Whence the Name is deriv'd, is not certain; ſome will have it from *Lituus*, a Hunting-Horn, becauſe the Natives were given to Hunting; but this is too general. *Erafmus Stella*, a good Hiſtorian, ſays, That a Colony of *Pruſſians* ſettled here, under the Command of *Lituo*, their King's Son, in 573 whence the Country was called *Lithuania*; but this is alſo rejected, for the *Pruſſians* obtain'd this Place by Conqueſt ſince that Time. The *Poliſh* Hiſtorians generally agree, That *Palemon* flying from the Fury of *Attila* the *Hun*, left *Rome*, and came hither with a Colony of *Italians*, who call'd it *La Italia*, which was afterwards corrupted into *Lituania*. The *Lithuanians* are fond of this Origine, and think it confirm'd by the *Roman* Names of their Nobles, *Urſin*, *Column*, *Julian*, &c. But *Hartnock* ſays, it had its Name from *Littuo*, one of the *Alani*, who was one of their Dukes long before *Palemon*'s Time; and thinks this the more probable, becauſe the *Lithuanians* ſtill retain ſome Footſteps of the Name of thoſe People in their *Lithalani* and *Roxalani*; but the Account that *Ammianus Marcellinus* gives of the *Alani*, differing ſo much from that given of the *Lithuanians* by their beſt Authors, ſhows that they are not of one Nation; and their Language proves them to be of the ſame Origine with the *Pruſſians*.

We have no Account of this Country that can be depended on earlier than the 12th Century, when that People began to come out of their Woods, and to make a Figure in the World. In 1252, *Mendog*, a brave Man, headed his Countrymen, who, under his Conduct, recover'd their Liberty, and revolted from the *Ruſſians*. He afterwards became their Prince, civiliz'd them by good Laws, and in the Beginning of his Reign defeated the *Teutonick* Knights, and over-run all *Pruſſia*. He was ſucceeded by others that made Wars on the *Poles*, *Pruſſians*, &c. who invaded their Country. In 1301, their famous Prince *Godimin* refus'd to pay Tribute to the *Ruſſians*, and entring the Country of *Novogrod* with an Army, took *Volodomir*, and made all *Volhinia* ſwear Fealty to the Magiſtracy of *Lithuania*. He conquer'd all the *Ukrain*, *Pruſſia*, and a great Part of *Muſcovy*. In 1305, he built *Vilna*. In 1331, he invaded the *Tartars*, and recover'd *Podolia*. About this Time *Demetrius* Duke of *Muſcovy* ſent an Ambaſſador into *Lithu-*

Lithuania, to demand a Reſtitution of all thoſe Places and Provinces that belong'd to the Great Dukedom of *Ruſſia*. *Godimin* impriſon'd the Ambaſſador, march'd a great Army to *Muſcovy*, ſurpris'd the Czar in his Palace, and forc'd him to accept a Peace upon diſadvantageous Terms, *viz.* That the Bounds of *Lithuania* ſhould reach as far as *Moſcow*, and the River *Ugra*. In 1386, *Uladiſlaus Jagello*, Great Duke of *Lithuania*, was choſen King of *Poland*, on Promiſe that *Lithuania* ſhould be annex'd to *Poland*: But it was provided by the Articles of the Union, That *Lithuania* ſhould have their ancient Laws, Privileges, Senators, and Great Officers, continued. At this Time the *Lithuanian* and *Poliſh* Nobility ſwore Allegiance to the King and Queen of *Poland*, which was renewed in 1401, and 1414. but ſtill the *Poles* were oblig'd to ſend *Lithuanian* Princes to govern them. Afterwards, when the *Poles* deſign'd to join *Volhinia*, *Podolia*, and ſome other Provinces of *Ruſſia*, to the Crown of *Poland*, the *Lithuanians* oppos'd it with ſuch Vigour and Bravery, that it occaſion'd a long War betwixt the two Nations. At laſt, in 1566, the Differences were a little compos'd, and finally ended in 1569. The Articles were ſign'd by both People, in Preſence of Foreign Ambaſſadors, *viz.* *That the* Lithuanians *ſhould for ever diſclaim all Right or Pretence to the Provinces of* Polachia *and* Volhinia, *and Palatinate of* Kiow, *and never elect a ſeparate Duke or Governor; but upon a Vacancy, ſhould repair to the Place whither they ſhould be ſummon'd by the Archbiſhop of* Gneſna, *the* Inter Rex *of* Poland: *That in every Election, the* Lithuanians *and* Poliſh *Nobility ſhould have equal Freedom in Voting: That whoever, by a Majority of Votes of both Nations, ſhould be elected King of* Poland, *ſhould at the ſame Time be pronounc'd Great Duke of* Lithuania: *That the Election ſhould always be held in ſome Place near the Confines of both Countries: And that the Diet ſhould ſit in* Poland *and* Lithuania *by Turns*, &c. In 1654, and 1665, the Czar invaded *Lithuania*; upon which the King of *Poland* made Peace with *Sweden*, and drove the *Muſcovites* out of *Poland*. In 1667, 13 Years Truce was concluded betwixt the *Muſcovites* and *Poles*, on Condition, That *Blockz*, *Vitepſki*, and the *Higher Livonia*, ſhould be reſtor'd to *Poland*: That *Nowei*, *Vialiſi*, and *Sebiſch*, ſhould be excepted from the Palatinates of *Polockz* and *Vitepſki*; That the *Muſcovites* ſhould keep *Smolensko*, *Sevir*, and all the *Ukrain* beyond the *Nieper*; and that *Kiow*, after two Years, ſhould be reſtor'd to the Crown of *Poland*.

Of the CLIMATE *and* SOIL *of* Lithuania.

THE Air is extream thick and foggy, becauſe the Country is full of Woods and Lakes, there being one Forreſt of 100 Miles in Length. They have Store of Venniſon and Fiſh, and the Land is tolerably fruitful; but the extream Cold frequently ſpoils their Harveſt. *Lithuania* was overgrown with Woods, till the Reign of *Sigiſmundus* I. who burnt down many of them. His Example was follow'd by ſucceeding Kings, who us'd all Endeavours to cultivate this Country. Their Beaſts of all kinds are little, becauſe of the Cold. Beſides thoſe they have in common with *Germany*, they have Elks, Wild-Horſes, Wild-Oxes, or Buffalo's, Wild-Aſſes, and the Beaſts called *Uri*.

Of their COMMODITIES.

THE greateſt Trade of *Lithuania* is in Pitch, Tar, and Timber, which are tranſported to *Holland* and other Nations, for which they receive Salt and Wines. They are ſufficiently provided with all other Neceſſaries, have great Herds of Black Cattle, and conſiderable Flocks of Sheep, with Ermins, Sables, and all manner of Furs. They have great Plenty of Wax, Honey, and Pitch.

Of their TEMPER.

THeir Nobles are inſolent, proud, and domineering, and the Boors ſlaviſh, mean and cowardly, as has been mention'd already in the General Deſcription of *Poland*. In their Wars with *Poland*, they diſcover'd their barbarous and cruel Temper, deny'd Quarter to all Captives, rip'd up Women with Child, and murther'd Infants. They are treacherous to their Prince, re-

Digitized by Google

gardleſs of Oaths and Promiſes, and to this Day have an inveterate Hatred to the *Poles*. Dr. *Connor* ſays, he was aſſur'd at the Court of *Poland*, That Children, when expos'd or loſt, are frequently nurs'd by Bears, who are very numerous in thoſe Woods; and that one who had been nurs'd was kept in a Convent; his Countenance was frightful, and he had neither the Uſe of Reaſon nor Speech; he went upon all four, and often endeavour'd an Eſcape to the Woods: He was taught to ſtand, as we do Dogs, by placing his Body ſtraight againſt a Wall. Monſieur *Cleverskirk*, Ambaſſador from *Holland* to K. *W.* III. confirms this in a Letter to Dr. *Connor*, and ſays, That in *1661*, he ſaw a Boy in a Nunnery of 12 Years of Age who had been ſo nurs'd: He catch'd at one of his Silver Buttons, ſmell'd to it, and then leap'd to a Corner and howl'd. When he got any Bread, he leap'd upon a Bench, and walk'd on all four; then putting the Bread to his Noſe, he leap'd down to the Ground, and howl'd as before. He was not then brought to ſpeak, and had ſome Scars on his Face, occaſion'd by the Scratches of the Bear.

Of their APPAREL.

THE old *Lithuanians* wore raw Hides of Beaſts, Linen, and the inner Barks of Linden Trees, for Clothes. *Uladiſlaus Jagello* brought many of them to *Poland*, where he clad them with Woollen, and gave 'em Shoes. Their Nobles bought their Clothes ready made from other Nations. The Boors in many Places ſtill wear their ancient Habit. They eat Bread made of the Ears of Wheat unwinnow'd. Their Drink has already been accounted for in the Deſcription of *Poland*.

Of their LANGUAGE.

THE *Lithuanians* generally ſpeak the *Sclavonick*, and all their Pleadings in Courts of Judicature are in that Tongue. They have a great Mixture of *Poliſh*, and much Latin, which ſeems to confirm the Story of *Palemon*, formerly mention'd; ſome Inſtances of which are as follow: *Duonus*, *Duonum*, *a Gift*; *Ugnis*, *Ignis*, *Fire*; *Oras*, *Aer*, *Air*; *Saule*, *Sol*, *the Sun*; *Menuo*, *Menſis*, *a Month*; *Dienna*, *Dies*, *a Day*; *Roſa*, *Ros*, *Dew*; *Dieuas*, *Deus*, *God*; *Viras*, *Vir*, *a Man*, &c. The Latin Tongue is as common here as in *Poland*, and ſpoke by People of all Ranks.

Of their RELIGION.

NO Nation in *Europe* has been more bewitched with Idolatry: They worſhip'd Serpents, and many of them continued to do ſo till within theſe few Years; of which *Sigiſmund* Baron of *Herbeſtein* (in *Comment. Rer. Muſcov. P.* 84.) gives us this memorable Story, "Returning (ſays he) "lately from *Maſovia*, at *Troki*, a ſmall Town "8 *Engliſh* Miles from *Vilna*, my Hoſt ac"quainted me, That the ſame Year he had "chanc'd to buy a Hive of Bees of one "of thoſe Serpent-Worſhipers, whom with "much ado he perſwaded to worſhip the "true God, and kill his Serpent. Within "a while after, coming that Way, he found "the poor Fellow miſerably tortur'd and "deform'd, his Face wrinkled and turn'd "awry; and demanding the Cauſe, he re"ceiv'd this Anſwer, *That this Judgment "was inflicted on him for killing his God; and "that he was like to endure heavier Torments, "if he did not return to his former Worſhip.*" There are ſtill ſome Remains of this Idolatry in the Country; for in many Villages both in *Lithuania* and *Pruſſia*, the poor Boors keep Adders in their Houſes, to which they pay a ſuperſtitious Reſpect, thô they profeſs Chriſtianity, and fancy ſome great Diſaſter will certainly befal them, if thoſe Houſhold-Gods be hurt or injur'd. The ancient *Lithuanians* had alſo an Idol called *Percuns*, to whom they kept a Fire continually burning, with as much Caution and Diligence, as the Veſtal Fire was kept at *Rome*; and if the *Waidelot*, or Prieſt, ſuffer'd the Fire to go out, he was ſure to die for it. The like Ceremonies were perform'd in Remembrance of *Kiern*, one of their Princes, on the Top of a high Hill near *Dziewaltow*. Some think theſe Ceremonies were deriv'd from the *Roman* Colony that ſettled there under *Palemon*. They alſo buried their Dead, as *Caralewicz* informs us in his Hiſtory

Digitized by Google

ſtory of *Lith. Lib. 5. Cap.* 140. and expected a Reſurrection from the Aſhes, upon the coming of a ſtrange God to judge the whole Earth, from the Top of one of their Mountains. In 1386, *Uladiſlaus Jagelle*, their Great Duke, converted them from their Idolatry; for upon his marrying of *Hedwig*, Queen of *Poland*, he turn'd Chriſtian, and was baptiz'd at *Cracow* by *John* Biſhop of that See. When he firſt undertook the Converſion of the Pagans, he met with great Oppoſition; but when he cut down their tall Trees, the Temples of their Heatheniſh Gods, and the People ſaw that no Miſchief or Puniſhment befel him, they began to reaſon thus; Our Gods would never have put up this Affront, if they had been able to revenge it, and ſhew'd themſelves inclinable to liſten to *Jagello*'s Advice: Upon which the King built a Cathedral, and founded a Biſhoprick at *Vilna*, and the Queen gave Chalices, Veſtments, and other Ornaments, to 7 Churches in the Neighbourhood. At this Time many *Lithuanians* are of the *Greek* Church, thô more of the *Roman*. In *Vilna*, and ſeveral other great Towns, vaſt Numbers of the Inhabitants are *Lutherans*. They marry'd and unmarry'd as oft as they thought fit; and thô they thought it a Fault to lie with a Harlot, yet it was very ordinary and modiſh for their Wives to have Gallants, to whom their Husbands thought themſelves obliged, look'd upon them as their Aſſiſtants and Partners, and valued them more than their other Acquaintance. *Narimundus*, their Great Duke, is ſaid to have invented the Arms of *Lithuania*, which are, *Party per Pale, Gules* and *Azure*: In the former a *Warrior* arm'd Cap-a pee, brandiſhing a Sword over his Head, and riding a *Horſe Argent* in full Career; and in the ſecond the *Virgin Mary*, with our *Saviour* in her Arms, ſurrounded by a *Glory*.

The Dutchy of LITHUANIA.

LIthuania is divided by *Starovolſcius*, whom moſt Geographers follow, into *Lithuania Proper*, which contains the Palatinates of *Wilna* and *Troki*. The ſecond Diviſion is, according to *Hartknock*, *Little White Ruſſia*, which contains 8 Palatinates.

The Palatinate of VILNA.

IT is a little Palatinate, has that of *Breſlaw* on the E *Troki* on the W. *Samogitia* on the N. and the Palatinate of *Minſkow* on the S. It has its Name from the chief Town, which was built in 1305 by *Godimin*, the Great Duke of *Lithuania* In 1655, it was taken and plunder'd by the *Muſcovites*; but was after retaken by *Caſimir* King of *Poland*. It is ſeated upon the *Vilia*, a navigable River, where the *Wilna* falls into it, and lies 130 *Poliſh* Miles N. E. from *Cracow*, 48 N. from *Riga*, 70 N. E. from *Warſaw*, and 100 E. from *Smolenſko* This City is large, and indifferently populous; but the Streets are badly pav'd, and naſty: All their Houſes are of Wood, except the Palace of the Great Dukes of *Lithuania*, and ſome Merchants Houſes, which are of Stone. It has two Caſtles; that on a Hill is ancient, and almoſt ruin'd; but the other is a Pile of beautiful modern Architecture. The Churches are all of Stone, and are poſſeſs'd by thoſe of the *Roman* and *Ruſſian* Faith. The Cathedral ſtands in the lower Caſtle, where the Body of St. *Caſimir*, Canoniz'd by Pope *Leo* X. lies in a large Silver Tomb of great Value. Here is alſo a very large Bell, that requires 24 ſtrong Men to ring it. King *Stephen* founded the Academy in 1579, which was erected then into an Univerſity by *Gregory* XIII. There are 6 Profeſſors of Divinity, 5 of Philoſophy, 4 of Laws, and 7 of Philology. The *Muſcovite* Company here have a neat Warehouſe for their Ermins, Sables, and other Merchandize from *Moſcow*. Guns, and other Warlike Inſtruments, of excellent Workmanſhip, are made here. *Vilna* has the Honour of having the Tribunal for all *Lithuania*. *Alexander* King of *Poland* died here in 1506. The Citizens are exceeding poor and idle, Slaves to their Noblemen, and their Bellies. They are great Lovers of Garlick and Onions, which, with their ſmoaky Houſes, make half of them blind before they arrive to any conſiderable Age. They are great Drinkers, and quarrelſome; and if a Stranger be kill'd in any ſuch Riot, the Murderer is only to pay 16 Dollars as a Mulct. When a *Lithuanian* is ſlain, his Corps is preſerv'd till they can find the guilty

Digitized by Google

guilty Perſon, whom they cannot condemn without ſhewing him the Corps of the Deceaſed. They have no Hoſpital in that City, thô they need one more than any Place in *Europe*. The Streets are crowded with Swarms of Beggars. Other Towns are, 1. *Oſmian*, a Wooden Town, Capital of its Diſtrict, about 28 *Engliſh* Miles S. E. from *Vilna*, to which belongs a large Juriſdiction, with ſeveral eminent Towns. 2. *Braſlaw*, built of Timber, on a large Lake, with a Caſtle on a Rock. It has a conſiderable Juriſdiction, and lies 80 *Engliſh* Miles N. E. from *Vilna*. *Sanſon* and others make *Braſlaw* a particular Palatinate; but *Hartnock*, the moſt learned of all the *Poliſh* Writers, ſays otherwiſe. 3. *Wilkomitz*, upon the River *Swienta*: It's fortified, and has an ancient Caſtle, which the *Muſcovites* took in 1655. It lies N.W. from *Vilna*, on the Borders of *Samogitia*. The Cauſes of the Gentry are tried here. It has a very large Juriſdiction, in which are ſeveral conſiderable Towns, belonging to the King, Biſhops and Gentry. 4. *Ikazmia*, near a River of the ſame Name, about 12 *Engliſh* Miles S. E. from *Braſlaw*. 5. *Drizwiatz*, on a Lake near a River of that Name, 20 *Engliſh* Miles S. W. from *Braſlaw*.

The Arms of this Palatinate are *Argent* and *Gules*; in the former the Arms of *Lithuania*, and in the latter two Pillars of the firſt.

The Senators of this Palatinate are, the Palatine and Caſtellan of *Vilna*.

The Palatinate of TROKI.

IT has *Samogitia* on the N. *Ducal Pruſſia* on the W. the Palatinate of *Vilna* on the N. E. and that of *Novogrodec* on the S. The Senators are, the Palatine and Caſtellan. The chief Town is *Troki*. It was founded in 1321, by *Gedimin*, who made it his Seat. In 1655, it was taken by the *Muſcovites*, who plunder'd and burnt it, and maſſacred the Inhabitants with ſo great Cruelty, that the River on which the City ſtands was dy'd with Blood. It has a ſtrong Caſtle, and is ſeated on a Point of Land that ſhoots out into a Lake, and lies 16 *Engliſh* Miles W. from *Vilna*. It had formerly a ſtrong Wall, which was deſtroyed by the Knights of the *Teutonick* Order. It has a Caſtle in a Lake, fortified both by Nature and Art. Other Towns are, 1. *Grodno*, upon the *Memel*, S. from *Troki*. *Sigiſmund* III. built a Bridge over that River of Timber, ſo artfully contriv'd, that there is nothing in *Poland* comparable to it. The Caſtle was built by *Stephen Battori*, and is ſtrong. The Jeſuits have a College in this City. The General Diets of the Kingdom every third Year are kept here. The *Muſcovites* took it in 1655, and deſtroy'd it entirely; but now it is rebuilt, and has a good Trade. 2. *Lida*, the Capital of its Diſtrict, built with Wood, has a tolerable Caſtle, and a Court of Juſtice for the Gentry. 3. *Couna*, a ſmall Town, on the Confines of *Samogitia*, upon the Conflux of the *Memel* and *Wilia*, with a ſtrong Caſtle, founded on a Rock. Its Situation would make it impregnable if it were fortified. 4 *Upita*, is Capital of a large Diſtrict, where there are ſeveral Towns. 5. *Merecza*, built at the Confluence of the *Merecz* and the *Memel*, N. from *Grodno*.

The Senators are, the Palatine and Caſtellan of *Troki*.

The Arms are, in a *Field Azure* thoſe of *Lithuania*.

The 3d Polatinate is LITTLE WHITE RUSSIA:

IN Length about 200 Miles, and in Breadth 120. It is divided into ſix Parts, the firſt of which is,

NOVOGRODEC.

WHich is divided into the two Diſtricts of *Novogrodec* and *Slonim*. *Novogrodec* is the chief City, is built of Timber, and was the Appenage of the ſecond Sons of the Dukes of *Lithuania*. The Diet for the Great Dutchy of *Lithuania* is held by turns in this Place and *Minſki*. It is built on a Plain, has no Fortifications, and lies 12 *Engliſh* Miles S. from the *Memel*. Other Towns are, 1. *Slonim*, which has a Caſtle, and ſome other regular Fortifications lately built. The Diſtrict of this City was formerly a Dutchy. It lies 32 *Engliſh* Miles S. from *Novogrod*. 2. *Wolkowiſko*, is a large Town, on

Digitized by Google

on the Borders of *Podlachia*, S. from *Grodno*, and has a Court of Juſtice for the Gentry. 3. *Lacowicz*, famous for a very fair Palace, built by a Grand General of *Lithuania*, is well fortified after the modern Way. 4. *Myſza*, a Town with a Caſtle, ſeated on a Lake. 5. *Zlucz*, one of the largeſt Cities in this Country, on a River of that Name, 80 *Engliſh* Miles S. E. from *Novogrodec*. The Cathedral and Ducal Palace are of Stone. This City had not long ago a Prince of its own, with large Territories; but he was always Tributary to *Poland*, and is at preſent in Poſſeſſion of the Family of *Radzivil*. The three pitch'd Battles which *Conſtantine* Duke of *Oſtrog* gain'd over the *Tartars* near this Place, make it famous. 6. *Rozan*, a well built Town, with very fair Streets. 7. *Newwitz*, 60 *Engliſh* Miles E. from *Novogrodec*. *Nicholas Radzivil*, ſirnam'd the *Pilgrim*, founded ſome noble publick Edifices here. The River *Oſza* falls into the *Memel* near this Place.

The Senators are, the Palatine and Caſtellan of *Novogrodec*.

The Arms are, in a *Field-Azure* thoſe of the Great Dutchy.

The Palatinate of BRIESCIA, *or* POLESIA.

IT lies betwixt *Red Ruſſia* on the S. E. *Volhinia* on the S. *Mazovia* on the W. and the Palatinate of *Novogrodec* on the N. It is overgrown with Woods, and has many Lakes and Pools. It has its Name from the chief Town *Brieſcia*, which is a large Wooden City, near the Confines of the Palatinate of *Lublin*, on the *Bug*, where the *Muhawiecz* falls into it, which makes it ſtrong. The Caſtle is of Timber, but founded on a Rock. It lies 80 *Engliſh* Miles N. E from *Lublin*, and 120 E. from *Warſaw*. The Jews have their chief Academy here, to which they reſort from *Italy*, *Germany*, *Moravia*, *Sileſia*, &c. not only to ſtudy, but alſo to take Degrees in that Religion. There's a Palace of modern Architecture here, with Variety of pleaſant Gardens. 2. *Prinsko*, indifferent large, on the River *Pina*, which falls into the *Przpic*, that joins the *Nieper* on the Borders of the Dutchy of *Czernichow*. It lies 90 *Engliſh* Miles E. from *Breſcia*. The *Coſſacks* took, plunder'd and burnt it; ſo that little but the Ruins are now to be ſeen. The Inhabitants are induſtrious, and make frequent Journies into *Muſcovy* and *Germany* on Account of Trade. They are generally of the *Greek* Church, and have a Biſhop, who reſides here. 3. *Bialo*, S. W. from *Breſſci*, famous for a Palace built by the Dukes of the Family of *Radzivil*, which is now a College for inſtructing of Youth. 4. *Prepetow*, a Town with an old Caſtle, built on the River of the ſame Name.

The Senators of this Palatinate are, the Palatine and Caſtellan of *Brieſcia*.

The Arms are the ſame with the former, differing only by a *B* in the middle.

The Palatinate of MINSKO.

IS in the middle of *Lithuania*, has the Palatinate of *Mſciſlaw* on the E. that of *Witepſk* on the N. *Vilna* on the N. W. *Novogrodec* on the S. W. and *Rohaczow* on the S. E. The Capital is *Minsko*, a large Town, on the River *Swiſtocz*, in the middle of a Moraſs, with a double Wall, a ſtrong Caſtle, a very deep Ditch, and other Fortifications. Formerly the Diet was kept here alternatively with *Vilna* and *Novogrodec*. 2. *Boriſſow*, on the River *Berezina*, whoſe Courſe is S. E. After it has run through this Palatinate, and the Territory of *Rohaczow*, in Lat. 52 ½. it fell into the *Nieper*. The Caſtle is well fortified, and the Gariſon is very ſtrong, to prevent the Incurſions of the *Muſcovites*. It lies about 150 *Engliſh* Miles S. E. from *Vilna*. It was ruin'd in 1655 by the *Muſcovites*, and nothing rebuilt ſince but the Caſtle. 3 *Kordanow*, with a Caſtle, about 100 Miles from *Vilna*. 4. *Radoſkowiz*, which has alſo a Caſtle, *Sigiſmundus Auguſtus* muſter'd above 100000 Men here at once in 1568. 5. *Rohaczow*, the chief City of a Territory of that Name, lies near the *Nieper*, where the River *Odnicz* falls into it, 80 *Engliſh* Miles S. from *Mohilow*, and 160 from *Kiow*. 6. *Lohoiſko*, about 30 Miles from *Boriſſow*. 7 *Bobroiſko*, on the River *Berezina*. 8 *Odruczko*, with a Caſtle: It formerly gave Name to a Dutchy, whereof ſeveral

Digitized by Google

Noble *Ruſſians* had the Title. 9. *Mozyr*, on the River *Przipiecz*, where the *Tur* falls into it.

The Palatinate of MSCISLAW.

HAS that of *Minſki* on the W. *Witepſk* on the N. and the Dutchy of *Smolenſko* on the E. It is divided by the *Nieper*, is a very Woody Country, and the Frontiers towards *Muſcovy* are overflowed with Water: The Champagne Ground is generally fruitful; it abounds with Cattle of all Sorts, and has great Numbers of excellent Fowl: 'Tis divided into the two large Diſtricts of *Mſciſlaw* and *Modziria*. *Jagello* erected it into a Dutchy for his Brother *Simon*. The Capital is *Mſciſlaw*, which is a ſmall Town, on the River *Soſz*, near the Frontiers of *Muſcovy*, and therefore ſtrongly garriſon'd. It lies 64 *Engliſh* Miles S. from *Smolenſko*, and 72 E. from *Mohilow*. This Diſtrict was formerly a Sovereignty, but now reduc'd. It is famous for a great Victory obtain'd in 1514 over the *Muſcovites*, by *Conſtantine* Duke of *Oſtrog*; but in 1660, the *Muſcovites*, to revenge this Loſs, took the City, and maſſacred all the Inhabitants. 2. *Modzir*, is Capital of its Diſtrict, and built among Marſhes. 3. *Dambrow*, 14 Miles W. from *Smolenſko*, on the Confines of *Muſcovy*: It has a ſtrong Caſtle. 4. *Bychow*, 48 *Engliſh* Miles from *Mohilow*, upon the *Nieper*, has alſo a Caſtle. 5. *Koppſe*, with a Caſtle. 6. *Sklow*, both on the ſame River. 7. *Reczycza*, with a Caſtle. 8. *Viſzkorod*, about 12 *Engliſh* Miles from *Kiow*. 9. *Striſſin*, with a Caſtle, all on the *Nieper*. 10. *Mohilow*, is built on a Hill, the Foot of which is water'd by the *Nieper*: 'Tis large and well built, and one of the ſtrongeſt Towns of *Lithuania*. The *Muſcovites* took it in 1654, and kept it till 1656, when it was retaken by the *Poles*. It is noted for its Trade, and a fine College, built by the Jeſuits. The *Muſcovites* tranſport their Furs this Way into *Germany* and *Poland*.

The Senators of this Palatinate are, the Caſtellan and Palatine of *Mſciſlaw*.

The Arms are the ſame with thoſe of *Lithuania*, with an *M* in the middle.

The Palatinate of WITEPSK, *or* VITEBSKO.

IT has *Muſcovy* on the E. the Palatinate of *Poloczko* on the N. W. and W. and thoſe of *Minsko* and *Mſciſlaw* to the S. It had Dukes of its own till the Heireſs married *Olgerd*, the Father of *Jagello*, in 1359. It has its Name from *Witebsko*, its Capital, which is very ſtrong, becauſe it lies on the Confluence on the *Dwina* and *Wiezka*; by which Goods are tranſported to *Riga* in *Livonia*. It is about 48 *Engliſh* Miles from the Borders of *Muſcovy*, 64 E. from *Poloczko*, 100 N. W. from *Smolenſko*, and 300 N. E. from *Vilna*. It was often taken and retaken in the late *Muſcovite* Wars. It has two large Caſtles, well defended by Nature and Art, againſt the Incurſions of the *Muſcovites*, who have often been repuls'd here with great Loſs. It has always a Garriſon of 2000 Men. 2. *Orsha*, a large City, defended on the one Side with Paliſadoes, and on the other by the *Nieper*: It has a ſtrong Stone Caſtle, waſh'd by the River *Orſzca*, lies 72 *Engliſh* Miles W. from *Smolenſko*, and 48 N. from *Mohilow*. 3. *Czaſniki*, on the River *Ula*. 4. *Siewo*, with a Caſtle, about 24 Miles from *Czaſniki*. 5. *Lepio*, with a Caſtle, on a Lake, 28 *Engliſh* Miles from *Czaſniki*. 6. *Woronice*, with a Caſtle, on the River *Uſzcza*, about 12 Miles from *Poloczko*. 7. *Wielicz*, which was taken in 1573 by the *Muſcovites*, and retaken in 1579.

The Senators of this Palatinate are, the Palatine and Caſtellan of *Witebsko*.

The Arms are in a *Field-Vert*, thoſe of *Lithuania*.

The Palatinate of POLOCZKO.

IT lies in the N. E. Part of *Lithuania*, has *Muſcovy* on the N. and E. and the Palatinate of *Vitebsko* on the S. E. It is ſo call'd from the chief Town, on the Confluence of the *Dwina* and *Poleſa*, in Lat. 55 ½. Long. 48, according to Mr. *Moll*; but *Jaillot* places it in 53 ½. It was formerly very conſiderable;

Digitized by Google

ble; but in 1562, *John Basilowitz*, Great Duke of *Muscovy*, took it, and carry'd away most of the Inhabitants. *Stephen Battori* recover'd it in 1579, together with the whole Territory. It was formerly a Dutchy, and subject only to its own Princes. A *Russian* Prelate resides here. The Jesuits have a fair College here, built and endow'd by *Stephen Battori*. It has two Castles upon the *Dwina*, where the *Polesia* falls into it. It is the Bulwark of *Lithuania* against the *Muscovites*, who besieg'd it in vain in the last Wars. 2. *Usace*, 12 *English* Miles from *Polocz*, on a River of its own Name. 3. *Disna*, on the *Dwina*, tolerably fortified: It lies 24 *English* Miles from *Polocz*. 4. *Drissa*, upon the *Dwina*, 45 *English* Miles N. W. from *Polocz*.

The Senators of this Palatinate are, the Palatine and Castellan of *Polocz*.

The Arms are the same with those of *Lithuania*, with a *P* side-ways in the middle of the Coat.

CHAP. XVI.

SAMOGITIA.

IT is divided into three Governments or Captainships: It has *Lithuania*, the Palatinates of *Vilna* and *Troki*, on the S. E. *Courland* and *Semigallia* on the N. the *Baltick* on the W. and *Ducal Prussia* on the S. W. The *Estiens* were the ancient Inhabitants. This Province takes its Name from its Situation, which is low and marshy; for the Word *Samogitæ* signifies so much. It abounds with Lakes and inaccessible Mountains, and is much over-run with Woods, which afford great Quantities of Honey, purer than that of *Lithuania* or *Livonia*. Their Ploughs are wholly of Wood; and tho their Soil be fat and stiff, they are fond of those Wooden Ploughs to a Superstition. One of their Staroſta's design'd to introduce Iron Plough-shares; but the Season not proving so warm as formerly, they imputed it to the Change of their Ploughs; so that he was forc'd to allow them their former Ploughs, to prevent an Insurrection. Their Horses are very swift, but generally so small, that one would wonder they endure so much Fatigue. *Vitoldus*, Duke of *Lithuania*, in 1404, gave this Country to the *Teutonick* Knights; but in 1408, it was taken from them. After *Jagello*'s Death, in 1446, by a Treaty with *Poland*, they were possess'd again of this Dutchy; but in 1525, when *Albert* of *Brandenburgh* was made Hereditary Duke of *Prussia*, it fell to the Crown of *Poland*. In 1655, when the *Muscovites* had over-run the Palatinate of *Troki* with Fire and Sword, they durst not enter the vast Forrests of *Samogitia*. In the late Wars with *Sweden*, it was almost entirely ruin'd.

Of their MANNERS, RELIGION, *&c.*

MOst of the Inhabitants differ little in Manners, Habit or Language, from the *Lithuanians*; yet some of them still retain Part of their old Pagan Idolatry, which was the most ridiculous of any in *Europe*, especially in the Deserts, where they pay Devotion to a Four-footed Serpent, under the Name of *Givoste*. Few Families here are without Serpents for their Houshold-Gods, to whom they pay more than ordinary Veneration, tho' they profess Christianity. The Manner of the Pagan Sacrifices here about the End of *October* was as follows; Men, Women, Children, and Servants, met at the Place appointed, where a Cloth was spread upon Straw, with Loaves set in due Order, and between each Loaf a large Pot of Beer; then Beasts of divers kinds, and of both Sexes, were sacri-

Digitized by Google

fic'd after the ancient Cuſtom thus; Firſt the *Augur*, or Prieſt, after having mumbled over ſome Words, ſtrikes them on the Back, Belly, &c. with a Rod; then all that are preſent follow his Example, crying out, O *Zimiennick!* (for ſo they call their God) *Theſe Offerings we make to thee for protecting us ſo mercifully hitherto, and we moſt humbly implore thee to have the like Compaſſion on us for the future, and to preſerve us from Fire, Sword, Peſtilence, and our Enemies.* Which being ſaid, they immediately fall to eat, but firſt cut off a Bit from every Plate, and throw the Pieces about the Room, crying, O *Zimiennick! Graciouſly partake of our Sacrifices, and favour thy Adorers.* After which they eat and drink heartily, and ſo the Ceremony concludes. Theſe Sacrifices are ſtill obſerv'd by the Country People in ſeveral Places of *Lithuania* and *Ruſſia*. Chriſtianity was firſt preach'd here by *Meinardus* in 1200.

The Houſes of the Boors are low, and built long-ways, and for the moſt part of Wood, near Lakes or Rivers: They have an Hearth in the middle, and but one Room, which ſerves themſelves and their Cattle. The better Sort drink out of Horn Cups, and eat out of Wooden Platters. They have Plenty of extraordinary White Honey in their Woods, but little Wax; and they have alſo abundance of Elks.

The Length of *Samogitia* from E. to W. is 140 *Engliſh* Miles; but it is not ſo broad: It has no Palatinate, but 3 Captainſhips. The Senators are, the Biſhop, the Great Captain, or *Staroſt*, and the Caſtellan of *Samogitia*.

The firſt Government or Captainſhip is *ROZIENE*:

Whoſe chief Town is *Roſenia*, in Lat. 55 ½. Long. 41 ½. 'Tis ſmall, and ill built, and lies on the River *Dubiſt*, 48 *Engliſh* Miles N. from *Kowna*, 120 S. from *Riga*, and 108 W. from *Vilna*. The Aſſemblies of the Province are kept here.

2. *The Captainſhip of MIDNICK.*

The chief Town is of the ſame Name, and is the Seat of the Biſhop of *Samogitia*, who is Suffragan to the Archbiſhop of *Gneſna*. It is better built than the former, and ſeated near the Fountains of the River *Wirwitz*, 25 Miles N. W. from *Roziene*. 2. *Kowna*, on the River *Memel*, famous for a College of Jeſuits, and ſeveral conſiderable Monaſteries. This Town was formerly much frequented by *German* Merchants, who built many ſplendid Houſes of Stone and Brick, which the Inhabitants have imitated, and in ſome Things excelled.

3. *The Government of PONIEWISS.*

The chief Towns are, *Poniewiſs* and *Birza*.

The Senators of the Province of *Samogitia* are, the Biſhop, Staroſta, and Caſtellan.

Of LIVONIA.

SEeing a very inconſiderable Part of this Country belongs to *Poland*, we refer the Deſcription of it till we come to *Sweden*. *Dunsburg*, a ſtrong Town on the *Dwina*, is the only conſiderable Place in *Poliſh Livonia*; yet it has 3 Senators, *viz.* the Biſhop, Palatine, and Caſtellan of *Livonia*.

CHAP.

Digitized by Google

CHAP. XVII.

COURLAND.

THE Dutchy of *Courland*, which comprehends the Provinces of *Courland* and *Semigallia*, is bounded on the N. and W. by the *Baltick*, on the S. E. by the Great Dutchy of *Lithuania*, on the N. E. by *Livonia*, and on the S. by the Dutchy and Province of *Samogitia*. Its Length is, from *Memel* in *Prussia* to *Riga* in *Livonia*, about 200 *English* Miles. The Breadth is different; from the *Baltick* to *Lithuania* and *Samogitia* being in some Places 30, and in others but 24 Leagues.

Of the SOIL.

THis Dutchy is a plain champagne fruitful Country, and has always been well inhabited: It has many Woods. The Corn of *Courland* and *Livonia* is more valued by the *Dutch* than that of *Poland*, because it is better prepar'd here than in other Countries; for they dry their Corn in the Straw, as we do Malt, and afterwards thrash both together: But this consumes a great deal of Wood; therefore the King of *Sweden* has forbid it to be practis'd in his Dominions. According to some, *Courland*, *Semigallia*, and the District of *Pilten*, lie from Long. 45 to 50. and from Lat. 56 Deg. 5 Min. to 57 Deg. 5 Min. But Mr. *Moll* makes it from Long. 40 to 46

The Commodities of *Courland* are much the same with those of *Poland*, as Flax, Hemp, Honey, and Linseed, of which many Ship-loads are sent abroad; Tar, Masts, Timber of all Sorts, Pot-Ashes, Goat-Skins, *&c.* They have Plenty of Black Cattle and Horses. They carry their Goods down the *Dwina* to *Riga*, and export them by the *Baltick*. Many Authors say, That Herring-fishing was on these Coasts till 1313. after which they went to the *Danish* Coasts, then to those of *Norway*, and at last to the Coasts of *Great Britain*.

The RELIGION *of* Courland.

THE first Efforts to convert *Livonia* and *Courland* to the Christian Faith were made by *Ansgarius*, the *Danish* and *Swedish* Apostle, as *Adam* of *Bremen* informs us: Afterwards, about the End of the 12th Century, by the *Danish* King's Order, a certain Merchant built a Church there, but with little Effect, till *Waldemar* II. a succeeding King of that Nation, founded a Bishoprick in that Country: But Christianity gain'd little Ground here till about 1180, when *Meinhard de Segeberg* of *Lubeck* made further Advances in it, and ordain'd Bishop of *Livonia*, (which then comprehended *Courland*) by the Archbishop of *Bremen*.

To him succeeded *Berthold*, a *French Cistertian* Abbot, who in 1194 began to build *Riga*, and was Archbishop of it; but was kill'd the same Year in a Battle against the Infidels. Next one *Albert* was chosen in 1194, in whose Time the Order of *Livonian* Knights was instituted by the Pope, to further the Progress of Christianity here. The Provincial Master of the Order was chosen by the Great Chapter of *Prussia*. The Knights were called the *Order of Sword-Bearers*, and their Habits and Arms were a White Mantle, with a Sword on the Breast in *Pale*, and a Star *Gules* in Chief: But after their joining with the *Teutonick* Order, they took also their Habit and Cross.

Religion continued on the same Foot here till 1561, that *Gotthard Ketler*, then Master of the *Livonian* Order, turn'd Protestant.

The

Digitized by Google

The People are generally Lutherans; but there are a few Papists and Calvinists.

The late Duke, at the King of *Poland*'s Request, gave Leave to build two Churches for the Papists, one at *Mittaw*, the other at *Goldingen*. The Jesuits pretended to have bought the Curacy of *Mittaw*, and settled there; but the College was lately demolish'd; yet they still continue in the Country.

The Dutchesses of *Courland* have since 1645 been always Calvinists, and had a Church at *Mittaw*, where the Calvinists of *Livonia*, and the *English* Merchants of *Riga*, come to worship, there being no Liberty allow'd the Calvinists in the King of *Sweden*'s Dominions except at *Stockholm*, where the *French* Protestants have a Church.

Since the Reformation, there has been no Schism among them: The *Greeks* are tolerated, and also the *Unti*, who own the Pope; but the *Sociniani* are not tolerated. Some *Jews* from *Poland* and *Lithuania* have crept in here. The Clergy have no Tythes, but Land, and they have Money from the People when they confess. In some Places the Duke, and in others the Nobility, are Patrons of Churches.

The Families of the Gentry are very ancient, have great Privileges, and are exceeding jealous of suffering any upstart Nobleman to come among them; for they esteem nothing so much as ancient Families and Creations. There is scarce a Gentleman of Note who has not been a considerable Officer abroad or at home. The best Officers in *Poland* are generally *Courlanders*. Some of them are Princes and Counts of the Empire, and there's scarce a Family but may be Knights of *Malta*, because of their Antiquity. They enjoy the Privileges of Nobles in *Poland*, of which many Foreigners of great Quality have been ambitious, as the Duke of *Saxony*, who was in 1652 created a *Polish* Nobleman. In 1568, the Marquis of *Huntly*, in *Scotland*, was made a Marquis of *Poland*, and is the only one there.

Of the ancient State of this Country.

ABout the 9th Century, *Courland* was subject to *Sweden*, and paid them a small Tribute; but was not possess'd by 'em.

Baron *Blomberg*, the late Duke of *Courland*'s Minister, says, That *Courland* was not totally subdued till 1488, when it was conquer'd by the *Teutonick* Knights, who some Time before were sent thither by *Volquinus*, the 2d Great Master, tho' it had been attempted frequently; for in 1248, their 5th Master, *Detericus a Groningben*, took several Towns from them; upon which the *Courlanders*, fearing they might be forc'd to embrace Christianity, submitted.

In 1250, the 6th Master of the Order, *Andrew a Stuckland*, attack'd them so vigorously, that the *Semigallian* Pagans submitted to pay Tribute, and afterwards, by his Perswasion, *Mindog*, Duke of *Lithuania* and *Courland*, turn'd Christian, and was crown'd King of *Lithuania* by *Henry* Bishop of *Culm*, and *Albert* Archbishop of *Riga*, by Order from Pope *Innocent* IV. and among other Provinces, he restor'd *Courland* to the *Livonian* Order in 1252.

But notwithstanding this Concession, the *Courlanders* were not easily subjected or converted; for the following Masters of the Order had constant Wars with them about their Religion: But in 1488, the 17th Provincial Master, *Conrade Herzogenstein*, subdued the sturdy *Semigallians*; yet they gave frequent Disturbance to the Order afterwards.

After him they had 4 Absolute, instead of Provincial Masters. In 1513, *Walter Plettenburg*, Absolute Master, upon *Albert* Marquis of *Brandenburgh*'s resigning his Order to *Sigismundus Augustus*, King of *Poland*, obtain'd Leave from *Albert* to be free from his Subjection.

In the Time of *William Plettenburg*, Absolute Master, *Luther*'s Doctrine prevail'd in *Courland* and *Livonia*, particularly at *Riga*, *Revel*, *Dorpt*, &c.

The last Absolute Master was *Gothofred Ketler*, in whose Time, those Provinces not being able to resist the *Muscovites* under *John Basilowitz*, they divided into two Parts, of which *Revel* and *Esthonia* put themselves under the Protection of *Sweden*, and the rest united to *Poland*, under *Ketler*, who was thereupon made Hereditary Duke of *Courland* and *Semigallia* in 1558, by *Sigismundus Augustus*, King of *Poland*, on Condition that they should be held in Fee of the Republick. He was accordingly invested with them

Digitized by Google

them in 1561. and upon renouncing his Pretenſions to *Livonia*, had the ſame Privileges that were granted to *Albert* Marquis of *Brandenburgh*.

He was ſucceeded by his eldeſt Son *Frederick* in 1587, who dying without Iſſue, the Dukedom came to his Brother *William* in 1602, who returning from Baniſhment, was receiv'd by the *Courlanders* with great Joy. This Duke had but one Son, who was Godſon to our King *James* I. After his Death, his Son Duke *James* inherited the two Dutchies of *Courland* and *Semigallia* in 1639. This Prince was much given to building of Ships, and had 30 or 40 well rigg'd, half of them being Men of War, from 80, 50, 40, to 30 Guns. So that *Charles Guſtavus* of *Sweden* us'd to ſay, *My Couſin the Duke of* Courland *has too much for a Duke, and too little for a King. Guſtavus* afterwards broke the Neutrality agreed on, without any Ground, ſurpris'd and ſeiz'd the Duke and his Family, rifled his Treaſury, ruin'd his Country, and diſpers'd his Ships; by which the Duke ſaid he loſt Six Millions and a half of Rix-Dollars. His Ships diſcover'd the River *Semigal* in *Guinea*, and the Iſland of *Tobago*, one of the *Caribbes*, then uninhabited, where he built a Fort, and call'd it *Fort James*, after his own Name. He was at a vaſt Charge to cultivate and fortify this Iſland, which he enjoy'd without any Interruption for many Years.

But at length one *Lambſon*, a *Zeelander*, a very rich Man, one of the States of *Holland*, getting Poſſeſſion of a Corner of it, was, after much Diſpute, ſuffer'd to plant there, on paying a yearly Tribute to the Duke; but taking Advantage of the Wars betwixt the *Swedes* and *Poles*, and of the Duke's Impriſonment, he at laſt diſpoſſeſs'd him of the whole.

The *Dutch* being thus in Poſſeſſion, kept it, and the Duke, after many fruitleſs Endeavours with the *Lamoſones* and the States, finding neither of them inclinable to a Reſtitution, applied himſelf to King *Charles* II. of *Great Britain*, for Aſſiſtance, ſubmitted the Iſland to his Protection, and held it by Way of Grant from the Crown of *England*. Whereupon a Treaty was formally concluded; upon which *The King granted the Duke, and his Succeſſors, full Liberty of Trade and Commerce for ſuch Ships as properly belong'd to him and his Heirs, (but not to thoſe of his Subjects) in any Rivers or Havens within the Dominions of his Majeſty on the Coaſt of* Guinea; *as alſo to trade for Goods not exceeding the Value of* 12000 *l. Sterling per* Annum, *according to the Price they were firſt bought for on thoſe Coaſts from whence they were exported, with full Libe ty to build one or more Store-houſes to lay up Goods, under the Caſtles and Forts belonging to his ſaid Majeſty or Subjects on thoſe Coaſts; to hold and enjoy the ſaid Liberties as long as Friendſhip, Amity, and a good Underſtanding, continued between the ſaid King and the Duke, and their Succeſſors. And in Conſideration of this Conceſſion and Grant, the Duke made over to his Majeſty, his Heirs and Succeſſors, the Fort of* St. Andrew *in* Guinea, *and all other Forts, Fortifications and Sconces there, belonging to the ſaid Duke, together with all Guns, Bullets and Powder, and other Inſtruments of War belonging to the ſame.*

And the Duke agreed, That he and his Heirs ſhould pay 3 per Cent. *for all Goods imported or exported from any of his Majeſty's Ports in* Guinea.

Moreover, his Majeſty granted to the ſaid Duke, and his Heirs, &c. *that Iſland of* Tobago, *together with all Lands, Havens, Creeks, Rivers, and Profits to the ſame belonging, to be held and enjoy'd under the King's Protection.*

Provided always, That the ſaid Duke, &c. *ſhould not ſuffer any other beſide his Subjects, and the Subjects of the King, to abide in the Iſland, to ſettle Plantations, or build Houſes; but the King's Subjects ſhould have all the Privileges of the Duke's Subjects. Moreover, the Duke agreed and promis'd, That neither he nor his Heirs,* &c. *nor his Subjects, nor any for their Uſe, ſhould export any Merchandize or Product of the ſaid Iſland of* Tobago, *or import, otherwiſe than out of, or into ſome Ports belonging to* England *and* Courland, *or the Ports of the City of* Dantzick.

Moreover, for acknowledging that the Duke of Courland *did hold and enjoy the ſaid Iſland from his Majeſty, it was further provided and agreed, That when, and as often as the King of* Great Britain, *his Heirs,* &c. *ſhould ſo require it, or when he or they were engaged in a War againſt any other King, Prince or State, except the King of* Poland, *the Dukes of* Courland, *at their own proper Charge, from Time to Time, ſhould bring or cauſe to be brought, one good Mon-*

of

Digitized by Google

of War, furniſh'd with 40 great Iron Guns, to ſuch Ports, Station or Place, which his ſaid Majeſty, &c. ſhould name; into which Ship his Majeſty ſhould put Commanders and Seamen, and ſupply them with Food and Wages, under the Conduct and at the Expence of the ſaid King, ſo long as the ſaid Ship ſhould abide in his or their Service, which at one Time ſhould never exceed the Limits of a Year. For the Teſtimony and undoubted Confirmation of this Treaty, Charles II. *King of* Great Britain, *and the Duke of* Courland, *ſign'd and ſeal'd the above nam'd Treaty, Nov.* 17. 1664.

Upon this, the King wrote a Letter to the States, but without Succeſs, for they favour'd *Lambſon*'s Pretenſions. Afterwards the Count *d'Estree*, the *French* Admiral, took the Iſland, where he made a miſerable Slaughter of the *Dutch*, and oblig'd them to quit the Poſſeſſion of the Iſland.

Several Merchants and others ſollicited the King of *France* to grant them the conquer'd Iſland; but he refus'd it, declaring that it belong'd to a Neutral Prince, who did no body any Harm.

In 1680, King *Charles* II. of *Great Britain*, ſent a Letter to the Governor of *Barbadoes*, commanding him to aſſiſt the Subjects of the ſaid Duke to regain and repoſſeſs the Iſland; but the Duke's Ship which carried the Letter was betray'd to the Privateers of *Algiers* by the Commander. The Duke however ſent a Governor afterwards to *Tobago*, till, by the Aſſiſtance of the *Engliſh*, he might be able to eſtabliſh a Colony there.

In 1681, the Duke enter'd into a Contract with Captain *Pointz*, and granted him and his Company very advantagious Terms, *viz.* That the *Engliſh* under his Command ſhould poſſeſs 120000 Acres of Ground in that Iſland.

Duke *James* was ſucceeded by his eldeſt Son *Frederic Caſimir*, who died in *February*, 1698. and was ſucceeded by his eldeſt Son *Frederic Caſimir* II the preſent Duke, who was then not above 6 Years of Age.

The Dukes of *Courland* are Vaſſals to the Crown of *Poland*, and when any new King is elected, the Duke is oblig'd to ſend his Envoy to receive Inveſtiture, by having a Standard deliver'd him, with the Arms of *Poland* on one Side, and thoſe of *Courland* on the other. After which the Envoy is permitted to ſit down on the Throne, on the King's Left Hand, to cover his Head, and has great Civilities paid him.

This Duke has all the *Regalia* that the *German* Sovereign Princes have, and has Place in the Diet of *Germany*, above the Dukes of *Mecklenburg*. He coins Money in his own Name, and has ſupreme Juriſdiction over the Noblemen of his Country; only in ſome extraordinary Caſes, they may appeal to the Court of *Poland*.

He has a great Demeſne, of which his Revenue chiefly conſiſts, and keeps a very pretty Court, having all his Officers of State as other Princes; and he and his Nobility are able to raiſe 18000 Men.

This Dutchy, in caſe the Duke want Heirs-Male, is to revert to the Crown of *Poland*.

The Nobility and People are much inclin'd to Hoſpitality, which was the old Character *Tacitus* gave the *Germans* in his Book *De Moribus Germanorum*.

The Diet of the States is conven'd by the Duke as often as Affairs of State require it. He ſends his Letters of Summons to all his Staroſta's, with a Schedule of the Points to be debated, and requires them to cauſe Deputies or Repreſentatives of the Gentry to be forthwith elected in their reſpective Juriſdictions; upon which they are choſen, and furniſh'd with Inſtructions from their Electors how they ſhall behave themſelves, in like Manner as the Deputies of *Poland*.

Courland is divided into two Governments.

1. *The Government of* GOLDINGEN.

Goldingen is the chief Town of this Diſtrict, and of all *Courland*: It was formerly one of the Hans-Towns. It is ſeated on the River *Metaw*, 98 *Engliſh* Miles W. from *Windaw*, 60 S. W. from *Mittaw*, and 75 from *Riga*, in Lat. 56½. Long. 41. This City has a large Juriſdiction. 2. *Windaw*, call'd by the *Poles Kieſcz*, is a City and Palatinate: It has a Caſtle on the Sea, which was formerly the Reſidence of the *Livonian* Knights, and the Place where they conven'd their Aſſemblies: It has uſually a Garriſon of *Poles*, under the Command of the Duke of

Digitized by Google

Courland. It is one of the Sea Ports of *Courland*, and trades in Pitch, Tar, Wax, &c. 3. *Libau*, where the Duke's Ships are built, and has the greateſt Trade of any of his Towns. 4. *Angernund*, in a Bay of the *Baltick*, between *Riga* and *Windaw*. 5. *Pilten*, 22 *Engliſh* Miles N.W. from *Goldingen*, is a Palatinate, whoſe Gentry being Proteſtants, and offering to ſubmit to the King of *Poland*'s Protection, he endeavour'd to re-eſtabliſh a Popiſh Biſhop over them; upon which they alter'd their Reſolution, and forthwith ſubmitted to the Duke of *Courland*. They are the richeſt Gentry in all *Courland*. The principal Families are thoſe of *Meydel*, *Beher*, *Sacken*, *Mandewill*, &c. 6. *Durben*, S. from *Goldingen* Their other Towns are, *Erdwalen Grubin*, *Tuczkow*, *Frawenburgh*, *Uſchwend*, *Talſen*, *Candaw*, *Hoſenpot*, *Oendange*, and *Tuccum*, which belongs to the Government of *Tuccum*.

2. *SEMIGALLIA, which has* 2 *Captainſhips.*

1. The Captainſhip of *Mittaw*, the chief Town, which is ſituated on the *Mutza*, 22 *Engliſh* Miles S. from *Riga*, 16 N. from the Borders of *Samogitia*, and 60 Miles E. from *Goldingen*. It lies in Lat. 56½. Long. 43. It is the uſual Reſidence of the Dukes of *Courland*, and their Burial-place. They have a very fine Caſtle on the River *Aa*, which might be made navigable, if thoſe of *Riga* did not choak up its Mouth. It is well fortified with two Baſtions, ſurrounded by Marſhes, and defended by a ſtrong Gariſon. The City is large, and contains about 12000 Inhabitants. The Streets are no pav'd, becauſe they wanted Stone, till of late that they have found Quarries; ſo that it is now fortified with many Bulwarks. It was twice taken by the *Swedes*; but has been ſince regain'd, and is at preſent ſubject to its Duke. 2. *Bauske*, another ſtrong City, with a Caſtle, which was taken by Storm by *Guſtavus Adolphus*. They have a numerous Gariſon here. 3. *Selburg*, the chief Town of a Government Other Towns are, *Egypten*, on the Borders of *Lithuania*, *Dubro*, *Dalen*. *Schudding*, *Pilkal*, *Beher*, *Nerſten*, *Salas*, *Pozwole*, *Radziwilluki* and *Lunka*.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of SWEDEN.

OLaus Rudbeck is very poſitive, that this is the moſt ancient Kingdom of *Europe*, and that other *European* Nations are Colonies from thence; but few will believe either his Account, or that of *Joannes Magnus*, who fancies the *Swedes* have their Name and Deſcent from *Suenno*, the Son of *Magog*, the Grandchild of *Noah*, by his Son *Japhet*; but this Folly of tracing the Original of Kingdoms higher than is conſiſtent with Hiſtory, is not peculiar to the *Swediſh* Hiſtorians: Thoſe of moſt other Nations have their Share of it. *Puffendorf*, in his Hiſtory of *Sweden*, mentions the ſame Opinion of the Antiquity of his native Country; and that after the Deluge, it was inhabited before any other on this Side the *Mediterranean*. He thinks, their Curioſity to know the Reaſons of the Obliquity of the Sun's Courſe, and of the Length of the Days in Summer, might induce them to travel ſo far North: But at laſt tells us, he would not oblige any Man to take up with his Conjectures, and indeed they ſeem to be but ill founded; for it is certain, that all ancient Colonies were from the E. and S. to the W. and N. and that when the more Southerly and fruitful Places were ſtock'd

Digitized by Google

with People, ſome were oblig'd to ſeek their Fortune in the Northern Countries.

The moſt probable Account is, That the *Swedes* had their Name from the *Suiones*, mention'd by *Tacitus* in *Lib. de Moribus Germ. Cap.* 44 & 45. whom he places beyond the *Suevi*, who dwelt in the N. of *Germany*, betwixt the *Elb* and the *Weiſſel*. He ſays, the Seat of the *Suiones* was in the Ocean, and beyond them, and that there was a ſtill Sea, which he thought ſurrounded the Earth. This Account agrees beſt to the *Peninſula* of *Scandinavia*.

Loccenius Antiq. Lib 1. *Cap* 1. ſays, the *Swedes* were ſo called from their Military Bravery; for *Suen* in their Language ſignifies a ſprightly Youth. *Scheffer us*, and others of their Antiquaries, are of this Opinion.

Sweden is bounded on the N. by *Norwegian Lapland*, on the N E. by *Muſcovite Lapland*, on the E. and S. E. by *Muſcovy*, on the S. by *Poland* and the *Baltick*, on the S. W. by the *Sound* and the Gulph of *Schaggar Rauk*, and on the W. by *Norway*, from which it is ſeparated by unpaſſable Mountains

The Latitude is from the moſt Southerly Part of *Schonen* in 56 Deg. to the Borders of *Norwegian Lapland* in 69. The Longitude from the moſt Weſterly Place of the Government of *Bahus* in 32. to the Eaſt Side of the Lake *Onega* in 35. according to Mr. *Moll*; but in 62 according to *Jaillot's* Maps, with whom *Ozanam* agrees; for he makes *Archangel* in the ſame Longitude that *Jaillot's* Maps do.

The Extent of this Kingdom in Length, according to *Jaillot*, is 900 *Engliſh* Miles. Mr. *Moll* makes it 660. *Du Pleſſis* reckons its Breadth, from the S Parts of *Schonen* to the N. Sea, 340 Leagues, or 1020 *Engliſh* Miles; and its Length, from the Weſterly Parts of the Government of *Bahus*, to the Eaſterly Places of *Ingria*, 780. *Brietius* makes the Breadth, from *Chriſtianopel* in Lat. 56. to the Mouth of the River *Paes*, that runs into the Northern Ocean in Lat. 70. 840 *Engliſh* Miles: But *Brietius* is miſtaken, when he makes *Chriſtianopel* the moſt Southerly Place of *Sweden*, and likewiſe in making its Latitude 56 Deg. when it is more than 57. and by extending its Breadth to the Mouth of the River *Paes*, he makes a great Part of *Norwegian Lapland* belong to *Sweden*. He makes the Length of it 750 Miles. The true Breadth is, from Deg. 56 to 69, 780. But many Abatements are to be allow'd for ſeveral Seas, many great Lakes, ſome of 'em above 80 *Engliſh* Miles long, and 20 broad, which, together with the Rocks, Woods, Heaths and Moraſſes, make the habitable Part of this large Kingdom not very great.

Of the ancient INHABITANTS.

THE Ancients made *Scandinavia* an Iſland of unknown Extent; and all other Places N. of the *Baltick*, which *Tacitus* calls *Mare Suevicum*, they make Iſlands: But *Mela* and *Pliny* call the *Baltick*, *Sinus Codanus*; and *Ptolemy* calls that Part of it into which the *Weiſſel* falls, *Sinus Venedicus*. *Pliny* quotes *Xenophon Lampſacenus*, who ſays, That *Scandinavia*, which he call'd *Baltia*, was an Iſland of vaſt Extent. *Jornandes de Reb. Get. Lib* 37 *Cap.* 2. names it *Scanzia*, and ſays, it was a Nurſery of People, and Seminary of Nations; and that the *Goths*, who overran the *Roman* Empire, came from thence.

The *Hilleviones* inhabited the E. and S. Parts of the *Dofrine* Mountains, which ſeparate *Norway* from *Sweden*. *Pliny* calls thoſe Mountains *Sevo*, or *Sulvo*, and ſays, they are as large as the *Riphean* Mountains. Their Seat probably was in *Schonen*, *Bleking*, *Halland*, and the neighbouring Places; for he ſays, they poſſeſs'd 500 Villages.

We have ſpoken already of the *Suiones*. The *Scritofinni* of *Paulus Diaconus*, the ſame with the *Scretofenna* of *Jornandes*, and the *Scrithifinni* of *Procopius*, probably dwelt in *Finmark* and *Norwegian Lapland*. *Pliny*, *Lib.* 14. *Cap.* 13. ſpeaks of a large Iſland, which he calls *Enningia*, but ſhould be read *Finningia*. He calls the Inhabitants *Fenni*, which is the modern *Finland*. *Brietius* and *Cluverius* make the Gulph of *Riga* *Pliny's* *Sinus Clilipanus*, and others make it that of *Livonia*. The *Carbones* were planted in *Carellia*, and the Country betwixt the Lakes *Ladoga* and *Onega*. The *Scyrri* reſided on the E. Side of the Gulph of *Bothnia*; and the *Pharonæ* lay N. from them, on the W. of the *White Sea*, anciently called *Sinus Grandivicus*.

Pliny ſpeaks of many Iſlands in the *Baltick* that were viſited by the *Roman* Arms, and

Digitized by Google

and ſays, the moſt remarkable was *Faboria*, or *Burchania*, which probably is that now called *Borcum*.

The *Goths* are by all the *Swediſh* Hiſtorians plac'd in *Scandia*, and reckon'd the Poſterity of *Magog*, the Father of all the *European Scythians*, who in *Ezek.* 28. 2. is call'd the Chief Prince of *Moſech* and *Tubal*, or the Prince of *Rhos*, *Meſech*, and *Thubal*. *Bochart* ſays, the Hebrew will allow this Reading, and that the 70 Interpreters, *Symmachus*, *Theodotion*, and *Proclus*, read it ſo; and approves of St. *Ambroſe*'s Conjecture, who from this Place infers, that the *Goths* had the ſame Original with other *Scythians*.

Cluverius makes the *Gothini*, who dwelt near the Fountains of the *Weiſſel*, to be thoſe that over-run the *Roman* Empire, and to be the ſame with the *Goths*, and calls *Jornandes*'s Account fabulous, who places the *Goths* in *Scandia*: But *Cluverius* is thought to have done this out of Emulation and Reſpect to his own Country; for his Opinion ſeems not probable, for Reaſons which ſhall be mention'd anon. The Account of the *Goths*, that bids faireſt for Truth, is, That they were call'd by Strangers *Got*, or *Guten*, for their Humanity or Hoſpitality, which is obſerv'd in the Northern People by *Tacitus*: And *Howell* obſerves. That others were nam'd *Zuadi*, and *Thaifal*, for the contrary. Whether the *Goths* were planted here before the Arrival of *Woden*, is not certain, though ſome will have it ſo, and that they ſent Colonies to *Aſiatick Scythia*, and built a City call'd *Aſgard*, near the Lake *Meotis*, where *Woden* was King; but came from thence, and ſettled in *Scandia*. Whatever may be in this, it is certain that both *Scandia*, *Pontus*, and *Thrace*, &c. had People of the ſame Name; and that on the Sea-Coaſts of the *Baltick*, they ſpeak at this Day the Language which was ſpoken by the ancient *Getæ*, who liv'd about *Pontus*, and the Northerly Parts of *Aſia*, as the Account which *Ovid* gives of the Language of that People proves, and the Humours and Manners of the *Scandian Goths* did agree with thoſe of the *Aſiatick*; but the Queſtion is, Whether the *Scandian Goths* were Colonies of thoſe about *Pontus*, and the *Palus Meotis*, &c.? Or if the *Aſiatick Goths* derive their Origine from *Scandia*? The laſt is moſt probable, becauſe the vaſt Countries in *Scandia*, in the Northerly Parts of *Germany*, and the Iſlands ſpeaking that Language, ſeem to prove, that thoſe of *Aſia* being few in Number, compar'd to the *Goths* in *Scandia*, and the neighbouring Places, were Colonies from thence. Beſides, the People that liv'd near the *Aſiatick Goths* ſpoke a quite different Language, and were more numerous by much than they. *Andreas Buræus*, a *Swede*, ſays to this Purpoſe, That the Laws of the *Weſtrogoths*, which were made about the Time when Colonies of thoſe People went to *Aſia*, *Thrace*, &c. ordain, That no *Goth*, who ſhall leave his native Country *Scandia*, and plant in *Greece*, *Thrace*, *Pontus*, and other Places abroad, ſhall have any Right or Pretenſion to the Lands or Goods they left in *Scandia*, unleſs they return and ſettle in their own Country. He ſays, thoſe Laws are much the ſame with *Iſidore*'s Laws of the *Viſigoths* in *Spain*; and concludes, that they were borrow'd from thoſe Laws of the *Goths*, their Countrymen, in *Scandia*; and that the *Swediſh* Hiſtory, and thoſe of other Nations, ſhew, that many went from *Scandia* to viſit their Friends and Relations in *Thrace*, &c. *Jornandes*, in his Hiſtory of the *Goths*, writes, That *Rudolphus*, the 85th King of *Sweden*, left his own Kingdom, and viſited *Theoderick*, King of the *Goths* in *Italy*; and *Valeſius* out of *Laxius* tells us, That it was ordinary for many from *Sweden* to travel to *Illyricum*, *Italy*, and other Places, to viſit the *Goths*, their Countrymen. To prove this Point farther, *Buræus* ſays, 'tis evident from Hiſtory, That after the *Goths* ſettled in *Spain*, they entertain'd a Correſpondence with the *Goths* in *Scandzia*, as *Sweden* was called in thoſe barbarous Times; and that ſeveral Noblemen from thence ſubſcrib'd the 8th Council of *Toledo*. Another great Proof of this is, That the Name of *Goths* continues in no Place except *Sweden*, where we have *Gothland* in the *Peninſula*, and an Iſland of that Name.

Grotius, in *Prolegomenis ad Hiſtor. Gothorum*, *Vandalorum*, &c. conjectures, That about 300 Years before our Saviour, the *Goths* went out of *Scandia*, or *Gothland*, into the Continent of *Germany*, where they left a Colony, which *Tacitus* calls *Gothones*. Before that Time, they had Peopled the Iſlands of the *Baltick*, and the Sea Coaſts,

Digitized by Google

from whence they made Inroads into *Dania*, and the *Palus Meotis*, before the Time of the *Antonini*. *Spartianus* ſays, the *Gothi* and *Getæ* were the ſame People. *Jornandes* thinks, that in the Reign of *Philip*, they came into *Moeſia* and *Thrace*; and thoſe who reſided in *Moeſia*, were called *Gothi Minores*. *Grotius* is poſitive, they had the Name of *Oſtrogothi* and *Weſtr gothi* in their own Country, which is probable from *Jornandes*'s Deſcription of *Scandi*. The *Jutes*, *Getes*, or *Goths*, who with the *Saxons* and *Angli* conquer'd *England*, were of *Scandian* Original; and *Ptolemy* ſays, in *Scythia*, or *Cymmeria*, there were People called *Jotæ*, the ſame with the *Getæ* or *Goti*.

Procopius affirms, That the *Gepidæ* were of *Gothick* Extract. *Jornandes* does the like, and gives this Account of their Original, That *Beric*, a King of the *Goths*, with three Veſſels, ſail'd from *Scanzia*; and one of 'em ſailing ſlower than the reſt, the Crew was on that Account call'd *Gepidæ*; for that Word ſignifies ſo much. They landed in an Iſland of the *Viſtula*, and afterwards proceeded further.

Procopius is alſo of Opinion, That the *Vandali* were *Gothick* Nations, and ſpoke that Language; the Truth of which he had good Occaſion to know, for he was acquainted with *Gelomir* their King, and many of his Nobles, that were brought Priſoners to *Conſtantinople*.

The HISTORY *of* Sweden.

Rotius gives an Account of *Swediſh* Kings 3000 Years before Chriſt; which Form of Government is pretended to have continued till the 100th Year after the Foundation of *Rome*; then it became a Republick, which laſted 250 Years. Monarchy was re-eſtabliſh'd by *Erick* II ſirnam'd the *Wiſe*, who is ſaid to have had 21 Succeſſors, till *Anno Chriſti* 455. *John Magnus* continues this Liſt till the Time of *Biorn*, who was contemporary with *Charlemagne*; but it is certain, their firſt Kings were rather Judges or Captains, and each Canton of *Sweden* had one of them. It is moſt reaſonable, ſays the Author of the *Revolutions of Sweden*, to think that their Hiſtorians, in order to make a long Catalogue of Kings, made thoſe Princes that at the ſame time liv'd in different Provinces to ſucceed one another. In thoſe fabulous Times, their Hiſtorians make their Kings all Giants, Magicians or Robbers, who had no Idea of Honeſty or Virtue: Cruelty and Valour were the ſame thing among them. They thought it unworthy of their Character to marry any Princeſs, except they had firſt raviſh'd her; and none of them could pretend to Courage till they kill'd a ſavage Beaſt in View of the People, or ſurpris'd and aſſaſſinated their Enemy in his own Houſe. Such Actions entituled them to the Name of Heroes during Life, and to Deification after Death.

Puffendorf owns thoſe Antiquities of *Sweden* to be fabulous; and that the ancient *Swedes* had no *Epocha* from whence they date their Hiſtory; ſo that the Catalogue of their Kings is not Authentick. Their ancient Hiſtorians were Poets, and that Part of their Hiſtory is form'd from old Ballads and fabulous Legends. Theſe Poets embelliſh'd their Stories with Allegorical and Figurative Expreſſions, which Poſterity miſtook for Fact; and *Joannes Magnus* ſtrives to outdo *Saxo Grammaticus* in Fiction and Romance. *Meſſenius* ſays, That all their Hiſtory, before the Nativity of Chriſt, is fabulous.

They alledge, That 60 Years before Chriſt, the famous *Woden*, or *Othin*, was driven out of *Aſia* by *Pompey the Great*. After which *Woden* and his Followers conquer'd *Ruſſia*, the *Saxons* and *Danes*, and laſt of all *Norway* and *Sweden*, 24 Years before our Saviour. He kept *Sweden* for himſelf, and all the other *Scandinavian* Princes were to do him Homage. Thus for many Years after, the King of *Denmark* us'd to hold the King of *Sweden*'s Bridle, and the King of *Norway* his Stirrop. Many Northern Nations are ambitious to derive their Extraction from this *Othin*. He introduc'd the Heathen Worſhip, Witchcraft and Magick, and the Cuſtom of raiſing great Heaps of Earth on the Graves of Perſons of Note, and of engraving Funeral Inſcriptions on Rocks and Stones, which yet remain in many Places of the Country. *Frotho Jorge* ſucceeded, who is ſaid to have cover'd the Temple at *Upſal* with Gold, and ſurrounded its Pinacle with a Golden Chain. After him ſucceeded *Nirod*, *Sigtrug*, *Aſmund*, *Uffo*, *Hinding*,

Digitized by Google

Hinding, *Regner*, *Halvard*, *Helgo*, *Attilus*, *Hether*, *Roderick*, surnam'd *Singabund*, *Hegmor*, *Hogrin*, *Frick*, *Haldan*, *Sivand*, *Erick*, *Haldan*, *Ungrin*, *Reginald*. About 588, *Rodolph* was King of the *Goths* in *Scandinavia*, and defeated by the *Angles*, who poſſeſſing themſelves of that Kingdom, he fled to *Italy*, to *Theodoric* King of the *Goths*. *Frotho* ſucceeded him, and was follow'd by *Holmius*, *Suercher*, *Valander*, and *Viſtar*, who was burnt by his own Son. *Damaldar*, another King, was ſacrific'd by his Subjects to their Idol at *Upſal*. Thoſe who ſucceeded, were *Domar*, *Dagner*, *Duger*, and *Aginus*, whom his Wife hang'd. After him came *Alrick*, *Erick*, *Ingo*, *Hugler*, *Haco*, *Hrunder*, *Haequin*, *Ring*. In his Time the Battle of *Brovalla* was fought, where 30000 *Danes* and 12000 *Swedes* were kill'd. He ſacrific'd 9 of his Sons to the Idol at *Upſal* Next to him came *Egillus*, *Other*, *Odel*, *Oſtan*, *Ingword*, *Amund*, *Sivard*, and *Herot*, who was cruel to his Nobility: And for his Male-Adminiſtration, *Regner* King of *Denmark* made War upon him. When he was reduc'd to Extremity, by the Advice of his cruel Daughter, who had murther'd her Husband and his Brother, he burnt himſelf, with her and his whole Family, except his Son *Olaus*, in his own Palace; and *Regner* King of *Denmark* made his own Son *Bero*, or *Biorn*, by *Herot*'s Daughter, King of *Sweden*.

The firſt Piece of probable Hiſtory we meet with is, the Preaching of the Goſpel in *Sweden* in this *Bero*'s Reign, by *Anſgarius*, a Monk of *Corbey*, in 829, who was ſent by the Emperor *Ludovicus Probus*. The *Swedes* baniſh'd *Bero*, becauſe he would not turn Chriſtian. *Armund*, another of their Kings, perſecuted the Chriſtians, and was alſo baniſh'd: Then they invited *Olaus* from *Werweland*, who, to ſecure his Title to the Crown, marry'd his Son *Ingo* to *Regner*'s Daughter. He was converted by *Anſgarius*, and quietly poſſeſs'd the Kingdoms of the *Goths* and *Swedes*, till ſome of his Heathen Subjects ſacrific'd him to their Idol at *Upſal*. *Ingo* was kill'd in his War againſt the *Ruſſians*. After him ſucceeded *Erick Weatherbal*, who was skill'd in Witchcraft; then *Erick Segerſal*, who conquer'd *Finland*, *Courland*, *Livonia*, *Eſthen*, *Holland*, and *Schoen*, and drove King *Suens* out of *Denmark*: *Erick*'s Son *Stenchil* turn'd Chriſtian, burnt down the Idol at *Upſal*, and forbad Idolatry on Pain of Death, which ſo enrag'd his Subjects, that they burnt him and two Prieſts near *Upſal*. His Brother *Olaus*, and many of his Subjects, were converted by ſome Miniſters from *England*, who perſwaded him to grant a yearly Tribute, call'd *Romeſcot*, to the Pope, to maintain the War againſt the *Saracens*. He dethron'd the King of *Norway*, and made an Union betwixt the *Goths* and *Swedes*, who formerly had been great Enemies.

After him came his Son *Amund*, in whoſe Reign Chriſtianity flouriſh'd. His Brother *Amund Slemme*, a careleſs Prince, ſucceeded, and, with the greateſt Part of his Army, was ſlain by *Cnut*, King of *Denmark*. After his Death, the *Goths* and *Swedes* diſagreed about a Succeſſor. At length it was concluded that *Haquin*, who was then old, ſhould be King during his Life, and that *Stenchil* ſhould ſucceed. *Haquin* defeated the *Danes* in three Battles. After *Stenchil*, came *Ingo the Pious*, who deſtroy'd all Monuments of Idolatry at *Upſal*, for which his Pagan Subjects baniſh'd him, and then murther'd him in *Sbonen*. After him were *Halſtan*, *Philip*, and *Ingo*, who had no Sons, but two Daughters, *viz. Chriſtina*, who was married to St. *Erick* and *Margaret* to *Magnus* King of *Norway*. This *Ingo* was poiſon'd by the *Eaſt-Goths*.

After this the *Eaſt-Goths* choſe a King for themſelves, call'd *Ragwald Knaphaſde*: He was very ſtrong, but fooliſh, and was ſlain by the *Weſt-Goths*. The *Eaſt-Goths* elected *Suercher* II. a good King, who was murther'd by one of his Servants; then they choſe his Son *Charles*; and *Erick* was King of the *Swedes*: But they and the *Goths* being ſenſible of the Neceſſity of an Union among them, they agreed, that *Erick* ſhould rule both Kingdoms; that *Charles* ſhould ſucceed him; and that their Heirs ſhould reign by Turns. This *Erick* reduc'd the *Finns*, and oblig'd them to be Chriſtians. He collected a Body of Laws from the ancient Conſtitutions of the Kingdom, which was called *St. Erick's Law*. *Magnus*, the King of *Denmark*'s Son, ſlew him, and defeated his Forces; but the *Swedes* and *Goths*, headed by *Charles*, the Son of *Suercher*, rallied and kill'd all the *Danes*, with their King, and his Son; and thus *Charles* became alſo King of

Den-

Denmark, and reign'd with general Applauſe, till *Canut*, the Son of *Erick*, ſurpriz'd and kill'd him. He alſo routed the Forces commanded by *Koll*, the Brother of *Charles*, and kill'd himſelf upon the Spot. *Canut* reign'd ſucceſsfully 23 Years. After his Death, *Suercher*, the Son of *Charles*, was made King; but *Erick*, the Son of the laſt deceaſed King, being his Rival, the Difference was compos'd thus; *Suercher* was to be King during Life, and *Erick* to ſucceed; but *Suercher*, contrary to the Agreement, murther'd all the Sons of *Canut* except *Erick*, who fled to *Norway*, from whence returning with ſome Forces, and being join'd by the *Swedes*, he oblig'd *Suercher* to flee to *Weſt-Gothland*. *Waldemar* King of *Denmark* ſent him 12000 Men, with which he endeavour'd to recover his Kingdom, but was routed. He afterwards invaded *Weſt Gothland*, where he was defeated and ſlain. *John*, the Son of *Suercher*, ſucceeded *Erick*, who reign'd but three Years.

After his Death, *Erick the Liſper*, Son to the former *Erick*, was King. To bring the potent Family of the *Tolekungers* over to his Intereſt, he married his three Siſters to three of the Chief of them, and married one of their Daughters himſelf; but the *Tolekungers* being now more potent by this Alliance, they rebell'd, and defeated the King, who fled to *Denmark*; and being reinforc'd there, he return'd, and routed *Canut Tolekunger*, and caus'd him and his Son *Halinger* to be ſlain, which reſtor'd Peace to the Kingdom. In his Reign *Gulielmus Sabinenſis*, the Pope's Legate, firſt introduc'd the Celibacy of the Clergy here. *Erick* forc'd the *Finns* to return to their Obedience, and to profeſs Chriſtianity, in 1250. *Waldemar*, this King's Siſter's Son, was made King during his Minority, and the Adminiſtration was in the Hands of *Birger Terle*, his Father. He augmented the Laws, and govern'd with much Wiſdom and Goodneſs. This *Birger* was made a Duke, being only an *Yerl*, or Earl, before. He ruin'd the factious Family of the *Tolekungers*: He married his Son *Waldemar* to *Sophia Erick*, the King of *Denmark*'s Daughter, and founded *Stockholm*. He died in 1266, after he had been Regent 13 Years, and left 4 Sons, *viz. Waldemar* King of *Sweden*, *Magnus* Duke of *Sundermanland*, *Erick* of *Smaland*, and *Benedict* of *Finland*. *Waldemar* went in Pilgrimage to *Rome* and *Jeruſalem*, and left the Government to his Brother *Magnus*. Upon his Return, he accus'd him of a Deſign to ſet up for himſelf; and the Aſſembly of the States not being able to compoſe thoſe Differences, *Magnus* and *Erick* retir'd to *Denmark*, return'd with a great Army, routed *Waldemar*, and made him Priſoner. Upon this the States declar'd *Magnus* King of *Eaſt* and *Weſt Gothland*, and *Dalbi* fell to *Waldemar*'s Share. The *Danes* ſided with *Waldemar*, becauſe *Magnus* did not pay the Subſidies promis'd, and ſo the War was renew'd, till the *Danes* having receiv'd Satisfaction, they left *Waldemar* in the lurch, who was thereby oblig'd to reſign the Kingdom to *Magnus*.

Magnus was crown'd at *Upſal* in 1279, and aſſum'd the Title of King of the *Sweates* and *Goths*, which had not been us'd ſince the Time of *Olaus Skotkonung*. The *Tolekungers* began anew to make Diſturbances, killed *Ingemer Danſchkop*, the King's Favourite, took *Gerhard* Earl of *Holſtein*, the King's Father-in-Law, Priſoner, and beſieg'd the Caſtle of *Jenkoping*. The King diſſembled his Diſpleaſure, and made them fair Promiſes; but he afterwards accus'd them to the States of High-Treaſon, for which they were all hang'd at *Stockholm*. He died in 1288, and left the Care of the Kingdom to *Torchel Gnutſon*, who was Regent 13 Years, during his Son *Birger*'s Minority. He ſubdued *Carelia*, forc'd them to profeſs Chriſtianity, and built the Fortreſs of *Wiborg* to curb them, and took *Kekolm* from the *Ruſſians*. *Birger*, when he was of Age, married *Marota*, Daughter to *Erick* King of *Denmark*. He built the Fortreſs of *Norburgh* on the Frontiers of *Ruſſia*, which the *Ruſſians* afterwards took and demoliſh'd. He declar'd his Son *Magnus*, then but 3 Years old, his Succeſſor. His Brothers fell into Animoſities amongſt themſelves, and the King having ſeiz'd their Inheritance, they made Inroads into *Weſt-Gothland*, and diſpers'd the King's Troops; but at laſt a Peace was made, which coſt old *Torchel*, one of his Counſellors, his Head, on Pretence that he had inſtam'd the Differences betwixt them. After this the two younger Brothers aſpir'd to the Crown, ſurpriz'd the King, oblig'd him to ſurrender, and made him

Digitized by Google

him Priſoner in the Caſtle of *Nicoping*. The King's Son eſcaped to *Denmark*: The King of which, by three Expeditions, attempted to relieve the King his Brother-in-Law; but to no purpoſe; ſo that at laſt it was agreed the States ſhould determine thoſe Differences. They concluded, That King *Birger* ſhould pardon all paſt Injuries, be content with what Part of the Kingdom ſhould be aſſign'd, and have his Liberty; upon which the Senate and his Brothers ſwore Fealty to him. After this, *Erick* of *Denmark*, and *Haquin* of *Norway*, came with 60000 Men into *Sweden* to aſſiſt *Birger* againſt his Brothers: They took *Jencoping*, and oblig'd their Forces to fly; but the *Danes* wanting Proviſions, return'd home, and by a new Agreement Duke *Erick* had *Weſt Gothland*, *Dahr*, *Halland*, *Wermeland*, and *Smaland*; and Duke *Waldemar* had *Upland*, *Oeland*, and Part of *Finland*, which they were to hold of the King in Fief: And thus Peace was reſtor'd to the whole Kingdom. *Waldemar* and his Brother *Erick* were afterwards perſwaded by the King to come and viſit him; and when they were in Bed, and their Servants diſperſ'd, they were made Priſoners, beaten, and laid in Irons; and their Servants all kill'd or taken. The King deſign'd to beſiege *Stockholm*; but the Citizens being appriſ'd of his Barbarity, repuls'd him, and purſued him to *Nicoping*. He retir'd to *Steckeburgh*; and before his Departure, threw the Keys of the Priſon into the River, and caus'd the Doors to be barricado'd; ſo that before *Nicoping* could be taken by Storm, both the Princes died of Famine. The whole Kingdom was enrag'd at this barbarous Action, ſo that *Birger* was forc'd to fly to *Denmark*, where gathering ſome Forces, he ſhifted from Place to Place, till moſt of them were ſurpris'd at *Sudercoping*; then he fled to *Gothland*. The *Swedes* beſieg'd *Steckeburgh*, where his Son *Magnus* commanded, forc'd him to ſurrender, ſent him Priſoner to *Stockholm*, and made *Matthew Ketelmundſon* Regent of *Sweden*, who drove the King's Party out of the Country about 1319.

Upon this the States elected *Magnus Smeck*, Duke *Erick*'s Son, then but 3 Years of Age. Next Year *Magnus*, King *Birger*'s Son, was wickedly ſentenc'd to Death and beheaded, notwithſtanding the States of the Kingdom had ſworn Fealty to him as their future King; upon which *Birger* and his Queen died of Grief. *Ketelmundſon* manag'd Affairs with great Equity and Wiſdom, till *Magnus Smeck* came of Age, who diſappointed their great Expectations of him; for he ſlighted the Advice of the Great Council, hated the Senate, and deſign'd entirely to aboliſh it, becauſe it was a Check to his arbitrary Deſigns. He married *Blanche*, Daughter to the Earl of *Namure*, and was manag'd entirely by his Favourite *Benedict* of *Gothland*. At this Time thoſe of *Schonen* being oppreſs'd by the *Holſteiners*, put themſelves under his Protection, which was afterwards confirmed by *Waldemar* King of *Denmark*, and the *Sound* was made the Boundary of the two Kingdoms. After he had ruled 12 Years, he made War upon the *Ruſſians*, but with bad Succeſs; for he was oblig'd to quit Part of *Carelia* to purchaſe a Peace. His Treaſury being exhauſted, he laid heavy Taxes upon the People without Conſent of the States, and mortgaged many of the Crown-Lands. The Pope excommunicated him, becauſe he applied the *Peter-Pence* to defray the Charge of the *Ruſſian* War. The People of *Norway* offer'd their Crown to his Son *Haquin*, who married *Margaret*, Daughter to *Waldemar* King of *Denmark*. *Erick*, Son to *Magnus*, being declar'd King of *Sweden*, the States of the Kingdom revolted from *Magnus Smeck*, and ſlew his Favourite *Benedict*: Then *Magnus* ſought Aſſiſtance from *Denmark*, which engag'd his Subjects ſo, that they oblig'd *Erick* to take Arms againſt his Father. The End of this Controverſy was the Diviſion of the Kingdom, of which *Upland*, *Gothland*, *Wermeland*, *Dahr*, *North-Halland*, *Weſt-Gothland*, and *Oeland*, fell to *Magnus*; and *Schonen*, *Bleckingen*, *South Halland*, *Eaſt-Gothland*, *Smaland*, and *Finland*, to his Son *Erick*, in 1363.

After this *Magnus* ſent for his Son K. *Erick*, and perſwaded his Mother to poiſon him; by which he re-obtain'd Poſſeſſion of the whole Kingdom, and reveng'd himſelf upon the Nobility, who were the Barriers of the People's Liberty: And to accompliſh his tyrannical Deſigns, he made *Waldemar* King of *Denmark* his Friend, by reſtoring *Schonen*. Upon this *Waldemar*, with *Magnus*'s Connivance, fell into *Gothland* and *Oeland*, kill'd many Boors, plunder'd the Coun-

Digitized by Google

Country, and demoliſh'd *Bergholm*. This oblig'd the *Swedes* to ſubmit to *Haquin* of *Norway*, who impriſon'd his Father *Magnus*; and by the Advice of the States, married the Earl of *Holſtein*'s Daughter, who in her Voyage to *Sweden* was drove on the Coaſts of *Denmark*, and detain'd by King *Waldemar*, who deſign'd his Daughter *Margaret* for *Haquin*; but *Albert* Duke of *Mecklenburgh*, and the Earl of *Holſtein*, declaring War againſt *Denmark*, the Earl of *Holſtein*'s Daughter was ſet at Liberty, and coming to *Sweden*, was ſlighted by *Magnus Smeck*, which made her retire to a Nunnery; and *Haquin*, notwithſtanding his Contract with her, married *Margaret* of *Denmark*.

The baniſh'd Lords, Senators, and others of the *Swedes*, took up Arms againſt *Magnus*, as one who had forfeited his Title to the Crown; and conſulting about chuſing another, they agreed upon *Henry* Earl of *Holſtein*, who declin'd it, becauſe of his Age, and recommended *Albert* Duke of *Mecklenburgh*, *Magnus*'s Siſter's Son; but they choſe his own ſecond Son, alſo called *Albert*, and proclaim'd him King at *Stockholm*. Upon this, *Magnus* and his Son *Haquin* march'd againſt *Albert*, and fought him near *Enceping*; but were defeated, *Magnus* taken, and *Haquin* wounded. After this, *Sweden* continued to be a Theatre of War for many Years; for *Waldemar* King of *Denmark*, and *Haquin*, conſtantly ſent Forces into *Sweden* to reinforce *Magnus*'s Party; and *Haquin* once defeated *Albert* in Battle, and beſieg'd *Stockholm*. At laſt it was agreed, That *Magnus* ſhould have his Liberty, on paying 12000 Marks of fine Silver, and reſigning the Crown and *Schonen* to *Albert*: After this *Magnus* retir'd to *Norway*, where he was drown'd by Accident, and *Haquin* and his young Son *Olaus* died ſoon after, by which the ancient Royal Line of *Sweden*, which had ruled 200 Years, ſince St. *Erick*'s Time, was extinguiſhed. Not long after, *Waldemar* of *Denmark* died without Heirs Male; and the *Danes*, in order to unite *Norway* to *Denmark*, declar'd *Margaret* Queen of *Norway*, his Daughter, their Queen, to which the *Norwegians* were induc'd to agree by Intrigues and Bribes.

Albert's Enemies being thus all taken out of the Way, he began to hate the Nobility, to be jealous of the Senate, and to follow the arbitrary Methods of his Predeceſſors; but gradually and ſlily, becauſe of the Fate of *Magnus*, which was ſtill freſh in his Memory. However, to effect his Deſigns, he invited in Foreign Noblemen, eſpecially thoſe of his own Family, and *German* Officers, and put the Adminiſtration into their Hands, under various Pretexts. He alſo brought in Foreign Troops, ſo that his Subjects began to ſuſpect him, ſince all this was contrary to the Fundamental Laws of the Kingdom. He likewiſe oblig'd them to pay exceſſive Taxes. The Treaſury being exhauſted by the Wars againſt *Denmark*, he propos'd the annexing the Revenues of the Clergy, and ſome of the Lands of the Nobility, to the Crown, which they refuſed: And he continuing to extend his Prerogative, it occaſion'd a Civil War: Upon this the States applied to *Margaret* of *Denmark* for Aſſiſtance, which ſhe granted, on Condition that ſhe ſhould be their Queen when they had humbled *Albert*. On his Part, he morrgaged the Iſle of *Gothland* to the *Teutonick* Knights for 20000 Nobles, and challenged Queen *Margaret* to a Battle, which was fought at *Talkoping* in *Weſt-Gothland*, where ſhe obtained the Victory, and took King *Albert* and his Son. After this the Dukes of *Mecklenburgh*, the Earls of *Holſtein*, and the Hans-Towns, ſided with *Albert*, and ſent him Supplies; ſo that by this War, which laſted 7 Years, *Sweden* was laid under Contribution by Foreigners, and their Trade ruin'd.

At length a Peace was concluded at *Mekolm*, by which King *Albert*, his Son, and the reſt of the Priſoners of Note, were ſet at Liberty, on Condition that within three Years he ſhould reſign all his Pretenſions to the Crown in Favour of Queen *Margaret*. The Hans-Towns were Guarantees of the Treaty, and in caſe of failure, were to pay her 60000 Marks of fine Silver. *Albert*'s Son died within two Years, which made him lay aſide all Thoughts of recovering the Crown, and he ſoon after died in *Mecklenburgh*; ſo that *Margaret* was left Queen over the three Northern Nations, and call'd the *Semiramis* of the North.

The *Swedes* before this ſeeing ſhe had no Heirs, and fearing that after her Death *Albert*'s Son, who was then alive, might pretend to the Succeſſion, they deſir'd her to marry, which

which she would not listen to, being jealous that a Husband would claim a Share of the Sovereignty: But to give some Satisfaction to the *Swedes*, she told them, She would name for Successor *Henry* of *Mecklenburgh*, her Nephew, then very young; for she thought if he had been of Age, he might have disturb'd her ambitious Projects, out of his Impatience to mount the Throne. By her Intrigues, she perswaded the Estates of the three Crowns to go into this Succession. At the same Time she told them, how profitable an Union of the three Northern Nations would be; how likely to terminate all Quarrels for the future; that thereby they would soon become Masters of all the Trade of the *Baltick*; and that their Disunion was the only thing that could effectually gratify the Hans-Towns. The Estates being gain'd thus, partly by her Presence and Eloquence, but more by the secret Practices and Bribes of her Courtiers, they consented to this Union, and made it a Fundamental Law, which was call'd the *Union of Calmar*, and laid the Foundation of bloody Wars for more than one Age betwixt *Denmark* and *Sweden*. The Articles of this Union were, 1. *That these three Kingdoms, for all Time coming, should have one and the same King or Queen; and that he or she that was to succeed to the Throne of those 3 Realms, must be elected by all the 3 Kingdoms; and that the Election should be in each Kingdom by Turns.* 2. *That the Sovereign should be obliged by these Articles to reside by Turns in each of the three United Nations, and to spend in each of them the Revenues arising from that Kingdom; That the Revenues, Money, &c. of each Kingdom might not be exported, nor employed any other Way, than for the Advantage of that Kingdom from whence they were collected.* 3. *That each of the three United Kingdoms should for ever have their own Senate, Laws, Customs, Money, and Privileges; and that the Governors, Magistrates, Generals, Bishops, Troops, Garisons, should be Natives of the Kingdom where they were employ'd; and that none born in one of the three Kingdoms should bear Office in any of the Kingdoms but in that where he was born.*

The *Swedes* thought that those wise Limitations would secure their Peace; but tho' their Senate and Laws protected them for a while, they soon found, that *Denmark* being the Center of the Union, and then the more powerful Nation, *Margaret* and all her Successors favour'd the *Danes* more than them, whom they endeavour'd by all Ways and Means to keep under, and make miserable.

During *Henry*'s Minority, (whose Name she chang'd to *Erick*, to please the *Swedes*, who had 12 Kings of that Name) in 1410, she endeavour'd to regain the Isle of *Gothland* from the *Prussian* Knights; but failing in it, was oblig'd to pay the Mortgage, which was 10000 Nobles. In 1412, *Erick* married *Philipa*, the Daughter of *Henry* IV. King of *England*; and his Aunt Queen *Margaret* died much about this Time. He was soon engaged in a War with the Earl of *Holstein*, the Hans-Towns, and the Dukes of *Mecklenburgh* and *Saxony*, about *Slesvick*. Tho' this was only the Quarrel of *Denmark*, the other Kingdoms were more oppressed than they, and their Trade with the Hans-Towns was broke off. Besides, the King's Officers us'd the *Swedes* very tyrannically, and he himself broke many Articles of the Union, especially when he sent away the most ancient *Swedish* Records into *Denmark*. This at last oblig'd the *Swedes* to take desperate Counsels. *Engelbrecht Engelbrechtson*, a *Dalekarlian*, headed his Countrymen, who besieg'd *Jesse Ericksin*, one of the King's Officers, and a great Oppressor, who, to prevent an Insurrection, was turned out; yet the Boors, with *Engelbrecht* at their Head, over-ran the neighbouring Country with Fire and Sword, and destroyed those who would not join them. At last one *Erick Puke* came over to them with the *North Hallanders*, took many Places of Strength, killed all the *Danes* they met, and forced the Senate of the Kingdom to renounce their Allegiance to *Erick*. This oblig'd him to make Peace with the *Holsteiners*, and to turn his whole Force against *Sweden*; but a great Part of his Fleet was destroy'd by Storm: He came with the rest to *Stockholm*, and was forced to make a Truce for 12 Months with the *Swedes*. *Olus*, the Archbishop of *Upsal*, perswaded them to own him as King, provided he would stand to the Union, which the King at that Time consented to, and reserv'd only to himself the Castles of *Stockholm*, *Calmar*, and *Nycoping*, leaving the *Swedes* to command the rest. No sooner had the King done this, but he

left *Sweden*, contrary to the Union; and the Eſtates being afraid he might return with a greater Force, they aſſembled at *Arboe*. In the mean time *Engelbrecht* took *Stockholm*, and beſieg'd the Caſtle. At this Time the Marſhal *Charles Cnutſone* was declared Governor and General of the Kingdom, and *Engelbrecht* was kill'd by one *Benediſt Suenſone*, his old Enemy. Some were jealous of the Marſhal's too great Power, which occaſion'd a new Treaty, wherein the King promis'd to put the Natives of *Sweden* only in Places of Truſt in that Kingdom; and *Benediſt Suenſone*, as a Reward for murdering *Engelbrecht*, was made Governor of *Calmar*. The King ſoon after, in his Voyage from *Gothland* to *Sudercoping*, was overtaken by a Storm, wherein moſt of his Ships were loſt, and he narrowly eſcap'd. When the *Swedes* heard of the Tempeſt, and not knowing whether the King was alive or dead, they reſolv'd that both the firſt and ſecond Treaties at *Calmar* ſhould ſtand. By this Means the Marſhal got moſt of the Caſtles of the Kingdom into his Hands; at which *Erick Puke* being diſguſted, he raiſed a great Number of Boors, and defeated the Marſhal and his Troops. Upon this, the Marſhal deſir'd an Interview with *Puke*, and, contrary to Promiſe, ſent him Priſoner to *Stockholm*, where he was beheaded. When the Senators heard the King was alive, they ſent to him to know if he would confirm their former Treaty at *Calmar*, which he refuſed. Upon this they made a ſecret League with ſome Leading-Men in *Denmark* againſt him. The Marſhal prevailed with the Senators to appoint a Day for the King to appear in *Sweden*, to renew their Privileges; and in caſe of failure, they were to renounce his Authority: But the Archbiſhop perſwaded them to forbear bringing Matters to Extremity, till a General Meeting of the Eſtates of the 3 Kingdoms might redreſs their Grievances; and when they met, the King's Commiſſioners would not confirm the Treaty of *Calmar*; upon which they broke up. The King retir'd with all his Treaſure out of *Denmark* to *Gothland*; and thoſe of the *Daniſh* and *Swediſh* Senators, who were diſſatisfied with the King's Government, agreed to detbrone him, and choſe another, who would obſerve the Articles of the Union. The *Danes* ſent to *Chriſtopher* Duke of *Bavaria*, deſiring him to accept of their Crown, and acquainted the Marſhal with it; upon which he was own'd as King by the Senators and the Marſhal, and Crown'd at *Upſal* about 1439. He afterwards married *Dorothy*, Daughter of *John* Marquis of *Brandenburgh*. *Erick*, who was ſtill in Poſſeſſion of *Gothland*, took many of the *Swediſh* Ships, for which the Senate deſir'd *Chriſtopher* to make War upon him, which he did; but ſuddenly clapp'd up a Peace, by which *Erick* was left in Poſſeſſion of *Gothland*. *Chriſtopher* died at *Helſingburgh* in 1448, and left great Legacies to the Churches of *Sweden*; but the *Danes* being poſſeſs'd of his Ships, Ammunition, rich Furniture, and ready Money, would not pay them.

The Marſhal *Charles Cnutſone*, upon *Chriſtopher*'s Death, got himſelf elected King: But the *Danes* offer'd their Crown to *Chriſtian* Earl of *Oldenburg*. *Charles* in the beginning of his Reign beſieg'd *Erick* in the Caſtle of *Wisby*; but *Chriſtian*, the new King of *Denmark*, raiſed the Siege. *Erick* retired to *Pomerania*, without making any further Pretenſions to the Crown, and died at *Rugen*.

The greateſt Part of the *Norvegians* elected *Cnutſone* alſo for their King, which occaſion'd conſtant Wars betwixt him and *Chriſtian* of *Denmark*. *Cnutſone* was ſucceſsful at firſt; but after the Death of his brave General *Thord Bonde*, *Chriſtian* was too hard for him. The Archbiſhop of *Sweden* declared alſo for *Chriſtian*, ſurpris'd *Cnutſone*'s Forces at *Strengneſs*, and beſieg'd himſelf in *Stockholm*; upon which he embarked with all his Treaſure for *Dantzick*. The Archbiſhop having got all the Strong-holds into his Hands, ſent for *Chriſtian* to *Sweden*, where he was declared King. His Government was tolerable at firſt; but afterwards his Cruelty and heavy Taxes made him odious to the *Swedes*: He tortur'd to Death many of their Great Men, on Pretence of correſponding with *Cnutſone*. He was alſo cruel to the Boors, who took Arms againſt him, and impriſon'd the Archbiſhop of *Sweden* in *Copenhagen*. *Kaſil*, Biſhop of *Lyncoping*, being provok'd at this, made an Inſurrection, and obliged the King to fly to *Denmark*, whence he return'd next Year with a conſiderable Force; but the Biſhop's Army

Digitized by Google

Army defeated him, and forc'd him to leave *Sweden* a second time. The Biſhop alſo beſieg'd *Chriſtian*'s Gariſon in *Stockholm*, and ſent to *Cnutſone* for Help, who came to *Sweden* with Forces that he had levied in *Pruſſia* and *Poland*; and *Stockholm* ſurrendring to him, he was again made King: But ſome Differences happening betwixt him and Biſhop *Katil* about exchanging the Archbiſhop, the Biſhop made Peace with *Chriſtian*, who came with a powerful Army to *Sweden*. He defeated *Cnutſone*'s Forces upon the Ice near *Stockholm*, and ſet the Archbiſhop at Liberty; and getting all the Places of Strength into his Hands, *Cnutſone* was obliged to give up all his Pretenſions, and leave the Kingdom: But *Nils Sture*, and *Erick Axelſone*, *Cnutſone*'s Friends, did for ſome Time oppoſe the Archbiſhop's Deſigns; and *Axelſone* being declared Regent of the Kingdom, the Archbiſhop was obliged to ſurrender *Stockholm* and other Strong holds to him: But *Nils Sture* and *Erick Nilſone* going over to the Archbiſhop's Faction, they involved the Kingdom in Blood and Confuſion: Yet the Archbiſhop's Party was worſted at laſt; upon which he died of Grief, and the Commons of *Sweden* once more reſtored *Cnutſone*: But *Erick Nilſone*, *Erick Carlſone*, *Trolle*, and ſome others, ſurpris'd *Cnutſone*'s Army during a Truce, and forc'd his Men to fly; but purſuing them too far, they were entirely routed by *Cnutſone*, and their Leaders fled to *Denmark*; upon which *Cnutſone* return'd to *Stockholm*, and recommending the Kingdom to his Nephew *Steen Sture*, he died there about 1470.

After his Death, there was nothing but Confuſion and Anarchy in *Sweden* for one Year: But at laſt *Steen Sture* was declar'd Regent, vanquiſh'd *Chriſtian* of *Denmark* in a Battle near *Stockholm*, and drove him out of the Kingdom, to which he never return'd, but died in *Denmark* in 1481.

After his Death, the *Danes* made *John*, *Chriſtian*'s Son, their King. The *Swedes* agreed to this Choice, provided that he would obſerve the *Pacta Conventa* which King *John* ſwore to and ſeal'd; but the Articles not being duly perform'd, *Steen Sture* continued Regent 14 Years after. The Kingdom was at this Time miſerably afflicted with inteſtine Diviſions, and had alſo a War with *Ruſſia* and *Denmark*. The Senators adviſed *Sture* to lay down his Regency; but he refuſing it, they invited King *John*, who defeated *Sture*'s Party; upon which the Senate, and *Sture* himſelf, acknowledg'd *John* as King, and the Succeſſion was ſettled upon his Son *Chriſtian*. *John* reign'd for ſome Time peaceably; but at laſt, falling into the arbitrary Meaſures of his Predeceſſors, he oblig'd *Sture*, and others of the Nobles, to ſurrender the Fiefs of the Crown which they poſſeſs'd, and gave them to *Danes* and *Germans*. His Officers follow'd his Example, and committed all manner of Inſolencies in their Provinces: But when *John* was defeated at *Ditmarſen*, the *Swedes*, headed by *Sten Sture*, aſſembled at *Wadſtana*, and renounc'd their Allegiance to *John*, becauſe he had broke the Articles of *Calmar*.

Upon this *John* fail'd to *Denmark*, and his Queen was left in *Stockholm*, which *Sture* beſieg'd, forc'd it to ſurrender, and was conſtituted Regent of the Kingdom. In the mean Time the *Danes* burnt *Elfsburg* and *Oreſteen*, and committed great Cruelties in *Weſt-Gothland*, under the Command of *Chriſtian*, *John*'s Son, who had alſo deſtroy'd moſt of the Noble Families of *Norway*; but their Fury was a little allay'd, becauſe the Queen was in the Hands of their Enemies. At laſt the *Lubeckers* and Cardinal *Raimond* procur'd her Liberty to return to *Denmark*. The Regent conducted her to the Borders, but in his Return died ſuddenly. Upon this the States, at their Meeting in 1503, made *Suante Nilſon Sture* Regent. Then the War began afreſh with King *John*, with various Succeſs. At firſt, the Emperor, the *Ruſſians*, and Pope, join'd with the *Danes*: But the Regent made Peace with the *Muſcovites*, and ſet the *Lubeckers* againſt the *Danes*, from whom they retook *Calmar* and *Bornholm*. In the midſt of this Succeſs *Suante* died, in 1511, in the 8th Year of his Regency. After his Death, *Steen Sture*, the Regent's Son, was choſen Regent with great Difficulty; the ancient Senators inclining more to *Guſtavus Trolle*, a Man of great Experience. King *John* died at *Alburg* in *Jutland* in 1513, and the *Danes* and *Norwegians* declar'd his Son *Chriſtian* King. The *Swedes* hated him for his Father's Cruelty, and deſired Time to conſider of the Matter; and *Chriſtian*, after four

Years, perceiving the *Swedes* were not resolv'd to elect him, and that the Regent would not part with his Power, he instigated Pope *Leo* X against him, strengthened his Party, by bringing over *Guſtavus Trolle*, the new Archbiſhop, and perſwaded the *Ruſſians* to invade *Finland*. When the Regent found out the Archbiſhop's Treachery, he tender'd the Oath to him, and upon his refuſing it, he beſieg'd him in the Caſtle of *Stecka*. *Chriſtian* of *Denmark* took ſome Ships with Ammunition belonging to the Regent, but could not raiſe the Siege; ſo that the Archbiſhop was forc'd both to ſurrender the Caſtle and his Office, for which the Pope excommunicated the Regent, fined the *Swedes* in 100000 Ducats, and order'd it to be levied by *Chriſtian*, who fell into *Sweden* with a great Army. The Regent met and gave him Battle; but being killed, his Army was ſoon diſperſed. Upon this the Archbiſhop aſſum'd his former Dignity, and being aſſiſted by two other Biſhops, declar'd *Chriſtian* King of *Sweden*, who at firſt treated the *Swedes* with a great deal of Humanity; but afterwards, on Pretence of the Pope's Fine and Excommunication, he committed all manner of Cruelties and Barbarities; and the Archbiſhop, in the Pope's Name, demanded a Million of Pounds for Reparation of Damage done to the Church at *Upſal*, and his Caſtle of *Stecka*, and on Pretence that Gunpowder was convey'd under the King's Palace to blow him up. The Regent's Widow, his Mother-in-Law, and 15 others, beſides the Senate and Common-Council of *Stockholm*, were accuſed for it, and all condemned as Hereticks; upon which 94 of them were beheaded at *Stockholm*, and their Servants hang'd. The Regent's Body was alſo hung up among the reſt, and their Quarters affix'd in many Places of the Country. His Widow and his Mother in-Law gave all they had for their Lives, but were committed to cloſe Priſon. In *Finland*, *Hemmoning Gudde*, notwithſtanding his former Services to *Chriſtian*, was executed, with 10 more: The Abbot of *Nydala*, and 10 Monks, were drown'd: Two Gentlemen's Sons, one of 9, the other of 7 Years, were beheaded at *Jencoping*; and after *Chriſtian* had murther'd 600 of his *Swediſh* Subjects, he returned well ſatisfied to *Denmark*.

At this Time *Guſtavus Ericſon*, whoſe Father had been beheaded, and his Mother thrown into Priſon by the Tyrant, having eſcaped from Priſon, he ſhelter'd himſelf among the *Dalekarlians*, who choſe him for their Captain; and the States of the Kingdom following their Example, declar'd him Regent: But the Clergy, ever ſince the Union, continued firm to the Enemies and Murtherers of their Countrymen; and *Chriſtian*, to be reveng'd on *Guſtavus* the Regent, kill'd his Mother and Siſter in Priſon at *Copenhagen*, order'd no Quarter to be given to any *Swediſh* Noblemen, and confirmed great Barbarities wherever he came. The Regent made Repriſals upon the *Danes*, and being aſſiſted by the *Lubeckers*, he beſieg'd *Stockholm*, and during the Siege receiv'd the glad News, That the *Jutlanders* had renounc'd their Allegiance to *Chriſtian*. This ſo encourag'd the Regent's Party, that they drove the *Danes* out of the whole Kingdom, retook *Oeland* and *Borkholm*, and the Caſtle of *Calmar*, and the Regent was made King; upon which *Stockholm* ſurrender'd to the *Lubeckers*; and *Chriſtian* and his Queen retiring to the *Netherlands*, the *Jutlanders* made *Frederick* I. King *Chriſtian*'s Uncle, King, and were very deſirous to bring the *Swedes* to own him; but they having already ſmarted ſufficiently by the Union, and the *Daniſh* Kings, who did them more Miſchief under the Title of Kings of *Sweden*, than they could have done if the Kingdoms had been ſeparated, and at War as formerly, they would not agree to it. The Reformation began at this Time; of which more in its Place.

Soren Norby ſtill adher'd to *Chriſtian*'s Party, and had *Gothland* in Poſſeſſion, which enabled him to annoy the *Swedes* in their Trade. Upon this *Guſtavus* ſent *Bernard Van Melen* to reduce the Iſland, and *Norby* put himſelf under the Protection of *Denmark*, which occaſion'd ſome Differences betwixt thoſe two Northern Kings.

Guſtavus having ſurmounted thoſe Difficulties, was crown'd at *Upſal* in 1528, and the rebellious *Dalekarlians*, who were diſcontented at the Change of Religion, were alſo obliged to come hither. They were headed by *Thuro Johanſon*, the Rix-Marſhal, who made them revolt, endeavour'd to do the ſame by the *Weſt* and *Eaſt Goths*; and per-

Digitized by Google

perſwaded them to elect *Magnus Brynteſon*, a popular Man among them, for King: But King *Guſtavus* appeas'd thoſe Commotions, by granting an Indemnity to moſt of them, and beheading only ſome of their Leaders. The King having diſpos'd of ſome ſupernumerary Bells, the *Dalekarlians* began a new Rebellion, and deſign'd to depoſe him; but he terrified them ſo by his Forces, that they crav'd Pardon, and promis'd Obedience for the future. The King married *Katherine*, Daughter to *Magnus* Duke of *Saxe-Lauenburg*. *Chriſtian* after this landed in *Norway* with a conſiderable Force, and the King ſent ſome Troops to the Frontiers, under the Command of *Lars Sigeſon*, Rix-Marſhal, who being join'd by the *Danes*, forc'd *Chriſtian* to raiſe the Siege of *Bahus*, and obliged him to ſurrender himſelf to the *Danes*. He was thereupon committed to Priſon by *Frederick* King of *Denmark*, where he died 27 Years after, being juſtly called the *Nero* of the North. The *Lubeckers* began another War againſt *Sweden*, becauſe *Guſtavus* would not grant them the Monopoly of Trade on his Coaſts, demanded the Money due to them for aſſiſting him with their Ships, and join'd the remainder of *Chriſtian*'s Party. They made *John* Earl of *Hoya*, *Guſtavus*'s Brother-in-Law, their Head, deſign'd the Conqueſt of the Northern Kingdoms, and brought over ſome of the Citizens of *Stockholm* to their Party, by promiſing it ſhould be a Hans-Town. After *Frederick* the King of *Denmark*'s Death, they perſwaded the Senate of *Copenhagen* to enter into their League, and their Party was numerous, till the *Danes* choſe *Chriſtian* III. for King; and being aſſiſted with Money and Forces by *Guſtavus*, they defeated the *Lubeckers* near *Elſingburg*; and in a Sea-fight, deſtroyed their Fleet, and carried many of their Ships to *Denmark*. *Guſtavus* married for ſecond Wife *Margaret*, the Daughter of *Abraham Ericſon*, Governor of *Weſt Gothland*; and apprehending the Deſigns of *Charles* V. the Emperor, he ſent into *France*, and made an Alliance with that Crown.

In 1544, a Diet of the States met at *Weſteras*, where, in Gratitude to him for being the Inſtrument of delivering them from the *Daniſh* Slavery, and freeing them from an Union with that Nation, declared the Succeſſion Hereditary in his Family, and ſettled it upon his Son *Erick Guſtaveſon*, then 11 Years of Age. By his Will, he gave to *John*, his ſecond Son, the Dukedom of *Finland*; to his third Son, *Magnus*, the Dukedom of *Eaſt-Gothland*; and to *Charles*, the youngeſt, the Dukedom of *Sudermania*, *Nerick* and *Wermeland*, to be held in Fief of the Crown of *Sweden*. *Erick*, the eldeſt, was perſwaded by his Tutor *Dionyſius Burrow*, a *Frenchman*, to make his Addreſſes to Queen *Elizabeth* of *England*. This *Dionyſius*, and after him *Erick*'s Brother *John*, and *Steen Sture*, went to *England* to propoſe the Match, who miſtaking Compliments for Realities, wrote that it was adviſable for *Erick* himſelf to come over and compleat the Marriage; but when he was ready to go, his Father died at *Stockholm*, in 1559. ſo that he durſt not leave his Dominions with his Brethren.

Erick was 27 Years of Age when he ſucceeded: He obliged his Brothers to ſubſcribe new Articles at *Arboga*, and firſt introduc'd Hereditary Titles of Honour, as Earls, Barons, *&c.* alledging, That in an Hereditary Kingdom, it was reaſonable there ſhould be Hereditary Dignities among the Nobility. Some of the *Lieflanders* had formerly put themſelves under the Protection of *Denmark*, and others of them under *Poland*. Thoſe of *Revel* and *Eſthonia*, being neareſt to *Sweden*, ſought Protection from *Erick*, which he granted, together with all their former Privileges. When the *Poles* heard that the *Swedes* had gariſon'd *Revel*, they ſent an Ambaſſador to demand it; but the *Swedes* anſwer'd, That they had as good Right to it as the *Poles*: Upon which the latter beſieg'd the Town; but the Gariſon ſallying upon them, oblig'd 'em to raiſe the Siege. When *Erick* deſign'd to come to *England* about his Match with Qu. *Elizabeth*, he was blown back by a great Storm. He was inconſtant in his Temper, and ſuperſtitiouſly fond of Judiciary Aſtrology. He laid aſide his Deſign of courting Qu. *Elizabeth*, and made his Addreſſes to *Mary* Qu. of *Scotland*, and the Princeſs of *Lorrain*, at one and the ſame Time, and not long after to *Catherine*, Daughter to the Landgrave of *Heſſe*; but ſucceeded in neither. His Brother *John* married *Catherine*, Daughter of *Sigiſmund*, King of *Poland*, without *Erick*'s Conſent, for which he beſieg'd him in the Caſtle of *Abus*, took him, and ſentenc'd him to Death, which was chang'd to perpetual Impriſonment.

Digitized by Google

ment. To revenge this Affront, the *Poles* inſtigated the *Lubeckers* and *Danes* to make War upon *Sweden*, and the *Danes* affronted the *Swediſh* Ambaſſador. The *Swedes* routed the *Danes* and *Lubeckers* at Sea, but loſt their Admiral, which carried 200 Braſs Guns. They had not the like Succeſs by Land, except in *Livonia*, where their Affairs went well. King *Erick* had the Misfortune to fall into Broils with his Subjects, on the Account of his bad Adminiſtration and Amours: He fell deeply in Love with one *Katherine*, a Peaſant's Daughter, who manag'd him as ſhe pleas'd. In her younger Days, ſhe ſold Nuts in the Streets of *Stockholm*: But notwithſtanding this, and the Remonſtrances of his beſt Subjects, he debas'd himſelf ſo far as to marry her. In Matters of Government, he was rul'd by two Favourites; one was *Dionyſius Burreau*, his Tutor, who enrag'd him to that degree againſt the Family of the *Sture*, that *Erick* ſuborn'd Knights of the Poſt againſt the Chief of them; upon which they were put in Priſon, and there murther'd by the King's Command, who with his own Hand ſtab'd *Nils Sture*. He afterwards laid the Blame of this Cruelty on *Burreau*, and, to pacify the People, caus'd him to be ſlain by his Guards; and fearing that his Subjects would reſent thoſe impious Practices, he releas'd his Brother *John*, and declar'd, that *Joran Peerſon*, his other Favourite, advis'd him to theſe illegal Methods, and *Joran* was committed to Priſon; but upon his Succeſs againſt the *Danes*, he relapſed to his former arbitrary Ways, juſtified all his Acts of Injuſtice, and would have taken away the Lands left his Brothers by his Father's Will; but they refuſed to accept the Equivalent he offer'd them in *Livonia*. Upon this, he deſign'd to have had his Brother *John* murder'd, at the Nuptials betwixt himſelf and his Miſtreſs *Katherine*: But his Brother being appriz'd of his Plot, did not come to the Marriage, but aſſociated with ſome Noblemen, who were diſpleas'd with *Erick*'s Government, and reſolv'd to dethrone him. By the Mediation of the King of *Poland*, they procured a Truce with *Denmark*; and having ſtrengthened their Party by ſome *German* Forces in *Erick*'s Service, who revolted to them, they ſeiz'd his Caſtles. In that of *Wadſtena*, they found a great Treaſure; then they beſieg'd *Stockholm*, with *Erick* in it, and the Senate open'd the Gates to them whilſt he was at Church; but he eſcap'd into the Caſtle, which the Duke's Forces beſieg'd, and preſs'd it ſo hard, that he was oblig'd to ſurrender, and reſign the Crown. Then the Eſtates aſſembled at *Stockholm*, renounc'd their Allegiance, made him cloſe Priſoner, and committed him to the Cuſtody of the Friends of the murther'd Lords, who us'd him barbarouſly.

In 1566, *John*, his Brother, was proclaimed King of *Sweden*, who in the firſt Place did Juſtice on ſome of the bad Counſellors of the former Reign, and ſent an Ambaſſador to *Denmark* to get the Truce prolong'd, or to make a Peace, which they accepted on diſadvantageous Terms, for which the whole Tranſaction was declared void at the next Diet. *John*, to pleaſe his Brother *Charles*, to whom he had promis'd a Share in the Government, put him in Poſſeſſion of *Sudermania*, *Nericke* and *Wermeland*, which his Father had left him. Then he was crown'd at *Upſal*. He ſent Ambaſſadors to *Muſcovy* to prolong the Truce; but the *Muſcovites* put them in Priſon, and made *Magnus*, Duke of *Holſtein*, King of *Livonia*, on Condition that he ſhould hold it of the Czar. The *Lieflanders*, loving to be under the Government of a *German* Prince, conſented to the Propoſal; and to bring this Project to bear, the *Muſcovites* advanced with a great Army; ſo that the King was obliged to make Peace with the *Danes* on their own Terms. While the *Muſcovites* were in *Livonia*, the *Tartars* invaded *Muſcovy*, took and burnt the City of *Moſcow*, and cut above 30000 of the Inhabitants in pieces. After the *Muſcovites* had made a Truce with the *Poles* and *Tartars*, they fell again into *Livonia* with 80000 Men, and committed inhumane Barbarities: But a *Swediſh* Party of 600 Horſe and 1000 Foot routed 16000 *Muſcovites*, and killed 7000 of them on the Spot: Upon which the Czar offer'd a Treaty to be ſet on foot at *Newgarten*; but King *John* diſliking the Place, the War began again, in which the *Swedes* had but indifferent Succeſs, and were repulſed before *Weſenburg* and *Telsburg*. The *Ruſſians* alſo ſurpris'd the *Swedes* and *Germans* when drunk in their Camp, and killed a great

many

many of them. The *Swedes* however made several Inroads into the Territories of the *Muſcovites*, which brought on a Truce for two Years. It was thought this War might have been more ſucceſsful, had not *John* been engaged in a Deſign of changing the Eſtabliſhed Religion in *Sweden* for Popery. For, thô educated a Proteſtant, he was miſled by his Wife, and reſolved to reſtore Popery by degrees. To effect this, he deſign'd to follow the Scheme of *Caſſander*, who was ſet on work by the Emperors *Ferdinand* I. and *Maximilian* II. to compoſe the Differences about Religion in *Germany*. *John* invited ſome Jeſuits, who in Lay-Habits were to aſſiſt his Secretary Mr. *Peter Fretenius*, the chief Manager of this Affair; and at the Convocation of the Clergy, propoſed a new Liturgy, with a great many Popiſh Ceremonies, to be uſed in the Adminiſtration of the Sacraments, and Conſecration of Biſhops and Prieſts. He likewiſe introduced the Maſs. Some of his new conſecrated Biſhops complied with all this; ſo that Popery was openly profeſſed all over the Kingdom, except in the Provinces belonging to his Brother *Charles*, whom he endeavoured to perſwade to approve of this Change, but in vain. At laſt the King got the Liturgy approved by a General Synod of the Clergy, and alſo by the Eſtates of the Kingdom, who made it Treaſon to oppoſe it. After this the King baniſh'd and impriſon'd all who would not conform: But notwithſtanding thoſe ſevere Methods, many of the Clergy preach'd againſt the Wickedneſs and Impiety of thoſe Principles and Practices, and ſent their Remonſtrances to the *German* Univerſities of *Wittemberg*, *Leipſick*, *Helmſtadt*, *Franckfort*, and others, who all approved of their Zeal for the *Augſburg* Confeſſion, and condemn'd the Liturgy as dangerous to the Proteſtant Religion. King *John* at this Time ſent and poiſon'd his Brother King *Erick* in Priſon; and having gain'd this Point, he more openly own'd his Affection to Popery. The Invocation of Saints was publickly preach'd, and whoever oppos'd it were impriſon'd. He ſent afterwards an Ambaſſador to *Rome*; and the Pope ſent a Nuncio to *Stockholm*; and King *John* ſent a great many young Gentlemen abroad, to be educated by the Jeſuits.

The *Ruſſian* War in the mean time was carried on with various Succeſs. The *Poles* and *Swedes* agreed, That whatever Towns either of them took from the *Muſcovites*, ſhould remain to thoſe who took them. The *Swedes*, under the Command of *Pontus de la Gardie*, took from the *Muſcovites* the ſtrong Forteresſ of *Kexholm*, the Caſtle of *Padis*, *Weſenburg*, *Telsburg*, and *Narva*, where they killed 7000 of them. They alſo took *Juanogrod*, and other Places of Note; but the *Poles* growing jealous of thoſe Advantages, the *Swedes* were obliged to make a Truce with the *Muſcovites*, which continued 4 Years. The Miſunderſtanding betwixt King *John* and his Brother *Charles* increas'd, ſo that he ſummon'd him to appear before the Diet at *Wadſtena*; but by the Mediation of ſome of the Senators, they were made Friends. The King did all he could to perſwade the Clergy of his Brother's Territories to approve the Liturgy, but without Effect. King *John* died at *Stockholm* in 1592.

His Son Prince *Sigiſmund*, who before this was elected King of *Poland*, ſucceeded. In the *Interregnum*, Duke *Charles* took upon him the Adminiſtration, by Conſent of the Senate, which was approved afterwards by *Sigiſmund*. *Charles* call'd together the *Swediſh* and *Gothick* Clergy at *Upſal*, where the *Augſburg* Confeſſion was confirmed, and the new Liturgy and other Popiſh Ceremonies abolished. The States approved of this, and of another Decree, forbidding any Appeal out of *Sweden*, and order'd that *Sigiſmund* ſhould ſign thoſe Decrees before his Coronation; but *Sigiſmund* declar'd, That being an Hereditary Prince, he ought not to oblige himſelf to any thing before his Coronation. He came to *Sweden*, accompanied with the Pope's Nuncio, and demanded a Popiſh Church in every City; that the new Archbiſhop ſhould be depoſed; and that he might be crown'd by the Nuncio. *Charles* and the States endeavour'd to perſwade him from thoſe unpopular Courſes, but in vain: Upon which they enter'd into an Aſſociation for the Defence of the Proteſtant Religion, and muſter'd their Troops near *Upſal*. *Sigiſmund* fearing the Conſequences, pretended to repent of his former Conduct, ſign'd the Propoſals of the States, and was crown'd by

Digitized by Google

by the Biſhop of *Strengneſs* in 1594. When the Coronation was over, he attempted by Force what he could not gain by Perſwaſion, and ſent for Troops from *Poland*; but Duke *Charles* was provided to receive them. The King finding himſelf baulk'd, reſolved to leave the Kingdom. When the States knew it, and that he was ſailed for *Dantzick*, with the Conſent of *Charles* they took upon them the Adminiſtration, depoſed the King's Governor at *Stockholm*, becauſe a Papiſt, and forbad Popery in *Sweden*. After this, a Peace was concluded with the *Muſcovites*, and in a Diet at *Sudercoping*, the States juſtified their Proceedings in a Letter to *Sigiſmund*, confirmed the *Augsburg* Confeſſion, aboliſhed Popery, and made Duke *Charles* Regent, but accountable to the Senate. *Sigiſmund* wrote to diſſuade *Charles* from it, and alſo to the States, to whom he committed the Government in his Abſence, and deprived *Charles* of his Regency: But another Diet was call'd at *Arboga*, where *Charles* was again declared Regent. About this Time *Nicolas Flemming*, the King's General, killed a great many *Swediſh* Boors, for which *Charles* made War upon him, poſſeſſed himſelf firſt of *Gothland*, and then of the whole Kingdom, which obliged the Governors for the King to fly into *Poland*. King *Sigiſmund* perceiving his Affairs in *Sweden* requir'd his Preſence, he reſolved to go thither with 6000 Men, and the States reſolved to meet him with an Army. The *Weſt-Goths* and *Finlanders* declared for *Sigiſmund*: The *Finlanders* equipped ſome Ships for his Service; and while *Charles* ſailed with his Fleet to reduce them, the King landed at *Calmar*. All Overtures of Accommodation being rejected, the War began, wherein *Charles* was worſted at firſt, and his Men laying down their Arms, obtained Pardon; but afterwards at *Stangbro* he ſurpriſed the King's Army, and killed 2000 of them on the Spot, with the Loſs only of 40 of his own Men. The King after this Defeat promiſed to content his Subjects, but he ſailed to *Dantzick*; and the States convening again, once more conſtituted *Charles* Regent, renounc'd their Allegiance to the King, and offer'd the Crown to his Son *Uladiſlaus*, provided he would come to *Sweden*, and be bred a Proteſtant; but in caſe of failure, he and his Heirs were to be excluded for ever from the Succeſſion. *Charles* marched againſt the *Finlanders*, whom he defeated, and made an Alliance with the *Muſcovites*. In 1600, the States met at *Sincoping*, where ſome of the Lords who aſſiſted *Sigiſmund* to invade their Country were declared guilty of High-Treaſon, and executed; and *Sigiſmund* was declared to have forfeited his Right to the Crown, and his Son *Uladiſlaus* the like, becauſe he did not appear within the limited Time. The Duke knowing that thoſe of *Eſthonia* and *Revel* were his Friends, he marched thither with a great Army, where he was joyfully receiv'd; upon which the *Poliſh* Governors retir'd to *Poland*. At firſt he had good Succeſs in *Livonia*, and took ſeveral Places; but the *Poles* raiſed the Siege of *Riga*, and retook *Kokenhauſen*, and other Places near it. In 1604, *Charles* was declared King, and the Succeſſion entail'd on his Heirs Male or Female: After which he was routed by the *Poles* in *Livonia*; but the confuſed State of *Sigiſmund*'s Affairs hinder'd him from making his Advantage of it. *Charles* aſſiſted the *Muſcovites* againſt the *Poles* with good Succeſs; but the *Swediſh* Affairs were not ſo proſperous in *Livonia*; and the *Danes* perceiving the *Swedes* ſo deeply engag'd in War, they thought it the beſt Time to attack them. By this means the *Swedes* were brought to an Extremity; but Prince *Guſtavus Adolphus*, thô under Age, retrieved them by his extraordinary Conduct and Valour; for with 1500 Horſe, he ſurpris'd the chief Magazine of the *Danes* at *Chriſtianſtadt*, and took from them the Iſle of *Oeland*, and the Caſtle of *Borkholm*. Soon after his Father *Charles* IX. died in 1611, in the 61ſt Year of his Age.

The States conſidering they were embroil'd in War with the *Poles*, *Ruſſians*, and *Danes*, thought it moſt adviſable, that *Guſtavus*, though not 18 Years of Age, ſhould take upon him the Adminiſtration. The *Danes* had the Advantage by Sea, becauſe *Guſtavus*'s Fleet was in a bad Condition, and took *Calmar*, *Ryſbyfort*, and *Elfsburg*. At this Time *Guſtavus* rais'd 2300 Men in *Scotland*, and hired five *Scotch* Ships, which did him great Service, for they took and plunder'd the City of *Drontheim*, and its Territory, and afterwards ſailed to *Sweden* by Way of *Finland*. The *Muſcovites* were willing

ling to have given their Crown to *Charles Philip*, *Guſtavus*'s Brother, but it came to nothing, becauſe *Guſtavus*, deſigning that Crown for himſelf, delay'd ſending his Brother; and the *Muſcovites*, when they perceived this, elected *Michael Theodorowitz*; yet *Charles* arriv'd in *Muſcovy* at laſt: But *Michael*'s Party was by this Time ſo ſtrong, that *Charles*'s Friends thought it not ſafe to declare for him. The *Swedes* however took many Places in *Muſcovy*; til at laſt a Peace was concluded in 1617, by which the Town of *Kexholm*, and the Province of *Ingermania*, fell to *Sweden*. Thus the *Swedes* on that Side had a Barrier betwixt them and *Muſcovy*, and the *Muſcovites* were entirely ſeparated from the *Baltick*.

This ſame Year *Guſtavus* was crown'd at *Upſal*, and married *Eleonora*, Daughter to the Elector of *Brandenburg*. The Truce with *Poland* being expir'd, *Riga* ſurrender'd to the *Swedes*, after ſix Weeks Siege; and *Sigiſmund* of *Poland* rejecting the Propoſals of Peace, *Guſtavus* enter'd *Livonia*, and defeated 3000 *Lithuanians*; ſo that the *Poles* loſt all *Livonia*, except *Dunesburg*. He alſo routed the *Lithuanians* again in *Semigallia*: Yet *Sigiſmund* would not make Peace, being encourag'd by the Emperor's fair Promiſes. Upon this, *Guſtavus* ſail'd with 80 Ships and 26000 Land-Forces to *Pillaw*, where he was receiv'd by the Elector of *Brandenburg*'s Orders; and landing his Men, took *Raunsberg* and *Frauenburg*, and moſt other Places of *Poliſh Pruſſia*. The *Poles* were forced to raiſe the Siege of *Marienburg*, with the Loſs of 4000 Men; and alſo to raiſe that of *Dirſhaw*. But *Guſtavus* deſigning to attack *Dantzick*, he was wounded in the Belly, which oblig'd him to delay the Siege. Soon after this he defeated *Koniersſoliski* near *Dorſtaw*; and ſome Days after he received another Wound in his Left Shoulder. A Treaty of Peace betwixt *Poland* and *Sweden* was almoſt concluded: But the Emperor promiſing to aſſiſt *Sigiſmund* with 24 Men of War and 12000 Men to continue the War, the Treaty was broke off, and the *Swedes* and *Danes* join'd in ruining the *Poliſh* Fleet; for none of them were willing they ſhould increaſe their Naval Strength in the *Baltick*. *Guſtavus* took three *Dantzick* Ships, and ſunk one, near that Town; but was repulſed before the Fort of *Dantzick*: To revenge which, he threw himſelf into the Harbour, cut in Pieces 200 of the Enemy, and took 14 Pieces of Cannon. *Alexander Leſley*, a *Scots* General, being detach'd by *Guſtavus* with two Companies of Foot and a Troop of Dragoons, to take a View of the Enemy's Army; this ſmall Detachment was ſurrounded by 17 Troops of *Poliſh* Cavalry, but broke through them twice, killed above 100 Horſe, and carried off 4 Standards. This brought on a general Engagement of both Armies, in which the *Poles* loſt 3000 Men, 4 Field-Pieces, and 14 Standards; but the Victory did alſo coſt the *Swedes* much Blood. *Guſtavus* block'd up the Harbour of *Dantzick* with 8 Ships; and the *Poles* encounter'd them with 10 Men of War, who kill'd the *Swediſh* Admiral, took his Ship, and obliged the Vice-Admiral to blow up his; but the *Poles* alſo loſt their Admiral and 400 Men. *Guſtavus* after this detached 1000 Foot, who paſs'd the *Weiſſel*, and ſurpris'd *Newenburg*, a *Poliſh* Magazine, where they took moſt of their Baggage, and 600000 Crowns in Money. The *Swediſh* General *Wrangel* did alſo raiſe the Blockade of *Brodzintz*, where he killed 3000 *Poles*, took 1000 Men, 5 Pieces of Cannon, and 2000 Waggons with Proviſions. This Defeat obliged the *Poles* to accept the *German* Auxiliary Troops, conſiſting of 5000 Foot and 2000 Horſe, under the Command of General *Arnheim*, who having joined the *Poles*, offer'd *Guſtavus* Battle, which he accepted, tho' he had only 5000 Horſe and 8000 Foot. At firſt the *Swediſh* Horſe were repuls'd; but the King charging in Perſon, ſoon made the *Poles* retire; and as they deſign'd to paſs the *Nogatz*, *Guſtavus* poſted Forces to diſpute their Paſſage: Upon which the Battle was renewed; and *Guſtavus* venturing too far, a *Pole* took hold of him by the Shoulder-Belt; but the King, by ſlipping it over his Head, got free of him. After this, another catch'd him by the Arm, and deſign'd to have carried him off; but *Erick Soop* ſhot the *Polander*, and reſcu'd his Majeſty. In the Action, which was near *Stum*, the *Swedes* took 7 Colours and 5 Standards. The *Poles* imputed thoſe Loſſes to *Arnheim*, whom they ſuſpected of a Correſpondence with the Elector of *Brandenburg*; and being weary of their Foreign Auxiliaries, and afflicted with Famine and Plague, they concluded

Digitized by Google

cluded a Truce with the *Swedes* for 6 Years; by which *Guſtavus* was to reſtore *Poland*, *Brodnitz*, *Wormdit*, *Melſack*, *Stum*, and *Dirſchaw*, all in *Pruſſia*. *Marienburg* was left to the Elector of *Brandenburg*; and *Guſtavus* was to keep the Caſtle and Harbour of *Pillaw*, *Memel*, *Elbing*, and *Brounsburg*, beſides all his Conqueſts in *Livonia*: So that this War concluded to his Honour and Advantage.

The Proteſtants in *Germany* being jealous of the Deſigns of the Papiſts, and ſenſible of the Oppreſſions of the Emperor, who aim'd at being abſolute, during the War betwixt the *Poles* and *Swedes*, deſir'd the Aſſiſtance of *Guſtavus*; but he being then ſo entangled that he could not diſengage himſelf, *Chriſtian* IV. of *Denmark* declared for the Proteſtants; but was defeated by the Imperialiſts, who afterwards made themſelves Maſters of *Lower Saxony*, and of many Places upon the *Baltick*. *Guſtavus* fearing the Conſequences, preſs'd the harder upon the *Poles*, to oblige them to a Peace. He repreſented alſo to the States of *Sweden* the Danger of the Neighbourhood of the Emperor's Forces, who had made themſelves Maſters of Part of *Denmark*: Upon which they unanimouſly agreed, That War with the Emperor was neceſſary, ſince he was the declar'd Enemy of *Sweden*, as appear'd by his intereſting himſelf ſo much in the *Poliſh* Quarrel, and by his refuſing the Title of King to *Guſtavus*. In the Beginning of this War, Count *Wallenſtein* laid Siege to *Stralſund*; and *Guſtavus* offer'd 'em Aſſiſtance, and ſent Ammunition to the Town. Upon this, the Citizens made an Alliance with him, and he ſent an Army, which oblig'd *Wallenſtein* to raiſe the Siege. The next Year he made War upon the Emperor; and, in the firſt place, ſent General *Leſly* with ſome Troops to drive the Imperialiſts out of the Iſle of *Rugen*, which he effected. Then *Guſtavus* embarked with 92 Companies of Foot and 16 of Horſe. Some Regiments were rais'd for him in *Pruſſia* before-hand, which were join'd by ſeveral Regiments of *Finlanders*, and commanded by *Guſtavus Horn*. The King landed at *Stetin*, and oblig'd the Duke of *Pomerania* to make an Alliance with him. The Adminiſtrator of *Magdeburg*, who had been depos'd by the Emperor, declar'd for him, having before his Arrival recover'd the Town and Territories of that Name. *Guſtavus* with theſe Forces beat the Imperialiſts out of the furthermoſt Parts of *Pomerania* and *New-Mark*; and the Succeſs encourag'd the Duke of *Lunenburg* and the Landgrave of *Heſſe* to enter alſo into an Alliance with him.

In 1631, *Guſtavus* concluded an Alliance with *France*, by which he was to have yearly from that Crown 400000 Crowns; and, notwithſtanding the Winter Seaſon, he took the Cities of *Lokenitz*, *Prentzlow*, *New Brandenburg*, *Clempenow*, *Trempton*; and *Loi z-Demmin* ſurrender'd to him, after a Siege of 3 Days; and *Colberg* did the like, after a Blockade of 5 Months; by which the Imperialiſts were drove quite out of *Lower Pomerania*. The Emperor finding his Generals not able to make head againſt *Guſtavus*, gave the Command of the Army to Count *Tilly*, the experienc'd and ſucceſsful *Bavarian* General. He fell upon *New Brandenburg*, a Place of no Strength; in which *Kniphauſen* commanded with two Regiments of *Swedes*, ſtorm'd it, after a brave Defence, and killed moſt of the common Soldiers. *Guſtavus* in the mean time marched to *Francfort* upon the *Oder*, commanded by the Earl of *Shaumberg*, took it by Storm, after a Siege of 3 Days, ſlew 1700 of the Enemy, and took 800. He afterwards ſent ſome Troops to *Landsberg*, who oblig'd the Town to ſurrender.

About this Time the Proteſtant Princes met at *Leipſick*, to concert Meaſures about oppoſing the Emperor's Edict for the Reſtitution of the Church-Lands. *Guſtavus* ſent to them, exhorting them to Union among themſelves, and to demand Aſſiſtance of Men and Money from them. But the Elector of *Saxony* hinder'd the Princes from entring into the propos'd Alliance, becauſe he deſign'd to head them himſelf, though he had not Courage to make an open Breach with the Emperor; and he was alſo jealous of the *Swediſh* Power, and thought it his Intereſt not to engage ſo far againſt the Emperor, as to leave no room for a Retreat when he found it needful; and, for the ſame Reaſon he refuſed Protection to the City of *Magdeburg*. *Guſtavus* perceiving the Proteſtant Princes to be miſtruſtful of him, thought it not fit to attempt the Relief of that City; eſpecially ſince the Elector of

Saxony.

Saxony refuſed either to join him, or to ſupply him with Proviſions and Ammunition. By this Means *Tilly* took the City by Storm, ſack'd it in a barbarous Manner, burnt it to the Ground, and cut off all the Inhabitants but 400. This Cruelty drove the Proteſtants to Deſpair; and *Guſtavus* iſſued a Manifeſto, declaring, That the Irreſolution of the other Proteſtant Princes was the only Cauſe of thoſe Calamities. He ſent Part of his Forces to aſſiſt the Duke of *Mecklenburg*; and with the reſt he marched into *Mark*. With the Aſſiſtance of thoſe *Swediſh* Troops, the Dukes of *Mecklenburg* drove the Imperialiſts out of all their Territories, except *Domitz*, *Wiſmar*, and *Roſtock*, which they block'd up. About this Time 6000 *Engliſh* and *Scots*, under the Command of the Marquis of *Hamilton*, arrived in *Pomerania*, to ſerve under *Guſtavus*, for Relief of the *German* Proteſtants. The very Fame of his Arrival, and of the *Scots* Valour, ſays Dr. *Burnet* in his Memoirs of the Houſe of *Hamilton*, ſtruck a Terror into the Imperialiſts, made the Elector of *Saxony* agree with the *Swedes*, encourag'd the Proteſtant Party, and oblig'd Count *Tilly* ſo to weaken his Army by reinforcing the Gariſons which lay in the Marquis's Way, that the Marquis's Arrival was conſeſs'd through *Germany* to have been a great Occaſion of *Guſtavus*'s Victory at *Leipſick*; of which anon. The Marquis had an extraordinary Reception from the King of *Sweden*, who order'd him to guard the Paſſes upon the *Oder*, to ſecure a Retreat in caſe he ſhould be beat. The Marquis after this reliev'd *Croſſen*, and made the Imperialiſts retire, leaving Part of their Baggage and Cannon behind them. He alſo took *Guben*, and was order'd to reduce *Sileſia*, but afterwards countermanded to the Siege of *Magdeburg*, where he offer'd to fight the Imperialiſts that came to relieve it; but the *Swediſh* General declin'd it. The Marquis loſt many of his Men by Plague and Famine; and in ſhort was very ill uſed by the King of *Sweden*, who did not agree with his Maſter King *Charles* I though he had a very high Eſteem of the Marquis: So that his Army dwindled at laſt to two Regiments; and the Marquis return'd home a little before *Guſtavus* was killed at the Battle of *Lutzen*, in order to have renewed a Treaty betwixt King *Charles* and *Guſtavus*; and to have remov'd the Miſunderſtanding betwixt them. But to return to *Guſtavus*, he ſurpris'd *Tilly*'s Guards near *Wolmerſtadt*, and cut off 3 Regiments; but *Tilly* march'd on with 40000 Men to *Leipſick*, and took it. This prompted the Elector of *Saxony* to declare for *Guſtavus*, who would not join his Army except he deliver'd into his Hands the City of *Wirtenberg*, to ſecure his Retreat, ſend his eldeſt Son into the *Swediſh* Army, advance 3 Months Pay to his Troops, and deliver up thoſe who counſell'd him to ſide with his Enemies: All which the Elector agreed to. Upon this, *Guſtavus* paſs'd the *Elb* near *Wirtenberg*, with 13000 Foot and 9000 Horſe, and joined the Elector near *Dieben*: And a Council of War being called, the Elector declared his Inclination for fighting. *Guſtavus* thought it alſo adviſeable to fight *Tilly* before he was joined by *Altinger* and *Treffenbach*; the King being to command the Right, and the Elector the Left. *Tilly* hearing of this, fortified himſelf in his Camp; but *Pappenheim*, and others of the Imperial Generals, would fight; and talk'd contemptibly of the new-levied *Saxons*, and of the fatigued *Swedes*. The Armies being drawn up, *Tilly* had the riſing Ground, and the Wind; but *Guſtavus* putting ſome Squadrons of Foot among his Horſe, and wheeling about, regain'd the Wind, and charging the Imperialiſts, forced them to open their Left Wing, when *Bannier* fell in, and put them into Confuſion. *Guſtavus* ordered his Men, when they attack'd the *German* Cuiraſſiers, to run their Swords into their Horſes, which they did; but the *Saxon* Infantry, and ſome of their Militia-Horſe, fled; which *Guſtavus* perceiving, he fell upon the *German* Horſe that purſued them, obliged them to give over the Chace, and gave the *Saxons* Time to rally. The Imperial Foot continued firm, till *Guſtavus* charg'd their Flank with his Right, and took their Cannon: So that they were entirely routed, 7600 killed on the Spot, and 5000 taken, who liſted themſelves in *Guſtavus*'s Service. *Tilly* was in Danger of being killed; but was reſcued by the Duke of *Saxe-Lauenburg*. The *Swedes* took above 100 Standards and Colours; but loſt 2000 Men, moſt of them Horſe; and the *Saxons* had 3000 killed. After this, they retook *Leipſick*; and *Guſtavus* at *Merſeburg* cut off above 1000 Im-

Digitized by Google

perialiſts, and took 500. He did not think fit to purſue *Tilly*'s Army further; but agreed, That the Elector ſhould march into the Emperor's Hereditary Countries; and that he himſelf ſhould march towards *Franconia*, where he took *Koningſhofen*, *Swinfurt*, and the Caſtle of *Wartzburg*. He was afterwards joined by 12000 Men, under the Duke of *Holſace*; and *Tilly* was alſo reinforced by the Imperialiſts: But the *Swedes* fell on his Rear, and cut off 4 Regiments. The Marquis of *Anſpach* made alſo an Alliance with the King: So he marched towards the *Rhine*, ſurpriſed *Hanaw*, and *Francfort* on the *Mayne*; and being poſſeſſed of all the *Ringau*, he marched into the *Palatinate*, of which the *Spaniards* were then Maſters; and driving them out, he enter'd the *Bergſtrate*, took *Gerſheim*, paſſed the *Rhine* near *Stockſtadt*, defeated the *Spaniards* that diſputed his Paſſage at *Oppenheim*, where he killed 5000 of them, and made himſelf Maſter of many Places. At this Time the Coaſt of the *Baltick* was cleared of all the Imperialiſts, by the Surrender of *Roſtock* and *Wiſmar*. The States of the Circle of *Lower Saxony* agreed to levy 6000 Foot and 500 Horſe for their own Defence againſt the Imperialiſts; and the Elector's Forces under General *Arnheim* took *Prague*: But this General being a ſecret Enemy to *Guſtavus*, and correſponding with the Imperial Generals, he would march no further into the Hereditary Countries, otherwiſe he might have ſubdued all *Moravia* and *Auſtria*. The Emperor finding that *Tilly* was not able to cope with *Guſtavus*, he gave the Command of his Army to Count *Wallenſtein*, an old and experienc'd Soldier, and ſo rich, that he was able at his own Charge to raiſe an Army, and ſoon levied 40000 Men. In the Winter *Guſtavus*'s Forces took many Places on the *Moſelle*, and defeated the *Spaniards*. In the Spring he marched into *Franconia*, and poſſeſſed himſelf of all the Places on the *Danube* as far as *Ulm*. Then he marched to the River *Leck*, where *Tilly* being intrenched on the other Side, was wounded by a Cannon Bullet, of which he died ſoon after. This did ſo much affright his Army, that the *Swedes* attacked and killed 1000 of them, and marched into the Circle of *Bavaria*, where they took *Rain*, *Newburg* on the *Danube*, and *Augſburg*; but their Deſigns on *Ingolſtadt* and *Ratiſbon* miſcarried. Before the firſt, the Marquis of *Baden* was kill'd by the King's Side, who had alſo his Horſe ſhot under him. But *Guſtavus* laid *Bavaria* under Contribution, and their Capital, *Munich*, ſurrender'd to him, where he found 140 Cannon, and in one of them 30000 Ducats. He would not ſuffer the Elector's noble Palace to be plundered. The *Swedes* roured 10000 *Bavarians*, who deſigned to ſurpriſe them: But the *Bavarians* afterwards took *Norigaw*, and broke the Articles with the Citizens. After this the *Swedes* made themſelves Maſters of moſt of the Places in *Upper Suabia*. *Wallenſtein* would not then aſſiſt the Elector of *Bavaria*, but marched into *Bohemia*; from whence, by *Arnheim*'s Treachery, he ſoon drove the *Saxons*. Then he directed his Courſe to *Bavaria*, where the Elector joined him. *Guſtavus* encamped near *Nuremberg*; and the Imperialiſts cut off many of his Convoys: But he was reinforced from ſeveral Places by 15000 Foot and 10000 Horſe. He attacked *Wallenſtein* in his Camp; but was repulſed with the Loſs of 2000 Men. In the mean time *Pappenheim* defeated the *Heſſians*, forced the Duke of *Lunenburg* to raiſe the Siege of *Gallenberg*, and obliged General *Banditt* to riſe from before *Paderborn* and *Hoxter*, relieved *Wolfenbuttel*, took *Hildersheim*, and was marching to join *Wallenſtein*. On the other hand, the *Saxons* enter'd *Sileſia* with 16000 Men, and might have poſſeſſed all the Country, had it not been for the Treachery of *Arnheim*, who was allowed by the Elector of *Saxony* to correſpond with *Wallenſtein*. *Guſtavus* deſign'd to have ſent Part of his Forces to *Franconia*, and with the main Body to have marched into *Bavaria*; but preſſing Letters from the Elector of *Saxony* oblig'd him to march to his Aſſiſtance; for *Wallenſtein* had enter'd *Miſnia* with all his Forces: Upon which, *Guſtavus* fearing leſt the Elector might make a ſeparate Peace with the Emperor, he marched to join him, and concluded it was beſt to fight *Wallenſtein* before he was joined by *Pappenheim*; and led his Army to *Lutzen*, where a Battle followed, in which the *Swediſh* Infantry fell with ſuch Bravery upon the Imperial Foot, that they routed them, and took their Cannon; but a broad Ditch hinder'd the *Swediſh* Cavalry to advance. The King put himſelf at the Head of the *Smaland* Regiment of Horſe; and

and advancing bravely before the reſt, accompanied only by the Duke of *Saxe-Lauenburg* and two Grooms, he loſt his Life there. 'Tis moſt probable, ſays *Puffendorf*, he was ſhot or ſtab'd behind his Back by the ſaid Duke, who was brib'd by the Imperialiſts. The *Swedes*, enraged by *Guſtavus*'s Death, fell upon the Enemy with greater Fury than before; and routed them on all Sides; but the Death of their heroick King made this Victory too dear a Purchaſe. This great Prince was juſtly called the *Ceſar* of the North, and would probably have dethroned the Emperor, and aboliſhed Popery in the Empire, had he lived. He diſcovered his Military Bravery very early in his Father's Time, and was alſo remarkable for his Piety. He had abundance of *Scots* in his Army. In 1623, two Regiments of that Nation were appointed to guard his Perſon and the King of *Bohemia* at *Mamich*, tho' he had both *Swedes* and *Dutch* at that Time in his Service. He aſcribed the Victory at *Leipſick* to a *Scots* Brigade. They performed great Service for him at other Times, as the noble Defence of *Straſſund*, the taking of *Francfort* on the *Oder*, *Mentz*, *Donawert*, *Augsburg*, *Ingolſtadt*, &c. for he had no leſs than three *Scots* Generals, one Velt-Marſhal, one Lieutenant-General, two Major-Generals, 23 Colonels, 20 of which came afterwards to be Major-Generals, 55 Lieutenant-Colonels, 14 Majors, with an unknown Number of Captains and Subalterns, beſides 7 Regiments of *Scots* that lay in *Sweden*, *Livonia*, &c. and the *Dutch* in *Guſtavus*'s Service were glad many times to beat the *Scots* March when they deſigned to frighten and alarm the Enemy. 'Tis obſerved, That Colonel *Sir John Hamilton* abandoned the Army, tho' earneſtly preſſed by *Guſtavus* to ſtay, only becauſe the *Swedes* and the *Dutch* were ordered to ſtorm the Enemy's Works before him at *Wurtzburg*, after he himſelf and his Men had boldly hewn out the Way for them.

The News of *Guſtavus*'s Death was joyfully receiv'd by the Emperor, who thought the *Swedes* would be obliged to abandon all their former Conqueſts in *Germany*. The Proteſtants there were alſo divided into Factions, being only united by the great Authority of *Guſtavus*. The *Swedes* proclaimed *Chriſtina*, his Daughter, Queen, being then but 6 Years of Age, and committed the Care of the War in *Germany* to Chancellor *Oxenſtiern*, who firſt ſent ſome Regiments back to *Sweden* to ſecure the Peace there. He went to *Dreſden*, to perſwade the Elector of *Saxony* to enter ſincerely into the Alliance, and to concert Meaſures with him about the enſuing Campagne. The Elector of *Brandenburg*, the Landgrave of *Heſſe*, and an Ambaſſador from *France*, went thither alſo to the ſame purpoſe, but with no Succeſs, for he anſwer'd them coldly, and in general Terms; ſo that the Confederates could not expect much Conſtancy or Aſſiſtance from him. *Oxenſtiern* ſent 14000 Men, under the Command of the Duke of *Lunenburg*, into *Lower Saxony* and *Weſtphalia*: Other Troops were order'd to *Franconia*; and the reſt were detached to *Sileſia*. The Duke of *Lunenburg* took ſeveral Places in *Weſtphalia*, and defeated Count *Mansfield*. *Guſtavus Horn* was alſo ſucceſsful in *Alſatia*; but the Treachery of *Arnheim*, who ſtill diſcover'd all the Confederates Secrets to *Wallenſtein*, and acted in concert with him, ſtop'd his Victories there. The Duke of *Lunenburg* took *Hamelen*, and defeated 15000 Imperialiſts who came to raiſe the Siege, killed 2000, and took as many Priſoners.

At this Time 4 Circles of *Upper Germany* aſſembled at *Hailbron*, and committed the Management of the War to *Oxenſtiern*, who reinſtated the Children of *Frederick* Count *Palatine* in his Territories and Electoral Dignity, in order to engage *England*, *Holland*, and the whole *Palatine* Family, in his Intereſt. *Arnheim* marched out of the Way, to give an Opportunity to *Wallenſtein* to fall upon the *Swedes* in *Sileſia*, and drive them from thence; but in other Places the *Swediſh* Affairs were in a tolerable Poſture. *Guſtavus Horn* did ſo harraſs the Duke *de Feria* in his March from *Italy*, that of 30000 Men, he had only 12000 Men left, which broke his Heart. *Horn* alſo took *Ratisbon*, and ravaged *Bavaria*.

The Emperor was at this Time ſuſpicious of the Deſigns of *Wallenſtein*, who was grown too great for a Subject; for he had bargain'd with the *French* to join 'em, and made ſome Propoſals to *Oxenſtiern*, who would never truſt him. The Emperor reſolved

Digitized by Google

ſolved to take him off; but in this dangerous Juncture, had none he could truſt with the Conduct of this Affair but three *Scots* Colonels, *Gordon*, *Leſly*, and *Butler*, who boldly ſeiz'd this perfidious General, and ſtruck off his Head in the View of his Army. The King of *Hungary* was made General in his ſtead, who retook *Ratisbon*. After this happened the fatal Battle of *Nordlingen*, where 6000 *Swediſh* Foot were killed, and a great many taken, with their General Count *Horn*, and 130 Colours. Upon this the Elector of *Saxony* made a ſeparate Peace with the Emperor. The Elector of *Brandenburg* ſided with the *Saxons*, and all *Upper Germany* was over-run by the *Imperialiſts*; and the Truce with *Poland* being expired, the *Swedes*, to procure a new one, were obliged to quit *Pruſſia* to the *Poles*. *France* alſo refuſed to engage further with the *Swedes*, unleſs *Philipsburg* was ſurrender'd to them, which was complied with. Then a War began betwixt the *Swedes* and the Elector of *Saxony*, who demanded the Reſtitution of the Archbiſhoprick of *Magdeburg*, and offer'd 2500000 *Miſnia* Livres as an Equivalent; but *Oxenſtiern* refuſed it. Upon which, the *Saxons* marched to the *Elb* to give the *Swedes* Battle: *Banier* defeated their advanced Guards at *Altenburg*; but 7000 of them having paſſed the *Elb* near *Domitz*, General *Ruthven*, a *Scots-man*, was detached with moſt of the *Swediſh* Horſe, and 1000 Foot, to ſecure that City. The *Swediſh* Horſe fell upon the *Saxons*, cut moſt of them off, and took 2500, whom they forced to ſerve in the *Swediſh* Army. Moſt of the Allies, who preferr'd their private Intereſt to the Common Cauſe, had now deſerted the *Swedes*, who, thô they were leſs numerous than formerly, acted more unanimouſly, and reſolved that *Wrangel* ſhould command a Detachment on the *Oder*; that *Leſly* ſhould act in *Weſtphalia* upon the *Weſer*; and that *Banier* ſhould command the Body of the Army upon the *Elb*, where he routed 12 *Saxon* Regiments. *Knipbauſen* alſo routed a Body of *Imperialiſts*, and killed 1000 on the Spot, but loſt his Life in this Engagement; upon which his Forces were obliged to retire; but General *Leſly* recruited them, and gathering up the diſpers'd Regiments, made himſelf Maſter of *Minden*; the Gariſon of which was ſubject to the Duke of *Lunenburg*, who had declared againſt the *Swedes*: And *Leſly* having joined the *Swediſh* Troops who had been in the Service of that Prince to his own, he brought Affairs in *Weſtphalia* to a good Poſture, and the Landgrave of *Heſſe* join'd him to relieve the City of *Hanaw*, blocked up by *Lamboy*, which they did, and obliged *Lamboy* to retire with much Loſs. After this, *Leſly* retired towards the *Weſer*: For the *Swediſh* Affairs in *Saxony* being in an ill Poſture, *Banier* order'd *Leſly* to join him; and *Wrangel* having alſo brought him Recruits from *Pomerania*, *Banier* gave the *Saxons* Battle near *Perleburg*, where he attacked them in their fortified Camp, and killed 5000 in the Field of Battle, beſides thoſe ſlain in the Purſuit. He alſo defeated 8 *Saxon* Regiments near *Edenburg*, and 2000 of their Men near *Pegau*. The next Year, being 1639, he drove the Imperial General *Gallas* into the Hereditary Countries. *Bernard* Duke of *Saxe-Weimar* had the ſame Succeſs on the *Rhine*, where he twice routed the *Imperialiſts*, and afterwards killed 9000 of them; when they came to raiſe the Siege of *Briſack*. He likewiſe defeated the Duke of *Lorrain*, and killed 3500 of his Men; ſo that the Place was obliged to ſurrender. After this, the *Swedes* reſolved to make the Emperor's Hereditary Countries the Seat of the War; but the Death of Duke *Bernard*, who was poiſon'd by the *French*, becauſe he refuſed to ſurrender *Briſack* into their Hands, hinder'd it, and his Army was brib'd to ſubmit to a *French* General. In 1641, *Banier* had well near ſurpriſed *Ratisbon*, where the Emperor and the Eſtates of the Empire were aſſembled; but a ſudden Thaw hinder'd it. He deſign'd to carry the War into *Moravia*, *Sileſia*, and *Bohemia*; but Duke *Bernard*'s Forces, then under the Command of a *French* General, left him, and the *Imperialiſts* ſo cloſely beſet him, that he had no Way to retreat but thrô the Foreſt of *Bohemia*, which he did with great Expedition, and ſaved the *Swediſh* Army, but died ſoon after, on *May* 10, 1642. After his Death, the *Swedes* under the Command of *Wrangel* and *Comingſmark*, beat the *Imperialiſts* twice near *Wolfenbuttle*. *Leonard Torſtenſon* ſucceeded *Banier* in the Command of the Army, and marched to *Sileſia*, where he took *Glogaw* and other Places.

Digitized by Google

ces. He alſo defeated the Imperialiſts that came to relieve *Sweinitz*, killed 3000 of their Horſe, and their General the Duke of *Saxe-Lawenburg*: But not thinking fit to march into *Bohemia*, becauſe the Imperialiſts were ſuperior there in Number, he beſieged *Leipſick*. The Imperialiſts, under *Piccolomini*, came to its Relief, which occaſioned a Battle, wherein the *Swedes* killed 5000, and took 4500, with the Loſs of 2000 of their own Men. After this, *Leipſick* ſurrender'd to *Torſtenſon*; but *Piccolomini* obliged him to raiſe the Siege of *Friburg*; and the *Weimarian* Army, under the Command of the *French* General *Guebrian*, was routed by the *Bavarians*. 'Twas obſerv'd the *French* carried on a ſeparate Intereſt from the *Swedes*, and were unwilling that they ſhould be ſo powerful in *Germany* as to be able to carry on the War without their Help, and therefore endeavour'd to balance the War in the Empire. In 1644, *Torſtenſon* had private Orders to march into *Holſtein*, where the *Danes* had done the *Swedes* a great many Injuries. Accordingly he ſurpriſed them, took a great many Places from them, beat their Troops in *Jutland* and *Schonen*, ruin'd their Fleet, and made himſelf Maſter of the Biſhoprick of *Bremen*, and the Iſle of *Burnholm*. This obliged the *Danes* to agree to a diſadvantageous Peace at *Bromesbroo*, by the Mediation of *France* and *Holland*; by which the King of *Denmark* gave up to *Sweden* for ever *Jemptland*, and *Harndal*, which borders on *Jemptland*, and was Part of the Government of *Drontheim*, with the Iſle of *Gothland* and *Oeſel*, and gave the Province of *Bleking* for 26 Years as a Security. *Sweden* might have expected better Terms, had there not been a *Dutch* Fleet in the *Sound* of 48 Men of War, of whoſe Friendſhip they were not certain. *Torſtenſon* made a Truce with the Elector of *Saxony*, march'd into *Bohemia*, and at *Jenowitz* killed and took 8000 Imperialiſts, with the Loſs of 2000 of his own Men. After this he marched into *Moravia* and *Auſtria*, took many Places on the *Danube*, and join'd *Ragotzki*'s Army, conſiſting of 25000 Men, but undiſciplin'd, who ravag'd the Country. But *Ragotzki* afterwards made Peace with the Emperor, and marched home. The *French* under the Command of *Turenne* were defeated by the *Bavarians*, and *Torſtenſon* march'd back to *Bohemia*, his Men being ſick by eating too many green Grapes; and he himſelf being diſabled by the Gout, he quitted the Command of the Army, which then conſiſted of 15000 Horſe, and 8000 Foot, all Veterans. *Wrangel*, who ſucceeded him, made a Truce with the Elector of *Bavaria*; but the Emperor ſome Months after perſwaded the Elector to break it. Upon which *Wrangel* beſieg'd *Eger*, and after routing three Regiments of the Enemy that came to relieve it, it ſurrender'd in 1648. *Turenne* join'd *Wrangel*, and ravaged *Bavaria* and *Suabia*. They paſſ'd the *Danube* near *Lawingen*, overtook the Enemy's Rear-Guard, and killed 2000 of them, among whom was General *Haltzappel*. *Konigſmark* ſurpriſed the Suburbs of *Prague*, where the *Swedes* found an ineſtimable Booty in the Emperor's Palace, and Noblemen's Houſes, and took many Priſoners of Note. He alſo took *Tabor* by Storm. *Wittenburg*, another *Swediſh* General, took Count *Butcheim*, and ſeveral Officers of Note, who fled from *Prague* with their Convoy, and a great many Lords, 350 ordinary Perſons, and a conſiderable Booty. *Charles Guſtavus*, Count *Palatine*, was by Queen *Chriſtina* made Generaliſſimo of all her Forces. He learn'd the Art of War under *Torſtenſon*, and brought with him 7000 Men from *Sweden*.

About this Time the Peace at *Munſter* and *Oſnabrug* was concluded, to the Honour of the *Swedes*, who had made *Germany* the Seat of War for 18 Years. Seven Years were ſpent in adjuſting the Preliminaries: But the Emperor ſeeing that the *Swedes* were ſtill victorious, and at that Time had an Army of 70000 Veterans, commanded by the braveſt Generals of the Age, he granted the *Swedes* the Dutchies of *Bremen* and *Verden*, *Upper Pomeren*, and Part of the *Lower*, the Iſle of *Rugen*, and the City of *Wiſmar*, which has a Vote in the Circles and Diets of the Empire, and 5000000 Crowns towards the Payment of their Army. It muſt be own'd, to the Honour of the *Swedes*, that they had frequently more advantageous Terms offer'd them, if they would have yielded to a ſeparate Peace; which they refuſed, and would not lay down their Arms till they compos'd moſt of the Differences, which had till then divided.

Digitized by Google

vided the Empire, reinſtated many *German* Princes in their Territories, and ſettled both Peace and the Proteſtant Religion in *Germany*. If their Allies had not forſaken them at this Time, and that other States of *Europe* grew jealous of their Greatneſs, they might have laid under Contribution all the Countries from the *Baltick* to the Lake of *Conſtanz*; for they had in *Germany* above 100 ſtrong Places well garriſon'd. In 1654, Queen *Chriſtina* ſurrender'd the Crown at *Upſal* to *Charles Guſtavus*, her Nephew, on Condition that he ſhould allow her an Yearly Penſion, ſufficient to ſupport her Rank and Dignity. Then the Troops were disbanded at *Upſal*, to the great Grief of the People, becauſe till then the like had not been ſeen or read of in their Hiſtories. When the Queen had ſurrender'd the Sovereignty to *Charles Guſtavus*, ſhe departed the Kingdom, publickly embrac'd Popery at *Inſpruck*, and paſſed moſt of her Time afterwards at *Rome*. *Charles* was crown'd at *Upſal*, and obtain'd from the Diet, That the 4th Part of ſuch Crown-Lands as had been given away ſince *Guſtavus Adolphus*'s Reign, ſhould be reunited to the Crown. They likewiſe added ſomething new, and made it unalienable. He ſettled his Military Affairs that were in Diſorder ſince the Peace, and deſign'd to make War upon *Poland*, becauſe *Caſimir*, their King, would not acknowledge his Title, and ſent an Ambaſſador to Queen *Chriſtina*, to perſwade her to proteſt againſt the Reſignation ſhe had made, but in vain. The ſame Ambaſſador was alſo ſent to the States of *Sweden* upon that Deſign, but with equal Succeſs. Upon this *Charles* march'd into *Poland*, defeated thoſe that oppos'd his Paſſage; and all the Forces of the Republick being diſpers'd, the Waywodes and Caſtellans of *Poland* ſubmitted, and ſwore Fealty to the Crown of *Sweden*. *Caſimir*, after this, met him near *Cracow* with 10000 Men, who were defeated, 1000 of them ſlain, and all their Baggage taken: Upon which *Cracow* ſurrender'd; and *Caſimir* being forced to fly into *Sileſia*, did ſome Years after abdicate the Government; ſo that not only *Great* and *Little Poland*, but alſo the Provinces of *Maſovia*, *Podolia*, *Red Ruſſia*, and *Volhinia*, ſent their Deputies to *Charles* at *Warſaw*, and, in the Name of their Principals, ſubmitted to him. Thus he conquer'd this Kingdom in 3 Months time, and *Dantzick* only held out againſt him. This amazing Progreſs alarmed moſt of the States of *Europe*, and afterwards the *Poles* revolted from him, becauſe they fear'd a Change in Religion; and the Noblemen being jealous their Privileges ſhould be abridged, in many Places they cut off the *Swediſh* Garriſons, eſpecially in *Lithuania*. *Charles* having ended his Differences with the Elector of *Brandenburg* about *Pruſſia*, marched back to *Warſaw*. In his Way he met *Czarneczi*, who commanded 12000 Men, whom he defeated, and took many Priſoners. And near *Warſaw* the *Swedes* alſo routed the *Poles* and *Tartars*, in a bloody Battle that laſted three Days, when many Thouſands of 'em were kill'd and drown'd in a Moraſs. The Elector of *Brandenburg*, after this Victory, withdrew his Troops to *Pruſſia*, and was wavering. The *Muſcovites* invaded *Carelia*, *Ingria*, and *Livonia*. In the latter, they took *Duneburg* and *Kokenhauſen*. They alſo laid Siege to *Riga*, but were forced to raiſe it. *Ragotzki*, Prince of *Tranſilvania*, with 30000 Men, joined King *Charles* near *Optatow*, where they took the City of *Braſlaw* in *Lithuania*. At this Time the *Danes* declared War againſt *Sweden*, being inſtigated by the Emperor, *Holland* and *Muſcovy*. They demanded back all the Countries the *Swedes* had taken from them, and invaded the Dutchy of *Bremen*, which obliged King *Charles* to march directly to *Stetin*, and he adviſed *Ragotzki* to return to *Tranſilvania* in the mean time; but he refuſed it, and directing his Courſe to *Volhinia*, where he had neither Friends nor Places of Strength, the *Poles* and *Tartars* ſurpris'd him, and cut off moſt of his Army. After this the *Turks* declared War againſt him, and in a Battle with thoſe Infidels he loſt his Life. *Charles* recover'd in 14 Days time all the Places the *Danes* had taken in *Bremen*. He alſo invaded *Holſtein*, where he carried all before him; and *Wrangel* took *Fredericks-Udde*; but the *Swedes* were worſted in *Holland*. At this Time the *Auſtrians* enter'd *Poland*, to drive the *Swedes* from thence, and took *Cracow*. The *Poliſh* General *Czarnuski* invaded *Pomerania*, and ravaged it cruelly. In 1658, *Charles* marched over the Ice to the Iſland of *Fuhnen*, or *Huen*, where he killed

Digitized by Google

killed 4400 Soldiers, and 1500 Boors, and from thence he went to other Iſlands, and at laſt into *Zeeland*, where he carried all before him. This diſtreſſed the King of *Denmark* to that degree, that he was obliged to clap up a Peace at *Roſchild*, by which he reſign'd to King *Charles* the Provinces of *Schonen*, *Halland*, and *Bleking*, with the Iſles of *Huen*, *Falſter*, *Bornholm*, and the Governments of *Bahus* and *Drontheim* in *Norway*. *Charles* ſeeing this Peace with the *Danes* was not to be depended upon, and knowing his War with *Poland* was far enough from being ended, thought it moſt adviſable to humble *Denmark* in the firſt place, as his weakeſt Enemy: Upon which he landed Forces in *Zeeland*, and beſieged *Copenhagen*, while *Wrangel* reduc'd *Cronenburg*. The *Danes* in *Copenhagen* defended themſelves bravely, till they were deliver'd by the *Dutch* Fleet, who after defeated the *Swediſh* Navy, in which they loſt their Admiral, and his Ship They ſailed through the Fire of the *Swediſh* Ships that lay before the Town, and reliev'd it; upon which the Siege was changed into a Blockade; and in the Iſland of *Huen*, the *Swediſh* Infantry were cut off. At this Time *Charles* gave Orders to *Douglaſs*, one of his Generals, to make himſelf Maſter of *Mittaw*, and ſecure the Duke of *Courland*'s Perſon, becauſe he had broken the Neutrality; which *Douglaſs* performed, and brought the Duke Priſoner to *Riga*, from whence he was ſent to *Ivanogorod*, where he continued till the End of the War. The King of *Sweden* was ſtill Maſter of the Iſles of *Langland*, *Huen*, *Falſter*, and *Laland*; but the *Engliſh* and *Dutch* both declar'd againſt him, and threaten'd him if he would not make Peace with *Denmark*. After the Departure of the *Engliſh* Fleet, the Confederate *Dutch*, *Danes*, *Brandenburgers*, and *Poles*, tranſported their Troops into the Iſland of *Fubnen*, or *Huen*, defeated the *Swedes* at *Nyborg*, and killed 4000 of their beſt Men. This Loſs touched *Charles* in a ſenſible manner; and having aſſembled the States at *Gothenburg*, to conſult about Affairs, he was taken with a Fever, and died in 1666, at a Time when he had ſix powerful Enemies combined againſt him.

Charles XI. was but 5 Years of Age when his Father died. The States were deſirous of an honourable Peace, which was concluded at *Oliva* near *Dantzick*, with the Emperor, the Elector of *Brandenburg*, and the King of *Poland*, who reſign'd his Pretenſions to the Crown of *Sweden*, as the *Poles* did their Claim to *Livonia*. That ſame Month a Peace was concluded near *Copenhagen* with *Denmark*, upon the ſame Terms with that at *Roſchild*; but that the *Danes* kept the Iſle of *Bornholm*, and *Drontheim* in *Norway*. The *Swedes* however got *Bornholm*, in Conſideration of an Equivalent in *Schonen*. The *Swedes* alſo concluded a Peace with the *Muſcovites* about that Time; and in 1674 enter'd into the Triple Alliance with *England* and *Holland*, to preſerve the *United Netherlands*. At length they broke this Alliance, and ſided with *France* againſt the Elector of *Brandenburg*, to draw him from the Intereſts of the Empire; but the Elector routed the *Swediſh* Army, and took all that the *Swedes* were poſſeſſed of in *Pomerania*. The *Lunenburgers* got the Dutchy of *Bremen* and *Verden* into their Poſſeſſion, the King of *Denmark* took the City of *Wiſmar*, and alſo ſeveral conſiderable Places in *Schonen*; but the *Swedes* on the other Side routed 5000 *Brandenburgers* in the Iſle of *Uſidom*; and *Koningſmark* defeated the Confederates in the Iſle of *Rugen*, where he killed and took all their Men. The *Swediſh* Fleet was about this Time ſhipwreck'd on the Iſle of *Bornholm*, moſt of the Men were drown'd, and the reſt ſtrip'd and impriſon'd by the *Danes*, tho' they had Paſſports from the K. of *Denmark*. The *Danes* made an Inroad into *Schonen*, and took *Helſingburg* and *Chriſtianſtadt* by Storm; but the K. of *Sweden* marched againſt them, and entirely routed them. He alſo defeated them in another Battle at *Lunden*. Next Year the *Danes* were routed again at *Landskroon*, and *Chriſtianſtadt* ſurrender'd to *Charles*. By the Peace of *Nimeguen*, the *Swedes* were repoſſeſs'd of all the Countries they had in *Germany*, and all Places taken by the *Danes* were reſtor'd to them. The King of *Sweden* married *Ulrica Eleonora*, the King of *Denmark*'s Siſter, in 1678.

After the Peace, he applied himſelf to repair the Damage his Dominions had ſuſtain'd during the late War, to fortify his Gariſons, which were in a bad Condition, and to re-eſtabliſh his Authority in the Territories that were reſtor'd him at the Treaty

Digitized by Google

of *Nimiguen*. His Officers and chief Miniſters about him, as Baron *Guldenſtiern* and Baron *Flemming*, poſſeſſed him with an ill Opinion of the Faithfulneſs of the Senators. In 1680, the King called together the States, and propoſed, That they ſhould enquire into the great Loſſes during the laſt War, for they had loſt above 40 Sail of good Ships, and above 100000 Men, and paſs Sentence upon ſuch as ſhould be found guilty of Maladminiſtration; ſo that the Odium of all this fell upon ſuch as were in the Miniſtry during the King's Minority, and their Eſtates were confiſcated to make Satisfaction. The States alſo voted, That the too great Power of the Senators contributed much to the former Miſcarriages; and that they needed no ſuch Mediators betwixt the King and them; therefore they abſolv'd his Majeſty from that Article of his Coronation-Oath, which oblig'd him *to rule the Kingdom with the Advice of the Senators*. They further declared, That the King might deny them their former Salaries, and only employ ſuch of them as he pleaſed; and they were afterwards to be called the King's Senators, inſtead of the Senators of the Kingdom. To oblige the King yet more, they voted, That his Majeſty, who had received his Crown only from God, was accountable to him alone for his Actions. They granted at the ſame time a very great Sum to the King, towards which every Servant was to pay the Tenth Part of their Wages, and each Farm Five Crowns, which was as much as the uſual Rent of thoſe Farms before that Time. Cities were to pay proportionably; and this was to laſt 4 Years. They eſtabliſhed a new Court of Reſumptions, to reunite all Crown-Lands formerly alienated, or ſold at Under-Rates, and that the Proprietors ſhould pay for the Loſs the Crown had ſuffer'd from the Date of the Alienation. Thus thoſe Lands were reunited, though greatly improved by the Owners. The ſame was done as to Noblemen's Poſſeſſions in *Livonia*. The Nobility were obliged to comply with all this, becauſe many of them needed Court-Employments to ſupport their Grandeur.

By thoſe Methods the King got a vaſt Revenue; but it impoveriſhed moſt Families in *Sweden*: For when the Crown ow'd Money to great Families, whoſe Lands were to be reunited, they were left to ſtate their Accounts in the Court of Liquidation; but what they ow'd the King was to be paid immediately.

At the Aſſembly of the Eſtates in 1683, a Sum was granted equal to the former; and they explained that Article of the Coronation-Oath, whereby the King was obliged *to rule according to Law*; and declared he was not thereby tied to the Laws then in being, but might alter the ſame, and add what other Conſtitutions he thought fit. Theſe and the like Conceſſions have made the King of *Sweden* as abſolute as any in *Europe*. The Clergy, Burghers and Peaſants, complied the more willingly with this Change, becauſe they thought it would be the only Way to humble the Nobility, who were always Imperious and Tyrannical.

He reſented the Affront put upon him by the *French*, in ſeizing the Dutchy of *Deux-Ponts*, and their entring into an Alliance with the Elector of *Brandenburg*, and therefore reſolved to remain Neuter in the ſucceeding War. In 1696, he offer'd his Mediation to compoſe the Differences betwixt the contending Princes and States of *Europe*, which was accepted by the Confederates and *France* at the Treaty of *Ryſwick*. He died *April* 17. 1697.

Upon the 16th of *November* following the States declared *Charles* XII. of Age, though but fifteen Years old. In 1699, he ſided with the Duke of *Holſtein* againſt *Denmark*, with a Deſign to put a Stop to the late Alliance concluded betwixt *Muſcovy*, *Poland*, and *Denmark*, againſt him. Upon this he ordered his Forces in *Pomerania* and *Bremen* to join thoſe of *Lunenburg*; and obliged the King of *Denmark* to riſe from before *Tonningen*. In 1700, the *Engliſh* and *Dutch* Fleet came into the *Sound*, declared againſt *Denmark*, joined the *Swediſh* Fleet, and made a Deſcent on the Coaſts of *Zeeland*. The King of *Sweden* landed 800 Foot; and a Storm having obliged the reſt of the Tranſports to ſtand off to Sea for two Days, the *Danes* might eaſily have cut them all off; but at laſt the *Swedes* landed about 8000 more, who obliged the King of *Denmark* to put an End to thoſe Differences, by the Treaty of *Travendahl*; at which the Duke of *Holſtein* obtained advantageous Conditions.

In

In the mean time, *Auguſtus* King of *Poland*, contrary to the Peace at *Oliva*, invaded *Livonia*, and beſieged *Riga*; but afterwards quitted it. The Czar of *Muſcovy* alſo invaded *Livonia*, without proclaiming War, and inveſted *Narva*. The Czar ſent two Detachments, one of 5000, and another of 15000, to ſecure a Paſs; but the King of *Sweden* routed thoſe Detachments, and advanced directly to the Czar's Camp. The Diſpute laſted 3 or 4 Hours, before the *Swedes* could enter the Enemy's Lines; many of the *Muſcovites* were drowned by the breaking of a Bridge, and the reſt laid down their Arms upon Quarter: So that about 30000 of them were killed and taken. The *Swedes* got all their Artillery and Baggage, with a conſiderable Sum of Money. This Victory encouraged the *Swedes* to attack the *Muſcovites* in their fortified Camp, which the King enter'd Sword in Hand, and totally routed them; and about 30000 of them were ſaid to be ſlain, with the Loſs only of 3000 *Swedes*, who got all their Baggage, 70 Braſs Cannon, 30 Mortars, and 164000 Rix-Dollars. The brave young Prince gain'd this remarkable Victory over his perfidious Enemies in the 17th Year of his Age; and thus *Narva* was relieved. After this he marched againſt the *Saxons*, made them abandon all their Conqueſts in *Livonia*, enter'd *Poland*, joined *Sapieha*, routed *Oginski*, drove King *Auguſtus* out of the Country, purſued him to *Saxony*, dethron'd him, and got *Staniſlaus*, Palatin of *Poſen*, elected in his room. The Particulars of this young Prince's War in *Poland* and *Muſcovy* are of ſo late a Date, that 'tis needleſs further to inſiſt upon them.

Of the AIR, SOIL, *&c.*

THE Air of *Sweden* is generally clear, dry, and cold, which contributes much to the Health and great Age of the Inhabitants, ſome of whom live 120, and others 130 Years; but ordinarily 'tis extreme cold in Winter, which laſts 9 Months, and is immediately ſucceeded by the Summer; ſo that they have no Seaſons like our Spring and Autumn.

Mr. *John Scheffer*, Profeſſor of Hiſtory and Antiquity in the Univerſity at *Upſal*, writes, That the Froſt pierces into the Earth two *Swediſh* Ells; and what Moiſture is found there, is white like Ice: That ſtanding Water freezes 3 Ells deep, which kills the Fiſhes if the Ice be not broke; but where the Ice is thin, or the Bottom ſlimy, they die not ſo ſoon. When the Ice in great Lakes and Bays is broke either by the Force of the Water, or of the impriſoned Vapours, the Cleſts reach the whole Length of ſuch Lakes; and the Noiſe is as terrible as that of Peals of great Guns. The Air which comes in at thoſe Cleſts does for moſt part preſerve the Fiſh in great Lakes. He obſerves, That a ſtrong Brine made of Bay-Salt is never throughly frozen in thoſe Parts: That they have Foxes and Hares, which about the beginning of Winter are half white, and in the middle of it all white; and the Colour of the Squirrels is then of a mix'd white and grey, as we find it in *Philoſoph. Tranſact. N.* 19. *P.* 350. The Froſts there come from the N. E. Winds, which blow from the Northerly Places of *Muſcovy*, *Tartary*, and the Frozen Ocean near the Pole.

The Mathematicians of *Charles* XI. in their Travels through the Northerly Places of that Kingdom to *Torneo* in *Bothnia*, ſay, That though they delayed their ſetting out from *Upſal* till the 2d of *May*, O. S. they were detained in many Places by Snow and Mountains of Ice 20 Cubits high on both Sides of the Rivers; ſo that they had a Winter Journey in the End of *May*, and the Beginning of *June*.

The Heat of their Summer is almoſt as intolerable as the Cold of their Winter. It comes all of a ſudden, and is ſo intenſe, that it ſets Woods on fire, which ſpreads ſometimes for many Leagues, and is ſcarce to be ſtop'd till it come at ſome Lake or very large Plain.

The Soil in the middle of the Country is indifferent fertile, and they have ſome fruitful Vallies; but the Mold is ſeldom above half a Foot deep; and where 'tis ſhalloweſt, they have moſt Corn: And for this Reaſon the Ground is eaſily plough'd by one Ox. Their barren Land they enrich by Aſhes of Trees, which they burn on the Place, and rake the Seed among the Aſhes, which next Year, without further Pains, yields a plentiful Crop. This is an old

Digitized by Google

Practice in this Country; but the Danger of deſtroying all the Woods, has of late Years occaſion'd ſome Laws to limit this Cuſtom.

Were the Inhabitants induſtrious, they might have Corn enough of their own; but they are obliged to have much of it from *Livonia*, which is called the Granary of *Sweden*; beſides what they have from Parts of *Germany* near the *Baltick*. The poorer Sort in the Northern Places grind the Bark of Birch-Trees, which they mix with a little Corn, and make into Bread.

The Corn and other Fruits of the Earth ripen very ſoon here, as in other Northern Countries; ſo that ordinarily they have but 6 Weeks between Seed-time and Harveſt. The Reaſon ſeems to be, That the Oil and Sulphur which abound in their Soil, as appears by the Trees and Minerals produc'd there, being pent up all Winter by Froſt and Snow, are all of a ſudden actuated by the great Heat of the Sun, who ſcarce ever goes below their Horizon during thoſe Weeks, which makes 'em amends for its ſhort ſtay. Yet the Corn is liable to Danger from the Cold even in this Seaſon; for if there happen a Dew or a Froſt while it ripens, it very much hurts the Grain, and ſometimes deſtroys it, which is to be prevented no other Way but by cutting it down immediately in that caſe.

In Summer, the Fields are cover'd with Flowers, and they have Plenty of Currans, Strawberries, and Raſpberries; but Apricocks and other Wall-Fruit are very rare: Their Cherries are tolerably good; but their Apples, Pears, and Plumbs, are ſcarce, and of no good Reliſh. They have abundance of Roots, which is a great Part of the Food of their Poor. In the Northerly Places, where the Ground is always cover'd with Snow and Ice, the People live by Hunting and Fiſhing.

Woods, Mountains, Heaths, Lakes, Moraſſes, and vaſt Foreſts, cover a great Part of this Country. Oaks, Pines, Beech, Elder, Birch, and Fir, grow here in great Plenty; and the Trees grow ſo cloſe, that where they fall and rot, the Woods are ſcarce paſſable.

This Country abounds with Mines of Copper and Iron, and ſupplies moſt other Places with thoſe Metals, becauſe they are better here than in other Countries. There are Silver Mines in *Salberg* in *Weſtmania*. *Finland* affords Pitch and Tar, and *Dahl* and *Wermeland* Maſts, *&c.*

Of their BEASTS.

THE Cattle are of a ſmall Size; nor can the Breed be better'd by bringing in larger from other Places, for they ſoon degenerate, becauſe in Summer the Graſs is not very nouriſhing, and in Winter they are almoſt ſtarv'd. Their Sheep bear a very coarſe Wool. Their Horſe, eſpecially the *Finniſh*, are ſmall, but vigorous, ſtrong, ſure-footed, and ſwift.

Wild-Beaſts are very plentiful, eſpecially in the Northern Provinces, as Bears, Elks, Deer, and Hares, which are hunted for their Fleſh; but their Wolves, Foxes, Wild-Cats, and Ermins, for their Furs. They have no Rabbets, but what are brought in for Curioſity.

Of their FOWL.

THey have both Wild and Tame in great Plenty, and good of their kind, as *Orrus*, as big as a Hen; *Kedlers*, as large as a Turky. They have Partridges, and another Bird ſomewhat like them, called *Terpers*, Fieldfares, and Woodcocks. They have Plenty of ſmall Birds, as Thruſhes, Black-Birds, and *Syden-Sewans*, of the Size of a Fieldfare, but better Meat, and are ſuppoſed to come from *Lapland*. They have few Pigeons, becauſe they are deſtroy'd by Hawks. They have many Eagles, Faulcons, and other Birds of Prey.

The TRADE *of* Sweden,

IS in Copper, Iron, Steel, Pitch, Tar, Roſin, Maſts, Planks, Oak, Deal Boards, Wooden-Ware, and Furs, beſide the Commodities exported from *Lieſland*, which are valued at 700000 *l. per Annum*.

Thô *Sweden* always had Materials of Trade, yet by the Idleneſs or Ignorance of the Inhabitants, Strangers had formerly all the Management of it. The Hans-Towns

on

Digitized by Google

on the *Baltick* engroſſed all their Trade, till the *Dutch*, after their Revolt from *Spain*, got a Share of it. Before that Time, no Iron was made in *Sweden*, but the Oar was carried to *Dantzick*, and other Parts of *Pruſſia*, and there forged into Bars. Moſt of their Manufactures are owing to ſome Mechanicks that were driven from the *Netherlands* by the Cruelty of the Duke of *Alva*. They erected Forges and other Conveniencies for making of Iron Guns, Wire, and other Manufactures of Copper, Braſs, *&c.* They know now how to take the Latten from the Copper, and make all Sorts of Utenſils of it.

In 1644, they obtained a Freedom from paying Cuſtoms to *Denmark*, when their Ships paſſed the *Sound*. In Time of War, the *Engliſh* uſed formerly to tranſport moſt of their Commodities; but in Peace, they tranſported them in their own Bottoms. The *Swedes* are not able to keep their Iron-Works a going without Credit from abroad. Hence it is, the *Engliſh* and other Foreigners pay them *per* Advance in Winter for the Iron they are to receive in Summer. If it were not for this, Foreigners could ſcarce live among them, for they envy the Thriving of Strangers, and treat them uncivilly. In 1687, an Act was made, That no Foreign Merchant ſhould have Liberty of Trading in *Sweden* above two Months in a Year, except they would be Burghers; and now and then they put this in Execution, The third Part of the Goods and Eſtate of every Foreign Merchant that dies in *Sweden*, muſt be pay'd to the King, which hinders moſt of them from marrying and ſettling there; and ſometimes the Government has demanded a 6th Part of the Eſtate Foreigners had got there, when they were going to leave that Country, and have arreſted their Effects on that Account.

Their Trade of IMPORT.

FRom *Portugal* they import Salt, without great Quantities of which they cannot ſubſiſt. From *Scotland* they have Store of Herrings, and had formerly Wool. From *France* they have ſtrong Liquors, and Fineries, which ſupply their Vanity and Luxury, but occaſion little or no Vent for their own Commodities. From *England* they have Cloth, Stuffs, and other Woollen Manufactures, that amounted ſometimes to 50000 *l. per Annum*; Tobacco, *Newcaſtle* Coals, Pewter, Lead, Fruits, and Sugar, with other Commodities. Their Trade with *England* is very beneficial to them; for the *Engliſh* pay them but one Third, or at moſt one Half, in Goods, and the reſt in Money. Of late they have ſet up Manufacturies of Cloth to ſupply their Army, and have clogg'd the Importation of coarſe *Engliſh* Cloth with ſuch exceſſive Duties, that it is almoſt equal to a Prohibition.

Of the MINES.

THE Silver Mine at *Salberg* is 145 Fathom deep. They have no Records ſo ancient as to give an Account of the firſt Diſcovery of this or the Copper-Mine there. The Oar ſeldom yields above 4 *per Cent.* The Yearly Revenue of it is about 20000 Crowns of fine Silver, of which the King has the Pre-emption, paying one Fourth leſs than the intrinſick Value.

The Copper-Mine is 80 Fathom deep, and the Roof ſometimes falls in. The Copper made here amounts Annually to 200000 *l.* the Fourth of which belongs to the King; and upon the Remainder, he has a Duty of 25 *per Cent.* when it is exported unwrought; ſo that the Proprietors have but ſmall Profit.

Towards the Mountainous Parts, there are many Iron Mines and Forges, from whence they export Iron to the Value of 300000 *l. per Annum*. The great Woods and Foreſts ſupply thoſe Forges with Charcoal, which is ſix times cheaper than in *England*, but not ſo good. Magnets are found in thoſe Iron Mines; but the Mathematicians ſent by *Charles* XI. to *Torneo* ſay, the Loadſtones they have from the Mines in *Lapland* excel all they ever ſaw in attractive Force.

In *Nericke*, or *Nericia*, there is Plenty of Minerals of Vitriol, Allom, and Sulphur. *Weſtmania* abounds alſo with Mines.

Sir *Gilbert Talbot* ſays, there is a heavy Stone in *Sweden*, of a yellow Colour, intermix'd with Streaks of White, which makes it look as if 'twere compos'd of Gold and Silver.

Digitized by Google

Silver. It is found in firm Rocks, and runs in Veins, upon which they lay Wood, and ſet it on Fire. When the Stone is thus heated, they caſt Water upon it to make it rend, and then dig it up, break it into ſmaller Pieces, and put it into an Iron Pot, the Mouth of which they put into another, and put both into an Oven, where the Stone being melted, runs into the lower Pot. The firſt running of this Stone is Sulphur. What remains of the Stone, is carried out, and expoſed upon a high Hill to the Sun and Air for two Years, when it takes Fire of it ſelf, and ſends forth a thin blue Flame, ſcarce diſcernable in the Day-time. This being conſum'd, there remains a blue Duſt behind, which the Workmen put into great Tubs of Water, where it infuſes 24 Hours, or longer; then they boil the Water in Kettles, as we do Salt-petre, and put it into cooling Tubs, where they place Croſs-Sticks; upon which the Vitriol faſtens like Sugar-Candy.

The Water that remains after the Extraction of the Vitriol, they mix with an 8th Part of Urine and the Lees of Wood-Aſhes, which is again boil'd very ſtrong, and being ſet to cool in Tubs, with Croſs-Sticks in them, the Allom hangs upon 'em.

In the remaining Water, after the Allom is extracted, there's a Sediment, which being ſeparated from the Water, is put into an Oven, where Wood is burnt upon it till it become Red, from whence comes *Minium*, or Red Lead. *Philoſoph. Tranſact. N.* 21. *P.* 375.

Of the Inhabitants, their Diſpoſitions, Manners, Cuſtoms, &c.

THat *Sweden* was formerly very populous, is evident from the ancient Expeditions of the *Goths*, *Vandals*, *Normans*, and other People, who from *Scandinavia* overran moſt Countries of *Europe*, and erected Kingdoms in *France*, *Italy*, *Spain*, and other Places. The Polygamy then in uſe among thoſe Pagans is commonly thought to have been one Cauſe why *Sweden*, *Norway*, and *Denmark*, were thus over-ſtock'd with People.

The Nature of the Climate, which occaſions a very healthful, dry and ſharp Air, makes the Natives of a ſtrong and vigorous Conſtitution; which being confirmed by a hardy Education, coarſe Fare, and indifferent Lodgings, qualifies them for all the Fatigues and Hardſhips of War. *Puffendorff* gives this Character of his Countrymen in general; That they are very grave and reſerved, which if not qualified by Converſation with other Nations, often degenerates into Miſtruſtfulneſs. They over-value themſelves, and deſpiſe others. They have Capacity ſufficient to learn the Principles of Arts and Sciences, but commonly want Patience to attain to the Perfection of any; for many of them imagine themſelves to be Maſters before they have got half Way. They have but very little Inclination, and a leſs Eſteem, for Mechanick Trades. They are but meanly qualified for ſuch Manufactures as require Induſtry and Ingenuity; are obſerv'd to be invidious, and never love to ſee Strangers, nor one another, thrive. They are well vers'd in Diſſimulation, have a great Inclination to make a Figure, and live beyond their Income, which ruins their Families.

Other Authors give this further Account of them; That the Peaſants are very obedient and reſpectful to their Superiors; That moſt of them are very poor, and are taught by Neceſſity to make, after a rude Faſhion, Shoes, Clothes, Inſtruments for Husbandry, and other Neceſſaries that they are not able to purchaſe: And to keep them to this Frugality, nor above one Taylor or other Mechanick is allow'd to dwell in a Pariſh, tho' ſome of them are above 20 Miles in Extent. They are generally well made, handſome and ſtrong, and Lovers of good Cheer, eſpecially at other People's Charge. Their Hiſtory, already quoted, ſhews that they are not inferior to any Nation in *Europe* for Valour. The Peaſants wear Clothes of Sheep-Skins in Winter, and their other Raiment is generally of coarſe Cloth.

Their Houſes are for moſt part of Wood, but low, becauſe they are leſs obnoxious to Storms and Winds, very frequent in thoſe Parts. The Houſes of the Gentry are of Stone or Brick, and all of them make uſe of Stoves in the Winter.

Their Women are fair and handſome, and value themſelves for being more witty and polite than other Women of the North.

Digitized by Google

Of their NOBILITY.

BEfore *Erick* XIV. there was no Hereditary or Feudal Titles of Honour, as Dukes, Counts, Barons, *&c.* the Titles then were only Officiary; ſo that *Charles* VII. and *Erick* X. though the Sons of Kings, had no other Title but that of *Juncker*, which ſignifies a young Nobleman; but when any Perſon ſignalized himſelf by his Bravery, the Government gave him ſome publick Poſt. *Selden*, in his Titles of Honour, Pag. 458. ſays, in the old Laws of *Sweden* there's no mention of any Secular Dignity that was not meerly Officiary, beſides *Miles* and *Militaris*, the firſt ſignifying a Knight, and the ſecond a Gentleman.

In this Kingdom there are ſeveral Noble Families, moſt of which ſignaliz'd themſelves in the long *German* Wars. The Original of their Hereditary Titles was in 1561. when *Erick* XIV. gave *Peter Brahe*, *Suante Sture*, and *Guſtavus Roſe*, the Title of Earls, and at the ſame Time gave the Title of Barons to two of the Family of *Steinbocks*, two of the *Guldenſtierns*, and to the Families of *Lewenhaupt*, *Gripp*, *Flemming*, and *Horn*. It is cuſtomary in *Sweden* to call the Sons of their Nobles by three Names, the firſt his own Chriſtian Name, the ſecond that of his Father in the Genitive Caſe, and the third the Surname of his Family; for Inſtance, *Guſtavus Suantonis Banier*, *i. e. Guſtavus* the Son of *Suante*, *Banier* being the Name of the Family.

The chief Families are thoſe of *Aſchenberg*, *Bonnier*, *Bielke*, *Brahe*, *Axel*, *Horn*, *Coningſmark*, *Lewenhaupt*, *Oxenſtiern*, and *Steinbock*.

The making of Knights in *Sweden* was formerly performed with greater Ceremony and Solemnity than meerly by the Stroke of a Sword. The Belt, Sword and Shield, were given them, together with Fiefs, and the Oath they ſwore obliged them to defend Chriſtianity, their King and Country; and to protect Orphans, Virgins, Widows, and the Poor, *&c.* Their Order of Knighthood is that of the *Sword*. The Nobility and Gentry are brave, and of a warlike Temper, civil, and, of a ſtately Deportment, but over-value themſelves, love Parade, are magnificent in their Equipage, are loyal to their Prince, much enclined to travel, and more expenſive in their Buildings, Apparel, and Number of Servants, than in Houſekeeping. Though they endure the Fatigue of War patiently, yet they are not reputed to know much of Stratagem. When employed in State Affairs, they give great Application; but their Abilities come more from Experience, than from Study or Greatneſs of Genius.

They never allow their Children to ſtudy Law, Phyſick, or to learn any Trade, becauſe they think it would ſully their great Birth, and this occaſions their Trade to make ſo little Progreſs. Though to gain Experience in War, they ſubmit to the loweſt Offices abroad, yet at home there is but one Inſtance known of a Gentleman who accepted the Command of a Merchant-Ship. They imitate the *French* in the Faſhion of their Clothes.

Of their RELIGION.

THE Hiſtorians of this Country ſay, the Rites and Ceremonies of Paganiſm were introduced by their famous *Woden*, who mix'd Witchcraft and Magick with it, as was hinted before. They had a Temple at *Upſal* lin'd with Gold, and 3 Idols in it; that in the middle was call'd *Thor*, from whence our *Thurſday*: He preſided over the Air and Storms. *Vodi*, or *Woden*, was their *Mars*, from whence our *Wedneſday*. *Frieco*, or *Friga*, was their *Venus*, from whence our *Friday*. Every ninth Year they had a publick Sacrifice at *Upſal*, where all were obliged to be preſent. They offer'd nine Heads of each Sort of Male Beaſt they could catch, and hang'd their Bodies on Trees. We meet alſo with ſome Footſteps of humane Sacrifice in their Hiſtory. *Pomponius Mela* ſays, the *Getæ* were remarkable for their Belief of a future State: That they weep'd at the Birth of a Child, and rejoyc'd at the Death of their Friends: That the Wives frequently kill'd themſelves, to accompany their Husbands to the other World. And Polygamy being in Uſe among them, the Wives contended who ſhould have that Honour, which was given to her that was found to be of the greateſt Virtue.

Digitized by Google

Virtue. There are many Inſcriptions on Rocks in Runick Characters ſtill to be ſeen in *Sweden*, which prove that the Immortality of the Soul was an Article of Faith among the Pagan *Goths*.

Chriſtianity was firſt preach'd in *Sweden*, by Order of *Charles the Great*, about the Year 800, after he had prevailed with the Pagan *Saxons* to turn Chriſtians. He ſent one *Herbertus* into *Sweden*, but with ſmall Succeſs. After his Death, his Son *Ludovicus Pius*, in 814, ſent *Anſgarius*, a Monk of *Corbey*, and afterwards Archbiſhop of *Bremen*; but Chriſtianity made no conſiderable Advancement till the Reign of *Olaus Skotkonung*, about 980, who ſent Ambaſſadors to *Eldred*, a *Saxon* King in *England*, to deſire Preachers from him: Upon which *Eldred* is ſaid to have ſent *Sigfrid*, Archbiſhop of *York*, who willingly left his Archbiſhoprick, and became the Apoſtle of the *Goths*. The *Swediſh* Hiſtorians blame him for perſwading this bigotted eaſie Prince to ſubject his Kingdom to the See of *Rome*, and pay it an yearly Tribute. *Olaus*'s Succeſſors proteſted againſt this, which embroil'd them with the Court of *Rome*.

About 1150, *S. Erick* King of *Sweden* marched into *Finland* with an Army, carried with him St. *Henry*, an *Engliſh* Biſhop, and obliged a great Number of the *Finns* to profeſs Chriſtianity; but at laſt this Biſhop was murthered by the Infidels, and was buried at *Abo*, the chief City of that Country.

After Chriſtianity was ſettled in *Sweden*, the Biſhops minded their own Riches and Grandeur more than the Care of Souls; ſo that the Archbiſhops of *Upſal* frequently made a greater Figure than their King, and depoſed them by their Intereſt and Power. The Clergy then poſſeſſed above half the Kingdom, were Temporal Lords in their Dioceſes, and by Legacies, Mortifications, and other pious Frauds, annexed great Poſſeſſions to their Domains. At every new Election they had their Privileges increaſed, for then Princes were obliged to comply with their Demands, becauſe of the great Power they had in the Kingdom. Thus by degrees they became almoſt independent on the Crown; ſo that they fortified their Caſtles, gariſon'd their Towns, kept Troops in Pay, and frequently made War upon thoſe that diſobliged them or their Vaſſals.

In 1395, when *Margaret* had united the three Crowns, ſhe foreſaw that the only Way to entail Slavery upon the *Swedes* was to gain the Clergy, and to bring them to a Dependance on *Denmark*; and for that End enlarged their Privileges, gave more Lands to the Church, and made them ſenſible, that they could not make ſuch a Figure if the Kingdoms were diſunited, ſince the Archbiſhop of *Upſal* was always to be Adminiſtrator of *Sweden*. This engaged them in an Intereſt contrary to that of their Country, and to join with the *Danes*, who oppreſſed it.

Thus in 1515, the Archbiſhop *Trolle* ow'd his Advancement to the Adminiſtrator *Steno*, yet he would not acknowledge him, but correſponded with the *Danes*, and perſwaded them to invade his native Country; for which the States of *Sweden* cited *Trolle* to appear before them; but he refuſed, and retired to his ſtrong Caſtle of *Stecka*, which his Predeceſſors had made impregnable. Upon this he was declared a Traitor, depoſed from his Dignity, beſieged in his Caſtle, and obliged to ſurrender: After which the Caſtle was demoliſhed, becauſe it had been a Receptacle to the *Danes*, and a skulking Place for Rebels, who were protected there by the Archbiſhops.

When the Pope was informed of the Proceedings of the States againſt the Archbiſhop, he excommunicated the Adminiſtrator, and the Senate fin'd him in 500000 Ducats, to be paid to the Archbiſhop, put the Kingdom under an Interdict, and left the Execution of this Sentence to *Chriſtian* King of *Denmark*, the ſworn Enemy of the *Swedes*. The King of *Denmark*, glad to have any colourable Pretence againſt the *Swedes*, marched into *Sweden*, and beſieged *Stockholm*; but was obliged to riſe from before it, as has been hinted before; and his Fleet being becalm'd, it occaſion'd a great Famine among his Men, which obliged him to propoſe a Peace, and to deſire an Interview with the Adminiſtrator; and that *Guſtavus Eriskſone* might be deliver'd for an Hoſtage: To which *Steno* conſented. But as ſoon as *Guſtavus* went on board, he was made Priſoner, contrary to the publick Faith, and Law of Nations, and carried to the Caſtle of *Calo* in *Jutland*.

The

The Administrator was unluckily killed afterwards in an Engagement with the *Danes*; upon which his Army was routed and dispersed, and all the Kingdom submitted to them except *Calmar* and *Stockholm*. The Archbishop forbad Christian Burial to those who took Arms against the *Danes*, and *Christian* return'd to *Sweden*, was Crown'd there, and committed the Massacres and Barbarities formerly mention'd.

Gustavus Erickson making his Escape from Prison, came to *Lubeck*, in order to engage that City in the *Swedish* Quarrel; but failing, he failed to *Sweden*, and in Disguise travelled through the most Desart Mountains and Forrests, till at length he came to *Dalecarlia*, where he was forc'd to work in the Copper-Mines for Subsistence; but being discovered, went to another Place, and meeting with a Curate, who befriended him, by his Advice, he went to a Fair, which was the Yearly Rendezvous of the *Dalecarlians*, and perswaded them to take Arms. They were successful in their first Enterprize, which encouraged more of the *Swedes* to join him; so that at length he drove the *Danes* out of the Country, and established the Government.

About this Time Lutheranism began to enter *Sweden*, by means of two Brothers, *Laurentius* and *Olaus Petri*, of the Province of *Nericke*. They study'd at *Wittemberg* under *Martin Luther*, return'd to *Sweden*, and publickly preach'd against Popery. They represented, how inconsistent the Pride, Riches, Ambition, Cruelty, and other Vices of the *Swedish* Clergy, were with the Designs of Christianity. They shew'd, That the Clergy had been the Cause of all the Civil Wars; That without their Assistance, the *Danes* had never been able to compass their Designs. They expos'd the Covetousness of the Court of *Rome*; and how that the Legate *Arcimbold*, by his Indulgences, laid the whole Kingdom under Contribution. *Olaus* went to *Upsal*, affix'd *Theses* there, and had publick Conferences with the Popish Clergy; the Issue of which gain'd him a great many Proselites among the Professors and Students of the University, and the great Families of the Kingdom; for he demonstrated plainly how Popery had vitiated Christianity.

Gustavus lov'd those Principles, but thought not fit to declare for them till his Affairs were better establish'd. The Chancellor *Laur. Anderson* had demonstrated to him the Reasonableness of the Protestant Religion, and the Corruptions and Innovations of the Romish Church. Under the Chancellor's Protection, *Olaus* and other *Lutheran* Ministers had Liberty to preach the Gospel in *Sweden*; and the *Popish* Clergy being much inferior to them in Learning, they were baffled in all Disputes.

Gustavus delay'd his Coronation, because the Oath at that Time oblig'd the King to maintain the Establish'd Religion and Clergy in all their Privileges and Pretensions. His Scheme was gradually to humble the Clergy; in order to which, he first abolished the Impositions the Clergy levied for Dispensations to eat Flesh on prohibited Days; their meddling in Divorces, and other Processes about Marriage; then he disarm'd them of their Spiritual Artillery of Excommunication. He forbad them to annex to the Church the Estates of Ecclesiasticks, to the Prejudice of their Heirs; and discharg'd them to confiscate the Goods of any Subject. After this he made an Enquiry into the Rights of Monasteries, and reunited many of the Lands possess'd by Churchmen to the Crown. About this Time *Olaus* publish'd a *Swedish* Translation of the New Testament, against which all the Clergy remonstrated. *Olaus* confuted the Errors of Popery in a publick Conference before the King and Senate, in which the Bishops were worsted; and *Olaus* insisting upon the Authority of the Scripture in this Debate, the only Subterfuge the Papists had, was to alledge that his Translation of the Scripture was false. Upon this *Gustavus* desired the Bishops to make another, because few of the Clergy understood Latin; and *Olaus* printed the Conference, which brought over many to his Party.

Gustavus after this called together the Estates, and represented the bad Condition of the Kingdom by the long Wars, the Lowness of the Revenues of the Crown, and the Greatness of the Publick Debts, especially that they ow'd to *Lubeck*, who, for Security of their Money, had the Mo-

nopoly of their Trade, which would end in the Ruine of their Country; adding, That the other Subjects were not able to pay any suitable Taxes towards the clearing these Debts, while the Clergy were possess'd of all the Riches of the Kingdom. He shew'd further, what Share they had in bringing on these Troubles that had ruin'd the Country; and that it was reasonable they should contribute towards the paying of the Debts, since they made a bad Use of their Riches, to support their Pride and Ambition, and to enable them to embroil the Nation. He told them further, That he was willing to quit the Government, if they would reimburse the Expences he had been at in this War for the Honour and Independency of the Country. The Clergy, headed by *Thureihanſon*, oppos'd his Propoſals, and accus'd *Guſtavus* of Hereſy, who being enrag'd at it, accus'd them of Ingratitude, conſidering his great Undertakings to recover the Country from *Daniſh* Tyranny, and went out of the Aſſembly. The Chancellor repreſented to the States the bad Conſequences of their Conduct, in which he was ſeconded by the Biſhop of *Strengnez*, which prevailed on the States to make an Act, That the Biſhops ſhould ſurrender their Caſtles and Places of Strength into the Hands of the King's Officers; and that all Lands which had been alienated and granted to the Clergy, ſhould be re-united to the Crown; That the Nobility might recover their Lands that were mortgaged to the Clergy, upon Payment of the Money; That the Clergy ſhould pay Two Thirds of their Tythes to maintain the War againſt *Chriſtian* of *Denmark*, and found Publick Schools and Hoſpitals; That the Clergy ſhould be puniſh'd if they excommunicated any Man upon a civil Account; And that Men of good Lives and Learning ſhould be preferr'd to Charges in the Church. This Act was ſign'd by all the Senators, and *Guſtavus*, who went with ſome Troops of Horſe to put it in Execution, and carried along with him *Olaus Petri*, and many other Lutheran Doctors of Divinity. This Expedition of *Guſtavus* compleated the Ruine of Popery; ſo that moſt of the Inferior Clergy profeſs'd the Proteſtant Religion, ſome of the Biſhops left the Kingdom, and others complied with this new Regulation.

The Biſhop of *Scara* join'd the Malecontents, and engag'd *Thureihanſon* in their Party. They marched to *Dalecarlia*, where the Inhabitants, who were little better than Savages, declared againſt any Change in Religion; but *Guſtavus* ſurpris'd them, and oblig'd them to lay down their Arms; and when *Guſtavus* found moſt Part of the *Swedes* had chang'd their Religion, he declared himſelf a Proteſtant, and conven'd an Aſſembly of the Clergy at *Orebro*, the chief City of *Nericke*, in 1529, who renounc'd their Dependance on the Pope, aboliſh'd Popery, and ſign'd the *Augsburg* Confeſſion.

The Archbiſhops and Biſhops of this Kingdom retain now little more than the Name, and a bare Shew of Superiority over other Superintendants; for the Reformation depriv'd them of their former Eccleſiaſtical Juriſdiction. They have moderate Stipends; the Archbiſhop of *Upſal* has only 400 *l. per Annum*, and the reſt of the Biſhops proportionably. They have 10 Biſhops, who are confined to their own Employments, are never call'd to Council, but come to the Aſſembly of the States: Neither are they troubled with the Adminiſtration of any Secular Affairs. Under the Biſhops, there are 7 or 8 Superintendants, who differ only from the Biſhops in Name. Each 10 Churches has a Rural Dean over them. The Number of Churches in *Sweden* and *Finland* amount to 2000. The Clergy have One Third of the Tythes: The other Two Thirds are annex'd to the Crown. The King is Patron of moſt Churches, and has the Nomination of the Archbiſhop. Their Churches are generally neat, and adorn'd with Sculpture, Painting and Gilding. Their Altar-Cloths, Copes, and other Veſtments, are rich.

Of their MARRIAGES and BURIALS.

MAtches are made here by the Will of Parents, and entirely for Intereſt. This Country is not much troubled with the Extravagancies of Lovers: None can

marry

marry without Publication of the Banns. Perſons of Quality don't marry till they are 30 Years of Age, or above, becauſe they are not able to live ſuitably to their Birth till the Death of their Relations, or that Advancement to Offices afford them the Means of Subſiſtence.

The Women are generally fair, and well ſhap'd, and are ſaid to be more chaſt before Marriage than after. They are prolifick, but great Drudges, the meaner Sort being put to Plough, Thraſh, row in Boats, and bear Burthens: Yet Conjugal Broils are not frequent here, becauſe the Wives never diſpute their Husbands Authority. Divorces ſeldom happen in this Country. Couſin-Germans may not marry without the King's Conſent, which is more frequently granted than refuſed.

They affect Pomp and Superfluity beyond their Abilities at their Weddings; ſo that many times, by the Exceſs of one Day, they involve themſelves in Debt for many Years after.

Their Funerals have more of Jollity and Feaſting, than ſuits the Occaſion; and that they may have more Time for their Preparations, they tranſport their Dead to Vaults near the Church, where they remain unburied ſome Months, and frequently ſeveral Years: But of late, this and other unneceſſary Expences begin by degrees to be laid aſide, partly to conform with the Frugality of the Court, and partly becauſe they are not ſo rich as formerly.

Of their LEARNING.

POlite Learning can plead no great Antiquity in this Country; for the Univerſity of *Upſal* was not founded till 1476, when *Sixtus Quartus* gave it all the Privileges of that of *Bononia*. Among the ancient Weſtern *Gothi*, the *Runick* Poetry ſeems to have been as old as their Letters; and their Laws, their Precepts of Wiſdom, their Records, Religious Rites, Charms and Incantations, were all in Verſe or Rhimes, ſo called from the *Gothick* Word *Runes*, ſignifying the Verſes which were invented or introduced by *Oden*; and becauſe all their Writings for many Ages were in Verſe, it came to be the common Name of all ſorts of Poetry among the *Goths*; and the Compoſers of them were called *Runers*, or *Rhimers*, and alſo *Vniſes*, or *Wiſes*, becauſe their beſt Performances in what Learning was among them were in Verſe. The *Goths* had above 100 ſeveral ſorts of thoſe Runes, ſome in longer, ſome in ſhorter Lines, ſome equal, others unequal, with different Cadences and Quantities; ſome were fram'd with a Conſonancy of Syllables, which made a ſort of Gingle that pleas'd the People; and becauſe their Language was compos'd for moſt part of Monoſyllables, 'twas eaſy to make many of them end in the ſame Sound. Another ſort of Runes were made ſo as two Lines, or the ſecond of each four, ſhould end with Words of the ſame Sound; which being eaſie, and needing leſs Spirit, becauſe the Chime in the Sound ſupplied the Want of that, this in Time became general among all the *Gothick* Colonies in *Europe*, and made Rhimes or Runes paſs for good Poetry: But becauſe they did really want the true Spirit of it, to ſupply this Defect, their Bards poſſeſſed the People with a Belief, That Charms and other great Wonders were perform'd by the Force of their Runick Verſes. Hence it came to paſs, That this ſort of Poems came to be decry'd, and the ancient Characters in which they were written to be aboliſhed, firſt by the Zeal of the Biſhops, and then by Orders of the State, which proved an unrecoverable Loſs to the Hiſtory of thoſe Northern Kingdoms. Moſt are of Opinion, That this happened in the Time of *Olaus Skotkonung*, upon the Deſire of Pope *Silveſter* II. and *Wormius* ſays, They were alſo forbid by the Council of *Toledo*, becauſe the Chriſtians of thoſe Times thought Paganiſm could not be aboliſhed without ſuch a Prohibition; as Sir *William Temple* informs us in his *Eſſay upon Poetry*.

The moſt curious Piece of Learning in this Country is a *Gothick* Tranſlation of the Evangeliſts, of 12 or 1300 Years ſtanding, by *Uphila*, a Biſhop of the *Goths* in *Thrace*.

Guſtavus Adolphus was a great Patron of Learning, and endow'd the Univerſities with tolerable Salaries for Profeſſors in moſt Sciences. His Daughter *Chriſtina* augmented them, and invited many Learned Men to *Sweden*, as *Grotius*, *Carteſius*, &c.

Digitized by Google

The *Swedes* are more given to transcribe, collect, and translate, than to write Original Pieces. The Clergy are but indifferent for Learning, and little acquainted with Ecclesiastick Antiquities, or the Controversies of Religion, because they have no Adversaries to oppose. The Country People have Kalendars on their Clubs, in *Runick* Characters, which show them the Seasons of the Year, the Full Moon and Change, Leap-Year, the Golden Number, and Dominical Letter.

The Chancellor of the University of Antiquities at *Upsal* is always a Minister of State, and the Archbishop is Vice-Chancellor. Here they profess the Northern Antiquities, and pretend to clear the Obscurities of *Gothick* Antiquity. The best Performances of the *Swedes* are in this sort of Learning; a Specimen of which may be seen in what *Olaus*, *Varelius*, *Loccenius*, *Schefferus*, and *Rudbeck*, have published. There is another University for the Study of Antiquity at *Stockholm*; and there's one also at *Abo* in *Finland*, which has fewer Professors and Students.

There was a 4th at *Lunden* in *Schonen*, which during the Wars with *Denmark* was prohibited, because its Neighbourhood to that Kingdom was supposed to create in the Students an Affection for that Crown, to which that Province formerly belong'd; but now it is restor'd. The *Swedes* use the Old or *Julian* Stile in all their Letters and Business.

Of their LANGUAGE.

IT is a Dialect of the *Teutonick*, but rougher, and less capable of Improvement than either the *Danish* or *High-Dutch*. Hence it is, That the *Swedes* seldom write any thing in their own Language. The Gentry and Citizens speak *High-Dutch* and *French* to Perfection. The College of Antiquaries at *Upsal* have publish'd a new Edition of the *Codex Argenteus* with the modern *Swedish*, to demonstrate that their Language is a Dialect of the ancient *Gothick*.

The *Finlanders* have a sort of Gibberish of their own, altogether different from the *Swedish*. They send their Children when young to learn Foreign Languages, before they learn their own; for a *Finlander*, if he pass 14 Years of age, is utterly uncapable of speaking or learning any other Tongue but his own. They don't use the Letter F, and have no Word that begins with B, D, G, or a double Consonant.

Of their GOVERNMENT.

THE Power of their ancient Kings was much limited; they could do nothing that concerned the Government of the Kingdom without the Consent of the States; for the *Swedes* were jealous of their Liberties. In former Times, they had a Magistrate call'd *Drotzet*, design'd as a Curb to their Sovereign, who had a Power by their Constitution to reprove their King, when he acted contrary to the Laws of the Land, and to put him in mind of his Duty; but now the King of *Sweden* is Absolute, as we have heard before.

His TITLES *are*,

KIng of *Sweden*, of the *Goths* and *Vandals*; Great Prince of *Finland*, Duke of *Schonen*, *Esthen*, *Liefland*, *Carelia*, *Ingria*, *Bremen*, *Verden*, *Stetin*, *Pomeren*, *Cassuben*, and *Sclavonia*, Prince of *Rugen*, Lord of *Ingermanland* and *Wismar*, Prince Palatine of the *Rhine*, Duke of *Bavaria*, *Cleves* and *Bergen*, *&c.*

The present King is of the Family of *Deux-Ponts* in *Germany*, a Branch of the *Palatine* Family, which came to the Crown in the Person of *Charles Gustavus*, who was Son to a Sister of *Gustavus Adolphus*.

His REVENUES.

THE Revenues of the Crown consisted formerly in some Lands of a small Extent near *Upsal*, and in a Tribute, which the Peasants paid by Poll. In the Reign of *Magnus Ladasasz*, the Senate annex'd to the Crown the Mines of Copper, made him Proprietor of the Lakes *Meler*, *Vener*, and *Veter*, with a Right to fish on the Coasts of the *Baltick*; and they order'd, That those who had Fiefs from the Crown, or Licence to hunt or feed their Cattle in the King's Forests, should pay a certain Rent to the Crown.

Digitized by Google

Crown. In those Days, few were punish'd by Death for Murther, or other Crimes, but the Criminals were fin'd in certain Sums, payable to the King, which was then a considerable Branch of the Revenue.

Gustavus Ericlson reunited 30000 Estates that had been alienated from the Crown, and possessed by the Clergy. *Charles* XI. resumed all the Lands that the Nobles had purchased from the Crown; and some say, That the Revenues in 1578 amounted to 700000 Dollars.

The present Revenues are from the Crown-Lands, the Customs, Poll-Money, Tythes, Copper and Silver Mines, Law-Suits, *&c.* Each Peasant above 16, and under 60 Years of Age, pays Twelve-pence *per Annum*; and such of them as plough a certain quantity of Ground, must pay Annually one Shirt, one Lamb-Skin Coat, one Pair of Mittens, one Pair of Woollen Stockings, and one Pair of Shoes, towards the Maintenance of the Soldiers. In short, the whole Revenue is reckon'd to be near 1000000 of Pounds Sterling *per Annum*.

Of the STATES *of the Kingdom.*

THey have nothing left them now of their ancient Power; the End of their Meeting is only to ratify the King's Propolals. The Nobility and Gentry are represented by one of each Family, of which there are about 1000. The Colonels, Lieutenant-Colonels, the Majors, and a Captain of each Regiment, sit and vote in this Meeting.

The Bishops and Superintendants are Members of this Diet: The Body of the Clergy send about 200 to represent them; 150 are sent from the Boroughs, and 250 from the Peasants.

Of their MILITARY AFFAIRS.

THE *Scots* first introduced Military Discipline into this Country: Their Armies consisted formerly of Peasants, who were remarkable only for their Courage and Numbers. The Feudal Laws first made in this Country obliged the Gentry, who held their Estates by Knights Service, to bring a certain Number of Horse to the Army. The last King made great Regulations in his Military Affairs, and settled the Number of Horsemen that the Nobles and Gentry are to provide, and order'd each Farm of 60 *l. per Annum* to maintain one Foot-Soldier, who, if he marry, has a House built at the Charge of the Peasants, who also must furnish him with Hay, to keep a Cow in Winter, and Pasturage in Summer, and plough, sow, and reap for him; and when this Soldier dies, they must provide one in his room.

The Officers of Horse and Foot are maintain'd by the King, who appoints Lands for that End; so that every Officer has a House and Lands, and the Rent of as many Farms as make up his Pay.

Of the ARMS *of the Kingdom.*

THE King of *Sweden* bears for that Country Quarterly; in the 1st and 2d and 4th *Azure*, 3 Crowns *Or*, two in *Chief*, and one in *Base*. For *Finland*; in the 2d and 3d *Barry-Argent* and *Azure*, a Lion *Or*, Crown'd *Gules*. For the Palatinate of the *Rhine*; over all Quarterly, in the 1st and 4th *Sables*, a Lion *Or*, Crown'd, Arm'd, and Langued, *Gules*. For *Bavaria*; in the 2d and 3d *Lozenges* bend-wise, of 21 Pieces, *Argent* and *Azure*. For the Crest, they have a Crown Royal, adorn'd with 8 Flowers, and clos'd by as many Demi-Circles, terminating in a *Monde Or*. The Supporters are two Lions *Or*, Crown'd of the same; and the Motto is, *Dominus Protector meus*; *i. e.* The Lord is my Protector.

Of the LAKES, RIVERS, BAYS, *&c.*

THE chief Lakes are, 1. The *Peter*, in *Gothland*. The Natives say, it is remarkable for a Noise like Thunder, in that Quarter from whence a Storm is to happen the Day after, and for the sudden thawing of its Ice, so that it sometimes surprises Travellers, and in half an Hour becomes navigable. In some Places it is above 300 Fathom deep. 2. *Meler*, in *Uplend*; which falls into the Sea at *Stockholm*, and furnishes one

Digitized by Google

one Half of that City with freſh Water. 3. The *Venir*, in *Weſt-Gothland*, ſaid to be 130 *Engliſh* Miles in Length, and 40 in Breadth. Twenty four Rivers from the Mountains of *Norway* fall into it. The River *Elve*, or, as ſome call it, *Trolhetta*, has its Source from hence, and falls over a Rock 60 Foot high, near *Gothenburg*, with ſuch a Noiſe, that 'tis heard at the diſtance of 200 Furlongs. 4. *Huelmer*, in *Nericke*. 5. *Siliam*, in *Dalecarlia*. 6. *Aawa*. 7. *Lulatresk*. 8. *Enaratresk*, in *Lapland*. 9. *Ulatresk*, in *Cajania*. 10. *Pejenda*, in *Tavaſtia*. There are many other Lakes; but theſe are the moſt remarkable, and are all ſtor'd with variety of Fiſh; as Salmon, Pikes, Perch, Tench, Trouts, Eels, and many other Sorts, unknown elſewhere, particularly a Fiſh call'd a Streamling, leſs than a Pilchard, which are taken in great quantities, ſalted in Barrels, and ſent over all the Country. In the Lakes of *Finland*, they have vaſt quantities of Pikes, which, when ſalted and dried, are ſold at cheap Rates.

From thoſe Lakes moſt of the Rivers in this Country riſe, but none of them are Navigable; the chief are, 1. The *Dalecarl*, which riſes in the *Dofrine* Mountains, runs thro' *Dalecarlia*, and divides the Provinces of *Geſtricia* from *Upland*, and falls into the Gulph of *Bothnia*. 2. *Saga*, which divides *Upland* from *Weſtmania*. 3. *Angerman*, which waters *Angermania*, and falls into the Gulph of *Bothnia*, moſt of them are noted for Plenty of Salmon. Other Rivers of leſſer Note are, *Ula*, *Tidalda*, *Not*, *Eda*, *Uſk*, *Niſſa*, *Laga*, *Helga*, *Marboa*, *Aam*, *Cumoelf*, *Hoelf*, *Ulaeff*, *Peventz*, *Nieva*.

In the Lakes and on the Sea-Coaſts they have vaſt numbers of ſmall Iſlands, of which above 6000 are inhabited, and the reſt are either bare Rocks, or cover'd with Wood.

Their chief Bays or Gulphs are, the Gulph of *Bothnia*, which ſeparates *Sweden* from *Finland*, and reaches from Lat. 60 to 66. It abounds with Seals, which yield a conſiderable quantity of Train-Oil. The Gulph of *Finland* ſeparates *Finland* from *Livonia* and *Ingria*: It runs from Weſt to *Eaſt*, from Longitude 45 to 55, and the Gulph of *Riga* lies on the Weſt of *Livonia*.

Of the Diviſion of SWEDEN.

SWEDEN is divided into 8 Parts, *viz. Sweden-Proper*, *Gothland*, *Schonen*, the Government of *Bahus*, the *Nordelles* or *Northlands*, *Finland*, *Ingria*, and *Swediſh-Livonia*.

I. *SWEDEN PROPER*,

IS Fruitful in Corn, and lies betwixt the *Nordelles* to the North, *Oſtrogothland* to the South, the *Baltick* to the Eaſt, and the Governments of *Bahus*, *Aggerhus* and *Drontheim*, to the Weſt; and is ſubdivided into 5 Provinces, *viz. Upland*, *Sudermania*, *Nericia* or *Nericke*, *Weſtmania*, and *Dalecarlia*.

UPLAND,

HAS *Geſtricia* on the North, *Sudermania* on the South, the *Baltick* on the Eaſt, *Weſtmania* and *Nericia* on the Weſt. The chief City is *Stockholm*, in Latitude 59 Deg. and 40 Min. according to the Obſervations of the King of *Sweden*'s Mathematicians. Moſt Maps make *Dantzick* one half of a Degree more Eaſtward than *Stockholm*; and by the Obſervations of *Hevelius* and Mr. *Flamſtead*, the difference of Meridians betwixt *London* and *Dantzick* is 1 Hour, 15 Min. 30 Sec. which is 18¾ Deg. ſo that *Stockholm* is about Longitude 37. It lies 28 *Engliſh* Miles Weſt from the *Baltick*, 36 South from *Upſal*, 300 North from *Dantzick*, 180 North-Eaſt from *Gothenburg*, 150 North from *Calmar*, and 240 North-Eaſt from *Copenhagen*. The time when it was firſt built is not certain; ſome ſay, King *Birger* built it in 1261. About 300 Years ago it was only an Iſland, with two or three Cottages for Fiſhers; but upon building a Caſtle there, to ſtop the Inroads of the *Moſcovites*, and by the Removal of the Court from *Upſal* to this Place, it became more Populous than the antient Cities, and is now the Metropolis of the Kingdom. It is naturally fortified with Rocks; which, towards the Sea, over-top the Houſes, and make the Proſpect not ſo pleaſant. In 1552, a great part of it was burnt down, the Houſes being then of Wood, which occaſion'd an Act to rebuild it with Brick and Stone. Some ſay, the Houſes at firſt were founded on Piles of Timber drove into the Ground,

Digitized by Google

Ground, becauſe it was Marſhy. It is built upon 6 Iſlands, join'd together by Bridges, and has two large Suburbs, one on the N. and the other on the S. The Port is one of the ſafeſt in *Europe*; for 1000 Ships of great Burden may lie without Anchor or Cable, and the Mountains round it defend them from Storms, as the Citadel and two Forts guard the Canal from the Inſults of Enemies; but it has this Inconvenience, that it is far diſtant from the Sea; and the Lake *Meler*, that falls from it into the *Baltick*, is full of Windings, and has no Tides, which makes it the more difficult for Ships to get out. This City has almoſt all the Trade of *Sweden*. The King for moſt part reſides here: 'Tis one of the fineſt Cities of the North, and ſuppoſed to be as populous as *Briſtol*. The Caſtle is a large Building, cover'd with Copper, and ſerves for an Arſenal. The Officers of the Court lodge in it, and moſt of the Offices for Publick Affairs are kept there; but it has neither Strength nor Beauty. There are 9 large Churches, built with Brick, and cover'd with Copper, in the City. St. *Nicholas* Church is the moſt remarkable: It was founded by King *John*, on Marble Pillars. In the King's Chapel, at the Altar, there's a Silver Statue of our Saviour on the Croſs at full Length. There's a Citadel, commanded by a neighbouring Hill, and the King's Palace, which is ſtrong and high, lies within it. The Streets are very large, and there are many Gardens and Walks in and about the City, which make it pleaſant.

Jacobdal, a Village within half a League of it, has a Caſtle, where the Kings of *Sweden* reſide in Summer.

Enkoping, W. from *Stockholm*, on the Lake *Lever*, is a pleaſant Town, and of good Trade.

Upſal, lies in Lat. 59 Deg. 54 Min. according to the Obſervations of *Charles* XIth's Mathematicians, and the Meridian is near that of *Stockholm*, only a little more Weſtward. They obſerv'd alſo, That the Variation of the Compaſs there was 8 Degrees. *Joannes Magnus* is ſo vain as to ſay, it was founded 240 Years after the Flood, by *Ubbo*, one of their Kings. It lies on the River *Sala*, which falls into the Lake *Enkopen*, and is about 30 Miles N. W. from *Stockholm*. It is the moſt ancient City in the Kingdom, formerly the Reſidence of their Kings, and from thence called *Upſala Konung*. Before the Reformation, all their Kings were Crown'd and bury'd in this City; and in 1654, Queen *Chriſtina* reſign'd the Crown here. It has a Caſtle built after the *Gothick* Manner, on a Hill, and commands the whole City. This Town was alſo the chief Seat of Paganiſm, where they had the rich Temple, of which *Joannes Magnus* tells ſo many Stories, and makes that at *Cuzco* to be mean, when compar'd with it. About 1148, *Eugenius* III. made it an Archbiſhop's See, who always keeps his Court here. The Cathedral has a Clock of admirable Workmanſhip. We have mention'd its Univerſity already. Moſt Part of the Books in the Library were given by *Guſtavus Adolphus*, who took them from many Libraries in *Germany*, and eſpecially from that of *Wurtzburg*.

Oregrund, is an ancient Town on the *Baltick*, N. E. from *Upſal*: It has a good Port, which occaſions a Trade there.

Other Towns here are, 1. *Oſt-Hammar*. 2. *Forſmark*. 3. *Elikarby*. 4. *Skephamar*. 5. *Wedoo*.

SUDERMANIA,

HAS *Upland* on the N. E. *Weſtmania* on the N. *Nericia* on the W. the *Baltick* on the E. and S. and *Oſtrogothland* on the S W. It is fruitful in Corn, and has abundance of Mines. The chief Town is *Nycoping*: It lies on the *Baltick*, in Lat. 58½, and Long. 36. has a good Port, and is tolerably rich. The Caſtle is ſtrong, and formerly was the Reſidence of the Dukes of *Sudermania*. It has a good Dock for building Ships; lies 52 *Engliſh* Miles S. W. from *Stockholm*, and 28 N. E. from *Norcop* 1*g*

Troſa, is a ſmall Trading Town betwixt *Nycoping* and *Telga*, on the *Baltick*.

Telga, a ſmall Town, N. E. from *Troſa*, on the S. Side of the Canal, by which the Lake *Meler* communicates with the *Baltick*: It lies 16 Miles S. from *Stockholm*.

Stregnes, lies in Lat. 59, on the S. Side of the Lake *Meler*, 32 *Engliſh* Miles S. W. from *Stockholm*, N. from *Norcoping*, and W. from *Telga*. It is an ancient Town, and a Biſhop's See. *Charles* IX. is buried here.

Kongſor,

Kongſer, is ſituated on a pleaſant River, where it falls into the Lake *Meler*. King *Charles* XIth's Mathematicians ſay, it lies in Lat. 59 Deg. 34 Min.

Other Towns are, 1. *Dunker*. 2. *Sirwada*. 3. *Ofma*. 4. *Wette*. 5. *Oſtre*. 6. *Coredingen*. 7. *Garla*. 8. *Biorlanda*.

NERICIA,

IS fruitful in Corn and Mines, has *Weſtmania* on the N. *Oſtrogothland* on the S. *Sudermania* on the S. E. and *Wermeland* on the W.

Orebro is the chief Town: It lies on the River *Troſa*, which *De la Foreſt* calls *Orebro*, near the Lake *Meler*, 16 *Engliſh* Miles S. W. from *Arboga*.

Other Towns are, 1. *Aikeland*, S. from *Orebro*. 2. *Kunda*. 3. *Maſio*. 4. *Segerslwo*.

WESTMANIA,

HAS *Nericia* on the N. *Upland* on the E. *Geſtricia* on the N. *Sudermania* on the S. E. and *Wermeland* on the W.

Aroſia, or *Weſteras*, is the chief Town: It lies near the N. Side of the Lake *Meler*, in Lat. 59½, and Long. 35. 16 *Engliſh* Miles N. E. from *Arboga*, and 40 W. from *Stockholm*. In 1521, *Guſtavus Erickſon* defeated the Army of *Chriſtian* II. of *Denmark* here, where, in 1544, the States made the Crown Hereditary to the Family of *Guſtavus* I. It is a Biſhop's See, and has a ſmall Caſtle.

Arboga, is a ſmall Town on a River of the ſame Name, near the Lake *Meler*, 20 *Engliſh* Miles S. W. from *Weſteras*, and 18 N. E. from *Orebro*. It was ruin'd by the *Danes* in the 16th Century.

Sala, or *Saalberg*, is N. from *Weſteras*, and remarkable for a Silver Mine diſcovered about the End of the laſt Age.

Other Towns are, 1. *Koping*, W. from *Weſteras*. 2. *Nohra*. 3. *Lindeſnas*. 4. *Rittern*, 5. *Olomkolm*. 6. *Wela*.

DALECARLIA.

IT has *Geſtricia*, *Helſingia*, and *Medelpadia*, on the E. the Government of *Aggerhus* on the W. *Wermeland* and *Weſtmania* on the S. It is divided into 3 Parts, *viz. Oſterdalia*, *Veſterdalia*, and *Sudalia*. This Country is Mountainous, and all over Woody. The ancienteſt Peaſants are their Judges. The Kings of *Sweden* always took Care not to diſoblige this People, and were not allow'd to ſend Troops or have Gariſons there, and never enter'd this Country without giving Hoſtages for Security of their Privileges; nor did they exact any Tribute of them, but a ſmall Number of Furs. Their Cuſtoms are quite different from thoſe of the other Provinces. The Inhabitants of this Country were famous under the Conduct of *Guſtavus* I. when they retrieved their Country from the *Daniſh* Yoke, as has been already mentioned. There are no Towns in this Province, but only Villages.

II. *GOTHLAND*,

HAS *Dalecarlia* on the N. *Norway* on the N. W. *Weſtmania*, *Nericia*, and *Sudermania*, on the E. the *Baltick* on the S. E. *Schonen* on the S. and the *Baltick* on the S. W. It is divided into *Weſtrogothland* and *Oſtrogothland*.

Weſtrogothland is ſub-divided into *Weſtrogothland Proper*, *Dahl* or *Dalia*, and *Wermeland*.

Weſtrogothland Proper has the Lake *Wener* on the N. *Dalia* on the N. W. the *Baltick* on the S. W. *Schonen* on the S. *Smaland* on the S. E. *Oſtrogothland* on the E. and *Nericia* on the N. E.

Gothesburg, lies on the *Categat*, in Lat. 58½, Long. 30 Deg. 40 Min. has the beſt and moſt frequented Port on the *Baltick*: It is ſeated on the Mouth of the River *Trolhetta*, where it falls into the *Sinus Codanus*, 12 *Engliſh* Miles S. from *Bahus*, 264 W. from *Stockholm*, 200 N. W. from *Calmar*, and 120 N. from *Copenhagen*. It is a new built Town. In 1644, the *Daniſh* Fleet beſieg'd it in vain. The Caſtle of *Elburg* lies near it.

Falkoping, S. from the Lake *Wener*, is a ſmall Town, that has been frequently harraſs'd in the *Daniſh* Wars. *Hio* is another Town on the W. of the Lake *Weter*

Scara, is 10 *Engliſh* Miles S. from the Lake *Wener*: It was anciently the Seat of the *Gothick* Kings; but there remains little now except Ruins. It is a Biſhop's See.

Lidskoping,

Digitized by Google

Lidoköping, a small Town on the S. of the Lake *Wener*. *Mariestad*, another, lies betwixt the Lakes *Weter* and *Wener*.

Other Towns are, 1. *Bogestund*. 2. *Hielingsaas*. 3. *Brete*. 4. *Nyloese*. 5. *Nananga*. 6. *Skefde*.

DALIA, or DAHL,

HAS the Government of *Bahus* on the W. *Wermeland* on the N. and *Westrogothland Proper* on the E. 'Tis leſs fruitful than any other Part of *Gothland*.

The Towns are, 1. *Dalleburg*, on the W. of the Lake *Wener*, 44 Miles N. E. from *Bahus*. 2. *Bretten*, which ſome call *Wenerbourg*, on the W. of that Lake. 'Twas ſack'd in 1644 by the *Danes*, but is now rebuilt.

WERMELAND,

HAS *Dalecarlia* on the N. *Nericia* and *Weſtmania* on the E. the Lake *Wener* on the S. and *Dalia* and *Norway* on the W. It is ſaid to have been the laſt planted of all the *Gothick* Provinces. 'Tis Mountainous and Woody, and has ſome Mines of Iron, and one of Copper.

The Towns are, 1. *Philipſtadt*, the Approaches to which are difficult, becauſe it lies in the middle of Moraſſes. 2. *Carlſtadt*, built by *Charles* IX. on the N. E. of the Lake *Wener*: It was the Capital of *Wermeland*, before the *Danes* ruin'd it in 1644. Other Towns here are, 1. *Grilberga*. 2. *Ruſkog*. 3. *Kolen*. 4. *Friſende*. 5. *Arwycka*.

OSTROGOTHLAND,

IS divided into *Oſtrogothland Proper* and *Smaland*. *Oſtrogothland Proper* has on the E. the *Baltick*, on the W. the Lake *Witer*, on the N. *Sudermania*, and on the S. *Smaland*. It is the beſt Place in *Sweden* for Paſture.

Norkoping, the Capital of all *Oſtrogothland*, lies in a Moraſs, on the River *Motala*, betwixt the *Baltick* and the Lake *Weter*, 20 *Engliſh* Miles from the *Baltick*.

Stegeborg, is a ſmall Town, S. from *Norkoping*, and is remarkable for its good Port on the *Baltick*.

Linkaping, is S. W. from *Norkoping*, and has a Biſhop, Suffragan to the Archbiſhop of *Upſal*. It has a ſtately Church, which was built by *Herbertus*, the firſt Apoſtle of *Sweden*.

Suderkoping, lies on the *Baltick*, in the Bottom of a Bay, 20 *Engliſh* Miles E. from *Linkaping*.

Wadſtena, famous in the *Swediſh* Hiſtory, had anciently a Fort and Monaſtery dedicated to *St. Bridget*, which is now an Hoſpital for Invalids.

Scheening, anciently a famous City, but now inconſiderable. In 1248, Pope *Innocent* IV. order'd a Council to meet here, which prohibited Matrimony to the Clergy.

Other Towns are, 1. *Kelmo*. 2. *Nylechen*. 3. *Skenſta*. 4. *Lindeny*. 5. *Riſinge*.

SMALAND.

THis Province abounds with Black Cattel, which are tranſported to *Denmark*, and from thence to *Germany*, *Holland*, &c. It has the *Baltick* on the E. *Schonen* on the S. and is divided from *Oſtrogothland* by the Wood *Holawedh*. This Province is 380 *Engliſh* Miles in Compaſs. It has Mines of Copper and Lead; and there's Iron found, as ſome ſay, at the bottom of their Lakes and Rivers.

Calmar, is the Capital, was burnt down in 1647, but now handſomely rebuilt. It lies 180 *Engliſh* Miles S. W. from *Stockholm*, and as many N. E. from *Copenhagen*. It is one of the moſt conſiderable Places in *Sweden*. Its Fortifications are regular; the Citadel is of a great Extent. It has an excellent Port on a Creek of the *Baltick*, and is famous for the Union of the 3 Northern Crowns, that was concluded here.

Jencoping, a ſmall Town, but ancient, on the S. Point of the Lake *Veter*. It was plunder'd by the *Danes* in 1644.

Wexſio, a Biſhoprick, lies in the middle of the Province. St. *Sigifrid* was buried here.

Other Towns are, 1. *Weſterwick*. 2. *Ekſio*. 3. *Erlanda*. 4. *Torſas*. 5. *Alaſta*. 6. *Hallars*. 7. *Kerna*. 8. *Monſter*.

III. SCHONEN,

WAS purchas'd by the *Swedes* from *John*, Duke of *Holſtein*, about 1330, was conquer'd by the *Danes* in 1341, and recover'd by the *Swedes* in 1658, by the

Digitized by Google

Treaty of *Roſchild*. In 1676, and 1677, the *Danes* took many Places in it; but were obliged to reſtore them by the Treaty of *Fountainbleau* in 1679. It has *Smaland* on the N. the *Baltick* on the E. and S. and the Frith or Streight called the *Sound*, or *Oreſundt*, which ſeparates it from *Zeeland*, on the W. It is divided into *Schonen*, *Bleking*, and *Halland*.

Schonen has a high Coaſt; but the low Lands of it has charming fine Meadows, and fruitful Fields. The Beer of this Country is very good, and much better than that of *Zeeland*.

Lunden, the Capital, lies in Lat. 55 ½, Long. 31 ½, was formerly a conſiderable City, and had 22 Churches, but has little of its ancient Splendour now. The Cathedral of St. *Laurence* is a ſtately Building. The famous Clock there is ſaid to be the Contrivance of *Gaſpar Bartholinus*: It ſhews the Year, the Month, the Day of the Month, all the Feſtivals, fix'd and moveable, the Hour and Minute. At each Hour, two Horſemen come out and ſtrike the Hours in a Fighting Poſture; then a Door opens, which diſcovers the Virgin *Mary* on a Throne, with our Saviour in her Arms, and the *Magi* worſhiping him. Two Trumpets ſound all the while. There is alſo a magnificent Altar in this Church. The Town has no Walls, and but few Inhabitants.

Malmoe, is a ſmall Town, but neat, and tolerably rich, becauſe of its Port on the *Sound*, S. from *Lunden*, which is much frequented. In the War before the Treaty of *Fountainbleau*, the *Danes* beſieg'd it twice in vain.

Trellebourg, lies alſo on the *Baltick*, S. from *Malmoe*.

Landſcroon, over againſt the little Iſle of *Huen*, was formerly only a little Caſtle, which *Erick*, who ſucceeded Queen *Margaret*, enlarg'd; but ſince that Time, the Kings of *Sweden* have fortified the Citadel with regular Fortifications. The *Danes* took it in 1670. 'Tis now a conſiderable Town, and has a well frequented Harbour.

Helſingburg, lies over againſt the Caſtle of *Cronenburg* in *Zeeland*. When it belong'd to the *Danes*, it was very rich, becauſe of its Trade with *Elſingor*; but now the *Danes* impoſe ſo great Cuſtoms, that their Trade is ſunk. It was formerly well fortified; but by the Treaty of *Fountainbleau*, all the Fortifications were demoliſh'd, which has reduc'd this Place to a Village of 80 or 100 Houſes, and one Church.

Other Towns are, 1. *Udſted*. 2. *Engelholm*. 3. *Ria*. 4. *Smidhamer*. 5. *Semmerſhaven*. 6. *Julebo*.

BLEKING,

BElong'd formerly to *Denmark*; but by the Treaty of *Roſchild* in 1658, was annex'd to *Sweden*. It lies N. E. from *Schonen*, S. from *Smaland*, and has the *Baltick* on the E. and S. Their Paſture is good for Black Cattle, which they export in great Numbers.

Chriſtianople, ſo call'd from *Chriſtian* IV. King of *Denmark*, who built and fortified it, is the Capital of the Province. It lies on the Borders of *Oſtrogothland*, 20 *Engliſh* Miles S. from *Calmar*, and 15 from the Iſland *Oelund*. It has a good Port, and a pretty Trade.

Carelſcroon, ſo called from *Charles* II. who built it on a little Iſle of the ſame Name, which is join'd to the Continent by a very long Bridge. The Town covers almoſt the whole Iſland, and has an excellent Harbour well fortified, where ordinarily 50 of the King's Ships lie ſecure from Storms, and the Inſults of Enemies.

Rattenby, lies S. W. from *Chriſtianople*, on the *Baltick*, and has a good Port.

Chriſtianſtadt, on the Borders of *Schonen*, was built in 1600, by *Chriſtian* IV. of *Denmark*, near the Mouth of the *Helles*. It lies half Way betwixt *Copenhagen* on the W. and *Chriſtianople* on the E. in the middle of a Moraſs, which makes it ſtrong. The *Danes* took it in 1676; but two Years after were obliged to reſtore it.

Alhus, two Miles S. from *Chriſtianſtadt*, is ſmall, but an ancient Town.

Other Towns here are, 1. *Ellcholm*, N. E. from *Chriſtianſtadt*. 2. *Seltiburg*. 3. *Lurkeburg*. 4. *Knutsbro*.

HALLAND,

HAS *Schonen* on the S. E. *Weſtrogothland* on the N. E. and N. and the *Sound* on the W. It belong'd formerly to the *Danes*; but

Digitized by Google

but by the Treaty of *Roſchild*, it was annex'd to *Sweden*. This Country abounds in Woods and Lakes, and is not ſo fruitful as *Schonen* or *Bleking*. It is 60 *Engliſh* Miles in Extent from N. to S. and 15 from E. to W.

Helmſtadt is the chief Town, on the Mouth of a River that falls into the *Sound*, or Gulph of *Categat*.

Laholm, lies S. E. from *Helmſtadt*, on the Mouth of a River that falls into the ſame Gulph, and is not conſiderable now, ſince its Fortifications were demoliſhed.

Falkenbourg, lies alſo on the *Categat*.

Warborg, N. N. W. from *Falkenbourg*, is a ſmall Town, in the Bottom of a little Gulph, with a Port defended by a ſtrong Caſtle.

IV. *The Government of* BAHUS,

BElong'd to *Denmark* before the Peace of *Roſchild*. It has the *Sound* on the S. W. *Dahl* or *Dalia* on the N. E. and the Government of *Aggerhus* on the N. W. is but thinly inhabited: It is 100 Miles long from N. to S. and in ſome Places about 15 broad. It is divided into 2 Parts.

1. *Inland*, of which *Bahus*, the Capital, lies 10 *Engliſh* Miles N. from *Gottenburg*: It was built in 1309 by *Haquin*, the 4th King of *Norway*, on an Iſland made by the River *Trolhetta*. It is well fortified, and has a ſtrong Caſtle. The *Danes* beſieg'd it in 1678, but in vain.

2. *Vyckſiden*, of which *Maelſtrand* is the Capital: It is a ſtrong Town, and has a Caſtle on a ſteep Rock, almoſt ſurrounded by the Sea. In 1678, *Chriſtian* V. King of *Denmark*, made himſelf Maſter of it; but it was reſtored by the Treaty of *Fountainbleau*.

V. *The* NORDELLES, *or* NORTHLANDS.

THeſe Northerly Provinces are 8, *viz. Geſtricia*, *Helſingia*, *Medelpadia*, *Angermania*, *Weſt-Gothland*, *Jempterland*, *Harndal*, and *Swediſh Lapland*.

GESTRICIA,

HAS *Helſingia* on the N. *Upland* on the S. the Gulph of *Bothnia* on the E. and *Dalecarlia* on the W. It has Mines of Copper and Iron.

Geval is the chief Town. The King of *Sweden*'s Mathematicians found the Lat. here 60 Deg. 31 Min. whereas moſt Maps make it 61. It is 50 *Engliſh* Miles N. from *Upſal*, and remarkable for being the Reſidence of the Governor of the Country, and having a Royal School. It lies on the Gulph of *Bothnia*, at the Mouth of a River of the ſame Name.

Fahlun, by the Obſervations of the *Swediſh* Mathematicians, is in Lat. 60 Deg. 32 Min. and a pretty large Town.

Copperberg, a large Town, lies near a Mountain of the ſame Name, famous for the beſt Copper-Mines of the World. It is 50 *Engliſh* Miles W. from *Geval*.

HELSINGIA,

HAS the Gulph of *Bothnia* on the E. *Norway* on the N. W. *Dalecarlia* on the W. *Geſtricia* on the S. and *Medelpadia* on the N. It is overgrown with Woods, has many Lakes and Mountains, and few Inhabitants, who don't cultivate much of the Country, but live by Fiſhing and Hunting.

Hudwickſwald, near the Gulph of *Bothnia*, is a neat City, and conveniently ſituated for Trade.

Soderhamn, in Lat. 61 Deg. 12 Min. is another Town of this Diſtrict.

MEDELPADIA,

IS N. from *Helſingia*, has many Lakes and thick Forreſts, where grow excellent Maſts. There are few Towns here, but many Caſtles in this Province.

Indal, near the Gulph of *Bothnia*, is the chief Town.

Tuna, another Town, lies S. from *Indal*, near the Gulph of *Bothnia*, and has a Caſtle.

Digitized by Google

ANGERMANIA,

IS N. E. from *Medelpadia*, and has its Name from the River *Angerman*, which riſes from the Mountains of *Norway*.

Hernoſand, on the *Baltick*, is the only Town of that Diſtrict, which has a convenient Port. The Superintendant reſides here.

WEST BOTHNIA,

HAS the Gulph of that ſame Name on the E. *Swediſh Lapland* on the W. and *Angermania* on the S. W. It is water'd by many ſmall Rivers, which make their Paſtures good.

Torna, or *Torneo*, is the chief Town of this Country, on a River of the ſame Name, which riſes in *Lapland*, runs S. E. and falls at *Torneo* into the Gulph of *Bothnia*. They have a good Trade in Furs with the *Laplanders* and *Finlanders*, whoſe Language they underſtand. They have alſo a good Trade in Furs with the *Muſcovites*. King *Charles* XIth's Mathematicians, after their moſt accurate Obſervations, found the Lat. there to be 65 Deg. 43 Min. The Difference of Meridians betwixt *Stockholm* and *Torneo* 19 Min. 20 Sec. which make 40 Deg. 50 Min. and that *Torneo* is more E. than *Stockholm*, and the Variation of the Compaſs from N. to W. 7 Deg.

Lubla, in Lat. 65 Deg. 25 Min. was built in 1622, and the new Town in 1642; but has been twice burnt down ſince.

Pitha, or *Bithea*, was built in 1621, has a convenient Port, and good Privileges to encourage Trade.

Uma, a conſiderable Town in thoſe Parts, on the ſaid Gulph, is the Seat of the Governor of that Province. The Lat. is 63 Deg. 48 Min. and the Variation of the Compaſs 7 Deg. There are many ſmall Iſlands along that Coaſt.

JEMPTERLAND,

HAS *Angermania* or *Angermanland* on the E. *Medelpadia* and *Helſingia* on the S. E. and the Government of *Drontheim* in *Norway* on the W.

Reſſunt, a ſmall Town with a Caſtle, is the only conſiderable Place in this Province.

Of the ISLES *on the Coaſts of* Sweden.

ALAND, lies over againſt *Upland*, to which Province it belongs. The moſt Southerly Places of it have the ſame Lat. with *Upſal*.

GOTHLAND,

Is 70 *Engliſh* Miles from the Coaſts of *Oſtrogothland*. Its Length from N. to S. is 50 *Engliſh* Miles, and the Breadth from E. to W. 18. The *Pruſſian* Knights quitted this Iſland to the *Danes* in 1408 for 9000 Crowns. The *Swedes* got it in 1645, by the Peace of *Bromſtro*; and it was confirm'd to them by the Peace at *Fountainbleau*. It has good Paſture for Cattle, which they tranſport.

Wiby is the chief Place of the Iſland, and lies on the W. Side of it: 'Twas famous in Antiquity for its excellent Sea-Laws, which were obſerv'd by moſt Sea-Towns on the *Baltick*. It had formerly a great Trade, but 'tis now decay'd. Sea-Charts were firſt made here.

OELAND,

Lies near the Province of *Smaland*, from which it is divided by a Frith called *Calmar-Sound*. Its Length from N. to S. is 69 Miles, and the Breadth 18: It has 18 Pariſhes, and is one of the moſt pleaſant Places of *Sweden*: The Air there is more calm, and the Soil is more fruitful, than in any other Place of that Kingdom. It has good Hunting, and the Kings of *Sweden* come hither in Summer for that purpoſe. The Coaſts are well defended by ſteep Rocks and ſtrong Caſtles.

Berkholm, the Capital, lies on the E. Side of it, and has good Fortifications.

Oſtenby, on the S. Side, is alſo well fortified.

HUEN or WEEN,

Was poſſeſs'd by the *Danes* till 1658. It lies in the middle of the *Sound*, betwixt *Landſcroon*

Digitized by Google

Landscroon and *Copenhagen*. All Strangers and Seafaring People call it the *Scarlet* Island. It is not above 7 *English* Miles in Circumference, but one of the best Spots of Ground that can be seen, there being no barren Place in it: It produces great Plenty of Wheat, Rye, and other Grain, and good Fruit. They have all sorts of Cattle, and pay the King Yearly 800 Crowns. In 1576, *Frederick* II. King of *Denmark*, gave this Island to *Tycho Brahe* for his Life, that he might build an Observatory there for his Astronomical Observations. He allow'd him also a Sum of Money, and a Pension of 2000 Crowns *per Annum*. In 4 Years time, he finished the Castle of *Uraniburg* in the middle of the Island, which was a magnificent Building, with commodious Apartments: His Machines and Instruments were numerous and fine; and he had a Printing-House, a Mill for making Paper, and Laboratories for Chymical Operations, with Gardens, Fish-Ponds, and other Ornaments, which made it a charming Place. He also built *Stellenburg*, on the W. of *Uraniburg*, with all Conveniencies for Astronomical Observations. King *James* I. in his Voyage to *Denmark* to marry his Queen, honour'd him with a Visit; but the Court of *Denmark* turning, his Enemies, he was oblig'd to leave his ungrateful Country. Whence he came to *Rostock*, but was invited to settle in *Prague* by the Emperor *Rodolph* II. who gave him a Pension of 3000 Gold Ducats, where he died in 1601. *Christian* IV. of *Denmark*, gave those fine Buildings to a Mistress of his, who destroy'd them; so that the Place of them now is scarcely to be known.

The Isles *Hawe* and *Malqueren* on the Coasts of *Bleking* are not very considerable.

VI. *FINLAND*,

IS call'd by Authors *Fimonia*, *Finnia*, and *Finningia*, is extended from the Gulph of *Bothnia* on the W. to *Muscovy* on the E. from which it is separated by the Lakes *Onega* and *Ladoga*. On the N. it has *Lapland*, and on the S. the *Baltick* and the Gulph of *Finland*. They had Kings of their own, till they were conquer'd by St. *Erick*, King of *Sweden*, as has been said already. About the Time of the Death of *John* King of *Sweden*, 100000 *Muscovites* invaded this Country in Winter; but were so warmly ply'd by 600 *Finlanders* only, who came with their Pattens upon the Snow, in which the *Muscovites* could not move, that very few of this great Number return'd. This vast Country is barren every where, except on the Sea-Coast. It is divided into 6 Provinces, *viz. Finland Proper*, *Eastern Bothnia*, *Nyland*, *Tavasthus*, *Carelia*, and *Savolax*.

FINLAND PROPER,

HAS the Gulph of *Bothnia* on the W. *Eastern Bothnia* on the N. *Tavasthus* on the E. *Nyland* on the S. E. and the Gulph of *Finland* on the S. This Province is fruitful in Grain, and has some Mines of Copper and Iron.

Abo, the Capital, lies on the Mouth of the River *Aurajoki*: It has been a Bishop's See since 1158. Its University was founded in 1640, by Queen *Christina*: It has a good Port, which occasions some Trade there, and lies 100 *English* Miles N. from *Revel*, and 144 E. from *Stockholm*.

Biornoburg, 80 *English* Miles N. from *Abo*, on the Mouth of the River *Cumo*, where it falls into the Gulph of *Bothnia*, is a small Town of some Trade.

Other Towns are, 1 *Rawno*. 2. *Muiko*. 3. *Nykyrsky*. 4. *Wirmo*. 5. *Haliko*. 6. *Bicrno*.

EASTERN BOTHNIA, or *CAJANIA*,

LIes over against *West Bothnia*, from which it is separated by the Gulph of that Name; has on the N. *Kimi-Lapmark*, on the E. *Savolax* and *Carelia*, *Finland* and *Tavasthus* on the S. It is 300 *English* Miles in Length, and has many Rivers, that fall into the Gulph of *Bothnia*.

Cajenburg is the chief Town, and lies on the E. Side of a great Lake called *Ulatresk*, in Lat. 65, and Long. 45.

Other Towns are, 1. *Uld* or *Uldaburg*. 2. *Curleby*. 3. *Nycarleby*. 4. *Wasa*.

NYLAND,

Digitized by Google

NYLAND, or NEWLAND.

IT was ſo call'd, becauſe its ancient Inhabitants being driven out, new Colonies were ſent to plant here. It has good Paſture, and breeds large Oxen, Horſes, and other Cattle. It has *Tavaſthus* to the N. the Gulph of *Finland* on the S. and *Carelia* on the E.

The Towns here are, 1. *Borg* or *Borgo*, 60 *Engliſh* Miles N. from *Revel*, and 100 W. from *Wiburg* in *Carelia*, on the Gulph of *Finland*. 2. *Helſingfort*, W. from *Borgo*, with a large Port. 3. *Raſchburg*, W. from *Helſingfort*, on the ſame Gulph.

TAVASTHUS,

IS an Inland Province, has *Eaſt Bothnia* on the N. *Nyland* on the S. *Finland* on the W. and *Savolax* on the E. It has nothing remarkable but Mines of Iron.

Tavaſthus, anciently call'd *Gronenburg*, 90 Miles N. E. from *Abo*, is the chief Town: It is ſituated in the middle of unpaſſable Moraſſes. In 1250, *Birger Jerl* built a Fort here, to bridle the *Tavaſtians*. This Town lies near the great Lake *Pejende*, that has much Iron at the bottom, which the Inhabitants take out for their Uſe.

CARELIA,

HAS the Gulph of *Finland* on the S. the Lake *Onega* on the E. *Savolax* on the N. and *Nyland* on the W. The Poſſeſſion of this Province has been the Cauſe of great Wars betwixt *Muſcovy* and *Sweden*. In 1292, *Birger* King of *Sweden* made himſelf Maſter of it. In 1338, another King gave back *Kexholm*, in the E Part of this Country, to the Czar; but in 1617, *Guſtavus Adolphus* retook it all again.

Wiburg is the chief Town of the Province, and has a Biſhop, Suffragan to the Archbiſhop of *Upſal*. It is 45 Miles S. from *Kexholm*, as many W. from the Lake *Ladoga*, and 106 N. from *Narva*. It has a very ſtrong Citadel, which the *Muſcovites* have frequently beſieg'd in vain with an Army of 100000 Men. It has a good Port, and a tolerable Trade.

Kexholm, which the *Muſcovites* call *Corelgorod*, or the Fort of *Carelia*, lies on the W. of the Lake *Ladoga*, where the River *Voxen* falls into it. This Lake overflows the Country for 20 Miles Northward; ſo that the Corn grows only on the Tops of Mountains or Hills; but the Inhabitants of this City and the adjoining Country live more by Fiſhing and Hunting than by Husbandry. The Lat. of this Town is 62. Long. 50. It has a ſtrong Citadel. In 1558, the Conſtable *La Gardie* took it from the *Muſcovites*. Near this Place ſome Rubies are found.

SAVOLAX,

IS a Deſart Country, full of Lakes and Woods, has *Carelia* on the S. *Kexholm* on the E. *Tavaſtia* on the W.

Nyſlot, N. from *Kexholm*, on a Lake, is the principal Place of this Province.

VII. INGRIA,

LIes on the bottom of the Gulph of *Finland*: It belong'd formerly to *Muſcovy*. In 1609, *Ivan Baſilowitz* being in Danger of loſing his whole Empire in a War with *Sigiſmund* of *Poland*, was obliged to ſeek the Aſſiſtance of *Charles* IX. King of *Sweden*, and promis'd him the Province of *Carelia*; but after he was delivered from his Danger, he broke his Promiſe. To revenge this Affront, *Guſtavus Adolphus* made War upon the *Muſcovites*, and obliged *Michael Feodorowitz* to yield to *Sweden* for ever, by the Treaty at *Stockholm* in 1618, *Carelia*, *Kexholm*, and the greateſt Part of *Ingria*; which was confirm'd in 1661, by a Treaty betwixt *Charles* XI. and *Alexis Michaelowitz*. This Province is barren, but conſiderable for being a good Frontier againſt the *Muſcovites*, and for the hunting of *Elks* twice a Year, who paſs the River *Nieva* for *Carelia* in the Spring, and in Autumn they return from *Carelia* to *Muſcovy* thrô this Province. It has *Novogorod Weliki*, a *Ruſſian* Province, on the E. the Lake *Ladoga* on the N. E. *Carelia* on the N. the Gulph of *Finland* on the W. and *Livonia* on the S. W.

Notteburg,

Digitized by Google

Nottenburg, which the *Muſcovites* call *Oreſca*, lies on the rapid and broad River *Nieva*, in Lat. 60, Long. 50, which contributes much to make this City impregnable. The Fortifications are ſtrong, and of a large Extent. In 1614, *Guſtavus Adolphus* ſat down before it, and could not take it by Force; but the Gariſon was obliged to capitulate, becauſe they were plagued with a Diſeaſe of Boils or Warts in their Mouths, which hinder'd their eating. Since the *Swedes* became Maſters of it, they have improv'd the Fortifications.

Caporia, lies on the Gulph of *Finland*, and is a very ſtrong, thô a ſmall Town.

Iwanogorod, lies near the Confines of *Swediſh Livonia*, not far from *Narva*, from which it is parted by a rapid River that runs out of the Lake *Peipus*, and falls into the *Finniſh* Gulph: It is ſurrounded ſo with Rocks, that the Tops of the Houſes are only to be ſeen. In 1700, the *Muſcovites* beſieg'd it, but could not take it.

Jamogorod, lies on the River *Laga* S. S. E. from *Iwanogorod*, and is naturally ſtrong.

Other Towns here are, 1. *Orlin.* 2. *Sanitz.* 3. *Derp.*

VIII. *SWEDISH LIVONIA*;

HAS *Courland* on the S. W. the Gulph of *Riga* on the W. that of *Finland* on the N. *Lithuania* on the S. *Muſcovy* on the E. and *Ingria* on the N. E. and formerly comprehended *Courland*. It is 240 *Engliſh* Miles from N. to S. and 180 from W. to E. *Cluverius* makes it too large, by joining *Courland* to it, which belongs to its own Duke. Some make the *Levones* of *Ptolomy* the firſt Inhabitants of this Country; but it is more probable, that the *Æſtii* poſſeſſed it. *Hartzknock* ſays, That the Provinces of *Letten*, *Courland*, and *Semigallia*, were inhabited by the *Venedi*. He thinks the *Sinus Venedicus*, and the Towns of *Wenden* in *Letten*, and *Windau* in *Courland*, prove this.

The Soil is very fruitful, and in ſome Places produces 30 for one. The Country is plain. They have a particular Way of Husbandry, which is, That wherever there is a Valley, they ditch it up, make the Water overflow it to a conſiderable Depth, and let it ſtand for 3 or more Years: During this Time, they ſtock it with Fiſh, and then drein it. By this means the Ground becomes ſoft and fat, and requires but one eaſie Ploughing. The firſt and ſecond Year they ſow Barley, and the third Year Oats. Thus they never fail of having great Crops. They alſo improve their Ground by burning great Forreſts, the Aſhes of which are much better than Dung. They have great Plenty of Cattle and Fowl.

The Product is Plenty of Wheat, Barley, Rye, Oats, and Linſeed, of which they export many Ship-loads, and 'tis reckon'd the beſt of any in *Europe*. They have alſo Flax, Hemp, Honey, Wax, Tallow, Cattle, Horſes, Butter, Tar, Maſts, Planks, Deals, all ſorts of Timber, Pot-Aſhes, Yarn, Hops, Goat-Skins, *&c.*

The Air is clear and healthy, thô the Winter be long. The Natives dry their Corn in the Straw by hot Stoves, which makes it very hard, and not ſo liable to Corruption as other Corn; ſo that it will keep more than 20 Years: For this Reaſon the *Hollanders* prefer it to all other, and export it to the *Eaſt-Indies*. The Natives ſow the Fields with this hard Grain, which yields a great Product. The Sea, Rivers, and Lakes, abound with Fiſh, of which they reckon above 50 Sorts.

Of the Religion, Ancient State, &c. of this Country.

THE Inhabitants are Pagans, and almoſt Savages; and till the Knights of the Sword ſettled here, and taught them better, they threw away the Wax after they had got the Honey.

About 1158, when *Frederick Barbaroſſa* was Emperor, ſeveral Ships belonging to *Bremen*, bound for *Wiby* in the Iſle of *Gothland*, then a Town of great Trade, were driven by Streſs of Weather into the Gulph of *Riga*; and finding this Country very fit for Trade, they ſent Colonies hither, with Monks, and reſolv'd to ſettle Religion here, either by Perſwaſion or Force; for the Natives then worſhip'd divers ſorts of Beaſts; but thoſe dragooning Methods had not the Succeſs propos'd; for after they had been conſtrain'd to be baptiz'd, they immediately ran to Rivers to waſh away their Baptiſm.

Meinhard

Digitized by Google

Meinhard was their first Bishop, and was succeeded by *Bertold*, who endeavouring to make Profelytes by Force of Arms, was killed, and many Christians with him, in 1186, and was succeeded by *Albert*, a Canon of *Bremen*, who built *Riga*. He held *Livonia* as a Fief of the Empire; upon which he got Liberty to coin Money, and Authority to institute, in 1204, an Order of *German* Knights, who were call'd the *Livonian* Order, or *Knights of the Shore Sword*, according to the Rules of the *Knights Templars*. *Innocent* III. confirmed this Order: Their Habit was a white Cloak, with two *Swords Gules* in *Sautoir*, and a Star of the same Colour. They had a 3d Part allow'd them of what they should conquer from the Infidels. Tho' those Knights behav'd themselves bravely enough, yet the Pagans were too hard for them, and killed *Volquin Schenk*, their second and last Great Master, in a Battle in 1238. So that after this Order had continued 35 Years, they were forc'd to unite with the Order of *St. Mary of Jerusalem*, or the *Prussian* Knights. This Union was solemniz'd at *Rome* the same Year in the Pope's Presence. After this they fought against the *Courlanders*, because they would not be baptiz'd, and defeated them; and thus *Courland* and *Semigallia* were oblig'd to yield to the Order. Their *Heer* Master *Hano* Duke of *Brunswick* fought many Battles against the *Courlanders*, *Lithuanians*, and *Samogitians*, who had revolted from Christianity, in which many on both sides were slain. Those Engagements weaken'd the Order to that degree, that they were forc'd to be recruited by many new Croisades, till at last, in 1287, they brought those People to submit.

After the Order had Peace abroad, they began to make War upon the Bishop of *Livonia*, and abandon'd themselves to all manner of Vice. This War lasted from 1291 to 1341; in which both of them us'd the Assistance of Pagans. In one Year they had 9 pitch'd Battels. One Reason of this War was, because the Archbishop and Chapter would not wear Habits like those of the Order; who at last got the better, and dispossess'd the Archbishop of all his Towns except *Riga*. In 1330, they slew 10000 *Muscovites* in a Battle. In 1351, they kill'd 8000 *Lithuanians*, and had a War of 84 Years with them; during which there were lost on the Side of the Order, 28 Knights of the highest Nobility, 49 of the lesser Nobility, 11000 Gentlemen, 4000 Citizens, 15000 Strangers, and 16000 Peasants. In 1394, the Archbishop join'd the Pagans of *Lithuania*, *Russia*, and *Samogitia*, and in a bloody Battle, both Armies were almost destroy'd.

The Order, when in the Height of their Prosperity, were encourag'd to break the Peace with the *Muscovites*: Upon which *Uladislaus Jagello* march'd against them with an Army of 150000 Men, and the Order had only 83000: They fought at *Tannenberg*, where the *Poles* slew 40000 belonging to the Knights, with all their Generals, and the Master of the Order himself, with the loss of 60000 of their own Men; but *Jagello* was so weaken'd with this dear-bought Victory, that he was oblig'd to seek Peace: After which, the Order became scandalously vitious. In 1498, the *Muscovites* invaded *Livonia*. To revenge this, *Walter Plettenberg*, their Great Master, march'd against their Army of 100000, and with 12000 Men only, kill'd 40000, with the loss of 400 of his Men. *Launclavius* mentions this Victory. *Plettenberg*, in 1521, for a Sum of Money, was made Independent of the Tutonick Order: The Emperor *Charles* V. made him a Prince of the Empire; he favour'd the Reformation, and died in 1535. About this Time, the People of *Livonia* declar'd for the Protestant Religion, and despis'd the Threats of *Charles* V.

In 1558 and 1559, *Ivan Bazilowitz* invaded *Livonia*, and harass'd the Country after a very barbarous Manner; and the *Livonians* not being able to make head against him, some of them, as *Courland*, *&c.* fought the Protection of *Poland*; and the Town of *Revel*, with Part of *Esthonia*, put themselves under the Protection of *Erick* the 14th of *Sweden* in 1560, as has been formerly mention'd. This was the Ground of long Wars betwixt *Poland* and *Sweden*, 'till *Gustavus Adolphus* conquer'd almost all *Livonia*; in which the *Swedes* were left in Possession by the Peace of *Oliva*.

The

The Manners, Customs, &c. of the Inhabitants.

THE Inhabitants are Lutherans, but tolerate the *Ruſſians* and Papiſts. The Bible is lately tranſlated into the *Lettiſh* Tongue among them. The Earl of *Curliſe* and the Duke of *Holſtein*'s Ambaſſadors ſay, They have little more than the Name of Chriſtianity, and are intirely ignorant of the Principles of it. They have little or no Notion of a future Life, have ſtill a Hankering after their old Paganiſm and Idolatry, and offer Sacrifice on the Top of ſome Hill, or in ſome Forreſt. Sorcery is hereditary there. When they kill a Beaſt, they caſt a Piece of it away; and when they brew, they caſt ſome of it on the Ground, which is a remainder of the old Pagan Sacrifices. If their Children be ſick within 6 Weeks of their Baptiſm, they re-baptize them, and attribute it to the Child's having got an improper Name: But they conceal this Cuſtom, for fear of the Magiſtrate.

The Peaſants are Slaves, and are not allow'd to purchaſe any Lands. When they venture to cut down Trees, or ſow Wheat, and ſell it underhand, if they be caught, they are ſure to be laſh'd with a Whip or Holly-Rod till the Blood follows. They are allow'd no Money, and if it be known they have any, Officers are appointed to take it from them. The late Kings of *Sweden* have order'd them to be treated with more Humanity, and the laſt King of *Sweden* humbled their Nobility. The Natives are of a ſtrong Conſtitution, and fit for Hardſhips, but as brutiſh as the *Muſcovites*.

Their Ceremonies of Marriage are peculiar to themſelves. When a Peaſant marries a Maid of another Town, he makes her ride behind him, and before him rides a Bag-piper, and two of his Friends with naked Swords, who give two Strokes croſs the Door of the Bridegroom's Houſe, and put one of the Swords in a Beam over the Bridegroom's Head, to prevent Charms. For the ſame Reaſon the Bride ſcatters many Pieces of red Stuff on the High-Ways, and on the Graves of unbaptiz'd Children. The Bride ſits at Table with a Veil over her Face, and when the Gueſts are ſeated, the Bridegroom and ſhe riſe and go to Bed and return in two Hours; and the Feaſt is concluded with Dancing and Drinking till they all drop down upon the Floor.

Livonia is divided into *Eſthonia* and *Letten*.

LETTEN, or *LETTONIA*,

Is on the S. of *Livonia*; the chief Town is *Riga*, on the River *Dwina*, which, for about 500 *Engliſh* Miles, brings the beſt Products of *Muſcovy*, *Poland*, *Lithuania*, and *Semigallia*, to this Place. The River here is three times broader than the *Thames* at *London*, but not very deep. On the Side towards *Poland*, the River is Defence enough to the Town, becauſe the *Poles* have ſeldom Foot Soldiers and Artillery ſufficient for a Siege. On the Side towards *Moſcow*, 'tis fortified according to the modern Way, has a fine new built Citadel, and is one of the greateſt, beſt built, and moſt populous Towns on the *Baltick*, and has a great Traffick with the Hans-Towns, *Engliſh* and *Dutch*. In 1611, *Guſtavus Adolphus* took this City from the *Poles*. It is 36 *Engliſh* Miles N. from *Mittaw*, 120 S. from *Revel*, 100 N.W. from *Dunaburg*, 160 N. E. from *Remingsberg*, and 200 N. from *Vilna*, in Lat. 57. Long 42.

Dunemond, is a ſtrong Fortreſs at the Mouth of the *Dwina*, where it falls into the Gulph of *Riga* or *Livonia*, and commands the Entrance of it. In 1700, the *Saxons* took and ruin'd it; but the *Swedes* retook and rebuilt it. It is ſurrounded with unpaſſable Moraſſes.

Kockenhauſen, is another Fortreſs on the *Dwina*, S. from *Riga*. In 1700, the *Saxons* took and deſtroy'd it; but it was alſo rebuilt by the *Swedes* a little Time after.

Wenden, is a little Town N. E. from *Riga*, and ſuffered much in the late *Swediſh* and *Muſcovite* Wars.

The Iſle *Oeſel*, which ſome think is the *Oſericta* of *Pliny*, lies in the Gulph of *Riga*. The *Danes* yielded it to *Sweden* in 1645, by the Peace of *Bromsbro*. *Arnsbourg* is the chief Town, has a ſtrong Fortreſs, and lies on the N. Side of the Iſland.

Sonneberg, another Fortreſs, lies on the W. Side of the Iſland.

Digitized by Google

The Iſle of *Dagho*, lies N. from *Oſel*, and is ſeparated from it by a Canal, which joins the *Baltick* and the Gulph of *Riga*. It was given to the *Swedes* by the Peace of *Bromsbro*. *Dagerort* and *Paden* are good Caſtles on the S. Side of that Iſle.

ESTHONIA,

Is on the N. of *Livonia*, and divided into 7 Circles or Parts, *viz. Harnland*, *Wikesland*, *Eſthonia Proper*, *Havenland*, *Wirland*, *Alentaken*, and *Oldempo*.

Harnland is the moſt Northern Part of *Livonia*, and *Revel* is the Capital, in Lat. 59. Long. 42. It was built in 1228, by *Waldemar* II. King of *Denmark*, on the Gulph of *Finland*. It has an excellent Port, and a large and commodious Station for Ships. It was one of the Hans-Towns above 300 Years, and has a good Trade, which makes it very rich. The Fortifications are ſtrong. The Citadel is built on a Rock, ſteep on all Sides except on that next the Town. A Superintendant under the Suffragan of *Riga* reſides here. In 1557, the *Muſcovites*, with an Army of 100000 Men, beſieg'd it for 6 Months, but in vain.

Wikeſland is extended along the Coaſt of the Gulph of *Riga*. *Hopſel* is the Capital, and lies S. W. from *Revel*. *Lahal*, S. from *Hopſel*, on the ſame Gulph, is a little Town, but fortified with a good Caſtle.

Pernaw has ſorry Fortifications; but the Citadel is ſtrong. This City has a great Trade in Corn with the *Dutch*, and has a good Port. Other Towns are, *Fellin*, on the River *Pernau*, E. from *Pernaw*; *Wittenſtein*, N. from *Fellin*; *Weſenburg*, E. from *Revel*. In 1700, the King of *Sweden* laid up Magazines here for his Expedition into *Livonia*.

Nerva, or *Narva*, a Place of great Importance, on a River of the ſame Name, is famous for the Victory that *Charles* XII. of *Sweden* obtained over the *Muſcovites* near it on the 19th of *November*, 1700. and has a conſiderable Trade.

Derpt, or *Juriegowd*, is on the River *Emleck*, on the S. Side of the Lake *Peipus*. This Town is ſmall, but very ancient. It has a ſtrong Caſtle, famous for the Sieges it has ſuffer'd by the *Teutonick* Knights, the *Muſcovites*, *Poles* and *Swedes*. The laſt took it in 1625. In 1632, *Guſtavus Adolphus* founded an Univerſity here.

Of LAPLAND.

Weſtiſh Lapland has *Eaſt Bothnia* and *Cajania* on the S. *Muſcovite Lapland* on the E. *Norwegian Lapland* on the N. and *Norway* on the W.

Both the Name and Country is unknown to the ancient Geographers, who involv'd all thoſe Northern Places in Darkneſs and Barrenneſs, and planted 'em with Monſters, as *Cyclopes*, *Cynocephales*, &c. *Saxo Grammaticus*, who liv'd about 1190, is the firſt that ſpeaks of *Lappia*. The Inhabitants are from *Finland*, and it is probable had been baniſh'd thence, for the Word *Lapp* ſignifies ſo much; upon which the modern *Laplanders* take it as an Affront to be called *Lapps*. The ancient Northern Hiſtorians call'd this Place *Biarmia*. No Man can be poſitive as to the Extent of *Lapland*, becauſe moſt of the Maps contradict each other; and that in *Scheffer's Hiſtory of Lapland* is erroneous, becauſe it makes *Torneo* in *Bothnia* in Lat. 67. whereas it is but in 65 43 Min.

Of the AIR, SOIL, *&c.*

THE moſt Southerly Parts of *Lapland* are without the Polar Circle; ſo that the Sun, when in the Tropick of *Capricorn*, is above 90 Degrees from their Zenith, and about that Time never appears above the Horizon. The moſt Northerly Places have a Day of one Month long in Summer, and a Night of the ſame Length in Winter; and becauſe the Sun is then long above their Horizon in Summer, its Heat is great, which ſpeedily ripens the Product of the Country. The Air is pure and healthful; but they have frequently great Winds, which blow up the Trees that grow on the Tops of Mountains by the Roots; and Travellers are oblig'd, if ſurpris'd by thoſe Tempeſts, to lie flat on the Ground till it be over, or to ſhelter themſelves in the Cavities of Rocks. It is needleſs to ſpeak of the cold Snow and Froſt in this Country in Winter, for it muſt neceſſarily be conceiv'd to be exceſſive.

The

Digitized by Google

The Soil produces abundance of Pot-Herbs, Flowers, and Shrubs. They have Plenty of Berries of an excellent Taſt, as a kind of Bramble with Leaves like thoſe of Strawberries; another with yellow Berries, the thorny red and white Raſpberries, a kind of wild red Currans, as alſo white and black Currans, Strawberries of many ſorts, a kind of Oxberry, a ſort of Water Calthorp, a white Gooſeberry, a kind of Sweet-briar; another ſort with Fruits, large like Pears; a kind of thorny wild Medlar Tree, the common Juniper, another of the ſame kind, with thick and broad Leaves; a ſort of wild Pear Tree, two kinds of Sarvice Trees, a wild Cherry Tree, a ſort of wild Apple Tree, Angelica, Sorrel, and ſeveral ſorts of Moſs, as *Rudbeck* informs us.

Their BEASTS,

ARE Stags, Bears, Wolves, Lynxes, Foxes of ſeveral Colours, Squirrels, Ermins, Martens, Haws, Glittens, Beavers, Otters, Elks that come from *Lithuania*, and therefore are challeng'd to belong to the K. of *Sweden*; Rain-Deer: This Creature is leſs than a Stag; his Colour inclines to an Aſh; but his Haunches, and under his Belly and Shoulders, are white: They have long and rough Hair under their Necks: Their Feet are thick, ſhort, and cleft, reſembling thoſe of Bulls. When they walk, their Joints make a Noiſe like that of the claſhing of Flints: They have two Horns, with two Branches each; the larger Branch bends backward, and the leſſer forward: They feed on Moſs. There is both a wild and tame kind of them. Thoſe begot betwixt a tame Doe and a wild Buck, are the ſtrongeſt and beſt fiz'd: Their Milk is nourihing and fat, and makes good Cheeſe. This Creature is peculiar to the *Laplanders*, and not known elſewhere, as *Scheffer* ſays, which muſt be meant as to that ſort only. They have good Hunting-Dogs, about a Foot high, of a bright ruddy Colour: Their Tails turn up like our Pigs, and their Ears ſtand upright like thoſe of Wolves.

Their BIRDS.

THey have Swans, Geeſe, Ducks, Lapwings, Snipes, all ſorts of Water-Fowl, Heath-Cocks, Stock-Doves, Wood-Cocks, and Partridges. They have alſo Fowls not to be ſeen elſewhere; as, 1. The Kniper, a kind of Snipe, black on the Head, Back, and Wings, but the Breaſt and Belly are white: It has a red long Bill ſet with Teeth, red ſhort Feet, reſembling thoſe of Water-Fowl. 2. The Loom: It is never ſeen on the Ground, but either in the Water or flying. Their Partridges are as white as Snow in Winter. Their Feet are rough like a Hare's; and inſtead of Feathers, they have a ſort of Wool.

Of their MOUNTAINS.

ON the W. they have the *Sevo* of *Pliny*, now the *Dofrine* Mountains, which for Extent are not inferior to the *Riphæan* Mountains, and in ſome Places very high: The Tops of them are cover'd either with Snow, Sand, or Stone. All the Mountains in *Lapland* are only Branches of them. The *Swedes* call all Mountains *Fiel*, as the Northern *Engliſh* and the *Scots* call them *Felt*. Theſe Mountains begin about *Jemptland*, and from thence reach 400 *Engliſh* Miles N. till they come to a Bay of the Frozen Sea, call'd *Tirul*.

Of their MINES.

IN 1635, during Queen *Chriſtina's* Reign, a Silver Mine was diſcovered in *Naſafiel*, in the Lapmark of *Pitha*, not far from the Mountains of *Daarfiel*, that ſeparate *Lapland* from *Norway*. This Mine was ſpoil'd in 1658, during the *Daniſh* Wars, by one *Van Anen*, Governor of *Norway*. The ſecond Silver Mine was diſcovered in 1660, in the Lapmark of *Lulah*, above 120 *Engliſh* Miles from *Lulah*, and 30 from *Roedſtadt*, a Village of *Norway*. The chief Inconvenience attending it is the want of Wood; ſo

ſo that they carry the Oar 5 Leagues. This Mine is ſtill in being. There are many other Mines here; but ſome of them in unacceſſible Places. The *Laplanders* know where there are many rich ones; but are unwilling to diſcover them, leſt they ſhould be forced to work in them, which does not ſuit with their lazy Temper. In 1655, a rich Copper Mine was diſcover'd in the Lapmark of *Torna*, where 100 lb. of Oar yields 40. In 1668, another was found 3 Leagues N. from the former. One of Iron was diſcover'd in 1640, near *Kengis*, where there is vaſt Quantities of it, and extream fine. *Charles* XIth's Mathematicians ſaw both thoſe Mines in their Travels to *Lapland*, and ſay, That the Metal is carried with great Charge and Danger by rapid Rivers, and dangerous Cataracts, to the Gulph of *Bothnia*. Another Mine was lately diſcover'd in the ſame Lapmark, 100 lb. of the Oar of which yields 150 lb. of Copper.

Of their STONES, JEWELS, *and* PEARLS.

THey have no Free-ſtone, but have others that bear the Impreſſion of Animals, Trees, *&c.* and ſome that are ſhap'd like Counters. The *Laplanders* make Gods of 'em. They have abundance of Chriſtal, which, if well poliſh'd and ſet, reſembles Diamonds. *Beuraus* ſpeaks of Amethyſts there; but they are flat and full of Clouds; and they have Topazes of a pale yellow. All their Precious Stones are much worſe than thoſe found elſewhere; and their Pearls are of a bad Water, and not comparable to the Oriental.

Of their RIVERS, LAKES, *&c.*

MOſt of them riſe from the Mountains of *Norway*, and fall into the Gulph of *Bothnia*. The River *Uma* is increas'd by the Rivers *Vindilar*, *Pitha*, and *Skialfve*. *Lahla* and *Kima* are conſiderable for their Bigneſs, and are augmented in their Courſe by vaſt Numbers of leſſer ones. *Torna* receives 29 Rivers, one of which is a *Swediſh* Mile broad, as *Charles* XIth's Mathematicians inform us. When the Snow melts, thoſe Rivers overflow their Banks, and all of 'em have frightful Cataracts. *Lapland* has alſo many Lakes, which, as alſo the Rivers, abound with Fiſh.

Of the Inhabitants, their Manners and Cuſtoms.

THey are generally of a low Stature, of about 4 Foot and a half high: They ſtoop for moſt part, which ſome think is occaſion'd by the Lowneſs of their Cottages: Their Complexion is ſwarthy, which is thought to be partly from the Coldneſs of the Air, and the conſtant Smoak of their low Huts. They are flat Fac'd, have broad and low Noſes, hollow and blear'd Eyes, wide Mouths, black, ſtreight and thin Hair, broad Breaſts, ſlender Waſts, and ſmall Legs, but are ſwift, nimble, and ſo ſtrong, that a *Norwegian* is not able to bend their Bows above one half. They are good Divers. 'Tis obſerv'd of them, That when they are tranſported to more moderate Climates, they ſeldom live long; thó in their own Country they live to a good Age. They are great Cowards; therefore the *Swedes* never employ them in their Wars. Since their Converſe with Foreigners, they have learn'd to cheat; but they are charitable to the Poor, and hoſpitable to Strangers.

The *Laplanders* on the Mountains live on the Fleſh and Milk of their Rain-Deer: They alſo buy Cows and Sheep from *Norway*, and kill them againſt Winter. They hang their Rain-Deer's Fleſh to dry in the Cold, as others do by Fire and Heat; and they have Plenty of Cheeſe.

Thoſe who dwell in Woods and low Grounds feed on Veniſon and Fiſh. They have no Bread nor Salt; but inſtead of the latter, uſe the inner Rind of Pine-Tree dry'd. They ſometimes pound their Fiſh to a Powder, which is their Flower. Their Confections are of Bramble-Berries, that they think good againſt the Scurvy, and Angelica, which they broil after the outer Rind is peel'd off. Their Drink is Water, of which in Winter they have always a Kettle-

Digitized by Google

Kettle over the Fire; and they alſo drink the Broth of Fiſh and Fleſh boil'd together. In Summer, they wear a cloſe Garment, reaching to the middle of their Leg, and gird them with Belts. They have no Linen, and their Clothes are made of coarſe Wool, of a light grey Colour, without dying. The richer Sort have their Clothes of different Colours, and delight moſt in red. They hang at their Girdle a *Norway* Knife, and a Pouch, which keeps their Flint and Matches, Tobacco, and other odd Things. They wear Braſs Rings and Chains on their Girdle. Their Night-Caps are of the Skins of the Bird Loom, with the Feathers on. Their Shoes are of the Skin of Rain-Deer, with the Hair outwards, ſow'd at bottom, ſo as the Hair of one Part of the Sole lies forward, and the other backward; for if it ſhould run all one way, it would be too ſlippery. In Winter, their Clothes are of the Skins of Rain-Deer, with the Hair inward. Their Caps, Boots and Gloves, are of the ſame. The Women's Apparel is not much different from that of the Men. They hang to their Girdles many Chains, Toys, Rings, Knives, with a Needle-Caſe, and other Things, ſometimes weighing 20 Pound Weight. Their Thread is made of the Nerves of Rain-Deer, and they lie in Winter on their Skins. In Summer, they cover themſelves at Nights, Face and all, with Blankets of coarſe Wool, to defend them from the Gnats.

Formerly they wander'd about, and had no fix'd Habitation; but in 1602, *Charles* IX. of *Sweden* aſſign'd them their reſpective Abodes; but they ſtill remove from Place to Place, as they find moſt fit for Paſture and Fiſhing within their own Bounds.

Their Huts are made of Pieces of Timber or Rafters join'd together, and cover'd with Turf, or the Branches and Bark of Pine-Trees, and coarſe Cloth. Some of their Houſes are built upon Trees, to prevent their being overwhelm'd by Snow, or devour'd by Wild-Beaſts. Their Huts have two Doors, at the leſſer of which no Women muſt enter, becauſe from thence the Men go to hunt, and look upon it as an ill Omen to meet a Woman. Their Storehouſes are built on Trees, to ſecure their Proviſions from Bears and other Wild-Beaſts.

They have Days which they call Lucky and Unlucky in their Kalendar, and in the latter never go a hunting. In Summer, they purſue the Wild-Beaſts with Dogs, and on Winter they follow their Tracks in the Snow with their Pattens or Scates. They kill the ſmall Beaſts with their Bows and Arrows, and the larger with Spears and Fire-Arms. They catch Ermins in Traps, as we do Mice, and ſometimes they catch them with Dogs. They kill Squirrels, Martens and Sables, with blunt Darts, for fear of ſpoiling their Skins. They alſo kill Foxes, Beavers, &c. with Darts; but are careful to hit them, ſo as not to ſpoil their Skins. The Baron *Herberſtein* ſays, they are the beſt Marks-men in the World. They ſometimes uſe poiſonous Baits; and they catch the wild Rain-Deer by letting out a tame Female, behind which the Huntſman hides himſelf, and ſhoots the wild ones. They dig Pits for larger ſorts of Wild-Beaſts, and have their own Foreſt Laws; for if any catch a Wild-Beaſt in a Trap laid by another, he muſt give it to the Owner of the Snare or Trap; and he that firſt traces a Bear's-Den, has the Management of hunting him. They account the Fleſh of this Beaſt the greateſt Rarity imaginable. When they have caught a Bear, and return home, they are welcom'd by the Women, who ſpit chew'd Elder-Bark on their Faces, and there they are feaſted for three Days. He that kills the Bear, is diſtinguiſh'd from the reſt by Laces round his Cap, wrought with Tin Wire. When they kill any Fowl with a Gun, they pull two Feathers out of the left Wing, to appeaſe the Anger of the God of the Foreſt. One of their Skates is ordinarily as long as themſelves, and the other is about a Foot ſhorter. They are faſten'd to their Feet by Withs, for which they have Holes on the upper Part. They put their Feet into the middle of the Skates, and uſe a long Pole, at the end of which there's a round Piece of Wood to hinder it from piercing too deep in the Snow, and run with great Swiftneſs over it, as others do over Ice, without Wearineſs, and travel 60 Miles a Day with great Eaſe. Their Skates are cover'd with the rough Skins of Rain-Deer. The Hair is laid ſo as turn againſt the Snow, which

which prevents their falling backward; ſo that in this manner they can climb ſteep Mountains, and ſlide down again with all the Eaſe imaginable.

They make all their own Moveables and Boats, and faſten the Boards with Twigs, the Nerves of Rain-Deer, or the Roots of Trees twiſted together like Ropes, and caulk 'em with Moſs to keep out the Water. They are 6 Yards long, and 1½ bread, and have ſometimes 4 Oars. All of them make their own Sledges, which are ſhap'd like Boats, only they are flat behind, and not pointed as before: The Bottom is convex, that it may ſlide with the more Eaſe over the Snow. When they travel, they cover their Feet with Sea Calf-Skin, and lay Moſs beneath them. They make Boxes of thin Birch Planks, and inlay them with Rain-Deer's Horns. They are dexterous at making Baskets of the Roots of Trees, ſlit in long thin Pieces, and twiſted together, ſo as to hold Water on Occaſion. The *Swedes* are very fond of thoſe Baskets. The *Laplanders* make handſome Spoons of the Horns of Rain-Deer, and Moulds, in which they engrave Flowers and Birds, and caſt Tin in them, with which they adorn their Girdles. The Men dreſs all the Meat. The Women are employ'd in making Clothes and Shoes, Harneſs for the Rain-Deer, ſpinning Thread, and in knitting the Fur of Hairs into Caps and Gloves, which are very ſoft and warm. They alſo draw Tin into Wire through a Horn with their Teeth, ſometimes round, and ſometimes half flat; and they cover their Thread with it for embroidering the Shapes of Beaſts, Flowers, Stars, *&c.*

The Traces which tie the Rain-Deer to the Sledge are faſten'd about their Necks, go down by their Breaſts through their fore and hind Legs, and are join'd to the Prow of the Sledge. The Reins are ty'd to their Horns, and held by the Traveller, who is tied in the Sledge as a Child in a Cradle, and has a Stick in his Hand to remove any Stone or Wood in his Way. He muſt ballance the Sledge with his Body; for the Bottom being Semicircular, 'tis in Danger of being overſet. They hang Bells to the Trappings of the Rain-Deer, which pleaſe thoſe Beaſts very much. Before they ſet off, their Maſter, or thoſe acquainted with them, never fail to whiſper ſomething in their Ears. They travel frequently 48 *Engliſh* Miles in 10 Hours. The *Laplanders* are generally idle, never work but when forc'd by Neceſſity, and diſdain all Foreigners.

Of their RELIGION.

BEcauſe this Nation has no ancient Hiſtory, 'tis difficult to give an Account of their ancient Paganiſm, or to know if it was the ſame with what is now. *Zeigler*, who liv'd about the Time of the Reformation, thinks that Chriſtianity was known among 'em before that Time. Others think, St. *Erick*, who liv'd above 500 Years ago, might introduce Chriſtianity among them. *Zeigler* ſays, That in his Time, tho they had then heard of it, they hated it; but to pleaſe the Kings of *Sweden*, they did not openly declare againſt it.

Guſtavus Erickſon was the firſt who was any way ſucceſsful in his Endeavours to eſtabliſh Chriſtianity among them; for bringing 'em immediately to depend on the Crown, he order'd them to meet at a certain Time of the Year to pay their Tribute to his Collectors, with whom he ſent Miniſters to teach them, and to baptize their Children; for till then they had no Churches nor Preachers. *Guſtavus Adolphus* and Queen *Chriſtina* founded Schools and Churches among them, and appointed Salaries for that End. *Guſtavus Adolphus* order'd likewiſe ſome of the moſt uſeful Books to be tranſlated out of the *Swediſh* into the *Lapland* Tongue, which were the firſt that ever appear'd in that Language. In Queen *Chriſtina*'s Time, the *Pſalms of David*, the *Proverbs of Solomon*, *Eccleſiaſtes*, *Luther's Catechiſm*, *Sacred Hymns*, and other Books of Devotion, were tranſlated. More Books were alſo tranſlated afterwards. And that they might be encouraged to ſend their Children to School, an Annual Revenue was allotted to maintain the Scholars both in Victuals and Clothes. By this means ſome of the *Laplanders* became Preachers, which contributed much to the Improvement of Chriſtian Knowledge there; for before that Time, all their Sermons were in the *Swediſh* Tongue, of which the *Laplanders* knew little.

Of

Digitized by Google

Of the Remainders of Paganiſm among them.

THere are ſtill ſuch conſiderable Remains of Paganiſm, as encline many Authors to believe that they never heartily embrac'd Chriſtianity. The *Laplanders* plead the Authority of their Anceſtors as a ſufficient Reaſon to juſtify their Practices. The great Diſtance of Churches is us'd by them as an Excuſe for their not coming to Worſhip; and they make heavy Complaints againſt the Covetouſneſs of their Clergy. They think many Days of the Year unlucky, and will undertake no manner of Buſineſs upon them. If they meet in a Morning with ſuch a Beaſt or Bird as they reckon a bad Omen, they return to their Huts, and don't ſtir abroad that Day. They don't believe the Reſurrection, and worſhip their Idols and Chriſt promiſcuouſly, and with the ſame manner of Worſhip, in which they are uniform, thô they give their Idols various Names in different Places. They believe there are Fairies that wander about among Rocks, Mountains, Rivers and Lakes, and give them alſo a ſhare of their Devotion. They own one Supreme God, whom they arm with Thunder-bolts: They make the Rainbow his Bow, and have the ſame Notion of him that the old Pagans had of their *Jupiter*. They have another Subordinate God, to whom they acknowledge they owe all the Bleſſings of Life, and never fail to worſhip him. The Sun, whom they call *Baiwe*, is another of their Divinities, becauſe of his Influence on the Bodies of Men and Beaſts. They have Temples and Images conſecrated to each of their Gods. Their Idols are either the Trunks of Trees rudely carv'd, or of Stone. One of thoſe is preſerv'd in the Royal Cabinet of Antiquities at *Upſal*. All their Women are excluded from Worſhip; and they conſult their Drum, whether the Sacrifice they intend to offer be acceptable; and they anoint the Idol with the Heart-blood of the Sacrifice: And when they cannot reach the Top of a Mountain conſecrated to *Storjunkar*, one of their Deities, they dip a Stone in the Blood of the Sacrifice, throw it up to the Mountain, and ſo conclude their Devotion; and ſometimes they ſtrow Branches of Birch and Pine about their Images.

Of their MAGICK.

THis Country has always been remarkable for that Diabolical Art: They excuſe themſelves, alledging it neceſſary for them to uſe Enchantments, to prevent their being hurt by others. Parents and Maſters here teach young Children thoſe Deviliſh Arts, and bequeath to them, as Part of their Inheritance, ſuch Spirits as they ſuppoſe they have found ſerviceable to themſelves. Each Family has their own Demons, and ſome of them foreſee Things to come againſt their Will. Sometimes Demons appear to them in the Woods, and teach 'em a certain Song, that they muſt never forget, and they always appear to them for their Service when that Song is ſung.

Their Drum is the moſt uſual Inſtrument for Magick, and is made of the hollow Trunk of a large Pine, Fir, or Birch Tree, that grow in particular Places, or the Skin that covers it. They paint with the Juice of an Alder-Tree ſeveral red Figures with the Names of their Gods, the Beaſts they hunt in the Woods, Birds, Fiſhes, Rivers, Lakes, *&c.* and with their Pagan Gods they paint alſo the Perſons of the Trinity, and ſuch other Figures as they think ſuit their Occaſions.

When they uſe this Drum, they have an Index and a Hammer: The firſt is a Bunch of Rings made of Metal, and they beat the Drum with the Hammer, which puts the Rings in motion, and when they touch ſuch and ſuch Figures, they take it as a Determination of the Event of the Things they enquire about, and of the Expediency and good Succeſs of their Undertakings. He that beats the Drum, and all that are preſent, muſt then kneel, and no Woman muſt touch the Drum. When the Drummer beats, he mutters ſome Charms, falls into a Trance, and continues in it anſwerable to the Diſtance of the Place he is to bring an Account from. During this Trance, all that are preſent muſt ſing, and when he recovers, he gives them an Account of all their Queſtions as to the Health of their abſent

Digitized by Google

absent Friends, *&c.* and to convince them of the Truth of what he says, he sometimes brings a Ring, Knife or Shoe, *&c.* from the Place. When the Rings go about according to the Course of the Sun, they promise themselves Success in their Hunting, Fishing, *&c.* and if otherwise, they look for bad Luck.

They also tie Knots, by which they pretend to make the Winds favourable or cross to Seafaring Men. From the Voyage undertaken by the Company erected at *Copenhagen* in 1647, by *Frederick* III. of *Denmark*, we have this Account of these Wind-Merchants: They sent a Boat ashore to fetch the most noted Necromancer of the Place, who told them that he could not afford them Wind to the North-Cape, because his Command reached no further than the Cape of *Roucella*; and for 10 Crowns he sold them a Wind to that Cape, in a Piece of Linen-Cloth tied with three Knots. When the Master of the Ship untied the first Knot, they had a fine Gale from E. S. E. which carried them 30 Leagues beyond the *Maelstrom*, and dangerous Rocks and Whirlpools on the Coasts of *Norway*: Then they were becalm'd, which oblig'd them to untie the second Knot; upon which they had a favourable Wind to the Cape *Roucella*; and the Wind then failing them, the Master untied the third Knot; after which they had a terrible Tempest: But we must leave the Reader to his own Judgment, whether this Account be fabulous, or that such Things are really performed by Evil Spirits.

They send abroad Flies of a bluish Colour, which they pretend to be their Familiars, to hurt their Enemies, their Cattle, or their Children; and sometimes they pretend that they cleave Rocks asunder, and try which of their Familiars are most powerful, and those are reckon'd so that kill the other Person's Rain-Deer, Wives or Children. They likewise use Balls made of Moss, or of the Hair of Beasts, for that purpose, and pretend by this means to convey Serpents into their Enemies Bodies, and so destroy them.

Their Language has greater Affinity with the *Finnish* than with any other, tho' it has a Mixture of other Tongues, as the *Swedish*, *Norwegian*, and *Tartar*.

Of their MARRIAGES.

THE young Men court young Women whose Parents or Friends can give 'em most Rain-Deer, and must bribe all her Relations for their Consent. When he comes first, he stands at the Door, and must not come in till her Father allow him; and if the Father break his Promise of giving him his Daughter, the Suitor recovers all his Expence and Gifts. When the Bride goes to Church, she is dragg'd along by her Relations, and pretends the greatest Reluctancy to Matrimony. The Bridegroom must serve his Father-in-Law a Year before he can take away his Wife, and her Patrimony of Rain-Deer: When all the Friends give Presents to the new married Couple. The *Laplanders* are observ'd to be very jealous.

The Women of this Country are frequently barren, and few of them have above 7 or 8 Children. After they are deliver'd, they take a good Draught of Whale's Fat, which they have from *Norway*: They wash the Child with Snow or cold Water, but don't suffer the Water to touch its Head till it be baptiz'd; then they wrap it in a Hare's-Skin. The Women lie in only 4 or 5 Days, and then go about their Business as before. They all of 'em suckle their own Children, and their Cradles are made of a Piece of hollow Timber, like a small Boat. The Child has no Bed-Clothes, but a kind of soft and fine Moss, and they cover it over with the tender Skin of a young Rain Deer. When the *Lapland* Women travel, they tie this Cradle, with the Child in it, to their Back. When they rock the Child, they fasten the Cradle with a Rope to the Roof of the Hut, and tossing it from one side to the other, lull the Child asleep. The Boys are taught from their Infancy to handle their Bows, and shoot at a Mark, and are not allow'd to eat in a Morning till they have hit it. The Mothers train the Girls to Women's Business.

Of their GOVERNMENT.

THey had Kings of their own till 1277, about which Time *Paulus Jovius* says, *Magnus Ladislaus* undertook the Conquest of this

this Country, and employ'd their Neighbours of the Diſtrict of *Bikarti* on this Deſign, who ſurpris'd the chief *Laplanders*, kill'd many of them, and obliged the reſt to ſubmit, which encouraged the *Muſcovites* and *Norwegians* to conquer the *Laplanders* in their Neighbourhood. In 1518, *Guſtavus Ericſon* depriv'd thoſe of *Bikarti* of the Tribute they had receiv'd from the *Laplanders* ſince the Time of *Magnus Ladulaſſe*. They have now 3 Governors, who keep each a Court for the Adminiſtration of Juſtice.

In 1602, it was ordain'd, That inſtead of Skins, they ſhould pay to the Crown of *Sweden* every Tenth Rain-Deer, and the Tenth of all their dry'd Fiſh. In 1606, inſtead of the former Tribute, each Native of *Lapland*, above the Age of 17, was to pay 2 Buck Rain-Deer, or 3 Does, 8 Pound of dry'd Fiſh, every Tenth Fawn of their tame Rain-Deer, and the Tenth of all the Fiſh they catch'd. Now they pay their Tribute in Rain-Deer, Money, or Skins. Each of them that poſſeſs ſuch an Allotment of Land, pays two Rix-Dollars *per Annum*. Every Head of a Family muſt pay one white Fox-Skin, or two Pair of *Lapland* Shoes; or inſtead of them, half a *Lapland* Pound of dry'd Pikes. They pay alſo a certain Tribute to the Czar and the King of *Denmark*, for Liberty to hunt and fiſh in their Territories.

The Time of paying their Tribute to the *Swediſh* Governors is at the Fairs, where moſt of their Trade is by Barter. Their Commodities are, Ermins, the Skins of Black, Red, Blue and White, Foxes, the Skins of Otters, Gluttons or Badgers, of Martens, Beavers, Squirrels, Wolves, Bears, Rain-Deer, and their Skins, *Lapland* Garments, Boots, Shoes, Gloves, dry'd Pike, Cheeſes of Rain-Deer's Milk, *&c.* Thoſe Commodities they exchange for Woollen and Linen Cloth, Copper, Braſs, Salt, Meal, Ox's Hides, Brimſtone, Needles, Knives, *Aqua-Vitæ*, and Tobacco, of which laſt they are extream fond. They buy Black Cattle and Sheep from *Norway*. Their Fairs are kept on the Ice.

Of *their* DISEASES *and* BURIALS.

NO Peſtilential Diſeaſe is known here; but they are frequently troubled with ſore Eyes, which is owing to their ſmoaky Huts. They are alſo ſubject to the Pleuriſy, Inflamation of the Lungs, and Giddineſs of the Head. They have no Phyſicians, and their univerſal Medicine is Angelica, boil'd in Whey of Rain-Deer's Milk. When they have a Pain in their Back, they anoint it with the Greaſe of Serpents. When they have Pains in their Limbs, they apply burning Chips, which occaſion a Bliſter, and they think that draws off the Viſcous Humour. To Wounds, they apply the Roſin of Trees. When their Limbs are benumb'd with Cold, they thruſt a red-hot Iron into a Rain-Deer's Cheeſe, and with the Oil that diſtils from thence, they anoint the affected Part with incredible Succeſs. They boil this Cheeſe in Milk againſt a Cough, and all other Diſtempers of the Breaſt and Lungs. Moſt of them die rather of Age than by Diſtempers. When any of them die, a Braſs Ring is ty'd to their right Arm, which they think preſerves them from having any Harm done them by the Ghoſts of the Deceas'd. They put into the Coffin a Flint and Steel, that they may not want Light in the other World; and they lay a Hatchet by them, that they may cut out their Way to Heaven through Woods, *&c.* and never fail to lay Bows, Arrows, and Victuals, in the Coffin. If the Perſon was rich, they ſacrifice to his Memory ſome Rain-Deer every Year; but ſome of them are buried after a Chriſtian Manner.

Swediſh Lapland is divided into 6 Marks or Countries, as *Uma-Lapmark*, *Angermanlapmark*, *Pitha-Lapmark*, *Lula-Lapmark*, *Torna-Lapmark*, and *Kiemi Lapmark*. There's no conſiderable Town in all this Country, but only a few Villages, needleſs to be inſiſted on.

Digitized by Google

CHAP. XIX.

Of DENMARK.

SOME ſay, this Kingdom has its Name from *Danus*, a Prince of the *Goths* or *Jutes*. *Saxo-Grammaticus* and King *Erick* of *Denmark* think that it was ſo called from *Dan*, the Son of *Humble*, who was cotemporary with *David* King of *Iſrael*; but we cannot truſt their ancient Hiſtorians, they are ſo fabulous. *Cluverius* derives it from the *Sinus Codanus*; but *Gerardus Voſſius*, *Lib.* 1. *De Idolatria*, *Cap.* 7. thinks that both the *Sinus* and the Country were ſo called from *Woden*, afterwards called *Gudan*, and *Codan*. *Wormius* approves of this Conjecture.

Denmark is bounded on all Sides by the Sea, except where it is join'd to *Holſtein*. This Peninſula was the *Cherſoneſus Cimbrica* of the Ancients. On the W. and N. W. it is waſh'd by the *German* Ocean: On the N. and N. E. it has the Entrance into the *Baltick*, called *Categat*: On the E. the *Baltick*; and on the S. the River *Eider*, which ſeparates it from the Dutchy of *Holſtein*.

It lies betwixt 54½ and 58 Deg. of Lat. and 26 and 34 Deg. of Long. *De la Forreſt* ſays, From the Borders of *Holſtein*, to the moſt Northerly Parts of that Peninſula, 'tis 270 *Engliſh* Miles; and its greateſt Breadth from W. to E. comprehending the Iſlands, 180. *Buno* ſays, *Jutland* is 222 Miles from N. to S.

The HISTORY *of* Denmark.

THough *Puffendorff* owns, That *Denmark* is one of the moſt ancient Kingdoms of *Europe*; yet *Buræus* a *Swede* ſays, That *Dan*, the Son of *Humble*, was only cotemporary with their 16th King. Moſt of the *Daniſh* Hiſtorians make one *Danus* or *Dan* the firſt of their Kings, who headed the *Cimbri* and *Goths*, or *Jutes*, that marched into *Germany*, which they ravaged. Then they pretended that they worſted the *Roman* Army in ſeveral Engagements; but at laſt were defeated by *Marius* at *Vercil* 100 Years before the Birth of Chriſt, and returning homeward, ſettled in *Jutland*, which was ſo call'd from the *Jutes*. *Olaus Wormius* owns, That the ancient Hiſtory of *Denmark* is obſcure and fabulous; and that moſt of the ancient Inſcriptions that might have given Light to it are much defac'd, and many of them at this great diſtance of Time not legible. *Saxo Grammaticus*'s Reputation is not much to be relied on; for every one is ſatisfied that he carries the Antiquity of his Country too high, and advances Fables for true Hiſtory: So we cannot pretend to give an exact Liſt of their ancient Kings; but ſhall only take Notice of ſuch of them as were moſt remarkable.

Frotho III. is one of the moſt famous among them. *Wormius* thinks he Reign'd about the Birth of Chriſt, and ſays he was very rich, and ſo clear'd *Denmark* of Thieves and Robbers, that if Gold or Silver had been left in the Streets, it would have been ſafe.

Gotrick aſſiſted *Wittekind*, King of the *Saxons*, againſt *Charles the Great*, by whom he was defeated: After which, to ſecure his Territories from the Inroads of *Charles*'s Army, he built the Wall called *Daniwerck*, which croſs'd the Iſthmus, and reach'd from the Mouth of the River *Eider* to *Sleſwick* or *Gottorp*.

Erick began to Reign about *A. Ch.* 846, and is reckon'd the firſt Chriſtian King; yet others ſay, his Brother *Harald*, who reign'd before him, did profeſs Chriſtianity, being

Digitized by Google

being converted by Means of *Ludovicus Pius*. About this Time the *Danes*, under the Command of *Rollo*, are ſaid to have ſettled in *Normandy*.

Erick, call'd the *Bairn*, or the *Child*, ſucceeded: His Government at firſt was very juſt; but at laſt he became cruel, perſecuted the Chriſtians, kill'd more Biſhops, and demoliſh'd more Churches, both in *England*, *Germany*, and *Denmark*, than all his Predeceſſors. He died about 902.

Canutus the Hairy came after: In his Time every third Man in *Denmark* was obliged by Lot to go and ſeek his Fortune, and thereupon they over-ran *Pruſſia*, *Courland*, and *Semigallia*, and ſettled there. He died a Heathen in 912.

Frotho came next, who, according to their Hiſtorians, was 29 Years King of *Denmark* and *England*, and died a Chriſtian.

His Son *Gormo* ſucceeded, who was born in *England*, and baptiz'd at *Aalre* in *Somerſetſhire*. King *Alfred* was his Godfather, and gave him the Name of *Athelſtane*. From him, a Village near *Huntingdon* is called *Gorman-Cheſter*, as *Cambden* informs us.

Harald Blaatand, his Son, ſucceeded: He was worſted in many Encounters by *Otto* I. Emperor of *Germany*; from whom the Sea betwixt *Jutland* and *Fulmen* was called *Ottenſundt*, becauſe that Emperor threw his Lance into it, as the utmoſt Limits of his Expedition.

His Son *Sueno Otto* ſucceeded in 980. At firſt he perſecuted the Chriſtians; but at laſt was converted, and founded three Biſhopricks, at *Sleſwick*, *Ripe*, and *Arhuſe*. The *Jutes* took him Priſoner, and he was ranſomed by the Women, who on this Account had afterwards an equal Share of their Father's Inheritance with the Males. He conquer'd a Part of *England*, and died in 1012.

His Son *Canute*, or *Knute* II. ſirnam'd the *Great*, came after him, and was at the ſame Time King of *England*, *Denmark*, *Sweden*, *Norway*, *Slavonia*, and *Sambland*. He was buried at *Wincheſter* in 1036.

Hardikaut, his Son, ſucceeded in the Kingdom of *England*, where he died in 1041.

Magnus King of *Norway* ſeiz'd the Kingdom of *Denmark* upon the Death of *Hardikaut*, died in 1048. and was ſucceeded by *Sueno Eſthret*, who was a Religious Prince. He died in 1076, and left behind him five Sons, who came all ſucceſſively to the Throne.

Harald the Eldeſt Reign'd two Years: He was a ſoft, effeminate, and bigotted Prince, which encouraged the *Engliſh* to throw off the *Daniſh* Yoak without any conſiderable Difficulty, after they had been ſubject to them 120 Years.

St. *Canute*, his ſecond Brother, ſucceeded, and commanded his Subjects to pay Tythes to the Clergy. His Brother *Olaf* miſrepreſented this pious Deſign of *Canute*, and inſtigated the People to a Rebellion; upon which they took Arms, drove him out of *Jutland*, purſued him to *Fulmen*, and barbarouſly murder'd him in the Cathedral of *Odenſee*, the Capital of that Iſland, in 1088.

Olaf Suenos, 3d Son, was declared King by his Party; in whoſe Reign a great Famine happen'd, which they reckon'd a Judgment for the Murther of their former King. Many of the People died for want of Bread, and *Olaf* himſelf had a Share in that Want. He died a Penitent in 1095.

Erick the Good Suenos, 4th Son, ſucceeded, died in his Pilgrimage to *Jeruſalem*, and was buried in the Iſle of *Cyprus* in 1106. In his Time, *Lunden* in *Schonen* was made an Archbiſhop's See. Before this Time, all the *Daniſh* Biſhops were ſubject to the Archbiſhop of *Bremen*.

After his Death, the Kingdom was in great Confuſion, becauſe *Sueno* III. *Canute* VI. and *Waldemar* I. were all Competitors for the Crown; and after much Bloodſhed, they agreed to divide the Kingdom into 3 Parts.

Nicolas, *Sueno*'s youngeſt Son, was ſlain in 1135, by the *Jutes*, in Revenge of *Canute* Duke of *Flanders*, whom *Nicolas* had caus'd to be killed.

Erick Edmund, a good King, ſucceeded: He abdicated the Government, and put himſelf into a Monaſtery at *Odenſee* in *Fubnen*, where he died in 1147.

Sueno Gratenhede, *Erick Edmund*'s Son, got the Crown upon the Death of his Kinſman *Erick Lamb*. At this Time there were three Kings in *Denmark*. After 10 Years Civil Wars, in which both *Sueno* and *Canute* were ſlain, the whole Kingdom was govern'd by *Waldemar*, ſirnam'd the *Great*: He repair'd the Ruins of *Gotrick*'s Wall, built a ſtronger one of Brick, and enlarged the Ditch. He

Digitized by Google

ſubdued the Inhabitants of the Iſle of *Rugen*, who had been troubleſome to *Denmark*, was Lord of all the Countries on the North of the *Elbe*, and died in 1182.

Canute, his Son, ſucceeded, and fought with great Succeſs againſt the Emperor of *Germany*, who pretended a Superiority over *Denmark*. After he had Reign'd 22 Years, he died at *Ringſtede* in 1202.

Waldemar II. his Brother, came next. At firſt he was very fortunate, and Reign'd over *Denmark*, *Livonia*, *Courland*, *Pruſſia*, *Pomerania*, *Rugen*, *Mecklenburg*, *Holſtein*, *Stormar*, *Ditmarſen*, and *Wageren*, and the Cities of *Lubeck* and *Lunenburg*. The Emperor of *Germany* deſign'd to have invaded *Denmark*; but when he heard of the Preparations *Waldemar* made againſt him, he retir'd. *Wormius* ſays, he was a great Lover of Antiquities, and gave conſiderable Sums to thoſe that were skilful in reading old Inſcriptions. He aboliſh'd the Uſe of the Fiery Ordeal, and died in 1242.

His Son *Erick* ſucceeded. *Waldemar* had given other Parts of the Kingdom to his other Sons, *viz.* to *Abel*, *Sleſwick*; to *Canute*, *Blecking*; and to *Chriſtopher*, *Laland* and *Falſter*, which occaſion'd great Broils among the Brothers. At laſt *Erick* was murther'd by *Abel*, and he himſelf was ſlain by his Subjects in 1252.

He was ſucceeded by his Brother *Chriſtopher* I. to whom the Archbiſhop of *Lunden* occaſion'd many Troubles, for which *Chriſtopher* impriſon'd him. Upon this the Clergy excommunicated the King, and at laſt he was poiſon'd by *Arneſaſt* Biſhop of *Arkuſe* with the Euchariſt.

Erick, his Son, abandon'd himſelf to all manner of Vice: He debauch'd the Wife of *Andrew Stigot*, Marſhal of *Denmark*, who in Revenge murder'd him at *Findelorp*, a ſmall Village in the Biſhoprick of *Wiberg*, in 1286.

His Son *Menved* ſucceeded, was a pious Prince, and died in 1319.

Chriſtopher II. *Menved's* Brother, ſucceeded, and being vicious like his Father, his Subjects baniſh'd him, and made *Waldemar* Duke of *Sleſwick* their King; but growing weary alſo of him, they recalled *Chriſtopher*, in whoſe Reign *Schonen* ſurrender'd it ſelf to *Sweden*, and *John* Duke of *Holſtein* ſold all his Pretenſions to it for 70000 Marks of fine Silver; moſt Parts of *Denmark* having afterwards revolted from him. He died at *Nieping* in the Iſle of *Falſter* in 1333.

After his Death, the *Danes* had an *Interregnum* of 7 Years; during which Time the *Holſteiners* brought a great Part of *Denmark* under their Subjection; and the *Danes*, in order to drive them out of *Denmark*, invited *Waldemar* III. the Son of *Chriſtopher* II. into the Kingdom.

He had the Character of a bold, ſubtle, and covetous Prince. When Pope *Gregory* XI. threaten'd to excommunicate him for ſlighting the Orders of the Apoſtolical See, he wrote a Letter to the Pope, telling him, That he held his Life from God, his Kingdom from his Subjects, his Riches from his Parents, and his Faith from the Pope's Predeceſſors, which if the Pope envied him, he was willing to quit it to him. He ſold *Eſthonia* and *Revel* to the Knights of the *Croſs* for 28000 Marks of fine Silver, which was employed to defray the Charge of his Journey to the *Holy Land*. He got *Schonen* back again from *Magnus Smeck* by fair Promiſes, and *Gothland* was alſo ſurrender'd to him. He had frequent Wars with the Hans-Towns, and died in 1375.

After him Reign'd his Grandſon *Olaus* VI. by his Daughter *Margaret*, and *Haquin* King of *Norway*. During his Minority, his Mother *Margaret* had the Adminiſtration of Affairs. After his Father's Death, he was King of *Norway*, and alſo claim'd the Crown of *Sweden*, becauſe his Father was Son of *Magnus Smeck*, King of that Country; but he died young.

In his ſtead the *Danes* and *Norwegians* made *Margaret* their Queen: She declared *Erick* of *Pomerania*, Son to her Siſter's Daughter by the Duke of *Pomerania*, King. She made War againſt *Albert* King of *Sweden*, and in one Campagne ſhe took him, *Rodulph* Duke of *Mecklenburg*, and the Earls of *Holſtein* and *Reppin*, Priſoners. The *Swedes* being diſſatisfied with their King, deſerted him, and acknowledg'd her for Queen. In 1396, ſhe made the Union of *Calmar*, which has been diſcourſed of at large in the Hiſtory of *Sweden*. She died in 1412.

Erick ſucceeded: He ſurrender'd to his Couſins the Dukes of *Pomerania* the Iſland of *Rugen*, that had been long ſubject to the *Danes*. The *Swedes* were diſpleas'd with

Erick,

Erick, becauſe he did not govern according to his Coronation-Oath, and oppreſſed them by Foreigners. The *Danes* thought him careleſs of their Affairs, and alledging he endeavour'd to ſecure the Succeſſion on *Bogiſlaus* Duke of *Pomerania*, they choſe *Chriſtopher* of *Bavaria*; upon which *Erick* retir'd into *Pomerania*, where he died in 1438.

Chriſtopher Duke of *Bavaria*'s Reign was but ſhort: He was ſucceſsful againſt the Rebels of *Jutland*, and the Hans-Towns. He died Childleſs in 1448. The *Danes* call him a good Prince; but the *Swedes* had no Reaſon to be pleaſed with his Government.

Chriſtian Earl of *Oldenburg*, his Siſter's Son, ſucceeded, was declared King both by the *Danes* and *Norwegians*; and in this Family thoſe two Crowns have remained ever ſince by a conſtant Succeſſion. He made War upon the *Swedes*, becauſe they had made *Charles Cnutſon* King; of which, ſee more in the *Swediſh* Hiſtory. In 1471, the Emperor *Frederick* III. gave him *Ditmarſen* in Fief. He married his Daughter *Margaret* to *James* III. of *Scotland*, quitted to him the *Orkney* Iſlands and *Shetland* for a Dowry, and died in 1481.

His Son *John* ſucceeded. In 1501, he was miſerably routed by the *Ditmarſians*, and died of the Plague at *Alburg* in 1513.

Chriſtian II. his Son, ſucceeded. The *Danes* hated him, becauſe he was entirely managed by *Sigiberta*, a *Dutch* Woman of mean Birth; as alſo becauſe he had cauſed *Torlerven One*, the Governor of the Caſtle of *Copenhagen*, to be unjuſtly executed. We have ſpoke already of his Cruelties in the Hiſtory of *Sweden*. The *Danes* revolted from him, and choſe his Uncle *Frederick* Duke of *Holſtein* for their King.

Frederick I. was Crown'd in 1524. The Reformation began here in his Time. *Chriſtian* gather'd ſome Forces, with a Deſign to regain the Crown; but they were ſoon diſperſed. The Emperor *Charles* V. thô he promis'd it, could give no Help to *Chriſtian*, becauſe he was entangled in War with *France*. And when *Chriſtian* came with a Fleet to *Norway*, he was routed and taken by Count *Guldenſtern*, and impriſon'd in the Caſtle of *Collemberg* in *Zeeland*, where he died in 1559. *Frederick* died at *Sleſwick* in 1533.

Chriſtian III. his Son, ſucceeded, who met with great Troubles from the Earl of *Oldenburg* and the *Lubeckers*, that deſign'd to reſtore *Chriſtian* II. but he happily diſengag'd himſelf, eſtabliſh'd the Proteſtant Religion in *Denmark* and *Norway*, and died in 1558.

His Son and Succeſſor *Frederick* II. ſubdued the *Ditmarſians*. He made War upon *Erick* King of *Sweden* with various Succeſs; but at laſt concluded a Peace at *Stetin* in 1570, and died in 1588.

Chriſtian IV. his Son, ſucceeded, and Reign'd peaceably till 1611, when he made War upon *Charles* IX. of *Sweden*, and took *Calmar* and *Elfſburg*; but reſtor'd thoſe Places to *Guſtavus Adolphus*. In his Reign, *Ferdinand* II. Emperor of *Germany*, over-ran moſt Part of *Jutland*, and defeated him near *King Luttern*. He loſt many Places, which were reſtor'd by the Peace at *Lubeck* in 1629. In the War betwixt *Sweden* and *Germany*, he was troubleſome to the *Swedes*, did all he could to ſtop their Victories, and ſpoil their Trade, by detaining and confiſcating their Ships in the *Sound*. To revenge this, the *Swedes* fell with an Army into *Holſtein*, *Jutland*, and *Schonen*, and did the *Danes* much Damage both by Sea and Land, till the War was ended by the Peace of *Bromsbroo*. The *Dutch* made uſe of this Opportunity to regulate the Toll of the *Sound*, which the *Danes* had hitherto exacted at Pleaſure, and made it very burdenſome to them. *Chriſtian* died in 1648.

Frederick III. his Son, ſucceeded, who by the Perſwaſion of the *Dutch* broke the Peace with the *Swedes*: Upon which *Charles Guſtavus* came ſuddenly with an Army into *Holſtein* and *Jutland*, and took *Frederick-Odde* by Storm: And in 1658, there being a great Froſt, he marched over the Ice to *Fuhnen*, where he ſurpris'd the *Daniſh* Troops: From thence he came to the Iſlands *Langland*, *Falſter*, and *Laland*, and at laſt to *Zeeland*, and laid cloſe Siege to *Copenhagen*; which City, and conſequently the whole Kingdom, would have fallen into his Hands, had not the Emperor of *Germany*, the Kings of *Poland* and *England*, and the *Dutch*, concern'd themſelves in the *Daniſh* Quarrel: Upon which a Peace was made near *Copenhagen*, as has been already ſaid in the Hiſtory of *Sweden*.

After

After this Peace, the King, at a Diet held at *Copenhagen*, was declared an abſolute Monarch, and the Crown made Hereditary, whereby the Privileges of the Nobility were aboliſhed, of which they had made a bad Uſe, in oppreſſing the Peaſants. Thus a new Form of Government was introduced there, by Vertue of which the whole Management of Affairs depends abſolutely on the King's Pleaſure. This great Change was made on the 23d of *October*, 1660; of which more hereafter, when we come to their Government. He died of a Fever, *Febr.* 16. 1670.

His Son *Chriſtian* V. ſucceeded, and made an Alliance with the Emperor, *Holland*, and their Confederates. He made War upon the Duke of *Holſtein*, took him by Surprize at *Rensburg*, forced him to quit all the Advantages he had got by the Peace at *Roſchild*, and obliged him to ſurrender *Tonningen*, which he demoliſhed, and afterwards took *Wiſmar* from the *Swedes*. Next Year he enter'd *Schonen*, and took *Helſingburg*, *Lanſcrone*, and *Chriſtianſtadt*, and the Iſle of *Gothland*: But his Troops that went to inveſt *Helmſtadt*, were routed by the King of *Sweden*. In 1677, the *Danes* were beat in a Battle near *Lunden* by the *Swedes*. *Chriſtian* beſieg'd *Malmoe*, but was obliged to riſe from before it. He was afterwards routed again by the *Swedes* in a Battle near *Landſcrone*. In the following Year, the *Danes* were obliged to raiſe the Siege of *Bahus*, and to ſurrender *Chriſtianſtadt*, which was reduced to Extremity by Famine; but at Sea they had better Succeſs; yet by the following Peace with *Sweden* were obliged to reſtore all the Places they had taken.

After the Peace at *Fontainbleau* betwixt thoſe Crowns in 1679, new Troubles began betwixt the *Danes* and the Duke of *Holſtein*, who alledg'd, That by the Peace, he was not only to have the Reſtitution of all his Dominions, but was alſo freed from the ancient Union betwixt the two Houſes of *Denmark* and *Holſtein*. The Duke began to fortify himſelf by new Alliances, of which the King of *Denmark* having Notice, he ſequeſtred the Duke's Share of the Dutchy of *Sleſwick* a ſecond time. The King of *Denmark* being encourag'd by the inteſtine Diviſions of the City of *Hamburg*, made uſe of that Opportunity to renew his ancient Pretenſions on that City, which he beſieged; but the *Hamburgers* being reinforced by the Elector of *Brandenburg* and Duke of *Lunenburg*, ſallied upon the *Danes*, chas'd them from their Works, and cut off 1500 of them. This Diſaſter obliged the King of *Denmark* to make Peace, by which the *Hamburgers* were left in their former Condition. In 1689, the King of *Sweden* declared for the Duke of *Holſtein*, becauſe of the above-mention'd Sequeſtration of the Duke's Part of *Sleſwick*; ſo that a Rupture was likely to have followed betwixt the two Northern Crowns; but by the Mediation of *England* and *Holland*, and the Electors of *Brandenburg* and *Saxony*, a Peace was made at *Altena*, by which the Duke of *Holſtein* was reſtored to all his Poſſeſſions and Rights. The *Jus Armorum* was the only Thing not decided by this Treaty, the chief Pretenſion of the Duke; yet the King of *Denmark* conſented that the Mediators of the former Treaty ſhould examine and determine it: But the Duke not truſting to this, rais'd ſome new Fortifications, and took Foreign Troops into his Service, which the *Danes* demoliſhed; but the Duke rebuilt them, and added other additional Works. Upon this the young King of *Denmark*, *Frederick* IV. marched his Troops into the Duke's Territories, beat the *Swediſh* and *Holſtein* Troops from their Poſts and Forts, and once more demoliſhed all the Fortifications built on the Frontiers. After this he beſieged *Tonningen*, a conſiderable Place belonging to the Duke; but the *Swedes*, with the Dukes of *Hanover* and *Zell*, marched to its Relief, and were joined by 3000 *Dutch* Auxiliaries. This obliged the *Danes* to raiſe the Siege, and retire to their own Territories, whither they were purſued by the *Swedes*. In the mean time the *Engliſh* and *Dutch* Fleet join'd the *Swediſh* Navy, and diſpers'd the *Daniſh* Fleet, who retir'd to the Harbour of *Copenhagen*, where they were cannonaded for 3 Hours; but the *Danes* were ſecure in that Harbour, ſo that only one Seaman was kill'd. The Confederate Fleet not thinking fit to purſue that Deſign any further, 'twas reſolved that the King of *Sweden* ſhould land in the Iſle of *Zeeland*, which he did with 8000 Men; and

Digitized by Google

and this brought on the Peace at *Travendahl*, by which the Duke had his *Jus Armorum* granted him, and 260000 Crowns for his Damages by the late Irruption of the *Danes*. This Treaty was in 1700: And nothing remarkable having happen'd in that Kingdom ſince, 'tis needleſs to bring their Hiſtory any lower.

The AIR, SOIL, *&c.*

THE Air in *Jutland* is not generally ſo cold as in ſome more Southerly Places of *Germany*, which proceeds from the nearneſs of the Sea. In *Zeeland*, the Air is groſs and foggy, eſpecially near *Copenhagen*; yet Colds of the Lungs are very rare there, which is attributed to the Pureneſs of their Firing, which is Beech Wood. Through all *Denmark*, they have but two Seaſons, Summer and Winter; ſo that Extremity of Heat ſucceeds Extremity of Cold. During the Months of *June*, *July*, and *Auguſt*, the Heat is much more intenſe than in *England*: The Nights then are very ſultry; and during all the Summer, they are plagu'd with vaſt Swarms of Flies, which they are obliged to kill with poiſon'd Water.

Denmark in general has Plenty of Corn, much of which is exported to *Holland*, *Norway*, *Iſeland*, and other Places. They have Plenty of Black Cattle, great Numbers of which the *Dutch* tranſport to their more fertile Soil, where they grow prodigiouſly fat in a little time. They abound with Hogs, and have good Breed of Coach-Horſes. The Gentry are much enclin'd to Gardening, and have Melons, Peaches, Grapes, and all ſorts of Sallads, very early.

Their Cattle are for moſt part lean and ſmall, and muſt be kept within Doors 7 or 8 Months in the Year. The Forreſts abound with Game, as Harts, Wild-Boars, Elks, Stags, Roebucks. They have alſo Plenty of Hares, Conies, *&c.* and abundance of Fowl, Wild and Tame, and particularly of Partridges.

The *Baltick* affords them Plenty of Fiſh. Formerly they had Shoals of Herrings on their Coaſts; but that Trade is now greatly decayed. They ſtill abound with Cod, Whitings, Place, *&c.* Their River-Fiſh are reckon'd as good as any in the World.

Their Trade of EXPORT

IS in Barley, Wheat, Rye, and Black Cattle, of which they have formerly exported 100000 *per Annum*. They have alſo Horſes, Butter, and Tallow. The *Norwegians* export Timber of all kinds, eſpecially Fir; but the Exportation of Oak is forbidden. They likewiſe export Maſts, Tar, Pitch, Stock-Fiſh, Oil, and Iron. They have Copper and Silver Mines, but of ſmall Value. Moſt Authors obſerve, That Trade is decaying in *Denmark*, for which they blame their Arbitrary Government, the great Taxes upon the Inhabitants, and the great Expence they are at in keeping up ſo many ſtanding Forces: All which diverts the Money that ought to be employed in Trade, which is alſo diſcouraged, becauſe the Inhabitants know that the Government may ſeize at Pleaſure what they have earn'd by their Induſtry.

Some Manufactories were lately ſet up by Courtiers and great Men, particularly thoſe of Silks and Drinking-Glaſſes; but in a little time they came to nothing, becauſe Trade is not to be forced where real Advantages and Encouragements are not to be found, and where Property is not ſecured.

Their Trade of IMPORT

IS Salt from *Portugal* and *France*. From the latter they have Wine, Brandy, Silks, and other Vanities, to which the rich People there are much addicted. *England* and *Holland* import many Commodities, both of their own Manufacture, and from their Plantations. Some reckon that 300 Veſſels from *England* paſs the *Sound* Yearly, and 1000 from *Holland*. Both thoſe Nations pay for the moſt part ready Money for the Goods they export from *Norway*. The *Danes* have begun lately to bring Spices in their own Bottoms from the *Eaſt-Indies*, where they have a ſmall Fort on the Coaſt of *Coromandel*. They have alſo an *Eaſt-India* Company, of which moſt of their Men of Quality are Members.

The

Digitized by Google

The Ancient INHABITANTS

WEre the *Cimbri*, of whom *Tacitus* gives this Account, *Cap.* 37. *De Mor. Germanorum*, That there were not many of them then remaining; but there were ſtill ſome Monuments to be ſeen of their ancient Bravery, Power, and Numbers. They gave Name to *Jutland*, anciently called the *Cherſoneſus Cimbrica*, and had many People ſubject to them, whom *Ptolomy* names. *Wormius* is poſitive that the *Cimmerii* and *Cimbri* are one People, and quotes for it the Authority of *Procopius*, who was a General in *Beliſarius*'s Army againſt the *Goths* and *Vandals*. *Procopius* ſays alſo, That the *Goths* or *Getæ* were the ſame with the *Cimmerii*. *Wormius* ſays further to this purpoſe, That *Wibourg* in *Jutland* was 600 Years ago called *Cimmersberg*. *Jonas Koldingenſis* ſays, there is a Town on the Coaſt of *Schonen* called *Cimberſhaven*. Theſe People made many Expeditions into the Eaſt, and ſome of them ſettled in that Peninſula now called *Little Tartary*, where was the ancient *Boſphorus Cimmerius*. It is moſt probable that the Northern Places, from whence the *Cimbri* came, gave the firſt Riſe to the Poets to ſpeak ſo much of the *Cimmerian* Darkneſs, becauſe, as has been mention'd already, they alledg'd all thoſe Countries had perpetual Night.

Sabellicus and *Saxo Grammaticus* ſay, That the *Longobardi* were Inhabitants of *Jutland*, and alledge, That they left their Country about *A. C.* 414, there being then ſuch a Famine in *Denmark*, that they were obliged to make a Law, That all the old People and Infants ſhould be killed, becauſe they were uſeleſs to their Country, that thoſe who remained, and could manure the Ground, might have Food. Others propos'd, That it were more fit that ſome of the Inhabitants, for whom there was no Food at home, ſhould go abroad and ſeek their Fortunes, which prevailed; ſo that they left their Country, and ſettled in the North of *Italy*, which from them was called *Lombardy*; but *Paulus Diaconus* ſays, they were called *Longobardi*, from their long Beards.

The *Dani* or *Daci* were the Poſterity of the *Cimbri*. The *Romans* called the Eaſtern Places of the Empire, where the *Goths* ſettled, *Dacia*. *Procopius* ſays, That the *Goths* and *Daci* were the ſame People, whom the *Greeks* call *Cimmerii* and *Getæ*.

It is probable that the *Jutæ* were the *Jutæ* of *Ptolomy*. *Wormius* ſays, *Jutland* was anciently called *Jottunland*. *Adamus Bremenſis*, *Beda*, and *Saxo Grammaticus*, ſpeak of the *Jutæ*. *Lambard*, in his *Archeonomia*, ſhews, That the Latin Tranſlation of *Bede* is falſe, when it has *Vitæ* inſtead of *Jutæ*; for the *Saxon* Copy has it *Geatum*, i. e. *Jutes* or *Goths*; and in many other Places he calls them *Jut*. Archbiſhop *Uſher* alſo ſays, That in all the Manuſcript Copies of *Bede* he ever ſaw, he calls that People *Jutæ*, and not *Vitæ*. *Florence* of *Worceſter*, *William* of *Malmſbury*, *Henry* of *Huntingdon*, and other *Engliſh* Hiſtorians, are of the ſame Opinion. *Robins Ethelward*, a *Saxon* Writer, calls them *Giotæ*; and the *Saxon* Annals of *Peterburg* call them *Jeatum*. *Spelman* ſays, That they were ſo called from the *Gothick* Word *Jet*, ſignifying a Giant.

The *Angli* and *Saxons* came alſo from this Country, of whom we ſhall diſcourſe when we come to *England*. *Gellarius* places the *Teutones* in the Iſlands of *Fubnen*, *Zeeland*, and the Southerly Places of *Schonen*. *Ptolomy* ſpeaks of the *Holſati*, who were the Inhabitants of the modern *Holſtein*; the *Vagrii* of *Wagria*; of the *Storemarſi*, that dwelt in the modern *Stormar*; of the *Teutonmarſi* in the modern *Ditmarſh*; and of the *Crempemarſi* and *Villemarſi*, who dwelt in the Southerly Parts of *Jutland*. *Nordalbingia* was the Name of *Jutland*, and other Places of that Peninſula, in the barbarous Times.

The *Daniſh* Hiſtorians boaſt that *Ireland* was 8 times conquer'd by the *Danes*, *viz.* in the Reigns of the *Daniſh* Kings *Fridleve* I. *Frotho* I. *Hiarn*, *Fridleve* II. *Frotho* IV. *Regner Ladbrog*, *Siward* III. and *Frotho* III. who died *A. C.* 912.

They alſo ſay, That *Saxony* was made Tributary to *Denmark* 15 times, *viz.* in the Reigns of *Helgo*, *Rolvo*, *Hother*, *Roderick*, *Uffon*, *Dan* II. and III. *Fridleve* I. *Frotho* III. *Hiarn*, *Fridleve* II. *Frotho* IV. *Regner Ladbrog*, *Siward* III. and *Frotho* VI.

The *Livonians* were ſubject to the *Daniſh* Kings; *Canute* IV. *Waldemar* II. *Erick* VI. *Chriſtopher* Son of *Waldemar* II. *Erick* VII. and *Chriſtopher* II. *Courland*, *Eſthonia*, and *Pruſſia*,

Digitized by Google

Prussia, were also frequently conquer'd by them. They say, the *Swedes* were defeated by them in 22 Battles, and swore Allegiance to 24 of their Kings, and the *Norvegians* in 32 Battles, and paid Homage to 12 of their Kings, before Queen *Margaret* united it to *Denmark*; and that the *Russians* have been Tributaries to 8 of their Kings. *England* was also conquer'd 10 times by 'em.

Of the present Inhabitants, their Dispositions, Manners, Customs, &c.

THE *Danes* are tall, handsome, and straight. Most of them have white or yellow Hair. *Lucan* observ'd, That they who dwelt on the N. of the *Elb* had yellow Hair in his Time. Formerly this Country was over-stock'd with Inhabitants, and upon that Account obliged to send abroad its supernumerary People; but now the Case is alter'd; for Mr. *Molesworth* observes, that it is but indifferently Peopled, which he imputes to their hard Usage, Poverty, and bad Diet, which he says is general over all *Denmark*. The Burghers and Citizens eat Rye Bread, lean salt Flesh, Stock-Fish, Bacon, and very bad Cheese. The Peasants live on Roots, White Meats, and Rye Bread, seldom tast fresh Fish, and scarce ever any Flesh, except on some extraordinary Festivals. He further observes, That the common People are now mean Spirited, have lost their former Bravery, are inclin'd to gross cheating, and mistrust other People. Apoplexies and the Falling-Sickness are Epidemical Distempers there, which probably comes from their bad Diet. Their Peasants are as absolute Slaves as any in *Barbadoes*, but their Food not so good. Neither they nor their Posterity can leave the Land to which they belong; and when it is purchas'd, they are sold with the Freehold, as Timber-Trees are with us. They don't reckon Riches there by Numbers of Acres, but by Numbers of Boors, who, with all that belong to 'em, appertain to the Proprietor of the Land. When any of them get a little Money, they lay it out in Brandy, lest their Landlord should hear of it, and take it from them. They are also liable to the quartering and paying of Soldiers, and must furnish the King's Family, and all their Attendants, with Horses and Travelling-Waggons for their Baggage and Furniture, whenever the King makes a Progress, tho' but to his own Country-Houses; and all this at their own Charges for themselves and Horses for 2 or 3 Days together; and what makes it worse, is, that the Harvest is the usual Travelling-time of the Court. The King does also frequently give a Warrant to any Person of Quality or Officer that has a Journey to make; upon which the Peasants are obliged to serve and attend them.

Mr. *Molesworth* says, it is difficult for a Stranger to find Conveniencies of Lodging and Eating in *Denmark*, even in *Copenhagen*, where there are few or no Lodgings to be lett in private Houses; and in the Taverns, one must be content to eat and drink in a publick Room, into which all Company may enter and do the like.

Their Divertisements in Winter are riding in Sleds, well wrapp'd up in Wool or Fur. None presume to use this Pastime till the King and Court has begun; as all the Clocks of *Copenhagen* must strike after the Court-Clock.

Of their NOBILITY.

FOrmerly ancient Estates and Valour were the only Title to Nobility in this Country: None took either Patent or Degree of Honour from the King; but of late, to supply the Want of Riches and Merit, some have got the Titles of *Baron* or *Earl*. No higher Title has yet been given to Favourites. They have some ancient Families, as that of *Wran*, and others, who were said to have been at the signing of a Treaty of Peace betwixt *Charles the Great* and their King at *Hemming* on the *Eider*.

The Chief Families in *Denmark* and *Norway* are, 1. The Earls of *Rantzau*, who are also Counts of the Empire, and have their Seats in the *Westphalian* Class, from which Country they came Originally. 2. The Earls *Ahlefeld*. 3. The Earls of *Brockdorff*. 4. The Earls of *Reventclau*. 5. The Earls of *Schack*. 6. The Earls of *Wedeln*. 7. The Earls of *Oldenburg*.

Digitized by Google

Their Nobility and Gentry have a ſingle Coat of Arms, which they never alter nor quarter with any other. The Nobility don't enjoy the ſame Privileges by thoſe Titles as our Peers do in *England*, but content themſelves with a few airy inſignificant ones, that diſtinguiſh them from the common People.

Before the Crown was Hereditary, the Nobility and Gentry liv'd in great Affluence and Proſperity; their Tenants reſpected them as ſo many Petty Princes. In the Time of the Convention of Eſtates, which was once *per Annum*, they met the King with great Retinues; and in publick Affairs, their Suffrages were of greateſt Weight, and uſually carried the Point, the Commons being in a great meaſure directed by them, becauſe they depended much on them; but now the Caſe is alter'd, and they diminiſh daily both in Number and Credit; their Eſtates ſcarce being able to pay the Taxes impos'd on them, which makes them oppreſs their Tenants for their own Subſiſtence. Moſt of their Palaces are ruinous, and they are obliged to cringe to the Court for a Military or Civil Employment.

The Nobility love to go fine, after the *French* Mode; but the Ladies Winter-Dreſs is *Daniſh*, and very becoming and convenient. The People of Quality are much addicted to drinking ſtrong Liquors, which occaſions frequent Apoplexies among them.

Their Marriages are uſually preceded by Contracts, which continue ſometimes 3, 4, or more Years, before they proceed to a publick Wedding by the Miniſter; though the young Couple grow frequently better acquainted before theſe Formalities are over.

Sumptuous Burials and Monuments are much in Requeſt with the Nobility, and it is uſual to keep the Corps of a Perſon of Quality in a Vault or in the Chancel of the Church for ſeveral Years, till they have a fit Opportunity to celebrate the Funeral.

Their Orders of KNIGHTHOOD.

SOme ſay, the Order of the *Elephant* was inſtituted in 1190, by *Canute* VI. but this is not certain. It is more probable that it was inſtituted by *Chriſtian* I. which is ſupported by a Bull of Pope *Pius* II. dated at *Viterbo*, *June* 8, 1463. After his Death, this Order was much neglected, till *Frederick* II. reviv'd it in 1580. The Collar of the Order was then a Gold Chain, at the End of which hung an Elephant of the ſame Metal, enrich'd with ſome Diamonds, bearing a Tower on his Back full of arm'd Men, having the King's Cypher on the Side, and round it this Motto in *High-Dutch*, *My Help is in God alone*. Under the Elephant's Feet are thoſe Symbolical Letters, *T. I. W. B.* the moſt likely Interpretation of which is, That the King having found the Unfaithfulneſs of moſt of his Friends, and having a Dog call'd *Wildbrat*, that lov'd him, and conſtantly attended him, he would hint the ſame by the Initial Letters of thoſe Words, *Trew Is Wild Bratt*. *Chriſtian* V. gave it a new Luſtre, and caus'd the ancient Statutes of the Order to be review'd, and added new ones.

The Order of *Dannebrog* was founded by *Waldemar* II. King of *Denmark*, on St. *Laurence's* Day, on Occaſion of a long and doubtful, but at laſt a victorious Battle, with the Pagan *Lieflanders*; during which there appear'd in the Air a red Standard, with a white Croſs in the middle, which he took as a Preſage of Victory, and appointed this Standard to be the *Palladium* of the *Danes*, who call'd it *Dannebrog*; but it was taken and cut in pieces by the *Ditmarſians* 200 Years after. Few believe this Account, but rather think the Standard called *Dannebrog* was ſent to *Waldemar* from the Pope, to encourage him in the Holy War againſt the Pagans in *Livonia*. In 1671, *Chriſtian* V. reſtor'd it. The Collar of the Order is Wove-work, intermix'd with a Croſs of Gold enamell'd. At the End of the Collar hangs a Croſs ſet with Diamonds, and in the middle of the Reverſe appears a white Croſs edg'd with red, ſurrounded with Rays, with theſe Letters at the 4 Out-Parts, *Ref. Ti. Tu. Tor.* The Knights have this embroider'd on their Coats. Above the Hand, which holds the Collar of the Order, there are Rays coming down from on high, and round the Reverſe theſe Words, *Teſſera Fidelium*. Thô this Order is not ſo honourable as that of the Elephant, yet it is conferr'd on none but Perſons of Quality and Diſtinction.

of

Digitized by Google

Of their GOVERNMENT.

THE King's Titles are, King of *Denmark*, *Norway*, of the *Goths* and *Vandals*; Duke of *Sleſwick*, *Holſtein*, *Stormar*, and *Ditmarſh*; Earl of *Oldenburg* and *Delmenhorſt*.

Before 1660, this Kingdom was Elective, as *Waldemar* IIId's Letter to the Pope ſhows: The King was choſen by his Subjects of all Ranks, for even the Boors had their Voices. They ordinarily had moſt Reſpect to the Merit and Valour of the Candidate, yet with a due Regard to the Family of the preceding Kings, if any of that Line were found qualified; but if their Kings deceiv'd their Expectation, they frequently depos'd and baniſh'd them. The King could do nothing without his Parliament; which Form of Government the *Goths* had introduc'd into moſt Parts of *Europe*.

The Manner how the Kingdom became Hereditary and Abſolute.

THE King had gained great Reputation by his brave Defence of *Copenhagen* in 1659, which obliged the *Swedes* to raiſe the Siege: Upon this a Peace was concluded; but the Army was not disbanded, nor could they be for want of Money to pay their Arrears. The Peaſants and Burghers were extreamly impoveriſh'd by the laſt War, which had put a Stop to all Buſineſs and Trade; ſo that a Meeting of the 3 Eſtates was appointed at *Copenhagen*, in which the Nobility declared, That the Money neceſſary on that Occaſion ought to be levied on the Commons, without deſigning to bear any proportionable Share themſelves, but only a voluntary Contribution, thô moſt of the remaining Riches of the Kingdom were in their Hands. The Burghers thought ſome Conſideration ſhould be had of their valiant Defence of *Copenhagen*, and of their Poverty; and that it was reaſonable that the Nobility, who were Proprietors of the Kingdom, ſhould at leaſt pay their Share of the Taxes. This diſoblig'd the Nobility: Upon which one *Otto Craeg* ſtood up and told the Commons, That they were only Slaves, and had no Liberty to diſobey the Orders of the Nobility their Maſters: To which *Nanſon*, Speaker of the Commons reply'd, *That the Commons were not Slaves, nor would from thenceforth be called ſo by the Nobility, which they ſhould ſoon prove to their Coſt.* Upon this the Commons and Clergy broke up, and met in *Brewers-Hall*, where, after many Debates, the Commons concluded, That it was moſt fit, without Delay, to wait upon the King, and offer him their Votes and Aſſiſtance to be an abſolute Monarch, and that the Crown ſhould be Hereditary to his Family. They expected by this to oblige the King to them, who in Gratitude could not but confirm and enlarge their Privileges; and they thought they ſhould only change many Maſters for one; and above all, they were prompted to this by a Deſire of Revenge on the Nobility. The Clergy propos'd by this to be alſo freed from the Tyranny of the Nobles, and to have no other Superior but the King, whoſe Intereſt they thought it would be to favour them, becauſe of the Influence they had on the Conſciences of the People. The King was not to very fond of this Change at firſt, and ſaid, That thô he knew it was not his own Inclination to abuſe this Exceſs of Power which was offer'd him, yet ſome of his Succeſſors might do ſo, to the Ruine of themſelves and Subjects; but the Queen, who was a Woman of Intrigue and high Spirit, over-perſwaded him. The Nobles knew little of this Deſign againſt them; yet ſome of their own Number were alſo gain'd by the Court. Some of the Commons however declar'd, That it was reaſonable they ſhould have their Privileges drawn up and ſign'd by the King for their Security; but the Clergy ſaid, It was a Thing unbeſeeming and diſhonourable to require any other Security than the King's bare Word.

Next Morning the Commons and Clergy came to the Council-Houſe, where the Nobility were met, and *Nanſon* told them, That the only Remedy for the Diſorders of the Kingdom, was to make the Crown Hereditary, and the King Abſolute; if the Nobility would concur, they were content; if not, they were going to the King themſelves, and the Matter ſhould be done without them. The Nobility were Thunder-ſtruck with this; but ſeeing they were no longer Maſters; that the Commons

Digitized by Google

were arm'd; and that the Clergy and Army were againſt them; that they were in a fortified City, remote from their ſeveral Countries and Intereſts, where formerly they had govern'd like Princes; they durſt not oppoſe the Reſolution of the Commons, but only told them, That a Buſineſs of this Importance requir'd Time and Conſideration. *Nanſon* deny'd them the leaſt Delay: So the Commons and Clergy march'd in a Body to the Palace, and in their Name the Biſhop of *Zeeland* offer'd the King an Abſolute and Hereditary Dominion, which his Majeſty accepted, and thank'd them; but told them, That the Concurrence of the Nobility was neceſſary: To procure which, Orders were given, That the City-Gates ſhould be ſhut; and that none of the Nobility ſhould depart till this great Change was finiſhed with all poſſible Formality. This frighted the Nobility ſo, that they diſpatch'd Letters to the Court, to ſignify their Willingneſs to comply with what the Commons had propos'd. Three Days were ſpent in making Preparations for this Solemnity: Scaffolds were rais'd before the Caſtle, and adorn'd with Tapeſtry; the Soldiers and Burghers were order'd to be in Arms; and on the 27th of *October* the King, on a Theatre erected for that purpoſe, receiv'd the Homage of all the Senators, Nobility, Clergy, and Commons, which was perform'd kneeling; and the Oath they took obliged 'em to obey him without Reſerve as their Hereditary Monarch, which they alſo ſign'd. Some ſay, That if the Nobility had made any Struggle for their Liberty, the King would not have puſh'd the Point ſo far as to deſire an Arbitrary Dominion: But thus he was made above the Law, which the Commons have repented frequently ſince; and all that the Citizens of *Copenhagen* have by it, is, the Privilege to wear Swords. The Clergy are the only Gainers by it, whom the Court favours as ſubſervient to their Deſigns of keeping the People in Slavery, by the Authority they have over them.

Of the King's REVENUES.

THey ariſe, 1. From the Cuſtoms of Import and Export, which amount to 165000 Rix-Dollars *per Annum*. 2. From the Land-Tax, Houſe-Tax, and Fortification-Money, by which the Crown raiſes conſiderable Sums; for every Houſe muſt pay 4 *per Cent.* of the Value that the Ground on which it is built is rated at. For every 100 Rix-Dollars Stock, the Inhabitants muſt quarter one Soldier, beſides others in Proportion to their Trade; and when the Government is in great Want of Money, this Tax is doubled. The Yearly Sum rais'd from this Fund is reckon'd to be One Million of Rix-Dollars.

When the King has a Daughter to be married, her Portion is levied on the Subjects; 3. From the Tenths of Timber, Oil, Tar, Pitch, and Fiſh, and from the Copper, Silver, and Iron Mines, in *Norway*, which is reckon'd at 700000 Rix-Dollars *per Annum*. 4. From the Crown-Lands and confiſcated Eſtates, valued Yearly at 200000 Rix-Dollars: But Mr. *Molesworth* obſerves, That this Branch of the Revenue does not enrich the Crown; for when any Man's Lands fall into the King's Hands, no Care is taken to improve 'em; ſo that they are turn'd to Forreſt, and the Houſes fall to Decay. 5. From the Exciſe of *Copenhagen* upon Proviſions brought to the Market, and upon Tobacco, Wine, Salt, Corn, *&c.* which is farm'd at 140000 Rix-Dollars *per Annum*. 6. From the Exciſe of the reſt of the Kingdom, which amounts to the like Sum. 7. From ſmaller Taxes, as upon Marriages, and Stamp'd Paper, ſome of which amount to ſeveral Rix-Dollars a Sheet; and upon Brewing, Grinding, *&c.* all which together make about 100000 Rix-Dollars *per Annum*. 8. From the Revenue of *Iſeland*, which is 27000 Rix-Dollars *per Annum*. 9. From *Oldenburg* and *Delmenhorſt*, 80000 Rix-Dollars *per Annum*. 10. From the Toll upon the *Weſer*, which is 50000 Rix-Dollars *per Annum*; all which amount to about 639250 *l.* Sterling *per Annum*.

Of the SOUND.

THis Paſſage or Streight call'd the *Sound*, or *Ore-Sound*, lies between the Iſland of *Zeeland* and the firm Land of *Schonen*, is guarded on the *Daniſh* Side by the Caſtle of *Cronenburg*, over againſt which lies the Town and Caſtle of *Helſingburg* in *Schonen*, now demo-

Digitized by Google

demoliſh'd. Betwixt theſe, all Veſſels that trade into the *Baltick* paſs and repaſs; ſo that next to that of *Gibraltar*, we may juſtly reckon this Streight the moſt important and beſt frequented of any in *Europe*. Since the *Danes* loſt *Schonen*, their Title to the Toll on Ships that paſs the *Sound* is not ſo ſecure, becauſe they are not Maſters of the Land on both Sides; and upon this Account the Windows of *Cronenburg* Caſtle, whoſe Proſpect lies towards *Schonen*, were walled up, that ſo hateful an Object might not cauſe continual Heart-burnings and Grief in the *Danes*.

The Origine of the Toll that the King of *Denmark* obliges Ships which paſs the *Sound* to pay, was on Account of the Buoys which he kept there, that Ships might avoid the Shelves and Banks. *Cambden* informs us, in the Life of Queen *Elizabeth*, That in 1582, the *Engliſh* Ambaſſador repreſented to the King of *Denmark*, That *England* paid that Toll only on Account of thoſe Buoys, and for defraying the Charge of Lights, which the *Daniſh* King put up in the Night for a Guide to Ships; and on the ſame Account all Trading Nations agreed, That their Ships which paſſed that Way ſhould pay their Share. Before 1582, the *Engliſh* paid only one Roſe-Noble for each Ship that paſſed the *Sound*; but there being no fix'd Treaty, the *Danes* began in Time to be Arbitrary, and to impoſe what they pleas'd, according to the Strength or Weakneſs of thoſe they had to deal with, or according to their Friendſhips or Enmity with thoſe Princes and States to whom the Ships belong'd. Therefore to aſcertain this Toll, the Emperor *Charles* V. concluded a Treaty with the King of *Denmark* at *Spires*, in Behalf of his Subjects of the 17 Provinces, who then had a great Traffick in the *Baltick*; by which Treaty every Ship of 200 Tuns, and under, that enter'd the *Sound*, was to pay two Roſe-Nobles at her Entrance or Return; and every Ship above 200 Tuns, was to pay three.

This Agreement remained in Force till the Revolt of the 7 United Provinces, when the *Danes*, taking the Advantage of thoſe Wars, rais'd the Toll to an extravagant Height, becauſe the State of Affairs would not allow the *Dutch* to redreſs themſelves; and King *James* I. conniv'd at thoſe Oppreſſions of the *Danes*, on Account of his Marriage to a Daughter of that Crown. However, about 1600, the *Dutch* join'd with the City of *Lubeck* againſt this exorbitant Toll; and from that Time the *Danes* exacted more or leſs, according as Fortune was favourable or adverſe, but generally little: But in 1647, the *Danes* made a Treaty with *Holland* as a Sovereign State, that was to laſt 40 Years. After the Expiration of which, if no new Treaty was made, that of *Spires* was to be in Force. The *Danes* exacted once 519 Rix-Dollars on each Ship of 200 Tuns; and many are of Opinion, That the unreaſonable heightening of this Toll occaſion'd the K. of *Denmark*'s loſing ſo many Territories to the *Swedes*, who in 1645 got themſelves free from paying any to the *Danes*.

This Streight is not above an *Engliſh* Mile and a half over. When the *Dutch* had War with *Denmark*, their Ships paſſed through the *Greater Belt*, which is 16 *Engliſh* Miles broad; and the *Danes* cannot hinder it, except they have a Squadron of Men of War conſtantly there; whereas they have only a ſmall Frigat of 24 Guns, whoſe Station is at the Entrance of the Gulph of *Nisburg* on the Coaſt of *Fubnen*.

In 1644, *Lewis de Geer*, Admiral of the *Dutch* Fleet, paſſed the *Sound*, and enter'd the *Baltick*, keeping to the Coaſt of *Schonen*, without receiving any Harm from the Caſtle of *Cronenburg*, that continually fir'd on him. In 1645, the *Dutch* Fleet of 50 Men of War, and 32 Merchant-men, commanded by *Witte Wittens*, paſſed the *Sound*: And M. *Terlon*, in his Memoirs, informs us, That he was with *Charles Guſtavus* King of *Sweden* in the Caſtle of *Cronenburg*, when Admiral *Obdam*, who commanded the *Dutch* Fleet that was ſent for the Relief of *Copenhagen*, paſſed the *Sound* in a Line of Battle, thô the *Swedes* were Maſters of both Sides, *viz.* of *Elſinor* and *Helſingburg*, and fir'd all the Cannon of both Fortreſſes upon the *Dutch* Fleet; yet *Terlon* obſerv'd, That the Cannon from the Caſtle could not reach the Fleet that ſailed through the middle of the Streight; yet a Cannon Ball from the Fleet reach'd one of the Caſtle-Windows with Violence enough.

About

Digitized by Google

About 1640, the Customs of the *Sound* yielded 240000 Rix-Dollars *per Annum*; but since 1645, they have not yielded above 150000; some Years not above 80000; and in 1691, they did not extend to full 70000.

Of the COIN.

		l.	*s.*	*d.*	
1	Double Rose-Noble is equal to	01	16	00	Sterl.
2	A Rose-Noble is	00	18	00	
3	A Ducat	00	09	00	
4	A Rix-Dollar	00	04	06	
5	A Slet-Dollar	00	03	00	
6	A Half Rix-Dollar	00	02	03	
7	A Half Slet-Dollar	00	01	06	
8	A Rix-Mark about	00	00	11	
9	A Slet-Mark	00	00	09	

Their WEIGHTS

ARE the great and small Hundred, the first of 120, and the other of 112 lb. The former is divided into 12 Parts or Stones, at 10 lb. *per* Stone.

They have also a Skip-Pound, which makes 32 Stone, at 10 lb. *per* Stone, which is 320 lb. Or 20 Lis-Pounds of 16 Pound Mark is a Skip-Pound. And the 100 lb. *English* is found to be 92 at *Copenhagen*.

Their Measures are not so certain; the best Account is, That 100 Yards *English* make about 163 *Danish* Ells.

Their LAWS.

MR. *Moldsworth* says, their Laws exceed all that he knows in the World for Justice, Brevity, and Perspicuity: They are contain'd in One Quarto Volume in the *Danish* Language, with so much Plainness, that no Man, who can write and read, is so ignorant but he may presently understand his own Case, and plead it too if he pleases, without the Assistance of Councel or Attorney. They have none of that *Chicane*, which destroys and raises so many Estates in other Places: A very few Advocates do the Business of all that have Law-Suits there; nor are their Fees exorbitant. No Suit, tho' of the greatest Importance, hangs in Suspence longer than one Year and a Month; for a Man may go through all the Courts, and have Execution done within that Time, unless he be wanting to himself. They have 3 Courts in *Denmark*, *viz.* the City or Town Court, from which there lies an Appeal to the County, and from that to the highest Court in *Copenhagen*, where the King himself sometimes sits in Person, and it is always compos'd of the prime Nobility. This resembles our Court of *Chancery*; and if any Thing happen to fall in Debate, for the Decision of which there is not a positive Law, it is determin'd there by the King, or by the other Judges that are present, who are Keepers of the King's Conscience.

When the Estates made the King Absolute and Hereditary, they presented him with the Book of Laws called *Handfestnung*, which contain'd all that had ever been made against an Absolute Sovereignty. The *Lex Regia*, which contains the People's Surrender of their Rights, is contain'd in the *Codex Christianus*, made by *Christian* V. by which their Kings are declared to be the only Legislators, accountable to none; That no former Laws are binding upon them; That they may put in and out what Officers they please; do in Ecclesiastical Matters what they think fit; and make Peace and War, and Treaties with Foreign States, without Advice of their Council.

Before *Waldemar* II. who liv'd in the 12th Century, the *Danes* had no written Laws. *Christian* V. made the Collection now in use: They are very severe against Duels, so that few are heard of there. Their Laws are very just in respect of Shipwrecks, because of the Relief they give to those in Distress, and the Exactness with which they preserve the Goods they can save for the Use of the Owners, if they be claim'd before a Year and a Day; but if not, they belong to the King; and if the Goods be such as cannot be well kept, the Law orders them to be sold to the best Advantage, and the Money to be secur'd for the Owner. They observe the same Method in Goods found on the Roads.

Their

Digitized by Google

Their MILITARY AFFAIRS.

'TIS needleſs to ſpeak of their ancient Military Bravery, which is ſo well known in Hiſtory; but as to the preſent State of their Soldiery, it is certain the King of *Denmark* levies more Men than his Country can maintain. Soldiers are thought here to be the Riches of the Kingdom; for when the King has no occaſion for his Men at home, they are hir'd out to others; ſo that Mr. *Molesworth* ſays, Soldiers are as Saleable here as Sheep or Oxen. Their King has found a Way to maintain 18000 Men at home for leſs than 100000 Crowns *per Annum* thus: The Country is divided into ſo many Ploughs, three of which are to find a Man; and when he is order'd to march, his Owners are obliged to give him ſo much a Day. The King finds them nothing but Arms. They are all handſomely cloath'd, and when any of them die or are ſent abroad, the Maſters are obliged to find others in their room, which diſpeoples the Country. The Foot, both Officers and Soldiers, are for moſt part Strangers; the Natives being now ſo much diſpirited, that they are not thought proper for Military Service.

There is kept in *Copenhagen* 3000 able Seamen in conſtant Pay. He has alſo ſome Thouſands of Seamen at *Hamburg*, *Lubeck*, and other Cities; and thô he does not make uſe of them, he now and then gives them a Month's Pay or two, for which he is ſure of them on Occaſion; ſo that in 12 Days, he can fit out a Squadron of 15 Men of War. He has alſo a great Number of Ship-Carpenters in Pay at *Copenhagen*, all well clad and diſciplin'd.

The King has in the Baſon of *Copenhagen* 36 Ships of the Line of Battle, 15 or 16 Frigats, 8 or 10 Fire-Ships, and ſome Bomb-Veſſels, beſides Yachts, from 16 to 36 Guns, that may ſerve for Frigats.

The beſt Seamen he has are the *Norwegians*; but moſt of them are in the Service of the *Dutch*, and have their Families in *Holland*, from whence it is not likely they will ever return, except the *Dutch* uſe them worſe, or the *Danes* better than hitherto they have done; for the *Daniſh* Proviſion by Sea is generally bad.

Some of the biggeſt of their Ships draw more Water by 5 or 6 Foot at the Stern than at the Head, which ſhows them to be broken Back'd. They are generally lower Maſted than ours, and ſeem more unweildy, which makes them more proper for the *Baltick* than the Ocean, except a few of their Cruizers, and other Ships that convoy their Merchant-men to *France*, *Spain*, and *Portugal*.

The ARMS *of* Denmark.

THE King of *Denmark* bears Party of 3, and Coupe of 2, which make 12 Quarters. In the firſt for *Denmark*, Or, *Semé of Hearts Gules*, 3 Lions Paſſant-Gardant *Azure*, Crown'd, Langued, and Arm'd of the firſt. 2. For *Norway*, *Gules*, a Lion Rampant Or, Crown'd and Arm'd of the firſt: In his Paws a Battle-Ax *Argent*, hilted of the ſecond. 3. For *Gothland*, *Gules*, a Lion Paſſant-Guardant Or, on 9 Hearts of the ſame in *Feſſe*. 4. For *Schonen*, *Gules*, a Dragon Crown'd Or. 5. For *Jutland*, *Gules*, a Paſchal-Lamb *Argent*, ſupporting a Flag of the ſame, marked with a Croſs *Gules*. 6. For *Sweden*, *Azure*, 3 Crowns Or. 7. For *Sleſwick*, Or, two Lions Paſſant-Gardant *Azure*. 8. For *Iſland*, *Gules*, a Fiſh Crown'd *Argent*: Over thoſe 8 Quarters, a great Croſs *Argent*, which is the ancient Deviſe of the Kingdom; on the Center of which are placed the Arms of *Ditmarſh*, viz. *Gules*, a Cavalier Arm'd *Argent*. 9. For *Holſtein*, *Gules*, a Nettle-Leaf open, and charg'd in the Middle with a little Eſcutcheon; the whole *Argent*. 10. For *Stormar*, *Gules*, a Cygnet *Argent*, gorg'd with a Crown Or. 11. For *Delmenhorſt*, *Gules*, two Feſſes Or. 12. For *Oldenburg*, a Croſs Pattee *Argent*: The Shield is ſurrounded with the Collar of the Order of the *Elephant*: The Helmet Or, embroider'd and damask'd; the Sights cover'd, and wanting Bars; above which a Crown Or, encircled with 4 Circles, and adorn'd with Precious Stones: On the Top, a Globe Or; and above all, a Croſs Pattee *Argent*.

The Creſt is a Leopard Paſſant over the Crown Or, 8 Streamers *Azure*; a plain Croſs *Argent*, 4 Spears bending to the Dexter Side, and as many to the Siniſter Side Or.

The

The Supporters are two Savages Crown'd and Girt with Ivy Proper, Arm'd with two pointed Clubs.

The Mantle *Or*, ſown with Hearts *Gules*, and Lions *Azure*, doubled *Ermin*. The Motto is, *Pietas & Juſtitia cormant*.

The ancient RELIGION *of the Inhabitants, from* Olaus Wormius.

Othin or *Woden* firſt introduc'd Paganiſm here, as well as in other Northerly Countries. They had their Worſhip in *Denmark* in thoſe ancient Times, either in Temples built with great Coſt, or in the open Air. At firſt they plac'd their Idols in ſmall Huts, open on all Sides, becauſe they thought it unbecoming the Majeſty of their Gods to be ſhut up in Houſes. Afterwards they built ſplendid Temples. The moſt magnificent in the North was that at *Upſal*, which was the Center of Paganiſm. There are none of the Ruins of thoſe Temples to be ſeen now in *Denmark*, partly becauſe when Chriſtianity obtain'd, they either demoliſh'd them, that the Remains of them might not appear, or built Chriſtian Churches in their Place.

The Pagan Altars were a Heap of Earth, on the Top of which 3 great Stones ſupported a greater; below which the Blood of their Sacrifices was pour'd. They always made uſe of Flint-Stones to ſtrike Fire, becauſe they thought it unlawful to uſe any other Way of kindling Fire for their Sacrifices.

Of their GODS.

THeir moſt ancient Idols were *Oden* and *Thor*. The *Norvegian* Hiſtory informs us, That *Olaus Trugge*, their King, took away the Statue of the latter, which was of ſolid Gold. *Frico* or *Friggo* was another, and ſaid to be the Wife of *Othin*. Solemn Oaths were ordinarily ſworn by the Name of *Thor*, who had a Hammer in his Hand for a Scepter. Theſe three were their chief Gods. They had other Inferior ones, *viz. Diſa* or *Thiſa*, the Wife of *Thor*, from whom *Tueſday* was named. The Sun was another of their Gods, from whom came *Sunday*. He was repreſented by a naked young Man, his Face reſplendent with Rays, and holding a Wheel in his Hand, which denoted his Courſe. They alſo worſhip'd the Moon in the Shape of a Man with Aſſes-Ears, holding a Moon in his Hand. *Vodan* was their *Mars*, and was carv'd with a Crown on his Head, a Sword in his Right Hand, and a Buckler in the Left. From him the 4th Day of the Week was called *Bodenſdag*. *Thor*, their chief God, was repreſented lying on a Bed, with a Crown of Gold on his Head, adorn'd with 12 Stars, and a Scepter in his Right Hand. They repreſented *Friga* by the Statue of a Hermaphrodite, with a Sword in the Right, and a Bow in the Left Hand; and from her *Friday* was called *Frigedag*. *Saeter* was plac'd upon a Column, which had a Fiſh at the Top, and this Idol ſtood on its Back, bare Headed, with a long Beard, and long Hair; in his Right Hand a Veſſel full of Water and Flowers, and his Feet bare. They had many other Gods; and their Kings, who had made themſelves famous while alive, were deified after their Death.

Their SACRIFICES

WEre of two Sorts; the firſt was Solemn and Pompous, and celebrated each 9th Year, when they ſacrificed 89 Men, and the like Number of Horſes, Dogs, and Cocks. This Sacrifice was perform'd in *Zeeland*. The ſecond was offer'd each 9th Month, and continued 9 Days, in each of which, 9 different Sorts of Beaſts were offer'd; and they alſo ſacrific'd Men at this Time, whom they threw into a Fountain, and if they died ſoon, they expected all Happineſs and Succeſs. After they were drown'd, the Prieſts drew them out, and hung them on a Tree in a conſecrated Wood, and afterwards reckon'd 'em among the Gods.

They ſacrificed to *Woden*, their *Mars*, in Token of Gratitude, ſeveral of the Captives they had taken in Battle. Once, in Time of a great Famine, the *Norvegians* ſacrific'd their King *Olaus Tretelge*. *Fro*, who ſucceeded *Othin* or *Woden*, inſtituted thoſe Human

Digitized by Google

man Sacrifices, and told 'em, That after his Death, he would accept of no other. This barbarous Worſhip gain'd Ground to that degree, that *Huquin* King of *Norway*, before he engag'd *Harald* King of *Denmark*, ſacrific'd his own Sons. They anointed the Temples and Seats with the Blood of the Sacrifices, drank to the Memory of all their Gods, and had ſometimes Turnaments for their Honour.

Of the Fire-Ordeal *of the ancient* Danes.

When any Perſon was accuſed of a Crime, and could not clear himſelf, he was commanded to offer himſelf to this Trial thus; A Piece of red-hot Iron was laid upon the Palm of his Hand, till he walked to a Place 9 Foot diſtant; then he threw down the Iron, and his Hand was ſeal'd up; and if after 9 Days there was no Appearance of the Burning, he was declared innocent. *Wormius* thinks this Cuſtom had its Riſe in *Denmark* on this Occaſion: *Poppo*, who was the Apoſtle of the *Danes*, and preach'd the Goſpel for ſome Time with no Succeſs among them, at a Meeting of the Nobles took up a red-hot Iron in his Hand, carried it about a long Time without Hurt, and told them, This Miracle was a Proof of his Miſſion, which gained many to Chriſtianity. Upon this, the old Way of trying the Guilty by Combats was laid aſide, and the Ordeal was appointed to be the only Way to purge the Accuſed. This was about *A. C.* 986. They had alſo a Water-Ordeal thus: The accus'd Perſon was thrown into cold Water, and if he ſunk to the Ground, they reckon'd him innocent; but if guilty, they ſaid the Water would not ſuffer him to be cover'd with it, but threw him out. They had alſo an Ordeal by hot Water, which was thus; The accuſed Perſon thruſt his Arm up to the Elbow into boiling Water, and if his Arm was burnt, they reckon'd him guilty; but if not, they accounted him innocent. The Prieſts us'd many Prayers and Ceremonies on this Occaſion, that God might make this Trial anſwer the End of it. They had afterwards another kind of Fire-Ordeal, by which the Accus'd was oblig'd to walk over 9 red-hot Plough-Shears blind-fold, and bare-footed, and if they eſcap'd burning, they were held to be innocent. *Waldemar* aboliſh'd this Cuſtom *A. C.* 1242; and *Innocent* III. at the Council of *Lateran*, prohibited the Clergy to be preſent at ſuch Trials, to bleſs the Iron, or to uſe the other accuſtomed Rites. In 1248, *Haquin*, the 19th King *Norway*, did likewiſe abrogate this Fire-Ordeal.

Of their Duels.

Moſt Controverſies were decided this Way, and us'd by all Sorts of Perſons, Churchmen not excepted. This Cuſtom was obſerv'd in *Denmark* till the Time of *Chriſtian* III. They had incloſ'd Places for this Purpoſe with great Stones or Timber; and ſuch of the Combatants as got the firſt Wound, was caſt, and obliged to pay to the Conqueror 3 Marks of fine Silver, as the Ranſom of his Life; but if the vanquiſh'd Perſon happen'd to be kill'd, the Conqueror fell Heir to all his Eſtate; and if any Perſon refus'd to meet his Adverſary when challeng'd, he was declar'd to have loſt the Buſineſs in Debate. Their Arms were a Sword, Spear, Helmet and Buckler. This Cuſtom continued in *Norway* till *A. C.* 1006.

Of the Burials *of the ancient* Danes.

Their Kings were buried near their Palaces, and many of their Sepulchres are ſtill to be ſeen, as that of *Sigar* in *Zeeland*, near a Village, from thence called *Segerſtede*, which was formerly a great City. Moſt of the reſt were buried near the High-Way, which was alſo the Cuſtom of the ancient *Romans*; and if any *Dane* of Note died by the Hand of his Enemies, they made a Funeral ſuitable to his Birth. They us'd to build up Heaps of Earth and Stone to a conſiderable Height, as Monuments. *Cambden* tells us, That the *Engliſh* call thoſe *Daniſh* Graves *Barrowes*. Such of them as had a Lay of Stones at the Foundation, were for Generals, or conſiderable Perſons; but thoſe for the Vulgar were only of Earth.

Digitized by Google

These Tombs were afterwards more artfully contriv'd; for they not only fix'd great Stones upon them, with the Names and Titles of the Deceased, but surrounded those Heaps with great Stones at the Bottom, plac'd other Stones on the Top, and made an Inclosure of Stone round them. *Wormius* says, there are two of them still to be seen near *Roschild*. They buried also in Woods and Groves.

Some of those Monuments were extraordinary expensive. 'Tis observ'd, That *Harald Blaatand* employ'd his whole Army, and a vast Number of Horse and Oxen, to remove a very great Rock, which he design'd as a Monument for his Parents, and boasted, that none after him would ever attempt the like.

The ancient *Danes* burnt the Bodies of the Deceas'd, and many of the Sepulchral *Urns*, in which they put their Ashes, have been found. Those who were kill'd in Battle, were buried all together in one Heap, and every one of the surviving Soldiers were obliged to bring a certain Quantity of Earth and Stones towards making it. Sometimes they built it like a Mountain, Vault-wise, in which they inclos'd the Bodies of the Deceas'd.

After Christianity was establish'd, their Bodies were burnt with Juniper, and they put many precious Things in the Graves of their Kings. *Olaus Trygge*, King of *Norway*, rifled the Graves of his Predecessors, and found great Riches in them. Many old Coins have been found in their Graves, and some of them very weighty, with old Weapons, and Spurs of a great Size. They us'd to put a Piece of Money in the Mouth of the Deceas'd. This Custom of burning their Bodies was instituted by *Othin*, who told them, the more valuable Things were put with them into the Grave, the more acceptable they would be to the Gods.

Of the CONVERSION *of the* Danes.

CHristianity was first preach'd here in the Reign of *Harald Blaatand*, about *A. C.* 948, by *Poppo*, as we heard before; and about the middle of the 12th Century, it was establish'd by Pope *Adrian* IV. an *Englishman*, whose true Name was *Nicholaus Breakspear*. *Wormius* observes, That worshiping of Saints was not us'd in *Denmark* till a long Time after.

When the Corruptions of the *Roman* Church grew so intollerable to many Nations in *Europe*, that they found a Reformation necessary, *Denmark*, which had been more abus'd by the Priests than many Places more Southerly, embrac'd the Doctrine of *Luther*. This happened in the Reign of *Frederick* I. about the middle of the 16th Century, who establish'd that Doctrine so firmly and universally in his Dominions, that to this Day they allow no other Religion; only the Calvinists have a Church in *Copenhagen*, set up by the Queen; and there is a Popish Chapel allow'd at *Gluckstadt* to a few Popish Families in those Parts. There are no Factions or Disputes here about Religion. The Clergy depend entirely on the Crown; and thô they flatter the Court, and preach up the Power of the Prince, they are not allow'd any Power in Civil Affairs, or Share in the Government; nor are they encouraged to come to Court, or to appear on any Publick Occasions; so that the Pulpit is their only Province. Their chief Subsistence is the voluntary Benevolence of the People, which makes them take Care to get their good Opinion; yet they keep 'em in Awe by the Practice of Confession before they administer the Sacrament, which every one that receives is obliged to. This, with Crucifixes and some other Ceremonies, is all that they retain of the *Romish* Church.

There are 10 Superintendants, who take it kindly to be called *Bishops*, and *My Lord*, *viz.* one in *Zeeland*, one in *Fuhnen*, four in *Jusland*, and four in *Norway*. They all depend on the Superior Consistory or Meeting of the Clergy. They have no Temporalities, keep no Ecclesiastical Courts, and have no Cathedrals, with Prebends, Canons, Deans, Sub-Deans, *&c.* but have only the Rank above the Inferior Clergy of their Diocese, and a Power to inspect into their Doctrine and Manners. The Revenue of the Bishop of *Zeeland* is about 2000 Rix-Dollars *per Annum*. The other Bishops of *Denmark* have about 1500 Rix-Dollars; and the Bishops of *Norway* have 1000 *per Annum*. The King has a great Share of the Tythes, and the Bishops are allow'd to have two or three

Digitized by Google

three Pariſhes each. Their Habit is common with that of the other Miniſters, *viz.* a plaited black Gown with ſhort Sleeves, and a large ſtiff Ruff about the Neck; and on their Heads they wear a Cap with Edges, like our Maſters of Arts, only theirs is round. Moſt of them underſtand *Engliſh*, and have the beſt of their Divinity out of the Writings of our Divines. Some of them, that have ſtudied at *Oxford*, are more valued than the reſt. The Commonalty are great Frequenters of the Church, which are kept much more decent, clean, and better adorn'd, than with us; ſo that they look almoſt as gaudy as the Popiſh Churches.

Of the ancient LEARNING *of* Denmark, *from* Olaus Wormius.

HE informs us, That anciently there were few Scholars in *Denmark*, and the *Gothick* Kings were very ignorant; ſo that any who could but read and write, was in great Eſteem in that Country. The *Daniſh* Hiſtory tells us, That one *Hiarn* was choſen King meerly for making an Epitaph on King *Frotho*. *Saxo Grammaticus* ſaw it, and tranſlated it into Latin. Hiſtory tells us, That their Kings gave peculiar Marks of their Favour to Poets, as Gold Chains, Gold Rings, coſtly Garments, *&c.* entertain'd them in their Courts, and made them their Favourites. Their Rhimes or Runes were ſaid to have had ſuch Force, as they were able to appeaſe the Kings when in Wrath. They inſtance in *Egilbu Skalligrimus*, who thô he had killed a Son and other Friends of *Erick Blodock* King of *Norway*, yet obtain'd his Pardon, for an excellent Copy of Verſes he made. Thoſe Poets were called *Scalder*: And *Wormius*, in his *Literatura Runica*, has a Liſt of the moſt eminent. Their Subject was the Hiſtory of former Times, and the Lives and great Actions of their Kings, and other brave Men.

Some will have *Uphilas*, the Biſhop of the *Goths*, to be the Inventor of the Runick Letters; but this is not probable, only he was the firſt that acquainted the *Romans* with thoſe Characters. *Wormius* thinks they were more ancient than the Greek Letters; but gives no Reaſon for it. He ſays, they were taken from the Hebrew Alphabet, and have a great Affinity to the *Greeks*. *Selden*, in his *Janus Anglicus*, *p.* 19. and *Salmaſius*, are alſo of this Opinion. The Uſe of thoſe Letters ſeems to be very ancient in *Denmark* and *Sweden*; and *Wormius* tells us, they have Inſcriptions 600 Years older than *Charles the Great*, and inſtances in a Rock in *Bleking*, call'd *Harald's Rock*, becauſe the Deeds of *Harald Hyldetand*, who liv'd about *A. C.* 270, and was coremporary with the Emperor *Galienus*, are engraven upon it. He ſays further, That *Hiarn*, who was choſen King for his Poetry, liv'd a few Years after the Birth of Chriſt. He concludes, That the true Inventor of their Letters and Poetry cannot be known at this Diſtance, becauſe of the Want of Books, and becauſe moſt of the Rocks, which were the Books of the ancient *Goths*, are demoliſhed. He thinks it moſt probable, that Learning came thither with *Woden* from *Aſia*; but that the Runick Letters are of a later Date. Their Pointed Letter were introduced by *Waldemar* II. King of *Denmark*, and are therefore called the *Waldemarian Runes*.

Spelman thinks the Word *Runes*, or *Rune*, comes from the *Saxon* Word *Ryne*, that ſignifies a Miſtery, becauſe the Poets of thoſe Times conceal'd the Knowledge of them from the People, as the *Egyptian* Prieſts did their Hieroglyphicks, and becauſe their Myſteries of Magick and Witchcraft were wrote in thoſe Letters. *Hadrianus Junius*, and *Stephanius* the *Daniſh* King's Hiſtoriographer, are of the ſame Opinion; but *Wormius* thinks they are called *Runes* from *Run*, which ſignifies a Furrow, becauſe the one Line began where the former ended.

He likewiſe ſays, They had 28 kinds of Runick Alphabets, and that the *Swedes* had the ſame Letters with the *Danes*, as appears from the Obſervations of *John* and *Olaus Magnus*, and *John Bureus*. He informs us, That the *Scythian*, *Maſſagetick* and *Getick* Characters, have a great Affinity with the *Runick* ones, which he proves from a Table, containing 72 kinds of different Characters, wrote by *James Bonaventura Hepburn*, a *Scots-man*. It was printed at *Rome* in 1617.

Saxo Grammaticus gives us many of thoſe Inſcriptions on Rocks, as does *Wormius* in his Learned Book, called *Monumenta Danica*. *Saxo* tells us alſo of an Epiſtle engraven on Wood, from *Fengo* King of *Denmark*, to the

Digitized by Google

King of *Great Britain*; and *Wormius* ſays, he had ſeveral Epiſtles of that ſort of Love and Buſineſs in his *Muſæum*, with many Runick Kalendars, as he tells us in his *Faſti Danici*.

They engrav'd likewiſe on Bones, and on Horns, eſpecially on thoſe of the Elks and Rain-Deers, and ſometimes they engrav'd their Kalendars on the Bones of Fiſhes. *Wormius* ſays, That *Chriſtianus Friſius*, Chancellor of *Denmark*, has a Book conſiſting of 13 Leaves, made of thin Plates of Rain-Deer's Horn, about four Inches long, and one broad: The Feſtivals, Changes of the Moon, *&c.* are artfully engraven on it. Some of their old Bells have likewiſe Inſcriptions on them. In the middle Times, they made uſe of Parchment; but all their ancient Books are loſt, except that curious Book of Antiquity, call'd, *The Laws of Schonen*, which contains the Succeſſion of the *Daniſh* Kings, their Marriages and Actions, and the Boundaries betwixt *Denmark* and *Sweden*. It is writ in *Runick* Characters: Every Word is ſeparated from another by a Colon, and every new Law begins with a Red Letter.

Wormius tells us, That after they had engraven their Letters on Rocks, Wood, Horn, *&c.* they colour'd the Draughts with Ink made of Pitch, the Blood of Seals, and other Ingredients, which are not now known; and that this Ink was ſo durable, that neither Storms nor Time could efface the Characters.

They had 136 kinds of Rhimes; and *Wormius* ſays, the old *Daniſh* Poems were fram'd with great Art and Care, and that they exceeded thoſe of all other Nations in the wonderful Effects they had upon the Hearers. He ſpeaks of a certain Inſpiration that thoſe Poets were ſometimes poſſeſſed with, and ſays, their Poetry never ſucceeded with any but ſuch as were naturally endued with that Poetical Fire.

Thoſe employed in converting the *Danes* aboliſh'd the Runick Inſcriptions, becauſe they did not underſtand them themſelves, and would not take Pains to learn them. Upon this Account all their Prayers and Worſhip were performed in Latin, and they had Inſtructions to propagate the *Roman* Characters as more holy than the *Runick*, which they ſaid were polluted with Paganiſm and Magical Spells, and contrary to Chriſtianity. The *Runick* Characters fell partly into Contempt on that Account, and alſo becauſe the *Roman* Characters were more eaſily writ, and had more Books of Learning in 'em. The *Runick* Characters were not quite aboliſh'd however in 1319; for the Laws of *Schonen* were writ about that Time, thô very few had then any Skill in them. *Alphonſus* King of *Caſtile* and *Navarre* aboliſh'd them in *Spain*, *A. C.* 1086. *Roderick* of *Toledo* tells us, That the Council of *Toledo* condemn'd them *A. C.* 1116. *Aventinus* in his Annals, *Lib.* 1. ſays, That after the Death of *Frederick* II. Emperor of *Germany*, the *Germans* diſus'd the *Runick* Letters, and inſtead of them brought in the Latin Characters.

Jornandes tells us, That *Zamolxes Zoutæ*, and *Dicineus*, who were great Philoſophers, inſtructed the *Goths*, their Countrymen, in Knowledge. *Wormius* ſpeaks of two Books, called *Edda* and *Scalda*, which contain great Variety of Ænigma's, Allegories, and Hieroglyphicks, that were Part of the ancient Learning of the *Goths*. Many Horns are ſtill to be ſeen with Inſcriptions and Figures of Animals, which give us ſome Taſt of the Religion and Natural Philoſophy of the ancient *Danes*. That found in the Dioceſe of *Ripen* is of this Sort.

Of the preſent State of Learning there.

THE late King *Chriſtian* V. erected a Royal Academy for the Polite Education of young Gentlemen in 1690 at *Copenhagen*, committed the Government of it to Mr. *Van Schindel*, a Perſon of a Noble Family in *Sleſwick*, ſettled Profeſſors of moſt ſorts of Learning under him, with Maſters for all genteel Exerciſes, and gave them the Houſe of the Counts of *Brahe*.

Mr. *Moldſworth* ſays, That Learning runs low there at preſent; only Latin is more ſpoken by their Clergy than by ours in *England*. There are few Books printed there, and thoſe only ſome dull Treatiſes againſt the Papiſts and Calviniſts. The *Belles Lettres* are very much Strangers here, and can hardly be introduc'd, till a greater Affluence among the Gentry makes Way for them; for Neceſſity dulls and deſtroys Men's

Digitized by Google

Men's Spirits The Revenues and Buildings of the Univerſity at *Copenhagen* are mean. The Students wear black Cloaks, and live ſcattered about the Town. On the King's Birth-day, the Rector *Magnificus* harangues his Majeſty in the Univerſity with a Latin Speech, full of groſs Flattery.

In this King's Grandfather's Time, there was an Univerſity at *Sora*, where the Lodgings and Conveniencies for Study exceeded thoſe of *Copenhagen*; but the King had Occaſion for the Revenues, ſo that now it is deſolate, and there's only a ſmall Grammar-School in its ſtead. Mr. *Molesworth* obſerves, That there's a certain Equality of Judgment among them, and that every one keeps the ordinary beaten Road of Senſe, which in this Country is neither the faireſt nor the ſouleſt. They are not good at imitating the Inventions of other Countries; and for inventing themſelves, he ſays none have ever pretended to it ſince the famous *Tycho Brahe*.

This Country has produc'd many Learned Men; as,

1. *Saxo Grammaticus*, who liv'd in the 12th Century, and wrote the Hiſtory of *Denmark* in elegant Latin. *Eraſmus* was amaz'd to find ſo much Eloquence and good Language in ſuch a barbarous Age. He was the King of *Denmark*'s Hiſtoriographer, died in 1190, and is buried at *Roſchild*, where his Latin Epitaph is ſtill to be read.

2 *Eraſmus Latus*, who was Profeſſor of Divinity in the Univerſity of *Copenhagen*. He publiſhed many Learned Works, of which *Geſner* has given us the Catalogue.

3. *Nicolaus Hemingius*, remarkable for his judicious Commentaries on the Scripture. He died at *Roſchild* in 1600.

4. *Tycho Brahe*, born in *Schonen*: He was a rich Nobleman, and Baron of *Toſtrup*. All *Europe* is obliged to him for the Improvements he made in Aſtronomy.

5. *Chriſtianus Severinus Montanus*, who was *Tycho Brahe*'s Scholar, and Profeſſor of Aſtronomy at *Copenhagen*, where he wrote his *Aſtronomia Danica*. He loſt much of his former Reputation by his Book *De Vera Circuli Menſura*. Printed at *Amſterdam* in 1644. This Work coſt him 30 Years Study; but was confuted in one Page by Dr. *Pell*, then Profeſſor of Mathematicks at *Amſterdam*.

6. *Arild Witfield*, Lord of *Odersherch*, and Chancellor of *Denmark*. He reduced *Saxo*'s Hiſtory to a Chronological Method, and wrote in *Daniſh* a Hiſtory of the Kings of *Denmark* and *Norway*. *Pontanus* gives a great Character of that Work.

7. *Stephanus Stephanius*, *Regius* Profeſſor of Hiſtory in the Univerſity of *Sora*. He wrote Accurate and Learned Notes on *Saxo Grammaticus*. He alſo wrote the Hiſtory of *Denmark*, from 1550, to 1559, which was Printed at *Sora* in 1650.

8. *Olaus Wormius*, *Regius* Profeſſor of Phyſick at *Copenhagen*, a great Antiquary, who with incredible Diligence, and great Succeſs, made wonderful Diſcoveries relating to the *Runick* Inſcriptions, Learning, Poetry, *&c.* and has given an Exact and Learned Account of the Antiquities of his Country, which lay unregarded before his Time. He wrote upon thoſe Parts of abſtruſe Learning, his *Literatura Runica*, *Monumenta Danica*, *Faſti Danici*, and *Muſæum Wormianum*. The laſt is the Catalogue of his Natural Curioſities and Rarities, of which he had a great Collection.

9. *Petrus Joannes Reſenius*, Profeſſor of Moral Philoſophy, and Counſellor to the late King, has improv'd the Antiquities obſerv'd by *Wormius*, and made a greater Collection of *Runick* Monuments. He has alſo publiſh'd the *Edda Iſlandorum*, which ſhews his great Abilities in that Part of Learning.

We might alſo add *Petrus Severinus*, the two *Bartholines*, famous for Phyſick and Anatomy, and *Borrichius*, who left a great Legacy to the Univerſity of *Copenhagen*.

Their LANGUAGE.

RODERICK of *Toledo* tells us, That the *Teutonick*, *Daniſh*, *Norwegian*, *Swediſh*, *Low-Dutch*, and *Engliſh*, have the ſame Origin, thô they differ in Dialects. *Juſtus Lipſius* ſays, That the Old *Celtick* was alſo an Idiom of the *Teutonick*. The *Edda Iſlandorum*, an ancient Piece, gives an Account of the Language of that Country, and calls it *Daniſh*: It informs us, That *Woden* brought that Language from *Aſia*, and that the Colonies he planted in *Denmark*, *Sweden*, *Norway* and *Saxony*, left their Language there.

Wor-

Digitized by Google

Wormius obſerves, That the *Daniſh* is mightily chang'd within theſe laſt 400 Years, which is evident from their ancient Monuments. Of late they borrow many Words from the *High Dutch*, which the Court, Gentry, and Burghers, uſe in common Diſcourſe, and the *French* when they talk to Strangers, to whom the *Daniſh* is diſagreeable, becauſe of its bad and languiſhing Tone.

The DIVISION *of* Denmark.

Denmark is divided into the Peninſula of *Jutland*, and the *Iſles*. We ſhall begin at the latter.

ZEELAND,

WAS anciently call'd *Codonania* by *Pomponius Mela*, and had its Name from its Situation in the Sea; and ſome ſay, this Iſland is the largeſt in the *Baltick*, is almoſt of a Circular Figure, and about 180 *Engliſh* Miles in Circumference. It has the *Sound* and *Schonen* on the E. the *Baltick* on the S. the *Great Belt* and the Iſle of *Fulmen* on the W. and the Entrance into the *Sound* on the N. It is tolerably fruitful in Corn, and has a great Trade by exporting Black Cattle. The Woods are full of Game. The Face of the Land is pleaſant, and abounds with little Hills, Woods and Lakes. Mr. *Molesworth* ſays, there are few Meadows here, yet they have Plenty of good Hay, from the Graſs that grows by the Sides of Corn-Fields, and in ſome ſcatter'd Spots of Marſhy Grounds. It has no Rivers, nor above half a Score Brooks, that are able to turn a Mill; but has a great Number of fine Lakes, well ſtor'd with Fiſh. In this Iſland there are 340 Pariſhes, and the principal City of *Denmark*.

Copenhagen, which lies 20 *Engliſh* Miles E. from *Roſchild*, 16 S. from *Cronenburg*, 150 S. from *Gothenburg*, 225 S. W. from *Calmar*, and 350 from *Stockholm*. Its ancient Name was *Segelburg*. In the 12th Century, *Abſolon* Archbiſhop of *Denmark*, as *Saxo Grammaticus* informs us, built a Citadel here to ſtop the Incurſions of the Pirates, and called it *Axel-huis*. This encouraged ſeveral Fiſhermen and other Traders to ſettle here, from whence it was called *Kiopmans-Haven*, *i.e.* Merchants-Haven. *Chriſtian* IV. King of *Denmark*, enlarged and beautified this City, and join'd it to the Iſle *Amack* by a Bridge, in which he built a new Town of 4 or 500 Houſes, and an Exchange, which is a large Building, with a great Vault below, where Merchants have their Warehouſes. He alſo built an Arſenal, which is now well provided with Artillery, and particularly with Cannon for Ships, many of which are 48 Pounders. Braſs Guns are as plentiful here as Iron Guns elſewhere. Each Ship of the King's Navy has a diſtinct Chamber, with all manner of Rigging for it. In other Rooms they keep ſmall Arms for Ships: And for the more convenient Embarkment of all of them, the Arſenal is built on the Brink of the Water. They have Plenty of Braſs Mortars 100 and 200 Pounders, and a green Braſs Culverine 21 Foot long. For Land Artillery, they have 30 Battering-Pieces from 12 to 48 Pounders, 20 Mortars from 100 to 200 Pounders, and 70 Field-Pieces, all of Braſs. They have alſo 20000 Muskets, and 600 compleat Sets of Armour. The celebrated Globe of *Tycho Brahe*, 6 Foot Diameter, and the only Remains of all the Inſtruments that belong'd to him, is kept here. By the Obſervations of Mr. *Picard* and Mr. *Flamſted*, the Difference of Meridians betwixt *London* and *Copenhagen* is 51 Min. 40 Sec. ſo that the Long. is 32 Deg. and the Lat. 56½ Deg.

This City ſtands very low; but there is a Riſing Ground within half a League of it, and two or three little Hills that cover it on the W. Side, from whence the City may eaſily be bombarded. This Town is large, and has a very regular Citadel on the N. and N. W. built on the Shore, with ſeveral fine Baſtions, and Ravelins of Earth, well ſtor'd with Cannon, and palliſado'd. They have a Battalion of Foot in Gariſon. The other Sides are of more difficult Acceſs, by reaſon of Marſhes. There are ſeveral Royal Baſtions with Ravelins before the Curtains, which reach from the Citadel to the S. Part, and continue beyond the Arm of the Sea, which ſeparates *Zeeland* from

Digitized by Google

from *Amack*. A Circuit of Fortifications, conſiſting of 8 Royal Baſtions, and a Ravelin, incloſes the New City and Port, with the Fleet, and faces the *Tilboorth* or Cuſtom-Houſe Battery, which ſecures the Entry into the Haven. Thoſe Fortifications make the City of a round Form. The Houſes, which are above 7000 in Number, don't take up above half the Ground incloſ'd.

The Harbour is excellent, and would be the Staple of all the Trade in the *Baltick*, if it were a Free City. The Entrance into it is ſo narrow, that one Ship only can paſs at a time; and this Entrance is ſhut up every Night with a ſtrong Boom. The Citadel on one Side, and the Cuſtom-Houſe or Block-Houſe, well ſtor'd with Cannon, on the other, command the Mouth of the Port; within which lies the Navy Royal. It is capacious enough to hold 500 Sail, where neither Wind nor Enemies can annoy them. The Road without is very good and ſafe, being fenced from the Sea by a large Sand-Bank, on the Point of which there's a couple of Buoys to direct all Ships that come in or go out. There are no Tides here, but always a ſufficient Depth of Water; ſo that this Port may in all Reſpects be reckon'd one of the beſt in the World.

They have 10 Churches: St. *Mary*'s is the Cathedral, wherein the greateſt Solemnities, ſuch as the Coronation of their Kings, *&c.* are celebrated. The Dome is fine, and the Steeple magnificent. The Church of the *Holy Ghoſt* is fine, and very ancient. That of St. *Nicholas* is not inferior to the other two in beautiful Structure: It has a ſtately Steeple, and was built after the Reformation. St. *Peter*'s is alſo an ancient Church, where Worſhip is perform'd in *High Dutch* ſince 1574, by the Command of *Frederick* II. who then caus'd it to be new built. *Trinity* Church is alſo a fine Building, and was finiſhed in 1656. The Publick Library is kept over this Church; a great Part of the Books were given by *Chriſtian* IV. This Church joins to the Round Tower, built by Order of the ſame King, who laid the firſt Stone himſelf in 1637. It was finiſhed in 1642, and called *Uraniburg*, being built inſtead of that of the ſame Name belonging to *Tycho Brahe* in the Iſle of *Huen*, which was demoliſhed in his Reign. The Stairs are 15 Foot broad, and ſo eaſy, that a Coach may go up them. The *Danes* call it *Stelleburg*, becauſe 'twas deſigned for Aſtronomical Obſervations: It is flat at Top, and has a Balcony with Iron Baliſters round it. The Chamber of Curioſities here contains a great Number of Rarities of Nature and Art. *Jacobæus*, a Phyſician at *Copenhagen*, has publiſhed a Catalogue of them in Folio.

The Academy here was founded by *Chriſtian* I. about 1475; and *Sixtus Quartus* granted it all the Privileges of that of *Bononia*. King *John* enlarged and beautified it, and ſettled Salaries for the Profeſſors. *Chriſtian* III. built a Ward for the Maintenance of 20 poor Students. *Frederick* II. added 80 more to them, and encreas'd the Penſions of the Profeſſors. *Gaſpar*, *Thomas*, and *Eraſmus Bartholoini*, were Profeſſors here.

The Streets are light enough in the Night by Lanthorns. They make uſe of no Flambeaus here, for fear of Fire, to which this City is liable, by reaſon of the many Timber Buildings. To prevent this, every Maſter of a Houſe muſt have a large Tub full of Water at his Door. Coaches are much us'd here, becauſe of the Dirtineſs of the Streets in Winter. Mr. *Mold'ſworth* thinks this City is near as large as *Briſtol*. In 1659, the *Swedes* beſieged this Place, and were obliged to raiſe the Siege, after they had ſpent a whole Year in it.

Amagar or *Amack*, lies E. from the City, on the other Side of the Haven, and is call'ed the Garden of *Copenhagen*. It is almoſt of an Oval Form, and about 6 Miles in Length. This Iſland was planted by *Hollanders*, ſent thither by the Arch-Dutcheſs of *Savoy*, and Governeſs of the *Low Countries*, at the Deſire of *Chriſtian* II. that his Queen, who was Siſter to *Charles* V. Emperor of *Germany*, might have Pulſe, and other Things planted there, that pleas'd her Taſt. They ſtill retain the *Dutch* Faſhions, and ſupply *Copenhagen* with Milk, Butter and Cheeſe, of which they ſell above the Value of 1000 Rix-Dollars every Week. Beſides the Pulſe and other Fruits which the Iſland produces, here is Plenty of Wheat, Barley, and Oats, and abundance of Hares. The Inhabitants are induſtrious, and their Houſes neat and cleanly. That

Part

Part of *Copenhagen* called *Chriſtians-Haven*, becauſe built by *Chriſtian* IV. lies in this Iſland. It was in this Iſle that *Frederick* III. began to defeat the *Swedes*, who made a Deſcent here *October* 9, 1658. but the next Day they were ſo warmly attacked by the *Danes*, that *Charles Guſtavus* King of *Sweden*, and *Wrangel* his General, were obliged to leave their Army engaged, and to make their Eſcape in a Fiſher-Boat.

Roſchild lies in Lat. 56 ½, and Long. 31 ⅔, at the Bottom of the Bay of *Iſone*. It was anciently the moſt conſiderable Place of the Iſle of *Zeeland*; but ſince *Copenhagen* became the Reſidence of the Kings of *Denmark*, it has gone to Decay. It is moſt noted for being the Burying-Place of the Royal Family. *Harald*, the Father of *Sueno Otho*, is buried here, and his Epitaph ſtill to be ſeen, as alſo that of *Sueno the Great*, and of *Margaret*, who united the 3 Northern Crowns; thoſe of *Chriſtian* III. *Frederick* II. *Chriſtian* IV. *Chriſtian* V. and *Frederick* III. *Sueno Otho* made this Place a Biſhop's See in 1012. *Sueno Gratenhede* fortified it; and *Lyſcander* tells us, there was once 27 Churches in this Town. In the Old Cathedral, there's a fair Marble Pillar, that Queen *Margaret* erected to hang the Whetſtone upon, which *Albert* King of *Sweden* ſent her to ſharpen her Needles, in Deriſion of her Sex. This Jeſt coſt him dear, for ſhe took and detain'd him Priſoner 7 Years, and obliged him to renounce his Right to the Crown of *Sweden*. There is a Convent of Lutheran Nuns here, who are all of good Families. They have no diſtinct Habit, are under no Vows, but may if they pleaſe leave the Cloyſter and marry. The Situation of this Town brings it ſome ſmall Trade. A Treaty was concluded here in 1658 betwixt the two Northern Crowns.

Elſineur lies in the Streight called the *Sound* or *Oreſunds*, over againſt *Helſingburg* in *Schonen*, N. from *Copenhagen*. When the Court reſided in the Caſtle of *Cronenburg*, the Town was larger than now, and had Walls. The Caſtle of *Cronenburg* is 4 or 500 Paces diſtant from it on the Shore. It makes a large ſquare Court, and was adorn'd with fine Statues. The Pipes of the Ciſtern that ſupplied the Gariſon with Water, and the Locks of the Doors, were all of fine Silver, before it was plunder'd by the *Swedes*. It was built in 1582, is all of Free-ſtone, and has 4 little Towers at each Corner, cover'd with Copper; but this Caſtle, with the Chapel, Steeple, and Ornaments of it, are all going to Decay. It has a Ditch round it, and 4 Baſtions, two of which are to the Seaward, ſurrounded with another Ditch, and the Land-ſide is ſecured by 5 more Baſtions, and an half Baſtion. They have fine Cannon upon them; but the Baſtion that commands the Paſſage of the *Sound* has but two Cannon 36 Pounders each, and 11 more of a ſmaller Size. The Rampart is vaulted with Free-ſtone. The *Danes* believe this Caſtle is able to defend the Paſſage of the *Sound*; upon which the King ſtruck a Medal in 1691, on one Side of which there's a two-handed Key, with this Motto, *Claudit & Recludit*. In 1658, the *Swedes* made themſelves Maſters of this Caſtle, but were obliged to ſurrender it by the Treaty of *Copenhagen* in 1660.

Fredericksburg is a Royal Caſtle. 10 *Engliſh* Miles S. W. from *Cronenburg*: It belong'd to a private Gentleman; but *Frederick* II. purchas'd it, and began to enlarge it. His Son *Chriſtian* IV. finiſhed it. This is the *Verſailles* of *Denmark*. The Houſe is built on Piles in a Lake. The Body of the Caſtle conſiſts of a very fair Front, with two great Wings. The Chapel is well adorn'd, and cover'd with gilt Copper. It had 12 Silver Statues of the Apoſtles, and all the Locks, Bolts, *&c.* were Silver, till it was plunder'd by the *Swedes*. The Hall is adorn'd with Painting, and has the Pictures of ſeveral of the Kings of *Denmark*, and of the Royal Family, as large as the Life, and a Frame of Paintings which repreſents the Sea and Land Battles of the Kings of *Denmark*. It is hung with rich Tapeſtry of Silk-Mohair, repreſenting the Actions and Battles of *Chriſtian* IV. There's a Gallery that leads from the Caſtle to the Hall of Audience, adorn'd with Pictures, moſt of which were bought in *Italy*. There's a Park here 19 Miles long, of a proportionable Breadth, and interſpers'd with Pools and Fiſh-Ponds, with a Mixture of Green Plats, Hillocks, and ſmall Vallies. It was ſtock'd with Fallow Deer from *England*. There's a pretty Flower-Garden behind the Caſtle on the other Side the Lake, in which, the

Digitized by Google

thô deep, they have built a kind of Terrass on Piles, which cost 100000 Crowns.

Sora stands near a Lake, which on one Side forms a kind of Morass, is pleasantly situated near a charming Wood of vast Extent, which is reserv'd for the King's Diversion and Game. *Absalom Vildus*, Archbishop of *Lunden*, founded a Church and Monastery, and settled a Seminary of Monks here, who were to write the History of *Denmark*. We owe *Saxo Grammaticus*'s History to this Foundation. Many of this Bishop's Ornaments, with his Sword, were found in his Tomb here; for he went frequently to War, where he acquired great Reputation. He died in 1201. Many Historians call him *Absalom Hunde*. *Frederick* II. erected an University here, which was called *Academia Equestris*, because design'd for the Education of young Gentlemen in Chivalry; and the Revenues of the Nunnery of *Marieho* in *Laland* were given to it in 1621. It became famous by the able Professors *Christian* IV. invited to come hither, among whom was the Learned *Meursius*, Professor of History and Politicks here, from 1625 to 1639, when he died, and is buried in this Place. *Charles Gustavus* King of *Sweden* being educated here, when he invaded *Zeeland* he would not suffer his Soldiers to enter it: But the Revenues of this University were annexed to the Crown since, as we said before. The Ruins shew this to have been formerly a Place of great Note; but now the Town is very inconsiderable, having but one short Street, which consists of not above 50 Houses. It lies near the middle of the Isle, 30 Miles S. W. from *Copenhagen*, and 18 S. from *Roschild*.

Ringstede, N. E. from *Sora*, is a Town of great Antiquity, where many of the *Danish* Kings are buried in an old Church dedicated to St. *Canute*, particularly King *Waldemar*, and *Erick the Pious*. It decays daily, because of the Want of Trade. The Houses are low, because the Town is built on a high Ground; and the high Winds in Winter are very troublesome and dangerous here.

Korsor, was formerly a considerable Town, and had a great Trade, but is now poor: It stands on a Neck of Land, where the Sea forms a Gulph, the Entrance into which is about a Musket-shot over; but the Basin is very deep, and Ships of great Burden may lie in it. At the Entrance of the Port, there's a square Fort with 9 Demi-Bastions, and some Iron Guns. The Foot of the Rampart is pallisado'd, and has a Ditch full of Water round it. There is also a Castle; but the Gates of it are ruinous. This Town lies over against *Nibourg* in *Fuhnen*, from which 'tis separated by the *Greater Belt*, which is here about 30 *English* Miles over. When *Charles Gustavus* invaded *Zeeland* in 1658, he landed his Men here.

Holbeck is a considerable Town, 15 *English* Miles N. W. from *Roschild*, at the Bottom of a narrow Bay.

Kallenburg. *Saxo Grammaticus* calls it *Kalundon*, lies N. W. from *Holbeck*, at the Bottom of the most Westerly Bay of the Island. It was only a Fisher-Town till 1158, when *Absalom Hvides*'s Brother made it a City, and beautified it with a Castle, Church, and other Publick Buildings. It has now a good Trade, by reason of its safe and convenient Harbour.

Other Towns are, 1. *Kege*, which is a little, but populous Town, on a small Bay of the *Sound* on the E. Side of the Island, 18 Miles S. from *Copenhagen*. It has a good Trade in Corn and Fish. 2. *Prestoe*, S. W. from *Kege*, on the Bottom of a Bay of the *Baltick*, which has some Trade. 3. *Waxingborg*, S. from *Prestoe*, the most Southerly Town in the Island. It has also a Port, and a moderate Trade.

FUHNEN,

HAS the *Great Belt* on the E. the *Baltick* on the S. the *Lesser Belt*, which separates it from *Jutland*, on the W. and the Isle *Samsoe* on the N. It is about 48 Miles long from S. to N. and 40 Miles broad from W. to E. *Saxo Grammaticus*, *Lyscander*, and all Travellers, make this the fruitfulest Place of the King of *Denmark*'s Dominions; for the Soil is good and well manur'd. The Country consists of small, but very fruitful Hills, some of them covered with Woods; It is better Peopled than *Zeeland*. They export much Corn, and great Herds of Black Cattle, and have a good Breed

Digitized by Google

of Horſe, and Plenty of Hogs. It contains 4 Gariſon Towns, 264 Villages, and 348 Pariſhes, 88 Fiſh-Ponds, 39 Rivulets, and is the Appanage of the King's eldeſt Son.

Odenſee, the chief Town of the Iſland, is called *Ottonia* by moſt Geographers. Some will have it called ſo from *Woden*; but it is more probable that its Name came from *Otho* I. for whoſe Honour it was built in 948, by *Harald* King of *Denmark*. It ſtands almoſt in the middle of the Iſland, 85 Miles W. S. W. from *Copenhagen*, 16 Miles W. from *Nyborg*, and as many E. from *Middlefor*. Before the Crown was made Hereditary in 1660, the General Aſſemblies of the States met here, and their Kings had their Reſidence in this Place. The Buildings are good, and the Streets regular. They have two fine Churches, one dedicated to St. *Canute*, in which his Body was found in 1582, in a Copper Coffin, gilt and adorn'd with Precious Stones; the other to St. *Francis*. The Town-Houſe is a ſtately Building. It has been a Biſhop's See ſince 950. *Harald Blaatand* was killed here; and many of the *Daniſh* Kings, and particularly *Chriſtian* II. are buried in this Town. Their Beer is extraordinary good, and their Linen not inferior to any in *Holland*.

Nibourg lies on the narroweſt Paſſage of the *Great Belt*, betwixt *Fubnen* and *Zeeland*. *Chriſtian* III. firſt fortified it in 1546, and incloſ'd the Caſtle within its Works. It was a ſtrong Place; but the Breaches made in the Curtain and in the Caſtle during the laſt War with *Sweden*, are not yet repair'd. The Fortifications are better towards the Sea. It ſtands in a very fine Country, and has an excellent Port, which occaſions ſome Trade. It was formerly the Reſidence of the *Daniſh* Kings, and is famous for a Victory the *Danes* gained near it over the *Swedes* in 1659.

Schwinburg lies on the S. Side of the Iſland, over againſt the Iſle of *Langeland*. It is a pleaſant Town, and famous for the Paſſage of the *Swediſh* Forces over the Ice to *Zeeland* in 1658.

Aſſens lies S. W. from *Odenſee*, on the Streight of the *Little Belt*, near this Town. In 1535, King *Chriſtian* IIId's Army, commanded by *John Rantzau*, routed that commanded by *Chriſtopher* Earl of *Oldenburg*, and killed *Guſtavus Trolle* Archbiſhop of *Upſal*. *Rantzau* afterwards levelled this Town to the Ground.

Middlefor or *Midleſor*, is a ſmall but neat Town, in a Country abounding with all Neceſſaries: It lies on the *Leſſer Belt*, which is frequently called the *Streights of Midleſor*, 24 *Engliſh* Miles W. from *Odenſee*. This is the narroweſt Paſſage of the *Belt*, being no broader than the *Thames* at *Gravеſend*. In 1658, *Charles Guſtavus* led his Army over the Ice to this Place, routed the *Daniſh* Forces that oppoſ'd him, and made himſelf Maſter of the Iſland of *Fubnen*.

Geographers have plac'd an imaginary Town, called *Sophiendde*, 7 Miles N. E. from *Midleſor*; on the *Belt*, over againſt *Friderichſodde*; but the Travels into *Denmark* in 1692, aſſure us, there never was any ſuch Town.

Foborg or *Woborg*, on the S. Part of the Iſland, N. W. from *Schwinburg*, at the Bottom of a Bay, was formerly burnt by the Army of *Chriſtian* III.

Other ISLES *are*,

ARROE, which lies S. from *Fubnen*, is fertile in Corn, and abounds with Anniſe-Seed, with which they ſeaſon their Meat and Bread. It produces Plenty of Black Cattle and Horſes. It has 7 Pariſhes, and depended formerly on the Dutchy of *Sleſwick*; but was united to the Crown in the laſt Age. The only Town is *Roping*, on the S. of the Iſland, at the bottom of a Bay, and is a Place of ſome Trade, becauſe of its Port.

LANGLAND, ſo called from its Length, which is about 30 *Engliſh* Miles. Its greateſt Breadth is not above 12. It contains 16 Pariſhes, and abounds with Wheat, Rye, and Barley, of which it exports great Quantities Yearly. The moſt conſiderable Towns are, 1. *Rudkoping*, a large Town on the W. Side of the Iſle, over againſt *Schwinburg* in *Fubnen*. 2. *Tranekier*, N. from *Rudkoping*, is a good Fortreſs, where the King of *Denmark* keeps a ſtrong Garriſon.

LALLAND lies S. Eaſt from *Langland*, S. from *Zeeland*, and S. W. from *Falſter*. It is all low Ground, and from thence has its Name. 'Tis about 20 *Engliſh* Miles long, and 12 broad. It produces all ſorts of Corn in abundance, and particularly Wheat, with which

Digitized by Google

which it supplies *Copenhagen*, and other Places of the Kingdom. The *Dutch* ship off great Quantities of Corn from hence every Year. It is a Principal Government, called a *Stifts-ampt*, and has several of the leſſer Iſles under its Juriſdiction. It conſiſts of 4 Heriots or Lordſhips, and has the following Towns, *viz.* 1. *Naſchow*, on the Bottom of a Bay on the W. Side of the Iſland, a large and well fortified Place. It was ſtorm'd, burnt and taken by the *Lubeckers*, in 1510. 2. *Maribo*, in the middle of the Iſle, on a Lake, and had formerly a famous Nunnery. 3. *Nyſted*, on the S. of the Iſland, a large Town, once famous for a Noble Monaſtery built here in 1286. This Iſland is noted for being the Birth-place of *Nicholas Hemmingius*.

FALSTER, lies E. from *Laland*, from which it is ſeparated by a narrow Streight called *Gulber-Sound*, and S. from *Zeeland*, from which 'tis ſeparated by the *Grone-Sound*. It abounds with Barley, Wheat, *&c.* which Strangers export; is 16 *Engliſh* Miles in Length, and 8 in Breadth: The chief Towns are, 1. *Nykoping*, which has a ſtrong Caſtle, and a well frequented Harbour, a pleaſant Situation, and uniform Buildings. 2. *Stolecoping*, on the N. of the Iſle, a Place of ſome Trade, being a Thorowfare betwixt *Zeeland* and *Germany*.

MONA, lies N E. from *Falſter*, from which it is ſeparated by the *Grone-Sound*, and S. S. E. from *Zeeland*. It produces little Corn, but has good Paſture. The Soil is chalky and high, and a good Land-Mark to the *German* Veſſels that trade in thoſe Seas. It was formerly Part of the *Daniſh* Admiral's Allowance, as being a Place the fitteſt of any in the King's Dominions for him to reſide in. *Steg* or *Steka* is the only Town of Note here: It lies on the N. of the Iſland, on a little Rivulet, that falls a Mile below it into the Streight called *Grone-Sound*, which ſeparates it from *Zeeland*. It made a brave Defence againſt the *Lubeckers* in 1510, and forc'd them to retreat. In 1659, they made a better Defence againſt the *Swedes* than greater Places had done.

SALTHOLM, lies E. from *Amack*, near the Coaſts of *Schonen*, over againſt *Malmo*. The Author of the Travels into *Denmark* in 1702, obſerves, That *De Witt's* Maps and others make this Iſle larger than *Huen*; thô the Inhabitants told him, it was but a ſixth Part ſo big.

ALSEN, is a ſmall Iſle over againſt the Bay of *Flensburg*, in the Dutchy of *Sleſwick*, of which it is a Part, and lies S. W. from *Fuhnen*. It has 13 Pariſhes, is exceeding fruitful, and ſo populous, that many Thouſands of Fighting Men have been levied in a ſhort Time here. *Rantzaw*, a *Daniſh* Antiquary, is poſitive that the *Eliſii*, *Arii*, and *Manimi* of *Tacitus*, were the Inhabitants of thoſe 3 Iſlands, *viz.* *Alſen*, *Aaroe*, and *Moen* or *Meun*. The chief Town is *Sunderborg*, a large City, with a ſtrong Caſtle, on the Canal that ſeparates *Alſen* from the Continent of *Jutland*. The Bailiwick of this Name is an Appanage of the Duke of *Holſtein-Sunderborg*. *Nordborg* lies on the N. of the Iſland, and belongs to the Duke of *Holſtein-Nordburg*.

FEMEREN, is a ſmall Iſland on the Coaſt of *Wagria*, N. from *Oldenburg*, and S. from *Laland*. It has always been looked upon as one of the Keys of *Denmark* with reſpect to the Empire: Therefore *Chriſtian* IV. was more afraid of the *Germans* becoming Maſters of this Iſland, than of their overrunning *Jutland*, which made him fortify all the old Caſtles, and put ſtrong Gariſons into every Place of Importance here. There are ſeveral Iſles of leſs Note betwixt the moſt Northerly Promontory of *Jutland*, called Cape *Scagen*, and *Fuhnen*, *viz.* *Anholt* in the *Categate*, *Leſſow*, E. of the Dioceſe of *Aalbourg*; *Neding*, *Hertzholm*, *Katholm*, *Jordholm*, *Tune*, and *Samſoe*. The laſt lies N. of *Fuhnen*, has *Zeeland* on the S. and the Coaſts of *Jutland* on the W. *Chriſtian* V. made *Mote*, his Concubine, a Citizen's Daughter of *Copenhagen*, who bore him two natural Sons, Counteſs of this Iſland. It abounds with Cattle and Corn, and is ſo pleaſant, that it is called the *Samos* of the North. *Wero* lies N. E. from *Samſoe*, and *Spro* lies in the Streight of the *Great Belt*, N. from *Laland*.

BORNHOLM, the moſt Eaſterly of all the Iſlands belonging to the King of *Denmark*, lies 20 *Engliſh* Miles E. S. E. of the Province of *Schonen*. It belong'd formerly to the Archbiſhops of *Lunden*; but in the beginning of the 16th Century, *Chriſtian* II. took it from them, on Pretence that it was neceſſary for his Naval Preparations againſt

Digitized by Google

Sweden. The *Swedes* have frequently laid it waſte; and in the War with *Frederick* II. they made themſelves Maſters of it, and deſign'd to keep it; but were obliged to reſtore it by the Treaty of *Copenhagen*, *May* 27, 1660. *Nex* is a large Town, on the S. W. of the Iſland, well fortified, and has a ſtrong Caſtle. *Rattenby* lies N. N. E. from *Nex*, and has a good Fortreſs or Citadel, fortified after the modern Way, which commands the beſt Road in the Iſland. It was finiſhed in 1689, and has good Baſtions and Outworks. This Iſland is 28 *Engliſh* Miles long, and 8 broad.

CHRISTIAN's-OYE, are a Number of little Iſlands, which lie about 7 *Engliſh* Miles N. W. from *Bornholm*. They encloſe a ſafe Harbour for 30 Sail. The largeſt Iſle is in Form of a Creſcent, and is well fortified. There are 90 Iſlands belonging to the Dioceſe of *Fubnen*, moſt of which are habitable and fertile; but thoſe we have deſcrib'd are the moſt remarkable.

JUTLAND,

IS Part of the ancient *Cimbrica Cherſoneſus*, ſo called from the *Cimbri*, who ſettled here after their Defeat by *Marius*, formerly mentioned; is the biggeſt and moſt conſiderable Part of the King of *Denmark*'s Dominions, and amounts to about Two-Thirds of the Whole. It is bounded on the W. and N. by the *German* Ocean, on the N. E. by the *Categat* or *Schager-Raak*, on the E. by the *Leſſer Belt*, or *Midleſor-Sound* and the *Baltick*, and on the S. by the River *Eyder*, which ſeparates it from *Holſtein*. *Buno* ſays, the Length of it from N. to S. is 212 *Engliſh* Miles, and the broadeſt Place is not above 90. Moſt Authors agree, That *Jutland* has about 950 Pariſhes, and the Dutchy of *Sleſwick* 280. This is a plentiful Country, and abounds with Cattle, but wants good Ports. The *Dutch* tranſport Yearly great Quantities of their lean Black Cattle to their own more fertile Soil, where they fatten in a ſhort Time. The Horſes and Hogs of this Country are good, and numerous. It affords enough of Corn for the Natives. The Land is moſt fertile near the Coaſts; for the Inland is full of Heaths, Lakes and Woods.

This great Province is divided into *North* and *South Jutland*. The laſt is otherwiſe called the Dutchy of *Sleſwick*, and is ſeparated from *North Jutland* by the River *Ripe*.

NORTH JUTLAND is divided into 4 Dioceſes, which are thoſe of *Aalbourg* or *Alborg*, *Wiborg*, *Arhuſen*, and *Ryben*. This Country is larger and better Peopled than the Dutchy of *Sleſwick*.

AALBOURG, is ſo called from the Multitude of Eels taken in the Gulph of *Lymford*, which bounds this Dioceſe on the S. and S. W. It is otherwiſe called the Dioceſe of *Burglaw*. It ends in a ſmall Point on the N. N. E. Its Length from N. W. to N. E. is about 100 *Engliſh* Miles. The N. Part of it is called *Wenſyſſel*, and by Latin Authors *Vandalia*, which makes ſome think that 'twas the Seat of the *Vandals*. The Inhabitants are the hardieſt of the King of *Denmark*'s Subjects. This Dioceſe has 13 High Courts of Judicature, 180 Pariſhes, 6 Cities, and 18 Noblemen's Houſes. The chief Town is *Seagen*, which lies on the Promontory betwixt the *Norwegian* and *Baltick* Sea. It is more frequented by Merchants from all Parts of *Europe* than any other Town in *Jutland*, becauſe they touch here in their Way thrô the *Sound*. Its Trade would be far greater, were it not for the dangerous Coaſt it lies on.

Wenſyſſel is 12 *Engliſh* Miles N. W. from *Alborg*, on a River, which ſome Miles below falls into the Bay or Gulph of *Limford*.

Alborg, called alſo *Ælburgum*. The Biſhoprick was founded here in 1065 by *Sueno Eſtheritb*, and the Biſhops have reſided in this Place ſince 1540. It ſtands 15 *Engliſh* Miles from the *Baltick*, on the Gulph of *Limford*, which runs more than 100 Miles W. from the *Baltick* towards the *German* Ocean, from which it is ſeparated by a narrow Iſthmus made by Sand-Hills on the W. Shore of *Jutland*, over againſt the great Shoal call'd *Jutſche Riff*.

Nikioping is ſituated in the Iſle of *Mors*, which is made by the Gulph of *Limford*, and is a conſiderable Town.

Tyſted lies on the S. W. Part of this Dioceſe, 45 *Engliſh* Miles W. from *Alborg*, in the middle of the Peninſula, made by the *German* Ocean, and the Gulph of *Limford*, which is the moſt fruitful Place of this District.

Digitized by Google

ſtrict. It has a ſort of an Univerſity, which was formerly a Free-School, founded by *Chriſtian* III.

The Dioceſe of WIBOURG,

Has that of *Alborg* on the N. from which it is ſeparated by the Gulph of *Limford*, the Dioceſe of *Ripen* on the W. S. W. and S. and that of *Arhuſen* on the E. and S. E. Woods, Mountains and Lakes, abound here, ſo that it is not ſo fertile as the other two Dioceſes. Its Length from W. to E. is 48 *Engliſh* Miles. It has 218 Pariſhes, 3 Caſtles, and as many Cities. It has 10 Rivulets, of which the moſt noted is *Gudden*. It has many Lakes, which communicate with the Gulph of *Limford*. This occaſions ſome Trade in this Country. The chief City is

Wibourg, anciently the Capital of the *Cimbri*, and then called *Cimmersberg*, as was ſaid before. It is not ſo certain why it changed its Name: Some think it was the Seat of Pyrates, who were then called *Wigis* in the old *Daniſh* Tongue. It ſtands in the middle of *Jutland*, near a Branch of the Gulph of *Limford*, 130 *Engliſh* Miles N. from *Slefwick*, 35 N. W. from *Aarhur*, and 35 S. from *Aalbourg*. It is a Place of great Reſort, being the Seat of a High Court of Judicature, to which Appeals are made from Inferior Courts; but none from it, except to the King. It has been the Seat of a Biſhop for above 600 Years, and their Biſhop debates Precedency with him of *Aalbourg*.

Scheve or *Schiffnuis*, on the ſame Gulph, W. from *Wibourg*, has the Reputation of breeding the beſt Horſes in the North. The Peninſula of *Soling* is ſurrounded on all Sides by the ſame Gulph, except towards the S. and is the moſt noted Place in *Denmark* for fine Horſes, which are exported by Foreigners. The Old *Solingi* of *Ptolomy* had their Seat here.

Nybe lies on the ſame Gulph, 8 *Engliſh* Miles W. from *Aalbourg*, and is alſo noted for a good Breed of Horſes.

The Dioceſe of RYPEN,

Contains 30 Bailiwicks, 282 Pariſhes, 10 Caſtles belonging to the King, 100 Noblemen's Seats, and 7 Cities. It has, according to *Jonas Coldingenſis*, a Part of the Dioceſe of *Alborg* on the N. that of *Wibourg* on the N. E. that of *Arhuſen* on the E. the Dutchy of *Slefwick* on the S. and the *German* Ocean on the W. Its Length from the N. W. to S. E. is about 95 *Engliſh* Miles; the greateſt Breadth not above 60, and in ſome Places towards the N. W. not 20. In this Dioceſe was found the famous Golden Veſſel in Shape of a Horn, formerly mentioned. *Wormius* ſays, it was found on the 20th of *July*, 1639. by a poor Girl paſſing by *Oſterby*, a Village near *Tunderup*, for which the King rewarded her. He ſays, it is 2 *Roman* Feet and 5 Inches long: The Diameter of the larger End is 4 Inches, and that of the leſſer 1½. It contains 2 Quarts and a half, and weighs 99 Ounces and 2 Drams. The Gold of it is incomparably fine. There are many Hieroglyphical Figures engraven upon it, which *Wormius* undertook to explain at the Deſire of the King, and thinks they are all ſignificant, and contain Leſſons of Morality. The Age of this precious Horn cannot be well determin'd; but he concludes, that it was made before Chriſtianity was received in *Denmark*; and conjectures that it may be as old as the Reign of *Frotho the Great*, who Reign'd about the Time of our Saviour's Birth, becauſe this King was vaſtly rich, and a great Enemy to Robbers, of whom he freed the Country, and us'd to lay valuable Things in the High-way, which if ſtole, the Governor of that Diſtrict was obliged to make good. He thinks this Horn might be laid down on that Deſign, and in Time cover'd with Mud and Earth. *Fortunius Licetus* is of the ſame Opinion: But the Probability of this we leave to the Reader. *Wormius* ſays, this Province is not inferior to any other of *Jutland* for Corn and Paſture.

Rypen, the chief City, lies on the River *Nidſau*, which divides it into 3 Parts, and gives Occaſion to the City's Arms, which are 3 Lions. The River falls into the *German* Ocean 3 *Engliſh* Miles below it, where it makes a good Port, more frequented than any in *Jutland*. This City is in the S. W. Part of the Dioceſe, 20 *Engliſh* Miles W. from *Hatterſleben* in *Slefwick*, 40 N. W. from *Flensburg*, and 30 S. W. from *Colding*. The Biſhoprick was founded in 980 by *Harold* King of *Denmark*; but the Church, which is

Digitized by Google

is of hewn Stone, and an admirable Structure, was built in 848, by *Erick* II. whom St. *Anſgar* converted. The Steeple is of a great Height, and ſerves for a Land-mark to Ships that ſail along this dangerous Coaſt. It has a ſort of Univerſity, and a good Caſtle. The *Swedes* took it in 1645; but it was retaken by the *Danes*.

Colding is an old City, mentioned by *Ptolemy*: It lies on a River that falls into the Gulph of *Colding*, which *De Ville*, Author of the Travels into *Denmark* in 1702, obſerves to be wrong laid down in Maps, for they make it too round at Bottom. *Erick Glipping* is ſaid to have been the Founder of this City in 1268; and fortified it with ſtrong Walls and good Ditches, becauſe it was a Frontier Town; for the *Daniſh* Dominions reach'd no further S. at that Time. *Chriſtian* III. was ſo taken with its pleaſant Situation and healthful Air, that he uſually reſided here. He rebuilt the Caſtle of *Arnſburg*, which commands the Town, and died here *Jan.* 1. 1559. The Caſtle is a large Brick Building, conſiſting of 4 main Parts, plaiſter'd over without, and forms a Court, which is not very ſquare. This Town has only 100 or 120 Houſes, and is more conſiderable on the Account of its Bridge, called *Brobarrit*, than any thing elſe, becauſe a great Part of the King of *Denmark*'s Revenue comes from the Toll paid for the Black Cattle and Horſes that come from *Jutland*, and muſt paſs this Bridge; each of which pays a Crown. The King has Stables for fine Horſes on the other Side of the Bridge, and an Academy for riding the great Horſe. Thô this Town lies commodiouſly for Trade on the *Little Belt*, over againſt *Middlefar* in *Fuhnen*, yet they have none but in Cattle. They have good Fiſh, and excellent Eels, in that River, which runs by the Town, and ſeparates *North-Jutland* from *Slefwick*. It is 15 *Engliſh* Miles S. W. from *Fredericks-Odde* or *Fredericia*, 30 N. E. from *Ripen*, and 60 N. from *Slefwick*.

Fredericks-Odde has been a well fortified Town, being a Paſs over the *Little Belt* or *Middlefar-Sound*. It was built by *Frederick* III. of *Denmark*, and is well ſeated, on a Point of Land with an eaſie Deſcent to the Seaward. The Works are very high on the Land-ſide. On the other Side of the Point there are 8 Baſtions. It has two Gates, and before each a Ravelin, but ruinous. Towards the Sea the Fortifications are lower, and of a greater Extent, where there are Baſtions, Platforms, and ſome Batteries on the Shore. Thoſe Fortifications incloſe a great deal of Ground; but the 5th Part of it is not inhabited, for there are many Corn-Fields and Orchards within the Walls. All the Fortifications are now going to Decay. This Place was formerly a Refuge to Bankrupts, Jews, and ſuch People; but the preſent King has recall'd thoſe Privileges. Here are two Churches; one *Daniſh*, and the other *German*; but they have no Steeples. In 1658, it was taken by *Charles Guſtavus*'s Troops, commanded by *Wrangel*; and the Garriſon of 2000 Men were all kill'd or taken. This open'd a Way for the King of *Sweden* to undertake his Expedition over the Ice from this Place to *Fuhnen*, where the Paſſage over the *Belt* is about 3 *Engliſh* Miles. In 1659, the *Swedes* burnt and demoliſh'd this Town.

Weil is 25 *Engliſh* Miles N. W. from *Fredericksi-Odde*, as many N. from *Colding*, and is ſeated on a River which falls into a great Bay, that communicates with the *Leſſer Belt*. It has a good Harbour, and the City is neat and well built, thô not large.

Warde lies on a River that falls into the *German* Ocean 10 *Engliſh* Miles below the Town. It is commodiouſly ſeated for Trade, is 32 *Engliſh* Miles W. from *Weil*, and 18 N. from *Ripen*.

Ringkoping, 32 *Engliſh* Miles N. from *Warde*, lies on a Bay of the *German* Ocean, made by a Tongue of Land 30 Miles in Length from N. to S. ſo that Ships ride ſafe in the Port from all Winds.

Lemwick lies on the Gulph of *Limford*, from whence it is named, on the N. W. Borders of this Dioceſe, 10 *Engliſh* Miles E. from the *German* Ocean. *Hodſelbro*, 15 *Engliſh* Miles S. E. from *Lemwick*, lies on a River which communicates with the *German* Ocean by a Lake, into which the River falls.

The Dioceſe of ARHUSEN.

The *Germans* call it *Das Stift Arhuſen*: It has *Otto's-Sound*, or the *Little Belt*, on the S. E. and E. the *Categat* on the N. E. the Dioceſe of *Alborg* on the N. that of *Wiborg* on the W. and that of *Ripen* on the S. and

and S. W. *Jonas Coldingenſis* ſays, it has 3 Bailiwicks, 304 Pariſhes, and 5 Caſtles. Its Length from S. to N. is 60 Miles; but is not above 32 where broadeſt. It is fruitful in Corn, and has abundance of Game.

Arhuſen, the chief Town, lies on the Mouth of the River *Gude*, which a little below falls into the Sea. *Jonas Coldingenſis* ſays, it has been a Biſhop's See ſince 1014. The Cathedral is a neat Building; but the Biſhop's Palace is ruinous. In 1644, it was burnt by the *Swedes*. It has a good Trade, and lies over againſt the Iſle *Samſoe*, 45 *Engliſh* Miles N. E. from *Colding*, 34 S. E. from *Wiborg*, 50 S. from *Alborg*, and 25 N. from *Fulnen*.

Scanderburg is a good Fortreſs, near the Spring of the *Gudden*.

Horſens lies 20 Miles S. from *Arhuſen*, on a River that falls into the *Leſſer Belt*.

Randers, on the *Gudden* or *Gude*, 15 Miles N. from *Arhuſen*, near a Bay that communicates with the *Categate*, is a Place of good Trade, and famous for the beſt Salmon in *Jutland*. Other Towns are, 1. *Hobro*, alſo on a Bay that communicates with the *Categate*, and N. from *Randers*. 2. *Mariager*, on the S. Side of the ſame Bay. 3. *Ernia*, a Caſtle on the *Categate*. 4. *Ebelſtad*, S. from it, on the Bottom of another Bay that alſo communicates with the *Categate*.

SOUTH JUTLAND, or the Dutchy of SLESWICK.

HAS on the N. E. the *Little Belt*, on the E. and S. E. the *Baltick*, on the S. the Dutchy of *Holſtein*, from which it is ſeparated by the *Eider*; on the W. the *German* Ocean, and on the N. the Dioceſe of *Ripen*. Its Length, from *Chriſtianpris* on the S. E. Part, to *Ripen* on the N. W. Borders, is about 70 *Engliſh* Miles, and its greateſt Breadth not above 40.

This Dutchy is an ancient Dependance of the Crown of *Denmark*; for in 1028, *Nicolaus* I. gave it to his Nephew *Canute*, the Son of *Erick*, ſirnamed *Ejegod*. In 1338, *Margaret* Queen of *Denmark* gave it to the Counts of *Holſtein*, and their Succeſſors, together with the Iſlands of *Femeren*, *Alſen*, and *Arroe*; but their Poſterity failing in 1459, *Chriſtian* I. united it to the Crown of *Denmark*, and now it is divided betwixt the King of *Denmark* and the Dukes of *Holſtein-Gottorp*, *Holſtein-Glucksbourg*, *Holſtein-Sunderbourg*, and *Holſtein-Nordbourg*. The Intereſts and Juriſdictions of the King of *Denmark* and the Duke of *Holſtein-Gottorp* are ſo intermix'd, that in Time of War, the People know not which to obey. In ſome Towns and Bailiwicks, they divide the Revenues, and jointly elect the Magiſtrates. In others, the King and Duke elect by Turns every Year. This Province is divided into 22 Parts, viz. the Bailiwicks or Præfectures of *Gottorp*, *Chriſtianspreſt*, *Eiderſtedt*, *Huſum*, *Flensbourg*, *Gluckſtadt*, *Sanderburg*, *Nordbourg*, *Apenrade*, *Tondern*, *Lohm*, and *Hoderſtebe*.

The Bailiwick of GOTTORP.

Sleſwick, the chief Town, lies on the River *Sley*, which falls into the *Baltick* 6 Miles lower. *Adamus Bremenſis*, who liv'd about 1100, tells us, it was anciently called *Heithobu*, and in his Time was a populous and rich City. The modern Name comes from the River upon which it lies. In the Infancy of Navigation, Goods were brought up the *Eider* by Boats to *Holinſtede*, and from thence by Land to *Sleſwick*, where they were ſhip'd and exported to *Zeeland*, *Fulnen*, and other Places on the *Baltick*. This City was converted by means of *Erick* the *Boiru* about 800. In 1064, the *Sclavonians* invaded this Country, re-eſtabliſh'd Paganiſm, and built a Temple to their Idols, the Ruins of which are to be ſeen near this Place; but the *Danes* ſoon drove them out. The *Angles*, a powerful and trading People in thoſe Bounds, built the Church of the *Holy Ghoſt*, with a Hoſpital near the Market-Place. *Otho* I. made this Place a Biſhop's See. It belongs to the Duke of *Holſtein-Gottorp*, lies 60 *Engliſh* Miles N. from *Lubeck*, and as many from *Hamburg*.

Geltingen is the principal Town of a ſmall Country, anciently the Seat of the *Angles*, who came from the Dutchy of *Mekklenburg*. It lies 20 *Engliſh* Miles N. E. from *Sleſwick*, near the *Baltick*.

Gottorp lies alſo on the River *Sley*, and is the Reſidence of the Duke of that Name.

The

Digitized by Google

The Caſtle ſtands to the W. of the Gulph of *Sleſwick*, in the middle of a little Lake; is built in a long ſquare Form, fortified with 4 Baſtions of Earth; and the Bottom is pav'd with Free-ſtone; the Curtains are long, and the Sides ſtand N. and S. We approach the Caſtle by a Bridge which joins it to the S. Shore. The Firſt is commanded by a Mountain that ſtands N. E. of it; from whence the *Danes* annoyed the Caſtle in 1675, when the Duke was treacherouſly ſurpris'd by the K. of *Denmark* at *Rensburg*. As we enter the Court, there's a Tennis-Court on the Left, and Stables on the Right. The Duke before his Death had deſign'd to rebuild the Caſtle; the Front is finiſh'd, and if the whole had been compleated, it had been one of the fineſt Palaces in the *Europe*. A Rampart encompaſſes the Firſt Court, and the Caſtle-Gate is of very fine blue Stone as hard as Marble, with a Lanthorn over it that has 27 Lights. On the N. Side of the Caſtle there is a Bridge of 200 Paces over the Lake, and at the End of the Bridge there is a Walk between Rows of Trees that lead to the Garden, in which there are many fine Water-works and Caſcades. On the Left there is a Baſon or Fiſh-Pond 200 Paces ſquare, with Rows of Trees on all Sides, except on the N. They have alſo fine Arbours on the Sides of the Pond, and in the middle a *Hercules* of a Monſtrous Size, repreſented with his Club going to kill the *Lernean Hydra*, out of every Part of which the Water plays. In every Corner of the Pond there are Statues, which form Caſcades. On the N. there's a Parterre in Form of a Creſcent, divided into ſeveral Compartiments, with Niches round, containing the Buſts of many Kings and modern Princes. There are alſo the Repreſentations of many fabulous Animals that throw Water. At the End of the Walk there's a ſmall Room, where there's a Globe made by the famous *Tycho Brahe*, ſo contriv'd, that by Mechaniſm it repreſents his Syſtem of the World. There is another admirable Globe of Copper, 10 Foot in Diameter, ſo contriv'd, that by Wheels mov'd by Water, it repreſents the Motions of the Heavenly Bodies. Before this Houſe, there is a Level Ground 50 Paces long, and three times as broad, divided into 3 Parts: Thoſe on the two Sides have fine Parterres; and that in the middle has a great Baſon in the Center with Water-Works. The next Terras is higher; the whole is enclos'd with green Pales as high as each Terras, with Buſts all round. On the higheſt Terras there is the fineſt Proſpect in the World, *viz.* the Caſtle in the Front, in the middle of a Lake ſurrounded with a charming Country, and a fine Plain before it. On the Left there is a great Orangery, where they have alſo *Indian* Trees, Mirtles, Pomegranates, and others in Boxes. The Park is very fine, about 4 *Engliſh* Miles in Circumference, and full of Fallow Deer and Stags. *Gottorp* is well fortified, and a Toll is paid here for great Numbers of Black Cattle that paſs from *Jutland* to *Germany*. It lies very near *Sleſwick*, and 25 *Engliſh* Miles N. W. from *Kiel*.

Eiklenford, 14 Miles S. E. from *Sleſwick*, is ſo nam'd from the abundance of Squirrels there, has a good Port in the bottom of a Bay on the *Baltick*, and a conſiderable Trade.

Chriſtianspreiſs is the Capital of a Bailliwick of that Name, which borders on the Dutchy of *Holſtein*, and is divided betwixt the King of *Denmark* and the Duke of *Holſtein*. This City is ſituated on a Gulph of the *Baltick*, at the Entrance of the Haven of *Kiel*, which belongs to the Duke of *Holſtein*, and is commanded by a Caſtle, that was built in 1637 by *Chriſtian* IV. of *Denmark*. It has about 500 Houſes, and two Gates, defended with ſtrong Works. The *Eider* ſerves for a Ditch, and makes it unacceſſible; and where the River grows narrower, they have built a fine Half-Moon in the Water, with Port-holes for 16 Pieces of Cannon; but *Jaillot*'s Map makes the *Eider* two Miles diſtant from it. *Chriſtianhagen* is a Village belonging to the King, as alſo *Gottorp*.

The Bailliwick of *Eiderſtete* lies on the *German* Ocean, and is ſo nam'd from the *Eider*. *Tunningen*, the chief Town, is ſmall, lies on the *Eider*, and is 16 *Engliſh* Miles from the Ocean. The *Dutch* frequent it to buy Black Cattle. It is the ſtrongeſt Town belonging to the Duke. The Fortifications conſiſt of 5 Baſtions, with Ravelins before the Curtains, a very large and deep

Digitized by Google

deep Ditch, and a fine Glacis The *Eider* ſtrengthens it much on one Side, and fills a large Canal, which makes a Port capable of receiving great Ships. The Ramparts of the Town are good. The Gariſon conſiſts of 2000 Foot. The Houſes are built with Brick, and very neat. The Inhabitants have one Church, and the Gariſon another. The Country about is fertile and populous.

The Bailiwick of *Huſum* lies N. from that of *Eiderſtette*, and belongs to the Duke. The chief Town, of the ſame Name, lies on a Gulph, at the Mouth of a ſmall River that falls into the Ocean, where pretty large Veſſels come up to the Bridge that joins the Town to the Bailiwick of *Eiderſtette*. The Duke has a Palace here of Freeſtone. This Town is well Peopled, and has a good Trade, is 20 *Engliſh* Miles S. W. from *Flensburg*, and 10 N. E. from *Tonningen*.

Frederickſtadt was built by Duke *Frederick*. It lies on a ſmall River call'd the *Trenn*, that falls near it into the *Eider*. The *Trenn*, at high Water, carries Barks of 50 Tuns. That Duke Peopled it with *Hollanders*, and granted them great Privileges. The Houſes are built after the *Dutch* Way. All Sorts of Religions are tolerated here. The Town is ſquare, ſurrounded with a large Canal, and planted with Rows of Trees. It is divided into two Parts by another Canal, with Trees on the Sides. The *Lutheran* Church is built of Brick, and neat. The Duke keeps 3 Companies of Foot in Gariſon. It lies 6 *Engliſh* Miles N. E. from *Tonningen*.

The Bailiwick of *Flensburg* belongs to the King. and lies on the *Baltick*, N. from that of *Gottorp*. The chief Town, of the ſame Name, is on the Bottom of a Bay of the *Baltick*, that makes a very fine Haven, where the greateſt Ships may ride ſafe, and come up to their Houſes. On the Land-ſide it is encompaſſed with Mountains, that ſhelter it from Winds, and ſupply it with Water.

There is a Mountain adjoining to one Part of the Suburbs, on which there is a Caſtle, which commands the Gulph on that Side. The *Danes* think this Town, next to *Copenhagen*, the biggeſt in the Kingdom; but *De Ville* ſays, that *Elſingor* is larger. It is 36 *Engliſh* Miles S. from *Colding*, and 15 N. from *Sleſwick*. The Country about *Flensburg* is called the Diſtrict of *Angelen* or *Engeland*, which was the Country of the *Engliſh Saxons*, that conquer'd the S. Parts of *Britain*.

The Bailiwick of *Glucksburg* joins to the former, lies alſo on the *Baltick*, and belongs to the Duke of *Holſtein Glucksburg*. The chief Town is on the ſame Gulph with *Flensburg*, but not conſiderable.

The Bailiwick of *Apenrade* lies W. from the Iſle of *Alſen*, and belongs to the Duke of *Holſtein-Gottorp*. The chief Town is of the ſame Name, has a Port on the Bottom of a Bay in the *Baltick*, and a great Trade with the *Daniſh* Iſles.

The Bailiwick of *Tunder* is W. from *Apenrade*, on the Ocean, and is compos'd of firm Land and Iſles. *Tunder*, the chief Town, lies on the River *Bre*, belongs to the Duke of *Holſtein*, is large, ſtands well for Trade, and has a fine Church, full of Pictures and Ornaments.

The Iſle of *Amrom*, on the Coaſt of that Bailiwick, belongs to the King. *Sylt*, another Iſle N. from it, belongs to the Duke. *Fer*, a 3d Iſland; the E. Part of it belongs to the Duke, and the W. Pare to the King.

The Bailiwick or Abbacy of *Lohm*, which is N. from *Tunderen*, belongs to the Duke, and has a ſmall Town of the ſame Name N. N. E. from *Tunder*.

The Bailiwick of *Hardeſtebe*, the moſt Northerly of any in the Dutchy of *Sleſwick*, belongs to the King. *Hatterſtebe* is a ſmall Town, but has a good Port on the *Little Belt*. The Iſles of *Marse* and *Rom* are N. W. from *Ripen*, and belong to the King. We refer the Deſcription of the King of *Denmark*'s Dominions in *Holſtein*, *Stormar*, *Ditmarſh*, and *Oldenburg*, to *Germany*.

Digitized by Google

CHAP. XX.

Of NORWAY.

MOST of the *Daniſh* Antiquaries think this Country had its Name from *Norus*, the Founder of the Kingdom; but they are not agreed who he was, or when he liv'd. *Adamus Cremenſis* calls it *Nordmannia*, thinks it to be the utmoſt Part of the World on that Side, and tells us, that it is bounded on the E. by the *Riphæan* Mountains. *Tandem in Riphæis Montibus Limitem fecit ubi & Ioſſus deficit Orbis.* Moſt think it is called *Norway*, *Northwege*, or *Norwege*, from its Northerly Situation.

It is bounded on the S. by the Entrance into the *Baltick*, call'd *Schagger Raak*, and on the W. and N. by the Northern Ocean. It is ſeparated from *Sweden* by a Ridge of unpaſſable Mountains, call'd by *Pliny*, *Sevo*, now the Mountains of *Daarfiel*.

It lies betwixt Lat. 57 and 72. and Long. 22 and 50. Their longeſt Day is two whole Months. The Length of this Country is computed at about 1600 Miles. and its greateſt Breadth about 300.

Of the AIR, SOIL, *&c.*

THE Cold is very intenſe here. Thoſe Mountains that divide it from *Sweden* are always cover'd with Snow, and violent cold Winds blow from 'em towards the Vallies, which makes 'em barren; but Southerly, and along the Weſtern Coaſt, the Air is more temperate, yet corrupted by the Putrifaction of a kind of Rats they call *Lemmer*, by which the People are infeſted with the Jaundice, and a Giddineſs in the Head that is dangerous to Strangers. Moſt of the Country is nothing but Rocks, Woods, and Mountains. In the Vallies they have a good Breed of Black Cattle, and of little Horſes, very ſwift, and capable of Fatigue.

Their Trade lies in Maſts, Deal-Boards, Pitch, Tar, Copper, Furs, Dry'd Fiſh, Train-Oil, Filberds, Butter, Tallow, Hides, and Cheeſe.

Their only remarkable Rivers are, the *Tino* towards the N. and the *Glama* in the S. of the Country, which carries Boats. The chief Mountains are thoſe of *Dan-fiel*, or the *Doſrine*, which the Natives divide into four Parts, *viz.* the *Fille Fiel*, *Doſre-Fiel*, *Rust-Fiel*, and *Skarſ-Fiel* ✿

Their HISTORY.

Jonas Ramus, their lateſt Hiſtorian, ſays, That the *Sitones* liv'd here without any Laws or Government, and were a kind of Giants, but civiliz'd by *Norus*, who liv'd, according to ſome, in the Year of the World 2910; but according to others, was cotemporary with *David* King of *Iſrael*. They ſay, That about *A. M.* 2960, *Woden* came from *Aſia*, and ſettled here. They alledge he was of *Trojan* Race, and ſucceeded by *Suibdager*, *Haquin*, and *Olo*, who was cotemporary with *Helgo* King of *Denmark*, *Godagneſtus*, *Hegnerus*, and *Hegnerus*, reign'd at the ſame Time in other Parts of *Norway*; and *Gewer*, *Helgo*, *Balder*, *Horlet*, and *Gerritus*, were afterwards King of *Norway* at one and the ſame Time. In the Time of *Rorick Slongebaand* King of *Denmark*, *Collerus* was King of *Norway*. In *A. M.* 3775, *Frogerus* reign'd, and was ſucceeded by *Frotho*. *A. M.* 3911, *Gotherus* reign'd. In 3960, *Frotho* was King, and ſucceeded by the following Kings one after another, *viz.* *Amundus*, *Alfus*, *Harldus*, *Agdenſis*, *Vikerus*, *Haquinus*, *Helgo*, *Hagboitus*, *Hetherus*, *Olaus*, *Vegetus*, *Omun-*

Digitized by Google

Omundus, *Sigwardus Ring*, *Sigwardus Ring* Junior, *Regnerus*, and *Lodbrog*, who was contemporary with *Charlemagne*. *Sigifordus* reign'd about *A. C.* 798. and, together with *Godefrid*, invaded *Holland*, the Sea-Coasts of *France*, and over-ran *Flanders*.

In 868, *Harold Harfager* was their sole King. *Romus* owns, that the *Norwegian* History before the Epocha is fabulous, and not much to be relied upon. He thinks, that till then they were rul'd by many petty Princes, and that the Government was interrupted by frequent Anarchies, which makes the Chronology of those Times so dark. *Harfager*'s Race continued Kings of *Norway* 500 Years, during which there was only one *Interregnum* of 4 Years betwixt the Reigns of *Gibbus* and *Magnus* IV. *Harfager* died in 931, and was succeeded by his Son *Erick Blodock*, who was banished because of his Cruelty in 933, and kill'd in a Battle in *England*.

Haquin Adelstone succeeded in 933, after the Expulsion of his Brother: He was educated by *Athelstan* the *Dane*, King of *England*, where he was converted, and essayed the Conversion of his Subjects, but in vain. He was killed by the Sons of *Erick Blodock*.

Harald Graefeld, the Son of *Erick Blodock*, succeeded in 960. He kill'd *Sigward*, call'd *Lade Jarl*, whose Son *Haquin* kill'd him in 975, and succeeded to the Throne. In his Time the Emperor *Otho* sent 30 Ships, commanded by Counts, to *Norway*, by whose Means a considerable Part of the Southerly Provinces were converted. He was a bad King, and was kill'd in 995 by his own Servant, when he fled from *Olaus Tryggonis*.

This *Tryggonis* was *Harfager*'s Nephew, and began his Reign in 996. He undertook the Conversion of *Iseland* and *Norway*, and was killed in a Sea-Fight in the *Baltick* in 1000.

St. *Olaus* succeeded him, and freed *Norway* from all Dependance on other Kingdoms. He propagated Christianity more generally than 'twas before; but by being too severe, he disoblig'd his Subjects, who being perswaded to rebel by *Canute* King of *Denmark*, he was forced to retire to *Sweden* in 1029. Next Year he levied Forces to regain his Kingdom; but was killed at *Stikbestad*.

Canute made his Son *Sueno* King, who upon the Return of *Magnus*, St. *Olaus*'s Son, fled to *Denmark*, and died there in 1035.

St. *Olaus*'s Son, called *Magnus the Good*, was declared King in 1034, and in 1042 was also made King of *Denmark*, according to an Agreement betwixt him and *Canute*, and gave the Administration to *Sueno Ulfonis*, who set up for himself; but was defeated in 3 Battles by *Magnus*, who died in 1047.

Harald Haardroade succeeded in 1049. He built the City of *Anslo*, had War with *Sueno* King of *Denmark*, and was killed in Battle in *England* in 1066.

His Son *Magnus* succeeded in 1067. His Brother *Harald Kyrre* govern'd one half of the Kingdom during *Magnus*'s Reign, and succeeded him in the whole when he died in 1069. *Harald* built the City of *Bergen*, finish'd the Church of *Drontheim*, which *Magnus the Good* and his Father had begun, and died in 1093.

Haquin, the Son of *Magnus*, succeeded to one Half of *Norway*, died the following Year, and was succeeded by

Magnus Barford, the Son of *Olaus*, who upon the Death of his Father, and his Predecessor *Haquin*, was King of all *Norway*. He invaded the Western Isles of *Scotland*, and appointed a Governor over them. He had War with the King of *Sweden* about the Boundaries of his Kingdom, and conquer'd a Part of *Iceland*, where he died in 1103.

After his Death, his 3 Sons, *Olaus*, *Sigwardus*, and *Osteinus*, reign'd together. *Olaus* died in 1116, and *Osteinus* in 1123. *Sigwardus* had many Wars abroad, and particularly in the *Holy Land*, from whence he returned, died in 1130, and was buried in St. *Helword*'s Church in *Anslo*.

Magnus Blinde and *Harald Gille* succeeded him. After they had reign'd peaceably a long Time, a Civil War happen'd betwixt them, wherein *Harald* was put to flight; but recruiting his Army, he defeated and took *Magnus* near *Bergen*, gelded him, put out one of his Eyes, and cut off one of his Legs; after which *Harald* died in 1136.

His 3 Sons, *Sigward*, *Ingo*, and *Osteinus*, succeeded; at first they liv'd peaceably together, and made War upon their Enemies, whom having subdued, they began a Civil War among themselves, in which *Sigward* was

Digitized by Google

killed at *Bergen* in 1155, and *Oſtenus* in 1157. *Ingo* was killed at *Aquſh* in 1161 by *Haquin*, *Ingward's* Son, who was alſo kill'd by *Ingo's* Party in a Sea-Fight in 1162.

Magnus, the Son of *Erling*, was made King, tho' he was not of the Royal Family. During his Minority, his Father had the Adminiſtration. In his Time there aroſe a ſtrong Faction, called the *Birkauers*, whom *Magnus* defeated, with their Leader; but at length was routed twice, expelled the Kingdom by them, and at laſt killed in 1183.

Sverus, the Son of *Sigward*, was firſt made King of the *Birkauers*, and after many Battles with *Erling* and *Magnus*, was at laſt made King of the whole, and died at *Bergen* in 1202.

His Son *Haquin* ſucceeded, and reign'd only two Years, when *Guthormus*, the Nephew of *Sverus*, was made King, tho' but 4 Years of Age, and died in 1205.

Ingo Baarſon ſucceeded him, had great Troubles from a Faction called the *Bagli*, was obliged to allow a Part of the Kingdom to *Philip* their Leader, to prevent a Civil War, and died in 1217.

Haquin ſucceeded when but 13 Years of Age, and quitted the 4th Part of the Kingdom to *Skulon*, his Father-in-Law, who rebelled, but was routed, which procured Quiet to the Kingdom. *Haquin* made War upon the Weſtern Iſles of *Scotland*, but died in the Expedition, and was buried at *Dronthein* in 1263.

His Son *Magnus* was declared King before his Father's Death: He was a peaceable and juſt Prince, and made good Laws, from whence he was called *Lagbetter*, or the Lawmender, and died in 1289.

Erick, his Son, ſucceeded: He had long Wars with the *Danes*, and died in 1299. His Brother *Haquin* continued the *Daniſh* War, and died in 1319. *Magnus*, *Erick's* Son, was declared King of *Norway* and *Sweden*, thô but 3 Years of Age. He added *Schonen* to his Dominions, and left the Adminiſtration of *Norway* to his Son *Haquin*. The *Swedes* rebelled, and impriſon'd him. His Son *Haquin* ranſom'd him in 1371, and he was drown'd in 1374.

Haquin, his Son, had a long War with the *Swedes*, married *Margaret*, Daughter to *Waldemar* K. of *Denmark*, and died in 1380.

His Son *Olaus* was declared King of *Denmark* in 1376, and after his Father's Death proclaimed alſo King of *Norway*. He died without Children in 1387. His Mother *Margaret*, by his Death, was left in Poſſeſſion of *Denmark* and *Norway*, and upon her Victory over *Albert* King of *Sweden*, was made Queen of that Kingdom; and from that Time *Norway* has been united to *Denmark*.

Of the Inhabitants, their Manners, Cuſtoms, &c.

WE refer the Account of the *Normans* to *France*, and of the *Lombards* to *Italy*. The old Inhabitants were the *Sitones*. *Pliny* calls their Country *Nerigmon*, which *Æthicus* miſtakes for *Noricum*. The *Bergi*, who according to *Pliny* dwelt over againſt *Thule*, ſeem to have given Name to the Town *Bergen*. The *Marksfinni* dwelt near the North Cape. *Paulus Diaconus* ſays, they liv'd on raw Fleſh, and were cloath'd with Skins undreſs'd.

The preſent Inhabitants are a hardy, laborious, and honeſt ſort of People, think themſelves better than the *Danes*, whom they deſpiſe, and in Deriſion call *Jutes*. They are ſtrong and couragious, and endure Hardſhips better than the *Danes*, being more accuſtomed to them, by reaſon of their barren Soil and cold Climate. The *Danes* think it politick to keep them under, and give them no Opportunity to exert their Strength, or to learn the Art of War: For that Reaſon they have gradually removed all their ancient Nobility. They are ſaid to be of a plain Temper, juſt in their Dealings, and civil to Strangers. They were anciently accounted great Pyrates, but not ſo now. They are good Seamen.

The Women are handſome, not ſo fat as their Men, and are reckon'd more witty.

The E. and N. E. Parts of this Country are but thinly Peopled, becauſe of the inacceſſible Rocks and craggy Mountains. They have no Towns, but generally live in Tents, and remove in Companies from one Place to another for hunting and fiſhing.

Their

Digitized by Google

Their Diet is Stock Fish, with coarse Butter and Cheese. Most of their Corn is imported. They have some Barley of their own.

Their GOVERNMENT.

THey had Kings of their own till 1387, as was said before; but now one of the King of *Denmark*'s natural Sons is usually their Viceroy, to whom Appeals are made from their Courts of Justice.

Their RELIGION.

ST. *Olaus*, in the 11th Century, introduc'd Christianity here, and drove out all the obstinate Pagans. In 1486, Pope *Innocent* VIII. gave Leave to the Priests of *Norway*, and others under the same Parallel, to celebrate the Communion in other Liquor than Wine, because they could not well have it. In 1523, this Country was reform'd from Popery, and Lutheranism introduc'd.

Their LANGUAGE.

IS in most Places the same with that of *Iseland*, which proves them to be of the same Original; but the Language in the civiliz'd Parts of the Country differs little from that of *Denmark*.

The DIVISION of Norway.

IT is divided into the Governments of *Aggerhus*, *Bergen*, *Drontheim*, and *Wardhuis*.

The Government of AGGERHUS.

HAS that of *Bergen* on the W. from which it is separated by vast Mountains, *Dalecarlia* on the E. the *Categate* on the S. and that of *Drontheim* on the N. Its Length from N. to S. is 360 Miles, and its Breadth 388. *Aggerhus* is more fertile than any of the other Governments. The chief Town is

Onslo, *Opslo*, or *Christiana*, so called from *Christian* IV. who rebuilt it in 1614. It lies on the Mouth of a River, that falls into a Bay which communicates with the *Baltick*, and is called the Bay of *Onslo*. It has a Castle, is a Bishop's See, and the Cathedral was dedicated to St. *Alward*. Here is kept the Sword of *Haquin*, one of their Kings: The Hilt is of Crystal, finely polish'd, and the Sword is very large, and of great Antiquity. The Vice-Roy resides here. In 1589, King *James* VI. of *Scotland*, and I. of *England*, was married at this Place with *Anne*, Daughter to *Frederick* II. of *Denmark*. It has a good Trade for Fir, Pitch, *&c.* Many Mackrels are caught here, and also much Pearl, of which *Henricus Arnaldi*, a *Dane*, gives the following Account: Their Shells are like those of Muscles, but larger, and the Fish like an Oyster, which produces a great Cluster of Eggs, like those of Craw-Fish, some white, and some black. These Eggs, when ripe, are cast our, and grow like the Shell from whence they came; but sometimes it happens that one or two of those Eggs stick fast to the Side of the Matrix, and is not voided with the rest; which being fed by the Fish, in Time they grow into Pearls of different Sizes, and imprint a Mark, both in the Fish and the Shell, of the same Figure with themselves. *Philosoph. Transact. N.* 101. *P.* 11. *Onslo* lies 120 *English* Miles E. from *Bergen*, and 150 N. from Cape *Skagen* in *Jutland*, in Lat. 60.

Aggerhus lies near *Onslo* to the W. on the Bottom of the same Bay, and gives Name to the whole Province. It has a strong Castle, and is memorable for the brave Defence it made against the *Swedes* in 1567, who were forced to retire from before it, after a Siege of 18 Months. It lies 60 *English* Miles N. W. from *Frederickstadt*.

Torsberg is a small Town, with a large Harbour, on the Bay of *Christiana*, 30 *English* Miles S. from *Onslo*. It has a good Trade, because of its Situation, and the neighbouring Mines of Copper and Iron. A Silver Mine was discover'd here in the Reign of *Christian* IV. but turns to no great Account. Mr. *Moldsworth* observes, That the

the Ports of this Country are ſo deep, that there is no Anchorage for Ships, and therefore its Coaſts are reckon'd the moſt dangerous of any in *Europe* to fall in with by Night, or in a Storm; ſo that if a Ship be driven on them, there is no eſcaping, the Shore being all along high Rocks, at the very Foot of which there is 200 Fathom Water.

Frederickſtadt, has its Name from *Frederick* II. who built it in the laſt Century. It lies on the *Categate*, where the River *Glammen* falls into it. This River has its Riſe in the *Doorfel* Mountains, and takes its Courſe Southward towards this Government.

Vlecktern is a ſmall Town, but has a good Port.

Skeen lies in the *Categate*, on the Mouth of the Bay of *Chriſtiana*, is famous for its Mines of Copper and Iron, and for one of Silver, diſcover'd in the Reign of *Chriſtian* IV. but it laſted not long.

Saltzberg lies on the River *Drammen*, which falls into the Bay of *Chriſtiana*, 18 Miles N. W. from the Town of that Name. 'Tis alſo noted for Mines of Iron, Copper, and ſome of Silver, whence the Mountains in the Neighbourhood are called *Silverbergen*.

Hammar lies in the N. of this Government, 130 *Engliſh* Miles N. from *Frederickſtadt*, on the River *Glammen*. It gives Name to a Diſtrict of this Government, was formerly a Biſhop's See, but is now under the Juriſdiction of the Biſhop of *Chriſtiana*.

Hollin, ſeated on the Lake *Nordſie*, which communicates with the River *Categate*, is 20 Miles N. W. from *Tonsberg*, and has a Church cut out of a Rock, with a Burying-place on the Top of it. *Wormius* thinks it was a Pagan Temple.

The Government of BERGEN.

HAS the Great Ocean on the W. and S. W. the Government of *Aggerhus* on the E. and that of *Drontheim* on the N. E. 'Tis 240 *Engliſh* Miles long from N. to S. and where broadeſt not above 90. It is divided into the Diſtricts of *Bergen* in the North Part, and that of *Stavanger* in the South Part. The chief Town is

Bergen, which the Natives call *Baern*. It lies on a crooked Bay called *Jelta Fiored*, 12 Miles from the Ocean, 330 *Engliſh* Miles S. W. from *Drontheim*, 200 from Cape *Scaw* in *Jutland*, and 300 E. from the neareſt Place of *Scotland*. It is probably the *Berges* of *Pliny*. *Jornandes* calls it *Bergium*. The Name comes from its Situation among Hills. The Houſes are moſtly of Timber, and but ſorrily built. It has been five times burnt down, *viz.* twice in the 15th, and three times in the 16th Century. Its Port is large, and the moſt frequented of any in that Ocean. In the *Dutch* War, their Fleet was protected here from the *Engliſh* Navy. This City is the principal Mart of all *Norway*, to which the Product of the Country is brought and exported. The particular Trade of this Town is in a Sort of Stock-fiſh called *Bergen Viſch*, which are caught ordinarily in *January*, and dried by the cold Air. The Inhabitants, fearing too great a Concourſe of Strangers who ſettled here might be prejudicial to them, order'd, That no Foreigner ſhould have the Freedom of this Town, unleſs he conſented either to be whipt, roul'd in Mud, or hung in a Basket over ſome intolerable Smoak; but now this Cuſtom is laid aſide. The Foreign Merchants who reſort here, as the *Dutch*, *Hamburgers*, *Lubeckers*, *Engliſh*, &c. have built a ſtately Exchange. The Town has a ſtrong Caſtle, which ſerves for a Citadel, and is the Biſhop's Reſidence.

Stavanger lies in Lat. 60. in a Peninſula, in a great Bay of the Ocean, full of ſmall Iſlands. This Bay is guarded by the ſtrong Caſtle of *Doofwick*, two *Engliſh* Miles from the Town, which is a Biſhop's See, under the Biſhop of *Drontheim*; and the Governor is ſubject to him of *Bergen*. It has a good Port, and would have a greater Trade were it not for the Neighbourhood of *Bergen*, which is 70 *Engliſh* Miles N. from it on the ſame Coaſt, and about 60 N. from the *Categate*.

To the Biſhoprick of *Stavanger* belongs *Tyle Marchia*, whoſe Name gave Riſe to the Opinion of *Procopius*, that *Scandinavia* was the ancient *Thule*.

The Bailiwicks of *Sudhernleen*, *Nordhorn*, *Lonſogne*, *Ladſiord*, *Norſiord*, and *Sundmorlen*, are ſubject to the Government of *Bergen*.

Digitized by Google

The Government of DRONTHEIM,

IS of a vaſt Extent, and reaches beyond the Polar Circle. Some reckon, that along the Coaſts from the S. W. Parts, to its Borders on the N. E. where it joins to that of *Wardhuis*, 'tis about 540 *Engliſh* Miles long; but its Breadth is not conſiderable. It is barren and ill Peopled, and ſub-divided into 21 Diſtricts. It has the Government of *Aggerhus* and *Dalecarlia* on the S. *Muſcovite Lapland* on the E. and the Government of *Wardhuis* on the N. E. It was given to the *Swedes* in 1658 by the Treaty of *Roſchild*; but was reſtored to the *Danes* in 1660 by that of *Copenhagen*. *Harndal* and *Jemptерland* belong'd to this Province; but were yielded to the *Swedes* by the Peace at *Bromsbroe* in 1645. This Country is Mountainous and Woody. The chief Town is

Drontheim, in Lat. 65½. It was built in 999 by *Olaus Trygen*, was the Seat of the old *Norwegian* Kings, and Capital of the Realm. It was made an Archbiſhoprick by *Eugen.* III. Its Latin Name is *Nidroſia*, from the River *Nider*, on which it lies, where it falls into the Northern Ocean. This Town has no Walls nor Fortifications. The Houſes are mean; for it has not recover'd its Splendour ſince 1522, when it was burnt down, with its Cathedral, dedicated to St. *Olaus*, which was the moſt beautiful and ſtately of any in the N. The Ruins ſtill ſhew its admirable Architecture. The Port would be more frequented, if the Entrance were not dangerous by Rocks. Near this Town there's a Lake, whoſe Waters never freeze in the coldeſt Winter. They have no Wood in the Neighbourhood, ſo that they are obliged to build their Houſes of Fiſh-Bones which they likewiſe uſe for Fuel. The Illands of *Iſeland*, *Groenland*, and the *Orcades* were ſubject formerly to the Archbiſhop of *Drontheim*.

Romſdal, or *Romſdalen*, a large Town, 160 *Engliſh* Miles S S.W. from *Drontheim*, lies on the Bottom of a Bay on the Ocean, and has a tolerable Trade. Other Towns are, 1. *Leerſtand*, 110 *Engliſh* Miles S. from *Drontheim*. 2. *Stronden*, 40 S. E. from *Drontheim*, on the River *Nider*. 3. *Steerdale*, on the other Side of the ſame Bay, 28 Miles N.W. from *Drontheim*. 4. *Opdael*, at the Bottom of a Bay, 40 Miles from the Ocean, and 100 S. from *Drontheim*.

Lofoten, an Iſland, lies N. N. W. from *Drontheim*. *Samien*, a little Iſle, lies N. E. of *Lofoten*. *Sollere*, another, is near *Samien*; and the Iſland *Trommes* lies N. N. E. from *Sollere*.

Moelſtrom is a famous Gulph or Whirlpool, about Lat. 68. of 40000 Geometrical Paces in Circumference. Seamen call it the Navel of the Sea: It is fatal to Ships that approach too nigh in the Time of Flood, when the Sea for two Leagues round forms ſuch a terrible Vortex, that it ſwallows up every thing that comes near it; and during the 6 Hours of Ebb, it throws out the Water with ſuch Violence, that the heavieſt Bodies cannot then ſink if thrown into it, but are caſt back again by the impetuous Stream. During the Ebb, the Fiſhermen catch abundance of Fiſh on it, which being forced up to the Surface of the Water, cannot dive again.

Halgaland belongs to this Government, and lies N. of the Polar Circle. It is the Country of *Othher*, King *Alfred*'s Geographer, who told that King, That no inhabited Country lay further N. than this; but his Ignorance is ſufficiently diſcover'd ſince. *Melanger* is a Town in Lat. 69½. upon a Bay of the Northern Ocean.

The Government of WARDHUIS.

THis Country has *Muſcovite Lapland* on the S. E. *Swediſh Lapland* on the S. the Government of *Drontheim* on the S. W. and the *Frozen Ocean* on the W. and N. It is otherwiſe called *Finmark*, or *Norwegian Lapland*. The Cold here in Winter is extream, ſo that it has very few Inhabitants, and no Trees except Pines and Firs. They have Plenty of Rain-Deer, Bears, White Hares, Squirrels, Black Foxes, Beavers, Otters, and other Furs, which is the greateſt Part of their Trade. The Rivers abound with Fiſh. *Petit*'s Atlas makes the *Finni* of *Tacitus* the old Inhabitants; but 'tis more probable that thoſe *Finni* inhabited the modern *Finland*, from whence *Lapland* was Peopled.

Their

Their Manners, Religion, &c. are much the same with those of the *Swedish Laplanders*, of which we gave an Account in the Description of that Kingdom; but they are of worse Dispositions, and said to be ugly, savage, revengeful, jealous, inclin'd to cheating, idle, and industrious in nothing save Fishing and Hunting. They are more addicted to Sorcery than the other *Laplanders*, make a Trade of selling favourable Winds to Sailors, and are said to raise Tempests, if they be not rewarded to their Content. Their Women have the same bad Qualities, and are of a low Size.

This Country extends about 240 Miles from W. to E. and 150 from S. to N. There is no Property or distinct Possessions here; but whoever settles in any Part first, it belongs to them while they stay.

The chief Place is *Wardhus*, which is the Seat of a Governor. *Moll* says, 'tis in Lat. 70½. and Long. 49. It lies in an Isle called *Warda*, 8 *English* Miles from the main Land of *Finmark*, and about 15 in Compass. The Governor resides in the Castle, which is a Fort of 6 Bastions. The King of *Denmark* has always a good Garison here, to oblige the Ships bound to *Muscovy* to pay their Toll. The Town consists only of a few Cottages, inhabited by Seamen. The People of this and the neighbouring Islands live upon dry'd Stock-Fish, and have no Bread or Beer, but what is brought from other Places. They have some small Black Cattle, which are also fed with dry'd Fish.

The other Places of this Province are Hamlets, of 10 or 12 Huts. All the Coast of *Norway*, but especially this Government, is cover'd with small Islands, which we don't name, because they are of little Consequence. In the Island *Maggero* lies the North Cape, well known to those who sail for *Russia*. It is the most Northerly Place in *Norway*. *Moll* places it in Lat. 71½. and Long. 44½.

Our *English* Writers give an Account of a very ancient Commerce betwixt our Ancestors and *Norway*, some of which are fabulous, especially what relates to King *Arthur*'s Time; but since that called the *Norman* Conquest, our Histories are positive that we seldom wanted a considerable Fleet of *Norway* Merchantmen in this Kingdom, particularly in the Reign of King *Henr* IV. as appears by his Agreement with the Merchants from the *Hans-Towns*, set down at large by *Hacluit*. In the 25th of K. *Charles* II. an Act was made for incouraging the *Greenland* and *Eastland* Trades, which took off a great Part of the Imposts on *Eastland* Commodities, and order'd, That any Subject should be admitted into the Company trading thither, for 40 *s.*

CHAP.

Digitized by Google

CHAP. XXI.

The ISLANDS *of* FERO.

THey are 17 in Number, and lie in Latitude 62 Deg. 10 Min. and in Longitude about 16 Deg. 20 Min. They ſtretch in Length about 60 Miles, and in Breadth about 40. have *Norway* on the Eaſt, *Schetland* and *Orkney* on the South-Eaſt, *Ireland* on the South, *Greenland* on the Weſt, and *Iſeland* on the North-Weſt. Mr. *Jacobſon Debes*, Provoſt of the Churches there, in his Book tranſlated and printed in *London* in 1676, gives us the following Account of them: They are high Rocks in the Sea, cover'd with thin Earth, and divided from one another by deep and rapid Streams. In the Vallies, the Mould is about two Foot thick, and produces Plenty of Graſs and Corn; but the People live moſt on the Shore, for the Conveniency of Fiſhing. They have many Creeks, Inlets and Havens, for their Veſſels, and near their Habitations they incloſe ſome Ground for Graſs and Corn. Their Sheep feed in the Vallies and Hills all the Year; but their Black Cattle only in Summer. Part of thoſe Iſlands is inhabited, and Part left for Paſturage. The moſt remarkable of them are as follow:

1. *Fugloe*, that is, Foul Iſland, lies furtheſt to the N. E. is pretty high, flattiſh on the Top, almoſt ſurrounded with Clifts, is three *Engliſh* Miles long, and the greateſt Breadth not above two. It has a Creek on the E. Side, but not fit for Anchorage.

2. *Swinoe*, two Miles S. of *Fugloe*, conſiſts of two long high Hills, with a deep Valley betwixt them, which at a Diſtance makes it look like two Iſlands. The Mountain on the S. is about a League in Length, and that on the N. about half a League. The Valley, by reaſon of the Inlets, is but a Mile long, and the Inhabitants have Boats on both Sides of it, that they make uſe of according as the Wind ſerves.

3. *Videroe*, or *Vidoe*, is three Miles W. of *Fugloe*, and a Mile from *Swinoe*, is 6 Miles long, and 3 broad, and has a Valley, where the People dwell; but is in general full of high Hills.

4. *Bordoe*, ſhap'd like a Crab, with many Points, reſembling Claws, lies S. W. and W. of *Videroe* and *Swinoe*, about half a Mile in ſome Places, and in others not above a Muſquet-ſhot. It in a manner encompaſſes *Videroe*; ſo that betwixt them there is a ſafe Harbour againſt all Weather and Tides, and three Entrances into it. There are Inlets in other Places, which are ſafe Harbours for Boats. This Iſland is about two *German* Leagues from S. to N. and about one and a half where 'tis broadeſt, from E. to W.

5. *Kunoe*, about ſix Miles long, and one broad, conſiſts of a long ſharp Hill, ſeparated from *Bordoe* by a narrow Streight, in ſome Places half a Mile broad, and in others leſs. It lies S. and N. from *Mule* on *Bordoe* to the Harbour of *Klack*, on that ſame Iſland which it covers and makes ſafe.

6. *Kalſoe*, lies W. of *Kunoe*, from which 'tis divided by a Stream of two Miles broad, which opens from S. to N. and is a ſafe Paſſage for Ships, eſpecially when the Stream is with them. This Iſland is ſomewhat longer and broader than *Kunoe*, runs S. and N. and has no Harbour or Creek.

Digitized by Google

7. *Oſterve*, lies W. of *Kalſoe* and *Bordoe*, is 20 Miles long, in ſome Places two, and in others 6 Miles broad. It has many Inlets with good Harbours, one of them call'd the *King's Haven*, becauſe his Ships uſe to cruiſe there when in Search of Pyrates. The Stream betwixt this Iſland and *Kalſoe* is in ſome Places but a Mile and a half broad, and affords a ſafe Paſſage for Ships.

8. *Nelſoe*, lies two Miles S. from hence, is 4 Miles long, and a Mile and an half broad. It has a high Hill in the Middle, a Plain on the N. of it, and a Harbour on the S.

9. *Stromoe*, the largeſt of theſe Iſlands, is 24 Miles long, and where broadeſt 8 Miles. It lies W. of *Oſterve* and *Nelſoe*, is full of high Hills; and there is one called *Skellingſa's*, much higher than the reſt, which is a good Direction for Sailors that are bound to the N. Entrance of *Thorſhaven*, on the S. End of the Iſland, where their chief Commerce lies. This is a ſmall, but a good Harbour, and has another Entrance from the S. There are ſeveral other Harbours and Creeks in this Iſland.

10. *Waagoe*, lies a Mile and an half W. from *Stromoe*, and the Paſſage is ſafe betwixt them. This Iſland is about 8 Miles in Diameter, and cut by two long Creeks, one of which, on the S. E. makes a good Summer Harbour. The Land abounds with Hills; and on the W. Side there are two little Iſlands, called *Tineholm* and *Gaſholm*, with high Cliffs.

11. *Myggenæs*, lies two Miles W. from hence. 'Tis three Miles long, and one and a half broad. The Ground is high, ſurrounded with Promontories, and has but one Landing-place; and on the W. End there is a ſmall Iſland, with a high Clift round about, and ſloping at Top like the Roof of a Houſe.

12. *Kolter*, 3 Miles S. E. of *Waagoe*, and two W. of *Stromoe*, is a Mile and a half long, and half a Mile broad. It has a high Mountain on the N. End, which riſes 200 Fathom above the Water. Yet 18 Years ago, in the middle of Summer, a great Quantity of Herrings was found ſpread on the Top of it, which our Author thinks were caſt up there by a Whirlwind.

13. *Sandoe*, two Miles S. of *Stromoe*, is 8 Miles long, and 4 broad, with a Creek on the S. Side, and a little Iſle on the N. W. in which there are wild Black Cattle and Sheep.

14. *Skuoe*, two Miles further S. is three Miles long, one broad, a high Ground, and full of Cliffs.

15. *Store-Dimen*, or *Great Dam*, lies a Mile to the S. E. is round in Figure, a large Mile in Diameter, high and encompaſs'd with great Cliffs. It has no Paſſage to it but one, where 'tis difficult for a ſingle Man to enter at a time; ſo that it might be fortified with little Expence, and made impregnable, ſince Ships cannot lie near it, becauſe of the Strength of the Current; nor could they be famiſh'd, becauſe there are Cows, Sheep and Fowl, on it for 30 Men. Some Years ago, a Farmer's Wife of that Iſland having an Intrigue with her Servant-Man, they murder'd her Husband, and kept out the Iſland a long while, to avoid Puniſhment; but growing ſecure, at laſt they were ſurpris'd, and brought to Juſtice. Two Miles S. E. from this Place, is an Iſland called *Little Dimen*: It has ſome Inhabitants and wild Sheep upon it, and riſes out of the Sea like a ſharp and round Clift.

Two Miles S. from hence lies *Suderoe*, almoſt 20 Miles long, and 8 broad where broadeſt: It is full of Hills, has many Clifts on the W. Side, and but 4 Landing-places, which are difficult of Acceſs. On the E. it has 4 Creeks, and one of them a good little Harbour; and on the S. Side there is one of the beſt Harbours in *Feroe*, called *Lebree*.

Theſe are the moſt remarkable Iſlands. There are others call'd *Holmes*, which are left for Paſturage; and there are ſeveral Rocks which riſe out of the Sea near theſe Iſlands, two of which are neceſſary for Mariners to know; one N. of *Fuglioe*, called the *Biſhop*, is round and pretty high; the other, S. E. of *Sumbioe*, on the S. of that Iſland is a round high Rock, called the *Monk*, near which there's a dangerous Whirlpool, which in calm Weather draws Slips towards it, and frequently ſinks them; but ſometimes they eſcape, by driving with the Stream. The Inhabitants talk of a floating Iſland, which has been frequently ſeen near this Place; but our Author takes it either to be a Fable, or an Illuſion of the Devil.

When

Digitized by Google

When the Sun is in *Cancer*, there's no Night for a whole Month, and in the middle of Winter they have but little Day; but the Dawning and Twilight are longer than usual, especially when the Sun is in the S. or N. Signs. In the longest Day, the Sun rises at two a Clock 7 Min. and goes down at 9, 53. which makes the Day 19 Hours 46 Min. and from the Setting to the Rising of the Sun, 'tis but 4 Hours 14 Min. during which there's no Difference to be perceiv'd betwixt Day and Night, the Sun being then but 4 Deg. 29 Min. under the Horizon, and cannot make any difference for a whole Month, there being then but little difference in the Sun's Declination; so that till the 17th of *August*, when the Sun first comes 18 Deg. under the Horizon, they have no considerable Night. In the middle of Winter, the Sun rises at 9 Hours 53 Minutes in the Morning, and sets at two Hours 7 Min. in the Afternoon; so that there is but 4 Hours 14 Min. Day; but the Dawning and Twilight add much to it; so that something of Day is to be perceiv'd at 8 in the Morning, and lasts till 4 at Night.

In these Islands Loadstones are found, on which, if a Compass is set, it will vary much in some Places to the E. and on others to the W. If a Compass be set on the Rocks near *Sumbo-Monk*, formerly mention'd, it runs round, and is spoil'd for after-use, as happen'd to a Ship that was suck'd in by the Whirlpool there some Years ago. The ordinary Declination of the Loadstone on *Feroe* is otherwise 13 Deg. 19 Min.

The Currents betwixt the Islands run very strong, and in several Manners, according to the Situation of the Land, or the Necks and Points of it. In the Winter, when the Wind blows against the Tide, it occasions a terrible and turbulent Sea, especially when there's any Ground near the Surface of the Water; for then the Sea beats so terribly against it, that scarce any Ship, tho' the Depth be sufficient, can get over those Breaks; and for ordinary Boats, they presently sink them. The Natives call those Grounds upon which the Waves break thus, *Boffves*, and observe, that in bad Weather they break 3 or 7 times successively, and then rest; during which Time the Inhabitants that must pass them row their Boats over as swift as they can. When they break, 'tis reckon'd to be a Sign of Frost and Snow, or else of warm Weather, and a N. Wind, according to the Season of the Year. The ignorant Inhabitants think they proceed from the Aversion of the Sea to the Iron in the Boats; and our Author is one of those Philosophers who ascribes them to occult Causes, which in plain *English* is, that he knows nothing of the Matter. He observes however, That when a warm Air raises Fogs from the Sea, the Currents run swifter and stronger, and the Boffves break out; and the like happens in Winter before Frost and Snow. He observes also, That before Storms of Wind, every Nail in their Houses crack, tho' they be low built, and have thick Walls of Turf and Stone; yet they don't move when the Storm beats on them. All these Things he ascribes to Magnetical Sympathies and Antipathies.

He observes further of the Currents, That at New and Full Moon, they run very strong and swift; so that the poor Fishermen when at Sea, thô surpris'd with a Storm, must stay till the Current runs towards the Land; so that they are many times lost. When the Current runs against the Wind, the Sea breaks almost every Winter with a Westerly Wind, over a Promontory in the Isle of *Kolter*, which is 30 Fathoms high, in such a Quantity as endangers the poor Inhabitants, tho' the Sea has 50 Fathoms to run without the Clifts before it reach the Land; and some Years ago the Water broke over with such Force, as to tumble a great Stone of 6 Foot long, 4 Foot thick, and 4 Foot broad, that lay on the Top of the Promontory a considerable Way from the Place where it lay before. Tho' the Course of the ordinary Tides here be according to that of the Moon as elsewhere, yet their Course is different according as they beat against the Rocks and Points of Land, and according to the Situation of the Ground under Water, which occasions particular Streams to alter their Course, and run against the general Tides.

Digitized by Google

As to the General Currents, our Author gives us this Account: When the Streams run even betwixt the Land, there is a principal Current, but does not run with equal Rapidity during the 6 Hours; for the firſt 2 Hours, it runs pretty faſt; the 2d 2 Hours 'tis very rapid; and the 3d 2, it decreaſes by degrees. It is ſtrongeſt in the New and Full of the Moon; but in Spring and Summer, when the Sun has moſt Force, 'tis ſtronger at every Change of the Moon, than in Autumn and Winter; from whence our Author infers, That the Sun and Moon, and inward Warmth of the Earth, occaſion the Motion of the Tides. When Sailors cannot advance with their Ships in the middle of the Inlets, they take the Advantage of the Tides or contrary Streams, which ſometimes reach a Mile from the Shore. He cannot exactly deſcribe how high or low the Tides riſe and fall, becauſe there's a great Inequality in it, by the Changes of the Seaſons of the Year and Moon; but they riſe uſually 7 Fathom at W. and but 3 at E. He ſays, an E and W. Moon make the higheſt Water; but in particular Streams, 'tis high Water at different Hours; and ſometimes in one Inlet, there are 5 different Currents that run againſt one another. There's a little Stream betwixt *Stromoe* and *Oſterøe*, which, tho' it lie wholly ſtill, and dead on both Sides, yet it runs forward and backward, according to the ordinary Changes of the Moon, ſo ſwiftly, that there's no rowing againſt it. The Cauſe he ſays is thus: There is no Ebb or Tide at the S. of the Stream; but at N. the Water riſes and falls, tho' there be no Stream: Therefore when the Tide comes, the Water runs over to the S. Bay, and when it falls, it returns to the N. yet no Stream can be perceived, becauſe the Inlet grows wider on both Sides, and is very deep. Before one comes to *Feroe*, there's no Stream diſcern'd; but when it comes to the Iſlands, it thruſts it ſelf between Lands, as a River would do thro' a Sluice.

Beſides thoſe Streams, there are three others that turn round, and are called *Mole-Stromme*, or Whirlpools, which are very dangerous, ſink every thing that comes near them, and throw it up again at a certain Diſtance. Our Author thinks they proceed from round Grounds at Bottom, with Channels or Conduits in them. The moſt dangerous is that S. of *Suderoe*, about *Sumboe Monk*, which has ſwallowed up ſeveral Ships tho' others have eſcaped. The Sea round this Whirlpool is 80 or 90 Fathom deep, where the Stream runs quiet and ſtill. A little further in, the Ground lies from 25 to 35 Fathom deep, where the Sea begins to riſe and turn round. Further in, the Ground lies but from 8 to 10 and 12 Fathom deep, Snail-wiſe, in a Circle four times round. This high Ground has Points or Cliffs on the Top about 8 Fathom deep, and about 10 or 12 diſtant from one another; ſo that when a Veſſel comes upon this uneven Bank, 'tis turn'd round thoſe Cliffs by the Stream with ſo much Swiftneſs, that People who are not uſed to it lie down in the Boat, to avoid being giddy, and the Boat is turn'd round all the 4 Circles; between which there are three Channels or Conduits, where the Sea runs about ſlowly in ſmall Turnings. On the E. Side there's a Gulph, where the Stream runs in as through a Sluice, and works but ſoftly within. Theſe Channels are from 25 to 35 Fathom deep. In the middle of the Pool, there's a deep Hole from 50 to 55 Fathom; and in the middle of all, 'tis 61 deep. The innermoſt Water runs about ſlowly; and on the S. Side of that Hole the Rock call'd *Sumboe-Monk* riſes 10 Fathom above the Water, and the Depth about this Rock is 15. and N. of this there are 6 leſſer Rocks, betwixt which and the *Monk*, the Water is from 3 to 4 Fathom deep. Our Author obſerves, That on the Top of thoſe Rocks, the Compaſs runs round, as the Whirlpool does, and is thereby ſpoil'd. He takes Notice alſo, That on the Top of *Sumboe-Monk*, the Air is ſo extraordinary cold in the hotteſt Day of Summer, that the People who climb it for Fowl are ſcarce able to endure it; and the Fowl which haunt and breed there, have nothing almoſt but Feathers. And ſince the Saltneſs of the Water about *Feroe*, tho' in perpetual Motion, occaſions for moſt part a temperate Winter, he thinks the Coldneſs of the Air upon this Rock does not proceed from the continual Motion of the Stream, but rather from a Magnetick Virtue in the Rocks;

Digitized by Google

Rocks; and this he takes also to be the Cause why Ships are so easily brought into that Danger: But for the better understanding of the Form and Nature of this Whirlpool, he annexes the Figure of it. One may justly wonder, after such a frightful Account of the Danger that Vessels run by coming near it, how so particular a Description of it could be taken; but our Author informs us, That when the Weather is calm, the Sea still, and the Stream in the Reflux, the Inhabitants venture to fish upon it, and to climb the Rock.

On this Occasion he enters into a Dissertation against several Authors as to the Cause of those Whirlpools, and explodes the Notion of such as ascribe them to Abysses or Bottomless Pits in the Sea, which they think to be also the Causes of Ebbs and Floods. He takes Notice of what *Athanasius Kircher* says, *Hydrog. Lib.* 3. of the famous Whirlpool under *Norway*, called *Maske-Strom*, *viz.* That it is a Gulph into which the Sea runs down under the Land of *Norway*, and comes out again in the *Sinus Bothnicus*, or Bay of *Botthen*; and *Herbinius*, in his publick Dissertation at *Copenhagen*, seems to be of the same Mind: But our Author says, they are misguided by uncertain and false Relations; for this Whirlpool lies under the Land, between two Islands, where the Bottom rises like that of the Whirlpool of *Feroe*, and does not descend in deep Cavities. He adds, That *Kircher*, in his *Tabula Geographica Hydrographica*, describes many such Gulphs or Whirlpools; all of which are found near the Continent, or between Islands, as those of *Scylla* and *Charybdis*, betwixt *Sicily* and the Point of *Calabria*, where there stands a high Rock in the middle of the Stream, like the *Monk* of *Sumboe*, which *Jacobson* says are Beacons set up by God to warn Seamen of their Danger. He takes Notice also, That *Petur Clausen*, in his Description of this Whirlpool in *Norway*, says, the Water runs about in such a boisterous manner, that the Noise is heard at some Leagues distance, which he takes to be a Proof that there's no Abyss to swallow the Water, since the deepest Water makes the least Noise; therefore he takes the Noise, and turning round of the Water, to proceed from its pressing through a streight Passage betwixt two Lands, and such a Ground at Bottom as that of *Feroe*, which he says is further prov'd by this, That when whole Trees come into that *Vorago*, they are thrown up again, with their Roots, Branches and Bark, tore, by being whirl'd about among such circular Rocks, and many such are thrown ashore on *Feroe*, which could not be were there any previous Gulph; for then the Hole would be large, the Water would still run round, and any Trees that were drawn in, would run hastily through without being tore. *Kircher*, to strengthen his Opinion, says, That in the middle of the Stream, near that high Rock, there's an Abyss by which the Water is swallow'd, and comes out again in the Bay of *Bothnia*. *Jacobson* answers, That were it so, the 10th Part of what it swallows would not come out again; whereas the Whirlpool throws up whatever comes into it, and the Stream that drives it out, carries it into the Main, from whence it comes driving to *Feroe* and *Greenland*, as is very well known. In like manner, what comes up again in the Bay of *Botthen*, is drove by the Stream to one of those Sea-Coasts, or else out into the E. Sea; and if the latter, then many of those Wrecks would be seen in the E. Sea, where no such Thing has yet been perceived. He is therefore of Opinion, That the *Vorago* in the Bay of *Botthen* is of the same Nature with that at *Feroe*, because *Olaus Magnus* mentions its making a boisterous Noise, which proceeds from such a Situation at Bottom, and the rapid Ebb and Flood thro' the long *Bothnick* or East Sea, which is not much perceiv'd, because of its Depth, and therefore it beats the harder upon the Circular Rocks at Bottom; and the like is perceiv'd in the Streight near the Isle of *Alland*, where the Ground lying shallow, it makes a terrible Noise, as is own'd by *Herbinius* in his Dissertation.

Their FOUNTAINS.

BUT to return to the Description of *Feroe*. Those Islands abound with Fountains of wholesome Water, of a good Taste; some of them on the Tops of the highest

Digitized by Google

higheſt Mountains, which run conſtantly in the greateſt Drought; ſo that there's ſcarce a Cottage but what has the Conveniency of a Spring or Brook, whoſe Water is generally cooler in Summer than Winter. They have one Medicinal Fountain in *Oſteroe*, near *Gote*, but 'tis not much us'd, becauſe hard to come at. Its Water is warmer in Winter than other Water, and keeps good a whole Year; from whence 'tis ſuppoſed to flow through a Vein of Brimſtone.

On *Suderoe*, near a Village called *Famoien*, there's a little Lake pretty high, on the Mountain that flows and ebbs with the Sea, and yet is freſh Water.

Their AIR.

IN Summer, 'tis temperately warm, not very hot at any time; yet the Heat is ſuch ſometimes, as to cleave their thin Mould to the very Rock. Their Winter is not exceſſive cold; and tho' the Land be under the 62 Deg. North Lat. it ſeldom freezes a Month together, nor does it produce any Ice in the open Inlets of the Sea; ſo that their Horſe and Sheep go in the Fields all Winter. *Jacobſon* thinks this is occaſion'd by the Saltneſs and conſtant Motion of the neighbouring Sea, which produces warm Vapours that temper the Air, and make it moiſt; ſo that melted Snow or miſſing Rain falls in the Vallies, when it freezes on the Mountains. Their moiſt Air and watery Clouds produce ſuch ſtormy Winds, as ſometimes tear up Stones from the Ground, and roll up the Earth on the Rocks like Sheets of Lead. Thoſe Storms are variable, according to the Gaps between the Tops of the high Mountains, where the Winds gather and preſs themſelves through with wonderful Force, when thoſe in the Vallies underneath have ſo calm an Air, that they can carry lighted Candles from Houſe to Houſe. Sometimes the Blaſts are ſo forcible, as if they would tear the Rocks, and contrary Winds meet betwixt them, being rebounded by the Rocks that jut out in the Paſſes, and occaſion terrible Whirlwinds, which wheeling about among the Hills, come down over the Inlets, and whirling round, run through them again a great way into the Sea, and endanger Mariners, who muſt preſently furl their Sails, or be overturn'd, as they ſometimes are tho' they do, eſpecially if the Veſſels be large; and they frequently bear down both Men and Horſes in the Vallies: But the Inhabitants being forewarned by a terrible Noiſe betwixt the Rocks, alight from their Horſes, lie down flat, and catch hold of Graſs or Stones, till the Blaſt be over; but theſe Things happen ſeldom. *Jacobſon* tells a ſtrange Story of a Clergyman there, who, together with his Horſe, was blown over the Edge of a Promontory near *Sumboe* by ſuch a Whirlwind, but met by another ſtronger contrary Wind immediately, which blew him up again without any Hurt: Of this he is poſitive, tho' it ſeems incredible; but he aſcribes it partly to the Nature of thoſe Winds, and partly to a Miracle; yet he does not tell us what became of the Horſe. The ordinary Winds here are for moſt part W. and S. W. eſpecially in Spring and Harveſt; and thoſe Winds being very moiſt, 'tis uſually Rain and bad Weather on the Side of the Land where the Wind blows, while on the other Side 'tis fair and clear, which he aſcribes to the great Height of the Land.

The Summer not being hot, they have no Thunder then, but in Winter, when they have great Storms and Rain, which is the more terrible, becauſe all of them are turbulent in that Seaſon.

Their DISTEMPERS.

THeir Air being thus purged in Autumn, Winter and Spring, by ſtrong Winds and Thunder, they are ſeldom troubled with contagious Diſtempers, except they be brought in by Foreigners. They have no Agues, and ſuch as could not be cur'd of 'em elſewhere, have been freed of 'em as ſoon as they came hither. They never have the Small-Pox but when brought by Strangers, and then it infects whole Families, who are thereby reduced to a miſerable Condition, becauſe not able to help one another, and every body elſe avoids them,

as

Digitized by Google

as if they had the Plague, refuse to bury the Dead, or to come near the infected Village. He gives an Instance of his own Knowledge in 1651. A young Man from *Denmark*, who had lately had the Small-Pox, arriving there, gave his Shirt to wash, which infected the Woman that wash'd it. Others, that did not know the Disease at first, were infected by her; so that notwithstanding all their Precautions, the whole Islands were infected.

The Diseases proper to the Country are, a strong Rheum in Spring and Autumn, attended with a violent Cough and Spitting; a Head-ach, and Pain in the Limbs, that keeps 'em a long time in Bed, and some die of it. Their Medicine is sour Whey, as hot as they can drink it; and this Distemper does generally purge 'em of all the Flegm, and other Impurities contracted by their cold and moist Air.

A 2d Distemper, proceeding from the same Cause, is what they call the Hot Sickness, much like that which affects Soldiers in cold and moist Camps during the Winter. The Patient is hot, with acute Pains in the Head, that occasion Distraction and a Flux of the Belly in Summer. It consumes the Marrow of the Bones of such as die of it; but the greatest Part escape by the Providence of God, for they know no Remedy against it, nor is it so frequent as the other.

The 3d is the Scurvy, which affects Flegmatick People that don't stir much; nor are others easily preserv'd from it, because of the Moistness of their Air, and living so near the Sea. Their Medicine is New Milk alone, or with Scurvy-Grass boil'd in it.

Their 4th Distemper is the Leprosy, which *Jacobson* reckons near a-kin to the former.

The PRODUCT *of their Land.*

HE thinks some Mines of Copper and Iron might be found here, because the Rivulets which run down from the Hills in Summer are green in dry Weather, like Verdegrease. They have a small Quantity of Talk in the Northern Islands. They have two Sorts of Salt-Petre Stones, but not enough to yield any great Quantity of that Commodity. On the Shore there are found transparent Stones, so hard, that one may write upon Glass with them: They are white, or of a white mix'd with blue, and some of them yellow, and so well polish'd, that they serve to put in Rings. They grow in the Clifts, and are wash'd off by the Waves, but are not esteem'd by Jewellers. 'Tis thought they are a sort of Jasper. They lose their Colour when transported. Pearl Muscles, like those in *Denmark*, and *Moluca* Beans, are also found here. The ignorant People took them to be Stones, and thought the Kernel was another bred within them. They have also some Crystal, but so brittle, that it cannot be wrought.

They have no Trees but some low Juniper Shrubs and Willows, and when they planted Fruit-Trees, they did not succeed. Their Firing is Turf, some of which is so good, that it serves Smiths instead of Coal, of which they have some small Quantity, but in Places hard to come at. No Corn but Barly comes to Maturity here; but this yields 20 or 30 fold, so that they need none from abroad. They have abundance of fat Pastures, so that one of their small Oxen yields 100 Pounds of Tallow. Their best Pastures lie N. E. and N. and *Jacobson* thinks those Vallies are impregnated by the Nitre which the said Winds bring with the Rain and Snow, being also cover'd from the scorching Beams of the Sun by the neighbouring Hills. He observes, that in the two Months when there is almost no Night, the Corn and Grass grow but little here; but afterwards, when the Nights begin to lengthen, they grow more in a Night and Day than in 14 before, when so much expos'd to the Sun, tho' there be Rain at the same Time.

Their Herbs and Roots are such as are common to Gardens, *viz.* Lettice, Cresses, Pennyroyal, Coleworts, Turnips, Carrots, *&c.* They have 4 wild Herbs, which they esteem much, *viz.* 1 Plenty of Scurvy, besides Cresses, Beccabunge, and Sorrell, are all good against Scorbutick Distempers. 2. Great Quantities of Tormentil, which, having no Bark, serves 'em instead

Digitized by Google

ſtead of it to tan their Skins. 3. Angelica, which grows wild every where; and the Inhabitants eat the hollow Stalks before they grow to Seed, after taking off the outward Rind, and the long Filaments, as other People do Fruit; and in Time of Dearth they eat the Roots. 4. *Radix Rhodia*, which they call Hielpe Rod, from whence they diſtil a Water in Smell and Taſt like that of Roſes, and ſerves for the ſame Uſe.

Their Cattle are Kine, Horſes, and Sheep. He is thought a great Farmer that has 20 of the former. They go in the Fields all the Winter, except the Snow be very great. They are of a ſmall Size, and fat in Proportion to their Paſture. Their Horſes are little, but ſtrong, ſwift, and ſure Footed, tho' without Shoes; ſo that the People think themſelves more ſecure upon the Rocks and Hills on Horſeback, tho' they ride a good Pace, than on Foot. They breed them to hunt wild Sheep, which they ſometimes graſp with their fore Feet when they come up with them, and run without Fear over Rocks and Hills after them, with their Maſters on their Backs. They keep their tame Sheep in ſeparate Incloſures, divided by Ditches. Their Flocks are from 100 to 150, and ſome Farmers have from 200 to 500, divided into ſmaller Flocks, that feed always in the ſame Ground. They loſe many of them in hard Winters, and have no other Fence but Earthen Dikes to ſhelter them from the N. Wind. Sometimes in a great Snow they gather themſelves cloſe in the open Fields, where they are cover'd quite over, and if not found out by a Damp which riſes from the Snow above them, they are loſt for a Month together ſometimes, and eat the Earth about them, and the Wool off one another; but this ſeldom happens, for the Danger of it makes the Inhabitants look after them carefully, and when they find them under the Snow, they open a Paſſage for them, or have Wethers with every Flock, which being ſtronger than the reſt, break a Paſſage for them; but they have no Hay, or any thing elſe to relieve them, than the Graſs and Roots they dig from under the Snow. Their Paſtures are not ſo good as formerly, which proceeds, ſays our Author, from the Decay of Nature; but he ought rather to aſcribe it to their being over-ſtock'd, and not cultivated. If they be not carefully look'd after, they fall many times in great Numbers from the Clifts, cover'd with Snow, into the Sea, as they ſeek their Food.

They ſhear their Sheep in the Spring, take their Lambs from them in the Autumn, and incloſe them in Fields near the Sea with Stone Fences. They breed their Dogs to hunt the Sheep and Lambs ſo dexterouſly, that they will catch any they point out to them without biting them, but keep them down till their Maſters come. Theſe Dogs are ſhaped much like Greyhounds, and when well trained, yield as much as a Cow. Moſt of their Sheep are white in the N. Parts, and black in the S. *Jacobſon* aſcribes this to the Vapours of the Sea, to which thoſe Iſlands lie moſt expoſed on the S. or rather to the Nature of the Soil, which he thinks is full of Brimſtone or Salt-Petre. The chief Riches of the Inhabitants conſiſt in their Sheep.

Their FOWL.

THey have great Numbers both of Land and Sea Fowl, which ſerve them for Food. Some of them ſtay all the Year, and others fly away in the Winter. Thoſe that ſtay are Doves, Hares, Grellings, and Snow-Fowls. They have alſo Owls, Sparrow-Hawks, Crows, and Ravens. The latter are ſo deſtructive to the young Lambs, that they have a Law, obliging every Man who does not bring one of their Beaks to the Seſſion-Houſe at a certain Seaſon of the Year, to pay 2½ *d.* They have white Ravens, and ſome half white, half black, which they teach to ſpeak after cutting their Tongue-ſtring. They have a Fowl called a *Teale*, that lives both by Land and Water, and being a great Enemy to the Ravens, is upon that Account cheriſh'd by the Natives.

The Water-Fowl which ſtay conſtantly here, are ſeveral ſorts of Ducks, Plovers, Eiders, Maws, and Teiſters. The latter is good Meat, changes its Colour in Winter, and affords good Down. They have another

Digitized by Google

ther called *Imbrim*, larger than a Gooſe: It is never found on Land, for its Wings are ſo ſmall, that it cannot fly, and its Feet are only made for ſwimming. It has a Hole under each Wing, capable of holding an Egg, where they ſuppoſe it hatches its Young, which are eaſily allured to come near the Land, by waving a Piece of white Linen to them, and then the People ſhoot them. *Liomen*, another Water-Fowl, much like the *Imbrim*, comes hither in Summer, and is eaſily caught when on Shore, becauſe they can neither run nor fly well: It builds on the Banks of Freſh Water, ſo as its Bill may reach it without moving from its Neſt, where it continues till it hatches its Eggs, tho' the Water ſometimes overflows them. *Garfugell*, another Water-Fowl, has little Wings, ſo that it cannot fly, but walks upright: His Colour is a ſhining Black, except a little White under the Belly, and a white Circle round its Eyes, which look like Spectacles. They have alſo three ſorts of Wild-Geeſe, one Reddiſh, and the other two Grey; but the one ſort leſs than the other. They come hither in great Numbers in the Summer, and keep in Freſh-Water Lakes, where the Inhabitants hunt them in Boats, and take many. Swans come hither in the Spring, make no great ſtay, but proceed to other Countries. Great Numbers of other Birds come at the ſame time, of which the Inhabitants make much Profit. The chief of them is the *Sule*, or *Gentleman*: They come only to one little Iſland, and are very good Food. They have other eatable Sea-Fowls in great Quantities, ſuch as the *Skrabe*, *Lunde*, *Lumvifve*, the *Sea-Dow*, &c. which come and go at certain Seaſons; and tho' each of them breed but one *per Annum*, and are more ſought for than any other, ſo that 100000 of them are taken in a Year, yet they are ſo numerous, that they darken the Sun like a Cloud, and make ſuch a Noiſe with their Wings, that they reſemble Thunder. The *Skrabe* digs its Neſt with its Beak and Claws under Ground, with ſeveral Turnings, where it hatches its Young, ſtays with 'em all Night, goes out to Sea in the Morning, and returns with Food in the Evening. The Inhabitants pull out the young ones with Hooks made on purpoſe, ſalt them up for Winter-Proviſion, and uſe their Fat for Lamps. They never kill the Dam, except ſhe be in the Neſt unknown to them, and ſhe returns to the ſame Neſt next Year, except they ſpoil it in ſeeking for the Young, which they avoid if poſſible. The *Lunde* are very numerous here: 'Tis ſomething bigger than a Pigeon, and has a ſtrong crooked Beak, and ſharp Claws. When a Raven comes to take them or their Young, it catches him under the Throat with its Beak, and graſps him about the Breaſt with its Claws, which makes the Raven fly away crying, till they come to the Sea, where he drops and drowns him; but ſometimes it is ſurpris'd in its Hole by the Raven, who devours it and its Young. This Bird builds its Neſt under Ground like the *Skrabe*, or under Stones, where it may be ſecure. The Inhabitants hunt them with little Dogs, or pull them out with Hooks, and ſometimes take them with Nets as they fly to or from their Neſts. They have another large Bird called a *Lumwife*, black on the Back, and white under the Belly: They lay their Eggs on the bare Cliffs by one at a time, and ſit ſo cloſe, that they touch one another. The Cocks bring them Meat till the young ones be hatch'd, and fit to be carried to Sea on the Dam's Back. The Inhabitants climb the Rocks where they build, with Ropes and Poles with Hooks on them, or are let down with Ropes by others; but frequently loſe their Lives in the Attempt. Sometimes the Fowlers, when the Weather is fair, ſtay 7 or 8 Days in the Rocks, where they ſhelter themſelves in Holes by Night, and have Meat let down to them by Ropes. They throw the Fowls into Boats, which lie beneath on purpoſe. Their Ropes are ſometimes 80 or 100 Fathom long, and 3 Inches thick: The Fowler makes the End of it faſt about his Waſte, and between his Legs; and 6 Men holding the Rope with a Piece of Wood on the Brink of the Rock, to prevent its being cut as it ſlides, let him down. There is another Line faſten'd to his Body, which he pulls, ſo as to let them know when to ſtop, or to let him down faſter or ſlower. He has a thick Seaman's Cap on his Head, to defend him from Stones that fall from the Rocks by the Motion of the Rope, which ſometimes are ſo big, that they kill him; ſo that knowing the Danger, they always

Digitized by Google

recommend themſelves to the Protection of God when they go about that Work. Their chief Danger is from thoſe Stones, but otherwiſe they think it a Diverſion; and thoſe who are expert, can ſwing themſelves from one Place of the Rock to another, where the Fowls ſit, which he kills with his Fowling-Staff; and when he meets with Cavities or other Places that are eaſy to be climb'd, he unties himſelf, and faſtens his Rope to the Rock till he have occaſion for it again. Their Manner of climbing up the Rocks is more dangerous, and is perform'd thus; They come in a Boat to the Foot of the Rock, and tying a Rope round the midd'e of one of their Number, they take a Pole of 5 or 6 Ells long, with an Iron Hook at the End of it, and putting the Hook under his Girdle, lift him up to ſome Place of the Rock where he can get footing; then they help up another in the ſame Manner, with each a Fowling-Staff in his Hand, and with a long Rope faſten'd about their Middles, they climb up as high as they can; and where they find Difficulty, the one helps the other up, by thruſting the Pole under him, and when he has got footing, he hales the other up by the Rope. Thus they proceed till they come to the Birds-Neſts, when one of them ſeeks a convenient Place where he can ſtand ſure, and holds the Rope while the other climbs about after the Birds, who if he chance to ſlip, the other, if ſtrong enough, hales him up again; but if otherwiſe, they fall together, and are killed. The Birds they catch they either throw into the Boat below, or tie them in a Bundle to the End of a Line, let down by ſome above, who hale them up; but faſten them to their own Girdles till they have a ſufficient Number to convey either one Way or t'other. When the Fowls are brought home, they eat Part of them freſh, ſalt up the reſt for Winter, and ſell their Feathers. Sometimes a ſingle Man will let himſelf down by a Rope faſten'd to a Stake, and climb up again in the ſame Manner, with the Fowls hanging at his Girdle; and in leſs difficult Places, they climb without Ropes, where one, not accuſtomed to it, would think they could find no manner of footing.

Beſides the Birds of Prey formerly mention'd, they have others called the *Swarthbagg*, the *True*, and the *Skue*. The *Swarthbagg* is as large as a Kite, black on the Back, and white every where elſe: He feeds upon other leſſer Birds. The *True* is alſo called Thief, becauſe he purſues other Birds, ſtrikes them till they drop the Meat from their Beaks, and catches it dexterouſly ere it fall to the Ground. The *Skue* is of the ſame Species, but as large as a Raven: It is very fierce in Defence of its Eggs or Young, flies directly at the Head of ſuch as paſs by its Neſt, and ſtrikes their Faces ſeverely; but the Inhabitants faſten a Knife upright on their Heads through their Caps, by which the *Skue* is killed when it falls down upon them with ſuch Vehemence.

Their FISHERY.

THeir Fiſhery was formerly ſo good, that the Inhabitants maintained themſelves by it alone; but it is now ſo much decayed, becauſe of the Peoples Wickedneſs, ſays *Jacobſon*, that they have not enough to ſupply their Neceſſities; ſo that the poorer Sort, who have no Arable Land, are frequently reduced to great Want; yet ſometimes they have abundance of Fiſh, eſpecially when Corn and Cattle fail. Their Sorts of Fiſh are Whales, Seals, Codd, Whitings, large Flounders, Place, Trouts, Sand-Flounders, and a ſmall Fiſh called Murr, reſembling our Pilchards, which ſometimes in Autumn fill their Creeks, where the poor Children take as many as ſerve themſelves and their Parents from Meal to Meal; for having no Salt to cure them, they provide no further. Their Codd are found in Places of the Sea call'd Meads, which lie off at certain Points of the Land, where the Fiſhermen ſuppoſe there are Freſh Water Springs at Bottom. Their Seals haunt the Inlets, and are of different Sizes; ſome of them as big as Cows: They ſleep on Out-Rocks, under Promontories, where Boats cannot reach them; and in *September*, when they bring forth their Young, they retire into Caves under the Rocks. The Natives ſometimes ſhoot them, and at other Times catch them with Nets and Dogs, who being trained to it, ſwim to them againſt the Wind, that the Seals may not ſmell them, and catching them

Digitized by Google

them fast by the Throat, hold them till their Masters come up and kill them. The other Way of taking them, is by going in with Boats to the Mouth of the Caves, where they bring forth their Young, and rowing in as far as they can, leap out, some carrying Candles to see where they lie, and others with Clubs kill Hundreds of old and young, but not without Danger from the old He-ones, and likewise from the Waves. When they kill them, they hale them out, eat their Flesh, melt Part of their Fat into Train-Oil, salt up Part of it for Food, and make Shoes, *&c.* of their Skins.

Their Whales are of several Sorts; one is called a *Grind Whale*, because of Marks upon them resembling Grates. The biggest is not above 5 Ells long, and the young ones an Ell and a half: They come in great Numbers under the Land when the Weather is dark or foggy. When any Fishermen see them, they make Signs to all the other Boats, who come presently together, and drive them in towards the Land, by shouting and throwing Stones at them. They send a Man ashore at the same time, to give Notice to the People by making a Fire, who come with their Boats from all the Islands to the Place where they see the Fire or Smoak; and bringing their Whale-Spears with them, drive the Whales to an Inlet or Creek, where there are good Whale-Banks or Flat-Sands, and there kill them. The Boats divide themselves into two Companies, one of which attacks them, and the other draws up in Form of a Half-Moon, to prevent their Escape to Sea; and other People with Whale-Spears on the Shore wade in as far as they can, and help to kill them. Sometimes they break or overturn the Boats with their Tails, by which Men are now and then lost, and many of the Whales escape. When they have killed as many as they can, they hale them on Shore. The Tythe is first taken, then one is allow'd to him that first saw them, and the rest is divided into two Parts, one for those that took them, and the other for the Owner of the Land where they are taken. Sometimes they are brought in with the Tide, and run on the Sands in a dark Night, where the People find 'em in the Morning.

The Inhabitants melt Part of the Fat into Train Oil, and salt up the rest for Bacon, with a black Salt made of the Ashes of burnt Sea-Weeds, which preserves it very well, so that it is scarce to be discerned from Bacon. Other Part of the Fat they use instead of Butter. The Flesh, when dry and fresh, resembles Beef: Part of it they cut into long Pieces, and dry in the Wind. Foreigners pickle part of the Tail, which tasts like Neats-Feet, and therefore the Inhabitants call those Whales *Sea Kine*. *Jacobson* mentions a Creature called a *Sea-Dog*, which sometimes drives those Whales ashore. His upper Parts above Water resemble those of a large rough Spaniel. There is another Sort called *Doglins*, about 7 or 8 Ells long, and 2 Ells broad where thickest. A small Number of them come every Year into a Haven in *Suderoe*, where the Fishermen drive them into an Inlet if the Weather be boisterous; but if it be calm, they are so tame, that they suffer the Fishermen to come up to them, and fasten a Rope through the Fat of one of their Eye-lids, by which they hale them ashore, and kill them with Whale-Spears. They are not so good Meat as the other, and if one eat of their Fat, it not only pierces the Pores of their Body, but their Clothes, makes 'em look yellow, and to smell strong. They have other Whales, called the *Roar* and *Witch* Whale, which being large and dangerous, the Inhabitants dare not meddle with them, for they play about the Boats, and sometimes rise under and overturn 'em: To prevent which, the Natives bore a Hole in the Head of their Boat, put *Castoreum* into it, and stop it up. Others inclose it in a Piece of Wood fasten'd to a Fish-Bone, and if they throw that Piece of Wood upon any of those Whales, or if they do but smell the *Castoreum*, they sink immediately. Our Author says, he knows by Experience, that Men, who could swim very well, have immediately sunk when they had *Castoreum* about them, and quotes *Bartolinus's Centuries of Anatomical History*, *Cent.* 2. *Hist.* 17. to confirm it. He adds, That the Inhabitants say Juniper Wood performs the same thing; and he is of Opinion, That *Asa-Fœtida*, and other Things made use of to expel the dead *Fœtus*, will have the same Effect. But the Truth of

Digitized by Google

these Things, and of the Appearance of a Mermaid on those Coasts, in such a Form as we usually paint 'em, must be submitted to the Readers Judgment; for tho' our Author writes with an Air of Probity, he seems in many Things to be too credulous.

Of the Time of Peopling those Islands.

Jacobson says, from *Sturleson's Chronicle* of *Norway*, That they were first inhabited about 868, by People that fled from *Norway* in the Time of *Harald Pulchricomus*, who first reduced all the little Princes of *Norway*, and brought that Country under one Monarch. He thinks that *Jempteland*, *Island*, *Orkney*, and *Schetland*, were planted about that Time by others who fled on the same Account. These Islands were said to have been first discover'd by a Pirate of *Norway*; but there is no certain Account to be had of those Things, because their Publick Papers were carried away by Pirates above a hundred Years ago. Authors differ about the Etymology of the Name; but *Jacobson* thinks they were called *Feroese*, from the Word *Feroier*, which, in their Language, signifies Ferries: This is not improbable, because of the many Streams betwixt the Islands, which they are constantly oblig'd to ferry over.

He says, That the chief Men from *Norway* divided the Islands betwixt themselves and their Followers, who became their Tenants. Their Government was at first a Sort of Aristocracy, under their Leaders and their Successors. Many of the People say their Fore-Fathers had great Estates, but there is no such Thing now; for some were afterwards divided among the Children of the Chief Men, others were forfeited when the Islands were reduc'd by the Kings of *Norway*, and Part were given to Churchmen, according to the Superstition of the Times, for Pardons and Dispensations to eat Flesh in *Lent*; from which the People could not well abstain, because their other Provisions were short; and all those at the Reformation were annex'd to the Crown, so that now the King of *Denmark* is Proprietor of most of the Country. And the Lands reserv'd by the Owners are divided into such small Parcels by their Heirs, that the Freeholders are much poorer than the King's Farmers.

There's no History of the Succession of their first Chiefs; but 3 or 4 of them seem to have been the principal Ru'ers, and contending for the Superiority, were guilty of many Oppressions, which made it easy for the King of *Norway* to reduce them. The first was *Olaf Haraldson*, call'd the *Holy*, who by fair Promises procur'd their Submission; but taxing them high afterwards, they revolted. He brought the Chief of them again to Submission by Presents; yet they killed those who came to demand his Tribute. Thus they liv'd independent till about *A. C.* 1100, in the Time of King *Sigurd*, called the *Hierosolimite*, when they had Bishops and Governors planted amongst them. Since that Time, some of the chief Men of *Feroe* have been employed by the Kings of *Norway*, and called to their Assemblies of States. When *Norway* came under the Crown of *Denmark*, those Isles did the like. Their Records being lost, as before mention'd, there's no History of any remarkable Actions perform'd by the Inhabitants, except a few, of which *Jacobson* gives a Romantick Account. The chief, of whom there is any Certainty, is, *Magnus Heinson*, a great Sea-Captain, who performed many brave Exploits in the Reigns of *Frederick* II. and *Christian* IV. of *Denmark*. In the Time of the latter he was executed, upon a false Accusation by some that envy'd him; but his Innocence appearing afterwards, he had Justice done to his Memory, and in 1590 his Corps was taken up, buried with great State, and a pompous Epitaph put on his Tomb

These Islands are frequently invaded by Pirates of all Nations; but *Christian* IV. built a Fort at *Thorshaven* for the Defence of that, which is their chief Town.

Their Manners and Customs.

Jacobson says, They are humble, civil, courteous to Strangers, whom they entertain *gratis*, and allow 'em Carriages from Place to Place; but are troubled with few of them. They are charitable to the Poor, tho'

Digitized by Google

tho' there is no great Inequality among 'em as to Riches, which consist chiefly in Cattle. They generally make no further Provision than for their present Necessities, and think that every Year will bring Provisions for it self. There's scarcely any Theft among 'em, but when the poorer Sort steal now and then some Food, or a Pewter Spoon, which they melt down into Iler-Rings for Women's Bodice; but they will not meddle with Silver or Gold, because they know not how to alter the Form of it.

They are temperate in their Diet, and keep their Beer to treat their Guests and their Ministers; but at *Christmas* they are pretty jovial. None but the poorer Sort are given to Excess in Brandy. Their Diet is frugal, without Bread, Beer, or Salt, for most part; but according to the Season of the Year, they live upon Flesh, Milk, Fish, and Gruel. They dry their Flesh and Fish by hanging them in Wind-houses, made up of Half-Dales, 2 Inches from one another, that the Wind may go through 'em; and their Fish thus prepared are transported to other Countries. They salt some Flesh which they dry in the same manner, and eat when 'tis a Year old: 'Tis pretty savory, but hard of Digestion. They are not very nice in their Cookery, for they boil their dry'd Meat in Water, and put a little Barley-Meal in the Broth, with some of the Fat that drops from the Flesh as it dries, which makes it when cold like Pease-Pottage, in which they put a little Vinegar; or when they have not Flesh enough, a little preserv'd Tallow, which they boil in the Pottage.

They preserve their Tallow thus: When 'tis fresh, they roll it in little Pieces, and let it rot a little; then they cut it small, half melt it, and cast it out afterwards into great Pieces of 36 Pound each, which they put in Holes dug in the Ground, to keep it moist, where the longer 'tis kept, 'tis the better; and when 'tis old, it cuts and tasts like old Cheese. They prepare this every Year, and use it instead of Butter. The Quantities of it are according to their Number of Cattle. This they call their hidden Treasure, because the Pyrates do not know where to find it. The poorer Sort use the Fat of Whales instead of it.

They are frugal in House-keeping, give certain Portions of Meat to their Servants. Their Men have twice as much as their Maids, and they prescribe them their Work accordingly. Every Morning they weigh out two Pound of Wool for them to spin and knit that same Day into a Pair of coarse Stockings, and weigh their Work against Night. This is Part of the Goods they export. Their Clothes are always of coarse Flannel, and of one Fashion; but they have a finer Sort for Church and Market. Their Coats are short and wide, and they seldom wear Linen. The Women's Clothes are all of one Fashion for Rich and Poor, being Bodice and Petticoats sew'd together without Skirts; but their Petticoats are plaited. They have Cloth for Holidays, and chiefly affect a dark blue Colour, and some red. They have Fringes at the Ends of their Sleeves, and the richer Sort have black Velvet sew'd on red Cloth for their Trimming. They wear large Stomachers, adorn'd with Silk Fringes, Ribbons or Lace, on the upper Part, and under their Chin. Through the Stomacher they thrust a little Piece of Silver-gilt, of an oblong square Form, with Buckles and gilt thin gingling Plates hanging at it. The poorer Sort have 'em of Copper, and Girdles of the same. The Maids go bare-headed, with their Hair plaited, and the married Women wear red knit round Caps, much like the *Scots* Bonnets. The Women's Shoes are of Sheep-Skins, and the Men's of Neats Leather tann'd. They have but one Sole, are a little sew'd together about the Toes and Heels, which they fasten with Strings behind, and tie them above the Ancle.

Their Bedding is Hay, with a little Flannel spread over it. They all make their own Clothes, are fit enough for such Handycrafts as they need, and make Boats much better than those of *Norway*. The Women, besides coarse Flannels, weave much fine Bed-Clothes of several Colours, fine Stockings, and Woollen Waistcoats, and dye all themselves. They have a sort of Red which they call a Cork Colour, that none else can imitate. They are not inclin'd to unprofitable Pastimes; but at their Weddings, and at *Christmas*, use plain Dances, holding one another by the Hand, and singing Ballads in Praise of their Cham-

pions

Digitized by Google

pions. On Holidays they ſing Pſalms, and at vacant Hours play at Chels, wherein both Sexes are expert. They are naturally inclin'd to obſerve the Stars, eſpecially *Bootes*, by which they know the Hours in Winter Mornings to direct them in their Work. They know the Courſe of the Moon by the Increaſe and Decreaſe of the Sea, and by this compute their Fix'd and Moveable Feaſts very exactly. Their Language is that of *Norway*, mix'd with *Daniſh*; but the S. and N. Iſles differ in Dialect. They live long, *viz.* to 80, 90, and ſome of them to above 100 Years of Age. *Jacobſon* inſtances in one *Eraſmus Magnuſon*, who at 90 married a young Woman, by whom he had 5 Children, and liv'd till 110. To obviate Suſpicion of her being unchaſt, he tells us ſhe had always a good Reputation, and that the Man was of a vigorous Conſtitution.

Of their GOVERNMENT.

IT relates chiefly to the Adminiſtration of Juſtice, Regulation of Trade, and Proviſion for the Poor. Their chief Governors were the King's Bayliffs; but now ſome Perſon of Honour from *Denmark* has uſually that Truſt, and appoints a Deputy, with Sheriffs under him, to take Care of Juſtice and Trade. The Iſlands are divided into 6 Diſtricts, with a Sheriff in each, who determines ſmall Cauſes; but great ones are referred to the Court called the *Seſſion*, which is kept at *Thorſhaven* in *Stromoe* once a Year, where the Governor's Deputy preſides. They have alſo a Yearly Synod of the Clergy, who, with their Provoſt, meet at the ſame Place, and determine Church-Cauſes. The Deputy alſo preſides in this Court. They have alſo a Spring Seſſion in every Diſtrict once a Year, where the Deputy alſo preſides, aſſiſted by the 6 Sheriffs, and a Sworn Recorder. Cauſes are determin'd here by the Provincial Judge, with 6 Sworn Men for every Diviſion, and a Recorder, who regiſters what's done. The Clergy do alſo attend, for they preach and ſing Pſalms in the Forenoon, and keep the Court in the Afternoon. The firſt Day of the Seſſion the Clergy are called in, becauſe what relates to the Publick is then conſider'd. Private Cauſes are determined the following Days, and at the End of the Seſſion the Clergy is call'd again, to know if any publick Matter remain to be conſider'd, and if not, the Court is diſſolv'd; the Provincial Judge aſſuring the People of his Majeſty's Protection, if they pay their Tribute, to which they give Conſent by clapping their Hands; and in the Evening the Court and the Clergy make merry in the Seſſions-Houſe, by drinking the King's Health, *&c.* with a ſet Speech, ſing a ſhort Latin Hymn alternately, drink one anothers Health, and then break up.

They have a particular Law, call'd *The Sheep Ordinance*, conſiſting of 9 Articles, relating to the Management of their Sheep, and aſcertaining their Property in them, and the Incloſures where they feed. 'Tis very ancient and equitable, and ſhews the Simplicity of thoſe Times: It bears Date in 1040, was granted by *Hagen* Duke of *Norway*, Son to King *Magnus*, and renewed by *Chriſtian* IV. of *Denmark*.

Their TRADE *and* POOR.

THey formerly had trading Veſſels of their own; but being unskilful in Commerce, K. *Frederick* II. appointed a Company to furniſh them with Neceſſaries, and the *Feroe* Men were only to trade with them. The *Hamburghers*, and thoſe of *Bergen* in *Norway*, were formerly allow'd to trade thither. Their Commerce is by bartering one Commodity for another; theirs are Skins, Feathers, Tallow, Train-Oil, Fiſh, and Stockings, of which they tranſport annually 60000 Pair. The King's Revenue is paid in Skins, Butter, and Tallow, and his Farmers have an Inventory of ſo many Sheep and Kine, which are called the King's, and they pay him a certain Rate beſides for their own. The Lands of the other People are divided into ſuch ſmall Parcels, that they can hardly live on them. Their Poor and their Lepers are provided for by a 4th Part of the Tythes, and the Charity of the other Inhabitants; and their Lepers have a particular Place aſſign'd 'em to live in, with Ground for their Cattle. This Diſtemper is occaſion'd by the moiſt Air,

Digitized by Google

Air, and ill Diet of the poorer Sort, which is Flesh or Fish half rotten in the Winter, and Milk and Fresh Fish, without any Salt, in the Summer. The Infection is long before it discovers it self; so that the Unclean frequently marry with those that are not, without knowing themselves to be so. *Jacobson* observes, That some of the Children of those who marry so are infected, and others not; and they seldom separate, till the Magistrates oblige them to it. The sound Person frequently escapes; whereas others of the same Constitution are soon infected by them, after a little Conversation.

Their RELIGION.

CHristianity was planted here by King *Olof Trygeson* about the Year 1000, but made no great Progress for some time; so that they had no Bishops till about 1200, who then had too large Revenues for the Time and Place, and bought the Office of the King of *Norway*. But since the Reformation, they have only had a Provost. Their Congregations are divided into 7 Districts, from 4 to 7 Parishes each, under the Care of one Priest; some of them at four Leagues distance one from another. The Parishes are 39 in all. The Churches are small, built with Dales, and cover'd with Stones on the outside. Their largest Church is at *Thorshaven*, which is built of whole Beams, and has a Steeple. The great distance of the Churches makes it difficult and dangerous for the Priests to perform their Function in the Winter; and those on the remote and little Islands are but ill serv'd, because of the Danger of passing the Streams, and the Clergy's being frequently detained in them by stormy Weather. Their Benefices are from 15 to 30 Gilders each, with a Proportion of Corn, Wool, Butter, and Fish, and a Free House, and one for their Widows. Their best Benefice, with all their Perquisites, is scarce above 100 Gilders *per Annum*; but they make it out with their Glebe and Cattle, and by knitting of Hose, in which they assist their Wives and Servants; and sometimes they have Presents from their Parishioners. They observe, besides the Sabbath, ordinary Holidays, and New Moons, three Days in *Ascension* Week, and three Days in *Michaelmas* Week. Since the Priests cannot always attend their Parishes, they appoint their Hearers to read Homilies, and sing Psalms on Holidays; and one that can read best, to do it in the Church on *Sundays*, for which they have a small Allowance. Tho' Popery prevail'd there as in other Places, yet they still kept the Fundamentals; as appears by a very ancient Hymn in their own Language, which treats of the Fall of Man, of the Corruption of Nature, of Redemption by Christ, of Regeneration, and of our Saviour's Birth, Life and Passion. They seem to have had it from *Iseland*, because there are many Words of that Language in it. By their Diligence in reading the Scriptures, and good Practical Books, they understand Religion better in general than the common People of *Denmark*, and have many of the Psalms and *Luther's* Catechism, with a short Explanation of it, by Heart. The Business of the Provost is to visit the Churches, and preach in 'em by Turns. They have but one School, which is at *Thorshaven*, where they learn to read and write; and those design'd for the Ministry, are taught Latin. The Priest of that Place is their Master, for which he has 70 Gilders *per Annum* from the King; and some of their Students are allow'd their Diet *gratis* in the University of *Copenhagen*, where they are bred up for Clergymen. *Jacobson* says, they were formerly much troubled with Spectres and Apparitions of several Sorts, from which they are not yet free. He gives an Account of several Persons who have been carried away for some Time by Evil Spirits to inaccessible Places, from whence they have come down again without any Hurt, and others of them have been killed. In such Cases their Relations have Recourse to Prayer, by which they are frequently recover'd. These Things he relates on his own Knowledge. He gives one remarkable Instance which happen'd in 1667, to one *Jacob Olufson*, in the 24th Year of his Age, who being sick a Bed, there appear'd one to him in shining Clothes, which filled the Room full of Light. He saluted the young Man, stroak'd him with his Hand, remov'd his Pains, and taught

Digitized by Google

taught him a certain Prayer, which he enjoin'd him to say three times a Day, and to teach the Country-People to do the like, in order to remove the Judgments which threaten'd them. He commanded him the first time he came to Church to kneel down on the Threshold, turn his Face from the Church, say that Prayer, and to teach the People to do the same with join'd Hands, and bow'd Knees, and to admonish them to forbear Cursing, Swearing, *&c.* and then vanish'd through the Roof. Upon this the young Man recover'd; and in 5 Days after it appear'd to him again, as coming down from the Sky in a Priest's Habit, red and white, with a red Cross on his Back, bid him not doubt but he came from God, and vanish'd. He appear'd to him a 3d time as he was a Bed, ask'd him, If he had spread abroad what he commanded him, and if he had seen any Signs in the Heavens? The young Man answer'd, No: But that others had seen two Suns, which the Apparition told him was a Sign they should begin to keep the *Sabbath* from *Saturday* at 12 in the Afternoon; and that when they went to Sea, they should sing the 23d *Psalm*, and vanish'd again. He appear'd to him a 4th time, told him he was St. *John*, who lay on our Saviour's Bosom at the Lord's Supper, and then vanish'd. He appear'd to him a 5th time: And these Things becoming public, and the young Man being of a good Conversation, many People were seduc'd, gave out that they had seen the like Visions, were disobedient to their Ministers, and not at all reform'd in their Lives. Upon this *Jacobsin*, the Provost, examin'd the young Man, sent Copies of his Confession about the Country, and order'd the Clergy to read it from their Pulpits, with his Censure upon it, and to exhort the People to seek no other Way of Worship but what was contained in the Word of God, and according to the Direction of the Civil Magistrate. The Provost, in his Explanation of the Catechism, did likewise take Care to fortify the People against such Delusions; and the next Year, that young Man being tempted to Fornication by the unclean Spirit, the Provost gave Notice of it, and of the Disturbances he had rais'd, to the Archbishop of *Zeeland*, who, according to the King's Order, commanded the said Person to be admonish'd, from the Word of God, of his Errors, and to be absolved from Censure if penitent; which was accordingly done: And thus an End was put to those Delusions. We have been the more particular in this, because of the Resemblance it bears to what has lately happened to those called *Camisars*, or *French* Prophets, here in *England*.

CHAP.

Digitized by Google

CHAP. XXII.

ICELAND.

WE gave a brief Account of this Country before, among other Places that lie near the North Pole; but ſince 'tis Part of the *Daniſh* Dominions, we ſhall give a further Account of it here.

As to its Situation, the Maſters of the Royal Fiſhery diſcover'd *Fournier's* Miſtake, who plac'd it from Lat. 64. to Lat. 68. and found by Obſervations, That its true Lat. is from 64 Deg. 25 Min. to 66 Deg. 5 Min. This they prove by Experience; for they found, that on the 11th of *December*, the Sun was above the Horizon in the moſt Northerly Places, which could not be, if the Lat. were 66 and ½. for the Sun is then in the Tropic of *Capricorn*, 90 Deg. from the Zenith of thoſe in that Lat. and muſt by Conſequence be under their Horizon that Day.

In the N. Part of this Iſland, while the Sun is in *Gemini* and *Cancer*, it never goes entirely below the Horizon for two Months, and one half remains above the ſame during the longeſt Days, from 10 at Night till 2 in the Morning, when it riſes quite above the Horizon; and about the Winter Solſtice, while the Sun is in *Sagittary* and *Capricorn*, the Nights are as long as the Days are in Summer. M. *De la Motte de Veyer*, in his Letter from *Copenhagen*, *December* 18, 1644. to M. *la Peyrere*, from the Authority of *Angrim Jonas*; Dr. *Wormius* and *Bleſkenius* gives this following Account: That 'twas formerly reputed fertile in Wheat, but now has none: That 'twas ſaid to be well ſtor'd with Wood for building Ships; whereas now there is nothing but low Shrubs; thô Roots of a vaſt Bulk are ſtill dug up in the Places where thoſe Foreſts are ſaid to have been, and the Timber of 'em is as black as Ebony. Their Firing is Turf, and vaſt Trunks of Trees are frequently brought thither on Shoals of Ice from the North, which helps them both for Building and Fewel; and when that Seaſon of the Year comes, the Inhabitants flock to the Shore in queſt of thoſe Shoales, which bring 'em not only Trees, but Stags, Foxes of ſeveral Sorts, Bears, Wolves, and what they call Unicorns. The Country is ſtrong and Mountainous, and that Foreigners tranſport and dry it to lay among their Clothes; yet their Beef is not good, and their Mutton rank; but they dry them in the Sun and Wind, which takes off the ill Taſt. They have abundance of clear and wholeſome Springs, ſome of which are nouriſhing like Beer. They have alſo Ponds and Lakes full of Fiſh, many Brooks and navigable Rivers. *Bleſkenius* mentions a Lake in the W. Part, which always ſmoaks, and yet is ſo cold, that it petrifies every thing put into it. What's ſtuck in the Ground, turns into Iron, ſo far as 'tis under Ground: That Part which is in the Water, turns into Stone; and the Part above Water, continues Wood. *Bleſkenius* ſays, he ſaw this tried, and that the Part which ſeemed to be Iron, when put into the Fire, burnt like Charcoal. He adds, That there's a Lake in the middle of the Iſland, the Exhalations of which kill Birds that fly over it. They have Springs ſo hot, that the Water burns one's Skin, and when ſet to cool, has a Sulphur

Digitized by Google

on its Surface. Near ſome of thoſe hot Fountains, there are very cold Springs, the Water of which being mix'd together in one Baſon by means of Pipes, make excellent Baths. *Bleſkenius* mentions another Spring, the Water of which taſts like Whear, and is excellent againſt the Venereal Diſtemper. They have no Minerals but Brimſtone, with which they abound, eſpecially in Mount *Hecla*, which not only ſends forth Flames, but alſo Torrents of Sulphureous Liquor that burn like Spirit of Wine, and thoſe Eruptions are commonly follow'd by vaſt Quantities of black Aſhes and Stones. The Iſlanders fancy they ſee Troops of Infernal Spirits carrying damn'd Souls thither, eſpecially after a Battle any where; and they take the Noiſe of the Shoals of Ice daſh'd againſt the Shore to be the Groans of Souls damn'd to exceſſive Cold, as thoſe carried to Mount *Hecla* are condemn'd to exceſſive Heat.

Their TRADE

CONſiſts in bartering one Commodity for another, *viz.* their own Product, which is Dry'd Fiſh, Butter, Tallow, Coarſe Woollen Cloth, Brimſtone, Foxes, Bears, Stags, and Wolves Skins, for Flower, Beer, Wine, Strong-Waters, Iron, Woollen and Linen Cloths. The *Germans*, when they arrive, ſet up their Tents, wherein they exchange Cloths and Toys for the *Iceland* Commodities. *Bleſkenius* reflects upon their young Women, and ſays, they proſtitute themſelves to Strangers for Trifles; but *Angrim Jonas* contradicts him in this, and alſo in the Story of their Sorcery and ſelling of Wind, which, according to him, is only their fore-knowledge of the Weather from the Diſpoſition of the Air, which if they find ſuitable to Strangers that are ready to ſail, they prerend to ſell to 'em by tying Knots in their Handkerchiefs, and muttering certain Words; but they fail in their Conjectures that Way more frequently than they hit.

Their ancient Religion, Government, Learning, &c.

EVery Diviſion of the Country had three chief Temples for Adminiſtration of Juſtice and Devotion, and a Bayliff called *Godorp*, *i. e.* Divine, to take Care of the Poor, and hinder their going into other Diſtricts, or being Licentious. They had Power to kill or geld them, to prevent their Multiplication, and to baniſh ſuch as married, and had not wherewith to maintain them. It was formerly divided into 4 Provinces, and each Province into ſeveral Diſtricts. They had once *per Annum* an Aſſembly of the Bailiwicks of each Province, which were ſummoned together by the Governor, who ſent ſmall Croſſes of Wood to every Bailiff, which he diſtributed to the Judges, and they to the Maſters of Families; or the Preſident ſent a Wooden Hatch to each of the Governors of the 4 Provinces, as a Sign to call a General Meeting of the States. Their chief Gods, while Pagans, were *Thor* and *Odin*, their *Jupiter* and *Mercury*, to whom they erected Temples and Altars, and ſacrific'd Men, by throwing them down from Rocks, or into deep Pits near their Temples, of which they had two chief ones at *Hole* and *Schalholt*, two Villages, where now they have their Biſhopricks. They decided all Controverſies by Duels, wherein the Vanquiſh'd, or he that refus'd the Challenge, loſt his Claim; and the Heirs of the Conquer'd had no other Remedy but to bring a large Bull or Ox to the Conqueror, which he was to kill with one Stroke; and if he fail'd, he loſt his Pretenſions.

They were ſo careful in their Annals, that they not only preſerv'd their own Hiſtory, but that of other Nations, according to *Angrim Jonas* and Dr. *Wormius*. They wrote their Hiſtories in Verſe, and their Poets were accounted Inſpired; or, in plain *Engliſh*, Sorcerers. Dr. *Wormius* gives us a ſtrange Inſtance of it, thus; When he was Vice-

Digitized by Google

Vice-Chancellor of the Univerſity of *Copenhagen*, an *Iceland* Student complain'd to him againſt one of his Countrymen, for writing a Satyr upon him that would ruin him, who being examin'd by the Doctor, and threaten'd to be puniſh'd as a Sorcerer, confeſſed that there was Witchcraft in it, tore it, and was reconcil'd to his Fellow-Student.

This People was anciently much addicted to Fables, of which they have a Mythology, called *Edda Iſlandorum*, that gives an Account of their fooliſh Opinions about the Creation, their ancient Hiſtory, *&c.*

They have no Towns, and indeed ſcarce Villages, for they build their Houſes at a great Diſtance from one another, for fear of Fire; and having no Roads, they travel by the Compaſs. Their Houſes are low, built of Wood, and ſometimes half under Ground, becauſe of the high Winds. They have no Window, but a Hole at Top, and are cover'd with Turf or Bark. They generally dwell near the Shore or Rivers, for the Conveniency of Fiſhing or Paſture; ſo that the Inland Country is almoſt deſert.

They have a Grammar-School, and a Preſs at *Hole*, where they print the Bible; but Paper is very dear there. The Inhabitants are great Players at Cheſs, and make their Men very curiouſly of Fiſh-Bones. Their Language is the pureſt Dialect of the *Runick* now extant. In their Chronicles, they deduce their Origine from the *Aſiatick* Prince *Odin*, formerly mentioned, and are as romantick in the Accounts of their Antiquities as other Northern People. By ſome it has been accounted the *Thule* of the Ancients.

Dr. *Paul Biornimi*, who reſided here, ſays, their Air is healthful, but ſoon ruſts Iron; that their Chronical Diſeaſes are the Cholick and Leproſy; and that they have no Phyſicians, but ſome Chirurgeons.

Their Weather is uncertain, and not always according to the Seaſon; for ſometimes they have Hail and Snow in the middle of Summer, with furious Winds. The Froſt does not penetrate above 4 Foot into the Earth in the Winter; ſo that Oil and Spirits of Wine don't freeze here.

The Doctor ſays, the Meteors he obſerv'd in this Country were the *Draco Volans*, and two Mock-Suns, with three Rainbows paſſing through them, and the true Sun.

The Sea flows about the Riſing and Setting of the Moon, and ebbs when ſhe is S. or N. In Autumn, the Tides riſe 20 Foot; but at other Times not above 16; and the greateſt Depth about the Coaſts is 80 Fathom. The Declination of the Compaſs here is to the N. W.

The Soil, as we find in our *Philoſoph. Tranſactions*, N° 3. is for moſt part Clay, and in ſome Places ſandy; but they have no Tillage. They have many ſorts of Birds in Summer, and in Winter Ravens, Wild-Ducks, and Swans. Their Horſe and Sheep live in Winter upon what Graſs they can ſcrape from under the Snow, and the Coraline Moſs, called *Muſcus Marinus*.

The Bread of the Inhabitants is Cod-Fiſh ground into Powder, and bak'd. Of this Fiſh they have two Sorts, one called *Stock-Fiſh*, or *Haberdine*, which they dry in the Wind, and heap up in great Poles, the other is *Huckettle*, a very large Fiſh, that yields abundance of Livers, of which the Inhabitants make Oil for their Lamps.

The chief Employment of the Inhabitants is Fiſhing, and making a coarſe Sort of Cloth of their Sheeps-Wool, or rather Hair. They make their Breeches, Boots, and Stockings, of Sheep-Skins, and their Shoes of Seal-Skins. They are infeſted with Eagles, that ſometimes carry off their Children; to prevent which, they put Collars of Bells about their Necks, the Noiſe of which frightens the Eagles, or gives them Notice when the Children are attack'd.

The King's Revenue is rais'd in Fleſh, Oil, Fiſh, coarſe Cloth, and Brimſtone, for which he ſends about 8 Ships every Year, who carry them Neceſſaries in Exchange for their Commodities. They are not allow'd to trade with any other People; yet the *Dutch* fiſh in their Harbours for Grampuſſes and *Du Barta'e*, a Baſtard-kind of Whale.

Digitized by Google

What we have to add concerning Mount *Hecla*, is, That it ſometimes throws out ſcalding Water, and Pummice-Stones ſo big, that 10 Men are not able to move them. *Angrim Jonas* ſays, That it throws out Aſhes ſome Hundreds of Miles, and that they are found ſometimes in *Norway*. The Springs that riſe in thoſe Sulphureous Grounds are ſo hot, that (according to thoſe Authors) the Stream of them will boil Beef hung over them in Kettles full of cold Water.

CHAP. XXIII.

GERMANY.

CLuverius, in the *Proemium* to his *Germania Antiqua*, gives us an Account how much of this Country was known to the ancient *Greeks* and *Romans*. He vindicates *Tacitus*, who is charg'd by ſome *Germans* to have writ many falſe Things concerning it, and owns, that they are obliged to him alone for the beſt Account of their Antiquity; without which, little of the ancient Writers could be underſtood. He takes Notice, That *Livy*, *Aſinius Quadratus*, and *Caius Plinius*, wrote much of *Germany*; but their Books are loſt, and tho' they were not, *Tacitus* being later, is much more exact.

He confutes thoſe who in their Commentaries on *Tacitus* think that he ſerv'd in *Germany* under *Flavius Veſpaſian*, and that he had ſeen the Eaſt Sea; and ſhews, that what he ſpeaks in the Places they quote, is meant of the *Romans* in general.

He afterwards ſhews from good Authorities, That the *Romans* might have a very exact Knowledge of all *Germany* in *Tacitus*'s Time, for they had carried their Arms thro' all the Country betwixt the *Rhine*, the *Elb*, the *Sale*, and the *Danube*; and for what was beyond the *Elb*, they might eaſily know it from the Inhabitants, among whom they had Gariſons; and they had the like Opportunity to know the Country by their Gariſons as far as the Confines of the *Daci* and *Sarmatæ*; and for that Part betwixt the *Elb*, the *Danube*, and the *Weiſſel*, and the *Sinus Cadanus*, now the Eaſt Sea, they might know it from *Marobodus*, the King of thoſe Parts in the Time of *Auguſtus* and *Tiberius*, who was 18 Years an Exile at *Ravenna* in *Italy*. He mentions other Opportunities that the *Romans* had to know thoſe Countries, by the Ambaſſadors which came to *Auguſtus* from the *Cherſoneſus Cimbrica*, &c. In *Nero*'s Reign, a *German* Knight was ſent for Amber to the Mouth of the *Weiſſel*, and the Shores of the *Æſtii*, now called the *Pruſſians*; the People of which Country, and the *Gothones*, not only uſed to bring Amber to *Pannonia*, and the Borders of *Italy*, in the Time of *Pliny* and *Tacitus*, but much more anciently, *viz.* in the Time of *Herodotus*. As to the Countries further N. in *Sweden*, *Norway*, *Finmark*, *Lapland*, and *Finland*, they were not only deſcribed by *Pytheas*, *Xenophon*, *Lampaſenus*, and others of the oldeſt *Greek* Writers, but diſcovered by the *Romans* in the Time of their firſt Emperors, as appears by *Tacitus* and *Pliny*. From all which he infers, That *Tacitus* had a very exact Knowledge of *Germany*, and juſtifies

Digitized by Google

juſtifies the Deſcription given of it in his Book. This he ſays is the peculiar Glory of the *Germans*, That they have an Account of their Antiquity and Progenitors by one who was a *Roman* Knight, had been honoured with many great Poſts, and was a grave, learned, and careful Author, who wrote his Book in the Beginning of *Trajan*'s Reign, about 100 Years after our Saviour's Birth.

Cluverius divides his Work into 3 Parts. The firſt gives an Account of the Situation of ancient *Germany*, with the Origine and Manners of the People: The 2d treats of *Germany* on this Side the *Rhine*; and the 3d of that Part beyond it. He makes uſe of the *Roman* Miles for his Dimenſions, and reduces the *Greek* Stadia into that Meaſure; upon which he has a learned Diſſertation.

For the better underſtanding of what he ſays, he tells us, that he follows the *Roman* Cuſtom, who call'd that Part of the Country on our Left Hand as we come down the *Rhine*, *Cis-Rhenana*, and that on the Right *Trans-Rhenana*.

In his 2d Chapter, he informs us, That the Ancients called the *Germans*, *Gauls*, *Spaniards*, and *Britains*, by the Name of *Celto-Scytha*, and ſome extended the Name as far as the River *Oby*, which ſeparates *Aſia* and *Europe*.

In his 3d Chapter, he confutes *Bodin*, who alledges, That the Name of *Celtica* was peculiar to *Gaul*; That the *Gauls* came from the *Greeks*, and the *Germans* from the *Gauls*. He takes Notice likewiſe of other falſe Opinions about the Origine of the *Germans*.

In his 4th Chapter, he alledges, That *Aſchenaz*, *Noah*'s Grandſon, with his Poſterity, Peopled *Celtica* after the Deluge, *viz.* *Illyricum*, *Germany*, *Gaul*, *Spain*, and the *Britiſh* Iſlands; and this he endeavours to prove from *Geneſis*, and the Authority of *Joſephus*, and other *Jews*: But this is juſtly exploded by the learned Dr. *Nicholſon*, now Lord Biſhop of *Carliſle*, in his Account of *Germany* in *Pitt*'s Atlas; and he thinks this Miſtake proceeded from the Miſunderſtanding of an ancient Tradition in the Northern Countries, That theſe Parts of the World were peopled by *Ar* and his Poſterity, by which the Doctor thinks the Ancients meant no more, but that their Anceſtors were brought into *Europe* by ſome great *Aſian* Captain.

Cluverius, in his 5th Chapter, ſays, The *Illyrians*, *Germans*, *Gauls*, *Spaniards*, and *Britains*, had all one Language, and differ'd only in Dialect, which he urges as an Argument that they were all of the ſame Origine. We refer the Curious to the Book it ſelf for his Authorities.

In his 6th Chapter, he endeavours to prove the Identity of their Language by the Names of the People, and the proper Names of Perſons.

In his 7th Chapter, he attempts the ſame from their Agreement in the Names of their Towns and Villages.

In the 8th Chapter, he urges it further from their Agreement in the Names of Things, which are ſtill retained in the *German* Tongue; and on this Occaſion he treats of the Antiquity of the *German* or *Celtick* Language, which he thinks to be one of thoſe that had their Origine at the Confuſion of *Babel*, and explodes the Opinion of ſuch as would derive this and all other Languages from the *Hebrew*.

In his 9th Chapter, he treats of the Name of *Celtæ*, and of the Diviſion of ancient *Celtica* into the Names of *Spaniards*, *Gauls*, *Britains*, *Illyrians*, and *Theutiſci*, and likewiſe of the true Origine of the Nation, and of the Name of the *Theutiſci*, where he ſhews that *Germany* is a Foreign Word, and was not uſed by the ancient Natives, but invented by the *Gauls*, and given to ſuch of the *Celtæ* as firſt paſſed the *Rhine* into their Country.

He next enquires into the Origine of the Name of *Deutſchen*, or *Teutſchen*, which ſome derive from their ancient God called *Tuiſto*, mentioned by *Tacitus*, whom the ancient *Germans* fancied to have ſprung from the Ground, and with his Son *Mon* to have founded their Nation. He confutes the Opinion of thoſe who think that *Tuiſto* is derived from *Aſchenaz*, and takes Notice, That moſt of his Countrymen derive the Name from *Teuto*, a King or great Man, who commanded their Anceſtors; and after a long and learned Diſſertation, he thinks that by *Theut* they meant GOD, the firſt Creator of all Things, becauſe of the Affinity it has with the Word ΘΕΤΟ, which

was

was made uſe of by the *Egyptians*, and the ancient *Celtæ*, who derive their Origine from them, and call their God *Mercury* by this Name. Here he takes Notice, That ΘΕΟC was the common Name which all Nations gave to the Creator, but was differently pronounc'd according to their ſeveral Idioms; ſome calling it ΘΕΟC, others ΣΕΟC, Ζεὺς, and Δεὺς, from whence the Latin *Deus*; and the ancient *Germans* having ſome Knowledge of the Creation by Tradition, and of the Formation of *Adam* from the Earth, who in their Language, as well as in that of the *Egyptians*, was called *Man*. He takes him to be meant by the old *German* God *Mannus*, whom the Ignorance of Poſterity confounded with the Creator. He is not without Suſpicion however, that *Tacitus* may have miſunderſtood the old *German* Songs and Traditions about thoſe Things. He is in doubt about the Origine of the Word *Celtæ*, and thinks it might ſignify the ſame Thing after the Diſperſion at *Babylon*, as *Aſchenaz* did before it; but Dr. *Nicholſon* well obſerves, That *Verſtegan* derives it from the *Greek* Word Κέλητες, Light Horſemen; and that *Celt* in *Welch*, a Dialect of the *Celtic*, ſignifies God, which he thinks as good a Derivation as that of *Cluverius*, who derives *Goth* from *God*, and *Teutſch* from *Teut* or *Theut*; ſo that nothing can be determined from thoſe Etymologies.

In his 10th Chapter, he ſays, thoſe People were by the *Gauls* firſt called *Germans*, when they paſſed the *Rhine* about the Year of the World 3624 into *Gaul*; that the *Romans* learned this Name from the *Gauls*, and the *Greeks* had it from the *Romans*. He confutes thoſe, who ſay the *Germans* in general were anciently called *Gauls*, and the *Gauls Germans*; but owns, that thoſe who inhabited that Side of the *Rhine* next to *France*, were promiſcuouſly called *Germans* and *Gauls*.

In his 11th Chapter, he treats of the Extent of ancient *Germany*, and of its Boundaries; and aſſerts, that it was larger than all the other Parts of *Celtica* together. He confutes the Error of thoſe, who, following *Ptolomy*, think the Name of *Germany* is much further extended now than 'twas anciently; and prefers the Authority of *Tacitus*, who knew it much better than the *Egyptian* Geographer; and ſays, *Germany* was ſeparated from the *Gauls*, *Rhetii*, and *Pannonii*, by the *Rhine* and *Danube*; from the *Sarmatæ* and *Daci*, by mutual Fear or Mountains; and that the reſt was encompaſſed by the Ocean with great Bays, and vaſt Iſlands: That is, ſays *Cluverius*, *Germany* was ſeparated from the *Gauls* by the *Rhine*; from *Rhætia*, *Noricum*, and *Pannonia*, by the *Danube*; from the *Sarmatæ*, who inhabited *Moſovia*, *Lithuania*, and *Ruſſia Minor*, by mutual Fear, becauſe on that Side it had no certain Boundaries by Rivers or Mountains; but from the *Sarmatæ Jazyges*, who dwelt betwixt the *Danube* and the *Theyſſe*, 'twas ſeparated by thoſe Mountains which *Ptolomy* calls *Sarmatici*, that reach from *Vacia*, a Town in *Hungary* on the Banks of the *Danube*, to the Heads of the Rivers *Granus* and *Vagus*; and from the *Daci*, who dwelt beyond the *Theyſſe*, on the Left Side of the *Danube* in *Tranſilvania*, Part of *Hungary*, and other Countries towards *Pontus*, by the Mountains of *Crapack*; yet *Cluverius* ſays, the *Germans* formerly dwelt beyond thoſe Mountains to the N. and E. as far as the Mouths of the *Danube* and *Pontus*; and towards the N. the Boundary was the Ocean, which encompaſſes *Norway*, *Sweden*, *Finmark*, *Scritofinnia*, *Biarmia*, *Lapland*, and *Finland*, which he undertakes to prove were all Part of ancient *Germany*, and by Conſequence that modern *Germany* is not a third Part ſo large. He ſupports his Opinion by the Authority of *Solinus*, *Cæſar*, *Strabo*, and *Pliny*. He takes Notice, That tho' the *Rhine* was accounted the Weſtern Boundary of *Germany* by moſt Authors, yet *Mela* extends it to the *Alps*, and *Agrippa* the like; but they fell into this Miſtake becauſe thoſe Parts were inhabited by ſome of the *Celtæ*, who were of the ſame Language and Origine with the *Germans*. He takes Notice, That *Agrippa*, when he makes the Length of *Germany* from the Ocean to the *Alps*, including *Rhætia* and *Noricum*, to be only 686 Miles, he underſtands it only of the Continent from Cape *Scagen*; for the reſt of the Country beyond the *Sinus Codanus*, he reckon'd among the Iſles. He adds, That *Ptolomy* might very well call this vaſt Tract of Ground, *Great Germany*, ſince 'twas the largeſt of all the Countries in *Europe*, except *Sarmatia*; but he obſerves, That *Ptolomy* ſeems to have called it ſo, to diſtinguiſh it from

Digitized by Google

from *Leſſer Germany*, on the Side of the *Rhine* next *Gaul*.

The CLIMATE *and* SOIL.

IN his 12th Chapter, he gives us an Account of their Climate and Soil; and in Anſwer to *Tacitus*'s Character of it, That the Soil was rugged, the Air ſharp, and the Country uncultivated, and of an unpleaſant Aſpect; he ſays, That 'twas ſo compar'd with *Greece*, *Italy*, *Spain*, and other Countries under a milder Climate; yet in the more Southerly Parts, about the *Danube*, the Climate is as mild as that of *Italy* about the *Po*. He thinks that *Tacitus* meant it chiefly of thoſe Parts about the Mouth of the *Rhine*, *Ems*, *Weſer*, *Elb*, &c. where the *Romans* had long Wars.

For the Soil, *Tacitus* ſays, That tho' the Face of it differ now and then, yet in general 'tis either cover'd with Woods, or filled with Lakes and Marſhes, is lower towards *Gaul*, and higher (*Verticoſior*, and not *Ventoſior*) towards *Noricum* and *Pannonia*. *Mela* gives much the ſame Account. The Country, ſays he, is full of Rivers, abounds with rugged Mountains, and is for moſt part unpaſſable, becauſe of Woods and Marſhes. *Cluverius* corrects *Tacitus* here, and ſays, according to Truth, That the Country towards *France*, from the Source of the *Danube*, or the Lake of *Conſtance*, to the River *Rora*, is Mountainous enough; and there are likewiſe high Mountains lower towards *Mentz* and *Bonn*, and the Country is more Mountainous where the *Trybochi*, *Sequani*, and *Rauraci*, formerly People of *Gaul*, inhabited, than it is towards *Noricum*. Therefore the Country may more properly be ſaid to be low in *Cleves*, *Gelderland*, thoſe Parts of *Holland* beyond the *Rhine*, *Freezland*, *Weſtphalia*, the Dutchies of *Brunſwick* and *Lunenburg*, the Biſhoprick of *Bremen* and *Magdeburg*, *Holſtein*, *Jutland*, *Mecklenburg*, *Pomerania*, *Brandenburg*, and the *Leſſer Poland* on this Side the *Viſtula*. From hence Southward it grows hilly by degrees, and then riſes into high Mountains. 'Tis not eaſie to find in what Countries the Lakes *Sueſia*, *Meſia*, and *Melſiagus*, ſpoke of by *Mela*, are to be found; but *Cluverius* ſuppoſes it muſt be in *Brezland* and *Weſtphalia*, where there are great Lakes and Marſhes. He thinks at the ſame time, That *Tacitus* and *Mela* did not ſpeak of all *Germany*, but only of that Part betwixt the *Danube*, the *Rhine* and the *Weiſſel*, the *Germán* Sea, and the *Sinus Codanus*, now the *Baltick*.

What *Tacitus* ſays as to its being *Satis ferax*, he takes his Meaning to be, That it was fruitful in Corn, or Things ſow'd; *Satu*, not *Sat ferax*. He alſo corrects the reading in theſe Words, *Ut Pomaria conſerant, & Prata ſepiant, & Hortos rigent*, thus; *Nec enim cum uberitate Soli Labore contendunt, ut Pomaria conſerant, Hortos ſepiant, & Prata rigent*. The Meaning of which he takes to be, That the Country was fruitful enough, had the People underſtood or taken Care to manure it; and when *Tacitus* ſays, it would bear no Fruit-Trees, becauſe of the Coldneſs of the Climate; he proves from his own Words, that it was not meant of Apples, Pears, Nuts, or other Glandiferous Trees, with which the vaſt *Hercinian* Foreſt abounded, but of Olives, Almonds, Vines, Figs, Peaches, Prunes, *&c.* that were plentiful in *Italy*: And even as to Vines, the Induſtry of the modern *Germans* has fully proved the Miſtake; for half that Part of the Country deſcribed by *Ptolemy*, towards the S. produces Wine of ſeveral Sorts, particularly *Rhenish*, which is not only equal to, but preferable to ſome of the Wines of *Italy*; and the like Miſtake is now plain as to other Fruit-Trees which abound in *Germany*. 'Tis evident, that *Tacitus* was in the ſame Miſtake as to their Mines of Gold and Silver; for 'tis commonly known now, that they have many Silver Mines, and Gold was anciently found in the *Rhine*, of which the Pieces called *Rhenish*, *Rhenani*, are a ſufficient Proof; and 'tis known, that there's Gold now found in *Bohemia*, with ſeveral ſorts of Jewels: And whereas *Tacitus* ſays, their Cattle were ſmall, and look'd ill; he owns it to be true as to thoſe Northern Parts in *Weſtphalia*, &c. which were beſt known to the *Roman* Arms; but in the S. Parts it is otherwiſe. And whereas in *Ceſar*'s Time, the *Germans* us'd to buy Horſes from the *Gauls*, the *Germans* in many Countries do now make a great deal of Money by ſelling Horſes to the *French*: And *Cluverius* takes Notice of the Wild-Beaſts and Fowls in their Foreſts, of their

Digitized by Google

their Lakes and Rivers full of Fish, and of their Medicinal Springs and Baths, omitted by *Tacitus*. From all which together, 'tis apparent, That *Germany* abounds with many Things for Luxury, wants nothing that is neceſſary; and for Towns and Buildings, may compare with any other Country in *Europe*, except *Italy*.

Their Habitations, and Way of Removing Annually.

Cluverius, in his 13th Chapter, takes Notice of *Tacitus*'s Miſtake, in ſaying the *Germans* had no Towns, and did not love to dwell contiguous; for *Ceſar* in his Commentaries expreſly mentions their Towns, and 'tis very improbable that they were all deſtroyed after his Death; but he owns, from the Authority of *Velleius Paterculus*, *Dio*, and others, that thoſe Towns were nothing but Villages, and that the firſt great Towns were built there by the *Romans*. He confutes thoſe who, from the Authority of *Ptolomy*, that wrote about 60 Years after *Tacitus*, and mentions 90 Places in *Germany* beyond the *Rhine*, which he calls Πόλεις, or Towns, think they had great Cities in thoſe Days, for *Ammianus Marcellinus* frequently mentions the Wars beyond the *Rhine*; but ſays nothing of any Town, Caſtle or Fort, built by the *Germans*. Upon the whole, he ridicules the Vanity of thoſe who, from *Ptolomy*'s Authority, would maintain the Antiquity of this or that City beyond the *Rhine*; and ſays, there can be nothing in it, except they will own that there were Villages of the ſame Name with thoſe that are now Wall'd Towns. He proves next from *Tacitus* and *Seneca*, That the ancient *Germans* had at firſt no Houſes, but liv'd upon Herbs, and by Hunting, were clad with Skins, lay on the Ground, and hunted with Darts or Spears pointed with Bone for want of Iron, and were accompanied with their Women and Children, who ſhar'd in their Prey. At that Time they had no other Houſes, but under Thickets of Trees, or Boughs twiſted together. Afterwards they form'd a ſort of Villages by ſuch Fountains, Fields and Woods, as they thought fit, where their Habitations were not contiguous, but each Houſe had a ſeparate Space; and hence he obſerves, That the Names of moſt of the *German* Villages and Towns do ſtill end with *Wald*, *Feld*, *Brun*: In *Engliſh*, *Wood*, *Field*, *Burn*, or *Brook*; and to the Names of their Habitations, either the Name of the Proprietor, or the *German* Termination *Heim*, *Haus* or *Hauſen*, was added; in *Engliſh*, *Home* or *Houſe*; and this was common to all the Nations of the *Celtæ*, as appears by the Names of many Towns in *Italy*, *France*, *Spain*, and *Great Britain*, tho' the Inflexions be now varied according to the Cuſtom of the Times, as *Bergamo* in *Italy*, *Burgoſo* in *Spain*, &c.

Thoſe Houſes were not built with Stone, Mortar, or Brick, but made of Stakes twiſted with Branches, cover'd with Bark or Leaves, and of a ſquare Form: Of theſe, according to *Herodian*, were their Towns compos'd. The ſame Cuſtom is ſtill obſerv'd by ſuch as live in the Woods of *Bohemia* and *Thuringia*. In *Cæſar*'s Time, we find thoſe Houſes were cover'd with Straw.

Cluverius takes Notice afterwards from *Ceſar*, That they uſed ſuddenly to change their Habitations for want of Proviſion, becauſe they did not till their Ground, nor lay up Corn, but liv'd moſtly upon Cattle, and their Product of Milk and Cheeſe, and laying what Moveables they had in Carts, removed with them eaſily as they pleaſed. They had no Property or fix'd Portions of Land; but their Magiſtrates and Princes appointed every Year, in what Places and Proportions they thought fit, Lands for ſuch Tribes as dwelt together, and made them remove to another Place next Year. Their Reaſons were, That Part of the Ground ſhould always be fallow, and that the People ſhould be inur'd to Hardſhips, that they might be fit for War; whereas had they continued always in one Place, they would have built better Houſes, and by degrees have fallen into Luxury: For *Tacitus* ſays, That in ſome Places they plaiſter'd their Cottages with fine ſhining Earth, ſo as it reſembled Painting. *Cluverius* ſays, they did it with Clay of different Colours. Thus they liv'd in *Tacitus*'s Time. But about 130 Years after, when *Alexander Mammæa* and *Maximinus* were Emperors, it appears from *Herodian*, That near the *Rhine* they began to build with Stone and Brick; and

Mar-

Digitized by Google

Marcellinus says, That in the Reign of the Emperor *Conſtantinus*, their Houſes were built more nicely after the *Roman* Way. Beſides thoſe Cottages, *Tacitus* ſays, they had Caves or Dens under Ground, cover'd with Dung, where they liv'd, and laid up their Corn in Winter, and many times eſcap'd the Fury of their Enemies. They were ſo hardy, that moſt Part of 'em went naked, eſpecially their Youth; and their Men and Women, in the coldeſt Winters, had nothing but ſhort Mantles or Caſſocks of the Skins of Beaſts, or Rinds of Trees.

When they came to build Villages, we have heard already their Houſes were not contiguous, but built at a great Diſtance from one another, either becauſe they would avoid the Danger of Fire, or becauſe they did not underſtand the Way of Building. Here *Cluverius* has a curious Diſſertation upon the Word *Burgus*, the Name given to ſuch Villages by *Oroſius*, *Luitprandus*, &c. and he thinks it to be originally a *German* Word, ſignifying an Incloſure, becauſe thoſe Places were hedg'd about like Gardens, which is expreſſed by another *German* Word, *Taun* or *Tuyn*; from whence comes the *Engliſh* Word *Town*; but in Time this Word *Burg* came to be applied to ſuch only as we incloſ'd with Walls.

He comes next to the Deſcription of their *Pagi*, which he ſays were not Villages, as appears by that Sentence of *Tacitus*, *Eliguntur Principes qui jura per Pagos Viciſque reddunt*; *i. e.* Princes were choſen to adminiſter Juſtice in the Diſtricts and Villages; and from *Plutarch*, in the Life of *Numa*, who ſays, he divided the Land among his People into Parts, called *Pagi*. It appears alſo by *Cæſar*'s Commentaries, That large Countries or Diſtricts were called *Pagi*; for *Helvetia* is ſaid to be divided into 4 *Pagi*; but thoſe ancient *Pagi* were not ſo large; for *Tacitus* in ſeveral Places mentions many of them as belonging to inconſiderable People, particularly that the *Semnones*, a People of *Suevia*, had 100. *Cluverius* obſerves, That what the Ancients called *Pagi*, the modern *Germani* call *Gaw*, *Gew*, *Gow*. Hence *Briſgaw*, *Rhingaw*, &c.

Thoſe *Pagi* were ſubdivided, as *Tacitus* informs us, into what we now call Hundreds; *Eliguntur Principes qui jura per Pagos Viciſq; reddunt, Centeni ſingulis ex plebe Comites, Conſilium ſimul & Auctoritas adſunt*; i. e. Princes were choſen to adminiſter Juſtice in the Diſtricts and Villages, and had 100 of the People join'd with them to give them Advice, and to add to their Authority. And from the Latin Word *Centum*, the *Germans* derive their *Centem* and *Centengerichte*, which is the ſame with the *Engliſh* Hundred. And it appears by *Tacitus*, That they were ſummoned to War according to thoſe Hundreds.

Their STATURE *and* CONSTITUTION.

Cluverius, in his 14th Chapter, obſerves, That *Tacitus* thought the *Germans* to be an unmix'd People, becauſe their Habit of Body was much alike, being of a large Stature, with blue Eyes, and red or faircolour'd Hair. Their Courage was equal to their Stature, and their Language fierce and harſh. *Cæſar* in his Commentaries takes Notice, That they were much taller, and more robuſt, than the *Gauls*, and looked ſo fierce, that the *Roman* Soldiers at firſt were ſeized with ſo much Fear, that they could ſcarce endure their Looks. Here *Cluverius* obviates a common Miſtake, as if in thoſe Times the *Germans* had all been Giants, which aroſe from their being of a much larger Size than the *Gauls* and *Italians*, and much the ſame with the *Britains*; of whom *Strabo* ſays, he ſaw ſome at *Rome* who were half a Foot higher than the talleſt *Romans*; which by the Deſcription that *Tacitus* gives of the *Caledonians* or ancient *Scots*, *Cluverius* thinks to have been ſome of that Nation. He takes likewiſe Notice, That 'tis the Opinion of Natural Philoſophers, that the Northern People are ſo much larger and ſtronger than the Southern, becauſe the Heat of the Sun dries up the Moiſture of the latter; and this he takes alſo to be the Cauſe why the People of the North have a greater inward Heat than thoſe of the South: And he obſerves, That ſuch of the *Germans* as inhabit the moiſt Countries betwixt the *Scheld* and the *Elb*, are larger than the reſt. And whereas *Hippocrates* ſays, the People of the North look ill, becauſe they

Digitized by Google

are pale and lean; he ſays, 'tis true of Part of the *Swedes* and *Norwegians*, who are as much dry'd up by exceſſive Cold, as thoſe of the South are by exceſſive Heat. The fair Complexion of the *Germans*, *Goths*, and *Britains*, mentioned by the Ancients, is aſcribed to their Climate. But all this is only to be underſtood of the People in general; for there are Exceptions in every Country, and the *Romans* ſpoke only of thoſe Parts that were beſt known to them.

As to the Terribleneſs of their Voice and Countenance, taken Notice of by the Ancients, he ſays, 'tis ſtill obſervable in thoſe who live on the *Baltick*.

For their inward Diſpoſition, he quotes many of the Ancients, who ſay, they could endure a great deal of Hunger and Cold, but could not bear Thirſt or Heat, which made them not ſo good Soldiers when they came into warmer Climates.

To what *Tacitus* and other Authors ſay, That their huge Bodies were only fit for a ſhort Attack, and that they could not endure Fatigue or Wounds; *Cluverius* oppoſes *Caſar*, *Mela*, and *Seneca*, who ſay, That from their Infancy they were accuſtomed to Fatigue and Hardſhip; That the Men were very ſtrong and ſwift, and ſpar'd neither Man or Beaſt that came in their Way; That the young Men harden'd themſelves by Hunting, and the more Horns of the Wild-Beaſts they had killed they brought to the Publick, the more they were eſteemed, ſays *Caſar* in his Commentaries. *Mela* adds, That they exercis'd their Strength and Courage by War and Hunting; That before they came to the Age of Puberty, they went naked in the greateſt Cold: And *Seneca*, in his Book *De Ira*, ſays, There was nothing more courageous than the *Germans*; no People more fierce in an Attack; and no Nation delighted more in Arms, in which they were bred up, and neglected almoſt every thing elſe: That no People could better endure Fatigue, moſt of 'em being without Clothes or Houſes; ſo that the greateſt Advantage other Nations had of them, was their too great Fury, and want of Diſcipline.

Their DEGREES *and different* RANKS.

Cluverius, in his 15th Chapter, ſays, ancient and modern Authors agree, That they were divided into 4 Ranks, *viz.* Nobles, Freemen, *Liberti*, or thoſe that had been manumitted, among whom were reckoned their Children, called *Libertini*; and the 4th Sort was Servants: For this he quotes *Tacitus*, and *Adamus Bremenſis*, who adds, That 'twas Death for any of them to marry but with thoſe of their own Rank. *Cluverius* owns, That this Cuſtom was much obſerv'd in *Germany* in his own Time, not by Vertue of any ſuch Law, but becauſe the Nobility reckon'd 'twas a Diſgrace for them to marry with thoſe of a lower Rank. He is of Opinion, That the Nobility were firſt raiſed to that Dignity for their Valour in War, which he ſupports by the Saying of *Tacitus*, That they choſe their Kings from among their Nobility, and their Captains from among their Valiant Men: Therefore he thinks, that when any of the common Sort ſignaliz'd their Valour, ſo as to be made Commanders, they were made Noble at the ſame time. He takes Notice, That in his Time, Princes conferr'd the Order of Nobility upon People for Money; but they were ſo much deſpiſed by the ancient Families, that they ſcorn'd to converſe with them. He ſays, The ancient *German* Nobility had their Seats generally apart from Villages and Towns, becauſe they reckon'd it a Degradation to live in Towns, and be ſubject to their Laws. They were called by the general Name of *Adel*, and by modern Latin Authors *Adelingi*.

The next Order was the *Ingenui* or *Liberti*, in their Language *Friling*, *i. e.* Freemen, ſo called, becauſe they were not ſubject to the Nobles, but liv'd according to their own Cuſtoms, as Citizens do now; and becauſe they liv'd in Burgs or Towns, they were called *Burgers*: Out of them thoſe Councils were choſen from the ſeveral Hundreds, that aſſiſted the Princes in adminiſtring Juſtice.

That

Digitized by Google

That we may the better understand what their *Liberti* or manumitted People were, he first gives us an Account of their Servants, from whence they had their Rise; and those he informs us, from *Tacitus*, were of two Sorts: The first were either taken in War, or such as were oblig'd to serve when they lost their Liberty at Game; for he observes, That the *Germans* were so much addicted to play at Dice, that when they had lost all, they would play away their own Liberty, and the Conqueror being asham'd of such a Victory, commonly sold that Sort of Servants to others. The 2d Sort were not appointed to their several Stations in the Families of their Masters, as now; but every one had his own House, and his Proportion of Corn and Cattle assigned by his Master to manage for his Use, and the Houshold-Service was perform'd by their Wives and Children. *Seneca* takes Notice in his 47th Epistle, where he speaks of *Varus*'s Defeat by the *Germans*, That they made many of the Noble *Romans* whom they took, Shepherds, or such kind of Servants as last mentioned, who in the *German* Language are called Boors or Husbandmen: And he observes, That the *German* Nobles, especially such as live on the *Baltick*, make an Estimate of their Wealth according to the Number of such Boors, whom they use like Slaves.

From these Sorts of Servants came their *Liberti*, or manumitted People, whose Condition was not much better than that of Servants, because they were still obliged to serve their Masters, and look after their Houshold Affairs: So that 'twas only a Step towards Freedom, which their Children called *Libertini*, obtained as the Reward of the Valour, or some other remarkable Service of their Parents.

Their Way of Dressing, Apparel and Bedding.

Cluverius, in his 16th Chapter, gives an Account from *Tacitus*, That as soon as they awak'd, which was generally by Break of Day, they wash'd themselves all over, and in Winter-time in hot Water; after which they eat: But tho' this was their daily Practice, *Pliny* says, they were very nasty, because they anointed themselves with Butter. It has been mentioned before, that their Hair was generally fair or red; and they made use of Art to make it more so, and particularly of a Lye of Lime and Soap, or with the Ashes of Beech and Goats-Dung, which sometimes they made up in a Liquor, and sometimes into Balls; to which *Martial* alludes when he mentions the *Spuma Batava*, the *Spuma Caustica*, and the *Mattiaca Pila*. He observes, That the Men practis'd this more than the Women, because they thought their red Hair made them terrible to their Enemies: For the same Reason they delighted in long Hair, which they sometimes ty'd backward in their Necks; and such as were Leaders in War, ty'd it in a Bundle on the Top of their Heads, that they might be the more conspicuous, By these Methods they made their Hair so thick, that it resembled the Manes of Horses; for sometimes they cover'd their Shoulders with it, curl'd up in Locks. *Diodorus* says, some of them shav'd their Beards, others let them grow; but the Nobles shav'd their Cheeks, and kept long Mustachoes, which mix'd with their Meat and Drink, and they comb'd them with a great deal of Care; but they did not tie up their Hair, or shave their Faces, till they had given Proofs of their Valour; so that those who wore it otherwise, were reckon'd mean and cowardly.

As to their Clothes, they went naked till they arrived at the Age of Puberty, which they reckon'd about 20; after this their Habit was a Cloak or Mantle, fasten'd with a Buckle, for which the poorer Sort made use of a Skewer; but in the House they went for most part naked. The better Sort wore Skins of Wild-Beasts, with the Hair outward, which cover'd only their Shoulders, and the Heads and Horns they wore upon their own Heads. The Men and Women wash'd promiscuously in the Rivers. They reckon'd Venery very disgraceful before the 20th Year of their Age; but after that they were not accounted very modest. Those who liv'd next the *Rhine*, were more nice in their Habits; but such as liv'd in remoter Parts, were more negligent. The richer Sort painted or dy'd those Skins of Wild-Beasts, and sometimes sew'd Pieces upon them of several Colours, resembling Spots. Their Women

Digitized by Google

had Mantles of Linen, with Purple Stripes. *Cluverius* ſays, That in his Time thoſe who liv'd on the *Baltick* had ſtill ſome of thoſe ancient Sorts of Veſtments of various Colours, compos'd of the Skins of wild Beaſts and Sea-Monſters, being a ſort of a Cloak that came as low as their Ankles, which they wore at Feſtivals. The Poor had a meaner ſort, and the Rich a finer, with a kind of Silver Buttons down their Breaſts, and ſome of them adorn'd with Pearl. Their Habit call'd *Rhenones*, *Cluverius* thinks to have been a ſort of Coat without Sleeves, which cover'd them before and behind as low as their Navel and Buttocks. It was made of the Skins of Beaſts, with the Hair outward, and could turn Rain.

Their *Saga*, *Cluverius* takes to have been a ſort of Rugs or Plades of a ſquare Form, much like thoſe wore by the Highlanders and native *Iriſh*, but ſhorter; ſo that they came no lower than their Middle. Theſe were alſo of different Colours, ſo as to reſemble Skins of Lions, Tygers, Leopards, and other wild Beaſts; and they wore the rough Side outward. He thinks they were of two Sorts, one rough and heavy, and the other ſmooth and light: The latter was ſtrip'd and flower'd, and made uſe of in Summer, or in War. He diſtinguiſhes betwixt thoſe of the Freemen and Nobles; thoſe of the former were only ſtrip'd, or had Spots of divers Colours, as the Weaver pleas'd; but thoſe of the latter had the Arms of the Nobles, ſuch as they carried in their Shields, not ſuch as are now in uſe, which frequently repreſent entire Beaſts or Fowls, and ſometimes Landskips, but only Colours diſtinguiſh'd by Squares; and thoſe Coats which have nothing but plain Colours, are now reckon'd the moſt ancient. The Colours were generally of two ſorts, plac'd alternately, and they choſe them ſo as they thought ſuited beſt. *Herodian* ſays, That ſuch of 'em as liv'd next the *Roman* Provinces had Gold and Silver interwoven in their Garments.

They had another ſort made of the inner Rinds of Trees, which were moſt uſed by thoſe who liv'd in Woods, Servants, and poor People. This Rind ſeems to be that we call Baſts.

Tacitus ſays, the Rich were diſtinguiſh'd by their Habit, which was not a looſe Garment like that of the *Sarmatæ* and *Parthi*, but ſo cloſe as to ſhew all the Lineaments of their Bodies, ſo that he thinks they reſembled cloſe Doublets with Breeches, and were made of Linen or Skins, but not long enough to cover their Nakedneſs. He ſays, That in his Time the common People of *Franconia* wore their Garments ſo cloſe, that they ſeem'd to be ſew'd to their Skins. The Shoes of the ancient *Germans* were made of Hides, with the Hair outward, and tied about their Ankles, ſuch as are ſtill us'd by ſome of the Northern People. They were wore only by the richer Sort; but the Poor went bare-foot, or made Shoes of Bark.

For Ornaments, they wore Chains about their Necks like the *Gauls*, Bracelets about their Arms, and Rings upon their Fingers; but their Rings were of Iron until they had kill'd an Enemy. So much for the Habits of their Men.

The Women's Apparel was much the ſame, but more looſe, and moſt of Linen, which *Cluverius* thinks to be what we call Smocks: They were very ſhort, and had Purple Stripes: They were not ſo careful of their Hair as the Men, but wore it looſe about their Shoulders, or ſometimes ty'd behind. He adds, That the People in general were very naſty; and that there was no Difference, as to their Education, betwixt Maſter and Servant; and that they and their Cattle lodg'd under the ſame Roof, and lay upon the ſame Floor, till Age made a Diſtinction betwixt the Freemen and Slaves. They had no Seats, but ſometimes Skins, Rugs, or Graſs, under them; and their Bedding was Bear-Skins, Leaves of Trees, or Graſs, and their Covering was what they wore by Day, which was very ſlovenly, becauſe they anointed themſelves with Butter, and in cold Weather ſat frying all Day by the Fire.

Their Diet *and* Banquets.

Cluverius, in his 17th Chapter, ſays from *Cæſar*, That they had not much Corn; and the greateſt Part of their Proviſion was Milk, Cheeſe, and Fleſh. *Tacitus* adds, That they had Veniſon, wild Apples, and curdled Milk, which *Cluverius* thinks

thinks to have been Butter, their choiceſt Dainty. *Pliny* ſays, Their chief Corn was Barley and Oats, of which they made Bread and Pottage. 'Tis obſerv'd of the *Fenni*, who liv'd in the moſt Eaſterly Parts of *Germany*, That they were a very barbarous People, miſerably Poor, had neither Arms, Horſes, nor Houſhold-Goods, but liv'd upon Herbs and Wild-Apples. They made their Butter of all ſorts of Milk; but the fatteſt was that of Sheeps-Milk; and when they took the Butter from it, they boil'd it, and that which ſwimm'd on the Top they call'd a Syllabub. They ſometimes eat their Fleſh raw, and preſs'd it in the Hide or Skin with their Hands and Feet when 'twas cold, in order to heat it again; and *Poſidonius* ſays, they ſometimes roaſted or boil'd it. *Cluverius* is of Opinion, That the ancient *Germans* made uſe of Hogs-Fleſh ſalted, as they do now in *Weſtphalia*, which is famous for Hams. *Tacitus* mentions a great Battle betwixt the *Catti* and *Hermunduri*, People of *Germany*, about a River in their Confines, whoſe Water poured upon burning Wood produced Salt.

Their Drink was Milk, and a ſort of Ale or Beer made of Barley or Wheat, which *Tacitus* ſays had ſome Reſemblance of Wine: And *Poſidonius* ſays, they had alſo Wine, which muſt be underſtood of thoſe Parts on the *Rhine*, and that border'd on *France*.

Their Way of Eating, according to *Tacitus*, was ſeparately, each in their own Place, ſitting on the Ground upon the Skins of Wolves or Dogs, Graſs or Hay, round the Fire, and every one had their Joint; which is no Wonder, ſays *Cluverius*, ſince, beſides Bread, they had nothing elſe for Dinner and Supper; and what remained, they eat cold afterwards. The Veſſels they drank out of were of Wood, or Earthen-Ware made like Pots; but their Princes, and ſuch as had been Ambaſſadors, had Veſſels of Plate, which had been preſented them; and ſome of them had Horns of Beaſts tipp'd with Silver, which they made uſe of at their Banquets. *Poſidonius* ſays, When they were invited to a Feaſt, they ſat in a Circle, which *Cluverius* rather thinks was a Semi-Circle: The chief Perſon ſat in the middle, and next to him the Maſter of the Feaſt. Every one had his Table, (which, according to *Cluverius*, was a Three-footed Stool) brought in cover'd with Victuals; and if they were People of Note, thoſe who bore their Targets, ſtood behind and ſerv'd them; but ſuch as carried their Spears, ſat down at the ſame time over againſt them, for they always had their Arms with them: But in their own Families, the Children of both Sexes ſerv'd them naked. The beſt Meſſes they gave to the chief Gueſts. He thinks from thoſe Words of *Tacitus*, *Septa pudicitia agunt*, &c. That the Women were alſo invited to thoſe Feaſts, and behav'd themſelves modeſtly. He obſerves in general, That they were very much addicted to Eating and Sleeping, and prodigal in their Entertainments.

Their Employments, Riches, Manufactures, *and* Navigation.

Tacitus ſays, That moſt of their Employment was in Hunting, and Military Affairs; and at other times their ſtouteſt Men left the Management of their Buſineſs to Women, old Men, and the weakeſt of the Family, and ſpent their Time in Eating, Sleeping, and Gaming. They had little Trade in *Cæſar*'s Time, except among thoſe who liv'd upon the *Rhine*, and that conſiſted rather in ſelling what had been given them in Preſents, as Horſes, Arms, Trappings, and Chains, or what they had taken from their Enemies, than in buying any thing. A few of them however traded in Wine. *Tacitus* ſays, They had no Silver or Gold Coin but what was *Roman*, and that was only in the bordering Countries; for the innermoſt Provinces dealt in the old Way of Barter. They lov'd Money however, eſpecially thoſe Pieces call'd *Serrati* and *Bigati*; and would ſell Peace at any time to the *Romans*; but thoſe beyond the *Rhine* would ſuffer Merchants to bring no Wine or other Commodities among 'em, that might nouriſh Luxury, or make them effeminate.

All ſorts of 'em lov'd to ſwim, and they taught it their Horſes, ſo that they would croſs the *Rhine* in Troops together. This prov'd fatal to them when they invaded *Italy*, where the Rivers being more rapid than in *Germany*, Multitudes of them were drown'd

drown'd in attempting to ſwim them on Horſeback. We have heard already, That they had but little Tillage, and this, with their other Domeſtick Labour, they follow'd by Turns; for thoſe who ſtay'd at home one Year, went to War the next, *Tacitus* ſays of them in general, That they hated Peace abroad, and lov'd Sluggiſhneſs at home.

Cluverius is of Opinion, That they had ſuch Trades among 'em as were neceſſary for building Houſes, making Chariots and Cars for War, Clothes and Arms, and particularly Swords, Spears, Bucklers, and Helmets; the latter of which they made very artfullly, to reſemble the Heads of Wild-Beaſts.

As to Navigation, *Tacitus* ſays, the *Suiones*, now the *Swedes*, and ſuch as liv'd on the *Baltick*, underſtood Sailing, and had many Ships, with which they ſail'd in the Northern Ocean as far as *Iceland*. Thoſe who liv'd about the Mouth of the *Rhine* and *Elb* had likewiſe Veſſels, with which they infeſted the Coaſts of *France* and *Britain*. This *Cluverius* aſcribes chiefly to the *Saxons*, who he ſays came firſt from *Holſtein*, drove thoſe People that were newly call'd *Franci* from the Countries betwixt the *Elb* and the *Rhine*, and with the Remains of 'em, that ſtill liv'd about the Mouth of the latter, invaded the neighbouring Coaſts of *France*, *viz.* the *Franci* by Land, and the *Saxons* by Sea, as he proves from *Marcellinus*, *Claudian*, the *Notitia Imperii*, &c.

Sidonius ſays, The *Saxons* were very expert Seamen, ſo that every one of 'em that tugg'd at the Oar, look'd like an Arch-Pyrate; for they commanded, obey'd, taught, and learn'd to play the Pyrate all together. He adds, That they were well acquainted with the Sea, deſpis'd the Dangers of it, and would venture among the Rocks and raging Waves. *Cluverius* ſays, the *Engliſh*, *Dutch*, *French* and *Spaniards*, learn'd Navigation from the *Saxons*: And hence it is, that moſt of the Sea-Terms are ſtill *German*. He thinks their Veſſels were made of Withs or Twigs cover'd with Skins. They us'd no Sails, but Oars; and the Ships of the *Suiones*, according to *Tacitus*, had Sterns at both Ends, and their Oars ſo diſpos'd, that they could row either Way upon Occaſion.

Their VIRTUES *and* VICES.

THey had no Learning, yet adminiſtred Juſtice according to their own Cuſtoms, rewarded the Good, and puniſh'd the Bad, by the Light of Nature; ſo that *Tacitus* ſays, Good Manners were of more Force with them, than good Laws with others: But *Ceſar* in his Commentaries ſays, That their Cities or Communities glory'd moſt in having large Waſtes about 'em, and reckon'd it true Valour to drive out their Neighbours. Depredations without their own Boundaries were not accounted diſhonourable, but valued as proper to improve their Youth, and to prevent Sluggiſhneſs; and all of the ſame Community were reckoned a-kin, and would be ſure to have the ſame Friends and Enemies with their Kindred, and liv'd together in Tribes, which *Tacitus* reckons was a great Incitement to their Valour. They were ſo much eſteem'd for their Fidelity, that *Cluverius* ſays, moſt of the *Roman* Emperors, from the Time of *Auguſtus*, preferr'd them for their Guards to all other People: And *Tacitus* gives this as an Inſtance of their Fidelity to their Promiſes and Truſt, That when they had play'd away their own Liberty, they would willingly ſubmit to Servitude; and thoſe who were young and ſtrong, would ſuffer themſelves to be bound and ſold by thoſe who were old and weak. Here *Cluverius* anſwers an Objection from *Strabo*, That they betray'd and annoy'd thoſe who truſted them, and broke their Contracts, by alledging, That they were very faithful in obſerving ſuch Contracts as they made voluntarily with their Friends; but did not think themſelves obliged to keep ſuch Promiſes as were extorted from them by ſuch as endeavour'd to ſubdue them. And whereas many Authors call 'em Cruel, Fierce, Unmerciful, and Proud, he proves from *Melo* and *Tacitus*, That they were civil to their Gueſts, merciful to ſuch as ſubmitted, or fled to them for Refuge, and reckon'd it the greateſt of Crimes to betray them, or ſuffer them to be injur'd.

He comes next to their Bounty, Civility, and Hoſpitality, and ſays with *Diodorus* and *Taci-*

Digitized by Google

Tacitus, That Strangers were liberally entertained by them, according to their Ability. They would invite them kindly to their Feasts, attend them from one Place to another, and reckon'd it a Crime to deny Lodging to any body. *Julianus Cæsar*, in *Misopogone*, commends them much for their Friendship, and says, they know nothing of Flattery, but were free, just, and plain.

Their Gravity he ascribes to their Martial Temper, and being constantly in War; which is represented thus by *Diodorus*, That their Aspect was terrible, their Language harsh, their Words few, and their Way of Speaking obscure.

For their Temperance, it was not so much in Eating and Drinking, as in Venery. *Cluverius* owns, That in his Time their Excess of Drinking was still too much in use; and that Lasciviousness had also gain'd Ground upon them: Yet in the Inland Parts of the Country they were rather more chast than neighbouring Nations, and hated obscene Discourse. He is at some Pains to vindicate them from being addicted to unnatural Lust, which he charges home upon the *Gauls* and *Romans*. And though he owns, That some of the ancient *Germans* might be infected with it, yet he shews from *Tacitus*, That they punish'd it as a capital Crime; and that as they hang'd Traitors and Deserters, they drown'd Cowards, and such as abus'd their Bodies, *Corpore infames*.

On this Occasion, *Cluverius* rejects *Lipsius*'s putting *Torpore* instead of *Corpore*, because that Crime is charg'd upon the *Celtæ* in general, by many great Authors; but he imputes it chiefly to that Part of them call'd the *Gauls*, who learn'd it, together with the Use of Letters, from the *Greek* Colony that settled at *Marseilles*; and as a Proof that the *Germans* abhorred this Crime, he instances in the *Bottavi*, who rebell'd because the *Romans* abus'd their Youth in that Manner.

For the Vices of the ancient *Germans*, we have heard before, That they accounted Robbery without their own Bounds no Crime: And *Cluverius* owns, That they reckon Drunkenness to be no Reproach. *Pliny* says, they would drink two Days and two Nights together, without stammering in their Speech, vomiting, or easing Nature any other way; and that they drank large Bumpers without Breathing: But *Cluverius* endeavours to extenuate this Fault, by charging it also upon other Nations.

We have heard already, That they were given to Idleness, when they were not at War; which *Cluverius* says was the Fault of most Warlike Nations, and instances in the *Thracians*, quoted by *Herodotus*, who looked upon idle Men to be the most honourable, and upon Husbandmen to be the most contemptible People of the World.

Tacitus and *Diodorus* charge the *Germans* with Pride, Boasting, Vanity, Passion, and being apt to quarrel. *Cluverius* ascribes those Things to their Valour and Stoutness; and says, that 'tis common to all Nations to over-value themselves: That most People of *Europe* have learn'd to outdo the *Germans* in Boasting; and that his Countrymen don't keep Malice, but love to decide their Quarrels off hand.

Their Marriages, *and* Conjugal Love.

Tacitus says, they were almost the only Barbarians who contented themselves with one Wife apiece, except a few, who had more; and those they had rather as a Mark of Nobility, than to satisfy their Lust. He also observes, That amongst some of them, Virgins were only allow'd to marry; and that no Woman married a second time. We have heard before, That they reckon'd it base to lie with Women till they were 20 Years of Age; and that this Abstinence contributed to the Strength and Tallness of themselves and their Children. *Cluverius* says, the same was observ'd in his Time; and that young Men generally liv'd unmarried till above 20. It was not their Custom for Women to bring Portions to their Husbands, but, on the contrary, the Husbands gave Portions or Gifts to their Wives, which were approv'd by the Parents and Kindred that were present at making the Match; and those Gifts were not accommodated to please the Women's Vanity, being Cattle, Horses, with their Furniture, Bucklers, Swords, and Spears; and on the other Hand, the Women gave something of Arms to their Husbands. These were their

Mar

Digitized by Google

Marriage-Ties, their Sacred *Arcana*, and their Conjugal Gods, that the Women might alſo be inſpired with Courage, and reckon themſelves obliged to ſhare with their Husbands in their Dangers and Labours, and be their Companions in War and Peace. This was the Meaning of the Yoke of Oxen, their Horſes and Arms, they preſented to one another, as a Token that they muſt live and die together; and thoſe Arms they accounted honourable to tranſmit to Poſterity. This was a great Incitement to their Valour, for their Families accompanied them in War; ſo that their Troops were not form'd by Chance, but of their Tribes and Kindred; and their Wives and Children were ſo near when they fought, as they could hear their Cries. Theſe they reckon'd the beſt Witneſſes of their Valour, and Publiſhers of their Praiſe; and their Mothers and Wives number'd and ſuck'd their Wounds without Fear. Their Women did ſometimes behave themſelves gallantly in Sieges and Battles, and by their Intreaties and Tears, and repreſenting to 'em the Shame and Miſery of having them and their Children led Captive, did many times oblige them to renew the Battle, when they were ready to fly; for the Thoughts of that was more terrible to 'em than their own Danger; and the Courage of thoſe Communities was generally greateſt, among whom Noble young Women commanded. *Tacitus* gives an Inſtance of their Conjugal Love in *Arminius*, whoſe Wife being taken, he went about like a Madman, inciting the People to take Arms againſt *Cæſar*; for he could not endure to think of his Wife's Captivity. *Cluverius* takes Notice alſo from *Tacitus* of the Modeſty of their Women; that they were not debauch'd by Feaſting, Plays and Shews; the latter of which the ancient *Germans* valued ſo little, that when two Princes of the *Friſii* went on an Embaſſy to *Rome*, and were brought into *Pompey*'s Theatre, they took no Delight in the Play or Shews, but enquir'd who were the Knights and Senators. *Cluverius* thinks the Women's Ignorance of Letters contributed much to their Modeſty, and gives this for his Reaſon, but how ſolid, let the Reader judge, That a Letter will not bluſh; and that by this Means young Women and Matrons have been frequently debauch'd, by thoſe who would otherwiſe ſcarce have had the Confidence to ſpeak to them.

Their Child-bearing, Education, Kindred, *and Way of* Inheriting.

Cluverius thinks what *Strabo* ſays of the other *Celtick* Nations was common to the *Germans*, *viz.* That the Women made no great Account of the Pains of Child-bearing, and that the common Sort went about their Buſineſs as ſoon almoſt as they brought forth; That they waſh'd their Infants immediately in ſome Fountain or Stream, cover'd them but ſlightly, and inur'd them to Cold and Hardſhip from their very Birth, which they thought contributed to their Health and Strength. He gives ſeveral Inſtances of poor Women, who, being taken with their Pains while at Day-Labour, retir'd to a Buſh, brought forth their Young, wrapped them up, and return'd to their Labour again, leſt they ſhould loſe their Day's Wages. *Galen*, in his Book *De Tuenda Sanitate*, expreſly mentions the *Germans* as treating their Infants thus. *Julianus Cæſar*, in his Epiſtle to *Maximus*, ſays, The *Celtæ* threw their New-born Infants into the *Rhine*; That the Men could not be with-held from doing this by the Tears and Intreaties of their Wives, or their other Relations, who pretended the Danger of the Child, or were afraid for the Reputation of the Women, becauſe they fancied, that if the Child were ſpurious, the River would carry it down; but if otherwiſe, it would ſwim, and then they deliver'd it again to the Mother. *Cluverius* thinks that this, if true, was only practis'd by the *Gauls*, who liv'd on the *Rhine*, becauſe *Tacitus* makes no Mention of it in his Deſcription of the *Germans*; and he is not without Suſpicion, that *Julian* may have been impos'd upon in this, becauſe he ſays he had it only by Report; and that it proceeded from their Cuſtom above-mentioned, of dipping their Children in cold Water as ſoon as born. When *Tacitus* ſays, That they thought it a Crime to limit the Number of their Children,

Digitized by Google

dren, or to kill any of them, he takes his Meaning to be, That they did not abſtain from the Marriage-Bed, or deſtroy them, as was practis'd by ſome of the Eaſtern Nations, when they had more than they could maintain: And when he ſays, That they did not truſt them to their Maids, or to Nurſes, he takes it to be meant of thoſe of Quality, for others had no Servants. As to their Education, they made no Diſtinction betwixt Servants and Children, till the latter came to the Age of Puberty, which *Cluverius* ſays was obſerved in his own Time in the Northern Parts of *Germany*, where 'twas reckon'd a Diſgrace to carry their Children with them to Banquets, *&c.* till that Age; and this hard Way of Education, and breeding 'em to work in their Domeſtick Affairs, contributed to their Strength, Stature, and Virtue. They did not allow them to go to War till the Age of Manhood; but taught 'em the Uſe of Arms, to ſwim, and to ride, from their Youth.

Then as to their Kindred, and Way of Inheriting, *Tacitus* ſays, Uncles ſhew'd the ſame Reſpect to the Children of their Siſters, as if they had been their own; That ſome of them looked upon this as a more ſacred and ſtrict Tye of Blood, and therefore would rather have ſuch for Hoſtages than others, becauſe they looked upon 'em to be under a double Obligation to the Family. *Cluverius* thinks the Reaſon was, becauſe they reckon'd the Kindred by the Mother's Side. As to their Way of Inheritance, every one was ſucceeded by his own Children, without a Will, which *Cluverius* ſays was needleſs among a People ſo ignorant of Fraud. They had a Regard however to Primogeniture in every thing but Horſes and Arms, which fell not to the eldeſt, but to the braveſt of the Sons. If they had no Children, the next of Kin ſucceeded, as Brothers and Uncles of both Sides. The ancient People valued themſelves on the Number of their Poſterity and Kindred; the Want of which was reckon'd a Diſgrace. Their being thus link'd in Affinity, and living in Tribes and Kindreds together, was the Reaſon of their having the ſame Friends and Enemies, and their eſpouſing one another's Quarrels, in which 'twas accounted a Crime to deſert their Friends; and the Chiefs of each Tribe or Rank of People were their Captains.

Their RELIGION *and* WORSHIP.

Cluverius contradicts *Cæſar*, who ſays, they had no Druids to preſide in their Worſhip, or offer Sacrifice; and thinks the contrary plain from what he himſelf ſays afterwards, *viz.* That they only reckon 'em to be Gods whom they ſee, and of whoſe Help they are ſenſible, *viz.* the Sun, *Vulcan*, and the Moon; and that they had not ſo much as heard of the reſt. He ſupports his Opinion by the Authority of *Cicero* and *Dionyſius Halicarnaſſenſis*, who ſay, There was no Nation or People but what had ſome Knowledge of the Gods without being taught it; and ſince the *Celtæ* had their Religion from the *Egyptians*, and that the *Germans* were the far greater Part of the *Celtæ*; and ſince *Cæſar* owns, that the *Gauls* worſhipped *Mercury*, *Apollo*, the Moon, and *Minerva*, he doubts not but the *Germans* did the like. This he aſcribes to *Cæſar*'s Ignorance of *Germany*, of which he knew very little, but that Part on the *French* Side the *Rhine*. *Tacitus* ſays plainly, That they chiefly worſhipped *Mercury*, and on certain Days offer'd him Humane Sacrifices. They alſo ſacrific'd to *Mars*, *Hercules*, and *Iſis*; and the *Naharvali*, a *German* People, ſacrific'd to *Caſtor* and *Pollux* in a Grove, where a Prieſt in Woman's Habit preſided. *Cluverius* adds, That 'tis evident they did not learn this from the *Gauls* after *Julius Cæſar*'s Time, becauſe they were in continual War with them: And *Tacitus* ſays, That after the Defeat of *Varus*, the *Germans* beyond the *Rhine* ſacrific'd many of the *Roman* Officers to their Gods in the neighbouring Groves; and that the *Hermanduri* ſacrific'd the Captive *Catti* to *Mars* and *Mercury*, the ancient Cuſtom of the *Celtæ* and the *Gauls*, as *Cæſar* himſelf obſerv'd; and he thinks the Antiquity of the *German* Worſhip, and that they had it from the *Jews* or other Eaſtern Nations, to be very well prov'd by that Saying of *Tacitus*, That they held it unlawful to draw the Images of any of their Gods upon their Walls, or to reſemble 'em

Digitized by Google

to any thing of a Humane Shape; and if they did not name their Gods, it was common to them with others: And *Lucan* obſerves the ſame of the *Jews*, ---- *Dedita Sacris Incerti Judæa Dei*; *i.e.* The *Jews* were addicted to the Worſhip of an uncertain or unknown God.

Their Prieſts, *Orders of* Wiſe Men, *with their Diſcipline and Names.*

Cluverius proves from *Tacitus*, That they had Prieſts, without whoſe Order it was not lawful to puniſh any Man; and that they had white Horſes in their Woods, which they never put to any Labour, but when they were yok'd to the ſacred Chariot: The Kings, Princes and Prieſts, follow'd them, and obſerv'd their Neighing and other Noiſe as Omens. They thought the Prieſts to be the Servants of the Gods, and to know their Mind. Their Authority was great in making Peace or War, and they aſſiſted in Publick Councils as Interpreters of the Law.

Beſides thoſe Prieſts who explained their Omens, they had Women whom they conſulted as Oracles, thô they did not flatter or worſhip 'em as Goddeſſes, ſays *Tacitus*; among whom *Velleda*, *Aucinia*, and *Gauna*, were famous, and had Preſents made them both by the *Germans* and their Enemies, and therefore are mentioned by ſome *Roman* Authors to have commanded many People, which *Cluverius* underſtands to be meant only of their conſulting them, becauſe the Princes and People were at Liberty to make Decrees in Publick Councils without their Advice; yet the Prieſts and they both attended their Armies, and had greater Reſpect paid them than the Princes, becauſe of the Opinion they had of their knowing the Mind of the Gods. *Cæſar* likewiſe makes Mention of *German* Matrons who attended their Armies, and enquir'd by Lots and Divinations whether their Expeditions would be ſucceſsful; but *Cluverius* thinks it to be meant only of thoſe Propheteſſes. He ſays, there's no Certainty by what Name the *Germans* call'd their Prieſts; but ſince *Dry* in the *Saxon* Tongue ſignifies a Magician or Wiſe Man, he fancies *Druids*, the Name of the *Gauliſh* and *Britiſh* Prieſts, may be derived from it; and that the *German* Prieſts had the ſame Freedom from Taxes and War that they had, and Lands, *&c.* allow'd them for a Maintenance; That their Diſciples were thoſe of the firſt Rank; and that they taught 'em their Philoſophy and Religion in Dens and Groves, *viz.* The Immortality of the Soul, and Tranſmigration, *&c.* with ſomething of Aſtronomy, Hiſtory, and Geography; and exhorted 'em to Virtue, and a Contempt of Death. Their Inſtructions were contained in Verſe, and never committed to Writing; ſo that they were 20 Years or more in learning it. He adds, That there was one Chief Druid among them, who preſided over the reſt. When he died, they choſe another in his Place, and ſometimes fought for the Poſt. He thinks the Prieſt of the *Chatti*, mentioned by *Strabo* in *Germanicus*'s Triumph, was of this Sort.

In the following Chapters, he endeavours to prove from the Authority of *Macrobius*, in his Saturnals, That all the ſeveral Names of the Heathen Gods referred to the Sun, and of their Goddeſſes to the Moon; That *Vulcan* was the ſame with *Mars* and *Hercules*; and that the ancient *Germans* worſhipped one God, and three Perſons, under the Names of *Sun*, *Moon*, and *Fire*: But his Arguments to prove it, ſeem to have more of Reading and Speculation, than Solidity. The like may be ſaid of his Endeavours to prove, that they had ſome Knowledge of the Creation of the World, and of Angels, of their Fall, of the Creation and Fall of Man, of the Flood, and the End of the World; or if they had, it ſeems to have been nothing more but ſuch dark Hints of thoſe Things as we find in the Heathen Poets. He thinks, that till the Time of the *Romans*, they had no other Temples than Groves, with Fountains, which they accounted ſacred; but built ſome afterwards by their Perſwaſion and Example. *Tacitus* ſays, they worſhipped a Goddeſs called *Hertha*, (which *Cluverius* takes to be the Earth, as their common Mother:) She had a Grove dedicated to her in an Iſland, with a Chariot drawn by two Cows, and cover'd with Cloth, which none but the Prieſt had Leave to touch. They fancied her to be in

Digitized by Google

in this Chariot, followed her with great Veneration; and while she was carried about the Country, they abstain'd from War and Labour, and kept a Festival, till the Priest told them she was weary of Humane Converse, and return'd her to her Temple and Grove, when they fancied the Chariot and all sunk into a secret Lake. *Adamus Bremensis* says, The *Saxons* and *Swedes* worshipped God by Trees and great Trunks, which they called *Irminsul*, *i. e.* a Column, that supported all Things, which agrees with what *Cæsar* says in his First Book *De Divinatione*, That Images were first made use of by the Advice of Wise Men, which, when the People worshipped, they thought the Gods themselves to be present; and this Superstition was afterwards augmented by Painters, Poets, and Carvers.

In his 35th Chapter, he treats of the Habit, Worship, and Rites made use of by their Priests. We have heard before, that they us'd to sacrifice their Captive Enemies, from whence those Sacrifices were called *Hostiæ & Victimæ*, as *Ovid* tells us, *Fast. Lib.* 1.

Victima quæ cecidit dextra victrice, vocatur:
Hostibus à domitis Hostia nomen habet.

Strabo says, their Habits were white, according to the Custom of other Heathen Priests, as we find in *Ovid*, *Virgil*, *Diogenes Laertius*, *Silius Italicus*, &c. *Cluverius* says, they also sacrificed all sorts of Beasts, which, as well as the Priests, were crown'd with Garlands; and that they erected Altars of green Turf in the consecrated Places of their Woods, which were hedg'd about; and those were their *Sacra Penetralia*, and Temples. The Priests pour'd Wine, or some other Liquor, betwixt the Horns of the Sacrifice, and taking hold of the Hair of its Head with his Left Hand, called upon their Gods while he poured out the Liquor; and the People bowing down their Heads, begg'd Pardon for their Sins in the mean time. *Cluverius* says, the *Germani*, as well as *Gauls*, us'd to sacrifice Malefactors, which they thought was very grateful to the Gods; and those who were in Danger by grievous Distempers, or in Battle, us'd to offer such Sacrifices, or to make Vows that they would; and if Criminals could not be found, they would offer up innocent Persons. The Priests told 'em, That nothing else would prevail with the Gods to save the Life of a Man. When they made such Sacrifices, they us'd to look into the Intrails of the Person sacrific'd, in order to know what was to come, or judged of it by the Convulsion of the Members, or the Flowing of the Blood of the Person sacrificed. Those were the Sacrifices they offer'd when they consulted their Gods; and they had others of the like Nature when they made Vows for obtaining what they desir'd, which they called *Sacrificia Votiva*, and in these they offer'd up whatever Animal they took in War, and us'd either to hang them upon such Trees as were next to their Altars, or throw them into Ditches, and among Brambles, adding broken Weapons, or the Limbs of Horses. Thus when *Varus* was defeated, they sacrific'd the *Roman* Tribunes and Centurions; and the *Saxon* Pyrates us'd to sacrifice the Tenth of their Captives in the same manner by Lot, and put them to Death by cruel Torments, which they preferr'd to Ransoms. *Cluverius* is of Opinion, That when they sacrific'd the Blood only, which they call'd the Soul, they eat the Bodies both of Men and Beasts. Wherever the *Romans* prevail'd, they abolish'd the Order of those bloody Priests, and their barbarous Sacrifices.

In his 36th Chapter, he gives an Account of their Divinations by Auspices, Lots, &c. from *Tacitus*: They us'd to break off Twigs of Fruit-Trees, cut them in small Pieces, and distinguishing them by Marks, throw them at random upon a white Cloth; and praying to their Gods, and looking up to Heaven, took them up three times, and made their Conjectures according to the Marks they had put upon them before. If they thought their Designs forbid, they consulted no more that Day; but if allow'd, they consulted again, and observ'd likewise the Chirping and Flying of Birds; and we have heard before, that they also observ'd the Neighing of Horses, which they kept in the Woods on purpose. They had also another Way of Divination, which was, to make the first Captive they took from their Enemies fight with his own Country-Weapons against one

Digitized by Google

of their own Men, whom they chose on purpose, and determin'd of the Event according as either of them happen'd to be Conqueror.

Their Forms of GOVERNMENT.

Cluverius, *Cap.* 38. gives us an Account of their Democratical Form, with a Prince at the Head of the Administration; and shews us from *Tacitus* and *Cæsar*, That they chose their Kings on Account of their Nobility, and their Generals on Account of their Valour; That their Kings had no unlimited or absolute Power, and their Generals commanded rather by Example, than in a Despotical Manner; and if they were expeditious, brave, and appear'd undaunted-ly at the Head of the Army, they admir'd 'em. The usual Time of their publick Assemblies was at New or Full Moon; but they had so much Liberty, that sometimes they would be 3 Days in coming together. When they met, they sat down with their Arms, and Silence being enjoin'd by the Priests, who at that Time had a Power to force them to it, the King or Prince, and such as were most noted for their Age, Nobility, Valour or Eloquence, were heard; but rather by Way of Argument and Perswasion, than by Way of Command. If what was propos'd displeas'd them, they rejected it with a Noise; but if it pleas'd them, they clash'd their Arms together.

Cæsar says, That *Ambiorix*, one of the *German* Kings on this Side the *Rhine*, told the *Romans*, That he attack'd their Camp not of his own Accord or Judgment, but by the Order of the Community; and that the Nature of his Government was such, that they had as much Power over him, as he had over them: From whence *Cluverius* infers, That the principal Authority lay in the Democracy; and that the Power of the King consisted rather in Perswading, than Commanding. Their Kingdoms or Principalities were generally confin'd to narrow Limits; and some of them had more Power than others, especially those of the *Suiones*, now the *Swedes*. In their Councils, tho' they had distinct Orders, yet they had all a like Authority in Things which concern'd the whole Community. In those Councils they determin'd Matters of Life and Death; and chose the Princes who administred Justice in the Districts and Villages, and their Kings could do nothing of Moment without them in Peace or War. The Government of the *Belgæ*, or People of *Lower Germany*, was, according to *Strabo*, Aristocratical for most part; and 'tis to be observ'd, That he extends the Limits of this People as far as *Britany* in *France*. He says, the *Eburones*, a *German* People, chose a Prince and a General every Year. *Cluverius* observes, That *Cæsar* calls those Princes, whom *Tacitus* calls Senators. Their Revenues consisted in Corn and Cattle, given them by the People for supporting their Dignity, and entertaining those who attended them; for they had no Guards, but Voluntiers, to whom they gave Part of the Spoil that they took in War. *Cluverius* says, the Name of King was very improperly given to those Princes by the *Romans*, since they were no other but the First or Chief of the Community, in the *German* Language called *Herssen*, to which the Latin Word *Princeps* answers better than *Rex*; and it appears from *Tacitus* and other Authors, that they were Elective, and not Hereditary.

Cluverius, in his 39th Chapter, gives an Account of their Democracies, which were without Princes. These, he says, consisted not of Nobles, but of the Common People, called Burgers or Freemen. This he supports by the Authority of *Tacitus* and *Cæsar*, who say, That in Time of Peace they had no Common Magistrate; but the Princes or Senators, who were chosen in their Councils, administred Justice, and determin'd Controversies by the Consent and Authority of a Council chosen from the Hundreds; but were not attended by Voluntiers instead of Guards, as the Princes formerly mention'd.

In his 40th Chapter, he gives an Account of the Monarchies and mix'd Governments among the *Germans*. The first Instance he gives is among the *Suiones*, formerly spoke of, who he said honour'd Riches, and were govern'd by one Person, not in a precarious Manner; nor did he trust the People promiscuously with Arms, like the rest of the *German* Princes, but kept them shut up in an Arsenal, under the Guard of a Servant, because the Sea defended his Country

Digitized by Google

try from ſudden Incurſions by Enemies; and he did not think it his Intereſt, according to *Taciſus*, to truſt any of a higher Rank with the keeping of the Arms. *Cluverius* obſerves, That theſe People were neither ſo famous for Valour nor Probity as the reſt of the *Germans*, which he imputes to their Slavery, that was ſo much the more abominable, as 'twas voluntary; and that they made Riches the Qualification in the Perſon whom they choſe to be their Monarch. He informs us from *Adamus Bremenſis*, That they grew weary of this ſort of Government at laſt, reſum'd their Liberty, and choſe themſelves Kings, who govern'd by the Advice of the People, and were obliged to confirm what they agreed upon; but in Time of War, they were very obedient to their Kings, or to him whom he appointed General. The 2d Inſtance is that of *Marobodaus*, from *Velleius Paterculus*, who deſcribes his Power to have been much the ſame with that of the abſolute Kings of the *Swedes*; ſo that he ſubdu'd moſt of his Neighbours, and enlarg'd his Empire betwixt the *Danube*, the *Elb*, and the *Weiſſel*, and became not only terrible to his Neighbours, but formidable to the *Romans*; yet at laſt growing hateful to his own People for his Tyranny, they drove him from his Throne.

Cluverius's Inſtance of a mix'd Government is in the *Gothones*, who liv'd betwixt the *Oder*, the *Weiſſel*, and the Eaſt Sea. Their Kings had more Power than was common to thoſe of the other *Germans*, but were under Reſtrictions by Laws; ſo that their Government was a Mixture of Democracy and Monarchy, like that ſet up by the *Swedes*, when they grew weary of the abſolute Power of their Princes.

In his 41ſt Chapter, he treats of the Leagues of thoſe Democratical Governments among themſelves for mutual Defence, againſt powerful Factions at home, or Enemies from abroad. They generally choſe ſome Man of Eminency, to whom they gave Authority to determine Controverſies, and to defend the Poor againſt the Rich, and their Enemies abroad; but if they ſuffer'd the People to be oppreſſed or circumvented by others, they loſt their Authority. *Ceſar* calls ſuch of thoſe leſſer Governments as put themſelves under the Protection of the greater, *Clientele*; and *Cluverius* explains this by the Inſtance of *Hamburg*, which put it ſelf under the Protection of the King of *Denmark*, and of *Aix la Chapelle* under that of the Duke of *Juliers*; which he ſays is the ſame with being *in Clientela*, *in Amicitia*, or *in Fide*, in the Latin Dialect.

Their Councils, Judicatures, *and* Puniſhments.

Cluverius obſerves from *Taciſus*, That their Councils were of two Sorts; one for greater, the other for leſſer Affairs. The latter were determin'd by the Princes, with the Councils of the Hundred; the greater by the General Council of the People and Princes; the Method of which we have heard before. He obſerves from the ſame Author, That during thoſe great Councils they had large Entertainments, wherein they diſcours'd of reconciling Differences, of making Alliances, of chuſing Princes, and of making Peace and War, becauſe they thought People were agreſt then to tell their Minds freely, or to be animated to great Undertakings; and what was treated of then, they conſider'd again next Day. On this Occaſion *Cluverius* corrects the Reading of that Place of *Taciſus* where he ſays, *Geniti non aſtute, nec callida, aperit adhuc ſecreta Poſteris, Licentia Loci. Ergo detectus & nuda omnium mens poſtero die retractatur*, &c. Thus for *aperit adhuc*, he puts *aperit tunc*; and the Word *Ergo* he explains by *Caterum*, *Cæterò*' or *Porrò*, and gives ſeveral Inſtances in the ſame Author where it muſt be underſtood in that Senſe. Then for their Puniſhments, they were diſtinguiſhed into Civil and Criminal; the former were puniſh'd by Fines, that were divided betwixt the Prince and the Community, and the latter by Death; Traitors and Deſerters they hang'd; Cowards, and ſuch as were guilty of unnatural Luſt, they drown'd in Lakes or Marſhes, and threw a Hurdle over them. Adultereſſes were puniſh'd at the Diſcretion of their Husbands, who cut off their Hair, ſtripp'd them naked, drove them

Digitized by Google

them out of the House before their Kindred, and whipp'd them through the Village. For this Crime there was no Remission; and how young, beautiful, or rich soever such Criminals might be, no body would ever marry them after.

Their Way of making War, *and* Military Discipline.

Tacitus says, if they had Peace at home, their Youth of Quality went to Armies abroad, and would rather spend their Blood in War, than their Sweat in Labour. They were bred to the Use of Arms from their Infancy, and never went about any publick or private Business without them. We have heard before, that their Communities reckon'd it honourable to have as much waste Ground about them as they could, and to drive their Neighbours at as great a Distance from them as possible; and the more any Man signaliz'd his Valour, the more Respect he had in their Councils and Publick Entertainments; so that all their Nobility ow'd their Rise to their Valour. When Enemies invaded their Country, they used to withdraw to Woods and Mountains, sally out upon them, and surprise them in Passes; but afterwards, as we find in *Velleius Paterculus*, and *Tacitus*, they became almost equal to the *Romans* in Discipline, especially the *Catti*; but their chief Strength consisted in Foot, for their Horse were better at Attacks than a Standing-Battle.

Their Arms of Defence were few: Coats of Mail and Helmets were scarce to be found but among their Leaders; so that at first they fought either naked, or with a short light Garment, as formerly described; but their Horsemen in general had no Clothes. Such Coats of Mail as they had were made of raw Skins, and chiefly to cover their Breasts, which they afterwards fortified with Iron Rings. When they came to wear Helmets, they had them of Iron, resembling the Heads of Wild-Beasts with Horns, or of Birds, to which *Plutarch* says they affixed Crests of Feathers.

Their Arms of Offence were a Buckler, Sword, Spear, or Dart. *Tacitus* says, their Bucklers were very long; and *Diodorus*, that they were as tall as themselves; so that when the *Romans* fought them, they endeavour'd to get their Bucklers from 'em, after which they were soon put to flight. *Tacitus* says, those Bucklers were made of Withs twisted together, or of thin painted Boards, and of no great Breadth; but the *Gothuns* had round Bucklers finely painted, and some had them of Brass, in Form of Wild-Beasts; but *Cluverius* thinks these were only the Princes, who thereby represented the Arms of their Families, as sometimes they did by the Painting upon 'em; and when they were used with their Consent by Men of less Quality, they had only the Half, or some Part of a Beast, in Colours different from those of the Princes, that the latter might not be depriv'd of their Dignity; but Time has now made those Things common.

At first, few of them had Swords, except the Nobles, but made use of Spears and Darts; and when they came to use Swords, they had them very large, with two Edges, but without Points, and wore them by their Right Side: Some hang'd them upon their Shoulders, and others gird'd them to their Thighs in Scabbards of Leather. Their Girdles and Belts were of Leather, and very broad; the better Sort had them set with Iron Studs, and the Princes with Silver or Gold, after they made Incursions into *Italy* and *France*. Their other Arms were Lances of various Forms; the chief of which *Cluverius* thinks to have been like our Partisans, Spears or Pikes both short and long, Darts, Bows, and Arrows pointed with Horn or Bone, and some of them had great Clubs.

Their Way of Fighting.

Cluverius thinks, they used Chariots in War, as well as the *Gauls* and *Britains*; tho' *Roman* Authors say nothing of it. *Cæsar* says, they used to fight on Horseback, tho' their Horses were not good. They alighted very often to fight on Foot, and their Horses were so train'd, that they would stay where they left them, but were not manag'd for Battle like the *Roman* Horse;

Digitized by Google

Horſe; yet ſometimes they lin'd their Horſe with Foormen, who were ſo nimble, that they would catch hold of the Horſes Manes, and charge or retire as ſwift as they; and at other times they took the Foot behind them; for their greateſt Confidence was in their Infantry, who would catch hold of their Enemies Spears, and pull them off their Horſes, or get in with them, and wound them ſo, as to make them throw their Riders. They deſpis'd Saddles and Stirrups; but adorn'd their Horſes with fine Trappings.

Their Way of Declaring War, Chuſing their General and other Officers, and their Authority.

THoſe who had abſolute Kings, War was made by their Authority, and they either led them themſelves, or appointed a General. How Peace and War was made in mix'd Governments and Democracies, we have heard already. In the former their Prince was General, and in the latter they choſe one; and when elected, he was ſet upon a Buckler, carried betwixt Men's Shoulders, and turn'd three times round; and from the Nature of his Office was called *Heerzog*, *i. e.* Leader of the Army, which anſwers the Latin Word *Dux*, and our Duke. The reſt of the Commanders were the Princes of the Diſtricts, who formed a Council of War, and aſſiſted him in governing the Army. The General and each of them had their Companions, *Comites*, the chief Men of the Diſtricts; and when they came to fight, it was reckon'd diſhonourable for a Prince to be exceeded in Valour, and for them not to equal him; ſo that the Prince fought for Victory, and they for the Prince. *Tacitus* ſays, theſe Princes had Embaſſies and Preſents ſent them, and frequently put an end to the War meerly by their Fame. This was their Way of making War; but when they went upon Depredations out of their own Boundaries, if any of the Princes in Council offer'd to be their Leader, the Multitude, if they lik'd him, follow'd him; and ſuch as did not, were look'd upon as Traitors or Cowards.

Their Way of Levying Men, and their Pay.

CÆſar ſays, That all who were of Age were ſummoned to the Armed Council, which *Cluverius* thinks to be underſtood only of Democratical Governments; for the *Suevi*, or *Catti*, the moſt Warlike People in *Germany*, who had 100 Diſtricts under them, ſent every Year ſome Thouſands of Men out of their own Country to War, and they return'd next Year to manure the Ground, when others went in their room; by which, 'tis plain there muſt have been a Levy.

We heard before, That none were reckon'd fit for Arms or publick Converſation till they were 20 Years of Age, and approved of by the Community in Council, when the Prince, ſome of the Leaders, the young Man's Father, or ſome Kinſman, gave him a Buckler and Spear: After which, they were not diſcharged from Military Service till Age made them uncapable of it.

As to their Pay, *Cluverius* thinks, that in Democracies they had none, all being equally obliged to arm for the Defence of their Country; but ſuch as ſerv'd under Princes, and attended them, had their Maintenance allow'd them.

Their Generals and Princes preferr'd ſuch of their Companions, *Comites*, as were moſt noted for their Valour; and he that had the greateſt Retinue of ſuch was moſt valued, and had Embaſſies and Preſents ſent him by his Neighbours who had any War. Thoſe *Comites* who deſerted their Prince in Battle, or ſurviv'd him in it, except they obtain'd the Victory, were reckon'd infamous for ever; therefore their greateſt Oath was to defend him, and to aſcribe the Glory of their braveſt Actions to him. *Marcellinus* ſays, That when *Chodomarius*, one of the *German* Kings, ſurrender'd himſelf to the *Romans*, 200 of thoſe *Comites* who attended him did the like; and offer'd themſelves to be bound, accounting it diſhonourable to outlive the King, or not to die for him if Occaſion required. *Cluverius* ſays, That thoſe *Comites* were next in Dignity to the Generals or Princes, and were the ſame with

Digitized by Google

with those now call'd *Graves* or *Grevet*, and much the same with the *French* Counts, and our Earls or Peers: But he observes, That the Title of Duke is higher in *Germany* than that of Prince, contrary to the Custom of most other Countries. Those *Comites* were instead of Guards to Princes; and they themselves had Numbers of Freemen who attended them in Battle, serv'd them also instead of Guards, and were those whom the *Romans* call'd *Ambacti*. They were the Persons mention'd by *Posidonius*, who at publick Entertainments carried their Lords Spears, and sat down to Dinner at the same Time with their Masters in an opposite Circle.

Their Military Ensigns, *and* Musick.

Tacitus says, they brought their Military Ensigns out of the Groves when they came to fight; for at other Times they laid them up as sacred in those consecrated Places. They were the Images of Wild Beasts: And *Cluverius* thinks some of them did also represent Birds, like those on the Crests of their Helmets; and that they were not painted, but made of Wood or Iron, as those of the *Persians* and *Romans* were of solid Gold or Silver. He thinks they had also large Standards or Banners, which he takes to be meant of the *Signa*, which *Tacitus* distinguishes from the *Effigies*.

They had also Trumpets of Brass, which *Tacitus* says made a shrill and warlike Noise. They were of a crooked Form; and they seem likewise to have had something like a Bagpipe: But *Cluverius* says, there's nothing certain concerning their Military Instruments of Musick.

Their Way of Encamping, *Times of* Fighting, *and Order of* Battle.

Cluverius thinks, from what *Mela* and *Pliny* say of the Encampments of the *Cimbri* on the *Baltick*, That the ancient *Germans* used to fortify their Camps with Intrenchments and Ditches; but 'tis certain, that they used to intrench themselves with their Carts and Waggons, in which they plac'd their Women and Children behind their Army when they came to engage, and retir'd to them on occasion; when their Women would assist in defending them with as great Bravery as the Men, and would sometimes cut off those who fled too early, and animate the Men to renew the Battle, as has been mention'd already. The *Roman* Authors give Instances of the Women's defending those Intrenchments, after the Army's being defeated; and that, rather than expose their Chastity, they have kill'd themselves and their Children in those Intrenchments. *Cluverius* says, the *Germans* still use such Intrenchments on Occasion. And we find them mention'd in the Rebellion of the Boors, excited about the Time of the Reformation, by *John* of *Leyden*, *Thomas* of *Munster*, and other Enthusiasts.

We have formerly heard, That they chose the Full and New Moon as the most auspicious Time to fight in, which is mention'd by *Tacitus* and others; but in case of Necessity, or when they were invaded, they would fight at any Time, without consulting their Soothsayers.

They us'd to draw up their Troops in Form of a Wedge, their Front resembling the sharp Point of a Greek Δ, which they themselves call'd a Swine's-Head, by which they threw so many Darts at once upon their Enemies, as frequently put them into great Disorder.

The Main of their Army was drawn up in such Bodies at equal Distances; but their Wings were drawn out in Length, something of an oblong Form; and they us'd to fight Back to Back, that they might face their Enemy on all Sides, covering themselves with their Targets. These Wedges were generally composed of different Tribes or Principalities; which *Tacitus* says was a great Incitement to their Courage, because they strove to outvy one another.

It

Digitized by Google

It has been formerly obſerv'd, that they put more Confidence in their Foot than their Horſe, and therefore interlin'd them, and poſted the choſen Men of each Hundred before their Horſe by Hundreds at a time, who, if they were worſted, retired to their Horſe. Theſe Hundreds generally led the Van; but in great Battles, ſuch as that fought by *Arioviſtus*, they were choſen out of all the Army, and their Troops of Horſe were equal in Number to thoſe Bodies of Foot. The firſt Ranks made uſe of Spears, and the others of ſhort Darts. The firſt Lines conſiſted of the Nobles, and other Chief Men, who wore Chains and Bracelets of Gold; and to prevent the breaking the Ranks of their Foot, thoſe on the Van were faſten'd to one another by their Belts; and every Body of Horſe and Foot had their own Enſigns and Standards, as *Tacitus* mentions in the Battle with *Civilis*, and his *Batavi*, the Anceſtors of the *Dutch*. The Battle being thus drawn up, their Rear was cover'd with their Carts and Waggons, that they might not think of flying; and the Women, as the Troops marched out, ſtood weeping upon thoſe Waggons, with their Hair diſhevell'd, exhorting the Soldiers to acquit themſelves bravely, and not to ſuffer them and their Children to be Slaves to the *Romans*. The Women carried likewiſe Refreſhments to the Army on Occaſion, and never fail'd to renew their Exhortations, that they would fight it bravely; and being likewiſe arm'd, would fall upon thoſe who fled, without ſparing 'em, tho their own neareſt Relations.

When all was ready for an Engagement, the General and other Commanders rode about to the ſeveral Bodies, made Speeches to them ſuitable to the Occaſion, put them in mind of the Bravery of their Anceſtors, and of their own Victories againſt their Enemies, as Arguments to raiſe their Courage, and to make them deſpiſe their Adverſaries. Some of their braveſt Men uſed to march out of their Ranks, and provoke ſome of their Enemies to ſingle Combats, and according to the Succeſs of thoſe Men, they looked for Victory or otherwiſe. *Cluverius* ſays, That before they engaged, they uſed to ſing Songs in Praiſe of valiant Men, and to dance; and when they fell on, they gave a great Shout, which was anſwered by their Women from the Carts, who continued ſhouting during the Battle to encourage the Men. The younger Sort, who had not been allowed to ſhave their Beards, were ſure to acquit themſelves bravely, that they might have that Privilege; and 'twas accounted a great Honour for them to return beſmear'd with their Enemies Blood, or with any of their Arms.

Their Way of Beſieging Towns, and their Behaviour to thoſe they conquer'd.

Cluverius ſays, the ancient *Germans* knew nothing at firſt of beſieging Towns, by caſting up Intrenchments, or making uſe of Engines; but only ſurrounded them to ſtarve them out, or made their Attacks upon thoſe on the Walls, by throwing Stones and Darts, *&c.* They made their Approaches under that call'd a *Teſtudo*, a ſort of an Arch, to cover their Heads when they deſign'd to ſcale the Walls, which they uſed to do with great Fierceneſs, after having filled up the Ditches with Timber and Branches of Trees.

When they had defeated their Enemies, they were very intent upon the Plunder; for that, next to their own Defence, was the chief Cauſe of their making War, which frequently gave their Enemies Opportunity to eſcape, and ſometimes to rally. *Tacitus* ſays, they did not divide the Spoil equally, but every one catch'd what he could, and they feaſted for a Day or two together in the Field of Battle. We have heard before, that they us'd to ſacrifice their Captives and their Horſes to *Mars* and *Mercury*, and made Servants or Slaves of ſuch as they ſav'd. The Chief of their Priſoners they ſacrific'd on Altars of green Turf; but the reſt they hang'd, or threw into Holes dug in the Ground. The Heads of ſuch as were killed in Battle they fix'd upon Trees, and their Horſes and Arms they uſed to burn on vaſt Piles of Wood. When they returned home after Victory, they marched

Digitized by Google

in great Pomp, carrying the Heads of ſome of their Enemies hung about their Horſes Necks, and gave the Spoils, cover'd with Blood, to be carried in Triumph by their Servants. The Heads they hung up at their Doors; but thoſe of Quality they anointed with the Roſin of Cedar, kept them in Cheſts, and would ſhow them with great Oſtentation to their Gueſts or Strangers, and boaſt that they had refuſed ſo much Money for them. Some of them were ſo fond of ſuch Monuments of their own or their Anceſtors Valour, that they refuſed their Weight in Gold for them; and this they accounted Greatneſs of Mind, as *Diodorus* informs us.

Their FUNERALS.

Tacitus and *Diodorus* ſay, they uſed to burn the Corps of the Deceaſed on Piles of Wood; but thoſe of the Nobles, and of ſuch as had diſtinguiſhed themſelves by their Valour, were burnt with an uncommon or choice ſort of Wood. *Pliny* alledges the Cauſe of this to have been to prevent their Corps being taken up out of the Ground, as a Mark of Diſgrace by their Enemies; as *Sylla*, the *Roman* Dictator, order'd his to be burnt, leſt it ſhould have been taken up by way of Repriſal for what was done to the Corps of *Marius*. *Diodorus* ſays, the *Germans* being of *Pythagoras*'s Opinion, That their Souls were immortal, enter'd into other Bodies, and after ſome Time came to Life again, they uſed to throw Letters to their deceaſed Relations into the Funeral-Pile, having a Fancy they would read them; but this, if true, muſt be after they learn'd the Uſe of Letters from the *Romans* or the *Gauls*, for anciently they had no Learning, as we have heard already. *Tacitus* adds, That their Arms, and ſometimes the Horſes they made uſe of in War, were burnt with them: And *Procopius Goth. Lib.* 2. ſays, the *Heruli*, a People of *Germany*, were ſo barbarous, that ſuch of them as grew old or ſickly, were compelled by their Relations to deſire they might be ſent out of the World; upon which they were placed on the Top of a Pile, where one that was no Relation to them was order'd to kill them; then their Relations ſet Fire to the Pile, and ſuch of their Bones, *&c.* as remained unburnt, they buried; and if their Wives did not afterwards hang themſelves near their Husbands Grave, they were held infamous, and hated by his Relations. *Tacitus* ſays, their Sepulchres were made of Turf, for they deſpiſed pompous Tombs of Stone, *&c.* and reckon'd them burdenſome to the Deceaſed. *Cluverius* thinks, from what *Tacitus* ſays of *Arminius*, that the *Bards* compos'd Verſes, which were ſung at their Funerals, and afterwards in Remembrance of them; but the Mourning and Tears of the Men were ſoon over, ſays *Tacitus*, thò their Sorrow continued long; it being reckon'd honourable in Women to mourn for their deceas'd Friends, and for Men only to remember them.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXIV.

Ancient GERMANY *on this Side the* Rhine.

Cluverius begins with this Part of the Country, becauſe it was firſt poſſeſſed by the *Romans*, and therefore firſt deſcribed by their Hiſtorians. He informs us from *Cæſar*, *Tacitus*, and *Strabo*, That the *Tribocci*, *Nemetes*, and *Vangiones*, three *German* Nations, paſſed the *Rhine*, and expelled the *Mediomatrici*, who poſſeſſed the Country on this Side that River; but ſays, there's no Certainty as to the Time when this happen'd; but it appears they were in this Country before the Time that *Arioviſtus* was defeated by *Cæſar*, and that they were not ſubject to *Arioviſtus*, but either in League with him, or under his Protection.

In order to our better underſtanding what Parts of the Country they poſſeſſed, he gives us from the *Notitia Provinciarum* the following Account of the Diſpoſition of the *Roman* Gariſons in thoſe Parts.

Under the Government of the Commander of *Mentz*.

The Gariſons of the	*Pacenſium.*	*Saletione,*	now	*Seltz.*
	Menapiorum.	*Tabernis,*	now	*Rhein-Zabern.*
	Anderecianorum.	*Vico Julio,*	now	*Germersheim.*
	Vindicum.	*Nemetes,*	now	*Spires.*
	Martenſium.	*Alta-Ripa,*	now	*Altrip.*
	Secundæ Flaviæ.	*Vangiones,*	now	*Worms.*
	Armigerorum.	*Mogontiaco,*	now	*Mentz.*
	Bingenſium.	*Bringio,*	now	*Bingen.*
	Baliſtariorum.	*Bodobriga,*	now	*Bopart.*
	Defenſorum.	*Confluentibus,*	now	*Coblentz.*
	Acincenſum.	*Antonaco,*	now	*Andernach.*

By which it appears, that *Worms* was the chief Town of the *Vangiones*; therefore *Tacitus* is in the Right when he places them next to the *Treviri*. He adds, that *Spires* was the chief Town of the *Nemetes*, and *Straſburg* that of the *Tribocci*, and deſcribes the Boundaries of all of them together thus: On the E. they had the *Rhine*, from the ancient Boundaries of the *Mediomatrici* and *Sequani*, which was from *Burckem*, on the other Side the *Rhine*, to where the *Nava* falls into it at *Bingen*. On the S. they had the ſame Boundaries that divided the *Sequani* from the *Mediomatrici*; and from thence Weſtward the Ridge of Mountains, now called *Hondſruck*, which divide *Alſace* from *Lorrain*; and Northward, their Boundaries extended to *Keyſerſlauteren*, and from thence to the Place where the *Nava* falls into the *Rhine*. They were divided from one another

Digitized by Google

ther thus; the *Tribocci* were divided from the *Nemetes* by the River *Motra*, and the *Nemetes* from the *Vangiones* by the River *Lauter*.

The TRIBOCCI, he says, derived their Name from the Village of *Elsace*, now called *Zun-Dregen-Buchen*; in the old *Celtick* Tongue, *Thri-Buche*; *i. e.* Three Beach-Trees. They poſſeſſed half of *Upper Alſace* towards the N. and that half of *Lower Alſace* which lies next to it. The firſt Place of this Country from the Borders of the *Sequani*, taken Notice of in the *Itinerary*, is *Helellum*, now the Village *Elle*, ſo called from the River *Ill* or *Ell*; from whence comes the Name of *Elſace*, becauſe that River runs thro the Country. The next Place is *Strasburg Argentoratum*. Here *Cluverius* takes Notice of *Mercator's* Miſtake, in making *Spires Argentoratum*; and of *Scaliger's* Error, who ſays, that *Straſburg* was only a Village in the Emperor *Valentinian's* Time, ſince it was certainly a conſiderable Town long before *Ptolomy* wrote, who places the 8th Legion, called *Auguſta*, here; and 'tis evident, that it was a Town of great Note, from *Antonin's Itinerary*, and the Author of the *Tabula Itineraria*, who bound their Roads at it, and mark it as a great City.

The NEMETES lay N. from the *Tribocci*; and *Cluverius* proves by many Arguments, that *Nemetum*, by ſome called *Noviomagus*, now *Spires*, was their chief Town.

The VANGIONES were by the ancient *Germans* called *Thi-Wangen*, and their chief Town called *Brbtetomagos* by *Ptolomy*; by others, *Borgetomagos*, *Bormitomagus*, and *Bromitomagus*; and by the *Romans*, *Vormitomagum*, was *Worms*.

The next Town of Note obſerved here is *Bouconia* or *Bonzonia*, now *Oppenheim*, then *Magontiacum*, now *Mentz*, one of the ancienteſt on this Side the *Rhine*, built, as *Cluverius* thinks, many Years before our Saviour's Birth. He ſays, it was enlarged and made a Town by *C. Druſus Nero*, but was a Village long before. It was afterwards made the Head Quarter of the *Roman* Generals in thoſe Parts, who was therefore called *Dux Magontiacenſis*.

Next to them lay the TREVERI, by ſome called *Treviri*, who, according to *Tacitus*, boaſted of their being originally *Germans*, and not ſluggiſh *Gauls*. Here *Cluverius* takes Notice of the many groſs Errors that Geographers and Hiſtorians have been led into by the Account *Cæſar* gives in his Commentaries, of the Battle betwixt himſelf and the *Germans* at the Confluence of the *Moſa* and the *Rhine*, becauſe they miſtook *Moſa* for the *Mateſe*; whereas it is the *Moſelle* which falls into the *Rhine* at *Coblentz*: Therefore *Cluverius* ſays, it ought to be read *Moſella*. This he proves from *Florus*, who, ſpeaking of the ſame Action, ſays, *Cæſar* paſſed the *Rhine* beyond the *Moſilla* on a Bridge of Boats, which he takes to have been writ for *Moſella* by the Miſtake of the Tranſcriber. But however that is, it appears plain from the Thing it ſelf, that it muſt have been the *Moſelle*. The chief Town of thoſe *Treviri* was that called by *Ptolomy Auguſta Trevirorum*, now *Treves* or *Trier* on the *Moſelle*. Some call it *Treveri*, others *Triviri*. *Tacitus* calls it *Colonia Treverorum*; and *Veſpaſian's* Coin has it *Colonia Aug. Treverer*; by which 'tis probable, a Colony was ſettled there by *Auguſtus*. *Mela*, in the Reign of *Claudius*, calls it *Auguſta*, and ſays, it was the richeſt Town of all *Belgica*. *Zoſimus*, in the Reign of *Conſtantine*, informs us, 'twas the largeſt Town on this Side the *Alps*; and *Ammianus Marcellinus* ſays, it was the Seat of the Emperors. According to *Cluverius*, the *Treviri* poſſeſſed thoſe Countries now called *Lower Wetterau*, betwixt the *Nava* and the *Moſelle*, all the Biſhoprick of *Treves*, the Dutchy of *Bullow*, the Juriſdiction of *Sedan*, the Land of *Maſcere*, the greater Part of the Dutchy of *Luxemburg*, and Part of the Biſhoprick of *Cologne*. The next remarkable Town of this Country is that which the *Romans* called *Confluentes*, now *Coblentz*, becauſe the *Moſelle* falls into the *Rhine* there; and the laſt Town of the *Treviri* on the *Rhine* is *Antunacum*, *Antonaco*, or *Antennacum*, now *Andernach*, where the *Romans* had a Camp. *Cæſar* takes Notice, that the *Treveri* were a very powerful People; that they exceeded all the reſt of *Gaul* in Horſe, (for he reckon'd their Country Part of *Gallia Belgica*,) and that they were very ſtrong in Foot. *Idelo* ſays, they were the moſt famous of the *Belgæ*.

Cluverius. German. Antiq. Lib. 2. *Cap.* 15. mentions the *Eburones*, *Condruſi*, *Segni*, *Ceræſi*, and *Pæmani*, who were the firſt that by

Digitized by Google

by one general Name were called *Germani*, according to *Cæsar*. The greatest Part of the EBURONES dwelt betwixt the *Maese* and the *Rhine*. *Cluverius* fixes their Boundaries thus: They had the *Rhine* on the E. by which they were divided from the *Ubii* above *Cologne*, and from the *Sigambri* below *Cologne*. On the S. they had the *Condrusi*, *Segni*, *Caræsi*, and *Pæmani*, from whom he divides them by a Line from *Bonne* to the Confluence of the Rivers *Maese* and *Urt*; and then from the *Maese* as far as *Namure*, they were bounded on the W. by the *Aduatici*, as appears by *Cæsar*; from whom *Cluverius* separates 'em by a Line from *Namure* to the Source of the River *Gete*, and then by that River till it fall into the *Demer* above *Diest*. On the N. they had the *Menapii*, from whom they were separated by a Line, that we must suppose to be drawn from the Confluence of the *Roer* at *Ordingen* on the *Rhine*: By all which it appears, that the *Eburones* possessed the greatest Part of the Country betwixt the *Rhine* and the *Maese*, and that the rest of their Boundaries lay betwixt the *Maese* and the *Gete*; so that their Country contained Part of the County of *Namure* betwixt that City and *Hannaw*; likewise Part of *Brabant*, in which are now the Towns of *Tunen*, *Hannuy*, *Landen*, *Leewe*, and *Hall*, and Part of the Diocese of *Liege*, which lie on the Right of the *Albia* and *Urt*, the greatest Part of the Dutchy of *Limburg* towards the N. the Territory of *Aix la Chapelle*, and the whole Dutchy of *Juliers*, except that Part where the Town of *Brug* en lies towards the N. and that where *Monjou* is towards the S. Here *Cluverius* corrects a Mistake of *Hubert* of *Liege*, who alledges, there was a Town called *Eburra* in the Neighbourhood of *Liege*, where *Ambiorix* had his Palace, and reign'd over all those People; for 'tis plain by *Cæsar*, that he only reign'd over half the *Eburones*, betwixt the *Aduatici* and the *Maese*; and that *Catuvolcus* govern'd the rest betwixt the *Maese* and the *Rhine*. *Ortelius*, in *Thesaur. Geograph.* falls into as great a Mistake, who will have *Eburonia*, mentioned by *Dio*, to be their chief Town; whereas it was their Country. He also refutes the Annals of *Liege*, writ by some fabulous Monks, who will have *Ambiorix* to be King of the *Tungri*, since their Name was not known in his Days. 'Tis plain from *Cæsar*, that the Castle *Atuatica* was the chief Place of the *Eburones*, which *Cluverius* says is that now called *Tongeren*. Upon the whole, *Cluverius* adds, That the *Condrusi*, *Segni*, *Caræsi*, and *Pæmani*, who, with the *Eburones*, promis'd 40000 Men against the *Romans*, liv'd betwixt the *Eburones* and *Treviri*, in Part of the Diocese of *Cologne*, where are now the Towns of *Cronenburg*, *Blankenheim*, *Arenburg*, *Hilnen*, *Koningsfield*, *Brisich*, *Zinsich*, *Meckum*, *Rheinbach*, Part of the Dutchy of *Juliers* about *Munstereifel*, *Gemund*, and *Monjou*, Half the Dutchy of *Limburg*, where the Town so called lies, Part of the Dutchy of *Luxemburg* about *Durhuy*, *Marche*, *Rachfort*, *Huy* and *Chinay* in the Diocese of *Liege*, the *Spaw*, famous for its Medicinal Waters, and Half the County of *Namure* on the Right of the *Maese* about *Dinant*.

N. from the *Eburones* lay the MENAPII, who were likewise of *German* Origine, because they liv'd betwixt the *Rhine* and the *Scheld*: For *Pliny* says, the Counties betwixt the Promontory of the *Cimbri* and the *Scheld* were possessed by *Germans*. Their Boundary on the S. was *Diest*: They were separated from the *Atuatici* by the *Demer* and *Rupelle* to the Confluence of the *Scheld*; so that they inhabited a great Part of *Brabant* betwixt the *Maese*, the *Demer*, and the *Scheld* and *Zealand*, Part of the Borders of *Holland* about *Sevenbergen* and *Gertrudenburg*, Part of *Gelderland* and *Cleve* on this Side the *Rhine*, Part of the Diocese of *Cologne* about *Ordingen*, *Nuys*, and *Sunz*, and Part of the Dutchy of *Juliers*: But a great deal of their Country being barren, we are not to wonder that, tho' it was large, they offer'd no more than 17000 Men against the *Romans*; whereas lesser Countries, that were better inhabited, offer'd greater Numbers.

Cluverius is of Opinion, That the AMBIVARITI, mention'd by *Cæsar* and others, who by some are placed about *Antwerp*, from whence they would derive its Name, are the same with the *Aduatici*, but their Name mistaken by Copiers. 'Tis plain from *Cæsar's* Commentaries, that the Borders of the *Menapii* were full of Woods and Marshes. The Woods he takes to be Part of that called the Forrest of *Ardenna*, and the Marshes to be those on the Confines of *Gelderland*.

Digitized by Google

derland and *Brabant*, commonly called the *Peele*. He corrects *Strabo*'s Miſtake, who thought they were near *Druſus*'s Ditch on the River *Iſſel*; for that Part of the Country was poſſeſſed by the *Batavi*. He likewiſe corrects the Error of a *Dutch* Geographer, who, by miſtaking *Strabo*, places *Amſterdam* in the Country of the *Menapii*.

The UBII.

IN *Caſar*'s Time, they liv'd beyond the *Rhine*; but in *Auguſtus*'s Reign, they were brought to this Side, and inhabited that Country betwixt *Mentz* and *Cologne*. 'Tis not very clear for what Reaſons they were tranſported; but *Cluverius* thinks, that being ſubdued by the *Romans*, they at laſt took them into their Friendſhip, becauſe they were a mighty and a flouriſhing Nation, and tranſported them for the Defence of their Dominions on this Side, and to deliver them from the Incurſions of the *Suevi*, the moſt powerful People of *Germany*, with whom they had conſtant War. Their Boundaries were the *Rhine* on the E. On the N. a Line from the Mouths of the *Roer* and *Maeſe* to the *Rhine*, and the Town of *Ordingen*. On the W. the *Roer*, from its Mouth to the Town called *Niderheimbach*; from thence a Line to the Town of *Kerpent*; and on the S. the River *Obrinca*, by which they were ſeparated from the *Treveri*, as by the Boundaries above-mentioned they were from the *Menapii* and *Eburones*, into Part of whoſe Dominions they were tranſported; ſo that they poſſeſſed moſt of the Biſhoprick of *Cologne*, and of the Dutchy of *Juliers* on the Right Side of the *Roer*. Their chief Town was that called *Ubiorum Oppidum*, now *Cologne*, which *Cluverius* thinks was built in the Time of *Auguſtus*, 35 Years before our Saviour's Birth, and called *Colonia Agrippinenſis*, from *Julia Agrippina*, Daughter to *Germanicus*, and Wife to *Claudius*, about 15 Years after our Saviour's Birth. She planted a Colony, and ſettled *Veterans* there; and though they were *Germans*, having put themſelves under the Protection of the *Romans*, they choſe the Name of *Agrippinenſis*, according to *Tacitus*. Their next Town for Antiquity and Note was that called *Ara Ubiorum*, which *Cluverius* proves to be *Bonn*. The Reaſon of the Name he knows not; but rejects their Opinion, who, from a Coin of *Auguſtus*, think it was called *Julia Bonna*; for he looks upon that Coin to be counterfeit. Their other Towns were, *Noveſium*, now *Nuys*; *Durnomagum* and *Burungum*, now *Durſmagen* and *Wuringen*; *Gelduba*, now *Gelder*; *Juliacum*, now *Juliers*; *Tiberiacum*, now *Berchem*.

The GUGERNI,

BEfore they came on this Side the *Rhine*, were called *Sicambri*; and when they were tranſported, poſſeſſed great Part of that now called the Dutchy of *Cleve*, Part of the Dutchy of *Gelder* beyond the *Maeſe*, and of the Dutchy of *Juliers* about *Brugge*. *Cluverius* thinks, they came hither in the Time of *Auguſtus*, becauſe *Sueton* ſays, that he brought over the *Suevi* and *Sicambri*, who ſubmitted to him, and planted them on the next Banks of the *Rhine* about the 35th Year of his Reign, and 8 before our Saviour's Birth. The oldeſt Place mentioned in their Country by *Tacitus*, is that called *Vetera Caſtra*, which, by *Antonin*'s *Itinerary*, *Cluverius* takes to be *Santen* in the Dutchy of *Cleve*. The next Town is *Calenum*, now the Village of *Kalenhuſen*, two Miles below *Ordingen*; ſo that *Simler* was miſtaken, in ſaying it was *Gelder*; and *Lazius* yet more, who would have it to be *Cleve*, ſince the contrary appears from the *Itinerary*. *Aſciburgium*, mention'd by *Tacitus*, is a ſmall Village now called *Aſburg*, betwixt *Nuys* and *Santen*. *Colonia Trajana* he takes to be *Kellen*, within a Mile of *Cleve*, and not *Keiſerſward*, as *Ortelius* would have it: And he thinks, from the Ruins of this Colony, the Town of *Cleve* in the Neighbourhood had its Original, which ſeems to be plain from the *Itinerary*.

The SUNICI,

BEfore they came over the *Rhine*, were called *Chatti*; and *Cluverius* thinks, they were tranſported much about the ſame time with the *Gugerni* into the Country betwixt the *Maeſe* and the *Roer*. The noted Places in their Country, mentioned by the An-

Digitized by Google

Ancients, are *Thenduruum*, now *Tudder*, in the Dutchy of *Juliers*. *Coriovallum*, now *Falckenburg*, betwixt *Tongeren* and *Cologne*.

The TUNGRI

WEre at firſt divided into the *Eburones*, *Condruſi*, *Segni*, *Caraſi*, and *Pæmani*, ſpoke of before; but afterwards call'd by the common Name of *Germani*. There's much Debate among the Learned about that Place of *Tacitus*, where he ſays, *That the Name of* Germani *was New, and given to thoſe who firſt paſſed the* Rhine, *drove out the* Gauls, *and were ſometimes called* Tungri, *and ſometimes* Germani; but in the Copy printed at *Bamberg* and *Bononia* in 1472, 'tis ſaid, *They are now called* Tungri, *but then* Germani; *ſo that the Name of the Nation, but not of the People, began to gain Ground by degrees, and they were all called by the new Name at firſt by the Victor or Conquerer out of Fear, and then by themſelves.* *Cluverius*, after a Learned Diſſertation upon this Period, which has ſo much puzzled Interpreters, rejects the Amendments and Commentaries of *Lipſius* and others, and ſays, it ought to be read thus; *Ut omnes primum Victores à victis ob metum, mox à ſeipſis inventa nomine vocarentur*; *i. e.* That all the Conquerors, when they had expelled the *Gauls*, were out of Fear by thoſe *Gauls* called *Germani*; but afterwards, by a new invented Name, they called themſelves *Tungri*. Here he obſerves, That the Name of *Germans* was older than that of the *Tungri*, and mentioned by *Cæſar*, who takes no Notice of the latter; and 'tis probable, that he learn'd this Name of *Germans* from the *Gauls*; whereas the *Germans* called themſelves in general *Teutiſci*: So that *Tacitus*'s Meaning is, That the Name *Germani* was neither the ancient nor the true Name of the People beyond the *Rhine*, but was given them by the *Gauls*, when that Part of them, afterwards called the *Tungri*, paſſed the *Rhine*. Therefore *Cluverius* rejects the Opinion of *Strabo*, who thinks, this Name was given them as if they had been *Germani* or Brothers to the *Gauls*, becauſe they were like them in Fierceneſs, Stature and Complexion, and derives the Name from the ancient *German* Words *War* and *Man*, importing that they were a Warlike People, as the *Gauls* found to their Coſt; but becauſe they could not pronounce the *W*, they chang'd it into a G, and ſo pronounc'd it *German*. He adds, That the *Tungri*, after they had this new Name, and were form'd into a new Community, poſſeſſed the ſame Countries as they did when called by the 5 diſtinct Names formerly mentioned, until they were mix'd with the other People that were afterwards brought over the *Rhine*, as we juſt now heard, and were obliged by the *Romans* to give Way to them. Their chief Town was *Tongeren*, as has been already ſaid, which was ſecond in Dignity to *Cologne*, as appears by *Marcellinus*.

The ADUATICI,

AFterwards called *Bethaſii*, border'd upon the *Menapii* and are ſaid by *Cæſar* to be of *German* Extract: They were the ſame with thoſe called *Atuatici*; and *Cluverius* thinks, they derived their Name from the *German* Word *Afwack*, which ſignifies to take off or diminiſh, as they did the Dominions of their Neighbours when they ſeized them. He fixes their Boundaries thus; On the E. they had the *Eburones*, and extended in a Line from *Namure* to the Fountains of the *Gete*, and from thence along the River till it fall into the *Demer*. On the N. they had the *Menapii*, and the Rivers *Demer* and *Rupel*, till they fall into the *Scheld*. On the W. the *Scheld* to the Mouth of the *Dender*, from thence the *Dender* as far as *Aeth*; and from hence on the S. a Line to the *Sambre*, and the Town called *Fontaines*, which now contain a great Part of *Brabant* betwixt the *Gete*, *Demer*, and *Dender*, Part of *Flanders* as far as *Dendermond*, Part of *Hainault* about *Enghien*, *Hall*, *Soignies*, *Braine le Comte*, &c. and Part of the County of *Namure* on the Left of the *Sambre*. *Cæſar* ſays, they had many Towns and Caſtles, and mentions one Town he took from them which had 53000 People in it, and was very well fortified by Nature, being ſurrounded by high Rocks, and had but one Paſſage to it of about 200 Foot broad; but *Cluverius* owns, he cannot find where

Digitized by Google

where it ſtood, nor why theſe People were afterwards called *Bothaſii*. He finds two Towns mentioned in their Country, *viz.* *Gemblacum*, now *Gemblours*; and *Perviciacum*, now *Pervis*.

The NERVII

HAD the *Bothaſii* on the N. and are called *Germans* by *Strabo*. *Cluverius* ſays, their Boundaries were from the *Maeſe* and the Monaſtery of *Dellain* to the Town of *Verinins*, from the Fountains of the *Sambre* to *Crevecœur* on the *Scheld*. On the W. they had the *Scheld* as far as *Cambray*, and from thence they extended as far as the Mouth of the *Scarp*; ſo that they poſſeſſed Part of the County of *Namure* betwixt the *Maeſe* and the *Sambre* with *Namure* it ſelf; the Country called *Lower Burgundy* betwixt thoſe Rivers, the greateſt Part of *Hainault*, Part of *Picardy*, and the Town of *Cambray*, with Part of that Dioceſe. Their chief Town was *Bagacum*, now *Bavay* in *Hainault*.

The Centrones, Grudii, Levaci, Pleumoſii, *and* Gorduni, *all afterwards called* Sueconi.

THey were, according to *Cluverius*, of *German* Original, ſubject to the *Nervii*, and liv'd in that Part of *Flanders* where are now the Towns of *Armentiers*, *Liſle*, *Tournay*, *Audenard*, Part of the Towns of *Aelſt* and *Ghent*, and Part of *Hainault* betwixt *Aeth* and the *Scheld*. They are mentioned by no Author after *Ceſar*, nor are any of their Towns mentioned by *Antonin* and the *Notitia Imperii*, but *Tunacum* or *Tornacum*, now *Tournay*.

The Toxandri, *or* Taxandri.

Cluverius ſays, they were *Germans*, and inhabited the Country now called *Zealand*. He maintains this by many Arguments againſt *Ortelius*, and the other *Dutch* Geographer formerly mention'd; and thinks it plain, becauſe *Pliny* ſays, the *Toxandri* inhabited the Places beyond the *Scheld*. *Cluverius* fixes their Boundaries thus: On the W. they had the Ocean; On the N. the old Channel of the *Maeſe*, by which they were ſeparated from the *Batavi*; And on the E. and S. the Rivers and Currents of the Sea, by which they were ſeparated from the Continent. He thinks from *Ceſar*'s ſaying, That the People did themſelves in thoſe Iſlands, *Quæ Fluctibus efferuerunt*; that *Zealand* was formerly join'd to the Continent, but ſeparated from it by the Tides. He obſerves, That the *Roman* Authors mention no Towns in thoſe Iſlands, becauſe they had none in their Time; for *Middleburg* and *Flyſhing* were built long after.

The BATAVI

LAY N. from the *Taxandri* and *Menapii*, in that Part of the Country towards the W. and E. where the Sea and the *Rhine* end the Boundary of *Gallia Belgica*. *Cluverius* ſays, the *Batavi* were the nobleſt and the ſtouteſt of all the *Germans* on this Side the *Rhine*; and that the Learned are very much divided about the Place where they liv'd, wherein the *Netherlanders* and the *Hollanders* themſelves have been much miſtaken. As to their Origine, *Pliny* and *Tacitus* ſay, they were *Germans*, and the latter derives 'em from the *Catti*, being driven from home by a Domeſtick Sedition. When this happened, is not certain, no more than the Reaſon of their Name. *Dio* thinks, 'tis derived from the Iſland *Batava* or *Batavia* on the *Rhine*, now called the *Betuwe*. The Situation of this Iſland, according to *Zoſimus*, was from the Diviſion of the *Rhine* to the Sea. *Tacitus* ſays, the *Rhine* continues in one Channel, except that it makes ſome ſmall Iſlands, till it come to the beginning of the Country of the *Batavi*, where 'tis divided into two; but keeps its Name and its rapid Courſe in that which is next to *Germany*, till it fall into the Ocean; but that which is next to *France* is broader, runs more ſlow, changes its Name into the *Vahalis*, and a little after into that of the *Maeſe*, and falls with it into the Sea by a vaſt Mouth. This makes it plain, that the Iſland of the *Batavi* begins not far from *Cleve*.

Digitized by Google

Cleve, at the Fort commonly called *Schenckenſchans*; and that *Tacitus*'s Deſcription is more exact than that of *Cæſar*. The Length of this Iſland, to the Village called *Gravefande* at the Mouth of the *Maeſe*, is 83 Miles. He takes Notice of *Strabo*'s Miſtake, who ſaid, That the *Foreland* of *Keut* might be ſeen from the Mouth of the *Rhine*; and of thoſe who would ſupport his Authority, by alledging, That a great Part of the Country has been overflowed ſince that Time, which muſt be no leſs than 40 Miles, if it be allowed that *Cæſar* meaſured the Length of the Iſland from the Confluence of the *Maeſe* and the *Vahalis*; and yet even in that Caſe, it had been impoſſible to ſee *Kent* from the Mouth of the *Rhine*; ſo that *Strabo*'s Miſtake proceeded from his apprehending that *Iccium* or *Geſoriacum*, from whence Ships us'd to ſail from *France* to *Britain*, was near the Mouth of the *Rhine*. Beſides, 'tis plain, that the Iſlands on the Coaſt of *Freezland* are the ſame as they were in *Auguſtus*'s Age; ſo that 'tis no way probable that ſo much of the Country has been overflowed at the Mouth of the *Rhine*. *Cluverius* in the next place takes Notice of both Sides of the Iſland of the *Batavi*, of which the one is bounded by the *Vahalis* and the Mouth of the *Maeſe*, and the other by the middle Channel of the *Rhine*; and on this Occaſion deſcribes the old Channels of thoſe Rivers, and how they came to be chang'd by Inundations, *&c.* He afterwards confutes the Miſtake of thoſe who extend the Iſland of the *Batavi* to the River *Iſſel*, and the Lake *Flevus*; and then gives an Account of the Land poſſeſſed by the *Batavi* betwixt the *Vahalis* and the *Maeſe*, and of the People called *Caninefates*, who inhabited Part of the Iſland of the *Batavi*. He thinks them to be of the ſame Origine, and that they came thither much about the ſame Time. He afterwards proves againſt *Junius*, that the *Batavi*, thô of *German* Extract, were reckon'd to belong to *Gallia Belgica*; and that the middle Channel of the *Rhine* was the Boundary between *Germany* and *Gaul*. Their remarkable Places were, that called *Batavorum Oppidum*, now *Batenburg*; according to *Cluverius*, *Noviomagum*, now *Nimmeguen*, firſt mentioned by *Antonin*, and the *Tabula Itineraria*; *Arenacum*, now *Arnhem*; *Batavodurum*, now *Duerſtede*; *Grinnes*, now *Rhenen*; *Vada*, now *Wageningen*: But he thinks all of them, except *Batavodurum*, have chang'd their Situation to the other Side of the River.

Cluverius having thus accounted for the *Germans* who dwelt on this Side the *Rhine*, and their Boundaries, he tells us, that this Country was divided into *Germania Superior* and *Inferior*, afterwards called *Germania Prima* and *Secunda*; and the Inhabitants of both are called ſometimes *Germani*, and ſometimes *Gauls*, by the *Roman* Authors, which is plain both in *Cæſar* and *Tacitus*.

He comes next to treat of their Woods, Mountains and Rivers. The Forreſt of *Arduenna* is frequently mentioned by *Cæſar* and others. In the Sixth Book of his Commentaries, he ſays, 'tis above 500 Miles in Length; but this does not agree with the Boundaries he aſſigns it betwixt the *Rhine* and the *Maeſe*, from the middle Borders of the *Treviri* to the Confines of the *Rhemi*, which *Cluverius* ſays is not above 120 Miles. He takes Notice, that *Cæſar* afterwards extends it further to the *Scheld*, and the Borders of the *Morini*; from which to *Coblentz*, and the utmoſt Boundaries of the *Treviri*, is about 160 Miles. *Strabo* makes it much longer and broader; for he ſays, it reach'd in Length from the Borders of the *Treviri* as far as the *Atrebates* and the *Britiſh* Ocean, and in Breadth as far as *Zealand* and the *German* Ocean; but *Cluverius* corrects both their Miſtakes, and ſays, that from E. to W. from *Coblentz* to the *Britiſh* Ocean, it was 240 Miles in Length; and the Breadth from S. to N. from the Borders of the *Mediomatrici* to that Branch of the *Rhine* called the *Vahalis*, is 150. He ſays, there were many Remains of it in his own Time, eſpecially in *Wetteravia*, the Biſhopricks of *Treves* and *Liege*, the Dutchy of *Luxemburg*, and on this Side the *Maeſe*; and that in part it retained its old Name, being called *L'Ardenne* by the *Picards* and *Wallons*; and he obſerves, that among the old Geographers and Hiſtorians, it paſs'd by different Names, according to the ſeveral Countries through which it went.

He gives us an Account next of the Forreſt *Voſega* or *Vaſaga*, and of the Mountain *Voſego*, from whence it had its Name: It

lay S. from *Arduenna*, and reached from the Fountain of the *Maese* to beyond *Strasburg*. He thinks the Country called *Wasgaw* in *Germany* has its Name from it. Part of the Ridge of Mountains on which it lay, and ſeparate *Burgundy* from *Lorrain*, are now called the Mountains of *Burgundy*. The remarkable Rivers taken Notice of by the Ancients, who treat of *Germany* on this Side the *Rhine*, are, the *Rhine* it ſelf; *Hellus*, now the *Ill*, which runs through *Alſace*; *Nava*, now the *Nahe*; *Moſella*, now the *Moſelle*; *Sura*, now the *Saur*; *Pronæa*, now the *Pruin*; *Nemeſa*, now the *Niems*; and *Aliſontia*, now *Alſitz*; *Gelbis*, now the *Kiel*; *Leſura*, now the *Leſar*; *Salmona*, now the *Salm*; *Drachonus*, now the *Traen*; *Erubrus* or *Erubris*, now the *Rober*; *Sarravus*, now the *Saar*; *Abrinca*, now the *Are*; *Moſa*, now the *Maeſe*, into which on the Left Side falls *Sabis*, now the *Sambre*. The laſt of them is *Scaldes* or *Scaldis*, now the *Scheld*.

CHAP. XXV.

Ancient GERMANY *beyond the* Rhine.

Cluverius, German. Antiq. Lib. 3. comes next to deſcribe that which the *Romans* called *Germania Tranſrhenana*, which he ſays was the Mother of all the *German* Nations. The ancient Authors which give any Light into this Matter, are, *Strabo*, *Pliny*, *Tacitus*, and *Ptolomy*. He obſerves, the two former are very confus'd; therefore he chuſes rather to follow the latter, eſpecially *Tacitus*, who divides *Germany* into 3 Principal Parts. The firſt is that which lies betwixt the Rivers *Rhine*, *Sale*, and *Elb*, the *German* Ocean, and the Eaſt Sea, which he calls *Mare Suevicum*. The 2d is betwixt the *Sale*, the *Elb*, the *Weiſel*, the *Danube*, and the North Sea; all which he calls by the Name of *Suevia*. The 3d is beyond the *Weiſel* and the *Baltick*, to the Borders of the *Sarmata*. *Cluverius* follows his Order, for the better underſtanding of his Book, which, as was ſaid before, is much the beſt Account that any of the Ancients gave of *Germany*.

The HELVETII.

Tacitus and *Dio* ſay, That the *Helvetii*, a People of *Gaul*, did formerly inhabit that Part of *Germany* betwixt the *Hercinian* Forreſt, the *Rhine*, and the *Main*; and that the further Parts were poſſeſs'd by the *Boii*, who were likewiſe *Gauls*; ſo that *Cluverius* ſays, the *Helvetii* had the *Rhine* on the W. the *Main* on the N. the Mountains and Woods of *Bohemia* on the E. and the *Danube* on the S. *Ptolomy* mentions the Deſart of the *Helvetii* about the Fountains of the *Neckar* and *Danube*. The Time when they came into *Germany*, *Livy* tells us was about the 150th Year of *Rome*, which is 600 before our Saviour's Birth. *Cluverius* obſerves, That the *Alpium Juga*, mention'd by *Ptolomy*, near which the *Helvetian* Deſart lay, is not the *Alps*, properly ſo call'd, but thoſe Mountains which lie E. of the Fountains of the ſaid Rivers. 'Tis not certain how long the *Helvetians* kept that Country,

Digitized by Google

try, nor who expelled them; but he thinks it was the following People.

The Marcomanni, Seduſii, *and* Harudes.

Cluverius ſays, they firſt poſſeſſed the Banks of the *Rhine*, and afterwards, according to *Velleius Paterculus*, remov'd to *Bohemia*, under the Conduct of their Prince *Marobodus*. He thinks, the *Marcomanni* inhabited firſt the Dutchy of *Wirtemberg*, that Part of the Palatinate betwixt the *Necker* and the *Rhine*, *Briſgaw*, and that Part of the Dutchy of *Swabia* betwixt the Fountains of the *Danube* and the Town of *Gundelfing*: That the *Seduſii* liv'd betwixt the *Cokar*, and the *Necker* on the S. the *Rhine* on the W. the *Main* on the N. as far as *Bamberg*, &c. and in Part of the *Palatinate* and *Franconia*; and the *Harudes* dwelt in the upper Parts of the *Palatinate* and *Franconia*, the Country of *Nuremberg*, and Part of *Swabia*. *Arioviſtus* was King of all thoſe People, and defeated by *Cæſar* before *Marobodus*'s Time.

The Gauls *who poſſeſſed the* Agri-Decumani, *betwixt the* Rhine *and the* Danube, *and afterwards called* Alemanni, *and* Alamanni.

Tacitus ſays, the pooreſt and boldeſt of the *Gauls* paſſed the *Rhine*, and poſſeſſed thoſe Lands which *Cluverius* thinks to be the ſame where the *Marcomanni*, &c. dwelt, before they removed to *Bohemia*; but does not agree with *Lipſius*, that thoſe Lands were called *Decumani*, becauſe they were obliged to pay the Tenth of the Profits; yet he gives no Reaſon why they were ſo call'd himſelf, thô it be plain, that the *Romans* did lay ſuch a Tribute upon their People, and perhaps might have demanded it of the *Marcomanni*, &c. before they removed under *Marobodus*, who, as *Velleius Paterculus* ſays, carried off his People at a great Diſtance from the *Romans*, becauſe they were more powerful in Arms. As to the *Alamanni*, *Vopiſcus* and *Euſtathius* diſtinguiſh them from the *Germans*, but make them their Neighbours; and *Cluverius* is of Opinion, that *Tacitus* gives a very good Reaſon for the Name, when he ſays, *Leviſſimus quiſque Gallorum, & inopia audax, dubiæ poſſeſſionis ſolum occupavere*. By which it appears, they were not any one ſort of the *Gauls*, but a Mixture of the pooreſt and boldeſt People of that Name, who ſeiz'd thoſe Lands, and therefore were called *Alemannen* by the *Germans*, as if they would ſay they were a Mixture of all ſorts of People: And ſince *Strabo* mentions the *Alemanni* from *Aſinius Quadratus*, who liv'd much about the Time of this Tranſmigration, 'tis a ſtrong Preſumption, that theſe were the People who were firſt called by that Name. This happened about 15 Years before our Saviour's Birth, and in Proceſs of Time they came to be accounted real *Germans*. This then, ſays *Cluverius*, is the ancient *Alemania*, and theſe the old *Alemanni*, who being ſubject at firſt to the *Romans*, turn'd afterwards their fierceſt Enemies, and join'd with the reſt of the *Germans* to recover their Liberty.

The Catti, Chatti, Chaſſi, *and* Haſſi, *falſly called by* Cæſar, *and the Authors of that Time*, Suevi.

Cluverius proves by many Arguments, that *Cæſar* miſtook in calling thoſe People by that Name. His chief Reaſons are from their Situation, as being Neighbours to the *Ubii*; whereas *Tacitus* places the *Suevi* on the *Weiſſel*, the *Danube*, and the Borders of the *Sarmatæ*, as we heard before; and the *Catti* are placed afterwards in the Time of *Auguſtus*, *Tiberius*, &c. in the ſame Part of the Country where *Cæſar* places his *Suevi*. It likewiſe appears, that the *Catti* were one of the greateſt and moſt Warlike People in *Germany*, from the Character that *Tacitus* gives of them. Upon the whole, *Cluverius* aſſigns the ancient *Catti*, the Country now called *Thuringia*, all *Heſſe*, the whole Dutchy of *Grubbenhag*, half the Biſhoprick of *Paderborn*, which lies upon the *Weiſſer*, the Abbacy of *Fulda*,

Digitized by Google

and Part of the Dutchies of *Franconia* and *Coburg*. He eaſily accounts for the Change of the Name of *Chatti* into *Heſſi* and *Heſſen*, by the ſeveral Dialects of the *German* Tongue. The chief Town of *Heſſe*, now called *Heſſe-Caſſel*, he takes to be the ancient *Caſtellum Chattorum*, one of thoſe built by *Druſus Germanicus*, on the Left Bank of the *Fulda*.

The UBII

WEre Neighbours to the *Catti*, as appears from what is ſaid above; and before they were drove over the *Rhine* by them, poſſeſſed the Countries now called *Wetteraw* and *Weſterwald*, with that Part of *Heſſe* where now lie the Towns of *Marpurg* and *Gieſſen*. They were allow'd to fix themſelves in the Dioceſe of *Cologne* by *Auguſtus*, 37 Years before our Saviour's Birth.

The MATTIACI.

CLuverius takes Notice, That this People are ſaid by ſome modern Geographers to have inhabited *Zealand* and the neighbouring Iſles, and others place them upon the River *Iſſel*; but he ſhews their Miſtake from *Tacitus*, who ſays, the *Mattiaci* liv'd beyond the *Rhine*. He adds, That they were Part of the *Catti*; and that the *Mattium Catterum*, mention'd by *Tacitus* and *Pliny* to be beyond the *Rhine*, is now *Marpurg* in *Heſſe*, *quaſi Matburg*; ſo that their Country was *Wetteravia*, and Part of *Heſſe*. This appears yet more plain from the *Aquæ Mattiacæ*, and Warm Baths, mention'd to be beyond the *Rhine* by *Tacitus*, now called *Wisbaden*, in the Country of *Heſſe*, not far from *Marpurg*: And *Cluverius* thinks, the *Bucinobantes*, mentioned by *Marcellinus* to lie over againſt *Mentz*, had their Name from *Wisbaden*, it being uſual for the *Romans* to change the *German* W into B, and to give *Latin* Inflections to *German* Words.

The JUHONES.

THey are mentioned by *Tacitus* in his Annals on a remarkable Occaſion, *viz.* That a Fire broke out from the Ground, and deſtroyed great Part of their Country. *Cluverius* refutes thoſe who would place them in *Weſt-Freezland*, or about *Huy* on the *Maeſe*; for it appears, that they were Neighbours to the *Catti*, and probably Part of them, but had ſubmitted to the *Romans* when *Tacitus* wrote. Their Country, he ſays, was half the S. Part of the Dutchy of *Bergen*, and that now called *Weſterwald*.

The SIGAMBRI.

CÆſar ſays, they lay N. of the *Ubii*: They are ſometimes called *Sicambri*, and *Sugambri*. *Cluverius* takes Notice of *Strabo*'s Miſtake, in extending their Country to the Ocean, and aſſigns their Boundaries thus; That they dwelt in a Line from the Diviſion of the *Rhine* at *Schenkenſchans*, to the Fountain of the River *Bercola*, and in another from thence to the River *Luppia*, as far as the Town called *Lunen*, and from thence to the Head of that River; ſo that their Country was a great Part of *Weſtphalia* betwixt the River *Luppia* and the Borders of *Heſſe*, half the Dutchy of *Bergen*, all the County of *Mark*, and that Part of *Cleve* which lay beyond the *Rhine*. Their chief Places taken Notice of by *Roman* Authors, are, *Caſtellum Aliſo*, which *Cluverius* ſays is the Village now called *Elſen*; and *Luppia*, now *Lippe*.

The Tencteri, Uſipites, *or* Uſipii.

CLuverius ſays, they ſucceeded the *Sigambri*, being expelled by the *Catti*, as Cæſar informs us, and were received by the *Sigambri*, who removed afterwards to the other Side the *Rhine*; but the *Tencteri*, &c. ſubmitted to the *Romans*.

The Marſi *and* Marſaci, *or* Marſatii.

THey had the *Sigambri* on the N. and *Cluverius* ſays, liv'd in that Part of *Weſtphalia* which lies betwixt the Towns of *Munſter* and *Paderborn*, in the Time of *Auguſtus* and *Tiberius*. They aſſiſted in deſtroying

Digitized by Google

ing *Varus*'s Legions, for which they were afterwards invaded by *Tiberius*, who laid waſt their Country, with the famous Temple of *Tanfana*, at that Time the moſt noted in thoſe Parts of *Germany*. *Cluverius* thinks, the *Marſaci* were Part of the *Marſi*, but ſtaid in the Country when the reſt fled before the *Romans*. The *Marſi* were one of the moſt conſiderable and ancient of the *German* Nations; and upon their retiring before the *Romans*, extended their Limits from *Coesfeld* Southward to the *Rhine*, where the *Vahalis* ſeparates from it, and along the *Rhine* to *Batavodurum*, now *Durſtede*; then Weſtward to *Hattem*, and from thence Eaſtward to *Bercula*, where it falls into the *Iſſel*, and along *Bercola* to *Coesfeld*.

The TUBANTES.

THey were a ſmall People, and therefore ſeldom mentioned by the Ancients. *Cluverius* corrects their Miſtake who place them in that Part of *Over-Iſſel* called *Twente*, and rather thinks they liv'd in that Part of the Country now called *Benthem*.

The BRUCTERI

WEre Neighbours to the *Marſi* and *Tencteri*, according to *Tacitus*. *Cluverius* thinks they inhabited the Countries of *Zutphen* and *Benthem*, *Saland* and *Twente*, Part of *Drent*, and of the Dutchy of *Cleve*, and ſome Part of *Weſtphalia*. Moſt of 'em were deſtroyed by the *Romans* under *Trajan*; but the Remainders of 'em recover'd, and grew formidable to the *Romans*. *Cluverius* is not poſitive where they inhabited then, but thinks it was in the *Wetteraw*.

The Chamavi *and* Angrivarii.

THey are mentioned by *Tacitus* in the Reign of *Nero*, before *Cæſar*'s Expedition into *Gaul*: They liv'd on the Bank of the *Rhine*, and in *Tacitus*'s Time did, together with the *Angrivarii*, poſſeſs the Country of the *Bructeri*. The *Angrivarii* aſſiſted *Arminius* in his famous Battle againſt *Cæſar*, which *Cluverius* thinks was betwixt *Minden* and *Oldendorp*, and that their Country was Part of the County *Schawenburg* on the Right of the *Weſer*, half the S. Part of the Biſhoprick of *Minden*, the greateſt Part of the Biſhoprick of *Oſnabrug*, the N. Part of the County of *Tekelburg*, and Part of the County of *Ravensberg* about the Caſtle of *Lemburg*. He likewiſe thinks, that Part of them reached into the old Dominions of the *Tubantes*, as far as the Town called *Engeren*, which he thinks keeps ſome Remembrance of their Name. He is of Opinion, that the *Chamavi* liv'd betwixt the Rivers *Luecla* and *Ems*, and Part of the County of *Lingen*, and the N. Part of the Biſhoprick of *Oſnabrug*.

The Dulgibini *or* Dulgumnii, *and the* Chaſvari *or* Caſſavarii, Chattuarii, *and* Cattuarii.

THey are mentioned by *Tacitus*. *Cluverius* thinks, they liv'd in Part of the Country of *Lemgow*, and that the Limits of both theſe People were, on the S. the Confluence of the *Weſer* near *Remen*, and then a Line from the Town of *Melle* to *Bentlage* and the *Ems*; on the W. the Confluence of the *Ems* and *Loeda*; on the E. the *Laeda* to the Head of that River, and a Line from thence to *Remen*. *Cluverius* thinks they were in the Battle againſt *Varus*, being then Subjects to the *Cheruſci*.

The Anſibarii, Ampſibarii, *or* Amſivarii.

THey are mentioned by *Tacitus* to have been expelled by the *Chauci*, and to have removed near the *Rhine*; and that their ancient Country was half the N. Part of the Biſhoprick of *Minden*, the County of *Deepholt*, moſt of the County of *Hoy* on the Left of the *Weſer*, and the little Country called *Stading*. When they were drove out by the *Chauci*, they ſeized the Country formerly poſſeſſed by the *Friſii*, and ſubmitted to the *Romans*; but demanding more Land from them to inhabit, it was deny'd them; upon which they rebell'd, and moſt of them were cut off. On this Occaſion

Tacit.

Digitized by Google

Tacitus mentions a noble Saying of their General *Bojocalus*, who had ſerv'd long under the *Romans*, and deſerv'd better Treatment, That if they would not allow them a Place to live in, they could not refuſe them a Place to die in; and joining Battle, was defeated. The Remainders of them are mentioned afterwards with great Fame. *Cluverius* thinks they ſucceeded the *Angrivarii* and *Dulgibini* in their Poſſeſſions.

The FRISII.

THey are mentioned by *Tacitus* as a great People, divided into *Majores* and *Minores*. They were bounded by the *Batavi* on the S. by the *Marſi* on the N. E. by the *Ems* on the S. E. and by the Ocean on the W. and N. ſo that they poſſeſſed the greateſt Part of *Holland*, and the Province of *Utrecht*. *Cluverius* ſays, half the Towns of *Leiden*, *Waerden*, and *Utrecht*, are in the ancient Country of the *Friſii*, as is Part of *Gelderland* about *Harderwick* and *Elburg*, Part of *Over-Iſſel* about *Campen*, &c. and all *Weſt-Freezland* as far as the *Ems*: And hence it comes, that *North-Holland* goes ſtill under the Name of *Freezland*, and the Towns there carry the Arms of that Country. *Cluverius* thinks, that the *Friſii Majores* liv'd in the E. Part of the Country, and the *Minores* in the W. and that the Boundary betwixt them was the River *Vecta*, which falls into the *Snyder* Sea. On this Occaſion *Cluverius* takes Notice of the *Foſſa Druſiana*, ſo famous in Hiſtory, now call'd *Druſus*'s Ditch. The Reaſon why he dug it, was, That he might thereby bring his Fleet with his Army from the upper Part of the *Rhine* into the Lake and Ocean, to attack the *Friſii* and *Cauchi*, as we are inform'd by *Tacitus*. *Cluverius* corrects *Suetonius* here, for calling this Ditch a new and vaſt Work in the Time of *Germanicus*, ſince it was begun by his Father *Druſus*, and reached only 8 Miles, *viz.* from the Village of *Iſſelvort* to the Town of *Doesburg*. For our Author's Learned Diſſertation on this Ditch, the ſeveral Channels of the *Rhine*, and the Lake *Flevus*, &c. with the Corrections of Geographers on that Head, we refer to the Book it ſelf.

The Chauciſi, Cauchi, *and* Cauci.

TAcitus ſays, they border'd on the *Friſii*, liv'd along the Coaſt, and were bounded by ſeveral other People. *Cluverius* ſays, they poſſeſſed the Biſhoprick of *Bremen*, *Eaſt-Freezland*, the Counties of *Oldenburg*, *Delmenhorſt*, *Diepholt*, and *Hoy*, on this Side the *Weiſſer*, with the North Part of the Biſhoprick of *Minden*. They were divided into *Majores* and *Minores* by *Pliny*. *Ptolemy* ſays, the *Minores* liv'd betwixt the *Ems* and the *Weiſſer*, and the *Majores* betwixt that River and the *Elb*; and *Tacitus* the quite contrary, which *Cluverius* approves. *Tacitus* ſays, they were a very great and valiant People. Here *Cluverius* corrects *Paterculus*'s Miſtake in extolling *Tiberius*'s Expedition too much, and alledging, that he carried his Fleet 400 Miles from the *Rhine* to the *Elb*, up almoſt to its Fountains, which, if it were true, is no more than 300 Miles, and the greateſt Diſtance between the *Rhine* and the *Elb* is no more than 240; ſo that he thinks *Tiberius*'s Fleet came no further than the Town of *Stade*: So that if *Tiberius* marched 400 Miles, he muſt have taken vaſt Circuits, which *Strabo* and others not obſerving, make Countries much larger than they are; for if one go the neareſt Way by Land from the *Rhine* to the *Elb*, 'tis not above 180 Miles.

The Cheruſci, *and their Dependents*, *the* Campſani, Cathulci, *or* Cathulcones.

TAcitus ſays, they lay N. E. from the *Chauciſi*, were a great and valiant People, and join'd with *Arminius* againſt the *Romans*. *Cluverius* ſays, they poſſeſſed all the Biſhoprick of *Erden*, the Dutchies of *Lunenberg* and *Brunſwick*, the two Biſhopricks of *Hildeſheim* and *Halberſtat*, the County of *Schonenberg*, that Part of the Biſhoprick of *Magdeburg* on this Side the *Elb*, the *Old Mark*, the County of *Danneberg*, and Part of the Dutchy of *Lawenberg* on this Side the *Elb*.

The

Digitized by Google

The remarkable Places in this Country mentioned by *Roman* Authors, are, the *Teutoburgienſis Saltus*, and *Teutoburgium*, now *Dietmelle*, near which *Varus* and his Army were ſurpris'd and cut off; *Mons Melibocus*, now *Der Harz*; *Silva Herculi Sacra*, now the Wood betwixt *Minde-Strathagen* and *Bokenburg*. The *Campſani* particularly liv'd betwixt *Brunſwick* and *Wernigerode*; the *Catthulcenies* betwixt the Towns of *Luneburg* and *Duneburg*.

The Franci, *and* Francia.

Cluverius, before he come to deſcribe the *German* Nations beyond the *Elb*, thinks it proper to give an Account of the *Franci* and *Francia*, and produces very good Authorities to prove, that moſt of thoſe People already mentioned to have liv'd betwixt the *Rhine* and the *Elb* towards the Ocean, were afterwards called by the general Name of *Franci*. 'Tis plain from *Gregory* of *Tours*, *Lib.* 1. *Cap.* 9. that the *Bructeri*, *Chamavi*, *Anſivarii*, and *Chatti*, were by *Sulpitius Alexander* call'd *Franci*; and in the *Tabula Itinuraria*, the *Chauci*, *Ampſivarii*, *Cheruſci*, and *Chamavi*, are call'd *Franci*, and their Country *Francia*. It appears alſo by *Claudian*, that that Part of *Germany* betwixt the *Rhine* and the *Elb* was called *Francia*, and the People *Franci*. The Boundaries of this Country were, on the W. the *Rhine* and the Ocean; on the N. the Ocean; on the E. the *Elb* and *Sala*; but their Boundaries on the S. and how they were divided from the *Alemanni*, are not ſo plain. *Freherus* is of Opinion, that the Boundary betwixt *Francia* and *Suevia*, in the Emperor *Gratian*'s Time, was the *Neckar*; but *Cluverius* corrects his Miſtake, and proves it to have been the River *Lone*, and the Mountains called *Fogelsberg*.

He comes next to enquire into the Reaſon of the Name, and thinks it proceeded from their uniting together againſt the *Romans*, in order to recover their Liberty, according to the Example of *Alemanni*, formerly mentioned; and that the Word *Franc* ſignifies *Free*. The Remembrance of the Name is ſtill continued in *Germany* beyond the *Main*, where the People are called *Franken*, which ſignifies *Freemen*, and the Country *Frankenland* or *Franconia*. They have ſtill a Proverb in *Germany*, *As free as Franks*, or, *The Free Franks*, which *Cluverius* ſays had its Riſe from this Confederacy to recover their Freedom. The Time he takes to have been ſoon after the *Alemanni* rebelled againſt the *Romans*; for the Emperor *Probus*, who liv'd about 58 Years after *Caracalla*, is ſaid by ſeveral Writers to have made War againſt the *Franks*. This *Cluverius* ſays is the true and ancient *France*, and theſe the ancient *French*, who entring that Part of *Gaul* now called the Iſle of *France*, at laſt gave the Name to the whole Country. Here *Cluverius* corrects the Miſtakes of *Paulus Emilius*, *Sigibertus* and *Adrianus Junius*; the former, becauſe he ſays the Emperor *Valentinian* firſt called them *Francs*, which in the *Attick* Dialect ſignifies Fierce; and the latter, becauſe he alledges, that the *Franci* were the Inhabitants of *Batavia*, and peculiarly called by the Name of *Germani*, from a Place in *Strabo*, which he miſtakes. He adds, that *Auſonius* and *Martial* make uſe of Poetical Licence, when the former diſtinguiſhes betwixt the *Franci* and other *Germans*; and the latter, when he diſtinguiſhes betwixt them and the *Catti*.

The Foſi, *or* Saxons, *and Two Countries called* Saxony.

Tacitus is the only Author who mentions the *Foſi*, and ſays, they were Neighbours to the *Cheruſci* and *Cimbri*, and liv'd betwixt them. *Cluverius* is of Opinion, that inſtead of the *Foſi* mentioned by *Tacitus*, we ſhould read *Saxoni*; but his Arguments for it ſeem not to be concluſive enough. *Geſippus* mentions *Saxonici*, and ſays it was inacceſſible, by reaſon of Marſhes, *&c.* but *Cluverius* has no great Opinion of that Author. He is poſitive however, that the *Foſi* were the ſame whom *Ptolomy* and other Authors did afterwards call *Saxones*, and ſays, they inhabited *Holſtein*, and Part of the Dutchy of *Sleſwick*. *Tacitus* ſays, moſt of them were deſtroyed in their War with the *Catti*; yet they recover'd again, and became a formidable People, which muſt be own'd to be true, if they were the ſame

Digitized by Google

ſame with the *Foſi*. They afterwards paſſed the *Elb*, and drove out the *Francs* who liv'd on this Side of it: After which the Country as far as the *Rhine* was, according to *Cluverius*, called *Saxony*.

The CIMBRI.

Tacitus ſays, the *Cimbri* lay next to the *Saxons*; and *Ptolomy* ſays, they poſſeſſed that called *Cherſoneſus Cimbrica*. *Cluverius* ſays, modern Geographers miſtook this *Peninſula* for the Country betwixt *Lubeck* and *Hamburg*. *Strabo* miſtook by placing the *Cimbri* on this Side the *Elb*, becauſe the *Roman* Writers confounded the Accounts of their Actions with the People on this Side that River. *Cluverius* takes Notice, that ſome of the ancienteſt Writers related many fabulous Things of the *Cimbri*, as, that it was a Name the *Germans* gave to Robbers, as *Plutarch* ſays; and *Nicephorus*, *Gregorius*, and others, fancied they came from *Aſia* into *Scythia*, and from thence into *Germany*, &c. and confounded them with the *Cimmerii* near *Pontus*, of whom the *Greeks* talk ſo much. In *Tacitus*'s Time they were inconſiderable, tho' formerly he ſays they had been great and famous, and had War with the *Romans* when *Cæcilius Metellus* and *Papirius* were Conſuls. *Cluverius* rejects their Opinion who think the great Camp of the *Cimbri*, mentioned by *Tacitus*, was that in the *Peninſula*, now called *Damen-Wark*, and ſays it was either in *Italy* or *Gaul*. He thinks, the Country which *Ptolomy* places betwixt the *Saxons* and the *Cimbri*, is that now called *Jutland*. *Ptolomy*'s Six People that he places in the *Peninſula*, *Cluverius* fixes thus; the *Sigulones* in that now called *Wenſuſſel*; and he ſays, they were the moſt Northerly of the Remainders of the *Cimbri*. The *Funduſi* had a Lake on the N. and the Iſthmus between that Lake and the Sea, where the Village *Silkirck* now ſtands. On the W. they had the Sea as far as the Village of *Hemberg*, and from thence they reached in a Line Southward to the Village *Hald*. On the E. they had a River and a Lake. The *Chali* had the *Funduſi* on the N. on the E. the *Baltick*; on the W. the Ocean; on the S. the River which falls into the Sea near *Holm*; and then lay on a Line from the Head of that River to the Town called *Horſens*, from whence a Bay of the *Baltick* was their Boundary. The *Gobandi* had the *Chali* on the N. the Rivers *Nipſa* and *Tobeſket* on the S. the two Seas above-mention'd on the W. and E. The *Sabalingii* had thoſe two Rivers on the N. the ſame Seas on the W. and E. and the Iſthmus on the N. and *Cluverius* ſays, that at this Day the Country lying on the Lake is called *Salling*, which he thinks comes from the *Sabalingii*.

The Iſlands on the Coaſts of the Cimbri Saxons, Chauſi *and* Friſii.

Pliny takes Notice of 23 Iſlands on thoſe Coaſts that were known to the *Roman* Arms; the chief of which mentioned by him are, *Burchana*, now *Borchum*, before the Mouth of the *Ems*; *Fabaria*, now *Boonbuys*; *Gleſſaria*, by ſome thought to be *Ameron*; but *Cluverius* thinks 'tis that called the *Strand*, which he takes to be derived from *Auſtrania*, one of its Latin Names; *Actania*, now *Silt*. *Cluverius* ſuppoſes that thoſe Iſlands were made by Irruptions of the Ocean, and that more of them were known to the *Romans*, becauſe *Tacitus* ſays, the *Roman* Fleet ſuffered great Loſs among 'em as they ſet Sail from the *Ems*, being overtaken by a Storm.

The Ancient Suevia.

Cluverius obſerves, that 'twas eaſy to find out the Boundaries of the other *German* Nations mentioned by *Tacitus*; but that it would be difficult to find out thoſe of the *Suevi*. *Tacitus* ſays, they poſſeſſed the greater Part of *Germany*, and were divided into ſeveral Nations of different Names; but *Suevi* was their general Name. *Strabo* agrees with *Tacitus*, ſays they were poſſeſſed of the greateſt Part of *Germany*, and divided into 14 ſeveral People. *Cluverius* ſays, they poſſeſſed the Countries following, viz. Part of modern *Suevia* or *Swabia*, where are the Towns of *Dinkelſpiehl*

ſpithel and *Nordlingen*, the *Upper Palatinate*, *Voitland*, *Upper Miſnia*, *Upper Saxony*, *Bohemia*, Part of *Auſtria* beyond the *Danube*, Part of *Hungary* as far as the *Sarmatian* Mountains, *Moravia*, *Sileſia*, *Luſatia*, *Poland* on this Side the *Weiſſel*, the Marquiſate of *Brandenburg*, excepting that Part on this Side the *Elb*, *Pomerellia*, *Pomerania*, the Dutchy of *Mecklenburg*, Part of *Denmark*, called now *Blekin*, *Skane* and *Halland*, *Sweden*, *Norway*, *Weſtern Bothnia*, *Finmark*, *Scritefinnia*, *Lapland*, and *Biarmia*. *Cluverius* ſays, the Names of the different Nations that inhabited *Suevia*, as he finds them in *Tacitus* and other Authors, are as follow: On this Side the *Baltick*, the *Hermunduri*, *Narifci*, *Marcomanni*, *Quadi*, *Marſingi*, *Barii*, *Semnones*, *Lygii*, *Burgundiones*, *Gothones*, *Lemovii ſive Heruli*, *Rugii*, *Carini*, *Langobardi*, *Deuringi*, *Caviones*, *Angli*, *Varini*, *Eudoſes*, *Suardones*, *Nuithones*, to whom were added the *Oſii* and *Gothini*, that were Strangers. Beyond the *Baltick*, liv'd the *Sitones* and *Suiones*, a great People, alſo divided into ſeveral Nations. Theſe were their Boundaries in the Time of *Tacitus*, as they were before in the Time of *Auguſtus Ceſar*; ſo that *Strabo* is in the wrong to think that they called themſelves by that Name when they came into *Bohemia*, for 'tis plain they were call'd ſo long before. *Cluverius* thinks there's little Certainty as to the Reaſon of the Name, or why ſo many People ſhould call themſelves by it. He takes Notice, that the vaſt Mountains which ſeparate *Sweden* from *Denmark*, are called *Scve* by Latin Authors, and that the ancienteſt of them mentioned the *Suiones* or *Sueones*, a great People that dwelt about them; and *Ptolomy* mentions a River called *Suevus*, which falls into the *Baltick*; but whether the People gave Name to them, or they to the People, is not certain. He takes Notice, that *Strabo* calls them Συηβοι, and deſcribes their particular Countries as follows.

The Semnones.

Tacitus ſays, they accounted themſelves the nobleſt and moſt ancient of the *Suevi*. *Cluverius* refutes thoſe who would have them called *Semnes*, becauſe they are once found by that Name in *Velleius Paterculus*, which he thinks happen'd meerly by the Neglect of the Copier, who was better acquainted with the *Galli Semnes*. *Tacitus* ſays, they had 100 *Pagi* or Diſtricts; ſo that their Country was large, comprehending Part of *Leſſer Poland* betwixt the *Vart* and the *Oder*, the Dutchy of *Creſſin*, the Country of *Sternberg*, Part of *Sileſia* about *Glogaw*, *Luſatia*, Part of the Marquiſate of *Brandenburg* about *Francfort* on the *Oder*, the Principality of *Anhalt*, and Part of *Upper Saxony* and *Miſnia* beyond the *Elb*. He thinks, that *Somnewald* in the Country of *Sternberg*, and *Somnenberg* on the *Vart*, were anciently called *Semnenwald* and *Sonnenwald* from thoſe People.

The Langobardi

Liv'd N. of the *Semnones*, were few, but valiant. *Cluverius* takes Notice, that *Proſper*, *Sigebertus*, *Diacnus*, and other Writers of the middle Age, ſay many fabulous Things of them, particularly that they liv'd in *Norway* and *Sweden*, and were called *Winili*; but coming into *Germany* in the Time of the Emperor *Theodoſius*, were called *Langobardi*, from their long Beards; but *Strabo* mentions them long before that Time. Their Country was the old Marquiſate of *Brandenburg*, with half the County of *Danneberg*.

The Deuringi, Caviones, Angli, Varini, Eudoſes, Suardones, *and* Nuithones, *were join'd in one Body.*

SEparately they were not very ſignificant; but altogether were very conſiderable, and went continually arm'd, except on Holidays, when they worſhip'd their Goddeſs *Hertha*. They all liv'd near the Sea.

The *Deuringi* are alſo call'd *Reudigni* and *Redigni*, and by later Authors *Toringi*, *Thoringi*, *Turingi*, and *Thuringi*, and are now called *Doringer* and *Toringer* by themſelves. They came into *Thuringia* in the Time of *Procopius*; but their ancient Country was betweeen the *Elb* and the *Baltick* and they were Neighbours to the *Angli* and *Varini*, in that Part of the Marquiſate of *Brandenburg* where

Digitized by Google

are now the Towns of *Havelberg*, *Ruppin*, and *Prutzwalk*.

The *Caviones* or *Aviones*, and by some called *Chaibones*, liv'd in Part of the Marquisate of *Brandenburg* about *Dalmin*, and Part of the County of *Dancberg*, and the Dutchy of *Mecklenburg*.

The *Angli*, the Predecessors of the *English*, possessed half the Dutchy of *Lunenburg* on the right Side of the *Elb*, and the Western Part of the Dutchy of *Mecklenburg*. *Ptolomy* mistakes when he places them on this Side the *Elb*, and makes them Neighbours to the *Semnones*. *Cluverius* thinks, that *Ptolomy* wrote the Name wrong when he calls them Αγγίλοι. The *Germans* call them the *Angelen*. Their Name is still retained in the *Cherſoneſus Cimbrica* in that Country called *Angelen* or *Anglen*, betwixt *Sleſwick* and *Flensberg*, whither they remov'd after *Tacitus*'s Time by Force, as 'tis ſuppos'd. *Cluverius* ſays, they were either Part of the *Saxons*, or under their Protection; from whence in latter Ages they were called *Anglo-Saxones*.

The *Warini*, *Werini*, or *Varni*, and by ſome called *Varinni* and *Varinna*, liv'd in Part of the Dutchy of *Mecklenburg* about *Roſtock* and *Guſtraw*, and Part of *Pomerania*. *Cluverius* thinks, the River *Warne*, and the Town of *Waren*, ſtill retain their Name.

The *Eudoſes* liv'd in Part of *Pomerania*, about *Barth*, *Stralſund*, *Gripeſwalde*, &c. and the Iſle of *Uſedom*.

The *Suardones*, by *Ptolomy* corruptly called Φαραδηνοὶ, liv'd in Part of *Pomerania* about *Stettin*, and Part of the Dutchy of *Mecklenburg* betwixt the Lake *Tuly* and the River *Havel*.

The *Nuithones* liv'd in Part of the Marquisate of *Brandenburg*, about *Prentzlow*, *Angermund*, &c. Part of the Dutchy of *Mecklenburg* about *Furſtenſee*, and Part of *Pomerania* about *Gartz*. *Cluverius* thinks, the Iſle of *Rugen* in the *Baltick* contain'd the Sacred Wood dedicated to *Hertha*. In that Part of the Iſland call'd *Jaſmund*, near the Cape called *Stubbenkamer*, there is a very thick Wood, in which there is a mighty deep Lake of black Water, which abounds with Fiſh; but the Inhabitants ſay, 'twill neither bear Boats or Nets. *Cluverius* ſpeaks of an odd Paſſage that happen'd there in his own Time, *viz.* Some People carried a Boat to that Lake, and return'd next Day with Nets, in order to have fiſhed; but, to their great Amazement, miſſed their Boat, which at laſt they ſaw on the Top of a tall Beach-Tree; and asking which of all the Devils had hung it there, they heard a Voice, but ſaw no body, which ſaid, *It was not all the Devils, but only I and my Brother* Nicholas: Upon which *Cluverius* makes this Remark, That the unclean Spirit, being angry that his Worſhip ſhould be aboliſh'd where Idolatry was perform'd of old, does ſtill love to play his Tricks there: But this, with the Story it ſelf, we ſubmit to the Reader's Judgment. *Helmoldus* ſays, That long after Chriſtianity took Footing there, the People paid a Superſtitious Veneration to that Wood. The barbarous Inhabitants uſed to conſult the Devil in this Place, and to ſacrifice Chriſtians to him.

The Hermunduri, *and later* Suevia.

HAving given an Account of the *Suevi* who dwelt beyond the *Elb*, *Tacitus* comes to deſcribe thoſe who liv'd on this Side as far as the *Danube*. *Cluverius* ſays, their Country was the Principality of *Anhalt*, Part of the Dutchy of *Saxony* betwixt the *Saal* and the *Elb*, all *Miſnia* on this Side the *Elb*, all *Voitland*, Part of the Dutchy of *Coburg*, and about *Culmbach*, *Cronach*, &c. now ſubject to the Elector of *Brandenburg*, Part of *Franconia* on the Left Side of the *Main* about *Bamberg* and *Forchaim*, Part of the *Upper Palatinate* about *Nuremberg*, and Part of the Dutchy of *Swabia* about *Nordlingen*. He differs with *Tacitus* as to the Extent of the *Hermunduri*, and does not think their Country reached to the Head of the *Elb*, whoſe Riſe is from a Mountain in the Confines of *Sileſia*, in the furtheſt Part of *Bohemia*, to the South-Eaſt, near the Town of *Smidberg*, which is ſituated in a Valley commonly called the *Devil's Ground*. He infers from the Account *Tacitus* gives of the Retreat of *Marobodus*, after his Defeat by *Arminius*, over the Hills into the Country of the *Marcomanni*, the Battle

Battle to have been fought on the Borders of the *Hermunduri* and *Marcomanni*, near the Towns of *Zuriche* and *Chemnitz* in *Miſnia*. Therefore if the Borders of the *Marcomanni* were the Hills near the Towns of *Aunsberg* and *Mariaberg*, it cannot be that the Borders of the *Hermunduri* were extended beyond thoſe to the true Fountain of the *Elb*: Nor is it to be ſuppoſed that the Battle was fought on the Right Side of the *Elb*, in the Borders of the *Semnones*, for they were Enemies to *Marobodnus*; and 'tis plain from *Tacitus*, that the War he managed was Defenſive, and not Offenſive: Therefore he thinks *Tacitus*'s Miſtake proceeded from taking the Fountain of the *Moldaw* to be that of the *Elb*; and *Ptolomy*'s Error ſeems to have proceeded from the ſame Cauſe. *Cluverius* takes Notice, that the Name of theſe People is alſo miſtaken by *Strabo* and *Ptolomy*; the former calls them Ὑμμορδοῆς, inſtead of Ἐμμορδοῆς, and *Ptolomy* calls them Ἀμορδοῖοι; whereas the Situation ſhews 'em to be the *Hermunduri*: But an Age or two after *Tacitus*'s Time, when the *Alemanni*, *Franci*, *Saxons*, and the Nations of the *Suevi* beyond the *Saal* and the *Elb*, the *Gothi*, *Burgundiones*, *Vandali*, *Quadi*, and *Marcomanni*, began to be famous by their different Names, the *Hermunduri* alone were called *Suevi* by the *Romans*, and their Country *Suevia*; becauſe, as *Cluverius* thinks, that, next to the *Alemanni* and *Franci*, who liv'd on the *French* Side the *Rhine*, they lay neareſt to the *Romans*; and at laſt, when all the *Alemanni* left *Germany*, the *Suevi* ſucceeded into their Dominions, which from them was called *Suevia*, and now *Swabia*, and by the *Germans* *Schwabenland*.

The Nariſci, Nariſti, *or* Nariſtæ, *afterwards called* Armalauſi.

Tacitus ſays, the *Nariſci* liv'd on the Banks of the *Danube*, betwixt the *Hermunduri* and *Marcomanni*, in that Part of the Country, ſays *Cluverius*, now called the *Upper Palatinate*, and the Landgraviate of *Leuchtenberg*, and in the *Tabula Itineraria* were afterwards called *Armalauſi*; but why, is not ſaid.

Boiohæmum, *and its Inhabitants the* Boii *and* Marcomanni.

'TIS not certain what *German* People firſt inhabited this Country; but *Tacitus* ſays, the *Boii*, a *French* Nation, removed thither, which, according to *Livius*, was when *Tarquinius Priſcus* reign'd at *Rome*; and from them the Country was called *Boiohæmum*, now *Bohemia*. Here *Cluverius* takes Notice of *Cæſar*'s Miſtake in placing the *Volcæ Tectoſagæ* in the *Hercinian* Forreſt, ſince *Livy* places them in *Gallia Braccata*, or the Province of *Narbon*; and ſays, 'twas the *Celtick Gauls* who ſent a Colony to the *Hercinian* Forreſt, which ſurrounds *Bohemia*; and the *Boii* were afterwards expelled by the *Marcomanni*, as *Tacitus* informs us, but came in Time to be called *Bohemi* from their new Country. *Cluverius* thinks, that *Ptolomy*'s *Marobudum* is what we now call *Pragus*. The *Marcomanni* are much applauded for their Valour by *Tacitus*, and other *Roman* Authors.

The QUADI.

MOdern Geographers place them in *Sileſia*; but *Cluverius* proves that it was *Moravia*, becauſe the River *Marus*, ſaid to be in that Country by *Pliny*, is what the *Germans* call *Maren*, and the Natives *Morawa*. Their Towns mentioned by *Ptolomy* are, *Eboreduunm*, now *Brin* or *Brun* in *Moravia*; *Eburum*, now *Olomutz* or *Olmitz*; *Medoſtanum*, now *Znaim*; *Celemantia*, now *Kalmintz*.

The Gothini, Marſingi, Oſi, *and* Burii,

ARE mentioned by *Tacitus* to be bounded by the *Quadi* and *Marcomanni* on one Side, and by a Ridge of Mountains on the other. The *Gothini*, according to *Cluverius*, liv'd in Part of *Poland* about *Tarnowitz*, *Jablakow*, &c. in Part of *Sileſia* about *Teſchen*, *Freiſtat*, *Frideck*, &c. and Part of *Mo-*

ravia about *Mezyrzec* and *Haliſſow*. They are by *Dio* called *Kotinui* and *Cotini*. The *Oſi* liv'd in Part of *Sileſia* about *Oppeln*, *Little Glogaw*, *Ratibor*, &c. and Part of *Poland* about *Dlugoſzyn*, &c. *Ptolomy* mentions *Parienna*, a Town in this Country, now *Parn*, near the Head of the *Oder* in *Moravia*. Beyond the *Oſi*, betwixt *Boh.mia* and the *Lygii*, liv'd the *Marſingi* and *Burii*, which, according to *Cluverius*, was in the beſt Part of *Sileſia* about *Breſlaw*, and the County of *Glacen*. They are call'd by *Ptolemy*, Μαρσιγοι, and by *Æthicus*, *Marsiani*. The *Burii* liv'd in Part of *Sileſia* about *Prauſnitz*, &c. and in Part of *Poland* about *Krzepice*, *Radomsko*, and as far as *Jutroſzyn*. *Ptolomy* mentions *Calisia* in this Country, now *Kalisz* in *Poland*.

The Lygii, Ligii, Lugii, Lugi, *or* Lugiones.

Tacitus ſays, they were a numerous People, and liv'd beyond the Ridge of Mountains which divided *Suevia*. *Æthicus* calls them *Langiones* by a Miſtake. *Cluverius* ſays, they were bounded by thoſe Mountains and the River *Weiſſel* from the Town of *Oſwieczym* to the Town of *Bydgoſcz*, which makes now a conſiderable Part of *Poland*. They were divided into ſeveral People; the Chief of which were the *Arii*, *Helvecones*, *Manimi*, *Elyſi*, and *Naharvali*; and *Ptolomy* mentions the *Lugi Diauni*.

The Gothones *or* Gotones, Gutones, Guttones, Gythones, Gothi, *and* Gotthi, *and likewiſe the* Gepidæ.

Tacitus ſays, the *Gothones* liv'd N. of the *Lygii*; *Cluverius* ſays, their Country was that now called *Pomerellia*, and thinks it not improbable that the Village called *Goorland*, on the hither Bank of the *Weiſſel*, over againſt the middle of the great Iſland, may have derived its Name from them. He has a long and learned Diſſertation to prove that the *Gothones* inhabited the Coaſt of the *Baltick*, and were the ſame People which latter Ages call'd the *Gothi* and *Gotthi*; notwithſtanding that *Sidonius*, *Claudian*, *Auſonius*, *Jornandes*, *Procopius*, *Oroſius*, St. *Jerome*, *Spartian*, and others, will have the *Goths* to have been deſcended from the *Getæ*, mentioned by the Greek Authors, whom the Latins called *Daci*. His chief Reaſon is, that none of the Ancients did ever reckon the *Getæ* or *Daci* among the *German* Nations; whereas 'tis plain the *Goths* were, both by their Cuſtoms and Language, which nobody ever deny'd. He proves from good Authority, that the *Getæ* were always reckoned a People of *Thracia*; whereas the *Goths* were ever accounted Part of the *Celtæ*. He takes Notice, that *Jornandes*, who was a Biſhop of the *Goths* in the Time of the Emperor *Juſtinian*, did very improperly entitle his Book, *De Rebus Geticis*, when his Subject was the Affair of the *Goths*; and he was as much out in calling their Country *Dacia*; but was led into this Miſtake by *Ablabius* and *Dexippus*, who wrote of the *Goths* before him, and deriv'd them from *Norway* and *Sweden*; and other Authors following his Pattern, brought the *Lombardi*, *Franci*, *Saxones*, and *Alemanni*, likewiſe from thence. He charges *Jornandes* with quoting the Teſtimonies of *Ptolomy* and *Juſtin* unfairly, and perplexing *Strabo*'s Hiſtory of the *Getæ*; and upon the whole concludes, that the *Gothi* were the ſame *German* People which the Ancients called *Gothones*, &c. and the old *Germans*, *Thi-Gotan*; from whence he will have the Latins to have formed the Word *Gothi*, as from the *Friſiones* they derived *Friſii*; from the *Francones*, *Franci*, &c. Another Argument he takes from *Jornandes*'s own Hiſtory, who thô he brings the *Goths* from *Scandia* before the Time of *Hercules* and the *Trojan War*, he owns that they did for ſome time inhabit about the Mouth of the *Weiſſel*, and made War upon the *Vandals*, under their Leader *Bericus*. He thinks there's ſome Truth in what he ſays, that Part of the *Goths* paſſed the *Weiſſel*, and marched as far as the *Palus Mœotis*, under *Filemer*; and that others of them ſtaying on this Side the *Weiſſel*, made War on the *Burgundiones*, and other neighbouring People, under *Faſtida*, and purſued the reſt over the *Weiſſel* into *Dacia*. He thinks they are alſo miſtaken who ſuppoſe that the *Osin*, which the

the *Goths* passed, was the River *Obi* betwixt *Europe* and *Asia*, since 'tis plain *Jornandes* takes it to be the *Vistula* or *Weissel*, which he makes the Boundary betwixt *Scythia* and *Germany*; and owns, that Part of the *Goths* who ſtay'd on this Side that River made War upon their Neighbours the *Burgundians*, &c. As for their Expedition to the *Palus Maotis* and *Black Sea*, 'tis mentioned by *Ablabius* and *Stephanus*; but he takes Notice, that they no where ſay they were formerly called *Getæ* or *Daci*; therefore he thinks it credible, that after *Tacitus*'s Time they marched towards the S. E. to the Lake of *Maotis*, and that they returned towards the S. W. to the *Boriſthenes* and *Pontus*, and the Borders of the *Getæ*, where they ſettled; and being diſtinguiſhed into two Nations, thoſe who liv'd Eaſtward towards *Pontus* were call'd the *Eaſtern Goths*, *Oſtro-Gothæ* or *Oſtro-Gothi*; and thoſe who liv'd towards *Germany* Weſtward, were called the *Weſtern Goths*, *Weſe-Gothæ*, *Weſe-Gothi* or *Veſe-Gothi*; and *Sidonius* only calls them *Veſi*. How they came afterwards to make their Irruptions into *Thracia*, *Illyricum*, *Italy*, *France* and *Spain*, and Part of them likewiſe into *Bithynia*, *Phrygia*, and other neighbouring Countries, is accounted for at large by *Jornandes* and others. We leave the Reader to his own Judgment, whether *Cluverius*, or the *Swediſh* and *Daniſh* Hiſtorians, who pretend the *Goths* came from their Countries, be in the right: 'Tis certain, that if the Names of Places which have ſome Reſemblance to that of the *Goths* be a good Argument, the *Danes* and *Swedes* have more to ſay for their Opinion than he has for his; not is it any way improbable that the *Gothones*, whom he places on the Coaſt of the *Baltick* about the Mouth of the *Weiſſel*, might firſt come from the *Getæ* on the other Side the *Baltick*; but it muſt be own'd that the *Goths*, who afterwards made ſo great a Noiſe and Figure in the World, ſeem to be more immediately deſcended from the *Gothones* on this Side the *Baltick*.

Jornandes ſays, the *Gepidæ* were originally *Goths*, which *Cluverius* does not contradict, tho' he looks upon his Original of the Name to be fabulous.

The Northern *Eridanus* mentioned by the Ancients, *Cluverius* takes to be the River *Rodaune*, which falls into the *Weiſſel* near *Dantzick*, and by Miſtake was given to the *Weiſſel* it ſelf; and he proves that *Dantzick* is the Place which was famous for the Trade of Amber in the Time of *Herodotus*, &c. He thinks the Latin Name *Gythonium* or *Godanium* to be derived from the Word *Thautonium*, and ſays, 'tis mentioned by the Name of *Gedanum* in an ancient Charter granted in the Year 1209 by the Duke of *Caſſubia*, and that it is more ancient than any other Town in the North; but this muſt be taken with ſome Grains of Allowance, becauſe 'twas the Place of his Birth.

The Lemovii, *called alſo* Heruli, *with the* Rugii, Sidini, *and* Carini.

Tacitus ſays, the *Lemovii* dwelt W. from the *Gothones*, and beyond them the *Regii*. *Cluverius* ſays, the latter inhabited a great Part of *Pomerania* from *Sturgard* to *Coſlyn*, and a ſmall Part of the Marquiſate from *Tramberg* to *Stolpiſtburn*. The Iſle of *Rugel* derives its Name from them. The Town *Rugium*, mentioned here by *Ptolomy*, is now called *Regiwald*. *Ptolomy* calls them by Miſtake *Rutilii*, and later Writers *Rugii* and *Regi*. They were divided into two People, and Part of them afterwards removed to the Banks of the *Danube*, from whom the Country called *Rugiland*, betwixt *Tranſilvania* and the *Danube*, had its Name.

The *Lemovii* were ſeparated from them by the River *Vipar*, poſſeſſed a great Part of that Country now called *Caſſubia*, in the middle of which ſtands the Town of *Lemburg*; from thence they reached to the Sea called *Pontus* and *Heel*, and into Part of *Pomerania* about *Stolpe*. Later Writers join the *Heruli* with them in their Wars; ſo that 'tis probable they were their Neighbours. Some call them *Eruli*. *Cluverius* thinks they might derive their Name from the *Peninſula* called *Heel*, at the Weſtern Mouth of the *Weiſſel*, from whence, according to the *German* Dialect, they were called *Helur*, by the Greeks *Heluri*, and by Tranſpoſition of the Letters *Heruli*.

The

The *Sidini* liv'd S. of the *Rugii*, in Part of the Marquisate and *Pomerania*. *Ptolomy* mentions the Town *Viritium* here, betwixt the *Suevi* and the *Weissel*, now called *Peritz*.

The *Carini* had the *Rugii* on the N. and liv'd in Part of the Marquisate and *Poland*, betwixt the River *Tragus* and *Guda*.

The Burgundiones, Burgundii, *or* Burgundi.

Cluverius thinks they were not mentioned by *Tacitus*, because they were then inconsiderable; yet they were mentioned by *Pliny* before him, and became afterwards famous among Writers of the later Ages. *Cluverius* says, their ancient Country was in Part of *Poland*, from *Gnesna* to the Lake *Gopla*; but in the Time of the Emperor *Probus*, *Zosimus* mentions them to be seated on the *Rhine*. *Ptolomy* commits many Mistakes, says *Cluverius*, both as to their Name and Situation; for he places them in *Sarmatia*, and calls them sometimes *Fragundiones*, and at other times *Burgundiæ* and *Bagundæ*. *Marcellinus* says, they were an Offspring of the *Romans*, left in *Germany* by *Drusus* and *Tiberius*, and is followed in this by *Orosius* and *Isidorus*; but *Cluverius* rejects this, and thinks, that after they came to the *Rhine* in the Time of *Probus*, they enlarged their Habitations into that now called *Burgundy*. He informs us from *Marcellinus*, that they first came into the Country of the *Catti*; and *Procopius* says, they liv'd S. of the *Thuringi*. *Marcellinus* mentions the Boundaries of the *Alemanni* and *Burgundi* to have been distinguished from one another by Stones set up in the Country called *Capellatium* or *Palæ*, which some will have to be the *Palatinate*; but *Cluverius* thinks it was about the Town of *Stain*, in the Borders of the *Catti*; and when the *Alemanni* went into *Rhetia* and *Helvetia*, the *Burgundiones* succeeded them, and from thence removed into *Gaul* upon the Irruption of the *Goths*, who destroyed many of them, as *Eumenius* informs in his *Genethliacon* of *Maximianus*.

The Northern *Ocean*, *which bounds* Germany *on the North*, *and its great Bay called* Codanus *by* Mela *and* Pliny, *and* Mare Suevicum *by* Tacitus, *and that Part of it called* Venedicus Sinus *by* Ptolomy.

Tacitus seems to have known but little of this Part of *Germany* beyond what he calls the *Mare Suevicum*, and mentions only two Sorts of People in it. *Pliny* calls that Part of the Ocean from the Mouth of the *Rhine* to the Promontory *Rubeis*, now *Norscoping*, the *German* Ocean. The large Bay of that Ocean mentioned by *Tacitus*, and other *Roman* Authors, is that now called the *Baltick* or East-Sea. It was by some of those Authors called *Germanicus Sinus*, and by others *Mare Suevicum*, from the *Suevi*, who inhabited the *Peninsula* of this Sea, and Part of the Continent of *Germany*. In this *Peninsula* they plac'd the huge Mountain *Sevo*, the Ridge of Mountains that separate *Norway* from *Sweden*, and are now called by several Names, *viz.* the *Skerr*, the *Sulo*, and *Dofrafiel*, which are 360 Miles in Length from the Mouth of the *Albis* or *Elbe* to the Promontory of the *Cimbri*. The Form of this Bay was not known to those ancient Writers, as it now appears to be; for they thought it had a Communication with the *Winds Sea*, and that *Scandinavia* was an Island, nor was it possible for them to know it better, since the *Roman* Navy sail'd no further N. than the *Promontorium Cimbrorum*, now called Cape *Skagen*. The *Sinus Venedicus*, *Cluverius* takes to be that Part of the Bay betwixt the Mouths of the *Weissel* and the *Narva*.

Of Scandinavia, Scandia, *or* Scanzia, *called by the old* Greek *Authors* Baltia, *and* Basilia, *and likewise of* Finningia.

Those vast Islands mentioned by *Tacitus* to be in this Part of the World, were the same which *Pliny* call'd *Scandinavia* and *Finnin-*

Digitized by Google

Finningia; but he took *Baltia* or *Baſilia* to have been a diſtinct Iſland from *Scandinavia*, by not adverting to the Greek Authors, and therefore is very confus'd in his Account of them. Upon the whole, *Cluverius* ſays, That by thoſe Iſlands they meant that vaſt Tract of Ground which lies now betwixt the *White Sea* and the *Baltick*, that includes *Lapland*, *Biarmia*, *Finmarchia*, *Norway* and *Sweden*, with Part of *Bothnia* and *Denmark*; and the many Iſlands they mention without Names, are thoſe which lie all along that Coaſt. He thinks the whole Country was called *Scandia* and *Scandinavia*, from that Part of *Denmark* which the Natives call *Scaane*, and the Latins *Scania*. He takes Notice of a great Error in *Ptolomy*, who reckon'd that nothing belong'd to *Germany* beyond the *Sinus Codanus* or the *Baltick*; and this led many others into the ſame Error, as *Pliny*, *Solinus*, and *Dicuil*.

Before the Names of *Scandia* and *Scandinavia* were known to the *Romans*, the *Greeks* called the Country *Baltia* and *Baſilia*, as we find by *Pliny* and *Solinus*; and from hence the *Belt* and *Baltick* Sea derived their Names.

As to *Finningia*, *Cluverius* takes it to be what now called *Finnia*, *Eaſt-Bothnia*, and *Corelia*, the Country of the *Fenni* and *Finni*, now the *Finlanders*.

Here *Cluverius* has a Diſſertation concerning the *Thule* of the Ancients, and offers many Arguments to prove it to be what we now call *Iſland*. He confutes *Ortelius*, who will have it to be the Coaſt of *Norway* that lies over againſt *Scotland*, by very ſolid Arguments; but ſince *Pytheas* and *Pliny* reckon it to be one of the *Britiſh* Iſlands; and *Tacitus*, when ſpeaking of the *Romans* ſailing round *Britain*, and having firſt diſcovered the *Orkney* Iſlands, immediately adds, that they diſcovered *Thule*, which was hid from them before by the Winter and the Snow, it can ſcarce be poſſible that *Iſland* can be what the *Romans* called *Thule*, for it lies at too great a Diſtance from the *Orkneys*; and thoſe Seas were too dangerous and too little known for the *Romans*, who, as appears by *Tacitus*, made more uſe of Oars than of Sails in this Expedition to have ventur'd into. But we refer the Reader to what *Cluverius* himſelf ſays, and to our former Diſſertation on *Thule*, and leave him to his own Judgment, with this one Caution, That as the Ancients called the utmoſt of their Diſcoveries in the Northern Seas, *Thule* wherever it was, and removed it further N. according as their Diſcoveries extended that Way, 'tis probable that *Solinus* and others, upon whom *Cluverius* builds ſo much, might afterwards give the Name to *Iſland*, or other Iſles which they then had an Account of to lie further N. But 'tis plain that by *Mela*'s Deſcription of it, as lying oppoſite to the Coaſt of the *Belgæ*, from the Length of the Days there in Summer, the Largeneſs of the Country, and the People's Way of living, that Dr. *Wallace* ſeems to have Reaſon for making it the N. E. Coaſt of *Scotland*, or that at leaſt *Sebetland* bids fairer for it than *Iſland*, ſince either of thoſe Places might have been ſeen by the *Roman* Navy when they were in the Neighbourhood of the *Orcades*; whereas 'twas impoſſible for them to ſee *Iſland*, or any Thing near it at that Diſtance.

The leſſer Iſles betwixt Thule *and* Germany, *and thoſe in the* Baltick.

Cluverius ſuppoſes thoſe called the Iſles of *Feró* to be the *Gleſſaria* or the *Electrides Inſulæ* of the Ancients; but with how little Reaſon, will appear by our Deſcription of thoſe Iſlands, and by comparing it with his own Deſcription of the Coaſt of the *Baltick*, and his poſitive Aſſertion, that *Dantzick* was the chief Place from whence the Ancients fetch'd their Amber: But he juſtly corrects *Mela*'s Miſtake in placing the *Acmonæ*, *Æmodes* or *Hemodes*, in the *Baltick*, ſince 'tis very probable they are thoſe now called the Iſlands of *Feró*. *Mela*'s *Codanonia* he takes to be *Daniſh Zealand*, which was poſſeſſed by the *Teutoni*, and the moſt fruitful Iſland in thoſe Parts. He thinks they were called promiſcuouſly *Teutones* and *Dani*, from the Words Θευθ and Δαν, the Name by which he ſays thoſe People called God: But we have obſerved before, that this ſeems to have more of Fancy than Solidity, and that they rather derived their Name from the *Sinus Codanus*, upon which they

Digitized by Google

they inhabited, from whence they were at first called *Codani*, and afterwards *Dani*; and since *Cluverius* owns that they call themselves *Danske*, 'tis not improbable that the Town of *Dantzick*, which lies on this Side the same Bay, may also derive its Name from thence.

Of the Suiones, Helleviones, Scanii, Gutæ, Lappiones, Scritofinni, Marchiofinni, *and* Sitones *or* Nortmanni, *who inhabited* Scandinavia *or* Scandia.

Tacitus mentions the *Suiones* and the *Sitones* as the Inhabitants of *Scandinavia*. *Cluverius* assigns the Mountain *Sevo* as the Boundary betwixt them; so that the *Sitones* inhabited *Norway*, *Finmark*, and *Scritofinnia*; and the *Suiones*, *Lapland*, *Biarmia*, *West-Bothnia*, *Swedeland*, *Gutia*, with *Bleking*, *Skane* and *Halland*, and Part of *Denmark*. He is of Opinion, that the *Swedes* derive their Name from the *Suiones*. The *Helleviones* he thinks inhabited the Country now called *Halland*, from whence he supposes it derived its Name. The *Gutæ* or *Guti* liv'd in *Gothland*, which the Latins call *Gothia*. The *Scanii* some take to have been Part of the *Helleviones*; but he rather thinks they liv'd S. of them, and were so great a People, that the whole Country was from them called *Scandia*. The *Lappiones* are those called the *Lapplanders*, and the *Scritofinni* seem to be those now called the *Finns* or *Finlanders*, and that the *Marchiofinni* were of the same People. The *Nortmanni* inhabited that now called *Norway*. All of 'em comprehended by *Roman* Authors under the Names of *Suiones* and *Sitones*.

The East Side or Boundary of Ancient Germany.

Tacitus says, the *Germans* were separated from the *Sarmatæ* and *Daci* by mutual Fear and high Mountains, and calls those *German* Nations who dwelt beyond the *Baltick*, the *Weissel*, and the Mountains of the *Daci* Eastwards, the *Fenni*, the *Æstii*, and the *Peucini* or *Bastarnæ*.

Cluverius begins with the latter. He says, *Bastarnæ* was the Name of the People in general, *Peucini* only of a Part, from a Mountain called *Peuce* in *Sarmatia*, according to *Ptolomy*. *Cluverius* fixes the Boundaries of those People thus: On the N. they had the River *Aper*, now *Wiepre*, that falls into the *Weissel*: From the Head of that River they reached in a Line to the Lake *Ammadoce*, near *Kiow* in *Poland*; from thence they had the River which rises out of that Lake near the Town *Zarobe*, till it falls into the *Dniester*; then that River. On the E. they had the *Mare Ponticum*, now the *Black Sea*, and the Mouth of the *Ister* or *Danube*. On the S. they had that River, tho' some of them, according to *Strabo*, liv'd beyond it to the Mouth of *Hierasus*, now *Pruth*, and along that River to the *Carpathian* Mountains, as far as the Head of the *Weissel*. On the W. they had the Mountain *Asiburgium*, now *Tatari* in *Poland*, as far as the Town *Osmiecxym*; and from hence they were bounded by the *Weissel* till the *Wiepre* falls into it.

The *Peucini*, properly so call'd, were those who inhabited the Ile of *Peuce*, now call'd the Ile of *Serpents*, and the neighbouring Borders of the *Tyhalli* and *Gete*. *Cluverius* takes Notice, that those two People were divided into others of different Names, as the *Sidones*, who liv'd near the *Weissel*; the *Burgiones* or *Visburgi*, who liv'd near them towards *Bohemia*; and the *Carpiani*, who liv'd near the *Carpathian* Mountains. *Cluverius* thinks they were afterwards drove into *Transilvania* by the *Sarmatæ*, because the *Transilvanians* do now speak *German*, and that the Remainder of them might accompany the *Goths* into *Italy* and *Gaul*. They are spoke of by all Authors as a Warlike People. The chief Towns mentioned by *Ptolomy* in their Dominions are, *Carrodunum*, now *Lemberg* in *Russia Minor*; *Matonium*, now *Camenitz* in *Podolia*; *Vibantvarium*, now *Bar* in the same Country; *Eratum*, now *Row* in *Moravia*.

The

The Venedi *and* Æstii.

Tacitus doubts whether the *Venedi* were *Germans*; but *Cluverius* thinks it plain from *Ptolomy* they were, and that they liv'd at first on the River *Weissel* in Part of *Courland*; but afterwards extended their Dominions further, because they are said to have had the *Finni* on the N. and the *Bastarna* on the S.

The *Æstii*, *Cluverius* places in *Livonia*, *Prussia*, and *Samogitia*, Part of *Lithuania* on the Left of the *Memel* as far as *Nur*, and Half of *Massovia* on the Right of the *Weissel*. They were divided into several People, *Scyri*, now the *Prussians*, and the *Hirri*, now the *Livlanders*.

Having thus gone through the several Nations that inhabited ancient *Germany*, *Cluverius* in the next Place gives an Account of the Five People into which *Pliny* divides the *Germans* in general, *viz.* the *Vindili* or *Vandali*, by some called *Vandalii*, *Vindelici*, *Winili*, *Vindili*, *Vindule*, *Vuuli*, *Winuli*, *Vandali*, *Vindali*. *Pliny* mentions only the *Burgundiones*, *Varini*, *Carini*, and *Guttones*, to be Part of the *Vandals*. *Cluverius* adds the *Lemovii*, *Heruli*, *Rugii*, *Sidini*, *Suardones*, *Eudoses*, the *Angli*, *Cavionæ*, *Theuringi*, *Naithones*, and *Langobardi*, as belonging to them.

The 2d are the *Ingævones*, to whom *Pliny* reckons the *Cimbri*, *Teutoni*, and the Nations of the *Chauci*, to have belong'd. *Cluverius* adds from other Authors the *Foli* or *Saxons*, and in *Scandinavia* the *Scondii*, *Hilleviones*, *Gutæ*, *Suiones*, *Sitones*, *Marchiofinni*, *Scritofinni*, and *Luppiones*.

The 3d are the *Istævones*, to whom belong'd the *Sicambri*, the *Herminones*, who dwelt in the Inland Countries, of whom the *Suevi*, *Hermunduri*, *Chatti*, and *Cheruſci*, were Part, according to *Pliny*; but *Cluverius* reckons the *Frisii*, *Bructeri*, *Angrivarii*, *Ansibarii*, *Chammavi*, *Dulgibini*, *Marsi*, *Tubantes*, *Marsacii*, *Sicambri*, *Ubii*, and who succeeded them, the *Ufipii*, *Tenctteri*, *Juhones*, *Mattiaci*, besides in ancient Times the *Marcomanni*, *Hasdingi*, and *Sedusii*.

The 4th were the *Herminones* or *Herminones*, to whom *Pliny* says belong'd the *Suevi*, *Hermunduri*, *Chatti*, and *Cherusci*. *Cluverius* says, That under the Name of *Suevi* must be comprehended the *Semnones*, *Marcomanni*, *Quadi*, *Marsingi*, *Burii*, and *Lugii*.

The 5th were the *Peucini*, called also *Bastarnæ*, whose several Divisions we mention'd before. *Cluverius* thinks, the *Æstii* are not to be reckon'd to any of these Five Sorts.

Of the Hercinian, *and other Forrests in* Germany *beyond the* Rhine.

THE *Hercynia Sylva*, or *Hercynius Saltus*, is famous among the ancient *Roman* and other Authors. *Cæsar* says, it was 9 Day's Journey in Breadth, and 60 in Length, according to the then Computation of the Inhabitants; and that it began at the *Rhine*, in the Borders of *Helvetia*, went along the *Danube* to the Borders of the *Ducs*, and then by Turnings and Windings went thro many Countries. *Cluverius* says, That in his Time there went one continued Forrest thro most Part of the Marquisate of *Brandenburg*, *Lusatia*, *Prussia*, *Poland*, *Lithuania*, and *Muscovy*; but whether it was called by that Name as far as the River *Oby*, the utmost Boundary of *Europe*, he doubts, any more than the Forrests *Ardenna* and *Vosgus*, which bounded upon the *Hercynian* Forrest, the *Rhine* coming between them; therefore he thinks the Name *Hercynia* was proper only to that Part of it in *Germany*.

It was branched out into several Forrests, as those called *Sylva Martiana*, now the *Black Forrest*. *Tacitus* and *Claudian* mention Woods near the *Rhine*, near the *Bructeri*, now *Spessard* and *Westerwald*; the *Gæsa Sylva*, now *Hesserwalde* in the Duchy of *Cleve*, near the Borders of *Munster*; the *Lucus Tanfanæ*, near *Bemhemerberg* in *Westphalia*; the *Lucus Baduhennæ* in *Westfriesland*; the *Lucus Herculis* about *Minden* on the *Weiser*; the *Sylva Cabreta* in *Thuringia* and *Voitland*, now called the *Duringerwald*; the *Hercynius Saltus*, that which encompasses *Bohemia*, now called the *Behmerwald*, and was properly the *Hercynia Sylva*; the *Luna Sylva*, upon the Mountains towards the Head of the River *Morava* in *Moravia*; the *Lucus Castoris & Pollucis* in *Silesia*; and the *Lucus Sacer*, formerly mentioned

stoned in the Country of the *Semnoni* upon the *Oder*.

The Parts of this Forrest remaining in *Cluverius*'s Time, were, that called the *Black Forrest*, betwixt the Fountains of the *Danube* and the Lake of *Constance*; the Forrest of *Ausbach*, betwixt *Norimberg* and the Head of the *Tauber*; *Steyger* Forrest, betwixt *Wirtsberg* and *Bamberg*; the *Othonia Sylva*, or *Odenwald*, betwixt *Heidelberg* and *Francfort*; the Forrest of *Spessard*, betwixt the *Main* and the River *Bint*; that called the *Westerwald*, betwixt the *Lone* and the *Siga*; that called the *Harz*, in the Dutchy of *Brunswick*; that called the *Thuringer* Forrest in *Thuringia*; and that above-mentioned, which encompasses *Bohemia*; besides abundance of large Forrests in *Westphalia*, the Dutchy of *Lunenburg*, *Pomerania*, the Marquisate of *Brandenburg*, and *Silesia*.

Vindelicia, *and* Noricum, *Part of the ancient* Illyricum.

Cluverius gives likewise a Description of those Countries, because the present Inhabitants are descended of the ancient *Germani*. On this Occasion he shews, that all the Inhabitants of the *Alps*, the greatest Part of whom are *Vindelici* and *Norici*, were once called *Tauisci*. He likewise observes, that tho the *Vindelici* were a different People from the *Rheti*, yet all their Country, after the *Romans* had subdued the People, betwixt the *Danube* and *Italy*, was called *Rhætia*, from the *Rhine* or Lake of *Constance* to the River *Inn*, which was the Boundary betwixt the *Vindelici* and *Norici*, as the River *Lech* was that betwixt the *Vindelici* and *Rheti*, who came originally from *Italy*; and tho the Country from thence to the Lake of *Constance* was called *Rhætia Prima*, yet the *Vindelici* inhabited the Country from the Head of the *Danube* all along the River, till the *Inn* falls into it, as appears by *Strabo*. The *Vindelici* then had the Lake of *Constance* on the W. the *Danube* on the N. the *Inn* on the E. but how they were divided from the *Rhæti* on the S. is not so certain. They were divided into several People: Those called the *Licates* or *Licatii* liv'd on the River *Lech*; the *Brigantii* reach'd from the Town of *Bregenz*, from them called *Brigantium*, to *Ratisbon* and *Ffulmdorf*. The *Æstiones* liv'd betwixt the *Licatii* and the *Brigantii*, in the Vallies on the River *Iller*; so that their Boundary on the S. seems to have been the River *Brigenz*, and the Mountains which lie betwixt the *Lech* and the *Inn*, as far as the Head of the *Iser* and the Town of *Inspruck*. The Towns mentioned by ancient Authors in this Country are, *Augusta Vindelicorum*, now *Augsburg*; *Brigantium*, now *Bregentz*; *Campodunum*, now *Kempten*; *Celius Mons*, now *Kelmuntz*; *Gautia*, now *Guntzberg*; *Rostrum Nemaviæ*, now *Memmingen*; *Jovavum*, now *Saltzburg*; *Isinisca*, now *Munichen*; *Reginum*, or *Castra Regina*, now *Ratisbon*; *Castra Batava*, now *Passaw*.

NORICUM.

THE *Norici* were also divided into several People, *viz.* the *Alauni*, *Ambisontii*, *Ambidrani*, and *Ambilici*; but nothing certain can be determined as to their Situation, nor indeed of the Boundaries of *Noricum*, any otherwise than from the noted Towns observ'd in it by the Ancients; from whence *Cluverius* fixes its Boundaries thus: The Rivers *Inn* and *Danube*, the Mountain *Getius*, now *Culmberg*, as far as the Town of *Celeia*, now *Cilley*, and the Confluence of the *Save* and *Sana*; then the Mountains from the said Confluence, which run W. to the Head of the *Sana*; then betwixt the *Save* and the *Drave* to the Head of the River *Narisus*; then N. towards the Head of the River *Pel*; from thence W. to the Valley *Inchiaro*, and by a Line through the middle of that Valley Westward to Mount *Setius*, and from thence to the Head of *Rienz*, then by that River to the Village of *St. Lawrence*, and the Confluence of the River *Aich*; and from thence by another Tract of Mountains, Part of the *Alps*, as far as *Inspruck*. The most remarkable Towns taken Notice of by the Ancients in this Country are, *Vindobona* in *Pannonia*, on the Frontiers of it, now *Vienna*; *Boiodurum*, now *Instat*; *Jovavum*, now *Saltzburg*; *Bedaium*, now *Bamberg*: So that upon the whole, *Noricum* comprehended a great Part of *Austria*, the W. Part of *Stiria*, *Carinthia*, *Upper*

Digitized by Google

Upper Carniola, the Archbishoprick of *Salsburg*, Part of *Upper Bavaria*, and Part of *Tirol*.

We have insisted more at large upon Ancient *Germany*, than some perhaps may think consistent with our Design; but hope it will easily be pardon'd, when our Reasons are known, which are, 1. That the ancient Geography and History of this Country is done in Folio, with a great deal of Judgment and Care, by the famous *Cluverius*, who has improv'd what *Cæsar*, *Tacitus*, *Strabo*, *Ptolomy*, and other ancient and modern Historians and Geographers, have said on those Subjects by his own Reading, and curious Observations, wherein he has corrected the Mistakes of the *Romans* and others in History and Geography, and illustrated many difficult Passages, which have puzzled the ablest Criticks. 2. Because 'twas a Country of vast Extent, and a Scene of many and great Actions. 3. Because 'twas the Seat of many People of different Denominations, and under various Forms of Government; therefore 'twas necessary to fix the Boundaries of each of those People, in order to understand the *Roman* History, and the Seat of their War from Time to Time with those many different Nations; without which, those valuable Pieces of ancient History were neither so pleasant nor intelligible as now they may be, not only to Youth who read them in Schools, but even to those of riper Years, whose Time and other Circumstances have not allowed them to attain a sufficient Knowledge of Geography for understanding those Authors. 4. Because most Nations in *Europe*, and particularly we in *Great Britain*, have either been Peopled from thence, or subdued by their Armies, and subjected to their Form of Government, as happened to this Island by the *Saxons*, to *Gaul* by the *Franks*, and to *Spain*, *Italy*, &c. by the *Goths* and *Vandals*; so that the Antiquities of *Germany* illustrate those of most Parts of *Europe*.

CHAP. XXVI.

Modern GERMANY.

Their HUMOURS, MANNERS, *&c.*

DOctor *Nicholson*, in his Elaborate Account of this Country, in his Second Volume of *Pitt's Atlas*, takes Notice of *Seneca's* Observation, That Men of an extraordinary Size have commonly narrow Souls, and gives this as his Reason, *Because great Abilities of Body and Soul are too much for one Man*: Tho every one may know from his own Observation, that this Rule is false; yet 'tis very probable, as the Doctor says, that this Consideration prevailed with some old Historians to represent the *Germans* as a dull Phlegmatick People; and even some of the Moderns, particularly our own *Heylin*, *Joseph Scaliger*, and others, have been guilty of this Mistake, when they alledge, That in order to bring the *Germans* to a good Temperament, *their Lead must be mix'd with the Quicksilver of* France, without considering, that the *French* stand in as much need of *German* Lead, as the *Germans* do of *French* Quicksilver. But as

all those National Reflections are invidious, and generally founded on Prejudice, 'tis plain by the Writings and Inventions of the *Germans*, that their Genius is very good when duly cultivated.

Some Writers charge them in general with being given to Drink, from whence they have formed a Proverb, *Germanorum bibere est vivere*; i. e. That the chief Delight of a *German* is to drink. This Fault is perhaps too common there, as well as in some other Countries: Nor does *Cluverius*, their Countryman and Advocate, altogether excuse them from it; yet this Charge admits of a Restriction, for there are many sober People in that Country; tho' the Sharpness of their Air, and the Largeness of their Size, which they commonly alledge in their Defence, makes more Liquor necessary for them than for other People, who differ in Climate and Stature. *Melanchton* us'd to complain of their Excess in Eating, and said, *We* Germans *eat our selves sick and to Hell*; tho' Gluttony be not so common there as Drunkenness. They are much given to drinking Healths, and 'tis usual for them to present Strangers at Table with a large Vessel of Drink, which they are obliged in Civility to take off at one or more Draughts to the Health of their Landlord; and they frequently spend some Hours at Dinner and Supper, but not so much in eating as drinking Healths. Those that have created an Intimacy by being drunk together, they call *Trinck-bruder*; but we wish there were no Pot-Companions elsewhere.

Their *Diet* is Beef, Mutton, Venison, Bacon, Fowls, Fish, *&c.* as with us; but not generally serv'd up in such large Quantities. From *Michaelmas* almost to *Easter*, they eat abundance of Snails boil'd in the Shells, and People of Quality have Snail-Houses on purpose in their Orchards or Gardens. Their Drink is Beer of several Sorts, some very bitter, and some very sweet, according to the Customs of several Countries. They have also abundance of Wine of different Sorts, of which Rhenish is the chief.

They are still valued for their *Integrity*, for which *Tacitus* commended them of Old, insomuch that a modern *French* Writer says, *A* German's *Word is as good as another Man's Bond*: And when the *Germans* would express one among themselves that hates Flattery and Dissimulation, they say, *He is Germano hearted*.

They likewise retain the *Hospitality* of their Ancestors, are very free in entertaining Strangers; and except in Time of War, their Roads are not much pester'd by Highwaymen.

Their *Valour* is unquestionable, which makes *Willichius* give them this Character, That they are only to be overcome by their own Countrymen. And 'tis observ'd, That *Gustavus Adolphus* could never have made such a Progress in *Germany*, had he not been join'd by the *Saxons* and *Brandenburgers*. The greatest Impressions the *French* have made upon them has been by the Conjunction of *German* Princes, who fell in with the Interest of *France*, or by *German* Soldiers who chose that Service, because the Pay was better than their own. Their common People are bred hard, which enables them to bear the Fatigues of War; but there have been frequent Instances of their being apt to mutiny for want of Pay, which makes some Authors charge them with being mercenary. *Frederick* Elector *Palatine*, King of *Bohemia*, and Father to the Electress *Sophia* of *Hanover*, had a fatal Instance of this, when the greatest Part of his Army at the Battle of *Prague* threw down their Arms, and cry'd out for Money, which lost him the Battle and his Crown. Dr. *Nicholson* urges as a very good Proof of their Valour, that none of their potent Neighbours have hitherto been able to wrest the Imperial Crown from them. They were about an Age or two ago reckoned to have fallen under a Decay as to Martial Discipline; but the many great Generals they have bred within these last Hundred Years, Princes, as well as others, have sufficiently taken off that Imputation.

The chief *Recreation* among those of Quality in Summer, is hunting the Deer and Wild-Boars, with which their Forests abound; and 'tis customary in the Courts of Princes to hang up the Pictures of such great Boars as they have killed. In Winter, when the Snow is thick, they have a Custom of riding round the Streets in Sledges, form'd much like the *Roman* Triumphal Chariots, drawn by a Horse with rich

Digitized by Google

rich Trappings, ſet off with great Numbers of little Bells, and Feathers of ſeveral Colours. At home they are much given to play at Cheſs, and are very expert at it. In their Language they call it *Schachſpiel*, which Dr. *Nicholſon* obſerves, ſignifies the ſame with the *Latrunculorum Ludus* of the Latins. The Learned Prince *Auguſtus*, late Duke of *Brunſwick Wolfenbuttel*, who publiſh'd an accurate Explication of *Trithemius*'s Cryptography, under the borrow'd Name of *Guſtavus Selenus*, wrote an incomparable Treatiſe concerning this Game in *German*, with an Account of its Original, Progreſs and Laws.

The *Germans* are ſo much addicted to Travel, and their Nobility affect ſo much to appear at Foreign Courts with Retinues anſwerable to their Qualities, that their Writers complain it does very much impoveriſh their Nation, and carries out Annually more Money than is produced by their Silver Mines. On this Account the Author of a late Book, Entituled, *Itinerarium Germaniæ Politicum*, adviſes his Countrymen not to travel out of their own Country except on Publick Occaſions; and indeed, conſidering the many Princes Courts, the great Number of large Cities, their numerous Univerſities, and the many Rarities they have at home, there ſeems to be but little Occaſion for their travelling, either to learn good Breeding, or to ſatisfy their Curioſity. Except in great Towns, and on the chief Rivers, their Accommodations for Travellers are not extraordinary, eſpecially for Lodging; for in many Places they have nothing to lie on but Straw, and that in a common Room altogether; thô in other Places they lie commonly betwixt two Feather-Beds, with the Sheets ſtitch'd to them. The Vulgar ſeldom have any Chimnies but in their Kitchin, and in Winter commonly live in their Stove-Rooms, which they heat to what Degree they pleaſe; but the Smell and the Heat of thoſe Stoves is frequently very troubleſome to Strangers, and apt to make their Heads ake. Their common Way of Travelling is in open Poſt Waggons, which are neither Expeditious, nor a Fence againſt ill Weather. Their cover'd Waggons are better for that, but ſlow.

Their Women in general are of a tolerable Complexion, but more corpulent than moſt of their Neighbours, except the *Netherlanders*. They are very obſequious to their Husbands, have leſs Command in their Houſes than *Engliſh* and *French* Women, and are not allow'd the upper End of the Table. They account it rude here to ſalute any Woman with a Kiſs, except they have been bred in ſuch Countries where 'tis practis'd; ſo that their Way of Greeting is by a mutual Touch of the Hand.

Their Marriages and Funerals are very expenſive, ſo that ſometimes an ordinary Man is ſcarce able to recover the Charge of his Father's Funeral, or of his own Wedding, in 7 Years. The Entertainment frequently laſts a Month, during which they keep open Houſe, and ſend the Bell-man about to invite all their Neighbours, who uſually ſend in Wine, or ſome other Proviſions.

Brietius gives this Character of the *Germans*, That they are generally believ'd to be too much addicted to Drunkenneſs and Gluttony, and that the latter was the Fault of thoſe who liv'd in the Northerly Places of that Country; but he is far from *Heylin*'s Satyr, who alledges, That during their Feaſts, they think it no Diſgrace to empty their over-charg'd Stomachs in one another's Laps, or to piſs under the Table; and that even their greateſt Princes, beſides what Exceſs they are guilty of themſelves, have Drinking-Champions to anſwer all Challenges, and to challenge all Comers; and that they look upon it as a Point of State to contend who ſhall have the largeſt Veſſels in their Cellars. But we return to *Brietius*, who, thô a *French* Jeſuit, has ſo much Juſtice as to own their Hoſpitality and Civility to Strangers, and that their common Innkeepers are very faithful to their Gueſts; That their Women are very chaſt, and Adultery ſeverely puniſh'd among them; That they carefully obſerve keeping to their own Ranks when they marry, and will not readily ſtoop to a Match below their Quality. Dr. *Heylin* is more juſt in taxing their Vanity, than in other Parts of their Character; for 'tis certain, that by deriving the Father's Title to all the Children, ſo that if he be a Duke,

all

Digitized by Google

all the Sons are Dukes, and all the Daughters Dutcheſſes, together with dividing the Eſtate among the Males, does very much increaſe and impoveriſh their Nobility; ſo that at one time there were no leſs than 17 Princes of *Anhalt*, and 27 Counts of *Mansfield*, who had little elſe to live on but their Sword: Yet none of this poor Nobility will ſuffer their Children to match below their Degree; and if they do, think it a juſt Cauſe to diſinherit them: Yet it has this Conveniency, That it preſerves their Blood from baſe Alloys, and keeps up a Greatneſs of Mind and Spirit. *Brietius* obſerves, That they are much inclin'd to Muſick, and have a native Genius for it; That they are better in the Field, than in defending of Towns, being eaſily overcome in the latter by the Tears of their Wives and Children; whereas in the Field they frequently fight till one of the Armies be deſtroyed; but are impatient under want of Proviſions and Pay, which makes their Armies to moulder away very ſpeedily.

Their LANGUAGE.

FOreigners who are too lazy or too dull to learn it, eſpecially ſuch as are accuſtomed to a ſofter Pronunciation, do generally cenſure it as rough and barbarous; ſo that the *French* ſay, 'tis fitter for Mechanicks than Gentlemen; and a *Spaniſh* Miniſter once told a *German* Ambaſſador, That his Language reſembled Thunder, and he fancy'd that God forbad *Paradiſe* to our firſt Parents in that Dialect; to which the *German* reply'd, That was true; but the Devil tempted *Eve* in *Spaniſh*. *Pomponius Mela* obſerv'd long ago, That *German* Names were not fit for *Roman* Mouths; from whence 'tis that we meet with ſuch monſtrous Words in *Roman* Authors, when they attempt to give *German* Names Latin Inflections; and the ſame is the Cauſe why 'tis ſo hard for *French*, *Italians*, or *Spaniards*, to learn *High Dutch*. It muſt be own'd however, that 'tis a noble and manly Language, but fitter for War than Courtſhip. Dr. *Nicholſon* thinks *Tacitus* was miſtaken in aſſerting, That the ancient *Germans* had not the Uſe of Letters, becauſe *Runick* Inſcriptions have been lately found in the *Daniſh* Dominions upon Monuments erected there before *Tacitus*'s Days. For this, we refer to our Account of *Denmark*, and ſhall only ſay, That tho' *Wormius* thinks the Uſe of Letters to be very ancient there, he is poſitive they were not common. Dr. *Nicholſon* thinks the Latins borrowed the Word *Litera*, as they did many others, from the ancient *Germans*; and that it was derived from the old *Teutonick* Word *Lett* or *Litt*, which ſignifies a Member or Part, as a Letter is of a Word. *Duret* thinks, the *Gothick* Alphabet is the oldeſt in the World, and a Copy of the firſt that ever was invented. He does not mean that made uſe of by *Wulphilas*, Biſhop of the *Goths*, in his Verſion of the Goſpels, but the *Runick* Character in Form of a Staff, which they made as the Foundation of whatever they were to write, and croſs'd and turn'd it as Occaſion requir'd; and hence the *Germans* uſually call a Letter a *Buchſtab*; *i. e.* a Staff, made uſe of in Books; but thoſe Characters were laid aſide, as has been formerly mentioned, by the *Germans*, when they turn'd Chriſtians, becauſe they had been abus'd in Sorceries and Inchantments; and Mr. *Scheringham* thinks with Reaſon, that the *Engliſh-Saxon* Character was invented on the like Occaſion.

Here Dr. *Nicholſon* takes Notice of the Queſtion among Philoſophers, Whether Words have their Signification from their natural Import, or from the Will of the firſt Author? *Plato* thought, That he that gave every Being its diſtinct Name, ſuited the Word to the Nature of the Thing; and *Bibliander* fancies, that *Adam* obſerv'd this Rule, when he gave every Thing its Name. The Learned have obſerv'd a great Analogy betwixt the Greek and Latin Words, which expreſs the Voices of Birds and Beaſts, and the Words themſelves, as *Μυκάομαι*, *Ογκάομαι*, *&c.* in Greek; and *Boare*, *Mugire*, &c. in Latin; but no Language is more obſervable for this than the *German*, who ſay, the Ox, *Boelkt*; the Bear, *Brummet*; the Sheep, *Bleeket*; the Swine, *Gruntſzet*; and this is alſo obſerv'd of the *Engliſh* by the famous Dr. *Wallis* in his Grammar.

Dr. *Ni-*

Dr. *Nicholſon* ſays with Reaſon, That a multitude of Monoſyllables is one of the greateſt Arguments of the Antiquity of a Language, becauſe we cannot imagine them to be derived from any Primitive further off, or to be a Corruption of ſo many Words in Foreign Languages. *Stevin*, an ingenious *Dutchman*, has reckon'd 2170 primitive Monoſyllables in the *Dutch*, thô the Number, ſays Dr. *Nicholſon*, might be carried much higher; whereas he can find not above 163 in Latin, and 165 in Greek. The Dr. obſerves further, That many of the *High-Dutch* Primitives are turn'd into Diſſyllables, that formerly were but one, as *Vater*, *Mattel*, &c. that were anciently writ *Vaer*, *Mael*, &c. and that there are 23 principal Terminations in the *German*, which, thô they ſignify nothing of themſelves, yet when added to another Word, do very much alter its Signification, of which the *Engliſh* has retained many, as *Er* in *Bayer*, *En* in *Golden*, &c. by which the *German* Tongue is made very copious, and, as Doctor *Nicholſon* thinks, exceeds the Greek. Some of the *Germans* have of late much corrupted their Language, by giving *French*, *Italian*, and *Latin* Words, *German* Inflections; yet they pay ſo much Reſpect to their own Language, that they always write and print foreign Words in different Characters.

'Tis difficult to reckon up the ſeveral Dialects of the *German* Tongue, if it be conſider'd that the old *Britiſh*, *Engliſh*, *Daniſh*, *Sweediſh*, *Norwegian*, *Iſlandic*, and *Low-Dutch*, with their inferior Dialects, as well as thoſe of *Upper Germany*, are all derived from it. Beſides the Remainders of it left in thoſe Countries further E. where they formerly inhabited, *Buſbequius* found a great deal of it in the *Cherſoneſus Taurica*, now *Crim Tartary*; and others ſay, there are Fragments of it in *Perſia*. Dr. *Nicholſon* ſays, 'tis uſually divided into two principal Dialects, called the *Saxon* and *Francic*. *Brietius* ſays, 'tis divided into three, *viz.* the *Teutonick*, *Saxon*, and *Daniſh*. The *Saxon* is ſubdivided into Upper and Lower, *viz.* that which is ſpoke on this Side and beyond the *Main*. The *Saxon* is reckon'd to come neareſt the ancient *Celtick*, and the Inhabitants have always valued themſelves on that Account, and ſay, 'tis better than what is ſpoke in *Miſnia* and *Auſtria*. 'Tis generally agreed on, that the beſt *German* is now ſpoke at *Hall* in *Saxony*, and its Neighbourhood; and the *Germans* themſelves always write in the *High-Dutch* Dialect, which is an Argument that they eſteem it the beſt. *Aventinus* ſays, *Charles the Great* compos'd a *High Dutch* Grammar out of Rules he collected from old Genealogical Ballads; but *Trithemius* ſays, he found the Undertaking too great, and never finiſh'd it. In 1273, the Emperor *Rudolph* I. publiſh'd a Decree, ordering the Lawyers to draw up their Inſtruments and Pleadings in that Language; which being confirmed by *Maximilian* I. in 1512, brought this Tongue into Repute, not only in the Empire, but in the Northern Kingdoms; ſo that their beſt Scholars have ſince been at Pains to cultivate the Language. Several other Grammars were writ by Learned *Germans*, which are now all loſt. *Sleidan* ſays, *Luther* was a great Maſter of the *German*, which makes his Tranſlation of the Bible into that Language ſtill highly valuable. *Schottelius*, formerly Counſellor to the late Duke of *Brunſwick Wolfenbuttel*, has given the beſt Account of this Language in ſeveral Tracts writ on this Subject, which were printed at *Brunſwick* in 4° in 1663. *Dueſius*, in the Preface to his *German* Grammar, ſays, few of their Nobility are able to write it right, which is ſuppoſed to proceed from their want of a good Dictionary in their own Tongue, thô ſeveral Attempts of this Nature have been made. Dr. *Nicholſon* ſays, with very much Reaſon, That a competent Knowledge of this Language is very neceſſary for an *Engliſh* Antiquary.

Their LEARNING.

THO' *Tacitus* ſays, the *Germans* were utterly ignorant of Letters, the *Runick* Monuments and Inſcriptions formerly mentioned prove the contrary; yet the Hiſtories and Lives of their great Men were not then committed to Writing, but only repeated in *Doggrel* Verſe by their Bards. Their Prieſts, as was ſaid before, conceal'd their Letters and Principles of Learning from the Commons. Thus Affairs continued till they were acquainted with the

Romans,

Romans, especially in the Time of the Emperor *Adrian*, when many Schools were erected in *Germany*, in which their young Gentlemen were taught to speak and write Latin; and even the *German* Soldiers ordinarily return'd from the *Roman* Camp Masters of their Language and Manners; but most of those Schools were about the *Rhine*, so that the Northerly Parts had not this Education. *Dagobert* and *Charles the Great* founded many Schools in this Country, where the *High-Dutch* Tongue was first reduc'd to Writing and Rules. It was long before they could effect this, so that for many Years they were obliged to write their Proceedings at Law, and even the Rudiments taught in Schools, in Latin. As soon as the *Germans* got their Language regulated, they applied themselves to study the Liberal Arts, so that in a short Time many Universities were founded there. *Charles the Great* built 24 *Gymnasia*, or great publick Schools, many of which afterwards became Universities. *Justus Lipsius* affirm'd, That in his Days, there were more Universities in *Germany* than in all *Europe* besides. There are above 30 Universities, besides *Gymnasia*, in this Country, most of which have great Numbers of Students. When the Emperor *Charles* IV. who was also King of *Bohemia*, had founded an University at *Prague*, and gave the same Privileges to Foreigners that he gave to the *Germans*, the City was so over-stock'd with Students, that it oblig'd him to retrench his Favours to Strangers by a Decree: So a Week after it was put in Execution, 24000 Scholars left *Prague*, and 16000 more soon followed them; so that this one University had then more Students than all *Europe* besides. In 1409, *John Huss* had 44000 Scholars under his Rectorship.

Before the Reformation, the Priests found that Ignorance was more their Interest than Learning; upon which they discouraged it by all possible Means; so that when Learning began to revive in *Europe*, those Monks and Priests did all the Mischief they could to those concern'd in it, and accus'd those of Heresy that were more Learned than themselves. On this Account the ignorant Monks pick'd a Quarrel with the Learned *John Reuchlin*, and branded him for a Heretick. When the Reformation began, those Monks made it their Business to bring the Learned into that Quarrel against *Lucher*, which had the contrary Effect, and occasioned most of them to side with him.

They have many Learned Societies in *Germany*, as we are inform'd by the Book, called, *The Present State of that Country*. The first is that called the *Fruitful Society*, or Order of the *Palm*, instituted by *Ludovicus* Prince of *Anhalt*, and 3 Brothers of the *Saxe-Weimar* Family, in 1617, for the Advancement of the *High-Dutch* Language. The Prince himself was chosen President of the Society, and made an Order, That its Protector should always be a Prince. The Emblem of this Society is an *Indian* Palm or Coco-Tree, with this Motto, *All for Improvement*.

2. The *Collegium Naturæ Curiosorum* was establish'd in 1670, in Imitation of the Royal Society of *England*. Dr. *Johannes Laurentius Bauschius*, a Learned Physician, engaged several Learned Men in it for the Improvement of Natural Philosophy and Physick. He was the first President; and his Successor Dr. *Johannes Michaelis Fehr*, by a publick Epistle, invited the most Learned Physicians in *Europe* to be Members of it, and publish'd their Orders. The first Annual Volume of their Observations and Improvements was publish'd under the Title of *Annus Primus Ephemeridum Medico Physicarum Germanicarum Curiosorum*. This College was taken into the Emperor's particular Protection, had several Privileges granted 'em, and was permitted to take the Name of *Societas Leopoldina*. The *Præses* and Directors of those Ephemerides are generally some of the Emperor's Body-Physicians, Counts Palatine and Nobles of the Empire.

3. The Imperial Historical College was first projected by the Learned Physician Dr. *Christianus Franciscus Paullinus* at *Isenach*, his native City, after he had been long engag'd in Historical Studies by *Christophorus Bernardus*, Bishop of *Munster*, who oblig'd him to compleat the *Chronicon Corbejense* from Authentick Monastical Antiquities. He acquainted the Publick with his Design in a short Essay, call'd, *Delineatio Collegii Imperialis Historici*. The End of this Society is to form a compleat History of *Germany*, from

from the ſcatter'd and obſcure Monuments of Antiquity; in order to which, each Member is to collect and impart the Hiſtory of his own Country. Many of the Learned have already enter'd themſelves Members of this Society. The famous *Job Ludolphus*, Counſellor to the Emperor and Elector of *Saxony*, and Reſident at *Francfort* on the *Main*, was choſen Preſident, and Mr. *Von Neſſel* or *Niſſelius*, the Imperial Library-Keeper, who died in 1700, was Vice-Preſident. *Ludolphus* began a *Prodromus Annalium Germanicorum*. The Profeſſor Dr. *Joannes Ulricus Pregizer*, Counſellor to the Duke of *Wirtemberg*, and Judge of *Tubingen*, hath undertaken the Firſt Century; and Dr. *Jacob Otti*, Counſellor of *Ulm*, and of ſeveral Free Cities, has promiſed the Second.

4. The College of Maſters of Arts was firſt propos'd by *Erhardus Weigelius*, Imperial Counſellor and Profeſſor at *Jena*, in order to adjuſt the Differences betwixt the Old and New Stile, and to find out ſpeedy Remedies againſt all the Inconveniencies reſulting from thence. *Weigelius* died in *March*, 1699.

5. Several Learned Men at *Leipſick* form'd a Society by the Encouragement of the Elector of *Saxony*. They obſerv'd, That the Tranſactions of the *Royal Society* of *England* were only about Mathematical Subjects, Natural Philoſophy, Anatomy, and Medicine; and that the *Societas Naturæ Curioſorum* deſign'd only the Improvement of Natural Philoſophy, and Phyſick. Upon this they agreed, That their *Acta* and Obſervations ſhould be more general, and not confin'd to particular Parts of Learning. They alſo reſolv'd, That their *Acta* ſhould be writ in Latin. In *January*, 1682, they publiſh'd their firſt Eſſay, under the Title of, *Acta Eruditorum Lipſiæ Publicata*, and ſtill continue to oblige the Publick with it.

The *German* ſtudy hard, and the Hebrew is no where ſo generally underſtood as in this Country; ſo that many of them attain to a great Perfection in that Language. The *Germans* are accus'd by Foreigners of Printing too much, and ſometimes Trifles, as the State of a Queſtion, or a few common Places collected out of the Writings of their Cotemporaries. They likewiſe publiſh Millions of Suppoſitions and Diſputations, which over-ſtock the Fairs at *Francfort* and *Leipſick*. One Reaſon why they publiſh thoſe Philoſophical Pamphlets, is, to hinder every poor Fellow from taking Degrees, ſince no Man can be a Graduate in *Germany*, who has not publiſh'd one ſuch Diſputation at leaſt; and another Reaſon is, to maintain their numerous Preſſes.

The Inventions *of the* Germans, *and their Skill in* Mechanicks.

IT muſt be own'd, that the *Germans* are great Maſters at Mechanicks, Chymiſtry, Natural Philoſophy, Phyſick, and Mathematicks; and they claim the Honour of inventing Printing and Gunpowder.

The latter thus: *Albertus Magnus*, a *Dominican* Friar, having firſt practis'd Chymiſtry in *Germany*, many of the Religious Orders there addicted themſelves to that Study; among the reſt, one *Barthold Schwartz*, a *Franciſcan* Friar, made great Advances in this Art; and having one time mix'd ſome dry'd Earth, Sulphur, Salt-Petre, with other Ingredients, in an Earthen Crucible, and plac'd it over a Fire, in order to ſome Preparation, the Crucible ſoon broke in Pieces with a great Noiſe. This ſurpris'd him at firſt; but having repeated it frequently after, he began to think that it might be improv'd to a greater Advantage; upon which he caus'd a long Iron Pipe to be made, with a Touch-hole, filled it with this Mixture, put ſmall Stones above it, and ſetting Fire to the Touch-hole, the Stones were thrown out with a great Noiſe and Violence. This happened about 1330. Some Time after the *Germans* communicated this Secret to the *Venetians*, when they were beſieged by the *Genoeſe*; and the *Venetians* afterwards, by the Help of Guns, took from the *Germans* the Cities of *Verona*, *Padua*, &c. which they ſtill retain. Some Time after, the *Jews*, who were always numerous in *Germany*, out of Spight to Chriſtianity, communicated this Secret to the *Turks*, for which the *Muſcovites* hated the *Jews*, and prohibited them to trade in their Dominions. The Merchants on the *Baltick* were the firſt that us'd Guns at Sea. In 1347, the *Engliſh* took *Calais* from the *French* by the Help of Guns. Dr. *Plot*, in his *Natural*

Digitized by Google

tural Hiſtory of Oxfordſhire, thinks that *Roger Bacon*, a *Franciſcan* Friar, ſometime Fellow of *Merton* College in *Oxford*, invented Gunpowder before *Schwartz*, becauſe of an Epiſtle directed by this Friar *ad Pariſienſem*, in which he ſpeaks of a Mixture of Salt-Petre, Sulphur, and Coal-Duſt, by which he could make a Fire that would burn at what Diſtance he pleas'd, and cauſe Thunder and Lightning in the Air, more terrible than that produc'd by Nature: That this kind of Fire could deſtroy a City or an Army; and that the Flame burſt out with unſpeakable Noiſe. Dr. *Dee*, in his Annotations on that Epiſtle, is of the ſame Opinion, and thinks that he conceal'd the Invention, becauſe he knew how deſtructive it would prove to Mankind; and that his Skill in Mathematicks had made ſome of his ignorant Acquaintance take him for a Conjurer, and commit him to Priſon; ſo that had he diſcover'd this Invention, their Jealouſy had been heighten'd. This was 100 Years before *Schwartz*'s Invention.

Dr. *Nicholſon* thinks, the *Germans* have no good Claim to the Invention of Clock-work; thô he acknowledges, that none have improv'd it more. *Severinus Boetius*, a famous *Roman* Philoſopher, is the firſt mentioned by Latin Authors as the Contriver of an Engine of this kind. *Theodorick*, King of the *Goths*, wrote a Letter to this *Boetius*, to beg a Clock of him for his Brother-in-Law, *Gundibald* King of *Burgundy*; in which Letter he calls his Contrivance, *Machinam Mundo gravidam, Cœlum Geſtabile, Rerum Compendium*; *i. e.* a Machine that contain'd the Univerſe within it, a Portable Heaven, a Compendium of the whole World.

The Emperor *Charles* V. and King *James* I. had both Watches in the Jewels of their Rings, which were made in *Germany*. In the Town-Hall of *Prague*, there is a Clock that ſhows the Annual and Periodical Motions of the Sun and Moon, the Names and Numbers of the Months, Days, and Feſtivals of the whole Year, the Time of the Sun's Riſing and Setting, the Riſing and Setting of the Signs of the Zodiac, and the Moon's Age, with its ſeveral Aſpects. In the Elector of *Saxony*'s Stable at *Dreſden*, there is a Saddle with a gilded Head in the Pommel, with Eyes continually moving, and in the hinder Part a Clock, that ſhows exactly the Hour of the Day; but the moſt famous in its kind is the great Clock of *Straſburg*, of which we ſhall ſpeak when we come to the Deſcription of that City. *Tycho Brahe* tells us, That *William* Landgrave of *Heſſe* ſpent much Time to contrive a Way to regulate the Motions of Clocks and Watches; but we have no Account of his Succeſs.

The *Germans* have far outdone the reſt of *Europe* in ingenious Knacks of Art. A *German* not long ago preſented the Landgrave of *Heſſe* with a Bear and a Lion of pure Gold, hollow within, each of the Length of a Man's middle Finger; every Part of them was proportionable, and both together weigh'd no more than a *French* Crown. The moſt curious Man in this kind that ever *Germany* bred, was *Johannes Regiomontanus*, who made a Wooden Eagle, which flew an *Engliſh* Mile out of Town to meet the Emperor *Maximilian* when coming to the City of *Nuremberg*, and return'd back with him to his Lodgings. This is related by *Kerſherman*, and *Peter Ramus*. The latter alſo tells us, That *Regiomontanus* having invited ſome Friends to an Entertainment, he threw an Iron Fly from his Hand to divert them, which flew round the Room, and return'd to him again. The *High-Dutch* are generally well skill'd in Engraving, Painting, Cutting of Seals, Iron-work, and Joyners-work.

The *Germans* challenge the Invention of Printing, and ſay, this Noble Art was invented at *Straſburg* in 1440, by *John Gottenburg*, an Alderman of that City, and afterwards perfected by him at *Mentz*. In the Publick Library at *Baſil*, they ſhow ſeveral Books printed with the firſt Characters, invented by *Gottenburg*, ſuch as are now us'd, but not ſo exact. The ſtrongeſt Argument the *Germans* have, is from the Character in which the firſt Latin Books were printed, which is much the ſame now us'd by the *Germans* in their ordinary Writing; for it is probable, ſay they, if any other People had invented Printing, that they would have us'd the Characters of their own Country. The *Hollanders* diſpute this Invention with the *Germans*, and aſcribe it to one *Laurence Coſter*, a Citizen of *Haerlem*, who walking one Night in an adjoining Wood, cut

Digitized by Google

tut ſome Pieces of the Bark of a Tree into Letters, and printing ſome Characters upon Paper with 'em, taught his Grand-Children their Alphabet by this new Contrivance; but obſerving it to be capable of further Improvement, he advanc'd, and within a few Days printed off ſeveral Sentences from divers Authors. *Hadrian Junius* ſays, he ſaw the firſt Book that *Coſter* printed, in which 'twas obſervable, that the Paper was not printed on both Sides, but two Leaves were glued together, to avoid the Deformity of vacant Pages; then he changed his Beechen Letters to Leaden ones, and thoſe afterwards into Tin. This done, he contriv'd the glutinous Ink, now made uſe of in all Preſſes. The Houſe where he liv'd is ſtill to be ſeen near the Market-place in *Haerlem*. On the Front of his Houſe there was formerly engraven his Picture, with ſome Verſes in Commendation of him. The Magiſtrates have in their Cuſtody a Specimen of his firſt Eſſay. *Angelus Rocha*, who publiſh'd an Account of the *Vatican* Library in the Days of *Sixtus Quintus*, tells us, That *Aldus Junior*, a Learned Antiquary, ſhew'd him a Copy of *Donatus*'s Grammar printed on Vellum, in the firſt Page of which were theſe Words; *Johannes Fauſtus Cives Moguntinus, Avus Maternus Johannis Schoeffer, primus excogitavit Artem imprimendi, Typis Aereis quos deinde Plumbeos invenit, multaque ad poliendam Artem adjecit Filius ejus Petrus Schoeffer, impreſſus autem eſt hic Donatus & confeſſionalia primo omnium, A. D.* 1450. *Admonitus certe fuit ex Donato, prius Hollandia impreſſo in Tabula Inciſâ*: In which Words *Mariangelus Accurſius* aſſures us, (for the ſame Author ſays 'twas his Hand) That the firſt Man who printed Books in *Germany* with Molten Types, had the firſt Hint of it from *Holland*. The old Chronicle of *Cologne*, writ in 1496, confirms this, That the firſt Hint was from *Holland*, where *Donatus* was printed before *Gottenburg* printed any at *Mentz*; and moſt of the *German* Hiſtorians grant, That the firſt Printing with Wooden Cuts was by this *Coſter* of *Haerlem*; but alledge, that compoſing from different Letters was the Contrivance of *Gottenburg*.

The *Hollanders* ſay further, That after *Coſter* had improv'd his new Art ſo far as to print with Tin Letters, he took more Servants into the Houſe, and among them one *John*, whom *Junius* thinks to be the *Johannes Fauſtus* before mentioned, who had the Myſtery of this Art communicated to him, upon his taking an Oath of Secrecy. This *John* applied himſelf ſo much to the Buſineſs, that he underſtood it as well as *Coſter* himſelf; and on *Chriſtmas-Eve*, when moſt of the Family were at a Proceſſion, he carried off, with the Aſſiſtance of another that he had ſuborn'd, as many Caſes of Letter as they were able, and going to *Amſterdam*, printed ſmall Books and Pamphlets privately; from thence they removed to *Straſburg*, and communicated their Art to *Gottenburg*, who carrying on the Work at his own Charge, had the Honour to be accounted the firſt Printer in the World: At laſt they ſettled at *Mentz*, where they kept open Shop, being out of Danger of being proſecuted by *Coſter*. The firſt Book they printed in this City, was *Alexander Gallus*'s Grammar, with *Peter Hiſpanus*'s ſmall Grammatical Tracts annexed. There is in the Library of *Oxford* a Copy of *Tully*'s *Offices*, printed by this *Fauſtus* on Vellum, and at the End of it theſe Words in Red Letters, *Preſens Marci Tullii clariſſimum Opus, Johannes Fauſt, Moguntinus Civis, non atramento, non plumali canna, neque aereo, ſed Arte quadam perpulchra, Petri manu Pueri feliciter effecti finitum in* 1465. *Junius* ſays, he has often heard his Maſter *Nicolas Gale* ſay, That an old Bookſeller, who had been Servant to *Coſter*, and Chamber-fellow with this *Fauſtus* that cheated him, told him the Story often with ſuch a Vehemency of Paſſion, as commonly brought Tears from his Eyes; and that he was reſolved to undeceive the World, but did not live to perform his Promiſe. Theſe are the Arguments on both Sides; the Reader may determine as he pleaſes.

The *French* likewiſe pretend to the Honour of this Invention; but upon no better Foundation, as *Wimpheling* informs us, than that this Art was firſt made publick at *Rome* by one *Uldaric Halm*, a *German*, who by Latin Writers is called *Uldaricus Gallus*; *Halm* being the *German* Name for a Cock, which gave the *French* Occaſion to apply the Appellative *Gallus*, as if he had been one of their Country; tho' if it were ſo, it will imply no more, than that he was the firſt who publiſh'd that Art in *Italy*.

Digitized by Google

Boterus, who is followed by some modern Authors, alledges, the *Chinese* had this Art above 1000 Years before us in *Europe*, and communicated the same to one *Marcus Venetus*; but had it been so, that Gentleman would in all probability have brought it into *Italy*, that his own Country might have had the Honour of being the first Teachers of the Art in *Christendom*; but there is so little Foundation for this Story, that *Boterus* himself confesses, that this Invention, as well as that of Guns and Clocks, is owing to the *Germans*.

This Art was brought over to *England*, according to *Stow*, in 1471, by one *Caxton*, and Printing was first us'd in *Westminster-Abbey*; but it appears, that it was practis'd before that Time, by a Copy of St. *Jerome's* Exposition of the Apostles Creed, preserved among the Archives of the University of *Oxford*. It is printed on Paper, and ends thus; *Explicit Expositio Sancti Jeronimi in Symbolo Apostolorum ad Papam Laurentium. Impressa Oxonie & finita in* 1468, 17 *die Decemb.* Mr. *Wood*, in his Antiquities of the University of *Oxford*, informs us, That *Robert Turner*, Master of the Wardrobe to King *Henry* VI. first brought over Printing to *England* from *Haerlem*. The King furnish'd him with Money, by which he brib'd *Frederick Corsellus*, who wrought at the Press, to come over with him to *England*, which he did, and set up a Printing-Press at *Oxford*, where they guarded him, lest he should make his Escape before he had perform'd his Promise. Not long after, Presses were set up at *Worcester*, *Westminster*, and *St. Albans*. The oldest Book printed at *Westminster* is *Caxton's* Chronicle, publish'd in 1480.

The RELIGION *of the Modern* Germans.

THis Country was converted at several Times, as Dr. *Nicholson* informs us; so that almost every Province had their different Apostle. *Theodoret* thinks our Saviour's Apostles preached here, and some name the Apostle St. *Thomas* in particular. *Irenaus* and *Tertullian* mention the *German* Church; so that 'tis probable, that what Part of *Germany* was subject to the *Romans*, may have had Christianity in the Second Century. The Papists are now asham'd of the Legend of St. *Ursula*, and her 11000 Virgins; therefore in their Kalendar they only mention *Ursula cum Sociis*. 'Tis said, there were two *German* Bishops present at a Council held by *Constantine the Great*, in 314.

Bleau, in his Volume of the *Atlas* which contains *Scotland* and *Ireland*, gives an Account, That several Men from *Scotland* converted many Parts of *Germany*: The first was St. *Rupert*, Son to a King of *Scots*, who in the 6th Century converted *Theodo*, Duke of *Bavaria*, with his Nobles, and baptiz'd them at *Ratisbon*; after which he converted the neighbouring Countries, founded the City of *Saltzburg*, and was the first Bishop there, as appears by the Records of that City, printed by *Hen. Canisius*, *Tom.* 4. *Antiq. Lection.* Much about the same Time *Columbanus* and *Gallus*, two *Scots*, converted *Swabia*; after which *Columbanus* went to *Italy*, and *Gallus* stay'd in *Switzerland*, and founded the Monastery of St. *Gall*, which gave Rise to the Town of that Name, as is mentioned by *Jonas*, in the Life of *Columbanus*, *Bede*, *Wallafridus Strabo*, and *Canisius*.

Soon after *Kilianus*, with two other *Scots-men* sent by the Pope, converted *Gosbert* Duke of *Franconia*, with his Court and Country, and was the first Bishop of *Wurtzburg*; but afterwards martyr'd with his Companions, for reproving the Duke for his Incest, as appears by the Coin of the Bishop of *Wurtzburg*, which has still St. *Kilian's* Effigies stamp'd on it, as *Canisius* and *Surius* tell us.

Not long after this, in the Time of *Pipin* and *Charlemain*, *Bonifacius*, a *Scots-man*, as *Marianus* and *Trithemius* tell us, converted *Hesse*, *Thuringia*, *Westphalia*, and *Saxony*: After which he was made Archbishop of *Mentz*, and founded the Bishoprick of *Aichstadt*, and several others, with the Monastery of *Fulda*, of which *Scots-men* and *Germans* were indifferently made Abbots till very lately. This *Boniface* is generally reckoned to be the chief Apostle of the *Germans*, as *Willibald* his Disciple says in his Life, which we have an Account in *Canisius*, *Surius*, *Serrarius*, and others.

In that same Century, *Patto*, a *Scots-man*, planted Religion further in *Saxony*, was made Bishop of *Verden* in *Westphalia*, as *Kant-*

Digitized by Google

Krantzius tells us, wherein he was succeeded by several of his Countrymen, being himself a Martyr: And that same Author informs us, That one *John Scot* was made Bishop of *Mechlenburg*, and afterwards a Martyr.

In the Year 1000, *Colemannus*, said to be Son to a King of *Scots*, converted *Austria*, where he was martyr'd. His Relicks were kept in the Monastery of *Melch*, about 12 Leagues from *Vienna*, as *Surius* tells us in his Life; and *Baronius* says the same in his Annals.

Argobastus, a *Scots-man*, converted *Strasburg*, where he was succeeded by *Florence*, one of his Countrymen, who was Bishop there, as *Surius* and others inform us. *William*, Brother to *Achaius* King of *Scots*, founded the Monastery of St. *James* at *Ratisbon*, St. *Martin* at *Cologne*, St. *Giles* at *Norimberg*, another at *Aix la Chapelle*, and St. *Peter's* at *Ratisbon*, which were mostly possessed by his own Countrymen, who were in great Esteem with *Charlemain*. The last of those they possessed was that of St. *James* at *Ratisbon*, whose Abbot was Inspector of all the rest, till the Time of the late *German* Civil Wars. The *Scots* also founded the Monastery of St. *James* at *Wurtzburg*, and another at *Erfurd*. They had also a Monastery at *Vienna*, founded by *Henry* Duke of *Austria* in 1167, which continued in their Hands till the Time of the Emperor *Ferdinand* II. They had likewise one at *Constance*, one at *Memmingen* in *Bavaria*, another at *Eichstat*, one at *Kellam*, all in that Country; and another at *Paderborn*, which was founded about the Year 900, besides many others, as appears by a Letter from *Robert Strachan*, a Native of *Dundee*, and a *Benedictine* Monk, writ from *Vienna* the 10th of *November*, 1641. to the Lord *Scots-Tarbat*, who publish'd the Account of *Scotland* in *Bleau's* Atlas, to whom he promis'd a larger Account in a Book, Entituled, *Germania Christiana*; but whether he liv'd to perform it, we know not.

Buchanan and *Lesly* say, *Charlemain* desired *Achaius* K. of *Scotland*, with whom he had a League, to send many Learned Men to instruct the *French* and *Germans* in Religion and Learning, their own Priests being then so ignorant, that they us'd these Words in Baptism, *Ego baptizo te in Nomine Patrua, & Filia, & Spiritus Sancta*; and that in Gratitude to the *Scots*, who founded so many Monasteries in *Germany*, it was order'd, That none but *Scots-men* should be Abbots of those Monasteries. The same is confirmed by *Marianus*, *Scotus*, *Trithemius*, &c.

Dr. *Nicholson* informs us, That in the 8th Century, *Egbert* Archbishop of *York* sent *English* Missionaries to convert the *Germans*; but many of them are the same claimed by Mr. *Strachan*, as above, for *Scots-men*; so that it is very probable there was a Mixture of both. *Charles the Great* by this Means brought the *Saxons* at last to embrace Christianity, tho' not without much Bloodshed.

The Reformation began in 1517. Upon this Occasion, the Archbishop of *Mentz*, being to pay the Court of *Rome* a greater Sum than he could raise in his own Territories, got Leave from the Pope to make it up, by selling Indulgences thro' the Empire for a Pardon of Sins past, present, and to come, and employed one Friar *Tetelius* as his Agent. *Luther* protested against this, and afterwards publickly oppos'd 'em, tho' *Tetelius* threaten'd him with Excommunication; but those Threats were so far from making any Impression on *Luther*, that in *Wittemberg* and *Leipsick* he publickly impugned the Pope's Power to grant such Indulgences, and maintain'd many Disputes in the University of *Leipsick* against the Popish Party, who, when they could not answer his Arguments, call'd him a Heretick, and forbad any to hear him under Pain of Excommunication; but the Elector of *Saxony* declaring for him, counterpois'd their Threats. The Elector's Example was followed by the Dukes of *Brunswick* and *Lunenburg*, *Wirtenberg*, *Mecklenberg*, and *Pomeren*, the Marquis of *Brandenburg*, Landgrave of *Hesse*, and most of the Imperial Cities, who in 1529 gave in a joint *Protestation* to the Imperial Chamber at *Spires*, containing the Heads in which they dissented from the Church of *Rome*; from whence they had the Name of *Protestants*. In 1530, they gave in a Confession sign'd by them at *Augsburg*, which was from thence called the *Augsburg Confession*. After this, the Emperor *Charles* V. made War upon them, but after much Loss of Blood and Treasure, he was at last obliged to grant them a Toleration.

Digitized by Google

ration, and to authorize their Confeſſion at *Paſſau* in 1552, and in 1555 confirm'd it at *Augsburg*. In the beginning of the Reformation, *Luther* tranſlated the Bible into *High-Dutch*, and publiſh'd it all over *Germany*. He compiled alſo New Catechiſms for the Children.

About 1519, *Zuinglius*, a Canon at *Zurich* in *Switzerland*, was the firſt who in thoſe Parts diſſented from the Errors of the Church of *Rome*; and his Succeſs was ſuch, that his Doctrine ſpread as wide as *Luther*'s; and in 1526, the Maſs was aboliſh'd at *Zurich* by Order of the Senate; and in 1528, Images were deſtroy'd at *Bern*. The Differences betwixt *Luther* and *Zuinglius* about Conſubſtantiation, much hinder'd the Progreſs of the Reformation; they met at *Marpurg* in *Heſſe* to compoſe thoſe Differences, but in vain: So *Zuinglius*'s Party was call'd *Sacramentarians*, and that of *Luther*, *Ubiquitarians*, whoſe Party ſtill maintain their Credit in *Saxony*, as *Zuinglius* did in *Switzerland*. *Calvin* ſucceeded the latter, and to the Doctrines preach'd by his Predeceſſor, he added thoſe about Predeſtination, Free Will, Final Perſeverance, *&c.* which widen'd the Breach betwixt the *Lutherans* and *Calviniſts*. *Calvin*'s Doctrine prevail'd in *France*, *England*, *Scotland*, the *Netherlands*, a great Part of *Poland*, and many Provinces of *Germany*; whereas the *Lutheran* never reach'd much further than it was ſpread by *Luther* himſelf. The *Lutherans* at *Leipſick*, where they are very rigid, hate the *Calviniſts* as much as the *Turks*, inſomuch, that in the great Church there they have the Picture of the Devil, *Ignatius Loyola*, and *John Calvin*, in one Frame, with this Subſcription, *The Three great Enemies of Chriſt and the Chriſtian Religion*. In *Wittemberg*, *Abraham Calovius* was a great Supporter of *Luther*'s Doctrine; but many of the Univerſity were for the Opinions of *Calixtus* Junior, a Profeſſor of the Univerſity of *Helmſtadt*, who was eager for a Comprehenſion.

In the Kingdom of *Bohemia*, Arch-Dukedoms of *Bavaria*, *Auſtria*, and the Dukedom of *Lorrain*, the Territories of the Three Spiritual Electors, and other Biſhopricks which ſtill remain in the Hands of the Clergy, the Popiſh Religion is profeſs'd. There are ſtill ſome of the old *Huſſites* in *Bohemia*, but they are forc'd to conceal their Principles. *Lutheraniſm* abates daily in the Dominions of *Saxony* and *Brandenburg*, or *Pruſſia*, where *Calviniſm* obtains in its ſtead.

Puffendorf gives us the following Account of the Reformation, and Affairs of Religion, in *Germany*. In 1517, the Pope cauſed Indulgences to be ſold here in ſo ſcandalous a Manner, that the wiſer Sort began to be aſham'd of it. Wherefore *Martin Luther*, Doctor of Divinity, and Profeſſor in the Univerſity of *Wittenbergh*, had held a publick Diſputation againſt it, and being oppos'd by others, it alarm'd all the neighbouring Countries. *Luther* at firſt ſubmitted to the Pope's Deciſion; but being condemned by him, he appeal'd to a free General Council: And entring further into an Examination of the Pope's Authority, and having laid open ſome Errors and Abuſes which were crept in among them, his Doctrine was ſo much approved by ſome of the Princes and Free Imperial Cities, that they began to baniſh the Prieſts and Monks out of ſeveral Places, and to reduce their Revenues. And though the Emperor declar'd *Luther* an Out-law at the Diet of *Worms*, and endeavoured by ſeveral Proclamations to put a ſtop to thoſe Proceedings; yet being engag'd in a War with *France*, and therefore not in a Capacity to apply himſelf in good earneſt to the ſuppreſſing of thoſe Things, *Luther*'s Party grew daily ſtronger.

Perhaps he was afterwards not very ſorry to ſee the Wound increaſe, that he might make the better Benefit of the Cure. A Proclamation being publiſh'd at the Diet of *Spier*, which was in no ways agreeable to the *Lutheran* Princes, they proteſted againſt the ſame; from whence they were called Proteſtants. Next Year they delivered a Confeſſion of their Faith to the Emperor at *Augsburg*, and entred into a Defenſive Alliance at *Smalkald*. *Luther* was againſt their taking Arms at firſt, as *Sleidan* informs us; but the Lawyers and Princes having ſatisfy'd him, that the Conſtitution of the Empire allow'd it in Caſe of Oppreſſion, he agreed to it. This League was renewed in the Year 1535, when a great many Princes and free Imperial Cities were received into it. This

League

Digitized by Google

League being a great Eye-ſore to the Emperor, he us'd all Means to diſſolve it: But the Proteſtants truſting to their own Strength, and ſtanding by one another, the Hoſtilities began on both Sides, and the Proteſtants brought into the Field 100000 Men, under the Conduct of *John Frederick* Elector of *Saxony*, and *Philip* Landgrave of *Heſſe*. Had they fallen immediately upon the Emperor, whoſe Forces were not then join'd, they might in all probability have worſted him; but having loſt the firſt Opportunity, the Emperor ſo ſtrengthen'd himſelf, that he forced the Proteſtants to quit the Field, and to diſband their Forces. He alſo cauſed a Diverſion to be given the Elector at home by his Kinſman *Maurice*; which had ſuch Influence upon the free Imperial Cities, that they were oblig'd to ſubmit, and pay conſiderable Fines. Next Year the Emperor fell into *Saxony*, and having defeated and taken the Elector near *Muhlberg*, he pronounc'd Sentence of Death upon him; which he chang'd to Impriſonment. *Philip*, Landgrave of *Heſſe*, having ſubmitted himſelf, was, contrary to Agreement with the Emperor, made Priſoner, whereby the Proteſtants in *Germany* were reduced to great Extremities. The Electorate of *Saxony* was given to *Maurice*, Duke of *Saxony*, who at laſt being reſolv'd, not to permit any longer that both Religion and Liberty ſhould be quite deſtroy'd, nor that his Wife's Father, the Landgrave of *Heſſe*, who upon his Parole had ſurrender'd himſelf to the Emperor, ſhould be detain'd a Priſoner; he fell ſo ſuddenly with his Forces upon the Emperor, that he was very near having ſurprized his Perſon at *Inſpruck*. *Henry* II. King of *France*, having alſo made an Inroad on the other ſide of *Germany*, ſurprized *Metz*, *Toul*, and *Verdun*. Upon which, King *Ferdinand*, the Emperor's Brother, interpoſing his Authority, a Peace was concluded at *Paſſau*, where the free Exerciſe of Religion was ſecured to the Proteſtants, till Matters could be better ſettled at the next Diet. The Landgrave was releaſed, as likewiſe *John Frederick*, the Elector, who had been diſmiſſed out of Priſon a little before by the Emperor. At laſt the Religious Peace in *Germany* was eſtabliſhed at the Diet at *Augsburg*, where it was provided, That neither Party ſhould annoy one another under the Pretext of Religion, and that ſuch of the Church-Lands and Revenues, as the Proteſtants had been poſſeſs'd of before the Peace concluded at *Paſſau*, ſhould remain in their Poſſeſſion.

But under the Reign of *Matthias*, the Ferment did ſo increaſe by degrees in *Germany*, that towards his latter Days they cauſed violent Convulſions. The Origin of this War, which laſted 30 Years, was this: In the Religious Peace formerly concluded at *Paſſau*, two Parties were only included, *viz.* the *Roman* Catholicks, and thoſe who adhered to the *Augsburg* Confeſſion, the free Exerciſe of Religion being forbidden to all others. But ſome of the States of the Empire, among whom the Chief were the Elector *Palatine* and the Landgrave of *Heſſe-Caſſel*, having ſince that time receiv'd the Reform'd Religion, commonly call'd the *Calviniſt*, the *Roman* Catholicks were againſt their enjoying the Benefit of the Religious Peace. Theſe on the other hand alledg'd, That they, as well as the reſt, did belong to the *Augsburg* Confeſſion, and that the whole Difference did only conſiſt in ſome few Heads: But the *Lutherans*, who ſtrictly adher'd to the Words of the *Augsburg* Confeſſion, were not for receiving them into the ſame Communion; though it was their Opinion, That they ought not to be proſecuted for the Differences that were betwixt them. But afterwards theſe controverted Articles were, by the Heat of ſome *Lutheran* Prieſts, explain'd in ſo different a manner, that the Name of a *Calviniſt* became as Odious to ſome of the *Lutherans*, as that of a *Roman* Catholick. The Papiſts taking hold of this Opportunity, careſſed the *Lutherans*, eſpecially thoſe in the Electorate of *Saxony*, unto whom they repreſented the *Calviniſts* as a People equally deſtructive to both Parties; whereby they hop'd to diſjoin the *Calviniſts* from the reſt, and after they had deſtroy'd them, to make the eaſier Work with the *Lutherans*. Thoſe therefore of the Reform'd Religion entred into a Confederacy for their Common Security; into which they receiv'd a great many other Proteſtant Princes, and ſo it was call'd the *Evangelical Union*. In Oppoſition

Digitized by Google

Oppoſition to this Confederacy, the *Roman* Catholicks made an Alliance among themſelves, which they called the *Catholick League*, whoſe Head was the Duke of *Bavaria*, a conſtant Rival of the Elector *Palatine*. There happen'd alſo ſome other Matters which had exaſperated both Parties, *viz.* That the Proteſtants had reduc'd a great many Church-Revenues after the Peace at *Paſſau*; That the Cities of *Aix la Chapelle* and *Donawert* had been very hardly dealt with; beſides ſeveral other Things, which were manifeſt Proofs of the Animoſities of both Parties againſt one another.

Both of 'em being thus exaſperated and prepared for War, the Flame quickly after broke out in the Kingdom of *Bohemia*. The *Bohemians* pretended, that the Emperor *Matthias* had taken from them their Privileges, and, raiſing a Tumult, threw three Perſons of Quality, who ſpoke in the Emperor's Behalf, at *Prague*, out of the Caſtle Windows, and immediately after enter'd with an Army into *Auſtria*. In the mean while *Matthias* died, whoſe Nephew *Ferdinand* (who alſo ſucceeded him in the Empire) the *Bohemians* had before his Death received for their King; but now alledging that he had broken the Contract made betwixt him and the Eſtates, they renounc'd him, and offer'd the Crown to *Frederick* Elector *Palatine*. This young Prince was perſwaded by ſome of his Friends, who were of an unſettled Spirit, and had not div'd deep enough into a Buſineſs of ſuch Conſequence to accept this Offer, before he had laid a Foundation ſufficient for ſuch an Undertaking: For the *Bohemians* themſelves were fickle and unfaithful; *Bethlem Gabor*, Prince of *Tranſilvania*, was unconſtant; *England* was not for meddling in the Matter; *Holland* was very backward in giving Aſſiſtance; and the Union which they chiefly rely'd upon, was a Body with a great many Heads, without Vigour, or any fix'd Reſolution. Beſides, *France* endeavour'd to diſſolve that League, as being not willing that the Elector *Palatine*, and the reſt of the Reform'd Religion, ſhould grow too potent, for fear, that in Time they might afford their Aſſiſtance to the *Huguenots*, whoſe Deſtruction was then in Agitation at the *French* Court. In the beginning of this War, the Affairs of *Ferdinand* looked with an ill Aſpect, becauſe *Bethlem Gabor*, Prince of *Tranſilvania*, fell into *Hungary*, in Hopes to become Maſter of that Kingdom; and there were alſo great Diſcontents among his Subjects in *Auſtria*: But he having recover'd himſelf by his Alliance with the Duke of *Bavaria*, the Elector *Palatine*, in that unfortunate Battle fought on the *White-Hill* near *Prague*, loſt at once all his former Advantages; for *Ferdinand* ſoon after reduc'd *Bohemia*, *Moravia*, and *Sileſia*, to Obedience. *Spinola* made an Inroad into the *Lower Palatinate*, which was deſerted by the Forces of the League, and the Duke of *Bavaria* obtain'd the *Upper Palatinate* and the Electoral Dignity. The Elector of *Saxony*, who had been very inſtrumental in reducing *Sileſia*, had for his Reward *Luſatia*, as a Fief of the Kingdom of *Bohemia*.

In the mean time the Marquis of *Durlach*, *Chriſtian* Duke of *Brunſwick*, Count *Mansfeld*, and ſome others, who were of the Elector *Palatine*'s Party, marched with their Armies up and down the Country; and the Emperor, under Pretence of purſuing them, ſent his Forces into all Parts of the Empire. Againſt theſe the Circle of *Lower Saxony* arm'd it ſelf, having made *Chriſtian* IV. King of *Denmark*, General of that Circle: But he having received a great Overthrow near *King's-Lutter* from *Tilly* the Imperial General, the Emperor over-run all *Lower Saxony*; and having obliged King *Chriſtian* to make Peace with him at *Lubeck*, he began to get Footing near the Coaſt of the *Baltick*.

The Emperor was ſo elevated with Succeſs, that he did not queſtion but for the future to be abſolute in *Germany*, and with that View publiſh'd a Proclamation, enjoining the Proteſtants to reſtore to the Catholicks all ſuch Church-Lands or Revenues as were taken from them ſince the Peace made at *Paſſau*. Under this Pretence he hop'd quickly to ſubdue the reſt of the Proteſtant Princes, not queſtioning but, after that, the Catholick Eſtates would eaſily be forced to ſubmit themſelves to his Pleaſure.

The Proteſtants, 'tis true, enter'd into a Defenſive Alliance at *Lipſick*, but without any great Proſpect of Succeſs, if *Guſtavus Adolphus*, King of *Sweden*, had not come

Digitized by Google

come to their Assistance. This King was induc'd to enter *Germany*, partly because the Preservation of his own State seem'd to depend on the Emperor's not getting firm Footing on the *Baltick*; partly because several of the *German* Princes had craved his Assistance; partly also because the Emperor had assisted the *Poles* against him in *Prussia*; and he stood in a good Correspondence with *France* and *Holland*, who were very jealous of the Greatness of the House of *Austria*. This King came with an Army into *Germany*, and drove the Imperial Forces out of *Pomerania*, and the neighbouring Countries.

In the mean time the Imperial General *Tilly* had quite destroyed the City of *Magdeburg*, and was upon his March against the Elector of *Saxony*, whom he did not question but to rout quickly: But King *Gustavus* having join'd his Forces with those of the Elector of *Saxony*, defeated *Tilly* in that memorable Battle near *Lipsick*, where the Emperor, at one Stroke, lost all the Hopes he had conceiv'd from the happy Success of his Arms during the Space of 12 Years before. From thence he marched on to the *Rhine*, where he made almost miraculous Progresses: But in Regard the Elector of *Saxony* had not so vigorously attacked the Hereditary Countries of the Emperor, the Emperor had thereby Leisure given him to raise another Army, under the Conduct of *Wallenstein*, against whom the King lay encamped for a considerable Time near *Nurenburg*; and afterwards in the Battle of *Lutzen*, tho his Army had gain'd the Victory, he himself lost his Life.

After his Death, his Generals and Confederates carried on the War, under the Conduct of *Axel Oxenstern*, Chancellor of *Sweden*, with indifferent good Success; but having received an entire Defeat in the Battle near *Nortlingen*, which they rashly engaged in, they lost all the Fruit of so many Victories. The Elector of *Saxony* having also concluded a Peace with the Emperor at *Prague*, which was extreamly disliked by the Protestant Party, the Emperor was now again in Hopes to drive the *Swedes* by Force out of *Germany*: But by the Valour and Conduct of their Generals, the *Swedish* Affairs began to look with a better Face; for they carried the War again into the Hereditary Countries of the Emperor. At last all Parties began to incline to a Peace; for the Emperor and the Princes of *Germany* were tired out with the War; *France* began to be divided at home by Commotions; *Holland* had made a separate Peace with *Spain*; and the *Swedes* feared that the *Germans*, of whom was composed the greatest Part of their Army, might at last grow weary of being instrumental in the Ruin of their native Country, or that one unfortunate Blow might chance to rob them of the Fruits of their former Victories: A Peace was therefore concluded at *Osnabrug* with *Sweden*, and at *Munster* with *France*; by Vertue of which the *Swedes* got a Part of *Pomerania*, *Bremen*, and *Wismar*, and Five Millions of Crowns for the Payment of their Forces. *France* kept *Brisac*, *Suntgaw*, a Part of *Alsace*, and *Philipsburg*. By this Peace, the Authority of the States of *Germany*, and the Protestant Religion, were establish'd at once, and the Emperor's Power confin'd within such Bounds, that he could not easily hereafter attempt any thing against either of them, especially since both *Sweden* and *France* had a free Passage left them, from whence they might easily oppose him, if he design'd to transgress those Limits.

The RELIGION *of the* Lutherans.

THIS is PER to be understood by their Confession of Faith, commonly called that of *Augsburg*, because it was presented in the Diet there to the Emperor *Charles* V. in 1530. by *John* Duke of *Saxony*, Elector; *George* Marquis of *Brandenburg*, *Ernest* Duke of *Lunenburg*, *Philip* Landgrave of *Hesse*, *John Frederick* Duke of *Saxony*, *Francis* Duke of *Lunenburg*, *Wolfgang* Prince of *Anhalt*, the Senate and Magistrates of *Nuremberg*, and the Senate of *Reutlingen*.

It was writ in haste by *Philip Melancthon*, as he himself confesses in his Apology; and therefore to explain it, there was added, 1. The *Saxon* Confession, writ in 1551, in the Synod of *Wittenberg*, where the Ministers of the Churches of *Saxony* and *Misnia*,

ma, and the Doctors of the Academies met, and subscrib'd it, as the Confession of *Augsburg*, repeated to be proposed to the Council of *Trent*. It was approved by the most Illustrious Princes of the House of *Brandenburg*, by the most Noble Counts of *Mansfelt*, the Ministers of *Strasburg*, and the Ministers and Doctors of the Churches of *Pomerania*, who all of 'em sign'd it. It was likewise approv'd by other Churches, and particularly commended by those of *Poland*, in that called their Consent or Reconciliation. 2. The Confession of *Wirtemberg*, which was proposed to the same Council of *Trent* in 1552, by the Ambassadors of the most Illustrious *Christopher* Duke of *Wirtemberg*, &c. Its excellent Preface gives an Account of the whole Matter. 3. The Confession of the most Illustrious Prince *Frederic*, Count *Palatine*, Elector of the Holy Empire. 4. The Confession of *Bohemia*, which is also called the Confession of the *Waldenses*, compos'd out of far more ancient Confessions, approved by *Luther* and *Melanthon* in 1532, and by the famous University of *Wittemberg*, and at last, by the Free Barons and other Noblemen of the Kingdom of *Bohemia*, offer'd in 1535 to the most Serene King *Ferdinand* V. The Reconciliation of the Article of the Lord's Supper, between the Ministers, who in both *Polands*, *Lithuania*, and *Samogitia*, profess the Gospel, both according to the *Augsburg* Confession, and the Confession of the *Waldenses* and *Helvetian* Churches, made in the General Assembly of *Sendomir* in 1570.

In the Preface to the *Augsburg* Confession, directed to the Emperor *Charles* V. they declare to his Imperial Majesty, That according to his Command, they gave it as the Confession of their Preachers and themselves, according as it had been preached in their respective Dominions from the pure Word of God; and that if the rest of the Electors, Princes and States, would likewise, in Obedience to his Imperial Majesty's Command, lay before him in their Diet their Opinions in Matters of Religion, they were ready to confer with them amicably, in order to an Agreement without Contention, that all Things may be regulated according to the Word of God: But if Matters could not be adjusted in the Diet, they were willing to appear in a Free General Council, to be called by the just Suffrages of the Empire, according to Custom; to which General Council, and his Imperial Majesty, they solemnly appealed in due Form of Law; and did likewise solemnly and publickly protest, That they neither intended, or could desert their Cause contained in the said Confession, except Matters could be amicably settled and reduced to Christian Concord, in such a General Council to be summoned by his Imperial Majesty: After which they exhibited their Confession, consisting of 21 Articles.

In the First, they agree to what the Council of *Nice* had declared concerning the Trinity, as to the Unity of the Divine Essence and the three Persons, *viz.* That it is one Divine Essence, which is called and is God, Eternal, Incorporeal, Indivisible, Infinite in Power, Wisdom and Goodness, the Creator and Preserver of all Things visible and invisible; and that nevertheless they were three Persons of the same Essence, Power, and Coeternal, the Father, the Son, and the Holy Ghost; and they declar'd, that they us'd the Word Person in the Sense it was made use of by Ecclesiastical Writers, not as signifying a Part or Quality in another, but which properly subsisted in it self. They condemned all the Heresies contrary to this Article, as the *Manichees*, who held two Beginnings, Good and Evil: Likewise the *Valentinians*, *Arrians*, *Eunomians*, *Mahometans*, and all such. Likewise the New and Old *Samosatenians*, who holding but one Person, disputed fraudently and impiously concerning the Word and Spirit, as if they were not distinct Persons; but that the Word signified the Vocal Word, and that the Spirit signified the Motion created in Things.

In the 2d they held, That since *Adam*'s Fall, all Men descending from him by natural Propagation, were born with Original Sin, which they understood with the Holy Fathers, and Orthodox and Learned Men of the Church, to be that Guilt by which all Men for *Adam*'s Fall were made liable to the Wrath of God, and eternal Death; and that it was the very Corruption of Humane Nature propagated from *Adam*; which Corruption contains the Want of Original Righ-

Digitized by Google

Righteouſneſs or Obedience, and Concupiſcence. And after a further Deſcription of Original Sin, wherein they agree with other Proteſtants, they condemn the *Pelegians* who deny Original Sin, and look upon the want of Original Righteouſneſs or Concupiſcence to be only indifferent Things, or at leaſt not condemn'd in their own Nature, and think that Man can ſatisfy the Law of God, and be juſtifi'd for his own Obedience.

In the 3d, they treat of our Saviour's Incarnation, and aſſert his Two Natures, the Divine and Humane in One Perſon, That he is true God and Man, Born of the Virgin, and did really Suffer, was Crucifi'd, Dead and Buried; that he might reconcile the Father to us, and be a Sacrifice for the Original and Actual Sins of Men; and conclude with his Deſcent, Reſurrection, *&c.* according to the Apoſtle's Creed.

In the 4th they aſſert, That in order to our obtaining theſe Benefits by Chriſt, *viz.* Remiſſion of Sin, Juſtification and Eternal Life, he gave us the Goſpel, which propoſes thoſe Benefits in the laſt Chapter of *Luke*, convinces us of Sin, and leads us to Chriſt as a Mediator, for whoſe Sake Pardon is given us freely; and Juſtification by Faith, by which we ought to believe and confeſs, that thoſe Things are given us for Chriſt's Sake who was made a Sacrifice for us, and pacifi'd the Father. Therefore, though the Goſpel requires Repentance, yet that forgiveneſs of Sin may be certain, it teaches, That 'tis given to us freely, and does not depend on the Condition of our Worthineſs; nor is given for the Sake of any of our preceding or following Works, for by that Means it would be uncertain.

When our Conſcience is under Terror, we can find no Work to pacify God's Wrath, but Chriſt is given to us, and propos'd as a Sacrifice of Propitiation; therefore this Honour muſt not be transferr'd to our own Works; for *Paul* ſays, *By Grace ye are ſaved.* Likewiſe, *Therefore 'tis of Faith that it might be by Grace, to the end the Promiſe might be ſure, i. e.* ſo the Forgiveneſs will be ſure when we know that it does not depend upon our own Worthineſs, but is given us for Chriſt's Sake, *&c.* Then they ſay, That Faith does not only ſignify the knowledge of the Hiſtory of Chriſt, but alſo the believing and aſſenting to this Promiſe, *&c.*

In they 5th they ſay, That Chriſt for this End appointed the Preaching of the Goſpel, becauſe it teaches Repentance and Remiſſion of Sins, *&c.* and condemn thoſe who ſay nothing of this Faith by which Forgiveneſs is receiv'd, but command Men to doubt whether it can be obtain'd, and ſay that this Doubt is no Sin, and that Men may obtain Forgiveneſs for their own Worthineſs: They likewiſe condemn thoſe Enthuſiaſts who fancy, That the Holy Spirit may be given, and be effectual without the Word of God; for which Cauſe they depiſe the Miniſtry and Sacraments, and ſeek for Illumination without the Word of God, and betake themſelves to their own Fancies, as the *Manichees* did of old, and the *German Anabaptiſts* did then.

In the 6th they aſſert, That when we are reconcil'd by Faith, that Righteouſneſs of good Works which God and Chriſt has commanded muſt neceſſarily follow, *If thou will enter into Life, keep the Commandments*; but ſince the Weakneſs of Humane Nature is ſuch that no Man can ſatisfy the Law, 'tis neceſſary to teach Men, that they muſt not only obey the Law, but how this Obedience pleaſes, leſt they fall into Deſpair when they underſtand that they cannot ſatisfy the ſame, *viz.* That this Obedience pleaſes not as it ſatisfies the Law, but becauſe the Perſon is reconcil'd in Chriſt by Faith, and believes that the Remains of Sin are pardon'd to him; but we are always to conceive that we obtain Remiſſion of Sins, and are pronounced Righteous, *i. e.* that we are freely accepted for Chriſt's Sake by Faith, and that afterwards our Obedience to the Law is pleaſing, and reputed a ſort of Righteouſneſs, and deſerves Reward; but our Conſcience cannot oppoſe our own Purity or Works to the Judgment of God, as the *Pſalmiſt* teſtifies, *Do not enter into Judgment with thy Servant, for in thy ſight ſhall no Man living be juſtified*: And Chriſt ſays, *When ye have done all, ſay that ye are unprofitable Servants*; yet after Faith, Obedience pleaſes, and is

reckon'd a sort of Righteousness, as *John* says, *Whosoever abideth in him, sinneth not*, 2 Cor. 1. 12. *For our rejoycing is this, the Testimony of our Conscience.* But this Obedience ought to resist our wicked Desires, and to be made more Pure by Spiritual Exercises; and we are to beware that we do nothing against our Consciences, for they who do so, and obey their corrupt Affections, St. *Paul* says, *Shall not inherit the Kingdom of God.*

In the 7th they teach, That there is one Holy Church to remain to the end of the World, and that the Church, properly speaking, is an Assembly of those who truly Believe and Obey him, though in this Life there will be mix'd with them many ill Men and Hypocrites till the Day of Judgment. The Signs of the Church are the pure and sound Doctrine of the Gospel, and the right Use of the Sacraments; and a Consent in the Doctrine of the Gospel; and the Administration of the Sacraments, is enough for the true Unity of the Church. Nor is it necessary that Humane Traditions or Rites should be every where the same, as *Paul* teaches us when he says, *One Lord, one Faith, one Baptism, and one God, the Father of all.*

In the 8th, they assert against the *Donatists* and such, That the Word and Sacraments may be effectual, by reason of God's Institution, and our Saviour's Command, though administer'd by ill Men.

In the 9th Article they say, That Baptism is necessary to Salvation, as a Ceremony instituted by Christ, that Grace is offer'd by it, that Infants are to be baptiz'd, by which they are receiv'd into the Favour of God, and become his Children, as our Saviour testifies, Matth. 18. 14. *'Tis not the Will of your Father which is in Heaven, that one of these little ones should perish.* On this Head they condemn the *Anabaptists*, who do not allow Infant-Baptism, and think that Infants may be sav'd without it, and out of the Church.

In the 10th they teach concerning the Lord's Supper, That with the Bread and Wine, the Body and Blood of Christ are truly exhibited to those who partake of the Lord's Supper; but the Edition of the Harmony of Confessions at *Geneva* in 1612, which we make use of, (and which is allow'd by all Parties to be the Compleatest and most Correct) says, that in another Edition of the *Augsburg* Confession 'tis express'd thus, That the Body and Blood of Christ are truly present, and distributed to those who partake of the Lord's Supper; and they disapprove those who teach otherwise.

In the 11th, concerning Repentance, they hold, That Remission of Sins is given to those who fall after Baptism at whatever time they are converted, and that the Church ought to give Absolution to such Penitents. Repentance, they say, consists of Two Parts: The First is, Contrition or Terror of Conscience, Acknowledgment of the Sin, of the Wrath of God, Grief for Sin, with an Abhorrence of it, and flying from it, according to *Joel* 2. 13. The Second is, Faith which is conceiv'd by the Gospel or Absolution, by which we believe that Sins are certainly remitted for Christ's Sake, which comforts our Conscience, and frees us from Terror; of which *Paul* speaks, when he says, *Being justified by Faith, we have Peace with God*, Rom. 5. 1. This ought to be follow'd by Obedience towards God, according to *Romans* 8. 12, 13. Therefore they condemn the *Novatians*, who would not absolve such as, having fallen after Baptism, repented. They likewise condemn those who say, That Remission of Sins is not given freely for Christ's Sake, but for the Sake of our Contrition, Love, and other Works; and teach Men to doubt during Repentance, whether they may attain Remission, and say this Doubt is no Sin. They also condemn those who say, That Canonical Satisfactions are necessary to avoid Eternal Punishments, and those of Purgatory, though they own that present Calamities may be alleviated by good Works, according to *Isaiah* 58. 7, 8, 9. They also reject Indulgences, which are only Pardons of fictitious Satisfactions. They condemn the *Anabaptists*, who deny, That Men once justify'd may again lose the Holy Spirit; and those who assert, That Men may attain such a Perfection in this Life, as not to sin any more.

In the 12th, they are for retaining private Absolution in the Church, though a particular Enumeration of our Faults be not necessary,

Digitized by Google

neceſſary, ſince that is impoſſible according to the *Pſalmiſt*, *Who can underſtand his Errors*.

In the 13th they ſay, The Sacraments are inſtituted not meerly to be Marks of Profeſſion among Men, but rather to be Signs and Teſtimonies of the good Will of God towards us, and are propos'd to ſtir up and confirm our Faith; ſo that in the Uſe of the Sacraments 'tis neceſſary we ſhould believe the Promiſes exhibited by them, by which we receive the promis'd Grace which the Sacraments ſignify; and on this Head they condemn that Phariſaical Opinion which overturns the Doctrine of Faith, and alledges, That Men are juſtify'd in the Uſe of the Sacraments, *ex opere operato*, and that without any good Motions or Inclinations of thoſe that partake of them.

In the 14th, they teach concerning Men in Eccleſiaſtical Orders, That none ought publickly to Preach or Adminiſter the Sacraments, except he be duly call'd, as *Paul* commanded *Titus* to appoint Elders in every City.

In the 15th they ſay, That ſuch Eccleſiaſtical Rites as have been appointed by Humane Authority, and may be obſerv'd without Sin, ought to be kept if they conduce to the Peace and good Order of the Church, as ſome Holy-Days, pious Hymns, and the like; but they ſay, That in theſe Matters the Peoples Conſciences are not to be burdened with ſuperſtitious Opinions; as if thoſe Humane Ordinances made us Righteous before God, deſerve Remiſſion of Sin, or are neceſſary towards Goſpel Righteouſneſs; but they are to be look'd upon as Things indifferent, and may be omitted when it can be done without Scandal; but they are faulty, who violate them ſo as to give Scandal, and raſhly diſturb the Peace of their Churches; but they reject Traditions which cannot be obſerv'd without Sin, as the Celibacy of the Clergy, and that wicked Opinion concerning Traditions and Vows, and other Parts of Worſhip deviſ'd by Humane Authority, as if they were Satisfactory for Sin, and deſerv'd Remiſſion, as unlearn'd Men have ſaid concerning Vows, and certain Faſts, *&c.*

In the 16th they ſay, concerning Civil Affairs, That lawful Civil Conſtitutions are good Works, and are the Ordinances of God, according to *Paul*, *Rom.* 13. 1. *The Powers that be, are ordain'd of God*; and therefore hold that Chriſtians may lawfully be Magiſtrates, exerciſe Judgment, determine Controverſies according to the Imperial and other Preſent Laws; puniſh Offenders according to Law, may make lawful War, legal Contracts, keep their Property, give Oath when required by the Magiſtrate, contract lawful Marriages, and follow lawful Trades: Therefore they condemn the *Anabaptiſts*, who forbid thoſe Civil Offices to Chriſtians, and ſuch as maintain that Evangelical Prefection conſiſts in abandoning Civil Offices, ſince that Perfection lies in the Motions of the Heart, the Fear of God, Faith, Love, and Obedience; for the Goſpel does not aboliſh Policy or Oeconomy, but commands them to be preſerv'd as the Ordinances of God, and that in ſuch Ordinances we ought to uſe Charity; therefore Chriſtians are neceſſarily oblig'd to obey preſent Laws and Magiſtrates, except when they command what is ſinful, in which Caſe they are to obey God rather than Man, *Acts* 4.

In the 17th, they aſſert their Belief of Chriſt's Coming to judge the World at the laſt Day, That he will raiſe all the Dead, give Eternal Life to the Godly, and condemn Devils and wicked Men to Eternal Puniſhment. On this Head they condemn the *Jewiſh* Opinion of the *Anabaptiſts*, who fancied that before the Reſurrection the Godly ſhall poſſeſs the Kingdoms of the World, and the Ungodly be every where deſtroy'd or ſuppreſs'd: For we know, ſay they, we ought to obey the preſent Magiſtrates, and not violently deprive them of their Authority, or diſſolve Governments by Sedition, becauſe *Paul* commands every Soul to be ſubject to their own Magiſtrate; for we know, that in this Life the Church is to be ſubject to the Croſs, and is not to be glorify'd in this World; as *Paul* ſays, *It behoves us in all Things to be conform to the Image of his Son*; therefore they condemn, and hold in Execration the diabolical Fury of the *Anabaptiſts*,

Digitized by Google

baptiſts, meaning *John* of *Leyden*, *Muncer*, and other *German* Enthuſiaſts at that time; they likewiſe condemn the *Originiſts*, who thought there would be an end of the Torments of Devils and damn'd Souls.

In the 18th they deliver their Opinion about Free Will, wherein they ſay, That Man's Will has ſome freedom as to Civil Juſtice, and loving Things ſubject to Reaſon, but has no Power without the Aſſiſtance of the Holy Spirit, as to Spiritual Righteouſneſs, becauſe *Paul* ſays, 1 Cor. 2. 14. *The natural Man receiveth not the things of the Spirit of God*: And Chriſt ſays, *Without me ye can do nothing*. But Spritual Righteouſneſs is effected by the Holy Spirit, and we receive that Spirit when we aſſent to the Word of God, to comfort our ſelves with it under Terror, as *Paul* ſays, *That ye may receive the Promiſe of the Spirit by Faith*: They own however, that Men who have the uſe of Reaſon, have the freedom of Will in Things relating to the preſent Life, whether Good or Evil, but ſtill ſubject to the Divine Government; but in Spiritual Things there is a neceſſity of the Spirit's Aſſiſtance; as *Paul* ſays, *The Spirit helps our Infirmities*. Therefore they condemn the *Pelagians* and others, who teach, That without the Holy Spirit, and by the mere Strength of Nature, we are able to love God above all Things, and to fulfil the Law as to the ſubſtance of the Acts, becauſe *Paul* ſays in the 8th of the *Romans*, *The carnal Mind is enmity againſt God, for 'tis not ſubject to the Law of God, neither indeed can be*: For tho' Humane Nature may in ſome Senſe govern it ſelf as to external Acts, as in abſtaining from Theft, Murder, *&c.* yet it cannot govern the inward Motions of the Mind, as to the true Fear of God, Confidence in him, Patience, Chaſtity, *&c.* without the Aſſiſtance of the Holy Spirit; yet they own it to be the Command of God, that we ought to reſtrain our carnal Inclinations by Reaſon and the Law, becauſe *Paul* ſays, *The Law is a School-Maſter to bring us unto Chriſt*; and alſo, *the Law was made for the Unjuſt*.

In the 19th, as to the Cauſe of Sin, they ſay, That tho' God creates and preſerves Nature, yet the Cauſe of Sin is the Will of the Devil and wicked Men, which turns it ſelf away from God to other Things againſt his Commandment; therefore Chriſt ſays of the Devil, *When he ſpeaks a Lie, he ſpeaks of his own*.

In the 20th, they Appeal to their Books to convict their Enemies of Slander, when they charge them with the Neglect of the Doctrine of Good Works: But take notice, That whereas for a long time there had been a great Silence in the Church about the principal Works, *viz.* the Exerciſe of Faith, and the Commendation of Civil Actions; and that moſt of their Sermons were taken up in the Praiſe of Humane Traditions, Holy-Days, Faſts, the Monkiſh Life, Friaries or Fraternities, Pilgrimages, the Worſhip of Saints, Roſaries, and other uſeleſs Parts of Worſhip. Now, by the Goodneſs of God, the Church was call'd back to that true and uſeful Worſhip which he approv'd himſelf, and requir'd they quote ſeveral Places of Scripture, where the Prophets bewail the calamitous State of the Church, wherein true Worſhip ſhould be extinguiſh'd, and that, in its ſtead, Humane Ceremonies and an Impious Confidence in them ſhould obtain; from which Error they call upon the Church to return to true Worſhip, and ſuch as are truly Good Works. They add, That it was very well known, that long before their Time, many good and learned Men did complain of the want of better Doctrine for the Comfort of People's Conſciences, and to make a better Diſtinction betwixt Works; and hereupon they condemn the Papiſts for placing Evangelical Perfection in a Monaſtick Life and Superſtition, and preferring Humane Traditions to the Commands of God; whereas they ſpoke ſo coldly of the Duties of Mens Vocation, Magiſtracy, Marriages, *&c.* that many grave Men began to doubt whether thoſe Things were pleaſing to God; therefore the Proteſtant Preachers did zealouſly teach both Faith and Good Works.

Of FAITH.

CONcerning Faith and Juſtification, they teach, That our Saviour gave us the Sum of the Goſpel in the laſt of *Luke*, where

where he commands Repentance and Forgiveneſs of Sins to be taught in his Name; and as the Command is univerſal, ſo is the Promiſe; for all Men are commanded to believe and come to Chriſt, and he will eaſe them of their Burdens: But thô Repentance be neceſſary, we are not to think that we are forgiven and juſtified for the Sake of that, or of any Works that go before or come after it, but freely for Chriſt's Sake; and this Benefit is to be receiv'd by Faith. This affords ſolid Comfort to our Minds under Terror, and has nothing of Sophiſm, Perplexity, or Abſurdity; nor is there any need of Diſputes in this Caſe about Predeſtination, or the like, for the Promiſe is univerſal; nor does it take away the Neceſſity of good Works, but excites us to them, as well as to Faith; for Remiſſion of Sins is not aſcrib'd to our good Works, but to Mercy; not that we ſhould do nothing, but rather that we may know how our Obedience pleaſes God, thô attended with ſo much Weakneſs. For want of this Knowledge, which nothing but Phariſaical Ignorance can condemn, formerly People, to eaſe their Conſciences, had Recourſe to the Monaſtick Life, and other Works, for Remiſſion of Sins, and Juſtification. To prove this Doctrine, they bring *Rom.* 3. 20. *&c. Rom.* 4. throughout. *Epheſ.* 2. 8. *&c.*

When therefore we ſay, That we are juſtified by Faith, we do not underſtand that we are made Righteous for the Worth of the Act it ſelf; but that we receive Forgiveneſs of Sins, and the Imputation of Righteouſneſs by Mercy through Chriſt, by Faith; and this Faith is not only a Knowledge of the Hiſtory, but a Belief of the Promiſe of the Mercy ſhew'd to us for Chriſt's Sake. They add, That by underſtanding Faith thus, *Paul* and *James* are reconciled; for when *James* ſays, *The Devils believe and tremble*, he means Hiſtorical Faith, which is common to them with wicked Men; but when *Paul* ſays, *Faith is imputed for Righteouſneſs*, he ſpeaks of our Confidence in the Mercy which is promiſed to us for Chriſt's Sake. They add, That this is no new Doctrine, but was taught by the Fathers, particularly by *Ambroſe*, *Auguſtine*, and the *Milevitan* Council.

Of Good Works.

1. WE join, ſay they, with the Doctrine of Faith, that of Good Works, *viz.* That in ſuch as are reconciled to God, Obedience to his Law is neceſſary; for the Goſpel teaches a new Life and Repentance; nor can Faith exiſt but with Repentance, becauſe it comforts us under our Sorrow and Terror for Sin; as *Paul* ſays, *Being juſtified by Faith, we have Peace with God*: And of Repentance, he ſays, *That our old Man is crucified with him, that the Body of Sin might be deſtroyed, that henceforth we ſhould not ſerve Sin.*

2. Among Good Works, the chief and higheſt Worſhip of God is Faith, which brings forth many other good Works, that cannot exiſt without it; for *Paul* ſays, *How ſhall they call upon him in whom they have not believed. Rom.* 10. 14. While we are in doubt whether God will hear us, and think God will reject us, we do not truly call upon him; but when we believe in his Mercy, we fly to him, love him, call upon him, hope in him, expect Help from him, and obey him in Afflictions, becauſe we know we are his Children, *&c.* Theſe Things are produced by Faith; whereas our Adverſaries would ſeem to magnify the Doctrine of Good Works, but ſay nothing of thoſe Spiritual Works, of Faith, of the Exerciſe of Faith in calling upon God in all the Affairs of our Life, our Councils and Dangers.

3. By this Faith, which comforts us in Repentance, we receive the Holy Spirit to govern and help us to reſiſt Sin and the Devil; and that we may more and more acknowledge our own Weakneſs; and that the Knowledge of God, his Fear and Faith, may grow in us, as *Paul* ſays, *That we are to be renewed in the Knowledge of God, after the Image of him that created us.*

4. This new Obedience pleaſes God, not by ſatisfying the Law, but becauſe they are reconciled to him thrô Chriſt; for there's no Condemnation to them that are in Chriſt, and we are not now under the Law, but under Grace. Our own Works cannot

Digitized by Google

cannot appeaſe the Wrath of God; but the Terrors of Sin and Death are to be overcome by Faith in Chriſt, the Mediator. On this Occaſion they reject the Pretenſions of the Monks to Perfection and Supererrogation; their ſaying nothing of apprehending Chriſt by Faith, and teaching us to truſt in our own Works. They add, That they themſelves taught, that ſuch as commit mortal Sins, are not juſt, becauſe God requires that we ſhould reſiſt our corrupt Affections.

5. We teach how Men may do good Works, *viz.* by believing and calling upon God for the Aſſiſtance of his holy Spirit to comfort and govern us, and to help us to perſevere in Truth and new Obedience; for thô Men may do Things that are outwardly good by their own Strength, yet without Faith they are in the Power of the Devil, who tempts them to Uncleanneſs, and fills their Minds with impious and blaſphemous Opinions. True Virtues are the Gift of God, Faith, Clearneſs of Judgment to diſcern Doctrines, ſuch Greatneſs of Mind as is neceſſary for thoſe who preach and profeſs the Goſpel, true Diligence in Governing the Church, true Humility not to covet Power, or be byaſſed by popular Love or Hatred, true Chaſtity, *&c.* Thoſe Heroical Virtues, *Paul* calls the Gifts of God, *Rom.* 12. To theſe Gifts, we muſt add our own Exerciſe of 'em for their Preſervation, and to deſerve an Increaſe. Thus, ſay they, it appears, that the Doctrine of Good Works is duly taught in our Churches; but how much Darkneſs and Confuſion there was formerly in this Doctrine, honeſt Men know well enough. People were not taught the Difference betwixt Humane Traditions and Divine Laws; how good Works pleaſe, accompanied with ſo much Weakneſs; and nothing was heard of that Faith which is neceſſary for Remiſſion of Sins: But theſe Things being thus explain'd, the Conſciences of good Men are comforted; they have a certain Hope of Salvation; they underſtand what true Worſhip is, how it pleaſes God, and in what Senſe 'tis meritorious.

In the 21ſt Article they ſay, That Invocation is due only to the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit; That God has propos'd his Son for our Mediator, and Prieſts to intercede for us; for his Sake alone our Prayers are heard, according to that of our Saviour, *John* 16. 23. *Whatſoever you ask in my Name, he* (the Father) *will give it you.* Likewiſe, *There is but one Mediator betwixt God and Man.* 1 *Tim.* 2. 5. On this Head they condemn the Invocation of Saints, thô they approve the reading of their Lives, provided the Inſtances be prudently choſen.

This, they ſaid, was the Sum of their Doctrine, which they judged to be according to the Prophets, Apoſtles, and the Catholick Church, and likewiſe to the *Roman* Church, as far as ſhe was known to approved Writers. They hop'd, that all good and learned Men would concur with them; for they did in no wiſe reject the Conſent of the Catholick Church, nor innovate any thing: That they did not patronize any Impious or Seditious Opinions, which had been condemned by the Catholick Church; nor embraced this Doctrine out of any ill Deſign, but meerly by the Authority of the Scripture, and the ancient Church: That it was evident a great many Abuſes had crept into the Church, which needed Reformation. To this End they earneſtly deſir'd a General Council, that had long been wiſh'd for by good Men, and which the Emperor had put them in Hopes of; and they intreated it might be made up of pious and good Men, who would conſult the Glory of Chriſt, and the Safety of the whole Church; for that was the cuſtomary and lawful Way of determining Eccleſiaſtical Differences, to refer them to Synods. This Cuſtom the Church had obſerv'd from the Time of the Apoſtles; and the excellent Emperors *Conſtantine* and *Theodoſius* made uſe of it, not only in Things that were not very doubtful, but even in the Caſe of abſurd Opinions; ſo that they would determine nothing without a Synod, that the Liberty of the Church in determining Opinions might be preſerved, which was an Example fit to be followed by the preſent Emperor, ſince they had changed nothing but according to the Pattern of the Primitive Church. They hop'd God had put ſuch an Opportunity into the Emperor's Hands, for the Reformation and Safety of the Church; and told him, That certainly

Digitized by Google

tainly God required it of him, that he ſhould make uſe of his Power for the Glory of our Saviour, and the Peace of the Church, to put a Stop to the barbarous and moſt unjuſt Cruelty, that was exercis'd every where with a wonderful Rage againſt pious and innocent Men, the Members of Chriſt. God had charged Princes with this as their chief Care, and therefore raiſed up *Cyrus* to deliver the *Jews* from Captivity, and *Conſtantine* to put an End to that extream Cruelty which was then exercis'd againſt Chriſtians; and they wiſh'd the Emperor would do the like.

For the Articles which they had exhibited were a manifeſt Evidence, that they taught nothing contrary to the Catholick Church, or that was Impious or Seditious: That they had indeed reform'd ſome Abuſes in External Traditions, wherein tho' there was a Difference, yet if the Doctrine and Faith continued pure, no Man ought to be accounted an Heretick, or Deſerter of the Catholick Church, for a Difference in Humane Traditions; becauſe the Unity of the Catholick Church conſiſted in an Agreement of Doctrine and Faith, and not in Humane Traditions, as to which there was always a great Difference among all the Churches in the World: Therefore they pray'd the Emperor not to liſten to the Slanders of their Enemies, for they had only reform'd ſuch Abuſes as were contrary to the Scripture, the ancient Canons, and the Example of the ancient Church, and deſir'd a fair Hearing. After which, they deliver'd in the Articles concerning the Abuſes, which they had reform'd in External Rites, as follows.

Of the Mass.

THey ſay, they were falſly charged with having aboliſh'd it, ſince they ſtill retain'd it with moſt of the uſual Ceremonies, except that they had mix'd ſome *German* Songs with thoſe in Latin, for the Inſtruction of the People; for Ceremonies were neceſſary to inſtruct the Unlearned, and that the handling of the Word of God might excite People to true Faith, Fear, and calling upon his Name; for *Paul* not only commanded to make uſe of a Language known to the People, but it had likewiſe been ſo appointed by Humane Law. They alſo aſſembled ſuch of their People, as were fit to receive the Sacrament, together, for that increas'd the Reverence and Religion of publick Ceremonies; and they admitted none till they were firſt examined. They alſo inſtructed their People in the Dignity and Uſe of the Sacrament, and what Comfort it propos'd to Penitents; that Men might learn both to fear and believe in God, to call upon his Name, and to expect good Things from him; which was the true Chriſtian Worſhip, and pleaſing to God, when they worſhip'd him thus in the Uſe of the Ceremonies. Hence they conclude, That the Maſs, by which they underſtood the Lord's Supper, was duly obſerv'd among them, and with greater Reverence and Gravity than formerly.

On this Occaſion they ſay, That for many Ages, good Men had complain'd of the Abuſe and Prophanation of the Maſs; for it could not be denied how much thoſe Abuſes had ſpread through all Churches, by what wicked Men it was celebrated, meerly for the Sake of their Belly, for it was too notorious to be diſſembled: That never any thing had been ſo much proſtituted for filthy Lucre, as the Maſs had been; tho' *Paul* had dreadfully threaten'd thoſe who us'd the Sacrament unworthily, when he ſays, *He that eats this Bread, and drinks this Cup unworthily, is guilty of the Lord's Blood.* And 'tis writ in the Decalogue, That he who takes the Name of the Lord in vain, ſhall not paſs unpuniſh'd. And as God had formerly puniſh'd the World for Idolatry, he would certainly revenge this horrid Abuſe of the Maſs with terrible Puniſhments: And perhaps it was for that Cauſe chiefly, that the Church in theſe latter Ages was ſo much puniſh'd with Blindneſs, Diſcords, Wars, and other Calamities; yet the Biſhops not only had ſuffered thoſe Abuſes, which they knew well enough, but were pleas'd with them, and laugh'd at them: Whereas now they begin too late to complain of the Calamities of the Church, tho' nothing elſe had occaſion'd ſuch Tumults but thoſe Abuſes, which were ſo open, that moderate Men

Digitized by Google

could no longer bear with them. Therefore they wiſh the Biſhops had before then, according to their Duty, reſtrain'd the Avarice and Impudence of the Monks and others, who having perverted the ancient Cuſtom of the Church, ſaid Maſſes only for Money.

They ſay, thoſe Abuſes proceeded from an Opinion, That the Lord's Supper was a Work, which being celebrated by a Prieſt, deſerv'd Remiſſion of Sins and Puniſhment, both to themſelves, and to thoſe who took it with them, and that meerly by the Act it ſelf, without any good Diſpoſition of Mind; and likewiſe, that being ſaid for the Dead, it deſerv'd Deliverance from the Pains of Purgatory. Thus they explain a Sacrifice, when they call the Maſs by that Name, *viz.* That it is a Work, which being done for others, deſerv'd a Remiſſion of Sin and Puniſhment; and thus they alledge an Oblation is made by the Prieſt for the Living and the Dead. This Opinion being receiv'd, they taught Men to ſeek thus for Remiſſion of Sins, and all ſorts of good Things; nor was it of any Importance by what ſort of Men thoſe Maſſes were ſaid, becauſe they taught that they were efficacious enough, without the good Diſpoſition of thoſe who us'd them. Then it came to be diſputed, Whether one Maſs ſaid for many, was as profitable as if every one had a Maſs ſaid for him? This increas'd both the Number and Gain of the Maſſes.

Therefore their Churches taught, That this Opinion of the Application and Merit of the Maſs was falſe and impious, by the following Arguments:

1. As they had ſhew'd above, becauſe Men obtain'd Forgiveneſs freely by Faith for Chriſt's Sake, and therefore it could not be obtained by the Work of another.

2. That Chriſt's Paſſion was a Sacrifice and Satisfaction for Original and Actual Sin, as appears by *Heb.* 10. 10. *&c. We are ſanctified by the Offering of Chriſt once for all.* A great Part of that Epiſtle is taken up in confirming this Doctrine, That it was only the Sacrifice of Chriſt which deſerved Remiſſion, and Reconciliation for others.

3. In the Inſtitution of the Supper, Chriſt does not command that the Prieſt ſhould offer for other Men alive and dead. By what Authority then could the Church appoint this as a Sacrifice for Sin, without God's Command.

'Tis ſtill more abſurd to apply the Maſs for delivering the Souls of the Dead, for 'twas appointed for a Remembrance; that is, that thoſe who took the Lord's Supper in Remembrance of the Benefits purchaſed by Chriſt, may be comforted, and have their Faith confirmed; ſo that 'tis not a Satisfaction for Puniſhment, but was inſtituted for the Remiſſion of Sins, *viz.* That by uſing it, we might be inſtructed in the Benefits we receive, and particularly of the Remiſſion of Sins by the Death of Chriſt. Therefore they condemn the Application of the Lord's Supper for the Deliverance of the Dead as a new and impious Piece of Worſhip, contrary to the Scripture.

4. A Ceremony without Faith in the New Teſtament deſerves nothing, neither to him that performs it, or to others, according to that of our Saviour: True Worſhippers ſhall worſhip the Father in Spirit and Truth. This is likewiſe prov'd by the 11th Chapter of the *Hebrews, That by Faith, Abel offer'd a more excellent Sacrifice than Cain.* Likewiſe, without Faith 'tis impoſſible to pleaſe God, which at once deſtroys the Doctrine of Merit *ex opere operato*, or by the Act it ſelf.

5. The Application of the Benefits of Chriſt is made by our own Faith, as appears by *Rom.* 3. 24, 25. *Being juſtified freely by his Grace, through the Redemption that is in Jeſus Chriſt, whom God hath ſet forth to be a Propitiation through Faith in his Blood, to declare his Righteouſneſs for the Remiſſion of Sins that are paſt, through the Forbearance of God*; and *v.* 28. *Therefore we conclude, that a Man is juſtified by Faith, without the Deeds of the Law.* So that when we take the Sacraments, the Application is made by our own Faith and Deed, and not by the Work of another; for if we had no Remiſſion but by the Maſs, our Faith muſt be transferred from Chriſt to the Act of the Prieſt, and ſo we could be at no Certainty.

Theſe Arguments, and many others, confute the Opinion of the Merit and Application of the Maſs for the Living and Dead; there-

Digitized by Google

therefore they apply to the Emperor, to deliver the Church from ſuch a dreadful Profanation and horrid Abuſe of the Lord's Supper.

6. The Inſtitution of the Sacrament is againſt this Abuſe, for there is no command there to offer up Sacrifice for the Sins of the Living and Dead; but we are commanded to take this Body and Blood in Remembrance of Chriſt's Benefits: And this Remembrance does not imply a meer Hiſtorical Repreſentation as on a Stage, as thoſe Men fancy, who defend the Merit *ex opere operato*; but implies, That by Faith we remember the Promiſe and Benefit comfort our Conſciences, and give thanks for it; for the principal End of the Inſtitution is, that our Faith may be rais'd and exercis'd, when we receive that Pledge of Grace; beſides the Inſtitution orders, that the Miniſters ſhould give or ſtretch out the Body and Blood of the Lord to others: This was the Cuſtom of the Primitive Church, 1 *Cor.* 11. 33. where the Apoſtle enjoyns, that when they come together to eat, they ſhould tarry for one another, that there may be a Participation of the Communion; therefore, they ſay, we have laid aſide private Maſſes as contrary to Chriſt's Inſtitution; but we Adminiſter on Holy-Days, and others, to ſuch as are found fit upon Examination, and the Ceremony is accompanied with Pious Sermons, as our Saviour appointed, wherein we inſtruct them of the Nature and Uſe of the Sacrament; whereas formerly nothing of that was done, nor any thing taught but the *Opus operatum*, nor was there any thing ſaid of Faith, or of the Comfort that redounds from it, but the Peoples Conſciences were tortur'd with extravagant Confeſſions. Thus our Adminiſtration appears to be agreeable to our Saviour's Inſtitution, and the Cuſtom of the Ancient Church, where the Sacrament was common, as *Chryſoſtome* informs us, when he ſays, That the Prieſt ſtood at the Altar, where he call'd ſome to the Communion, and kept off others; and by the Council of *Nice* 'tis evident, That one certain Perſon celebrated the Liturgy, as the *Greeks* call it, and ſtretch'd out to all the reſt the Body and Blood of the Lord. The Words of the Decree are thus, Let the Deacons receive according to order, after the Presbyters, the Holy Communion from a Biſhop or Presbyter, nor is there any mention of private Maſſes till *Gregory's* Time; but whenever the Ancients ſpeak of a Maſs, 'tis plain they ſpeak of one that was Common: Therefore ſay they, we hope the Practice of our Churches cannot be condemned. As to the reſt of the indifferent Rites we obſerve moſt of them, though we differ as to the frequency of the Maſs; and we find by the Tripartite Hiſtory, that in the moſt numerous Churches they had not Maſs every Day.

Of taking the SACRAMENT *in both Kinds.*

THIS they juſtify by our Saviour's Command, in *Matth.* 26. That of the Apoſtle, 1 *Cor.* 11. by the Authority of *Cyprian* and *Jerome*, and the Decrees of Pope *Gelaſius*, who condemn'd it as Superſtition not to take the Cup, and order'd that they ſhould either receive both or none, for it was a great Sacrilege to make a Diviſion of one and the ſame Myſtery. They make this Reflection upon withholding the Cup from the People, and not teaching them the true Uſe of the Sacrament; that the Mutilation of the Ceremony did perhaps ſignify, that the Goſpel concerning the Blood of Chriſt, *viz.* that the Benefit of his Death was thereby obſcur'd.

Of CONFESSION.

THey Complain, That the Doctrine of Repentance was obſcur'd by Divines and Canons, who tortur'd Peoples Conſciences with their perplex'd Diſputes, numberleſs Traditions and Injunctions, to tell all their Faults, and with their feign'd Satisfactions, which left them in perpetual Doubt, and obſcur'd the Benefits of Chriſt's Death; moſt of what they enjoyn'd not being Worſhip commanded by God, but vain Repetitions of Prayers, Invocations of Saints, Pilgrimages, and other Things of this Nature, by which they

overturn'd the true Doctrine of Repentance; as to which, good Men for many Ages have desir'd a Reformation; whereas without Sophistication we preach the Truth of the Gospel concerning Repentance, that Men may understand how they are to return to Christ; how they may obtain Forgiveness, and what Works and Worship are pleasing to God: Here they repeat what they had said before, as to the Nature of Repentance and Faith, and their retaining the true Use of Confession and Absolution, which their Enemies had obscur'd, and made dubious, by taking away from the Church the Ministry of the Gospel, or the Power of the Keys; whereas they taught, that an Enumeration of all our Sins to the Priest was impossible, and not commanded of God, as *Chrysostome* says on the *Hebrews*, "Let us not only be perswaded "that we have sin'd, and confess with "our Mouths, but from the bottom of "our Heart; and let us not only say, That "we are Sinners in general, but reckon up "our special Faults, not to betray our "selves to the Publick, or to accuse our "selves to others; but according to the "Prophet, to lay open our Lives before "God, and to confess our Sins to him. They add, That the Glosa in the Decrees concerning Repentance, *Distinct.* 5. owns, That Confession was appointed by the Church, but not by the Scripture; and that most of the Doctors were of that Opinion. Then, as to Canonical Satisfactions, they condemn them as what we are not oblig'd to, and as Things of no Efficacy for obtaining Forgiveness. In the Ancient Church they say, It was the Custom to impose a Mulct upon those who return'd to the Church after having fallen; from whence those Canonical Satisfactions took their Rise; not that the Ancients thought that Ceremony an Expiation of the Fault, but only made use of it to deter others from offending; but the Unlearned did afterwards alledge, That those Satisfactions absolv'd Men from the Sin, and deliver'd them from the Pains of Hell and Purgatory: But we teach, say they, That the necessary Fruits of Repentance, are Obedience, the Fear of God, Faith, Love, Chastity, and an intire Renovation of the Mind. Likewise, that Sins are frequently punish'd in this Life with Temporal Judgments, as in *David*, *Manasseh*, &c. and that those Punishments are mitigated by Good Works, and an Universal Repentance, as *Paul* teaches us, *If we judge our selves, we shall not be judged*; and thus God chang'd his Sentence against *Nineveh*, because of their Repentance.

Of the Difference of Meats, *and other such* Popish Traditions.

They say, in this Life there is need of Traditions, *i. e.* a Distinction of Places and Times, that all Things may be done with Order and Decency in the Church: Therefore the Church appoints the Times and Places for the Peoples assembling, and in those Civil Things has a Power of Tradition; but to this, Ignorant Men added superstitious Opinions without number, as *Augustine* and *Gerson* formerly complain'd; therefore they found it necessary to teach the People what they should think of Humane Traditions, for it was not in vain that our Saviour, and the Apostles, spoke so frequently of such Traditions; and admonish'd the Church to be prudent in their Determinations about 'em; whereas of late Ignorant Men had taught, that Ecclesiastical Traditions deserv'd Forgiveness of Sin, and were necessary for Gospel-Righteousness, and like the *Levitical* Ceremonies under the Law, could not be omitted without Sin, even when such Omission occasion'd no Scandal, by which they ascrib'd the Benefits of Christ's Death to Men's own Works, though *Paul* cautions us against it with so much Severity. 2. By those Traditions they obscur'd the Commands of God, to which they preferr'd them, and made Christianity wholly to consist in the Observation of certain Holy-Days, Rites, Fasts, Habits, &c. to which they ascribe Christian Perfection, without insisting upon the Relative Duties of People of all sorts, by which they brought Men to doubt whether their Civil Vocations, Marriage, Magistracy, &c. were pleasing to God, and occasion'd many to desert their Civil Duties with the Stations

Digitized by Google

tions that God had plac'd them in, and to retire into Monasteries, because they thought that was more pleasing to God, and deserv'd Remission of Sins. 3. They tortur'd Men's Consciences, by urging the Necessity of those Traditions, which were so innumerable, that the most diligent Man alive could not observe them; which *Gerson* says occasioned many Men to despair, and to kill themselves. Thus the Priests and Divines spent their Time in collecting those Traditions, and making Commentaries upon them, wherein they could not agree, which more and more perplex'd Men's Consciences; whereas at the same time they did not teach them one Word concerning Free Grace, Faith, Hope, of the Cross of Christ, and of Comfort of Conscience under Temptations; and totally laid aside the Scripture, and useful Doctrine, which have frequently been complain'd of by good Men, who found themselves hinder'd by such Brawls about Traditions, in seeking after a more useful Knowledge. Therefore, say they, we found it necessary to teach the People what they ought to think of Humane Traditions; not that they had any Design to destroy Ecclesiastical Authority, to detract from the Dignity of Bishops, or to dissolve the good Order of the Church, but to reprehend the *Jewish* Opinions; for our Opinion concerning Humane Ceremonies is, 1. That if they be such as contradict the Command of God, they are not to be observ'd, as that concerning Celibacy, *&c.* 2. For other Ceremonies which are in their own Nature indifferent, as Fasts, Holidays, Difference of Habits, and the like, that they do not deserve Forgiveness of Sins, nor constitute Righteousness or Christian Perfection, but may be omitted, except in Case of Scandal: For this, they quote *Rom.* 14. 17. *For the Kingdom of God is not Meat and Drink, but Righteousness and Peace, and Joy in the Holy Ghost*: Col. 2. 16. *Let no Man therefore judge you in Meat or Drink, or in respect of a Holy Day, or in the New Moon, or of the Sabbath Day*: Matt. 15. 11. *Not that which goeth into the Mouth defileth a Man*; where our Saviour excuses the Apostles for breaking the usual Tradition, and adds this memorable Sentence, *In Vain do they worship me, teaching for Doctrines the Commandments of Men.* Acts 15. 10, 11. *Why do ye tempt God, to put a Yoke upon the Neck of the Disciples, which neither our Fathers nor we were able to bear; but we believe, that through the Grace of the Lord Jesus Christ, we shall be saved, even as they.* So that the Apostle sharply rebukes them who burden Men's Consciences with such Observations, and calls it a tempting of God.; and 1 *Tim.* 4. 3. the Apostle calls forbidding to marry, and commanding to abstain from Meats, the Doctrines of Devils, because the Benefit of Christ's Death was ascrib'd to them, and they were enjoin'd as necessary; so that they wonder that Men were not mov'd with those Scriptures, but would still defend Superstitious Traditions: And here they say, That even Traditions concerning Things in their own Nature indifferent, as Meat, Clothes, *&c.* become impious, when they are enjoin'd as deserving Remission of Sin, as Things necessary, and as Parts of Worship or Duties; the immediate End of which is, that by them God may be honour'd: Therefore they thought it necessary, that such pestilent Opinions should be condemned by the Church; and for this Reason, unnecessary Humane Rites, as Difference of Meats, Monastical Habits, and such Superstitious Customs, were to be thrown off, as *Hezekiah* burnt the Brazen Serpent, when he saw it was worshipped by the People. But because Humane Society stands in need of Order, to that Political End some useful Ceremonies may be retained without Superstitious Opinions; *i. e.* That they be not looked upon as Worship, or necessary Things; That the People may know when they are to assemble in the Church, to Sermon, and Sacrament; and we likewise observe the Lord's Day, and other Holidays, and the usual Difference of Histories in our singing on the Day of our Lord's Birth, *Easter*, *Ascension*, *Pentecost*, &c. And our People love those Ceremonies the better, since their Consciences are deliver'd from Danger, and those unjust Impositions with which they were burden'd by the Monks and Canonists; and we teach them, that the End of those Institutions is Political, which right Interpretation makes 'em more grateful to moderate Minds: Therefore we say, That those Men are faulty who proudly

Digitized by Google

proudly and ſcandalouſly violate thoſe Ceremonies, *i. e.* who hinder the Miniſtry of the Goſpel.

This Liberty, ſay they, was not unknown to the Fathers; for which they quote *Irenæus*, who ſays, That Difference in Faſt-Days did not diſſolve Agreement in Faith. The *Tripartite* Hiſtory gives many Inſtances of Difference in Rites, and adds this excellent *Epiphonema*, *It was not the Mind of the Apoſtles to eſtabliſh any thing about Holidays, but to preach Godlineſs and a good Life.*

As to the Charge upon them, That they reject good Works, and the Mortification of the Fleſh; they complain of it as a Slander, for they taught the Neceſſity of good Works, as we have heard before: And as to true Mortification of the Fleſh, that conſiſts in bearing the Croſs, Dangers, Calamities, and Afflictions; and that Chriſtians are to mortify the Fleſh by Labour, Temperance, Meditation on Divine Things, and other ſuitable Exerciſes, leſt by Sloth or Fulneſs of Bread they be tempted to Sin, and that their Minds may be the more fit for Spiritual Exerciſe; but they are not to look upon thoſe Things to deſerve Remiſſion of Sin, or to be Satisfactory for it; and this Diſcipline ought to be perpetual, and not to be enjoin'd on all Men at certain Times. Concerning this Diſcipline, our Saviour ſays, *Luke* 21. 34. *And take heed to your ſelves, leſt at any time your Hearts be over-charged with Surfeiting and Drunkenneſs, and the Cares of this Life.* Likewiſe, *This kind of Devil goeth not out but by Prayer and Faſting*, Mark 9. 29. And *Paul* ſays, 1 *Cor.* 9. 27. *I keep under my Body, and bring it into Subjection.* Therefore we do not condemn Faſting, but only Superſtitious Opinions and Impoſitions on Men's Conſciences about it.

Of Prieſts Marriage.

THey ſay, That the Pope's Law about the Celibacy of the Clergy, has been the Fountain of greater Villany, Wickedneſs and Impurity, than can be expreſſed by Man; and being contrary to the Law of God, Nature, and the Goſpel, as alſo to the Conſtitutions of ancient Synods, there is no need of much Diſpute about it; and therefore they requeſt the Emperor to aboliſh that Tyrannical Law, by which the Clergy are more ſeverely and cruelly puniſh'd for marrying, than for the greateſt Crime, thô this Doctrine be cenſur'd by the Apoſtle as the Doctrine of Devils; and therefore neither the Pope's Laws, or the Vows of Celibacy, are to be pleaded againſt it, ſince it hath given Occaſion to ſuch luſtful Impurities, and other Villanies, as are enough to bring Judgments on the World; and that 'tis a miſerable Spectacle when Princes, who ought to be the Repreſentatives of God upon Earth, do not ſerve him, but the Fury of the Devil, by confirming horrid Sins, Idolatry, Luſt, and unjuſt Cruelty.

Of Monaſtical Vows.

THeir Doctrine concerning this, they ſay, will be better underſtood if the State of the Monaſteries be conſider'd, and how many Things are every Day committed in them againſt the Canons. In *Auguſtine's* Time, the Monaſteries were Free Colleges; but when the Diſcipline was corrupted, Vows were added, and many other Obſervations and Impoſitions, contrary to the Canons, as if Diſcipline could have been reſtored by a Priſon, which proved a Snare to People's Conſciences, eſpecially to Nuns, who being the weaker Sex, ought to have been more gently dealt with; and even thô the Canons would have allow'd them a Liberty, both Sexes were compelled to ſtay in the Monaſteries, thô they were ſenſible that they could not keep their Vows. This has been complain'd of many Ages ago by good Men, when they ſaw Youth of both Sexes thruſt into Monaſteries meerly for a Livelihood, which occaſioned many Scandals. Unto this, contrary to the Opinion of the firſt Monks, they added a ſuperſtitious Conceit, That thoſe Vows oblig'd them as much as the Vow of Baptiſm; That this ſort of Life deſerv'd Remiſſion of Sins, and Juſtification before God, more than obſerving his Commands, or the Rules of the Goſpel; and at laſt came to ſay, That the Monaſtick Profeſſion was better than Baptiſm, and deſerv'd

Digitized by Google

ſerv'd more than the Office of Magiſtrates, Paſtors, and others, who follow their lawful Vocations, as appears by their Books. Monaſteries were formerly Schools of Religion, where the Scriptures and good Diſcipline was taught, and from whence Paſtors and Biſhops were choſen; but now 'tis know to be ſo much otherwiſe, that there was no need to inſiſt upon it: Nor can we be charg'd, ſay they, with aggravating any thing, but only ſay this, that our Doctrine may the better be underſtood; which is, 1. That 'tis lawful to all Men, who have not the Gift of Continence, to marry, becauſe Vows cannot annul the Commands and Ordinances of God; which is, that to avoid Fornication every Man ſhould have his own Wife. 'Tis in vain for them to object their Vows; for the Canons teach, That in every Vow the Right of the Superior is excepted; therefore much leſs can thoſe Vows bind againſt the Law of God; and 'tis known that the Popes have ſeveral times diſpens'd with Vows, which proves that they judg'd there was an Equity neceſſary to be us'd in this Caſe: And the Canons reſciaded all Vows made before 15 Years of Age, and ſome of them forbid them before Eighteen. And *Auguſtine* ſays plainly, That Marriage cannot be diſſolv'd for ſuch Cauſes. We likewiſe teach, ſay they, That thoſe Vows are void, becauſe all ſorts of Worſhip choſen and appointed by Men, without the Command of God to deſerve Remiſſion of Sins and Juſtification, is Impious; as our Saviour ſays, *In vain do they Worſhip me by the Commandments of Men*; and *Paul* ſays, Gal 5. 4. *Whoſoever of you are juſtified by the Law, ye are fallen from Grace, and Chriſt is become of none Eff.ct to you.* They add many other Things, and particularly, That the Opinions of the Monks obſcure the Precepts and true Worſhip of God, by teaching, That they are only in a State of Perfection, ſince Chriſtian Perfection is to fear God, to believe that he is reconcil'd to us through Chriſt, to beg his Aſſiſtance in all the Duties of our Vocation, and to do good; but does not conſiſt in Celibacy, Begging, or a ſordid Habit; the teaching of which by the Monks, has occaſion'd many People to forſake their Wives and Children, their lawful Vocations, Poſſeſſions, and Publick Imployments, as if thoſe Things did not become Chriſtians. So that *Gerſon*, long ago, reprehended the Error of the Monks, and upbraided them with introducing a new Opinion; when in his Days they aſſerted, That the Monaſtical Life was a State of Perfection.

Of the POWER *of the* Church.

THere have been great Diſputes, ſay they, concerning the Power of Biſhops, in which ſome have very improperly join'd the Eccleſiaſtical Power with that of the Sword. From this confounding of the Two Powers, have proceeded many Wars and Commotions, while the Pope's relying on the Powers of the Keys, not only appointed new ſorts of Worſhip, and impos'd on Mens Conſciences by reſerving of Caſes and violent Excommunications, but alſo took upon them to diſpoſe of Kingdoms and Empires, which was complain'd of long ago by pious learned Men. We, ſay they, for the Eaſe of Mens Conſciences, found our ſelves oblig'd to ſhow the Difference betwixt Temporal and Eccleſiaſtical Power, and to teach, That both of them are by the Command of God to be reverene'd and honour'd, as the greateſt Benefits which God has given to Men on Earth. We believe, that the Power of the Keys, or the Power of Biſhops, is according to the Goſpel, the Command of God to preach the Goſpel, remit and retain Sins, and Adminiſter the Sacraments; for Chriſt ſent out his Apoſtles with this Command, *Mark* 16. 15. and *John* 20. 21, 22, 23. This Power is only exercis'd in preaching the Goſpel, and adminiſtring the Sacraments; therefore ſince the Eccleſiaſtical Power gives only Spiritual Things, and is exercis'd by the Miniſtry of the Word, it no more hinders the Political Adminiſtration than it does the Art of Singing, or any other Art; for the Political Adminiſtration has another Object than the Goſpel. Magiſtracy does not defend our Minds, but our Bodies and Eſtates againſt Injuries, and reſtrains Men by the Sword and bodily Puniſhments, ſo as they may obſerve Civil Juſtice;

Digitized by Google

Justice; therefore the Two Power are not to be confounded, Church-men have nothing to do with the Magistrate's Office, to dispose of Kingdoms, to abrogate Laws, to deprive the Magistrate of Obedience, to hinder their Judgments in Civil Matters, or to prescribe Laws to Magistrates, as to Forms of Civil Government; as our Saviour say, *My Kingdom is not of this World, who made me a Judge, or a Divider over you?* And *Paul* says, Phil. 3. 20. *Our Conversation is in Heaven:* And 2 Cor. 10. 4. *The Weapons of our Warfare are not Carnal, but Mighty through God, to the pulling down of strong Holds*, &c.

If Bishops have Power of the Sword, they have it not as Bishops by the Command of the Gospel, but by Humane Law from Emperors and Kings, for the Administration of the Temporal Estates, which is quite different from their Ministerial Function. For according to the Gospel, Bishops have no Jurisdiction as Bishops; that is, those to whom is committed the Ministry of the Word and Sacraments; but to remit Sins, to examine the Doctrine, to reject such as is contrary to the Gospel, and to exclude Persons, who are openly wicked, from the Communion of the Church, without any Humane Power, but by the Word: And in that Case the Churches are to give Obedience according to the Divine Command, according to that of our Saviour, *He that hears you, hears me*; but if they command any thing contrary to the Gospel, they are not to obey, as we find, *Matth. 7. Gal. 1. 2 Cor. 13.* If they have any other Power or Jurisdiction in determining Causes of Matrimony or Tithes, &c. 'tis only by Humane Law: 'Tis also controverted, whether Bishops have any Right to appoint any Ceremonies in the Church, and of making Laws about Meats, Holy-days, Degrees or Orders of Ministers: Those who ascribe that Power to them, alledges that Scripture, *I have still many things to say to you, which now you cannot bear; but when the Spirit shall come, he will guide you into all Truth*, John 16. 12, 13. They alledge also the Example of the Apostles; who commanded to abstain from Blood and Things strangled, and the change of Sabbath into the Lord's Day; and of this they boast much, because it was the Change of One of the Ten Commandments. But, as to the Question, we teach, That Bishops have no Power to appoint any thing contrary to the Gospel, as has been said already, and the Canons, *Distinct. 9.* say the same. Moreover, 'tis contrary to the Scripture to appoint or command Traditions, by the Observation of which we may deserve Remission of Sins, or make Satisfaction for them, for that is Derogatory to the Merits of our Saviour; for by this Means such a multitude of Traditions were brought into the Church, as overwhelm'd the Doctrine of Faith, &c.

Many Writers do likewise urge now-a-days, That the Worship of the *New Testament* ought to be like the *Levitical* Service, and that God has committed the ordering of this to the Apostles and Bishops; but they are deceiv'd by thinking that the Righteousness of the *New Testament* consists in the Observation of certain Rites, as it was under the Law; and hence they will have it, that such and such Meats defile us; that the not observing Canonical Hours is a mortal Sin, &c. That Sins in reserv'd Cases cannot be remitted, but by the Authority of him that reserv'd them; whereas the Canons speak only of the Reservation of Canonical Punishment, but not of the Reservation of the Fault: But whence have Bishops that Right of imposing Traditions upon the Churches to burden Mens Consciences? For we have clear Scripture against such Traditions, as are appointed either to deserve Remission of Sins, or as necessary for *New Testament* Righteousness, or to Salvation; for this they quote Col. 2. 16. *Let no Man judge you in Meat, or in Drink*, &c. And V. 20, 21, 22, 23. *If you be dead with Christ from the Rudiments of the World, why, as though living in the World, are you subject to Ordinances? Touch not, taste not, handle not. Which are all to perish with the using, after the Commandments and Doctrines of Men. Which things indeed have a shew of Worship in Will-Worship and Humility, and neglecting of the Body, not in any Honour to the satisfying of the Flesh.* *Titus* likewise plainly forbids Traditions, and our giving any heed to *Jewish* Fables, and Commandments of Men, that turn from the Truth: And Christ, in the 15th of

Digitized by Google

of *Matthew*, says of those who insist on Traditions, *Let them alone, they are blind Leaders of the Blind*: And he disapproves such kind of Worship, when he says, *Every Plant that my Heavenly Father hath not planted, shall be rooted up.*

As to the Lord's Day, and such Rites, they say, That 'tis lawful for Bishops or Pastors to make such Orders, that Things may be done orderly in the Church, as *Paul* ordered Women to be cover'd in the Church; and that the Prophets or Interpreters should be heard in Order. Such Orders are necessary in the Church for the Preservation of Love and Peace, that all Things may be done in Order, and without Tumult; but so as People's Consciences be not burden'd with an Opinion, That such Things are necessary to Salvation, and that they sin when they act contrary, without Offence to others; for no Man will say, That it was a Sin for a Woman to appear in Publick with her Head uncover'd, if it did not give Offence to others.

Such, say they, is the Observation of the Lord's Day, *Easter*, *Pentecost*, and such Holidays and Rites; for they who judge that, by the Authority of the Church, the Lord's Day was instituted for the Sabbath as necessary, are deceived. The Scripture grants, That the Observation of the Sabbath is now at Liberty; for it teaches, That the *Mosaick* Ceremonies, after the Gospel was revealed, were not necessary: And yet, because it was needful to appoint a certain Day, that the People might know when to meet, it appears that the Church appointed the Lord's Day for that purpose, which for this Cause seems to have been the more pleasing, that Men might have an Example of Christian Liberty, and know, that neither the Observation of the Sabbath, nor of another Day, was necessary.

There are prodigious Disputes concerning the Change of the Law, the Ceremonies of the New Law, the Change of the Sabbath; all which arise from a false Perswasion, That the Gospel-Worship must be like the *Levitical*; and that Christ committed to the Apostles and Bishops a Power to invent new Ceremonies necessary to Salvation. These Errors crept into the Church when the Righteousness of Faith was not clearly enough taught. Some alledge, That the Observation of the Lord's Day is not positively of Divine Right, but in a certain Manner; and they appoint Holidays so as it may be lawful to work on them: But these Disputes, say they, are nothing else but Snares to People's Consciences; and the Equity or Moderation of those Traditions can never be maintained, so long as the Opinion of their Necessity is inculcated. The Apostles commanded to abstain from Blood; yet those who do not observe that Command now, are not guilty of Sin, because the Apostles themselves were not willing to burden Men's Consciences with such a Servitude, but only forbad it for a Time, for avoiding of Scandal.

They add, That the Bishops might easily retain the People in lawful Obedience, did they not press them to observe such Traditions as they cannot in Conscience do. They say, they do not require that the Bishops, for the Sake of Concord, should sacrifice their own Honour, which yet were the Duty of good Pastors to do: They only require them to forbear their unjust Impositions, which are new, and contrary to the Custom of the Catholick Church; for many Humane Traditions have been chang'd in Time, as is plain from the Canons, without endangering the Unity of the Church: But if those Things cannot be obtained, they must rather obey God than Man. *Peter* forbids Bishops to Lord it over the Church; but they do not desire to take away their Power, but only request them to suffer the Gospel to be duly preached, and to release a few Observations that cannot be follow'd without Sin; but if they will not do it, they must be answerable to God for the Schism, which they occasion by their Obstinacy.

In the Conclusion, they say, these were the chief controverted Articles; and they could have mentioned many other Abuses, which for Brevity's Sake they omitted, and only insisted upon what they thought necessary, that it might be seen there was nothing received as to Doctrine or Ceremonies among them, which was contrary to Scripture, or the Catholick Church: And if any thing was wanting, they were ready to give the Emperor and the Diet a larger Information, God willing, according to the Scriptures.

Digitized by Google

We have been the larger in this Extract of the *Augsburg* Confeſſion, to ſatisfy the Deſires of ſome Gentlemen, who wanted a true Account of the Religion of the *Lutherans*, than which there is none more Authentick than this Confeſſion, to which they ſtill profeſs an Adherence; thô it be generally known, that many of 'em now are of another Opinion as to Free-will. 'Tis likewiſe valuable as being the firſt Confeſſion exhibited to the Emperor and Diet, with a Proteſtation by thoſe who were firſt called *Proteſtants* in the Empire, which afterwards became a general Name to all thoſe who ſeparated from the Church of *Rome*: And thô ſince they have come under different Denominations, yet their Doctrine is the ſame in the main with what's laid down in this Confeſſion. It may alſo be of Uſe to ſhew the Opinion of thoſe Noble Reformers as to ſeveral Points of Ceremonies and Government, about which we in theſe Nations have been ſo long and unhappily divided; which, thô it cannot be deciſive, as being humane, yet has its own Uſe, and if duly weigh'd, might be conducive to Moderation: But ſince, as we obſerv'd in the beginning of this Extract, that *Melanthon*, who wrote it, confeſs'd he did it in haſt; and that the Publiſher of this Edition of the *Harmony of Confeſſions* thought fit to add, for explaining it, the *Saxon*, *Wirtemberg*, *Palatine*, and *Bohemian* Confeſſions, with the Reconciliation of thoſe in *Poland* about the Supper of the Lord, who adher'd both to this and the Helvetick Confeſſion: We ſhall afterwards give a brief Account of thoſe Confeſſions, when we come to the reſpective Countries to which they belong, eſpecially as to ſuch Points wherein they differ from this, or explain it.

Their HISTORY.

THE *Germans* having no ancient Records of their own, the earlieſt Accounts we have of them is from the *Romans*, who inform us, That when they were over-ſtock'd with Inhabitants, they ſent away their ſupernumerary People. The Invaſion the *Cimbri* and *Teutones* made upon the *Romans* in the Days of *Marius* is very remarkable: They were reckoned to be 500000 armed Men, with a proportionable Number of Women and Children. This vaſt Multitude carried Deſolation along with 'em, and the *Romans* were afraid they would put an End to their Republick, which probably they might have done, their Numbers and Valour conſider'd; but by dividing their Army into two Bodies, *Marius* had a more eaſy Victory over them; ſo that they ſay, in one Battle he kill'd 100000, and took 60000.

We have little remarkable of them in the *Roman* Hiſtory till *Julius Cæſar*, who, after he had ſubdued *Gaul*, thought it would be impoſſible to preſerve his Conqueſts, unleſs he alſo ſubdued *Germany*. He was the firſt *Roman* General that paſs'd the *Rhine*, and his Pretext was, That they refus'd to deliver up ſome *German* Cavalry that had eſcap'd from him in one of his Victories over the *Gauls*. The *Germans* told him, The *Rhine* was the Boundary of the *Roman* Empire, and that he had no Buſineſs in *Germany*; upon which *Cæſar* made a Bridge over the *Rhine* in 10 Days, but found them ſo well intrench'd, that he thought not fit to attack them, repaſs'd the *Rhine*, and broke his Bridge, leſt the *Germans* ſhould follow him. In another Expedition he defeated them, and oblig'd ſome of them to be his Subjects and Allies, thô the Victory was dear bought.

Auguſtus continued the Deſign of conquering *Germany*, and *Tiberius* his General made ſome Progreſs in it; but the *Roman* Glory was conſiderably obſcured by *Arminius*, a mortal Enemy to the *Romans*, and a zealous Defender of the Liberty of his Country, who ſurpris'd 3 *Roman* Legions under *Varus*, and cut them in Pieces; which Diſgrace touch'd *Auguſtus* ſo ſenſibly, that he was often heard to cry out like a Mad-Man, *Varus, Reſtore me my Legions*. The famous *Germanicus* reveng'd this Loſs by a compleat Victory over the *Germans*, and made ſo great a Progreſs in *Germany*, that the Emperor *Tiberius*, who was ſuſpicious, thought it not ſafe to continue him as General in this War, for the Governors of this Province always made a great Figure; ſo that *Lentulus Getulicus*, who commanded in *Germany* after *Germanicus*, when *Tiberius* recall'd him, becauſe he was a Creature of *Sejanus*, then in Diſgrace, wrote to the Emperor,

Digitized by Google

peror, That the *Roman* Empire might content him; but as for himself, he would suffer no other General to come in his room.

After the Death of the brave *Arminius*, who was murder'd by his own Confidents for affecting a Monarchy, the *Romans* made greater Advances in *Germany*; but every Victory cost them dear; they were forc'd to dispute every Advantage they gain'd, and found it more difficult to keep their old Conquests, than to make new ones; for this Nation was so fond of Liberty, that they always revolted upon the least Opportunity. This made many of the Emperors take it for a Maxim, with Regard to *Germany*, Never to extend their Conquests beyond the *Danube*, and so hinder them from becoming too powerful on the S. of that River. The *Germans* were formerly very numerous, as appears by the vast Numbers of them cut off in Battles; for the Emperor *Probus* kill'd in several Encounters above 400000 of them, and obliged Nine of their Kings to come and beg Peace of him on very disadvantagious Terms. He was a great Enemy to the *Germans*, design'd to make that Country a Consular Province, and to build Forts every where to curb 'em, as he had already done upon the *Rhine*, the *Main*, and the *Neckar*; but Death prevented him.

The Emperor *Valentinian* resolv'd to subdue the *Quadi*, and to this End order'd a Citadel to be built in their Country. They complain'd of it; upon which the Work was discontinued for some time. Another Governor, who was entrusted with this Work, invited *Gabinius*, the Leading-Man of that Country, to an Entertainment, and kill'd him. The *Quadi*, enrag'd at this treacherous Action, made Reprisals upon the *Romans*, passed the *Danube*, and committed great Ravages in their Dominions. *Valentinian*, to revenge this, enter'd their Country, destroy'd all wherever he came with Fire and Sword, and swore he would exterminate them. After this, they sent Deputies to propose a Peace; but *Valentinian* was so enrag'd at the Sight of them, that by the Violence of his Passion he broke a Vein, which occasion'd such an Effusion of Blood, that it choak'd him.

After this, the *Romans* laid aside all Thoughts of conquering *Germany*; but the *Goths*, with other *German* Nations, and Northern People, invaded *Italy* in their Turn, ruin'd the *Roman* Empire, settled themselves in the several Parts of it, (which we shall give an Account of when we come to treat of the *Roman* Emperors) where they establish'd Limited Governments, with such Regulations as were proper to hinder Oppression and Arbitrary Power; for the *Roman* Arms had never prevailed so much among them, as to unsettle their former Methods of Government. Their being divided however into so many Governments, made it easier for the *Franks*, under the Kings of the *Merovingian* Family, to invade and reduce several of them; and at last *Charlemain* reduc'd all *Germany*.

This *Charles* was Son to *Pipin*, K. of *France*, and anointed and crown'd Emperor by Pope *Leo* III. on *Christmas-Day*, *A. C.* 800. He had before this rescued *Italy* from the Tyranny of the *Lombards*, took their King *Desiderius*, and annex'd his Dominions to the Kingdom of the *Franks*. Much about this Time ended his 30 Years War with the *Saxons*, then the most powerful People of *Germany*. His Pretence was, to oblige them to embrace Christianity; for wherever his Arms reach'd, he establish'd it, and erected Schools for that purpose. He had the Title of *Great*, both on Account of his Valour and Piety. He was at the same time Master of *Germany*, *France*, *Italy*, and Part of *Spain*. Most of the Provinces he committed to the Care of Governors, called *Marc-Graves*; but the *Saxons* were allow'd a greater Share of their ancient Liberty than the rest; and to keep them in Obedience, he founded many Episcopal Sees among 'em, that by their Influence they might be civiliz'd. *Charles* died in 814, in the 72d Year of his Age, and was buried at *Aix la Chapelle*, the chief Place of his Residence. He was succeeded by his Son

Lewis, sirnam'd the *Godly*, who was crown'd by Pope *Stephen* IV. at *Rheims* in *France*. He order'd the Bible to be translated into the *Saxon*, and Copies of it to be distributed among the Commonalty. He drove the *Saracens* from *Italy*, and worsted his Nephew *Bernard*, who design'd to make himself King of that Country; put out his Eyes, with those of some of his Followers, and condemn'd

condemn'd 'em to a Monaſtery. *Lewis* had three Sons by his Wife *Irmengarde*, viz. *Lotharius*, *Lewis*, and *Charles*. They rebell'd againſt their Father, took him Priſoner, and ſhut him up in a Monaſtery; but moſt of his Subjects taking Arms to reſcue him, *Lewis* ſubmitted to his Father, and begg'd Pardon. When the Emperor had got his Liberty, he marched with his own and his Son *Lewis*'s Forces againſt *Lotharius*, who had been deepeſt in the Rebellion, and died on his Way at *Mentz*, in the 27th Year of his Reign, and 64th of his Age, in 840.

He was ſucceeded by *Lotharius*, his eldeſt Son, in the whole Empire; for he turn'd his Brethren out of the Shares left them by their Father. *Lewis*, his Second Brother, had *Germany* for his Share, as far as it extends on this Side the *Rhine*; as alſo ſome Countries on the other Side, where the Vineyards were; ſo that he was the firſt that had *Germany* as an Independent Kingdom, ſays *Puffendorff*. *Lewis*, the youngeſt Brother, had *France*. *Lotharius* annex'd *Auſtraſia* to the *German* Empire, which from him was called in *High-Dutch*, *Loth-Reich*; and by the *French*, *Lot-Regne*, i. e. *Lotharius*'s Kingdom, now *Lorrain*. After he reign'd 15 Years, he abdicated the Government, and retir'd to a Monaſtery at *Treves*. In his Reign was the Female Pope *Joan*, under the Name of *John* VIII. as is evident from the concurring Teſtimonies of the Hiſtorians of that Age.

Lewis II. ſucceeded in 855, upon his Father's Reſignation: He was a Prince of wonderful Learning and Piety. He conquer'd and converted the *Sclavonians*: He defended *Italy* from the Inroads of the *Saracens*, and made good Proviſion for poor Widows and Orphans. He had a great Quarrel with the Court of *Rome* for electing a Pope without his Conſent. He reign'd 19 Years and 10 Months.

Charles the Bald, his Nephew, ſucceeded in 875. He was alſo King of *France*, but ſo mean Spirited, that he was cajol'd by the Promiſes and Money of Pope *John* IX. to come to *Rome* for his Coronation, and receive the Imperial Scepter from his Hand. He reign'd two Years, and was poiſon'd by one *Zedechias*, a *Jewiſh* Phyſician.

In 878, *Ludovicus Balbus* ſucceeded his Father *Charles*; but died in a Year and half after, and left the Crown to

Charles III. ſirnam'd the *Groſs*, from his Bulk and Fatneſs. By the Death of his two Brothers, all *Germany*, *France* and *Italy*, fell to him. He was the firſt that added the Year of our Lord to that of his Reign in publick Deeds. He became odious to his Subjects upon many Accounts, but chiefly becauſe he made a diſhonourable Peace with the *Normans*, and quitted to 'em that Part of *France* ſtill called *Normandy*. His Nobles depos'd him, and he died miſerably in a poor Village in *Swabia*.

In 888, *Arnulph*, natural Son to *Carloman* Duke of *Corinthia*, and King of *Bavaria*, was elected inſtead of *Charles*. In the beginning of his Reign, he had great Struggles for the Imperial Title with *Berengarius* Duke of *Friouli*, and *Guido* Duke of *Spoleto*, whom he defeated. He alſo ſtormed and took *Rome*; but was poiſon'd there by *Guido*'s Wife, and died in great Miſery, being eat up of Lice which the Poiſon bred in his Body.

In 900, his Son *Lewis* IV. a Child, was elected. He had conſtant War with the *Hungarians*, and was frequently defeated by 'em; ſo that a great Part of the *German* Nobility was cut off, which was chiefly owing to their own Diviſions. He died unfortunate, and with him the Family of *Charles the Great* was extinguiſh'd. During his Reign, the Pope ſet up one *Lewis* for Emperor in *Italy*, whom *Berengarius* King of *Lombardy* took Priſoner, and put out his Eyes.

In 912, after the Death of *Lewis* IV. the Princes of *Germany* proffer'd the Imperial Crown to *Otto* D. of *Saxony*, the wiſeſt Prince and beſt Soldier of his Time; but he declin'd it, becauſe of his Age, and gave his Intereſt to *Conrad* Duke of *Franconia*, who was choſen. In his Time the *Hungarians* ravag'd *Saxony*, *Thuringia*, *Franconia*, *Lorrain*, and *Alſace*, and forc'd him to a diſhonourable Peace. This Conduct having diſoblig'd many of the Princes, they made War upon him, and the Heir of *Saxony*, Duke *Otto*'s Son, was his greateſt and moſt ſucceſsful Enemy; yet by his Laſt Will he left the Empire to him for his Merit; and thus it was tranſlated from the *Carolingian* Family

Digitized by Google

mily to the *Saxons*. In his Reign the Dukes of *Lorrain*, *Swabia*, and *Bavaria*, endeavour'd to make their Poſſeſſions Hereditary, which he could not prevent.

In 919, *Henry* of *Saxony*, ſirnam'd the *Fouleoner*, becauſe he delighted in Fowling, was proclaimed Emperor. The Pope proffer'd to anoint and conſecrate him; but he refus'd it, ſaying, *He was Emperor by the Providence of God, and the Conſent of his People, which gave him a ſufficient Title; and they that thought that not good enough, might go to* Rome *for a better*. He bravely defended his Subjects from the *Hungarians*, who made a great Inroad, and demanded a Yearly Tribute, for which he ſent them, by way of Ridicule, a mangy Dog, defeated them near *Merſeburg*, and ſlew 80000 of them, for which he was called *Pater Patriæ*, the Father of his Country. In his Reign, the greateſt Part of the Cities on the *Rhine* were either built or wall'd. He conquer'd the *Serbes* and *Vandals*, a *Sarmatick* Nation, who were poſſeſſed of a great Tract of Land on the River *Elbe*. He drove them out of *Miſnia*, *Luſatia*, and the Marquiſate of *Brandenburg*. He was the firſt that inſtituted Sports and Turnaments; and order'd, that every 9th Boor ſhould remove his Family into a City, which ſhould be maintained by the Third of the Corn and Hay round it. He died of an Apoplexy in his Journey to *Italy*, after he had reign'd 7 Years and 6 Months.

In 936, his Son *Otho*, ſirnam'd the *Great*, ſucceeded. He had all the Princely Qualifications of his Father, compell'd *Harald* King of *Denmark* to own his Supremacy, and embrace Chriſtianity, ſubdued the *Sclavonians* and *Bohemians*, and forc'd *Boleſlaus*, the Prince of the latter, to turn Chriſtian. He was engaged in Civil Wars with many Princes, eſpecially with thoſe who pretended to be of the Race of *Charles the Great*, and laid Claim to the Imperial Crown. He defeated the *Hungarians* near *Augsburg*; after which they never attempted any more Incurſions. There had been great Confuſions in *Italy* for a long time; for ſometimes one, ſometimes another, uſurp'd the Sovereignty there, which obliged *Otho* to march his Troops thither, and poſſeſs himſelf of that Country. He married the Widow of *Lotharius* King of *Lombardy*, ſays the *Atlas Hiſtorique*, and brought the Tyrant *Berengarius* to ſubmit; but he revolted again during the Civil Wars of *Germany*, over-run *Italy*, and diſtreſſed Pope *John* XII. and the City of *Rome* ſo, as they ſent to *Otho* for Relief, who having deliver'd them from the Tyrant, they crown'd *Otho* King of *Italy* with the Iron Crown at *Milan*, proclaim'd him Emperor at *Rome*, forfeited *Berengarius* and his Poſterity, and the Pope and Senate ſwore Fealty to the Emperor, on Condition of his preſerving the Rights of the Holy See: After which Time, the Imperial Dignity and Crown of *Italy* were reckon'd Conſequences of being Kings of *Germany*. But the Pope ſoon after conſpired with *Albert*, Son to *Berengarius*, againſt him; and the Emperor marching again into *Italy*, the Pope and *Albert* fled to *Oſtia*; the *Romans* renew'd their Oath of Fealty, and promis'd never to elect a Pope without the Conſent of him and his Son. The Clergy and People pray'd him to call a Council, where *John* XII. was depoſed, and *Leo* VIII. choſe, who in the *Lateran* Council, where *Bennet*, whom the *Romans* had perfidiouſly choſen afterwards, was depoſed, confirmed to *Otho*, King of the *Germans*, and his Succeſſors, the Right of chuſing the Pope, as *Adrian* had granted to *Charlemain*, and to inveſt the Biſhops in his Dominions. *Otho* returning to *Germany*, was obliged to a new Expedition to puniſh the *Italians* for their Revolt, reſtor'd Pope *John* XIII. chas'd the *Greeks* out of *Italy*, for the Treachery of *Nicephorus Phocas* their Emperor; and retiring to *Germany*, died at *Merſbourg*, *May* 7. 974. in the 37th Year of his Reign, and 12th of his Empire. *Puffendorf* obſerves, That the frequent Revolts of the *Italians* was occaſioned by his having no Strengths in *Italy*, and little Revenues there, except Free Quarters for his Army. Chriſtening of Bells began in this Emperor's Reign.

His Son *Otho* II. with whom he ſhar'd his Government, ſucceeded. The Duke of *Bavaria*, his Couſin, inſtigated by ſome Biſhops, was proclaimed Emperor at *Ratiſbon*, but ſoon reduced: After which, *Otho* made War on *Lotharius* King of *France*, who invaded *Lorrain*, and defeated him near *Aix la Chapelle*. *Otho* afterwards enter'd *France*, and ravag'd the Neighbourhood of *Paris* with

Digitized by Google

with a potent Army; but was defeated in his Return, and had Advice at the ſame time, that the *Greeks* and *Saracens* had ſubdued Part of *Italy*, on which he made a Peace with *Lotharius*, by which he recover'd *Lorrain*. *Otho* marched into *Italy*, and enter'd *Rome*; but having murder'd their Chief Men and Magiſtrates, whom he invited to a Feaſt in the *Vatican*, the *Italians* abhorring this Cruelty and Treachery, abandon'd him at the Battle of *Baſentello*; ſo that his Army was routed, and he himſelf eſcaping in a Veſſel, was taken by Pyrates, from whom he got away by meer Chance; and as he was aſſembling an Army to retrieve his Diſgrace, he died at *Rome*, either of Grief, or by the Wound of a poiſon'd Arrow, that had never been well cur'd, the 8th of *December*, 983. in the 10th Year of his Reign.

His Son *Otho* III. ſucceeded at 10 Years of Age, thô his Uncle the Duke of *Bavaria* was his Rival. The Archbiſhops of *Mentz* and *Cologne* were his Tutors, and *Gerbert*, afterwards Pope *Silveſter* II. his Præceptor. *Creſcentius*, Conſul of *Rome*, made *Italy* to revolt ſome time after; upon which the Emperor marched againſt him, reduced the Country, and took him in *Adrian*'s Tower, now the Caſtle of *St. Angelo*; and Pope *John* XV. dying, made his Couſin *Bruno* of *Saxony* Pope, by the Name of *Gregory* V. at whoſe Requeſt he pardon'd *Creſcentius*, who, after his Return to *Germany*, deſign'd to make himſelf abſolute at *Rome*, under Pretence of aſſiſting the *Romans* to recover their Liberty. This oblig'd *Otho* to march thither with an Army: He beſieg'd *Rome*, which ſurrender'd, and *Creſcentius* was thrown Head-long from a Rampart. *Gregory* XV. being dead, *Otho* ſet up his Præceptor *Gerbert* in his room, and renewed the Privileges which *Charlemain* had granted to the See. After this, *Otho* return'd to *Germany*, went in Pilgrimage to *Poland* to ſee the Corps of St. *Adalbert*, and erected the Dutchy of *Poland* into a Kingdom. In his Return the Pope ſent him Word, That the *Saracens* had taken *Capua*, in Correſpondence with the *Romans*, who were grown weary of the *German* Government. This obliged him to repaſs into *Italy*, where he ſoon reduced the *Saracens*; but truſting too much to the *Romans*, who had again ſubmitted, and entring the City with a ſmall Retinue, they beſieg'd him in his Palace, from whence the Duke of *Bavaria* and Marquis of *Hetruria* contriv'd his Eſcape, while they amus'd the People with Terms of Accommodation. Upon this he re-enter'd the City with his Army, and puniſh'd the Mutineers ſeverely: After which, as he was returning to *Germany* to quell a Party that was forming againſt him, he died of Convulſions, occaſion'd by Poiſon, in *January* 1002, in the 32d Year of his Age, and 19th of his Reign, without Iſſue. *Puffendorf* ſays, he was poiſon'd by a Pair of Gloves preſented him by *Creſcentius*'s Widow, whom Dr. *Nicholſon* thinks he had us'd as a Concubine, and flatter'd her with Hopes of Marriage; but being diſappointed, ſhe took that Way of Revenge. Some ſay, he was the firſt who appointed the Emperor to be choſen by the Majority of Seven Electors.

His Couſin *Henry* II. D of *Bavaria*, was choſen in his Place, according to his dying Requeſt. The Marquis of *Ivrea* perſwaded the *Italians* to revolt, and defeated *Henry*'s Army, commanded by the Duke of *Saxony*, at the Foot of the *Alps*; but *Henry* defeated him next Year, and was crown'd at *Pavia*. The *Poles* enter'd *Germany* during his Abſence; but upon his Return, he forc'd 'em home. After this, he applied himſelf to make good Laws, to reform Abuſes, to eſtabliſh Biſhopricks, and other Religious Foundations, and to enrich the Clergy. His Friends were angry at this, alledging, he gave his Riches to thoſe who would make no good Uſe of them; and the Duke of *Bavaria* taking Arms againſt him, was ſubdued; but pardon'd and reſtor'd. Pope *Bennet* VIII. implor'd his Aſſiſtance againſt thoſe who had choſen the Anti-Pope *Gregory* VI. whoſe Party abandon'd him, and recall'd *Bennet*, upon the Emperor's defeating the Rebels. Near *Verona* he obtain'd a ſecond Victory over *Ardouin*, and went to *Rome*, where he was crown'd by the Pope, confirm'd all the Privileges of his See, reſerving only the Sovereignty of *Rome*, and the Power of ſending Deputies thither to receive the Complaints of the People. He reſtored them the Privilege of chuſing the Popes, allow'd them the Liberty to be conſecrated before they ſwore Fealty to the Impe-

Digitized by Google

Imperial Officers, and return'd to *Germany*; but was ſoon recall'd, defeated the *Greeks*, who had invaded *Italy*, chas'd them out of the Country, and in his Return had an Interview with *Robert* King of *France*, at the Confluence of the *Oiſe* and the *Maeſe*, where they made a League. He died the 17th of *July*, 1024. in the 52d Year of his Age, and 22d of his Reign, without Iſſue. Dr. *Nicholſon* ſays, he agreed with his Empreſs *Cunegonda*, that both of them ſhould preſerve their Chaſtity; and upon Suſpicion of her Fidelity, made her purge her ſelf by the Fiery Ordeal, which ſhe paſſed without Hurt, if we may believe the Legendaries. *Puffendorf* tells us, That *Echert* Landgrave of *Heſſe* contended with him for the Crown, but loſt his Life in the Quarrel: That he ſubdued *Boleſlaus* K. of *Poland*; and for his Munificence to the Clergy, was made a Saint. He is alſo called the Apoſtle of *Hungary*, becauſe he throughly converted that Nation; and he defeated the *Wendiſh* Armies, who over-ran much of *Germany*.

The Duke of *Franconia Conrad* the *Salique*, ſo call'd, either becauſe his Mother was a *French* Woman of *Charlemain*'s Poſterity, or becauſe he liv'd according to the *Salique* Law, being recommended by *Henry* on his Death-bed, ſucceeded, thô oppos'd by his Couſin *Conrad* the Younger. The *Saxon* Princes being angry that the Empire went from their Family, rais'd a War, which iſſued at laſt in the Ruin of both the Families. *Conrad* however ſubdued the Malecontents, went into *Italy*, accompanied by Prince *Henry* his Son, *Rodolph* King of *Burgundy*, and *Canute the Great* King of *Denmark*. He defeated the Rebels who oppos'd his Paſſage through the *Alps*, was crown'd King of *Italy* at *Milan*, and Emperor at *Rome*. While he was there, ſeveral Princes of the Empire took Arms to depoſe him. Upon his Return, he defeated them, pardoned ſome, and forfeited others. He alſo routed the *Friſons*, who had invaded his Country; and he acquir'd the Kingdom of *Burgundy*, which *Rodolph* III. Uncle to the Empreſs, had left to her Son Prince *Henry*, and defeated and kill'd *Eudes* Count of *Champagne*, Nephew to *Rodolph* by his Siſter, who claim'd it as neareſt of Kin. He routed the *Lombards*, who had rebelled, quieted all *Italy*, turn'd out *Pandolph* the Tyrant of *Capua*, and gave it the Prince of *Salerno*. He died at *Utrecht* the 4th of *June*, 1039. in the 15th Year of his Reign. *Puffendorf* ſays, he was alſo very ſucceſsful againſt the *Poles* and *Sclavonians*. Other Hiſtorians give him this Character, That he was quick in Council, bold in Execution, belov'd by the Princes, the Darling of the People, and the Welfare of the Commonwealth. He made a Law, That no Prince of the Empire ſhould invade any Province of it on Pain of Death.

His Son *Henry* III. ſirnamed the *Black*, ſucceeded, being Crown'd King of *Germany* 10 Years before by Conſent of the States. He defeated and took the King of *Bohemia*, who refus'd to own the Sovereignty of the Empire, and releas'd him upon ſwearing Fealty, and paying his Arrears of Tribute. He routed the *Hungarians*, who aſſiſted the *Bohemians*, reſtor'd their King *Peter*, and dethron'd the Uſurper they had ſet up in his ſtead. Having Peace at home, he endeavour'd to procure the like to the Church, then plagu'd with three Anti-Popes, *Benet*, who reſided at St. *John de Lateran*; *Silveſter*, at St. *Peter*'s; and *John*, at St. *Mary Major*. *Gratian*, a Prieſt, got them all three to renounce for Money, and was choſen himſelf by the Name of *Gregory* VI. but his Election not being Canonical, the Emperor prevail'd with him to reſign voluntarily at the Council of *Sturi*, having a Mind to recover the Right of Election himſelf. He thereupon aſſembled the Clergy, Senate, and People, in St. *Peter*'s Church, and nam'd his own Chancellor *Suidger*, Biſhop of *Bamberg*, whom they approved, and he was conſecrated by the Name of *Clement* II. He afterwards Crown'd the Emperor, who aſſiſted in a Council for aboliſhing Simony, the common Plague of the Church; and *Clement* died at *Bamberg* 9 Months after. *Bennet* IX. who repented his having depos'd himſelf, invaded the Chair; but was obliged to give Way to *Popon* Biſhop of *Brixia*, whom the Emperor got elected by the Name of *Damaſus* II. *Popon* reign'd but 23 Days, and *Bennet* reſum'd the Chair; but being odious for his ſcandalous Life, the Clergy and People ſent Deputies to the Emperor, who in an Aſſembly at *Worms* named *Bruno* of *Alſace*, Biſhop of *Toul*, his Couſin, to be Pope. *Bruno*, in his Way to *Rome*, being per-

Digitized by Google

ſwaded by *Hildebrand*, Prior of *Clun*, that his Election was not Canonical, becauſe it did not belong to the Emperor, but to the Clergy, Senate and People, to chuſe him freely, he went to *Rome* without any Marks of his Dignity; which Humility pleas'd the *Romans* ſo much, that they choſe him unanimouſly. In the mean time the Emperor made War on *Godfrey the Bold*, Duke of *Nether-Lorrain*, who took Arms againſt him for depriving him of *Upper-Lorrain*, in which his Father was inveſted by *Conrad the Salique*; but the Pope reconcil'd them. *Godfrey* diſſembled on his Part; therefore to ſpite the Emperor, and to make him jealous, he married his Siſter *Beatrix*, who was the Marquis of *Hetruria*'s Widow, without his Conſent: Upon this, *Henry* went with an Army, and took her from him, leſt ſhe ſhould have conſpired with her Husband to deprive him of the Crown of *Italy*; which ſo much enraged *Godfrey*, that he engaged his Couſin *Baldwin* of *Liſle*, Count of *Flanders*, to join with him againſt the Emperor, who died ſome Time after in *Saxony*, the 5th of *October*, 1056. in the 31ſt Year of his Age, and 18th of his Reign, leaving ſeveral Children by his ſecond Wife *Agnes*, Daughter to *William* Duke of *Aquitain*. Dr. *Nicholſon* ſays, he renewed the old Law, *That no Pope ſhould be created without the Conſent of the Emperor*.

Henry IV. his Son, ſucceeded. His Reign was long and unfortunate. He was but Six Years of Age when he came to the Crown, and thoſe entruſted with his Education neglected it. In his Minority, ſays *Puffendorf*, Church-men purchas'd Benefices at Under-Rates, and without Regard to Merit, which did the Empire much Miſchief. When he came of Age, he reſolved to make them give up thoſe Purchaſes, which brought upon him the Hatred of the Clergy. The *Saxons* were his great Enemies, becauſe he built Forts to bridle them, and ſeldom employ'd them in Offices. He communicated his Reſolutions to the Princes of the Empire but rarely, and was managed by Favourites of mean Birth. On this Account the *Saxons* made a long War upon him; but he vanquiſh'd them at laſt. Pope *Hildebrand* or *Gregory* VII. gave him more Trouble than all his other Enemies. This Pope and his Predeceſſors were vex'd that they and the Clergy ſhould be ſubject to the Emperor; and *Hildebrand* thought it the fitteſt Time to embroil his Affairs when he was in War with the *Saxons*, and hated by moſt of his Princes. Upon this the Pope made a Decree, That it was not in the Power of the Emperor, or of any Secular Prince, to diſpoſe of Church-Benefices, nor give Inveſtiture of Biſhopricks; and that it belong'd only to the Pope. He alſo ſummon'd the Emperor to appear at *Rome*, to anſwer for his Male-Adminiſtrations, on Pain of Excommunication. On the other hand, the Emperor declar'd the Pope unworthy of that Poſt, and deſign'd to depoſe him. Upon this, the Pope excommunicated him, and freed his Subjects from their Allegiance, which in thoſe Times of Ignorance and Bigotry prov'd fatal to the Emperor, deſtroy'd his Authority at once, and reduc'd him to great Extremities; for the greateſt Part of the Princes aſſembled at *Treves*, where they depos'd *Henry*; but left the Execution of the Sentence to the Pope's Pleaſure. So that to procure the Pope's Pardon, the Emperor made a Journey to *Italy* in the midſt of Winter; and when he arrived at *Canuſſo*, he conſented to the Penance of ſtaying there 3 Days in a ſharp Winter bare-footed, with his Wife and Son in the like Poſture, in a coarſe Woollen Habit, in the outer Court, and in an humble Manner to beg the Pope's Pardon and Abſolution, which at laſt he obtain'd: But this mean Behaviour made him deſpicable to his Subjects; upon which he endeavour'd to recover his Reputation, and reduce the Rebels in *Italy* to Obedience. To prevent this, many of the Princes of *Germany*, by the Pope's Inſtigation, elected *Rudolph* Duke of *Schwaben* Emperor, to whom the Pope ſent an Imperial Crown, with this Inſcription:

Petra dedit Petro, Petrus Diadema Rudolpho.

The Rock this Crown to Peter *gave,*
And Peter *gives it* Ralph *his Slave.*

But the *Bavarians*, *Franconians*, and the Countries adjacent to the *Rhine*, remained faithful to *Henry*. Thus a bloody War enſued, wherein *Rudolph* and the *Saxons* were vanquiſh'd in two Battles, and in the third *Rudolph* loſt his Life. After this, *Henry* conven'd

Digitized by Google

ven'd an Aſſembly of Biſhops, in which *Hildebrand* was depos'd, and the Anti-Pope *Clement* III. was elected. The Emperor took *Rome*, and baniſh'd *Hildebrand*: But the *Saxons* continued in their Rebellion, and *Hildebrand* a ſecond time excommunicated the Emperor, ſet up *Herman* Duke of *Luxemburg* in his ſtead, and after his Death *Echert* Marquis of *Saxony*. At laſt he ſtirr'd up the Emperor's Son *Henry* againſt his Father, whom he met, and deceitfully begg'd his Pardon; upon which the Emperor disbanded his Forces, and was treacherouſly made Priſoner and depos'd, in his Journey to the Diet at *Mentz*, with a ſmall Retinue. He died ſoon after in great Miſery, and ſo poor, that he begg'd a Prebendary of the Biſhop of *Spires*, in the Church which he himſelf had built and endow'd, which was deny'd him. He reign'd 50 Years, during which he is ſaid to have fought 66 great Battles, and generally obtain'd the Victory; which is more, as Dr. *Nicholſon* obſerves, than *Marcus Marcellus*, *Julius Cæſar*, or any other *Roman* General, could boaſt of.

In 1106, he was ſucceeded by his Son *Henry* V. who imitated his Father, in maintaining the Imperial Power againſt the Incroachments of the Pope. After he had ſettled Affairs in *Germany*, he marched an Army to *Rome*, to recover the Emperor's Right in nominating the Popes, and alſo to be crown'd there. Upon this, Pope *Paſchal* II. rais'd a great Tumult at *Rome*, in which the Emperor was ſo cloſely beſet, that he was obliged to fight for his own Safety; and having diſpers'd the Mob, made the Pope Priſoner, forc'd him to grant his Demands, and to confirm the Agreement with ſolemn Oaths and Execrations; but as ſoon as the Emperor return'd, the Pope declar'd the Agreement void, and ſtirr'd up the *Saxons* and Biſhops of *Germany* againſt him, with whom he had a tedious War; and ſeeing at laſt that there was no other Way to end thoſe Broils, he renounc'd his Right to the Inveſtiture of Biſhops in a Diet at *Worms*. This very much leſſen'd the Emperor's Power, and exalted that of the Pope. Some Hiſtorians obſerve, That at his Coronation, Part of his Sword was melted with a Flaſh of Lightning, thô the Scabbard was untouch'd... He reign'd 19 Years, died without Iſſue, and was buried at *Spires*.

Lotharius Duke of *Saxony* ſucceeded in 1125. He had *Conrad* Duke of *Franconia*, and *Frederick* Duke of *Swabia*, for his Rivals; but oblig'd them to ſubmit after a long War. The *Atlas Hiſtorique* ſays, This War was concluded by the Prudence of St. *Bernard*; after which the Emperor carried Pope *Innocent* II. with him, eſtabliſh'd him in the Chair, and was crown'd by him. He return'd to *Germany*, ſuppreſs'd a Rebellion in *Bohemia*, and defeated *Magnus* King of *Denmark*. He marched again into *Italy*, and reſtor'd Pope *Innocent*, who had been chaſed from *Rome* by the Anti-Pope *Anaclet*, with the Aſſiſtance of *Roger* of *Sicily* and the *Normans*; and having quieted that Country, he died in a Village on the *Alps* as he returned, the 30th of *September*, 1137, in the 13th Year of his Reign, leaving two Daughters, who were married to the Duke of *Bavaria* and the Landgrave of *Thuringia*. Dr. *Nicholſon* ſays, he reſtor'd the Civil Law in *Germany*, after it had been baniſh'd from thence 500 Years.

Conrad III. Duke of *Schwaben*, *Lotharius*'s Siſter's Son, was choſen about 4 Months after at *Coblentz*. His Election was oppos'd by *Henry* Duke of *Saxony* and *Bavaria*, and his Brother *Welff*, which occaſioned great Confuſion and Blood; but they being at laſt ſubdued, and Peace eſtabliſhed, he undertook a Croiſade into the *Holy Land*, where he was in great Dangers; for he was obliged to fight his Way through the *Saracens* before he could reach *Jeruſalem*, where he loſt the greateſt Part of his Army, by the Treachery of the *Greeks*, without doing any thing conſiderable. This obliged him to return home. He died the 15th of *February*, 1152, in the 13th Year of his Reign, as he deſigned to march into *Italy*. He is ſaid to have been the firſt Emperor that was elected by the Seven Electors. In his Reign, *Gratian*, a *Benedictine* Monk, made a Collection of the Canon Law, which was afterwards taught in the Univerſities of *Germany*.

Frederick I. Duke of *Swabia*, ſirnamed *Barbaroſſa*, becauſe of his Red Beard, ſucceeded. His Election was chiefly promoted becauſe a *Ghibelin* by his Father, and a *Guelph*

Digitized by Google

by his Mother, that he might reunite those two potent Families, which had so long disturbed the Peace of *Germany*. He was one of the greatest Princes ever *Germany* had, and bravely maintain'd the Rights and Grandeur of the Empire. He supported the Archbishop of *Magdeburg* against Pope *Eugene* III. and reduc'd the Towns of *Lombardy* that endeavoured to form themselves into Republicks in the Reign of *Lotharius*. He went to *Rome*, and was crown'd by Pope *Adrian* IV. whom he carried thither. The *Romans* being angry that they had no Share in the Ceremony, they besieged the Pope in the *Vatican*, because they thought he occasioned it; but the Emperor rescued and carried him to *Tivoli*. On his Return, he agreed the Quarrel betwixt the Archbishop of *Mentz* and *Herman* Count *Palatine* of the *Rhine*, who being the Aggressor, was sentenced to carry a Dog on his Shoulders from County to County; for Grief of which he died. *Frederick* assembled the States of the Empire at *Besançon*, where he received a haughty Letter from the Pope, intimating as if he had received the Sovereignty from him; upon which the Emperor and the States were so offended, that they commanded the Legates immediately to depart the Empire. The Pope dreading the Consequences, wrote another Letter, explaining the former, *viz.* That by the Word Benefice, he did not mean that the Emperor received the Crown from him as a Fief, but only that he reckoned his crowning him as a good Deed, which pleased the Emperor; but he soon had a greater Quarrel with the Pope, who could not bear that the Emperor should demand an Oath and Homage from all the Feudatories of the Empire, Ecclesiasticks as well as Seculars, and confirm'd them in their Possessions. The Pope sent 4 Cardinals to complain of it; but the Emperor maintain'd his Right, and offered to refer the Matter to Arbitrators, or otherwise to treat with the Senate of *Rome* about it. This provok'd the Pope, who look'd upon it as an Impeachment of his Authority, and design'd to have excommunicated the Emperor for it; but his Death prevented it. Most of the Cardinals following *William the Wicked*, K. of *Sicily*, chose the Cardinal of *St. Mark*, by the Name of *Alexander* III. but the Emperor's Party chose the Cardinal of *St. Cecilia*, by the Name of *Victor* IV. and the Emperor got his Election confirmed by the Council of *Pavia*. The Kings of *France*, *England*, *Sicily*, *Jerusalem*, *Hungary*, and *Denmark*, adhered to the former; but *Germany* and Part of *Italy* to the latter. The Emperor got him recogniz'd in a Diet at *Wurtzburg*, and passed the *Alps* to chastise the *Romans*, who called in Pope *Alexander*. He chased the *Greeks* out of *Ancona*, and taking *Rome*, got the Empress crown'd there. His Army being afflicted with the Plague, the opposite Party said it was a Judgment upon him. When he returned to *Germany*, most of the Towns of *Italy* made a League against him, repaired the Ruins of *Milan*; and to spight the Emperor, built a new Town, which they called *Alexandria*, in Honour of the Pope. The Emperor marched again to *Italy* to punish the Rebels; but was obliged to raise the Siege of *Milan*, and his Army was defeated, which was looked upon as a Punishment from Heaven for his continuing a Schism in the Church; so that he made Peace with Pope *Alexander*, promis'd him Obedience, and restored what belong'd to the See of *Rome*. Having ratified this Treaty at *Venice*, and married his Son to *Constance*, the only Daughter of *William* King of *Sicily*, he made an Expedition into the *Holy Land*, with the Kings of *England* and *France* (as some say) and most of the Princes of *Germany*, marched through *Hungary* and *Bulgaria*, enter'd *Asia*, defeated the Sultan of *Lycaonia*, chased the Sultan of *Egypt*'s Troops out of *Little Armenia*; but died, as he was pursuing his Conquests, of a Pleurisy he got by washing himself in the River of *Serre*, where some say he was drown'd, the 10th of *June*, 1190. in the 37th Year of his Reign. So far the *Atlas Historique*. *Puffendorf* says, That during the War of *Italy*, he levelled *Milan* with the Ground; but his Son *Otho* being taken by the *Venetians*, he was forced to make Peace. *Fox*, in his *Book of Martyrs*, Vol. 1. gives the Story of this Emperor at large, and of his Controversy with Pope *Alexander*, who at the Peace of *Venice* is said to have set his Foot upon the Emperor's Neck, when he kneeled to receive Absolution,

Digitized by Google

tion, abuſing thoſe Words of the Pſalmiſt, *Pſalm* 91. 13. ſaid, *Thou ſhalt tread upon the Lion and Adder, the young Lion and the Dragon ſhalt thou trample under Feet:* To which the Emperor anſwer'd, *Not to thee, but to Peter*; and the Pope reply'd, *Both to me, and to Peter:* But *Puffendorf* ſays, many take this to be fabulous; yet 'tis mention'd by ſeveral Popiſh Authors. Dr. *Nicholſon* gives him the Character of a Wiſe, Valiant, and Succeſsful Prince.

Henry VI. his Son, ſucceeded, being crown'd King of *Germany* at *Aix la Chapelle*, in his Father's Life-time. He receiv'd the Imperial Crown from Pope *Celeſtin* III. who, as *Puffendorf* ſays, when the Emperor was on his Knees to receive it, the Pope ſtruck it off again with his Foot, to denote his Power of giving the Crown, or taking it away. He defeated *Tancred*, natural Son to *Roger* King of *Sicily*, who diſputed that and the Crown of *Naples* with him, which fell to him in Right of his Empreſs, King *Roger*'s Daughter. *Henry* however recover'd both; but the Cruelty of the *Germans* made them revolt, and proclaim *Tancred*'s Son *William*. *Henry* went again into *Italy*, and amuſing *William* with ſharing the Dominions betwixt them, he had him ſeiz'd, put out his Eyes, gelded him, and put him to Death. *Henry* raiſed Men with the Money that *Richard* King of *England* was obliged to pay him when taken Priſoner in his Dominions, on his Return from the *Holy Land*, and conquer'd *Apuglia* and *Calabria*. He alſo obliged *Alexis Angelus*, Emperor of the *Greeks*, who had not an Army to oppoſe him, to pay a Tribute for the Outrages done to his Father and the Emperor *Conrad* in their March to the *Holy Land*. Hiſtorians ſay, he was ſo cruel, that for ſmall Crimes he would condemn Men to be thrown into the Sea, impal'd, roaſted, or to have a burning Crown of Fire faſten'd to their Heads with Nails. While he was preparing for an Expedition to the *Holy Land*, he died at *Meſſina* in *Sicily* of Poiſon, given him, as ſome think, by his Empreſs *Conſtance*, in the 8th Year of his Reign.

After *Henry*'s Death, there were great Diviſions in *Germany*, becauſe *Frederick* II. *Henry*'s Son, being only two Years old, his Uncle *Philip* pretended that the Adminiſtration was his Right, according to the Will of the deceaſed Emperor; but becauſe he would not ſubmit to the Pope, he was excommunicated, and the Pope perſwaded ſome of the Princes to elect *Otho* Duke of *Saxony*. Thus the Country was torn in Pieces; but moſt ſided with *Philip*. After a long War, an Agreement was propos'd, by which *Otho* was to marry the Daughter of *Philip*, and to ſucceed after his Death. The *Atlas Hiſtorique* ſays, *Philip* defeated *Otho* in two Battles, and was crown'd at *Aix la Chapelle* before this Agreement: But *Otho* having afterwards murther'd a Friend of *Philip*'s, he revok'd his Promiſe of giving him his Daughter; but promis'd to aſſiſt him in his Pretenſions to a Princeſs of *Poland*, wherein having alſo fail'd him, he ſurpris'd *Philip* in his Chamber after he had been let Blood, and murder'd him the 12th of *June*, 1208. Others ſay, he was aſſaſſinated by *Otho* Count of *Wittelſpach*.

Otho Duke of *Brunſwick* and *Lunenburg* ſucceeded, according to the Treaty with *Philip*, and put *Otho* of *Wittelſpach*, ſays the *Atlas Hiſtorique*, into the Ban of the Empire for murdering him. He delivered *Swabia* from the Tyrants that oppreſſed it, and order'd Juſtice to be done according to the Laws of *Charlemain*: But poſſeſſing himſelf of the Eſtates of Biſhops and Abbots who died, conferring the Publick Poſts of the Empire on Foreigners, and treating the Princes haughtily, he was univerſally hated. Pope *Innocent* III. excommunicated him for ſeizing the Lands of the Church, abſolv'd his Subjects from their Allegiance, and urg'd the *German* Princes to depoſe him: Upon which the King of *Bohemia*, the Dukes of *Auſtria* and *Bavaria*, the Landgrave of *Thuringia*, and others, aſſembling at *Bamberg*, choſe *Frederick* K. of *Sicily*, Son to *Henry* VI. who was proclaimed King of the *Romans* in his Infancy. He marched through *Italy* and Part of *Germany* without Reſiſtance, was crown'd at *Aix la Chapelle*, and confirmed in the Diet at *Francfort*, which caſt the Ballance on his Side; and *Otho* retir'd to *Brunſwick*, deſigning to have liv'd in Peace. But *Renaud* Count of *Bologna* went to him in Name of the Princes in League againſt *Philip Auguſtus* King of *France*, and engag'd him to take Part with them, on Condition that when they had made an End with *Philip*, they ſhould join him againſt *Frederick*. *John*

Digitized by Google

King of *England*, *William* Duke of *Brabant*, *Ferdinand* Count of *Flanders*, *Otho* Duke of *Limburg*, *Philip* Count of *Namure*, *Henry* Duke of *Lorrain*, *Renaud* Count of *Bologna* and *Dammartin*, with other Princes, were in this League. The King of *England* gave 'em a great deal of Money, and they were to attack *France* on the Side of the *Netherlands*, while the *English* landed in *Guienne*. King *Philip* sent his Son to make Head against the *English*, and he himself enter'd *Flanders*, took *Tournay*, and defeated the Allies, who had 120000 Men, near *Bovines*, and took the Counts of *Flanders* and *Dammartin*. *Otho* narrowly escap'd to *Brunswick*, whence he sent the Marks of the Imperial Dignity by his Brother *Henry* Count *Palatine* of the *Rhine* to *Frederick*, and died of Grief the 27th of *April*, 1218. without Issue; according to the *Atlas Historique*.

Frederick being thus peaceably possessed of the Empire, he granted in Favour of Pope *Innocent* III. who had been his Tutor, all the Lands taken from the See of *Rome* by his Predecessors, with the Sovereignty of them, reserving only Provisions and Forage for the Emperor's Troops when he came to *Italy* to be crown'd, or to assist the Pope. He called a Diet, where his eldest Son *Henry* was chosen King of the *Romans*; and making the Duke of *Bavaria* Governor in his Absence, he went to *Italy*, and was crown'd by Pope *Honorius*, having first renounc'd the Dutchy of *Spoleto* and *Tuscany* to the See of *Rome*, to whom, at the same time, he gave the County of *Fundi*. He drove the *Saracens* out of *Sicily*, depriv'd Count *Agnani*, and the Bishops who had revolted, and put others in their room. Pope *Honorius* pretended, that being his Vassal, he could not deprive the Bishops without his Consent, and commanded him to restore them immediately, on Pain of Excommunication. The Emperor answer'd, That as Emperor and King of *Sicily*, he was Sovereign Judge of his own Subjects, and even of Clergymen in Secular Affairs; and that he had rather lose the Empire, than make himself unworthy of it by such Meanness of Spirit. The Pope was provok'd with this Answer; but *Frederick* continued firm, got his eldest Son crown'd King of the *Romans*, and prepared to make War upon the Towns of *Lombardy*, who had league'd together to recover their Liberty. *John de Brienne*, King of *Jerusalem*, perceiving that this War would be prejudicial to him, mediated a Peace. The Emperor was absolv'd, and promis'd to go in a Year or two with all his Forces to the *Holy Land*. He call'd the States of the Empire together at *Cremona*, to exhort them to follow him; the Towns of *Lombardy* laid down their Arms at Pope *Gregory* IXth's Request, and contributed to the Expedition: The Croisado was preach'd every where; the Princes began to assemble; and when all was ready, the Emperor alledg'd, he was not prepar'd, or did so on purpose, because he apprehended *Sicily* would revolt; that Count *Agnani* would seize *Naples*; and his Enemies in *Germany* would take Advantage by his Absence: But the Pope pressed him so much, that he embarked at *Brindisium* with the Landgrave of *Turingia*; but falling sick after 4 Days Sail, he landed at *Otranto*, from whence above 40000 *Germans* went home. Upon this the Pope excommunicated him. The Emperor returning to *Naples*, wrote to all the Princes of *Europe* to justify himself, and to be aveng'd on the Pope, made the Counts *de Frangipani*, the Chief of the *Roman* Lords, Princes of the Empire, and enter'd the Territories of the Church to support the *Romans*, who had chased away Pope *Gregory*. He brought the Troops of the Towns of *Lombardy* against the Emperor; but the War was laid aside on the Emperor's sudden Resolve to go into the *Holy Land*, according to his Promise. He assembled the States of the Empire and *Sicily* at *Balette*, appointed Vicars of the Empire in *Germany* and *Italy*, sail'd the 11th of *August*, and arriv'd at *Acre* the beginning of *November*. The Pope, who had sollicited him to it before, now condemned the Enterprize, traversed him in every thing, forbad the Military Orders of *Palestine* to obey him, sollicited his Son the King of the *Romans* to rebel, and declare himself Emperor; reduc'd most Part of *Italy*, made the Towns of *Lombardy* to revolt, disbanded those who had taken the Cross to follow the Emperor, and wrote to the Sultan of *Babylon* to attack him. *Frederick*, notwithstanding all this traiterous Opposition, brought that Sultan to a Truce of 10 Years, restor'd several Towns to the Christians, was crown'd King of

Digitized by Google

of *Jeruſalem*, embark'd the 1ſt of *May*, 1229. and arrived at *Naples* the 30th. He forfeited the Knights Hoſpitallers and Templers of *Sicily*, chaſed *John de Brienne* out of *Apuglia*, ſeiz'd Part of the Dominions of the Church, inveſted *Rome* to frighten the Pope, and retired to *Capua*. Some Princes of the Empire effected a Reconciliation betwixt them; the Pope abſolv'd him, and promis'd to reſtore him to all his Rights in *Sicily*. The Emperor gave him a great Sum of Money, aſſiſted him to ſubdue the revolted *Romans*, and return'd to *Germany*, where he found ſuch Diſorders, that he deprived his eldeſt Son of being King of the *Romans*, ſentenc'd him to perpetual Priſon, and put the Duke of *Auſtria* into the Ban of the Empire. The Pope having enter'd into a League with the Towns of *Lombardy*, the Emperor repaſſed the *Alps* with 100000 Men, defeated the *Milanois* in Battle, conquer'd *Sardinia*, defeated the Forces of *Venice* and *Genoa*, ſeiz'd *Tuſcany*, and beſieged *Rome*, without valuing the Pope's Excommunication. Then began the Factions of the *Guelphs* and *Gibellins*, the latter being for the Emperor, and the former for the Pope, ſays the *Atlas Hiſtorique*; thô he mention'd them before in the Reign of *Frederick* I. *Blondo* and *Sigonius* ſay, theſe Factions roſe in the Empire of *Conrad* III. who favouring Pope *Anaclet* I. againſt *Innocent* II. his Son marched with his Army to a Place in *Italy* called *Gibelin*, from whence his Party were called *Gibelins*; and *Guelphe* Duke of *Bavaria* being one of the Generals on the other Side, the other Faction were called *Guelphs*, which ſeems to agree beſt with the former Story of *Frederick* I's Mother being a *Guelph* of the Houſe of *Bavaria*. Mr. *Fox*, in his *Book of Martyrs*, Vol. 1. is alſo of this Opinion. But to return to *Frederick*, Pope *Gregory* implor'd the Help of all Chriſtian Princes; but died of Grief a few Days after for the Defeat of his Fleet. *Celeſtin* IV. ſucceeded; but died in 18 Days. *Innocent* IV. came in his Place; and not thinking himſelf ſafe in *Italy*, fled to *France*, called a General Council at *Lions*, cited the Emperor to appear at it; and on his Refuſal, excommunicated him, and abſolv'd his Subjects from their Allegiance; thô moſt of the Princes of *Germany* held that the Pope had only the Right of crowning, but not of chuſing or depoſing the Emperor: Yet the Archbiſhop of *Mentz*, *Treves*, and *Cologne*, aſſembled at *Wurtzburg*, and elected *Henry* Landgrave of *Thuringia*, call'd the King of the Prieſts, who having defeated the Troops of *Swabia* and *Bavaria* that came to hinder his Election, was kill'd by an Arrow at the Siege of *Ulm*, and his Party choſe *William* Count of *Holland*, who taking *Aix la Chapelle*, by the Aſſiſtance of his Father-in-Law *Otho* Duke of *Brunſwick*, was crown'd there, while *Frederick* was employ'd in *Italy* againſt the *Guelphs*; and Fortune beginning to abandon him, thoſe of *Parma*, after two Years Siege, defeated his Army, and plunder'd his Camp; and the Pope's Legate having defeated his Son *Entius* in the *Bologneſe*, he retired to *Apuglia*, where he died of Poiſon, given him by *Mainfroi* Prince of *Tarentum*, his natural Son, the 13th of *December*, 1250. in the 54th Year of his Age, and the 32d of his Reign. Dr. *Nicholſon* ſays, he was Maſter of *Greek*, *Latin*, *German*, *Italian*, and the *Turkiſh* Languages, and underſtood moſt Arts and Sciences; was a Wiſe, Learned, and Brave Prince, and ſtood out 5 Excommunications. The Story of this Noble Emperor, and of his Controverſy with the Pope, whom he deſcrib'd to be the Anti-Chriſt, is at large in the Firſt Volume of the *Book of Martyrs*.

Conrad his Son was choſen King of the *Romans* at 8 Years of Age; but that Election not being every way formal, he was elected again 3 Years after at *Spires*. He govern'd the Empire with great Prudence in his Father's Abſence, and when he heard of his Death, he reſolved to defend his Rights againſt *William* Earl of *Holland*; but perceiving that his Rival had the Favour of the Great Men, and being unwilling to risk all, he thought beſt to ſecure himſelf of *Naples* and *Sicily*, his own Inheritance, march'd with an Army thither, obliged his Baſtard Brother *Mainfroi* to retire to *Tarentum*, and took *Naples* and *Capua*; but as he was preparing to reduce the reſt, he was poiſon'd by the ſaid *Mainfroi*, the 19th of *May*, 1254. in the 29th Year of his Age, and the 4th of his Reign. *Puffendorf* obſerves, That the Authority of the *German* Emperors in *Italy* was quite extinguiſh'd with *Frederick* II. and that it might not recover, the Pope gave the Kingdom of *Naples* to *Charles* Duke of

Digitized by Google

of *Anjou*, who, at his Inſtigation, caus'd young *Conradin*, Son to *Conrad*, who was taken in a Battle as attempting to recover his Right, to be cut off by the Hands of an Hangman, which put an End to the Race of the Dukes of *Swabia*.

William Count of *Holland*, after the Death of *Conrad*, having no Rival, receiv'd thoſe who had follow'd *Frederick* and *Conrad* into Favour, by which he eſtabliſhed Peace in the Empire. He deſign'd to have gone into *Italy* to be crown'd by the Pope, and to reſtore Peace alſo there: But the *Freezlanders* having revolted, and ravaged *Holland*, he marched againſt them, and having engaged too far, after ſome Advantage over them, he receiv'd a Blow on the Head with a Stone; and being entangled in a frozen Marſh, was kill'd with Spears, and buried in the ſame Place, in 1255.

After his Death, *Richard* Duke of *Cornwall*, Son to *John* King of *England*, was choſen by ſome of the Princes at *Francfort*. He arrived in *Germany* the 13th of *January*, 1257, and was crown'd at *Aix la Chapelle* the 2d of *May* following; but others of the Princes choſe *Alphonſus* King of *Caſtile*; and *Richard* having ſhew'd more Reſentment againſt thoſe who were not for him, than againſt his open Enemies, loſt his Intereſt, which, together with his want of Money, obliged him to return home, where he was killed before a Town which the Rebels had fortified againſt his Brother *Henry*, the 12th of *April*, 1271.

Alphonſus, ſirnamed the *Wiſe*, and the *Aſtrologer*, Son to *Ferdinand* III. of *Spain*, agreed to the Election, at the Pope's Inſtigation; but being ſlow in his Reſolves, he never enjoy'd the Empire. He is ſaid to have read the Bible 14 times, and ſpent 400000 Crowns upon Learned Men to compoſe the *Alphenſin* Tables, of which the *Jews* ſay, *Rabbi Iſaac Hazar* was the Chief. Hiſtorians give him the Character of a Prodigal, Cruel, Opinionative Man, and alledge, he was ſo blaſphemous, as to ſay, That had he been preſent at the Creation, he would have diſpos'd Things in better Order than they are. He died in 1284. in the 32d Year of his Reign, and was buried at *Sevil*.

Rodolph Count of *Habſburg*, a Caſtle, as ſome ſay, in the Country of *Argow*, or, as others, in the *Berſgaw*, was choſen Emperor in 1273, according to *Puffendorf*. Dr. *Micheliſius* and he obſerve, That from the Death of *Frederick* II. to this Time, which was 23 Years, there was ſcarce any thing but an *Interregnum*; during which, the Empire ſuffer'd extreamly by the ſeveral Competitors, and became a Theatre of Bloodſhed, Confuſion, and Robbery. In thoſe Wars, the great Families of *Swabia*, *Auſtria*, and *Thuringia*, were extinguiſh'd, and ſcarce any thing of Juſtice was adminiſtred. To put a Stop to thoſe Diſorders, ſeveral Princes and Cities on the *Rhine* leagu'd together, and choſe *Rodolph*, who was a Perſon of high Birth, deſcended from the Family of *Alſace*, which, ſays the *Atlas Hiſtorique*, was one of the moſt ancient and illuſtrious in *Europe*. He aggrandiz'd his Family, by giving them the vacant Fiefs of the Empire. By Conſent of the States, he made his youngeſt Son *Rodolph* Duke of *Swabia*, and gave his eldeſt Son *Albert*, *Auſtria*, *Styria*, *Carinthia*, and *Carniola*. He made excellent Laws for adminiſtring Juſtice, order'd all the Publick Acts and Pleadings, formerly writ in Latin, to be writ in *German*. He reduc'd *Ottocair* King of *Bohemia*, and all the other Rebels, with whom he fought 40 Set-Battles. He oblig'd all the Towns that held out againſt him to ſurrender, and demoliſh'd above 60 Caſtles in *Thuringia*, that ſerv'd for a Retreat to the Rebels. He refuſ'd to go and be crown'd at *Rome*, becauſe of the ill Conſequence it had to his Predeceſſors, alluding to that Saying of the Fox in the Fable, *Quia me Veſtigia terrent*, i. e. That he ſaw the Footſteps of many Beaſts that had enter'd the Lion's Den, but of none that had come out again; yet he manag'd Matters ſo, as not to break with the Pope. Some are of Opinion, that he might have reſtor'd the Empire to a more flouriſhing State, had he preſerv'd the Rights of it in *Italy*, as he did in *Germany*: But whether he look'd upon *Italy* as a foreign Country, whoſe Cuſtoms and Manners did not ſuit the *Germans*, or that he had a mind to make Money of it, for he is charg'd with Covetouſneſs, he ſold the chief Towns there, their Liberty, for conſiderable Sums, as *Florence*, *Genoa*, *Lucca*, *Bologna*, &c. reſerving only the Sovereignty to himſelf. To eſtabliſh his Intereſt in the Empire, he married his three Daughters to *Lewis* Count *Pala-*

Palatine of the *Rhine*, *Albert* Duke of *Saxony*, and *Otto* Marquis of *Brandenburg*. A Grandſon of *Albert* brought *Tirol* afterwards to the Family. *Puffendorf* and the *Atlas Hiſtorique* differ as to his Sons, for the latter makes *Albert* the youngeſt; thô 'tis more probable he was the eldeſt, both becauſe of the larger Dominions given him by his Father, and that he himſelf places him ſo in the Genealogical Chart or Tree of the preſent Imperial Family, who are deſcended from him. That ſame Author ſays alſo, That *Rodolph* propoſed his Son *Albert* to be choſen King of the *Romans*, which is a plain Proof that he was his eldeſt; but the States would not agree to it. *Rodolph* died in 1291. in the 70th Year of his Age, and the 18th of his Reign, and was buried at *Spires*.

Adolph Count of *Naſſau*, Son to *Adolph*, Grand Marſhal to *Rodolph*, was elected at *Francfort* Six Months after *Rodolph*'s Death, thô *Albert* laid Claim to the Crown; but the Electors being divided in their Votes, they left it to *Gerard* Archbiſhop of *Mentz* to name whom he pleas'd, and he choſe *Adolph* his Couſin againſt their Mind. He was a very brave Prince, and gain'd 5 Battles againſt the Duke of *Brabant*, which rais'd his Fame. He took Part with *Guy* Count of *Flanders*, who married *Philippine*, Daughter to *Edward* King of *England*, and on his Account declar'd War againſt *Philip* IV. of *France*. He took Pay of the King of *England*, and ſerv'd in his Army, which ſome thought below his Dignity; but *Puffendorf* ſays, he enter'd into a League with him againſt *France* for a Sum of Money, and on Promiſe that the *Engliſh* ſhould aſſiſt him to recover the Kingdom of *Arles*, which the *French* had ſeiz'd during the Troubles of *Germany*. On the other hand, the *French* ſided with *Albert*, and upon their Approach to the *Rhine*, the Archbiſhop of *Mentz*, who turn'd *Adolph*'s Enemy, becauſe he would not let him be Chief in the Management next to himſelf, aſſembled ſome of the Electors, depoſed *Adolph*, and choſe *Albert* in his ſtead. The *Atlas Hiſtorique* ſays, he bought *Thuringia* with the Money ſent him from *England* to raiſe Troops; but the People being unwilling to ſubmit to him, he oppreſs'd them, which heighten'd the Diſcontents againſt him. He was defeated and kill'd by *Albert* himſelf in a Battle near *Spires* in 1298.

Albert's Election being thus confirmed, he reduced the Eccleſiaſtical Electors who had leagu'd againſt him, and a ſolid Peace might have been made betwixt them, had it not been for the Arrogance of the Archbiſhop of *Mentz*, who ſaid, He had that in his Pocket by which he could chuſe another Emperor when he pleas'd. The Pope offer'd him *France*, and to depoſe *Philip the Fair*: But *Albert* knowing the Pope had no Right to do ſo, was ſo far from accepting it, that, as a Proof of the Friendſhip they had contracted at an Interview, he quitted *Philip* the Kingdom of *Arles*. *Albert* embroil'd himſelf with the *Swiſſers*, which was of ill Conſequence to him. He began with aboliſhing the Juriſdiction of their Clergy, who were very rich, and obliged the Nobles to do him Homage for their Eſtates; but the People being more jealous of their Liberty, and refuſing to follow the Example, he built Citadels to curb them, and order'd his Judges to puniſh little Faults with the utmoſt Severity: Upon which the People took Arms, demoliſhed his Caſtles, and in 1308 enter'd into a League for 10 Years. The Emperor prepar'd to reduce them with an Army; but was aſſaſſinated in the 10th Year of his Reign by *John* Duke of *Swabia*, his Nephew, whom he had cotvetouſly robb'd of his Dominions, on Pretence of being his Tutor. His Widow *Elizabeth* of *Corinthia* did afterwards build the Abbey of *Konigsberg*, in the Place where he was murther'd. He was ſaid to be a Prince of quick Parts; liberal to thoſe of Merit, and ſevere to Criminals. He made his Son *Rodolph* King of *Bohemia*; and endeavour'd in vain to ſubdue *Hungary*.

After his Death, *Philip* King of *France* aſpir'd to the Imperial Crown; but the Pope and Archbiſhop of *Treves* got *Henry* VII. Duke of *Luxemburg* choſen, a Prince Devout, Valiant, Wiſe, and of ſo even a Temper, that neither Proſperity nor Adverſity could change it. He married his Son to the Heireſs of *Wenceſlaus* King of *Bohemia*, redreſſed the Diſorders of the Empire, appointed his Son King *John* to govern there in his Abſence, and marched into *Italy* to re-eſtabliſh the Imperial Authority in that Country. He was crown'd at *Milan*, where

Digitized by Google

where he reſtor'd the *Viſconti*, and baniſh'd the *Turriani*. He reduc'd the other Towns, where he ſettled Lieutenants, who raiſed great Contributions to recruit his Army, which was leſſen'd by Diſeaſes. He deſign'd to have laid Siege to *Bologna*, *Florence*, and *Lucca*; but was obliged to march directly to *Rome*, where the *Guelphs* and *Gibelins* being of equal Strength, committed terrible Diſorders, and had bloody Conteſts; ſo that which Side ſoever got the Victory, bought it dear. *Henry* defeated thoſe who oppoſed his paſſing the *Tiber*, enter'd *Rome* at the Head of the *Gibelins*, the Chief of whom were the *Colonna's*, and the *Guelphs* retired to the *Vatican* and Caſtle St. *Angelo*, where not being able to force them, he was crown'd in the Church of *St. John de Lateran* by a Deputation from *Clement* V. who had removed the See to *Avignon*. He afterwards block'd up *Florence*, but could not take it, the Citizens being aſſiſted by the K. of *Naples*. The Pope endeavour'd to prevent a Rupture betwixt that K. and *Henry*; but offended the Emperor by his arrogant Letter, wherein he alledg'd, That both of them ought to ſubmit to him, becauſe of their Oaths. Upon this the Emperor broke with the Pope, declared War againſt *Robert* of *Naples*, forfeited him as a Vaſſal of the Empire, and gave the Kingdom to *Frederick* of *Sicily*, who promis'd to harraſs the Coaſts with his Fleet, while the Emperor marched to *Rome* by Land: But as he was in a fair Way to ſubdue his Enemies, a Monk poiſon'd him with a conſecrated Wafer. The Emperor perceiv'd it as ſoon as he had taken it, and adviſ'd the Monk to make his Eſcape; but Heaven would not ſuffer it; ſo that he was taken, flea'd alive, and put to Death in 1313. The Emperor was univerſally regretted. 'Twas thought the *Florentines* hir'd the Monk to poiſon him.

After his Death, there was an *Interregnum* for a Year, when ſome of the Princes choſe *Lewis* Duke of *Bavaria*, and others choſe *Frederick the Fair*, Duke of *Auſtria*, eldeſt Son to the Emperor *Albert* I. This Rivalſhip continued 7 Years, *Lewis* governing in *Upper Germany*, and *Frederick* in the *Lower*. They fought two Battles, one near *Eſſlingen* on the *Necker*, where Night parted them; the other near *Muldorf* in *Lower Bavaria*, where *Frederick* was taken and impriſon'd. He refuſ'd to make his Eſcape by the Help of Magick, but was ſet at Liberty after three Years, on his renouncing the Empire, and died in 1330. During this Controverſy, *viz.* in 1315, there happen'd ſuch a terrible Famine in *Germany*, *Poland*, and *Bohemia*, that many People eat their neareſt Relations, and the Wolves and other Beaſts of Prey could ſcarce be kept off by Weapons from ſetting upon Men to ſatisfy their Hunger. *Lewis* ſoon after this Victory was engaged in a new War with Pope *John* XXII. who diſputed his Election, becauſe made without his Conſent. The Emperor deſpis'd his Claim, ſent Aſſiſtance to the *Gibelins* in *Italy*, who forced the *Guelphs* to raiſe the Siege of *Milan*. Being willing to convince the Pope of his Error, he ſent Ambaſſadors to ſhew him the Vanity of his Pretenſions, and to deſire him to ſuſpend his Excommunication; but the Pope was obſtinate; and the Emperor, reſolute to defend his Title, publiſh'd a Manifeſto, to ſhew that he held the Empire of God alone. Having ſettled Peace in *Germany*, he marched to *Italy* in 1327, adjuſted Matters with the Chief of the *Gibelins*, was crown'd at *Milan*, reduc'd the *Tuſcans*, and was receiv'd at *Rome* with great Acclamations. The Pope was at *Avignon*, and could not perform the Coronation; therefore the Senate, Clergy and People, did it by Deputies, of whom *Sciarra Colonna* was the Chief. The Emperor, to revenge himſelf for *John* XXII's Excommunication, got him depos'd for Hereſy, ſentenc'd him to Death, and made an Order, That the Pope, as well as other Biſhops, ſhould reſide on his Cure, on Pain of Deprivation. *Peter Raynalouci*, a *Franciſcan*, was choſen inſtead of *John*, by the Name of *Nicholas* V. which brought Things to an Extremity, and, together with his heavy Exactions, loſt him the *Romans*, who curs'd him when he march'd from thence to beſiege *Florence*; but he was obliged to raiſe the Siege, to prevent *Piſa*'s falling into the Hands of his Enemies; and having ſettled Affairs there and at *Lucca*, to whom he recommended Pope *Nicholas*, he return'd to *Germany*, from whence he ſent Ambaſſadors to Pope *John* for a Reconciliation, and promis'd to ſatisfy him in every thing that was not againſt the Rights of the Empire; but the Pope gave a haughty Anſwer, and con-

Digitized by Google

continued inflexible. He died soon after; and *Lewis* in vain endeavour'd an Accommodation with *Bennet* XII. upon which the Princes of the Empire in a Diet declared the Empire Independent, and resolved to maintain the Rights of it. This was afterwards confirmed in a Diet at *Francfort*, made a perpetual Law, the Pope's Coronation declared unnecessary, and that it was Treason to say the contrary. *Bennet* continued obstinate, (tho he was for a Reconciliation himself) because he durst not disoblige his Party, and died soon after. *Roger* Archbishop of *Roan* succeeded, by the Name of *Clement* VI. and being a Creature of *Philip de Valois* King of *France*, he raised the Princes of *Italy* against the Emperor, excommunicated and depos'd him. *Lewis* offer'd to submit to any reasonable Terms for a Reconciliation; but the Pope propos'd such extravagant Conditions, that they were universally rejected; and the Diet sent him Word, That if he did not change his Measures, they would oppose him to the utmost. Upon this the Pope again excommunicated *Lewis* and his Adherents, and order'd the Electors to chuse the King of *Bohemia's* Son, otherwise he would dispose of the Empire as he thought fit. Having gain'd the three Ecclesiastical Electors, and the Duke of *Saxony*, they chose *Charles* Marquis of *Moravia*, the King of *Bohemia's* Son; but the Majority of the Princes declared the Election void; so that *Lewis* reign'd in Peace till the 11th of *October*, 1347. that he died of an Apoplexy as he was a Hunting, in the 63d Year of his Age, and 33d of his Empire. Some thought he was poison'd by *Isabel* of *Arragon*, Dutchess of *Austria*, because he carried the Empire from her Husband *Frederick*; but this was not believed. *Puffendorf* says, *Lewis* was the first who kept his Court always in his Hereditary Country out of his own Revenue; which Example was followed by succeeding Emperors, because the Revenues of the Empire, on which the Emperors us'd to maintain their Courts when they made their Progress as usual through the Empire, were much diminished by the Civil Wars. Dr. *Nicholson* says, That *Occam*, a Learned *English* Friar, told *Lewis*, That if he were protected, he could easily by his Writings overthrow all the Pope's Pretensions of Power over Princes, which animated the Emperor to oppose the See of *Rome*.

After *Lewis's* Death, Part of the Electors chose *Edward* King of *England*, who had acquir'd great Fame by his glorious Actions in *France*; but he refusing to accept it, they chose *Frederick* Marquis of *Misnia*, who sold his Pretensions to *Charles* IV. at which, being justly offended, they chose *Gunter* Count of *Schwartzenburg*, noted for Virtue and Bravery, the 2d of *February*, 1349. but *Charles* having corrupted some of the Princes, and *Gunter* falling sick of Poison, given him by *Charles's* Means, as was suspected, he resign'd the Empire, by the Advice of those who chose him, for 22000 Marks, and two Towns in *Thuringia*, and died at *Francfort* that same Year.

After his Death, *Charles* was confirmed by all the Electors, married his only Daughter to the Count *Palatine* of the *Rhine*, went to *Italy* to be crown'd by the Pope, and in a cowardly manner ruin'd the Authority of the Empire, which made the *Italians* despise and insult him, and refuse to let him into their Towns. He returned to *Germany*, where his Management was no better. He quitted the Kingdom of *Arles* to *France*, dismembred several other Parts of the Empire, corrupted the Electors to chuse *Wenceslaus* his Son King of the *Romans*, and sold the Towns of *Swabia* to the neighbouring Princes; so that 'twas said of him, *That in order to make the Imperial Eagle contemptible to all the World, he pluck'd off her best Feathers.* He is said to have established the Golden Bull, which regulates the Precedency and Prerogatives of the Electors. He united *Lusatia* and *Silesia* to *Bohemia*, his own Patrimony. He understood many Languages, had a charming Eloquence, and a great deal of Wit, but no Courage. He died at *Prague* in 1368 in the 32d Year of his Reign. *Puffendorf* says, he was depos'd by the Electors for his brutish Carelessness o the Empire; upon which he retired to *Bohemia* a considerable Time before his Death.

Wenceslaus King of *Bohemia*, his Son, succeeded; but being a weak Prince, he left the Management to his Ministers, and plunged himself in all sorts of Vice, so that he became odious and contemptible, the Government was dissolv'd, and every one liv'd as he pleas'd; the Princes incroach'd upon

Digitized by Google

their Neighbours and the Free Towns, which they obliged to ſubmit to them. *Wenceſlaus* was the *German Sardanapalus*; and that he might not be interrupted in his Debauches, retir'd often to Forreſts, where he ſpent Days and Nights in Senſuality. He ſold *Genoa* to the *French*, *Milan* to *Galeatius* their Viſcount, and would have ſold the whole Empire, had he found a Purchaſer. He thought every Hour loſt that was not ſpent in Drinking; ſo that he was judged unworthy the Name of Emperor. He was twice taken Priſoner, but eſcaped; and *Robert the Debonnaire*, Count *Palatine*, was choſen in his ſtead. Moſt of the Towns ſubmitted to him but *Nuremberg*, who offer'd 20000 Crowns of Gold to *Wenceſlaus* for their Freedom. He refus'd the Money, and, like a Brute, demanded only *Bacharach* Wine. He died of an Apoplexy and Grief, occaſion'd by the Revolt of the *Huſſites* at *Prague*, where they kill'd his barbarous Senators in 1418.

Upon his Death, *Robert* Count *Palatine* was confirmed. He put *Aix la Chapelle* into the Ban of the Empire, becauſe they would not ſubmit to him. It was ſome Time after his firſt Election e're all the Princes of *Europe* own'd him; ſo that *Wenceſlaus*'s Ambaſſadors were received at the Council of *Piſa* after he himſelf was depos'd; but after *Robert* oblig'd the Council to abſolve the Empire from their Oath to *Wenceſlaus*, he was univerſally acknowledg'd. He refus'd the Crown of *Bohemia*, thô offer'd him by the States. He marched into *Italy*, to reduce *John Galias* Duke of *Milan*, who revolted; but being abandon'd by the Pope and *Florentines*, he was defeated near the Lake *de Garda*, retir'd into *Trent*; and thô forſaken by the Arch-Duke of *Auſtria*, and the Archbiſhop of *Ments* and *Cologne*, he marched again as far as *Padua*; but the *Venetians* refuſing to join him, and the Troops ſent him by the *Florentines* not being enough to recruit his Army, he returned to *Germany*, to make War on the Archbiſhop of *Ments*, who broke all his Meaſures, died at *Oppenheim* in 1410, and was buried at *Heidelberg* in the Church of the *Holy Ghoſt*, which he founded.

After his Death, or, as ſome ſay, after the Abdication of *Wenceſlaus*, *Jodocus* or *Joſſe*, Marquis of *Moravia*, Brother to *Charles* IV. was choſen, but never crown'd. He was unfit for Government, and the only remarkable Thing he did, was to make a Law, That the States of the Empire might without Treaſon oppoſe the Emperor, if he did any thing againſt the Laws. *Puffendorf* ſays, That *Frederick* Duke of *Brunſwick* was choſen in his ſtead, before *Robert* Count *Palatine* above-mentioned; but in his Journey to *Francfort* was murther'd by Count *Waldeck*, at the Inſtigation of the Archbiſhop of *Ments*.

Sigiſmund King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia* was choſen after *Jodocus*, ſays the *Atlas Hiſtorique*, in 1411. He endeavoured to extinguiſh the Schiſm which had divided the Church for 38 Years. He reform'd the Government of the Empire, regulated their Taxes, and in 1415 made *Frederick* of *Zollern*, Burgrave of *Nuremberg*, Hereditary Elector of *Brandenburg*, for 40000 Florins of Gold, if the Emperor died without Male-Iſſue. He erected the County of *Savoy* into a Dutchy, in Favour of *Amedee* VIII. in 1416. and 7 Years after made *Frederick the Warlike*, Marquis of *Miſnia*, Elector of *Saxony*, vacant by the Death of *Albert* IV. the laſt of the Houſe of *Aſcanie*. He was an implacable Enemy to the *Huſſites*, but always defeated by them; ſo that at laſt he made Peace with them, as the only Way to eſtabliſh his Authority in *Bohemia*. He excited the Chriſtian Princes to arm againſt the *Turks*, who made a great Progreſs in *Europe*; but was defeated by them at *Nigebotb* in *Hungary*, thrô the Jealouſy and Forwardneſs of the *French* Auxiliaries, moſt of whom were cut off there, under the Conduct of *John* Duke of *Burgundy*, eldeſt Son to *Charles* VI. of *France*. In his Time, *John Huſſe* and *Jerome of Prague* were burnt at the Council of *Conſtance*, contrary to the Publick Faith given them by his Paſſport, which made the *Huſſites* take Arms under *Ziſca*, who cut off all that adher'd to the perfidious Council of *Conſtance*. *Sigiſmund* went thither to ſuppreſs them; but his Cruelty to thoſe of *Breſlaw* made the Citizens of *Prague* refuſe him Entrance; and *Ziſca*'s Reputation was ſuch, that the Emperor's Forces always fled at the Sight of his Troops, ſo that he defeated *Sigiſmund* in 14 Battles; and when *Ziſca* died, his Soldiers made a Drum of his Skin, thinking the

Digitized by Google

the very Sound of it would terrify their Enemies. *Sigiſmund* called the Council of *Baſle* to ſettle the Peace of the Church, went to *Italy*, and was crown'd at *Milan* and *Rome*; and the Succeſs of the *Huſſites* being on the Declenſion, he was crown'd at *Prague* in 1436, but died in 1438, in the 26th Year of his Reign.

Albert the Magnanimous, Duke of *Auſtria*, who was his Son-in-Law, ſucceeded firſt to the Kingdoms of *Bohemia* and *Hungary*, on a Treaty with the States, That he ſhould not accept the Empire, becauſe the *Huſſites* were afraid he would annul their Privileges, if he grew too powerful. He afterwards drove *Uladiſlaus* King of *Poland* out of *Bohemia*, which he had ſeiz'd, ſuppreſs'd the *Huſſites*, and depriv'd the *Bohemians* of the Right of electing their Kings. He obliged Sultan *Amurath*, the Grand Signior, to raiſe the Siege of *Belgrade*, which had laſted a Year; and defeated the Barons of *Bohemia*, who took Part with *Barba*, *Sigiſmund*'s Widow, and call'd *Caſimir* King of *Poland* to their Aſſiſtance. His being elected Emperor, over-aw'd thoſe who would have rebell'd in *Bohemia* and *Hungary*. He confirm'd the Council of *Baſle*, and endeavour'd to make Peace in the Church; but was diverted by a War againſt the *Turks*, who invaded *Hungary*; and as he marched againſt them, died of a Bloody Flux, occaſioned by his eating of Melons, in 1439, in the 2d Year of his Reign: Since which, the Empire has continued in the Houſe of *Auſtria*.

In 1440, *Frederick* III. called the *Pacifick*, eldeſt Son to his Kinſman *Erneſt* Duke of *Auſtria*, Chief of the Branch of *Stiria*, was elected Emperor. He dealt with the Council of *Baſle* to remove the Schiſm of the Church, and make Peace in *Chriſtendom*; and he made the *German* Concordat in Favour of the Church of *Germany*, which was ratified by Pope *Nicholas* V. in 1448. He publiſhed a new Edition of the Code about Fiefs, and made a good Uſe of Printing, which was invented during his Reign. He eſtabliſhed the Empire much as 'tis at preſent; but was attacked by Enemies in ſeveral Parts. He defeated the Duke of *Armagnac*, and drove him out of *Alſace* in 1444. but in 1452 was beſieged by *Huniades* in *Neuſtadt* in *Hungary*, becauſe he would not deliver to them *Ladiſlaus*, whom they had choſen to be King according to their Laws; ſo that he was forced to agree, that *Hunniades* ſhould be Regent of *Hungary*, *George Podiebrad* of *Bohemia*, and *Ulric* Count *de Cilley* of *Auſtria*; but the latter becoming odious to the People, was chaſed from his Government the Year after. *Ladiſlaus* King of *Hungary* being dead, he ſeiz'd *Auſtria* againſt the Will of *Albert the Prodigal*, his Brother, with whom he had Ten Years War, and proſcrib'd him at the Diet of *Ratisbon* in 1463. *Matthias Corvin*, King of *Hungary*, took *Vienna* from him in 1485. He formed the League of *Swabia* againſt the *Swiſſers*, which was called the *Buckler of St. George*, and demoliſhed ſuch Caſtles as ſerv'd for a Retreat to Robbers. He was accus'd of being ſo ſilent, that it paſs'd for a Queſtion, Whether he was alive or dead? He was ſo dilatory in reforming Abuſes, that he us'd to ſay it was not yet Time to attempt it. He loſt *Bohemia* and *Hungary* by his Avarice, in not laying out the Money that was neceſſary to ſecure his Poſſeſſion, and died *Aug.* 14, 1493. He married *Leonora*, Daughter to *Alphonſus* King of *Portugal*; from whence came the Union of the Houſes of *Spain* and *Auſtria*.

Maximilian I. his Son, elected King of the *Romans* in 1486, ſucceeded. He was dumb 'till almoſt 10 Years of Age, but then ſpoke ſo quick, that he could ſcarce be underſtood. He acquir'd the *Netherlands* by his Wife *Mary*, the only Daughter of *Charles the Terrible*, Duke of *Burgundy*, whom he married in 1478. He endeavour'd in vain to recover the Towns on the *Somme*, and the Dutchy of *Burgundy*, that *Lewis* XI. of *France* re-united to his Crown. He was taken by the Inhabitants of *Bruges*, but reſcued by the Valour of *Albert* Duke of *Saxony*. *Mary* of *Burgundy* dying, he courted *Anne* of *Brittany*; but was ſupplanted by *Cha.* VIII. of *France*, and married for ſecond Wife, *Blanche*, Daughter to *Philip* Duke of *Milan*, whoſe Money he employ'd in retaking Part of the Towns of *Auſtria* that had been ſeiz'd by *Mat. Corvin*, King of *Hungary*. In 1495, he made the famous Conſtitution at *Worms*, called the *Publick Peace*, to prevent the Deciſion of Controverſies in the Empire by the Sword, as formerly. At the ſame Time he inſtituted the Imperial Chamber, to put in force the Regulation his Father had made

Digitized by Google

for Adminiſtration of Juſtice. He purſued the War againſt the *Swiſſers* in Execution of the Buckler of St. *George*; but being worſted in 8 Battles, made Peace with 'em at *Baſle* in 1499. He inſtituted at *Augsburg* in 1500 the Council called the *Regency*, to govern the Empire with him. He divided *Germany* that ſame Year into 10 Circles, and made a ſort of perpetual Alliance with the *Swiſſers*, call'd the *Hereditary Agreement*, with relation to the Dominions that came to him from the Arch-Duke *Sigiſmund*, his Couſin. The *Venetians* refuſing him Paſſage through their Territories to be crown'd at *Rome*, he engaged the Pope and the King of *France* againſt them by the League of *Cambray*, that had well nigh ruin'd the Republick, which muſt have happened by their loſing all they had in *Terra-firma* after the Battle of *Agnadello*, had it not been for the Difference that fell out betwixt the Heads of the League. The *Imperialiſts* took *Padua*, but loſt it again by Neglect in 1509; and the *Venetians* having prevailed with *Lewis* XII. of *France* to break off from the League, began to reſume Courage. The Emperor defeated the *French* Troops near *Novara*, by the Help of the *Swiſſers*, in 1513, and thoſe of the *Venetians* near *Vicenza*; but loſt the Advantage of thoſe Victories by the Revolt of the *Swiſſers* for want of Pay. He could not recover *Milan*, and the *Venetians* retook *Breſcia* and *Verona*, which put an End to that War. The Count of *Goritz* dying, he incorporated that County with his other Dominions in 1515. He received with great Magnificence *Sigiſmund* King of *Poland*, and *Uladiſlaus* King of *Hungary*, at *Vienna*, and renewed with the latter the Contract of mutual Succeſſion on the Failure of either of their Iſſue. He promiſed the Great Duke of *Muſcovy*, for the Sake of the common Peace, not to protect the Great Maſter of *Pruſſia*. He died at *Wells* in *Auſtria* the 12th of *January*, 1519. in the 25th Year of his Reign. Dr. *Nicholſon* ſays, he never paſſed a Gibbet without making a reverend Salute, in theſe Words, *Salve ſanctæ Juſtitiæ*, in Honour of Juſtice; and that 5 Years before his Death, he had his Coffin always carried about with him. He was reckon'd one of the moſt Eloquent and Learned Emperors that ever *Germany* had. His only Child *Philip* married *Joan*, Daughter to *Ferdinand* King of *Arragon*, and *Iſabel* Queen of *Caſtile*, which brought him the Succeſſion of *Spain*. He died at *Bruges* in 1506, leaving two Sons and four Daughters; *Charles*, born the 24th of *Febr.* 1500; *Ferdinand*, the 10th of *March*, 1503; *Eleanor*, who firſt married *Emanuel* King of *Portugal*, and then *Francis* I. of *France*; *Iſabel*, who married *Chriſtian* II. of *Denmark*; *Mary*, who eſpouſed *Lewis* King of *Bohemia* and *Hungary*; and *Catherine*, promis'd to *John Frederick* Duke of *Saxony*, but married to *John* III. of *Portugal*. The Arch-Duke *Philip* contracted with *Lewis* XII. of *France* the Treaty of *Blois*, for dividing the Kingdom of *Naples*; and being dangerouſly ill, recommended to him by his Will his eldeſt Son, praying him to place ſuch an one about him, as he ſhould think moſt capable of giving him good Education; and accordingly *Lewis* choſe *William* of *Croi*, of the Branch of *Chievres*, one of the wiſeſt and ableſt Men of his Time.

Charles V. eldeſt Son to Arch-Duke *Philip*, and Grandſon to *Maximilian*, who could not get him choſen King of the *Romans* during his Life, was choſen Emperor after his Death, and crown'd with great Pomp at *Aix la Chapelle*. He was at the ſame Time King of *Spain*, and Sovereign of the *Netherlands*; and Pope *Paul* III. gave him the Title of *Great*. He was choſen chiefly by the Intereſt of the Electors of *Ments* and *Saxony*. He quitted to Arch-Duke *Ferdinand* his Brother all his Dominions in *Germany*, reſerving only thoſe which came to him by the King of *Spain* and Duke of *Burgundy*. He added to the *Netherlands* the Lordſhips of *Utrecht* and *Overiſſel*, which *Henry* Biſhop of *Utrecht* had given him. He afterwards acquir'd the Dutchy of *Gelderland*, the Country of *Groningen*, and the Towns of *Cambray* and *Lingen*; and to aſſure the *Netherlands* of a ſpeedy Relief againſt any who ſhould attack them, he incorporated them with the Empire by the Name of the Circle of *Burgundy*. He had ſeveral Wars, and was for moſt part ſucceſsful. He made a League with Pope *Leo* X. in 1521, and ſpeedily took *Parma*, *Placentia*, and *Milan*, and reſtor'd the latter to Duke *Francis Sforza*. He advanced *Adrian* IV. his Præceptor, to the Papacy; and the Conſtable *de Bourbon* having left the Service of *France* in Diſcontent, and join'd him,

Digitized by Google

him, he enter'd *Provence* with a great Army, took *Aix* and *Toulon*, and beſieg'd *Marſeilles*; but was obliged to raiſe it by the Valour of the Inhabitants, and repaſſed the *Alps* in haſt, before the Army of *Francis* I. of *France*, who thereupon enter'd the *Milaneſe*, and beſieg'd *Pavia*, which gave the *Germans* Time to augment their Army, and march to its Relief. *Francis* thought it would be diſgraceful not to fight them, engaged contrary to the Mind of his Generals, was defeated, and taken. This Advantage made the Princes of *Italy* jealous of the Emperor, and particularly Pope *Clement* VIII. *Francis* was carried to *Spain*, and ſtrictly kept in a Caſtle, and was ſet at Liberty after three Years on hard Conditions, that he could not fulfil, becauſe againſt the Fundamental Laws of *France*. He left his Sons for Hoſtages, but in Revenge join'd with the Pope and *Venetians*. Upon this *Charles* enter'd *Italy*, and the Conſtable *de Bourbon* took *Rome*, and beſieg'd the Pope in the Caſtle of St. *Angelo*, where he was reduc'd to great Want, while in the mean time Proceſſions were made in *Spain* for his Deliverance. He was made Priſoner however, and obliged to ranſom himſelf after 7 Months Confinement.

In 1529, *Charles* concluded a Peace with *France* at *Cambray*, which did not laſt long; for *Sforza* Duke of *Milan* having cauſed the *French* Ambaſſador *Mirabeau* to be murther'd (going through *Italy* to the *Turks*) by Order of the Court of *Spain* as 'twas ſuppos'd, the *French* King, to revenge it, deſign'd to march into *Italy*; but being deny'd Paſſage by the Duke of *Savoy*, he made War upon him, and chas'd him out of his Dominions. *Sforza* dying without Iſſue, *Charles* ſeiz'd *Milan* as a Fief of the Empire, which rekindled the War in *Italy* and the *Netherlands*, till a Truce of 10 Months was agreed on in 1537, which was afterwards prolong'd for 10 Years. During this Truce, *Charles* paſſed through *France* from *Spain*, to ſuppreſs thoſe of *Ghent*, who had revolted. The *French* King receiv'd him with extraordinary Honour, and *Charles* pretended to deſire a good Correſpondence with him; but fearing to be detained, promis'd to reſtore *Milan*; which failing to perform, the War was again renewed: The *Engliſh* join'd with *Charles*; but that League came to nothing. The *French* defeated the *Imperialiſts* at *Carignan* in *Italy*; and the Emperor being then embroil'd with the Proteſtants, made Peace with *France* in 1544. The Emperor being crown'd by the Pope, advis'd him to call a General Council, to ſettle the Affairs of Religion; but the Pope being unwilling to that, leſt it ſhould have turn'd to the Advantage of the Proteſtants, he put the Emperor upon reducing them by Force; but 'tis needleſs to repeat what we ſaid of that War, in the Chapter of *The Religion of the Modern Germans*. The Proteſtants being in ſome meaſure ſupported by *France*, and having obliged the Emperor to Peace by the Treaty of *Paſſau*, and narrowly miſs'd taking him at *Inſpruck*, he reſolved to revenge it on *France*, and beſieg'd *Metz* with 100000 Men; but the Duke of *Guiſe* defended it ſo well, that he was obliged to retire from before it in 1553; at which he was ſo mortified, ſays the *Atlas Hiſtorique*, that 'twas probable he would then have retir'd to a private Way of Living, but for the Differences that happen'd betwixt the Electors of *Brandenburg* and *Saxony*, which gave him an Advantage over the Proteſtants. He afterwards came to the *Netherlands* againſt the *French*, took *Terouanne* and *Heſdin*, and deſign'd to have attack'd *Dourlans*, but the Deſert of his Cavalry prevented it, and made him retire to cover *Cambray*, which the Conſtable of *France*, *Montmorency*, threatned to beſiege. He join'd with the Duke of *Tuſcany* to drive the *French* from *Sienna*, prevail'd with *Mary* Queen of *England* to marry his Son *Philip* Prince of *Spain*, and ſtopp'd Cardinal *Pool*, her Kinſman, in the Palatinate, leſt he ſhould have hinder'd it. The War betwixt him and *France* being renew'd in the *Netherlands*, the *French* took ſome Towns; and his Army having ſuffer'd much in a Battle there the 13th of *Auguſt*, 1554. the Queen of *England* mediated a Peace; but becauſe the Emperor would not reſtore *Milan*, the Treaty broke off in 1556.

Guicciardin and *Thuanus* ſay, That in *October*, 1529, he drove *Soliman* the Grand Signior from before *Vienna*, which he beſieg'd; and carried 50000 Men into *Africa*, where he took the Fort of *Goulette*, and re-eſtabliſh'd *Muley-Haſſen* in *Tunis*, after he ſubdued that Kingdom. In 1541, he went into *Africa* againſt

againſt *Barberouſſe*; but return'd with great Loſs into *Spain*.

After breaking off the Treaty with *France* in 1556, he grew weary of the Government, reſign'd the Empire to his Brother *Ferdinand* King of the *Romans*; and the very Night he reſign'd it, was ſo entirely abandon'd by his Court, that to ſhew the Inſtability of Humane Affairs, having no Servant near him, he would needs light a Perſon of Quality that was with him out of his own Chamber himſelf. He afterwards retir'd to the Monaſtery of *St. Juſt*, of the Order of St. *Jerome* in *Spain*, where he ſpent his Time in Devotion, and died *Sept.* 21. 1558. His Son *Philip* II. was ſo weak a Bigot, that he ſuffered the Inquiſition to ſeize the Archbiſhop of *Toledo* his Confeſſor, and his Preacher, and to condemn his Will to be burnt, on Suſpicion of his dying a Proteſtant; but it was afterwards pretended, that the Suſpicion was groundleſs, and that ſecret Ways were taken to prevent the Effect of the Sentence, in order to ſave the Honour of the Inquiſition: But ſome alledge, it was rather to prevent a dangerous Objection by the bigotted *Spaniards* againſt himſelf, as being the Son of a Heretick.

Charles V. ſay *Thuanus* and *Guicciardin*, was a Prince of great Parts and Courage, but a Diſſembler, and one that ſacrific'd all to his Ambition. He had the Pope and the King of *France* his Priſoners at one time, made 40 different Voyages and Journies, 9 into *Germany*, 6 into *Spain*, 7 into *Italy*, 4 into *France*, 2 into *England*, 2 into *Africa*, 8 Voyages upon the *Mediterranean*, and two on the Ocean. Other Hiſtorians ſay, That he obtain'd 40 great Victories, came off Conqueror in 70 Battles, and was once 40 Hours altogether on Horſeback. He left 3 Children by *Iſabel* of *Portugal*, *viz.* *Philip* II. of *Spain*; *Mary*, Wife to the Emperor *Maximilian* II. and *Jean*, Wife to the Prince of *Portugal*. Before his Marriage, he had by a Concubine, *Margaret*, firſt married to *Alexander de Medicis* of *Florence*, and afterwards to *Octavian Farneſe* of *Parma*; and after the Empreſs's Death, he had Don *John* of *Auſtria* by a young Woman of *Ratiſbon*, whoſe Name was never publick.

Puffendorf blames him for following the *Spaniſh* Maxims too far; for ſeeking to make himſelf abſolute, and neglecting to free the Empire from the Tyranny of the Popes, who had trampled upon it; and that he did not aggrandize his Family by the ſuperfluous Church-Lands, which he might eaſily have done, by countenancing the Reformation, and ſuffering the Biſhops to marry without quitting their Benefices; which, by the way, ſeems to contradict his having been a Proteſtant; or if he were, that he had not Courage enough to own it, or was not throughly convinc'd of the Falſhood of Popery till after his Retirement.

Ferdinand I. youngeſt Son to *Philip*, was elected King of the *Romans* at *Cologne* in 1531, tho' the Elector of *Saxony* oppos'd him. *John* Count of *Scepus*, his Rival for the Kingdom of *Hungary*, dying in 1540; his Widow, that ſhe might advance her Son, put her ſelf and him under Protection of *Soliman* II. who entring *Hungary* with a great Army, took *Buda*, and moſt of the Kingdom, on Pretence of defending it againſt *Ferdinand*, and was ſucceſsful in his War for ſome Years. *Ferdinand* invaded the Elector of *Saxony*, who had the chief Hand in the League of *Smalcald*. The *Bohemians* revolted; but he pardon'd them, and took away their Privileges; ſo that the Proteſtants went into *Poland* and *Pruſſia*, where they built new Churches. The Dukes of *Saxony* yielded him the Dutchy of *Sagan* in *Sileſia*, which they had bought. *Charles* V. would have obliged *Ferdinand* in 1550 to quit the Dignity of the King of the *Romans* to *Philip* II. his Son, which he procured him with that View; but he would not, nor yet create that Prince, Perpetual Vicar of the Empire in *Italy* and the *Netherlands*. The War began again in *Hungary* in 1551; and after the concluding of the Peace at *Paſſau* in 1552, *Maurice* Elector of *Saxony* marched thither with an Army; and the Need that *Ferdinand* had of the Proteſtants, made him agree to a Peace about Religion at *Augſburg* in 1555. That ſame Year he ſucceeded to the Empire, by the Abdication of *Charles* V. and was crown'd; but the Pope refus'd to own him a long time, becauſe 'twas done without his Conſent; and that *Ferdinand* had granted a Toleration to the *Lutherans*. He was mild and temperate, was Maſter of the Latin, and heard the Complaints of his meaneſt Subjects,

Digitized by Google

jects, saying, *That he could not expect Favour at the Throne of God, if even Beggars were denied Access to his.* He died in 1564, in the 62d Year of his Age, and the 9th of his Reign.

Maximilian II. was Viceroy of *Spain*, when he heard that *Charles* V. endeavour'd to have his Son *Philip* II. chose King of the *Romans*. Upon this, *Maximilian* went to *Germany* with the Infanta *Mary* his Wife; and tho' mightily urg'd to agree to *Philip*'s being chosen, he got himself elected in 1562, and that same Year was crown'd King of the *Romans*, *Bohemia*, and *Hungary*. He was made Emperor in 1564, and govern'd with much Wisdom and Equity. He deprived the Elector of *Saxony* for protecting the Rebels, and invaded the Province of *Transilvania*, which brought the *Turks* upon him, who took *Zigeth*, after a brave Defence by Count *Nich. Serini*. *Maximilian* retook several other Towns, made a Truce with the *Turks*, and refus'd to join the *Venetians* against 'em in 1570 and 1571. He had a Difference with Pope *Pius* for conferring the Title of Grand Duke on the Count *de Medicis*, alledging, that it belong'd only to himself to confer Titles of Honour. He demanded of the Pope to allow Communion in both Kinds, and Priests Marriage; and allow'd the Nobility of *Austria* the free Exercise of the Protestant Religion. He was chosen King of *Poland*; but *Stephen Battori* prevented him. He demanded Assistance of several Princes to recover that Crown, but in vain. He died at *Ratubon* in 1576, in the 50th Year of his Age, and the 13th of his Reign. His natural Goodness, and his Favour to his Protestant Subjects, made several Protestant Authors say, he was of their Religion; and the Papists call'd him the *Lutheran* Emperor.

Rodolph II. his Son, succeeded, being chosen King of the *Romans* before. He was crown'd King of *Hungary* in 1572, and of *Bohemia* in 1575. He came to the Empire in a very difficult Time, because of the Differences about Religion. He forc'd *Gebhard Trusches*, Archbishop of *Cologne*, who turn'd Protestant, and married *Agnes* Countess of *Mansfield*, to quit his Dignity. By a Truce of 15 Years, he prevented the Consequences of the Quarrel betwixt the Cardinal of *Lorrain* and *John George* Marquis of *Brandenburg*, who were both chosen Bishops of *Strasburg*, the former by the Popish Canons, and the latter by the Protestants, after the Death of Count *John Manderscheid*. To prevent the War that might have been occasion'd by the Succession of *Juliers*, he would have sequestred that Dutchy; but the Pretenders oppos'd it. The Protestants made a League, which they call'd the *Union*, in 1609, of which *Frederick* V. Elector *Palatine*, was Chief. The Papists made an Alliance of 9 Years among themselves at *Wurtzburg*, which they call'd the *League*. The *Imperialists* had War with the *Turks* from 1594 to 1606, when they took several Towns, and committed great Ravages. *Rodolph* demanded Assistance of the Princes, and made a League with the Prince of *Transilvania*, which had bad Consequences. This Army fought the *Turks*, who had taken *Agria*, and defeated them; but being too intent upon the Plunder, the *Turks* rallied, and cut many of them off. During this War, *Philip Emanuel* of *Lorrain*, Duke of *Mercœur*, General of the *Imperial* Army, made the famous Retreat of *Canisa*. Arch-Duke *Matthias* took from *Rodolph*, *Hungary*, *Bohemia*, and *Austria*, which he was obliged to quit to him in 1611, after having demanded from the Electors wherewith to maintain his Imperial Dignity. He died in 1612, without Issue. He was a Learned Prince, much given to Mathematicks, Painting, Chymistry, and Astrology; so that his Court was full of Men who profess'd those Sciences. He brought the *Gregorian* Account first into *Germany*.

In 1612, *Matthias* King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia* succeeded, but not without much Opposition. Cardinal *Klesel* was his chief Minister and Favourite. He disputed the Right of naming the Prince of *Transilvania* with *Amurat* the Great *Turk*; but at last made a 20 Years Peace with him. He prefer'd Arch-Duke *Ferdinand* his Cousin to *Philip* III. of *Spain*, his Nephew, to be his Heir, out of his natural Aversion to the *Spaniards*. He regulated the Succession at *Prague* in 1617, by the Advice of Arch-Duke *Maximilian* his Brother: And at the same Time a secret Treaty was made betwixt *Philip* III. of *Spain* and the Arch-Duke *Ferdinand*, by which *Philip* quitted to *Ferdinand*, and his Heirs-Male, the Heredi-

tary

Digitized by Google

tary Countries that ſhould fall to him by the Emperor's Death, on Condition, That the Daughters of the Branch of *Spain* ſhould be prefer'd to thoſe of the Branch of *Germany*. At this Time happen'd the Revolt of *Bohemia*, becauſe the Emperor's Miniſters invaded their Laws and Priviledges, granted them by *Rodolphus* the Second, for their Religion and Liberty. The Emperor aſſembled the States at *Prague*, where his Miniſters did ſo provoke the People, that they threw them out at the Windows of the Caſtle, by which they receiv'd no great Hurt. After which, they choſe new Magiſtrates, took Arms, and publiſh'd a Manifeſto to juſtifie their Proceedings. The Emperor publiſh'd another; and his Council, in order to accommodate Matters, were for turning out his Favourite *Klefel*, who was hated by the *Bohemians*; but the Emperor being againſt it, the Archdukes *Maximilian* and *Ferdinand* ſent him Priſoner to *Tirol* of their own accord. The Emperor however went on with the War; but the *Bohemians* being more diligent, rais'd 30000 Men under Count *Manſfeld*, took ſeveral Towns. Upon which the Emperor's Troops enter'd the Country, and committed ſuch Cruelties, as mov'd ſeveral neighbouring Princes and States to pity the *Bohemians*, and intercede for them in the Name of all the Proteſtants of the Empire; who alſo laid their Grievances before him, and complain'd, That he gave the Command of his Armies to Strangers, ſworn Enemies to their Religion; which ſhew'd there was a Deſign rather to deſtroy them, than to redreſs their Complaints. They made Application to ſeveral of the Electors to endeavour an Accommodation; but the Duke of *Bavaria*, who lov'd to fiſh in troubled Waters, prevented it. The Emperor begun at laſt to grow weary of the War and Fatigue, and reſign'd the Kingdoms of *Hungary* and *Bohemia* to his Brother *Ferdinand*: And by his Grief for the Death of Archduke *Maximilian* and the Empreſs, he fell into a Diſtemper, and died the 20th of *March* 1619. leaving his Succeſſor embroil'd in a War of 30 Years continuance, which ſome thought was foretold by a terrible Comet, with a long Tail, in form of a crooked Sword, which appear'd in the End of 1618. to moſt Nations of *Europe*.

In 1619. *Ferdinand* II. King of *Bohemia*, ſucceeded, and was hated for his Severity by all his Subjects, eſpecially the Proteſtants. The reſolved Nobility of *Auſtria* proteſted againſt his Perſecution, and threatned, if he did not forbear, to call in the *Turks* to their Aſſiſtance; yet he would not deſiſt. He made War with the *Venetians* on account of the *Croats*, who invaded their Dominions, and was ſucceſsful againſt them. The *Bohemians* perceiving him to be irreconcileable to their Religion, depos'd him, and offer'd their Crown to the King of *Denmark*, the Duke of *Savoy*, and the Elector of *Saxey*, one after another, who all refus'd it; but the Elector *Palatine* accepted it; the Iſſue of which, we gave an Account of in the Chapter of Religion. After that Prince was defeated, the Proteſtants made a League with the Kings of *France* and *Denmark*, the Duke of *Savoy*, the *Venetians* and *Dutch*; and afterwards another with the King of *Denmark*, and ſeveral Princes and States of the Empire, they forc'd Count *Tilly* the Imperial General, &c. to retire; but having alſo given an Account of the Iſſue of this War in the Chapter above-mention'd, we ſhall not repeat it. *Ferdinand* died the 5th of *February* 1637. in the 59th Year of his Age, and the 18th of his Reign.

Ferdinand III. his Son ſucceeded, being choſen King of the *Romans* 3 Years before. His Troops under *Gallas* had ſome Advantage over the *Swedes* at firſt, but were defeated near *Rhinfeld* by the Duke of *Saxe Weimar*; and another of his Armies was defeated in *Miſnia* by General *Bannier* and the *Swedes*, who laid Siege to *Ratiſbon*, where the Emperor had called a Diet. After this, *Tortenſon* the *Swediſh* General defeated Archduke *Leopold* near *Leipſick*, and invaded the Hereditary Countries; while on the other hand the Duke of *Anguien* took *Philipſburg*, defeated the Imperialiſts near *Friburg*, and obtain'd a famous Victory at *Norlingen* over the *Bavarians*; which would have ruin'd the Emperor intirely, had not the King of *Denmark* declar'd War againſt the *Swedes*, whoſe Power he dreaded, which gave their Arms a Diverſion, and the Emperor a time to breath: Yet *Tortenſon* chas'd *Gallas* into *Bavaria*, and defeated *Hatfeld* in *Bohemia*. General *Wrangel*, who ſucceeded *Tortenſon* in

the

Digitized by Google

the Command of the *Swedish* Army, defeated the Imperialists in the bloody Battle of *Sigmerſhuſen* in 1634. And both Branches of the Houſe of *Auſtria* being worſted in *Germany*, *Spain*, and the *Netherlands*, it brought on the Treaty of *Munſter*, which was concluded in 1648, as above-mention'd. *Ferdinand* got his Son of the ſame Name choſen King of the *Romans* in 1653; but he died the next Year, to the great Grief of his Father, for he was a Prince of mighty Expectation. The Emperor, after this, ſent Aſſiſtance to *Caſimir* King of *Poland* againſt the *Swedes*, who had ſeis'd moſt of his Country; He likewiſe procur'd the *Danes* to give the *Swedes* a Diverſion on that ſide, and died the ſecond of *April* 1657, of the Grief he conceiv'd for the Loſs of his Eldeſt Son.

Leopold his Second Son, ſucceeded, after 8 Months, and was crown'd at *Francfort*. In the beginning of his Reign, the War betwixt the *Swedes* and *Brandenburgers* was concluded by the Treaty of *Oliva* in 1660. A War broke out betwixt the Emperor and the *Hungarians*, who complain'd that their Privileges were invaded; that the *German* Troops maintain'd there on Pretence of defending them, which they were able to do themſelves, committed all Sorts of Violence and Cruelty; that the *Hungarians* in Offices were not ſuffered to diſcharge them; that the Liberty of Religion allow'd them by ſeveral Diets was denied, their Churches taken from them, and their Miniſters baniſh'd, becauſe they were not of the Religion of their Prince: That the Nobility, who ought to be tried by their own Judges, were tried by *Germans*; that tho' the Revenue was more than ſufficient to maintain the Troops, yet they were not paid, but liv'd by Extortion, or invading the *Turks*, who made ſevere Reprifals on the Country. The Grand Seignior improv'd this Difference, and the Emperor's taking part with the Prince of *Tranſilvania*, ſet up without his Conſent; therefore he gave that Title to Prince *Abaffi*. The *Turks* defeated the Imperialiſts at *Clauſenburg*, and took *Newheuſel* in 1663; but were routed at *Levents*, where they loſt 6000 Men, 4000 Wagons of Ammunition, 1000 Horſe, and 140 Camels: And afterwards at St. *Gothard*, where they loſt above 6000 Men, and many General Officers, by the Aſſiſtance of the *French*; which brought on a Peace. The *Hungarians*, finding that their Privileges were not reſtor'd according to Promiſe, being oppreſs'd by *German* Troops, and the Office of their Palatine being aboliſh'd, which had continued ſome hundreds of Years, they join'd with the *Tranſilvanians* to obtain help from the *Turks*; the very Monks preach'd, That their Yoke was eaſier than that of the *Germans*; for which the Counts of *Serini*, *Frangipani* and *Nadaſti*, were put to Death, which hinder'd Prince *Ragotski*'s taking Arms: And Count *Teckely* dying in his Caſtle, juſt as the Imperialiſts had inveſted it, they were left without a Head, till young Count *Teckely*, who was then but 15 Years of Age, and eſcap'd to *Tranſilvania*, came to eſpouſe their Cauſe. In 1672, the *French* invaded *Lower Germany*, and over-ran great Part of the *United Provinces*. The Elector of *Treves* having no Force to oppoſe the *French*, was obliged to allow them a Paſſage through his Dominions; and the Archbiſhop of *Cologne*, and the Biſhop of *Munſter*, join'd with them againſt their Country. The Elector of *Brandenburg* demanded Aſſiſtance of the Emperor to protect his Dutchy of *Cleves*, but the *French* over-ran it before he could have any. The *French*, in 1673, entred *Alſace*, where they took ſeveral Towns, and laid Part of the *Palatinate* under Contribution. The Duke of *Lorrain*, who commanded the Emperor's Army, would have join'd *Caprara*, but was prevented by M. *Turenne*, which occaſion'd the Battle of *Sintſheim*. The Elector *Palatine* was ſo much provok'd at the ravaging of his Country, that he ſent M. *de Turenne* a Challenge; which he would not accept, without Allowance from the *French* King. Theſe Things, with the taking of *Treves*, oblig'd the Empire to declare War, and aſſemble more Troops; upon which, M. *Turenne* repaſs'd the *Rhine*, and entrench'd near *Philipſburg*. In 1674, the *Germans* fought *Turenne* near *Mulſheim*, where both Sides claim'd the Victory. In 1675, the *French* defeated the *Germans* near *Colmar*; but *Montecuculi* ſucceeding the Duke of *Bournonville* in the Command of the *Germans*, he was a more equal Match for *Turenne*; who being encamp'd near him, and going to a Height to view his Army, was kill'd by a Cannon

Digitized by Google

Ball, which put an End to his Glory, that was tarniſh'd before by his turning Papiſt. After the Battle of *Altenheim*, the *French* repaſs'd the *Rhine*, where the Duke *de Duras*, Nephew to *Turenne*, acquir'd much Reputation by retiring ſo bravely from a diſadvantageous Camp. The Emperor about this time eſtabliſh'd in *Hungary* a Viceroy and Sovereign Council, in order to extirpate the Proteſtant Religion, and the *Hungarian* Liberties: They forfeited the Proteſtants, and ſent their Miniſters, and others, to the Gallies, upon every frivolous Pretext. The *Hungarians* rais'd 12000 Men to defend themſelves, and took ſome Towns. The Barbarity of the Imperial General *Kop* exaſperated them ſo far, that Priſoners on both Sides were put to the moſt cruel Deaths. In 1675, the Imperialiſts propos'd an Amneſty and Redreſs of Grievances; but their Promiſes not being credited by the *Hungarians*, it did not take. Prince *Abaffi* took Part with the Malecontents; and the *Turks*, who had aſſiſted them underhand before, did then invade the Emperor's Dominions. Young *Teckely* began about this time to ſignalize his Courage and Conduct, which indear'd him to Prince *Abaffi*. In 1677, the Emperor's Affairs being on the Declenſion, a new Accommodation was propos'd to the Malecontents, to which ſome ſubmitted, and others did not. In 1678, a Diet was held at *Odemburg*, where the Proteſtants were promis'd their Churches, the Papiſts complain'd of Abuſes in the Civil Government, and demanded their Liberties to be reſtor'd; but the Court would not. Count *Weſſelini*, Brother to the Palatine of *Hungary* who commanded the Malecontents, died; and *Teckely*, tho' but 22 Years of Age, had acquir'd ſo much Reputation, that he carried the Poſt from *Weſſelini*'s Brother. Having reviewed his Troops, he approach'd the Caſtle of *Mongatz*, in order to confer with Count *Serini*'s Widow, Daughter to Prince *Ragotzki*; but her Mother-in-Law hinder'd it, and ſent ſome Troops to beat up Count *Teckely*'s Quarters; where a Son of Count *Serini* being taken, he carried on a Correſpondence betwixt Count *Teckely* and his Siſter. The Count afterwards defeated the Imperialiſts under Count *Liſſy*, took moſt of the Towns of *Hungary*, and thoſe of the Mountains in *Tranſilvania*: The Emperor's Army being in no Condition to reſiſt him, the Court of *Vienna* propos'd an Accommodation; but the Malecontents, tho' they wanted both Diſcipline and Money, inſiſting on a full Redreſs of all Grievances, it came to nothing.

In 1679, the War betwixt the Empire, the *French*, and the *Dutch*, was concluded by the Treaty of *Nimeguen*, where the King of *Sweden* was Mediator; by which *France* got *Friburg* and *Briſgau* in lieu of *Philipſburg*, and the *Swedes* recover'd the Provinces they had loſt in the War. That Year the Plague hindred the Proceedings of the Armies in *Hungary*. *Teckely* being in *Tranſilvania*, *Weſſelini*, who had got the Command of the *Hungarians* in his Abſence, would not reſtore it upon his Return; ſo that they fought, wherein *Weſſelini* was worſted, and taken. The Emperor offer'd an Accommodation again; but *Teckely* would do nothing without Conſent of the *Turks*, who had promiſed to make him Sovereign of *Tranſilvania*. Princeſs *Ragotzki*'s Mother-in-Law dying, the Princeſs married *Teckely*, by which he got all the Places which depended on that Family.

After the Peace of *Nimeguen*, the *French* began to erect Chambers of Reunion at *Metz* and *Briſack*; where, by the Sentence of his own Judges, ſeveral Princes were ſummoned to ſurrender thoſe Provinces and Cities that were alledged to be Dependant on his new Acquiſitions; and ſuch as would not comply, were compell'd by force, particularly the Elector *Palatine*, and the Elector of *Treves*: The *French* ſtill kept Poſſeſſion of thoſe Places they were obliged to ſurrender to the Empire by the Peace. The Emperor's Miniſter gave in a Memorial to the Diet at *Ratiſbon* of thoſe Proceedings; and the States unanimouſly reſolved, That they were contrary to the Treaties; but *Holland* and *Brandenburg* were not enclin'd to a Rupture with *France*. In 1680, the *French* ſurpriſed *Strasburg*, by the Treachery of ſome of their new Magiſtrates: The King of *France* did likewiſe Project to get the Dauphin elected King of the *Romans*, but miſcarried in it. In 1681, he made a Treaty with Count *Teckely*, who had a ſtrong Army of the Malecontents in *Hungary*; was in great Eſteem with the Grand Sighior, and engag'd the *Turks* to invade

Hun-

Digitized by Google

Hungary before the Emperor was aware of it. In 1683, the Duke of *Lorrain* beſieg'd *Neuheuſel*; but was obliged to break up on the Grand Viſier's marching againſt him. At the ſame Time 3000 *Tartars* harraſs'd the Country, and the *Germans* with great Difficulty retired towards *Vienna*; for 3000 *Turks* and *Tartars* fell upon their Baggage, took it, and kill'd moſt of the Convoy; but Prince *Lewis* of *Baden* reſcued Part of the Baggage. The News of this occaſion'd an incredible Conſternation at *Vienna*; the Emperor removed to *Lintz*, and moſt of the Citizens were for leaving the City; but the Approach of the Duke of *Lorrain* next Day encourag'd them, ſo that they began to repair the Fortifications, and the Gariſon was reinforc'd, there not being above 200 regular Troops in the City before. The *Turks* open'd their Trenches the 15th of *July*: The Gariſon, under Count *Staremberg*, diſputed every Inch of Ground, and by frequent Sallies cut off great Numbers of 'em. In the mean time the Duke of *Lorrain* defeated *Tockely*, took his Baggage, and relieved *Presburg*, that was ready to have fallen into his Hands. The Duke engaged him a ſecond time on the Borders of *Moravia*, and forc'd him to retire. The Siege continued to the 12th of *September*, with all the Fury imaginable, and the Beſieged behav'd themſelves to Admiration, till they were reliev'd by the Chriſtian Army of 80000 Men, conſiſting of *Imperialiſts* and *Poles*: The Right Wing was commanded by *John Sobieski*, King of *Poland*; the Left by the Elector of *Bavaria* and the Duke of *Lorrain*; and the Main by the Elector of *Saxony* and Prince *Waldeck*. They forc'd the Enemy's Intrenchments; and during the Engagement, the Duke of *Lorrain* detached Prince *Lewis* of *Baden* with a Body of Horſe, Foot and Dragoons, to relieve the City, which he did, and killed all the *Turks* that were employ'd in the Aſſault. Upon this, the *Turkiſh* Horſe fled, and left their Camp and Foot to the Mercy of the Chriſtians, who gain'd a ſignal Victory, with the Loſs only of 1000 Men. The *Turks* loſt about 75000, with their Baggage, and 120 Cannon; and the Gariſon loſt about 6000 Men during the Siege.

The Elector of *Saxony* return'd home with his Troops after the Relief of the Town, becauſe the Emperor diſoblig'd him; but the *Imperial* and *Poliſh* Army march'd after the *Turks*, fell in with 14000 of them, routed them, took the Fort of *Barkan* by Storm, and ſoon after the Duke of *Lorrain* took *Gran*, after a Siege of 3 Days. 'Tis probable their whole Army muſt have been diſpers'd, had not the King of *Poland* been likewiſe diſguſted, which made him not ſo eager in the Purſuit as otherwiſe he would have been. He was not pleaſed with the Emperor's Coldneſs to him upon the Interview, after the conſiderable Service he had done him by raiſing the Siege. The *Atlas Hiſtorique* ſays, the Malecontents prevail'd twice with that King to mediate for a Redreſs of their Grievances; which being refus'd, he declar'd he would aſſiſt the Emperor no more. The Progreſs of the Emperor's Arms however made the *Turks* abandon *Eſſec*; and the Grand Viſier being charged to have occaſioned all thoſe Misfortunes by his Imprudence, he was ſtrangled at *Belgrade* by the Grand Signior's Orders.

In 1684, the *Imperialiſts* took *Vicegrade*, a ſtrong Fortreſs on a Mountain near the *Danube*. The Duke of *Lorrain* defeated the *Turkiſh* Army near *Weiſſen*, took that Town, and worſted the *Turks* alſo near *Buda*. On the 18th of *July*, the Duke of *Lorrain* ſat down before that Town. Twenty Thouſand *Turks* came and encamped within 4 Miles of it: Upon which the Duke marched and routed them, took their General's rich Tent, and killed 4000 on the Spot, beſides thoſe ſlain in the Purſuit; yet the Beſieged held out, and concerted with the Seraſquier, that on the 25th of *September* they ſhould make a great Sally, and that he ſhould ſend a ſtrong Detachment to enter the Place, which he did; and tho' they met with great Oppoſition, yet 600 of 'em got in. The *Imperial* Army being much weakened, could not puſh on the Siege with Vigour; and on the 20th the *Turks* made three great Sallies, kill'd many of the *Imperialiſts*, and ruin'd moſt of their Works, which, together with the Approach of the Seraſquier with a great Army to the Relief of the Town, and the Badneſs of the Weather, obliged the Duke to raiſe the Siege.

Count *Lefty* beſieged *Verovitza*, the Capital of *Sclavonia*; and having ſent a Detachment who defeated 2500 *Turks* near *Flatina*,

Digitized by Google

Verovitza ſurrender'd. He had like to have been ſurpris'd afterwards by 20000 *Turks*, commanded by the Seraſquier; but he fortified his Camp, and obliged the *Turks* to retire with conſiderable Loſs. In *Upper Hungary*, the *Imperialiſts* defeated *Tekely*, killed 4000 of his Men, and took two Towns.

In 1685, the Duke of *Lorrain* beſieged *Newhauſel*: The *Turks*, to give him a Diverſion, beſieged *Gran*; upon which he left Troops to carry on the Siege, marched againſt them with the Main of his Army, killed above 6000 of them, beſides 3000 they loſt in the Siege, took their Camp and Baggage, with the Loſs only of 1000 Men, and relieved *Gran*, while his Troops before *Newhauſel* took that Place by Storm.

Count *Leſly* took *Michalowitz* in *Croatia*, defeated 10000 *Turkiſh* Horſe and Foot near *Eſſec*, ſcal'd the Town, put the Gariſon to the Sword, and burnt Part of the famous Bridge of that Place. About that ſame Time, General *Schultz* took *Eſperies* in *Upper Hungary*; upon which ſeveral other Places there ſurrender'd; and General *Caprara* took *Caſhaw*.

About this Time, Count *Tekely* was ſeiz'd by Order of the Grand Signior, which was a Blunder in Politicks, and diſheartened the Malecontents; ſo that the Port being ſenſible of their Error, ſet him at Liberty; upon which the *Imperialiſts* removed from before *Mongatz*, where they had block'd up his Lady Princeſs *Ragotzki*.

In 1686, the Duke of *Lorrain* laid Siege again to *Buda*, and open'd his Trenches the 21ſt of *June*. The Beſieged made furious Sallies; in one they killed 1000 Men, and in another nail'd up a Battery of Cannon, and two Mortars; but their Magazine near the Caſtle was blown up, which demoliſh'd a great Part of the Wall. On the 12th of *Auguſt*, the Grand Viſier came with 10000 choſen Men to force the *Imperial* Lines on the Right, and throw Supplies into the Town, and deſign'd with his whole Army of 70000 to attack the Main of the *Imperialiſts*; but the Duke of *Lorrain* ſent 7 Regiments of Horſe, and ſome *Hungarians*, who attacked the 10000 *Turks*, killed above 3000 Janizaries, took 8 Pieces of Cannon, and rejoin'd the Duke, who return'd to the Siege, and puſh'd it on with great Vigour. Three Thouſand Janizaries forc'd the Out-Guards, and threw 150 Men into the Town; but the reſt were repulſed. The *Imperialiſts* took the Caſtle by Storm on the 29th of *Auguſt*, and 3000 Janizaries, who deſign'd to get into the Town, were repulſed, and 400 of them killed.

In the beginning of *September*, the Duke was reinforced by 10000 Men, under General *Scherffemberg*; the Aſſault was made, and the Town taken by Storm. The *Turks* fought with incredible Bravery, the Baſha was killed in the Breach, 4000 *Turks* ſlain in the Aſſault, and the Chriſtians got an incredible Booty. When the Grand Viſier heard the Town was taken, he burnt his Camp, and retired to *Alba Regalis*.

Prince *Lewis* of *Baden* being join'd by a Body of *Croats*, beſieg'd *Five Churches*, a ſtrong Place, of difficult Acceſs, where there were 2000 *Turks* in Gariſon. He made a Breach in three Days, and began to work on his Mines; upon which the Gariſon, who wanted Ammunition, ſurrender'd at Diſcretion; and *Syclos* did the like. Prince *Lewis* deſtroy'd the Bridge of *Eſſec* from *Darda* to the *Drave*, and likewiſe the Bridge of Boats which the *Turks* had laid over that River. Count *Caraffa* attack'd *Segedin*, and the Grand Viſier ſent 2000 *Turks* and 4000 *Tartars* to relieve it; but General *Veterani*, with 5000 Men, ſurpris'd the *Tartars*, and forc'd them to abandon their Camp with great Slaughter; but the Remainders of that Detachment joining with others, made up a Body of 10000 Men, and deſign'd to ſurpriſe *Veterani* in his March; but he forc'd them to retire with the Loſs of 2000 Men, and their Baggage; upon which *Segedin* ſurrendes'd the 23d of *October*.

In 1687, the Duke of *Lorrain* made a feign'd Retreat near *Mohatz*; upon which the Grand Viſier order'd 15000 Men to attack his Left, commanded by the Elector of *Bavaria* and Prince *Lewis* of *Baden*; but they ſtood their Ground till the Duke came up, when the *Turks* were put to flight, and many of them kill'd on the Spot, beſides great Numbers drown'd in Moraſſes and in the River as they fled. General *Dunewa'd* paſſed the *Drave*, and took the Caſtle of *Butjhew*, and deſign'd to attack the Caſtle of *Eſſec*; but the *Turks* abandon'd it, with *Poſega* in *Sclavonia*, and other Places.

About

Digitized by Google

About this Time, the *Hungarians* finding themſelves treated like a Conquer'd People, many of their Towns deſign'd a Revolt; but not being able to effect it, their Miſery was heighten'd, abundance of Perſons of Note executed on that Account, and multitudes of innocent People taken up, that were forced to redeem their Liberty.

After the taking of *Buda*, Prince *Abaffi* began to Temporize with the Emperor: But the Duke of *Lorrain* enter'd *Tranſylvania*, as Count *Teckely* foretold him would happen, and oblig'd that Prince and the States to a Submiſſion, to ſurrender their Strengths, and conclude a Treaty very advantageous to the Emperor; upon which the Prince retired to *Forgatz*. About this Time, the ſtrong Fortreſs of *Agria* ſurrender'd to the *Imperialiſts*, and *Mahomet* IV. Emperor of the *Turks*, was depos'd, and his Brother ſet up in his ſtead.

The Emperor's good Succeſs put him upon getting his Son the Arch-Duke *Joſeph* crown'd King of *Hungary*. He went himſelf to *Preſburg*, where he aſſembled the States, and told 'em, He would have the Crown made Hereditary. The States took it into Conſideration, repreſented their Grievances, as uſual, and ſaid, They were willing to elect the Arch-Duke; but deſir'd their Freedom of Election might be continued, and that the Crown ſhould not be Hereditary; That the *German* Troops might be recalled when Peace was made with the *Turks*; and all their Grievances redreſſed before the Coronation. The Emperor allow'd them 14 Days to deliberate and draw up their Grievances; but told 'em, He had been at more Charge to defend that Kingdom againſt the *Turks*, than it was worth, and therefore had Right to look upon it as one of his Hereditary Countries. There were great Debates about this in the Diet; and the Count *de Draſcowitz*, the Chief Judge of the Kingdom, having repreſented the Conſequences of it, they pray'd the Emperor not to make ſuch an Alteration in their Conſtitution; but the Count being found dead a-Bed (ſays the *Atlas Hiſtorique*) ſome Days after, no body knows how, thoſe of his Sentiments durſt not after that talk any more of it. Some deſir'd that they might be at Liberty to chuſe any ſuch Prince of the Houſe of *Auſtria* as they thought fit; but this was alſo rejected. There were Two other Things which retarded the Coronation; the Firſt was, That according to an Article of King *Andrew*'s Declaration, any of the three Eſtates had a Right to oppoſe the King, when he acted againſt the Laws of the Kingdom, without being guilty of Treaſon; but the Emperor would not allow of that. The Second was, That the Proteſtants, who had join'd with the Court to get the Crown made Hereditary, thought it a proper Seaſon to demand, That they ſhould be maintain'd in their ancient Privileges; That the Churches and Eſtates which had been taken from 'em ſince 1667, ſhould be reſtored; That they ſhould have Deputies in every Diet; That the Jeſuits ſhould not meddle in Affairs of State, or what related to the Proteſtant Religion; That they ſhould not be allow'd to ſettle in any other Place than where they then were; And that Count *Caraffa*, who had got many innocent People cut off on Pretence of Plots, ſhould be turn'd out: But the States did not think it a ſeaſonable Time for the Proteſtants to inſiſt on thoſe Things; and thus, on the 29th of *December*, the Kingdom was made Hereditary, and the Power of the Prince in a manner abſolute; ſo that the People could do nothing but groan and ſigh for the Loſs of their Liberty; for Count *Teckely*, who had acquir'd ſo much Glory, had fail'd of late in moſt of his Attempts, and was not able to keep up their Spirits.

In 1688, Princeſs *Ragotski*, who had been block'd up in *Mungatz* a long Time, being in want of Neceſſaries, and hearing that her Husband Count *Teckely* was ſent for to *Conſtantinople*, where ſhe was afraid he might be ſtrangled, as he was every where given out to be, was forc'd to ſurrender. The Count being informed of this, as he was on his Journey to *Conſtantinople*, thought fit to return, leſt his Friends ſhould be quite diſpirited. Some accus'd him for this to the Grand Signior; but it made no Impreſſion to the Count's Prejudice.

Three thouſand Five hundred Infidels attempted to ſurpriſe *Czernick*; but the Garriſon ſallied, killed 700 of them, and took moſt of the reſt. The 27th of *May*, the *Imperialiſts* obliged *Alba Regalis*, where the Kings of *Hungary* were formerly crown'd, to ſurrender, and found 84 Pieces of Cannon

Digitized by Google

non in it: They also took *Lippa* by Storm; and the *Turks* abandoned *Illock* and *Peter Waradin*.

In *August*, the Elector of *Bavaria* invested *Belgrade*, where the *Turks* made a brave Defence; yet he took it by Storm on the 6th of *September*, enter'd the Castle after the *Turks*, who fled thither, and kill'd 500 of them, with the Governor: The Christians lost 1250 Men, of whom there were 12 great Lords; but the *Turks* lost above 4000 Men in this Action.

Prince *Lewis* of *Baden*, with a flying Camp in *Bosnia*, was surrounded by 15000 *Turks*, but routed them, and took 1200 Prisoners, near *Brodt*.

In 1689, the Grand Signior finding a Way open'd to *Constantinople* by the taking of *Belgrade*, offer'd Peace upon very advantageous Terms, which were rejected. The Elector of *Bavaria* and Duke of *Lorrain* went to Command the Army on the *Rhine* against *France*; and the Prince of *Baden* commanded in *Hungary*. The *Imperialists* block'd up *Canissa*, *Themiswar* and *Waradin*; but having too few Troops, they could not hinder Convoys to enter those Places, which with some Losses by Sallies, oblig'd them to rise from before 'em. Prince *Lewis* of *Baden* having Advice, That the *Turkish* Army was above 50000; he reinforced his Army from the Garisons, and march'd towards the *Turks*, who were intrench'd before *Nissa*; but the badness of the Way, and want of Provisions, oblig'd him to march back to *Passarovitz*, to secure the Bridges over the *Morave*, and prevent the *Turks* from invading *Selavonia*. The *Turks* hearing of his Retreat, sent a strong Detachment to harrass him in his March, and to take the Imperial Magazine at *Semendria*; but he defeated this Detachment, and another that was sent to cut off his Retreat: After which, he marched against their Army near *Patoschin*, defeated 'em, obliged 'em to retire to *Nissa*, took their Camp and Baggage, and 100 Pieces of Cannon. Some Days after he march'd to *Nissa*, forced their Camp, routed them, and took the Town. *Teckely* was on his Way to relieve it; but coming too late, he join'd the Grand Signior at *Sophia*, who entertain'd him with all possible Marks of Honour and Affection. The Prince of *Baden* marched from *Nissa* to *Widdin*, a Place of Importance on the *Danube*; defeated two Bassa's who lay near that Place, and took it in four Days; *Piccolomini* defeated the *Turks* also in several Skirmishes: But these continued Victories made the *Imperialists* too bold, which cost 'em some Regiments that attacked four times their Number of *Turks*. Upon this, *Veterani* was obliged to draw out his Troops from *Nissa*, and other Places, and march towards *Belgrade*. The Prince of *Baden* quartered part of his Army in *Wallachia* and *Transilvania*, fortified several Posts to secure them from the *Turks* and *Tartars*, and return'd to *Vienna*.

In 1689, the *French* invaded the *Palatinate*, committed great Barbarities there, took *Philipsburg* and other Places, having formerly burnt the Cities of *Spires*, *Oppenheim*, *Worms* and *Frankendale*. This Year they laid waste the Country about *Montroyal* and *Luxemburg*, to prevent the Confederates sitting down before these Places. The *Imperialists* under the Duke of *Lorrain* took *Kerserwaert* and *Ments*, after a brave Defence by the *French*; wherein the *Germans* lost above 6000 Men: And the Elector of *Brandenburg* being reinforced by Troops from the Duke of *Lorrain*, oblig'd *Bonne* to Surrender after a vigorous Resistance.

In 1690, the *Turks* desired a Peace; but the Emperor's Terms appearing too high, the War began again. *Abaffi* Prince of *Transilvania* being dead, the Emperor made his eldest Son Prince of that Country, and the Grand Signior conferr'd that Honour on Count *Tekely*; who defeated and took General *Heusler* in *Transilvania*, which obliged Prince *Lewis* of *Baden* to pass the *Danube* at *Semandria*. The *Turks* also besieg'd *Nissa*: Count *Guido* of *Staremberg* wanting Provisions, was oblig'd to surrender it upon honourable Terms, after a brave Defence, but many of their Garison were perfidiously kill'd by the *Infidels*. The Garison of *Widin* capitulated with the *Turks*, and were convoyed to *Orsiva*. Upon this, the *Turks* march'd towards *Belgrade*, the Breaches of which had not been sufficiently repaired; and General *Aspremont*, and the Duke of *Croy*, who had thrown himself into it, had not time to fortifie it. The Garison made a brave Defence, but a Bomb blew up their great Magazine of Powder; it kill'd 1200 Men, wounded a greater Number, and threw

Digitized by Google

ſhrew down part of the Walls. Several other Magazines were alſo ſet on fire, which occaſion'd the burning down of a great part of the City: The *Turks* taking the Advantage of this Confuſion, after ſeveral Repulſes, carried it by Storm, and killed all thoſe that oppos'd them; ſo that only 600 of the 6000 that were in Gariſon eſcaped with the Duke of *Croy*, and the Counts of *Aſpremont* and *Archinto*, over the *Danube* in Boats. The *Turks* after this march'd towards *Eſſec*, ſat down before it; and would have taken it, if the Duke of *Croy* had not order'd 300 Men to Sally out in the Night, to ſound a great many Trumpets, and beat Drums, firſt more faintly, and then more loud: Upon which, the *Turks* thinking it to be a ſtrong Body of *Germans* come to the Relief of the Place, they broke up in Confuſion, and left their Cannon and heavy Baggage. Count *Teckely* took *Lippa*, and put Gariſons into *Giula*, *Themiſwaer*, and *Great Waradin*, which harraſs'd *Hungary*. Prince *Auguſtus* of *Hanover*, with 1000 Men, raſhly attack'd 1500 *Turks* ſtrongly intrench'd in *Tranſilvania*, was routed, and himſelf kill'd on the Spot. This Year the Emperor and the King of *Spain* made a new Alliance with the Duke of *Savoy*, who was threaten'd by the *French* King; and the Emperor got his Son Archduke *Joſeph* King of *Hungary*, elected King of the *Romans*. *Canizſa*, a ſtrong Fortreſs in *Lower Hungary*, was ſurrendred to the *Imperialiſts*, while the *Turks* were buſie with the Sieges of *Niſſa*, *Widin*, *Eſſec*, and other Places. Prince *Lewis* of *Baden* march'd with ſo great Secrecy, that he ſurrounded *Teckely*'s Army, forc'd him to retire into *Wallachia*, and to leave moſt of his Baggage, with 4 or 500 Men behind, by which *Tranſilvania* was clear'd of the *Turks*.

In the beginning of 1691, died the Duke of *Lorrain*, who had gain'd ſo much glory in the *Turkiſh* War, *&c.* a little time before; and deſign'd to have invaded *France* with 40000 Men, by the Way of *Lorrain*. The Command of the Army on the *Rhine* was given to the Electors of *Bavaria* and *Saxony*, but they did nothing memorable on that ſide. The Prince of *Baden*, about the middle of this Campaign, march'd with 40000 Men along the *Danube* to *Peter Waradin*, to oppoſe 60000 *Turks*, who deſign'd to paſs the *Save*; but their Fleet on the *Danube* being ſtronger than that of the *Imperialiſts*, hinder'd the Proviſions to come any farther than *Salankemen*; and the *Turks* march'd thither to cut off their Communication with *Peter Waradin*, where their Proviſions lay. This alarm'd Prince *Lewis* of *Baden*, who wanted both Proviſions and Ammunition, and made him reſolve to fight, tho' with great Diſadvantage. He attack'd the *Turks* in their Trenches near *Salankemen*: His Right Wing was worſted; but the Left coming up, they routed the *Turks*, and gave Time to the Right to rally, by which they had a compleat Victory, with the Loſs only of 2000 Men; and the *Turks* loſt about 16000, with the Grand Viſier *Cuperli*, the Aga of the Janizaries, and ſeveral great Baſſa's. After this they retook *Lippa*, paſs'd the *Danube*, and took *Great Waradin*; but the Citadel held out, and was block'd up.

In 1692, General *Heuſter* was exchang'd for Count *Teckely*'s Wife. He beſieged *Great Waradin* on the 28th of *April*, and took it the 2d of *June*, together with Store of Ammunition, 77 Pieces of Cannon, and 4 Mortars. This Year the Duke of *Hanover* was made an Elector of the Empire. The Prince of *Baden* having repreſented to the Emperor the Neceſſity of Naval Preparations on the *Danube*, becauſe the *Turks* had a ſtronger Fleet, and frequently ſtop'd their Convoys: By Conſent of the *Dutch*, many Seamen were liſted in their Country for that Service, and ſeveral Veſſels fitted out: This little Fleet was commanded by the Marquis of *Fleuri*. The *French*, under the Mareſchal *de Lorge*, committed ſome Barbarities on the *Rhine*; ſurpriz'd and took the Duke of *Wirtemberg*, and kill'd and took 2000 of the Detachment he commanded. The Landgrave of *Heſſe Caſſel* oblig'd the *French* to riſe from before *Rhinfelds*.

In 1693, my Lord *Paget* Ambaſſador from *England*, and Monſieur *Hemikerque* Ambaſſador from the *States General*, came to *Conſtantinople*, to mediate a Peace betwixt the Emperor and the Grand Signior; but the *French* Ambaſſador diſſwaded the Port from it. The Duke of *Croy* commanded in *Hungary*, and the Prince of *Baden* on the *Upper Rhine*. The *French* under the Mareſchal *de Lorge* attempted twice to force the *German* Camp, but were repuls'd with Loſs. Mareſchal *de Lorge*, who commanded the *French*

Digitized by Google

French under the Dauphin, put the Dutchy of *Wirtemberg* under Contribution, and took *Heidelberg*, by the Treachery or Cowardice of the Governor, where they committed great Barbarities, as in other Places of the *Palatinate*, burning wherever they came. The *Imperialists* beſieg'd *Belgrade*; but the Grand Viſier with an Army of 80000 Men obliged them to raiſe the Siege. General *Heidersheim* routed a ſtrong Body of *Turks* and *Tartars* near *Giula*, and took that Town.

In 1694, the *Turks* beſieg'd *Titul*, without Succeſs: The Gariſon intercepted 20 *Turkiſh* Veſſels with Proviſions, which occaſion'd a great Scarcity in their Camp. They alſo beſieged *Great Waradin*; but in vain. Two Thouſand *Tartars* were detached over the *Danube*; but were cut off. Prince *Lewis* of *Baden* paſſed the *Rhine*, made M. *de Lorge* retire, laid the Country under Contribution, deſtroy'd ſeveral *French* Magazines, and carried off 14000 Head of Cattle.

In 1695, the Elector of *Saxony* commanded in *Hungary*, and the Grand Signior *Muſtapha* headed his own Army, retook *Lippa* and *Titul* from the *Imperialiſts*, defeated a Body commanded by Count *Veterani*, who was killed, and 3000 of his Men, with the Loſs of 6000 *Turks*. The Elector of *Saxony* hinder'd them from making any Advantage of this Victory in *Tranſilvania*.

In 1696, the Elector of *Saxony* beſieg'd *Themiſwaer*, which brought the Grand Signior to a Battle. The *Turks* had the Advantage of Number and Ground, and the Loſs on both Sides was near equal; ſo that both challeng'd the Victory; but the Elector loſt 5 great Cannon, and 16 Field-Pieces; and the *Turks* retook many ſmall Places on the *Save*, which they demoliſhed.

In 1697, Count *Teckely*, who had loſt his former Reputation with the *Turks* ſince the Battle of *Salankemen*, retir'd to *Conſtantinople*. One of his Followers, called *Tekai*, form'd a Conſpiracy in *Hungary*, aſſembled a Body of Troops, ſeiz'd *Kallo* and *Potack*, cut off the *Imperial* Gariſons, and publiſh'd a Manifeſto, inviting the *Hungarians* to ſhake off the *German* Yoke; but this Conſpiracy was ſoon cruſh'd. This Year the Elector of *Saxony* being Competitor for the Crown of *Poland*, after *John Sobieski*'s Death, with the Prince of *Conti*, carried it, which was a great Mortification to the *French*. Prince *Eugene* of *Savoy* commanded in Chief in *Hungary*; and the *Turks*, encourag'd by their former Advantages, reſolv'd to hazard a Battle at *Zanta*, where that Prince obtain'd a compleat Victory: About 25000 *Turks* were kill'd in the Field or drown'd in the *Theiſſe*, 6000 were wounded, and they loſt 83 Pieces of Cannon, 5000 Waggons with Proviſions, 17000 Oxen, 6000 Horſes, as many Camels, a vaſt Number of Sheep, the Grand Signior's Tent, 7 Standards, and 500 Colours. This Year a Peace betwixt the Emperor, the reſt of the Allies, and *France*, was concluded at *Ryſwick*, upon the Baſis of thoſe of *Weſtphalia* and *Nimeguen*. The *French* quitted all their Reunions in *Alſace*; but Popery was to remain where they had ſettled it; The Elector *Palatine* was reſtor'd to his Territories, on paying 200000 Livres *per Annum* to the Dutcheſs of *Orleans*, till her Pretenſions were decided; *Dinant* was reſtor'd to *Liege*; *Strasburg* reſign'd to *France*; and *Fort-Kiel*, *Friburg*, *Star-Fort*, *Old Briſac*, and *Philipſburg*, reſtor'd to the Empire; The *French* were to demoliſh the Fortifications over againſt *Huningen* and *Fort-Lewis*; The Caſtles of *Trarbach*, *Ehrenburg*, *Kirnburg*, and the Fortreſs of *Mont-Royal*, were to be demoliſh'd, and reſtor'd to their right Owners; The Duke of *Lorrain* was reſtor'd to his own Country, and to *Nancy*; and the Caſtles of *Bitſch* and *Homburg* were to be raz'd. The Proteſtant Princes of the Empire gave in a Memorial againſt eſtabliſhing Popery in *Alſatia*, becauſe contrary to the Fundamental Laws of the Empire; *i. e.* to the Peace of Religion made in 1588, and to that of *Weſtphalia* and *Nimeguen*, which were the Baſis of this Treaty; and that this Article was likewiſe contrary to the Capitulations of the Emperor and the King of the *Romans*, by which the ſaid Peace of Religion was ſecured. They declar'd, That this Clauſe would prove a great Hindrance to the Union of the Eſtates of the Empire, which happen'd accordingly; for after the Peace was concluded, many Violences were offer'd to the Proteſtants in the *Palatinate*, and other Places, upon the Account of Religion.

In 1698, the Defeat of the *Turks* at the Battle of *Zanta* terrified them ſo much, that publick Prayers and Acts of Devotion were com-

Digitized by Google

commanded throughout their Empire, in order to obtain a Peace by the Favour of God and their Prophet. The Emperor and the Grand Signior conſented that his Majeſty of *Great Britain* and the States General ſhould be Mediators of the Peace. They were repreſented by my Lord *Paget* and Monſieur *Colliere*, who met at *Carlowitz*, betwixt *Peter Waradin* and *Salankemen*. Prince *Eugene* commanded this Year in *Hungary*; but the Expectation of a Peace made both Sides act only on the Defenſive. The Regiments of *Herbeville* and *Saxe-Gotha* conſpired to revolt from the Emperor; but the Formers of this Deſign being ſeiz'd and puniſh'd, the reſt return'd to their Duty. There happen'd Differences this Year about the *French* King's delaying to reſtore *Rhinfeld*, *Philipſburg*, and *Briſac*, according to the Peace at *Ryſwick*. The Czar of *Muſcovy*, after he had viſited *Holland*, and King *William* in *England*, went to *Vienna*, where he was ſplendidly entertain'd by the Emperor, and from thence return'd home.

January the 26th, 1699. a Treaty was ſign'd for 25 Years betwixt the Emperor and the *Turks* at *Carlowitz*: The chief Articles were, "That *Tranſilvania* ſhould remain entire to the Emperor; but the "Province of *Themiſwar* to the *Turks*: That "the Emperor ſhould demoliſh *Caranſebes*, "*Lippa*, *Zerwock*, *Berſhe*, and *Sabla*, and never re-fortify them. The Iſlands of the "Rivers *Save* and *Marofch* were to belong "to the Emperor; but the Uſe of thoſe "Rivers to both. All Priſoners taken during the War to be exchanged or ranſomed. No Protection on either Side to "be given to Rebels and Malecontents. "The Papiſts were to have the free Exerciſe of their Religion." The Czar, the King of *Poland*, and the Republick of *Venice*, were comprehended in this Treaty; but Count *Tekely* was excluded. The Grand Signior made him, by way of Compenſation, Prince of *Widdin*, *Caranſebes*, and *Lugos*, with their Dependencies. This Year *Joſeph* King of the *Romans* was married to *Wilhelmina Amelia*, youngeſt Daughter of *John Frederick* Duke of *Hanover*.

In 1700, the Emperor disbanded ſome of his Troops, and offer'd his Mediation betwixt the K. of *Sweden* and the K. of *Poland*; but without Effect. M. *Villars*, the *French* Ambaſſador, acquainted his Imperial Majeſty with the Treaty of Partition agreed on betwixt *England*, *Holland*, and *France*, and deſir'd the Emperor to accept it, ſince the Preſervation of the Peace of *Europe* was the ſole End of it; but his Imperial Majeſty refus'd it, becauſe it was contrary to his own Right and Intereſt.

The Death of King *Charles* II. of *Spain*, on *Nov.* 1. 1700. and his ſuppos'd Will, by which he made the Duke of *Anjou* his Succeſſor, contrary to the Treaty of Partition, obliged moſt of the Princes of *Europe* to ſide with the Houſes of *Bourbon* or *Auſtria*, according to their different Intereſts. The Emperor made a new Alliance with *England*, *Holland*, and the Princes of the Empire, and ſent Prince *Eugene* of *Savoy* to *Italy* with 30 or 40000 Men, who, after a ſurprizing and unexpected March over the Rocks and Mountains of the *Alps* with his Artillery, let down from Precipices by Engines, publiſh'd a Manifeſto there, aſſerting the Rights of the Houſe of *Auſtria* to the *Milaneſe*, and the Monarchy of *Spain*. About this Time a new Conſpiracy was form'd againſt the Emperor in *Hungary*; upon which Prince *Ragotski* and Count *Schirmei* were impriſon'd: *Ragotski* eſcap'd, and the Emperor impriſon'd his Lady. This Year the Elector of *Brandenburg* erected the Dutchy of *Pruſſia* into a Kingdom, with the Emperor's Conſent; and he and his Wife were crown'd at *Koningsberg*, the Metropolis of that Country. On this Occaſion he was congratulated by the Emperor, and moſt Princes of the Empire. The Duke of *Mantua* declar'd for the *French* King, and received a *French* Gariſon into that City. Prince *Eugene* began his glorious Actions in *Italy*, by forcing the Paſs at *Carpi*, and paſſing the *Mincio*, notwithſtanding the Vigilance of the *French* Generals, which occaſion'd a Miſunderſtanding among them, and obliged the *French* King to recall M. *Catinat*, and ſend M. *Villeroy* in his ſtead, who being defeated by Prince *Eugene* at *Chiari*, had 4000 Men killed, by which the *French* loſt all the Dutchy of *Mantua*, except the Capital, and *Goito*.

In 1702, the Elector of *Cologne* ſuffer'd *French* Troops to enter his Territories; but the Chapter declar'd for the Emperor, and received a *Dutch* Gariſon into *Cologne*. Prince

Digitized by Google

Eugene ſurpris'd *Cremona*, where M. *de Villeroy* had his Head Quarters, with 12 Battalions of Foot, and 5 Regiments of Horſe. He made *Villeroy* Priſoner; but the Badneſs of the Ways having hinder'd Prince *Vaudemont* to come up in Time to his Aſſiſtance, he was oblig'd to retire, being out-number'd by the Gariſon; but carried off M. *Villeroy*. He block'd up *Mantua*; but the Place being naturally ſtrong, and his Army not large, he was obliged to riſe from before it. The Duke of *Anjou* commanding his own Army in *Italy*, marched to ſurpriſe an Imperial Magazine at *Luzara*, which occaſion'd a Battle, where the Loſs was great, and almoſt equal on both Sides: Yet Prince *Eugene*, thô inferior in Number, made a further Progreſs in *Italy*. About this Time, the King of the *Romans* and Prince *Lewis* of *Baden* took *Landau*, after a vigorous Defence; and the Elector of *Bavaria* declar'd for *France*, and ſurpris'd *Ulm* by Treachery.

The Emperor and the States of *Swabia* and *Franconia* aſſembled Forces againſt the Elector of *Bavaria*, and took many Towns. M. *Villars* paſſed the *Rhine*, and attempted to force the Lines of *Stolhoffen*, and open a Paſſage that Way to join the Elector of *Bavaria*; but being repuls'd, he join'd him by Way of the *Black Forreſt*; and they took *Ratisbon*, while the Imperial Diet was ſitting there. After this, M. *Villars* marched to *Tirol*, took many Places there, and deſign'd to force his Way from thence into *Italy*; but fail'd in the Attempt, and was forced to abandon all his Conqueſts there. The Confederates took *Bonn* on the *Lower Rhine*, and *Traerbach*; but were obliged to quit the latter on the Approach of Count *Tallard*, who took *Landau*, after he had defeated the Confederate Army that came to relieve it, under Count *Naſſau-Weilbourg* and the Prince of *Heſſe-Caſſel*. On the *Upper Rhine*, the Duke of *Burgundy* took *Briſac*. The Duke of *Vendoſme* miſtruſting the Duke of *Savoy*, diſarm'd all the *Savoyard* Auxiliaries in his Army, made them Priſoners of War, and ſent a ſtrong Detachment to the Frontiers of *Piedmont*, to force the Duke to a Neutrality, upon diſhonourable Terms; which the Duke reſented ſo much, that notwithſtanding his two Daughters were married to the Duke of *Burgundy* and to the Duke of *Anjou*, he declar'd for the Allies. The Arch Duke *Charles* being acknowledg'd as King of *Spain* by the Allies, came from *Vienna* to *Holland*, and from thence into *England*, where he embarked for *Portugal*, the King of that Country having enter'd into the Grand Confederacy, and arrived ſafely there.

This Year Prince *Ragotski* was condemn'd by the *Aulick* Council at *Vienna*, and all his Poſſeſſions confiſcated, (except an Yearly Allowance of 6000 Livres to his Wife, and 15000 to each of his two Daughters) for Rebellion and Treaſon againſt his Imperial Majeſty and the King of the *Romans*, by endeavouring to ſubject *Hungary* to a Foreign Power, by alienating the Affections of the *Hungarians*, and by writing ſeveral Letters to *France*, to put *Hungary* under the Protection of that Crown; for which, and other Crimes, he was ſentenc'd to loſe his Head whenever he could be ſeized.

In 1704, the Malecontents invaded the Emperor's Hereditary Dominions. Prince *Eugene* was ſent to *Pretburg*, to endeavour an Accommodation; to which they would not agree, except on the Terms contain'd in their Manifeſto, which was in Subſtance as follows: That they have no Deſign to throw off the Emperor their Sovereign; but ſhall always be ready to ſacrifice their Fortunes for his Glory, if he treat them as a good Prince ought to do; and ſince they believ'd him to be naturally bountiful and merciful, they demanded, 1. To be allow'd their ancient Privileges, which they enjoy'd when they became his Subjects. 2. That the Blood of their Martyrs, whoſe Conſciences had been oppreſſed, cry'd ſo loud, that they could not but inſiſt on demanding the Reſtitution of their Churches for Divine Worſhip. 3. That the Revenues of their Churches, poſſeſſed by the Jeſuits, ſhould be reſtored. 4. That their Records ſhould likewiſe be returned. 5. That they be reſtor'd to their Offices and Dignities, as formerly. 6. That the Jeſuits ſhould be baniſh'd *Hungary* and *Tranſilvania*. 7. That their Colleges and Revenues ſhould be likewiſe reſtored. 8. That thoſe who had been forced to change their Religion, ſhould be left at Liberty to return to it. 9. That the Books and other Papers concerning their Grievances, which were taken from them, ſhould

Digitized by Google

ſhould be reſtor'd. 10. That ſuch Eſtates as Proteſtants had been forc'd by Perſecution to grant to the Popiſh Clergy, ſhould be reſtor'd to the Proteſtant Clergy for the Relief of their Poor. 11. That all the Popiſh Clergy, except Natives, be oblig'd to depart *Hungary* and *Tranſilvania*. 12. That if the Emperor will name Commiſſioners, to Treat of a firm and durable Peace, and agree to a Suſpenſion of Arms, and Time and Place for a Treaty, they will do the like. 13. That ſome Potentates be made Gurantees of the Treaty. 14. That without Derogation to the Emperor's Sovereignty, they may have Leave to ſend Deputies to the Diet of the Empire, meerly to take Care that they be not incroach'd upon in Matters of Religion. 15. That as a Compenſation for the Cruelties committed upon their Families, and other Loſſes, they may be exempted from all Taxes for 15 Years. 16. That they may have Liberty to Trade every where but with the Emperor's Enemies. 17. That Princeſs *Ragotzki*, and her Family, be ſet at Liberty, and her Jewels reſtor'd, without any Defalcation. 18. That the Caſtle of *Mongatz*, with all its Dependencies and Privileges belonging to it, be reſtor'd to her and her Heirs. 19. That the Sentence againſt Prince *Ragotzki* be ras'd out and annull'd, his Honour reſtor'd, and that he be own'd as a Prince of the Empire, and put in Poſſeſſion of all his Rights, 20. That the Eſtates taken from that Prince, and given to the Jeſuits, be reſtor'd, as at preſent, without any Allowance for Improvements made on them. 21. That there be a general Amneſty for all who have any way aſſiſted that Prince. 22. That they be reſtor'd to their Imployments, Offices and Dignities, and the Confiſcation of their Eſtates and Goods be made void. 23. That Proteſtant Commiſſioners may have liberty to take out of the Nunneries all ſuch Proteſtant Women as have been forc'd into them, whether Married or Unmarried. 24. That the Proteſtants ſhall be allow'd Schools every where as formerly. 25. That thoſe of the *Augſburg* Confeſſion may have Leave to ſettle in *Hungary* and *Tranſilvania*, to repeople the Country that has been laid waſte by War and Perſecution. 26. That half the Courts of Judicature may be compos'd of Proteſtants as formerly. 27. That the like ſhall be allow'd in all Corporations. 28. That the Proteſtants of ſuch Bodies or Corporations be not oblig'd to attend at any Functions contrary to their Conſciences. 29. That they be not oblig'd to put any Ornaments before their Gates, or in their Windows, on that Holiday, call'd the *Feaſt of God*. 30. That when they meet the Hoſt, they ſhall not be oblig'd to kneel or retire, but only to ſalute the Prieſt by taking off their Hat.

Her Majeſty of *Great Britain*, and the *States General*, imployed their Miniſters to mediate a Peace betwixt the Emperor and the *Hungarians*, but in vain; the Imperial Court being ſtiff. Mareſchal *Villars* with the *French* made a great Progreſs upon the *Danube*; and General *Viſconti* and Count *Staremberg* forc'd their Way with admirable Conduct to join the Duke of *Savoy* in *Piedmont*, where he was very much preſs'd by the *French*. Prince *Lewis* of *Baden* not being able to make Head againſt the *French* and *Bavarians* on the *Danube*, the Duke of *Marlborough*, with a great Body of *Britiſh* and *Dutch* Troops, march'd from *Boiſleduc* in *Brabant* the 12th of *May* 1704, and join'd him in *Swabia* the 25th of *June*; when being inform'd, That the Elector of *Bavaria* had order'd his Troops to intrench the Hill of *Schellenburg* near *Donawert*, a very ſtrong Poſt, to hinder the Allies from paſſing the *Danube*; the Duke and the Prince attack'd them on the 2d of *July*, forced their Intrenchments, which reach'd as far as *Donawert*, defeated 18000 *French* and *Bavarians*, commanded by the Count *d'Arco* the *Bavarian* Field-Marſhal, a *Bavarian* Lieutenant General, and two *French* Lieutenant Generals; kill'd about 5000 on the Spot, took 15 Cannon, all their Baggage, Ammunition, and Tents, 13 Colours, and Count *d'Arco's* Plate. The Attack was begun by the *Britiſh* Troops; wherein the Regiments of *Orkney* and *Ingoldsby*, and Lord *John Hay's* Dragoons, did Wonders, and ſuffer'd moſt; ſo that the Loſs on the Confederate Side was almoſt equal to that of the Enemy: But the former gain'd the Paſs and the Town, with the Enemies Stores; entred the Elector's Country, forc'd him to retire under the Cannon of *Augſburg*, took ſeveral Gariſons, and ſent a ſtrong Reinforcement to Prince *Eugene*, who obſerv'd the

French on the *Rhine*; but notwithſtanding all his Precautions, they march'd thro' the *Black Forreſt*, and join'd the Elector near *Augsburg*. Prince *Eugene* followed 'em with his little Army as faſt as was convenient; but the *French* and *Bavarians* having repaſs'd the *Danube*, in order to attack him, the Duke of *Marlborough* made haſte to join him near *Munſter* on the *Danube*. In the mean time the Enemy march'd to a riſing Ground, betwixt *Hochſtet* and *Lutzingen*, where the Duke deſign'd to have encamp'd: Upon which, his Grace and the Prince reſolved to attack the Enemy, tho' ſtrongly encamp'd. Accordingly they march'd towards them on the 2d of *Auguſt* in the morning; the *Imperialiſts* under Prince *Eugene* on the Right, and the *Britains* and *Dutch* on the Left. The Allies, tho' they had the Diſadvantage of the Ground, and ſeveral Brooks to paſs, march'd on boldly till they came within Cannon-ſhot; when the *French* play'd upon them from their Line for about 4 Hours, till the *Imperialiſts* came up, after many Difficulties in their March. The Allies in the mean time cannonaded the *French*, with conſiderable Damage on both Sides. When the *Imperialiſts* came up, the *French* ſent a ſtrong Body of Foot, and Dragoons diſmounted, to the Village of *Blenheim*, which they fortified with a Trench and Barricadoes. The Lord *Cutts* being commanded to attack the Village with 20 Battalions, perform'd it with the utmoſt Bravery; but was beat off with great Loſs, 25 Squadrons of Dragoons, who were order'd to ſuſtain him, being at too great a Diſtance: Upon this, ſome Squadrons of *French* Gens d'Arms attack'd him, and put ſome of his Regiments into Diſorder; but were oblig'd to retire by the coming up of ſome *Heſſians*. The *Britiſh* Horſe were ſent from the firſt Column to ſuſtain my Lord, and Colonel *Palms* with four Squadrons beat off the Gens d'Arms; but advancing too far, ſuffer'd by the fire of a *French* Battalion from the Hedges, which oblig'd 'em to wheel and form themſelves. At the ſame time, the reſt of the *Engliſh* Horſe, with 10 Squadrons of Foreigners, advanced before the Foot, and paſs'd the River, but were forced to repaſs it by the *French*. The Duke of *Marlborough* perceiving this, came up, and rallied them with great Preſence of Mind; upon which they paſs'd the River again, join'd the other 4 Squadrons, and beat the *French* back a conſiderable Way. The reſt of the Confederates Left paſſed the River, the Foot of the Firſt Line under General *Churchill* and Lieutenant General *Ingoldsby*; and the Horſe charg'd the *French* with Advantage, till a Brigade of their Foot oblig'd them to retire. The Earl of *Orkney* coming up with the reſt of the Second Line of Foot, ſuſtain'd the Confederate Horſe, who were puſh'd by the Gens d'Arms, and interlin'd 'em with ſome Battalions; upon which, the Horſe form'd themſelves, charg'd the *French*, and beat them from the high Ground. The Duke of *Holſtein Beck*, with 10 Battalions, attack'd the *French* in a Village, where he ſuffer'd much; and the *French* Fire from that Village galling the Flank of our Horſe, the Duke of *Marlborough* brought three Battalions to cover them. The Earl of *Orkney* ordered ſome Guns, with Cartouch-ſhot, to play on the *French* Battalions, interlin'd with their Horſe, which did great Execution among 'em; and their Horſe advancing, were beat off, by which eight of the Enemies Battalions were expoſed, and cut off almoſt in Rank and File. Upon this, the whole Wing of the *French* Horſe retir'd a little; and Mareſchal *Tallard* form'd them in a Line to bring his Foot and Dragoons out of the Village of *Hochſtet*: Upon which, the Confederate Horſe charg'd them, put 'em in Confuſion, and drove many of 'em into the *Danube*, while the reſt retired towards *Hochſtet*: And in the mean time, Count *Tallard* was taken in a Village, as endeavouring to get to *Blenheim*. Part of the Confederate Horſe purſued the *French*, and the reſt fronted to the Village of *Blenheim*, which was ſurrounded by the Confederate Foot under the Earl of *Orkney* and Lieutenant General *Ingoldsby*; and General *Churchill* having cut off the Communication betwixt two *French* Brigades, and the reſt of their Troops in the Village, the Confederates followed them into the Village, where they ſuffer'd much by the Fire of the *French* from the Houſes, as well as from that in the Streets; and having a great Body of Troops in the Church-yard, they rallied and beat out thoſe commanded by the Earl of *Orkney* twice with conſiderable Loſs.

The

Digitized by Google

The 20 Battallons commanded by the Lord *Cutts*, had alſo ſuſtained great Loſs by their Attacks on the other Side of the Village. While the Earl of *Orkney* was rallying ſome of his Battalions on the Plain, a Body of *French* marched towards him from that Part of the Village which he had order'd to be ſet on Fire; upon which having put his Men in Order to receive them, with great Preſence of Mind, he order'd a Parley to be beat, and ſent his Aid de Camp, Captain *Abercromby*, to offer them Quarter, if they would ſurrender. They proved to be Part of the *French* Brigade Royal commanded by M. *de Denonville*, their Brigadier, who, after ſome Difficulty, accepted the Terms, and ſurrender'd to the Earl. Another *French* Battalion perceiving this, ſurrender'd to Lieutenant-General *Ingoldsby* at his Attack. It being near Night, and the Confederate Troops much fatigued, and not in a Condition to attack without a further Reinforcement, the Earl ſent his Aid de Camp with M. *Dennwille* into the Village, where there were ſtill 20 Battalions of Foot, and 12 Squadrons of Dragoons, to inform 'em, That their Horſe were routed, and Count *Tallard* taken; and to offer them the ſame Terms that had been given to the reſt. M. *Blanzac*, who commanded in Chief, demanded Leave to march out, and join the reſt of their Troops, which the Earl refuſed; ſo that 26 entire Battalions, and 12 Squadrons, ſurrender'd, with the General, and ſeveral other Chief Officers, to the Earl. On the Right, commanded by Prince *Eugene*, the Ways being bad, and the *French* ſuperior in Number, the Confederate Horſe and Foot were ſeveral times beat back, and ſuffered much; but at laſt the *Daniſh* and *Pruſſian* Foot charged the *French* with ſo much Fury, that they retir'd, and the Remainders of their ſcatter'd Army join'd with the *Bavarians* that Night at *Lawingen*. The Duke of *Marlborough* purſued them to *Hochſtet*, where he lay that Night, as Prince *Eugene* did at *Monchelingen*. In this Battle the *French* and *Bavarians* had about 14000 Men killed in the Field, 4000 drown'd in the *Danube*; their Commander in Chief, with 40 General Officers, 1200 Inferior Officers, 12000 Common Soldiers, 49 Cannon, 163 Colours, Standards and Kettle-Drums, taken. The Confederates had 4485 killed, and 7523 wounded. This Victory ſaved the Empire from imminent Ruine, reſtored the Affairs of the Confederates, and way ſuch a Check to the growing Power of *France*, as ſhe is not like to recover. It eſtabliſh'd the Duke of *Marlborough*'s Glory, who was thereupon made a Prince of the Empire, and allow'd a Vote in the Diet as Prince of *Mindelheim*, which was erected into a Principality to him and his Heirs. After this Victory, *Augsburg* and *Memmingen* were abandon'd by the *French* and *Bavarians*, *Ulm* ſurrender'd in *September*, and *Landau* in *November*; the *French* abandon'd *Trier*; and that ſame Month *Traerbach* ſurrender'd to the Hereditary Prince of *Heſſe-Caſſil*.

In 1705, Prince *Eugene* went to command the Imperial Army in *Italy*, where the *French* being Maſters of the Paſſes of the *Mincio*, he embarked his Troops on the Lake *de Garda*, and landed in the *Breſcian*, to ſtop the Progreſs of the *French* againſt the Duke of *Savoy*. This occaſioned the Battle of *Caſſano* in *Auguſt* 1705, where the *French* were defeated, and many of them kill'd, beſides what were drown'd in the *Adda*, and a great Number taken. Prince *Lewis* of *Baden* forc'd the Lines of *Haguenau*, and obliged M. *Villars* to retire under the Cannon of *Strasburg*. The Peaſants of *Bavaria* took Arms; but were ſoon reduced. The Emperor *Leopold* died on the 5th of *September*. He was born the 14th of *September*, 1640, was three times married, but left no Children except by his laſt Empreſs *Magdalena Thereſa*, Daughter to Prince *Philip William* of *Newbourg*, by whom he had the preſent Emperor *Joſeph*, King *Charles* III. of *Spain*, and three Arch-Dutcheſſes, *Mary Elizabeth*, *Mary Anna*, and *Mary Magdalen*. He was a good Prince, zealous in his Religion, regular in his Manners, charitable to the Poor, much addicted to raiſe the Grandeur of his Family, and a good Maſter. He ſpoke *Latin*, *Spaniſh*, *Italian*, and *German*, perfectly well; was well vers'd in Arts and Sciences, and particularly in Muſick. His greateſt Weakneſs was, his being too much influenc'd by the Jeſuits, who rais'd a Perſecution in *Hungary*, which laid the Foundation of the long and ruinous War, which ſtill continues there.

His Son *Joſeph* ſucceeded. This Year died the D. of *Zell*, by which that Dutchy, with

its Dependencies, fell to the Illustrious Family of *Hanover*.

In 1706, the Malecontents made Incursions to the Gates of *Vienna*, and the *Imperialists* reduc'd *Transilvania*. Count *Tekely* died this Year at *Nicomedia* in the *Turkish* Dominions, and made Prince *Ragotski* his Heir. The *Bavarian* Peasants, who had again revolted, were defeated near *Munich*, and that Town was taken by the *Imperialists*. In *Italy*, the Duke of *Vendosme* defeated Part of the *Imperial* Army, from whence he went to command in *Flanders*. Prince *Eugene*, by his admirable Conduct, overcame all Difficulties in his March to join the Duke of *Savoy*, who was reduc'd to such Streights, that he was forc'd to send away his Court to *Genoa*, upon the Approach of a great *French* Army, which laid Siege to his Capital of *Turin*.

They open'd their Trenches before it the 3d of *June*, 1706, and continued the Siege till the 5th of *September*, when they were attacked by the D. of *Savoy* and Pr. *Eugene* with the *Imperialists*, who, after a bloody Battle, defeated the *French*, forc'd them to abandon their Approaches, Cannon, Mortars, and Ammunition; and in their flight, the *French* set Fire to several Magazines of Powder, Bombs, and Grenadoes. The Marshal *de Marsin* was taken, and died of his Wounds; besides whom, there were taken 2 Generals, 2 Marshals de Camp, 2 Brigadier, 8 Colonels, 12 Lieutenant-Colonels, 6 Majors, 98 Captains, 111 Lieutenants, 34 Cornets or Enligns, 13 Engineers and Commissaries of the Artillery, 7640 private Soldiers, including those taken in *Chivas*; which, together with 4706 killed in the Battle, made their Loss 12634, besides those lost in the Siege, and in their Retreat for want of Provisions and Medicines, and such as were killed by the *Vandois*; and there was found in their Works 253 Cannon, 108 Mortars, 7800 Bombs, 32000 Royal Grenadoes, 48000 Cannon-Ball, besides a great Number in the Ditches, 4000 Chests of Musket-shot, and 86 Barrels of Powder, containing 100 Weight each, all their Tents and Baggage, great Numbers of Standards, Colours, and Kettle-Drums, 5000 Horses, Mules, and Oxen, 27 large Boats with Ammunition, all their Pontons, 4 Pictures of the *French* King set with Diamonds, valued at 4000 Pistoles, 3000 Sacks of Corn and Meal, and 2000 of Bisket; and their Commissary-General was also taken with all his Mules, so richly laden, that it was valued at 3 Millions of Livres: To which must be added, 10000 Horse, belonging to 13 Regiments of *French* Dragoons. The Allies had about 4000 Men killed and wounded; among the former, were the Prince of *Beveren*, a Colonel, and a Lieutenant-Colonel; among the latter, 2 Major-Generals, and 3 Colonels, besides many Inferior Officers. The *French*, according to their usual way, diminish'd their own Loss, and magnify'd that of the Confederates; but the Falshood of their Accounts appeared, by the Letters sent from the Duke of *Savoy* and Prince *Eugene* to the States General and others. Much about the same Time, the Prince of *Hesse* took *Goits* upon Terms; but had afterwards some Loss at the Battle of *Castiglione*. After the Battle of *Turin*, the *French* surrender'd *Chivas* in the *Milanese*; the Garison of 1482 Men was made Prisoners of War; and the Allies found in it 12 Battering Cannon, 26000 Barrels of Powder, 3000 Casks of Bullets, *&c.* *Novara*, *Crescentino*, *Milan*, and *Como*, did also surrender; and in short, all *Lombardy* was reduced. The King of *Sweden*'s entring *Saxony* this Year with his Army, alarm'd all *Germany*; and the *French* gave out every where, that he would declare for them; but his Majesty assur'd the Allies, That he had no Intention to disturb the Peace of the Empire, but came only to have Satisfaction of *Augustus* King of *Poland*, Elector of *Saxony*, whom he afterwards obliged by Treaty to resign the Crown of *Poland*. This Year the Electors of *Bavaria* and *Cologne* were put into the Ban of the Empire, and proscribed. A Detachment from M. *de Villars* attacked *Hanenau*, which was surrender'd to the *French*, who made the Garison of 2200 Men Prisoners of War, and found in it 800 Barrels of Powder, 26000 Cannon-Ball, 8000 Sacks of Corn, 15000 of Meal, 60 Waggons with 6 Horses each, 80 Cannon, 4000 Bombs, and 16 Mortars.

In 1707, a Marriage was concluded betwixt King *Charles* III. of *Spain*, and the Princess of *Brunswick Wolfenbuttel*. Count *Thaun*, with a Detachment of *Imperialists*, reduced the Kingdom of *Naples* without much

Digitized by Google

much Difficulty, moſt of the Inhabitants being for the Houſe of *Auſtria*. However, the Abſence of thoſe Troops, with the other Deficiencies, occaſioned the Miſcarriage of the Siege of *Toulon*, which was carried on by the Duke of *Savoy* and Prince *Eugene*, with the Aſſiſtance of a Squadron of the Confederate Fleet.

M. *de Villars* forc'd the Lines of *Stolhoffen*, invaded the Empire, and laid the Dutchy of *Wirtemberg*, &c. under Contribution as far almoſt as *Ulm*. The King of *Sweden* enter'd *Sileſia*, and obliged the Emperor by a Treaty to reſtore to thoſe of the *Augſburg* Confeſſion their Churches, the free Exerciſe of their Religion, and other Privileges, according to the Treaty of *Weſtphalia*, which he reckon'd himſelf oblig'd in Point of Honour to ſee perform'd. He likewiſe inſiſted upon the ſame Liberty to the *Calviniſts* in that Country, as being included in the above mention'd Treaty of *Weſtphalia*, wherein he was ſeconded by *Great Britain* and *Holland*; but that Matter is not yet determin'd. Count *Zobor*, one of the Imperial Court, having ſpoke diſreſpectfully of the King of *Sweden* to his own Ambaſſador, the King reſented it ſo much, that the Emperor was obliged, after paſſing a Sentence of Baniſhment from Court upon the ſaid Count, to ſend him to *Saxony* to beg the King of *Sweden's* Pardon. After this, the King of *Sweden* having ſtay'd a Year in *Saxony*, which he obliged to furniſh him with Money and Proviſions for his Army, marched from thence into *Poland*.

In 1708, Prince *Eugene* went from *Italy* to *Vienna*, to concert Meaſures for the next Campaign. The Elector *Palatine* was inveſted in the *Upper Palatinate*, upon the Proſcription of the Elector of *Bavaria*. Prince *Eugene*, with a Body of *Imperial* Troops, came to *Flanders*, where he join'd the Duke of *Marlborough*, who fought the Battle of *Audenard*, and defeated the *French*, (when, according to the Accounts publiſh'd by Authority, there were taken between 7 and 8000 of the *French*, with 70 or 80 Colours and Standards; and among ſt their Priſoners, there were 2 Lieutenant-Generals, 2 Major-Generals, 5 Brigadiers, 30 Colonels, 100 Field-Officers, and 400 other Officers; and among their Slain, of whoſe Number we never had any certain Account, there were the Prince of *Egmont*, the Count *de Dreux*, and the Chevalier *de Luxemburg*. The Loſs on the Confederate Side was very ſmall in Proportion to the Victory, and they had no General Officer kill'd. In this Action, the Electoral Prince of *Hanover* ſignaliz'd himſelf at the Head of a Squadron of his Father's Dragoons, had a Horſe ſhot under him, and the Colonel of Dragoons ſhot by his Side. We refer the further Particulars till we come to *Flanders*, as we do likewiſe the Battle of *Romellies*, becauſe it does not relate to the Hiſtory of the Empire, the *Imperialiſts* having no Hand in it. After the Battle of *Audenard*, Prince *Eugene* was chiefly employ'd in reducing of *Liſle*, after a long Siege, and aſſiſted afterwards in reducing *Ghent* and *Bruges*: The Particulars of all which, we refer to the Account of *Flanders*. This Year the Princeſs of *Brunſwick Wolfenbuttel* went to *Spain*, where ſhe was married to King *Charles* III. and the Arch-Dutcheſs *Mary Anne* came from *Vienna* to *Holland*, from whence ſhe was ſent on board a Confederate Squadron to *Portugal*, and married to the King of that Country.

Their GOVERNMENT,

IS in General by the Emperor and Diet of the Empire.

The Emperor's TITLES *at preſent.*

Joſeph, by the Grace of God, Emperor of the *Romans*, always *Auguſtus*, &c. King of *Germany*, *Hungary*, *Bohemia*, *Dalmatia*, *Croatia*, *Sclavonia*, *Bulgaria*, *Boſnia*, *Servia*, and *Rexia*, Arch-Duke of *Auſtria*, Duke of *Burgundy*, *Brabant*, *Stiria*, *Carinthia*, *Carniola*, *Luxemburg*, *Wittemberg*, together with the *Higher* and *Lower Sileſia*, Marquis of the *Holy Empire*, *Burgaw*, *Moravia*, with the *Higher* and *Further Luſatia*, Sovereign Count of *Habſburg*, *Tirol*, *Ferrette*, *Kiburg*, *Gortitia*, &c. Landgrave of *Alſace*, Lord of *Windiſhmarck*, *Portenaw*, and *Salins*:

His

His Arms.

HE bears Quarterly for Armorial Enſigns; 1. For *Hungary*, Bar-wiſe *Argent*, and *Gules* of 8 Pieces. 2. For *Bohemia*, *Argent*, a *Lion Gules*, the Tail nov'd, and paſs'd in *Saltier*, Crown'd, Langued, and Arm'd. 3. For *Auſtria*, *Gules*, a *Feſſe-Argent*; and for Ancient *Burgundy*, Party and Bend-wiſe, *Argent* and *Azure*, a Border *Gules*. 4. For *Caſtile*, Quarterly, in the firſt and laſt *Gules*, a Caſtle triple tower'd *Or*, purpled *Sable*; and for *Leon*, in the 2d and 3d *Argent*, a *Lion-Purple*: The Shield creſted with an Imperial Crown, clos'd and rais'd in Shape of a Mitre, having betwixt the two Points two Diadems, ſurmounted with a Globe and Croſs *Or*: The Shield, environ'd with a Collar of the Order of the *Golden Fleece*, is plac'd on the Breaſt of an Eagle, diſplay'd *Sable* in a *Field-Or*, Diadem'd, Member'd, and Beak'd *Gules*, holding a naked Sword in the Right *Talon*, and a Scepter in the Left: The two Heads ſignify the Eaſtern and Weſtern Empire; and for the Motto are theſe Words; *Uno avulſo, non deficit alter*; *i. e.* Thô one be taken away, the other does not ceaſe. But the Emperor's peculiar Device is, *Pax & Salus Europæ*; *i. e.* The Peace and Safety of *Europe*.

Emperor: What it ſignifies.

Imperator, or Emperor, was firſt made uſe of by the *Romans*, as *Selden* in his Titles of Honour proves by unqueſtionable Authority, to denote only the General of their Army. But *Julius Cæſar*, after he had beſet his Country of their Liberty, aſſum'd it, had it allow'd him as a perpetual Title; and it has been ſo continued to his Succeſſors; yet ſo as not to be peculiar to them only, for *Brutus* and *Caſſius*, who attempted the Recovery of the *Roman* Liberties, have it aſcrib'd to them in their Coins. Here *Selden* corrects *Suetonius*'s Miſtake, in ſaying, That in and after *Cæſar*'s Time, it was always us'd as a *Prænomen* or Forename; for 'tis plain, that in his Time, *Cæſar* was oft put before *Imperator*, as may be ſeen by ſome of his Coins; and in *Auguſtus*'s Reign, it is us'd both ways: But *Selden* obſerves, That the uſing of it as a ſubſequent Name, denoted only, or at leaſt chiefly, ſome great Performance by Arms; and where 'tis us'd as a Forename to *Cæſar* and other Emperors, it denotes their Supremacy.

Selden likewiſe obſerves, That ſome Time after, the Title of Emperor was thus ſettled at *Rome*; and thô they had all that's comprehended in Royal Majeſty, yet they abſtained from the Name of *Rex* or King, becauſe that Title was odious to the *Romans*, from the Time that *Brutus* had thrown out their Kings for invading their Liberty: And *Cicero De Divinitate* tells us, That thô *Cæſar* was really a King, yet neither the Gods nor Men would ſuffer that Title in *Rome*; and *Cæſar*, to palliate his Ambition when the People ſaluted him by that Name, finding it diſtaſtful to the State by the Tribune's pulling off the white Fillet from his Laurel, anſwer'd, That he was *Cæſar*, and not a King; but they made uſe of the Name *Princeps*, becauſe *Princeps Senatûs* was a familiar Title in *Rome*, and might be us'd without Envy. It was long after before any of the Emperors us'd the Title of King, thô they wore Diadems, and other *Regalia*; but in their Letters, Commiſſions, and Embaſſies, call'd themſelves Emperors. This appears by *Syneſius*, in his Book *De Regno*, which was writ about 400 Years after Chriſt; when, thô the *Greeks* wrote to them by that Name, yet they ſeemed to diſlike ſo ſwelling a Title; but in Time that Diſlike grew out of Faſhion; ſo that *Regnum* was made uſe of to ſignify the State of *Rome*; and *Sedile Regni*, the Emperor's Throne: And *Ulpian*, a great Lawyer in *Severus*'s Time, calls that *Lex Regia*, which transferr'd the People's Power to the Emperor. The *Conſtantinopolitan* Emperors affected the Title of *Baſileus*, as the loftieſt Name they could take.

But after the Empires were divided, they affected Differences in the Uſe of thoſe Names. The Weſtern Emperors, becauſe thoſe Parts of the Empire which were overrun by the *Goths*, *Lombards*, and *Franks*, were called Kingdoms, and their Heads, Kings, affected the Title of Emperor, as importing a greater Majeſty than that of King, which was not much diſputed by the Eaſtern Emperors, as appears by their Embaſſies: But when *Baſilius Macedo*, Emperor of *Conſtan-*

Digitized by Google

Conſtantinople, received Letters from Pope *Adrian* II. wherein *Lewis*, then Emperor of the Weſt, was called Βασιλεύς, which then imported Emperor, he rais'd it out of the Letters, and challeng'd *Lewis* for uſing that Title, which he alledg'd was proper only to himſelf: To which *Lewis* anſwer'd, That the Title was peculiar to neither of them, but common to both; and in ſacred and prophane Writings, given to the Princes of other Countries He added, That the Empire was tranſlated from the *Greeks* to the *Franks*, becauſe the former were not able to defend the Church.

Tho' in later Times the Emperors of the Eaſt and Weſt contended for this Title as peculiar to themſelves, yet other Kings, and particularly thoſe of *France*, *Spain*, *England*, *Scotland*, &c. made uſe of it.

Selden takes Notice, That the flattering Civilians of *Italy* and *Germany* do alledge, that the Emperor is Lord of the whole Earth, but unjuſtly; and ſhews from good Reaſon, that no ſuch Title is due to them; and that ſeveral other Princes, as the Kings of *England*, *Scotland*, *France*, *Spain*, &c. acknowledge no Superior but God himſelf, and may every way as juſtly as the Emperor of *Rome* be ſtil'd Emperors, or by any other Name which expreſſes the Height of Honour and Dignity. This Pretenſion is alſo confuted by Sir *George Mackenzie*, in his Book of *Precedency*, *Cap.* 1. where he aſſerts, That *Scotland* was never conquer'd by the *Romans*, and by conſequence not ſubject to their Empire.

Dr. *Nicholſon* obſerves juſtly, That the Conſent of Nations has for many Years diſtinguiſh'd between an Emperor and a King, and given the former the Pre-eminence; That all the Monarchs of *Europe* do readily give Place to the Emperor, and his Ambaſſadors are admitted to the firſt Audience in all Courts; and even in that of the Grand Signior, are allow'd the Precedency of the *Perſian* Ambaſſadors. But as to his Precedency of Chriſtian Princes, it ſeems to be allow'd him more out of Civility than Right; for according to Sir *George Mackenzie*, in his Book of *Precedency*, the Kings of *Great Britain* and *France* may debate it with him, and particularly the former, as deſcended of the Kings of *Scotland*; it being (as he ſays) an uncontroverted Maxim in Law, That amongſt thoſe of equal Dignity, he who firſt attain'd to that Dignity, is to be preferr'd. The Curious may ſee more on this Head in his *Cap.* 1. and 2. Beſides, he inſiſts upon this Argument, That the Emperor is but Elective; whereas thoſe Kings are Hereditary. The *German* Emperors, ſays Dr. *Nicholſon*, founded their Claim on *Charlemaign's* being unexpectedly ſaluted in the Year 800, when he came to *Rome*, by Pope *Leo* and the Citizens, by the Title of, *Romanorum Imperator Auguſtus*; but what a ſorry Empire the *Romans* could then pretend to, is well enough known, ſince *Germany*, *France*, and moſt of *Lombardy*, were in his Poſſeſſion before: Whence it will appear, that ſome other Conſiderations, and particularly the vaſt Extent of the *German* Empire, mov'd the Weſtern Monarchs to give Place to the Emperor, rather than any Claim he had to it by Right. To which we may add what Sir *George Mackenzie* ſays in his 2d Chapter of *Precedency*, That the Rule of Precedency in General Councils was according to the Time their Anceſtors received the Chriſtian Faith, as appears by *Gothofred. de Jure Præced. Cap.* 3. N° 23. and *Grotius de Jure Belli*, *Lib.* 2 *Cap.* 5. And if this Rule were obſerv'd, whatever become of the Story of *Lucius*, the Queen of *Great Britain* has an undoubted Claim to it from *Donald* King of *Scots*; but this Rule has not always been obſerv'd even by the Church of *Rome*, which uſually preferr'd them who were moſt capable to do them Service. The *German* Emperors, beſides the Title of *Cæſar*, us'd that of *Auguſtus*, which in their Language is *Mehrer des Reichs*; *i. e.* The Increaſer of Kingdoms, becauſe, as *Paulus Diaconus* informs us, *Octavius* had that Title on the Account of his enlarging the Commonwealth. They are alſo call'd Defenders of the Church, becauſe formerly, when they were crown'd at *Rome*, they took an Oath to defend that Church; and *Charlemaign* was particularly dignified with that Title, becauſe of his Bounty to the Church; and that he deliver'd the Pope and the *Romans* from the Oppreſſion of the *Lombards*.

The POWER *of the Emperor.*

DR. *Nicholſon* ſays it ſurpaſſes that of all other Princes, becauſe he challenges a Power to create Kings, which none elſe pretends to but the Pope, who claims a Power of creating and depoſing the Emperor himſelf; but how unjuſtly, we have heard already in the Hiſtory of the Emperors: For inſtead of that, the Biſhops of *Rome* did Homage to *Pepin* and *Charles the Great*, for the Dominions they gave to the See of *Rome*; and the then Pope made over to *Charles the Great* for ever, the Right of chuſing Popes; and when *Pius* V. attempted to create *Coſmo di Medicis*, Great Duke of *Tuſcany*, the Emp. *Maximilian* II. oppos'd it, made *Coſmo* receive the Title from him, and oblig'd the Pope to confeſs, That he had exceeded his Bounds in pretending to it.

The Emperor at his Coronation is ſworn not to violate the Privileges and Properties of any free Prince or State in the Empire, and cannot meddle with the Taxes they lay upon their own Subjects; nor can he puniſh any Criminal, raiſe Money in their Territories, or advance any of their Subjects to an Honour inconſiſtent with the Allegiance which they owe them. In Time of War, he cannot command any free Prince or State to aſſiſt him with Men or Money, without Conſent of the Diet. If any Prince diſturb the Peace of the Empire, he cannot Degrade or Baniſh him without Conſent of the Electors, who are to judge of the Crime, and give their Opinions to the Imperial Chamber, where the States of the Empire determine it, and order Execution.

Of the ELECTION *of the Emperor.*

'TIS now commonly known, that the Emperors are choſen by the Electors; but 'tis controverted among the Learned, Whether this Dignity was always Elective ſince *Charlemaign*'s Time? A Reſident of *Brandenburgh*, in a Treatiſe bound up with a Book, Intituled, *L'Ambaſſadeur & ſes Fonctions*, writ by *M. de Wicquefort*, Privy Counſellor to the late Duke of *Zell*, ſays, That the Dignity continu'd Hereditary in the Family of *Charlemaign*, who in 813, aſſociated his Son *Lewis* into the Empire with him, by laying down the Imperial Crown upon the Altar, and ordering him to take it up, and put it on his own Head, as a Mark that he held the Empire only of God, and by Hereditary Right, and not by the Choice of the Princes, whoſe Dignities were not Hereditary at that time; and this Way of Succeſſion continued in that Family till *Lewis* III. or as ſome call him the IV. died without Iſſue in 912, when the States were obliged to meet and chuſe a Succeſſor. The Reader may compare this with what has been ſaid before in the Hiſtory of the Emperors, and in the Account of Ancient *Germany*, and make his own Judgment. Our Author inſiſts upon it, That this Election did not make the Empire abſolutely Elective, becauſe there was always great regard had to the Nomination of the deceaſed Emperor, and to Kindred. Upon which he aſſerts, That the Empire was not abſolutely Elective till after the Death of the Emperor *Frederick* II. He quotes *Aimon*, the Annals of *Fulda*, the Annals of the *Franks*, *Lindenbravius*, *Jerden*, and *Spangenberg*, for what he ſays.

The ORIGIN *of the Electors.*

AUthors are not agreed as to the Time when the Electors were firſt inſtituted: Some aſcribe it to *Charlemaign*; but our Author brings many Reaſons to diſprove this. *Baronius*, *Bellarmin*, and others, ſay, they were appointed by *Otto* III. *Sleidan*, *Thuanus*, and the *Centuriators* of *Magdeburg*, think it was Pope *Sylveſter* II. and *Goldaſtus* is of Opinion, That they were agreed on by a Diet at *Francfort* in 1208; but our Author ſays, That *Martinus Polonus*, who wrote above 250 Years after the Death of *Otto* III. is the firſt who mentions any Elector; and that 'tis evident from Hiſtory, that in *Otto* III.'s Time, of all the modern Secular Electors there was none known, but the Duke of *Saxony*; *Bohemia* was not then a Kingdom: Therefore *Dubravius*, who writes the Hiſtory of it, and is of Opinion, That *Otto* III. inſtituted the Electors, ſays, He

Digitized by Google

He only named Six, and that *Rodolph* I. made the King of *Bohemia* an Elector 300 Years after. The Reſident adds, There was at that Time no Count Palatine of the *Rhine*, nor Marquis of *Brandenburg*; and therefore he is of Opinion, That the Election in thoſe Times was made by all the Princes, or rather, that they determin'd and confirm'd the Pretenſions of thoſe who laid Claim to it till after the Death of *Frederic* II. as appears by the Continuator of *Sigibert*, *Otto* of *Friſingen*, *Albert Crantzius*, and other Hiſtorians; and this Dr. *Nicholſon* falls in with. Upon the whole, our Author concludes, That the Inſtitution of Seven Electors was not till above 200 Years after *Gregory* and *Otto*; and that the Number was not fix'd to the Seven till the Reign of *Charles* IV. who eſtabliſh'd them by the Golden Bull the 10th of *January* 1356; but that there were Electors before, is plain from the Bull it ſelf, which was agreed on in a Diet at *Nuremberg*, where all the Electors Eccleſiaſtick and Secular, and many other Princes, Counts, Barons, Lords, Gentlemen, and Deputies of Free-Towns, gave their Conſent, for preventing ſuch Diſorders in the Election as had formerly broke the Peace of the Empire, and order'd all Princes, Counts, free Cities, and other Subjects whatever, to grant them free Paſſage and ſafe Conduct, in going and coming to the Election, on pain of Rebellion; and that they ſhould ſeal their Paſſports, and ſwear to act nothing contrary to them; and they were to furniſh them, and their Retinues, with Proviſions, and other Neceſſaries, at a reaſonable Price; and this was not to be refus'd, tho' any Elector, Prince or State, ſhould have any Quarrel with one another: The Bull likewiſe appoints by whom each of the Seven Electors ſhall be conducted to *Francfort* on the *Maine*, the Place of Election; And the Archbiſhop of *Ments* for the time being, was to ſend Letters to the reſt of the Electors, to acquaint them with the Day, that they might come in Perſon, or ſend their Deputies with full Powers, ſign'd and ſeal'd with their own Hand, for the Election of a King of the *Romans*; And in a Month after Notice of the Death of the Emperor, he ſhould ſend to them in like manner to come to the Election within three Months; and no Elector, or his Ambaſſador, was to enter *Francfort* with above 200 Horſe in his Retinue, 50 of whom, and no more, might be Men at Arms; and thoſe who fail'd to come or ſend, were to loſe their Vote for that Time. It alſo orders the Magiſtrates and Inhabitants to take the Electors, and their Retinues into their Protection, and to prevent the ill Conſequences of any Differences that might happen among them; and in caſe the Archbiſhop of *Ments* fail'd to give Notice, the Electors are to come or ſend notwithſtanding.

Dr. *Nicholſon*, and our Author, obſerves, That after the Death of *Frederick* II. there being a deplorable *Interregnum*, Seven of the chief Princes taking upon them the Adminiſtration, did probably lay the Foundation of the Electoral Dignity; and that they were made 7 in Number, that in caſe Six ſhould be equally divided, the Seventh might have the caſting Vote; and another thing which contributed towards it, was, That many great Families being ruin'd by the Wars, their Eſtates became united to the Families of thoſe who were afterwards Electors; and that the falling off of *Lorrain*, *Gelderland*, *Brabant*, *Luxemburg*, *Poland*, and *Italy*, from the Empire, made thoſe Princes the moſt conſiderable, among ſuch as ſtill adher'd to it. The Seven Electors appointed by this Bull, were; the Elector of *Mentz*, the King of *Bohemia*, the Elector of *Cologne*, the Elector of *Treves*, the Elector Palatine of the *Rhine*, the Elector of *Saxony*, and the Elector of *Brandenburg*.

The ELECTION *of a King of the* Romans.

AS ſoon as the Electors or their Deputies arrive at *Francfort*, they were according to the Bull to go next Morning to St. *Bartholomew*'s Church; and after hearing the Maſs of the Holy Ghoſt, that they might have his Aſſiſtance in chuſing a juſt and good Prince, worthy to be King of the *Romans*, and future Emperor, for the good of all *Chriſtendom*, they were to approach the Altar with their Retinues, but without Arms, and ſwear upon the Goſpel of St. *John*, the Eccleſiaſticks laying their Hands upon their Hearts, and the Seculars

Digitized by Google

touching the Gospel, the following Oath, tender'd by the Archbishop of *Ments*, or his Deputy: "I, *&c.* Prince Elector, swear "upon the Holy Gospels now laid before "me, That by the Faith which I owe to "God, and by the Oath I have taken to "the Holy Empire, that with the Assistance "of God, to the best of my Judgment "and Knowledge, I shall elect for a Tem-"poral Head to *Christendom*, *i. e.* for King "of the *Romans*, and future Emperor, he "whom in my Conscience I shall judge to "be most worthy of it; and promise by "the same Faith, That I shall give my "Suffrage and Vote in the said Election "without any Hope of Profit, Pension, "Promise, or particular Interest. So help "me God, and all his Saints."

Since the Reformation, the Protestant Electors are not oblig'd to comply with what's Popish in this Ceremony. Any of the Secular Electors may set up for themselves, but the Ecclesiasticks are deny'd that Privilege; yet they are thought to be a good Ballance upon any of the Seculars who should pretend to it without Merit. Tho' *Francfort* be the Place appointed, Elections have been made elsewhere; which being objected against, as the want of a legal Formality, they generally made there. The Electors are not to leave the Town till they have made a Choice; and if they do it not in a Month after taking the Oath, they are to have nothing but Bread and Water till they make the Choice. 'Tis carried by the Plurality of the Votes of those present; and if any come after the Election begins, their Vote is not admitted. He that is chosen, is obliged to confirm to the Electors, as the principal Members of the Empire, all the Rights, Privileges, Dignities, *&c.* that they enjoy, and hold of the Empire, before he meddle with the Administration; and he is obliged to confirm the same to each of them by Letters-Patents after he is crown'd Emperor: And if any three of the Electors, or their Deputies, give the Right of Suffrage to one of the Electors present, or his Deputy, if absent, his Vote, with theirs, shall be reckoned a good Plurality.

The Archbishop of *Treves* is to sit over against the Emperor; the Archbishop of *Cologn* in his own Province, and likewise through the whole Bounds of his Chancellorship, shall sit on the Emperor's Right Hand, except in the Province of *Cologne*, where the Archbishop of that Name is to sit on the Emperor's Right Hand; and likewise in *Italy* and *Gaul*, and on all other Occasions where they meet in those Places for the Affairs of the Empire.

The Precedency of the Secular Electors was thus; Whenever the Emperor or King of the *Romans* are present in an Assembly, Council, or at Table, the King of *Bohemia*, as a Crown'd Head, sits next the Archbishop of *Ments*; behind him, on the same Side, is the Elector *Palatine*; on the Emperor's Left is the Elector of *Saxony*; and next to him the Elector of *Brandenburg*.

As the Elector of *Ments* only has Power to summon the rest to the Election when the Empire is vacant, he is also to demand and collect their Votes thus: 1. Of the Archbishop of *Triers*. 2. Of the Archbishop of *Cologne*, who has also the Honour to crown the King of the *Romans*. 3. Of the King of *Bohemia*, who takes Place of all the Secular Electors. 4. Of the Elector *Palatine*. 5. Of the Elector of *Saxony*. 6. Of the Elector of *Brandenburg*: Then the other Electors in their Turns demand the Vote of the Archbishop of *Ments*.

As to the Ceremonies of the Imperial Court, the Elector of *Brandenburg* gives Water to the Emperor or the King of the *Romans* to wash; the King of *Bohemia* gives him the first Cup, with his Royal Crown on if he pleases; the Elector *Palatine* sets the first Dish on the Table; and the Elector of *Saxony* acts as High-Marshal of the Empire.

The Elector *Palatine*, Great Master of the Empire, during the Vacancy of the Imperial Throne, is Vicar of the Empire: In *Swabia*, *Franconia*, and on the *Rhine*, may administer Justice, grant Benefices, receive the Revenues of the Empire, confer Fiefs, and receive Fealty and Homage in the Name of the Empire, except such as the Investiture of 'em is given with a Standard, which are reserv'd to the Emperor or King of the *Romans*, to whom the Fealty and Homage paid to the Vicar during the Vacancy must be renew'd. The Elector *Palatine* is not to alienate or mortgage any Thing belonging to the Empire while he is Vicar. The

Elector

Digitized by Google

Elector of *Saxony* has the ſame Privileges in all Places where the *Saxon* Law is obſerv'd, on the like Conditions. And ſince by a very ancient Cuſtom of the Empire, the Emperor or King of the *Romans* may be ſued at Law, and are obliged to anſwer before the Count *Palatine*, 'tis only when the Emperor or King of the *Romans* are preſent in a Diet or Imperial Court.

The Succeſſion of the Secular Electors is thus; The Lawful Sons, and their Heirs Male, if Laics, are to ſucceed according to Seniority; and if the Heir be Minor, during his Minority the eldeſt Brother of the deceas'd Father is to adminiſter for him till he be of Age, and then to ſurrender to the Heir; but if any Electorate become vacant by want of Heirs, or otherwiſe, the Electorate is at the Diſpoſal of the Emperor, as devolving to him and the Empire, without Prejudice to the Rights of the Subjects of *Bohemia*, who then had a Right to elect their own Kings. The Privileges of the Kings of *Bohemia*, and their Subjects, granted them by former Emperors, were alſo reſerv'd, by which no Subject of *Bohemia* could be cited to be tried out of his own Country, or otherwiſe, than according to their own Laws, without any Appeal but to their own Government.

All Electors, Secular and Eccleſiaſtical, were to poſſeſs all Salt-Springs and Mines of whatever Sort, diſcover'd or to be diſcover'd in their Electorates, without paying any Tax for them; and had Power to receive *Jews* into their Dominions, and raiſe Taxes and Cuſtoms, as in Times paſt. They had alſo Power to coin Gold and Silver, to purchaſe Lands, Caſtles, and take Mortgages, *&c.* on Condition that the Tenure of thoſe Lands be not alter'd, and pay the uſual Duties to the Empire.

The Subjects of none of the other Electors were to be cited to any Court without the ſaid Electorates; but in caſe of denial of Juſtice, the Subjects of any of the Electors, except the King of *Bohemia*, might appeal to the Imperial Court, and the Judge who preſided in it; but no where elſe.

For the better Government of the Empire, all the Electors may meet once a Year in one of the Imperial Cities, about 30 Days after *Eaſter*, to reform Abuſes and Diſorders in their Dominions, or in their Neighbourhood, by common Conſent, and appoint the Place for their next Year's Meeting. During the Time of their Deliberations, they were under the Emperor's Protection; but they were to make no publick Feaſts, ſo as to hinder the Diſpatch of Affairs: And all Privileges granted to any other Perſon or Community, inconſiſtent with theſe of the Electors, were revoked.

All Verbal Reſignations by Vaſſals or Feudatories, made maliciouſly and unſeaſonably to deprive their Superiors of their Rights, or make War upon them, and poſſeſs their Fiefs, were to be void, and no Reſignation to be good, except with the free Conſent of their Superiors, on Pain of being put in the Ban of the Empire; and thoſe who attack'd their Superiors, or maliciouſly deny'd them their Service, without a regular Defiance and Renunciation, were to incur the like Penalty.

All Leagues betwixt Towns, or betwixt Towns and private Perſons, on Pretext of Kindred, or Protection of Burghers and Inhabitants, *&c.* or betwixt the Subjects of particular Princes or Lords, Town or Community, without the Conſent of the Lords, were declared void, except ſuch as were made betwixt Princes and Towns for preſerving the publick Peace, on Pain of Infamy, and 23 Marks of Gold to every particular Perſon; and the Loſs of Liberty, and 200 Marks of Gold to every Town, half to the Emperor, and half to the Lord.

The 17th Article of the *Golden Bull* orders, That no Man ſhall ſend a Defiance or Challenge to any Lord or other Perſon with whom he has liv'd in Amity, on any Pretence whatever, except to the Place of his Reſidence, and ſhall not commence Hoſtilities againſt him till 3 Days after the ſaid Challenge or Defiance, on Pain of Infamy and Treaſon; and forbids all unjuſt Quarrels, Wars and Violence. The 18th contains the Form of ſummoning Electors to attend at Elections. The 19th contains the Form of the Proxy of any Elector who does not attend in Perſon. The 20th annexes the Right of Election to the ſeveral Electorates, and the peaceable Poſſeſſion of them.

The

The 21st settles the Order and Rank the Archbishops are to observe in all publick Occasions, whenever the Emperor, as King of the *Romans*, walks in State, at Diets, &c. The Archbishop of *Triers* walks immediately before the Emperor, or the King of the *Romans*, none walking betwixt them but the Princes, who carry the Imperial Regalia; but when the Emperor walks without those Regalia, then the said Archbishop shall go immediately before the Emperor, or King of the *Romans*; and the other two Ecclesiastical Electors shall take Place as formerly, according to the Provinces in which they are at the Time.

The Secular Electors are to walk thus: The Duke of *Saxony*, carrying the Imperial Sword, walks immediately before the Emperor, or the King, betwixt him and the Archbishop of *Triers*; and on his Right Hand the Elector *Palatine* bearing the Globe; and on his Left the Elector of *Brandenburg* bearing the Scepter; all three in Front: The King of *Bohemia* walks immediately after the Emperor.

The 23d orders, That when the Archbishops of *Ments*, *Triers*, or *Cologne*, say Mass, or Grace, before the Emperor, or King of the *Romans*; he that was first Consecrated shall do it the first Day, the second the second Day, and the third the third Day; but whoever does it, must first make offer to the other Two.

The following Laws were publish'd in the Diet of *Ments* on *Christmas*-Day 1536, as an Appendix to the Golden Bull, by the Emperor *Charles* IV. with the Consent of the Electors and Princes of the Empire.

Those who conspire with Prince or People, against the Life of any of the Electors, shall be put to Death; and all his Goods forfeited, as being guilty of Treason: The Sons of such Traytor shall also lose their Maternal Inheritance, and what ever they may expect from other Relations, that being thus impoverish'd, they may always think on the Infamy of their Father; and such as intercede for them shall be infamous; And the Daughters of such Traitors are only to have a bare Maintenance out of their Mother's Estate; and all fraudulent Conveyances to prevent this are made void, only Wives may enjoy their Dowries: The Accomplices of such Traytor, and their Sons, shall be liable to the same Punishment; but if they make a timely Discovery, they shall be rewarded, and tho late, shall be pardon'd. Enquiry shall be made if the Criminal die before the Discovery, and the Servants and Domesticks of such Traytors, alive or dead, may be examin'd by Torture. The Memory of the Deceas'd shall be condemn'd, and his Estate forfeited; and from the Time any one is found Guilty, he shall be incapable to buy, sell, or assign any Estate, or to demand any Debts.

The 25th forbids the dividing or dismembring the Principalities and Estates of any Elector; the Possession and Honour are to descend intire to the Eldest Son; but if he be a Fool, or uncapable to Govern, the Second shall succeed, or the next Heir Male if there be no Sons.

The 26th is, That when the Emperor, or King of the *Romans*, designs to hold an Imperial Court, all the Electors must attend at the Palace: whence the Emperor and King ride on Horseback to the Court, in Order as above-mentioned: The Arch-Chancellor is to carry the Imperial Seals on the Top of his Silver Battoon; And the other Electors are to carry the Imperial Regalia in the same Order. The Emperor, according to Pleasure, names the Princes who shall carry the Crowns of *Aix la Chapelle* and *Milan*; and they must go immediately before the Archbishop of *Triers*. This Ceremony is only to be performed before the Emperor when he wears the Imperial Crown, and not to the King of the *Romans*. The Empress, attended by her Officers, and Maids of Honour, is to go after the Emperor, the King of the *Romans*, and the King of *Bohemia*.

The 27th appoints the Offices of the Electors, during their Attendance at the Imperial Court. When the Emperor holds a Solemn Court, and is upon his Throne, the Elect. of *Saxony* comes on Horseback before the Palace-Gate, where a Heap of Oats shall be made as high as his Horses Breast, and the Elector, having a Silver Battoon, and a Measure of Silver, each weighing 12 Marks, shall fill the Measure with Oats, and give it to the next Groom of the Stables; and then planting his Staff in the Oats, retires; and Count *Pappenheim*, the Vice-Marshal, or the Marshal of the Court, approaching, they

Digitized by Google

they leave the Oats to any that can take them.

When the Emperor or King of the *Romans* ſit at Table, the Eccleſiaſtical Electors, and other Prelates ſtanding before it, ſhall ſay Grace, as above. One of the Archbiſhops bearing the Seals at the top of his Silver Staff, ſhall lay them on the Table before the Emperor, who gives them to the Archbiſhop in whoſe Dioceſe the Court is held, who hangs the broadeſt about his Neck during the Time of Dinner.

The Elector of *Brandenburg*, on Horſeback, is to carry a Silver Baſon and Ewer with Water, and a Napkin, muſt alight, and pour out Water to the Emperor. The Elector *Palatine*, on Horſeback, brings in 4 Silver Diſhes of Meat, and alighting, ſets them on the Table. After them, the King of *Bohemia*, on Horſeback, with a Silver Cup of Wine and Water cover'd, is to alight and kneel, and preſent it to the Emperor or King of the *Romans*.

The 28th Chapter orders, That the Imperial Table ſhall be 6 Foot higher than thoſe of the Electors, and none to ſit with him at any Solemnity but the King of the *Romans*. The Empreſs's Table is to be on one Side, and 3 Foot lower than that of the Emperor. The Tables of the Electors are to be of the ſame Height, 3 of them on the Right, and as many on the Left of the Emperor; and the 7th is to be over againſt the Emperor. No Elector is to ſit down till they have all perform'd their Office, and then ſit down all together. After the Ceremonies are over, the Scaffolding and Tables belong to the Maſter of the Houſhold.

The Election is to be made at *Francfort*, the Coronation at *Aix la Chapelle*, and the firſt Court at *Nuremberg*. If any Elector ſend a Deputy, he is not to ſit at the Elector's Table.

The laſt Article orders, That the Succeſſors of the Electors ſhall, at 7 Years of Age, learn the *Latin*, *Italian*, and *Sclavonian* Tongues; all which are us'd in the Empire.

The PRIVILEGES *of the Electors.*

THE Electoral College is the moſt Powerful and Honourable Court of the Empire. They have Power to chuſe and dethrone Emperors, when they judge it neceſſary for the Good of the Empire; ſo that 'tis the only Body in *Europe* that can be compar'd with the old *Roman* Senate. Their Precedency before any other Prince at all publick Aſſemblies of the Empire, is ſecur'd by the *Golden Bull*; and the Electors have maintain'd it on ſeveral Occaſions. On this Account *Joachim* II. Elector of *Brandenburg*, refuſed to give Place to *Rodolphus* of *Auſtria*, thô he was the Emperor's Son, and crown'd King of *Hungary*. The Elector of *Cologne* would not give the Precedency to Cardinal *Moron*, the Pope's Legate at the Diet of *Ratiſbon* in 1556. The *Engliſh* Ambaſſador and the Pope's Nuncio knowing that the Electors would not give Place to them at the Coronation of the Emperor, refuſ'd to be preſent at it; but it was provided by the Capitulations of *Ferdinand* II. that the Ambaſſadors of Electors ſhould give Place to thoſe of Crown'd Heads. Duke *Charles Emanuel* of *Savoy*, thô that Family has the Title of Kings of *Cyprus*, reſpected the Electors as his Maſters and Superiors.

The Electors have Power, 1. To make and annul Laws for the Empire without the Emperor's Conſent; ſo that the Chamber of *Spires* is obliged to ſubmit to their Deciſions, thô againſt Common Law. 2. Their Subjects ſwear Allegiance to them, and are obliged more ſtrictly to them than to the Emperor, to whom the Electors pay only the Acknowledgment of Vaſſals, as the firſt Perſon of the Empire. 3. They have all the Officers of State that other Sovereigns have. 4. They make War and Leagues with Foreign Powers without the Emperor. They treat with the Emperor as their Equal, and never ask Pardon of him for Acts of Hoſtility; but in ſuch Caſes, an Amneſty is agreed on by both. 5. They judge deciſively in all Caſes without Appeal. 6. They proteſt *Jews*. 7. They grant Pardons. 8. They appoint Fairs and Markets. 9. They lay on Taxes, *&c.* 10. They coin Money. 11. They have the Tenth of all Mines diſcovered in their Territories. 12. They ſend Ambaſſadors to Kings and States. 13. They give Diſpenſations for Marriage within the Degrees prohibited by Canon-Law. 14. They make what

Digitized by Google

what Change in Religion they pleaſe within their Territories.

By the Capitulation of *Ferdinand* III. the Emperor cannot aſſemble a Diet of the Empire without Conſent of the Electors, under Hand and Seal. He cannot make Leagues or War, make a Prince of the Empire, put any Perſon into the Ban of the Empire, or declare 'em Infamous, without Conſent of the Electors. They have alſo this Privilege, That they pay nothing for Inveſtitures; whereas other Princes are obliged to pay Fees to the Officers of the Court, and the Horſe they ride on to the Grand Marſhal of the Empire, or his Vicar.

The Electors uſe the Words, *By the Grace of God*, in their Titles, which is only us'd by Sovereigns; and Foreign Princes give them the ſame Honour they do to Crown'd Heads.

Preliminaries to the Election of the Emperor.

WHen Arch-Duke *Charles*, afterwards *Charles* V. was choſen, the Electors found it neceſſary, in regard of the great Power of *Spain*, and the Time he muſt ſpend in his Hereditary Dominions, to limit his Power, which they have practis'd at all Elections ſince; and thoſe Limitations are call'd by the Name of *Capitulation*, which, together with the *Golden Bull*, is the Fundamental Law of the Empire; and the Electors make ſuch Additions and Explanations to the Bull as they think fit, becauſe they repreſent the States and Sovereignty of the Empire. Of this ſort, the Capitulation made with *Ferdinand* III. was one of the moſt Remarkable, and conſiſted of 51 Articles, which the Emperor ſwore to, and that he himſelf and his Imperial Council would govern themſelves by it. The Firſt Article was, "That as Advocate of the "Chriſtian Church, he ſhould take the "Church and See of *Rome*, and the Perſon "of the Pope, into his Protection." But by the Capitulation of *Maximilian* II. the Proteſtant Electors were not obliged to ſtand to that Article, nor to demand it of the Emperor: And in that ſame Capitulation 'tis own'd, that the Emperor was called to that Dignity by the Providence of God, and the Choice of the Election; and that he took it upon him for the Glory of God, the univerſal Good of *Chriſtendom*, and the particular Good of *Germany*, with whom he enter'd into a Contract, and Reciprocal Obligation.

The Way of Electing the Emperor.

TO avoid the Penalty of being reduced to Bread and Water, if they don't finiſh the Election in a Month after taking the Oath, the Electors have found out a Way to diſtinguiſh betwixt their Deliberations about it and the Election it ſelf; and therefore never pretend to meet about the Election till they have agreed on the Perſon, and then they appoint a Day, which is rather to publiſh whom they have elected, than to elect. In the Morning they come to the Town-Houſe, without any Order, with their ordinary Habits and Retinues, where each of them enter a Chamber, and put on their Electoral Habits. The Eccleſiaſticks have Scarlet Robes, and Caps lin'd with Ermine; and the Seculars have theirs of Crimſon Velvet, lin'd alſo with Ermine. There they take Horſe, and go to St. *Bartholomew*'s Church, but without any fix'd Order in the Cavalcade. They are all attended by their Hereditary Marſhals, who carry the Swords before them, the Scabbards of the Eccleſiaſticks being adorned with Silver-gilt, and thoſe of the Seculars in Scabbards of Crimſon Velvet, adorn'd with Silver. The Deputies of Electors are allowed none of thoſe Ceremonies; but the Adminiſtrators of young Electors are. The Elector of *Saxony* has this Pre-eminence, That the Count *de Papenheim*, and not his own Marſhal, carries the Sword before him. When the Electors come to the Church, they alight at the Gate, and go each to their own Seat in the Quire; and ſeveral other Princes and Counts, with the Counſellors of the Electors, being called in, Count *Papenheim* ſhuts the Door, and takes the Keys; and the Sword-Bearers ſtand before the Electors with their Swords drawn, and laid over their Shoulders. When the Hymn of *Veni Creator* is ſung, the Proteſtant Electors retire till Maſs be over, when they return, and take the Oath before-mentioned, with the

Digitized by Google

the reſt, at the Altar, which is marked down by two Notaries, or the Archbiſhop of *Ments*'s Secretaries, and atteſted by the other Princes and Lords that are preſent. The Hymn being again ſung, they go to the Conclave for the Election, being a ſmall Vaulted Gallery that goes out of the Quire, and perform every thing according to the Order of the *Golden Bull*. Count *Papenheim* ſhuts them up; but lays the Keys ſo as they may find them. The Election is carried by Plurality of Votes; and if the Perſon choſen be an Elector, he may give his own Vote. They ſend for their Chancellors and Chief Counſellors a little, meerly for Form, to conſult them on Difficulties that may happen; after which they retire. The Election is uſually diſpatched in an Hour; and when 'tis over, they ſend again for their Principal Counſellors, the Chancellor of the Elector of *Ments*, and the Chancellor of a Secular Elector, who caſt up the Suffrages, mark them down, and draw up the Form, which the Electors ſign and ſeal with their Great Seals: Then they come out of the Conclave to the great Altar, upon which they place the Emperor Elect. The Archbiſhop of *Ments* recommends to him the Intereſts of the Empire, makes him ſign the Conditions on which he is choſen, and confirm the Electors in all their Privileges: After which, the Election is publiſh'd, and the Emperor proclaim'd by a Herald at Arms. Without this Confirmation given to each of the Electors under the Great Seal, he cannot meddle with the Adminiſtration.

When the Electors have agreed upon the Place of Coronation, the Elector of *Ments* orders the Magiſtrates of *Nuremberg*, who keep the *Regalia*, to ſend them to the Place. The Electors, or their Ambaſſadors, attend the Emperor from his Palace to the Church, in their Electoral Robes: The Elector *Palatine* carries the Crown, the Elector of *Bavaria* the Globe, the Elector of *Brandenburg* the Scepter, and march in a-Breaſt; the Elector of *Saxony* carries the Sword, and the Elector of *Hanover* the Standard. After them comes the Emperor alone, with his Retinue following. At the Door of the Church he is received by the Eccleſiaſtical Electors alſo in their Robes, who conduct him to the Altar; and the Archbiſhop that officiates being in his Pontificals, anoints his Head, betwixt his Shoulders, his Neck, Breaſt, and right Arm, and the middle of his right Hand. This they call his Conſecration. Then he is carried to another Altar to be crown'd, where he is cloath'd with the ancient Imperial Robes; and after the ordinary Ceremonies, he is plac'd on the Throne, where the Archbiſhop bids him take and keep the Pledge that was deſign'd for him by Providence, and the Choice of the Electors. After which, *Te Deum* is ſung, Trumpets and Kettle-Drums playing the mean while. The Archbiſhops of *Ments* and *Cologne* contend for the Privilege of putting the Crown on his Head. After the Coronation, the Emperor creates Knights and Gentlemen.

Of the King of the Romans.

THis Title is now given to thoſe who are to ſucceed to the Empire, and are choſen in the ſame Manner as the Emperors, as appears by the *Golden Bull*. After the Weſtern Empire was tranſlated from the *Greeks* to the *French* in *Charlemaign*'s Time, the Succeſſor was firſt called King of *Italy*, as *Selden* in his Titles of Honour proves from unqueſtionable Authority; but when *Italy* became tumultuous, and to break off from the Empire, he was called King of *Germany*, and ſometimes had both Titles. Lawyers diſpute whether he be ſubject to the Emperor. 'Tis plain, that at firſt he was; for *Bernard* King of the *Romans* was condemned to Death for Treaſon againſt the Emperor *Ludovicus Pius*: Yet ſome great *German* Lawyers affirm, That if he be choſen in the Emperor's Life-time, he is not ſubject to his Juriſdiction, but conſider'd as the ſecond Head of the Empire: This ſeems however to depend upon the Nature of his Election, and the Deſign of the Electors when they chuſe him. Thus *Ferdinand* King of the *Romans*, in the Time of *Charles V.* made Edicts as well as he: Yet thoſe who carry his Power higheſt, ſay, he is obliged to reverence the Emperor, tho' he be not ſubject to his Juriſdiction: For ſome of thoſe who were choſen by that Name after the Emperor's Death, they had the ſame Power with an Emperor: But in the Times

Digitized by Google

of Superſtition, or when the Pope's Power was formidable, they abſtain'd from the Title of Emperor, till they were crown'd at *Rome*; but ſince the Coronation at *Rome* has not been thought neceſſary, they take the Title of Emperor as ſoon as choſen. At preſent, the Kings of the *Romans* have for their Arms, an Eagle with one Head only; whereas the Emperor's Eagle has two, ſince the Houſe of *Auſtria* ſucceeded to *Spain*. The King is only call'd *Auguſtus*, but the Emperor *Semper Auguſtus*. The Emperor in his Letters Patents calls the King *Our Beloved*, but the King gives him the Title of *Majeſty*. In the Abſence of the Emperor, the King has the Adminiſtration of the Government. The Emperors have now for many Years procur'd their Eldeſt Sons to be choſen King of the *Romans*. The Duke of *Saxony*, and others, at the League of *Smalkald* proteſted againſt this, as contrary to the Golden Bull, and their Freedom of Election: And afterwards it was agreed, That no King of the *Romans* ſhould be choſen during the Emperor's Life, except the Electors agreed on it beforehand as Neceſſary; and they may alſo chuſe a King of the *Romans* without the Emperor's Conſent.

Their Nobility, and Titles of Honour, from Selden, &c.

WHence Feuds had their Original, is not certain; ſome derive them from the *Roman* Empire, as *Lampridius*, who ſays, That *Alexander Severus* gave ſuch Territories as were gain'd on the Frontiers, to his Soldiers and their Children to defend their own Lands, and the Empire from Incurſions; ſo that they were held by a Military Tenure: Some of thoſe Men had the Title of *Dux*, but not Hereditary, in which they differ'd from the Feudal Titles of Honour now in uſe. Some aſcribe the Origine of 'em to thoſe Northern Nations that overran *Europe*, thoſe Titles being only Officiary before; but thoſe Nations continued the *Roman* Names, as they us'd their Language in their Charters, Laws, *&c.* The *Lombards* finding that the Title of *Comes* and *Dux* were of equal Honour, and that *Comes*, as it had a relation to the Court, was frequently preferr'd, tho' the *Dux* did more Service to the State; they gave the greater Honour to the Title of *Dux*, in which they have been imitated by moſt Nations of *Europe*. *Sigonius* ſays, The firſt Hereditary Duke was *Giſulphus*, Nephew to *Alboinus* the firſt King of the *Lombards*, who erected *Friuli*, and the Province about it, into a Dutchy, and gave it him. Some Counts had then a Duke over them, and others were only ſubject to that King or Emperor who created them. Sir *Thomas Craig*, *De Feudis*, *Lib.* 1. *Dieges.* 4. aſcribes the Origine of the Feudal Law to the *Goths*, *Vandals*, *Huns*, and *Lombards*, who having over-run the Empire, divided the Lands among 'em in a Military manner, according to the Number of their Followers; to whom the Great Officers ſubdivided them for a certain quantity of the Product, to maintain themſelves, and the braveſt of their Followers, whom they called *Comites* or Companions. This he reckons to have been the Infancy of the Feudal Law; for thoſe Poſſeſſions were not Hereditary, but conferr'd and taken away at the Pleaſure of the Lord or Superior. The Feudal Law, he ſays, was in its Childhood, when the Proprietors ſuffer'd thoſe Lands to be enjoy'd by ſuch of the Sons of the preſent Poſſeſſors as they thought fireſt for that Service. This Law came to a State of Youth in the Time of the Emperor *Conrad* II. who allow'd Grand-Children, and likewiſe Collaterals, as Fathers Brothers, to ſucceed, in order to incourage his great Army he had then levied againſt *Italy*, becauſe the Popes then began to contend with the Emperor for Prehemi-nence. In *Charlemaign's* Time, Feudal Titles began to be Hereditary, whereas before they were only for Life, except the Lords thought fit it ſhould be otherwiſe; but in the Time of the *Capets*, that Line, in order to oblige the Nobility, allow'd the Succeſſion to be Hereditary; and then Sir *Thomas* ſays, the Feudal Law arriv'd to the State of a Man. In the 5th *Digeſt*, he anſwers thoſe who derive the Feudal Law from that of the *Roman*; and confutes the Pretenſions of the *Germans*, *Gauls*, *Spaniards*, and *Greeks*, as to the Antiquity of that Law in their reſpective Countries.

As to the *German* Titles of Archduke, Dukes, Counts Palatine, and others, Margraves, Landgraves, Burgraves, Barons, *&c.* the

the Curious may find an Account of them, with their Origine, Inveſtiture and Power, in *Selden's* Titles of Honour, *Part II.* and we ſhall give a brief Deſcription of the moſt remarkable of 'em when we come to the particular Governments in the Geographical Account of the Countries to which they belong.

Their KNIGHTS.

THE only remarkable Order of Knighthood in the Empire, and which properly belongs to it, is that of the *Teutonick* Order, of whom we gave an Account in *Pruſſia*. Their preſent Great Maſter is *Francis Lewis*, Palatine of the *Rhine*: His Reſidence is at *Mergentheim* in *Francomia*. They have Eleven Bailiwicks or Commanderies in the Empire, under ſo many Companions of the Order, call'd Commanders: The Firſt in *Alſace*, which the *French* King was oblig'd to reſtore by the Peace of *Ryſwick*; the Second in *Auſtria*; the Third in *Cleintz*; the Fourth in *Tirol*; the Fifth in *Franconia*; the Sixth in *Heſſe*, a Proteſtant; the Seventh in *Broſſen*; the Eighth in *Thuringia*, now a Papiſt, but to revert to a Proteſtant; the Ninth in *Weſtphalia*; the Tenth in *Lorrain*; the Eleventh in *Saxony*, a Proteſtant.

There's a Branch of the Knights of *Malta* in the Emperor's Hereditary Dominions, who have Poſſeſſions in *Bohemia*, *Auſtria*, *Sileſia*, and *Tyrol*. Their preſent Grand Prior is the Count of *Potting*.

The common Order of Knights in *Germany*, are called *Ritter Geſchlagen*, or Dubb'd Knights, who are created by the Emperor with the Stroke of a Sword, kneeling before him, but the Title deſcends not to their Heirs. The Curious may ſee the Ancient Ceremonies in creating thoſe Knights, with their Qualifications and Privileges, in *Selden's* Titles of Honour.

There are ſome particular Orders made by Princes of the Empire, which we ſhall treat of in their Place.

The Empreſs-Dowager *Eleonora*, in 1662, founded two Orders of Ladies, who are a ſort of Knights. The Firſt is called, the Order of the Slaves of Virtue, becauſe they profeſs a more ſevere Virtue than others. They are Thirty in Number, part Proteſtants and part Papiſts. Their Badge is a golden Medal, repreſenting a Sun encompaſs'd with a Lawrel Garland, and their Motto, *Sola ubique triumphat*. The Empreſs is Great Miſtreſs of the Order. The Second is, That of the United Croſs-Bearers, founded by the ſame Empreſs in 1668, becauſe, when the Palace was burnt, a Golden Crucifix, in which they pretend there's a Piece of the Croſs, was found in the Ruins untouch'd by the Flames. They are all Papiſts, and wear on their Left Side a four-corner'd Croſs faſten'd to a black Ribbon, at the End of which there's a ſparkling Star; in the Middle, there are two Wood-colour'd Lines; there are four Eagles about it, and the Motto round it is, *Salus & Gloria*. Their Patrons are the Mother of God and St. *Joſeph*. It was confirm'd by Pope *Clement*; the Biſhop of *Vienna* is their Spiritual Inſpector, and the Empreſs their Proteſtreſs. She made Seventeen Ladies of the Order, in *May* 1698.

The Diet, Colleges, Councils, and Courts of the Empire.

FOR the Diet, the Manner of their Sitting is eaſily underſtood by the Cut of it; but the Deſcription of the ſeveral Colleges that compoſe it, we refer to the Account of *Ratiſbon*, their uſual Place of Meeting. For the Chief Councils of the Empire; as the Aulic Council, the Council of State, the Council of War, and the Council of Finances; we refer them to the Deſcription of *Vienna*, where they Sit, as we do the Chamber of *Spires* to *Spires*, and the College of the Hans Towns to *Lubec*.

Their LAWS

ARE, 1. The *Golden Bull*, which we have accounted for already. 'Tis called *Golden*, becauſe of the Gold Seal affix'd to

Digitized by Google

it, to denote its Importance, as the Fundamental Law of the Empire; and *Bull*, from the *Bulla*, or little gilt Picture, which the young *Romans* during their Commonwealth hung about their Necks till they were 14 Years of Age, and then conſecrated them to their *Lares*; ſo that it's now become a common Name for the Seals of Emperors and Popes, ſays Dr. *Nicholſon*. It has on the Face the Picture of the Emperor *Charles* IV. on his Throne, with the Imperial Crown on his Head, the Scepter in one Hand, and Globe in t'other; the Arms of the Empire on the Right, and thoſe of *Bohemia* on the Left. The Inſcription is, *Carolus Quartus, Divina Favente Clementia Romanorum Imperator, ſemper Auguſtus & Bohemiæ Rex.* On the Reverſe it has a Caſtle, with two Figures, and the Words *Aurea Roma* under them; and in the Circumference this Inſcription, *Roma Caput Mundi, Regit Orbis frena Rotundi.* This *Bull* is writ on 24 Leaves of Parchment, and contains 30 Chapters. 2. The *Capitulatio Cæſarea*, or Imperial Capitulation, which we have alſo mention'd already, that the Emperor is ſworn to obſerve at his Election. Dr. *Nicholſon* ſays, it conſiſts only of 41 Articles; but that ſworn by *Ferdinand* III. conſiſted of 51; ſo that the Electors add or alter as they ſee Occaſion. 3. The *Receſſus Imperii*, or Acts of the Diets. 4. The *Pragmatic Sanction*, or Laws made in the Diets for preſerving the Publick Peace. 5. *Juſtinian*'s Collection of the *Roman* Laws; for *Maximilian* I. order'd the Civil Law to be us'd in the Chamber of *Spire* in 1495, and it has ſince been taught in their Univerſities; but the General Laws made by the Diet, and thoſe of the particular Princes and States, who have Power to make their own Laws, provided they be not prejudicial to the other States, take Place of the Civil Law; but where there is no Proviſion otherwiſe, Cauſes are determin'd according to that. They alſo make uſe of the Canon Law. M. *Raphel*, Plenipotentiary for the Duke of *Holſtein-Gottorp* at *Nimeguen*, publiſh'd an Account of the Common Law through the whole Empire, Entituled, *Introductio ad Jus Publicum Germanicum.*

Their MILITARY *Government.*

THis is beſt to be underſtood by the following *Matricula*, which regulates the Quota of Men and Money that each Prince and State is to furniſh for Defence of the Empire, for what they call a *Roman* Month.

The

Digitized by Google

The Matricula *of the Empire, or Repartition of the States and Cities, according to the Conſtitution of* Charles V.

The Circle of *Auſtria.*

	Horſe.	*Foot.*	*Flo-rins.*
The Dutchies of			
Auſtria, Tirol, Stiria, Carniola, Carinthia	120	554	3654
The Biſhopricks of			
Trent, Brixen, Conſtance	42	273	1596
The City of Conſtance	3	50	236
The Princes of			
Eghenberg	3	10	76
Diedrichſtein	3	10	76
Aursberg	3	10	76
Total of the Circle is	174	907	5714

The Circle of the *Lower Rhine.*

The Archbiſhopricks of			
Mentz	60	277	1828
Treves	26⅔	122⅔	806
Cologne	60	277	1828
The Commander of the Teutonick Order	4	20	128
The Electors.			
Treves, *for the Abbey of* Prum	1	13	64
The Abbey of St. Maximin *near* Treves	3	22	124
Seculars.			
The Elector Palatine	30	138½	914
The Prince of Arenberg, *for his Territories*	2	6	48
The Counts of			
Naſſau Beilſtein	1	2	20
Lower Iſenburg	2	8	56
The Lordſhip of			
Rheineck	1	0	12
Total of the Circle is	190⅔	885/6	5828

The Circle of *Upper Saxony.*

The Biſhopricks of	*Horſe.*	*Foot.*	*Flor.*
Meiſſen, Mersburg, Naumberg — *By the Elector of Saxony.*	6	6	96
	6	6	96
	6	6	96
Camin, *by the K. of* Pruſſia	6	28	184
The Abbeys of			
Quedlimburg	1	10	32
Gerentode, *by* Anhalt	1	6	36
Walkenriet, *by* Schwartzenburg	2	6	48
Salfelt	2	13	76
Seculars.			
Elector of Saxony *for himſelf*	65	301	1984
For Weida, Sachſenburg, Amthang, Zurgenruck	5	20	140
For the Lands of Voitland	10	46	304
The King of Pruſſia	60	277	1828
The D. of Saxe-Altenburg *and* Saxe-Coburg	10	32	248
Saxe-Weimar	9	28	220
Saxe-Gotha	9	28	220
The Dutchy of Pomerania	34	200	1208
The Princes of Anhalt	9	20	188
The Counts and Princes of Schwartzenburg	7	29	200
Counts of Mansfield	10	45	300
Stolberg	3	12	84
Barby *and* Millingen	1	2	20
The Counts of			
Hohenſtein	2	8	56
Gleichen	3	13	88
Beuchlingen	2	0	24
The Barons of			
Reuſſen, Plave, Gerau, — Schelrz	2	12	72
The Counts of			
Graitz *and* Graniſhfeld	1	3	24
Schombourg	2	4	40
Leiſnickz	1	2	20
Barons of			
Wildenfelt	2	2	20
Schenken *&* Teutenberg	1	2	20
The Total is	278	1167	7972

The

Digitized by Google

The Circle of *Swabia*.

	Horſe.	Foot.	Flor.
The Biſhops of			
Conſtance	7	30	204
Augsburg	21	100	652
The Provoſtſhip of			
Elwangen	5	18	132
The Abbies of			
Kempten	6	20	125
Salmanſweiler	4	64	316
Weingarten	4	18	120
Ochſenhauſen	4	20	128
Gengenbach	1	3	24
Elchingen	3	13	88
Urſa or Urſin	0	14	56
Ursberg	0	10	14
Rockemburg	2	20	64
Munchrot	1	8	44
Schuſſenriet	2	14	80
Woiſſinau	2	14	80
Marchtal	2	5	44
Peterſhauſen	0	6	24
Wottenhauſen	1	3	24
The Abbeſſes of			
Lindau	0	5	20
Buchan	2	6	48
Baindt	0	3	12
Heppach	0	3	20
Guttenzell	0	5	20
Rotenmunſter	1	4	28
The Commander Bailly of Alſace and Burgundy	3	31	160
Seculars.			
The Dukes of			
Wurtemberg	60	277	1828
Marq. of Baden, Baden, Baden-Durlach	38	103	868
The Prince of			
Hohenzollern	6	20	152
The Counts of			
Montfort	3	20	116
Furſtemberg *Prince of* Oetingen	16	72	482
	8	45	276
Wiceſteig, *belonging to the Elector of* Bavaria	2	0	24
Sultz, *for their Lands in that Circle*	4	15	108
Koningſck, *for* Aulemburg *and* Eckersberg	1	8	44
	209	996	6425

	Horſe.	Foot.	Flor.
Brought over	209	996	6425
Barons of Scheer—Waldburg	11	45	312
Prince of			
Miadelheim	3	10	76
Barons of			
Graveneg	1	2	20
Eglingen			
Gerollek	1	2	20
Hohenregberg	1	2	20
The Counts of			
Fugger	4	15	108
Kirchberg			
Weiſſenhorn			
Hohenems	2	0	24
Eberſtein	0	4	16
The Cities of			
Augsburg	25	150	900
Ulm	25	150	900
Eſlingen	2	30½	146
Reutlingen	3	38	188
Nordlingen	5	50	260
Uberlingen	6	20	312
Rotweil	3	61	280
Hailbron	4	40	208
Gemund	3	35	176
Memmingen	4	50	248
Lindau	3	40	196
Dunkelſpihel	4	40	208
Biberach	3	40	196
Ravenſpourg	3	40	196
Kempten	3	30	156
Kaufbeuren	2	34	160
Weil	1	12	60
Wangen	2	14	80
Iſny	2	14	80
Leutkirch	0	10	40
Wimpfen	2	14	80
Gingen	1	12	60
Aalen	1	12	60
Bopfingen	0	6	24
Pfullendorf	2	20	140
Buchorn	0	5	20
Buchau	0	2	8
Offenburg	0	30	120
Gengenbach	0	15	60
Zell	0	10	40
Total of the Circle is	341	2100½	12623

The

Digitized by Google

The Circle of *Bavaria*.

	Horſe.	Foot.	Flor.
The Archbiſhoprick of			
Saltzburg	60	277	1828
The Biſhopricks of			
Paſſau	18	78	528
Freiſingen	12	80	464
Ratisbonne	8	30	218
The Proveſtſhip of			
Berchtolſgaden	8	20	104
The Abbeys of			
Walt Saxen	4	18	120
St. Emeran	2	18	96
Kaiſersheim	4	60	280
The Abbeſſes of			
Nider Munſter	2	6	48
Ober Munſter	2	6	48
Seculars.			
The Elector of Bavaria	60	277	1828
The Landgraviate of Leuchtenberg	6	14	128
The County of Haag *by* Bavaria	4	10	88
The Duke of Neuburg, *for him, and* Sultzbach	20	100	640
The ſame Duke, for Slauf, *or for* Ehrenfels	3	6	36
The Prince of Lobkowitz, *for the County of* Sternſtein	3	10	76
The County of Ortemburg	2	0	24
The Barony of			
Machſelrain	1	2	20
Sultzberg	2	4	40
The City of Ratisbonne	10	50	320
Total of the Circle is	231	1060	6934

The Circle of *Franconia*.

The Biſhops of			
Bamberg	30	128	1088
Wurtemburg	45	208	1372
Aichſtet	20	132	768
The Great Maſter of the Teutonick Order	19	50	448
Seculars.			
The Marquiſſet of			
Brandenburg, Culmbach, *for* Baroyt, Anſpach, *and the Bourgraviat of* Nuremberg	34	156	1032
The Biſhop of Wurtzburg *for the County of* Henneberg	15	44	356
	163	718	5064

	Horſe.	Foot.	Flor.
Brought over	163	718	5064
The Counties of			
Hohenloe	8	40	256
Caſtel	1	4	28
Wertheim	5	25	160
Rheineck	2	10	64
Erpach	2	8	56
Limburg	4	17	116
Schuartzenberg	1	3	24
Seinſheim	1	4	28
The Biſhop of Wurtzburg *for the Lordſhip of* Reigersberg	1	4	28
The Chapter of Wurtzburg, *for the City of* Schewemfurt	4	25	148
The City of			
Nuremberg	40	250	1480
Rotemburg	10	65	380
Winſheim	4	30	168
Weiſſenburg	3	16	100
Total of the Circle is	249	1219	8100

The Circle of the *Upper Rhine*.

The Archbiſhoprick of			
Beſançon, *formerly*	20	50	440
The Biſhopricks of			
Worms	2	13	76
Spires	18	60	456
Strasburg	18	100	616
Baſle	3	15	84
The Great Maſter of Malta	10	30	240
The Abbeys of			
Fulden	17	50	404
Murbach, Luders	6	19	148
Hirchfeld	2	9	60
Prum	1	13	64
Munſter *in St. Gregory's Valley*	1	4	28
The Proveſtſhip of Weiſſemburg	2	14	80
Seculars.			
The Dukes of			
Simmeren	3	10	76
Deuxponts	10	30	240
Savoy	60	277	1828
Lorrain	40	184	1216
The Princes Palatines of			
Lautereck, or Veldens	2	4	40
	214	882	6096

The

	Horſe.	Foot.	Flor.
Brought over	214	882	6096
The Prince Palatine of			
Salm	1	2	20
The Landgravates of			
Heſſe Caſſel	50	260	1640
Heſſe Darmſtad			
The Counts of			
Naſſau Sarbruc	6	30	192
Weilburg	6	30	192
Wisbaden	2	10	64
Ideſtein			
Ryn-Grafen, *together*	4	12	96
Hanau, *and Prince*	10	30	240
Leiningen	5	13	112
Ober Iſenburg	6	24	168
Budingen			
Solms	8	42	264
Wirgenſtein	1	4	28
Waldeck	4	18	120
Koningſtein, *belonging to the Elector of* Ments, *and others*	4	13	100
Falkenſtein	3	8	68
Ripelbarch			
Creange	2	4	40
Pleſs, *by the Landgrave of* Heſſe Caſſel	2	0	24
The Baronies of			
Fleckenſtein	1	1	16
Dochful			
The Cities of			
Strasburg	25	150	900
Worms	9	42	276
Spires	9	42	276
Francfort	20	140	300
Hagenau	6	30	192
Colmar	4	30	168
Schleſtat	4	24	144
Crown Weiſſenbourg	2	22	112
Landau	2	18	96
Oberehenheim	20	14	80
Kaiſersberg	2	15	84
Munſter *in the Valley of St.* George	0	12	48
Roſheim	1	3	24
Turcheim	0	9	20
Friedberg	0	12	48
Wetzlar	0	8	32
Total of the Circle is	433	1950	12280

The Circle of *Burgundy*.

	Horſe.	Foot.	Flor.
French County, *or* Upper Burgundy, *and the* Netherlands	180	831	5484
Total of the Circle is	180	831	5484

The Circle of *Weſtphalia*.

The Biſhopricks of			
Paderborn	18	34	352
Liege	50	870	1280
Munſter	30	118	832
Oſnabrug	6	36	216
The King of Sweden, *for the Biſhoprick of* Verden	5	15	120
Elect. of Brandenb. *for the Biſhoprick of* Minden	10	16	184
The Abbeys of			
Stablo	2	22	112
St. C. *of* Munſter	0	12	48
Corvey	3	9	72
The Abbeſſes of			
Herforden, *Proteſtants*	0	6	24
Eſſen	2	13	76
Seculars.			
The Elect. of Brand. *and Palatine, for* Cleves, Juliers *and* Berg	70	323	2132
The Counts of			
Naſſau Dillenburg	10½	43	300
Oſriſe	6	30	192
Sayn	4	16	112
Bentheim	11	34	268
Ritberg	6	0	72
Lippe	4	18	120
Oldenburg	10	44	296
Delmenhorſt			
Pyrmont	1	4	28
Hoye	2	8	56
Diepholt	3	4	38
Schawenburg *by* Heſſe Caſſel	6	26	176
Bronehorſt *and* Gronsfelt	1	0	12
Winneberg *and* Beylſtein	1	0	12
Wied *and* Runckel	4	12	96
Blankenheim	2	10	64
Reifferſcheit	2	21	32
The Cities of			
Cologn	25	200	1100
Aix la Chapelle	7	30	240
Dertmundt	7	30	240
Herford	1	15	72
Total of the Circle is	309½	2019	8964

The

Digitized by Google

The Circle of *Lower Saxony*.

	Horſe.	Foot.	Flor.
The Dutchies of			
Magdeburg	43	196	1300
Bremen	24	100	688
The Biſhopricks of			
Halberſtadt	14	66	432
Hildeſheim	18	80	536
Lubeck	5	0	60
Swerin	8	0	96
Ratsburg	5	15	120
Seculars.			
The Dutchies of			
Brunſwick *and* Lunenburg	70	128	2152
Holſtein	40	80	800
Mecklenburg, Swerin *and* Guſtrou	40	67	748
Saxe-Lawenburg	6	6	216
The County of			
Blankenburg	2	0	24
The Cities of			
Lubeck	10½	88½	480
Mulhauſen	0	40	160
Goſlar	0	15	60
	285½	881½	7872

	Horſe.	Foot.	Flor.
Brought over	285½	881½	7872
Cities of Northauſen	0	20	80
Bremen	16	32	320
Hamburg	20	120	720
The Total is	321½	1053½	8992

The Total of the *Matricula*.

	Horſe.	Foot.	Florins.
The Circle of Auſtria	174	907	5714
The Lower Rhine	190⅔	885⅓	5818
Upper Saxony	278	1167	7972
Swabia	341	2100⅓	12623
Bavaria	231	1060	6934
Franconia	249	1219	8100
The Upper Rhine	433	1950	12280
Weſtphalia	309⅓	2019	8964
Lower Saxony	321½	1053½	8992
Burgundy	180	831	5484
	2707¼	13192⅓	82891

Note, That the *German* Florin is 40 Pence.

The *Matricula* above does not regulate the Precedency of the Circles or Princes; but ſerves only to ſhew the reſpective Quota's that each of them pay: Much leſs is it a Determination of the Military Strength of the Empire, or a Limitation what each Prince and State ſhall raiſe, but only as to this particular Occaſion; for each Sovereign Prince and State have a Power of Peace and War, and Alliances within themſelves, ſo that they may raiſe what Force they pleaſe, if it be not to diſturb the Peace of the Empire.

The *Atlas Hiſtorique* gives the following Scheme of the Military Force of the *Empire*.

The Eccleſiaſtical Princes are able to raiſe	Men.
Mentz	6000
Treves	6000
Cologne	6000
Saltzburg	8000
The Biſhop of *Munſter*	8000
of *Liege*	8000
of *Wurtzburg*	2000
of *Bamberg*	5000
	49000

	Men.
Brought from the other Column	49000
The Biſhop of *Paderborn*	3000
of *Oſnabruck*	2500
The Abbot of *Fulda*	6000
The other Biſhopricks of the Empire together	6000
The Abbies and Provoſtſhips of the Empire	8000
Total of the Eccleſiaſtical Princes	74500

Digitized by Google

The Secular Princes are able to raise	Men.
The Emperor, for *Hungary*	30000
The Emperor, for *Bohemia, Silesia,* and *Moravia*	30000
The Emperor, for *Austria,* and his other Dominions	30000
The King of *Prussia*	40000
The Elector of *Saxony*	25000
The Elector *Palatine*	15000
The Duke of *Wirtemberg*	15000
The Landgrave of *Hesse-Cassel*	15000
The Prince of *Baden*	10000
The Prince of *Brunswick Lunenburg,* or Elector of *Hanover*	30000
	240000

	Men.
Brought from the other Column—	240000
The Duke of *Holstein*	12000
The Duke of *Meckienburg*	15000
The Princes of *Anhalt*	6000
The Prince of *Lawenburg*	6000
The Elector of *Bavaria*	30000
The Dukes of *Saxony*	10000
The Princes of *Nassau*	10000
The other Princes and Imperial Towns of the Empire	50000
Total of the Secular Princes	379000
Total of the Ecclesiastical Princes—	74500
Total of the Forces of the Empire—	453500

By which it appears, That the Emperor and Empire make the most potent Government of *Europe*, when they have a good Understanding with one another.

Besides the Tax before-mentioned, there is another that each State is obliged to pay to the Chamber of the Officers of *Wetzlar*, amounting to 48925 Florins.

'Twas *Maximilian* I. who began to divide the Empire into Circles in 1500, and appointed those of *Francovia, Bavaria, Swabia,* the *Upper Rhine, Westphalia,* and *Lower Saxony*; Twelve Years after, he added those of *Austria, Burgundy,* of the *Lower Rhine,* and *Upper Saxony*. *Charles* V. confirmed this in the Diet at *Nuremberg* in 1522, and appointed the *Matricula* as above, which is kept in the Archbishop of *Mentz*'s Chancery. It was order'd, instead of 2000 Foot and 4000 Horse that the Empire was obliged to furnish to attend the Emperor when he went to *Rome* to be crown'd, That those that could not raise Troops, were to pay 12 Florins for each Horseman, and 4 for a Footman; but the Prices of Things increasing, they were to pay 60 for a Horseman, and 12 for a Footman, which made one of the new *Roman* Months equal to five of the old ones. The Tax not being alter'd since, the States augment the Number of *Roman* Months as Occasion requires, and appoint the Time of Payment.

Every Circle has one or two Directors, who summon the States of the Circle to meet, acquaint them with the Cause, and give the necessary Orders for the Publick Welfare, and good Administration. They chuse a General for the Troops they raise, either of their own Number, or otherwise, as they think meet; but if he be one of themselves, he has no Salary. He is to take Care, that all Things relating to War be managed for the Good of the Circle. He lists their Men, regulates their Quarters and March, and puts the Ban of the Empire in Execution. They chuse 5 Assistants at least, who are as his Lieutenants, and perform his Office, if either he neglect it, or be necessarily absent; and they may either be of their own Circle, or any other; for this Dignity is not annex'd to any particular Family or State; nor are they oblig'd always to serve in that Station. Every Circle has three Publick Ministers or Counsellors, *viz.* a Treasurer, who superintends the Money; another who receives what the States pay towards the Imperial Chamber, and gives Quittances for it; and a Secretary, who attends the Directors. Sometimes all the Circles meet together, which they call a General Assembly. The Circles that lie nearest one another meet every Year, to regulate the Affairs of Money, Correspondence and Commerce; whence they are call'd the Corresponding Circles. There are three Classes of them: The first are, the *Upper Rhine, Lower Rhine,* and *Westphalia*: The 2d, *Upper* and

Digitized by Google

and *Lower Saxony*: And the 3d, *Franconia*, *Bavaria*, *Swabia*, and *Austria*. Some of the Circles are fix'd, and always aſſembled: Others meet only once a Year; and ſome are only call'd to meet when Neceſſity requires. The General Aſſemblies of a Circle appoint the Particular Aſſemblies; and the Directors give Notice of the Time and Place 6 Weeks before. That of *Upper Saxony* uſually meets at *Leipſick*; *Franconia* at *Nuremberg* or *Bamberg*; and *Swabia* at *Ulm*. They treat about the Goodneſs or Badneſs of the Coin, about the Preſervation of their Peace, their Publick Defence, about rectifying the *Matricula*, putting the Emperor's Orders in Execution, and appointing Counſellors for the Chamber of *Wetzlar*. They alſo make Laws; but muſt take Care they be conſiſtent with the Conſtitution of the Empire. They take Order about their Records, their Treaſury, Arſenals, Magazines, Fortifications, and Frontiers.

The Diviſion of the Empire according to M. Sanſon, *the* French *King's Geographer.*

GERMANY, *belonging to the Imperial Branch of the Houſe of* AUSTRIA.

The Arch-Dutchy of —— Auſtria
The Kingdom & Electorate of Bohemia
The Dutchy of —— —— Sileſia
The Marquiſate of —— Moravia
The Dutchies of —— { Stiria, Carinthia, Carniola
The County of —— —— Tirol
Part of —— —— Swabia
Part of the —— —— { Catholick Netherlands
Eccleſiaſtical Electorates of { Mentz, Treves, Cologne
Seculars of —— —— { Bavaria, Palatinate, Saxony, Brandenburg, Hanover *added ſince.*
The States of —— { Swabia, Franconia, Upper Rhine, Heſſe, Weſtphalia, Upper Saxony, Pomerania, Lower Saxony, *The United Provinces of* Swiſſerland

The Archd. of AUSTRIA, *divided into*	*Towns.*
UPPER AUSTRIA.	Lintz, Ens, Steyr, Welſs, Freiſtat, Grein, Steireck, Mathauſen
LOWER AUSTRIA.	Vienna, Neuſtat, Crems, Stain, Baden, Tulen, Ips, Vaidhouen
The Kingdom of BOHEMIA.	Prague, Cuttenberg, Coningingratt, Budweis, Pilſen, Boleſlaw, Letomeritz, Caurzim, Chrudin, Czaſlaw, Piſeck, Bern, Rakonick, Sclany, Satz, Tetſchen, Tabor
The Lordſhips of ——	Egra, Elenbogen, Glata

Digitized by Google

	Towns.
The Dutchy of SILESIA, divided into	
UPPER SILESIA.	Oppelen, Ratibor, Teſchen, Trappau, Jegerndorf, Neiſſa, Grotkau, Monſterberg
LOWER SILESIA.	Breſlau, Glogau, Croſſen, Lignitz, Wolau, Olſſe, Jawer, Schweidnitz
The Marq. of MORAVIA.	Olmutz, Brin, Znaym, Hardiſſe, Iglau, Newſtat, Krumlow, Niklasburg, Polna
The Dutchy of STIRIA, divided into	
UPPER STIRIA.	Judenburg, Pruck, Seckau
LOWER STIRIA.	Gracz, Murck, Rakelsburg, Zakathurn, Pettau
The D. of CARINTHIA, divided into	
UPPER CARINTHIA.	Villach, St. Veit, Ponteba
LOWER CARINTHIA.	Clagenfurt, Gurck, Lauamynd, Volck la Mark, Griffen, Draburg, Wolffsberg
The D. of CARNIOLA, divided into	
UPPER CARNIOLA.	Laubach, Crainburg
LOWER CARNIOLA.	Czirnicz, Oberlaubach, Igg, Neideck
Windiſmarck, or the Marq. of the Windes.	Rudolfwerd, Mething
The County of Cilley.	Cilley, Rain

	Towns.
The County of Gorice.	Gorice
Part of ISTRIA.	Trieſte, S. Voit
The County of TIROL, containing	
TIROL.	Inſpruck, Kuffſtain, Feldkirck, Pludentz, Bregentz, Ems, Montfort
The Biſhopricks of TRENT.	Trente
BRIXEN.	Bolzano, Brixen
Part of SWABIA.	Conſtance, Rheinfelden, Seckingen, Lauffenburg, Waldſhutt, Frieburg, Offenburg, Gengenbach, Zeel, Ehing, Burgau, Guntzburg, Hohenberg, Nellenburg
The Spaniſh Branch of the H. of Auſtria has in the Ro Cath. Netherlands part of the Dutchies of	
BRABANT.	Bruſſels, Louvain, Tillement, Nivelle
LIMBOURG.	Limbourg
LUXEMBOURG.	Luxembourg, Arlon
GUELDERLAND.	Gueldre, Ruremond, Venloe
Part of the Counties of FLANDERS.	Ghent, Bruges, Oſtend, Courtray, Audenard, Aloſt, Dendermond, Dixmuyde, Newport
HAYNAULT.	Mons, Aeth, Binche, S. Gittſlain
NAMURE.	Namure, Charleroy
Marq. of the Holy EMPIRE.	Antwerp
The Lordſhip of MALINES.	Malines

The

The Eccleſiaſtical Electorates;

containing, — Towns.

The Archbiſhoprick of MENTZ, in which are:
- On the Rhine: Mentz. Bingen.
- On the Mayn: Aſchaffenburg. Miltenburg.
- In Heſſe: Omeneburg. Neuſtat.
- In Saxony: Fritzlar. Heyligenſtat. Duderſtat.

The Archbiſhoprick of TREVES, in which are:
- On this ſide the Rhine: Treves. Coblentz. Oberweſel. Munſter. Meyen. Welſchbillich. Freudenberg.
- Beyond the Rhine: Hermanſtein. Montabaur. Limpurg.

The Archbiſhoprick of COLOGNE, in which are:
- About the Rhine: Cologne. Bonne. Nuys. Keyſerſwaert. Rheinberg. Dorſten.
- In the Dutchy of WESTPHALIA: Arensberg. Stadberg. Fredeborg.

The Secular Electorates.

1. BAVARIA; containing,

The Electorate of BAVARIA,
- In the Dutchy of BAVARIA: Munick. Ingolſtat. Landſhut. Burckhauſen. Landſperg. Fridberg. Paffenhoven. Scrabenhouſe. Straubing.
- In the Palatinate of BAVARIA: Amberg. Newmarck. Alverbach. Chamb. Walkmunchen.

In BAVARIA, there are beſides
- Several Branches of the Palatine Family: Newburg. Laugingen. Sultzbach. Hipolſtein. Heideck.
- The Archbiſhoprick of SALTZBURG: Saltzburg. Ditmaning. Lauffen. Windiſchmatray.
- The Biſhopricks of: Ratisbone. Paſſaw. Freiſing.
- The Provoſtſhip of: Berchtelſgaden.
- The Landgraviate of: Leuchtenberg.

2. The Electorate of the Palatinate on the RHINE; containing,
- On the Eaſt of the Rhine: Heidelberg. Moßbach. Lindenfels.
- On the Rhine: Manheim. Oppenheim. Germerſheim.
- On the Weſt of the Rhine: Altzheim. Creutznach. Caſeloutre. Wolfſtein. Franckendal. Neuſtat. Rheinzabern.

3. The Electorate of SAXONY; containing,

The Electoral Dutchy of SAXONY: Wittenberg. Torgaw.

The Marquiſates of MISNIA: Dreſden. Miſnia. Leipzick. Plawen. Zwickaw. Chemnitz. Mitwerda. Koningſtein. Graitz.

The Marquiſates of LUSACIA:
- Upper: Baudiſſen. Gorlitz.
- Lower: Sorow. Guben.

The

4 *The Electorate and Marquisate of* BRANDENBURG; *containing,*

	Towns.
Betwixt the Elbe *and the* Oder	Berlin
	Coln
	Spandaw
	Francfort
	Brandenburg
	Havelberg
	Rapin
	Brentzlow
	Angermund
	Lebus
	Gutterback
	Ratenow
	Borzow
	Lebewaldt
On the West of the Elbe	Stendel
	Gardeleben
	Soltwedel
	Tangermunde
	Werben
	Osterburg
On the East of the Elbe	Landsberg
	Kustrin
	Sternberg
	Drieſſen
	Traveburg
	Arenſwalde
	Zantock
	Soldin

SWABIA, *whose Principal States are,*

The Bishopricks of	AUGSBURG	Dilingen, Fuessen
	CONSTANCE	Mersburg, Arbon
	KEMPTEN	Kempten
	BUCHAW	Buchaw
	LINDAW	Lindaw
The Country of The Dukedy of	WURTENBERG	Stutgard, Tubingen, Neuſtat, Haidenheim, Blawbeuren
The Counties of	FURSTENBERG	Furſtenberg, Stutlingen
	HOHENZOLLER	Hohenzollern
	OETING	Oeting
	PAPPENHEIM	Pappenheim
	KONINGSECK	Koningfeck
	HOHEN-RECHB.	Hohen Rechberg
The Bar of	WALDBURG	Waldburg

SWABIA, *Towns.*

The Imperial *Towns of*	Augsburg
	Ulm
	Hall
	Rottweil
	Norlingen
	Dinckelſpuhel
	Hailbron
	Memmingen

FRANCONIA; *in which are,*

The Bishopricks of	WURTZBURG	Wurtzburg, Ochſenfurt, Roting, Konigſhofen
	BAMBERG	Bamberg, Forcheim, Cronach
	AICHSTET	Aichſtet, Ornbaw

The Dominions of the Great Maſter of the Teutonick *Order.*

The Marquisate of	CULEMBACH	Mergentheim, Culembach, Bareut
	OHNSPACH	Ohnſpach, Kregling
	HOLAC	Ingelfing
The Counties of	CASTEL	Caſtel
	SCHWARTZENB.	Schwartzenberg
	SENSHEIM	Senſheim
	LIMPURG	Limpurg
	LEWENSTEIN	Lewenſtein
	WERTHEIM	Wertheim
	ERPACH	Erpach
	RHEINECK	Rheineck

	Towns.
The Imperial *Towns of*	Nuremberg
	Roremburg
	Schweinfurt
	Winſheim
	Weiſſenburg

On the UPPER RHINE, *are,*

The Bishoprick of	STRASBURG	Strasburg, Savern, Benfels
	SPIRE	Spire, Philipsburg
	WORMS	Worms, Ladenburg
To several Br. of the Palatine Family	ZWEYB. *belonging to the K. of* Sweden	Zweybruck, Landſperg
	SIMMEREN	Simmeren, Spanheim
	BIRCKENFELD	Birckenfeld
	LAUTERECK	Lautereck

On

Digitized by Google

		Towns.
On the UPPER RHINE, are		
The Counties of	Linange	Linange
	Rheingrave ve ein	Rheingravenſtein
	Reipolzkirck	Reipolzkirck
HESSE contains		
The Landgraviates of	Caſſel	Caſſel
		Eſchwege
		Marpurg
		Zigenhim
	Darmſtat	Darmſtat
		Gieſſen
The Abbacies of	Fulda	Fulda
		Newenhoff
		Thann
	Hirchfeld	Hirchfeld
The Counties of	Naſſaw	Naſſau
		Dillenburg
		Sigen
	Waldeck	Waldeck
		Corbach
	Hanaw	Hanaw
	Solms	Solms
		Licha
	Iſenburg	Iſenburg
		Budingen
The Imperial Towns of		Francfort
		Weſtſlar
		Fridberg
WESTPHALIA contains		
The Biſhopricks of	Munſter	Munſter
		Coesfelt
	Oſnabrug	Oſnabrug
		Iborg
	Paderborn	Paderborn
	Liege	Liege
		Tongres
		Dinant
		Huy
The Dutchies of	Juliers	Juliers
		Dalen
	Cleves	Cleves
		Wefel
		Oiſoy
	Berg	Duſſeldorf
		Siegburg
Principality of	Ferden	Ferden
	Minden	Minden
	Marck	Ham
The Countries of	Ravensburg	Ravensburg
	Lippe	Lippe
	Schawenburg	Schawenburg
	Hoye	Hoye
	Diepholt	Diepholt
	Oldenburg	Oldenburg
	Embden	Embden
		Aurick
	Benthem	Benthem
	Tecklenburg	Tecklenburg
The Imperial Towns of		Cologne
		Aix la Chapelle
		Dortmund
		Duysburg
		Zoeſt
In UPPER SAXONY, beſides the Dominions of the Elector, there is further, and for moſt part in Thuringia,		
Belonging to ſeveral Branches of the H. of Saxony.	Hall, now the K of Pruſſia's	Hall
	Mersburg	Mersburg
	Naumburg	Naumburg
	Weimar	Weimar
	Gotha	Gotha
	Eyſenach	Eyſenach
	Altenburg	Altenburg
Principality of	Anhalt	Deſſau
		Zerbſt
		Bernburg
The Counties of	Mansfelt	Mansfelt
		Eiſleben
	Schwartzenburg	Schwartzenburg
		Arnſtet
	Hohenſtein	Hohenſtein
The Town of		Erfurd
POMERANIA.		
The Terra firma, divided into	ROYAL.	Stettin
		Stralſund
		Wolgaſt
	DUCAL.	Gripſwalde
		Bard
		Andam
		Colberg
		Cammin
		Rungenwald
		Stargard
The Iſles of	Rugen	Berg
	Uſedom	Uſedom
	Vollin	Vollin
In LOWER SAXONY are		
Biſhopricks of	Hildeſheim	Hildeſheim
	Magdelurg	Magdeburg
		Bozch

In

Digitized by Google

In LOWER SAXONY,

	Towns.
The Bishoprick of BREMEN	Bremen, Staden, Bremerfurd

5. *The Electorate of* BRUNSWICK-HANOVER; *containing,*

The Dutchies of	BRUNSWICK	Brunswick, Wolfenbuttel, Hanover
	LUNENBURG	Lunenburg, Zell, Harborg
	MECKLENBURG	Schwerin, Guſtraw, Roſtock, Weiſmar
	HOLSTEIN	Kiell, Glucſtat, Ploen
	LAWENBURG	Lawenburg
Princip. of ALBERSTAT		Alberſtat
The Imperial *Towns of*		Hamburg, Lubeck

Under SWISSERLAND, *are comprehended*

The Thirteen Cantons,	ZURICK	Zurick, Kyburg
	BERNE	Berne, Lauſanne
	BASLE	Baſle
	LUCERNE	Lucerne
	SOLEURE	Soleure
	FRIBURG	Friburg
	SCHAFFHOUSE	Schaffhouſe
	SUISSE	Suiſſe
	ZUG	Zug
	APPENZELL	Appenzell
	GLARIS	Glaris
	UNDERWALD	Stantz
	URI	Altorf

SWISSERLAND,

		Towns.
The Allies of the Swiſſes,	*The Biſhoprick of* BASLE	Porentru
	The Biſhoprick of SYON	Syon
	The Abbot of St. GAL	St. Gal
	The GRISONS	Coire

The United Provinces of the NETHERLANDS, *contain,*

The Provinces of	HOLLAND	Amſterdam, Dort, Leyden, Hague, Rotterdam, Delft, Haerlem
	ZEELAND	Middelburg, Fluſhing
	UTRECHT	Utrecht, Amersfoort
	GELDERLAND	Nimeguen, Zutphen, Arnheim, Doesburg
	OVER-ISSEL	Deventer, Coworden, Zwol
	GRONINGEN	Groningen
	W. FRISELAND	Leewarden, Franeker
And part of thoſe of	BRABANT	Boiſleduc, Breda, Bergenopzoom
	FLANDERS	Sluys

CHAP.

Digitized by Google

CHAP. XXVII.

The GEOGRAPHY *of Modern* GERMANY.

GERMANY is bounded on the N. by *Denmark* and the *Baltick*, on the N. E. by *Prussia*, on the E. by *Poland*, on the S. E. by *Hungary*, on the S. by the Dominions of the State of *Venice*, on the S. W. by the *Alps*, which divides it from *Italy*; on the W. by *Switzerland*, *France*, and the *Spanish Netherlands*; and on the N. W. by the *German* Ocean, and the United Provinces.

The Extent of *Germany*, according to *Bristau*, is 562 *English* Miles from W. to E. *viz.* from *Lorrain* to the Frontiers of *Poland*; and the Breadth from the Borders of *Switzerland* in Lat. 45. 12 Min. to the moſt Northerly Places of the Iſle of *Rugen* in Lat. 54. 50 Min. is 588 *Engliſh* Miles. *La Forreſt* makes its Breadth from Lat. 45. to Lat. 55. but *Moll* places the moſt Southerly Places of *Germany* in Lat. 46½. *La Forreſt* joins *Tranſilvania* to *Germany*, and makes the Length of it, from the Frontiers of *French Flanders* to the utmoſt Parts of *Tranſilvania*, 900 *Engliſh* Miles.

We begin with *Saxony*, according to the Method of *Pitt's* Atlas.

SAXONY *in General.*

THE Learned have great Debates about the Origine of the Name *Saxon*, which, ſince they were Anceſtors to a great Part of the People of this Iſland, we may be allow'd a little to inſiſt upon. Some derive it, with *Iſidore Hiſpalenſis*, from the Latin Word *Saxum*, becauſe they were a hardy and valiant People, and bolder Pirates than any of their Neighbours: But ſince they were poſſeſſed of their Country long before *Rome* was built, we cannot think them obliged to the *Romans* for their Name. Others derive them from the *Saſones* or *Saca*, a People of *Aſia*; but this is rejected by *Cluverius*, as wanting Authority. He himſelf thinks they were the *Foſi*, mentioned by *Tacitus*, which was writ by Miſtake inſtead of *Saxoni*; but this ſeems to be much ſtrain'd, as well as the Opinion of thoſe who would derive their Name from *Aikenaz*, the great Leader of the *Aſiatick* Colony into *Germany*. Therefore moſt Writers think they take their Name from a ſhort Sword or Dagger, which was peculiar to them, and in their Language called *Seax*. This they ſupport by the ancient Arms of *Saxony*, which were two Croſs Hangers or Daggers. But the *Brandenburg* Reſident, formerly mentioned, ſays, the Elector of *Saxony* bears thoſe Arms meerly becauſe he is Hereditary Marſhal of the Empire; and therefore no other Prince of his Family bears them: So that upon the whole, the Name ſeems to be ſo ancient, that there is but little Hopes of coming at the true Knowledge of the Original.

Their ancient Government, as Dr. *Nicholſon* informs us, was like that of moſt of the other *Germans*, *viz.* by 12 of the chief Nobles, choſen by the People during a War, and one of them was appointed to be King; but return'd to a Level with the reſt when the War was over; and ſome will have our Juries to derive their Beginning from this Form of Government.

How far the ancient *Saxons* extended their Limits, we have heard before in the

Digitized by Google

Description of Ancient *Germany*; and for what Countries are contained in the Circles of *Upper* and *Lower Saxony*, we refer to the *Matricula* of the Empire, and *Sanson*'s Division of *Germany*.

Lower Saxony,

IS bounded on the N. by the *German* Ocean, *Denmark*, and the *Baltick*; on the S. by *Hessia*, and *Upper Saxony*; on the E. by *Pomerania*, and the Marquilate of *Brandenburg*; and on the W. by *Westphalia*. It reaches from N. to S. about 200 Miles, and from E. to W. about 220.

The Air of this Country in general is very cold in the Winter; but the Soil is very fruitful in Corn.

The chief Rivers are, the *Elb*, the *Weser*, the *Aller*, the *Hamma*, the *Ilmenow*, the *Leine*, the *Ocker*, and the *Eldt*.

The People in general are tall, well built, strong, Lovers of good Cheer, and pretty much addicted to Drink.

The first considerable Town in this Part, is

Hamburg.

HIstorians differ about the Rise of its Name; some derive it from its being a Mart for Hams; others from the Statue of *Jupiter Ammon*, which was worship'd there till destroyed by *Charles the Great*. *Crantzius* derives it from *Hama*, a *Saxon* Champion, slain there by a *Danish* Giant; but it is most probably, says Dr. *Nicholson*, derived from *Ham*, *i. e.* a Forrest, that formerly lay between the *Bille* and the *Alster*, and gave Title to the Lords of *Ham*, who first built a Castle there, which they called *Hamburg*. They differ likewise about its Situation: Some will have it to be in the Province of *Stormar*; but the *Germans* say, it is in the uttermost Bounds of *Saxony*, and that the greatest Part of it is still divided from *Stormar* by Branches of the *Elb*. Some Antiquaries say, it was a considerable Village in the Days of *Albion*, the great Captain of the *Albingi*; after whose Death, it was enlarged in 789 by *Otho*, to whom *Charles the Great* gave the adjacent Country; but the *Vandals* ruin'd it soon after. In 811, the Emperor recover'd the Country, and rebuilt the Town. It was afterwards enlarged by *Ludovicus Pius*, who made it an Archbishoprick, under *Ansgar*, about 833; but the Archbishoprick was translated afterwards to *Bremen*. In 1227, *Waldemar* II. of *Denmark*, took that City, and gave it to *Albert* Count of *Orlamund*, and his Heirs; but he sold his Pretensions to the Citizens 7 Years after for 150000 Marks of Silver. In 1240, *Adolph* IV. Count of *Holstein*, confirm'd their Liberties, as did his Successors, till 1459, that *Holstein* was annex'd to the Kingdom of *Denmark*, upon the Death of the last Earl of that Family. At this Time *Hamburg* promis'd their Friendship to the Crown of *Denmark*, as long as those Kings continued their Privileges; to which *Christian* agreed, without desiring any Homage or Mark of Subjection; but his Successors frequently attempted to subdue it. From 1570, to 1621, the Dukes of *Holstein* pretended to be Masters of this City; but this Controversy was ended, by their paying Homage and swearing Fealty to the King of *Denmark*, and the Duke of *Holstein Gottorp*, with a Salvo for the Rights of the Emperor and Empire, and of their own Liberties and Privileges. This hinder'd them at that Time from having a Vote in the College of the Free Towns; but in 1510, the Emperor, in a Diet at *Augsburg*, declar'd 'em a Free City; and the Duke of *Holstein* was summon'd to make good or renounce his Pretensions: Since which they have been made a Member of the Empire, and invested with a Sovereign Power in their own Jurisdiction, like other Imperial Cities, by a Grant of *Frederick* I. which was confirmed by *Ferdinand* II. They are exempted from all Tolls upon the *Elb* betwixt their own City and the Ocean; but the King of *Denmark* has compell'd them several Times since to pay at his Castle of *Gluckstadt*, which commands the *Elb*; particularly in 1645, they paid 120000 Crowns to be free of his Demands: In 1679, they paid 210000 to take them again into his Favour, as the Treaty words it; and in 1686, the *Danes* besieg'd it, but were bought off. The continual Jealousies betwixt *Sweden* and *Denmark* is their chief Security; for when the *Danes* attack

their

their Ships from *Gluckſtadt*, the *Swedes* protect them from *Stade* on the other Side the River.

This City is one of the richeſt in the Empire, and has for a long Time been the greateſt Mart of *Germany*, the Haven being crowded with Ships, and their Exchange with Merchants. It lies in a Plain on the N. of the *Elb*, Long. 30. Lat. 53½. according to *Moll* and *Oxnam*, 50 *Engliſh* Miles N. E. from *Bremen*, 30 S. W. from *Lubeck*, 30 S. from *Gluckſtadt*, 140 N.E. from *Munſter*, and about 330 W. from *Dantzick*. 'Tis naturally ſtrong, great Part of it lying in an Iſland. The Tide runs in Canals through moſt of the chief Streets, and runs four Leagues higher, *viz.* 22 Leagues from the Mouth of the River, wherein it exceeds all the Rivers of *Europe*. The *Thames* comes next to it. The City is well fortified after the modern Way; but their Works are not fac'd with Stone. It conſiſts of two Parts, called the *Old* and *New Town*, ſeparated by a Wall well fortified. From the Tops of the Towers and Walls, there's a pleaſant Proſpect every way. It has only 4 great Gates, *viz.* 1. That which leads to *Altena*, on the W. of the *Old Town*, commonly called the *Millers Gate*. 2. One which leads to the great Trenches, N. of the Town. 3. The Stone Gate, which leads to the E. 4. The South Gate, which leads to the Iſlands on the *Elb*. The Streets are generally crooked, but otherwiſe out-ſtrip any in *Germany*. The *Alſter* on the N. Side drives all the Mills, which ſupply them with Meal. They have ſtrong Ramparts and Outworks, which were caſt up for fear of the *Danes*, and finiſh'd in 4 Years, which is a ſufficient Teſtimony of the Riches of the Inhabitants.

The Town is exceeding populous, conſiſts of a great many little Iſlands in the *Elb* and the *Alſter*, join'd almoſt by as many Bridges as there are at *Amſterdam*. About the Change of the Moon, the Spring Tides, or in Tempeſtuous Weather the Sea flows up the ſmall Channels, and ſometimes ruins many Houſes and Families. The Town ſuffer'd much this way in 1651. Their Houſes are moſt of Brick, exceeding high and ſtately. Many of them have fine Frontiſpieces, and large Halls. The Senate-Houſe is a noble Structure, beautified with the Statues of the 9 Worthies. They have a fine Exchange, but much ſhort of ours in *London*. Their chief Church is that of St. *Peter*, formerly a Cathedral, while they had an Archbiſhop. They have ſtill a ſort of Dean and Chapter, from whoſe Court there lies no Appeal but to the Imperial Chamber. It was built, ſome ſay, in 801, and others in 830. Many of the Earls of *Schawenburg* and *Holſtein* are buried here, whoſe Names, after thoſe of *Charles the Great*, and his Son *Lewis the Pious*, are writ in a fair Catalogue with their other Benefactors, and hung up in the Body of the Church, which ſome take as an Argument, thô the Citizens deny it, that thoſe Princes had more than a Titular Power over this City. The Town is noted in general for its fair Churches, and noble Steeples cover'd with Copper. That of St. *Catherine's* has a ſtately Front, and on the Top of the Steeple a Crown richly gilt: The Pulpit is of white Marble, curiouſly carv'd, and adorn'd with Figures of Alabaſter, and Ornaments of Gold. The Organ is reckon'd one of the beſt in *Europe*, and plays, as ſome ſay, above 6000 Notes. The Church of St. *Nicholas* has a Steeple ſupported by large gilded Globes. The other Churches of Note are, St. *Jacob's*, St. *Catherine's the Leſs*, St. *Michael's*, whoſe Steeple is 400 Foot high; St. *Gertrude's*, St. *John's*, St. *Mary Magdalen's*, that of the *Holy Ghoſt*, the *Bluecoat-Hoſpital* Church, St. *George's*, and the New Church in the *New Town*. In each of theſe they keep a Regiſter of the Poor and Diſtreſſed, who have a Weekly Allowance of Money, and an Annual Allowance for Clothes and Fuel. Their Hoſpitals are, 1. That call'd the *Oldeſt*, near the Church of the *Holy Ghoſt*, where 114 poor, old, blind, dumb, *&c.* are maintain'd. 2. The Hoſpital of St. *George*, which was built about 150, and endow'd with a Maintenance for a great Number of Poor, with Servants, and a Miniſter, and is made uſe of by ſuch as dwell in the Suburbs, and adjacent Villages. 3. St. *Job's* Hoſpital, built in 1509, for thoſe who had the Plague, and is now made uſe of for the Maintenance and Cure of ſuch Poor as have the *French* Diſeaſe. 4. The Orphans Hoſpital, where abundance of poor Citizens Children are bred up, with Nurſes to look after Infants, and a School with 5 Maſters for keeping

Digitized by Google

those who are capable, to Prayer, Reading, Writing, and Accounts. Its Annual Revenue is 210000 Crowns. Sometimes they have near 310 Infants abroad at Nurse, who are taken into the House as soon as able to dress themselves. Such of the Boys as have Parts, are fitted for the University, and maintain'd there at the Charge of the House, till they be able to maintain themselves. The rest are put out to Trades; and the Girls, after they can read, spin, knit, &c. are sent to Service. 5. They have a common Pest-House, where such as have the Plague, or other Infectious Distempers, are taken Care of; and the Attendance and Skill of those belonging to that Hospital is such, that People of the best Rank come thither for Cure of such Distempers. 6. They have a large and sumptuous Hospital, which was built in 1632, where there is a Physician and Surgeon, with necessary Medicines, for poor Strangers and Travellers that fall sick. In 1556, they built a large Hospital, which has been much augmented since both in Revenues and Buildings, for maim'd, ancient, and decay'd Mariners, and the poor Widows and Orphans of such as have lost their Parents or Husbands at Sea. Besides these, they have many lesser Hospitals for certain Numbers of poor Widows, Widowers, Orphans, &c. with a great Number of Free Schools, where the Children of poor Burghers have their Education, Books, and Clothes, till they be fit for the University, or Trades. They have likewise a Work-house for such as want Employment, and are willing to work, and for obliging sturdy Vagrants, or loose Persons of both Sexes, to labour, or give them Correction. The Motto writ over the Door of the Work-house is, *Labore nutrior*; *i. e.* I am maintain'd by my Labour. And that over the House of Correction is, *Labore plector*; *i. e.* I am punish'd by Labour.

Their Government is by 4 Burgomasters, and 20 *Schepini* or Aldermen. They us'd formerly to be Civilians, or other Men of Learning; but now they are chosen out of the Merchants or Tradesmen. They have also 12 Common-Council Men, whom they call *Oberalten*, *i. e.* Chief Elders, who consult about, and take Care of their Publick Affairs; but in extraordinary Cases, they join with 60 more grave Citizens, called *Burgeralten*, or the Elders of the City; and if they cannot determine the Matter, 'tis refer'd to a general Meeting of the Freemen: But in case of intestine Broils, which they are not able to compose themselves, the Emperor and Empire take Care of their Peace, by sending Troops of the neighbouring Circle to suppress the Seditious, as they did lately.

For speedy Reparation of Loss by Fire, they have a Custom of entring into Societies to repair one another's Losses; and any Man being at Liberty to enter into all the Societies if he pleases, they frequently get more than their Damages.

Their Territories is a small Part of *Stormar*, which has several considerable Villages, and Noblemen's fine Seats. They have likewise many little Islands in the *Elb*, which were formerly subject to neighbouring Princes. They have also the strong Castle of *Ritzenbuttel*, betwixt the Mouths of the *Elb* and *Weser*. Below this to the N. W. they have a considerable Fortress, call'd the *New-Work*, which is a convenient Harbour for Merchant-men. They have also the Custom-House of *Tollenspicker*, where all Passengers pay a certain Toll for themselves and their Carriages. There are other Places of less Note equally subject to this City and *Lubeck*. Their Harbour is so commodious, and the River up to the Wall so deep, that large Merchant-men come up to the Town; but those of an extraordinary Size anchor at the *New Mills*, 4 *English* Miles below the Town, and unload in smaller Vessels.

Their chief Home-Commodity is Beer, which is the best in *Germany*, and employs vast Numbers of their People in brewing it. 'Tis exported to many Places in *Germany*, particularly to *Lubeck*, where 'tis much valued; and to *Francfort* on the *Main*, where it sells dearer than the best Rhenish.

They have Plenty of Sea and Fresh-Water Fish, which, with the Fruit and Herbs from their Gardens without the Walls, furnishes good Entertainment. The Trade they have with *English* Merchants, is more considerable than that with any other Nation: Therefore they allow our *Hamburg* Company greater Privileges than they do any others; for all Suits wherein they are more im-

Digitized by Google

immediately concern'd, are try'd before the *English* Resident, who judges them in a ſtately Hall built by the Company. They have alſo the Freedom of Religion in the City; whereas others that are not *Lutherans* muſt go to *Altena*.

By means of the *Elb*, this City has a great Trade with a great Part of the Empire. Dr. *Brown* ſays, they vend Annually 100000 Pounds worth of *Engliſh* Woollen Manufactury. The *General Courſe of Commerce* ſays, they have a great Trade with *Holland*, *France*, *Spain*, *Italy*, *Denmark*, *Sweden*, and moſt other Parts of *Europe*; and Merchant-Ships come hither from moſt conſiderable Parts of the known World, ſo that they furniſh the Empire with the richeſt Merchandize of other Nations.

Their Current Money is that of the Empire, *Sweden* and *Denmark*; and the Coin of moſt Trading Nations in *Europe* goes here at a good Value. They coin ſome ſmall Pieces of their own. Their Mark is worth 16 Stivers, 10 ½ *d.* of *Amſterdam*, and their Rix-Dollar worth 54 Stivers. Their *Guilelmus* Ducats, old Value, 7 *s.* 2 *d.* new Value, 8 *s.* 9 *d.* Their Shilling, 9 *d.* ½. The *Map of Commerce* ſays, they meaſure their Corn by the *Scheppel*, 83 of which are equal to 10 Quarters *Engliſh*. 160 of their Ells make 48 ½ in *London*.

In Conſideration that they pay no Tolls to the Emperor on the *Elb*, they are obliged to preſerve that River from Pirates, of whom they have taken abundance at ſeveral Times. *Monconys*, in his Travels, ſays, the Senators and Burgomaſters are during Life. That when a Citizen dies, he muſt leave the 10th Part of his Eſtate to the City; and that Foreigners not naturaliz'd, muſt pay Annually a certain Sum for Liberty to trade there.

This City is by ſome reckon'd as large as *Rotterdam*, is able to arm 15000 Men, and has a conſtant Gariſon of 1800.

Albertus Krantzius, the famous Hiſtorian, and *Petrus Lambecius*, who wrote their Antiquities, were born here.

The Dutchy and City of BREMEN.

THE Dutchy has that of *Lunenburg* on the E. the *Weſer* on the S. the *German* Ocean on the W. and the *Elb* on the N. It is divided as follows; 1. Into the Biſhoprick of *Verden*, on the Borders of *Lunenburg*. 2. The *Land of Bremen*, properly ſo call'd, which lies ſome Miles round the City. 3. *Wurſterland*, on the Coaſt from the *Weſer* to the Mouth of the *Elb*. 4 *Hadeland*, upon the Mouth of the *Elb*. Part of it is now ſubject to *Hamburg*, and Part of it under the Duke of *Saxe-Lawenburg*, whoſe Caſtle of *Atterndorf* commands moſt of the Province, in which thoſe of *Bremen* have little but the Village and Caſtle of *Nyen-huſſe*, on the Mouth of the *Oſte*. 5. *Kedingerland*; in which lies the City of *Stade*. 6. *Alt-Land*, a pleaſant and fruitful Country, about 14 *Engliſh* Miles long. The People in general are as good Soldiers as any in the Empire; and it is ſaid of the *Wurſterlanders* in particular, That they will fight and drink with any in *Germany*. They formerly relied ſo much on their own Valour, that they deſpis'd building Cities and Forts. They frequently rebell'd againſt the Archbiſhops, and have ever ſince delighted in War. Thoſe of *Hadeland* are reckon'd ignorant and proud, and delight ſo much in gay Clothes, that their Neighbours, by way of Jeſt, ſay, there are no Peaſants in *Hadeland*. Betwixt *Bremen* and *Stade*, the Country is deſart and Sandy; but the other Parts towards the Rivers are as pleaſant as any of the Empire, and abound with Fields, Meadows, and fruitful Orchards. This Country was ſubject to its Archbiſhop till 1644, that being conquer'd by the *Swedes*, 'twas by the Treaty of *Weſtphalia*, with the Biſhoprick of *Verden*, annex'd to that Crown, and made a Dutchy, to ſatisfy the King of *Sweden*, as it is worded in the ſaid Treaty, for the Places taken in the War, which he reſtor'd, together with the Publick Peace of the Empire.

Dr. *Nicholſon* ſays, they were converted by *Willehadus*, an *Engliſh* Man, ſent over by the Archbiſhop of *York*, upon the Diſire of *Charles the Great*, was made Biſhop of *Bremen*, and died there in 790, where they pretend to ſhew his Tomb, and, as ſome ſay, was ſucceeded by *Willeric*, another *Engliſh* Man, who left it to *Lendvic*, a *German*, that was depos'd for his Pride and Inſolence by *Ludovicus Pius*, who gave it to *Anſgarius*, the firſt Archbiſhop of *Bremen* and *Hamburg*, and died in 865. During his Life, he

Digitized by Google

he enjoy'd both Titles; but was oppos'd by the Archbiſhop of *Cologne*, who alledg'd the Archbiſhoprick of *Bremen* depended on his See; but the Emperor, without regarding that, order'd all the Biſhops of *Denmark*, *Sweden*, *Norway*, *Groneland*, *Helſingland*, *Iſland*, and the other Northern Countries, to be ſubject to the Archbiſhop of *Bremen* and *Hamburg*. Afterwards, at the Deſire of *Erick* King of *Denmark*, the Pope erected an Archbiſhop's See at *Lunden*; to which, ſince that Time, the Biſhops of *Denmark* and *Sweden* were ſubject. The Hiſtory of their Archbiſhops is full of Legends; yet the Commons revere their Memory, and value St. *Anſgar*'s Day as much as *Chriſtmas*. Their 48th and laſt Archbiſhop was *Frederick* Duke of *Holſtein*, Son to *Chriſtian* IV. of *Denmark*; but he loſt it by the *Swediſh* War, as above mentioned.

The City of BREMEN.

SOme think its Name comes from the Flat-bottom'd Veſſels call'd *Pramen*, they us'd as a Ferry, where now their Bridge ſtands. Others derive it from *Brame*, *i. e.* Broom, which abounds in this Country. *Martinius* derives it from *Brame*, a Border, as being the utmoſt Bounds of the *German* Empire on that Side. *Cluverius* and others think it was the Φαβιανον of *Ptolomy*, to which the preſent Name has ſtill ſome Analogy. 'Tis not certain when 'twas built; but 'tis plain, that a great Part of it, call'd St. *Stephen*'s-*Stadt*, was built long ſince the main Body of the Town. That called the *New-Stadt*, was built within theſe 100 Years; and the Suburbs of St. *Nicholas*, which make ſo conſiderable Part of the City, and the *New-Stadt* on the other Side the *Weſer*, were not Wall'd till 1623. The *Old Town* was probably Wall'd in the Time of *Henry the Fouler*, about 1000, when he order'd other Towns to be fortified againſt the *Vandals*. Their firſt great Privileges were granted by *Henry* V. in 1111, for their brave Atchievements in the Holy War by Sea and Land, as appears by their Charter; but before his Time it was reckon'd to have been a Free City, as is evident from the *Statua Rolandina* in the Market-place, with an old *Saxon* Inſcription in Rhime to this Effect; *I am a Teſtimony of the Liberty which* Charles the Great, *and many other Emperors, have granted this City; for which I adviſe you to return God Thanks.* Dr. *Nicholſon* gives an Account of the Tradition among the *Saxons* for erecting thoſe monſtrous Statues. They ſay, That this *Roland* was a Man of Gigantick Stature, Nephew to *Charles the Great*, and one of his Generals, thrô whoſe Aſſiſtance he conquer'd much of that Country, and therefore order'd his Statue to be ſet up in many of thoſe noted Towns he ſubdued, and granted them larger Privileges than others, ſo long as they kept up thoſe Statues: But among other Arguments, the Doctor brings againſt this the Opinion of *Goldaſtus*, who thinks that *Ruland* or *Rugenland* is not a Proper Name, but an Appellative, denoting Cities or great Towns on the Borders of the Empire, where Courts of Juſtice were eſtabliſhed; and that this Authority given to their Magiſtrates was repreſented, as now in *Bremen*, *Magdeburg*, &c. by a Gigantick Statue, repreſenting the Emperor, and bearing the Arms of the Empire. He adds, That the People of Towns, when they were deprived of that Privilege, did uſually pull down thoſe Statues, as the *Hamburgers* did when *Charles* IV. obliged them to ſubmit to the Duke of *Holſtein*.

Bremen is now a Free Imperial City, and the Third in Order of the Hans-Towns: It is divided by the *Weſer* into two Parts; that on the N. is called the *Old Town*, and that on the S. the *New*. They are join'd by Wooden Bridges, and on the largeſt there is an Engine that raiſes Water, and diſtributes it all over the City. The Streets of the *Old Town* are large, and center in the Market-place, where that called *Roland*'s Statue ſtands. In this Town ſtands alſo the Town-Houſe, a fine late Building, with ſpacious Rooms; in the firſt is the Picture of *Willibaldus*, their Apoſtle, with an old *Saxon* Inſcription above it, not underſtood now by the Inhabitants; but ſome will have him to have been a *Holſteiner*. The Front of this Houſe is very handſome, and faces the Market-place. The Senate or Council Chamber is very ſtately, and has the Picture of 12 Emperors, in which that of the laſt is included. Here alſo ſtands the ancient Cathedral, dedicated to St. *John*, in which they pretend to ſhew *Willibald*'s Tomb.

Digitized by Google

Tomb. In the *New Town* are the Arſenal, and the Univerſity, which was firſt a Free-School, built ſoon after the Reformation in 1552; afterwards advanced to a *Schola Illuſtris*, where Divinity, Law and Phyſick, were taught; but has been ſince ſo much endow'd by the Citizens, that it is become one of the moſt noted Univerſities in *Germany*, and produc'd ſeveral Great Men, among whom were *Chytreus*, *Pezelius*, *Pierius*, *Martinius*, *Lampadius*, *Crocius*, *Combachius*, and the famous *Cocceius*. They had formerly many Struggles with their Archbiſhops for their Liberties, and bravely defended the Reformation againſt one of them, for which *Charles* V. order'd the Duke of *Brunſwick* to lay Siege to it, which he was obliged to raiſe after a Year's continuance. They have ſince had a Controverſy with the *Swedes*, and denied that, by the Treaty of *Weſtphalia*, the Crown of *Sweden* had any more Power over them, than their former Archbiſhops, in whoſe Time they were own'd to be a Free Imperial City; and that by the 10th Article of *Oſnabrug* it was provided, They ſhould enjoy their preſent and ancient Liberties; one of which was, That if any of the Citizens appeal'd from their Magiſtrates to the Imperial Chamber, the Appealer ſhould pay 50 Gilders; but in 1666, the *Swedes* beſieg'd it, and, by the Mediation of neighbouring Princes, the City was obliged to agree to a Treaty, by which their Privileges were leſſen'd, and they were not to enjoy their Freedom as an Imperial City till 1700, when they ſhould be reſtored to them, as *De Ville* informs us.

Their Magiſtracy conſiſts of 4 Burgomaſters, and 24 Common-Council Men, divided into a Burgomaſter, and 6 Common-Council Men for each Quarter of the City. If any of thoſe die, or grow unable to perform, they are oblig'd to chuſe another within 24 Hours after, thus; out of each Claſs, one Elector is choſen by Lot, and obliged to ſwear to chuſe one of the moſt conſiderable Freemen, whom they think fitteſt for the Place; then they are ſhut up in a Chamber, and not ſuffer'd to ſpeak to any Man till the Election is over. This City is ſtrong by Nature and Art; and thô it had no Walls, it would be hard to take it, if well defended; for they can drown the neighbouring Plain with the *Weſer*, which once a Year overflows its Banks, and much improves the adjacent Fields. Their Ramparts are of Earth, the Ditch large and deep, and the Counterſcarp in good Repair. They have a Gariſon of 600 Men, Detachments of which lie without the City, and 200 of the Citizens keep Guard Day and Night. There are abundance of Gardens and Pleaſure-Houſes about this City. Their Territory extends 8 or 10 Miles round, and abounds with good Paſture, well ſtock'd with Cattle; which, with their Trade by Shipping, makes the City rich and populous. Great Floods do many times ſo fill the River with Sand Banks, as puts the City to great Expence to clear it. Ships of great Burden can ſcarcely come within 6 Miles of their Bridge, and there they unload at the Cuſtom-Houſe, whence Foreign Commodities are brought up in ſmall or Flat-bottom'd Veſſels. By this River they tranſport Commodities to ſeveral Parts of the Empire, as well as import them. They are excellent at dreſſing Leather and Cloth, which are frequently brought for that End from other Parts. They abound alſo with Fiſh taken in the Sea and *Weſer*, have every Month ſeveral Sorts of Fiſh in Seaſon, and many Thouſands of Salmons and Lampries are taken Annually within the Town; which being pickl'd or dry'd, are exported with other Commodities.

All the Magiſtrates, and moſt of the Inhabitants, are *Calviniſts*; but out of Complaiſance to the King of *Sweden*, the *Lutherans* are allow'd the Cathedral, under which there is a Vault, where dead Bodies keep uncorrupted 60 or 70 Years.

Their chief Commodities are Corn, Minerals, Wool, Timber, Leather, and Linen, brought hither from *Oſnabrug*: 163 of their Yards make 100 of *Engliſh*. The Cuſtom of ſwearing New-comers by Bread and Salt, and of making them free on paying a Fine of good Liquor to the Company, is ſaid firſt to have begun here, and is ſince become general in the other Hans-Towns. Their Current Money is that of the Empire and *Sweden*. They have a little Coin of their own, worth about a Halfpenny, which they call a *Grot*. They have a Rix-Dollar of 48 Stivers, 120 of which are equal to 100 Rix-Dollars of *Amſterdam*.

Their

Their Arms are in a *Field-Gules*, a *Key-Argent*, to denote that they can open or ſhut the Paſſage of the *Weſer*. This City lies in Long. 29. Lat. 53. 27 *Engliſh* Miles N. W. from *Verden*, and 5 from the Sea.

Other Places of Note in the Dutchy of *Bremen* are,

1. *Verden*, formerly a diſtinct Biſhoprick, but united to this Dutchy, and given to the *Swedes* by the Treaty of *Weſtphalia*. *Bruſchius*, in his Hiſtory of *Germ. Biſh.* ſays, *Charles the Great* eſtabliſhed a Biſhoprick at *Koneude* on the *Weſer*, or, as others ſay, at *Bardewick*, about 776, when ſoon after it was removed to *Verden*, then a ſtrong and populous City. *Crantius* ſays, the firſt Biſhop was *Swibert*, an *Engliſh-man*, who died in 708, and was ſucceeded by *Patto*, a *Scotſman*; but *Bruſchius* and *Emmius* contradict this, and ſay, *Swibert* was a *Friſelander*. This City, which gives Name to the Principality, lies on the *Aller*, by which Goods are brought to it from *Bremen*. 'Tis a pretty large Town, was formerly an Imperial City, but afterwards ſubject to its own Biſhop. Count *Tilly*, the Imperial General, took it in 1626 by Storm. The Imperialiſts took it again in 1631; ſince which, it has never recover'd its ancient State. The *Swedes* took it in 1634, and kept it till 1678, that the Duke of *Brunſwick* ſeiz'd it; but reſtor'd it again to the *Swedes* in 1679, for which he had the Bayliwick of *Teddinghouſe*, betwixt the *Aller* and *Weſer*. It lies 40 *Engliſh* Miles S. from *Stade*, and about 40 N. from *Zell*.

2. *Ottersberg*, a ſmall fortified Town, 16 Miles E. from *Bremen*, with a ſtrong Caſtle, formerly the Archbiſhop's Reſidence. *Chytræus* ſays, it join'd with *Bremen* for many Years againſt their Archbiſhop; but ſubmitted on Conditions in 1547. 'Twas taken twice by the Imperialiſts, and once by the *Swedes*, in the *German* Civil Wars.

3 *Rottenberg* or *Rötterberg*, a ſmall Town on the *Wein*, 4 Miles from *Ottersberg*, 20 E. from *Bremen*, and 15 N. from *Verden*, at firſt a Biſhop's Palace, which was fortified, and the Village Walled in by *Bertold*, their 49th Biſhop, about 1500. It has become pretty populous, and a Place of Trade.

4. *Buxtehude* on the *Eſſa*, near the *Elb*, in as pleaſant and fruitful a Country as any in *Germany*; ſo that 'tis one of the Granaries of *Hamburg*. The Town is pretty large, with broad Streets: 'Tis ſurrounded with a Ditch, defended with old Towers, now ruinous, and has a Company of Foot in Gariſon. The Duke of *Brunſwick* ſeiz'd it in 1676; but reſtor'd it to the *Swedes* in 1679. It lies 15 Miles W. from *Stade*, and 15 E. from *Hamburg*.

5. *Stade*, the ſecond City of Note in the Dutchy. It lies on the Mouth of the *Zwinga*, and Banks of the *Elb*, in a fruitful Country, and wholeſome Air, 50 Miles N. from *Bremen*, and 25 W. from *Hamburg*. In the Time of the *Romans*, 'twas called *Statio*, becauſe part of their Fleet was poſted there to guard the *Elb*. *Bertius* and others will have it to be the Σταθμὸς τῶν Φρισίων of *Ptolomy*, in Long. 29. and Lat. 51. Deg. 20 Min. which Dr. *Nicholſon* obſerves does not agree to its Situation. It was formerly ſubject to its own Earls and Marquiſſes, and the People of the Town and neighbouring Country were called by the Latins *Stadenſes*, *Stadingi*, or *Stedingi*. In 1234, they revolted, by the Influence of their Clergy, from their Archbiſhop, and after a long and bloody War, in which they engaged ſeveral of their Neighbours, they were forc'd to ſubmit by the Pope's Excommunication, without much Advantage to the Archbiſhop's Title; for *Philip* Duke of *Swabia*, their Earl, thô he annex'd the County to the Archbiſhoprick about 1240, kept the City, and allow'd them their Privileges as an Imperial City, it having been one of the firſt that enter'd into the League of the Hans-Towns. And thus it continued till 1645, that it was taken, thô very ſtrong, by the *Swedes* in one Day, and ſince continued in their Hands till 1676, that it was ſurpris'd by the Duke of *Brunſwick*; but reſtor'd to the *Swedes* in 1679, and that ſame Year was moſt of it burnt down. It was endowed by former Emperors with large Privileges, and particularly to be an *Aſylum* for Malefactors who could eſcape thither. They pretend to a Right of Toll from every Merchant-Ship that goes up to *Hamburg*, which occaſioned a Quarrel betwixt the two Cities, that was afterwards compoſed; ſince which, both enjoy their own Privileges. The great Trade of *Hamburg* did ſo much drein it, that they were forc'd to ſell their Publick Stock,

Digitized by Google

Stock, and ſubmit to the Archbiſhop of *Bremen*: But the *Hamburghers* having affronted the *Engliſh* Merchants, they removed their Trade hither, by which of a ſudden it recover'd its Riches and Grandeur; and thô the *Engliſh* did again ſettle at *Hamburg*, continues in a flouriſhing Condition. The Burgers are accounted the moſt courteous of this Part of the Empire, have good Orchards and Gardens without the Walls, and a large and commodious Haven, capable of larger Ships than go to *Hamburg*. They have a ſtrong Fort at the Mouth of the *Zwinga*, and the Town it ſelf is well fortified. Their Market-place, Town-houſe, and Churches, are well built, and worth a Traveller's View.

6. *Bremen-Verden*, a Wall'd Town betwixt *Bremen* and *Stade*, 12 *Engliſh* Miles from the latter, and 28 from the former. It was built by *Luder* Duke of *Saxony*, and had a Palace, where the Archbiſhop of *Bremen* did frequently reſide. The *Swedes* have a ſtrong Gariſon in the Caſtle, which commands the Plain, and was the uſual Reſidence of the Governor of the Dutchy. Their chief Trade is by Paſſengers betwixt *Bremen* and *Stade*. 'Twas ſeiz'd by the *Danes*, but reſtor'd to the *Swedes* by the Treaty of *Roſchild*.

In this Country lies alſo *Rutzenbuttel*, a ſtrong Fort on the Mouth of the *Elb*, 32 Miles N. W. from *Stade*, belonging to the *Hamburgers*, who have alſo another called *Newwerck* near it.

The Dutchy of LUNENBURG.

BUno, in his Notes on *Cluverius*, ſays, it has the Dutchy of *Mecklenburg*, the Marquiſate of *Brandenburg*, and Part of the Archbiſhoprick of *Magdeburg*, on the E. the Dutchy of *Brunſwick*, the Biſhoprick of *Hildeſheim*, and the Dutchy of *Callenberg*, on the S. the County of *Hoy*, and the Dutchies of *Bremen* and *Verden*, on the W. the County of *Pemyberg*, the Territories of *Lubeck* and *Hamburg*, and the Dutchy of *Sax-Lawenburg*, on the N. Its Rivers are, the *Elb*, the *Aller*, *Elmenow*, formerly called *Linaw*, now the *Aw*, and *Jetze*.

The chief Town, called *Lunenburg*, is thought by ſome to derive its Name from *Luna*, the Moon, worſhip'd there by the Inhabitants; by others from the River *Linaw*, on which it ſtands; and this they ſay, was formerly called *Luna*, from *Iſis* the *Egyptian* Goddeſs, who was worſhip'd here when ſhe came to ſee her Kinſman that was Lord of *Hamburg*, and the neighbouring Country. But to paſs over this Fable, 'tis certain the Inhabitants did formerly worſhip the Image of the Moon; and ſeveral Rivers and Towns in this and the neighbouring Countries derive their Name from *Luna*. The Annals of the Cathedral of *Verden* ſay, this Idol ſtood on the Top of Mount *Calkberg*, and was deſtroy'd by *Ægiſtus*, one of the 70 Diſciples, whom they alledge to have been one of the *German* Apoſtles; but was ſet up again by the Inhabitants when they relaps'd, and at laſt removed by *Swibert*, the firſt Biſhop of *Verden*, who built St. *Mary*'s Monaſtery in its Place about 780.

This Country abounds with Woods and Forreſts, with all ſorts of Deer, Wild Swine, and other Veniſon; and a great Part of it is vaſt Heaths and Waſtes, the largeſt of which lies W. of the City, and is deſart for ſeveral Leagues.

The Inhabitants are reckon'd by the other *Germans* to be the moſt ruſtical both in Habit and Language of any in the Empire; but whatever they were before, it will not appear to be ſo now, eſpecially as to their Cloathing. The *Cheruſci*, part of whom inhabited this Country, contributed much to the Defeat of *Varus*, and the *Roman* Legions. The preſent Inhabitants are accounted good Soldiers, being bred in a cold Climate, and with a ſpare Diet.

Hiſtorians differ as to the Origine of the preſent Form of Government here. Dr. *Nicholſon* is of Opinion, That after the Country was converted in the Reign of *Charlemagne*, they had no other Governors but their Biſhops. *Wittikind*, an Author of Credit, ſays, the Emperor *Otho* I. when he went to *Italy*, left one *Herman*, of Noble Deſcent, to govern *North Saxony*, which contained *Lunenburg*, and the adjacent Countries; and being well ſatisfied with his Government, did upon his Return make him Duke of *North Saxony*. By this means the Great Dutchy of *Saxony* was divided; but the Princes of *North Saxony* ſtill aſſum'd

Digitized by Google

the Title of the whole. *Herman* is ſaid to have had 4 Succeſſors; but *Magnus*, the laſt of them, dying without Heirs-Male about 1106, the Emperor *Henry* V. gave the Dutchy of *Lower Saxony* to *Lotharius*, Baron of *Querfurt*. After his Death, *Henry the Proud*, Duke of *Bavaria*, got the Dutchy, having married *Lotharius*'s Daughter; and being likewiſe Son to the Daughter of *Magnus* above mention'd. His Title was oppoſed by *Albert*, ſirnam'd the *Bear*, Marquis of *Brandenburg*; but *Lotharius* prevail'd, and left the Dutchy to his Son *Henry*, ſirnam'd the *Lion*, famous in the *German* Hiſtory, who enlarged his Dominions from the *Rhine* to a great Part of *Denmark*; and ſome ſay, from the *Adriatick* to the *Baltick*; but he was afterwards reduc'd by the Emperor to *Brunſwick* and *Lunenburg*. *Henry* died in 1195, when his Dominions were divided betwixt his three Sons, *Henry*, afterwards Prince Palatine of the *Rhine*; *Otho*, afterwards Emperor; and *William*, who ſucceeded to *Luneburg* only by the Name of *Lord*; for *Otho* had the City and County of *Brunſwick*, and *Henry* had *Zell*, *Bremen*, and *Stade*.

William died in 1213, and was ſucceeded by his only Son *Otho*, who in 1235 was made Duke of *Brunſwick* by the Emperor *Frederick* II. whoſe *Diploma* is ſtill in the Archives of *Zell*.

William died in 1252, and left two Sons, *Albert* and *John*. *Albert* reſign'd *Lunenburg* to his Brother; after which they were reckon'd diſtinct Principalities, and were for moſt part ſubject to two Princes.

John died in 1276, and was ſucceeded by his Son *Otho*. Here Dr. *Nicholſon* obſerves a Miſtake in Dr. *Hylin*, who reckoning only the 8 Years of *John*'s Government, without taking Notice that *Albert* kept both Dutchies 15 Years, brings *Otho* II. to the Government 15 Years before his Father's Death.

Otho reign'd 53 Years, and dying in 1330, left two Sons, who govern'd jointly 24 Years. *Otho* the eldeſt dying without Heirs-Male, *William* the youngeſt govern'd alone for ſome Years: After which, he reſign'd the Dutchy to *Ludowick* Duke of *Brunſwick*, who married his eldeſt Daughter.

Ludowick died without Iſſue in 1358, and was ſucceeded by his Brother *Magnus*, ſirnam'd *Torquatus*, as the *Atlas Hiſtorique* ſays, in 1368, on Condition that he ſhould proteſt the *Lunenburgers* againſt the Emperor *Charles* IV. and the Duke of *Saxony*: Upon which *Brunſwick* and *Lunenburg* were again united; but *Albert* Duke of *Saxony*, aſſiſted by the Emperor, and claiming the Title as deſcended from the eldeſt Brother's Daughter, recover'd *Lunenburg* by Force in 1372, and held it 14 Years. After his Death, the War continued betwixt the Houſes of *Saxony* and *Brunſwick* for the Dutchy: But in 1388, *Bernard*, Duke *Magnus*'s Son, prevail'd. Soon after this, *Frederick* Duke of *Brunſwick* being ſlain in his Return from *Francfort*, where he was choſen Emperor, *Bernard* ſucceeded to *Brunſwick*, and gave *Lunenburg* to his Nephew *Henry*, who ſhar'd the Government with him before. *Henry* reign'd 16 Years, died in 1416, and was ſucceeded by his Son *William*, who made War on his Kinſman *Otho* of *Brunſwick*, Duke *Bernard*'s Son, and took ſeveral Places in that Dutchy; but a Peace was afterwards concluded, on Condition that they ſhould change Dominions, in 1428.

Otho's Brother *Frederick*, whom *Heylin* makes his Predeceſſor, ſucceeded him in *Lunenburg*; but retir'd to a Monaſtery at *Zell* in 1459, 14 Years after.

Upon this, his two Sons *Bernard* and *Otho* had the Government. The former died within 5 Years; and the latter ſurviving 7 after, left his Son *Henry*, then but three Years old. Upon this, old Duke *Frederick* came out of his Monaſtery in his advanc'd Age, govern'd for his Grandſon 7 Years, and died in 1476. the *Atlas* ſays 1478.

Duke *Henry* being then but 10 Years of Age, was aſſiſted by his Mother for ſome Time; and 10 Years before his Death, which was in 1532, he ſettled the Dutchy on his three Sons, *Otho*, *Erneſt*, and *Francis*. The firſt loving Retirement, reſign'd to the ſecond during his Father's Life for an Annual Maintenance *Erneſt* ſhar'd the Government with *Francis* till 1539, when the latter accepted the Lordſhip of *Gifhorn*, and the Monaſtery of *Iſenhagen*. *Erneſt* brought in the Proteſtant Religion in 1530, died in 1546, and was ſucceeded by his Son *Francis Otho*, who died 13 Years after without Iſſue-Male, and left the Dutchy to his Brothers *Henry* and *William*, who rul'd together for 10 Years; but afterwards ſeparated, and agreed,

Digitized by Google

agreed, That *William* ſhould have *Lunenburg*, and *Henry* the Lordſhips of *Dannenberg*, *Hitzaker*, *Luchaw*, and *Warbke*, and the Monaſtery of *Scharnbeck*.

In 1592, *William* died, and was ſucceeded by his Son *Erneſt*, who in 1611 left it to his Brother *Chriſtian*, Elected Biſhop of *Minden*, who had a proſperous Reign of 22 Years, and added the Principality of *Grubenhagen* to his Dominions. He died in 1633, and was ſucceeded by his Brother *Auguſtus*, Elected Biſhop of *Ratzeburg*, who ſucceeded afterwards to *Brunſwick*, upon the Death of *Frederick Ulrick*. We ſhall ſpeak more of him when we come to *Brunſwick*.

Upon this, *Lunenburg* was given to *George*, Lieutenant-General of the Forces of *Saxony*, and Son to *William* above-mentioned, in 1636. He had 4 Sons. *Chriſtian Ludowick*, the eldeſt, govern'd alone, allowing Penſions to his Brothers. He died in 1665.

George William, his ſecond Brother, ſucceeded, and died without Heirs-Male in 1705.

By the Treaty of *Hildeſheim*, the Dutchies of *Calenberg* and *Grubbenhage* were made over to the third Brother *John Frederick*, who kept his Court at *Hanover*, and died in 1679 without Iſſue-Male. His Daughter *Wilhelma Amelie*, born in 1673, is married to the preſent Emperor *Joſeph*.

Erneſt Auguſtus, the youngeſt Brother, ſucceeded his Brother *John Frederick* Biſhop of *Oſnabrug*, and in 1692 was created Elector. He married one of the moſt accompliſh'd Princeſſes in *Europe*, *Sophia*, Daughter to *Frederick* V. Elector *Palatine*, King of *Bohemia*, by Princeſs *Elizabeth*, Daughter to King *James* I. of *Great Britain*.

This Prince was a great General, a good Patriot of the Empire againſt the Deſigns of *France*, made a great Figure in the Confederate Army on the *Upper Rhine*, and gave likewiſe a powerful Aſſiſtance to the Allies in the *Netherlands*. In Conſideration of which, the late King *William*, by the Influence and Aſſiſtance of moſt of the Proteſtant Princes of the Empire, got him created a Ninth Elector, which the Emperor agreed to, becauſe of his own great Merit, and upon the Solliciation of thoſe Proteſtant Princes and States of the Empire; who conſidering the Danger that might ariſe to their Intereſt by the extinguiſhing of the Proteſtant Branch of the *Palatine* Family, after which the Duke of *Neuburg*, a Papiſt, ſucceeded to that Electorate, they preſs'd it with the more Vigour. Upon this Prince *Erneſt* was declared Elector, and Standard-bearer of the Empire, thô ſeveral Princes, both Proteſtants and Papiſts, oppos'd it.

He was ſucceeded by his Son *George Lewis*, the preſent Elector, born in 1660. He married *Sophia Dorothy*, the only Daughter of his Uncle *George William* D. of *Lunenburg-Zell*; by whoſe Death, in 1705, the Dutchy of *Zell* fell to him. This Prince is likewiſe a great General; and in Conſideration of the Service he has done the Empire, has commanded their Army in Chief for moſt part ſince the Death of Prince *Lewis* of *Baden*, and has been introduc'd into the Electoral College, which his Father could never obtain: His Mother the Electreſs Dowager, being the next of the Royal *Britiſh* Proteſtant Line, has the Reverſion of the Crowns of *Great Britain* and *Ireland* ſettled upon her and her Heirs, if her preſent Majeſty Queen *Anne* die without Iſſue.

The Curious, who have a mind to know more of the Genealogy of this Illuſtrious Family, may find a Tree of it in the *Atlas Hiſtorique*. Some derive it from *Attius*, King of *Alba* in *Italy*, from whom the Emperor *Auguſtus* deſcended by the Mother's Side; but this being uncertain, others derive it from *Hugo* Marquis of *Ferrara*, Father to *Azo* Count of *Eſte*, who was Vicar of the Empire in *Italy* in 970; and another *Azo* the 4th from him, came with the Emperor *Conrad* II. into *Germany*, and married *Cunigunda*, the only Daughter to *Guelph* Duke of *Bavaria*. He was ſucceeded by his Nephew *Guelph the Valiant*; he by another *Guelph*; he by *Henry the Proud*, Duke of *Bavaria*; and he by *Henry the Lion*, who married *Maud*, Daughter to King *Richard* II. of *England*, as we mentioned before, from whom the preſent Family is deſcended. It had ſeveral other Branches, which are now extinguiſh'd: The remaining Branches are, that of *Brunſwick Wolfenbuttel*, the preſent Prince of which is *Anthony Ulrick*; and the Branch of *Bevern*, the preſent Prince of which is *Ferdinand Albert*.

Digitized by Google

The chief Places of Note in this Dutchy are,

1. *Lunenburg*, the Metropolis. Some aſcribe the Foundation of it to *Julius Cæſar*; but this is rejected as fabulous. It is mentioned in the Reign of the Emperor *Henry* II. and afterwards as the greateſt City belonging to *Otho* Duke of *Saxony* about 1073. It was ſaid to have been firſt fortified by *Henry the Lion* in 1189; but had a Caſtle on the Mountain of *Calkberg*, which lies near it, ſince 1076. It was formerly an Imperial City, but is now ſubject to its own Prince, and allowed great Privileges. 'Tis about two *Engliſh* Miles in Compaſs, of an oblong Form, the Streets broad, and moſt of the Houſes well built. The Town-Houſe is a neat Structure, and over againſt it ſtands the Duke's Palace. It has alſo a fine Univerſity, formerly a Monaſtery, and a ſtately Bridge over the River *Elminow*, which here is navigable. Their chief Trade is in Salt, which is made from Salt-Springs that riſe within the Walls. Their Salt-Houſes are fenc'd, and conſtantly guarded, as being the main Support of the City, a conſiderable Branch of the Duke's Revenue, and a conſtant Employment for a great many Poor. It lies in Long. 30 ¼. and Lat. 53. 28 Miles S. E. of *Hamburg*, 46 N. of *Zell*, 14 S. W. of *Lawenburg*, and 65 N. of *Brunſwick*.

2. *Bardowick*, a Mile from *Lunenburg*, now a Village, but formerly a ſtrong and populous City. Some reckon it to have been the firſt City in *Saxony*, and built 990 Years before Chriſt. It had 9 Churches, of which the Cathedral only is left. Over the Gate, there are ſome barbarous Latin Verſes, in an old *Gothick* Character, which alledge it was built 235 Years before *Rome*, and that it was deſtroyed by *Henry the Lion* in 1189. Some derive the Name from *Bardo*, an ancient Knight-Errant; but *Meibomius* derives it from an ancient People in that Country called *Bardi*: But 'tis more probable, that it was a College of the ancient Poets called *Bardi*. In the Cathedral, there are 8 Reſidentiary Canons, and a few Vicars.

3. *Ultzen*, a neat little Town, mid-way betwixt *Lunenburg* and *Zell*. It was formerly called *Lawenwald*, i. e. *Lion-Foreſt*, as appears by their Records, and an Inſcription on the Town-Hall. It had its preſent Name from the neighbouring Monaſtery of *Oldenſtadt*, formerly called *Old-Ulſen*. In 1646, moſt of the City was burnt down, and never ſince wholly rebuilt; but the Streets are larger, and the Houſes more ſplendid and regular, than before. They pretend, that the firſt *Engliſh Saxons* went from hence to *Britain*; and thoſe who returned, hung up a gilt Tin Ship in the Market-place, as a Memorial of their Succeſs, which continued there till the above-mentioned Fire.

4. *Zell*, on a Sandy Plain, near the Conflux of the *Aller* and *Fukſe*, which fall into the *Weſer* below *Verden*. It lies in Long. 30. and Lat. 52 ½. 30 Miles S. from *Lunenburg*, 60 S. W. from *Hamburg*, 28 N. from *Hanover*, and 29 N. E. from *Brunſwick*. Some derive the Name from its having been a Cellar, which is the Signification of the *German* Word; but in a Charter of 1203, in the Duke's Archives, 'tis called *Tſelle*. It conſiſts of three Streets, which lie parallel, and is well fortified; the Ramparts large, and well mounted with Cannon. The D. has a Palace here, which ſtands near the Gate of *Hanover*: 'Tis a ſquare Building, moated round, and has 4 Platforms. In the lower Court, beyond the Ditch, there is a very fine Riding-Houſe; and there are many fine Gardens, Orchards, and Grotto's, near the Palace. It was built in 1485 by Duke *Henry*. The chief Courts of Judicature are held here.

5. *Walſtrad*, i. e. *Walo's-Croſs*, formerly a Monaſtery, built by *Walo*, a Prince of *Anhalt*, in 986, as appears by an Inſcription on his Statue in the Church. It is now a conſiderable Town, ſeated in a pleaſant Valley, encompaſſed with Woods and Mountains. Their chief Trade conſiſts in Honey, Wax, Wool, and Beer.

6. *Harburg*, on the *Elb*, over againſt *Hamburg*, with a ſtrong Caſtle. The Town is fortified, and is the ſtrongeſt Frontier of the Country on this Side, thô the Fortifications be not very good. 'Tis populous however, becauſe the Inhabitants have great Privileges.

7. *Dannberg*, on the *Jetze*, a League above where it falls into the *Elb*, is the chief Town of the County of that Name, which was given to *Otho* D. of *Brunſwick* in 1462, by *Nicholas* Count of *Dannberg*.

B. Snack.

Digitized by Google

8. *Snackenburg*, belonging to this County, a large Trading Town, on the Confluence of the *Elb* and the *Wecks*.

The Counties of *Heya*, *Diepholt*, and *Schawenburg*, in *Weſtphalia*, belong alſo to the Duke of *Lunenburg*: But we refer the Deſcription of them to our Account of *Weſtphalia*.

The Dutchy of MECKLENBURG.

BUno on *Cluverius* ſays, it has *Pomerania*, and Part of the Marquiſate of *Brandenburg*, on the E. the Dutchies of *Lawenburg* and *Holſtein* on the W. the Marquiſate of *Brandenburg* on the S. and the *Baltick* on the N. Its Rivers are, the *Elb* and the *Warnow*.

Geographers can ſcarce tell where the Place lies which gave Name to this Dutchy; but Hiſtorians ſay, there's a ſmall Village ſo called near *Wiſmar*, and was formerly a large and populous City. *Cluverius* and *Bertius* reprove thoſe who render the Name of *Mecklenburg* by *Megalopolis* or *Megapolis*, as if it had taken its Name from its Largeneſs, ſince in *German* it ſignifies only a Town of Factors or Brokers, being a Place of great Trade while the *Vandal* Princes reſided there; and *Lindeburgius* alledges, but without good Authority, that it was 8 *Engliſh* Miles long, and 20 in Circumference.

This Country is divided betwixt the two Dukes of *Guſtrow* and *Swerin*. It has more of Profit than Pleaſure, abounds with Corn, Fruit, Fiſh, and Fowl; but the Air is unwholeſome in Summer, and very cold in Winter. It has the Advantage of the *Baltick*, many Rivers and large Lakes, which abound with Fiſh: One Inſtance of which is, That at the Marriage of *Helen*, Daughter to the Elector *Palatine*, with the Duke of *Mecklenburg Swerin*, 5000 freſh Breams, newly taken out of the great Lake near *Swerin*, were ſerv'd up at Table.

Some derive the Dukes of *Mecklenburg* from *Anthyrius*, one of *Alexander the Great's* Generals, becauſe they bear a Horſe's Head in their Arms, which they will have to be that of *Bucephalus*. They ſay, he was the firſt Duke of the *Heruli* who inhabited this Country, and founded the City of *Mecklenburg* 300 Years before Chriſt, from whom, after ſeveral Generations, deſcended *Bilingus*, a Potent King of the *Vandals*, whoſe Mother, they ſay, was Siſter to *Charlemain*. They add, That he brought in Chriſtianity; but afterwards he and his Subjects apoſtatiz'd. Their next famous Prince was *Godeſchalk the Pious*, who preach'd to his People, and was murder'd by them in 1066. From him, among others, deſcended *Henry* II. who died in 1228, and left two Sons, *Nicholas* and *John*: From *Nicholas* came the ſucceeding Princes of the *Vandals*, till *William*, the laſt of the Line, died in 1430. From the latter, called *John*, are deſcended the preſent Dukes of *Mecklenburg*. His Son *Henry*, who was 26 Years Priſoner among the *Turks*, was Father to *Henry the Lion*, whoſe Sons *Albert* and *John* were made Princes of the Empire by *Charles* IV. in 1349, on Condition of ſubmitting to its Laws, and aſſiſting him. *Albert*'s eldeſt Son, *Albert* II. was choſen King of *Sweden*, and afterwards taken by *Margaret* of *Denmark*; but releas'd, on paying a great Ranſom. His Brother *Magnus*, whom *Chytræus* calls a great Prince, in Deed as well as Name, was advanced to the Government, and ſucceeded by his Son *John*, who founded the Univerſity of *Roſtock* in 1469. His Succeſſors, *Henry the Fat*, and *Magnus* II. after the Death of *William*, the laſt Prince of the *Vandals*, ſeiz'd the whole Dutchy. *John Albert*, Grandſon to this *Magnus*, brought in *Lutheraniſm* in 1547, and gave the Revenues of the Abbies to the Univerſity of *Roſtock*. His Son *John* III. ſucceeded, and left two Sons; the eldeſt, *Adolph Frederick*, married *Anne Mary* Counteſs of *Eaſt-Frieſland*, by whom he had *Chriſtian Ludowick*, the Duke of *Mecklenburg Swerin*; and the youngeſt, *Guſtavus Adolphus*, ſeated himſelf at *Guſtrow*.

The *Atlas Hiſtorique* has a Tree of this Family; but reckons nothing of the Genealogy certain till the Time of *Udo* K. of the *Heruli*, who inhabited Part of this Dutchy, from whom the preſent Line is deſcended. They enjoyed the Title of Kings of the *Heruli* or *Obotrites* till about 1150, that the Duke of *Saxony* and Marquis of *Brandenburg* forc'd *Pribiſlas* to renounce the Title of *King*, and take that of *Duke*. The Branch of the Princes of the *Vandals*, and of the Branch of *Stargard*, were united in the Branch of *Mecklenburg* about 1429. The Branch

Digitized by Google

Branch of *Guſtrow* iſſued about 1558, and was extinguiſh'd laſt Year. The Branch of *Swerin* iſſued about the ſame Time, of whom *Frederick William*, born in 1655, is the preſent Prince. The Branch of *Strelitz* iſſued about 1658, and the preſent Prince is *Adolph Frederick*, born in 1686.

The ſame Author ſays, this Dutchy was anciently inhabited partly by the *Varini*, and partly by the *Angli*, who were chas'd thence by the *Heruli*. The Country he ſays is about 45 *German* Leagues in Length, and 30 in Breadth. The Dukes, who formerly govern'd independently, have had a Seat in the Diet of the Empire ſince 1349. It makes Part of the Circle of *Lower Saxony*, where they have a double Suffrage; and *Strelitz* has alſo a Voice. Their Titles are, Duke of *Mecklenburg*, Prince of *Wenden*, *Schwerin*, and *Ratzilburg*, Count of *Swerin*, Lord of *Roſtock* and *Stargard*. The Principality of *Guſtrow*, and the Dominion of *Strelitz*, do alſo depend upon it.

Dr. *Nicholſon* obſerves, That theſe Princes had Strength enough to ſecure themſelves, and over-awe their Neighbours, had they kept a good Correſpondence. *Chriſtian Lewis* turn'd Papiſt in 1663, which heighten'd the Difference with the Houſe of *Guſtrow*. He died without Iſſue in 1695, as *Guſtavus Adolphus*, the Chief of the Houſe of *Guſtrow*, did in 1696, which has occaſioned the preſent Differences about the Succeſſion betwixt the Sons of *Frederick* late Duke of *Mecklenburg Krabro*, and *Adolphus Auguſtus* Duke of *Strelitz*, of the ſame Line.

The chief Places in this Dutchy are,

1. *Lubeck*, an Imperial City, and Chief of the Hans-Towns. Some derive the Name from *Luba*, a Fiſherman, who firſt ſettled here; but the moſt probable Opinion is, that 'tis ſo called from *Lob-eck*, which in *High-Dutch* ſignifies a Point of Land, which agrees with its Situation. The *Poliſh* Hiſtorians ſay, their Princes having conquer'd this Part of *Germany*, firſt built a Fort, and then a Wall'd Town here; but the *Germans* ſay, That *Godeſchalk*, a K. of the *Vandals*, founded it in 1040; but was a conſiderable City when taken by *Crito*, a Pr. of *Rugen*, ſome ſay in the 11th, and others in the beginning of the 12th Century: But Dr. *Nicholſon* ſays, it never had a Charter till after it was ruin'd by *Ratzo*, a Prince of *Rugen*, in 1134, and rebuilt by *Adolph* II. of *Holſtein* in 1140; but was afterwards obliged to ſurrender to *Henry* of *Saxony* and *Bavaria*, ſirnam'd the *Lion*, who being ſwelled with Succeſs, join'd with the Pope againſt the Emperor *Frederick Barbaroſſa*: Upon which he was proſcrib'd, and deſpoil'd of moſt of his Dominions; and the Emperor took *Lubeck*, which was reſtored to *Henry* after the Emperor's Death It was afterwards taken by *Waldemar* of *Sleſwick*, Brother to *Canutus* of *Denmark*; but not being able to bear the Severity of the *Danes*, they ſubmitted to the Emperor *Frederick* II. who reſtor'd their Privileges, which it has enjoy'd ever ſince. The Biſhoprick of *Oudenburg* in *Wagerland* was removed hither in 1163; and ſince 1596, has for moſt part been poſſeſſed by a Son of *Holſtein*. There is no City in the N. of *Germany* equal to this for Beauty, Uniformity of Buildings, and pleaſant Gardens and Groves: The Streets are ſtraight and even, the Houſes of Brick, cover'd with Tiles, are generally high, and adorn'd with Sculpture. Moſt of it was burnt in 1238: Since which, the Senate made an Order, That no Houſes ſhould be built of Timber, or cover'd with Thatch. They have a publick Conduit, from whence Water is convey'd by Pipes into every private Houſe; which Example has ſince been followed by *London*, and other great Cities of *Europe*. Several of the Streets are adorn'd with Rows of Tile-Trees on each Side. They have about 20 Churches well built, and adorn'd with high Steeples or Spires. The Cathedral, dedicated to St. *Mary*, is of as good Architecture as moſt in *Germany*. The City is large, but more long than broad; the Fortifications are ſtrong, and conſiſt of good Baſtions and Fauſſebrays, with a deep and large Ditch. They have no Counterſcarp or Half-Moon, but one at the Gate of *Hamburg*. The Haven is defended by Ramparts, and capable of great Merchant-Ships, which come up to *Trave*, 8 or 10 *Engliſh* Miles from the Sea, which occaſions a great Trade here; ſo that with *Hamburg*, they continually employ almoſt 600 Veſſels of their own. The Reformation was brought hither in 1561: Since which, their Biſhops have been Proteſtants. The Chapter has only a Shadow of Election; for,

Digitized by Google

for, as we have heard before, the See is devolved as an Appennage upon a Son of *Holſtein*, who is called Duke of *Eutin*, from the Place of his Reſidence, about 16 Miles from the City: But the Chapter reſides in the Town. His Revenue is about 10000 Crowns *per Annum*; but he is the only Proteſtant Biſhop in *Germany* who has the Power of a Dioceſan, and Eccleſiaſtical Juriſdiction. This City defended it ſelf bravely againſt the *Danes* in 1500, and 1519. Before the Time of *Guſtavus Ericſon* of *Sweden*, it held the Ballance betwixt the two N. Crowns; but ſince that Time, the Cities of *Hamburg* and *Wiſmar* have got much of its Trade. Their Beer is extream good, tranſported to other Parts, and is us'd medicinally for Wounds and Bruiſes: 'Tis ſold by the Barrel, which contains about 44 *Engliſh* Gallons: 160 of their Ells make 100 of ours. Their Corn is meaſur'd by the Laſt, which makes 10½ *Engliſh* Quarters. Their Government is by 12 Burgomaſters, and 16 Senators, whoſe Office is for Life. The former are either Doctors of the Law, or grave Gentlemen of the City. The latter are half Lawyers, half Gentlemen. Their Territory is about 60 *Engliſh* Miles, in which there are ſome ſmall Towns. They have a Gariſon of 7 or 800 Men, and take Place in the Diet alternately with *Worms*. A remarkable Treaty of Peace was concluded here in 1629 betwixt the Emperor and King of *Denmark*.

The College of the Hans-Towns is kept here. The League betwixt them began in 1164, for mutual Defence, and carrying on their Commerce, and was made up of 70 or 80 in ſeveral Countries. The 4 Towns in which they firſt eſtabliſh'd their Factories, were, *London*, *Bruges*, *Norwerge*, and *Novogorod*. In 1428, they ſet out 250 Ships of War againſt *Erick* X. of *Denmark*; but *France*, *Spain*, *Denmark*, *Sweden*, and *England*, having broke off the Towns of their Dependance from the League, thoſe of the Empire continued in it; ſince which, *Lubeck* has been the chief, keeps their common Stock rais'd by Contribution, with their Records and Alliances: *Lubeck*, *Cologne*, *Brunſwick*, and *Dantzick*, are the chief; and when they think fit to call an Aſſembly, they give Notice to the reſt. They meet once in three Years. The Towns of the firſt League were, *Antwerp*, *Dort*, *Amſterdam*, *Rotterdam*, *Bruges*, *Oſtend*, *Dunkirk*, *Calais*, *Rouen*, *St. Malo*, *Bourdeaux*, *Bayonne*, *Marſeilles*, *Barcelona*, *Sevil*, *Cadix*, *Lisbon*, *Leghorn*, *Meſſina*, *Naples*, *London*, and others of leſs Note. The chief Towns of the preſent League are, *Lubeck*, *Cologne*, *Brunſwick*, *Dantzick*, *Hamburg*, *Roſtock*, *Weimar*, *Lunenburg*, *Stettin*, *Gripſwalde*, *Wiſel*, *Oſnabrug*, *Dortmund*, *Paderborn*, *Northauſen*, *Ruremond*, *Bremen*, *Magdeburg*, *Hildeſheim*, *Goſlar*, *Minden*, *Emmerick*, *Coln*, *Thorn*, *Coningsberg*, *Riga*, and ſeveral others.

2. *Wiſmar*, betwixt *Lubeck* and *Roſtock*, about 21 *Engliſh* Miles from each. Some derive the Name, according to *Saxo Grammaticus* and *Crantzius*, from *Wiſſimir*, a *Poliſh* or *Vandal* Prince, who, after defeating the *Danes*, built this Town: But this is contrary both to Hiſtory and Chronology; ſo that the Name comes probably from *Wiſmeer*, which ſignifies a ſecure Part of the Sea, ſuch as this Town is built on, as Dr. *Nicholſon* obſerves; and adds, That it was probably built about 1238, or 1250, by *Gunceline* II. of *Swerin*, out of the Ruins of *Mecklenburg*. Afterwards *Henry* of *Mecklenburg*, called *Hieroſolymitanus*, becauſe of his Exploits in the *Holy Land*, modelled this City about 1266, after the Government of *Lubeck*; ſo that in a little Time it became one of the chief Hans-Towns, was the Harbour for their Men of War, and fortified at their Expence, which made it almoſt impregnable. It was taken in 1629 by *Wallenſtein*, the Imperial General, but retaken in 1632 by the Duke of *Mecklenburg*, with the Aſſiſtance of the *Swedes*, to whom, by the Treaty of *Munſter*, it was given up, with other Places; but was ſince taken by *Chriſtian* V of *Denmark*, and agreed to be re-deliver'd to the *Swedes* by the Treaty of *Fountainbleau* in 1679; and by a poſterior Treaty that ſame Year in *Denmark*, it was left in the Hands of the *Danes* for Arrears due by the *Swedes*, and continues ſtill in their Hands. It is a Hans-Town, and its Harbour reckon'd the beſt in *Germany*. It lies among Fens, in Long. 32¾. Lat. 54. 40 *Engliſh* Miles S. W. from *Roſtock*, 12 N. from *Swerin*, and 60 N. E. from *Hamburg*. 'Tis well fortified, and has a ſtrong Citadel, with 5 regular Baſtions.

3. *Roſtock*,

Digitized by Google

3. *Roſtock*, which the *German* Antiquaries ſay is the *Lacinium*, *Lacilburgium*, and *Rhodopolis* of the *Romans*; but with little probability. Some derive it from *Roſtzogz*, which in the *Wendiſh* Language ſignifies the Conflux of two Rivers; but *Lindeburgius*, which is more probable, derives it from *Rotzſtock*, a red Pillar, worſhip'd by the Pagan Inhabitants. Dr. *Nicholſon* ſays, That in 329, it was only a ſmall Village of Fiſhermen on the Banks of the *Warna*, and advanced to a City by *Godeſchalk* King of the *Heruli*, and enlarged by his Succeſſors about 1160. *Burewinus*, one of his Succeſſors, wall'd and modell'd it by the Laws of *Lubeck*, as appears by his Charter, dated 1218. 'Tis a Hans-Town, and divided into 3 Parts, called the *Old*, *New*, and *Middle* City, conſiſting of 14 Streets, and many Thouſands of ſtately Houſes. The Citizens value themſelves on 7 times 7 remarkable Things, *viz.* 7 Doors in St. *Mary*'s Church, 7 large Streets which center in the great Market-place, 7 Gates out to the Country, 7 Bridges over the *Warna*, 7 Towers on the Town-Hall, 7 great Bells belonging to the Town-Clock, which chime at certain Hours, and 7 vaſt Tile-Trees in the common Garden.

Their chief Commodity is Beer, which they export in great Quantities. They have 250 Privileg'd Brewers, who they ſay brew as many Thouſand Tuns every Year, beſides what particular Perſons brew for their own Uſe.

Their Univerſity, now one of the largeſt and beſt in *Germany*, was founded in 1419. The City was at half the Charge, and have the Choice of half the Profeſſors, who are 18 in all; and their Rector *Magnificus*, or Chief Magiſtrate of the Univerſity, is choſen every Half-Year by Turns out of thoſe Profeſſors. He appoints their Meetings, takes Care of collecting and diſburſing their Money; and in great Matters, is aſſiſted by a Promotor, choſen from among the eldeſt of the Profeſſors. They had their Charter from Pope *Martin* V. The Biſhop of *Swerin* is their perpetual Chancellor, and deputes a Vice-Chancellor from among the elder Profeſſors. Among other Learned Men bred here, were the famous Hiſtorians, *Crantzius*, *Poſſelius*, and *Chytraus*. The Government of the City is by 24 Aldermen, choſen out of the Nobility, Scholars, or Merchants: 4 of theſe are Burgomaſters, 2 Chamberlains, 2 Stewards for the River, and 2 Judges. The Chamberlain collects and pays the Money for repairing the Publick Buildings. The Stewards over-ſee the Haven at *Warnemund*, and take Care of cleaning the River; and the Judges determine all Cauſes Civil and Criminal. Theſe 24, call'd the Upper Houſe, determine all Controverſies, coin Money, and chuſe Officers; but there is beſides a Lower Houſe of 100 Common-Council Men, choſen out of the inferior Tradeſmen, who are ſummon'd, and give their Opinions in extraordinary Matters of common Concernment. The River is navigable to the Walls; but their large Ships come no further than *Warnemund*, a little Town 7 Miles diſtant, at the Mouth of the River. The *Swedes* built a Fort here after the Treaty of *Munſter*, and by their Garriſon demanded a Toll of all Ships, which very much leſſen'd the Trade of the Town. The *Mecklenburg* Miniſters endeavour'd to have this redreſs'd at the Treaty of *Nimeguen*; but without Effect. This City and Dutchy was ſeiz'd by the Imperialiſts in 1649; but retaken by the *Swedes* in 1631. Moſt of the Town was burnt in 1677, but is ſince rebuilt.

4. *Swerin*, on a great Lake, which takes its Name from the Town, about 50 *Engliſh* Miles S. W. from *Roſtock*, 28 W. from *Guſtrow*, and 12 S. from *Wiſmar*, in Long. 31 ½. Lat. 53 ¾. and is the Capital of the Principality of that Name. It was fortified by *Henry the Lion*, Duke of *Saxony*, ſoon after its firſt Foundation, in 1163, and beſtow'd, with its Territories, on *Guncelinus*, one of his Generals, whom he made Earl of *Swerin*. He was ſucceeded by his Son *Henry*, Favourite to the Emperor *Otho* IV. He took *Waldemar* King of *Denmark* in his own Kingdom, brought him bound to *Saxony*, and kept him in the Caſtle of *Danneburg*, till his Subjects had almoſt beggar'd themſelves by paying his Ranſom. *Otho*, the laſt Earl of this Family, died in 1355, and his only Child being married to *Albert* Duke of *Mecklenburg*, brought the Earldom to that Duke. The Biſhoprick was removed from *Mecklenburg* to this City about 1062; and *Joannes Scotus*, their firſt Biſhop, was murder'd by the *Wendiſh* Apoſtates in 1066, who cut off his Hands and Feet, and left him in that Miſery;

Misery; so that he died some Days after. The See was vacant for 84 Years, till the Emperor *Conrad* III. sent *Eberhard* thither. He was succeeded by one *Benno* or *Bruno*, when *Henry the Lion* built and endowed a new Cathedral, and drove the Pagan *Mecklenburgers* by Thousands into a Place of the Lake of *Swerin*, where they were baptiz'd by *Benno*, from whence that Part of the Lake is still called the *Font*. The following Bishops had their Residence at *Butzow*, a Fort and considerable Town near *Gustrow*, till by the Treaty of *Munster* it was secularizi'd, and given to the Duke of *Mecklenburg*. It is the usual Residence of the Duke of *Mecklenburg Swerin*. The Religion of this Country is *Lutheranism*.

Other Towns here are, 1. *Domitz*, in an Island made by the Conflux of the *Elb* and *Elde*, with a strong Castle on the *Elb*, where the Duke of *Mecklenburg Swerin* obliges Ships to pay Toll. 2. *Rutzow*, near *Gustrow*, where the Bishop of *Swerin* ordinarily resided. 3. *Travemund*, on the Mouth of the *Trave*, which is broader than the *Sein* at *Paris*, 8 *English* Miles from *Lubeck*, on which it depends. The Town is small, but fortified with 4 good Bastions. 4. *Mecklenburg*, formerly mentioned, once a great Town, that gave Name to the whole Dutchy.

5. *Gustrow*, a well fortified Town, with a Castle, about 20 *English* Miles S. from *Rostock*, and is remarkable for little but being the Residence of the Duke of *Mecklenburg Gustrow*, whose Line was extinguish'd in 1688. The Prince *Gustavus Adolphus*, who was born in 1633, and died in 1695, was a Prince of great Learning and Bravery. His Son *Charles* died in 1688, without Issue. His Sister *Louisa*, born in 1667, married *Frederick* IV. the present King of *Denmark*, in 1695.

Other Towns of less Note in this Division are, 1. *Ribnitz*, on the bottom of a Gulph, form'd by the *Baltick*, N. E. from *Rostock*. 2. *Storgarde*, a small Fisher-Town on the same Gulph. 3. *Worew*, an ancient Town on a Lake towards the Frontiers of *Brandenburg*. 4. *Plawen*, on a Lake of the same Name, from whence the River *Elda* rises.

The Arms of *Mecklenburg* are, *Or*, a *Buffalo's Head*, the Front *Sable*, the Curls and Horns *Argent*, for *Mecklenburg*. *Azure*, a *Griphin Or*, for *Rostock*. Cut in the first *Azure*, a *Griphin Or*, in the 2d *Argent*, fill'd up with Sinople or Green, for *Swerin*. *Gules*, a-cross *Parre*, for *Ratzenburg*. *Gules*, a naked Arm Carnation, clad above the Elbow with a Sleeve of Silver, ty'd with a Ribbon of the same, issuing from a Cloud, moving from the sinister superior Point of the Chief, holding in the Hand a Black Ring, for *Swerin*. *Or*, a Buffle of *Sable*, *Langued-Gules*, Horn'd and Crown'd the same, for *Vandalie*. Over the whole, cut *Gules* on *Or*, for the Lordship of *Stargard*.

The Dutchy of BRUNSWICK.

THE Country, properly so called, comprehends only the Territories subject to the Dukes of *Brunswick* and *Hanover*, or *Calenberg*; but the Principality of *Grubenhagen*, and the Counties of *Blankenburg* and *Reinstein*, are compris'd under the Name, because subject to the Dukes of *Zell* and *Wolfembuttel*, who have both the Title of Dukes of *Brunswick*. This Country has *Hesse* on the S. *Lunenburg* on the N. *Magdeburg* on the E. and the River *Weser* on the W.

The Dutchies of *Brunswick* and *Hanover* are populous and fruitful. Wheat and Rye grow sometimes to such a Height here, as to exceed the tallest Man on Horseback. A great Part of the *Hercynian* Forrest did formerly run through this Country, and is now divided into smaller Woods and Parks, which afford Timber, Fewel, store of Deer, Wild Swine, Hares, *&c.* and Fowl of all sorts. They have also rich Mines of Iron, Salt and Coal. Their chief Rivers are, the *Weser*, by which Goods are brought from *Bremen* to *Brunswick*, with the *Leine*, *Innerste*, *Oker*, and some of less Note, all abounding with Fish. The Ruins of many old Castles and Forts are found on the Tops of Hills and ragged Mountains in this Country, which some take to have been built by the *Romans*, and others by the *Saxons*, during their Wars with *Charles the Great*. The Inhabitants are now, as of old, a stout and warlike People, and of a larger Size than most other *Germans*. They are us'd to cold Lodgings, and coarse Diet, which is usually dry'd Swine's-Flesh, and Sausages, whence

Digitized by Google

their Neighbours call them Bacon-Guts. Their Bread is black, and made of coarse Rye and Wheat. They have no Wine of their own, but abundance of good Beer. They are not so complaisant as many other *Germans*, but hospitable and sincere.

In the Description of *Lunenburg*, we gave an Account of the Origine of the Princes of this Family, and how the Families came to be united. They are said to be the only Remains of the Family of the *Guelphs*, formerly Dukes of *Bavaria* and *Saxony*; of which some Historians give this Romantick Account, *viz.* That *Germentrudis*, Countess of *Altorf* in *Swabia*, having accus'd a poor Woman of Adultery, and caus'd her to be punish'd for having 12 Children at a Birth, was soon after deliver'd of 12 Sons her self: Her Husband, Count *Isenbert*, being absent at the Time, she, to avoid the same Scandal, order'd the Midwife to carry out 11 of them, in order to kill them. The Count coming home at the same Time, and asking the Midwife, What she carried in her Apron? She answer'd him, *Welpen*, *i. e.* Whelps; but he insisting upon it to see them, she confessed the Matter; upon which he enjoyn'd her Secrecy, and put them out to Nurse. Six Years after, he invited most of his own and his Lady's Relations to a Feast, and in the midst of their Jollity brought out his 11 Sons, all cloath'd alike. Upon this the Countess own'd her Fault, and was pardon'd. The Count order'd them, in Remembrance of this, to be called *Guelphs* or Whelps. From the eldest of these descended *Henry Guelph* Count of *Altorf*, whom the Emperor *Conrad* II. made afterwards Duke of *Bavaria*.

The Reformation, according to *Luther's* Doctrine, was brought into this Country by *D. Julius*, who died in 1599. Since which Time, they have been zealous *Lutherans*; but those named *Calixti* about *Helmstad*, who are moderate, and have a better Opinion of the *Calvinists*, are much increas'd of late.

The chief Towns are,

1. *Brunswick*. In the Cathedral, among other Monuments, there is an old Parchment Writing, with a brief Account of the most considerable Persons buried here: The first of which is *Dankwarth* Duke of *Saxony*, who is said first to have Wall'd this Town, and call'd it *Dankwarth's-Crost*; but that was properly the Name of the Castle, for the Town derives its Name from *Brune*, his Brother. It was augmented by succeeding Princes, and became one of the most considerable Hans-Towns. The Emperor *Frederick* II. erected the Country into a Dutchy; and *Otho* of *Brunswick*, surnam'd the *Courageous*, granted Liberty to the City to chuse their own Magistrates, and to govern according to their own Laws. After which, they pretended to be independent, which occasioned it to be besieged by the Dukes in 1492, 1550, 1553, 1605, 1606, 1616, &c. and at last it was taken by Duke *Rudolphus Augustus* in 1671. After which, he frequently resided in the Town, and kept a strong Guard in it. It lies on the *Ocker*, in Long. 32. Lat. 52 ½. 8 *English* Miles N. from *Wolfenbuttel*, 85 S. from *Hamburg*, 85 S. E. from *Bremen*, 55 N. W. from *Magdeburg*, 32 S. E. from *Hanover*, and 56 from *Lunenburg*. The *Ocker* runs through it, and the Town is divided into 5 distinct Corporations, govern'd by several Magistrates of their own, and 5 different Courts of Judicature; but sometimes they unite on extraordinary Occasions. The City is rich and populous, and their Houses well built. The Town-House is very magnificent, and the Palace a stately ancient Building. It has many fine Churches; and glories in having been the first Town of Note which embrac'd the Doctrine of *Luther*. 'Tis well fortified, and surrounded with two Walls, and two Ditches.

Their chief Trade is Hides and Mum: The former they have from other Nations, and return them dress'd, being extraordinary good Tanners. Their Mum is of two Sorts; one thin and weak, which is their ordinary Drink; the other they call Ship-Mum, which is very thick, transported into other Nations, and scarce drinkable till purified at Sea. It is brewed with Barley and Hops, and a small Mixture of Wheat. There's a set Number of Brewers, that have the only Power to make it from the beginning of *October* to the end of *March*. They have also another sort of sweet Malt-Liquor in this Country, which they call *Brew-hane*. The City lies in Long. 30. 34. Lat. 52. 36.

Wol-

Digitized by Google

2. *Wolfembuttel*, the ancient Seat of the Dukes of *Brunſwick*, famous for its ſtrong Fortifications, being accounted one of the moſt impregnable Towns in *Germany*: It conſiſts of two Parts; the firſt called *Arx-Guelphica*, which is the Duke's Palace, and had its Name from Duke *Ethert*, of the Family of the *Guelphs*: The ſecond is called *Henrick-Stadt*, from Duke *Henry* the younger, who founded it. The new Church in this Part of the Town is reckon'd an admirable Piece of Architecture. In a Vault under the Quire, there lie buried 21 Dukes and Dutcheſſes of *Brunſwick* in Coffins of Lead, with Inſcriptions. In the Palace, which is the ſtrongeſt and moſt ſtately that belongs to the Family, the Apartments have rich Furniture, and coſtly Paintings: The Library, founded by their late learned and brave *D. Auguſtus*, is admir'd by all Strangers, and reckon'd one of the beſt in *Europe*. In 1604, Mr. *Hamiſius*, the Library-Keeper, gave an Account, That it contain'd 124000 Volumes, which Dr. *Nicholſon* queſtions, ſince by an Account of it publiſh'd in 1660, as is ſuppos'd by *Conringius*, it contain'd only 27666 Volumes, and 115504 Treatiſes by 56393 Authors. Among the Manuſcripts, which are about 2000, thoſe of the greateſt Rarity are, 1. 438 Folio's of *French* Embaſſies, tranſcrib'd out of the *French* King's Library at the Charge of the Founder. 2. A Latin Pſalter, *In Notis Ciceronianis*. 3. The Four Evangeliſts in *Syriac*, given by *A Kircher* in 1666. 4. An ancient Copy of the *Edda Iſlandorum*, with the *Skialdi* annex'd, much better than that publiſh'd by *Reſenius* in 1665. Beſides theſe, and the like Works of others, there are 41 Volumes writ by the Duke himſelf, whereof 12 are Muſick-Books. He gave alſo a ſhort Account of the moſt conſiderable Authors in his Library, in 4 large Volumes; and in a 5th, an Alphabetical Catalogue of the Authors. He wrote alſo a Commentary on *Trithemius*'s Cryptography, with other Works upon the like Subject, under the covert Name of *Guſtavus Selenus*; and writ another call'd *Schachſpiel*, with a Learned Account of the Antiquity and Myſtery of the *Chefs*; which altogether ſhew how well he deſerved the Character that a Learned Gentleman gave of him in the following Diſtich, writ under his Picture in the Library:

Tota tuos Europa Duces regeſque recenſe:
Hic Senio Cunctos vicit & Ingenio.

He died in 1666, aged 88. Duke *Rudolphus Auguſtus*, his Son, ſucceeded, who is a Mild, Learned, and Religious Prince.

3. *Helmſtadt*, reckon'd the oldeſt Town in *Saxony* next to *Bardewick*. It was built by *Charles the Great* in 782, and had its Name from the abundance of Elms about it. St. *Ludger* was ſent by the Emperor to convert this Country, and the Citizens pretend to ſhow the Church where he firſt preached. Their chief Ornament is the *Academia Julia*, or Univerſity, founded by *D. Julius* in 1566. Among other Privileges granted to it by the Emperor *Maximilian* II. one was, That he ſhould have the Title and Dignity of a Count *Palatine*: Upon which his eldeſt Son, *Henry Julius*, then Biſhop of *Halberſtadt*, was made the firſt Rector, and founded the fair College called *Julium Novum*. Theſe two Dukes furniſhed the Univerſity with a conſiderable Library. Among ſome Hundreds of other Manuſcripts, they have two old Volumes in Vellum, containing the *Pentateuch* in Hebrew, in a very fair Character, for which ſome *Jewiſh* Rabbies, well vers'd in Antiquity, offer'd ſome Hundreds of Rix-Dollars. After the Death of Duke *Frederick Ulrick*, the laſt Prince of the ancient Houſe of *Wolfembuttel*, the Dukes of *Lunenburg* agreed, That each of the Dukes Regent ſhould be Rector in their Turns Year about, and ſo it has continued ſince. No Univerſity in the Empire has bred more Learned Men in one Century than this, nor had more famous Profeſſors; witneſs, *Caſelius*, *Horſtius*, *Forſterus*, *Reinecius*, *Meibomius*, *Stukius*, *Lampadius*, *Horneius*, *Calixti*, *Conringius*, *Cellarius*, &c. This Town lies 24 Miles E. of *Brunſwick* and *Wolfembuttel*, in Long. 31. 16. Lat. 52. 32.

4 *Hanover*, the Metropolis of the Dutchy of *Calenberg*, whence the Duke's Palace was removed hither by *George* Duke of *Brunſwick Calenberg*, upon the Death of the ſaid *Frederick Ulrick*. The ancient Name of the Town was *Lawenrode*, from a neigh-

Digitized by Google

bouring Caſtle, ſubject to the Counts of that Name. About *Henry the Lion*'s Time, it was called *Hanover*, being at that Time a Ferry over the *Lina*, and the Word ſignifying *Have over*. The River divides it into two Parts: The City is handſome, and well built, and is the ordinary Reſidence of the Elector. Moſt of the Houſes are of Timber, interlay'd with Brick or Plaiſter; but they have many that are likewiſe of Brick and Stone. The Streets are regular and broad, and well furniſh'd with Lanterns every where, to give Light in the Winter. The Fortifications are in good Order, and Ravelins before the Gate well mounted with Cannon. The Elector's Palace or Caſtle is at one End of the City, near the Ramparts is a large Building of Free-Stone, with ſeveral ſquare Courts, and fine Stair-Caſes. The Furniture within is very rich, and his Court is one of the moſt ſplendid in the Empire. His Troop of Horſe-Guards conſiſts of 150 proper Men, with good Horſes, and fine Equipage. He has two Regiments of Foot-Guards, of one Battalion each, cloath'd in Red lin'd with Blue; and in Time of Peace he uſually kept 6000 Foot and 6000 Horſe in Pay, before the Dutchy of *Zell* fell to him. The moſt remarkable Churches are, 1. That dedicated to St. *James*, in which there are two Crucifixes with the Pictures of the Apoſtles, and many Saints. 2. That dedicated to the *Holy Croſs*, built of Stone, and much finer and neater than the other: It has a double Row of Galleries round from the Altar, and before the firſt the Hiſtory of the Goſpel, divided into 53 Parts, and painted by the beſt Maſters. This City is enrich'd by the Elector's Court, and 4 Fairs Annually kept here, to which abundance of Foreigners, as well as others, reſort; and they have alſo a conſiderable Trade from *Brewhane*, of which they export conſiderable Quantities. This Town lies about Long. 29. Lat. 52. 20.

5. *Hamelen*, an ancient City on the Mouth of the *Hamel*, and the Banks of the *Weſer*, on the Borders of the Dutchy of *Calenberg*. 'Tis the Key of the Country, and therefore the beſt fortified and gariſon'd of any in the Dutchy. The Records of this City give an Account of a ſtrange Accident which befel them the 26th of *June*, 1284. Being at that Time much peſter'd with Rats, which they could by no means deſtroy, a Stranger at laſt undertook it, on Promiſe of Reward; and immediately taking a Tabrel and Pipe, the Rats follow'd his Muſick to the River, where they were all drown'd; but being deny'd his Reward, he left the Town in a Rage, and threaten'd Revenge: Accordingly he return'd next Year, and by the ſame Muſick entic'd moſt of the Children of the Town after him to the Mouth of a great Cave on the Top of a neighbouring Hill called *Koppelberg*, where he and they enter'd; but were never more heard of. In Remembrance of this ſad Accident, the Citizens for many Years after dated all their publick Writings from the Day they loſt their Children, as appears by many old Deeds and Records. They ſtill call the Street through which the Children paſs'd, *Tabret Street*; and at the Mouth of the Cave there is a Monument of Stone, with an Inſcription in barbarous Latin Verſe, giving an Account of this Tragical Story, by which the Citizens loſt 130 Boys. In 1633, the *Swedes* gain'd a great Victory over the Imperialiſts near this Town; and that ſame Year *George* Duke of *Brunſwick* retook it. It lies 35 Miles N. from *Gottingen*, and 28 S. from *Hanover*, in Long. 28. 10. Lat. 52.

Other Towns here are, 1. *Northeim*, on the *Lein*, a pretty ſmall Town. 2. *Gottingen*, on the ſame River, ſuppos'd to be the *Munitium* of the Ancients. The Imperialiſts beſieg'd it in vain in 1641. 3. *Munden*, on the Confluence of the *Fulda* and *Weſer*. It was almoſt entirely deſtroy'd by the Imperialiſts under Count *Tilly* in 1625. 4. *Lavenſtein*, where there are Salt-Pits. 5. *Calenberg*, with a ſtrong Caſtle, 12 Miles S. from *Hanover*.

The Principality of Grubbenhagen.

IT ſignifies a Wood or Forreſt belonging to the Family of the *Gruhes*, who built a Caſtle there, that gave Name to the Country. 'Tis moſt overgrown with Woods of Fir and Pine, formerly Part of the *Hercynian* Forreſt, now called *Hartz*, becauſe of the great Quantity of Roſin and Pitch diſtill'd from the Trees. In this Country are moſt

Digitized by Google

most of the Mines of Silver, Copper, and Lead, belonging to the Elector. The chief of 'em are, *Rammelsberg*, *Wildman*, and *Zellerfeld*. *Rammelsberg* is a high Mountain near the City of *Goslar*. The Mines here were discover'd by one *Ramme*, a Hunter, whose Horse's Foot struck up a Piece of Ore in 972. Upon which the Emperor *Otho* I. got a Company of *Franks*, who understood Minerals, to refine the Metal, from whom the Town of *Frankenburg*, near this Place, had its Name. The Miners increasing, they found out that of *Wildman* in 1045; and that of *Zellerfeld*, which is the chief, in 1070. The Overseer of the Mines keeps his Court here, and pays the Workmen every *Saturday*. The chief Minerals in those Mines are Silver, Litharge, Lead, and two Sorts of Copper, one melted from the Ore, and the other made by Vitriol-Water, in which they steep great Plates of Iron in Troughs made on purpose. They find many other Minerals here, which yield much Money; but frequently kill the Workmen by their nauseous Smells. The chief of these are, 1. Grey Vitriol. 2. The Ink-Stone, of many Colours; from which two, bray'd and boil'd together, is made Green Vitriol. 3. Another Vitriol, which grows like Icecicles, and is us'd without any further cleansing. 4. Blue Vitriol, from Copper-Ore. 5. White Vitriol, from Lead-Ore. 6. Misy, of the Nature and Colour of Brimstone. 7. Brimstone, from a peculiar Sort of Ore, from whence the *Flores Sulphuris* drop like Icecicles. The chief Town is *Eymbecke*, so called from the Confluence of a great many Rivulets. 'Tis pretty well fortified, and the neighbouring Country abounds with Corn. 'Twas formerly an Imperial Town, but submitted to the Duke of *Brunswick*, to be freed from the Oppression of the Counts of *Welen*. It had formerly a considerable Trade in *Bruhon*. 2. *Grubbenhagen*; the Castle, formerly mentioned, on the *Line*. 3. *Lutterberg*, with the Title of a County towards the Head of that River. 4. *Andreasberg*, a little Town, with rich Iron Mines. 5. *Clausthal*. 6 *Altenaw*. 7. *Osterod*; all inhabited by Miners, who live so much under Ground, that they do not much affect good Houses above it.

The County of Blankemburg *and* Reinstein.

ITS ancient Name was *Hartsgow*, *i. e.* the *Hercynian* County; but the present Name is derived from the Forts of *Blankemburg* and *Reinstein*, and is much contracted in its Boundaries. It lies S. from *Brunswick*, S W. from *Magdeburg*, W. from *Halberstade*, N. from *Thuringia*, and E. from *Hildesheim*.

The Air is very sharp, especially in the Winter, being much exposed to the North Winds; so that the Snow lies on the Mountains till Midsummer. The Inhabitants are strong and vigorous, and many of them live to 100 or 110 Years of Age. The highest Mountain in this Country, and perhaps in *Germany*, is the *Brustertus* of the *Latini*, now called *Broxberg*; concerning which, the common People tell many fabulous Things.

They have little Corn; but the Vallies abound with Cattle, and their Forrests with Venisons of all sorts, and have abundance of Iron Mines.

The greatest Curiosity of Nature here, is a huge Cave betwixt *Blankemburg* and *Elbingerode*, called *Bumanshole*, from *Buman*, the Discoverer. The Mouth is so narrow, that one must creep in, where soon after they come to a dark high Gallery, the End of which was never yet found; tho' some of the Miners have confidently asserted, they have gone as far as *Goslar* under Ground, which is 20 Miles. They say, That a young ventrous Fellow going into it alone, his Light went out, and he wander'd 8 Days before he found his Way back. At his Return, his Hair was perfectly grey, and he told many frightful Stories of Spirits, some of whom condemn'd him to be hang'd, and put a Rope about his Neck; but let him go. Others pretend also to have met with Spirits there, but more civil ones. In this Cave are frequently found large Bones of strange Creatures, which the neighbouring Gentry keep for Rarities; and among others, they found the Skeleton of a Man of a monstrous Size.

Near the Monastery of *Michaelstein*, not far from *Blankemburg*, there are two high Rocks

Rocks fronting one another, which repreſent Monks in their proper Habits, as if they had been form'd by Art, and therefore are call'd the *Monks Craigs*. The Country abounds with high and inacceſſible Rocks, on the Tops of which there are old Forts and Caſtles; but the only habitable one almoſt remaining is that of *Blaikenburg*, where the Duke of *Wolfembuttel* reſides when he hunts. Many of them have been hewn out of entire Rocks. The moſt remarkable of thoſe ruinous Caſtles is that of *Hartſburg*, near the *Brockberg*, which they ſay was built by the *Chauci*, a Branch of the *Saxons*, 300 Years before Chriſt. Here they had alſo a Temple for *Saturn*, repreſented like an old Man, ſtanding bare-foot on the prickled Back of a Ruff, to denote the Security of his Adorers (ſays *Pomarius*) in their hardeſt Undertakings. In his Right Hand he had a Bucket of Water, ſtrowed over with Flowers and Fruits, to ſignify that he would ſend them Rain and Plenty. In his Left he had a Wheel, to ſignify that his Worſhippers ought to live in Unity. *Mechtilde*, Daughter to the Emperor *Henry the Fowler*, writ the Hiſtory of this Idol in a rich Silk Coat of Needle-work, which the *Swedes* took out of the Cathedral of *Goſlar* during the *German* Civil Wars, and carried to *Sweden*. This Idol and his Temple were deſtroyed by Command of *Charlemagne*, and the Name of the Place called *Hartſburg*. In the Time of *D. Julius*, a Salt Fountain was found at the bottom of this Hill: Upon which a ſmall Town was built for the Workmen, called *Julius-Hall*, now grown rich and large by their Trade in Salt, Copper-Kettles, Pots, Wire, *&c.*

Goſlar, an Imperial Town, is ſituate in this Country, on the River *Goſe*, but independent on the Dutchy of *Brunſwick*, and has the ſame Privilege with other Imperial Cities, beſides an Exemption from Tolls in all the Markets of the Empire but three. In all Imperial Writs, 'tis called, *Nobile Membrum Imperii*, and is ſuppoſed to have been built by the Emperor *Henry* I. who had a Palace here. The Houſes are cover'd with a glittering Slate, very ornamental, which in a clear Day dazzles one's Eyes. Moſt of the Inhabitants are Miners, and their Trade conſiſts in digging and cleanſing, and tempering Minerals. It lies 25 Miles S. of *Brunſwick*, in Long 29 ½. Lat. 51. 47 ½.

The Arms of the Elector of *Hanover* and the Duke of *Wolfembuttel*; *Gules*, two *Leopards* Or, *Langued*, for *Brunſwick*. *Gules*, a *Horſe. Argent*, for *Lower Saxony*. Or, a *Lion-Azure*, ſtrow'd with *Harts-Gules*, for *Luneneburg*. *Azure*, a *Lion-Argent* Crown'd, for *Eberſtein*. *Gules*, a *Lion*-Or, with a Border Campone, *Argent* and *Azure*, for *Hamburg*. *Azure*, a *Lion-Argent*, for *Diep-Holtz*: *Argent*, an *Eagle-Gules*, for *Diep-Holtz*. A *Scutcheon-Argent* for the Electoral Dignity. *Gules*, a *Lion-Argent*, for *Lauterburg*: Or, 3 *Eſſets-Gules*, for *Lauterburg*. *Argent*, a *Hart-Sable*, for *Clettenburg*. Quarter'd in the 1ſt and 4th Or, two Bears Feet in *Pale*, in the 2d cut in the upper Part Or and *Gules*, and in the lower Part *Gironne*, *Argent* and *Azure*, for *Huye* and *Bruckhauſen*. *Checkee*, *Argent* and *Gules*, for *Honſtein*. *Argent*, a Branch of Deers-Horns *Gules*, for *Reinſtein*. The like *Sable* for *Blankenberg*. The Helmets Or, a Peacock's Tail, with Branches of Deers-Horns on the Sides, for *Honſtein-Lauterburg* Or, two Bears-Feet, for *Huye*. Or, a *Beam-Argent*, with a Horſe a-croſs it *Argent*, for *Brunſwick*. Or, two *Horns-Argent*, charg'd with 6 Red Enſigns, for *Bruckhauſen*. Or, two Buffle's-Horns, with two Branches of Deers-Horns on the Sides, for *Reinſtein-Blankenſtein*.

MAGDEBURG.

HIſtorians ſay, this is as ancient a City as moſt in *Germany*. Some think, it was founded by *Druſus*, and his Son *Germanicus*, in the Time of *Auguſtus*; but *Pyrckeimer* thinks it older, and to be *Ptolemy's Veſocium*. They who aſcribe its Original to *Druſus*, ſay, it was called *Magdeburg*; in *German*, the Maids Town, the ſame with the Greek *Parthenopolis*, becauſe the Image of *Venus* was there worſhip'd; which, together with its Temple, was deſtroyed by Order of *Charlemagne*, who built St. *Stephen's* Church there, with its Treaſure. An ancient Chronicle of *Brunſwick* deſcribes this Image thus: She was repreſented by a naked Woman, with bright ſhining Eyes, and long yellow Hair, in a gilt Chariot drawn by two white Swans and two white Turtles, a Garland of Mirtle on her Head, a flaming

Digitized by Google

flaming Torch on her Breaſt, a Globe in her Right Hand, and three Golden Apples in her Left. She was attended by three *Graces*, who cover'd one another's Faces with a Veil. The Dutchy of *Magdeburg* takes its Name from this City, and is 60 Miles long from E. to W. and in ſome Parts 30 from N. to S. It has *Brunſwick* on the W. Part of *Brandenburg* and *Saxony* on the E. Part of *Mecklenburg* and *Brandenburg* on the N. *Anhalt* and *Halberſtade* on the S. and the *Elb* runs through the Country.

The Town lies about Long. 31. 25. Lat. 52. 70 *Engliſh* Miles W. from *Berlin*, 45 N.W. of *Wittenberg*, 6 E. from *Brunſwick*, and 60 N from *Leipſick*. It was firſt Wall'd about 940, and enlarged by *Edgitha*, Daughter to the *Engliſh Saxon* King *Edmund*, (Wife to the Emperor *Otho* I.) who ſome ſay founded it. This is confirmed as to the Cathedral Church at leaſt, by Dr. *Brown*'s Obſervations, who ſays, 'tis a very fair Structure, built after the *Engliſh* Model, which has the Effigies of that Empreſs in Stone, with a Repreſentation of 18 Casks of Gold by her, which ſhe gave to it. That Emperor prevail'd with the Pope to make *Magdeburg* an Archbiſhoprick, who ſhould be ſubject to none in Spirituals but the See of *Rome*; ſo that he was called Primate of *Germany*; but *Cranzius* ſays, the three Spiritual Electors, and the Archbiſhop of *Saltzburg*, refuſed to own him as ſuch. In 1566, the Chapter embrac'd *Luther*'s Reformation, and choſe *Joachim Frederick*, Son to *John George* Elector of *Brandenburg*, their Adminiſtrator, on certain Conditions; for which, and refuſing the *Interim*, it loſt the Title of Archbiſhoprick. *Joachim* ſucceeding to the Electorate after his Father's Death, the Chapter choſe his Brother *Chriſtian William*, who continued till 1631, that Count *Tilly* and the Imperialiſts took the Town after a long Siege, put about 36000 Perſons to the Sword, and carried *Chriſtian William* to *Auſtria*, where he turn'd Papiſt. After this the Chapter elected *Auguſtus* II. Son to *John George* I. Elector of *Saxony*, to be Coadjutor: After whoſe Death, it was agreed by the Treaty of *Weſtphalia*, That the Archbiſhoprick of *Magdeburg* ſhould be annexed for ever to the Electorate of *Brandenburg*, by the Name of a Durchy; and *Auguſtus* dying in 1680, it was accordingly annex'd, and adds to the Revenues of that Family 600000 Crowns *per Annum*. Dr. *Nicholſon* gives this Account of the above-mention'd Siege in 1631: After a long and brave Defence, and rejecting of all Propoſals, without Security for their Religion and Liberties, Count *Tilly* ſtorm'd the Town the 10th of *May*, order'd his Men to ſpare neither Age nor Sex, to burn all the Churches and private Houſes, and extirpate their Name. Accordingly they ripp'd up Women with Child, murder'd ſucking Infants before their Mothers Eyes, raviſh'd the Virgins in the open Street; to prevent which, ſome of them drown'd themſelves, and others went into the Fire before *Tilly*'s Face; 16 Churches and Chapels, many of them cover'd with Lead, and one with Copper, were burnt down; and all the Houſes deſtroy'd, except a few Fiſhermen's Cottages, which the Imperialiſts did not think worth while. So that of 40000 Citizens, ſcarce 400 eſcaped, and thoſe deſtitute of all Support. The brutiſh General us'd afterwards to boaſt of this Cruelty in his Cups, and call'd it the Marriage-Feaſt of *Magdeburg*. He ſpar'd the Cathedral, which is very magnificent: It has 49 Altars, and the high Altar in the Quire is of one Stone, of divers Colours, curiouſly wrought, 9 *Hamburg* Ells long, 4 broad, and one thick, and is valued at two Tun of Gold. Tho' the Elector of *Brandenburg* has been very liberal to this City, yet it never recover'd its ancient Glory. They have rebuilt one ſtately Church; and Dr. *Brown* ſays, that of the Jeſuits is very fine. In the Cathedral of St. *Maurice*, he ſaw the Statue of the 5 wiſe Virgins ſmiling, and of the 5 fooliſh ones lamenting, both very well done. They pretend, among other Relicks, to ſhow the Baſon in which *Pilate* waſhed his Hands, and the Ladder on which the Cock crow'd after St. *Peter* denied his Maſter. In the Ruins of the Cloyſter of the *Auſtin* Fryars, there's *Luther*'s Chamber, Bedſtead and Table, with *German* Verſes over the Door, expreſſing ſo much. Dr. *Brown* obſerves, That the firſt Tournaments in *Germany* were appointed here by the Emperor *Henry the Fowler* in 638, where none were admitted but the ancient Nobility. All Baſtards, Uſurpers, Traitors, Oppreſſors of Widows and Orphans, Hereticks, Murderers, Cowards,

Digitized by Google

ards, such as were of ignoble Extraction by one Side, or had offended Ladies in Word or Deed, were excluded. None but one of a Family were admitted at a time. Princes were allow'd four Squires, Counts and Barons three, Knights two, and Gentlemen one. Such as enter'd the Lists, gave in their Names and Quality at the President's Lodging, in Presence of three Heralds, to whom he gave his Helmet and Sword, and, after Confession, enter'd the List. Their Horses were to be without Defect, their Furniture according to Rule, their Saddles without rising before or behind; and after Performance, the Judges gave Sentence, and the Conqueror had the Prize given him by some Lady, or the Prince who furnish'd it; but these Pastimes were abolish'd afterwards, because of the Emulation they occasion'd among the Nobility; for at the 23d Tournament held at *Darmstadt* in 1473, the Animosity arose so high, that 17 *Franconian* Gentlemen, and 9 *Hessians*, were kill'd on the Spot. This Town had formerly the supreme Jurisdiction in Spirituals and Temporals over all *Saxony*. The Emperor *Otho* I. made it an Imperial Town; but now 'tis subject to the Elector of *Brandenburg*, who is Conditector, with the King of *Sweden*, of the Circle of *Lower Saxony*. Their Archbishop was formerly a Count *Palatine*, and determin'd all Causes; but now they have no other Court but what is kept by their Burgomasters and Magistrates. That Part of the Dutchy on the W. of the *Elb* abounds in Corn, but has no Wood; and that on the E. has Plenty of Wood, but no Corn. There are 28 other Towns in the Dutchy, but merit no particular Description. The City is still of considerable Extent, has a good Trade, and is well fortified.

The Principality of Halberstat,

HAS Part of the Dutchy of *Brunswick* and *Magdeburg* on the N. and *Anhalt* on the S. the Bishoprick of *Hildesheim* on the W. and the Electorate of *Saxony* on the E. is about 36 *English* Miles long from E. to W. and 25 broad. The Name comes from the principal Town, which some will have to be the *Elegesi* of *Ptolemy*; but without Reason. Authors are not agreed as to the Reason of the Name; but the most probable is *Halbestat*, because the first Foundations seem'd to have been twice as large as the Town now is; so that the Word signifies half a City. The Country is fruitful in Corn, and exceeds its Neighbours in pleasant Forrests, and Plenty of Venison. Their largest Park is the *Hackel*, in the middle of the Country, which gives Name to the ancient Barony of *Hackelborn*. On the N. W. there is nothing but Fens and Marshes, through which there are Ways cast up to *Helmstat*, *Brunswick*, *&c.* It was made a Bishoprick by *Charlemagne* about 780. We have still some Commentaries on the Scripture by *Heyme*, their 3d Bishop, who died in 827. Their 15th Bishop, *Rainhard*, routed the Emperor *Henry* V. in the Woods of *Welfo*. Their 18th, *Ulrick*, was routed by *Henry the Lion*, Duke of *Brunswick*, who took and burnt the Town, with the Citizens and Clergy, who fled to the Cathedral. Their 29th was *Albert* Duke of *Brunswick*, who, as the History of *Brunswick* says, fought about 20 Battles, and was in most of them a Conqueror. Their 31st was *Albert*, a great Philosopher, who was routed by *Gerard the Eloquent*, Bishop of *Hildesheim*; in Remembrance of which, those of *Halberstat* have a Saying, *That Rhetorick was too hard for Logick*. Their 44th was *Henry Julius*, Son to *Julius* Duke of *Brunswick*, chosen when he was two Years old, on Condition that the Dean and Chapter should have the Government for 12 Years, and pay an Annual Maintenance to their Infant Bishop. In 1591, he established *Luther*'s Reformation here. He was succeeded by his Son *Henry Charles*, who died at 6 Years of Age: He by his Brother *Rudolph*, who died the next Year, and was succeeded by his Brother *Christian*, a great, but unfortunate Warrior, in the Civil Wars of *Germany*. Their 48th and last Bishop was *Leopold William* of *Austria*, who restor'd Popery; but the *Swedes* afterwards retaking the Town, did again settle *Lutheranism* there, and kept the City and Diocese till it was secularized, and given to the Elector of *Brandenburg* by the Treaty of *Westphalia*.

The Town is well built, the Streets straight and uniform, and many of the Buildings fair and stately. The most remarka-

Digitized by Google

markable Thing here is an Inn, called the *Commiſs*, reckon'd the largeſt in *Europe*, and has the beſt and moſt Accommodation of the Sort for Strangers; ſo that in the Time of the Civil War, *Wallenſtein*, the Emperor's General, kept his Court in it for ſome Months, and found Lodgings in it for all his Attendants and Guards. It lies about Long. 30 ½. Lat. 52. upon the little River *Hoteim*, about 30 Miles S. W. from *Magdeburg*, and 30 S. from *Brunſwick*.

Other Towns of Note here are, 1. *Gruningen*, formerly the Reſidence of their Biſhops, with an ancient Caſtle, built by *Bruno*, and rebuilt by *Henry Julius* above-mention'd: It has a curious gilt Chapel, with a fine large gilt Organ, built by the ſaid *Henry Julius*, and a great Tun, in Imitation of that at *Heidelberg*, but much leſs; yet it contains 966 Hogſheads of Wine. 2. *Oſcherſleben*, a ſmall Town on the Borders of *Magdeburg*. 3. *Oſterwick*, a ſtrong little Town on the W. of this Country, from whence the Biſhoprick was removed to *Halberſtat* about 819. 4. *Quedlimburg*, lies alſo in this Principality; but ſince 'tis reckoned to belong to *Saxony*, we refer the Deſcription to that Country.

The Biſhoprick of Hildeſheim.

WE return now towards the N. E. to this Biſhoprick, which has *Halberſtat* on the N. W. the Dutchy of *Lunenburg* on the N. and is encompaſſed with the Dominions of *Brunſwick*. The Biſhoprick was founded by the Emperor *Lewis the Pious*, and, as ſome think, had its Name from his Mother *Hilda*, the Abbreviation of *Hildegard*. *Gunther*, a poor Prieſt of *Elz*, was their firſt Biſhop, about 822, when the Dioceſe was of ſmall Extent; but afterwards had ſeveral Counties added, which were taken away by the Duke of *Brunſwick* in 1553, during his War with their Biſhop; and what he took, was confirmed to him by the Emperor *Charles* V. ſo that 'tis not now above 40 *Engliſh* Miles from E. to W. It was formerly in the Poſſeſſion of the Duke of *Brunſwick* for many Years; but by the Treaty of *Brunſwick* in 1653, it was reſtor'd to the Elector of *Cologne*, as Adminiſtrator, who has a Suffragan that is the immediate Governor of it, and is the only Popiſh Biſhop in *Lower Saxony*; but the greateſt Part of the Dioceſe are *Lutherans*. The Reformation was introduc'd in 1552 by the Citizens, in Oppoſition to the Canons, and made a great Progreſs. By the Treaty of *Brunſwick*, *Lutheraniſm* was confin'd only to ſome Places; but by the Treaty of *Weſtphalia*, they were left at Liberty. The Buildings of the Town are old faſhion'd, but neat. In their Cathedral, there are the Relicks of the old *Saxon* Idol *Irmenſewl*, formerly mention'd. The Jeſuits have a fine College here. Their chief Trade is in Corn; and being a Hans-Town, they are govern'd by their own Laws. The Imperialiſts took and ſack'd it in 1632, and *George* Duke of *Brunſwick* retook it next Year. The Biſhop is a Prince of the Empire. The Town lies in Long. 28 ¾. Lat. 52 ½. 15 Miles S. E. from *Hanover*, and 25 S. W. from *Brunſwick*.

They have had 56 Biſhops, of which the preſent Elector of *Cologne* is the laſt. There is little remarkable ſaid of them by Dr. *Nicholſon*, only that *Gerard*, Baron of *Berge*, their 38th Biſhop, is ſaid to have cover'd the Tower of the Cathedral with Gold inſtead of Lead, as *Buntingius* reports. *John*, their 46th, loſt moſt of the Dioceſe in his War with the Duke of *Brunſwick*; and *Valentin*, their 49th, recover'd moſt of it by Law in the Emperor's Court.

Other Places of Note here are, 1. *Peyna*, a Biſhoprick, 15 Miles W. from *Brunſwick*, the *Caſtrum Peyxum* of the Latins, a little Town with a ſtrong Caſtle, on a Hill, the chief Strength of the Biſhoprick. In 1553, a Battle was fought here between *Maurice* Elector of *Saxony* and *Albert* Marquis of *Brandenburg*, wherein the latter gain'd the Battle, and the former loſt his Life. 2. *Marienburg*, a Fort near *Hildeſheim*, built by Biſhop *Henry* III. when he was preſſed by the Dukes of *Brunſwick*. 3. *Poppenburg*. 4. *Daſſel*. 5. *Bokenem*. 6. *Woldenburg*, with others; all of them chief Towns of Counties of the ſame Names, but of little Note otherwiſe, except 1. *Elz*, on the Borders of the Dutchy of *Calenburg*, called *Aulica*, becauſe *Charlemagne* ſojourn'd here during his War with the *Saxons*, and founded a Biſhoprick, which was afterwards transferred to *Hildeſheim*. 2. *Sarſtede*, on

Digitized by Google

the Conflux of the *Innerste* and the *Peyne*, famous for a Battle gain'd there by the Duke of *Brunſwick-Lunenburg* over the Imperialiſts, as *La Foreſt* informs us.

The Abbey of *Gondersheim* lies on the Borders of this Biſhoprick: It was founded in the 9th Century for Ladies of a Noble Family, and embrac'd the Reformation in the 16th Century.

The Dutchy of Sax-Lawenburg.

WE come further N. to this Dutchy, which lies on the N. and S. Banks of the *Elb*, between *Holſtein* on the W. and N. *Mecklenburg* on the E. and *Lunenburg* on the S. 'Tis divided by the *Elb*, and is ſubject to its own Duke, of the ancient Family of the Dukes of *Saxony*: It was comprehended within that Dutchy till about 1260, when *John*, the youngeſt Son of *Albert* Duke of *Saxony*, had it for his Share; and his Succeſſors call'd themſelves Dukes of *Angria* and *Weſtphalia*; but Duke *Erick* V. miſſing of his Pretenſions to the Electorate after the Death of *Albert*, added the Name of *Sax*, to keep up his Pretenſions. *Julius Francis*, their laſt Duke, dying without Heirs-Male in 1689, the Claims of the Elector of *Saxony*, the Prince of *Anhalt*, and the Duke of *Lunenburg-Zell*, to it, are not yet determin'd; but the latter ſeiz'd it, and kept Poſſeſſion; ſo that 'tis now in the Houſe of *Hanover*.

The chief Town, *Lawenburg*, lies in Long. 29. 47. Lat. 53. 28. on the Conflux of the *Steckenitz* and *Elb*, with a ſtrong Caſtle, built on a Hill, over againſt the Fortreſs of *Artemberg* on the other Side the River. 'Tis a ſmall Town, but populous, and has a good Trade. 'Tis ſaid to have been built by *Henry the Lion*, Duke of *Saxony*, and from him called *Leoburgum*; but being much damaged by War, it was rebuilt and enlarged by *Bernard* of *Anhalt*. It lies about 35 Miles S. E. from *Hamburg*, and about 20 N. E. from *Lunenburg*.

Other Places of Note here are, 1. *Mollen*, famous for the Quarrels it has occaſion'd betwixt the Dukes of *Sax-Lawenburg* and the Town of *Lubeck*. 2. *Wittenberg*, a pretty little Town, with a Caſtle, on the *Elb*. 3. *Ratzeburg*, on a Lake of that Name, 15 Miles N. of *Lawenburg*, and about 10 N. of *Lubeck*, made a Biſhop's See under the Archbiſhop of *Bremen*, by *Henry the Lion*, and continued ſubject to its Biſhop till by the Treaty of *Munſter* it was ſeculariz'd, and given to the Duke of *Mecklenburg*; but the Caſtle and Town to the Duke of *Lawenburg*. The Duke of *Lunenburg* ſeiz'd and fortified it in 1689, and the King of *Denmark* took it in 1693, and demoliſhed the Fortifications before he reſtor'd it. 'Tis the chief Town of a ſmall Principality of the ſame Name, and embrac'd *Lutheraniſm* in 1566. The Dukes of *Lawenburg* were anciently buried here. Part of the Dutchy of *Bremen* is ſubject to this Country, as has been formerly mention'd, with the Towns of *Frankenhauſen*, *Saxenhauſen*, and ſome others on the *Elb*.

HOLSTEIN.

THis Country was anciently Part of the *Cherſoneſus Cimbrica*, and now lies in that which was the S. Part of it, where it joins to *Germany*. It has the Dutchy of *Sleſwick* and the River *Eyder* on the N. the *German* Ocean on the W. the Dutchy of *Bremen* on the S. W. the Territory of *Hamburg* and *Lawenburg* on the S. *Mecklenburg* on the S. E. and the *Baltick* on the E. 'Tis divided into *Holſtein Proper*, *Wagria*, *Stormar*, and *Dithmarſh*.

Holſtein Proper is again divided into the E. and W. Parts; the firſt belongs to the Duke, and the ſecond to the King of *Denmark*.

Some think the Country derives its Name from the *German* Word *Holt*, which ſignifies a Forreſt.

The *Atlas Hiſtorique* has a large Tree of the Family of *Holſtein*, and its different Branches. Moſt Authors derive it from *Wittikind the Great*, from whom deſcended *Adolph* I. Earl of *Schawenburg*, to whom *Lotharius* the Emperor gave *Holſtein Proper*, and *Stormar*, for his Service in the Wars, with the Title of Earl of *Holſtein*, about 1133 according to the *Atlas*, but 1114 according to *Heylin*. He was ſucceeded by *Adolph* II. who having made a full Conqueſt of the Country, planted it with other Colonies of *Germans*, that in Time wore out the ancient Inhabitants, call'd the *Slavi*. His Succeſſor

Adolph

Digitized by Google

Adolph III. was expell'd his Dominions by *Canute* K. of *Denmark*. *Adolph* IV. his Succeſſor, recover'd the Country; after which he retir'd into a Monaſtery, and died in 1260. He was ſucceeded by *Gerard* I. who died in 1281. His Son, *Henry* I. ſhared *Holſtein* with his Brother, and died in 1310. His Son *Gerard* II. ſirnam'd *The Great*, was ſlain in his Bed by a *Dane* in 1340. His Son *Henry* II. chas'd the King of *Sweden* out of his Country, and died in 1381. His Son *Gerard* III. join'd *Kiel* to his Dominions; and this Line fail'd in *Adolph* his Son, who died in 1459, having declared *Chriſtian* I. of *Denmark* his Succeſſor, being Son to *Theodorick the Fortunate*, by *Hedwige* of *Holſtein Schawenburg*. *Chriſtian* I. was choſen King of *Sweden*, and got *Holſtein* erected into a Dutchy by the Emperor *Frederick* III. and died in 1481. He was ſucceeded by his Son *John*, who was alſo King of *Norway* and *Sweden*, and died in 1521. He was ſucceeded by *Chriſtian* II. who was dethron'd, and died in Priſon, as we mentioned in the Hiſtory of *Denmark*. He was ſucceeded by *Frederick* I. Son to *Chriſtian* I. who eſtabliſh'd the *Augſburg* Confeſſion in his Dominions in 1523. From him are deſcended the preſent Branch of *Holſtein Gottorp*, and the Royal Family of *Denmark*, as we mentioned in the Hiſtory of *Denmark*. His ſecond Son *Adolph* ſucceeded to the Dutchy of *Holſtein*, was made Knight of the Garter by Queen *Elizabeth* in 1560, conquer'd *Ditmarſh*, and oblig'd the *Hamburgers* to do him Homage. He died in 1586, and was ſucceeded by his Son *Adolph*, who firſt ſucceeded his Brother *Philip* in the Archbiſhoprick of *Bremen*, and Biſhoprick of *Lubeck*, which he afterwards reſign'd, married the Daughter to *Frederick* II. of *Denmark*, and died in 1616. His Son *Frederick* ſucceeded, and was famous for his Learning, and Embaſſy, through *Muſcovy*, to the King of *Perſia* in 1633, and died in 1659. He was ſucceeded by *Chriſtian Albert*, who was expell'd his Dominions by the K. of *Denmark* in 1641, who demoliſh'd his ſtrong Towns; but was oblig'd to reſtore him to his Dominions by the neighbouring Princes, but chiefly by the Emperor and King *William* of *Great-Britain*'s Mediation in 1689, by a Treaty ſign'd the 30th of *June* that Year, when a General Amneſty was agreed on to the Subjects on both Sides. The other Branches of this Family are, that of *Sonderburg*, deſcended from *Chriſtian* III. the preſent Prince of which is *Erneſt Auguſtus*: From *John*, Son to *Chriſtian* III. deſcended the Branch of *Holſtein-Ploen*, the preſent Prince of which is *John Erneſt Ferdinand*: From *Joachim Erneſt* of this Branch, who died in 1671, deſcended the Branch of *Ploen* and *Nortburg*: From the ſame *John* deſcended the Branch of *Glucksburg*, of which *Philip Erneſt* is Prince: From *John*'s Son *Alexander* came the Branch of *Holſtein-Beck*, whoſe preſent Prince is *Frederick William*: The Branch of *Wiſenburg*, whoſe preſent Prince is *Frederick*: The Branch of *Frantzhagen*, whoſe preſent Prince is *Leopold Chriſtian*; and the Branch of *Silеſia*, whoſe preſent Prince is *Frederick Leopold*. The extinguiſh'd Branches we do not mention.

This Country in general is fruitful, and well ſeated for Trade: It abounds with Corn and Orchards, Black Cattle and Hogs, which are very numerous in their Woods. Its Extent from E. to W. is about 100 Miles, and from N. to S. about 50. The Inhabitants are of a ſtrong Conſtitution, Couragious, and Juſt; ſo that *Holſtein Glaube*, or the *Faithful Holſteiner*, is become a Proverb in theſe Parts.

The Towns in *Holſtein Proper* are, 1. *Kiel*, a Town of good Trade on the *Baltick*, about Long. 29. Lat. 54. 17. It derives its Name from a Neck of Land on which 'tis ſituated, about 45 Miles N. of *Hamburg*, and 40 N. W. from *Lubeck*. It has a good Harbour, well frequented, which, with the Town, is defended by a Caſtle on a neighbouring Hill. 'Tis populous and wealthy, is the Place where the States meet, and adorn'd with a ſtately Palace, and a *Franciſcan* Monaſtery, turn'd to an Hoſpital ſince the Reformation. An Univerſity was eſtabliſh'd here in 1669, which has had many Learned Profeſſors, and particularly *Moravius*. 'Tis divided into the New and Old Town: The New is large, and the Streets planted with Rows of Trees: The Old Town is a *Peninſula*, join'd to the Continent on the N. where 'tis fortified by deep Ditches, and has fine Walks of Trees on the Haven. Its Trade was more conſiderable in the Time of Duke *Frederick*, who ſent the Embaſſy above-mention'd into *Perſia*, in order to ſettle a Trade with that Country. 2. *Renſburg*, the chief Town of

Digitized by Google

West Holstein, a small Place, but well built, and accounted the greatest Strength of the Country. It has good Ramparts, and is defended by Morasses on the Side of *Flensburg*. It has also a neat Castle, built by *Gerard* II. Earl of *Holstein*. It lies 20 Miles W. from *Kiel*. 3. *Wilster*, a neat Town, on a River of that Name, about 27 Miles S. W. from *Rensburg*. 4. *Itzhoe*, on the *Stor*, about 25 Miles S. W. from *Rensburg*. It is a small Town, at the Foot of a Mountain, and has some Trade by the River: 'Tis defended by an old Castle. 5. *New Munster*, about 20 Miles further E. near the Head of the *Stor*.

The Province of Wagria *or* Wagerland,

HAS *Holstein* on the W. and is almost encompassed by the *Baltick*, and the two Rivers *Trave* on the S. and *Swentin* on the W. It extends about 50 Miles from N. to S. and 30 from E. to W. The greatest Part of this Country belongs to the Duke of *Holstein*. It had its Name from the *Wagrii*, said to be *Sclavonians*, who conquer'd it. Within this Province stands *Lubeck*, which we have already describ'd.

The other Places of Note here are, 1. *Oldesloe*, on the *Trave*, formerly the Capital of the Country. It is a fair little Town, about 17 Miles W. from *Lubeck*, and 7 S. from *Segeberg*. *John* Earl of *Wagria* bought it for 10000 Marks in 1338, and it was long a flourishing Town; but it suffered much by the Wars betwixt the Princes of *Pomerania* and *Sweden*; so that 'tis now ruinous, and inhabited mostly by Peasants. 2. *Segeberg*, on the *Trave*, about 20 Miles N. W. from *Lubeck*, and 30 E. from *Gluckstat*. It took its Name from the Castle, built on a neighbouring Hill by the Emperor *Lotharius*, about 1134, to check the *Sclavonians*. 3 *Ploen*, upon the Front of a Hill, and the Banks of the Lake of *Ploen*, encompassed by a Wood. This is a Place of Antiquity, and gives Title of Prince to that Branch of the Family of *Holstein*. The Lake, and a neighbouring Marsh, make it very strong, and 'tis likewise defended by a good Castle, built by *Joachim Ernest* of *Holstein*. It lies about 10 Miles N. from *Segeberg*, and 25 N. W. from *Lubeck*. The valiant Prince who bears that Title has signaliz'd himself in the Confederate Armies. 4. *Oldenburg*, an ancient Town in a *Peninsula* upon the *Baltick*, about 20 Miles N E. from *Ploen*. It gives Name to a Bailiwick, and was formerly the Metropolis of the *Wagrii* and *Venedi*. *Otho the Great*, or, as some say, *Charlemagne*, founded a Bishoprick here in 788, which was transported to *Lubeck* in 1162: It had formerly a great Trade, which is decay'd since *Margaret* of *Denmark* stopt up the Port. It likewise suffer'd much by Fire; so that 'tis now inconsiderable.

The Province of Ditmarsh,

HAS *Holstein Proper* on the E. the *German* Ocean on the W. *Denmark* on the N. and the *Eib* on the S. Some write it *Teutsmarsh*, from the ancient *Teutones*, Part of whom inhabited here, whose Valour they retain'd so much, that they would not submit to the Family of *Holstein*, till they succeeded to the Crown of *Denmark*, and then became too powerful for them. 'Tis divided into N. and S. the former belongs to the King of *Denmark*, and the latter to the Duke of *Holstein*, who shar'd it betwixt them, after having totally subdued it in 1559. This Country is fruitful, well water'd, and populous.

The chief Places are, 1. *Meldorp*, the chief Town of the Province, and a Place of good Trade. It lies on the *German* Ocean, about 20 Miles N. W. from *Gluckstat*. The Courts of Justice sit here. Their Church is large and ancient, being built when Christianity was first established here. They have a neat Altar, adorn'd with Paintings, and a Crucifix. 2. *Heyde*, a large, but poor City, on the Brink of a great barren Sand, which over-spreads the middle of the Country. 3. *Lunden*, near the Mouth of the *Eyder*, about 15 Miles N. of *Meldorp*, in the most Northerly Part of the Province. 'Tis a large Town, and belongs to the Duke of *Holstein*. 'Tis famous for Beer, which is exported to other Places. 4. *Brunsbuttel*, a Sea-Town on the *Elb*, 12 Miles S. from *Meldorp*. 5. *Westingburn*, upon the Coast, mid-way betwixt *Meldorp* and *Lunden*.

Stot-

Digitized by Google

Stormar, *or* Stormarſh.

THis Province is full of Moraſſes, along the Banks of the *Stor*. It has *Holſtein Proper* on the N. and *Hamburg* and *Lunenburg* on the S. The Soil is rich, reſembles *Holland* in its manner of Improvement, and Banks and Dikes to keep out the Sea, which ſometimes however overflows the low Grounds. The People have a good Trade by the Neighbourhood of *Hamburg* and the *Elb*. Moſt of this Province, except *Tritow*, and ſome ſmall Places on the E. is ſubject to the King of *Denmark*.

Places of Note here are, 1. *Altena*, a ſmall City, remarkable for the Treaty betwixt the King of *Denmark* and the Duke of *Holſtein-Gottorp*. It lies on the *Elb*, within a Mile or two of *Hamburg*; the *Calviniſts* of which City have their Worſhip here. 2. *Gluckſtat*, a little City on the *Elb*, about 27 Miles below *Hamburg*, on that ſame Side of the River. It is well fortified, and has fine Walks of Trees on the Ramparts. The King of *Denmark* has 2000 Foot in Gariſon. It was fortified by *Chriſtian* IV. of *Denmark* about 1620, and was made ſo ſtrong, that it held out a Siege of two Years againſt the Emperor *Ferdinand* II. and *Chriſtian* V. has ſince made it one of the moſt conſiderable Towns in *Germany*, by the great Privileges allow'd the Inhabitants. It can't be taken without a Fleet by Sea, which made the Imperialiſts miſcarry before it. There are ſeveral Canals in the Town, one of which divides it into two Parts: 'Tis croſſed by another at the End of the Market-place, which is very magnificent: At one Corner of it ſtands the great Church, where the *German* Calviniſts and Papiſts are each of them allow'd a Chapel. The Harbour is large and deep, and at the End of the Canal, which runs into it from the Town, there is a Tower built on Piles of Wood, round which there are Platforms with Batteries of Cannon, which command the *Elb*, 3. *Grempen*, on a ſmall River of the ſame Name, falls into the *Stor* about 5 or 6 Miles N. from *Gluckſtat*. 'Tis a ſtrong Place, and reckon'd one of the Keys of *Denmark*. The Fortifications were begun by *Chriſtian* IV. and finiſhed in 1628. It held out a Siege of 13 Months againſt Count *Wallenſtein*, and the Imperial Army; but at laſt ſubmitted upon honourable Terms. 4. *Pinnenberg*, about 10 Miles N. W. from *Hamburg*, noted only for giving Name to that County, which fell to the Crown of *Denmark* by the Death of *Otho*, laſt Earl of *Schaumberg* and *Pinnenberg*, in 1640. 5. *Bredenberg*, one of the faireſt little Towns in *Denmark*, the ancient Seat of the Noble Family of *Rentzow*. It made a ſtout Oppoſition againſt Count *Wallenſtein*, who took it at laſt, and put all the Gariſon to the Sword. 6. *Tritow*, a large Town, with a Bailiwick of the ſame Name, E. from *Hamburg*, and belongs to the Duke of *Holſtein*.

All the Difference betwixt the Royal Arms of *Denmark*, and the Ducal of *Holſtein*, is, That the Arms of *Denmark*, *Gothland*, *Slavia*, and *Sweden*, are not in the Ducal Arms; which, inſtead of a Royal Crown, have over them the three Helmets of *Norway*, *Sileſia*, and *Holſtein*. We gave an Account of the Arms of *Denmark* in the Deſcription of that Country; ſo that 'tis needleſs to repeat any thing here but the Difference.

Upper Saxony.

THis Country has on the N. the Principalities of *Magdeburg* and *Halberſtat*, and the Marquiſate of *Brandenburg*; on the S. *Franconia* and *Bohemia*; on the E. *Sileſia*; and on the W. *Heſſe* and *Brunſwick*; and is in Length, according to Mr. *Moll*, 220 Miles; and in Breadth, from N. to S. where broadeſt, 130: But if we include the Electorate of *Brandenburg* and the Dutchy of *Pomerania*, belonging to the King of *Pruſſia*, as the *Matricula* does, 'tis of a much larger Extent, and reaches from Lat. 50. 15. to Lat. 55. the moſt N. Part of *Pomerania*: So that from the Frontiers of *Bohemia* to the *Baltick*, 'tis above 190 Miles in Breadth; and from the Borders of *Franconia* on the S. W. to the further Part of *Pomerania* on the N. E. it extends about 385 Miles. Dr. *Nicholſon* takes Notice, That the Limits of the *Saxons* are differently deſcrib'd by Hiſtorians and Geographers, becauſe the ancient *Saxons* being a Warlike People, other *Germans* were ambitious to call themſelves

Digitized by Google

ſelves by their Name: Thus *Albinus* ſays, the ancient *Saxons* had the *Elb* on the E. the *Ems* on the W. *Bohemia* and *Francenia* on the S. and *Denmark* on the N. But *Ptolomy* confines them within narrower Bounds, and the Dr. ſays, *Henry the Lion*'s Territories reach'd from the *Elb* to the *Rhine*, and from the *Baltick* to the utmoſt Bounds of the *Hercynian* Forreſt; and by the Name of *Upper Saxony*, he underſtands only that ſmall Province, which gives the Elector Title of Duke, and alone only retain'd the Name of *Saxony*, when *Henry the Lion*'s Territories were taken from him by *Frederick Barbaroſſa*; and *Bernard* Prince of *Anhalt* made Duke and Elector of *Saxony* in his ſtead. For the ſeveral Principalities and other Governments contain'd in this Circle, we refer to the *Matricula*.

The Dutchy of SAXONY,

HAS *Nether Luſatia*, and Part of the Marquiſate of *Brandenburg*, on the E. the County of *Manſfeld*, and Landgraviate of *Thuringia*, on the W. the Principality of *Anhalt* on the N. and the Marquiſate of *Miſnia* on the S. The Country is pretty fruitful in Corn, but ſhort of its neighbouring Provinces: Their Hills have Mines of Silver, and other Metals; but ſcarce Wood enough to refine them. The Air is cold, but wholeſome. Their chief Corn is Wheat, and they have ſome Vines. The Inhabitants are ſtrict Obſervers, ſays Dr. *Nicholſon*, of the ancient Municipal Laws of their Pagan Anceſtors, which, ſome ſay, *Charles the Great* ſuffer'd them to retain, becauſe they could not be better'd; but others, that he did it to pleaſe them; and they are ſtill excepted when General Laws are made by the Diet: The beſt of them are collected into two Bodies; 1. Called *Sachſen-Spiegel*, or, *Speculum Saxonicum*. 2. *Sachſen Weichbild*, or, *Statuta Civitatum Saxonicarum*. 'Tis properly an Abridgment of the former. The firſt contains three Books; the firſt of which conſiſts of 71 Articles, the 2d of 72, and the 3d of 91; with a Gloſſary, explaining the antiquated Terms. There have been two Editions of it, the firſt by *Burchard* Lord of *Mangelfeld*, and the laſt printed by *Zobelius* at *Leipſick* in 1569. The *Weichbild* has had ſeveral Editions, and contains 139 of the choiceſt Articles of the former, with Obſervations upon them.

The chief Places are, 1. *Wittenberg*, on the *Elb*, the Capital of the Dutchy. Some derive its Name from *Wittikind*; and others ſay, that it only ſignifies a white Rock, of which there are many in the Neighbourhood; from whence the Students fancying it alſo to be built upon one, call it *Leucoris*. It lies on the *Elb*, near Long. 32. Lat. 52. about 37 Miles N. E. from *Leipſick*, 37 S. from *Brandenburg*, and 70 E. from *Halberſtat*. 'Tis a fair large City, of an oblong Square, with one great Street in the middle. The Elector *Frederick* built a ſtrong Caſtle to defend it in the beginning of the 16th Century, and founded the Univerſity in 1502, which was made famous by *Luther*'s preaching there, and is now, ſays *La Foreſt*, one of the moſt flouriſhing *Lutheran* Univerſities, and has large Privileges. The Town is well Peopled, and fortified by Marſhes on the N. and a Canal to the *Elb*. It has a deep Ditch, a good Rampart, and 5 large Baſtions on the Side where 'tis moſt expoſed. It was the Elector's Seat till the Government came into the Family of *Miſnia*; ſince which, it has been at *Dreſden*. Dr. *Nicholſon* ſays, it has bred few great Scholars of late, thô *Abraham Calovius* has writ much to little Purpoſe; and another Profeſſor, called *Teuchmannus*, has writ much againſt the *Calviniſts*; but ſo weakly, as will rather confirm than confute them. One gave this waggiſh Account of the Town, which the Dr. thinks may be pertinent enough.

Leucoris intranti tibi quæ ſint obvia quæris?
Sus, Miles, Meretrix, aut Studioſus erit.

At Wittenberg *a Man is ſure to meet,*
Hogs, Soldiers, Whores, or Scholars, in each Street.

2. *Halle*, thô depending on the Dutchy of *Magdeburg*, and ſubject to the King of *Pruſſia*, is within the Confines of this Dutchy. It lies on the Banks of the *Sala*, near Long. 31. Lat. 51. 35. about 40 Miles S. W. from *Wittenberg*, and about 35 S. of *Magdeburg*. Some derive the Name from the Greek Word Ἁλὸς or Ἅλς, becauſe of the

Digitized by Google

the many Salt-Pits in this Place; but give no Reaſon why a *German* Town ſhould have a *Greek* Name. Theſe Pits were firſt diſcover'd by the *Hermunduri*, a Branch of the *Suevi*, before our Saviour's Birth, who valued them as much as Mines of Gold. Their Value may be gueſs'd at by the Weekly Toll of 5 or 600 Crowns, which they pay to the Adminiſtrator of *Magdeburg*. The Town is neatly built, on the Side of a pleaſant Hill; the Inhabitants are genteel, and are reckon'd to ſpeak the beſt *German*. 'Tis called *Halla Saxonum*, to diſtinguiſh it from others of that Name elſewhere. *La Foreſt* places it in the Circle of *Leipſick*, thô now 'tis in *Miſnia*. He ſays, it was built by the Emperor *Otho* II. in 981, and made an Imperial Town, as it continued to be till 1308, that it was united to *Miſnia*, and gave Title of *Sax-Halle* to a Branch of the Family of *Saxony*. It has alſo a noted Univerſity, and has been famous of late for an Hoſpital built there by Dr. *Franks*, without any certain Fund either for building or ſupporting it; but has been hitherto maintain'd, and made very conſiderable both for the Buildings, and Number of Scholars, Mechanicks, and Poor, by a wonderful Chain of Providential Charities, as we have an Account in a Book lately tranſlated and printed here, called *Pietas Hallenſis*.

3. *Quedlinburg*, a ſmall City, about 8 Miles S. E. of *Halberſtat*, and about 37 N. W. of *Halle*. It had formerly a Caſtle on the Top of a neighbouring Hill, but now demoliſhed. It was formerly a Hans-Town; but the Citizens rebelling againſt their Abbeſs in 1475, they were made ſubject to the Elector of *Saxony*. Since the Reformation, the Abbeſs has been a *Lutheran*, and, as Dr. *Nicholſon* ſays, either a Princeſs or Counteſs of the Family of *Saxony*, and is ſupreme of the City and Territory. *La Foreſt* ſays, it lies on the River *Bode*; That the Abbey was founded in the 10th Century by the Emperor *Henry the Fowler*, and his Daughter *Maud* was the firſt Abbeſs. The Counteſs of *Stolberg* brought in *Lutheraniſm* in 1539. It depends immediately on the Empire, and the Abbeſs has her Depury in the Diet among the Prelates of the *Rhine*. It receives no Nuns but of Noble Extract, for 8 Deſcents. 'Tis under the Protection of the Elector of *Saxony*.

4. *Sweinitz*, a little Town on the *Elſter*, which falls into the *Elb* a little above *Wittenberg*.

5. *Hertzberg*, a little Town, very ancient, on the ſame River.

6. *Torgaw*, on the *Elb*, about 17 Miles above *Wittenberg*, a large fortified Town, which has a great Trade in Beer. It was taken by the *Swedes* in 1637. It was built by the Elector *John Frederick* in 1535, and beautified with a ſtately Caſtle.

7. *Bitterfeld*, on the *Mulda*, which was taken by the *Swedes* in 1637.

8. *Wieſenburg*, on the Confines of *Anhalt*, then alſo taken by the *Swedes*.

The Principality of ANHALT.

THE greateſt Part of this Country lies betwixt the *Sala* and the *Elb*, has *Magdeburg* on the N. *Thuringia* on the S. *Quedlingburg* on the W. and the Electorate of *Saxony* on the E. It lies from E. to W. about 90 Miles; but is of an unequal Breadth.

Dr. *Nicholſon* ſays, ſome *German* Antiquaries derive the Pedigree of thoſe Princes from *Aſchenaz*, *Noah*'s Grandſon, which Fable was founded upon their Title of *Principes Aſcanii*, but they have a Genealogical Table in their Palace at *Pleskaw*, which affirms, that their Anceſtors were Kings, Dukes, and Generals of the *Saxons*, long before the coming of our Saviour. The *Atlas Hiſtorique*, with whom *La Foreſt* agrees, carries their Origine no higher than *Berentobaldus*, who made War on the *Thuringians* in the 6th Century. Dr. *Nicholſon* ſays, he was a King, and that this War began in 524, when he took ſome Towns, and adjoining Territories. He was ſucceeded by *Berenger*, who, the Atlas ſays, was made a Count by *Charlemagne*. The Doctor obſerves further, That credible Hiſtorians ſay, *Berentobald* II. and III. were above 1000 Years ago Generals of the *Saxons* againſt *Clovis* II. and *Dagobert*, Kings of *France*; and that *Clovis* III. married *Batildis*, a Princeſs of this Family; but the Atlas mentions only one *Berentobald*. *Otho the Great* ſucceeded *Berenger*; and *Albert*, call'd the *Bear*, his Succeſſor, was made Marquis of *Southwold* by the Emperor *Henry* V. and others ſay, he was made Margrave

of

of *Brandenburg* in 1157 by the Emperor *Conrad* III. His Son *Bernard* was made Elector of *Saxony* inſtead of *Henry the Lion*, and likewiſe poſſeſſed *Anhalt*. He and his Brother *Otho*, ſays Dr. *Nicholſon*, divided the *Aſcanian* Family into two Branches, from whence came the great Families of *Saxon* and *Brandenburg*. *Henry the Young* ſucceeded his Father *Bernard*; and notwithſtanding the great Promotion of his Father and Uncle, ſays the Doctor, was the firſt created Prince of *Anhalt* by *Frederick* II. But the Atlas ſays, it was his Son and Succeſſor *Henry the Old*. He was ſucceeded by *Henry the Fat*: He by *Sigfried*. The next Succeſſors were, *Albert the Old*, *Albert the Young*, *John*, *Albert the Lame*, *Adolphus Sigiſmund*, *George the Old*, *Waldemar John*, a very brave Prince, who died in 1551; *Joachim Erneſt*, who died in 1586; *John George*, the firſt of *Deſſaw*, who died in 1628; *John Caſimir*, who died in 1660; *John George* II. who married *Henrietta Catharine* of *Orange*, and was Statholder of the Marquiſate of *Brandenburg* for the Elector. He died in 1693. The preſent Prince *Leopold* of *Deſſaw* was born in 1676, and is Lieutenant-General to the King of *Pruſſia*. From *Joachim Erneſt*, came the Branch of *Anhalt-Zerbſt*, whoſe preſent Prince is *Charles William*. From *John* II. of this Branch, came that of *Barnburg*, whoſe preſent Prince is *John Lewis*. From the ſame *Joachim*, proceeded the Branch of *Cothen*, which was extinguiſhed in 1665; and the Branch of *Plotzkaw*, which came from the ſame *Joachim*, ſucceeded to their Dominions. The preſent Prince is *Auguſtus Lebrecht*. From *Joachim*, alſo proceeded the Branch of *Anhalt-Bernburg*, whoſe preſent Prince is *Victor Amedeus*, who has a numerous Iſſue. The Branch of *Hatzgerode* came from *Chriſtian* I. of *Bernburg*. The preſent Prince is *William*. Dr. *Nicholſon* obſerves, That *Joachim*, from whom all theſe Branches are come, was the only Perſon left of the Family; but when he died in 1566, he left 5 Sons, and 11 Daughters. The Sons divided the Principality into 4 equal Shares, becauſe the eldeſt, *Auguſtus*, reſolv'd not to marry, and to be content with a Penſion during Life; but marrying afterwards, they allow'd him the 5th of the Dominions; whereupon *John George* had *Deſſaw*, *Chriſtian* reſided at *Barnburg*, *Auguſtus* at *Pleskaw*, *Rhodolph* at *Zerbſt*, and *Lewis* at *Cothen*. Having all Children, and being of equal Authority, they agreed unanimouſly to ſubmit to the eldeſt of the Family, who has the ſupreme Government, and the only Power to aſſemble the reſt upon Matters of Conſequence. They have but one Vote in the Diet, and generally depute one of their own Number to repreſent them.

Prince *Lewis* of *Cothen* founded that called the *Fructifying Society*, on this Occaſion: Having travelled over *Europe*, and obſerving the Advantages which the Nobility had elſewhere by excellent Books in their own Language, he perſwaded his Countrymen to tranſlate the beſt Latin and Greek Authors into a good *German* Stile. In purſuance of which, he founded the Society, and was their firſt Preſident. In a little Time, above 26 Princes and 600 Noblemen enter'd into the Society, which has very much advanced Learning in *Germany*, and improved their own Language.

The Titles of the Princes of *Anhalt Deſſaw* are, Prince of *Anhalt*, Count of *Aſcania*, Lord of *Zerbſt*, *Bernburg*, &c. Thoſe of *Zerbſt* add *Jevern*, *Knipbauſen*, &c. Their Dominions are thus: The Branch of *Deſſaw*, has the Principality of *Deſſaw*: That of *Bernbourg*, the Lordſhips of *Bernbourg* and *Ballenſted*, *Old-nhalt*, and the Provoſtſhip of *Gorenrode*: The Branch of *Hatzgerode*, the Bailiwick of that Name: The Branch of *Cothen*, *Cothen* and its Diſtrict, *Plotzkaw*, the upper County of *Warrenſdorf*, *Nienbourg*, *Wulfen*, and *Guſten*. The Branch of *Zerbſt*, *Zerbſt* and its Diſtrict, the Bailiwicks of *Lindaw*, *Roſwick*, *Roſta*, the Lordſhips of *Jevern*, *Knipbauſen*, and *Walternenburg*.

Their Arms are, *Argent*, a *Demi-Eagle*, *Gules*, Part of *Saxony* for *Anhalt*. *Argent*, a *Bear-Sable* Collar'd and Crown'd *Or*, *Paſſant*, on a Wall *Gules*, in which there's a Gate *Or*, for *Berengen*. *Or*, 5 *Feſſes-Sable*, for *Ballenſted*. *Checkee*, *Argent* and *Sable*, for *Aſcania*. Quarter'd *Or* and *Gules* for *Waldirſee*. *Azure*, two *Bars Or*, for *Wanſdorf*. *Azure*, an *Eagle-Argent*, for *Mullingen*. *Argent*, a *Bear Sable*, Crown'd *Or*, *Paſſant*, on a Wall *Gules*, in which there is a *Pert-Or*, for *Bernburg*. *Gules* plain for the *Regalia*. The Helmets are thoſe of *Anhalt*, *Berengen*, and *Aſcania*. Thoſe of *Zerbſt* add 3 Quarters and a Helmet as follows; *Azure*, a *Lion Or*, for *Jevern*.

Digitized by Google

vern. Or, a *Lion-Sable*, with a fork'd Tail, *Azure*, a Dog's-Head *Argent*, supported with an Angle of two Wings, turn'd up-side down, for *Walter-Neuburg*. The Helmet of *Jevern*.

The chief Places of this Principality are,

1. *Zerbſt*, on a ſmall River about a Mile from the E. Side of the *Elb*, about 20 Miles S. W. from *Magdeburg*, and 40 N. of *Leipſick*. *Dreſſerus* thinks, 'tis a Town of great Antiquity, and that it had its Name from the *Servetii*; but others ſay, it ſignified a Fort in the old *Wendiſh* Dialect. 'Tis remarkable for little but being the Reſidence of the Prince, and brewing ſtrong Beer, which is ſent about into the neighbouring Countries.

2. *Bernburg*, a fortified Town, on the Banks of the *Sa'a*, about 8 Miles from the *Elb*. The Prince has another Palace here, ſeparated from the Town by the River. It was taken by the Elector of *Saxony*'s Troops in 1636, when they put all the Gariſon and Inhabitants to the Sword, except a few that belong'd to the Prince's Court.

3. *Deſſaw*, a well fortified Town on the *Elb*, about 30 Miles N. W. from *Magdeburg*, and 15 W. from *Wittenberg*. It lies in a pleaſant and fruitful Country, and had its Name, as ſome think, from the *Jews*, who in their Dialect call'd it *Deſſe*, from the Fatneſs of the Soil. The Prince has a Palace here, which, by an Inſcription over the Gate, appears to have been built by *Albert* and *Waldemar*, two Princes of this Family, in 1341. In one of the Chapels, there is the Tomb of one *Rebebock*, an old Miller, who having followed *Waldemar* Marquis of *Brandenburg* in the Wars, counterfeited the ſaid Marquis ſo artificially after he was ſlain, that a great many believ'd him to be that Prince, and reſpected him accordingly. He died about 1350.

4. *Aſcherleben*, or *Aſcania*, from whence the Princes of *Anhalt* had that Title. 'Tis an ancient Town, on the Borders of the Biſhoprick of *Halberſtat*, and was ſeiz'd on by the Canons of that Church after the Death of Prince Otho's Widow in 1315; ſince which, the Princes of *Anhalt* could never recover it, and are not like to do it now, ſince that Biſhoprick is fallen to the Houſe of *Pruſſia*.

5. *Worlitz*, or *Goſwick*, a little Town of good Trade on the *Elb*.

6. *Anhalt*, on the S. of *Halberſtat*, remarkable only for an ancient Caſtle, which gives Name to the Principality.

7. *Koten*, within a League of *Multa*, a ſmall Town with a Caſtle. It's the Chief of a County of the ſame Name.

8. *Germode*, an Abbey founded in 965 by *D. Geron*: It depends on the Empire, and has a Deputy in the Diet among the Prelates of *Weſtphalia*. The Reformation was introduc'd here in 1531. The Princes of *Anhalt* have the Advouſon of it.

The Landgraviate of Thuringia.

THis Country took its Name from the *Thuringi*, a Branch of the *Vandals*, mentioned by *Tacitus*. *Muræus* is of Opinion, from the Names of ſeveral Towns here, as *Gotha*, *Gotleben*, *Altengotken*, &c That they were a Branch of the *Goths*, and not of the *Vandals*, as *Cluverius* would have them. But Dr. *Nicholſon* juſtly obſerves, That this Argument will prove no more than that the *Goths* mix'd with them.

This Province has the River *Sala* on the E. the *Werra* on the W. the *Hercynian* Foreſt on the N. and the Woods of *Franconia* on the S. The Country abounds with Corn, and large Vineyards in ſome Places, which afford better Wine than is to be had in other Places of *Saxony*, and the Marquiſate of *Brandenburg*; and in their Fields and Gardens, they have abundance of Wild Saffron, and Woad us'd by Dyers for their beſt Blues and Sky-Colours. In other Places, as about *Sangerhauſen*, they have Mines of Copper and Silver; and about *Frankenhauſen*, rich Salt-Pits. Their chief Rivers are, the *Sala*, *Werra*, *Unſtrut*, *Hiera*, *Ilm*, the *Leina*, *Schwertze*, *Wipper*, *Helbe*, *Rahna*, *Helme*, *Loſſa*, and *Giſſel*. They have alſo many great Lakes, the moſt conſiderable of which are, *Wiſſenſee*, and *Swanſee*.

The Boors here are very rough and clownish, and the only People in *Germany* noted to be uncivil to Strangers. Upon their firſt ſettling here, they choſe themſelves a King, under which Government they continued till they were over-run by the *Franks* about 1122. When *Charlemagne* aboliſh'd Paganiſm

Digitized by Google

niſm here, they were for moſt part govern'd by the Archbiſhop of *Mentz*, or his Deputies, and were divided into many Counties and Lordſhips, *viz. Schartzburg, Kirchberg, Keſernburg, Schoneberg, Gleicken, Sangerhauſen. Frankenſtein, Salitza, Heldrungen, Dreffert, Apolda, Vargila*, &c. as Dr. *Nicholſon* informs us. *Conrad* II. made *Ludowick* Count of *Schomberg* Count of *Thuringia*; and *Lotharius* II. made *Ludowick*'s Grandſon Landgrave. It continued in this Line till the Death of Landgrave *Herman* in 1226, when *Henry* Duke of *Brabant* got *Heſſia*; and *Thuringia* fell to *Henry* Marquis of *Miſnia*: Since which, it has been under the Houſe of *Saxony*.

The chief Places here are, 1. *Erfurt*, the Metropolis, one of the largeſt Cities in *Germany*. Dr. *Nicholſon* thinks, it took its Name from a Ford or Ferry over the *Hiera*, on which it ſtands. There are 3 Baronies and 72 fair Villages ſubject to it, and 'tis about as large and beautiful as *Cologne*. 'Tis not certain when it was firſt built; but it was reckon'd an ancient City in the Days of *Boniface* Archbiſhop of *Mentz*, when Pope *Zeechary*, as appears by his Letter to that Archbiſhop, made it a Biſhoprick. It lies in a pleaſant and fruitful Plain, about 60 Miles S. W. from *Leipſick*, and 60 S. from *Halberſtat*, about Long. 30. 27. Lat. 51. The neighbouring Country abounds with all ſorts of Corn and good Vines; and the Inhabitants get much Money by ſelling their Corn, Wine, and Woad, at their two great Fairs, the one in *Trinity* Week, and the other at *Martinmaſs*. Their publick Edifices, eſpecially their Churches and Abbies, are very beautiful. They have alſo a ſtately Caſtle called *Cirioxberg*, and a famous Univerſity. When they embrac'd the Reformation, they put themſelves under the Elector of *Saxony*, which occaſioned many Conteſts betwixt that Prince and the Elector of *Mentz*. They afterwards attempted to make themſelves an Imperial City; but in 1664, the Archbiſhop reduc'd it by the Aſſiſtance of the *French*: But by the Treaty of *Leipſick*, 17 of the Villages, with their Dependencies, were given to the Elector of *Saxony*. They have the largeſt Bell here in *Germany*, called *Suſanna*.

2. *Weimar*: 'Tis a large, neat, and well built City, mid-way betwixt *Erfurt* and *Jena*, which gives Title to a Prince of the Family of *Saxony*, and is famous for the Birth of Duke *Bernard* of *Saxe-Weimar*, one of the greateſt Captains of the laſt Century. 'Tis ſuppoſed to derive its Name from *Winemarkt*, becauſe it has a great Trade in Wine. 'Tis very ancient; for the Emperor *Otho* II. held a General Diet here in 975. It has a ſtately Palace, where the Landgrave us'd to reſide. It lies about 50 Miles S. W. from *Leipſick*, and about 15 E. from *Erfurt*.

3. *Jena*, on the Banks of the *Sala*, about Long. 30. 55. near Lat. 51. about 23 Miles E. of *Erfurt*. 'Tis famous for an Univerſity, and a great Concourſe of Learned Men. It was founded by *John Frederick* Elector of *Saxony*, and had many Privileges from the Emperors *Charles* V. and *Ferdinand*. The great Philologer *J. Lipſius* was bred here. Some derive the Name from the Hebrew Word *Jain*, Wine, and think that the *Jews* founded the Town. Others bring it from the Heathen God *Janus*; but neither of the Conjectures ſeem to be well founded. The Town is well fortified with Walls and Turrets, and ſtands in a pleaſant Vale, which abounds with Vines. The Dukes of *Saxony* gave the Univerſity a Library, which increaſes every Day.

4. *Gotha*, on the *Leina*, about 18 Miles S. W. from *Erfurt*. Some derive the Name from the *Gothick* Troops, who founded it in their March to *Italy*. It was only a mean Village, till fortified by *William* Archbiſhop of *Mentz* in 964. Their chief Trade is in Woad, of which they have three Sorts: The firſt they ſow about *Chriſtmas*; the next in the Spring, Summer, and Harveſt, of which they have three Crops: The third grows wild. This Herb is a ſovereign Balſamick, and cures Wounds almoſt with a Touch, if taken in time. It reſembles *Plantein*, but has a longer Leaf. The Roots fatten and improve barren Ground exceedingly; and being brought over to *England* with Clover, Cinquefoil, *&c.* grows with good Succeſs in *Northamptonſhire*, and other Places of *England*. This Town is Capital of a Dutchy, and gives Title to a Prince of the Family of *Saxony*, where they have a good Caſtle, that was demoliſhed by the Emperor *Maximilian* II. in 1567; but ſince rebuilt by *Erneſt* Duke of *Saxe-Gotha*.

5. *Orla-*

Digitized by Google

5. *Orlamund*, or *Erlamund*, on the ſame River, a ſmall Town, which gives Title to a County, 8 Miles E. from *Jena*.

6. *Temmenberg*, a little Town, about 15 Miles W. from *Gotha*. It was ſack'd by the Imperialiſts in 1567.

7. *Eiſenach*, about 20 Miles W. from *Gotha*, on the River *Noſa*, the Capital of a Dutchy of the ſame Name, which gives Title to a Prince of *Saxony*. The Univerſity here was founded in 1555. The Inhabitants have a conſiderable Trade in Iron.

8. *Mulhauſen*, an Imperial Town, under the Protection of the Elector of *Saxony*, at the Foot of a Mountain, about 20 Miles N. W. from *Gotha*, and 30 from *Erfurt*.

9. *Marchſul*, ſome Leagues from *Eiſenach*, noted only for a fine Caſtle, the uſual Reſidence of the Dukes of *Saxe-Gotha*.

The County of Schwartzburg,

IS about 40 Miles long, and 25 broad, has *Thuringia* on the S. *Naumburg*, *Merſburg*, and *Halle*, on the W. It takes its Name from the Caſtle of *Schwartzburg*, on the River *Schwartza*, which gives Title to an ancient Family, divided into the two Branches of *Arnſtadt* and *Rudolſtadt*. This Caſtle lies in the upper Part of the Country. The chief Town is *Sunderhauſen*, a large open Town in the lower Part of the County. The other Towns are, *Frankenhauſen*, *Herſingen*, *Kirderbruch*, and *Keula*; but have nothing of Note.

To this Country belongs *Gleichen*, on the River *On*, an ancient Caſtle, which gives Name to a County, and formerly Title to a Branch of the Family of *Schwartzburg*, extinguiſh'd in 1639. The Elector of *Mentz* inveſted the Counts of *Haiſeld*, who poſſeſſed Part of this County, with the Caſtle of *Gleichen*, as a Fief depending on his Church. The other Part conſiſting of ſome Bailiwicks, was given to the Counts of *Hohenlo* by the Dukes of *Saxony*, upon the Failure of the Family of *Gleichen*, as *La Foreſt* informs us.

The County of Hohenſtein,

LIes N. of *Schwartzburg*, is about 25 Miles in Length, and 10 in Breadth. The chief Town is *Northauſen*, an Imperial City, about 40 Miles N. W. of *Erfurt*. It ſaid to to have been built by the Emp. *Theodoſius* II. or *Merovius* King of *France*, about 447. 'Tis noted for ſome Diets of the Empire that have been held here, but otherwiſe not remarkable. 'Tis under the Protection of the Elector of *Saxony*.

The County of Stolberg,

LIes N. of *Schwartzburg*, is about 20 Miles long, and 10 broad. The chief Town is of the ſame Name, and has a large Caſtle, ſaid to be built by a *Roman*, the Founder of the Family of *Stolberg*, divided into the two chief Branches of *Iſenburg* and *Gudern*, and the latter into thoſe of *Stolberg* and *Ortenberg*. They are Sovereign Counts, and have alſo the County of *Vernigerode* in the Principality of *Halberſtat*. The Caſtle of *Stolberg* lies near the Borders of *Halberſtat*.

The County of Mansfeld.

SOme derive the Name from *Mannus*, Son to *Twiſco*, the Father of the *Germans*; but this ſeems to be fabulous. Others ſay, That *Heger* Count of *Mansfeld* was one of the Commoners at the *Britiſh* King *Arthur*'s round Table, and built *Mansfeld* in *Nottinghamſhire*; which is as improbable as the former. Dr. *Nicholſon* ſays, 'tis one of the four *Hercynean* Counties, the other three being *Stolberg*, *Hohenſtein*, and *Ragenſtein*. It has the River *Sala* on the E. *Schwartzburg* on the W. Part of *Anhalt* on the N. and *Thuringia* on the S. 'Tis about 30 Miles long from E. to W. and about 18 where broadeſt from S. to N. It abounds with Mines of ſeveral ſorts, which bring great Profit to the Inhabitants. Among the reſt, there is that called the *Scheifferſtein*, peculiar to this and the neighbouring Provinces. 'Tis a blackiſh gliſtering kind of Salt, which melted and bray'd, yields a vaſt Quantity of Copper, and much Silver. *Hubenſak*, who comments on Part of *Munſter's* Geography, ſays, there is ſcarce the like of it in the World. Out of this Stone, ſays he, the Inhabitants melt Copper, each Hundred of which contains 10 or 12 Ounces of

Digitized by Google

pure Silver; and this Stone abounds so much in the Country, that 'tis dug up every where. He adds, That in these Stones, there are the lively Representations, by fair Copper Strokes, of Fishes of several Sorts, Frogs, Water-Rats, and other Animals, that abound in a neighbouring Lake; and the like is asserted by others.

Dr. *Nicholson* says, the more sober Genealogies derive the Pedigree of the Counts of *Mansfeld* from *Burchard* V. Count of *Querfort*, on whom *Frederick Barbaroſſa* bestowed this County, for his great Service in the *Holy Land*. His Great Grandchild *Burchard* was the first who took the Title of Count about 1250, and his Successors have enjoy'd that Honour ever since; but do some sort of Homage to the Elector of *Saxony*. The most remarkable among them have been, 1. *Walerad*. Privy-Counsellor to the Emperor *Sigismund*, to whom he did great Service, and improv'd his own Estate. 2. *John George*, who was Deputy-Governor of *Saxony* under Duke *Auguſtus*. 3. *Peter Erneſt*, Governor of *Luxemburg* under *Charles* V. and *Philip* II. who employ'd him in their Wars againſt *France* and the *Netherlands*. 4. *Albert*, a great Friend to *Luther*, and to *John Frederick*, the depos'd Elector of *Saxony*, in whose Quarrel he loſt his Country, and afterwards defended *Magdeburg* bravely againſt the Imperialists. 5. *Erneſt*, who perform'd great Things in the Wars of *Germany* againſt *Ferdinand* II. in behalf of the Elector *Palatine*, who was chosen King of *Bohemia*. He was observ'd to be very happy in raising Armies, but unfortunate in Battle. This Family is now divided into 4 or 5 Branches, which has made them less considerable than formerly. The two chief Branches are those of *Bornſtet* and *Eyſt ben*. The latter stays in the County, where they have nothing but the Hunting, Fishery, and Patronage, the rest being sequestred into the Hands of the Elector of *Saxony*. *La Foreſt* says, That some of the young Counts in the 16th Century opposed several Points of the *Lutheran* Doctrine, which gave Rise to a Sect called *Manſeldians*.

The Metropolis of the Country, and the Seat of the Governing Counts, is *Eyſtleben*, which derives its Name from the great Quantity of Iron Ore, by the Natives called *Eyſen*, found in those Parts, and not from the *Egyptian* Goddess *Iſis*, whom some fabulous Historians alledge to have wander'd into these Parts. 'Tis chiefly remarkable for the Birth and Death of *Luther*; the former in 1483, and the latter in 1564. The Citizens set up his Statue of Stone over the Door of the House where he was born, with this Inscription:

Hoſtis eram Papæ, Sectorum peſtis & hujus:
Vox mea, cum Scriptis, nil niſi Chriſtus erat.

'Gainſt Pope, and Popelings, I did War declare:
But Chriſt I preach'd, and wrote, with utmoſt Care.

Forſter, Superintendant of this Church, says, a great Fire in 1601 burnt the Count's Palace, and 250 Houses; but the Church where *Luther* was baptiz'd, the House where he was born, and that where he died, escaped the Flames, tho those about 'em were consumed. The Imperialists, in the late Civil Wars, destroyed his Monument, and defaced the Inscription. The Town is but small, and lies about 8 Miles from *Manſeld* S. E. and 15 N. W. from *Halle*. This Town suffer'd much in the 11th Century, during the Wars betwixt the Emperor *Henry* IV. and the *Saxons*, and likewise during the Civil Wars of *Germany*. 'Tis fortified with a good Citadel, and reaps considerable Profit from its Quarries of black Stone, and two Annual Fairs.

2. *Manſeld*, about 5 Miles N. W. from *Eyſt ben*, an old ruinous City on the River *Vipren*: 'Tis defended by a strong Castle on the top of a Hill, which lay desolate many Years; but was repaired and fortified in 1547.

3. *Wipren*, a Town of good Trade, 8 Miles W. from *Manſeld*.

The other Towns are, *Arnſtein* and *Querfurt*, noted for little, but giving Names to little Counties belonging to the Branches of this Family.

The Prince of this Country being an Hereditary Count of the Empire, we shall here once for all give an Account of that Dignity: The Learned *Camden*, in his Reign of Queen *Elizabeth*, speaking of *Thomas Arundel* of *Wardour*, who was made a Count of the Empire by the Emperor *Rudolph* II. takes Notice of his Patent given to him and his Heirs

Digitized by Google

Heirs of both Sexes for ever; and adds, That those Counts have a Voice in the Imperial Diet, may purchase Estates in any Part of the Emperor's Dominions, may list Voluntiers, and cannot be sued in the Empire, but only in the Imperial Chamber. The Curious may find an Account of the Rise of this Title, and of the several Sorts of Counts, in *Selden*'s Titles of Honour, *Part II.* But that which properly relates to Counts of Territories, such as those of *Mansfeld*, is, That they were anciently created and invested by the Delivery of one or more Banners for Seisin of their Territories, as Dukes were invested, and the Surrender of 'em was made by re-delivering those Banners to the Emperor; but of late, they are sometimes made by Charter, or Word of Mouth, kneeling before the Emperor. They have Caps as the Dukes, and their Coronets are only distinguished by their Richness; those of the Dukes having Precious Stones and Gems in them. There are other Counts who are not invested with any Territory, and yet bear the Titles of some Castles or small Territories they possess, and are conceived to be the Posterity of the Counts of the Old Empire, before Feuds were annexed to this Dignity, as *Selden* informs us.

Sax-Naumburg.

IT gives Title to a Prince of the Family of *Saxony*, and is Capital of the Bishoprick of that Name, founded in 952 by the Emperor *Otho* I. at *Zeitz*, and transferred hither in 982. *Nicholas Amsdorf* brought in *Lutheranism* in the 16th Century, and after his Death the Elector of *Saxony* took the Administration of it, and it was yielded to him by the Treaty of *Passau* in 1552. His Successors did afterwards appropriate it, and it gives Title to a Prince of *Saxony*, of the *Ernestin* Line, who is called Administrator. The Town lies on the *Sala*, 25 Miles S. W. from *Leipsick*, and 15 S. of *Mersburg*. It was formerly under the Archbishop of *Magdeburg*, and has a Territory about 25 Miles long, and 15 broad.

Sax-Mersburg,

WAS formerly a Bishop's See, Suffragan to *Magdeburg*, and likewise an Imperial Town. The Bishoprick was founded here in 952 by the Emperor *Otho* I. The Duke of *Saxony* introduc'd *Lutheranism* about 1562, when he was Administrator; and 'tis now apply'd as a Portion for one of the younger Sons, to whom it gives the Title of Duke. The Town lies upon the River *Sala*, and, as *La Forest* says, pretty large, and well Peopled, about 18 Miles N. W. of *Leipsick*. Dr. *Nicholson* says, That some derive the Name from *Mars*, and that the *Saxon* Idol *Irmensul*, under which Name they worship'd *Mars*, is by some Antiquaries supposed to have stood here. The Cathedral is the only Thing worth Notice in the Town, and near it there's a Library of many ancient Manuscripts, but ill kept; among which there is the Books of *Samuel* and *Kings* in Latin, in a fair ancient *English Saxon* Character.

Sax-Altenburg,

HAS *Thuringia* on the N. Part of *Franconia* on the W. and S. and *Voitland* on the E. The Town of *Altenburg*, from whence it takes its Name, lies on the River *Pleis*, 24 Miles S. of *Leipsick*, and 46 W. of *Dresden*. It was an Imperial City, till *Frederick* Marquis of *Misnia* took it in 1308, and united it to that Country. It has a fine Castle, where the Dukes of *Saxony* sometimes kept their Court. The Town is pretty, and was formerly called *Osterland*. *La Forest* says, That it has been possessed by the Duke of *Sax-Gotha* since 1672. Some reckon it a Part of *Misnia*; but *Mill* places it as a Dutchy by it self.

Misnia, *or* Meissen.

THis Country is so called from a City of the same Name, formerly a Bishop's See, but now inconsiderable. It has the Title of a Marquisate, has *Lusatia* on the E.

Thus

Thuringia on the W. the Dutchy of *Saxony* on the N. and *Bohemia* on the S. 'Tis a large Country, and is uſually divided into 4 Parts: 1. *Miſnia*, properly ſo called, and ſometimes named *Oſterland*, which contains the Cities of *Dreſden*, *Konigſtein*, *Pirna*, the old Fort of *Sonnenſtein*. 2. The *Ertzgebergiſchecreyſs*, a Mountainous Country, comprehending the Mine-Towns, with ſome others. 3. The Circle of *Leipſick*, which, beſides that City and its Dependencies, has the Counties of *Rochlitz*, *Waldheim*, and *Gerirgſwald*, with other Places of Note. 4. *Voitland*, formerly reckon'd a diſtinct Principality. Beſides theſe Provinces, it has the Biſhopricks of *Naumburg* and *Merſburg*, which we have already deſcrib'd, becauſe *Moll's* Map makes them ſeparate, and the Biſhoprick of *Meiſſen*. Part of the Revenues of thoſe Biſhopricks are applied to maintain a Number of Canons in every Cathedral; but the greateſt Share is made uſe of to maintain the younger Sons of the Elector, and give Titles to them, as Dr. *Nicholſon* informs us. According to *Baudrand*, *Sax-Halle*, and the Dutchy of *Sax-Gotha*, which we have already deſcrib'd, were reckon'd Part of this Country.

The Plains of *Miſnia* are very fruitful in all ſorts of Corn, and their Hills abound with rich Minerals. On the Banks of the *Elb*, about *Dreſden* and *Meiſſen*, there are large Vineyards, but the Wine not very good. They have alſo Salt-Pits in the Biſhoprick of *Merſburg*, which were ſo much outdone by thoſe of *Halle*, formerly mentioned, that they came to be neglected. The Country abounds with Forreſts, which have Plenty of Veniſon, and ſome of them Bears. Their chief Rivers are, the *Elb*, *Mulda*, *Pleiſs*, and the *White* and *Black Elſters*. They have alſo ſome leſſer ones, and all of them abound with Fiſh, eſpecially Carps, as large and numerous as any Part of *Europe*.

Hiſtorians derive their Original from the *Miſi*, a People of *Aſia*, who in *Cicero*'s Time, as appears by his Oration for *Flaccus*, was ſo contemptible, that it was reckon'd the greateſt Reproach to call a Man *Miſorum ultimus*; but the preſent *Miſnians* are ſo much improv'd, that they are noted for their Courteſy, Affability, neat Apparel, and good Shape; ſo that it has become a Proverb, *That the Miſnians make the beſt Figure of any Germans*; and *Albinus* commends them for their Chaſtity, to which their ſevere Laws againſt Adultery has probably contributed.

Their chief Cities are, 1. *Dreſden*, the uſual Seat of the Elector. Dr. *Brown* gives the following Deſcription of it: 'Tis one of the moſt remarkable Places in *Germany*: The Fortifications are very ſtrong and modern, the Baſtions fac'd with Stone, and in ſome Places defended by a double Ditch. The *Elb* runs through the Town, and divides it into Old and New by a ſtately Bridge of 17 Arches. The New Town, where ſtands the Elector's Palace, is the moſt beautiful and beſt fortified, and as well worth a Traveller's View as any Place in *Germany*. Dr. *Nicholſon* thinks, it derives its Name from three Lakes near it, which in the Language of the Country they call *Dreyen Seen*. Dr. *Brown* ſays, the Palace is very large and ſpacious, and, beſides the noble and ſplendid Apartments for the Court, is remarkable for a Houſe for Wild Beaſts, the Arſenal, and Stables. The Hall of the Palace is very ſpacious, and remarkable for the many Draughts of Cities, Pictures of Giants, and the Habits of Nations, very well done. But the moſt remarkable, and indeed ſurprizing, Thing, is the Collection of Rarities, divided into ſeveral large Chambers: The firſt contains all ſorts of Mechanical Inſtruments, made with great Art; and in the other Chambers, among many other Things, theſe following are moſt taken Notice of; A Tube-Glaſs 4 Ells long; a large Blue *Turkiſh* Glaſs; many Artificial Works of Coral; Fowls and Cups made out of Mother of Pearl; Drinking-Cups in the Shape of Dragons, Elephants, *&c.* Caſtles of Gold, and of Mother of Pearl; Cups and Fowls made of *Nautili*, and other Shells; a fine Oſtrich made out of its own Shell, with Feathers of Gold; a Cup about a Foot long, richly ſet, made of a Stone or Ball taken out of an Ox's Stomach; a Stone as big as one's Fiſt, reſembling a Bezoar, taken out of a Horſe; a Purſe of *Linum Incombuſtibile*; Silver Ore almoſt pure, in Strings and Shoots, from the Mines of *Freyberg*; a natural Croſs of Silver Ore; 120 Heads carv'd on the outſide of a Cherry-Stone;

Digitized by Google

ry-Stone; a Chryſtal Cabinet ſold by *Oliver Cromwel*, in which is kept a Ring with Stones, in Shape of a Caſtle; K. *Charles* II. of *Great Britain* carved in Iron; the Head of K. *Charles* I. a Glaſs Organ; ſeveral unpoliſh'd Topazes, 10 Inches in Diameter; a Cup of Topaz; Emeralds an Inch in Diameter, as they grow in the Rock, reſembling *Vitriolum Marinum*; Thunder-Stones, which ſmell of Fire; Rocks of all ſorts of Ore, with the Names of the Mines whence they were dug upon them; Figures of Fiſhes in Stones out of *Manſfeld*, formerly mentioned; all Sorts of Stones found in *Saxony* and *Miſnia* poliſh'd; Two large Pieces of pure Virgin-Gold out of the Mine; a Hart with a Cabinet in his Side, containing all Medicines which that Creature affords; a White Hart as big as the Life, made of the Filings and Shavings of Hartſhorn, which reſembles Plaiſter; Figures printed in Trees; a Spur in Part of a Tree; Horns in Trees, *&c.* In another Chamber, there is all ſorts of Mathematical Inſtruments and Books, with Maps, and a Horn, which they alledge to be that of a Land-Unicorn, becauſe 'tis neither wreath'd nor hollow. Among other remarkable Pictures and Draughts, there is the Siege of *Jeruſalem*, done by *Collier*, valued at a high Rate; one of *Luther*, &c. and a rolling Buller, to demonſtrate a perpetual Motion. Of Clock-works, there is vaſt Variety; among others, a Cuckow ſinging, a Horſeman riding, a Ship under Sail, an old Woman walking, a Centaur running and ſhooting, and a Crab crawling on a Table; which at once divert and amaze the Spectators. In the Stables, which are very ſtately and large, there are many fine Horſes, with an Iron Rack and a Copper Manger for each. Near the Stables, there's a curious Fountain and Pond, ſurrounded with Balliſters, for watering and waſhing the Horſes, and a long Arch'd Walk, painted with curious Horſes. Over this Walk, there is a Gallery with the Pictures of all the Dukes and Electors of *Saxony* in their Robes and Military Habits. Among the reſt, there are the Pictures at large of *Hengiſt* and *Horſus*, two *Saxon* Dukes or Generals, under whom the *Saxons* invaded *England*, drawn according to the Deſcriptions given of them by ſome of our *Engliſh* Romantick Hiſtorians. In other Chambers over the Stables, there are two Beds of Marble, a Horſeman of Silver, mov'd by a Spring, carrying a Cup of Wine in his Hand; a Pair of very fine Piſtols, with the Stories of the Old and New Teſtament upon them; a Glaſs Gun; another which diſcharges 40 times at once, *&c.* In another Chamber, there are many rich Sleds, with Accoutrements for Cavalcades on the Ice and Snow in Winter; a white Bear's-Skin ſtuff'd, ſitting in a Chair, from whence, by a Spring, it riſes up when the Spectators come near it, with the Skins of Tigers and Lions; a Caſſower's Skin; very fine Armour for Men and Horſes; a Picture of a *Laplander*, with one of their Magick Drums; and a Chamber full of curious Hunting-Tackle and Arms. The Arſenal is an oblong ſquare Building, containing near 400 Braſs Pieces of Ordnance, with a great Quantity of Muskets, and other Arms, with ſeveral Suits of Armour, and Coats of Mail of Silver, *&c.* Here alſo there is the Repreſentation of *Hungarian* and other Horſe and Foot, drawn up in Parties, with their Commanders at their Heads, made ſo as to turn round.

In the Hunting-Houſe in the Old Town, there are kept 15 Bears, with Fountains and Ponds, in which they waſh, with ragged Poſts ſet up round them, by which the Bears climb to the Scaffolds on the top, where they ſun and dry themſelves after waſhing. The *Horn-Gallery* here does likewiſe deſerve Notice, into which we paſs through three Chambers, painted with all ſorts of hunting of Fowls and Wild-Beaſts. In the Houſe where the Wild-Beaſts are kept, there is a Four-leg'd Beaſt called a *Marian*, which hangs on the Boughs of Trees by the Tail; a Wild Mountain Cat of extraordinary Size; 10 young and old Bears, Black and White; 2 Lions, and 10 Lioneſſes. The *Italian* Garden and Summer-Houſe in the Suburbs has two noble Obelisks, two very fine Fountains, a Theatre, and a good Landskip.

This City lies about Long. 32. 45. Lat. 51. 5. 55 Miles S. E. of *Wittenberg*, about 40 S. E. of *Leipſick*, and 20 N. from the Borders of *Bohemia*.

La Forest ſays, the City is large, and well Peopled, and in the Old Town, beſides the Caſtle,

Digitized by Google

Caſtle, which is very large, is ſtill to be ſeen the Fortifications made by *Charlemagne*. Its Arſenal is one of the beſt furniſh'd in *Germany*. This City was poſſeſſed by the Biſhops of *Miſnia* from 952 till 1274, that one of the Biſhops agreed to yield it to *Henry the Illuſtrious*, Marquis of *Miſnia*. The chief Church of *Dreſden* is a very fair Structure, and the Citizens contend with thoſe of *Halle* for ſpeaking the beſt *High-Dutch*.

The *Atlas Hiſtorique* has a very large Tree of the Family of *Saxony*. Some pretend to derive their Original from *Harterick*, the moſt ancient K. of the *Saxons*, who reign'd before our Saviour, and defeated *Barbiſta* K. of the *Goths*: That he was ſucceeded by *Anſerick* his Son, about the Time of our Saviour, and he by *Wilkin*; but as to theſe, Authors differ. Some of his three next Succeſſors took the Title of Dukes, and others of Kings. *Luder*, the 4th from *Wilkin*, is ſaid to have carried his Armsth rough *France* into *Spain*. His Succeſſor *Wilgiſte* is ſaid to have invaded *Gaul*. *Hengiſt*, who invaded *England*, is ſaid to have been the 4th from *Luder*. *Sigbricht*, the 3d from *Hengiſt*, is ſaid to have founded the Family of *Friezland*. *Sighard*, the 6th from *Sigbricht*, made War on *Gallia Belgica*, and he and his immediate Predeceſſors had great Wars with the *Saxons*. *Witikind*, the 5th from him, was that Prince ſo famous in Hiſtory for making War againſt *Charles the Great*, who, after having conquer'd *Saxony*, made him Duke of *Angria*. *Wighert* his Brother ſucceeded; and from the Sons of his Succeſſor *Ludolph*, proceeded other Branches, particularly *Bruno*'s, from whom came the Imperial Branch. This *Ludolph* is ſaid to have been the firſt Hereditary Duke of *Saxony*. His Son *Otho* was Father to the Emperor *Henry the Fowler*; and *Otho*'s eldeſt Son, *Lutolph* Duke of *Swabia*, founded the Branch of the Marq. of *Saxony*. *Rixa*, the 3d from him, married *Lotharius* of *Supplenburg*, who was choſen Emperor after the Death of *Henry* V. by whom her Daughter *Gertrude* brought *Saxony* to *Henry the Proud*. His Son *Henry the Lion*, formerly mention'd, was diſpoſſeſs'd of his Dominions by *Frederick* I. and ſucceeded, ſome ſay, by Force, and others by Agreement, by *Bernard*, the youngeſt Son of *Albert the Bear* of *Brandenburg*, who was ſucceeded by *Albert* I. from whom, in a direct Line, came the Branch of *Sax-Lawenburg*, which was extinguiſh'd, as formerly mention'd, in 1689, after having produc'd ſeveral great Princes. From *Albert* I. after 8 Deſcents, came *Frederick the Pacifick* in 1411; from whom ſprung the *Albertin* and *Erneſtin* Branches. From him, after 7 Deſcents, came *John George* I. who was born in 1585, and died in 1656. From him, after 4 Deſcents, came *Frederick Auguſtus*, the preſent Elector, who was choſen King of *Poland* in 1700, and renounc'd it by Treaty with the King of *Sweden* in 1706. He was born in 1670, and his Son the Prince Electoral, *Frederick Auguſtus*, was born in 1696. From *John George* I. abovemention'd, came the Branches of *Sax-Merſburg*, and *Sax-Zeitz*. The Prince of the former is *Maurice William*, born in 1688. The Prince of the latter is alſo *Maurice William*, born in 1664; and by a Daughter of *Brandenburg*, has *Frederick Auguſtus*, born in 1700. From *Chriſtian* of *Merſburg* came the Branch of *Zorbich*, the preſent Prince is *Auguſtus*, who was born in 1655. From him alſo proceeded the Branch of *Lauchſtet*, of whom there remains only *Charlotta Auguſtina*, who was born in 1691. From him came likewiſe the Branch of *Spremberg*, whoſe Prince *Henry* was born in 1661. From *Maurice* of *Zeitz* came the Branch of *Pegaw*, whoſe Prince is *Frederick Henry*. From *Maurice* alſo came *Chriſtian Auguſtus*, Biſhop of *Raab*, and Cardinal of *Sax-Zeitz*, who was made uſe of to perſwade the preſent Elector of *Saxony* to turn Papiſt, and has labour'd much to bring the *Hungarians* to an Accommodation. We have mention'd before, that the *Erneſtin* Branch proceeded from *Frederick the Pacifick*; and from *John Frederick*, the firſt of this Line, proceeded that of *Altenburg*, which was extinguiſh'd in 1672. From *John* II. of this Line came the Branch of *Sax-Gotha*, whoſe Prince is *Frederick*, born in 1676, whoſe eldeſt Son *Frederick* was born in 1699. From *Erneſt* I. of this Branch came the Line of *Meinungen* and *Coburg*, whoſe Prince is *Bernard*; and his eldeſt Son *Erneſt Louis*, born in 1672, is one of the Emperor's Generals. From *Erneſt* came likewiſe the Branch of *Eyſenberg*, whoſe Prince *Chriſtian* was born in 1653. From *Erneſt* likewiſe came the Branch of *Saalfeld*, whoſe Prince is *John Erneſt*, whoſe eldeſt Son *Charles Erneſt* was born in 1692. From the

Digitized by Google

the first *Ernest* likewise came the Branch of *Hilburghausen*, whose eldest Son *Ernest Frederick* was born in 1681. From *William* of *Weimar*, the 7th of the *Ernestin* Line, came the Branch of *Sax-Weimar*, whose Prince *William Ernest* was born in 1664. From *John George* I. of the *Albertine* Line, did also proceed the Branch of *Sax-Weissenfels*, or of *Hall*, whose Prince is *John George*, born in 1677. From *Augustus*, the first of this Branch, came also that of *Barby*, whose Prince is *Henry*, born in 1657. His eldest Son is *Frederick Henry*, born in 1692.

The Elector, as Great Marshal of the Empire, commands the Garison where the Diet of the Empire sits: Accordingly the Elector in *Charles* Vth's Time, when the Emperor posted his Guards at the Gates of *Augsburg* in 1530, protested against it, obliged the Emperor to remove them, and to give Security never to invade his Privileges any more. He has also the Right to appoint the Meeting of all Diets, except the Collegial Diets, which are conven'd by the Elector of *Mentz*; but he is obliged to give Notice of it to the Elector of *Saxony*, who orders Count *Pappenheim* to acquaint the Members with it; and if the Elector of *Saxony* be not present, the Archbishop gives Notice to the Count. The Elector of *Saxony* is also Vicar of the Empire during an *Interregnum*, in all Places not subject to the Vicariate of the Count *Palatine* of the *Rhine*, as the Resident of *Brandenburg*, formerly mentioned, informs us.

The Titles of the Elector of *Saxony* are; By the Grace of God, Duke of *Saxony*, *Juliers*, *Cleve*, *Berg*, *Engers*, *Westphalia*, Arch-Marshal, Elector of the Empire, Landgrave of *Thuringia*, Margrave of *Misnia*, of the *Upper* and *Lower Lusatia*, Count and Prince of *Henneberg*, Count of *La Marck*, *Ravensberg*, and *Barby*, Lord of *Ravenstein*, &c.

The Pretensions of the Elector of *Saxony* are, 1. To the Dutchies of *Juliers*, *Cleve*, and *Berg*, the Counties of *Marck* and *Ravensberg*, and the Lordship of *Ravenstein*, because *Maximilian* invested the Elector of *Saxony* with it, which was confirmed by the Marriage of the Elector *John Frederick* with *Sibylla*, Daughter to *John* Duke of *Cleve*, in 1526. But after *John William*, the last Duke, died in 1573, *John Sigismund*, the Elector of *Brandenburg*, took Possession of it, and that Family has still kept it. 2. To *Erfurt*, because 'tis the Capital of *Thuringia*, and is under their Protection; but this is always disputed with him by the Elector of *Mentz*. 3. To the Dutchy of *Engers* and *Westphalia*, especially *Sax-Lawenburg*, which *John*, the first Duke of *Sax-Lawenburg*, inherited from *Bernard*, Son to *Albert the Bear*, whose Successors possess'd it till the Line was extinguish'd, as above-mention'd, which has occasion'd Debates betwixt several Princes, but chiefly betwixt the Elector of *Saxony* and the Duke of *Brunswick-Lunenburg*; and it was left to the Emperor's Arbitration, thô the Elector has quitted his Pretensions to the House of *Brunswick* for 11 Tun of Gold.

The Pretensions of the Dukes of *Saxony* are the same with those of the Electors; but the latter pretend also to the Counties of *Eysenburg* and *Budingen*, in case that Branch fail.

The Dominions of the Elector of *Saxony* are, 1. The Electoral Circle. 2. That of *Misnia*. 3. That of *Lipsick*. 4. That of the Mountains. 5. The Bishopricks of *Misnia* and *Wurtzen*. 6, and 7. The Marquisates of *Upper* and *Nether Lusatia*. 8. The Towns of *Temnitz* and *Torfurt*. 9. The Bailiwick of *Plotn*. 10. Of *Vorgtsberg*. 11. Of *Newstat* on the *Orla*. 12. Of *Arnshaug*. 13. Of *Ziegenruck*. 14. The Burgraviate of *Magdeburg*, the Countries of *Weissenfels*, *Merseburg*, and *Naumburg*, the Lordship of *Schomburg*, the Abbey of *Quedlinburg*, the Towns of *Mulhausen*, and *Northausen*; but all those under Number 14, belong at present to the Family of *Brandenburg*.

The Titles of the Dukes of *Sax-Eysenach* are, Dukes of *Saxony*, *Juliers*, *Cleves*, *Engers*, and *Westphalia*, Landgraves of *Thuringia*, Margraves of *Misnia*, Counts and Princes of *Henneberg*, Counts of *La Marck* and *Ravensberg*, Lords of *Ravenstein*, &c.

Their Dominions are, the 8 Bailiwicks of *Eysenach*, *Lichtemberg*, *Gerstingen*, *Ringolsthen*, *Kalten*, *Nordheim*, *Kreinburg*, *Alsted*, and *Zilbach*. 9. The Town of *Ostheim*. 10. The Bailiwick and Town of *Creutzberg*. 11. Of *Jena*.

The Titles of the Dukes of *Sax-Gotha* are the same with the former, only they add the Lordship of *Tonna*; and the other

Digitized by Google

Branches of this Family have the ſame Titles, but without *Tonna*.

Their Dominions are thoſe of *Gotha*, the three Lordſhips of *Tonna*, *Wachſenburg*, and *Ichterſhauſen*. 4. The Bailiwick and Town of *Kranichfeld*. 5. The Biſhoprick of *Valckenrad*, and ſeveral Towns.

The Titles of the Prince of *Weiſſenfels* are the ſame with thoſe of *Gotha*, only they add Count of *Barby*, and leave out *Tonna*.

Their Dominions are, 1. *Weiſſenfels*. 2. The Principality of *Querfurt*. 3. The Counties of *Barby*, *Bybra*, *Thomasbruck*, *Roblingen*, *Lauchа*, and *Michelu*. 4. The Bailiwicks of *Langenſalſa*, *Sangerſhauſen*, *Eckersburg*, and *Sachſenburg*.

The Title of the Prince of *Merſburg* is, Adminiſtrator of that Biſhoprick, with the reſt of the Titles of *Gotha*, except *Tonna*.

Their Dominions are, 1. The Biſhoprick of *Merſburg*. 2. The Bailiwicks of *Lutzen*, *Lauchſtet*, *Bitterfeld*, *Zorbig*, *Brene*, and ſome Towns in *Nether Luſatia*.

The Titles of the Prince of *Sax-Zeitz* are, Adminiſtrator of the Biſhoprick of *Naumburg*, with all thoſe of *Gotha*, except *Tonna*.

Their Dominions are, 1. *Zeitz*, *Naumburg*, and *Pegau*. 2. *Sula*, with its Diſtrict. 3. *Schleuſigen*, and its Diſtrict. 4. *Plawen*, *Voigtsberg*, *Oelſnitz*, *Weida*, *Newkirchen*, *Schaeck*, *Adorff*, and *Pauſa*.

The Dominions of the Branch of *Coburg* are. 1. The Town of *Coburg*. 2. *Sonneberg*. 3. *Neuhaus*, and ſeveral Cloiſters.

The Dominions of *Meinungen* are, 1. The County of *Henneberg* and *Meinungen*. 2. Of *Maſfeld*, and *Weſſung*. 3. of *Saltzungen*, and *Sond*.

The Dominions of *Romhild* are, 1. *Romhild* and *Konigsberg*. 2. The Bailiwicks of *Theimar* and *Beringen*.

The Dominions of *Eiſſenberg* are, 1. The Bailiwick and Town of *Rheda*. 2. Of *Chamberg* and *Remneburg*. 3. The Town of *Eiſſenberg*.

The Dominions of *Helburſhauſen* are, 1. The Bailiwick and Town of *Eiſfeld*. 2. Of *Veldorf*, and ſome Towns.

The Dominions of *Saalfeld* are, 1. *Saalfeld*, and its Territory. 2. The Bailiwicks of *Graffenthall* and *Zell*.

The Arms of the Elector and Dukes of *Saxony*; *Azure*, a *Lion* Crown'd, fac'd *Argent* and *Gules*, for *Thuringia*. Fac'd *Or* and *Sable*, with *Vert* through the whole, for *Saxony*. *Or*, a *Lion-Sable*, for *Miſnia*. *Or*, a *Lion-Sable*, encompaſs'd and langued *Gules*, for *Juliers*. *Gules*, a *Scutcheon-Argent*, flower'd *Or*, for *Cleves*. *Argent*, a *Lion-Gules*, Crown'd *Azure*, for *Berg*. *Azure*, an *Eagle* Crown'd *Or*, for *Engers*: *Argent*, 3 Chapes of a Hanger, for *Engers*. *Coupee-Sable* on *Argent*, two *Swords-Gules*, for the Dignity of Elector, and Arch-Marſhal of the Empire. *Azure*, an *Eagle Or*, for the County Palatine of *Saxony*. *Sable*, an *Eagle Or*, for the County Palatine of *Thuringia*. *Argent*, a Beeve *Gules*, and a Wall *Or*, for *Luſatia*. *Or*, two *Pales Azure*, for *Lanſburg*. *Azure*, a *Lion Coupe* or *Argent*, for *Pleiſt*. *Or*, ſtrow'd with *Herts*, a *Lion Sable*, for *Orlamund*. *Parti*, the firſt *Gules*, one half on the Dexter of an *Eagle-Argent*; the 2d, 4 *Feſſes-Gules*, for *Magdeburg*. *Argent*, 3 Chapes of Hangers *Azure*, for *Brene*. *Argent*, a *Roſe Azure*, for *Eiſſenberg*. *Argent*, 3 *Cheverons Gules*, for *Ravensburg*. *Or*, the Front *Cheekes Argent* and *Gules* of 3 Lines, for *March*. *Gules* plain for the Rights of *Regalia*. *Or*, a *Chicken Sable*, barb'd *Gules*, upon a green Hill, for *Henneberg*. *Azure*, two Bars endors'd *Or*, encompaſſed with Roſes, for *Barby* and *Roſemberg*. The Helmets are *Or*, ſurmounted with two blue Wings, for *Luſatia*. *Or*, ſurmounted with an *Eagle* Crown'd, for the Palatinate of *Saxony*. *Or*, ſurmounted with a *Beeve's-Head*, *Gules*, Crown'd *Or*, for *Cleves* and *March*. *Or*, ſurmounted with two *Horns Argent*, for *Thuringia*. *Or*, two Crowns *Azure* and *Argent*, for *Saxony*. *Or*, ſurmounted with a *Demi-Man Azure* and *Argent*, for *Miſnia*. *Or*, ſurmounted with an *Eagle Or*, for *Juliers*. *Or*, ſurmounted with a Peacock's-Tail, for *Berg*, *Or*, ſurmounted with two Peacocks-Feathers, for *Engers*. *Or*, ſurmounted with an *Eagle Argent*, for *Nether Luſatia*.

Dr. *Nicholſon* obſerves, That upon the Failure of the Line of *Bernard* of *Anhalt* in *Albert* III. and the Neglect of the Princes of *Lawenburg* to lay Claim to the Electorate, *Frederick* Landgrave of *Thuringia*, and Marquis of *Miſnia*, was created Duke and Elector of *Saxony* by the Emperor *Sigiſmund*; by which the Title return'd again to the Family of *Wittikind*, K. of the ancient *Saxons*, after it had been out of it 200 Years; and from this *Frederick*, the preſent Elector is deſcended. The Elector *John Frederick*, the

the 6th of that Line, protested against that Decree of the Diet of *Spires*, was the Author of the League at *Smalcald*, and was a great Promoter of the Reformation. His Cousin and Successor *John* drove the Emperor *Charles* V. out of *Germany*, and was slain in the Battle of *Siffridhuse* against *Albert* Marquis of *Brandenburg*. *John George*, one of his Successors, first join'd with the Emperor *Ferdinand* against the Elector *Palatine*, and afterwards with the King of *Sweden* against the Emperor.

The Doctor says, The Revenues of this Elector are thought to be as great as those of any Prince of the Empire, except the Arch-Duke of *Austria*, and are modestly computed at 400000 *l.* Sterling *per Annum*. The Doctor adds, That what he has from his Imposts upon Beer and other Commodities, his Taxes, Mines, *&c.* will amount to a much greater Sum; for his Revenues from the Silver Mines at *Freydberg*, and other Places, was computed at 130000 *l. per Annum*: And the Impost on Beer at *Laipsick* at 20000 *l. per Annum*. Besides which, and other like Customs, he has the Tenths of all Corn, Fruit, Wine, *&c.* in his Country, besides a great standing Tax granted at first against the *Turks* in a Time of War, but since continued. Answerable to his Revenues, is the Pomp and Splendour of his Court, wherein it exceeds those of his Neighbours. *Christian* II. is said to have had 3 Foreign Dukes, 3 Earls, and 5 Barons, besides a multitude of his own Nobility, that were Pensioners to him all at once: And at the Funeral of *John George* I. in 1657, there were 24 Horses of State cover'd with Black, with the Electoral Arms embroider'd upon them, led by two Gentlemen each: After which followed 3500 Persons in Mourning. This Court has always been reckon'd the greatest Drinkers in *Germany*; and some of their own Historians say, That a red Nose is an inseparable Badge from the Princes of that Family.

The 2d remarkable City in this Country is *Leipsick*, supposed to have been built by the *Vandals* about the Year 700, and to have derived its Name from *Lipzk*, which in their Language signifies a Tile-Tree, which sort of Wood did then abound in those Parts; and hence some Latin Authors call it *Philurea*, from Φίλυρεα, a Tile-Tree. It stands on the Confluence of 3 small Rivers, the *Elster*, *Pleisa*, and *Parda*, about Long. 31. 57. Lat. 51. 22. about 42 Miles N. W. of *Dresden*, and 38 S. W. from *Wittemberg*, in a pleasant and fruitful Plain, abounding with all Necessaries and Pleasures, particularly large and rich Meadows, mow'd constantly twice, and sometimes thrice a Year, besides pleasant Woods, and many fine Orchards with all sorts of Fruit. Within the Walls they have no Orchards or Gardens. The City is large and populous, and the Houses stately, especially about the Market-place, where they are commonly 7 and 9 Stories high. St. *Nicholas*'s Church is very fine, and the best adorn'd within of any *Lutheran* Church in *Germany*. The Town is famous, 1. For the Purity of the *German* Tongue. 2. For the Concourse of Merchants from most noted Places in *Europe* to their three Annual Fairs at *Christmas*, *Easter*, and *Michaelmas*. 3. For their High Court of Judicature, to which the Elector himself is oblig'd to answer when summon'd. Their Way of Proceeding is describ'd by *Zobelius*, in his Book called, *Differentiæ Juris Civilis & Saxonici*, and by the Author of the *Chronicon Lipsiense*. 4. For their University, founded in 1408, upon a Quarrel betwixt the *Hussites* and Papists at *Prague*, whence 2000 Students are said to have come hither in one Day. It has 4 Colleges, and 24 Professors. Their Chief Professor of Divinity some Time ago, called *Adam Schertzer*, publish'd a Learned Book, called, *Collegium Anti Socinianum*, wherein he confuted the Socinian *Carpzovius*, Son to the famous Lawyer of that Name, was much admir'd for his Learning in the Eastern Languages, and explaining the Mysteries of the *Jewish* Rabbies. *Thomasius*, a Schoolmaster there, was also noted for his Skill in Philology. In their Library, they have abundance of Manuscripts taken out of the demolish'd Monasteries, but of no great Value. Dr. *Nicholson* says, the only Rarity in it, is *Tzetzes*'s Greek Commentary on *Homer*'s *Iliads*, (perhaps not to be met with elsewhere) in a fair and legible Character. Near this Place was the chief Seat of the *German* War; for that in two Years, it was taken 5 several times, and at last by the Imperialists in 1633, but restor'd by the Treaty of *Prague*

in 1635. 'Tis also noted for 3 Victories obtained near it by the *Swedes* over the Imperialists in 1631, 1641, and 1642. 'Tis defended by the Castle of *Pleissenburg*, on the River *Pleiss*, which is very strong, and has a good Garison. In 1520, *Luther* disputed in this City with *Eckius* against the Pope's Supremacy; and soon after, it embrac'd the Reformation.

3. *Freiberg*, or *Freidberg*, a famous and pleasant Town near the Banks of the *Mulda*, about Lat. 51. Long. 32. 43. about 8 Miles S. W. from *Dresden*. Dr *Nicholson* thinks, it derives its Name from the rich Hills, on which it stands. The Town is fortified with strong Walls, and held out against the *Swedes* in the Civil War. St. *Peter*'s Church here is the usual Burial-place of the Electors, where many of them lie entomb'd in fair Monuments, particularly the Elector *Maurice*, whose Monument is reckon'd one of the noblest in *Germany*. When this City was surrender'd to the Imperialists in 1632, the Elector of *Saxony* gave 80000 Rix-Dollars to save those Monuments from being rifled, because it being the Fashion to bury the *German* Princes in their Robes, with their Ensigns of Honour, Rings, Jewels, *&c.* the Soldiers would otherwise have ransack'd the Sepulchres. This City is chiefly noted for the rich Mines in and about it, which were discover'd accidentally in 1180, by a Fellow who was carrying Salt, and found in a Cart-Road a Piece of rich Ore. Since that Time, those Mines have been so much dug, that the greatest Part of the Town is undermin'd, and stands upon Vaults and Caverns. Besides those Mines in the Town, there are a great many more within a Mile or two of it; of which, Dr. *Brown* in his Travels gives the following Account:

The Chief of them is that upon the high Hill, which, he says, is deeper than any of those, he saw in *Hungary*, being 77 of their Fathoms, which is 208 of ours.

The 2d Mine is that called the *Prince of Heaven*, which not many Years ago produc'd an Ore so rich, that 100 Pound Weight afforded 130 Marks of Silver, or 65 Pounds in the Hundred: But it is a constant Observation among the Miners, That where the Veins are richest and purest, they are thinnest, and generally not above one Breadth of two Inches. The Ore, as it generally runs, affords not one Ounce and a half of Silver in the Pound, and they work it, thô it holds not above half an Ounce; which may seem strange to those who know not, that even in the Silver Mines of *Peru* and *Chili*, they work the Silver Ore which affords not above 4 or 5 Ounces; and the rich Ore in the celebrated Mines of *Potosi*, don't commonly produce above 10 or 12 Ounces of Silver; thô this Hill alone, if we may credit *Alberto Alonso*, has produc'd in Silver since it was dug, betwixt 4 and 500 Millions of Pieces of Eight.

They have here several Ways of opening the Ore to prepare it for melting, as by Lead, and a kind of Silver Ore which holds Lead.

The Sulphur Ore, which is found here, does, after Calcination, prove no small Addition towards the melting of Metals; as likewise the *Schlich*, or Pounded and Wash'd Ore; and the *Slacken*, being the Dross, Sediment, or Scum, taken out of the Vortiegel (Pan) which received the melted Minerals, let out into it at the bottom of the melting Furnace.

Their *Treibsheath*, or Furnace for separating where the Litharge is driven, is more like that described in *Agricola*, than those in *Hungary*. Some of the Litharge is green. They wash the purest Ore, and such as is mix'd with Stones or Spars; and they have this peculiar here, that before they melt the Ore in the melting Furnace, they burn the Pounded and Wash'd Ore on the *Roasting Hearth*, as they term it.

The 3d Mine was called the *Neckbreaker*, about 80 *English* Fathoms deep. The Ore it produces is either Copper and Silver, or Silver and Lead, and sometimes all three; but they work only for Silver. The Mines are cold as far as the Air can penetrate, but otherwise warm enough. Where they are at the deepest, they are full of Damps, that sometimes kill the Workmen; but that which troubles them most, is the Dust which settles upon the Lungs and Stomachs of the Miners, and throws them into Consumptions. They have excellent Engines to prevent the Inconveniencies arising from the Water, and sometimes use large Vizards with Glass Eyes, under which they have room enough to breath a considerable while.

Here

Digitized by Google

Here is alſo a rich Sulphur Ore, hard and ſtony, that with red Spots being deemed the beſt. This is melted in a peculiar Furnace, to ſeparate it from the Ore, ſome of which yields 3 Pound of Sulphur from 100 Weight of Ore, which, as it melts, runs out of the Furnace into Water, or the Exhalations of the Ore are condenſed into Brimſtone by the Coldneſs of the Surface of the Water, placed to receive it. It is purified again, by melting it once more. Some of this Brimſtone Ore holds Silver, and ſome Copper, but in ſmall Quantities.

The Remnant, after the Sulphur is ſeparated from the Ore, is reſerved for a double Uſe, either for the melting of Silver, or making of Vitriol. In the firſt Caſe, a certain Proportion of it is caſt into the melting Furnace of the Silver, which, as the Miners term it, renders it more fluid.

In the making of Vitriol or Copperoſe, they take the Ore from which the Brimſtone has been ſeparated, and burn it over again, or let it continue to burn in the open Air; then putting it into a large Veſſel, pour as much Water upon it as is requiſite to imbibe the Vitriol; which Water being afterwards boil'd to a certain Conſiſtency, is let out into Coolers, where the pureſt Part of the Vitriol cleaves to Sticks ſet in on purpoſe, and the reſt ſticks to the Sides and Bottom. It is obſervable, That the Ore, after it is deprived of its Vitriol, has not the leaſt Vertue left to open the Metals, and make them fluid.

Dr. *Nicholſon* gives this Account of their diſcovering Mines by what they call the *Virgula Divina*, which ſome reckon to be Conjuration. The Diſcoverer takes a forked Piece of Hazel, holds the two Horns of it in his Hands, with the Forks upright, and traverſes the Ground, muttering a Form of unintelligible Words; and when the forked Stick turns in his Hand, (which they aſcribe to an occult Impulſe) and points to the Ground, he takes it for an infallible Sign of a rich Silver Mine in the Place pointed at; upon which they fall a digging, and ſeldom fail of Succeſs.

At *Freyberg*, there's a Yearly Coinage of Rix-Dollars, and other Money, which is commonly true Sterling, and reckon'd the beſt in *Germany*.

The Reſident of *Brandenburg* gives this Account of the Mines, That the richeſt are thoſe of *Sneberg*, diſcovered in 1471; from which Time to 1501, which was 30 Years, the Elector had for his Tenths 510 Millions of Gold, and 900000 Crowns; and from thence to 1537, 393 Millions of Gold, and 800000 Crowns; but they have not yielded in the ſame Proportion ſince that, (thô they be ſtill very rich) being in Part ruin'd by the War.

4. *Meiſſen*, formerly the Metropolis of *Miſnia*, but now inconſiderable. It takes its Name from the River *Meiſſen*, on which it ſtands. It had formerly the beſt Wooden Bridge in *Germany*; but was deſtroy'd by the Civil War, and a worſe built in its ſtead. The moſt remarkable Thing in it now is, a Palace belonging to the Elector, in Form of a Caſtle, which defends the Town. 'Twas formerly a Biſhoprick, founded by the Emperor *Otho* about the middle of the 10th Century; but ſince 1581, has been in Poſſeſſion of the Electors. It lies about 10 Miles N. W. of *Dreſden*.

5. *Pirn*, on the *Elb*, about 4 Miles S. E. from *Dreſden*, a ſmall Town, noted for the Treaty of Peace made there betwixt the Emperor *Ferdinand* II. the Elector of *Saxony*, and other Princes of the Empire, in 1636, which by others is called the Peace of *Prague*. This Town was taken and pillaged by the *Swedes* in 1640.

6. *Mulberg*, on the *Elb*, ſomewhat above two *German* Leagues S. from *Torgaw*, and about 7 N. W. from *Dreſden*. a Village, famous for the Victory of *Charles* V. over the Proteſtants there in 1547, where *Frederick* of *Saxony* was taken, the *Spaniards* under the Duke of *Alva* having ſwum over the River, and brought the Boats from the other Side to paſs the ſame, and attack the Proteſtants, ſays *Le Forest*.

7. *Chemnitz*, on a ſmall River of that Name, the Capital of the Circle of the Mountains, or *Ertzgebergiſche-Creyſs*. It is defended by a good Caſtle, called *Auguſtburg*. 'Twas an Imperial Town till 1308, that *Frederick* Marquis of *Miſnia* united it to his Dominions. 'Tis famous for Mines of Lead and Tin in the Neighbourhood. It lies 30 *Engliſh* Miles S. W. of *Dreſden*.

8. *Frawenſtein*, a little Town among the Mountains, noted for 3 Lead Mine.

9. *Eden-*

Digitized by Google

9. *Konigſtein*, on the *Elb*, 15 Miles S. from *Dreſden*, a Fortreſs with an Arſenal, where the Electors keep their Treaſure.

10. *Marienberg*, on the Frontiers of *Bohemia*, a ſmall Town, built in the 16th Century, for working on the Mines then diſcover'd there.

11. *Annaberg*, a League from thence, on the Mountain of *Schmeberg*, built in the end of the 15th Century.

12. *Zuickow*, on the *Mulda*, 15 Miles S.W. from *Chemnitz*, the chief Town of *Voigtland*, ſo called from the *Voigts* or Provoſts the Emperor ſent to govern the Country. It was formerly one of the Theatres of the War betwixt *Charlemagne* and the *Saxons*, and an Imperial Town till 1308, that *Frederick* Marquis of *Miſnia* redue'd it.

13. *Sneberg*, on the ſame River, 7 Miles further N. noted for its Silver Mines diſcover'd in 1471, as mention'd before.

14 *Plauen*, a pretty little City on the River *Elſter*.

15. *Werda*, a little City, on a River of that Name, which formerly had its own Lords.

Other Towns reckon'd by *La Foreſt* in this Country are, 1. *Weiſſefels*, on the *Sale*, anciently called *Leucopetra*, which gives Title to a Prince of the Family of *Saxony*. 2. *Colditz*, a little City of good Trade, on the Conflux of the *Mulda* and *Multa*. 3. *Leiſſnick*, on the latter, noted for the Birth of *Appian* the Geographer. 4. *Lutzen*, on the *Elſter*, famous for the great Victory of the *Swedes* over the Imperialiſts in 1632, where the Great *Guſtavus* triumph'd over his Enemies in the Arms of Death, which hinder'd his reaping the Fruits of that Victory, chiefly owing to his Valour and Conduct. 5. *Zeitz*, anciently call'd *Mamida*, a little City on the *Multa*, ſack'd in 982 by the *Vandals*. It gives Title to a Prince of the *Saxon* Family.

The Marquiſate of Luſatia, *or* Lauſnitz,

HAS *Bohemia* on the S. *Brandenburg* on the N. *Miſnia* and *Saxony* on the W. and *Lower Luſatia* on the E. 'Twas formerly Part of *Bohemia*, and deſcribed as ſuch by Geographers; but having rebelled againſt the Emperor in 1620, *John George* of *Saxony* redue'd them, had it mortgag'd to him for his Service, and at laſt 'twas ſettled upon him and his Heirs by the Treaty of *Prague* in 1635; and ſo it continues, except ſome Parts of *Lower Luſatia*, which belong to the Elector of *Brandenburg*.

'Tis divided into *Upper* and *Lower*: The former is by ſome Geographers called *Hexapolis*, becauſe of the 6 Confederate Cities in it, *Lobau*, *Budiſſen*, *Caminta*, *Gorlitz*, *Lauben*, and *Zittau*. In the *Lower*, the Towns ſubject to the Elector of *Saxony* are, *Lubben* on the *Spree*, *Guben*, *Lucken*, and *Calow*; but *Cothus*, *Peytze*, *Sommerfeld*, and others of leſs Note, are ſubject to *Brandenburg*. The Length of this Country from E. to W. is about 65 Miles, and the Breadth from S. to N. is 90.

The Country is for moſt part ſandy or boggy, ſo that it has ſcarce Corn enough for the Inhabitants; but they have ſuch Plenty of Wood, Veniſon, and Fiſh, as might enrich them, had they any Commerce. Their chief Rivers are, the *Spree* and the *Neiſſe*. By their Mixture of *Wendiſh* with *German*, they would ſeem to be of *Slovonick* Extract; but the Citizens ſpeak good *German*. Some derive them from the ancient *Luſci* or *Lutitii*; others from the *Ilingi*, *Elyſii*, or *Ligii*. The People are of as quick Parts as their Neighbours, but Penurious. They breed no Horſe; but *Boter* ſays, they can raiſe 20000 hardy Footmen. They obſerve the *Saxon* Laws better than ever they did the *Bohemian*. *La Foreſt* ſays, it was anciently called the *Eaſtern Mark*, and had its own Princes, till the End of the 9th Century. *Chriſtian*, deſcended from *Wittikind the Young*, was their firſt. The Emperor *Henry* IV. made it a Marquiſate for *Otho*, the laſt of that Line, who died Childleſs about 1060. *Henry* IV. gave *Upper Luſatia* to *Ladiſlaus* Duke of *Bohemia*, and left the *Lower* to *Dedon*, *Otho*'s Couſin, whoſe Iſſue failing in 1125, the Emperor *Lotharius* II. gave it to *Conrad the Picus*, Marquis of *Miſnia*, whoſe Succeſſors held it till 1317, that *Waldemar* of *Brandenburg* ſeiz'd it. Two Years after, the Emperor *Louis* of *Bavaria* gave it to King *John* of *Bohemia*. It fell to the Houſe of *Auſtria* by *Anne*, Daughter of *Louis* King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, who married the Emperor *Ferdinand*; and who

Digitized by Google

how it came to the House of *Saxony*, we have heard already.

The chief Towns are, 1. *Bautzen*, or *Budissina*, their Metropolis, on the *Spree*, about 30 Miles E. from *Dresden*. 'Twas built by a *Bohemian* Duke of the same Name about 800, and was an Imperial City; but lost its Privileges in the 13th Century, when reduced by the K. of *Bohemia*. The Elector of *Saxony* besieg'd it in 1634, and the Imperialists set Fire to the Suburbs, to dissodge the *Saxons*; which being driven into the Town by a strong Wind, consumed all but the Walls and Castle, which obliged it to surrender. The Remainder was afterwards demolish'd by the *Swedes*; since which, this large Town has never recover'd its Lustre. They have a Church, where both Papists and Lutherans have their Worship.

2. *Gorlitz*, on the W. Side of the *Neisse*, about 25 Miles E. of *Bautzen*. Some say, it was founded by *Sobiesslaus* of *Poland* about 1131; others, by *Boleslaus* III. in 1139; but soon after it was burnt, and called *Gorlitz*, which in the *Slavonick* signifies a burnt Town. It has several neat Churches, and many stately Houses. Their chief Trade is in Beer, and dressing and dying Linen and Woollen. It is well fortified, and the Approach difficult, because it stands in a Morass. 'Tis the Seat of Justice, and the Residence of the Governor.

3. *Zittaw*, on the *Neisse*, 20 Miles S E. from *Gorlitz*, so called from a Lady that founded it, in the beginning of the 11th Century, as some say; thô others think it was by *Wencesslaus* King of *Bohemia*, in the middle of the 13th. They have a good Trade in Beer, and an old *Franciscan* Monastery, turn'd into an Hospital since the Reformation.

4. *Leiba* or *Lobau*, *Liben*, *Lobet*, or *Lubben*, one of the oldest Towns in those Parts. The other Confederate Towns send their Deputies hither, to consult in Cases of Importance. It lies on a small Rivulet, midway betwixt *Gorlitz* and *Bautzen*, surrounded with pleasant Meadows. In 1639, the *Swedes* found 70000 Crowns of Cash, besides other Booty, here.

5. *Luben*, on the *Spree*, the Capital of *Nether Lusatia*, 55 Miles N. from *Bautzen*. The Elector has a Palace here, where he sometimes resides. It has the chief Place in the Diets.

6. *Guben*, a well fortified little Town in *Nether Lusatia*, about 24 Miles E. from *Luben*, on the *Neisse*, which contributes much to its Strength. In 1631, the Imperialists took it after the Battle of *Leipsick*; but 'twas not long after taken again by the Marquis of *Hamilton*, afterwards Duke, then a General in the *Swedish* Army, who put most of the Garison to the Sword. In 1642, it held out 3 Weeks against the *Swedes*; but was obliged to surrender on Discretion for want of Necessaries.

7. *Soraw*, on the Borders of *Silesia*, 20 Miles S. E. from *Guben*, by some reckon'd the Capital of *Nether Lusatia*. 'Twas often taken and retaken during the Civil Wars of *Germany*.

8. *Cotbus*, or *Cotuitz*, on the *Spree*, 20 Miles S. from *Luben*. 'Tis a fair Town, subject to the Elector of *Brandenburg*.

9. *Camitz*, or *Camens*, a little City, well built and fortified, on the Frontiers of *Misnia*, about 15 Miles N. W. from *Baudissen*.

Other Towns here are, 1. *Friedland*, a small City, on a Canal that falls into the *Spree*. 2. *Sprehenberg*, on a Mountain, upon the *Spree*. 3. *Koniguart*, a pretty little City, on the *Weiss-Elster*. 4. *Zobelitz* on the *Schops*, in the best Part of *Lusatia*.

The Marquisate of Brandenburg.

HAS *Mecklenburg* and *Pomerania* on the N. *Anhalt*, *Upper Saxony*, *Lusatia*, and *Silesia*, on the S. the Dominions of the House of *Brunswick* and *Magdeburg* on the W. *Prussia* and *Poland* on the E. *Dresser* says, it is 7 great Days Journey in Breadth, and 7 in Length. According to *Moll*, 'tis but 190 Miles from E. to W. and about 90 where broadest from S. to N. *Sanson* makes it about 225 long, and scarce 90 where broadest; so that *Dresser* must be mistaken, or else mean it of all the Elector's Dominions, which may be true.

The Country in general is sandy and woody, abounds with Corn, but is not plentiful in other Provisions. They have great Flocks of Sheep, but not of Black Cattle; and thô in some Parts they boast of their Wine, the *Saxons* despise it to a Proverb.

They

Digitized by Google

They have few Silver Mines, but some of Braſs, Iron and Copper; ſo that their Money is generally worſe than in *Saxony* and the Dominions of *Brunſwick*. They have many Forreſts, which abound with Veniſon. The ancient Inhabitants were the *Varini* and *Naithones*, Branches of the *Swevi*, ſucceeded by the *Helvoldi*, *Wilini*, *Beirami*, and other *Slavonians*. *Henry* I. conquer'd this Country about 620, expelled moſt of thoſe People, and gave the Country to *Siegefrid* Earl of *Rengelheim*, who, with his Succeſſors, new Planted and Peopled it from the *Netherlands*, *Weſtphalia*, *Francovia*, and *Saxony*, which occaſioned that Confuſion which is ſtill obſervable in their Dialect. Dr. *Nicholſon* ſays, the Country People are generally ſo poor, that a Bed of clean Straw is a Character of one of the better Sort. Their Northerly Situation makes the Winter cold, and 7 or 8 Months long; but they have Plenty of Wood for Fuel, and might make great Profit of their Cattle, were they as much given to Trade, as to Drinking and good Cheer, ſays *La Forteſ*. Their principal Rivers are, the *Elb*, the *Oder*, the *Hawell*, the *Spree*, and the *Warte*. The two firſt have a Communication by means of a Canal, which ſaves their paying the Tolls in the *Sound*, and facilitates the Exportation of their own Commodities. There are abundance of Lakes in this Country, the chief of which is *Ukerzee*. The Elector's Dominions in general are called *Mark*, and he himſelf *Mark-Graf*, for which we uſe the *French* Word Marquis.

Selden, in his Titles of Honour, gives this Account of that Dignity, *viz.* That they had the Name from being Governors of Frontier Provinces at firſt; but it was afterwards given to thoſe who had the Government of Inland Countries, as *Miſnia*, *Luſatia*, *Brandenburg*, &c. In the Time of the *French* Empire, they were alſo called *Duces* and *Comites Limitanei*; but the Title of *Marchio*, he ſays, was not found in the Empire till the Time of *Charles the Great*, but 'twas only Officiary, and not Hereditary, till the Time of *Henry* I. who made one in *Sleſwick* againſt the *Danes*, and another in *Brandenburg* againſt the *Vandals*. In later Times, there were 4 more eminent than the reſt, called the High Margraves, *viz.* *Brandenburg*, *Moravia*, and *Baden*; and beſides Robes of State, had a Cap of State, ſuch as Dukes.

The *Atlas Hiſtorique* has a very large Tree of this Family, which he derives from the Family of *Aſcania*, mention'd formerly in the Families of *Saxony* and *Anhalt*. The firſt is *Bernthoboldus* I. Son to a Lord of *Aſcania* and *Ballenſtad*, who liv'd about 524. Others derive them from *Adalgerius*, choſen King of *Bavaria* in 456, whoſe Succeſſors contented themſelves with the Title of Dukes. His Succeſſor *Theodo* I. conquer'd *Lower Bavaria* from the *Romans*. *Theodo* II. carried on the War againſt them with much Glory. From him came the Branch of the *Lombard* Kings; and from *Thaſſilo* II. the 6th in Deſcent from *Theodo* II. came the Branches of *Brandenburg* and *Bavaria*, and likewiſe the Branch of *Charlemagne*, and the Branch of *Zollern*. The Atlas gives the Origine of the Margraves of *Brandenburg*, who have poſſeſſed this Country, thus: *Sigfrid*, youngeſt Grandſon to *Wittikind* Earl of *Rengelheim*, was firſt created Marquis of *Brandenburg* by *Henry* I. in 927, being Brother to the Empreſs, and famous for his Wars againſt the *Slavonians*. He was ſucceeded by *Gero*, who built the Monaſtery of *Gernrod*; but our Room allowing us only to make mention of ſuch as were remarkable by their Actions, we proceed to *Hugh*, the 4th Marquis, who built 7 ſtately Monaſteries in *Italy*, and died in 1001. The 6th, *Theodorick*, was a great Enemy to the *Veneti*, and others of the neighbouring *Slavi* and *Vandals*, two of whoſe Princes he perſwaded the Emperor *Henry* II. to hang up. He was at laſt overpower'd by them, beat out of his Dominions by *Miſtivoius* Prince of the *Obotriti*, and ended his Days miſerably in a Monaſtery at *Magdeburg*. The 7th, *Udo* Earl of *Saltwedel*, aſſiſted by *Conrad* II. defeated the *Slavi*, drove them out of the Country, and was made Marquis himſelf. His Son *Udo* II. rebelling againſt the Emperor *Henry* IV. was proſcribed, and ſucceeded by *Primiſlaus* King of the *Obotriti*, Anceſtor to the Family of *Mecklenburg*; after whoſe Death, *Frederick* I. gave the Country to *Albert the Bear*, Prince of *Anhalt*, and Marquis of *Saltwedel*; after whom came the ſecond Catalogue of the Marquiſſes: The firſt of whom, *Albert*, Elector and Duke of *Saxony*, *Brunſwick*, &c. ſucceeded *Henry the Lion*.

Digitized by Google

Lien. The 6th of this Line, *Otho* III. built *Brandenburg* and *Pruſſia*; and during the 15 Years of his Reign, had a conſtant War with the Archbiſhop of *Magdeburg* and the Biſhop of *Halberſtat*. The 10th, *Waldemar*, annexed great Part of *Luſatia*, which he won from the Marquis of *Miſnia*. The 12th was *John* IV. the laſt of the Houſe of *Anhalt*, who dying without Heirs, the Emperor gave the Marquiſate to the 12th, who was *Louis* of *Bavaria*, Son to *Louis* the Emperor. He reſign'd it to his Brother *Louis* II. who was ſucceeded by the Emperor's 3d Son, *Otho* Count Palatine of the *Rhine*. He ſold it to the Emperor *Charles* IV. who gave it to his own Son *Winceſlaus*, who being elected Emperor, gave the Marquiſate to his Brother *Sigiſmund*, King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, who was the 17th Marquis of this Catalogue; and ſucceeding to the Empire, gave the Marquiſate to *Frederick* Burgrave of *Nuremberg* in 1417, who was the firſt of the preſent Line and Catalogue.

The *Atlas Hiſtorique*, before he comes to the Hiſtory of the Princes of this Line, makes the following Remarks; That the Electorate was poſſeſſed 170 Years by the Poſterity of *Albert* of *Anhalt*; which failing, the Marquiſate return'd as a Fief of the Empire to the Emperor *Louis* of *Bavaria* above-mention'd, who, without any Regard to the Pretenſions of the Family of *Anhalt*, from whom the extinguiſh'd Branch deſcended, gave it to his own Son *Louis*, who for 26 Years was engaged in War with an Impoſtor, who, ſome ſay, was Son to a Miller; and others, of a Baker, and pretended to be *Waldemar* Marquis of *Brandenburg*, who died in Wars abroad. This Impoſtor was ſupported by the King of *Bohemia*, the Dukes of *Saxony*, *Brunſwick*, *Pomerania*, *Mecklenburg*, and the Princes of *Anhalt*, who were Enemies to *Louis* on the Account above-mentioned. But the Impoſture being diſcovered, the Emperor *Charles* IV. confirmed *Louis* above-mentioned: After whom it came to *Wenceſlaus* and *Sigiſmund*, as above, who not being able to reſtore the Peace of the Electorate, it was given to *Frederick* V. Burgrave of *Nuremberg*, as has been ſaid already, who undertook to pacify the Troubles, for which he was to have 100000 Gold Crowns of *Hungary*, and to reſtore the Electorate to *Sigiſmund* and *Wenceſlaus*; but *Frederick* having reduc'd the Country, was by *Sigiſmund* and the Diet made Elector, on Condition, That if the Emperor paid him 400000 Crowns, the Country ſhould again return to *Sigiſmund* and his Heirs; and if they fail'd, to *Winceſlaus* and his: And after this Treaty, the *Atlas* ſays, That by Letters Patents in 1415, the Electorate was diſcharged from their Oath to *Sigiſmund* and *Wenceſlaus*; and two Years after, *Frederick* was ſolemnly proclaim'd Elector in the Council of *Conſtance*, with the following Ceremonies, which ſhew the Form of creating an Elector.

Some Barons and Gentlemen rode three times thrô the Streets, with two Standards, and Trumpets playing: After which all the Princes came to the Burgrave's Houſe with little Colours, bearing the Elector's Arms, and conducted him to the Market-place, where a Scaffold was erected. Upon which the Emperor mounted with his Crown on his Head, and ſitting down on his Throne, with the Electors in their Robes on both Sides, the Burgrave came up, attended by two Officers with the Standards of the Marquiſate, and of the Burgraviate; the Burgrave kneeling, deſir'd the Emperor to create him Margrave, and to inveſt him with the Marquiſate, which, after the Burgrave took the Oath, was done accordingly, by putting into his Hands the Standard of the Marquiſate, the Gold Apple or Globe, and the Scepter, and by girding a Sword to his Side: After which he was proclaim'd Elector of *Brandenburg*, and Arch-Chamberlain of the Empire. And thus the Family of *Anhalt*, which had acquir'd two Electorates, *viz.* that of *Brandenburg* in 1142, and that of *Saxony* in 1180, had the Misfortune to loſe both in leſs than one Age. *Frederick*, after his Inveſtiture, reduc'd ſeveral Towns belonging to the Electorate; and while he was thus engaged, *Louis* of *Bavaria* invaded his ancient Dominions of *Nuremberg*, which he reveng'd by a War upon him, in which he acquir'd great Reputation. During this Expedition, the Emperor made *Frederick* Marquis of *Miſnia* Elector of *Saxony*, to whom *Frederick* quitted *Wirtemberg*, and all the Electoral Territory of *Saxony*, on Condition that he ſhould pay him a certain Sum for having defended it. In 1416, the War with the

Digitized by Google

Huſſites began, wherein *Frederick* was declared General. This War proved ruinous to *Bohemia*, and to Part of the Elector's Dominions, which they invaded. The Duke of *Saxony* taking this Opportunity, did alſo make War upon *Frederick*, but was worſted. Thoſe of *Magdeburg* and *Halle* having rebelled againſt their Biſhops, and being proſcribed by the Emperor, were afterwards reconciled by *Frederick* in 1435. The Elector being advanced in Years, reſolved to ſettle his Affairs by his Will, and calling for his Sons, ſpoke to *John* his eldeſt thus: *I have obſerved that you love Peace and Eaſe, which you cannot enjoy if you poſſeſs the Electorate; therefore, if you agree to it, I will leave the Electorate to* Frederick, *your ſecond Brother, who is more active and ſtrong than you. I will leave you* Voitland, Albert *ſhall have what belongs to me in* Franconia, *and young* Frederick *a Part of the Marquiſate. John* willingly agreed to it, thank'd his Father for taking Care that he ſhould enjoy Peace and Quiet, and for laying the Weight and Burden of the Government on his Brother *Frederick*.

The Elector dying in 1440, *Frederick* II. ſucceeded, and was ſome Time after choſen King of *Poland*, upon the Death of *Ladiſlaus* their King at the Battle of *Warna* without Iſſue; but *Frederick* refus'd it, becauſe *Ladiſlaus* had a Brother, who was Duke of *Lithuania*. After this the *Poles* beſieged *Franefort* on the *Oder*, where *Frederick* defeated them, and killed 3000 on the Spot. Soon after, *Podiebrat* King of *Bohemia*, and *Louis* Duke of *Bavaria*, made War upon him for *Luſatia*, which he poſſeſſed as a Fief of *Poland*; but this War was concluded by dividing the Country betwixt them. *Otho* III. Duke of *Stettin*, dying, *Frederick*, by Vertue of a former Agreement betwixt their Anceſtors, demanded the Inveſtiture of the Dutchy of *Pomerania* from the Emperor *Frederick* III. but his Title was controverted by the Dukes of *Wolgaſt* as nearer of Kin. *Frederick* however took Poſſeſſion by the Emperor's Conſent: This occaſion'd a troubleſome War, which laid waſte that Part of his Dominions called the *New Marq*. But a Peace was concluded at laſt by the Mediation of *Caſimir* King of *Poland*. *Podiebrat* King of *Bohemia* being accus'd of Hereſy, the Pope offer'd his Crown to *Frederick*, who refus'd it. Being advanc'd in Years, and not able to bear the Fatigues of Government, he reſign'd the Electorate, with the Emperor's Conſent, to his Brother *Albert* and his Heirs, whom the Emperor did alſo inveſt with the Dutchies of *Pomerania* and *Stettin*, the Burgraviate of *Nuremberg*, the Principality of *Rugen*, and the Right to the Succeſſion of *Mecklenburg*. *Frederick*, after his Reſignation, went to *Franconia*, where he died, in the 58th Year of his Age, and was ſucceeded by his Brother. *Albert* I. Dr. *Nicholſon* ſays, That *Frederick* II. was, becauſe of his peeviſh and cruel Temper, called the Marquis with Iron Teeth; but this does not agree with the Character given him by the *Atlas*, and ſeems rather to have proceeded from his Succeſs in War.

Albert ſucceeded him in 1442, and was made General of the Empire at 24 Years of Age againſt the *Bohemians* and *Poles*, with whom he made a ſucceſsful War. He gain'd alſo great Honour in a Tournament at *Augsburg*, being the only Man who was not diſmounted. *Louis the Hump-back*, Son to *Louis* of *Bavaria*, being diſinherited by his Father, courted *Frederick*'s Alliance, by which he fought and took his Father, and would not releaſe him till he paid him a conſiderable Ranſom. In 1448, *Albert* had War with thoſe of *Nuremberg*. Moſt of the Princes of the Empire took Part with him, and all the Imperial Towns ſided with *Nuremberg*. In two Years, they fought 9 Battles, of which *Albert* gain'd 8; but both Parties were forc'd to give over for want of Money and Proviſions. One of the *Nuremberg* Party being ask'd, Why ſo many made War upon one Man? He anſwer'd, That *Albert* alone poſſeſſed all the Riches and Strength of the Empire. He acquir'd ſuch Reputation in this War, that he was afterwards made Arbitrator of all the Differences of the Empire. In 1461, he had War with *Louis the Rich*, D of *Lower Bavaria*, for two Years, to ſupport *Adolph* Count of *Naſſau*, whom Pope *Pius* II. had made Archbiſhop of *Mentz*, and deprived *Theodorick* of *Iſenburg* of that Dignity; but the Cardinal of *Augsburg* did afterwards make up the Difference. He did all this, while his Brother was Elector. When he came to the Electorate, he apply'd himſelf to aggrandiſe his Family, and would

Digitized by Google

would have annex'd the Dutchy of *Stettin* to his Dominions; but by the Mediation of the Duke of *Mecklenburg*, he contented himſelf with what he had taken by Arms, and with the Dukes of *Pomerania* doing him Homage for the Dutchy of *Stettin*. For the better Support of his Family, he perſwaded the Houſes of *Heſſe* and *Saxony* to enter into a Contract of mutual Succeſſion betwixt the three Families, in caſe any of their Poſterities happen'd to fail. After the Death of *Erick* Duke of *Wolgaſt*, his Son *Bogiſlaus* refus'd Homage to *Albert*, and took Arms; but the Difference was made up, on Condition, That if the Male-Iſſue of the Dukes of *Pomerania* fail'd, *Albert*'s ſhould ſucceed. Soon after this he was made General by *Frederick* III. againſt *Charles* Duke of *Burgundy*, who beſieg'd *Nuis*; but could not oblige him to raiſe the Siege. During this Expedition, he left the Government to his eldeſt Son, and afterwards confirmed him in it; and being advanc'd in Age, reſerving only the Title of Elector, he retir'd to his Dominions in *Franconia*. The Emperor *Frederick* III. dying in 1486, *Albert*, notwithſtanding his great Age, went to aſſiſt at the Election of a new Emperor; but died ſuddenly in a Bath. The Pope call'd him the *Achilles* of *Germany*, and others the *German Ulyſſes*. He had all the Qualities of a great General, and was admir'd by every body for his noble Mien, and great Eloquence, as well as for his Wiſdom and Valour, having fought more Battles than any General of his Time. Dr. *Nicholſon* ſays, he died at *Franckfort* in 1494; which is more like to be true, ſince the Emperor *Frederick* III. died, according to the *Atlas*, in 1493; and the Tree of the Houſe of *Auſtria* ſays the ſame.

John I. ſucceeded his Father *Albert*. He was bred at the Court of his Uncle the Elector *Frederick* II. where there was great Care taken to teach him the Art of Government and War. His Uncle took him with him to the Wars of *Pomerania*; and when he was but 15 Years of Age, he was entruſted with the Adminiſtration of the Marquiſate. A War happening betwixt *Caſimir* King of *Poland*, his Son *Ladiſlaus*, and *Matthias* King of *Hungary*, *John*, by his Eloquence, brought them to an Accommodation. He was ſo remarkable for this Quality, that he was called the *German Cicero*. He likewiſe obliged the Duke of *Sagan* and the King of *Hungary* to raiſe the Siege of *Croſſen*, and to leave the Dutchy of *Croſſen*, and other Countries, as a Mortgage for the Dowry of his Siſter, Widow to the Duke of *Glogau* in *Sileſia*. After this, *John* contributed much to the Election of the Emperor *Maximilian*. His Money being exhauſted by War, he laid an Exciſe upon Beer in his Dominions. This made the People of the *Old Marq* rebel, and kill ſome of his Officers, for which he depriv'd them of their Privileges. He became ſo extraordinary fat, that he was not able to bear it, and endanger'd his Life by attempting to make himſelf lean. He deſign'd to eſtabliſh an Univerſity at *Francfort*; but not being able to accompliſh it, order'd his Succeſſor *Joachim* to do it; and finding Death to approach, he ſent for him, gave him pious Advice, recommended to him to take Care of his People, to do them Juſtice, and not to ſuffer his great Men to oppreſs them. He died in 1499. His Son *Joachim* ſucceeded, being ſcarce 16 Years of Age; and ſince, according to the *Golden Bull*, he could not take the Government upon him, he conſulted the Elector of *Mentz*, who adviſed him to aſſume the Electoral Dignity notwithſtanding. His Father took great Care of his Education, ſo that he was well inſtructed in all the Liberal Arts, and very well vers'd in the Art of Government. He eſtabliſh'd the Univerſity of *Francfort* according to his Father's Order in 1506. *Conrad Wimpin* was their firſt Rector, and form'd their Statutes. Above 1000 Scholars enter'd to it the firſt half Year. *Joachim*'s Wiſdom and Probity gain'd him the Eſteem and Affection of all his Neighbours; and the *Hamburgers* truſted him with the Defence of their City. He ſeverely puniſh'd ſome *Jews* for prophaning a Conſecrated Hoſt. *Louis* of *Erlikhauſen*, Great Maſter of the *Teutonick* Order, ſold to the Elector *Frederick* II. the *New Marq*; and *Albert the Great*, his Brother, when Maſter of that Order, made that Province Hereditary to *Joachim* and his Succeſſors, becauſe of the great Sums the Margraves of *Brandenburg* had laid out in Defence of the Order. In his Time, *Luther* began to preach in *Germany*; and the Emperor *Maximilian* dy-

Digitized by Google

ing, *Joachim*, and his Brother *Albert* Archbishop of *Mentz*, contributed much to the Election of *Charles* V. He likewise made Peace betwixt the Bishop of *Hildesheim* and the Dukes of *Brunswick*. At the Diet of *Worms*, he and the Elector of *Treves* endeavour'd to perswade *Luther* to retract what he had writ against the Pope, Cardinals, and the rest of the Clergy; which *Luther* refusing, he ask'd him, If he could advise him to any better Method for restoring the Peace of the Church? To which *Luther* answer'd, That he must go and consult at the Feet of *Gamaliel*, which very much disoblig'd the Elector. *Joachim* was so great a Justiciary, that a Merchant being robb'd near *Berlin*, ty'd and thrown into a Pit, whence the Robber thought he could never escape, got out however, and hearing much of the Elector's Justice, complain'd to him, and charg'd it on one of the Courtiers: Upon which, *Joachim* order'd 'em all to be brought before the Merchant, who discovering the Criminal, demanded Justice, and the Courtier confessing it, was put to Death. He had some Difference with the Duke of *Pomerania*, which was accommodated by renewing the Treaty, That his Heirs should succeed, if the Male-Issue of *Pomerania* fail'd. At the Diet of *Augsburg* in 1530, he was chose to speak to the Emperor in the Name both of the Papists and Protestants, because of his Eloquence and Learning; which, with the Solidity of his Advice, was very much admir'd on that Occasion: And Dr. *Nicholson* says, he was the first who authoriz'd the Reformation in his Dominions. At his return from the Diet, he punish'd the Citizens of *Stendal*, who had abus'd the Deputies which the Princes his Sons had sent to accommodate some Differences, which had happen'd among them about Religion; but being stir'd up by a Monk, they assaulted the Deputies and Magistrates, who narrowly escap'd: For this, the Elector depriv'd the City of their Tolls, fin'd them in 10000 Crowns, and oblig'd them to repair the Damage they had done to Houses, *&c.* in the Tumult, abolish'd the Annual Feast of *Panthaleon*, which the Tradesmen had made use of to raise this Tumult, and condemned the Ringleaders to die; but at the Request of his Sons, he contented himself to banish them and their Families. After which, he had no more Troubles during his Reign: To prevent any Difference among his Sons, he divided his Dominions betwixt them before his Death. *John* had the *New-Marq*, and his eldest Son *Joachim* succeeded to the Electorate, and his other Dominions, after his Death, which happen'd in the 51st Year of his Age, and the 36th of his Reign.

Joachim II. succeeded in 1536. His Father took great Care to breed him up in Learning and Virtue. He acquir'd great Knowledge in the Languages and in the Scriptures, and surpassed all the young Princes of the Empire in civil and pleasant Behaviour. Having thus accomplish'd himself, he went to the Court of the Emperor *Maximilian* I. who being the perfect Model of a good Sovereign, *Joachim* profited much by his Example. The Emperor, charm'd with his good Qualities, which were so like his own, betroth'd to him the *Infanta* of *Spain*, his Grand-Daughter, and promis'd himself a happy Posterity by this Match; but the Death of the Princess before the Consummation of the Marriage prevented it. This young Prince having always attended his Father at the Diets, and frequently acted as his Deputy, was a perfect Master of Government, and of all the Affairs of the Empire, which procur'd him universal Respect. *Soliman* I. Emperor of the *Turks*, having invaded and over-run most of *Austria*, *Joachim*, with 1000 of his own Horse, join'd the Army of *Philip* Prince *Palatine*, and charged the *Turks* with so much Courage at the Battle of *Leopold*, that he kill'd one of their Basha's, and put them to flight. This did so much advance him in the Esteem of *Charles* V. that he made him a Knight of the *Golden Fleece*, an Honour in those Days conferred upon none but such as had distinguish'd themselves in Battle. He married first *Magdalen* of *Saxony*, who dying in 1534, 2 Years after he married *Hedwige*, Daughter to *Sigismund* King of *Poland*; but the Death of his Father happening at the same Time, prevented the Solemnities of the Marriage. As soon as he came to the Government, he join'd with those of the *Augsburg* Confession, *Elizabeth* of *Denmark*, his Mother, being a *Lutheran*. *Sigismund* King of *Poland*, and the Elector of *Saxony*, his Fathers-in-Law, and his

his Uncle *Albert* the Elector of *Mentz*, did all they could to hinder his doing so, but in vain. He enrich'd the University of *Francfort* with the Possessions of the Monks and Popish Clergy, and took Care, that those who were bred for the Church or State Employments, should be taught good Principles. His own Example polish'd his Subjects, and inspir'd them with Virtue. He reform'd the Corruptions of the Courts of Justice, and his Subjects liv'd in perfect Peace during his Reign. He preserv'd the Empire from the Invasion of the *Turks*; but was hinder'd by those who envy'd his Glory from doing any thing considerable against them, being kept short of Money and Provisions. He prevented the Execution of the Elector of *Saxony*, who was taken Prisoner, and condemn'd by *Charles* V. and interceded for the Landgrave of *Hesse*, who was made Prisoner by the Duke of *Alva*, contrary to Promise. He bravely oppos'd the *Interim* that was agreed upon at the Diet of *Augsburg* to be the Religion of the Empire, till a General Council should determine the Religious Differences. He and his Electress saw'd by a special Providence, when the Floor of a Chamber fell under them at *Grimnitz* in 1549, when the Elector went thither to hunt. He hung by a Plank till his Officers rescued him; and the Electress catch'd hold of the Horns of a Deer that hung against the Wall, till she was also rescued. The Emperor refusing to set the Landgrave of *Hesse* at Liberty, *Joachim* join'd with *Maurice* of *Saxony*, and defeated the Emperor's Army commanded by *Albert* of *Brandenburg*, so famous in History, which obliged the Emperor to set the Landgrave at Liberty. He renewed the Treaty of mutual Succession betwixt his own Family and those of *Saxony* and *Hesse*. *Ferdinand* I. having assembled the Electors at *Francfort*, to have his Son *Maximilian* II. chosen King of the *Romans*, he honour'd *Joachim* so far, as to go out of the City with the rest of the Princes to meet him. *Ferdinand* dying in 1564, *Joachim* wept for Grief at the Troubles he foresaw would attend the Death of that peaceable Prince. He was reckon'd to have something of a Spirit of Prophecy, and his Predictions are observ'd by Historians to have come justly to pass. He procur'd the Title of Duke of *Crossen* in *Silesia*, and the Right of Succession to the Dutchy of *Prussia*. He was a very Religious Prince, and a little before his Death did meditate much on our Saviour's Passion, and form'd a Draught of it with his own Hand. He died suddenly of Poison given by a *Jew* in a Glass of Sack, in the 66th Year of his Age, and 36th of his Reign. The Emperor *Frederick* esteemed him so highly, that at his Death, he order'd his Sons to take his Advice as that of a Father.

His Son *John George* I. succeeded in 1561. He had a very good Education, and made his first Campaign in the Army of *Charles* V. against the Protestant Princes, who enter'd into the League of *Smalcald*. He signaliz'd himself on several Occasions, particularly at the Siege of *Wirtemberg* in 1546. He had a numerous Family, which made him look carefully after his private Affairs, but without neglecting those of the Publick. *Philip* II. of *Spain* made him one of his Privy-Council, and General of his Army, both which Posts he enjoyed under *Maximilian* II. till he came to the Electorate upon the Death of his Father, when he banish'd the *Jews* out of his Dominions, and order'd him that poison'd his Father to be put to a cruel Death. Finding himself in great Debt, he obtain'd Money to pay them from a Meeting of his States. He renewed all the Constitutions that were for the Good of his Subjects, of whom he took great Care, and preserved their Religious and Civil Liberties. He was so much esteem'd for his Probity, that the Duke of *Mecklenburg*, the Duke of *Anhalt*, and the Elector of *Saxony*, appointed him by their Wills to be Tutors to their Sons, which he executed with great Justice. He endeavour'd to obtain Freedom for the Protestants in the Electorate of *Cologne*, after the Pope had excommunicated their Elector for turning Protestant. He took great Care to have Religion and Justice flourish in his own Dominions, and supported his Grandson *John George*, who was chosen Administrator of the Bishoprick of *Strasburg*, and died piously in 1598, in the 72d Year of his Age, and the 27th of his Reign. He was a Mild, Industrious, Eloquent, Judicious, and Bountiful Prince, had excellent Parts, a noble Mien, and good Face.

He

He was ſucceeded by his Son *Joachim Frederick*, whoſe Præceptor was the Learned *Hubner*, whom he afterwards made one of his Counſellors. During his Minority, he was choſen Biſhop of *Havelberg* and *Lubeck*; but his Father took Care of the Adminiſtration. At 19 Years of Age, he went to the Court of the Emperor *Maximilian* II. follow'd him in his Wars in *Hungary*; and upon the Death of the Archbiſhop of *Magdeburg*, was made Adminiſtrator of that Archbiſhoprick, and brought in the Reformation there, where his Government was pleaſing to all his Subjects. He liv'd in perfect Amity with his neighbouring Princes, and frequently reconcil'd their Differences. He aſſiſted *Henry* IV. of *France* againſt thoſe of the League. After his Father's Death, his Subjects receiv'd him with as great Joy as thoſe of *Magdeburg*, whom he had govern'd ſo happily for 30 Years, had Grief at his Departure, and out of Love to him, choſe his youngeſt Son in his ſtead. The Emperor *Rodolphus*, who eſteem'd him highly, readily inveſted him, and granted his other Demands. He govern'd his Subjects with great Mildneſs and Juſtice; and being taken ill as he was ſinging Pſalms in his Coach, he died ſuddenly, recommending himſelf devoutly to God, in the 62d Year of his Age, and 11th of his Reign, in 1609; and was ſucceeded by

John Sigiſmund, who was bred up in Learning at *Strasburg*; and in the 19th Year of his Age, was married to *Ann* Dutcheſs of *Pruſſia*, Preſumptive Heireſs of the Dutchy of *Juliers*. He was confirm'd in the Dutchy of *Pruſſia* by the King and Diet of *Poland*; but not without Oppoſition by ſome of the *Poliſh* Grandees: And the Duke of *Juliers* and *Cleves*, Uncle to his Electreſs, dying, he took Poſſeſſion of theſe Dutchies in her Right; but was oppoſed by the Duke of *Neuburg*, and at length came to an Agreement to govern jointly. He enter'd into the Union of the Proteſtant Princes, againſt the League made by the Poiſh Princes in the Empire, and died in 1619, in the 48th Year of his Age, and 12th of his Reign; and was ſucceeded by his Son

George William, who was born in 1595, and bred in the Univerſity of *Francfort*. During his Father's Life, he had the Adminiſtration of *Juliers* and *Cleves*. He was very zealous for the Proteſtant Religion; and in an Aſſembly held at *Leipſick*, endeavour'd an Union betwixt the *Lutherans* and *Calviniſts*, which came to nothing, becauſe of the Peeviſhneſs and Stubbornneſs of ſome Churchmen. After the Battle of *Prague*, where *Frederick* IV. Elector *Palatine*, was defeated, *George William*, and the Elector of *Saxony*, procur'd Peace in the Empire for ſome Time: But the Succeſs of the Houſe of *Auſtria* having made them attempt the Liberties of the Empire, and the Ruin of the Proteſtants, it brought on the War betwixt *Guſtavus Adolphus* and the Emperor; during which, the Dominions of *Brandenburg* ſuffer'd very much; and all the Elector could do, was to defend his beſt Places. He dy'd in 1640, and was ſucceeded by his Son

Frederick William, who provided for the Eaſe of his Subjects by a Treaty of Neutrality with the *Swedes*, who by the Peace of *Munſter* were obliged forthwith to evacuate *Pomerania*, and the Marquiſate of *Brandenburg*; but the *Swediſh* Deputies delayed it by Tricks till 1653; nor could it then be procured but by the Elector's quitting that now called *Swediſh Pomerania*, and ſeveral Bailiwicks, with the Iſle of *Rugen*, to the *Swedes*; for which he had, but much ſhort of an Equivalent, the Arbiſhoprick of *Magdeburg*, the Biſhopricks of *Halberſtat* and *Camin*, and the Principality of *Minden*, with their Dependencies. He offer'd 2000000 Crowns, and all thoſe Dominions, for that Part of *Pomerania* he was obliged to yield; but in vain. He bravely maintain'd the Prerogatives of the Electors as to the Ceremonial in the Diet of *Francfort*, and was very zealous in ſupporting the Intereſt of Religion, and particularly of the *Calviniſts*. In 1656, he was oblig'd, for the Preſervation of *Pruſſia*, to join with the *Swedes* againſt the *Poles*. But the King of *Denmark* having declared War againſt *Charles Guſtavus* of *Sweden*, he was forced to leave *Poland* to defend his own Country; ſo that the Burden of the *Poliſh* War falling upon the Elector, he made it up by a Treaty with the *Poles*, by which they acquitted him from the Homage due to their Crown for *Pruſſia*, and quitted him the Fiefs of *Lawenburg*, *Botow*, and the Town of *Elbing*, on Condition that he ſhould reſtore the latter on their paying him 400000 Crowns. After

Digitized by Google

tet the Death of *Ferdinand* III. in 1657, the *French* were for advancing the Elector of *Bavaria* to the Imperial Throne; but the Elector of *Brandenburg* adhering to the Houſe of *Auſtria*, the laſt Emperor *Leopold* was choſen, thô the Elector of *Bavaria* had before-hand gained 3 Votes. He afterwards took Part with the *Poles*, the H. of *Auſtria*, and the *Danes*, againſt *Sweden*, after having firſt endeavour'd to accommodate Matters betwixt the *Swedes* and *Poles*; but not being ſeconded by the *Dutch*, as he expected, a Treaty was concluded at *Oliva* in 1660. After this he apply'd himſelf to the Affairs of Peace, to reconcile himſelf with the Princes at variance with him, and made an Alliance with *France* and *England* for his own Security. The *French* King having ſeiz'd the Principality of *Orange*, the Elector being Tutor of the young Prince, ſent an Embaſſy to plead for its Reſtoration. In 1666, he made a perpetual Treaty with the Prince of *Neuburg* about the Succeſſion of *Juliers* and *Cleves*, and afterwards got the latter perpetually annexed to his own Family. He aſſiſted the Emperor againſt the *Turks*, made Peace betwixt the Dukes of *Lunenburg*, who had fallen out amongſt themſelves, and likewiſe betwixt the *Engliſh*, the *Dutch*, and the Biſhop of *Munſter*. In 1672, the *French* having declared War againſt the *Dutch*, he ſent Aſſiſtance to the latter, and his Troops join'd thoſe of the Emperor under General *Montecuculi*, who diſagreeing from the Elector's Meaſures, they did little more than give a bare Diverſion to the *French*. On ſome Diſcontents by the Emperor and States, he made a Treaty with *France* in 1673; but in 1674, renewed his Alliance with the States againſt *France*, and went into *Alſace* with 20000 Men; but the Imperial General *Bournonville* thwarting his Meaſures, little was done that Campaign. In the mean time the *Swedes*, at the Sollicitation of *France*, invaded *Pomerania* and the *Marq.* Upon which the Elector return'd from *Alſace* againſt the *Swedes*, over whom he gain'd a compleat Victory at *Fehrbellin*, and took from them the Iſle of *Wollin*, *Wolgaſt*, and *Anclam*, one of the ſtrongeſt Forts of *Pomerania*. He alſo took *Stettin*, after a famous Siege; of which, in its Place. In 1678, he made himſelf Maſter of the Iſle of *Rugen*, took *Stralſund* and *Gripwald*, and chas'd the *Swedes* out of all *Pomerania*. They, to divert him, invaded *Pruſſia*; but the Elector, in the middle of the Winter, paſſed the Lake or Bay of *Courland*, which falls into the *Baltick*, with his Army and Artillery upon the Ice, where it was 3 Miles broad, ſurpris'd and defeated them; ſo that of 16000, ſcarce 5000 eſcaped to *Livonia*. After the War of 1672, he was left out of the Treaty of *Nimeguen*; and Peace being concluded among the other Princes, and the *French* joining with the *Swedes*, he was obliged by the Treaty of *St. Germains* to quit all his Conqueſts to them, for which the *French* King, by a ſecret Article, paid him 300000 Crowns towards his Charge of the War. The King of *Spain* refuſing to pay him his Arrears, he put our 8 Veſſels, that took a rich Merchant-Ship on the Coaſt of *Spain*, by which he did himſelf Juſtice. In order to enlarge the Trade of his Subjects, he built a Fortreſs in *Guinea*, called *Grand Friedrichsburg*, and made a Canal betwixt the *Spree* and the *Oder*, by which he facilitated the Commerce of the Merchants of *Sileſia* with thoſe of *Hamburg* and his own Dominions. He imbelliſh'd the Town of *Berlin* with fine Buildings, erected an Arſenal there, built a new Town, put his Dominions in a better Condition than ever they had been, aboliſh'd the Subſidies on Eſtates; and in lieu of it, laid a Tax on Conſumption, which had a very good Effect. He acquir'd greater Authority than any of his Predeceſſors, was lov'd by his Subjects, and dreaded by his Enemies, by keeping always a good Army on foot. He likewiſe diſtinguiſh'd himſelf by his Piety, and endeavour'd a Reconciliation betwixt the *Lutherans* and *Calviniſts*; but in vain. He was very charitable and bountiful to the *French* Refugees, employ'd their Nobility and Officers in his Court, and eſtabliſh'd great Numbers of 'em in his Dominions; and had ſo much Compaſſion on thoſe Sufferers, that he ſaid, He would rather ſell his Plate, than they ſhould want Subſiſtence. He was ſo affable, that all People had ready Acceſs to him to demand Juſtice; for his chief Care was to prevent his Subjects being oppreſſed. He applied himſelf ſo much to the Affairs of Government, that he would

Digitized by Google

would ſpend Hours together in reading Letters from all Parts of his Dominions. His Courage was ſignaliz'd on many Occaſions at the Head of his Armies; and thô he liv'd in great Splendour, was an Enemy to Luxury and Superfluity; but was very generous in rewarding Services done him. He was very exemplary in his Life, and died *April* 29, 1688. in the 68th Year of his Age, and 48th of his Reign.

His Son *Frederick* ſucceeded, and ſoon after had an Interview with the Elector of *Saxony*, the Duke of *Hanover*, and the Landgrave of *Heſſe-Caſſel*, about their own Intereſts, and the Prince of *Orange*'s Expedition to *England*, which had been concerted with his Father before. At the ſame Time the *French* King, to traverſe that Deſign, made War upon the Empire, contrary to his Truce, wherein the Dauphin took *Philipſburg*, and other Places of the *Palatinate*. Next Year the Elector form'd the Siege of *Bonn*, and took it, having narrowly eſcap'd being ſurpris'd by a *French* Detachment, wherein he gave great Proofs of his Valour. In 1690, King *William* having ſucceeded in his Expedition, ſent him the Order of the *Garter* by *James Johnſton* Eſq; afterwards Secretary of State for *Scotland*. In 1693, his Troops diſtinguiſh'd themſelves at the Battle of *Landen*, under the Conduct of his Brother Prince *Charles*, of which King *William* ſent him an Account under his own Hand. In 1694, he ſent Aſſiſtance to the Duke of *Savoy*, under his two Brothers Prince *Charles* and Prince *Albert*. In 1695, his Troops contributed much to the taking of *Namure*, of which King *William* gave him an Account again with his own Hand: Upon which the Elector came to the *Hague* to congratulate his Majeſty, whom, with the Duke of *Zell*, he entertain'd ſplendidly at *Cleves*. After King *Auguſtus* was choſen King of *Poland*, the Elector ſeiz'd the Town of *Elbing* for the Security of the Money due to his Father, as above-mentioned. In 1700, the Elector conſidering the Antiquity and Dignity of his Houſe, from whence many Crown'd Heads in ſeveral Parts of *Europe* had proceeded, and being himſelf able to ſupport his Splendour of a Crown, took upon him the Royal Dignity the 17th of *December* that Year, with extraordinary Ceremony. The *Swedes* having enter'd *Poland*, his Majeſty found himſelf obliged to increaſe his Army to 40000 Men. King *William* dying in 1702, his *Pruſſian* Majeſty, as deſcended from *Rene* of *Naſſau*, Prince of *Orange*, claim'd Part of his Inheritance; as to which, the Controverſy betwixt his *Pruſſian* Majeſty, and the Prince of *Naſſau* of *Friſeland*, whom King *William* left his Heir, is not yet determin'd. This occaſioned the King of *Pruſſia* to take a Journey to the Dutchy of *Cleves*, to keep the States of *Holland* from being too much diſcouraged by the Death of King *William*; and he encouraged the Allies to beliege *Keyſerſwaert*. The *French* King having ſeiz'd *Orange* after King *William*'s Death, his *Pruſſian* Majeſty kindly received the Proteſtants who fled from thence into his Dominions. In 1704, his Troops having contributed much to the glorious Victory of *Hochſtet* under the Prince of *Anhalt*, Prince *Eugene* gave his Majeſty an Account of it by a Letter. In 1705, his Majeſty erected an Academy at *Berlin* for the Education of his Youth of Quality, in ſuitable Exerciſes, and Learning. That ſame Year he loſt his Queen, Siſter to the Elector of *Hanover*. In 1706, he had an Account of the Victory of *Turin*, where his Troops, under the Prince of *Anhalt*, diſtinguiſh'd themſelves with great Bravery. In 1707, he ſucceeded the Dutcheſs of *Nemours* in the Principality of *Neufchattel*, and County of *Vallengin*, by the Interpoſition of the Queen of *Great Britain* and the Allies, notwithſtanding the *French* King's Oppoſition. That ſame Year, the Prince Royal his Son married the Princeſs of *Hanover*; and in *November* following, he had a Son by her, whom his Grandfather created Knight and Prince of *Orange*.

His Titles are, *Frederick*, by the Grace of God, King of *Pruſſia*, Margrave of *Brandenburg*, Arch-Chamberlain and Elector of the Empire; Prince of *Orange*, of *Magdeburg*, *Cleves*, *Juliers*, *Bergen*, *Stettin*, *Pomerania*, *Caſſubia*, of the *Vandals* and *Croſſen* in *Sileſia*, Burgrave of *Nuremberg*, Prince of *Halberſtat*, *Minden*, and *Camin*, Count of *Hohenzollern*, *Marc*, *Ravensberg*, *Lawenburg*, *Botow*, *Arley* and *Breda*, and Count of *Neufchattel*.

His

Digitized by Google

His Pretensions are, 1. To all *Pomerania*, of which he has only the lower Part. 2. To the Succession of the late King *William*, as Prince of *Orange*. 3. To the Succession of the last Duke of *Juliers*, *Cleves*, and *Mons*. 4. To the Dutchy of *Gelderland*, and County of *Zutphen*, which belong'd to the Dukes of *Juliers*. 5. To the Burgraviate of *Nuremberg*. 6. To the Town and Territory of *Kizingen* in *Franconia*, seiz'd by the Bishop of *Wurtzburg* in 1626. 7. To the Principality of *Lignitz* in *Silesia*, by a Contract of Succession made with Prince *Frederick* in 1549. 8. Some Rights to the Abbies of *Quedlinburg* and *Erfurt*.

The principal Branches of this Family are those of *Bareith-Cullembach*, and *Anspach*. They both came from the Elector *John George*, who died in 1598. The present Prince of *Cullembach* is *Christian Henry*, born in 1661. From *Christian* I. of this Family, came the Branch of *Bareith*, the Prince of which is *Christian Ernest*.

The Branch of *Anspach* came from the same *John George*; the present Prince is *William Frederick*, born in 1703.

There were several other Branches; but they are extinguished.

The present Branches have the same Titles and Pretensions with the Royal Family, except that of King; and there is a Right of Succession among them.

Another of the Branches is that of *Hohenzollern*, which is as old as *Charlemagne*'s Time; the present Prince is *Frederick William*, born in 1663. From this Branch came the Burgraves of *Nuremberg*, from whence the Royal Family is descended; and from it proceeded also that of *Sigmaringen*, whose present Prince is *Francis Anthony*.

The Arms of the Royal Family are, *Argent*, an *Eagle* spread *Sable*, Crown'd with a Royal Crown, for *Prussia*. *Gules*, 1. 4. fac'd *Or*; *Or*, 2, 3. with a *Cornet Azure*, the whole surmounted with an *Escutcheon Checkee*, *Or* and *Azure*, for *Orange*. *Azure*, a *Scepter Or*, for the Dignity of Elector. *Argent*, an *Eagle Gules*, for *Brandenburg*. *Or*, a *Lion Sable*, for *Juliers*. *Argent*, a *Lion Gules*, Crown'd *Or*, for *Berg*. *Coupe*, *Argent* and *Gules*, for *Magdeburg*. *Gules*, an *Escutcheon Argent*, in Form of a Heart, with Rays of a Carbuncle knotted and flower'd *Or*, illuminated with *Vert*, for *Cleves*. *Or*, a *Lion Sable*, within a Border *Compone*, *Gules* and *Argent*, for *Nuremberg*. *Azure*, a *Griphin Gules*, for *Stettin*. *Or*, a *Griphin Gules*, for *Cassubia*. *Argent*, a *Griphin Gules*, for *Pomerania*. *Argent*, a *Griphin Gules*, for *Wenden*. *Argent*, a *Griphin Azure*, for *Stargard*. *Argent*, an *Eagle Sable*, for *Crossen*. Part *Argent* and *Gules*, for *Halberstat*. *Or*, *Pale-Checkee*, *Argent* and *Gules*, for *Mark*. *Argent*, a *Griphin Sable*, for *Schwibussen*. *Gules*, two *Crosi-Keys Argent*, for *Minden*. *Argent*, 3 *Cheverons Gules*, for *Ravensberg*. *Gules*, a *Croft Argent*, for *Camin*. *Gules*, a *Griphin Argent*, for *Wolgast*. *Couppe*, in the first *Gules*, a *Griphin Argent*, and in the 2d *Checkee*, *Or* and *Gules*, for *Usedom*. Quarter'd *Argent* and *Sable*, for *Hohenzollern*. *Or*, a *Griphin Azure*, for *Bareith*. *Or*, two Trunks of Branches of Trees, Saltyre-wise, for *Gatzkow*. *Azure*, an *Eagle Argent*, for *Rupin*. *Azure*, an Anchor *Or*, for *Lingen*. *Or*, a Front *Sable*, for *Meurs*. *Gules*, a Front indented *Argent*, for *Buren*. *Gules* plain for the *Regalia*.

The Arms of the Branches of *Bareith-Cullembach* and *Anspach*, are the same for *Brandenburg*, *Magdeburg*, *Prussia*, *Stettin*, *Pomeranin*, *Cassubia*, *Wenden*, *Crossen*, *Schwibussen*, *Nuremberg*, *Halberstat*, *Minden*, *Zollern*, *Camin*, and for the *Regalia*.

The Arms of *Hohenzollern* are, *Gules*, two *Scepters Or*, Saltyre-wise, for the Dignity of Arch Chamberlain of the Empire Quarter'd *Argent* and *Sable*, for *Hohenzollern*. *Azure*, a *Hart Or Passant*, upon 3 Clods of Earth *Vert*, for *Stemaringen*.

The Religion of the Country is *Lutheran*; but since the present King of *Prussia*'s Grandfather turn'd *Calvinist*, those of that Persuasion have increas'd in the Country, to which they are encourag'd by the Court; and many of their Chief Men are bred that Way in the Universities of *Francfort* and *Coningsberg*. The Elector *George William* having married a *Calvinist* Lady of the *Palatine* Family, Daughter to *Frederick* V. Dr. *Nicholson* says, he publish'd an Edict to suppress *Lutheranism*; but was obliged to revoke it, for fear of a Rebellion, and content to have his own Worship in the Chapel of his Family; but now the *Calvinists* have many Churches in his Dominions. The Country is divided into the *Old*, *Middle*, and *New Marches*, or Marquisates.

Digitized by Google

The Alt-Marck,

HAS *Mecklenburg* on the N. *Magdeburg* on the S. *Saxe-Lawenburg*, and Part of *Lunenburg*, on the W. and the *Middle-Marck* on the E. being about 30 *English* Miles in Length and Breadth. Some Authors call it the *Galilee* of *Germany*, becauſe it abounds in Herbs and Fruit. 'Tis divided into 4 Petty Provinces; that on the E. called *Oſtland*; that on the S. called *Angerland*, from the River *Anger*; that on the W. *Zermundland*; and that on the N. *Zenland*.

The chief Towns in this *Marck* are, 1. *Stendal*, the Metropolis, on the River *Ucht*, by a large Forreſt, in a pleaſant Plain. It was built by the Emperor *Henry* I. in 920, and fortified by *Albert the Bear* in 1150. 'Tis a Hans-Town, neat and well built. Their Trade is in Corn and Linen; and being on the Road from *Hamburg* and *Lubeck* to *Magdeburg* and *Erfurt*, the Inhabitants receive a great Advantage by Travellers, and likewiſe from the Court of Judicature for the whole Country, which is kept here. It lies about 37 Miles N. W. of *Brandenburg*, and about 20 S. W. of *Havelberg*.

2. *Seltwedel*, a great Town on the Banks of the *Jetze*, half-way betwixt *Lunenburg* and *Stendal*. Some derive its Name from a Temple dedicated to the Sun in the Times of Paganiſm. This City, with the neighbouring Territory, had formerly Princes of their own, who, as Hiſtorians ſay, did great Things againſt the *Huns*; but it has been long annexed to *Brandenburg*. The Town is divided into *Old* and *New*; the former is ſaid to have been built by *Claudius Druſus*, and the latter by the Emperor *Henry* I. Their chief Trade is in Beer, which they tranſport to the neighbouring Country.

3. *Gardleben* Dr. *Nicholſon* thinks, it derives its Name from the many pleaſant Gardens near it. Their chief Trade is Beer and Hops, both reckon'd as good as any in *Germany*, and are bought up by *Dutch* and other Merchants. The City has 3 Hop-Poles laden with Hops for its Arms. It lies about 20 Miles S. W. of *Stendal*, and has an old Fort in the Neighbourhood, called in their Language *Iron Jawr*.

4. *Angermund*, or *Tangermund*, on the Mouth of the *Anger*, about 22 *Engliſh* Miles E. from *Gardleben*. The Emperor *Charles* IV. built the Caſtle here when he bought the *Marck* in 1376, and reſided in it ſome Years after. They have a conſiderable Trade for Corn, &c. by the *Elb* with *Hamburg*, and other Places.

5. *Oſterburg*, on the *Vecht*, a ſmall Town, which ſuffered much by Fire in 1491. 'Tis noted for a great Corn-Market.

Other Places of leſs Note are, 1. *Stehuſen*, on the River *Alant*. 2. *Werben*, on the Conflux of the *Elb* and *Havel*, built by *Henry the Fowler*, from the Ruins of the old *Caſtellum Vari*. *Guſtavus Adolphus* fancied it might be made the ſtrongeſt Fortreſs in *Germany*, and order'd that Caſtle to be built, which now commands the Town. 3. *Havelburg*, upon the *Havel*, about 8 Miles from the *Elb*, formerly a Biſhop's See, Suffragan to *Magdeburg*; but ſince 1555, they have been *Lutherans*. 4. *Perleberg*, the chief Town of the County of *Prignitz*, in a fruitful and pleaſant Plain. *Arneburg*, *Wittenberg*, *Biſmarcht*, *Slmakenburg*, and others, which are rather Villages than Towns.

Middle-Marck,

LIes in the middle of the *Marck*, and is the largeſt of the 3 Diviſions, being about 100 *Engliſh* Miles from the Banks of the *Elb* to the *Oder*.

The chief Towns are, 1. *Brandenburg*, which gives Name to the Marquiſate, and was formerly the Metropolis. Some *German* Hiſtorians alledge it to have been built by one *Bremo*, 416 Years before our Saviour. Others ſay, 'twas built by one *Brando*, *A. C.* 230. 'Tis now conſiderable for little but its Antiquity. It ſtands in the middle of Marſhes on the River *Havel*, which divides it into the Old and New Town. They are well ſupplied with Fiſh by a neighbouring Lake, 10 Miles long. It was made a Biſhoprick by the Emperor *Otho* I. in 946; but has been Proteſtant ſince 1563. The Elector *George William* appropriated it to himſelf in 1628. The Streets of the upper Town are built croſs-wiſe, and center in a fine Market-place, where there is a *Statua Rolandina*. In their great Church, there are many

Digitized by Google

many Monuments and Sepulchres of Princes and Bishops. It lies about 28 Miles W. from *Berlin*, and about 45 N. E. of *Magdeburg*.

2. *Berlin*. *Angelius a Werdenhagen*, a good Author, who has given us the Description of the Hans-Towns, derives its Name, as he does those of *Bernau*, *Beerwald*, *Bernstein*, and other Places of the *Marq*, from *Albert the Bear*. 'Tis pleasantly seated on the Banks of the *Spree*, which several Geographers have mistaken for *Ptolemy*'s *Suevus*. On the other Side the River stands *Coln*, on the *Spree*, so called to distinguish it from *Berlin*. Here the Elector has his Palace in the Castle built by *Joachim* II. but much enlarged and beautified by his Successors, so that 'tis now very stately, and, with the Grandeur of the Court, the Largeness of the Streets, and the regular Architecture of the Houses, makes the City very magnificent. The Elector *Frederick William* enlarged it one Third, by building the Town called *Dorothystat*, from the Name of his second Wife *Dorothy* of *Holstein-Glucksburg*. The Canals from this Town to the *Oder* and the *Elb*, make it one of the best Trading Towns in *Germany*, as 'tis one of the finest. It was built by *Albert the Bear* in 1152, and fortified by *John the Prudent* in 1222. The Works are very regular, and 'tis capable of holding out a long Siege. It lies about Lat. 52. 33. Long. 31. 58. about 73 Miles N. E. of *Magdeburg*, and 28 E. of *Brandenburg*, in a fruitful Country, with Vineyards on one Side, Marshes on another, and Woods full of Game on the third. The most remarkable Things in and about the Elector's Palace are, the Armory, Chambers of Rarities, Galleries with Multitudes of rare Pictures, many of them by the famous *Luke Kranach*, Gardens, and Water-Works. The present State of *Germany* says, the Palace is built of Free-Stone, and wash'd on one Side by the River *Spree*; and on the other, there's a great Gate into a large Piece of Ground where the Stables are. On the Front, there's the great Street which comes from *Frederickstat*; and behind it lie the Gardens, which are in good Order, and spacious. The Palace contains two great Courts, the first square, where the Officers of the Guard lodge: From thence there are great Stairs, by which one may ride on Horseback up to the Court, which is oval; and there are 4 other Stairs which lead to the several Parts of the Court. In the Palace, there are 10 great Apartments for the Royal Family, with great Numbers of Chambers for the Courtiers, all magnificently furnish'd, besides many Halls, Chambers, Closets, and Galleries, with whatever can be wish'd for Conveniency or Grandeur. In the Elector's Apartment, there's extraordinary rich Furniture of massy Plate, Pictures, and other great Curiosities, especially a large Cabinet, full of ancient, rare, and valuable Medals, with abundance of other curious Pieces. The Electress's Apartment abounds with Pictures of the best Masters. There is one great Chamber full of Pictures, done by *Van Dyke*; among which, that of the Holy Supper is reckon'd to be the best ever he did; and the unnailing our Saviour from the Cross, done so to the Life, as to move Compassion in all that see it. There's another of the Wise Men that came to worship our Saviour, and a Picture of all the Royal Family of *England*. The Gallery, which is above Fifty Paces long, is full of Pictures by the best *Italian* Masters, one of them the Head of our Lord by the famous *Raphel de Urbino*, valued at Fifty Thousand Crowns. Joining to the Palace on the Side of the Garden, is the Elector's Library, dispos'd in excellent Order, and said to be equal to the best in *Europe*. The great Stables have room for 400 Horses, of which the Elector has above 3000 of his own, having Querries in all his Dominions to breed and take care of them. His Arsenal here is reckon'd one of the best furnish'd in *Europe*, besides what he has elsewhere. In short, his Court is reckon'd one of the most magnificent in *Christendom*, and Strangers are entertain'd there with great Civility, according to their Quality. He is reckon'd to have 2500 Gentlemen belonging to his Court, fit for Command in the Field; and the Troops of his Houshold are above 8000. He has 6 or 7 supreme Courts of Judicature for trying all Causes in his Dominions, well supplied with Judges; and his Countries are well furnish'd with an able and learned Clergy. He presides in Council himself, and in his Absence the Electoral Prince; next to whom sits the Prince of *Anhalt*. His Father's Annual Revenues

Digitized by Google

were computed at 15000000 of Livres; and he left his Succeſſors in a Way of augmenting 'em. His Dominions are reckon'd 300 *French* Leagues in Length; and his Father, in 4 Months time, arm'd 20000 Foot, and 4000 Horſe, in his own Dominions, without dreining his Gariſons: So that upon the whole, it may be reaſonably concluded, That, next to the Houſe of *Auſtria*, he is the moſt powerful Prince of the Empire.

3. *Francfort* on the *Oder*. 'Tis ſaid to have been built about 146, by *Sunno*, a Prince of the *Franks*, who purſued the *Vandals* hither, and planted a Colony of his own People here. In 1253, the Elector *John* I. and his Brother *Otho*, rebuilt and enlarged the Town above a Third. In 1379, the Elector *Sigiſmund* granted them large Privileges, upon their entring into the Society of the Hans-Towns. We have mention'd already, That *Joachim* I. founded their Univerſity, and ſupplied them with Profeſſors from *Leipſick*; ſince which, they have had ſeveral Learned Men. 'Tis divided into two by the *Oder*, over which they have a large Wooden Bridge. The Streets are large and well built; The Market-place ſpacious and ſtately; and they have three Annual great Fairs. The Proteſtant Religion was eſtabliſh'd here in 1538. It lies about 45 Miles S. of *Berlin*, about Long. 34. Lat. 52. 37. Without the Gates, there's the Ruins of an ancient *Carthuſian* Monaſtery, of which *Joannes ab Indagine*, reckon'd to be Author of 300 Treatiſes on different Subjects, was Prior.

4. *Spandaw*, on the Conflux of the *Havel* and *Spree*, which makes it very ſtrong; but of no great Note otherwiſe.

5. *Oranienburg*, about 20 Miles N. E. from *Berlin*, where the Elector has a Country-Houſe. This Place affords the greateſt Variety of Pleaſures of any in his Dominions, being encompaſſed on every Side with pleaſant Parks and Forreſts, well ſtock'd with all manner of Game.

6. *Ruppin*, on the little River called *Rhine*, which divides it into the Old and New Towns. 'Tis the Chief of the County of that Name, and had formerly Lords of its own, who dying without Iſſue in 1524, *Joachim* I. purchas'd it.

7. *Potzdam*, about 12 Miles S. W. of *Berlin*, where the Elector has a Country-Houſe, that he makes uſe of in Summer.

8. *Lebus*, on the *Oder*, formerly a Biſhoprick, founded by *Miceſlaus*, the firſt Chriſtian Prince of *Poland*, about 965. It embrac'd the Reformation in 1555, and the Elector of *Brandenburg* united it to his Dominions in 1628, and, as Biſhop of *Lebus*, is Chancellor of the Univerſity of *Francfort*.

9. *Furſtenwalt*, a little pleaſant City on the *Spree*.

10. *Prenſlow*. 11. *Strasburg*. 12. *Templin*. Three well fortified Towns in that called the *Ucker Marck*. The firſt is well ſupplied with Fiſh from that called the *Ucker Sea*. They belong'd formerly to the Dukes of *Pomerania*; but were ſeiz'd by the Elector *Frederick* I. in 1424.

The New-Marck,

Lies betwixt the River *Warta* and *Pomerania*, and is divided from the *Middle-Marck* by the *Oder*. 'Tis about 100 Miles in Circuit, and belong'd formerly to the *Teutonick* Knights, from whom it was purchas'd by the Family of *Brandenburg* in the 13th Century; but they had not peaceable Poſſeſſion of it till the 16th. The Country abounds with Corn and Paſture, more than any other Place of the Marq. On the Banks of the *Oder* they have Vineyards, but of no great Account; and the Boors find now and then Quantities of Corn and Precious Stones, which they ſell for little.

The chief Towns of this Country are, 1. *Cuſtrin*, on the *Oder*, 18 Miles N. of *Francfort*. It was only a Fiſhing-Village till the Elector *John*, after returning from the Wars under *Charles* V. fortified it in 1537; ſo that 'tis now the Key of the *New-Marck*. *Guſtavus Adolphus* beſieg'd it in vain in 1631, being the firſt Deſign of that ſort on which he miſcarried. 'Tis ſtrong by Nature as well as Art, being ſituated in a Marſh on the Conflux of the *Oder* and *Warta*. It has an Arſenal well furniſh'd, and a Citadel, the ſtrongeſt of the Country; ſo that 'tis reckon'd impregnable. The Burghers have neat and well furniſh'd Houſes, and the Market-place is the beſt in the Marq.

2. *Falkinburg*, a Town with a ſtrong Caſtle, on the Frontiers of *Pomerania*.

3. *Dreyſen*,

Digitized by Google

3. *Dreſſen*, a Town on the Conflux of the *Notez* and the *Trage*, near the Frontiers of *Poland*.

4. *Lanſperg*, on the *Warta*, above 30 Miles N. E. from *Francfort*. 'Tis conveniently ſituated for Trade, which conſiſts much in caſting of Iron Ordnance. It was twice taken by the *Swedes* during the *German* War.

5. *Sunneberg*, on the ſame River, formerly the Reſidence of the Bailiffs of the Order of *Malta*, till the Electors ſeiz'd it in the 16th Century, and aſſum'd the Power to preſent the Bailiffs, and diſpoſe of their Commanderies.

6. *Sternberg*, Capital of a County on the Frontiers of *Poland*, about 25 Miles E. of *Francfort*.

Buno, in his Notes on *Cluverius*, ſays from *Aventinus*, That moſt of this Marq was ſold to the Emperor *Charles* IV. by *Otho* of *Bavaria*, for 200000 Pieces of Gold, which *Otho* afterwards ſpent in the Caſtle of *Wolfſtein* on a Baker's Wife, whom he debauch'd.

POMERANIA.

DR. *Nicholſon* ſays, the Name comes from its Situation on the Sea-ſhore, both in the *Sclavonick* and *High-Dutch* Tongues; the firſt calling it *Pomer*, and the latter *Pomercze*. The common Name is *Pomeren*. Hiſtorians ſay, it was formerly ſubject to *Poland*, but annexed to the Empire by *Frederick Barbaroſſa*. It was anciently of a much larger Extent, including *Pomerellia* and *Caſſubia*; called *Back Pomerland*, which has been for a long Time in Poſſeſſion of the *Poles*; and the preſent Dutchy is that which was then called *Fore Pomerland*. The Dukes of *Pomeren* did likewiſe poſſeſs that Part of *Brandenburg* now called *Uckermarck*, and the greateſt Share of the *New Marck*. Their Dominions reach'd further alſo into the *Baltick*, which, with Part of the Iſle of *Rugen*, has been ſwallow'd up by the Sea.

This Country, according to *Moll's* Map, is about 192 Miles from E. to W. and about 70, where broadeſt, from N. to S. *Sanſon* makes it 210, and much about the ſame Breadth as the former. *Buno* on *Cluverius* ſays, it has *P.land* on the E. the Dutchy of *Mecklenburg* on the W. the *Baltick* on the N. and the Marq of *Brandenburg* on the S. The principal Rivers are, the *Oder*, which falls by three Mouths into the *Baltick*, the *Pen*, *Rega*, *Perſant*, *Wiper*, and the *Stolp*. *Cluverius* divides it into 7 Parts or Dutchies, *viz. Wenden*, *Stettin*, *Gutſchkow*, *Wolgaſt*, *Uſedom*, *Rugen*, and *Bart*.

Their Air is reckon'd the coldeſt in *Germany*. Their Soil in moſt Parts is ſandy and barren, and their Corn-Fields near the Shore are frequently overwhelm'd with Sand: Yet the Valley near the City *Peritz* abounds ſo much in Corn, that it not only ſupplies the Country, but in fruitful Years furniſhes great Quantities for Export. They have few high Mountains, but many large Woods and Forreſts, well ſtock'd with Game, as Deer, Wild-Boars, Hares, Foxes, Wolves, Wild-Horſes, Bulls, and Beavers. Their Woods and Lakes furniſh them with Plenty of Land and Water Fowl, ſo that they reckon 20 Sorts of Wild-Ducks; and their Towns of *Stettin*, *Stralſund*, and other Ports, bring them all Sorts of Foreign Commodities. They have ſuch Plenty of Freſh and Salt-Water Fiſh, that ſome of their Hiſtorians ſay, the Duke of *Pomeren* had 5000 Rix-Dollars in one Year from Cuſtoms on Fiſh caught in the great *Haff* or Bay below *Stettin*, and the Lake of *Laſſan*; and that 30000 Crowns worth are taken Annually at thoſe two Places. The Fiſh in the *Haff* are Salmon and Lampries; ſome of 'em of an incredible Bulk. About *Gripſwald* and *Rugen*, they have a good Herring-fiſhing, but in no other Place of the Country; and in the Lake *Madduje* near *Colbatz*, they have a large broad Fiſh, called *Muſenen*, that's found no where elſe in the Empire.

Dr. *Nicholſon* mentions ſeveral other Rivers, and abundance of Lakes; the chief of which are, *Rekenitz*, that ſeparates this Country from *Mecklenburg*, forms a kind of Sea near *Damgarten*, and falls into the *Baltick* at *Dars*. He adds, That there are many large and fair Meadows betwixt the Branches of the *Oder*, which, after it paſſes by *Zegenorth* and *Shwantwitz*, forms a vaſt Freſh-Water Ocean, 16 Miles broad, and 16 long, called by the Natives the *Great Freſh Haff*, from whence it falls into the Sea in 3 Currents, which make as many ſafe Harbours: The *Divenow*, *Swine*, and *Penemunde*. He adds,

Digitized by Google

adds, That *Pomeren* affords as great Quantities of Fruit, and as many Sorts, as any Province in *Germany*. They have no Wine of their own Growth, but excellent Beer of several Sorts, as the Bitter Beer of *Stettin*, the Mum of *Gripswald*, and the Stout of *Wollin*, which Mariners transport to other Nations. They have no Mines, but some of Iron in *Upper Pomeren*. The Sea casts up Amber in some Places, that every one is allow'd to gather and sell as they please, which the Nobility of *Prussia* do not allow to the common People of that Country.

The People are reckon'd as quick and stout as any in *Germany*; but are charg'd on the other hand with being credulous, prodigal, and intemperate in Drink, says Dr. *Nicholson*. *Cromer* gives this Character of the ancient Inhabitants, That they were Strangers to Deceit, Theft, or Robbery, lock'd up nothing, were hospitable to all Strangers according to their Ability, and so kind to one another, that there were no Beggars among them: But during the Times of Paganism, they allow'd Fathers to kill their Daughters, if they had more Children than they could maintain; but would by no means do so by their Males. This seems inconsistent however with the other Part of their Character of being so charitable to one another.

The ancient Inhabitants, among whom were the *Rugii*, *Rendigni*, and *Longideduni*, had for many Centuries their own Princes; but we have little of their History. The first we meet with upon any good Record is *Barnimus*, of the ancient Family of the *Gryphones*, frequently mention'd in their Annals, and the Country bears still a Gryphin for their Arms; but whether they had their Name from that Coat, or they assum'd it because of the Resemblance it had to their Name, is not certain. He is said to have govern'd about 933. His Grandson *Suantibor* is mention'd to have divided his Principality betwixt his Sons *Bogislaus* and *Wartislaus*: The former had *Pomerellia*, and retain'd the Language and Customs of his Countrymen the *Sclavomians*: The latter had *Lower Pomerania*, and soon after conform'd himself to the Laws and Customs of the *Saxons*: Upon which it was reckon'd a Part of the Empire, and his Sons *Casimir* and *Wartislaus* were made Dukes of *Pomeren*, and Princes of the Empire, by *Frederick Barbaroſſa*. *La Forest* says, they received Christianity in the 12th Century, and *Luther's* Reformation in the 16th. The two Dutchies were united in 1470, says that same Author, in *Bogislaus* X. surnam'd the *Great*, who had long Wars with *Albert* of *Brandenburg*, which were concluded by the Treaty of *Wolgast*. Dr. *Nicholson* says, That *Lower Pomerania* was divided in 1217 betwixt *Bugislaus* and *Otho*, two Brothers, from whom came the Houses of *Wolgast* and *Stettin*, which lasted about 200 Years; but that of *Stettin* failing in 1464, his Dominions were given by the Emperor *Frederick* III. to *Frederick* II. of *Brandenburg*, which occasioned a Difference betwixt the Elector and the House of *Wolgast*, that was compos'd by the Treaty above-mention'd, on Condition that both should retain the Arms and Title, but the Possession should be given to the Duke of *Wolgast*; and upon the Failure of his Issue-Male, it should come to the Family of *Brandenburg*. Accordingly *Bogislaus* XIV. dying in 1637 without Issue, *George William* of *Brandenburg* put in his Claim; but the *Swedes* having assisted *Bogislaus* against the Imperialists during the Civil Wars of *Germany*, *La Forest* says, That by his Will he left the King of *Sweden* his Heir; and the *Swedes* being possessed of the Country, would not part with it; and at the Treaty of *Munster* it was agreed, That *Lower Pomerania*, with the Isles of *Rugen* and *Wollin*, should be annexed to the Crown of *Sweden*; and that *Upper Pomerania* should be added likewise, upon Failure of the Male-Issue of the House of *Brandenburg*. In the mean time both Princes were to enjoy the Title and Arms. In Consideration of which, the Family of *Brandenburg* had *Halberstat*, *Minden*, &c. as formerly mention'd; which, tho the Revenues may be as large, yet the Elector would rather have had *Lower Pomerania*, by which he might have been considerable at Sea, and deliver'd from the Jealousies of such a potent Neighbour as the King of *Sweden*: Tho the Empire allow'd the Elector 4 more Voices in the Diet for his new Principalities.

The chief Towns are, 1. *Stettin*, always reckon'd the Metropolis of the whole Country. 'Tis so ancient, that its Origine is

is not known; but about 400 Years ago, it appears to have had a quite different Situation; for the Church of St. *Peter*, now without the Walls, was then in the middle of the Town. The *Saxons* were allow'd to come hither by the Dukes of *Stettin*, to reform the Language and Manners of their *Wendiſh* Subjects, and contributed much to its Order, Beauty, Strength, and Trade. It's a Hans-Town, ſtands on the Riſing of a ſmall Hill, and is one of the moſt Trading Places in *Germany*; thô *La Foreſt* ſays, their Trade is decreas'd ſince the Settlement of the Republick of *Holland*. The Town is ſtill ſo populous, that, according to ſome modern Writers, abundance of the Inhabitants are forc'd to live in Cellars and Vaults. The Caſtle, formerly the Palace of the Dukes, and now the Reſidence of the *Swediſh* Governor, is one of the beſt Pieces of Architecture in that Part of *Europe*, and may vie with moſt of its kind in *Italy*. They have a great Trade in all kind of Merchandize, particularly all ſorts of Salt and Freſh Fiſh, Wood for Fuel and Building, Corn, *&c.* and 'tis a proper Center for exchanging the Commodities of *Poland*, *Germany*, and the *Baltick*, by the Conveniency of the River *Oder*. It falls into the Sea 40 Miles below it, and is navigable a great way above it by leſſer Veſſels. The Citizens are noted for their Civility to Strangers, and their Courage in defending themſelves when attack'd. The Imperialiſts beſieg'd it in vain 4 Months in 1659; and in 1677, it held out a long Siege againſt *Frederick William the Great*, the late Elector of *Brandenburg*; which being one of the moſt remarkable Sieges that has happen'd in *Europe*, we ſhall give ſome of the chief Particulars, from an Account of it printed at *London* in 1678.

The Elector had the Year before attempted this City; but finding his Forces too weak, he withdrew them, and provided for a ſecond Attack the following Summer. Accordingly he ſet out from *Berlin* the 5th of *July*, 1677, with 9 Regiments of Horſe, 10 of Foot, 5 of Dragoons, and his Foot-Guards: 4000 *Lunenburgers* did alſo come to his Aſſiſtance, with ſome Men of War from the King of *Denmark*. On the 7th of *July*, he came before it with 20000 Men, took ſome Poſts, and rais'd Batteries on the *Oder*, which galled their Shipping in the River. The Town, who had long expected a Siege, ſent out all their uſeleſs People, and gave a reſolute Defiance to the Elector's Summons. Upon this the Elector puſh'd on, and took ſeveral Forts, wherein the Troops on both Sides ſhew'd wonderful Courage. The ſlow March of the *Lunenburgers* retarded the Siege for ſome time; but upon their Arrival, it was carried on with more Vigour. The *Daniſh* and *Swediſh* Ships engaged one another in the River; but the Elector's Forts did ſo gall the latter, that when they obtained an Advantage over the *Danes*, they could not purſue it. In the mean time the Elector's Artillery did great Execution in the City; yet the Gariſon made a brave Defence, ſallied out, and attacked his Intrenchments with wonderful Gallantry; but were always over-power'd and repuls'd. The 14th of *Auguſt*, the Elector's Cannon ſunk, and ſhatter'd moſt of the Ships in the River; and on the 15th, his Granado's ſet Fire to the Town in ſeveral Places, and burnt down the great Church. The Elector being griev'd at this, ſent and offer'd them honourable Terms, which they ſtill refuſed. The Town having ſuffer'd much, the Elector ſent a new Summons on the 22d, expreſſing his Pity for them; but they continued obſtinate, made it Death for any one to talk of a Surrender, and ſecur'd ſuch of their Wives and Children as remained in the Town in Places prepared on purpoſe under Ground. The Gariſon continued to make vigorous Sallies, with various Succeſs; but were always repulſed at laſt. On the 6th of *September*, the Elector ſent a Trumpet to forewarn them of their Danger, and to offer them larger Privileges than before; but ſtill they refuſed. The Winter approaching, the Elector puſh'd on the Siege with more Vigour; and to encourage his Soldiers, who ſuffer'd much by the Rains, promis'd them the Plunder of the Town if he took it by Aſſault. The 22d of *September*, 8000 *Danes* landed on the Iſle of *Rugen* to aſſiſt the Elector, of which he gave the City Notice, and ſummon'd them again to ſurrender, which they ſtill refuſed. The 27th, the *Lunenburgers* took a Half-Moon; and the Elector perceiving that there was no likelihood of the Town's being

Digitized by Google

being relieved, he forbore pushing on the Siege with Vigour, both to spare his own Men, and the City. The 3d of *October*, he took the Counterscarp; upon which the Burgers writ to Count *Coningsberg*, the *Swedish* General, expressing their Resolution to hold out to the last, and desiring Relief: To which he return'd an Answer in the King's Name, and his own, assuring them they should have it. The Garison in the mean time made vigorous Sallies, drove the *Lunenburgers* out of their Trenches, and took one of their Generals, with two Cannon, and about 40 Officers. The Elector undermin'd the Wall of the Town, fill'd up the Ditch, took a Half-Bastion, and sent them them new Proffers the first of *November*, threat'ning them with Ruin if they refus'd. They return'd a softer Answer than before; but said, They would defend the Town till the end of the Year, and hop'd he would grant them the same Terms then. The 7th, the Elector review'd his Army, and found he had lost near 7000 Men, besides his Sick and Wounded; and thô the Town was in Ruins, and that they had lost 1400 Citizens, besides Soldiers, they continued resolute, and made vigorous Sallies, with great Loss on both Sides, the Townsmen being in Hopes that the cold Weather would oblige him to raise the Siege. On the 20th, a Quarrel happen'd betwixt the Garison and the Burgers, wherein several fell on both Sides, the former being for a Capitulation, but the latter against it; and one of 'em being a Chief Officer, and at his Post on the Walls, when News was brought him that his Wife and Children were killed in his House by the Enemy's Fire, he order'd his Servant to bury them; but would not quit his Post, and said, He could meet his own Death with as little Concern as he had heard of theirs. The 30th, the Garison made a Sally, and carried off a small Man of War in the River; so that every one thought the Elector would be obliged to raise the Siege, his Foot being reduced to 10000, and his Horse in a bad Condition, by the Rigour of the Season. On the 30th, the Garison despairing of Relief, a new Mutiny began betwixt them and the Citizens, which the Governor appeased, by promising to capitulate before it came to Extremity. *December* the 4th, the Elector took several Posts, and the Citizens prepared against a general Assault, by casting up Intrenchments within, having received a new Charter from the King of *Sweden*, enlarging their Privileges, and exempting them from Taxes for many Years to come. They made several furious Sallies, retook part of the Bastion, and ruin'd some of the Works; but were repuls'd by the *Danes* with great Loss. The 16th, the Elector attacked a Post near that called the *Holy Ghost* Gate, which the Garison defended with great Bravery, and charged their Cannon with small Shot, which did great Execution; but the Elector took the Post at last, after several Repulses, and rais'd a Battery upon it; but very much admir'd the Constancy and Bravery of the Inhabitants. On the 18th, he sprung two Mines, which made a Breach in both their Walls; yet they repulsed his Men who attacked the Breaches, and fill'd them up by Night. Next Day the Elector made a new Attack, summon'd them again to surrender, and offer'd to confirm all the Terms granted them by the King of *Sweden*, and to add more, which they rejected. Next Day the Garison took two Galliots with Guns and Powder, of which they were in want. They continued obstinate, thô the Garison was reduced to 400 serviceable Men, and distrusted by the Citizens, because they had frequently declared for a Surrender. But on the 20th, finding there was no Hopes of Relief, they proposed a Capitulation upon honourable Terms, and said, That if they could not obtain them, they would die with their Swords in their Hands, and be buried in the Ruins of the City. The Elector return'd an Answer, That tho' their Obstinacy had been enough to harden him, yet his Willingness to spare their Lives, and those of his own Men, which must be lost in a general Assault, he would capitulate with them, if they intreated for it, and sent out Hostages quickly; otherwise they must expect nothing but Fire and Sword.

Upon the Receipt of this Letter, they sent out Hostages, and the Elector, out of Generosity and Pity, granted them an honourable Capitulation, tho' he had lost about 8000 Men, and that it had cost him 6000 Crowns every Day and Night in Powder and Shot. He not only ratified all the

King

King of *Sweden* had promis'd, but granted them more Privileges, and ſent the Articles that Night to the Governor; who inſiſting that the Gariſon ſhould be conducted to *Stralſund*, and that Major-General *Ludeque* ſhould continue Priſoner till Colonel *Wangelin* was ſet at Liberty, the Elector refus'd it, which broke off the Treaty, and the Hoſtilities were renewed on both Sides with great Vigour till the 26th of *December*, when they ſent out again to renew the Treaty. The Capitulation, according to the former Articles, was ratified, and one of the Gates deliver'd to the Elector. All the Churches, and vaſt Numbers of Houſes, were laid in Ruins; their Gariſon of 3000 Men reduced to 700, and not 400 of them ſerviceable. They had a fine Train of Artillery in the Place; but they wanted Powder, Salt and Wood. They were allow'd the uſual Terms of Honour; but the *German* Officers and Soldiers were to quit the *Swediſh* Service. Deſerters were pardon'd on both Sides, and the Gariſon had their Choice of two Pieces of Cannon. The *Swediſh* Officers were pardon'd, and receiv'd into the Elector's Protection, on taking an Oath of Fidelity. There was no Change to be made in their Religion, Univerſity, or Schools. The Magiſtrates, and Privileges of the City, were confirm'd, and they were freed from Plunder, Contributions, or ranſoming their Bells. He exempted their Fiſhery for 10 Years from all Taxes of his own Accord, on Condition they would rebuild their Churches; and he promis'd to rebuild their great Church at his own Charge. On the 6th of *January*, he made a ſolemn Entrance, when he was received with loud Acclamations. When he enter'd the New Gate, two Boys in Mourning preſented him, the one with a Silver Key, with theſe Words engraven on it in Golden Letters, *Accipe, ſerva, & conſerva*; *i. e.* Receive, keep, and preſerve: The other with a Ducal Hat, with theſe Words, *Quod Deus dat*, Which God gives. Then 6 Virgins met him in Mourning, who, after Homage, the firſt preſented him with a Cypreſs Wreath, and this Motto wrought in Threads of Gold, *Victori Cruentatam Virginitatem*; *i. e.* A Bloody Virginity to the Conqueror. The 2d preſented 3 Garlands in a gilt Scale, with this Motto, *Preces pro Benevolentia*, Prayers for your good Will. The 3d preſented a Hat of Orange-Leaves, with this Motto, *Paterna Virtute auctam augendam*; *i. e.* Your Valour, increas'd by that of your Father, ſhall ſtill increaſe more. The 4th preſented his Son Prince *Lodowick* with an Apple, in which was writ with gilded Cloves, *Natura Ætatem*; *i. e.* Nature brings Age. The 5th preſented his other Son Prince *Philip* with a Griphin's Claw, and this Motto, *Perge ſine mora, & habes*; *i. e.* Purſue without Delay, and you have it. The 6th preſented the Duke of *Lunenburg* with a Noſegay, and this Motto, *Deo Gratiæ*, Thanks to God. Then all of them repeated theſe Words, *Happineſs and long Life to the Elector, and to all the Princes and Princeſſes of* Stettin. After this, he was conducted by the Magiſtrates and Chief Burgers in Mourning to the ancient Palace of their Dukes, where, wiſhing him Happineſs and long Life, they deliver'd him up the *Regalia*, and ſwore Fealty. Then he was conducted to the great Church. He was attended by the Judges and Miniſters, who ſwore Fealty to him; and as he went back to the Court, 12 of the chief young Women of the Town ſtrew'd green Herbs before him, till he came to the Banqueting-Houſe, where he had a ſplendid Entertainment at the Charge of the City. Then the Elector having ſettled all Things, and given Orders to repair the Fortifications, he return'd to *Berlin* the 10th of *January*. Doctor *Nicholſon* ſays, he ſpent in this Siege 30000 Granado's, 24000 Hand-Granado's, 150000 Cannon-ſhot, and 98000 Pound of Powder. By the Treaty of *Nimeguen*, the Town was reſtor'd to the *Swedes*.

The other Towns in *Swediſh Pomerania* are, 1. *Stralſund*, the largeſt and wealthieſt in the Country. Its Origine is uncertain; but Hiſtorians ſay 'twas founded about 145, by *Sunno* II. King of the *Franks*; but it derives its Name more probably from the narrow Sea on which it ſtands, betwixt it and the Iſle of *Rugen*. It lies about 75 Miles N. W. of *Stettin*, and 35 N. W. of *Roſtock*, in Long. 32. 30. Lat. 54 31. 'Tis an Imperial City, and enjoys great Privileges, which they have maintain'd againſt ſeveral Princes that deſign'd to ſubdue them, and at once are ſaid to have oppoſed the united Force of *Denmark* and *Sweden*, and 10 other

Digitized by Google

Princes, when they took *Erick* D. of *Saxony* Priſoner. After which it became terrible, as it had formerly been accounted impregnable. The firſt certain Account we have of it, is, That after it had been ſpoil'd or utterly deſtroy'd, it was magnificently rebuilt, enlarged, and re-peopled with *Germans*, by *Jaromar* Prince of *Rugen*, about 1209. His Son alter'd the Situation a little, and fortified it about 1230, becauſe the *Danes* and *Pomeranians* had burnt moſt of that which his Father built; ſo that the Citizens reckon the Age of the Town from that Time, as appears by a Latin Diſtich in barbarous Rhyming Verſe, engraven in ſeveral Places of the Town in Golden Letters. The chief of their Privileges are, 1. That they have a Power to determine all Cauſes among themſelves, without an Appeal. 2. To coin Money, and raiſe Troops for Sea and Land Service. 3. In caſe of a Naval War by the Empire, they are not obliged to venture further abroad than is convenient for the Defence of their City. 4. They have a Power to make Leagues and Confederacies for advancing their Trade, and to chuſe their Protectors among all the Princes of the Empire. In the Civil Wars of *Germany*, Count *Wallenſtein*, the Imperial General, beſieg'd it in vain, and was forc'd to a ſhameful Retreat. A little after, they put themſelves under the Protection of *Guſtavus Adolphus*. In 1678, the late Elector of *Brandenburg* took it, after having deſtroy'd above 1500 Houſes with his Bombs, and was the only Prince that could juſtly boaſt of ever having taken it by Force; but he was obliged to reſtore it to the *Swedes* by the Treaty of St. *Germains en Laye* in 1679. 'Tis now a flouriſhing City, but ſuffer'd much by Fire in 1680. The Sea betwixt it and *Rugen* is about a Mile broad, and there are 6 Gates, with as many Bridges, leading to it from the City, to which the Merchant-Ships that ride in the Harbour are faſten'd. Towards the Land, 'tis fortified with regular Bulwarks, and Fiſh-Ponds, two Muſket-ſhots in Breadth, over which there are 4 Dams and Bridges, leading from 4 Gates; which Dams and Bridges are fortified, and make the Approaches very difficult. Their chief Trade is in Corn, which they tranſport in great Quantities to other Countries.

2. *Bardt*, formerly reckon'd the Metropolis of *Upper Pomerania*, and gave Name to the adjacent Country. It lies about 15 M. W. from *Stralſund*, upon a Bay of the Sea, but ſo ſhallow, that 'tis not capable of being made a good Harbour. Some derive its Name from the *Longobardi*; but it has it more probably from the Mouth of the River *Bardt*, on which it ſtands; tho' the Arms of the Town be a Man's Head with a long Beard. The Fields about it are exceeding Fruitful in all Sorts of Corn, and the Town is well Peopled, and defended by a good Caſtle. The late Elector of *Brandenburg* took it in 1677; but reſtor'd it to the *Swedes* by the afore-mentioned Treaty in 1679.

3. *Gripſwald*, about 30 *Engliſh* Miles S. E. of *Stralſund*. 'Tis a Hans-Town, within half a League of the *Baltick*, on a ſmall Gulph, with a good Harbour. It was Walled in 1233, and is well fortified. *Wartiſlaus* IX. Duke of *Pomerania*, founded an Univerſity here about 1456, which has bred many Learned Men. It was taken by the *Swedes* in 1631, and left to them by the Treaty of *Weſtphalia*. The late Elector of *Brandenburg* took it in 1678, but reſtor'd it by Treaty in 1679. It had a great Trade by the excellent Salt which they formerly made; but for want of Wood to ſupply their Furnaces, 'tis decay'd. The adjacent Fields and Meadows abound ſo much with wild Garlick, which the Natives call *Rammes*, that when it flowers about *Whitſuntide*, Strangers are hardly able to bear the Smell of it, and all their Butter and Fleſh taſte of it.

4. *Treplow*, a pretty Town on the *Telkin* Sea, defended by a ſtrong Caſtle.

5. *Anclam*, on the *Pene*, well fortified. It was taken by the late Elector of *Brandenburg* in 1676, together with *Demmin*, on the ſame River; but both reſtored by the Treaty of St. *Germains*.

6. *Damgarten*, and *Tribſees*, two Towns on the Frontiers of *Mecklenburg*, where the *Swediſh* Officers exact Toll from Travellers. The Dukes of *Mecklenburg* claim'd thoſe Towns at the Treaty of *Nimeguen*, but did not obtain them. The firſt is very ſtrong, and ſituated on a Gulph.

7. *Wolgaſt*, on that Branch of the *Oder* called the *Fin*, about 15 Miles S. E. of *Gripſwald*,

Digitized by Google

wald, formerly Capital of a Dutchy, and gave Title of Duke to a Branch of the Houſe of *Pomerania*. It has the beſt Harbour in the Country, except *Stralſund*; and the Caſtle, built here by Duke *Barnimus* IV. in 1352, makes it one of the ſtrongeſt Towns of the Province. *Guſtavus Adolphus* took it in 1630, and the late Elector of *Brandenburg* took it in 1679; but reſtor'd it that ſame Year to the *Swedes* by Treaty.

Brandenburg Pomerania,

IS about 132 Miles long, and 50 where broadeſt.

The chief Towns are, 1. *Camin*, formerly a Biſhop's See, whoſe Prelates were inveſted and confirmed by the Pope himſelf; but by the Treaty of *Munſter*, it was, after the Death of the then Canons, decreed to be converted into a ſmall Principality, to deſcend on the Family of *Brandenburg*. It lies on the E. Side of the Mouth of the *Oder*, called *Divenow*, about 28 Miles N. of *Stettin*, and about 8 from the Coaſt of the *Baltick*. *La Foreſt* ſays, it was built from the Ruins of a Town called *Julin*, within two Miles of it, and was made a Biſhoprick by *Bogiſlaus* II. of *Pomerania* in 1178. Their Biſhop embrac'd *Lutheraniſm* in 1534. The Biſhoprick was given to the Elector of *Brandenburg* by the Treaty of *Munſter* in 1648.

2. *Griffemberg*, a pretty Town on the River *Rege*.

3. *Polberg*, a ſtrong Town on the Mouth of the River *Perſant*, about 18 Miles E. from *Camin*. 'Tis the Capital of a little Country called *Caſſubia*, has a good Harbour, defended by a ſtrong Citadel, and has a great Trade in good Salt, made here, and tranſported to other Countries, which has made the Town rich. The *Swedes* took it in 1631, after 5 Months Siege. It was given to the Elector of *Brandenburg* by the Treaty of *Munſter*, and he has a great Revenue from its Salt-Pits.

4. *Coſlin*, about 10 Miles S. E. from *Colberg*, a City where the Biſhop of *Camin* uſually reſides, becauſe of its good Air.

5. *Coſlin*, about 12 Miles N. E. from *Coſlin*, on the *Perſant*, a very pleaſant City.

6. *Belgarden*, a little Town of good Trade on the ſame River.

7. *Rugen*, a Wall'd Town, on the Mouth of the *Wiper*, the Capital of the Country called *Vandalia*, about 18 Miles N. E. from *Caſlin*. 'Tis ſuppoſed to take its Name from the *Rugii*, who founded it.

8. *Stolpe*, a Town fortified with an ancient Caſtle, about 22 Miles N. E. from *Rugenwald*.

The Towns of *Slage* and *Polnow* lie alſo in this Country.

La Foreſt does likewiſe mention a Diviſion of this Country, which he names *Pomerania*, properly ſo called; and in this he reckons, 1. *Stargard*, the Capital, about 22 Miles S. E. from *Stettin*. 'Tis but ſmall, and ill Peopled; yet the Courts of Juſtice for the Country are held here, and 'tis one of the Hans-Towns. 2. *Dam*, a ſmall Town on the *Oder*, oppoſite to *Stettin*, and was formerly Part of that Dutchy, but mortgaged to the Elector of *Brandenburg*, together with *Golnow*, about 12 Miles N. of it, for 50000 Crowns, in 1679; but redeemable. That ſame Author calls the moſt Eaſterly Part of *Brandenburg Pomerania*, by the Name of *Pomerellia*, in which are the Towns of *Lawenburg*, on the River *Lobo*, 50 Miles N. E. from *Rugenwald*, the Chief of the Country, and *Butow*, 27 Miles S. E. from *Stolpe*, which gives Name to the Lordſhip of *Butow*.

We come now to the Iſlands of *Pomerania* on the Coaſt of the *Baltick*: The Firſt of which is

RUGEN.

THis is one of the chief Iſlands in the *Baltick*, and famous for the Courage of its ancient Inhabitants the *Rugii*, to whom all Hiſtorians give the Character of a Brave and Warlike People It was formerly much larger than at preſent, and reach'd as far E. as *Ruden*, 3 Leagues from it; but formerly a Part of it. The Separation was occaſion'd by a great Tempeſt in the beginning of the 14th Century, when the Sea drown'd a great Part of the Iſland, and form'd this Channel, which is now paſſable by the greateſt Ships. The Iſland is about 30 *Engliſh*

Digitized by Google

lish Miles in Breadth, and as much in Length; but full of Creeks and Peninſula's. Their chief Forts were *Arcona* and *Camerentz*, both reckon'd impregnable, till *Waldemar* of *Denmark* took them, with the whole Iſland, in 1368. The former was on a high Rock by the Shore, and not to be taken in thoſe Days but by being ſtarv'd. The Iſland has ſo many Inlets, that there is ſcarce any Part of it above 3 *Engliſh* Miles from the Shore; but all the Peninſula's are ſo well guarded by Rocks, that they fear no Inundation. 'Tis ſo rich in Corn, that 'tis called the Granary of *Stralſund*, and is well ſtock'd with Horſes, Black Cattle, Sheep, and the largeſt Geeſe in *Europe*. They ſay, That formerly they had no Wolves or Rats, but are now as much peſter'd with them as their Neighbours. The Forreſt of *Jaſmunt* furniſhes them with Fuel and Timber, and the Sea and Lakes with Plenty of Fiſh for Conſumption and Export. Among other Lakes here, there is one near *Burchwall*, upon which the Inhabitants ſuperſtitiouſly believe no Boat will ſail, nor any Net be ſuffer'd to catch Fiſh, as we mention'd before in the Account of Ancient *Germany*, under the Head of the *Deuringii*, &c. Near this Lake, there's an exceeding high Promontory, which hangs over the Sea, and was formerly a Shelter for the Pirates who haunted thoſe Coaſts. The chief Trade of the Inhabitants is with *Stralſund*, from which 'tis only ſeparated by a narrow Sea, as formerly mention'd; and this City has a ſort of Juriſdiction over the Iſland, for their High Court of Admiralty determines all ſorts of Controverſies that happen in the Port-Towns of *Rugen*, from whence the People in thoſe Caſes come to *Stralſund* for Juſtice. They can erect no Court, nor give any definitive Sentence, nor export any Commodities, without Leave of that City, which is the Key and Fortreſs of the Iſland.

The ancient Language here was the *Sclavonick*, which was aboliſh'd, and the *Saxon* introduc'd, when the Dukes of *Pomerania* made themſelves Maſters of the Iſland. The Inhabitants were the laſt of all the Northern People who embrac'd Chriſtianity, which was about 813, by the Preaching of ſome Monks; but they quickly apoſtatiz'd; and after having idoliz'd St. *Vite*, a poor Monk, their Apoſtle, by the Name of *Swant*, they transferred the Worſhip they paid to him to a monſtrous Idol with 4 Heads, to which they repaired, as to an Oracle; and Merchants who had made a good Voyage, were obliged to pay him a Tribute. They conſtantly kept 300 Horſes for this Idol's Service, one of them white, and never rid but by the Chief Prieſt, who would now and then ſhew him in a Morning beſmear'd all over with Sweat and Dirt, and told the fooliſh People, That *Swant* had brought him into that Condition, by purſuing their Enemies in the Night. This Idol was kept at *Arcona*, then their chief City. He had a Horn in his Hand, which had been filled the Year before with precious Liquor; and the Prieſt looking into it, according to the remaining Quantity of the Liquor, he prognoſticated Dearth or Plenty for the ſucceeding Year; which being done, keeping his Lips ſhut, leſt his Breath ſhould hurt the Idol, he took the Horn, pour'd out the remaining Liquor at the Idol's Foot, fill'd it anew, and put it again with great Reverence into his Right Hand. They continued thus, till by Converſation with the *Pomeranians* they threw off that Heatheniſh Idolatry, above 500 Years ago, and are now zealous *Lutherans*.

They had formerly Princes of their own, who likewiſe rul'd Part of *Pomerania* about *Stralſund*, *Gripſwald*, &c. 11 of them are mention'd in Hiſtory: The firſt is *Wiſtaw*, who liv'd about 938. The 4th is *Raza*, a great Warrior, who took *Lubeck*, and died about 1141. The 5th is *Teſtaw*, who had great Wars with the *Danes*, with various Succeſs; but at laſt was conquer'd by *Waldemar* of *Denmark*. The 6th was *Jarimar*, their firſt Prince who embrac'd Chriſtianity. Their 9th was *Jarimar* II. who, after many Battles, ſhook off the *Daniſh* Yoke in 1259. The 10th was *Witzlaw* III. a great Promoter of Chriſtianity in *Lifland*, where he frequently preach'd in Perſon to the poor Infidels. The 11th was *Witzlaw* IV. from whom thoſe of *Stralſund* revolted: Upon which, with the Aſſiſtance of neighbouring Princes, he beſieg'd them; but being kill'd in a Sally, an End was put to the Controverſy and his Lineage in 1325.

After this, *Rugen* came to the Dukes of *Pomerania*, and by Contract ſhould have been

Digitized by Google

been annexed to the Family of *Brandenburg*, on the Failure of that Line; but by the Treaty of *Weſtphalia*, it was given, with *Lower Pomerania*, to the Crown of *Sweden*. *Frederick* III. of *Denmark* pretended to it; but reſign'd his Title to the *Swedes* by the Treaty of *Roſchild* in 1658. During the War betwixt the late Elector of *Brandenburg* and the *Swedes*, *Chriſtian*, the late King of *Denmark*, with 6000 Men, attempted to reduce it; but was defeated by Count *Konigſmark*, the *Swediſh* General, 600 of his Men killed on the Spot, 2500 taken, with 26 Standards, 16 Cannon, 5 Mortars, and 30000 Rix-Dollars. He attempted it the ſecond time in 1658, and conquer'd the Iſland; but by the Interpoſition of the preſent *French* King, he was obliged to reſign it again to the *Swedes* in 1679, who have ſince put ſtrong Gariſons into it. This Iſland ſuffer'd much during the Civil Wars of *Germany*. They have many Noble Families, who pretend to derive their Pedigree from the ancient *Rugii* or *Runi*, and fancy this to be what was called the *Inſula Runorum*; but *Wormius* thinks, the *Runi* liv'd further E. near the Coaſt of *Lifland*. Doctor *Nicholſon* obſerves, That by little Expence in building Forts and Harbours, it might be made independent of *Stralſund*; but their Intereſt in Commerce keeps them together. The Iſland, he ſays, is capable to raiſe 7000 ſtout Fighting Men.

The only Town of Note is *Bergen*, about the middle of the Iſland: It had formerly the Name of a City; but is now only an open Village of about 400 Houſes. The Ruins of *Arcona*, formerly their Capital, but deſtroy'd by *Waldemar* I. of *Denmark* in 1168, are ſtill to be ſeen in the N. Part of the Iſland. The Ruſticks pay eaſier Rents here than in moſt other Places, which makes them pay all the Reſpect to their Landlords, which they claim as due to their Antiquity. The Iſland is honour'd with the Title of a Dutchy. They have another Village or Town of good Trade, called *Putbus*, which lies S. from *Bergen*.

The 2d Iſland on this Coaſt is *WOLLIN*, in the Mouth of the *Oder*, and has a Town of the ſame Name on that Branch of the *Oder* called *Divenow*. *Adam Bremenſis* ſays, That it was formerly the largeſt City in *Europe*, and anciently called *Julinum*; that it maintain'd War againſt the Kingdom of *Denmark*, and took their King *Suinone* three times Priſoner. It was extraordinary ſtrong and populous, and the greateſt Mart in *Europe* next unto *Conſtantinople*. The *Danes*, *Swedes*, *Ruſſians*, *Jews*, and ſeveral other People, had their ſeparate Streets and Houſes of Exchange here; but by the juſt Judgment of God for their Apoſtacy from Chriſtianity, moſt of it was deſtroy'd by Lightning, and the reſt by *Waldemar* of *Denmark*, who ſurpris'd it in 1170; ſince which it has never been remarkable; for *Lubeck* and *Dantzick* have got all its ancient Trade. The Iſland is about 14 Miles long, and 10 broad.

The 3d Iſland is *USEDOM*, in the Mouth of the ſame River, W. from *Wollin*, and ſeparated from it by that Branch of the *Oder* called the *Swine*. After the Deſtruction of *Wollin*, it had a great Trade; but moſt of it being burnt down in 1473, it never recover'd its ancient Luſtre. It has a good Caſtle, which the Elector of *Brandenburg* took in 1676; but reſtor'd it to the *Swedes* by a ſucceeding Treaty. The Iſland is about 20 Miles long, and 12 broad.

Having finiſhed the Circles of *Upper* and *Lower Saxony*, we ſhall, according to Promiſe, in our Account of the Religion of the *Lutherans*, take Notice of that called the *Saxon* Confeſſion, which was one of thoſe added for explaining that of *Augſburg*.

The Saxon *Confeſſion.*

IT was offer'd to the Council of *Trent* in 1551, and ſign'd by the Superintendants, Doctors of Divinity, and Paſtors of *Saxony*; among whom, thoſe of moſt Note were, *Alexander Aleſius*, a *Scots-man*, Doctor of Divinity, and Deacon of the College of Divines in the Univerſity of *Leipſick*; *Joachimus Camerarius*, Profeſſor of the Liberal Arts at *Leipſick*; *George Major*, Doctor of Divinity, and Profeſſor in the Univerſity of *Wittemberg*; and *Philip Melanction*, Profeſſor in the ſame Univerſity.

It was alſo approved by the Ambaſſadors of *John* and *George Frederick*, Marquiſſes of *Brandenburg*; and of *Gebhard* Count of *Manſfeld*, and the other Counts of that Family, with

Digitized by Google

with the Superintendants and Paſtors of their Countries; by the Miniſters of *Straſburg*, and thoſe of *Lower Pomerania*, by Order of their Duke, in their Provincial Synod at *Gripſwald*.

In Point of Doctrine, they agree with that of *Augsburg*, which in ſome Places they explain more at large.

We ſhall only take Notice, 1. That in the Article of the Church, they deſcribe the viſible Church to be a Society of thoſe who in this Life embrace the Goſpel of Chriſt, and uſe the Sacraments right; in which however there are many who are not Saints, thô they agree to the true Doctrine. Therefore who, what, and where the true Church is, muſt be known from the Scripture, ſince the Church is join'd to the Goſpel, as *Paul* ſays, *If any Man teach another Goſpel, let him be accurſed*, &c. So that thô Sadducees, Phariſees, Popes, and others, who teach another Doctrine different from the Goſpel, and obſtinately eſtabliſh Idolatry, claim the Title and Government of the Church, they are not Members of it.

They add, That thô the Church be a Society which may be ſeen and heard, yet 'tis to be diſtinguiſhed from Political Governments, or ſuch as carry the Sword; for Biſhops have not by Divine Right a Power to puniſh the Diſobedient, or to ſeize Worldly Governments: Yet there is an Order in the Church, according to that Saying, *Eph.* 4. 8. &c. *He hath aſcended up on high, and gave Gifts unto Men.* Verſe 11. *Some Apoſtles, ſome Prophets, ſome Evangeliſts, and ſome Paſtors and Teachers.* Verſe 12. *For the Perfecting of the Saints, for the Work of the Miniſtry, for the Edifying the Body of Chriſt.* The Son of God is the High Prieſt, anointed by his Eternal Father, who, that the Church ſhould not periſh, gave Miniſters of the Goſpel to her; ſome of them call'd immediately by himſelf, as the Prophets and Apoſtles, and ſome of 'em call'd by Humane Election; for he approves her Election. Therefore we retain in our Churches the publick Rite of Ordination, by which the Miniſtry of the Goſpel is recommended to thoſe who are duly choſen, after Trial of their Learning and Manners. Unto this Miniſtry belongs the Preaching of the Goſpel, the Adminiſtration of the Sacraments, the Abſolution of Penitents, the Ordination of Miniſters lawfully call'd, the putting in Execution the Cenſures of the Church in a lawful Manner againſt thoſe who are found guilty in Manners or Doctrine, the Excommunication of the Obſtinate, and the abſolving and receiving again thoſe who repent. And that theſe Things may be done in an orderly Manner, Conſiſtories are ſettled in our Churches.

2. As to the Lord's Supper, they declare againſt External Sacrifices, Chriſt having put an End to them once for all; and ſay, That the ancient Church, by the Words *Sacrifice* and *Oblation*, underſtood the whole Action, *viz.* Prayer, the Receiving of the Sacrament, the Remembrance of our Saviour, Faith, Hope, Confeſſion, and Thankſgiving. This whole Action, as 'tis External and Internal, is in every Convert, and in the whole Church, a true Sacrifice of Praiſe, or εὐχαριστικὸν, and λογικὴ λατρεία, *Rom.* 12. 1.

3. As to Confirmation, they ſay, The ancient Church underſtood nothing by it, but a Trial whether their young Members underſtood their Doctrine, and obliged every one of 'em τῶ repeat a Summary of it, and to profeſs their Diſlike of Paganiſm and Hereſie; that they would continue Members of the true Church, and not depart from the true Doctrine which they themſelves profeſs'd: This they approve as uſeful for inſtructing Men, and retaining them in the true Knowledge of God: And this, they ſay, they did in the Catechiſing of their Youth, and in private Confeſſion, when the Paſtors try'd the Knowledge of their People. But by private Confeſſion, they meant only a private Conference, without requiring a particular Enumeration of the Penitents Faults, which they ſay is neither commanded by God, nor poſſible, as they expreſs themſelves under the Article *de Pœnitentia*. And as to the Method of Confirmation then us'd by the Biſhops, they reject it as a vain Shadow.

4. As to Rites appointed by Humane Authority in the Church, they lay down ſeveral Rules to be obſerved for the Sake of Decency and Order; but take Notice how readily Humane Rites degenerate into Superſtition, and therefore confine all to the general Rules of the Scripture; and confute thoſe who alledge, That Princes, Biſhops,

Digitized by Google

ſhops, Angels, or any Creature, have Power to appoint Rites contrary to the Scripture; and lay down this Concluſion, That ἐθελοθρησκείαι, or Will-Worſhips, invented by Men without God's Command, neither are, nor were, the Worſhip of God; and take Notice, That the Opinion of the Neceſſity of ſuch Rites, had always occaſioned great Diſcords in the Church, as of old; the Controverſy about *Eaſter*, Leaven'd Bread, and many ſuch Things, have done of late, which increaſe Ceremonies, and were Burdens to the Church, and Men's Conſciences; for which they quote *Col.* 2. 16. *Let no Man judge you in Meat or Drink, or in reſpect of an Holy Day, or of the New Moon, or of the Sabbath-Day*, &c. And *Gal* 5. 1. *Stand faſt therefore in the Liberty wherewith Chriſt hath made us free, and be not entangled again with the Yoke of Bondage.*

As to the Power and Office of Superintendants, and their Method of Government and Diſcipline, we ſhall have Occaſion to mention it when we come to the *Bohemian* and *Wirtemberg* Confeſſions, *&c.*

Brandenburg Pruſſia.

WE formerly gave the Deſcription and Hiſtory of *Pruſſia* in General, and of that called *Poliſh Pruſſia* in Particular. We come now to this Country, which was formerly called *Ducal*, to diſtinguiſh it from the other *Pruſſia*.

This Country has *Poliſh Pruſſia* on the W. *Lithuania* on the E. the Dutchy of *Warſaw* on the S. and the Bay of *Courland* and *Samogitia* on the N. 'Tis the larger Part of *Pruſſia*, and is now, as formerly mention'd, call'd the Kingdom of *Pruſſia*, and gives the Title of King to the Elector of *Brandenburg*. According to *Moll's* Map, from *Memel* on the *Baltick*, to the Frontiers of *Poland*, 'tis about 150 Miles from N. to S. and above 120 where broadeſt from E. to W.

The chief Towns are, 1. *Coningsberg*, the Capital, on the Mouth of the *Pregel*, in Long. 39. 38. Lat. 54. 44. about 80 Miles N. E. from *Dantzick*. 'Tis a Hans-Town, and a Place of great Trade, large, well built, and divided into 3 Towns. That properly called the *Old Town* was built about 1260, by the *Teutonick* Knights, and has the Ducal Palace in it, a large and ſplendid Structure, with a famous Library, from whence *Chemnitius* compos'd his Examination of the Council of *Trent*. This Palace was built by *George Frederick* Marquis of *Brandenburg*. The 2d Town ſtands in an Iſland, and is called *Kniphoff*, from an Officer who join'd it to *Coningsberg* in 1380, where ſtands the Cathedral of the Biſhoprick of *Samland*, and an Univerſity, founded by Duke *Albert* of *Brandenburg* in 1544, which has bred many Learned Men. The 3d Town is called *Lobenicht*, and was added to the other by *Berthold* of *Auſtria*. 'Tis fortified by a ſtrong Caſtle, that commands the Harbour, which is convenient, and makes it a Place of good Trade. Their principal Commerce is in yellow Amber, which grows on that Coaſt, Oak, Fir, Honey, and Wax. It has been ſubject to the Elector of *Brandenburg* ſince 1525.

2. *Memel*, 70 Miles N. E. from *Coningsberg*. It lies upon the Bay of *Courland*, and has a good Harbour, defended with a ſtrong Citadel. 'Twas built by the *Teutonick* Knights about 1328. 'Twas afterwards ſubject to the Knights call'd the *Croſs-Bearers*; then to the *Poles*, but now to the *Brandenburgers*. It ſuffered much by War, but more by Fire, being almoſt quite burnt down in 1545, and 1648. 'Tis ſeated among Lakes, which makes it naturally ſtrong, and the Key of this Part of the Country.

3. *Pilaw*, on the ſame Bay, about 20 Miles W. from *Coningsberg*, noted for Sturgeon-Fiſhing, and defended by two Fortreſſes on the Mouth of the *Pregel*, where Criminals of State are impriſon'd. The *Swedes* took them in 1625; but reſtor'd them to the Elector of *Brandenburg* by the Treaty of *Oliva* in 1660.

4. *Brandenburg*, a ſmall Town betwixt *Elbing* and *Coningsberg*, on the Mouth of the *Pregel*, the Capital of the Country of *Natangia*.

5. *Holland*, on the River of *Elbing*, the Capital of *Heckerland*, a barren Country, betwixt *Poliſh Pruſſia* and *Maſſovia*.

Labiau and *Heiligpeil* are alſo in this Country, but of no great Note.

Calviniſm is now the prevailing Religion in *Pruſſia*, by means of the Univerſity of *Coningsberg*. Some Places of this Country

Digitized by Google

try are barren; but others fruitful and well inhabited.

SILESIA.

AUthors differ about the Name. Some derive it from the *Elisii*, part of its ancient Inhabitants: Others from the River *Schlesi*, which falls into the *Oder*, and seems to be supported by the *German* Name *Schlesien*. *Cluverius* mentions the *Semnones*, *Osi*, and *Burii*, to have been part of its ancient Inhabitants. *Adam Bremensis* and *Helmoldus* say, most of this Country was subject to the *Poles* in the Days of their first Prince *Lechus*; but frequently invaded by the ancient *Germans*. *Curcus* proves, that it was subdued by *Charles the Great*; that some Time after they revolted from him and his Sons, but was reduc'd again by *Lewis the Pious*. In 1042, the Emperor *Henry* III. gave *Silesia* to *Bretislaus* Duke of *Bohemia*, who resign'd it to the *Poles*, on their paying a Yearly Tribute to him and his Successors. *Henry* IV. in 1086, by Consent of the Diet, as *Cosmas Pragensis*, who was present at it, informs us, empower'd *Wratislaus* King of *Bohemia* to invade and reduce this Country, *Lusatia*, and *Poland*, which occasion'd Wars betwixt the *Bohemians* and the *Poles*, wherein 'tis probable, says Dr. *Nicholson*, the latter had the Advantage, since *Silesia* continued subject to them. But *Uladislaus* II. Son to *Bolislaus* III. of *Poland*, being banish'd by his Brothers, who were left Coheirs with him by his Father, the Emperor *Frederick* I. forc'd the *Poles* to resign *Silesia* to *Uladislaus* and his Heirs for ever. *Uladislaus* left 3 Sons, who were joint Dukes of *Silesia*; but paid some Homage to the Crown of *Poland*. But the *Poles* were so angry at the coming in of the *Germans* to that Country, that they seldom call'd those Dukes to the Diet, and never admitted them to their Crown; tho before it became Elective, they had frequently the greatest Right to it. *John* King of *Bohemia*, Son to the Emperor *Henry* VII. managed those Differences so well, that he obtained most of *Silesia*, by Agreement from *Casimir the Great* of *Poland*; but Part of it still paid Homage to the *Polish* Crown. Yet *Casimir*, contrary to this Agreement, subdued it again in 1343; and afterwards the *Poles* invaded other Parts of the Country, where they still retain some Tracts of Land, which belong to Abbies, *&c.* in *Poland*; but now most of the Provinces, except the Dutchy of *Crossen*, belong to the Crown of *Bohemia*. Upon which, the Emperor has the Title of Duke of *Silesia*,

Cluverius divides this Dutchy, which *La Foreſt* says is one of the largest in *Europe*, and one of the best Countries in *Germany*, into 16 Principalities, *viz.* *Breslaw*, *Glogaw*, *Sagan*, *Schweinitz*, *Lignitz*, *Briege*, *Neisse*, *Crossen*, *Teschen*, *Oppelen*, *Ratibor*, *Munsterberg*, *Troppe*, *Jaur*, *Olsse*, and *Jagerendorff*. The Length from N. W. to S. E. according to *Moll's* Map, is 235 Miles; and where broadest, 'tis about 76. 'Tis separated from *Bohemia* and *Moravia* on the S. W. and S. by the Mountains called *Riesenbergen*; of which in their Place: From *Poland* on the E. *Lusatia* and Part of *Bohemia* on the W. *Brandenburg* on the N. and *Hungary* on the S. The 4 chief Mountains in this Country are, 1. *Zottenberg*, called by Latin Authors *Mons Zotenſis*, *Zabothus*, and sometimes *Silensis*, or *Silentius*, called the *Silesian* Weather-cock, because, by the Top of it, those of the Neighbourhood pretend to guess what Weather they shall have next Day. On the Summet, there's the Ruins of an old Castle, demolish'd by the Citizens of *Breslaw*, because it was a Shelter for Robbers. From this Hill they dig a fine dark greenish Marble. 2. *Gratzberg*, or *Grodnberg*, on which Duke *Frederick* built a fair Castle, now a Watch Tower. 3 *Spitsberg*, with a Beacon, near the former. 4. *Georgenberg*, in the Dutchy of *Schweidnitz*, famous for the *Terra Sigillata*, first discover'd by *Montanus*, an eminent Chymist and Physician. 'Tis a sort of hard Earth, with white, yellow, and red Veins; was by him made use of as an Antidote against all sorts of Poisons, and a sovereign Remedy for many other Diseases. He kept this Secret for some Years; but at last, for the publick Benefit, wrote a Tract in Latin, with an Account of its Vertues.

The chief Rivers in this Country are, the *Oder*, so called from a Town near which it rises on the Borders of *Moravia*; the *Vistula* or *Weissel*, and the *Elb*, have likewise their Rise in this Country. Their other Rivers are,

Digitized by Google

are, the *Bobr*, *Neiſſe*, *Ohla*, and *Queiſs*. They abound alſo with Ponds and Lakes, that have Plenty of all Freſh-Water Fiſh, eſpecially Lampries, which are taken in vaſt Quantities in the *Neiſſiſh* Lake, *&c.*

The principal Commodities of the Country are, Madder, Flax, Sweet Cane or Galengal, Wine, (eſpecially in the Dutchy of *Sagan* and *Croſſen*) Silver, Copper, Lead, Iron, Chalk, Plenty of Salt-Petre, and ſome good Salt; but not enough for their own Uſe, which makes 'em import it from *Poland*, &c. They have all the Wild and Tame Beaſts found in the Empire, with Plenty of Butter and Cheeſe, ſome of it made of Ewe's Milk; but their chief Trading Commodities are Wool and Flax. They have abundance of Fowl, and Plenty of Game, in their Forreſts.

They have had ſeveral good Scholars, and brisk Wits; but the Boors are accounted dull and weak. Their Neighbours call 'em Aſs-eaters, becauſe they ſay a *Sileſian* Boor, who had never ſeen an Aſs before, ſhot one as travelling in the Country for an overgrown Hare, and he and his Neighbours eat it as ſuch: But to take off this, they frame another Story themſelves, That having diſcover'd a Gold Mine, which they deſign'd no body elſe ſhould ſhare with them; to conceal it while they work'd at it privately, they call'd it by the Name of the *Golden Aſs*. They reckon the Hours of the Day from the Setting of the Sun, as the *Bohemians*, and ſome of the *Italians*, do; but thoſe of Quality follow the uſual Method.

Matthew Corvinus, King of *Hungary*, was for ſome Time Lieutenant of *Sileſia*; but that Poſt was afterwards conferr'd on the Biſhops of *Breſlaw*, till the Emperor *Rodolph* II. order'd that ſome Temporal Prince of the Country, with the Officers under him for determining all Law-Suits, ſhould be appointed by the Council at *Prague*.

Chriſtianity was planted here, as in *Poland*, about the End of the 9th, or the Beginning of the 10th Century; but at firſt, the Chriſtians worſhip'd in private, for fear of their Magiſtrates, till the Court turn'd Chriſtian about 965, when 9 Biſhopricks were erected in the Country. Soon after *Luther*'s Appearance, they embrac'd the *Augsburg* Confeſſion, which was confirmed by the Emperor *Rodolph* II. in 1609. But *Ferdinand* II. repeal'd their Charter, and very much reſtrain'd the Exerciſe of their Religion, which was reſtor'd by the Treaty of *Weſtphalia*; but taken from them ſince, till the preſent King of *Sweden* obliged the Emperor to allow it them again. But the Controverſy, whether the *Calviniſts* there ſhall have the ſame Privilege, is not yet determin'd.

The Dutchy and City of Croſſen.

THE Name in *German* ſignifies a Border, becauſe it lies on the Frontiers of *Brandenburg*. It has had ſeveral Maſters, having been mortaged to the Archbiſhop of *Magdeburg* in 1272.; but redeemed within two Years by the Duke of *Breſlaw*. It was afterwards mortgaged to *John* Marquis of *Brandenburg* for 4000 Crowns towards their Duke's Ranſom, and again redeemed. *John* of *Brandenburg*, called the *German Cicero*, had it again for his Wife's Portion of 50000 Crowns; and it was afterwards deliver'd to *John* III. of *Brandenburg* in 1391, by *Uladiſlaus* King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*; and the full Poſſeſſion of it was given to the Elector of *Brandenburg* by the Emperor *Frederick* I. King of *Bohemia*: Since which, the Electors have always call'd themſelves Dukes of *Croſſen*.

The City of that Name is ancient, ſtands in a pleaſant Plain, and good Air, upon the *Oder*. The Duke's Palace, the Town-Houſe, and ſome of the Citizens Houſes, are of neat poliſh'd Stone. The neighbouring Hills are cover'd with Fruit-Trees of ſeveral Sorts; and they have likewiſe ſome Wine, but not very good. The City, tho little, has a conſiderable Trade, by reaſon of its Situation on the Conflux of the *Oder* and *Bobr*. It lies about 25 Miles S. E. from *Francfort* on the *Oder*, and about 35 N. W. from *Glogaw*, about Long. 34. 37. Lat. 52. 3.

The City and Dutchy of Glogaw.

THE Name is derived from the *Wendiſh* Word, which ſignifies Copſes or Thickets, amongſt which 'tis ſituated. Duke *Conrad* Will'd it, and built the Cathedral,

Digitized by Google

the only Strength and Ornament of the Town, about 1260, and ſtock'd it with *Germans*, who brought in their own Laws. 'Tis called *Glogaw the Great*, becauſe there is a leſſer of the ſame Name in the Dutchy of *Oppelen*. 'Twas formerly ſubject to its own Princes, but now to the Emperor, as King of *Bohemia*. It lies in Long. 35. 12. Lat. 51. 45. on the *Oder*, 35 Miles S. E. from *Croſſen*, and about 45 N. W. from *Breſlaw*. It was taken by the *Swedes* in 1647, but reſtor'd to the Empire afterwards, is regularly fortified, and has a ſtrong Caſtle. The Paſſe, Gravel and Stone, are Epidemical Diſtempers here, aſcrib'd to their intemperate drinking of bitter, muddy, ſtrong Beer, and eating too much Pork and Cheeſe. There are ſeveral other petty Towns in this Dutchy, but not worth inſiſting on. The People of this Dutchy have a Law, by which a Daughter, upon Failure of Iſſue-Male, inherits her Father's Eſtate before any of his other Male Relations, which is contrary to the Cuſtom of moſt other Places in *Germany*.

The City and Dutchy of Sagan.

THis City is one of the largeſt and moſt populous in *Sileſia*. It was ſeveral times taken and retaken by the *Swedes* and Imperialiſts during the Civil Wars of *Germany*. The Caſtle, St. *Mary*'s Church, and two old Monaſteries, are the Things of moſt Note here. It lies about 20 Miles W. from *Glogaw*, on the River *Bober*. This Dutchy is but of ſmall Extent, was formerly Part of that of *Glogaw*, but afterwards had three or four Princes of its own at a time. There are ſeveral large Corn-Fields in this Province, which is well water'd by Rivers; and there are three other ſmall Cities, called *Prilus*, *Naumburg*, and *Friwald*, belonging to the Dutchy.

The Town and Dutchy of Wolaw.

THis Dutchy was formerly Part of that of *Lignitz*. 'Tis divided into 6 Circles or Hundreds, denominated from their chief Towns, *Wolaw*, *Hernſtat*, *Winzing*, *Ruſom*, *Raude*, and *Stelnaw*. *Wolaw* it ſelf is but a ſmall inconſiderable Town, of little Trade. They are furniſh'd with Fiſh from a neighbouring Lake, otherwiſe they could ſcarcely ſubſiſt. 'Twas however for ſome Time the Seat of War betwixt the *Swedes* and *Germans*, and a *Swediſh* Lieutenant-General kept it with a Gariſon. It lies about two Miles S. E. from *Glogaw*.

The Dukedom and City of Oelſe.

THis City is neat and regularly built, has a fair Church, College, and Town-Hall, and a handſome ſquare Market-place. The Gates, Walls, and Turrets, were handſome and noble before the late *Swediſh* War, when moſt of them were demoliſh'd by the *Swedes* about 1648. 'Tis ſeated in a pleaſant Country, and wholeſome Air, was firſt made a City by the Emperor *Henry* I. about 936, and afterwards had Dukes of their own; but ſince 1492, has been ſubject to the Dukes of *Munſterberg*. There are 7 other ſmall Cities in this Principality. The Town lies about 42 *Engliſh* Miles S. E. from *Glogaw*.

The City and Dutchy of Breſlaw.

THis City is called *Uratiſlavia*, and by ſome Latin Authors *Budorgis*, and *Butrigum*. It has the firſt Name from *Wratiſlaw*, a *Bohemian* Prince, who founded it, and on that Account the Citizens bear a W in their Coat of Arms. It ſtands on the Conflux of the *Oder* and *Ohla*, in a rich and pleaſant Country, in Long. 36. 7. Lat. 51. 7. about 43 Miles S. E. from *Glogaw*. 'Tis the Metropolis of *Sileſia*, very populous, and much reſorted to by *Hungarians*, *Bohemians*, *Poliſh*, and other Foreign Merchants. The Citizens are neat and genteel in their Clothes, and live as handſomely as any others in the Empire; upon which they affect to have been thought to have had an immediate Dependance, and do not love to be reckon'd any Part of the Kingdom of *Bohemia*; tho it be plain from *Goldaſtus*, that they formerly were. To ſupport their Pretenſions, they obtained Leave of the Emperors to bear the Spread-Eagle in their Eſcutcheons; and *Charles* V. confirmed their Privileges.

Their

Digitized by Google

Their Buildings are generally fair and ſtately; and on the Banks of the *Oder*, there are 4 old faſhion'd Piles of Building, with Turrets on the Top, which they ſay were the Palaces of ſo many *Swabian* Princes, formerly Lords of this City. The Town is the See of a Biſhop, who is put in by the King of *Bohemia*. They were anciently called *Golden Biſhops*, becauſe of their large Revenues; and they ſay, he muſt always be a *Sileſian*; yet others have enjoy'd this Poſt. They have alſo an Univerſity, which has bred many learned Men, and ſome eminent Writers. *La Foreſt* ſays, it has been a ſort of an independant City ſince 1348. That the Emperor *Charles* IV. enlarg'd and endow'd it with great Privileges; ſo that their Government is a ſort of Commonwealth. Moſt of the Inhabitants, according to this Author, were *Calviniſts*, and had their Liberty ratified by the Treaty of *Munſter*. He adds, That in the 13th Century, it was burnt by the *Tartars*, and ſuffered much by the Civil Wars of *Germany*. 'Tis one of the largeſt and richeſt Towns of the Empire; and their ſtately Churches, and other Buildings, with their fine Squares, make it one of the fineſt. The Inhabitants have made it very ſtrong, and guard it themſelves. Their Government is by 15 Senators, 11 of which are of the Nobility, and the other 4 are choſen out of the Corporations of Drapers, Mercers, Brewers, and Butchers. *Hekelius* gives a mighty Character of this City, and of the Inhabitants, for their Religion, Civility, Liberality, and mentions many learned Men who have been bred there.

The firſt Duke of this Province was *Boriſlaus*, a *Poliſh* Prince, who had that Dignity conferr'd on him by the Emperor *Frederick* I. in 1163; but the following Princes not being able to defend themſelves againſt the *Tartars* and *Poles*, they were forced to put themſelves under the Protection of the King of *Bohemia*, to whom, *Buno* ſays, the Emperor *Frederick* II. gave it as a Fief of the Empire; but 'tis now ſubject immediately to the Emperor.

The City and Dutchy of Lignitz.

THis is a fair City, on a ſmall River, and is thought to derive its Name from the ancient *Lugii*, about 25 Miles W. from *Breſlaw*, and 30 S. from *Glogaw*. *Boliſlaus*, their firſt Duke, enlarg'd and fortify'd it about 1170; and Duke *Frederick* did ſo much improve it in 1532, that it was the beſt fortified Town in *Sileſia*, except *Breſlaw*. They have a noble and ſtrong Caſtle, and a ſtately Hoſpital and Town-Houſe. 'Tis famous for the Victory which the *Swedes* obtained near it over the *Germans* in 1635.

This Dutchy is the beſt Corn-Country in *Sileſia*, and abounds with the white ſort of *Terra Sigillata*. 'Tis commonly divided into 7 Circles, 4 of which take Name from their principal Towns, *Luben*, *Parchwitz*, *Hayn*, and *Goldberg*, which are not worth inſiſting upon. The other 3 Diviſions are in the barren Part of the Country.

The Dutchies and Cities of Jawer, Schweidnitz, Brieg, Monſterberg, *and* Oppelen.

Jawer ſtands in a pleaſant Valley, near the rocky Mountains which divide *Sileſia* from *Bohemia*. It has no River near it, but is fortified with high Ramparts and deep Ditches. It lies about 10 Miles S. from *Lignitz*. It ſuffered much by the Civil War in 1648, when their Church was burnt down; but is now rebuilt more ſtately. It came to *Charles* IV. King of *Bohemia* by Marriage, and is ſubject to the Emperor as King of that Country. They have a Caſtle, where the Governor of this Dutchy and *Schweidnitz* reſides. There are 11 other Towns in this Dutchy, but of no great Note.

Schweidnitz takes its Name from the great Herds of Swine kept there before the Foreſt was cut down in 1070, and has a Wild-Boar for its Arms. It was enlarged, fortified, and beautified, by *Boleſlaus* I. and is one of the fineſt Towns in *Sileſia*. They have fine Churches, and Publick Buildings; and in their Armory, there is a great Gun which carries a Bullet of 320 Pound Weight. The Town of *Strigaw* in this Dutchy is noted for great Store of the *Terra Sigillata*. There are 9 other Towns in this Dutchy, but not worth deſcribing. This City lies about 20 Miles S. E. from *Lignitz*, near the Conflux of two ſmall Rivers.

Digitized by Google

Brieg, is ſo call'd from the *Poliſh* Word, ſignifying the high Bank upon which it ſtands on the River *Oder*, about 20 Miles S. E. from *Breſlaw*. The Streets are uniform, the Houſes generally are of Stone, and St. *Nicholas*'s Church is a high and ſtately old Fabrick, with two Towers, after the *Frankiſh* Mode. Moſt of it, except the Publick Buildings, was burnt by the *Huſſites* in 1428. There are 9 other Towns in this Dutchy, two of which, *Reichenſtein* and *Silberberg*, are noted for their Mines, and are jointly ſubject to the Dukes of *Brieg* and *Lignitz*, who are both of one Family, deſcended from the ancient Hereditary Kings of *Poland*. This is one of the chief Dutchies of the Country.

Monſterberg ſtands in a fruitful Plain, about 32 Miles S. from *Breſlaw*, and 20 S. E. from *Schweidnitz*, at the Head of a ſmall River which falls into the *Oder* at *Breſlaw*. It takes its Name from a Monaſtery built here by the Emperor *Henry* I. who founded the City. 'Tis but ſmall, and not well fortified, and has nothing of Note but an old Caſtle, which is a ſtrong Fortreſs; the School, and a fair Town-Houſe. There are 5 other Towns in this Dutchy, but of no great Note.

Oppelen ſtands on the N. of the *Oder*, over which it has a Bridge. It lies about 37 Miles S. E. from *Breſlaw*, is fortified with thick Walls, and ſtrong Gates. 'Tis ſubject to the *Poles*, and about 36 M. from the Frontiers of that Country. The Emperor was prevailed with by the K. of *Poland*, to whom 'twas mortgaged, to withdraw his Troops from thence in 1647. There are 12 other Towns in this Country, where moſt of the People ſpeak *Poliſh*.

The Cities and Dutchies of Grotkaw, Jagerndorf, Troppaw, Ratibor, *and* Teſchen.

GRotkaw is ſmall, and moſt of the Houſes of Wood, except the Church, the Biſhop's Palace, and Town-Hall, which are of Stone. There is ſuch Plenty of Wood and Corn in the Neighbourhood, that it is become a Proverb, *'Tis impoſſible for a* Grotkawer *to ſtarve or freeze*. It is ſubject to the King of *Bohemia*, and ſtands about 30 Miles E. from *Monſterberg*. *Neiſſa*, 10 Miles S. from it, is noted for a great Trade in Ticking. There are 11 other Towns in this Dutchy, but not conſiderable.

Jagerndorf takes its Name from the great Number of Huntſmen that formerly liv'd in it, where they had Plenty of Game in the neighbouring Woods. Latin Authors call this Dutchy *Carnovienſis*, or rather *Cornovienſis*, from its Arms, which are a Pair of Horns betwixt two Stones. This City and Dutchy was given by *Lewis* King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia* to *George* Marquis of *Brandenburg*, who built a Caſtle and Fortifications, that defend this little Town. It lies above 30 Miles S. E. from *Monſterberg*.

Troppaw, is ſo call'd from the River *Oppaw*, on which it ſtands, about 12 Miles S. E. from *Jagerndorf*. Latin Writers call the Dutchy, *Oppavienſis*. In 1405, it was ſwallowed up by a Deluge, occaſioned by a ſudden Thaw of Snow from the neighbouring Mountains. This City has Plenty of all Neceſſaries, and is noted for good Beer, but of no great Trade. There are 8 other Towns in this Dutchy, where they obſerve the Cuſtoms of *Moravia*, and on that Account have frequently attempted to join themſelves to that Marquiſate; but have always been hinder'd by thoſe of *Troppaw*. 'Tis a very old Town, and has a Fortreſs built after the Antick Manner.

Ratibor ſtands in a pleaſant Plain, on the W. of the *Oder*, 30 Miles E. from *Oppelen*. 'Tis ſuppos'd to have been built about 1164. Some Latin Authors call it *Ratibonia*. Moſt of the Houſes are of Wood; but the Duke's Palace, the Cathedral, and ſome Publick Buildings, are Stone. It has ſtill one Popiſh Monaſtery; but the Jeſuits were drove from hence at the Reformation. It had formerly Dukes of its own; but their Iſſue failing in 1516, it became ſubject to the King of *Bohemia*. The Dutchy has 5 other Towns, but not conſiderable.

Teſchen is one of the oldeſt Cities of *Sileſia*, and is ſaid to have been built by a *Poliſh* Prince about 810. It ſtands on the *Oder*, about 28 Miles S. E. from *Ratibor*, on the Confines of *Sileſia*, *Moravia*, *Hungary*, and *Poland*; whence it comes, that the Inhabitants have a medly of Language, ſcarce underſtood by any but themſelves. They have

Digitized by Google

have Store of Venison, Wild-Fowl, and Fish, and have a great Trade in Wine and Fruit from *Hungary*. They have two Churches, where their Worship is perform'd in *Bohemian* and *High-Dutch*, most of the Inhabitants being of those Countries. They have two Sorts of Beer, one of Wheat, and the other of Barley-Malt; the latter very pleasant and strong, with which the Country People frequently make themselves drunk. In this Dutchy, there are many high Mountains; but there are two Ridges most remarkable, the first the *Carpathian* Mountains, which separate this Country from *Hungary* and *Poland*, and are by the Natives called *Jablunka*; among them are many Mines of Silver and Lead, which make the chief Riches of *Silesia*. The Miners are by the Natives called *Wallachians*, and are a much rougher sort of People than the other *Silesians*: A vast Number of 'em revolted from the Imperialists to the *Swedes* in 1643. The other Mountains are on the S. and divide this Country from *Moravia*. Latin Authors make them part of the *Sudetes*, and call them *Montes Moravici*. They are well stock'd with Mines, and great Flocks of Sheep; but their Mines do not yield so much Ore as those of the *Carpathian* Mountains. They have 8 or 9 other Towns in this Country, but of no great Note. *La Forrest* mentions a little City called *Bicsina*, memorable for the Defeat of *Maximilian* of *Austria*, who was taken here by *Sigismund* of *Poland* in 1588, and another called *Plesi* near the *Weissel*, a pretty little City, with the Title of a Barony. He mentions also *Sprottaw* in the Dutchy of *Glogaw*, famous for a Salt Mine; and *Freystat* in that same Dutchy, noted for its Iron Mines.

The County and City of Glatz.

THE County lies among the Mountains of *Moravia*, has the Dutchy of *Silesia* on the E. *Bohemia* on the W. *Moravia* on the S. and Part of *Bohemia* on the N. which Dr. *Nicholson* observes has puzzled Geographers to which of those Countries to assign it; but it most probably belongs to *Silesia*. The ancient Inhabitants are thought to have been the *Marsigni*; and after them, the *Hungarians* possess'd it, with some neighbouring Countries, till routed by the Emperor *Henry* I. who hang'd their Chief Commander *Glozar*, from whence this City is said to have taken its Name. The Nobility say, That before this Conquest by *Henry* I. who also planted Christianity here, it was immediately subject to the Emperors, and afterwards subdued by the *Poles* and *Bohemians*, who, by their Records, appear to be Masters of it in the 11th Century. After this, it was some time possessed by the Duke of *Silesia*, till the Reign of *Charles* IV. who subjected it again to *Bohemia*; and thus it continued, till K. *George* of *Bohemia* gave it, with *Munsterberg* and *Frankenstein*, to some of his own Sons, who were called Dukes of *Munsterberg*, and Earls of *Glatz*. It was afterwards sold to several other Princes; but is now subject to the Kingdom of *Bohemia*. Their Commodities are, Iron, Coal, Silver Ore, Timber, Venison of all sorts, Tame Cattel, Butter and Cheese; and the Country is so rich, that it brings some Years 40000 Crowns into the Treasury of *Bohemia*.

The City is neat and compact, stands in a pleasant Plain on the Banks of the *Neissa*, about 22 Miles S. W. from *Munsterberg*. 'Tis defended by a strong Castle on the top of a neighbouring Hill. Their great Church was said to have been formerly the Temple of an Idol, worship'd by the ancient Inhabitants, in which, *Ælurius* says, the young Maids nail'd up their Hair against the Walls; and not long ago, some of these *Tabulæ Votivæ* were to be seen there. The Magistrates have a Power to coin Money in their own Names; but seldom coin any other than Halfpennies and Farthings. There are 9 other large Towns in this County, of which we have no Description, and above 100 fair Villages.

The Marquisate of Moravia.

THE *Bohemians* usually give the Precedency to this Country before *Silesia*, either because 'twas anciently a Kingdom of it self, or was sooner subject to the Kings of *Bohemia*. Some Authors derive the Name from *Mahren*, a Mare, because 'tis noted for breeding of Horses; but it comes more

Digitized by Google

more probably from the great River *March*, which runs through the middle of the Country; was formerly the Border of the *German* Empire on that Side, and gave the Name of *Marchomanni* to the ancient Inhabitants. It has *Silesia* on the N. *Austria* on the S. *Bohemia* on the W. and Part of *Silesia* on the E. is about 110 Miles long, and 80 broad, according to Dr. *Nicholson*. *Moll* makes the Length 120, and the Breadth 80. The greatest Part of the Country towards the N. and W. consists of uninhabitable huge Mountains and Forrests; but towards *Austria* and *Hungary*, it abounds as much with fair Fields, Towns and Villages, as most Parts of the Empire. The Water, especially what's found in Pits, is in many Places poisonous and pestilential, because of a mix'd Mineral made up chiefly of Lime and Nitre in the Soil, which not only infects the Water, but gives a Tincture to their Corn, Vines, Fruit-Trees, and other Vegetables, which occasions the Stone, Gout, Cholick, Falling-Sickness, and Hypochondriack Distempers, to be epidemical in this Country; but Providence has furnish'd them with several rich Medicinal Fountains, which are not only a present Remedy against those Distempers, but against most others with which Mankind is afflicted. *Thomas Jordan*, a Physician, and Native, has given a good Account of 'em, and of their Virtues, in a Book Entituled, *Commentarius de Aquis Medicatis Moraviæ*. Since which, other Medicinal Waters and Baths have been discover'd there, which *Herdot*, another of their Physicians, has describ'd in a Book, call'd, *Tartaro Mastix Moraviæ*. They have likewise other Fountains of a salt and acid Taste, very pleasant and wholesome.

Their two chief Rivers are, 1. *Morow*, which gives Name to the Country. It rises in the County of *Glatz*, runs through the middle of the Marq. and most of their chief Cities stand on its Banks. 2. *Teya*, which springs from two Fountains, one in *Bohemia*, the other in *Austria*; and after receiving several other Rivers, falls into the *Morow* on the Borders of *Austria*. These Rivers have Store of Trouts, Crevisses, Barbels, Eels, Jack, Perch, and many other Sorts of Fresh Fish.

The Country abounds with Corn of all Sorts for their own Consumption and Export, and they have Store of Red and White Wine. They have good Breeds of Horses, Oxen, Sheep, and Goats; but no Asses, Camels, or Mules, which some ascribe to the Sharpness of the Air. They have one kind of Beast peculiar to their Forrests, which they call *Rysowe*, somewhat like a Panther. 'Tis about as high as an ordinary Cur, but much thicker; its Belly and Feet are spotted, and it preys upon Deer and other Beasts, whom it surprises, by leaping suddenly upon them from the top of a Rock or Tree. *Dawbravius*, in his History of *Bohemia*, speaks of Frankincense and Myrrh dug out of the Earth here, which he says resembles the Privities of Men and Women, and on that Account is distinguish'd into Male and Female; and he tells us of his own Knowledge, That one of their Noblemen, when his Servants were digging a Fish-Pond, found a Piece of this Myrrh, perfectly resembling an entire Man; part of which, resembling half of a Man's Arm, that Lord gave to himself, which he made use of for Fumigation. And *Herdot* above-mention'd assures us likewise, That another Piece, resembling an Infant, was found in the Allum Mines near *Cesena*, which the Miners sold for 30 Crowns to some *Carthusian* Monks, who sent it to their great Monastery in *France*, where the Abbot made a Present of it to the *French* King. The Country People, among other Virtues, fancy that it drives away Serpents and ill Spirits. *Æneas Sylvius* says, the Inhabitants, in his Time, were a thievish barbarous People; and that there was no travelling among 'em without Arms. The *Moravians* themselves own, that the Boors on the River *Hanak* are guilty of this Crime; but the Inhabitants in general are of a free Conversation, not easily provoked, and hard to be appeased. They are exemplary for Obedience to their Magistrates, brave in the Field, faithful to their Promises, but credulous of old Prophecies, and addicted to Drink; but not such Drunkards and Bigots as some Geographers represent them.

Their common Language is a Dialect of the *Sclavonick*; but the Nobility and Citizens speak *High-Dutch*.

They are said to have been first converted by St. *Cyril* and *Methodius*, &c. When *John Huss* began to appear in *Bohemia*, many of the

Digitized by Google

the *Moravians* embrac'd his Doctrine, which was much oppoſed by *John de Praga*, Biſhop of *Olmutz*, afterwards a Cardinal; but ſoon after, moſt of their Cities and great Towns threw off Popery. The Synod of *Brin*, in 1608, having given Leave for every Man to believe as God had given him Knowledge, the People abuſing their Liberty, abundance of unlearn'd Men, and Mechanicks, ſet up for Preachers, which divided them into 14 Sects, who all rejected Communion with one another. Theſe unhappy Diviſions made it eaſy for the Emperor *Ferdinand* II. after the Defeat of the Elector *Palatine* near *Prague* in 1620, to re-introduce Popery; ſo that the Proteſtants were diſperſed among the Rocks and Mountains on the Borders of *Sileſia*, and durſt not meet in publick, as Dr. *Nicholſon* informs us.

That ſame Author ſays, *Moravia* was anciently a Kingdom, and their Kings the greateſt Potentates in this Part of *Europe*, having under them *Bohemia*, *Poland*, and *Sileſia*. About 700, *Zuantacop*, King of *Moravia*, refuſing Tribute and Homage to the Emperor, the latter invaded him; but was forc'd to a diſhonourable Retreat: To revenge which, the Emperor call'd in the Infidel *Hungarians*, by whoſe Aſſiſtance he routed *Zuantacop*, who thereupon became an Hermit; and his Country being divided into Provinces, was annexed to the Empire, and now moſt of it is ſubject to *Bohemia*, or broke into a few Petty Baronies. *La Forreſt* ſays, 'twas united to *Bohemia* about 1048 by *Brzetiſlas* Duke of *Bohemia*, called the *Bohemian Achilles*. This Country ſuffer'd much by the Ravages of the *Tartars* during the Siege of *Vienna* in 1683.

Their chief Cities and Towns are,

1. *Olmutz*, their Metropolis, in Latin *Olomutium*, ſuppoſed by ſome to be *Ptolomy's Eburum*. 'Tis a ſmall City, neat, and well built, on the Banks of the *Moraw*, by which it has a Trade with *Bohemia*, *Hungary*, *Poland*, *Sileſia*, and *Auſtria*. It lies about 20 Miles W. from the Borders of *Sileſia*, in Long. 35. 53. Lat. 49. 35. Their Antiquaries fancy the Name to be a Corruption of *Julii Monſium*, and therefore think it to have been built by *Julius Ceſar*; but without any Ground. St. *Cyril*, their Apoſtle, who liv'd about 880, was their firſt Biſhop. *Aventinus* ſays, he was the Author of the old *Wendiſh* or *Croatian* Alphabet, in which he wrote the Bible that he tranſlated into the *Moravian* Tongue; of which, ſome Antiquaries take the *Muſcovian* Bible, printed in 1581, to be a Tranſcript. In 1346, the Biſhop of *Olmutz* was removed from being ſubject to the Elector of *Mentz*, and made Suffragan to the Archbiſhop of *Prague*; yet ſome of their late Biſhops have deny'd Subjection to any but the Pope.

2. *Brin*, in Latin *Brunn*, about 28 Miles S. E. from *Olmutz*. The Courts of Judicature for the Country are held here and at *Olmutz* by Turns. It ſtands on the Conflux of two ſmall Rivers, and is defended by a ſtrong Caſtle on the top of a neighbouring Hill. It held out bravely againſt the *Swedes* in 1645, whereas *Olmutz* ſurrender'd at firſt Summons; on which Account, the Inhabitants diſpute the Precedency with that Town. 'Tis very well fortified, and is noted for the *Unicorns Mineral* found near it, of which Authors give different Accounts; ſome repreſenting it like the Trunk of a Walnut-Tree, and others to the Bones of unknown Animals. Dr. *Nicholſon* ſuppoſes it to be a Petrifaction of Timber, ſuch as is found in many other Places, and particularly in *Oxfordſhire*.

3. *Iglaw*, on the Frontiers of *Bohemia*, about 40 Miles W. from *Brin*. 'Tis ſaid to have been built in 799, and to have taken its Name from *Igle*, the *German* Word for an Hedgehog, becauſe thoſe Creatures abounded in that Place; but *La Forreſt* derives it from the *Igla*, on which it ſtands. 'Tis a large, well built, and ſtrong Town, and a great Thoroughfare betwixt *Bohemia* and *Hungary*, which makes the Inhabitants more civil to Strangers than the reſt of their Countrymen. It held out obſtinately againſt the Doctrine of *Huſs*; but was the firſt Town of *Moravia*, ſubject to the King of *Bohemia*, that embrac'd the *Auſburg* Confeſſion. In 1645, it ſurrender'd to the *Swedes*, who, to make it more tenable, burnt down the large Suburbs, and defended it againſt the Imperialiſts, whom they repulſed after a Twelvemonth's Siege. The Jeſuits College, with the *Gymnaſium* annex'd, one Monaſtery of *Dominicans*, and another of *Franciſcans*, are worth a Traveller's View.

Their

Their greateſt Trade is in Beer, and a coarſe Woollen Cloth, which they make and dreſs themſelves.

4. *Znaim*, in Latin *Zngma*, on the *Teya*, about 25 Miles S. W. from *Brin*, in a pleaſant Soil, and good Air. *Cluverius* thinks it to be *Ptolomy's Medoſtaniam*, which comes pretty near the Longitude, but not his Latitude. The *Moravian* Annals ſay, 'Twas built where it now ſtands about 1142, having been formerly deſtroy'd in 1145 by *Uladiſlaus* of *Bohemia*. 'Tis defended by a ſtrong Caſtle; but is over-look'd by an adjacent Mountain within Cannon-ſhot, which makes it uncapable of holding out a Siege. They have many Vineyards in the Neighbourhood, which afford a palatable Wine. Their chief Trade is by Paſſengers betwixt *Vienna* and *Prague*. 'Tis famous for being frequently taken and retaken during the *German* Civil War, eſpecially when taken by the *Swedes* in 1645. 'Tis alſo noted for the Death of the Emperor *Sigiſmund* in 1437.

5. *Cremſir*, on the River *Morau*, mid-way betwixt *Olmutz* and *Hradiſh*, was lately a poor Village, but now one of the faireſt Cities in *Moravia*, occaſioned by being the Reſidence of the Biſhops of *Olmutz*, who, becauſe of its convenient Situation, bought it from the Marq. of *Moravia*, and built a Palace there, which occaſioning the Inhabitants to increaſe, they wall'd and fortify'd the Town. 'Twas taken by the *Swedes* in 1645.

6. *Ewancziz*, on the Conflux of the *Igla* and *Oſlaw*, which here loſe their Names, and are called *Schwartza*. 'Twas formerly noted for more different Sects in Religion than almoſt any other Town in *Europe*. The *Huſſites* and *Lutherans* had their Worſhip in the Pariſh-Church at one and the ſame time. The *Jews* had one of the Streets, with a Synagogue and School, without the Gates: The *Calviniſts* had two Churches, one for the *Bohemians*, and another for the *Germans*, who, with the *Lutherans* and *Huſſites*, ſhar'd the Government of the City. In another Part of the Suburbs, dwelt thoſe call'd the *Holy Brethren of Switzerland*, who deny'd Baptiſm, thought it damnable to wear a Sword, and had a Communion only at *Whitſun-tide*. The *Photinians*, who deny'd the Reſurrection, and, as Dr. *Nicholſon* thinks, were Atheiſts and Quakers, had their Meeting near a Fountain in a neighbouring Field. At a ſmall Village called *Olchewitz*, about half a Mile from the Town, lived 400 Anabaptiſts. Theſe Differences gave the Papiſts an Opportunity to drive them all from thence; ſo that no Liberty is granted now to any but Papiſts and Jews. *La Forreſt* mentions *Auſterlitz*, a Town almoſt ruin'd by the *Swedes* in the Civil War. Dr. *Nicholſon* takes Notice of the Romantick Account of *Caſpar Lawdiſman*, who, in his Directions for ſpeedy underſtanding Foreign Languages, ſays, there are 100 Cities, 410 Towns, 500 Caſtles, and 30360 Villages, in this Marq. And ſince the learned Annotators on *Cluverius* ſay nothing of this Number, and that thoſe who travel the Country muſt needs know it to be falſe, it muſt be own'd the Doctor's Reflexion is juſt.

BOHEMIA.

Its Extent.

THis Kingdom has *Moravia*, and Part of *Sileſia*, on the E. *Voitland* and the *Upper Palatinate* on the W. *Auſtria*, and Part of *Bavaria*, on the S. Part of *Sileſia*, *Upper Luſatia*, and *Miſnia*, on the N. According to *Moll's* Map, the greateſt Length from E. to W. is 160 Miles, and the greateſt Breadth from S. to N. about 150. *Goldaſtus*, from its Situation, urges very reaſonably, That it muſt needs have anciently been a Branch of the *German* Nation.

Their ancient Inhabitants, *with their* Manners *and* Religion.

GOldaſtus thinks, the *Hermiones* were the ancient Inhabitants, and makes the *Hermundari* a Branch of 'em. They were drove out by the *Boii*, commanded by their General *Sigoveſus*, a *Celtick* Prince. *Micralius*, a learned *Pomeran*, thinks they were not the *Galli Senones*, as moſt late Antiquaries do, but the ancient *Semnones* of *Pomerania*. The Reader may conſult what we have ſaid concerning thoſe People in our Account of Ancient *Germany*. *Micralius* ſuppoſes, the *Boii* ſettled

ſettled here about the Year 600 of *Rome*, when *Tarquinius Priſcus* was King, and gave Name to the Country, from whence they were drove by the *Marcomanni*, and removed to that Place now called *Bavaria*, which from them was anciently, according to ſome Authors, called *Boiouria*. The modern *Bohemians* call their Country *Czechowe*, and themſelves *Czechowsky*. Such of them as allow the Name of *Bohemia*, derive it from *Boy* and *Muz*, which, they ſay, ſignifies a Valiant and Pious Man, which agrees well enough with their Character. They are tax'd with being ſo apt to imitate the Faſhions of other Nations, that a Painter, who drew other People in their proper Habits, painted a *Bohemian* naked, with a Web at his Foot, and all other Neceſſaries for making a Suit, according to the next Mode he ſhould fancy. Some Authors ſay, That *Zechus*, a *Sclavonian* Commander, with a ſmall Number of his Countrymen, from whom the *Bohemians* love to derive their Pedigree, ſettled here; but they cannot tell whether in the 4th, 5th, or 6th Century; That they were a harmleſs People, liv'd in a ſociable Community, and diſtributed what they had according to every one's Neceſſity, (which looks ſomewhat like Sir *Thomas More's Utopia.*) They add, That after *Zechus*'s Death, being diſturb'd by their Neighbours, they choſe one *Crocus*, an ancient Gentleman, to be their Chief Magiſtrate, and appointed a certain Number of Men to aſſiſt him in determining Controverſies. Under this ſort of Government they continued, till *Libuſſa*, *Crocus*'s Grand-Daughter, took one *Primiſlaus*, a Countryman, from the Plough to be her Husband, and he aſſum'd a more abſolute Government, under the Title of a Duke; and they ſay, their Succeſſors kept the Government about 450 Years. *Hoffman* gives this further Account of 'em, That *Charles the Great* fortified *Dreſden* againſt the *Bohemians* about 808, and his Son made them Tributaries to the Empire. *Lewis* King of the *Romans* made War upon them with various Succeſs, and brought 12 of their Dukes to be Chriſtians in 862. Their Duke *Borzivoi* conquer'd *Moravia*, and converted the whole Kingdom. Their Prince *Wenceſlaus* was brought to a Peace by the Emperor *Henry the Fowler* about 930; and their King *Boliſlaus* was ſubdued by *Otho the Great*, and became his Vaſſal in 954. *Otho* II. reduc'd them in 976, and their Biſhop *Adelbert* forſook them, becauſe of their bad Lives, about 999; and going to *Hungary*, converted many of that People. Dr. *Nicholſon* ſays, The Emperor *Henry* IV. in a Diet of the Empire at *Mentz*, created *Wratiſlaus* D. of *Bohemia* a King, and ſet a Crown of Gold on his Head; ſome ſay in 1072, and others about 1082; from which Time the Emperors always claim'd a Right of inveſting their Kings, and perſwaded the People to rebel from Time to Time againſt ſuch as did not receive the Inveſtiture at their Hands. The *Brandenburg* Reſident gives much the ſame Account of the Settlement of the *Slavi* here, who he thinks came from *Scythia*; and becauſe they were originally Strangers, their own Authors and others have from Time to Time pleaded an Exemption from their being ſubject to the Laws or Diets of the Empire. Theſe *Slavi* extended their Boundaries into *Pomerania*, *Mecklenburg*, and *Brandenburg*. It has alſo been debated, whether they be a Circle of the Empire, becauſe when *Maximilian* I. firſt appointed the Circles to be Six, he did not include *Bohemia*; but the ſame Author ſays, That the Emperor *Wenceſlaus* did long before that Time make it the firſt of the Four Circles which he appointed: And he makes it plain from Hiſtory, That ſince the Time of *Charlemagne*, they have done Homage to the Emperor and Empire.

Dr. *Nicholſon* ſays, When the *Slavi* came firſt hither, they brought many Idols with them; their Chief was *Prou*, which in their Language is the ſame with *Jupiter* the Thunderer, and they gave him the ſame Reverence as the *Saxons* did to *Thor*; but at laſt rejected him, and honour'd *Swanto-Wit*, an Idol, whoſe Temple was at *Wollin* in *Pomerania*; and the Doctor ſays, they ſtill retain ſome Remembrance of this Idol; for when they ſhake Hands with one another, they make uſe of this Compellation, *Witeg*, *Witeg*, or *Witamte*. The firſt that converted them to Chriſtianity was *Methodius*, a Greek Prelate; ſo that 'twas long before the *Bohemian* Clergy would own the Pope's Supremacy. The Doctor obſerves, That the Catalogues of their Kings are ſo contradictory, that 'tis hard to reconcile them.

The HISTORY *of their Kings.*

THE *Atlas Hiſtorique* gives us the following Hiſtory of their Dukes and Kings.

1. *Zechus* or *Zecco*, ſaid to be deſcended of a Noble Family, and flying hither with his Brother *Lechus* for killing a Perſon of Quality in their own Country, they took up their Abode on Mount *Chezip*, where finding none but a few People that look'd after their Flocks, and liv'd on their Milk, they taught them Husbandry: Upon which thoſe Peaſants honouring them as their Maſters, the reſt of the Inhabitants follow'd their Example, and choſe *Zechus* for their Governor, becauſe he was the eldeſt: Upon this, *Lechus* went to *Poland*, to which he gave Name, and founded the Government there. This is ſaid to have happen'd about the Year of Chriſt 550. *Zechus* govern'd a long Time; but the Time of his Death is uncertain.

2. *Croco* or *Cracus* ſucceeded: Some call him *Zechus*'s Son, and others make him a *Bohemian*, and ſay, he govern'd with ſo much Prudence, that the *Poles* choſe him alſo to be their Governor after *Lechus*; and ſome ſay, he founded and gave Name to the City *Cracow* in that Country.

3. After his Death, the youngeſt of his three Daughters, called *Libuſſa*, had the Government of *Bohemia* about 619, which ſhe managed well; but many of her Subjects thinking it unreaſonable that a Woman ſhould govern Men, they revolted; but ſhe pacify'd them, by pretending to the Art of Divination, and telling, That the Gods had order'd them to let a Horſe looſe, and that ſhe was to marry the Man to whoſe Houſe the Horſe ſhould firſt betake himſelf, and that he was to be their Prince. A Horſe being let looſe accordingly, he ſtop'd at the Houſe of *Primiſlaus*, a Peaſant, who underſtanding the Matter, threw down his Stick with which he drove his Cattle at Plough, which the fabulous Pagans ſaid became immediately a Nut-Tree; in Remembrance of which, he diſtributed a certain Quantity of Nuts every Year to the People. He govern'd with great Succeſs while *Libuſſa* liv'd; and after her Death, married one *Vaſca*, who form'd a Conſpiracy to baniſh all the Men, and ſet up a Government like that of the Amazons. She and her Women defended themſelves bravely for ſome Time; but being overcome, and put to Death, *Primiſlaus* died ſoon after.

4. *Nimiſlaus* his Son ſucceeded about 676. He cultivated the Country, and wall'd the Town of *Prague*. He is ſaid to have acquir'd great Glory in his War with the *Romans*, and died about 715.

5. *Mnatha* his Son ſucceeded, govern'd the Men himſelf, as they ſay, and left the Government of the Women to his Wife *Treſiſlaw*, had War with the *Alemanni* and *Moravians*, and died about 735.

6. He was ſucceeded by *Vogenius*, whom ſome call *Veritius*. He had War with the *Saxons* and *Miſnians*, and with Rebels of his own Country, whom having ſubdued, he liv'd peaceably ever after, and died in 763.

7. He was ſucceeded by *Wenceſlaus* I. of whom there is nothing remarkable, but that he reign'd 22 Years, and died about 785.

8. He was ſucceeded by his Brother *Czrſzwiſlus*, who being ambitious, got himſelf choſen Prince at *Prague*. He was unſucceſsful in his War with *Charlemagne*, and died in 803.

9. He was ſucceeded by his Son *Belam*, or, as ſome call him, *Necklam*, who being a cowardly Prince, his Uncle *Uladiſlaus* uſurp'd the Government; but was defeated and kill'd by *Belam*'s General, and is ſaid to have been ſo cruel, that he would allow his Soldiers no Proviſions but the dead Bodies of their Enemies, which rais'd all the Country againſt him. *Belam* died in 839, and was ſucceeded by his Son *Noſtivitus*, whom ſome call *Noſtritius*. He ſhar'd the Government with his Brother *Miſtbogen*, and governing happily, it contributed much to the Peopling of the Country. He had War with *Lewis de Debonnaire*; but made Peace with him a little before his Death, which happen'd in 856.

10. His Son *Borſivojus* I. ſucceeded, was their firſt Chriſtian Prince, and converted by *Cyrillus* and *Methodius* in 894. This occaſion'd his Subjects to dethrone him; but he ſubdued the Rebels, eſtabliſh'd Chriſtianity, left the Government to his Son *Spitig-*

Digitized by Google

signeus I. and retir'd with his Queen to a Monaſtery, where he died piouſly.

11. *Spitigneus* began his Reign in 904, govern'd well at firſt; but abandoning himſelf to Ambition, and other Vices, and deſpiſing the Threatnings of his Father and Mother, he was cut off by Heaven 4 Days after their Reproof, in 906.

12. His Brother *Uladiſlaus* or *Wratiſlaus* I. ſucceeded, was an excellent Prince, victorious againſt the *Hungarians*, and married a Pagan Lady, on her Promiſe to turn Chriſtian; but ſoon after ſhe endeavour'd to ſuppreſs Chriſtianity, thô without Succeſs. *Uladiſlaus* died in 916.

13. *Wenciſlaus* I. his Son, ſucceeded; and during his Minority, his Grandmother *Ludmilla* was choſen to govern, becauſe her Husband would not quit his Monaſtery. His own Pagan Mother being incens'd at this, got her murther'd, and uſurp'd the Government, for which, when he came of Age, he took Arms againſt her, which brought her to a feign'd Submiſſion; but ſhe perſwaded his Brother *Boleſlaus* to murther him in 938.

14. *Boleſlaus* ſucceeded; but the Emperor *Otho the Great* made War upon him for murthering his Brother; and after 14 Years Time, brought him to a Peace, to pay Tribute, to do publick Penance for his Crime, and to reſtore Chriſtianity. After which, *Boleſlaus* died in 967.

15. His Son *Boleſlaus* II. ſucceeded, and was an excellent Prince. He founded the Biſhoprick of *Prague*, ſent for ſeveral Clergymen from *Germany* to promote Chriſtianity, made War upon the *Ruſſians* and *Poles*, defeated the Emperor *Otho* II.'s Army, made Peace with his Son *Otho* III. and died, after a good Reign, in 999.

16. His Son *Boleſlaus* III. ſucceeded, was a covetous and negligent Prince, and loſt what his Father had conquer'd from his Neighbours: Upon which, his Uncle *Miſco* ſeiz'd him, put out his Eyes, and baniſh'd him; but by the Help of the *Sclavonians* and *Saxons*, he recover'd Part of his Dominions, and died at *Budowitz* in the 80th Year of his Age.

17. *Jaromir*, his Son, who was made Regent during his Baniſhment, ſucceeded; but being uncapable of Iſſue, the People, with the Aſſiſtance of his Brother *Ulric* or *Udolric*, depos'd him. His Brother, who had been choſen Governor ſome Time before, put out his Eyes.

18. *Ulric* ſucceeded in 1035, govern'd for two Years with great Glory, defeated *Gero* Marquis of *Brandenburg* in *Luſatia*, taught the *Bohemians* the Art of War, and dy'd with the Reputation of a great General in 1037.

19. *Bretiſlaus* I. his Son, ſucceeded; and for his Valour, obtain'd the Sirname of the *Bohemian Achilles*. His taking by Force *Judith*, a Daughter to the Elector *Palatine*, occaſion'd a War betwixt him and the Emperor *Conrad* II. The firſt Campaign was ſucceſsful to neither; but the Emperor coming with a greater Army, that Princeſs, by her Mediation, and throwing her ſelf at the Emperor's Feet, hinder'd the Battle, and brought on a Peace. He was very ſucceſsful againſt the *Poles* and *Hungarians*, and in one Campaign took from the *Poles*, *Breſlaw*, *Cracow*, *Gneſna*, and *Poſen*: After which he made Peace, and died in 1055.

20. *Spitignew* II. ſucceeded, who, thô ſirnam'd *The Juſt*, baniſh'd his Mother-in-Law and ſome of the Grandees, and ſeiz'd thoſe Parts of the Country allotted to his Brothers; upon which one of them, called *Uladiſlaus*, retir'd to *Hungary*, where he married the King's Daughter: After which, he and the reſt of his Brothers re-poſſeſs'd themſelves of their Dominions, and *Spitignew* died in 1061.

21. *Uladiſlaus* II. his Brother, ſucceeded, and was by the Emperor crown'd King of *Bohemia* for his Merit. His Brothers rebelled againſt him; but were ſubdued. After this, his eldeſt Son *Brzetiſlaus*, being provok'd by a witty Raillery of a Courtier, he got him murder'd, and declar'd War againſt his Father; but his Uncle *Conrad* hinder'd their coming to a Battle, and *Brzatiſlaus* retir'd to *Hungary*. *Uladiſlaus* died in 1093. having before-hand declared his Brother *Conrad* Succeſſor.

22. *Conrad* would not take the Title of King, but ſatisfy'd himſelf with that of Duke, did nothing remarkable, and died in leſs than 7 Months after.

23. *Brzetiſlaus*, Son to *Uladiſlaus*, being call'd by the People, ſucceeded. He reduc'd the *Polaques*, who had revolted, obliged their Prince *Uladiſlaus* to pay him

Digitized by Google

Tribute, and was kill'd as a Hunting in 1100.

24. *Borzivoius* II. his Brother, ſucceeded, by the Intereſt of the Emperor *Henry* IV. without Conſent of the Princes; ſo that he was thrice dethron'd; and at laſt, finding that he could not hold the Government, retir'd to *Germany* in 1107.

25. *Suatopluok*, Nephew to *Borzivoius* I. ſucceeded, being choſen Governor before. He procur'd by Money the Confirmation of the Emperor *Henry* V. and pillaged the Churches to pay him. He ravaged *Hungary*, and made War upon the *Poles*, who favour'd his Uncle; during which he was kill'd in 1109.

26. *Otho* ſucceeded; but was dethron'd, becauſe of his Incapacity to govern.

27. *Uladiſlaus* II. Brother to *Borzivoius*, ſucceeded, ſubdued his own Brother *Sobieſlaus*, and others, who rebelled againſt him, and died in 1125.

28 *Sobieſlaus* I. his Brother, ſucceeded. He was ſucceſsful in his War againſt the *Moravians*, kill'd *Otho* their Marquis in Battle, and at the ſame Time defeated the Emperor *Lotharius* II. who aſſiſted him. The Emperor afterwards contracted a Friendſhip with him, and employ'd him as General againſt *Conrad* and *Frederick*, whom he defeated. Some of his own Subjects envying his Glory, conſpir'd againſt him; but were diſcover'd and puniſh'd. He died in 1140.

29. *Uladiſlaus* III. ſucceeded, by the Intereſt of the Emperor *Frederick Barbaroſſa*, who gave him the Title of King in a Diet, becauſe he govern'd the Empire well, while the Emperor himſelf was in *Italy*. He afterwards commanded the Emperor's Armies with Succeſs, and reſtor'd *Stephen Geiſa* to the Dutchy of *Milan*; and, as a Mark of his Valour, had aſſign'd him for his Arms, *Azure*, a *Lion Argent*, which is ſtill the Arms of *Bohemia*. After a glorious Reign, he died in 1174.

30. *Sobieſlaus* II. Son to *Sobieſlaus* I. ſucceeded. He was a wicked tyrannical Prince. During his Time, *Andrew* diſputed the Kingdom of *Hungary* with his Brother *Emerick*, who being worſted, retired to *Bohemia*, in his way to *Germany*; but was deliver'd up to *Andrew* by *Sobieſlaus*. The Emperor being incens'd at it, ſummon'd *Sobieſlaus* to anſwer it, who declining it, a War enſu'd; but the firſt Battle decided the Difference, the King of *Hungary* dying of a Wound he receiv'd in it. *Sobieſlaus* died in 1178.

31. *Frederick*, Son to *Uladiſlaus* III. ſucceeded, by the Aſſiſtance of the Emperor *Frederick*. He did nothing remarkable, and died in 1190.

32. *Conrad* II. Couſin to *Frederick*, ſucceeded, by the Aſſiſtance of the Emperor *Henry*, whom he attended in his Expedition againſt the Pope, wherein he died in 1192.

33. *Wenceſlaus* I. another Son of *Sobieſlaus* I. ſucceeded; but was taken and dethroned by *Albert* Marquis of *Luſatia* in 1193.

34. *Bretiſlaus*, whom ſome call *Henry* Biſhop of *Prague*, Nephew to *Uladiſlaus* III. ſucceeded, govern'd with much Glory for 3 Years, and died in 1196.

35. *Uladiſlaus* IV. Son to *Uladiſlaus* III. ſucceeded; but in 5 Months, ſurrender'd to his Brother.

36. *Premiſlaus*, who took Part with the Emperor *Otho* againſt *Philip*. He govern'd 32 Years, and died in 1231.

37. *Wenceſlaus* II. ſucceeded. He was ſucceſsful in his War before that Time againſt *Frederick* Duke of *Auſtria*, and his Brother *Primiſlaus*. His Subjects revolted, and declared for his Son *Ottocarus*, which occaſion'd much Bloodſhed; but at laſt they agreed. After which *Wenceſlaus*, who had before loſt an Eye as a Hunting, did afterwards loſe his Life in that Exerciſe in 1255.

38. *Ottocarus* II. by ſome called *Primiſlaus* III. ſucceeded. He conquer'd *Auſtria* from the Emperor *Rodolph* I. who at laſt drove him out again. The Pope call'd him the Apoſtle of *Pruſſia*, becauſe he defeated the Pagans, and founded the Biſhoprick of *Sambick* in that Country. He was ſo potent, that he govern'd from the *Adriatick* Sea to the *Baltick*. But in a ſecond War with *Rodolph*, was kill'd at the Battle of *Murkfelt* in 1278.

39. His Son *Wenceſlaus* III. ſucceeded at 8 Years of Age, under the Care of *Otho the Long*, Marquis of *Brandenburg*, during his Minority. His Mother-in-Law gave him the Provinces of *Cracow* and *Sendomir*, of which he never had peaceable Poſſeſſion, till he obtain'd it by War, when the *Poles*, for the Eſteem they had to his Merit, choſe him their King, and crown'd him at *Prague*, where

Digitized by Google

where he founded the Univerſity. The *Hungarians* did alſo offer him their Crown, which he reſign'd to his Son, and died ſoon after in 1305.

40. His Son *Wenceſlaus* IV. ſucceeded, was a wicked and luſtful Prince; and by forcing the Wives of his Subjects, became ſo odious, that he was aſſaſſinated as he paſſed by a Gentleman's Houſe at *Olmutz* in 1306.

41. *Henry* Duke of *Corinthia*, Brother-in-Law to *Wenceſlaus* III. arriving at *Prague*, was choſen King by the Intereſt of the *Hungarians*; but the Emperor *Albert* I. rais'd an Army, dethron'd him, and ſet up his own Son *Rodolph*, who, after a ſhort and prudent Reign, died ſuddenly in 1307. Upon which *Henry* return'd to *Bohemia*, and defeated thoſe who oppos'd him. *Albert* enter'd *Bohemia* againſt him with an Army; but dying in the Expedition, the Emperor *Henry* VII. expelled *Henry*, and ſet up

42. *John* of *Luxemburg*, his own Son, then 14 Years of Age, in 1310. Soon after he was declared Vicar of the Empire, during his Father's Abſence, when he conquer'd *Sileſia* in 1332. Before this time, he was invited to *Poland*, defeated the *Lithuanian* Pagans, and was, as ſome ſay, declared King of *Poland*; but Hiſtorians differ in this Matter. He was made blind of one Eye in this Expedition, and went *incognito* to *Montpellier* for Cure, where a *Jewiſh* Phyſician made him loſe the other. This did not hinder him however to go to War, ſays the *Atlas Hiſtorique*; for he carried Troops to aſſiſt *Philip de Valois* of *France* againſt the *Engliſh*, and was kill'd in the Battle of *Creſſy*, fighting valiantly, in 1346.

43. His Son *Charles* ſucceeded, and was choſen Emperor a Year before the Death of *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, by the Intereſt of Pope *Clement* VI. and *Philip de Valois* of *France*. Some Princes of the Empire rais'd up three Competitors againſt him, whom he vanquiſh'd, and continued in peaceable Poſſeſſion. He was preſent at the Battle where his Father was kill'd. It was he who inſtituted the *Golden Bull*, and purchas'd from *Otho* of *Bavaria* the Marq. of *Brandenburg*, which he gave to his Son *Wenceſlaus*, and died in 1378.

44. His Son *Wenceſlaus* V. ſucceeded, who being a careleſs ambitious Prince, the Electors depos'd him, and choſe another in 1400, when *Wenceſlaus* retir'd to *Prague*, and liv'd there in Debauches for 19 Years.

45. *Sigiſmond* King of *Hungary*, and afterwards Emperor, ſucceeded to the Crown of *Bohemia* in 1418, after the Death of Prince *Robert*, Palatine of the *Rhine*, who ſucceeded his Brother *Wenceſlaus* V. He was oppos'd by the *Huſſites*, and was the Occaſion of burning *John Huſs* and *Jerome* of *Prague* at the Council of *Conſtance*, contrary to his own ſafe Conduct, which ſo provok'd the *Huſſites*, that they offer'd their Crown to *Jagelon* King of *Poland*, who reſign'd it to his Son-in-Law *Coributh* Duke of *Lithuania*; but *Sigiſmond* overcame him. The Reader may find more of this *Sigiſmond* in our former Account of the Emperors. He died in 1436, or, as ſome ſay, in 1438.

46. *Albert* II. ſucceeded; for whoſe Hiſtory, we likewiſe refer to our Account of the Emperors. He died in 1439.

47. His Son *Uladiſlaus* V. ſucceeded to *Hungary* and *Bohemia* at 5 Years of Age. The famous *Huniades* was choſen Governor during his Minority; and after his Death; *George Podebrache*. When *Uladiſlaus* came of Age, he perſecuted the *Huſſites*, and oblig'd the *Turks* to raiſe the Siege of *Belgrade* in 1451; but died in 1457 of Poiſon, which the Enemies of the *Huſſites* charged upon them.

48. *George Podebrache*, who govern'd during his Midority, was choſen after his Death in 1458. He ſubdued the *Moravians*; but being a Favourer of the *Huſſites*, and caſting off the Pope's Yoke, the Court of *Rome* excommunicated him, and rais'd a Rebellion againſt him; but he kept the Government till he died, in 1471, notwithſtanding the Endeavours of *Uladiſlaus*, and *Matthew Corvin* of *Hungary*, againſt him.

49. *Uladiſlaus* VI. Son to *Caſimir*, ſucceeded, and obtain'd alſo the Crown of *Hungary* in 1490. and vanquiſh'd his three Competitors, of whom his Brother *Albert*, ſupported by his Father, was one. He was ſucceſsful againſt the Infidels, who did very much Damage to his Country, and died in 1516.

50. He was ſucceeded by his Son *Louis* who was crown'd King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia* at 12 Years of Age, under the Protection of the Emperor *Maximilian* I. and

Sigiſ-

Digitized by Google

Sigiſmond King of *Poland*. When he came of Age, he govern'd with a great deal of Conduct. *Soliman*, Emperor of the *Turks*, made War upon him, and took *Belgrade* in 1521. In 1526, the *Turks* defeated him at the famous Battle of *Mahatz*, when, in his Retreat, he was unhappily drown'd in a Moraſs.

51. The Emperor *Frederick* I. ſucceeded; for whoſe Hiſtory, we refer to that of the Emperors. Since his Time, the Houſe of *Auſtria* have been poſſeſſed of *Bohemia*, except a ſmall while that the Elector *Palatine* enjoy'd it, till defeated at the Battle of *Prague*; of which, we have already given an Account.

The RELIGION *of the Modern* Bohemians.

WE have formerly given an Account of their Converſion to Chriſtianity; but their early and remarkable Oppoſition to the Errors of Popery, under the Name of *Huſſites*, deſerves to be a little inſiſted on.

Mr. *Fox*, in his Book of Martyrs, *Vol. I.* ſays, That Queen *Anne*, Wife to *Richard* II. of *England*, being a *Bohemian*, ſome of her Countrymen, who came with her, having ſeen ſome of *Wickliff*'s Works, which Dr. *Nicholſon* ſays was at *Oxford*, they carried home ſome Copies of them to *John Huſs* and *Jerome* of *Prague*, who, upon reading them, ſet effectually about reforming the Corruptions of the Church of *Rome*. For ſuch Errors as they objected againſt, and how they were treacherouſly burnt at the Council of *Conſtance*, we refer to the Book of Martyrs, where the Reader may find it at large. The Learned *Spanheim*, in his Epitome of Eccleſiaſtical Hiſtory, gives this brief Account of them: In the 15th Century, King *Wenceſlaus* reign'd in *Bohemia*, being deprived of the Empire, becauſe of his Defence of the *Huſſites*, and refuſing to put the Pope's Bulls in Execution againſt them; for which, the Papiſts load his Memory with Reproaches. After the Murther of *John Huſs* and *Jerome* of *Prague*, againſt which the *Bohemians* proteſted, moſt of 'em embrac'd their Doctrine; ſo that they became formidable to the King, and were perſecuted. But their Diſperſion tended to the Propagation of the Goſpel elſewhere, and one of them, called *Paul Craw*, was burnt in *Scotland* for oppoſing the Errors of Popery in 1432, which laid the Foundation of a Reformation there. The *Bohemians* reveng'd the Death of their two Martyrs, *Huſs* and *Prague*, on the Popiſh Clergy; and the Univerſity of *Prague* aſſerted Communion in both Kinds. After the Death of *Wenceſlaus* in 1319, Pope *Martin* V. excommunicated the *Huſſites*, and ſtir'd up the Emperor, with other Kings and Princes, to rout them out; Upon which the Emperor *Sigiſmond* began a terrible Perſecution againſt them, that iſſued in a 14 Years War, which terribly afflicted *Bohemia*, and moſt of the Empire. The *Huſſites* choſe *Ziſca*, a valiant Lord, for their General, who became terrible to the Emperor and his Papiſts. He rais'd 40000 Proteſtants, as we are told in his Life. His firſt Appearance was in the Reign of *Wenceſlaus*, who purpoſing to diſarm the Citizens of *Prague*, *Ziſca* preſently order'd them to take Arms, and marching to the Caſtle on a ſudden, to the King's great Surpriſe, ſaid to him, *Sir! where are your Enemies that you are ſo much afraid of? for here your loyal Citizens of* Prague *are come to offer their Lives in your Service.* By this Stratagem, he appeaſed the King, and preſerved the Privileges of the City. After the Death of *Huſs* and *Prague*, *Ziſca*, with his Army above-mention'd, deſtroy'd the Popiſh Monaſteries, and Idolatrous Temples, and diſpers'd the Prieſts and Monks, whom he compar'd to Swine that were kept in a Sty to be fatted. He afterwards took the Caſtle of *Wiſgrad*, and the Town of *Pelzina*, which he fortified. The Queen Dowager ſent to the Emperor and neighbouring Princes for Aſſiſtance, and in the mean time retir'd with her Treaſury and beſt Moveables to the Caſtle of *Prague*, and fortified the Bridge, to keep the Proteſtants from entring the upper Town. *Ziſca* won the Bridge, and the nether Part of the City, and fought with the Papiſts for 5 Days and Nights together; during which, Ambaſſadors came from the Emperor *Sigiſmond*, who brought them to a Truce, and afterwards to a Peace, on Promiſe of ſettling the Differences among them; but fraudulently enda-

Digitized by Google

deavour'd afterwards the Subverſion of their Religion and Liberty, and began a Perſecution at *Breſlaw* in *Sileſia*, where he put many *Huſſites* to cruel Deaths. Upon this, *Ziſca* took Arms again, and having gain'd the Governor of the Caſtle of *Prague*, he ſent Letters through the Kingdom, adviſing the People to arm againſt the Emperor, who deſign'd the Deſtruction of their Country, as was plain from his Letters they had intercepted; had ſet aſide the Marq. of *Brandenburg*, whom they had choſen King, and procur'd the Death of their two Martyrs at *Conſtance*, contrary to his own Safe-Conduct. The Emperor advanc'd againſt him with a great Army of Horſe, and *Ziſca*'s Men being all Foot, he encamp'd on a rough Ground, where the Imperial Horſe were forced to alight; and *Ziſca* having order'd the Women that followed his Army to throw their Handkerchiefs, and other looſe Clothes, on the Ground, and his Men to do the like, the Imperial Horſemen being entangled with them by their Spurs when they alighted on the Place, he ſuddenly attack'd them, and obtain'd a great Victory. After this he took a Town by Storm, from whence the Governor had drove out all the Proteſtants, burnt it down, and built another called *Tabor*, on a Mountain of that Name, which was ſtrong by Nature, and encompaſſed by two Rivers, the Entrance to it being ſcarce 30 Foot broad. He fortified it with a deep Trench, and a triple Wall; and from hence his Followers were called *Taborites*. At this Time *Ziſca* had no Horſe, but ſurpris'd by Night 1000 of the Emperor's, who were ſent againſt him, by which, with the Horſemen's Armour, he mounted 1000 of his own Men, that did him great Service afterwards. *Sigiſmund* enter'd *Bohemia*, and laid Siege to the Caſtle of *Prague*, which the Governor baſely deliver'd to him. Upon this, *Ziſca* came to the City, and block'd up the Caſtle; but the Emperor coming again with his Army, reliev'd it, and beſieg'd the Town for 6 Weeks; but after the Defeat of ſeveral ſtrong Detachments by *Ziſca*, the Emperor was forced to raiſe the Siege, and *Ziſca* return'd to *Tabor*. After this, he reveng'd himſelf on the Popiſh Clergy, who excited the Emperor againſt him, and had put great Numbers of Proteſtants to terrible Deaths, by deſtroying 300 of their Monaſteries, and driving out all the Monks. The Caſtle of *Wiſgrad* having been ſurrender'd to the Imperialiſts, *Ziſca* laid Siege to it, defeated the Emperor, who came to relieve it, and forced it to yield. Next he laid Siege to the ſtrong Monaſtery of St. *Clare*, and forc'd the Emperor, who came with a ſtrong Army to relieve it, to a ſhameful Retreat out of *Bohemia*. *Ziſca* afterwards took the ſtrong City of *Commitavia* by Storm, and burnt all the Prieſts, as they had formerly done the Proteſtants. At the Siege of *Raby*, *Ziſca* loſt his Eyes; but when cur'd of his Wounds, continued to command his Army, and took many of the Emperor's Gariſons. Upon this, the Emperor enter'd the Country with an Army of *Hungarians* on the E. and appointed the Electors to enter it on the W. but *Ziſca* defeated them both when join'd, forc'd the Emperor to fly, purſu'd him a whole Day; and 15000 *Hungarian* Horſe, whom the Emperor brought to his Aſſiſtance, fled with ſo much Precipitation, that moſt of 'em were drown'd by venturing to paſs a great River on the Ice. After this Victory, wherein many of the *Hungarian* Nobility were cut off, *Ziſca* order'd all the Popiſh Idols in the Country to be deſtroy'd, and forbad the Prieſts to wear any ſuperſtitious Veſtments. He built another ſtrong Town on a Mountain called *Horeb*, from whence many of his Followers were called *Horebites*. The Papiſts finding there was no other Way of ſubduing the *Huſſites*, they ſow'd Diviſions betwixt them; of which, more anon. In the mean time *Ziſca* laid Siege to the Town of *Aſca* on the *Elb*, where there was a ſtrong Gariſon, and defeated the Marq. of *Miſnia*, who came with a ſtrong Army to relieve it. He ſlew many of the Nobles, and 9000 of the Popiſh Soldiers; upon which *Aſca* ſurrender'd, and was raz'd. After this, the Diviſions being fomented by the Papiſts betwixt *Ziſca* and the Citizens of *Prague*, they rais'd a great Army againſt him, which oblig'd him to retire into a narrow Plain, where they not being able to extend their Front any larger than his, he fought and defeated 'em, kill'd 3000 on the Spot, took and burnt the City of *Cuthna*, which they had fortified, and marched to beſiege *Prague*, when his Army

Digitized by Google

Army began to murmur, and ſaid, It was unreaſonable to deſtroy their Chief City, eſpecially ſince the Citizens were of the ſame Religion, and that the Emperor fomented their Diviſions in order to deſtroy both. Upon this, *Ziſca* made a Speech to his Army, wherein he told them, That he fought for their Sakes, and not for his own; That he never led them on, but where they came off Conquerors; That they were become famous and rich; whereas he had got nothing but Blindneſs, and an empty Name; That he did not fight againſt thoſe of *Prague* for his own Sake, but for theirs, whoſe Blood they fought; That he had no other Deſign but to baniſh the ſeditious Citizens of the Emperor's Faction; but for his Part, he was willing to do what they pleas'd, provided they took Care that they themſelves were not betray'd; and that for his own Part, it ſignify'd little what became of him, a blind old Man. Upon which his Soldiers were ſo much inflam'd, that they prepared to attack the City; but this Difference was happily concluded by *Rokezana*, a famous Miniſter of the City, who reconcil'd *Ziſca* and the Town.

The Emperor being aſtoniſh'd at *Ziſca*'s Succeſs, ſent to promiſe him the Government of the Kingdom, and many other Advantages, if he would come to him, which *Ziſca* agreed to; and ſome ſay, was in Danger of being flatter'd by the Emperor to join with the *Calixtines*, who only demanded the Uſe of the Cup, but in moſt other Things agreed with the Papiſts, againſt his own Followers the *Taborites*, the true Diſciples of *Huſs*, who inſiſted on a full Reformation: But theſe Fears, if there were any Ground for them, *Spanheim* tells us were prevented by *Ziſca*'s dying of the Plague at the Caſtle of *Priſſovia*, in his Way to the Emperor, in 1424. *Æneas Sylvius*, afterwards Pope, makes a heavy Complaint, That the Emperor, who was terrible to all *Chriſtendom*, and to the *Turks*, ſhould have ſo far diſgrac'd himſelf, and the Church of *Rome*, to have truckled ſo to a blind old Man. *Ziſca* was honourably buried by his *Taborites* at *Caſtovia*, where his Tomb continu'd till 1623, that the Popiſh Army under the Emperor *Frederick* broke it in Pieces, dug up his Grave, and barbarouſly threw his Duſt in the Air. When he was on his Death-Bed, he adviſ'd his Followers to make a Drum of his Skin, the Sound of which would terrify their Enemies, which proved ſo in effect for a conſiderable Time, which muſt be aſcribed to the Pannick Fear that God, in his Juſtice, ſpread among thoſe cruel Perſecutors.

Spanheim informs us, That after his Death, a new Diviſion happen'd among the *Huſſites*, when thoſe of *Ziſca*'s Followers, who call'd themſelves *Orphans*, becauſe of his Death, propoſed a middle Way betwixt the *Calixtines* and the *Taborites*. Their chief Leader was *Rokizanus*, whom the Pope flatter'd with Hopes of the Archbiſhoprick of *Prague*; but afterwards refus'd it him, becauſe he would not renounce the Cup. Upon this the Emperor and Pope had recourſe to Fraud, and invited the *Bohemians* to ſend Deputies to the Council of *Baſil* in 1431; when being deceived with falſe Promiſes, and having Hoſtages given for their Safety, they went thither with 300 Horſe. The *Calixtines*, headed by *Rokizanus*, demanded the Reſtitution of the Cup. The *Taborites*, led by the invincible *Procopius*, inſiſted on a Reformation of Manners, and of all Corruptions in the Church. The *Orphans* demanded free Liberty for preaching the Word of God. *Peter Payne*, an *Engliſh Wickliffite*, who join'd the *Huſſites*, demanded that the Clergy ſhould be forbid all Secular Dominion. Theſe were the Articles call'd the *Compactata*, ſo famous in the *Bohemian* Hiſtory, as agreed upon by the *Huſſites* among themſelves before they went to the Council. When they came thither, theſe Things were debated 50 Days, when the *Bohemians*, finding themſelves impos'd upon, prepar'd to depart; but were circumvented by a new Fraud. The Council ſent Meſſengers to *Bohemia*, who deceived the *Huſſites* with School Subtilties; and thus the good *Taborites* were diſappointed of their Hopes, and obtained nothing elſe but the Uſe of the Cup, which *Rokizanus* and his Party alledg'd was ſufficient: And ſo a Peace was concluded with the *Huſſites* for a Time, which proved more fatal to them than the War. *Orthicinus Gratius in faſciculo rerum expetendarum* gives a large Account of all thoſe Tranſactions.

This

This Agreement was oppos'd by *Procopius* and his Party, who maintain'd themſelves bravely by the Sword againſt their Enemies; but *Rokizanus*, puſh'd on with the Hopes of the Archbiſhoprick, perſecuted them ſeverely, and ſtir'd up *Mainard*, a valiant *Bohemian* Lord and General, againſt them, who envying the Honour *Procopius* had obtain'd, attack'd him with the *Taborites* and *Orphans* that join'd him; and being much ſuperior in Force, *Procopius* fell in the Battle, being not ſo much conquer'd, as weary with conquering, ſays *Æneas Sylvius*. Thus the *Taborites* were almoſt extinguiſh'd in a barbarous manner, the Papiſts and *Calixtines*, thô they hated one another, joining together to perſecute them. The Remainders of them continued ſome Time in the City of *Tabor*, and declined the Communion of the other *Bohemians*; but they were betray'd at laſt by *Rokizanus* to ſubmit to a Decree of the States: After which their Town was beſieg'd, and taken by the Viceroy *Podiebrachius*, and the poor People condemn'd to perpetual Impriſonment. *Rokizanus* being wearied at laſt with the juſt Reproaches of the *Taborites*, obtained Leave of the Viceroy that they might retire into the Mountainous Country next to *Sileſia*, where they were join'd by the ſincerer *Calixtines*, and the *Waldenſes*, who were expelled from *Auſtria* about 1467, and form'd, as *Hoffman* ſays, about 200 Congregations in *Bohemia* and *Moravia*. But *Rokizanus* and the Viceroy rais'd a new Perſecution againſt them, loaded 'em with the ſame Reproaches that the Heathens rais'd againſt the Primitive Chriſtians, and forc'd them to retire to Caves and Dens. *Rokizanus* being deny'd the Archbiſhoprick, becauſe he would not part with the Cup, he and his Followers exclaim'd againſt the Pope as Antichriſt, and declar'd they would not ſtand to the Agreement they made at *Baſil*, but have the Word of God for their only Rule. At laſt, falling ſick in 1461, he was ſtruck with Remorſe of Conſcience, and told the Viceroy when he came to ſee him, That both of them muſt anſwer in a little Time at the Tribunal of God for their Cruelty to their Brethren. Accordingly they both died the ſame Year, and *Rokizanus* ended his Days in Deſpair. The *Huſſites* having join'd with the *Waldenſes*, that Name ſwallow'd up the former. In 1500, they were cruelly perſecuted; and in 1536, when *Luther* began to appear, there was found to be a great Harmony betwixt him and them in Doctrine and Diſcipline. The Emperor *Maximilian* gave them their Liberty in 1564; but next Year they were perſecuted again by the Chancellor of *Bohemia*, who was drown'd in the *Danube* on his Return from *Vienna* with bloody Orders againſt them. In 1574, the *Waldenſes* being expell'd from *Pruſſia*, retir'd to *Bohemia*, in which, together with *Moravia*, there were 17 Barons and 146 Knights of their Communion. To confute the Reproaches of their Enemies, they drew up their Confeſſion, and preſented it to the Emperor *Maximilian* in 1575, which had a good Effect, and procur'd 'em Peace. They were afterwards call'd, *The United Brethren of the* Bohemian *Confeſſion*, and their Liberty was confirmed by the Emperor *Rodolph* II. in 1611. During the Reign of *Matthias*, the Perſecution gave Riſe to the *Bohemian* War in 1618. But the Elector *Palatine*, whom they had choſen King, being defeated in 1620, they were brought under, and at laſt baniſh'd the Kingdom in 1639, and diſpers'd into *Sileſia*, *Poland*, &c. Since which, the Proteſtants have been allow'd no Publick Worſhip in *Bohemia*.

Their Confeſſion preſented to the Emperor at *Vienna* in 1535, agrees in Point of Doctrine with thoſe of other Proteſtants. It was afterwards approved by *Vergerius*, *Luther*, *Melanction*, *Bucer*, and *Muſculus*, who highly applauded it. In the Preface to their Confeſſion, they take Notice of their Sufferings and Reproaches, and of their Struggles with the Papiſts from the Time of *John Huſs*; and mention a Prophecy of his, printed in *Matthew Paris*'s Hiſtory, foretelling that a new People ſhould ariſe, fram'd according to the new Man, from whom ſhould proceed a new Clergy and Prieſthood, that hated Avarice and Worldly Glory, and had their Converſation in Heaven. To this there is added a Preface of their Nobility and Gentry, wherein they take Notice, that they were called *Picardi* and *Waldenſes* by way of Deriſion.

In their Article of the Church, they ſay, The true Church is to be known by the Preaching of the Word, and the Adminiſtration of the Sacraments according to

Christ's Prescription. In that concerning the Governors and Ministers of the Church, they declare for Ordination by Imposition of Hands, and the Authority of Ministers; That they allow no Man to take that Office upon him, but such as are duly called, whose Business is to take Care of the People committed to their Charge, faithfully to preach the Word, and administer the Sacraments; That they have no Power to compel any Man to embrace the Faith by Punishment, Violence, or Threats, by themselves or others; That they are not to Lord it over the Church or the People's Faith, and quote the 20th of St. *Matthew*, *Ye know that the Lords of the Gentiles exercise Dominion over them*, &c. *but it shall not be so among you*, &c. They declare against Priests meddling with Secular Affairs, and think it convenient they should be unmarried; but not that 'tis of it self unlawful, since the Apostles approv'd it; and say, the People ought to be subject to them, obey them, and be directed by them in Things relating to Salvation, according to those Scriptures, *Heb.* 13. 17. *Obey them that have the Rule over you, and submit your selves, for they watch for your Souls. And the Elders that rule well, are worthy of double Honour, especially they that labour in the Word and Doctrine.* They add, That the People are oblig'd to provide for them; but that such as are able to work with their own Hands, ought to get their own Livelihood, if it do not hinder their Work of the Ministry, according to the Example of the Apostle; and that such Priests or Ministers as are guilty of Crimes or Errors, or negligent in their Office, are first to have a Fatherly Admonition; but if they despise the Advice of the Brethren, and of the whole Church, they are first to be deprived of their Office, and then to be thrown out of the Church.

In the Article of Baptism, they own, That they formerly re-baptiz'd those who were converted to them from Popery, as the Papists did such as they perverted from them; but upon better Information, they had laid that aside. As to the Sacrament of the Lord's Supper, they taught, That no Man ought to add any Thing to our Saviour's own Words in the Institution, nor detract any Thing from them; but is plainly to believe what our Saviour has said, without going to the Right or Left; for which, they take Notice they had undergone many Reproaches.

In the Article about the Power of the Church, or the Keys, they say, That when Christ gave them to *Peter*, he gave them to the Church and her Ministers, to continue to the End of the World; That this Authority is to be used according to our Saviour's Command, not at our own Will and Pleasure, but as Stewards of the Mysteries of God, and Ministers and Servants of Christ; That this Power is first given to the Governors and Ministers of the Church in general, and to every Christian Congregation in particular, how small soever, according to that of our Saviour; *Wheresoever two or three are gathered together in my Name, there am I in the midst of them.*

They declare themselves for such Rites and Customs as are not contrary to Piety; but are against obtruding such as may prejudice Religion, or make Differences among Christians, who ought to bear charitably with one another, as Members of the same Body.

In the Conclusion, they acquaint the Emperor, That these were the Articles, which all their Elders did unanimously agree to.

In *April*, 1570, they came to an Agreement with their Brethren of the *Augsburg* Confession at the Synods of *Sendomir* and *Posen* in *Poland*, which consisted of 20 Articles: The chief of which were, That the Ministers of both Sides should use their own Methods and Forms of Worship, without Offence, either separately or together; That none should be employed by the Patron to preach or administer the Sacraments in the Congregations of another, without his Consent; That the Ministers of neither Side should withdraw one another's Hearers, but confirm them in their Obedience to their own Pastors; That none of the Ministers or People should speak or write ill of those of either of the Confessions, or condemn their Doctrine and Rites, but think and speak well of one another; That Elders should be appointed on both Sides to promote this Union, and to take Care of other Affairs of the Churches, and to meet for that End twice or thrice a Year at a Place appointed; That no particular Societies or Ministers should meddle to change any Thing

Digitized by Google

Thing in Doctrine, Rites, or Benefices, without the Conſent of the Miniſters of their own Confeſſion; That they ſhould all agree to preach up Piety againſt Idolatry, and all manner of Vice, and that Diſcipline ſhould be exerciſed againſt faulty Miniſters, and others, without reſpect of Perſons; That none of them ſhould admit the Members of other Congregations to the Sacrament, without a Certificate from their own Miniſters, except at Diets, Synods, or on a Journey; That none of them ſhould receive excommunicated Miniſters or People into Communion; That Patrons ſhould not make any Innovation in their Worſhip, without Conſent of the Senior Miniſters; That they ſhould reject all Popiſh Rites, Idolatrous Images, Relicks, Croſſes of Silver and Gold, &c. leſt they ſhould ſeem to ſupport Antichriſt, and prophane the Word of God; That in caſe of any Controverſy about Doctrine or Ceremonies, they were to endeavour peaceably to compromiſe them among themſelves; and if they could not do that, ſhould ſubmit to the General Synods of *Greater* and *Leſſer Poland*.

This was ſign'd by the Superintendants, Miniſters and Elders, of the ſeveral Churches; many of the Elders being Counts, and other Perſons of great Quality.

The *Bohemian* Brethren did afterwards, in their Agreement with the Churches of *Poland*, *Switzerland*, and thoſe of the *Augſburg* Confeſſion, declare themſelves more expreſly againſt Tranſubſtantiation.

The Government of thoſe Churches,

WAS managed by Superintendants, Miniſters, and Elders.

Their Superintendant, as we find in that Part of the Harmony of Confeſſions, Intitled, *Polonia Conſenſus*, was called a Spiritual Elder or Superintendant. He was choſen from among the Miniſters of the Diſtrict by the Miniſters and Elders of that Diſtrict in a Synod; and when they could have it ſo, the Superintendant of the neighbouring Diſtrict was to preſide at his Inauguration

His Office was, to perform the Miniſterial Function in a certain Cure; to breed up a Catechiſt at the publick Expence, to perform the Work of the Miniſtry in his Abſence, when viſiting the Churches, or attending Synods. He was to appoint Miniſters where it was neceſſary in his Diſtrict. He was once a Year at leaſt, with one or two Elders or Deacons, to viſit the Miniſters and People in his Diſtrict, and to take Care that no Falſe or Heretical Doctrine was preached among them. He was to attend when call'd to the Synods of other Diſtricts, at the publick Charge. He was, at ſtated Times, to call Synods in his own Diſtrict for neceſſary Cauſes, and to direct them in their Proceedings. He was to determine Differences among Brethren in the Conſiſtory, and to reconcile them; but with a Salvo to the Laws of the Country. He was to examine and to take Care of Catechiſts, and young Men that were fit for the Miniſtry. He was to receive Letters from other Churches, &c. directed to thoſe of his Dioceſe; and in difficult Caſes, was to return an Anſwer, by the Advice of the Miniſters and Elders, and the reſt of the Brethren. His Office was to la[ſt] ..m Synod to Synod, and to be continu'd, or diſcharg'd, or ſucceeded by another, as they ſhould determine.

The Miniſters were not to enter upon that Office but when ordain'd, and ſent by the Superintendant and Miniſters of the Diſtrict; nor were they to leave their Charge, without the Conſent of the Synod, and their Patrons. No Patron, by his private Authority, was to receive or diſcharge a Miniſter, but was to propoſe it to the Conſiſtory of Elders; and none were to publiſh Books in Writing or Print, without Conſent of the Synod.

The Elders, whom they call'd Secular, were for moſt part Perſons of Quality, and were choſen two or three in a Diſtrict by the free Suffrage of all the Miniſters and Patrons, and afterwards inaugurated by the Superintendant and ſome Miniſters. The Synod and Church charg'd them upon their Conſcience, That they ſhould carefully look after the Miniſters, that they preach'd orthodoxly, faithfully, and diligently; That they liv'd piouſly and modeſtly; That if any of them were guilty of Error or Scandal, they ſhould admoniſh them; and in caſe of enormous Crimes, were to ſuſpend them from the Miniſtry, with the Conſent

Digitized by Google

of the Superintendant, till the next Synod. They were likewise to observe the same Method towards every one of the Brethren that was guilty of any Fault, according to the Rules of their Ecclesiastical Discipline. They were to attend at Synods, and to join with the Superintendant in visiting Churches. They were likewise to take Care, by diligent Admonitions, That the Revenues of the Church should be restored; That the Ministers should have a convenient Maintenance and Dwelling, and to defend him from Injury and Oppression. They were likewise to see the Acts of Synods put in Execution, to accommodate Differences among the Brethren, and to continue in Office from one Synod to another, and be discharged or continued, as the Synod thought fit. The Synods were of two Sorts; one of them, call'd a Particular Synod, was held four times a Year; and that call'd the Synod of the District, once a Year. At several of these Synods, we find many of the great Officers of the Crown, and Senators of the Kingdom, attended as Elders.

The Description of the Country.

THE Soil is generally fat and arable, and in few Places barren or sandy. They have many Woods and Forrests, but none so large as to make any considerable Part of the Country uninhabitable. Their Orchards and Gardens are so well stock'd with Fruit, that they export great Quantities to neighbouring Countries, as they do also Saffron. *La Forrest* says, their Grapes do not come to Maturity, which is a Mistake; for they might have enough of Wine for their own Use, stronger than that of *Moravia*, and equal in Taste to that of *Austria*, were the Inhabitants industrious; but it does not keep so long; therefore they buy much from their Neighbours at a reasonable Price. They have abundance of good Meadows and Pasture, and Cattle, especially Horses, of more than ordinary Courage and Bulk. Their Hop-Gardens produce more plentifully than in many other Countries; and their White and Brown Beer is so much valued, that 'tis exported into other Parts of the Empire. They have some Salt-Pits, but the Product not answering the Charge, they are supplied from *Misnia* and other Places. They have rich Mines of Silver, Copper, Tin, Iron, Lead, Sulphur, Nitre, *&c.* and make great Quantities of Glass and Allum, Carbuncles, Amethysts, Jasper, Sapphire. And other Precious Stones are found in their Mines and other Places; of which *Anselm Boetius* has given an Account, call'd, *Historia Lapidum & Gemmarum Bohemiæ*. *La Forrest* says, tho' the Air of this Country be very cold, yet in some Places 'tis so bad as to occasion contagious Distempers. His Character of the Inhabitants is, That they are large, well made, subtle, and courageous, true to their Word, but much addicted to Gluttony, Drunkenness, and Robbery; which, tho' it may be true of many, must not be charged on them in general, being inconsistent with his former Part of their Character.

Their Language is a Dialect of the ancient *Sclavonick*, which was so copious and sweet, that their old Law-givers commanded its true Orthography and Pronunciation to be kept up; but now most People of Fashion speak the *High-Dutch*, with which the Country People have mix'd their own Language.

Their chief Towns are,

1. *Prague*, their Metropolis, pleasantly situated on the great River *Muldaw*, in a fruitful Country, encompassed with stately Courts, and pleasant Palaces, as if it were in the middle of an Amphitheatre. The ancient Name of it, before the *Bohemians* settled here, is not certainly known; but they call'd it *Boiobeim*, as being their Capital. It had the modern Name from the *Sclavonians*. 'Tis divided into 3 Parts, called the *Old*, *New*, and *Little City*. *Æneas Sylvius* compares it to *Florence* in *Italy*; but Dr. *Brown* says, 'tis more large and populous. The Old Town, on the E. of the *Muldaw*, is very populous, and full of fair, but old-fashion'd Houses. Here stands the University, frequented by vast Numbers of Students, but not comparable to what it was in former Ages; for if we may believe *Lewis de May*, Counsellor to the Duke of *Wirtemberg*, and Author of the Dialogue concerning the State of the *German* Empire, there were above 40000 Students there

Digitized by Google

there in 1409, when *John Huss* was Rector: And when the Emperor *Charles* IV. would have retrench'd their Privileges, 24000 are said to have left it in one Week, and 16000 more soon after. Here are also several Colleges and Monasteries, one belonging to the Jesuits, which is very magnificent and stately. This is the only University in *Bohemia*, and still one of the most famous in *Europe*. Great Numbers of *Jews* inhabit this Part of the City, and give it the Name of the *Jews Town*. They are very rich, and trade in all Sorts of Commodities, especially in Jewels, and other Precious Stones, found in the *Bohemian* Mines. The Doctor says, he bought some *Bohemian* Topazes from them, very well cut, at 7 or 8 Crowns a-piece. He takes Notice, That the *Bohemians* do still keep Silver Medals, in Remembrance of those great Men, *John Huss* and *Jerome* of *Prague*. Others observe, That on one of *Huss*'s Medals, there is engraven his Prophecy at the Stake, in these Words; *Centum revolutis Annis Deo respondebitis & mihi*; *i. e.* 100 Years hence, ye shall answer for this to God and me; which was reckoned to be fulfilled upon the Church of *Rome* by *Luther*'s Reformation. *Æneas Sylvius*, afterwards Pope *Pius* II. says, That *Huss* was elder, and of greater Authority, but *Jerome* more learned and eloquent; That they sac'd Death with unparallel'd Constancy, beyond any of the ancient Philosophers, and sung Hymns in the midst of the Flames.

The New Town was formerly separated from the Old by a Wall, but now only by a Ditch, into which they can let the River at Pleasure. Here are the Ruins of the ancient Palace of their Kings, the Walls of which are so cemented, that they can scarce be demolished by any Engine. The Jesuits have built a College here, which much exceeds what they had in the Old Town. Dr. *Brown* says, this Town is of a very large Extent, and that they were building a Citadel and some Bastions for the Defence of it. *Monconys* says, the Jesuits College and Church is of excellent Architecture; and over the Gate, there are 13 Statues of Men as large as the Life, of a Stone which resembles Brass.

The Lesser Town lies on the W. of the *Muldaw*, and much exceeds the Old in Pleasantness and Building. 'Tis joined to the Old Town by a Bridge of 16 Arches, being in all 1700 Foot long, and 35 broad, with two high Gates, under two large Towers at each End. Part of this Town is built on a rising Ground, at the Top of which stands *Upper Prague*, where the Emperor has a Summer-House, and a very magnificent Palace, where he keeps his Court when he comes to *Prague*. Here stands also the Cathedral of *St. Veit*, which has many ancient Monuments of great Persons. Here are likewise most of the Houses of the Nobility; among which, the Palace of *Colorado* and its Gardens excel for Neatness, but are not very large. The Palace of Count *Wallenstein*, afterwards Duke of *Fridland*, but cut off for his Treason when General of the Emperor's Army, is a very magnificent Structure, above 100 Houses being pulled down to make room for it. The Hall is very lofty and spacious, and the Garden exceeding beautiful; on one Side of which, there's the Place where they us'd to manage his Horses, with a noble Fish Pond: On the other Side, his Aviary, beautified with Trees, and a Garden, after the Model of that of Prince *Doria* at *Genoa*. The most surprising Thing, is his large Stable for 36 Horses, of fine Architecture, with a Marble Pillar betwixt each Horse, a Rack of Steel and a Marble Manger for each of them; and over their Head, the Picture of every Horse, as large as the Life, and his Name under it. In the Town-House, there is a famous Clock with several Motions, like that of St. *John* at *Lyons*; and in the Market-place, there is a great Stone Column, with a Statue of the Virgin on the Top of gilt Brass, and 4 Angels at the Corners, holding 4 Devils in Chains. Near it, there is a great Fountain with 12 Fronts, but ruinous; the Bason is of red Marble, which resembles Porphyry at a distance: The 12 Signs of the Zodiac are engraven round it, and in the middle there's a Figure on a Pedestal. *Monconys* says, *Prague* is about as large as *Lyons*; That the Women of Quality dress much after the *French* Mode: The other Women of the better Sort wear Furr'd Caps, like the *Grecian* Women, long Cloaks with large Necks, some of them of Sattin lin'd with Taffata, and Petticoats of the same, but most,

Digitized by Google

ſhort, becauſe the Streets are dirty. The *Jewiſh* Women have a diſtinct Habit; the Shops are very ill furniſh'd, and the Town looks poor. In the Palace, he ſays, there's a multitude of Apartments, with a large Hall for Comedies, ſupported in the middle by Columns, plaiſter'd in Imitation of Marble, with two long Galleries, and another great Hall, beſides ſeveral Cloſets full of Pictures by the beſt Maſters; and adjoining to it, there's a large Stable, where are 60 fine Led-Horſes, belonging to the Burgrave of the City, who is the Governor of the Kingdom. The Jeſuits College in the Old Town near the Bridge was founded by the Emperor *Ferdinand*, for 100 of that Order; from the Belfrey of which, there is the beſt View of the City.

Bandrand ſays, This Town was taken ſeveral times during the Civil Wars of *Germany*; and Dr. *Brown* ſays, That the Leſſer Town was ſurpris'd by the *Swedes*, who carried off from it an incredible Booty. It was formerly an Imperial Town, but is now ſubject to the Emperor as King of *Bohemia*. The Caſtle on the Hill above it is very ſtrong. The Emperor's Deputies were thrown out of its Windows by the enraged States of the Kingdom, whom they had deprived of their Privileges, and received but little Hurt, tho' they fell very high: In Remembrance of which, there is a Pyramid erected on the Place.

On the white Hill near this City, the 8th of *November*, 1620 was fought the famous Battle betwixt *Maximilian* Duke of *Bavaria*, and *Frederick* V. Elector *Palatine*, formerly mention'd, wherein the Elector being defeated, loſt the Kingdom of *Bohemia*, and his own Electorate: After which, this City ſuffer'd much, and many *Bohemian* Proteſtants of Quality, who took Part with him, were executed, and Thouſands of Families left the Country. This City lies in Long. 33. 17. Lat. 50. 7. about 45 Miles S. E. from the Frontiers of *Saxony*, about 63 N. W. from the Frontiers of *Sileſia*, near 80 N. from the Frontiers of *Auſtria*, and about 130 Miles N. W. from *Vienna*.

2. *Egra*, on a River of the ſame Name, on the Borders of the *Palatinate*, about 77 Miles W. from *Prague*. The *Bohemians* call it *Schebbe*. *Frederick* I. made it an Imperial Town in 1179, for their Faithfulneſs to him againſt the Duke of *Bavaria*. 'Tis fortified with a double, and in ſome Parts with a treble Wall, and a very ſtrong Caſtle. The Market-place is encompaſs'd with fair Buildings, and has fine Churches. Here the Emperor *Frederick* II.'s treacherous General, Count *Wallenſtein*, was kill'd in 1634. This Town is Capital of its Circle, and formerly belong'd to the *Upper Palatinate*. About 2 Miles from the Town, there is a Fountain, whoſe Water is very cool and clear, but ſalt and briniſh, famous for Diſtempers in the Eyes, Ears, or other Parts of the Head, and many other Cures by Purging.

3. *Budweiſs*, or *Budweiſs*, near the *Moldaw*, 62 Miles S. from *Prague*. 'Tis one of the ſtrongeſt Towns in *Bohemia*, Capital of its Circle, a fair large Town, continu'd faithful to the Houſe of *Auſtria* during the *Bohemian* Troubles, and lies about 17 Miles N. from *Auſtria*.

4. *Kuttenberg*, or *Hora*, about 30 Miles E. from *Prague*, according to *Sanſon*, a conſiderable Town, chief of its Circle, and noted for the Silver and Copper Mines in its Neighbourhood. Dr. *Brown* ſays, 'tis but 12 Miles from *Prague*. It lies near the *Elb*, and has 30 ſeveral Mines in the Neighbourhood, which were diſcovered by a Monk, who found a Silver Tree there. The firſt is that call'd the *Cuttenhill*, which is 19 Fathom deep. The chief Vein is about a Foot broad, and contains both Silver and Copper: Of the firſt, 100 Weight yields about an Ounce; and of the latter, 8, 9, 10, or more; and 100 of ſome Ore, he ſays, yields 8 or 9 Ounces of Silver; and when they meet with a blue Earth, they take it for a Sign of good Ore.

5. *Czaſlaw*, the Chief of its Circle, about 37 Miles S. E. from *Prague*. Here the famous *Ziſca* was buried.

6. *Janikaw*, a Town famous for the Defeat of the Imperialiſts by the *Swedes* in 1643. The former had the Advantage at firſt; but loſt it by falling a plundering too ſoon. It lies about 12 Miles S. E. from *Czaſlaw*, and 48 from *Prague*.

7. *Koningratz*, about 45 Miles N. E. from *Prague*, on the *Elb*, a Biſhop's See, Suffragan to *Prague*, erected in 1664. 'Tis the Chief of its Circle, and a pretty large Town. 'Tis called in Latin Authors, *Gradium-Regina*, or *Regina Graditium*.

8. *Glatz*,

8. *Glatz*, about 80 Miles N. E from *Prague*. We have mention'd the Town already in the Deſcription of *Sileſia*, of which ſome Authors make it a Part. We ſhall only add, That 'tis Capital of its Circle, is defended by a good Caſtle; and the Country to which it gives Name, contains 9 great Towns, and 100 Villages.

9. *Elnebogen*, a ſtrong Town on the River *Eger*, 5 Miles N. E. from *Egra*, and 65 W. from *Prague*, near the Frontiers of *Miſnia*, and reckon'd one of the Keys of *Bohemia*, which opens their Paſſage into the Empire. About 5 Miles E. from this Town lies *Carolsbad*, noted for its Baths and Medicinal Waters.

10. *Pilſen*, about 40 Miles S. W. from *Prague*, a large, ſtrong, and well fortified City, on the Conflux of two ſmall Rivers. It is the Chief of its Circle, was beſieged in vain by the *Huſſites* in the 15th Century; but was taken by Count *Mansfeld* in the Civil Wars of *Germany*, and was the laſt that yielded to the Imperialiſts. Some reckon it the ſecond Town of the Kingdom. The Market-place is ſpacious, has 4 or 5 Streets that center in it, the Houſes are well built, and they have two fine Churches. The Country belonging to it is one of the moſt fruitful in *Bohemia*.

11. *Tabor*, on the River *Luſnick*. It was built and fortified by the *Huſſites*, lies 42 Miles E. from *Prague*, is very ſtrong, by its Situation on the Conflux of two Rivers; but is now only a ſmall Town with a Caſtle.

12. *Kaurſin*, or *Kartſtin*, about 14 Miles S W. from *Prague*, and the Chief of its Circle.

13. *Bohimiſchbroda*, a ſmall Town, ruin'd by the Civil Wars of *Germany*, 20 Miles S. E. from *Prague*.

14. *Leitomeritz*, on the *Elb*, about 31 Miles N. W. from *Prague*, a very rich Town, erected into a Biſhoprick, Suffragan of *Prague* in 1655.

15. *Satz*, or *Zinteck*, on the *Eger*, 37 Miles N. W. from *Prague*, a ſtrong and populous Town, and Chief of its Circle.

16. *Colen*, a ſmall City on the ſame River, noted for its excellent Beer.

17. *Carlſtein*, a Fortreſs, ſo call'd from the Emperor *Charles* IV. who founded it. Here the *Regalia* of the Kingdom are kept. It lies about 8 Miles S. W. from *Prague*, and ſeems to be the ſame with *Kaurſin*, formerly mention'd, the Chief of its Circle; ſo that *La Forreſt* is in a Miſtake to make them two.

Other Towns in this Country are, *Eutomiſtel*, a Biſhop's See; *Bechyn*, on the *Lauſnick*, a very ancient Town; *Chrudin*, near the Fountains of the *Elb*; *Boleſlaw* the Ancient, on the *Gizer*; *Schlany*, *Rakonick*, *Berown*, *Sedlezany*, *Piſeck*; all Chief of their Circles, but noted for little elſe.

The Circle of AUSTRIA.

FOR the Countries included in this Circle, we refer to the *Matricula*, and begin with

The Arch-Dutchy of AUSTRIA.

THE *Germans* call it *Oeſtereich*, and Latin Authors *Auſtria* or *Auſtraſia*, ſo called by the *Francenians* and *Bavarians*, becauſe of its Eaſterly Situation from them. It was anciently Part of *Pannonia Superior*, and ſuppoſed to have been inhabited by the *Teuchatyria* and *Rathea* of *Ptolomy*; and hence the *Poles* and *Bohemians* call them ſtill *Rakauſſ*. *Lazius* ſuppoſes the *Boii* liv'd here before they were drove out by the *Marcomanni*. It appears by good Authors to have been Part of the large Dukedom of *Boiaria* or *Bavaria*, and was firſt made a Marquiſate before it came to be a Dutchy. 'Tis divided into *Upper* and *Lower* by the River *Ens*. It has *Hungary* on the E. *Bavaria* on the W. *Bohemia* on the N. and *Stiria* on the S. 'Tis in Length from E. to W. according to *Moll's* Map, 172 Miles; and in Breadth from N. to S. about 65.

The Country abounds with all Neceſſaries for Human Life, as will appear more at large in the Deſcription of its Cities and Towns. The *Danube*, *Erloph*, *Traſen*, *Tys*, *Melck*, *March*, *Teya*, *Kampff*, *Ens*, and other Rivers, afford them Plenty of Fiſh; and their Fields abound with Corn and Saffron They have Plenty of Wine for Conſumption and Export, and are ſupplied with other rich Wines from *Hungary* and *Italy*; ſo that there are 30 ſeveral Sorts ſold at *Vienna*

Hoſtats

Digitized by Google

Halſtadt furniſhes them with Salt, which is made by letting in Water into the hollow Parts of a Mountain, where it drinks in the Salt of the Earth, and is afterwards let out and boil'd. They have not ſuch Plenty of Black Cattle as of others, and therefore are ſupplied with great Part of their Beef from *Hungary*. At *Vienna*, they have a peculiar ſort of Bird, called *Haſenhendal*, or *Gallina Coriloruin*, which they reckon a choice Dainty. The *Danube* and other Rivers have two Sorts of Fiſh, unknown to us, one called *Scheiden*, and, by *Geſner Siluruſ*, larger than a Pike or Salmon; the other called *Hauſont*, much larger than the former, ſome of 'em being 20 Foot long. 'Tis thought to be the *Anacetus* of *Ælian*, who gives an Account of fiſhing for them in the *Iſter*, is a griſly Fiſh, with a hollow Nervous Chord down the Back, which they dry and make into Whips. The Fiſhermen blow a Trumpet or Horn, the Noiſe of which brings great Shoals of 'em about their Boats. The Inhabitants having ſuch Plenty of all Neceſſaries, are more brisk and jovial than their Neighbours, who from hence call them Ranters and Flaggoneers. Their unhealthful Air makes it neceſſary for them to take a larger Glaſs than ordinary; for in *Lower Auſtria* eſpecially, except brisk Winds carry off the Vapours, they are much troubled with Agues. This Country abounds ſo with People of Quality, becauſe of the Emperor's Court at *Vienna*, that ſome have reckon'd in it 100 Families of Counts and Barons, and 180 Knights, who had Votes in their Diet. *Cluverius* obſerves, That this is the only Arch-Dutchy in *Europe*.

The Family of Auſtria.

SOme *German* Heralds derive it in a direct Line from *Julius Cæſar*: Others from one of the *Roman Scipio's*. *Seifrid*, an *Auſtrian* Abbot, publiſh'd a Folio Book in 1613, wherein he pretends to derive them from the *Anici*, *Probi*, *Colybri*, and other *Roman* Families which came from *Troy* with *Æneas*. *Aventinus* derives them from *Oſirus* King of *Egypt*. *Trithemius*, and moſt ancient Authors of Credit, bring them from *Sigebert* King of *France*; and this has been approved by *Lazius* and *Renſnerus*, two learned modern Writers; but *Guillimannus*, in a Book printed in 1605, dedicated to the Emperor *Rudolph* II. derives them from *Vindoniſſa*, an ancient City in *Switzerland*, of which they were Lords, afterwards made Counts of *Altenburg* and *Hapsburg*. This *Vindoniſſa* is mention'd by *Tacitus*; and other Hiſtorians ſay, it was beſieged in the Reigns of *Dioclesian* and *Maximilian*. *Rhenanus* fancies, the true *German* Name of it was *Windiſh*.

The *Atlas Hiſtorique* derives them in like manner from *Kanſelin* Count of *Altenburg*, Son to *Gontram*, ſirnam'd *The Rich*, who liv'd in the latter End of the 9th Century. He was ſucceeded by *Radebotus*; he by *Wernier* Count of *Altenburg* and *Vindoniſſa*, and he by *Otho* Count of *Hapsburg*, from whom *Rudolph* Count of *Hapsburg*, who was elected Emperor in 1273, was the 5th. The Emperor *Albert* I. ſucceeded him. *Albert* II. Duke of *Auſtria*, ſucceeded him, but not as Emperor. *Leopold* I. ſirnam'd *The Honour of War*, and *The Glory of Knights*, was his Son. *Ernest*, the firſt of the Name, Duke of *Auſtria*, ſucceeded him. *Frederick*, ſirnam'd *The Pacifick*, his Son, was the firſt who had the Title of Arch-Duke, which the *Atlas* ſays, ſignifies Duke of the Dukes of *Germany*. He died in 1493, and was ſucceeded by his Son *Maximilian*, who married *Mary* of *Burgundy*, the Heireſs of that Country, by whom it came to the Family of *Auſtria* in 1519. His Son Arch-Duke *Philip* married *Jane* of *Arragon*, Daughter to *Ferdinand* II. and *Iſabel* Queen of *Caſtile*, from whom proceeded the preſent Imperial Family, and the Branch of *Spain*, whoſe Male-Iſſue fail'd in the laſt King *Charles* II. The Founder of the *Spaniſh* Branch was *Charles* V. and the Founder of the Imperial Branch was his Brother *Ferdinand*, who married *Anne* Queen of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, which brought thoſe Countries to that Family. From *Charles* V. by his Daughter *Margaret*, came the preſent Family of *Parma*. From Arch-Duke *Philip*, came the Arch-Dukes of *Inſpruck*, which was united to the Imperial Family by the Marriage of the Heireſs to the late Emperor *Leopold*. From a Daughter of *Charles* Arch-Duke of *Auſtria*, comes likewiſe the preſent Family of *Tuſcany*; and from *Charles* V.'s Branch, comes alſo *Philip* Duke

Digitized by Google

Duke of *Anjou*, at preſent poſſeſſed of the Crown of *Spain*. The *Atlas* likewiſe derives the Kings of *France*, the ancient Kings of *Arragon* and *Caſtile*, and the Kings of *Portugal*, from the Family of *Hapsburg*; but he is not diſtinct as to the Manner how.

The *Atlas Hiſtorique* has alſo a large Tree, by which he ſhews, That moſt of the Sovereigns of *Europe* are iſſued from the Emperor *Rodolph*, *viz.* the Emperor, the King of *Spain*, the King of *France*, the Queen of *England* by the Family of *Denmark*, a Daughter of which was married to *James* I. the K. of *Denmark*, the K. of *Sweden*, the ancient Kings of *Portugal*, the King of *Pruſſia*, with all the Branches of the Family of *Brandenburg*; the Duke of *Savoy*, the Elector of *Hanover*, with the Branches of the Houſe of *Brunſwick*; the Elector of *Saxony*, with all the Branches of that Family; the Elector *Palatine*, the Elector of *Bavaria*, the Duke of *Lorrain*, the Landgrave of *Heſſe*, with the Branches of that Family; the Duke of *Wirtemberg*, with the Branches of that Family; the Duke of *Holſtein*, and his Branches; the Duke of *Mecklenburg*, the Prince of *Baden*, with the Branches of that Family; the Prince of *Anhalt*, the Counts of *Ottingen* and *Schwartzburg*, and the ancient Kings of *Bohemia* and *Hungary*.

He reckons in all 21 Illuſtrious Families which proceeded from *Rodolph*; among whom, there have been 19 Emperors, 46 Kings, 31 Electors and Electreſſes, and 190 Dukes, Dutcheſſes, Princes, Princeſſes, Counts and Counteſſes, beſides more that might be added.

He has alſo a Tree which ſhews, That there are iſſued from *Ferdinand* I. beſides the Emperor and King of *Spain*, the Queen of *Great Britain*, by *Mary* of *Medicis*, Queen to *Henry* IV. of *France*; the King of *France*, the King of *Portugal*, the King of *Sweden*, the King of *Denmark*, the King of *Poland*, the King of *Pruſſia*, the Electors of *Bavaria*, *Saxony*, and *Palatine*, the Dukes of *Savoy*, *Florence*, and *Lorrain*, the Landgraves of *Heſſe*, the Dukes of *Mantua*, *Parma*, and *Courland*, and the Princes of *Baden*.

He has alſo a Genealogical Tree of the Imperial Families, and Kings of *Spain*, that have iſſued from the Houſe of *Auſtria* ſince *Charlemagne*; among whom, he reckons the Emperors of the Family of *Saxony*, thoſe of the Family of *Franconia*, thoſe of the Family of *Luxemburg*, thoſe of the Family of *Swabia*, and thoſe of the preſent Imperial and *Spaniſh* Families. By all which together it appears, That the Houſe of *Auſtria* is now the moſt Illuſtrious Family in the World.

The Privileges which they have receiv'd from the many Emperors of that Family, are very many and great, as Arch-Dukes of *Auſtria*; for as ſuch they can create Gentlemen, Barons, and Counts, throughout the whole Empire. The Emperor cannot take from them the Lands they are poſſeſſed of. The Arch-Duke is the firſt and moſt intimate Privy-Counſellor of the Empire, and his Principality not ſubject to Contributions. When he receives the Lands he holds in Fee, he pays nothing for the Inveſtiture, wears a Royal Habit, and an Arch-Duke's Cap, and is exempted from the Juriſdiction of the Empire. In Aſſemblies and Diets, they take Place on the Emperor's Right Hand, after the Electors, and before the Eccleſiaſtical Princes; and if they be challeng'd to a Duel, they may ſend a Champion, thô that Privilege be deny'd their Adverſary; and if all their Male-Iſſues ſhould fail, the eldeſt Daughter inherits all their Eſtates, Titles and Privileges, and brings them to her Husband.

The ancient Arms of the Family were in a *Field Azure*, 5 *Larks Or*; but upon *Leopold* of *Auſtria*'s gallant Behaviour at the Siege of *Ptolemais*, where he was cover'd all over with Blood, and nothing appear'd with any White but his Belt, the then Emperor gave him a new Coat, being a *Field-Gules*, with a *Feſs-Argent*, which they bear to this Day. Their other Arms we have accounted for under the Head of, *The Government of Germany*, Page 498.

The chief Cities and Towns of Auſtria.

1. VIenna, anciently called *Vendum*, *Vindomina*, and *Vindobona*; and becauſe of a *Roman* Colony there under their General *Fabianus*, was likewiſe called *Colonia Fabiana*; and here their *Claſſis Iſtrica*, or Navy on the *Danube*, lay, under Protection of the 10th *German* Legion. Some fancy, that 'tis *Ptolomy*'s *Juliobona*. The Curious may

 See

ſee more of this in *Cluverius's Vindelicia & Noricum*, join'd to his *Germania Antiqua*, Page 22. By which it appears, that it was then one of the chief Towns in *Pannonia*. The preſent Name *Wien*, as 'tis call'd by the *Germans*, ſeems moſt probably to come from a ſmall River of that Name, which falls there into the *Danube*. 'Tis ſituate on the S. Side of that great River, and was anciently famous for the Actions of ſeveral *Roman* Emperors againſt the *Marcomanni* and *Quadi*, particularly for the Wars of *Marcus Aurelius Antoninus Philoſophus*, who defeated thoſe Nations, and, according to *Aurelius Victor*, died here. Whether 'twas afterwards totally deſtroy'd, we know not. *Ptolomy* is the firſt who mentions it; but there is no certain Account when 'twas founded. In *Tiberius's* Time, it ſeems not to have been very remarkable, becauſe *Velleius Paterculus* mentions *Carnuntum* or *Carnuntum* to be the next Town of Note in Poſſeſſion of the *Romans* to the Kingdom of *Noricum*; ſo that it ſeems firſt to have been made conſiderable and enlarged by being the Station of the 10th *German* Legion, as *Cellarius* thinks. We hear little more of it till *Henry* I. of *Auſtria* is ſaid to have rebuilt it in 1158; and it was afterwards beautified and wall'd in 1192, by the Ranſom which the Marquis of *Auſtria* obliged *Richard* I. of *England* to pay, when he took him Priſoner in his Return from the *Holy Land*, becauſe he took down the *Auſtrian* Banner at *Joppa*, and threw it into a Houſe of Office. The Ranſom he forc'd from King *Richard*, was 140000 Marks of Silver, in *Cologne* Weight, a prodigious Sum in thoſe Days, for which the *Engliſh* were oblig'd to ſell their Church-Plate; and the Marquis of *Auſtria* not only fortified and enlarged *Vienna* with it, but wall'd the Towns of *Ens*, *Haimburg*, and *Newſtat*. The City lies in Long. 35. 30. Lat. 48. 25. about 130 Miles S. E. from *Prague*, and about 48 W. from *Preſburg*, on a Branch of the *Danube*, which here divides it ſelf into ſeveral Streams; and the River *Wien* ſeparates the Town from ſome of the Suburbs. The City is fortified after the modern Way, with 10 Baſtions towards the Land, and a very deep Ditch, into which they can let the River; but generally keep it dry, for fear of incommoding their Cellars. It has two other Baſtions towards the River. Taking in the Suburbs, 'tis of a very large Circuit; but the City it ſelf is not above 3 *Engliſh* Miles round. 'Tis very populous; and here we may ſee ſome of moſt Nations in *Europe* in their proper Habits, which is very entertaining to Strangers. *Æneas Sylvius*, above 200 Years ago, ſays, This City abounded with Palaces fit for Kings, and had Churches that might vie with thoſe of *Italy*; a Character which it much better deſerves now. Moſt of their Houſes are well built of Stone, 6 Stories high, with flat Roofs, after the *Italian* Mode; and thoſe which are otherwiſe, are cover'd with Pieces of Timber ſhap'd like Tiles. The Streets are of a midling Size, and many of their Houſes have 4 Cellars one under another, with an open Space in the middle of each arch'd Roof for a Communication of Air; and from the lowermoſt, there's a Tube to the top to let in Air from the Streets. The Cathedral of St. *Stephen's* is a fair ſtately Fabrick, but ſomething dark, becauſe of the painted Glaſs in the Windows. It was founded by *Henry* I. of *Auſtria*, and finiſhed by *Henry* II. The Steeple and Spire is one of the fineſt in *Germany*, and much ſtronger than that of *Straſburg*, tho' not ſo ſightly: Under the Croſs on the top, there was a Star and Half-Moon ſet up on this Occaſion. When *Soliman the Magnificent* beſieged the Town, he deſign'd to batter down the Steeple; but was diſſwaded by his Baſſa's, who flatter'd him, that he would ſoon be Maſter of it, and it were Pity to deſtroy ſo noble a Pyramid. Upon this he ſent Word to the Citizens, That if they would ſet a Half-Moon and Star, the *Turkiſh* Arms, on the top of it, he would ſpare it, which was accordingly done; but being repulſed with great Loſs, though he attack'd them with 200000 Men, he was obliged to march off; but his Arms continued there till the *Turks* beſieg'd it again in 1683. After which, becauſe they fir'd at the Steeple, the Arms were taken down. This Steeple is 480 Foot high; and in the Tower, there hangs a Caſe of Wooden Hammers, with which they call the People to Church from *Good-Friday* till *Eaſter-Day*, becauſe they will not ſuffer the Bells to ring out during the Time that our Saviour lay in the Grave. At the Entrance into this Church, there's a Stone plac'd in the

Digitized by Google

the Wall, which they fancy to be one of thoſe with which St. *Stephen* was ſton'd to Death: It looks like a Pebble, and is worn very ſmooth by the ſuperſtitious People, who think they merit by touching it as they go in and out. In this Church, there are many ſumptuous Monuments of Princes, and other great Perſons. Dr. *Brown* ſays, the Spire of this Steeple has the largeſt Crockets that ever he ſaw, being above a Yard long, and adorn'd with Foliage-work. From the Steeple, there is a noble Proſpect of the City, of the adjacent Country, and of the Courſe of the *Danube* through moſt of *Auſtria* to near *Presburg* in *Hungary*. He adds, there are many other noble Churches and rich Convents in this City. The Convent of the *Dominicans* is a very fair Structure. The Church of the *Auſtin* Fryars is very large, and has a Chapel in the middle, reſembling that called the *Virgin's-Houſe* in *Loretto* in *Italy*; upon the top of which, there are many Colours taken from the *Turks* and *Tartars*. The Jeſuits have ſeveral very large and ſpacious Colleges. The Front of that which faces the Piazza, has a Column of Copper in the Center of the Market-place before it, on a Pedeſtal of White Stone, with a Statue of the Virgin on the top, and 4 Angels with Eſcutcheons round her; on which there are Inſcriptions, dedicating *Auſtria* to her Patronage. There is likewiſe a *Scots* Convent here, founded for the Reception of *Scots-men*, in their Pilgrimages to the *Holy Land*. St. *Colman*, one of their Country-men, (of the Blood Royal) was murther'd by the Peaſants near this City, where his Body is ſaid to have remain'd a long time uncorrupted, and to have worked many Miracles: Upon which Account he was reckon'd the Patron of *Auſtria*. It was afterwards carried to *Alba Regalis* in *Hungary*. The Church of St. *Peter* is much eſteemed for its Antiquity, being the oldeſt in the City, and built in the ſame Place where formerly ſtood the *Aula Flaviana*, dedicated to *Domitian*.

The Univerſity of *Vienna* is alſo very noble: It was founded by *Albert* III. of *Auſtria* above 300 Years ago, according to the Statutes of that of *Paris*; or, as ſome ſay, it was founded by the Emperor *Frederick* II. in 1237, long before that, when he endow'd it with great Revenues and Privileges; being afterwards enlarged by *Ottocar* King of *Bohemia*, and compleated by *Albert*, who diſtinguiſh'd the Students into 4 Claſſes or Nations, each of which, beſides the general Conſtitutions, had their peculiar Rules and Privileges. The firſt Claſs is the *Auſtrian*, which takes in the Students of *Auſtria*, *Italy*, and other Provinces beyond the Mountains. The 2d is that of the *Rhine*, which takes in the W. of the Empire, *France*, *Spain*, and the *Netherlands*. The 3d is that of the *Hungarians*, which takes in *Hungary*, *Bohemia*, and all the reſt of the Countries who ſpeak *Sclavonick*, with other Parts of *Germany*. The 4th is that of the *Saxons*, taking in *Saxony*, the Northern Kingdoms, the N. Parts of *Germany*, *Great Britain*, and *Ireland*. Hence it comes, that there are Students of many Nations here, who ſometimes quarrel about their own Diviſions; but are ſure to unite upon any Difference with the Citizens or *Jews*. Dr. *Brown* ſays, they had but little Knowledge when he was there of Natural and Experimental Philoſophy, tho they were enquiring after it; but they were well vers'd in Languages, Hiſtory, Antiquity, and Anatomy, having a Theatre capable of 100 Perſons to ſee the Operations of the latter. The Emperor *Ferdinand* II. in 1622, made an Order, That none ſhould be Profeſſors of Divinity and Philoſophy there but the Jeſuits; yet ſometimes at Diſputations, thoſe of other Orders are allow'd the Chair; but the Civilians and Phyſicians were govern'd by a Rector of their own chuſing, and admit *Lutherans* and *Calviniſts*, which are excluded from the other. The Rector, with the other Maſters of the Univerſity, have Power of Life and Death over their own Members.

No Religion is here publickly tolerated but the *Romiſh*, and therefore the Proteſtants go as far as *Presburg*, about 40 *Engliſh* Miles from hence, to receive the Sacrament. This would be an inſupportable Trouble, had they not the Convenience of the *Danube*, and of Coaches, which daily paſs betwixt *Vienna* and *Presburg*. *Maximilian* II. allow'd the *Lutherans* the Exerciſe of Religion in the Church of the *Holy Croſs*; but that Privilege was afterwards taken from them by *Rodolph* II. The Emperor *Matthias*, not long after, gave them Leave to meet at

Digitized by Google

Hernals, a little more than an *English* Mile from *Vienna*, and allow'd their Miniſters to come into the City, and there to marry, baptize, and viſit the Sick. This Toleration gave them an Opportunity of promoting their Principles, and of gaining daily great Numbers of Proſelytes. But *Ferdinand* II. returning from the Battle of *Prague*, baniſh'd their Teachers out of *Vienna* and *Arnols*, committing Baron *Iwger*, their Grand Patron, cloſe Priſoner at *Lintz*; and not ceaſing, till he had taken away their Privileges of meeting in any Part of the *Lower Auſtria*.

Formerly the *Jews*, who ſwarm more in *Germany* than in any other Part of the Chriſtian World, had Freedom of Trade allow'd them in this City; but for many Years paſt have been exceedingly diſtaſted by the Citizens and Tradeſmen, who look'd upon them as Fellows that robb'd them of their Trafficks and Employments; and upon a Quarrel betwixt them and the Scholars, were wholly baniſh'd the Town. The Students having received an Affront from 'em, aſſaulted the *Judem-Statt*, or *Jews* Town, which is a Part of the Suburbs beyond the River, whither they were always forc'd to retire in the Night-time, thô permitted to traffick within the Walls in the Day, beat and wounded many of them, and threw ſeveral into the River; ſome of themſelves being alſo killed, and divers wounded. Upon this, a good Number of the *Jews*, who firſt occaſion'd the Uproar, were immediately baniſhed the Town; and not long after, the whole Nation of 'em prohibited from living not only at *Vienna*, but in any other Part of *Auſtria*. 'Tis hard to judge whether a Toleration or Excluſion of 'em conduc'd moſt to the publick Good of the Town; for thô they would moſt readily accommodate you with all manner of Neceſſaries, either upon Sale, or Exchange for other Commodities, yet the Magiſtrates of the City, and the Emperor's Miniſters of State, were uſually jealous of their holding a Correſpondence with the *Turks*, and betraying the Secrets they could learn to the *Ottoman* Miniſters.

The Imperial Palace is a noble Structure, but not anſwerable in Bulk to the Grandeur of its Maſter: It conſiſts chiefly of two Courts; in the outer, which is largeſt, the Guards and Courtiers are lodg'd; and in the inner, the Court it ſelf. Over the Gate of the Palace, there are the 5 Vowels, A, E, I, O, U, in Capitals over the Gate; to which ſome have given this Explanation, *Auſtria eſt imperare orbi univerſo*; *i. e.* 'Tis the Part of *Auſtria* to govern the World; but 'tis not certain that this was the Meaning of the Architect.

In the Palace, the Emperor has a Library, which, for the Number and Value of Books, is inferior to none in *Europe*. The worſt is, that the Receptacle is not ſuitable to ſo vaſt a Treaſure; for thô 'tis divided into 8 ſpacious Rooms, in which the Shelves ſtand ſo cloſe, that there is ſcarce an eaſy Paſſage left betwixt them, yet many lie upon the Ground.

The Manuſcripts have their peculiar Places diſtinct from the Printed Books, and are divided into 6 different Claſſes, *viz.* Theological, Juridical, Medicinal, Philoſophical, Hiſtorical, and Philological. The MSS. of *Hebrew*, *Syriac*, *Arabic*, *Turkiſh*, *Armenian*, *Æthiopic*, and *Chineſe* Books, are, without Compariſon, the beſt Collection that is to be found.

The choiceſt Books of which this Library is compoſed, (which has been collecting ever ſince the Time of *Maximilian* I.) are,

The famous Library of *Buda*, of *Matthias Corvinus*, Son to *Hunniades*.

The choice Library of *Wolfgangus Lazius*.

As alſo 3000 Books of *Johannes Sambucus*.

Augerius Busbequius made a conſiderable Addition to the reſt; and in his two *Turky* Embaſſies, bought a great many choice Greek MSS. at *Conſtantinople*, which are mark'd thus with his own Hand, *Aug. de Busbeck. emit. Conſtantinopoli.*

There was alſo a conſiderable Number added out of the Library of the learned *Johannes Cuſpinianus*, the Emperor's Library-Keeper: And the noted Libraries and Mathematical Inſtruments of *Tycho Brache*, *Kepler*, and *Gaſſendus*, were purchas'd for it.

But the greateſt Addition of all, was made by that noble Library of Count *Auger*, which conſiſting of 16000 Volumes, was purchas'd by *Ferdinand* III. Beſides which, the learned *Peter Lambecius*, the preſent Library-Keeper, Hiſtoriographer, and Counſellor of the Emperor, has brought hither the choiceſt Books out of the Library

Digitized by Google

brary of *Inſpruck*; and he himſelf is Maſter of a moſt excellent Library of his own, which will in Time be added to the Imperial Library. Dr. *Brown* ſays, he had it from his own Mouth, That there were then at leaſt 80000 Volumes in this Library, which are increas'd by the Acceſſion of other Books that are purchas'd ſince, eſpecially in the *Turkiſh* Dominions, where the Emperor keeping a conſtant Reſident, no Opportunity is let ſlip to buy up any good Greek MSS. in their Convents. Dr. *Brown* ſays, when he was at *Lariſſa* in *Theſſaly*, the Reſident, Seignior *de Caſa Nova*, was continually enquiring after Greek Books in their Monaſteries, the Emperor ſparing no Coſt to purchaſe them; and were it only for the Number of *German* Books, 'tis certain, that by the Right the Emperor has of having two Books of whatever is printed in *Germany*, this Library might ſoon increaſe to a vaſt Number.

The chief Things taken Notice of in this Library by Dr. *Brown*, are,

A Letter in the *Chineſe* and *Tartarian* Language from the Emperor of *China* to the Emperor *Leopold*, weaved in a very fine Roll.

Another Roll written in an unknown Character, but moſt reſembling the Greek.

A Book in the *Runick* Language.

A very fair MSS. of *Ptolomy*, the Maps colour'd.

A true Copy of *Livy*, the moſt ancient MSS. extant, 1000 Years old, in very large Letters, without Diſtinction of Words or Sentences, brought from the *Inſpruck* Library.

A very fair MSS. in Greek of *Dioſcorides*, 1100 Years old, in large Characters, without Diſtinction of Words or Accents; the Plants finely painted, with the Pictures of *Dioſcorides*, *Galen*, and ſome other noted Phyſicians.

Two Books of Geometrical Propoſitions demonſtrated, in the *Chineſe* Language, whereof one with Pictures.

An old Greek MSS. in great Letters, without Diſtinction of Words or Accents.

A Greek MSS. 1300 Years old, of the Book of *Geneſis*, without Stops or Accents. It contains 48 Draughts in Miniature or Water-Colours, relating to the Habits of the Ancients, to the Manner of their Feaſting, as their Poſtures at Meals, Attendance of Servants, and Muſick. Among other Things, the Execution of *Pharaoh*'s Baker is worth Obſervation, his Head being thruſt thrô a forked Piece of Wood, and his Hands ty'd behind him.

A Book of Painting in Miniature, by *Albert Durer*, and a Sphere with a Globe within it, carved and painted by the ſame Hand.

A Book of *Michael Angelo*, wherein, beſides many Rarities in Architecture, all the Paintings and Deſigns of the *Belvedere* are ſeen in Little.

A very fair Alcoran in *Arabic*, with the *Turkiſh* Explication interlin'd betwixt it.

A Bible in the *Coptic* and *Perſian* Languages.

Luther's Bible, with many Notes, written by his own Hand.

A fair Greek MSS. of the New Teſtament, written with Golden Letters upon Purple 1500 Years ago.

A Magical Glaſs of the Emperor *Rudolphus*, whereby to ſee Apparitions of Spirits.

Sixteen Thouſand Pieces of ancient *Greek*, *Roman*, and *Gothick* Medals and Coins, in Gold, Silver, and Copper. They pretend to have two Copper Coins of the Emperor *Marcus Otho*.

Dr. *Brown* gives the following Account of the Emperor's Repoſitory or Collection of Rarities.

The whole is divided into 24 Caſes or Cupboards.

The firſt contains many curious Veſſels, turn'd out of Ivory, Cups of Amber, Spoons and other Veſſels of Mother of Pearl, divers fine Works of Coral, a Galley of Ivory, and two Cups, one turn'd by the Emperor *Leopold*, and the other by *Ferdinand* III. ſeveral Cups of the Rhinoceros Horn.

In the 2d, an Elephant with a Caſtle, and many other Rarities of Workmanſhip on his Back; two fine Pillars, all of Ivory, with Variety of *Baſſi Relievo*, and other Varieties in Ivory; a Picture in Oil of *Ganymede*, by *Correggio*.

In the 3d, an old Man's Head in Oil, by *Albert. Durer*; vaſt Variety of Watches and

and Clock-work; a fine Centaur in Silver.

The 4th also contains Watches and Clocks; a Triumphant Chariot; a *Turk* of Quality with his Attendance; a Landskip and a Cupid by *Correggio*.

In the 5th, are divers curious Works of Filegrane, brought from *Spain* and the *Indies*; and a Bason of Agate finely wrought.

The 6th contains an excellent Collection of *Intaglia*, and old *Roman* Stones, of inestimable Value, for their Workmanship and Bigness; a large Agate, on which is wrought the Victory of *Augustus Cæsar* over the *Dalmatians* and *Pannonians*: It is 5 Inches long, and 4 broad, of a very high Value; besides several Heads and Figures cut in Onyxes, Shells, and Sardonyxes; and a Chain, with the Heads of the whole *Austrian* Family.

In the 7th, divers Pieces of Mother of Pearl, curiously wrought; the Head of *Maximilian* I. in Plaister-work, with a Lock of his own Hair, and the 12 *Cæsars* Heads; another Head excellently well done in Oil, by *Hans van Ach*.

In the 8th, a Vessel made of one Piece of Chrystal, of a Yard and half high; an Urn; several Hands, with several Chrystal Works.

The 9th has a very noble Ewer of Chrystal, and another noble Vessel; many curious Crosses, and other Varieties.

The 10th contains 5 rich Crowns; the Imperial Crown, adorn'd with Precious Jewels, and a large blue Sapphire on the top; a Model of the Crown wherewith the Emperors are crown'd, much exceeding in Value the Original; a Paragon Diamond, weighing 17¼ Carats; divers very large Rubies; a Scepter made of Unicorn's Horn, set with Precious Stone; a Locket made of very large Diamonds; a most magnificent Scepter, Globe, Cross, and Crown, valued at 200000 Crowns; an Opal as big as a Hand, as it came out of the Mine; with many other very fine Opals, and a very large Emerald.

In the 11th, a Golden Bason, us'd at the Baptism of the *Austrian* Family; divers Golden Scepters, Scimiters, Knives, and other Presents, from the *Ottoman* Court; three rich Dog-Collars, sent from *England*, with this Mark, ꝺC ꝺC; a great Piece of pure Gold, of the Bigness of a Hand, as it came out of the Mine; another Piece of Gold Ore, where you see the pure Gold shooting forth upon a white Stone; besides divers other Basons of Gold, and Vessels of Coral.

In the 12th, great store of Vessels of Jaspis, Agate, *Lapis Lazuli*, Oriental Granates, Cups of Onyx and Sardonyx, one very great, one of an Amethyst, and divers very large ones of *Lapis Nephriticus*.

In the 13th, are divers Flowers made out of Precious Stones; a large high Vessel of *Bohemian* Topaz; a Cup made of an *Hungarian* Diamond; a Piece of Amber-grease of the Bigness of a Man's Hand; a very fine Jaspis Stone; a large Agate Stone on the outside, and a Bed of large Amethysts naturally in it in the middle, which is look'd upon as a great Rarity.

In the 14th, are many noble Chrysolites, Jacinths, Oriental Granates, Beryls or Aquamarines; a very rich Smaragdus or Emerald, or a Cup out of that Stone, three great ones having been already taken out, valued at 300000 Crowns; great store of Gold Vessels, and rare Figures in Coral; *Turkish* Knives, Gauntlets, *&c.* fine Wax-Works, large Bezoar Stones; a Golden Medal of the Emperor's Arms, worth 1000 *l.* Sterling; a Cup said to be taken out of *Solomon's* Temple; a most curious Bason and Ewer of carv'd Ivory; King *Philip* II. of *Spain* in Diamond Armour, set in Gold; a curious Picture of an old Man courting a young Woman, with this Motto;

Aurum Annulum ne gestato.

Don't wear too strait a Ring.

A very fine Crucifix of Pearl; the Buff-Coat of *Gustavus Adolphus*, King of *Sweden*, in which he was kill'd near *Lutzen*; all the Gospel written and painted; the Head of *Charles* I. King of *England*, in Marble; Priests Garments set all over with Priests; an inestimable Agate Dish, betwixt three and four Spans Diameter, in which you see in natural Characters Χρῶτος: Unto which may be subjoin'd, that most magnificent Chain of Pearl taken from Count *Tekely* in the late *Hungarian* War.

Near the Palace, the Emperor has a fine Stable, fill'd with manag'd Horses from most

Digitized by Google

moſt Parts of *Europe*. He has alſo the beſt Arſenal of the Empire; and in one of the Baſtions of the City, there's a great Magazine of Naval Stores for his Gallies, which are made uſe of in the *Danube* againſt the *Turks*. They carry Guns, and have a great Number of Soldiers and Seamen belonging to them. Dr. *Brown* takes Notice, That the City is divided from the Suburbs by an Eſplanade, deſcending in an open Ground for 300 Paces; That the Baſtions are very large and broad, fac'd with Brick, and edg'd with Free-ſtone, beſides the old inward Wall which was built with the Ranſom of our *Richard* I. The Town has 6 Gates: The firſt call'd the *Stuben Gate*, to the E. 2. The *Corinthian-Gate*, to the S. 3. The *Caſtle-Gate*. 4. The *Scots-Gate*. 5. The *New-Gate*. 6. The *Red-Tower Gate*. Beſides which, there's another Gate near the Emperor's Palace towards the River. The 5 firſt Gates are vaulted through the Wall, with Draw-Bridges over the Ditch. The 6th is a Paſſage under a Tower towards the Bridge of the *Danube*, which is here divided into 7 Channels, join'd by as many Bridges, made of many Thouſands of Trees, laid cloſe to one another. There is one very remarkable Bridge here, call'd the *High-Bridge*, made by the croſſing of two Streets by equal Angles; but the Ground in one Street being equal in Height to the Tops of the Houſes of the other, they have built a Bridge or Arch in the lowermoſt Street, to let the upper paſs over it. In one of the Market-places, there's upon a Pedeſtal a very groſs Repreſentation of the Trinity; repreſenting the Father like an old venerable Man, with our Saviour on the Croſs in his Arms, and the Holy Ghoſt like a Dove hovering over both. 'Tis fenc'd in with Iron Rails, and a Centinel always by it; and the ſuperſtitious People bow to it as they paſs. This was ſet up in Remembrance of that City's being deliver'd from the Plague in the laſt Century. The principal Suburb is that call'd *Leopoldſtadt*, divided from the City by a Branch of the *Danube*, and a fair Plain. Before the laſt Siege, it was almoſt as conſiderable as the Town, and abounded with magnificent Houſes of the Nobility and Gentry; but was deſtroy'd during the Siege, and is in part rebuilt ſince. Among the Iſlands form'd by the *Danube* here, there's one call'd *St. Peter's*, which lies before the Town, and is capable of lodging a conſiderable Army for their Defence. This City is a Biſhop's See, and the Biſhop, ſays *La Mirefl*, depends immediately on the Pope. The moſt memorable Sieges which this City has ſuſtain'd, was that by *Matthew Corvin* King of *Hungary*, who took it in 1490, and died here in 1495; that by *Soliman the Magnificent* in 1529, with 300000 Men, when he made 20 Attacks upon it; but it was bravely defended by *Philip* Elector *Palatine*; and the Emperor *Charles* V. coming to relieve it with 90000 Men, the *Turks* were obliged to retire. 'Twas again beſieg'd by the Grand Viſier in 1683 with 100000 Men, from the 14th of *July*, to the beginning of *September*, and reduc'd to great Streights; but bravely defended by Count *Staremberg*, until relieved by the King of *Poland*, and the Electors of *Bavaria* and *Saxony*. *Baudrand* ſays, it was made an Imperial Town by *Frederick* II. in 1236; but 4 Years after, made ſubject to the Houſe of *Auſtria*.

'Tis very rich and populous, and the Inhabitants live plentifully, and are generally well Apparel'd, it being the Reſidence of the Emperor's Court, and the Place of Meeting for the States of the Country.

The Emperor's Court, thô ſome others may exceed it for outward Pomp, yet for real Grandeur exceeds all the Courts in *Chriſtendom*: He has many great Officers of State, and of the Houſhold, who are all Perſons of great Quality. The Lord High Steward, Dr. *Brown* ſays, was a Prince, the Lord Marſhal a Count, the Lord Chamberlain alſo a Count, with 100 Gentlemen of the Bed-Chamber under him, all Counts and Barons, who wear Golden Keys on their Breaſts, as the Grooms of the Bed-Chamber wear one of Steel, and two of each attend every Night. The Maſter of the Horſe, and the Chief Huntſman, were both Counts, as was the Chief Falconer, who had 12 other Falconers under him. The Poſtmaſter-General was a Count; and the Captain of the 100 Horſe-Guards, who lodge without the City, was a Prince: The Captain of the 100 Foot-Guards, who attend the Emperor's Perſon within the City with Lances and Javelins with broad Points, was a Count; and the Emperor had

Digitized by Google

had 60 Pages, moſt of whom were Counts and Barons: And beſides vaſt Numbers of Perſons of Quality of the Hereditary Dominions who are frequently at Court, there are generally 30 Ambaſſadors and Miniſters from Foreign Kings, Princes and States, and from the Princes of the Empire, reſiding at *Vienna*. The Emperor has likewiſe, according to the *Preſent State of Europe*, belonging to himſelf, 36 Colonels of Foot, 18 of Horſe, and 23 of Dragoons and Huſſars, moſt of 'em Perſons of Quality, with an Admiral and Vice-Admiral of his Gallies, and a Colonel of the Troops belonging to them.

The *Preſent State of Europe* ſays, The Emperor himſelf preſides in the Cabinet-Council; next to him ſits the King of the *Romans*, if there be one of Age; and the other Members are about 10 in Number, all Perſons of the Firſt Rank.

The *Atlas Hiſtorique* gives us the following Account of the other Courts and Councils held here. The firſt is the Council of State or Privy-Council, which conſults about Affairs of the greateſt Importance: It conſiſts of a Preſident, who is generally the Emperor's Chief Miniſter, and 24 Counſellors, who are for moſt part Princes, Counts, and the great Officers of the Houſhold. They have 10 Secretaries, the firſt of whom ſigns the Emperor's chief Letters, and the reſt diſpatch the Affairs belonging to the Secretary's Office. But according to the *Preſent State of Europe*, the Number of the Privy-Counſellors is much greater.

The 3d Council is that of War, which conſiſts of 2 Preſidents, who are Generals; 7 Counſellors, who are Marſhals de Camp; and ſeveral Secretaries. They treat of Affairs of Peace and War.

The 4th is that call'd the *Aulick*, or principal Court of the Empire, the Officers of which are nam'd by the Emperor. It conſiſts of 18 Counſellors, half of which are Proteſtants, according to the Treaty of *Munſter*. 'Tis divided into two Benches, one of which conſiſts of Noblemen, and the other of able Lawyers. It is like the Chamber of *Spire*, and is equal to it in Power for adminiſtring Sovereign Juſtice; ſo that there lies no Appeal from the one to the other. The Emperor himſelf cannot ſuſpend or hinder their Deciſions; tho as ſupreme Judge, he is Preſident of both. And tho all thoſe who are immediate Princes of the Empire have a Sovereign Power in Cauſes Civil and Criminal; yet in Civil Affairs of Importance, there lies an Appeal from them to one of thoſe two Chambers. The *Preſent State of Europe* makes this *Aulick* Council, and the Council of War, much more numerous.

He mentions alſo, 1. The Court of *Chancery* of the Empire, of which the Elector of *Mentz* is always Chief Chancellor. The Vice-Chancellor preſides in his Abſence, and has an Aſſiſtant, with an Aſſeſſor, two Secretaries, and a Referendary, for diſpatching *German* Affairs.

2. The Imperial Council or Chamber, which has a Preſident, conſiſts of many Lords and Gentlemen, among whom are the Governors of the *Hungarian* Cities, where the Mines lie, with the Chief Officers for the Civil Affairs of *Hungary*, *Moravia*, *Bohemia*, and *Sileſia*.

He gives the following Account of the moſt conſiderable Poſts of the Emperor's Hereditary Dominions.

1. In *Hungary*, the Palatine of that Kingdom, who takes Place next the King; the Deputy-Palatine, the High-Chancellor of the Kingdom, the Chancellor, the Preſident of the Chamber, Steward of the Crown, the High-Chamberlain of the Crown, the Keeper of the Crown, the Great Judge or Preſident of the Cities, the Ban and Vice-Ban of *Croatia*. The Royal Chanceries of *Hungary* and *Tranſilvania*, with the Officers and Councils belonging to them, are kept at *Vienna*.

2. In *Bohemia*, during the Abſence of the King, their Adminiſtration is in 18 Lieutenants, among whom are the Vice-Chancellor, the High-Steward, High-Marſhal, the High-Chamberlain, two Judges, the Grand Prior of the Order of *Malta*, the Chief Preſident of Appeals, the Preſident of the Royal Chamber, the Chief Secretary, and the Deputy-Chamberlain, *&c.* The Chief Chancery of *Bohemia*, with the Officers, *&c.* belonging to it, always attend the Imperial Court. There are in that Country 3 Sovereign Courts of Juſtice; and the 14 Circles are under the Government

Digitized by Google

ment of two Captains, one Counſellor of State, and one Nobleman each.

3. In the Marq. of *Moravia*, there is a Governor, who preſides in the Court of Juſtice, aſſiſted by three Lawyers and one Secretary. *Moravia* is divided into 5 Circles, under particular Governors, from whom there lies an Appeal. The Governor is aſſiſted by a Chief Chamberlain, the Chief Steward, Deputy Chamberlain, Chief Judge, Chief Secretary, Vice Chamberlain, Under-Secretary, Clerk of Records, and Vice-Chancellor.

4. *Sileſia* is always govern'd by a Prince of the Empire, with a Council, High Chancellor, ſome of the Nobility and Secretaries, with an Imperial Chamber, under the Direction of a Preſident and Council. 'Tis divided into 6 Principalities, and 6 Free States: Some of them are ſubject to their own Dukes, and they are all call'd Hereditary Principalities, over which the Emperor and the reſpective Prince appoint Governors.

5. The Arch-Dutchy of *Auſtria* is divided into 3 Governments: The firſt is *Lower Auſtria*, under the Direction of the Emperor and Privy-Council, the Regent Council, and the Chancery. The 2d is *Inner Auſtria*, which takes in *Styria*, *Carinthia*, and *Carniola*, with ſeveral leſſer Governments. The Tribunals are held at *Gratz*, and the Government is by a Privy-Council, a Regent Council, a Chief Chamber, Council of War, and Martial Court. The 3d Government is that of *Upper Auſtria*, including *Tirol*, the Hereditary Countries in *Swabia*, that Part of *Switzerland* ſubject to the Houſe of *Auſtria*, and ſeveral little Governments. The Privy Council is held at *Inſpruck*. There is beſides a Regent Council, and one called the Chamber Council.

By all this together, with the Courts of the Empreſs, and of the King and Queen of the *Romans*, when there is one, 'tis eaſy to perceive, that the Imperial Court exceeds all thoſe of *Chriſtendom* in real Grandeur.

Dr. *Brown* ſays, That two *Engliſh* Miles E. from *Vienna*, lie the large Gardens of *Rodolphus* II. The inner Garden is 200 Paces ſquare, and has a Cloiſter, ſupported by 40 Pillars of white Stone, on each Side cover'd with Copper, as are alſo the Pavilions. They have Houſes here, where they breed Lions, Tygers, and other Wild-Beaſts. Three Miles from *Vienna* lies *Arnolt*, a Place of Devotion, whither the People go in Pilgrimage, with heavy Croſſes on their Shoulders; and the Emperor and Empreſs, with the Court, perform this Pilgrimage on Foot. Here they have a Model of the Holy Sepulchre at *Jeruſalem*, with a curious Picture of our Saviour and the Virgin at full Length, the firſt exactly 6 Foot high, and the ſecond an Inch or two lower. Nearer the City, there is another Place of Devotion, called *Itzing*, marked out with 12 Stations of the Croſs, like the *Via Doloroſa* at *Jeruſalem*, in Remembrance of our Saviour's going to Moun *Calvary*. The Emperor has a fine Park near *Vienna*, with abundance of Game, and a Houſe of Pleaſure. That called *Luxemburg* is an old Structure, not very large, with a Summer-Houſe in the middle of a Pond, and a neat ſquare Building in the Marſh, from whence they ſhoot at the Wild-Beaſts. They have good Beer, and abundance of Wild-Boars in the Neighbourhood, which are extraordinary good Meat. The Emperor has great Numbers of expert Huntſmen, who always attend the Court when they hunt; for ſince Count *Serini* was kill'd by a Boar, they ſeldom attack them ſingly.

Criminals are uſually executed here by cutting off their Heads, which the Executioner performs with one Blow. The Traitors have for moſt part their Hands firſt cut off. The Climate is healthful; yet they have an Epidemical Diſtemper, called the *Auſtrian Cholick*, which is hard to be cur'd. The Winters are ſharp; therefore they ſleep between two Feather-Beds, make uſe of Stoves, and wear much Fur, with which the Women line and face their Bonnets. In the City, they ſpeak good *German*; but in the Country, the People have a different Tone, odd Words, and ſpeak quick.

Dr. *Brown* ſays, he ſaw a ſurprizing Trick perform'd here, which was, That a middle ſiz'd Man lay down on his Back, with a heavy Anvil on his Breaſt, upon which two luſty Fellows with great Hammers gave at leaſt 200 Blows, till they cut an Iron Horſe-ſhoe, about half an Inch thick, aſunder.

2. *Baden*, about 15 Miles S. W. from *Vienna*, is a neat little Wall'd Town, ſeated on a Plain, but nigh to a Ridge of Hills, which are the Excurſions of Mount *Cetius*. 'Tis much reſorted to, by reaſon of the natural Baths of that Place, wherein the Springs are ſo numerous, as to ſupply two convenient Baths within the Town, 5 without the Wall, and two beyond a Rivulet, called *Swechet*.

The Duke's Bath is the largeſt, about 20 Foot ſquare, in the middle of an Houſe of the ſame Figure built over it. The Vapour paſſes through a Tunnel of Wood at the Top, and the Water is convey'd into the Bottom of the Bath, at one Corner, thrô Wooden Pipes and Trees under the Town-Wall from the Spring-head, which riſes at a little Diſtance Weſtward. The Springs of the reſt of the Baths riſe under them, and are let in through Holes in the *Planther*. The Water, for the moſt part, is clear and tranſparent, yet ſomewhat bluiſh, and makes the Skin appear pale in it. It turns all ſorts of Metals (except Gold, whoſe Colour it alſo heightens) black in a few Minutes.

The Coin of this Country conſiſting of a Mixture of Copper and Silver, is in a Minute's Time turn'd from a white into a dark yellow, and ſoon after becomes black. It gives a fine green Colour to the Moſs and Plants, which it waſhes, and leaves often a Scum upon them of purple mix'd with white. *Oleum Sulphuris per Campanum* dropt into the Water of this Bath, newly taken up at the Spring-head, is received into it quickly; but *Oleum Tartari per Deliquium* cauſes an Ebullition, as in the making of *Tartarum Vitriolatum*. None of the other Baths are very conſiderable, except the *Sowr Bath*, which is ſet about with Stone Ballaſters, and cover'd with an handſome Cupulo and Lantern. The Water of this Bath is very clear, and its Steam colours Silver black, or gilds it at leaſt at a good Diſtance; and yet the Water it ſelf, once cold, will not change the Colour of any Metal, thô boil'd in it. The hotteſt Baths in this Town have not the Heat of the *King*'s or *Queen*'s at *Bath* in *England*. They that bathe uſe no Guides, as with us; but direct themſelves with a ſhort Staff.

The *German* Phyſicians commend theſe Waters for curing moſt Diſtempers incident to the Head, as Head-aches, Dimneſs of Sight, Deafneſs, *&c.* They are alſo good againſt the Gout, (if drunk in Time) the Dropſie, and other Chronical Diſtempers. The beſt Times for Bathing are reckon'd the 4 Months of *June*, *July*, *Auguſt*, and *September*.

3. *Haimburg*, or *Haynburg*, called by Latin Authors, for Diſtinction-ſake, *Hamburgum Auſtriæ*, about 33 Miles from *Vienna*. Some have thought it to be the ſame with *Ptolomy*'s *Carentum*, or *Carnuntum*; tho' that Opinion has ſince been confuted by the learned *Lazius*, who proves from undeniable Teſtimonies of Antiquity, and ſeveral Medals and Coins lately found, That *Petronel* (now a ſmall Village betwixt *Vienna* and *Haimburg*, about two *German* Miles from the latter) is the true *Carentum*. However, the Ruins of ſtrong Walls and Fortifications round this Town, ſufficiently demonſtrate it a Place of great Antiquity; and ſhew, that 'twas heretofore much more conſiderable and large than at this Day.

This was anciently the Metropolis of *Auſtria*, and Seat of the Dukes; during which Time, 'twas one of the greateſt Mart-Towns in this Part of *Europe*, being much frequented and throng'd with the *Schwabians*, and other Nations, who traffick'd this Way into *Hungary* down the *Danube*. But as ſoon as Duke *Leopold* VI. removed his Court from hence to *Vienna*, the Trade began to decay; and the frequent Incurſions of the *Hungarian* Rebels ſince have daily render'd it leſs conſiderable. The greateſt Trade of the Town is in Wine and Corn, of each whereof they have good Plenty. They have alſo a Bath, but not much regarded, becauſe they make uſe of an artificial Heat to warm it. In the Clefts of the Rocks, in a craggy Hill adjoining, are bred the beſt Falcons in the Empire.

4. *Tuln*, an ancient Town, about 16 M. W. from *Vienna*, not far from the Banks of the *Danube*, derives its Name from a ſmall Rivulet whereon 'tis ſeated. From this Town, a good Part of the adjoining Country has got the Name of *Turnelfeldt*, which is reckon'd one of the richeſt and healthieſt Parts of *Auſtria*. Through the middle of this Country runs the River *Traſam*, (whence *Traſamaur*, a Market-Town not far from *Tuln*,

Digitized by Google

Tuln, has its Name) which, ſays *Laxius*, is nothing but a Corruption of the Latin Words *Terraſana*, a Name the ancient *Romans* thought fit to beſtow on this healthy Country. But notwithſtanding the Compliment uſually paſſed upon this Place, as plentifully ſtock'd wieh all manner of Proviſions, a Traveller will hardly meet with worſe Uſage in any Part of the Emperor's Dominions, than at an Inn in *Tuln*. Near this Place, 40000 *Huns* periſh'd in a Battle againſt the *Roman* Lieutenant *Matrinus*, who himſelf was ſlain in the Conflict; which being ended, *Attila* was choſen King of the *Huns*.

5. *Krembs*, *Cremeſia*, about 30 Miles W. from *Vienna*, has its Name from the ſmall River *Crembs*, which (not far from this Town) empties it ſelf into the *Danube*. 'Tis a well built and neat Town, thought to be larger than *Presburg* in *Hungary*. The Citizens have a great Trade, eſpecially at two Fairs, whereof the one begins on St. *James*'s Day, and the other on St. *Simon* and *Jude*'s; each of them laſts 14 Days; during which Time, the Streets are continually crowded with Merchants and Tradeſmen out of all Parts of *Germany*, *Bohemia*, *Moravia*, *Hungary* and *Poland*. It ſuffer'd much during the Civil Wars of *Germany*.

6. *Melck*, a pleaſant Town on the Banks of the *Danube*, above *Crembs*, about 48 Miles W. from *Vienna*. Some think it to have been an ancient *Roman* Colony, formerly named *Claudionum*. But *Laxius* ſays, That *Julius Ceſar* being in Love with the pleaſant Situation of this Town, call'd it *mea Dilecta*, which was afterwards corrupted into *Medelick*. And to make the Story formal, he further tells us, That the ſaid Emperor built 3 Forts in this Country, the firſt whereof was this *Medelick*; the 2d he named *Turris Mirabilis*, or *Wunderburg*; and the 3d, *Caſtrum Ferreum*, *Eyſenburg*. And one main Argument whereby they endeavour to prove this to be a *Roman* Colony, is founded on the Pictures of *Romulus* and *Remus* ſucking a Wolf, cut in the Wall of the great Church.

In the Monaſtery, are preſerved ſeveral Relicks of St. *Colman*, deſcended of the Royal Blood of *Scotland*, who, in his Paſſage through this Country towards *Jeruſalem*, was barbarouſly murder'd by the Boors of *Stockerau*, 4 *German* Miles from *Vienna*, in the Year 1012. His Body was hung on a Tree; but having for the Space of a Year and half endur'd the Weather uncorrupted, was at laſt taken Notice of as attended by an extraordinary Providence, and conceived able to cure Diſeaſes, and work other Miracles. The firſt that try'd the Experiment, was one *Rumaldus*, who having a Son tormented with the Gout, cut a Piece of St. *Colman*'s Fleſh from the Tree, (whereupon a freſh Stream of Blood is ſaid to have iſſued) and applying it to the Place, found preſent Remedy. The Noiſe of this Cure immediately retriev'd the Saint's Reputation, who, ſome ſay, had been executed as a Vagabond and Spy, and procur'd an honourable Interment for his Corps near *Stockerau*. About a Year after this, the *Danube* (they ſay) overflow'd its Banks, and deſtroyed moſt of the Churches in this Country; only this ſmall Church was miraculouſly preſerved in the midſt of the Inundation. Upon this, the Body was tranſlated by *Meginhard* Biſhop of *Eichſtadt* to *Melck*, from whence 'twas afterwards conveyed into *Hungary*, his Head being kept for ſome time at *Stulweiſſenburg* or *Alba Regalis*. Upon a Hill near *Melck* ſtands a *Benedictine* Monaſtery, which challenges the Pre-eminence of all the reſt in *Auſtria*. 'Tis richly endow'd; and beſides that of St. *Colman*, has the Monuments of many other great Perſons.

7. *Neuſtatt*, or *Neapolis Auſtriæ*, is another principal Town of this Country, about 27 *Engliſh* Miles S. from *Vienna*, on the Road to *Styria*, in a Bog near the middle of a large Plain; ſo that it may be ſeen every Way at a good Diſtance. 'Tis encompaſs'd with a Ditch, and two Walls, which render the Place ſo impregnable, that the *Turks* having long beſieg'd it with the main Force of their Army, offer'd to retire, provided the Town would give them ſome falſe Trophy to carry to *Conſtantinople*: Upon which they ſent them a Whipping-Poſt. Over the chief Gate, they have the 5 Capital Vowels, as over the Palace at *Vienna*, which they interpret thus, *Aquila Electa juſte omnia vincit*; *i. e.* The Eagle being choſen juſtly, overcomes all. 'Tis a Biſhop's See, Suffragan to *Saltzburg*, the ordinary

dinary Prison for Criminals of State, and ſuffer'd much by the *Turks* in 1683.

8. St. *Polten*, on the River *Draſam*, about 32 Miles W. from *Vienna*, a pretty compact Town. It has its Name from the Monaſtery and Church of St. *Hippolitus*, which gave Occaſion to building this City. The Monaſtery was built in the Reign of King *Peppin*, and enriched by Pope *Zachary* with the Relicks of St. *Hippolitus* and St. *Quirinus*, for the Aſſiſtance they gave him againſt the *Saracens*. It was firſt wall'd in 1266, by the Biſhop of *Paſſau*. The only Thing remarkable in it, is the Abbey, the Church, and the Town-Hall.

9. *Pechlarn*, the Remains of an ancient Town and Fort on the *Danube*, about 40 Miles W. from *Vienna*. *Cluverius* ſays, 'twas anciently call'd *Arlape*, or *Ara Lapidea*, from whence the little River on which it ſtands retains the Name of *Erlaph*. It appears by old Monuments and Inſcriptions found near it, that it was one of the Harbours of the *Roman* Navy, and once the greateſt Strength in the Country, for which the *Romans* call'd it *Præclara*; and hence comes the modern Name, by the Corruption of the Word. 'Twas formerly the Reſidence of the Princes of *Auſtria*, but now only noted for making Earthen Ware.

Other Places of Note in this Country are, 1. *Bruck*, a neat Town on the Borders of *Hungary*, noted for a Yearly Fair of Cattle. 2. *Horn*, a ſtrong Fort near the Borders of *Moravia*, about 39 Miles N. W. from *Vienna*. 3. *Ips* on the *Danube*, about 52 Miles W. from *Vienna*. *Cluverius* takes it to be the *Pons Iſis* of *Ptolomy*. 4. *Tyrnſtein*, where our *Richard* I. was kept Priſoner.

The Cities and Towns in Upper Auſtria.

1. LINTZ, by the Latins called *Lentia*, *Linzum*, and *Aurelianum*, is the chief Town of *Upper Auſtria*, and lies on the *Danube*, about 95 Miles W. from *Vienna*. 'Tis ſituated in one of the moſt pleaſant Places of the Emperor's Dominions; ſo that many of the Nobility have Country-Houſes near it, where they hunt, hawk, fiſh, &c. in the Summer. The Suburbs on the other Side of the River conſiſt chiefly of the Houſes of the Nobility and Gentry, and are join'd to the Town by a large Wooden Bridge. Moſt of the Suburbs were deſtroyed by the *Swedes* during the Civil War; but the Town had no great Damage. The Emperor *Matthias*, in his Return from the Diet at *Ratisbon* in 1614, was ſo much pleas'd with the Situation of this Place, that he kept his Court here a whole Year: During which Time, all the Branches of the Houſe of *Auſtria* had a Meeting at this Place, in order to make a League Offenſive and Defenſive againſt all Potentates that ſhould offer to oppoſe them, which had no other Effect but the Ruin of a *Lutheran* Church and Univerſity, where, as *Cruſius* ſays, there had in 20 Years Space been educated 3000 Counts, Barons, and other Perſons of Quality. Near this Place the Jeſuits have now a College, plentifully endow'd with a good Library. There are two Fairs Annually held here, at *Eaſter* and *Bartholomewtide*, when 'tis much frequented by Strangers. *La Forreſt* ſays, the States of *Upper Auſtria* aſſemble here, and that the Town is defended by a good Caſtle. The late Emperor retir'd hither during the Siege of *Vienna*, and the Elector of *Bavaria* took this Town in 1703. Dr. *Brown* ſays, this City is not large, but neat, all the Houſes being of a white Free-ſtone, the Market-place ſpacious and handſome, and a Caſtle on a Hill, fortified after the modern Way. The Emperor's Army rendezvous'd here when *Soliman the Magnificent* beſieg'd *Vienna*. It was beſieg'd by 40000 Peaſants in *Ferdinand* II.'s Time; but reliev'd by Count *Pappenheim*. Mr. *Ray* ſays, the City is built after the *Italian* Faſhion, with a large ſquare Piazza, adorn'd with two noble Fountains; and that from the Emperor's Palace, which ſtands on a riſing Ground, there's a noble Proſpect of the *Danube*, and of the neighbouring Country. 'Tis noted for the excellent Gun-Barrels made here.

2. *Ens*, by the Latins called *Anaſum*, *Anaſianum*, and ſometimes *Enſium Civitas*. 'Tis a fair, ſtrong, and well built City, on the River *Ens*, which ſeparates *Upper* and *Lower Auſtria*, and lies 85 Miles W. from *Vienna*, near the Mouth of the *Ens*, where it falls into the *Danube*. 'Tis the Remains of a large and famous City, formerly called *Lauriacum*,

Digitized by Google

riacum, according to *Antonin*, and the *Notitia Imperii*. Some call it *Colonia Aureliana Lauriacenſis*; and *Lazius* thinks it was the Metropolis of *Noricum Ripenſe*, and built by the Emperor *Marcus Aurelius Antoninus* in his Expedition againſt the *Marcomanni*. Part of the ancient Name continues in the Village of *Laurich*, now called *Larch*, a ſmall Village on the Banks of the *Danube*, and formerly Part of this City, which was about 2000 Paces in Length, and reached from the *Danube* as far as St. *Florian*'s Monaſtery; which is now quite without the S. Wall of this City. About 903, it was deſtroyed by the *Huns*, being at that Time the Seat of the *Roman* Emperors. From its Ruins ſprung the preſent City. It was formerly an Archbiſhop's See, and, according to ſome *German* Authors, was founded by St. *Peter* or St. *Mark*; which Conjecture has occaſion'd an old Inſcription on the Market-place, the two laſt Lines of which are as follow;

Hæc de Laurenco reliqua eſt: Vir Marcus in Orbe.
Cum Luca Chriſti dogma profeſſus erat.

Some will have it, that St. *Laurence* was their Apoſtle, and founded their Cathedral, which was dedicated to him. Here they will alſo have our King *Lucius* to have been educated in Chriſtianity, but without any good Authority. 'Twas formerly govern'd by Counts of its own; but was bought from their laſt Count by *Rudolph* I. and, together with St. *Florian*'s Monaſtery, pays Annually a Gold Ring of 5 Ducats Value, as a Token of Homage to the Duke of *Auſtria*, and was added to their Hereditary Dominions. The Elector of *Bavaria* took this City in 1703.

3. *Steyer*, a neat and compact Town, on the Conflux of the *Steyer* and *Ens*, from whence its Suburbs, *Steyerdorff* and *Enſdorff*, have their Names. It lies about 10 Miles S. from *Ens*. 'Tis chiefly inhabited by Cutlers, Smiths, and other Ironmongers, who, by the Conveniency of the *Danube*, have a great Trade with the neighbouring Countries. *Lazius* ſays, the *Geſatæ* were the ancient Inhabitants of this Country, and ſuppoſes the Town to be *Ptolemy*'s *Geſidunum*, whence the pleaſant Valley on which it ſtands is called *Gaſtenthal*; but it ſeems rather to derive its Name from the Monaſtery of *Garſten*, that ſtands near this City, and is well worth a Traveller's Notice.

4. *Wels*, on the *Draun*, about 10 Miles S. from *Lintz*. *Cluverius* ſays, That it was the *Colonia Aureliana Antoniana* Ovil. The *Norici*, the ancient Inhabitants, call'd it *Willabs*, from whence the *Romans* call'd it *Ovilaba*, or *Ovilara*. *La Forreſt* ſays, the Emperor *Aurelius* built it after his Expedition againſt the *Scythians* in *Pannonia*.

5. *Everding* or *Efferding*, about 3 Leagues W. from *Lintz*, near the *Danube*. 'Tis a ſtrong Town, defended by two Caſtles, one within the Walls, and another without, called *Schawnburg*, which gave Title to the Counts of that Name, a Branch of the Family of *Julbach*. In 1367, it was ſold, with its Dependencies, to the Biſhop of *Paſſau*, but fell afterwards to the Counts of *Schawnburg*; by one of whoſe Daughters, married to the Count of *Staremberg* about 1551, it came to that Family.

6. *Gemund*, ſo called, becauſe it lies on the Mouth of the *Draun*, where it falls into the *Gemunder* Lake. It has a conſiderable Trade in Salt, which is made here, and exported as far as *Vienna*. It lies about 22 Miles S. W. from *Ens*.

7. *Freyſtatt*, on the Borders of *Bohemia*, about 22 Miles N. from *Ens*. The Town is well built, but not ſtrong, being taken by a handful of Boors, and ſoon loſt by them during the Civil Wars of *Germany*. 'Tis famous for a palatable Beer, which is exported into the neighbouring Country. They have an Annual Fair, which begins at the Converſion of St. *Paul*, laſts 14 Days, and is very much frequented, which brings them a great Trade. The adjacent Country is called *Machland*, and gave Title to the Counts of *Burckhauſen* and *Machland*, who being extinguiſh'd about 1186, it fell to a Branch of the *Auſtrian* Family, called Counts of *Hardegg*. *La Forreſt* mentions a Town called *Lichtenſtein* in *Lower Auſtria*, near the River *Wien*, which gives Name to a Principality; but we do not find it in any of our Maps.

Stain is alſo a ſmall City on the N. Side of the *Danube*, a little above *Krembs* to the W. with a Bridge over the *Danube*; and *Cloiſter-*

Cloiſternewburg is another ſmall City, about 5 Miles W. from *Vienna*, which has eſcaped the Deſcription of our Geographers.

The Dutchy of Styria.

THO' this Province, with *Croatia*, *Windiſmark*, *Carniola*, and *Carinthia*, are now reckon'd Parts of *Germany*, they were formerly accounted Part of *Pannonia*; but loſt that Denomination by falling to the Houſe of *Auſtria*. *Styria*, in *German Steyrmarck*, is by *Marcellinus* and *Aurelius Victor* thought to be the *Roman* Province called *Valeria*, in Honour of *Dioclesian*'s Daughter; but *Valaterannus* thinks it was *Japidia*, and that *Croatia* was *Valeria*. The ancient Inhabitants were the *Styri*, a Branch of the *Tauriſci* or *Norici*. 'Tis bounded by *Auſtria* on the N. with *Carniola* and *Sclavonia* on the S. *Saltzburg* and *Carinthia* on the W. and *Hungary* on the E. The Length from E. to W. according to *Moll*'s Map, is about 120 Miles; and the greateſt Breadth from N. to S. is about 85. 'Tis commonly divided into *Upper* and *Lower*: In the *Lower*, they have ſtore of Wine, Fruit, Fiſh, Veniſon, Mines, eſpecially of Iron, Salt-Springs, *&c.* They have now and then ſuch Plenty of Corn, that they complain of want of Vent for it; yet one bad Harveſt puts them in Danger of a general Famine. *Upper Styria* is more mountainous: Their principal Trade is in Wool and Sheep. They have alſo Plenty of Black Cattle in their Vallies, and exchange their Butter and Cheeſe for Bread and Wine with their Neighbours; for they have no Wine of their own Growth. The Air is wholeſomer than in *Lower Styria*, where the *Hungarian* Fever and Peſtilence are too common. Their ordinary Drink is ſorry ſmall Beer; but the better Sort have a ſharp thin Wine from *Styria*; yet Travellers are better pleas'd with their Entertainment here, than in moſt other Parts of the Empire. The People of this and the neighbouring Countries are troubled with extraordinary Swellings in their Throat, which frequently make them loſe their Voice and Senſes; ſo that in moſt great Towns, they have Hoſpitals for thoſe who are afflicted with ſuch Diſtempers. *Ortelius* ſays, he ſaw a Man in this Country, who had a Swelling of that ſort of ſuch a Bulk, that from his Ears down to his Breaſt, it was as broad as his Shoulders; and the poor Women are ſo much troubled with thoſe Swellings, that ſome of them are forc'd to throw them over their Shoulders when they ſuckle their Young. This is ſuppoſed to proceed from their drinking of Snow-Water, which falls down from the Mountains; becauſe thoſe who live well, and drink good Wine and Beer, are ſeldom troubled with it. Their common Language is *Sclavonick*; but in Cities and Towns, they ſpeak *High-Dutch*, which is made uſe of in their Courts of Judicature, and Papers of State, and is the common Language in *Upper Styria*, where they ſpeak it better than in the Circle of *Bavaria*. We have given an Account of their Government in the Deſcription of the Emperor's Court. 'Twas formerly a Marquiſate, becauſe a Frontier Country, which divided the Empire from *Sclavonia*. The Emperor *Frederick Barbaroſſa* made it a Dutchy. It came to the Houſe of *Auſtria* by Marriage; but that Branch being extinguiſhed, they choſe a noble *Hungarian* for their Prince; but depos'd him becauſe of his Tyranny, and choſe *Ottacar*, Son to the King of *Hungary*, in his ſtead, who being ſlain in War with the Emperor *Rodolph*, they have ſince been ſubject to the Houſe of *Auſtria*.

The chief Towns in Lower Styria.

1. GRATZ, or *Gracz*, in Latin *Gracium*, the Metropolis of the Dutchy, lies on the River *Mur*, in Long. 35. Lat. 47. 17. 60 Miles towards the S. E. from *Vienna*, and 35 W. from the Borders of *Hungary*. 'Tis a neat City, in a pleaſant and fruitful Country, fortified with a Wall and Ramparts, and almoſt impregnable, by reaſon of a Caſtle on a high Hill, which commands the neighbouring Country. *Cluverius* thinks it to be *Ptolomy*'s *Murcela*; but *Lazius* differs from him, and places *Murcela* above 3 *German* Leagues further E. on the ſame River. In the Duke's Palace, there's a good Library in two Rooms, pretty well ſtock'd with printed Books, and ſome MSS. In the Gallery, among other Rarities, there's a fine

Draught

Digitized by Google

Draught of *Charles the Great*'s Wars, and a Repository of Curiosities, with a good Collection of *American* and *Indian* Idols. The Jesuits have a College here richly endow'd with large Privileges, where they give Degrees in all Faculties, and have abundance of Scholars. This Town is the Residence of the Governor, as it was formerly of some Arch-Dukes, who call'd themselves by its Name; particularly *Ferdinand* II. before he was chosen Emperor.

2. *Marchburg*, a well built Town on the Banks of the *Drave*, about 15 Miles W. from *Tettau*, according to *Sanson*, and 28 S. from *Gratz*. *Lazius* says, There are many old *Roman* Monuments found here, and supposes it to be the ancient *Castra Marcina*, or *Mariana* of *Ammianus Marcellinus*. This Town and its District was formerly a County; but their Counts failing, it came to the Lords of *Scherfenberg*, and afterwards with some other Counties to the House of *Austria*.

3. *Pettau*, an ancient *Roman* Town, on the Banks of the *Drave*, then the Boundaries of their Empire on that side, and by them call'd *Petavium*. The Country People call it *Duii*; 'tis not large or well built, but is noted for having been a Bishoprick above 1300 Years. The Bishop is Suffragan of *Saltzburg*, the Archbishop of which is Lord of the greatest Part of the Town. Some ancient Geographers place it in the Territories of the old *Norici*; but *Ptolomy* places it in *Upper Pannonia*. It lies 30 Miles S. E. of *Gratz*.

4. *Rakersburg* or *Rakelsburg*, a strong Fort on the Banks of the *Muer*, and a great Bulwark against the *Turks*. The *Latins* call it *Raclitanum*, and the *Sclavonians Radelony*. The adjacent Country is stock'd with all kinds of Fruit, especially Grapes. The Burghers have the sole Privilege to buy all the New Wines from *Michaelmass* to St. *Catherine*'s, afterwards the Rusticks are at liberty to sell to whom they please. There's an Office here, where Toll is paid for Goods brought hither from *Hungary*, and exported from hence. It lies according to *Sanson*, about 32 Miles S. E. from *Gratz*.

5. *Windisch-Gratz*, so call'd to distinguish it from *Bavarian Gratz*. It was the ancient Boundary of the *Sclavonians*. *Lazius* thinks it to be *Ptolomy*'s *Vinudsia*, because of the ancient Monuments found here. Others say it was *Vindum*, and built by the *Jappges*, the old Inhabitants of *Carniola*; 'tis only noted for its Antiquity, which is also disputed by some. It lies about 38 Miles S. W. from *Gratz*.

6. *Leibnitz*, a fair Market-Town near the *Muer*, and the usual Residence of the Bishop of *Seccau*, hence call'd Bishop of *Leibnitz*. The Bishoprick was founded by the Archbishop of *Saltzburg* in 1218, and is part of his Province. The Manor of *Seccau*, whence the Bishop has his Title and Revenue, lies in *Upper Styria*, two or three *German* Leagues from *Judenburg*. It lies according to *Lazius* on the Conflux of two Rivers which fall into the *Muer*, about five *German* Leagues S. E. of *Gratz*.

7. *Luetenberg*, a Market-Town on the *Muer* and Borders of *Hungary*, famous for the best Wine in those Parts. There are several good Baths in the Neighbourhood of a temperate Heat, much resorted to by Foreigners. Near this Town lie the Borders of *Hungary* on the E. of the County of *Cilly* on the W. of *Sclavonia* on the S. and of the Dutchy of *Styria* on the N. According to *Lazius*, it lies near 2½ *German* Leagues S. E. from *Rackelsburg*, and 9 from *Gratz*.

Other Market-Towns of less Note are, 1. *Furstenfeld* on the Borders of *Hungary*, supposed to be the *Roman Aqua*, about 42 Miles S. from *Gratz*. 2. *Friburg*, supposed to be the *Roman Cordobianca*, about 37 N. E. from *Gratz*. 3. *Rain*, on the Borders of *Carniola*.

Towns of Note in Upper Styria.

1. *Judenburg*, a fair and well built Town on the Bank of the *Muer*, noted for Two great Annual Fairs for Cattle, and other Marchandise. The Duke of *Styria* has a Palace here, little inferior to that of *Gratz*, where his Deputy resides. The Jesuits have a College here, endow'd with the Revenues of a *Dominican* Monastery. The Country, for two *German* Leagues down the River, is very pleasant and fruitful. It lies near 40 Miles W. from *Gratz*.

2. *Bruck* on the *Muer*, Lat. *Muripons*, or *Bongo ad Murum*, an ancient Town, 25 Miles N. W.

Digitized by Google

N. W. from *Gratz*. The Conveniency of the Situation occasions the Emperor to call here a General Diet of the States of *Styria* and *Carinthia*. There's little of Note in it, except two Monasteries of *Franciscans* and *Capuchins*.

3. *Leuben*, Lat. *Lubenum*, a neat and pleasant City on the *Muer*, about 27 Miles N. W. from *Gratz*. This Town has a large Barony formerly subject to the Counts of *Schrobenhausen*, a *Bavarian* Family, then to the Duke of *Carinthia*, but now to the Arch-Dukes of *Austria*. In 1292, it was taken and plunder'd by the Archbishop of *Saltzburg* and Duke of *Bavaria*, while at War with *Albert* of *Austria*. Within a Mile of this Town lies the rich Nunnery of *Gofs*.

4. *Eisenartz*, so call'd from the Mines and Forges of Iron, with which it supplies the neighbouring Country. They pretend to have Steel enough to furnish the whole Empire. In the Parish Church dedicated to St. *Oswald*, a *British* Saint, they have a *German* Inscription, implying, That the Mines were discover'd in 712, and have continu'd since without any sensible Decay, tho' vast Numbers of Men are constantly employ'd in them, which occasions a yearly Fair for Hemp, Line, Tallow, Leather, and other Necessaries for the Miners, in exchange for Iron and Steel. They have 19 Mills on a small Rivers for their Works, which were formerly manag'd by 19 Officers; but the Emperor *Ferdinand* II. has incorporated these Mines of *Styria*, and those of *Austria*, under a Lieutenant. It lies 40 Miles N. W. from *Gratz*.

5. *Rotenmann*, on the Borders of *Saltzburg*, about 8 *German* M. above *Leuben* to the W. and about 62 Miles N. W. from *Gratz*. *Luzius* thinks it to be *Anthony's Montana Castra*, which is supported by a *Roman* Inscription on a Mountain near this Place. There are abundance of red Hills and Rocks in the Neighbourhood. The *Lutherans* had formerly a Church near this Place, which in 1599 was destroyed in a Quarrel with the *Calvinists*.

6. *Knittelfield*, on the *Muer*, a *German* M. from *Judenburg*. 'Tis a fair and neat Town in a pleasant Country, has a handsome Parish Church and Hospital, and other publick Buildings. It lies about 36 *English* Miles N. W. from *Gratz*. The principal Rivers of *Styria*, are the *Drave* and the *Muer*.

The Town and County of Cilley.

THis being part of *Styria*, according to *Moll* and *Sanson*, we shall describe it here. This noble and ancient City is by *Pliny* call'd *Celeia*, and by other *Latins Celia*, *Celia*, *Zelia* and *Cilia*: It stands on the River *Saan*, about 46 Miles S. from *Gratz*, and 30 W. from the Frontiers of *Sclavonia*, in a pleasant and fruitful Country. The great number of *Roman* Coins, Medals, and other Antiquities daily found in and about this Place, proves it to have been a considerable Town in their Time. They have one remarkable Monument, being the Ruins of a vast Marble Pillar, each Stone of which is above a Waggon Load; there are several fair Monasteries in the Town, the chief of which is that of the *Minorits*, which contains the Monuments of the ancient Counts of *Cilley*. The City is defended by regular Fortifications, an ancient Fort without, and a Castle within the Town. It held out a Siege against the *Turks* in 1492, and repulsed them under the Conduct of *George Baron* of *Herberstein*. The County is large, and reaches as far as the *Trojan* Hill from the Bridge of *Pettau*, and includes several *Sclavonian* Forts. It was formerly subject to Counts of its own, who were also Barons of *Sanneck*. Their First Count was created by the Emperor *Lewis* IV. in 1339, with the Consent of the Arch-Duke of *Austria*; and the Emperor *Sigismond* made them afterwards Independent Princes of the Empire, and call'd them to the Diets without Consent of the House of *Austria*, who before that time were always accounted the Supreme Lords of the Place. Upon which *Frederick*, Duke of *Austria*, declar'd War against Count *Ulrick*, their Second Prince, and being afterwards chosen Emperor, was too strong an Enemy for *Ulrick*, who by the Assistance of *Albert* of *Austria*, *Frederick's* Brother, not only defended his Territories for a time, but over-ran most of *Styria* and *Carinthia*. At last he was kill'd in Battle by *Ladislaus*, Son to *Huniades*, in 1456, when *Frederick* IV. seized the Country; and it has ever since been subject to the House of *Austria*.

Other

Digitized by Google

Other Places of Note here are,

1. *Troia*, now a ſmall Village not far from *Cilley*, but anciently a famous City, built by the *Mœulli*, a Branch of the *Japides*. In the 31ſt Year of our Saviour, this City was taken and deſtroyed by the Emperor *Auguſtus*. In Remembrance of which, ſays *Lazius*, the Country People to this Day call all waſte and deſolate Places *Troia's*. He adds, That abundance of Antiquities are found here and in the neighbouring Towns.

2. *Sachſenfeld*, a Market-Town on the *Saan*, about a *German* League from *Cilley*, on the Road to *Laubach*. Some think it had its Name from a Colony of *Saxons* ſent hither by *Charlemagne*, who diſpers'd that People into ſeveral Colonies of the Empire in order to prevent their Rebellion; but if it were ſo, they have now loſt the *Saxon* Language; for in this Town, and in the neighbouring Country, they ſpeak *Sclavonic*, with a Mixture of the *Auſtrian* Dialect.

3. *Saaneck*, ſo call'd from the *Saan*, on which it ſtands. It was formerly ſo conſiderable as to give Title to Barons and Counts, but now only a ſmall Village.

4. *Rohitſch*, a fair Market-Town on the Borders of *Croatia*: It has a Fort of the ſame Name near it, and is mortgag'd to Counts, but the Barons of *Weltz*.

5. *Waraſſin*, or *Waraſdin*, on the Borders of *Styria*, *Hungary* and *Sclavonia*, ſuppoſed to be *Antonin's Variana Caſtra*, which *Lazius* ſupports by divers Arguments from ſeveral Monuments of Antiquity found about it. Being a Frontier Town, 'tis regularly and well fortified. It lies about 40 *Engliſh* Miles N. E. from *Cilley*, and 35 S. E. from *Gratz*.

6. *Copreinitz*, Lat. *Capronia*; 'tis ſtronger than *Waraſin*, but noted for little elſe. *Globitzer* their Governor got himſelf and the Town great Reputation, by repulſing the *Turkiſh* Army; but was afterwards, in 1581, the chief Inſtrument of its Overthrow.

The Dutchy of Carniola,

BY the *Germans* called *Crain*, has *Carinthia*, and Part of *Styria*, on the N. *Iſtria*, and the Gulph of *Trieſt*, on the S. Part of *Carinthia*, with the *Alps* and Dominions of *Venice*, on the W. and *Sclavonia* and *Croatia* on the E. The greateſt Length from N. W. to S. E. is about 105 *Engliſh* M. and the Breadth from N. to S. according to *Moll*, is about 58, But Dr. *Nicholſon* obſerves, That our Modern Geographers uſually Contract it more than they ought. It takes its Name from the ancient *Carni*, a Branch of the *Scythians*, who had for Neighbours the *Japides*; whence this and other adjacent Provinces were call'd by the general Name of *Japidia*. In the Time of *Auguſtus*, the *Romans* ſubdued this Country; but were expell'd by the Princes of *Bavaria*, who were then Lords of this Country, under the Title of *Oreinburg*. It was afterwards ſubdued by the Dukes of *Carinthia*, who erected it into a Marquiſate depending on the Houſe of *Carnsten*. Thus it continu'd till the Emperor *Frederick* II. made it Independent: Afterwards, the Family of *Engelbrecht*, their Marquiſſes, failing, it came to the Branch of *Auſtria Bamberg*, whoſe Line alſo failing, it came to *Ottocar* King of *Bohemia*, who being ſlain in Battle againſt the Emperor *Rudolph* I. he gave *Carniola* to *Mainhart* Duke of *Carinthia*, and Count of *Tyrol*; after whoſe Death, the Emperor *Ludovic* IV. made it a Dukedom, and gave it to the Dukes of *Auſtria Habſburg*, in whoſe Right the Emperor enjoys it.

The Country is mountainous; but has many large and pleaſant Vallies, which abound with Wine, Oil and Corn. It has many great Rivers; the Chief of which are, the *Save*, *Laubach*, and *Gurck*.

The modern Inhabitants are a mixture of *Germans*, *Italians* and *Sclavonians*. In Cities, they generally ſpeak *High Dutch*, except in *Laubach*, where they ſpeak a broken *Italian*. The Country People ſpeak *Sclavonic*; but in their Courts of Judicature, and Papers of State, they uſe the *German*.

'Tis divided into Higher and Lower.

The Chief Towns in Upper Carniola.

1. LAck, or *Biſhopſtack*, ſo call'd, becauſe 'tis the Reſidence of the Governor, who is Deputy to the Biſhop of *Freyſing* in

Digitized by Google

Bavaria, to whom the Emperor *Henry* III. gave this Town, with its Diſtrict, which reaches 10 *German* Leagues round, and contains 200 Villages. In 1451, this Town was plunder'd and burnt by the Count of *Cilley*'s General, but has ſince been more ſplendidly Rebuilt, and better Fortify'd. *Conrad* Biſhop of *Gurck*, who was ſet up by the Pope in Oppoſition to One whom the Emperor had named Biſhop of *Freyſing*, was murder'd here by his Pages, who robb'd him of 5000 Ducats of Gold, and buried him in his own Garden; where the Corps was found at laſt, and the Murderers put to Death in 1433. The Town lies in Long. 33. 22. Lat. 46. 30. 30 Miles from the Frontiers of *Venice*, and 12 S. of the Frontiers of *Corinthia*.

2. *Crainburg*, on the Banks of the *Save*, 7 Miles N. from *Biſhopſtack*, on the Top of a ſmall Hill fortified with a ſtrong Caſtle: It has Three Churches, and in the Suburbs a fair Monaſtery of *Capuchins*. *Laxius* thinks it to be *Japodum Noviodunum*, becauſe it anſwers *Antonin*'s Latitude, that in their ancient Records 'tis call'd *Noviodunum*, the *Laſ.* for *Newburg*; and becauſe there are *Roman* Coins and Medals dug up every Day in and about the Town, which, with other Monuments, ſhew it to have been a *Roman* Colony. It gave Title to the Marquiſſes of *Crainburg*, formerly mention'd. There is a good Bridge here over the *Save*.

3. *Ratmanſdorff*, on the N. Banks of the *Save*, a little above *Crainburg*. *Laxius* ſays, a great many *Roman* Antiquities are found near this Place; and that the Noble *Styrian* Family of *Ratmanſdorff* have their Title from hence, tho' none of 'em have been Lords of this Place for a great while.

4. *Stain*, on the River *Stretz*, noted for a large and rich Monaſtery of *Franciſcans*.

The Chief Towns of Lower Carniola.

1. LAubach, or *Labach*, which lies on a River of the ſame Name, and is the Metropolis of the Dutchy. It lies about 15 Miles E. from *Biſhopſtack*. *Cluverius*, in his *Italia Antiqua*, contradicts ſome modern Geographers, who fancy this to be the ancient *Nauportus*, where *Jaſon* and his *Argonauts* landed, and alledges this Town roſe from the Ruins of the ancient *Hemona*; but *Laxius*, whoſe Authority prevails with moſt late Writers, endeavours to prove this to be the true *Nauportus*, where *Jaſon* landed; who, as Hiſtorians inform us, ſet out from *Argos Pelaſgicum* in *Theſſaly*, and ſail'd to *Colchos*, on the E. ſide of the *Euxine*: But being purſued by the K. of *Colchos*'s Fleet, they bore Northward, and entring the Mouth of the *Danube* they ſail'd up to the Conflux of the *Danube* and *Save*; and then taking up the latter, they came to the Mouth of the *Laubach*, and landed at this Town; from whence they travell'd by Land to the *Adriatic* Sea, and then return'd to *Greece*. But we leave the Reader to judge, how *Jaſon* and his Companions came to be ſo well acquainted in thoſe Days with Navigation and Geography, as to perform ſuch a Voyage. *Laxius* adds, That the *Latobici*, a Branch of the *Japides*, chang'd the Name of this Port into *Labacum*. Tho' the Air about it be unwholſom, the Town is well built, and very populous. They have a large Caſtle, with a good Gariſon; but being commanded by a neighbouring Hill, is not very ſerviceable; nor is the Town very ſtrong, eſpecially towards the River. It held out a memorable Siege, when *Albert*, Brother to the Emperor *Frederick*, and Count *Ulric*, attack'd it, while he was at *Aix la Chapelle* receiving the Crown of the Empire; from whence he return'd, defeated them, and rais'd the Siege. 'Tis a Biſhops See, formerly Suffragan to the Patriarch of *Aquileia*, but now depends immediately on the Pope.

2. *Zirchnitz*, a Town and a Lake of the ſame Name, call'd in *Latin*, *Lacus Circnitenſis*. It lies 20 Miles S. E. from *Laubach*. The Town is inconſiderable, either for Fortifications or Bulk, as not containing above 300 Houſes; but is chiefly remarkable for this famous Lake, which is about 4 *German* M. in Length, and 2 in Breadth, encompaſs'd with Mountains and Foreſts at ſome diſtance, and on the S. has a Foreſt of Pear-Trees. Every Year in *June* the Water ſinks under Ground, through a great many large Holes in the bottom, and returns in *September* with ſuch violence, that it riſes to the height of a Pike, and covers all the Ground again. When the Water

Digitized by Google

Water retires, it ſpeedily yields Graſs, which affords good Paſturage to the Cattle and Deer from the neighbouring Hills and Foreſts, that retire again before the Water returns. There's great ſtore of Carps, Eels, Tench, and other Fiſh, in the Lake, which none dare Catch without a Licence from the Prince of *Eckenburg*, who is Lord of the Place, till the Water retire; and then every Man has liberty to take what he can; and the Peaſants improving the Opportunity, catch abundance as they retire with the Water. The Neighbours ſay, The Lake conſtantly obſerves this Courſe, but can give no Account of the Reaſon: Some fancy this to be *Strabo's Lugea Palus*. But Dr. *Nicholſon* juſtly obſerves, That if it had been ſo, 'tis ſtrange that the Ancient Philoſophers ſhould take no Notice of this ſtrange Phenomenon in Nature. *Baudrand* ſays, That this Lake produces Corn upon the Receſs of the Waters, and affords good Hunting to the Neighbourhood.

3. *Laas*, which lies near this Lake upon a ſmall River that runs into it, about 20 Miles S. E. from *Zirchnitz*, according to *Sanſon*. 'Tis noted for a Breed of well-ſhap'd Horſes, tho' much inferiour for Service to thoſe bred in *Karſtia*. Count *Cilley* attack'd this Town in 1435, but was ſhamefully repulſed.

4. *Upper Laubach*, alias *Werdick*, about 10 Miles S. W. from the other *Laubach*, on the ſame River. 'Tis a great Mart for *Italian* Goods brought hither over the Mountains from *Goritz*, and ſhip'd off for ſeveral Parts of *Germany*.

The Province of Windiſchmarch;

IN *Latin*, *Vinderum Marchia*. Some reckon it a *Sclavonian* Province, and ſubject to the Emperor as King of *Hungary*, but not as Part of *Carniola* to which it adjoins; yet 'tis made Part of it both by *Moll* and *Sanſon*. Dr. *Nicholſon* obſerves, That the preſent Inhabitants comprehend under this Name all *Dalmatia* and *Liburnia*, and the Country betwixt the *Save* and *Drave*; but moſt Geographers underſtand only that Country which has the County of *Cilley* on the N. *Carniola* on the S. and W. and *Croatia* on the E. And ſo 'tis bounded by *Sanſon*, who makes it from N. W. to S. E. about 55 Miles long, and the greateſt Breadth about 30. The Country is mountainous and barren, inhabited, ſays Dr. *Nicholſon*, by the Offspring of the Antient *Venedi*, the moſt conſiderable Branch of the *Sclavonians*, whoſe Language they retain, with a ſmall mixture of *German*.

The chief Towns.

1. *Gotſche*, which gives Name to the neighbouring Country: The Inhabitants pretend 'tis a diſtinct Province; and that their Anceſtors were a Colony of *Germans* brought hither from *Swabia*, which their Language ſeems to juſtifie. The Town is large, ſtands in the middle of a Wood, but is not ſtrong.

2. *Seiſſenburg*, a Market-Town of Note on the Banks of the *Gurck*, which ſupplies them with Plenty of Fiſh, and is famous for the beſt Creviſes in that Country; 'tis ſubject to the Counts of *Auerſperg*.

3. *Newſtat*, or *Rudolphſwerth*, a little below *Seiſenburg*, on the ſame River, 18 Miles E. from *Cilley*. 'Tis a Place of great Antiquity, and was a *Roman* Colony, but ſubdued by the *Goths* under the Empire of *Decius*. *Dieterich* King of the *Goths* reſided here; and it had large Privileges from *Frederick* IV. for holding out againſt *Albert* of *Auſtria*, and *Ulric* of *Cilley*, in 1438. It has the beſt Wine in thoſe Parts, a large *Franciſcan* Monaſtery, and a good Bath at 4 Miles diſtance, much frequented by Foreigners. The Town is well fortified.

4. *Landſtraſt*, a ſtrong little Town encompaſſed with the *Gurck*; it was formerly deliver'd with another Town by the Houſe of *Auſtria* to the Counts of *Cilley*, as a Security for the Peace betwixt them. Near it there's a long Ridge of Hills, the Vallies among which were formerly a Wilderneſs for ſome *German* Leagues; but within theſe few Ages, they are well inhabited, and improved into good Paſturage and Meadows, by a Company of *Wallachians* who ſettled here; they call themſelves *Uſcoken*, and are of the *Greek* Church; they pay the Emperor no Tribute, but acknowledge him for their Sovereign, and furniſh him with Men on occaſion in Proportion to their Numbers. It lies about 8 Miles N. E. from *Rudolphſwerth*.

5. *Mesting*, on the River *Culp*, about 10 Miles S. E. from *Rudolphſworth*, on the Road from *Laubach* to *Croatia*, the Wood through which this Road lies is Rough and Stony, but the reſt of the Country pleaſant and fruitful. There are two large Foreſts belonging to the Town, one of Cheſnut-Trees, and the other of Oaks, from which the Inhabitants reap much Profit by feeding great Herds of Swine. In 1431, the *Turks* ſurpriz'd this Town, and cut off moſt of the Inhabitants. In 1578, they ſtorm'd and plunder'd it again, but returning with their Booty, were all cut off by an Ambuſcade of *Croats* and *Sclavonians*. Some make it the the chief Town of the Country.

6. *Reifnitz*, a noted Town on the Borders of *Carniola*, near the *Zirnicher* Sea; 'tis the chief Town of a Barony of the ſame Name, and the Place where the Imperial Trained-Bands in this Country muſter. The *Turks* burnt moſt of it down in 1480.

The Province of Friuli.

WAS anciently call'd *Forum Julii*, of which *Friuli* is a Contraction, or rather Corruption. *Julius Cæſar*, when he led his Armies this way, built the Town which gives Name to the Province; and hence alſo the neighbouring Hills were call'd *Alpes Julia*. *Latin* Writers of the middle Centuries call it *Regio Aquilegienſis*, becauſe moſt of it was given by the Emperors, *Otho* and *Conrad*, to the Patriarchate of *Aquileia*. The *Venetians* call it uſually *Patria*, becauſe the Republick had its Original here. D. *Nicholſon* ſays, This Province has *Carſtia* on the E. the *Marchia Trevigiana*, and part of the *Alps*, on the W. the great *Alps* which ſeparate it from *Germany* on the N. and the Gulph of *Venice* on the S. *Sanſon* and *Moll* take no Notice of the Name, nor are their Maps exact in the Diviſion of this Province, though they have the principal Towns. *Moll* reckons it in the Dominions of *Venice*; and both he and *Sanſon* make *Goritz* a diſtinct County, which Dr. *Nicholſon* makes a Part of *Friuli*. The Country is pleaſant and fruitful, and famous of old for a rich Wine, which *Pliny* preferr'd to the beſt in *Italy*. 'Tis water'd with many Rivers, the chief of which is *Tiamento*, which is navigable towards the Mouth, but too rapid for Navigation further up.

The ancient Inhabitants were the *Euganei*, who poſſeſſed alſo Part of *Marchia Trevigiana*, but were expell'd by the *Veneti*, and they by the *Galli-Ciſalpini*; then it fell to the *Romans*, and on the Decay of the Empire became One of the Four Dukedoms founded by the *Lombards*. The *Beringarii* were long Dukes of this Country, but ſubdu'd by the Emperor *Otho*, who gave great Part of it to the Patriarch of *Aquileia*, after which *Conrad* gave moſt of it to the ſame Patriarchate: But there were many Noble Families who retain'd large Eſtates, paying a ſmall Acknowledgment to the Patriarch; yet it ſtill retain'd the Name of a Dutchy, and their Princes pretended to as much Grandeur as ever, which at laſt prov'd their Ruin: For Duke *Lutprandus* being Jealous of the Growth of the Republick of *Venice*, made War upon them about 1020, but was vanquiſh'd, and loſt his Dominions; ſince which, the *Venetians* have poſſeſſed them. In 1420, The Patriarch of *Aquileia* being over-ballanc'd by the Power of the *Venetians*, he ſurrender'd his Intereſt to them as moſt able to defend it, yet ſtill he retains large Poſſeſſions, and good Revenues here, and has full Juriſdiction over all the Prelates in this Country, except thoſe in the Iſles of *Venice*, who are ſubject to the Patriarch of *Grado*. The Reaſon why Dr. *Nicholſon* reckons this Country, &c. Part of the *Auſtrian* Dominions, though ſome of 'em be ſubject to the *Venetians*, is, becauſe the Emperor was once the ſole, and is ſtill the chief Proprietor of them: It appears by *Baudrand*, and others, that a conſiderable Part of it is ſtill ſubject to the Emperor, particularly the County of *Goritz*, *Aquileia* with its Territories, and *Gradiſca*.

The chief Cities and Towns.

1. *Aquileia, or Aquileja*; 'twas made the Metropolis of *Iſtria* and *Venetia*, by *Antoninus*; and afterwards of *Italy*, by the *Weſtern* Emperors. Authors are not agreed as to its Founder; ſome aſcribe it to one *Aquilius*, who came from *Troy* with *Aeneas*, and

and others ſay, that the *Romans* having encamp'd a long time on the Place where it ſtands, were the firſt who built it, and gave it this Name from the *Eagle* which was their Standard. *Livy* ſays, 'twas built in the Year 565 of *Rome*, during the Conſulſhip of *Martius Philippus* and *Sept. Poſthum. Albinus*, or as *Berkelius* ſays in his Notes on *Steph.* of *Byzantium*, becauſe an *Eagle* came flying towards it when they were building. Many Years after the Seat of the *Præfectus Prætorio*, *Auguſtus* kept his Court here, and gave it the Name of *Roma Altera*. *Tiberius* liv'd here with his Wife *Julia Auguſtus*'s Daughter, before he came to the Empire; and thoſe Two Princes did all they could to Imbelliſh it. They acquir'd great Honour by holding out a famous Siege againſt *Maximinus* the Tyrant, in Defence of the Emperors *Maximus* and *Balbinus*, when the Women were ſo reſolute, that they parted with their Hair to make Bow-ſtrings for the Garriſon. In remembrance of which, the Senate dedicated a Temple here to *Venus the Bald*. *Maximinus* was kill'd under the Walls, and all his Children put to the Sword, for which the Soldiers gave this Reaſon, *Peſſimi canis catulus non eſt relinquendus*, *i. e.* That all the Whelps of ſo bad a Litter ought to be deſtroy'd. It was afterwards ruin'd by *Attila* and his *Huns* in 452, after three Years Siege, wherein 37000 Citizens fell, and the reſt narrowly eſcaped to the Mountains. *La Forreſt* ſays, The Seat of the Patriarch was remov'd, upon the Deſtruction of it by the *Lombards* in 590, to *Grado*, whence the Biſhop of that Place has ſtill the Name of Patriarch; and at laſt it was remov'd to *Udine*, the Capital of *Friuli*, in the *Venetian* Dominions. Since which, *Aquileia* is become only a poor Piſher Village. *La Forreſt* ſays, the Town lies on the Conflux of the *Anſa* and *Torre*, near the Shoar of the *Adriatick*, but according to *Mell* and *Sanſon*, it lies in a fort of an Iſland form'd by two Rivers. Long. 32. 34. Lat. 46. about 50 Miles N. E. from *Venice*.

2. *Palma Nova*, a Town built by the *Venetians* in 1594. 'Tis thought to be the largeſt regular Fortification in *Europe*. 'Tis encompaſſed with a Wall, and a Ditch 30 Paces broad and 12 deep, which they keep dry, to hinder the Air from putrifying, to which 'tis very ſubject in this Place; but they can let in the Water at pleaſure. In the Center of the Town, there's fix'd a Standard over a Triple-Well, in the middle of a Sexangular Piazza, whence there's a good Proſpect of the Three Gates, and Six chief Streets of the City. In the middle of the great Bridge, croſs the River which runs by the Town, there's a Drawbridge ſo artfully made, that a Centinel, by a ſingle Touch of a ſmall Piece of Iron with his Foot, can draw it as he ſees occaſion; ſo that this Town is now the great Bulwark of the *Venetian* State, and of all *Italy* on this ſide, it being the Road by which the *Huns* formerly, and the *Turks* ſince, have made their Incurſions as far as *Treviſo*. From this Town to the Sea, the *Venetians* have cut a large Canal, by which Veſſels can ſupply the Town upon occaſion. It lies about 12 Miles N. W. from *Aquileia*.

3. *Udene*, or *Udina*, the largeſt and beſt Peopl'd Town in *Friuli*, being about five Miles in Compaſs, and containing above 15000 Inhabitants. It was formerly the Seat of the *Venetian* Procurator or Lieutenant, but comes ſhort of *Palma Nova* for Strength and Beauty. It lies, according to *Sanſon*, 12 Miles N. W. from *Palma Nova* on the ſame River.

4. *Ciudad de Friuli*, Lat. *Forum Julii*, an ancient Colony belonging to the *Carni*, according to *Ptolomy* and *Tacitus*. *Paulus Diaconus* calls it *Caſtrum Julienſe*. *Sanſon* places it 12 Miles N. from *Palma Nova* on the River *Natiſone*: 'Tis ſubject to the *Venetians*.

5. *Gortz*, or *Göritz*, Lat. *Goritia*, Capital of a County of the ſame Name in *Friuli*; which has ſeveral leſſer Towns and Villages under its Juriſdiction; 'tis ſuppoſed to have been anciently call'd *Noritia*, and is one of thoſe Places from whence the ancient *Tauriſci* are ſuppoſed to have changed their Name into *Norici*, as *Lazius* thinks; who is alſo of Opinion, that the Counts of *Tyrol* had their Origin from the Counts of this Place. 'Tis an ancient Town, and remarkable for the Defeat of *Dieterich*, King of the *Goths*, by *Odoacrus* the King of the *Heruli* near it. 'Tis divided into the Upper and Lower: The former was built for Defence of the latter, in which the Governor, and others of Quality, have their Houſes. Dr. *Nicholſon* obſerves, That the

Digitized by Google

the *Wendiſh* or *Sclavonian* Tongue reaches no further W. than this Place; that the Citizens ſpeak a corrupt *Latin*, which comes nearer the *French* than the *Italian* Dialect, ſo that the other *Italians* can ſcarce underſtand them; but in their Courts of Judicature, and Papers of State, they uſe the *German*, becauſe they are ſubject to the Emperor. The *Venetians* took this Town in 1508, but were forc'd to ſurrender it next Year to the Emperor *Maximilian* I. They attempted it again in vain in 1616. It lies about 12 Miles N. E. from *Palma Nova*.

6. *Gradiſca*, a ſmall Town, about 6 Miles S. W. from *Goritz*, upon a River of the ſame Name. It was built in the Fifteenth Century, to put a ſtop to the Incurſions of the *Turks*, who had ſeveral times landed in the Neghbourhood. *Cluverius* ſuppoſes it to be that which the *Romans* call'd, *Ad Undecimum lapidem*.

7. *Idria*, a famous Town among the Mountains of this County on the Borders of *Carniola*, about 18 Miles N. E. from *Goritz*, on a ſmall River of the ſame Name, which after a great Rain ſwells ſo conſiderably, as to convey great Quantities of Fir-Trees, and other Fuel for the Mines, from the neighbouring Mountains. 'Tis chiefly noted for Mines of Quickſilver; the Entrance to which is in the Town, and their deepeſt Pit is above 120 Fathoms. In thoſe Mines they have Virgin Quickſilver, which diſcovers it ſelf without help of Fire, and is plainly to be ſeen in the Earth and Ore, or falls down in ſmall Drops, and ſometimes Streams out in good Quantities. They have another ſort not ſo fine, which is ſeparated from the Earth by Water in a Sieve, and needs no Extraction by Fire. Their plain Quickſilver is not at firſt perceiv'd by the Eye, but forc'd out of the *Mercury* by the Furnace. This Ore is of a dark Colour mix'd with red, which is beaten to pieces, and ſo refin'd, of which the Curious may find an Account in the Tranſactions of our Royal Society, *Vol. I. Page* 21.

8. *Pontafel*, or *Pont a fel*, ſo call'd from a Bridge over the *Fela* or *Pellach*, on which it ſtands. The Middle of the Bridge is the Boundary betwixt the Duke of *Carinthia*, and the *Venetian* Territories in *Friuli*. The Citizens ſpeak good *Italian* and *High Dutch*. *Lazius* obſerves, that the Banks of the *Fela* are ſubject to Three different Potentates. The Houſe of *Auſtria* has Part as far as the Fort *Cluſius*, another Part belongs to the Dioceſe of *Bamberg*, and the Third belongs to the *Venetians*, of which this Town is Part. The rich Valley in which this Town ſtands, is by the *Latins* call'd, *Beloia Vallis*. In 1661 the *Auſtrians* ſtorm'd this Town, and made a great Slaughter among the *Venetians*, who ſoon after recover'd the Town, took a bloody Revenge, and invaded *Carinthia*. *Sanſon* places it 22 Miles N. W. from *Caidad de Friuli*, and puts another Town of the ſame Name on the N. ſide of the Bridge, which belongs to the Imperialiſts. Dr. *Nicholſon* mentions *Concordia*, another Town in this Country, about 32 Miles W. from *Aquileia*, formerly a noble City that was ruin'd by *Attila*, King of the *Huns*, and is now only a Village: And *Grada*, the Seat of the Patriarch over the neighbouring Iſles, with ſome others of leſs Note on the Coaſts.

Karſtia.

THis is a ſmall Province betwixt *Friuli* and *Iſtria*, and is commonly reckon'd Part of the former. 'Tis little taken Notice of by Geographers or Hiſtorians, being remarkable for little, except a Breed of good Horſes, whence moſt of the Princes and Nobles of *Italy* furniſh their Stables. 'Tis a *Peninſula* almoſt incirel'd with the Rivers *Alben* and *Liſonzo*, and according to *Mercator's* Map, is about 35 Miles in Length, and above 20 in Breadth. *La Forreſt* ſays, 'Twas diſmembred from *Friuli* and *Iſtria* in 1500, and is divided into Upper and Lower, and the County of *Gruitz*. In this Province is the famous River *Timavus*, mention'd by *Virgil* in the Firſt Book of his *Æneids*. It riſes in the *Alps*, as ſome ſay, is call'd by the Name of *Recca* for ſome Space, runs afterwards under Ground for 41 ½ Miles, and where it breaks out again is call'd *Timavus*, and falls into the Gulph of *Trieſte* by 12 ſmall Channels.

The

Digitized by Google

The chief Towns.

1. *Trieſte*, Lat. *Tergeſtum*, whence the adjoining Bay was call'd *Sinus Tergeſtinus*, now the Gulph of *Trieſte*. 'Twas firſt a *Roman* Colony, then fell to the *Venetians*, and at laſt to the Houſe of *Auſtria*, to whom 'tis ſtill ſubject. *La Forreſt* ſays, it was built out of the Ruins of the ancient *Tergeſtum* of the *Carnians*; the Ruins of which are ſtill to be ſeen on a neighbouring Mountain. The chief Trade of the Town is in Salt that is made here, of which they export great Quantities. 'Tis the only Harbour that belongs to the Houſe of *Auſtria*, but neither ſafe nor large, ſays *Baudrand*. 'Tis defended by two Caſtles, and lies upon the Frontiers of the *Venetians*, by whom 'twas taken in 1507; but afterwards reſtor'd to the Emperor. *Moll* places it 20 Miles E. from *Aquileia*. The Town is little, but well fortified and inhabited, and is a Biſhop's See, Suffragan to *Aquileia*. The adjacent Country produces that Wine which the *Germans* call *Reinfal*.

2. *Heydſhena*, on the River *Kobel*, near the Borders of *Carniola*, within the County of *Goritz*, anciently a noted City, but now a ſmall Market-Town.

3. *Proſeg*, or *Proſeck*, 7 Miles N. W. from *Trieſte*, ſubject to the Houſe of *Auſtria*, who have a noble Revenue hence out of the Wine made and ſold here; for which it was ſo famous in the Days of *Auguſtus*, that his Wife *Livia* made uſe of no other Cordial when ſhe was above 70 Years of Age. 'Tis ſo ſtrong, that 'twill keep for a Man's Life-time. *Pliny* deſcribes its excellent Qualities in the 4th Book of his *Nat. Hiſt. Cap. 6.* The *Romans* call'd this Town and the neighbouring Country *Peucinum*.

4. *Wipack*, ſo call'd from a River of the ſame Name, on which it ſtands. 'Tis alſo famous for rich Wine, from which, and the Horſe-Fairs kept there, the H. of *Auſtria* have a great Revenue. The Wine is carried on Horſe-back over the Mountains to *Carniola*, and from thence conveyed into the Empire. The Town lies about 25 Miles E. from *Goritz*.

Iſtria, *or* Hiſtria,

IS a *Peninſula*, having the *Adriatick* on the E. W. and S. and is ſeparated on the N. from *Carniola* by the *German Alps*. The Country is Woody and Mountainous, and the Air ſo unwholeſome, that when the *Venetians* firſt ſubdu'd it, they were forc'd to hire People to dwell here. From that Part which is ſtill ſubject to 'em, they have Timber and Stone for building Houſes and Ships. Some reckon the ancient Inhabitants to have been thoſe of *Colchos*, who being ſent to purſue *Jaſon* and his *Argonauts*, dar'd not to return home, becauſe they miſs'd 'em, and therefore ſettled here; but the *Iſtri*, from whence the Country has its Name, were brought hither long after by *Japis*, an *Etolian*, from the Banks of the *Iſter*; and from this *Japis*, ſome Latin Writers call the Country *Japigia*. While the *Roman* Empire flouriſh'd, *Iſtria* was one of its Provinces; but when it decay'd, recover'd its Liberty, and continued free till about 938, that the *Venetians* being incens'd with their Piracies, took ſeveral of their Towns; and in 1190, laid moſt of the Country under Tribute, and in this State it continues ſtill.

The only City in this Country ſubject to the Houſe of *Auſtria*, Dr. *Nicholſon* ſays is *St. Veit*, on the Shore of the *Adriatick*, at the Mouth of the River *Flaum*, betwixt the Iſlands of *Cherſo* and *Vegia*, about 68 Miles S. E. from *Aquileia*, and 40 from *Trieſte*. On the top of Mount *Terſtat*, near this City, there's a fair *Franciſcan* Monaſtery, from which one goes down to the River by a great Number of Steps. In the Suburbs, there's a *Capuchin* Monaſtery, where a memorable Peace was concluded in 1618, betwixt the Emperor and the *Turks*. Hither the *Auſtrians* of Quality ſend their Children to be taught *Italian*, which is here ſpoke in its Purity. The Town is well fortified, and defended by a Caſtle on a Hill. *Baudrand* ſays, it has a ſmall Harbour, but not very ſafe. For ſuch Towns here as belong to the *Venetians*, we refer them to the Deſcription of that Republick.

The

The Dutchy of Carinthia.

THE *Germans* call it *Karndten*. It lies in *Norico Mediterraneo*, and was formerly called *Lauriana*, and *Patria Sclavorum*; but in *Charlemagne*'s Time, was called *Carinthia*, from the *Carni*, a Branch of the *Venedi*. It has *Saltzburg* and *Styria* on the N. *Carniola* and *Friuli* on the S. the Bishoprick of *Brixen* and Part of *Saltzburg* on the W. and Part of *Styria* on the E.

The Country is somewhat cold and barren, and every where Mountainous. They have enough of Corn, but have their Wine from their Neighbours. Their most remarkable Mountains for Height are, St. *Ulrick*'s, St. *Hailen*'s, and St. *Lawrence*'s. On the latter, the Peasants have Annual Foot-Races, and other Diversions, on the Three Holy-Nails Day, the 3d *Friday* after *Easter*, in Remembrance of the 3 Nails on which they suppose our Saviour to have been nail'd to the Cross. They have large Lakes in this Country, which they call by the Name of Seas: The largest of them is about two *German* M. long, of a considerable Breadth, and best stock'd with Fish. The largest River here is the *Drave*, into which fall abundance of lesser Streams, as it runs through the Country. This Dutchy is subject to the Emperor, and the Clergy own the Archbishop of *Saltzburg* as their Metropolitan. *Moll* makes it 120 Miles from E. to W. and about 32 Miles broad from N. to S. 'Tis divided into *Upper* and *Lower*. *La Forrest* says, it lies in *Upper Pannonia*, was anciently Part of the Dutchy of *Bavaria*, and given by *Charlemagne* to *Ingevon*, whose Succession is hard to determine. *Ottocarus* King of *Bohemia* seiz'd it; but was drove out by the Emperor *Rodolph* I. who gave it in 1282 to *Mainard* Count of *Tyrol*, on Condition, That when his Male-Issue fail'd, it should return to the House of *Austria*, which happen'd in 1381. *Cluverius* says, the ancient Inhabitants were Part of the *Ambisontii*. The Peasants pretend to a Right of investing their Duke, thus; He must be clad like a Countryman, with a Shepherd's Hook in his Hand, and go into a Meadow; a Peasant gets up on a Marble Stone, and presents him with two Beeves, one fat, and the other lean; or, as some say, with a black Cow and a Mare, and asks him, If he be a Judge? If he seeks the Good of the Country? If he be Noble, a Person of Merit, a Christian, and Defender of the Faith? The Prince answering, Yes; the Peasant gives him a gentle Blow on the Cheek, and recommends Justice to him; then the Duke gets upon the Stone, lays aside his Shepherd's Hook, and with a drawn Sword in his Hand, promises Justice to the People, and then goes to our Lady's Church at St. *Veit*, which lies near the Place; and putting on his Princely Habits, he returns to the Meadow, where he receives the Homage of his Subjects. The Peasants had this Privilege, because they embrac'd Christianity long before their Nobles, who were prevail'd with to do the like by *Charlemagne*. *La Forrest* says, That *Lower Carinthia* belongs to the House of *Austria*, and the *Upper* is divided betwixt the Archbishop of *Saltzburg* and the Bishop of *Bamberg*.

Their chief Towns.

1. CLagenfurt, on the *Glan*, their Metropolis, and the Residence of their ancient Dukes, about 10 Miles from the Frontiers of *Carniola*, in Long. 32. 12. Lat. 47. 'Tis the neatest Town in the Country, of a square Figure, and defended by a good Wall. In the middle of the Piazza, there's a noble Fountain, over which there is a prodigious Dragon made of one Stone, and *Hercules* standing before it with his Club. The Country-People fancy it to be the Statue of a Peasant, who kill'd a great Dragon; but Dr. *Nicholson* says, 'tis one of the *Roman* Monuments brought from *Saal*, that were plac'd in the neighbouring Towns. *Æneas Sylvius* relates a very strange old Custom, which he says the Citizens of *Clagenfurt* observ'd in his Time, That if a Man were shrewdly suspected of Theft, they hang'd him, and 3 Days after judg'd of the Fact: If he were found guilty, they let his Body hang till it rotted away; if otherwise, they took down the Corps, bury'd it upon the publick Stock, and said Prayers for his Soul.

2. St. *Veit*,

Digitized by Google

2. St. *Veit*, about 8 Miles N. from *Clagenfurt*: 'Twas ſo call'd from one of that Name, who was their Apoſtle, in the Time of *Diocleſian*. It was formerly their Metropolis, and a Biſhop's See; but now only noted for its Antiquity. The *Latins* call it *Fanum Sancti Viti*. It ſtands on the Conflux of two Rivers, in a fruitful Valley. About a *German* Mile from hence, ſtand the Ruins of the ancient City *Solla* or *Saal*, called by *Laxius*, *Colonia Solvenſis*. 'Twas deſtroy'd by *Attila* the *Hun* in 451, 823 Years after its Foundation. Store of *Roman* Coins, Medals, and other Antiquities, are found in the Field or Meadow near it, where ſtand Four-ſquar'd Stones, reſembling two Elbow-Chairs, Back to Back, in which the Dukes of *Carinthia* were inveſted, as mention'd above; when, Dr. *Nicholſon* ſays, the Duke or his Deputy is obliged to accept the lean Ox, and return the fat one, which are preſented him. Upon theſe Stones there are old *Roman* Inſcriptions, which bear a greater Face of Antiquity than the Stones themſelves. The Church of *Saal* is ſtill ſtanding, and in it the Tomb of *Modeſtus*, St. *Vite*'s Companion.

3. *Frieſach*, on the Borders of *Styria*, 15 Miles N. E. from St. *Veit*. 'Tis reckon'd the oldeſt Town in the Country, ſtands in a fruitful Soil amongſt Hills and Mountains, and is defended by a ſtrong Caſtle on a Rock. Some derive its Name from the ancient *Friſi*. 'Twas called *Verunum* by the *Romans*, from its old Name *Veruan*, which in the Language of the Country ſignified Boars, that abounded in thoſe Parts. There were Gold Mines in the neighbouring Mountains, which were exhauſted long ago. The Town is encompaſſed with good Walls, and a broad Ditch.

4. *Straſburg*, on the River *Gurck*, at the bottom of a high Mountain, the Reſidence of the Biſhop of *Gurck*, who ſwears Fealty to the Emperor for his Temporals, and Canonical Obedience to the Archbiſhop of *Saltzburg* in Spirituals. *Hieronymus Baldus*, the famous *Italian* Poet, was Biſhop of this Place.

5. *Gurck*, 12 Miles N. W. from St. *Veit*, a Market-Town, where the Ruins of an old Monaſtery was turn'd into a Cathedral, and made a Biſhop's See in 1073 by the Archbiſhop of *Saltzburg*, who has a Right to chuſe one Biſhop in three, the Emperor chuſing the other two.

6. *Villack*, on the *Drave*, thought by ſome to be the old *Julium Carnicum*, or *Colonia Julia*; but *Laxius* thinks it to be *Antonini's Beloa*. *Sanſon* places it about 18 Miles W. from *Clagenfurt*, near the Conflux of three Rivers. They have a Bridge over the *Drave*, which brings them a good Trade by Paſſengers betwixt *Italy* and *Germany*. 'Tis noted for its fine Paintings, and belongs to the Biſhop of *Bamberg*, who appoints their Governor once in three Years. The Emperor *Charles* V. fled hither from *Inſpruck*, where he was almoſt ſurpris'd by the Proteſtants in 1552. An *Engliſh* Mile from the Town, there are ſeveral good Baths; two of them are ſulphureous, moderately hot, of an acid, but of no unpleaſant Taſte. They are large, and have Stairs to go down to them, with little Rooms of Wood about them, for the Conveniency of thoſe who bathe.

7. *Gemund*, on the Mouth of the *Malentein*, according to *Sanſon*, 40 Miles W. from *Gurck*; but *Moll* places it about 17 from thence. This Town and its Territory was bought from *Maximilian* I. by the Archbiſhop of *Saltzburg* for 30000 Crowns, who repair'd the Caſtle and Fortifications, and endow'd the Hoſpital; ſo that 'tis under his Juriſdiction.

8. St. *Andrew's*, a neat Town on the Banks of the *Lavant*. *Laxius* takes it to be *Pliny's Colonia Flaviana*, and the Biſhop who reſides here calls himſelf *Flaventinenſis*. This Biſhoprick was founded in 1221 by the Archbiſhop of *Saltzburg*, to whom, with the adjacent Country, 'tis ſubject. *Sanſon* places it 22 Miles S. E. from *Gurck*.

9. *Lavamund*, at the Mouth of the *Lavant*, 13 Miles S. E. from St. *Andrew's*, is a Biſhop's See, Suffragan to *Saltzburg*, and ſtands in the pleaſant Valley of *Lavantal*.

10. *Volkelmark*, on the *Drave*. *Wolfperg*, *Pontafela*, and ſome other Market-Towns in this Country, are not deſcrib'd by Geographers. Dr. *Nicholſon* mentions *Mulſtat* in this Country, formerly called *Ad Mille Statuas*, becauſe, as ſome Hiſtorians ſay, there was a Temple here in the Time of Paganiſm with 1000 Statues. *Mercator* places it in a Lake above two *German* Leagues S. E. from *Gemund*. *La Forreſt* ſays, That *Werd*

and *Folkmark*, in *Lower Carinthia*, are Towns of good Trade; and that *Pontafel* is an important Paſs on the Road from *Vienna* to *Venice*.

The Biſhoprick of Brixen.

IT has *Tirol* on the N. and W. *Saltzburg* and Part of *Carinthia* on the E. Part of *Trent*, and of the Dominions of *Venice*, on the S. Dr. *Nicholſon* makes it Part of the County of *Tirol*; but *Moll* and *Sanſon* make it diſtinct; and the *Matricula* of the Empire makes it Part of the Circle of *Auſtria*.

Brixen, from whence it has its Name, lies in a pleaſant Valley, at the Conflux of the *Eyſach* and *Rientz*, about 12 Miles from the Frontiers of *Venice*, in Long. 30. 45. Lat. 46. 45. 'Tis ſuppoſed to be *Antonin's Sublabione*; but Dr. *Nicholſon* thinks it ought to have been writ *Subſavione*, becauſe there's a Place not far from it called *Seven* or *Savio*, from whence the Biſhoprick was tranſlated to *Brixen*, *Savia*, and ſome of the neighbouring Towns, having been deſtroy'd by the *Huns*. *La Forreſt* ſays, the Town lies at the Foot of Mount *Brener*; that the Biſhoprick was founded in 370, and is Suffragan to *Saltzburg*; yet the Biſhop is Lord of the Place, and a Prince of the Empire. The Houſes are well built, almoſt all of the ſame Size, and curiouſly painted on the outſide. There are Vaults which go from one Side of the Street to the other, and in theſe Vaults their beſt Shops are kept. They have three very fine Churches, which join to one another; over againſt which there's a fine Square, having on one Side the Biſhop's Palace, which is a ſquare Building, encompaſſed with a Ditch, and the Entry is defended by 4 Braſs Cannon. Thô the Biſhop be a Prince of the Empire, Dr. *Nicholſon* ſays, there lies an Appeal from him to the Count of *Tyrol*'s Court. The Mineral Wells in and about this City occaſion a great Concourſe of Strangers. That called the *Virgin-Well* is of the greateſt Note. They have likewiſe a conſiderable Income from the Red Wine which is exported from hence to the neighbouring Countries. *Moll* makes this Biſhoprick about 50 Miles long, and 32 broad. We find no other Place of this Biſhoprick deſcrib'd except *Brauneck*, or *Bruneck*, which *La Forreſt* ſays is a conſiderable Fortreſs belonging to the Biſhoprick. It lies on the River *Adige*, 15 Miles N. E. from *Brixen*. The Lordſhip of *Veldes* in *Carniola* belongs to this Biſhoprick.

The Biſhoprick of Trent,

HAS *Tirol* and Part of *Brixen* on the N. and the Dominions of *Venice* on the S. and E. *Moll* makes it 62 Miles long from E. to W. and about 40 Miles broad from N. to S.

Strabo, *Pliny*, and *Ptolemy*, call the Inhabitants of this Country *Tridentini*, and the Town *Tridentum*, from whence the preſent Name *Trent* is contracted. Some derive the Name *Tridentum* from the Trident of *Neptune*, who, among other Idols, is ſaid to have been worſhip'd here. Others derive it *à tribus Torrentibus*, three ſmall Rivers which fall into the *Adige* at this City; and others derive it, with very much Probability, from three ſharp Peaks or Rocks of the *Alps*, reſembling three Teeth, which hang over this City. *Leander Alberti* ſays, the Town was firſt built by a Prince of *Tuſcany*; but afterwards demoliſh'd, and then rebuilt by the *Cenomani*, and wall'd about with a ſtrong Stone Wall by *Theodorick* King of *Berne*. After the Invaſion of the *Goths*, 'twas ſubject to the Princes of *Lombardy*, then to the Emperors of *Rome*, and afterwards to a Count of its own, who was Vaſſal to the Duke of *Bavaria*. At laſt 'twas made an Imperial Town; but is now ſubject to its own Biſhop, a Vaſſal to the Emperor, who, as Count of *Tirol*, has the Superiority of this Biſhoprick. The City lies in a pleaſant Valley, in Long. 30. 2. Lat. 46. 7½. 17 Miles from the Frontiers of *Venice*, and 50 S. W. from *Brixen*. 'Tis encompaſſed with ſteep and unpaſſable Hills, ſo that there is ſcarce any coming to it but from *Verona* on the S. and from *Tirol* on the N. In Summer, the Rays of the Sun, reflected from the Flinty Rocks which encompaſs it, make the Heat almoſt intollerable, as the Cold reflected from them is in the Winter: But in the Spring and Autumn, their Air is wholeſome and temperate. They have Plenty of Wine, Oil, and Fruit, in their Fields and Vineyards; but little Corn.

Their

Digitized by Google

Their Wine has a good Taſte, is ſtrong, and of a pale red Colour. The Inhabitants, by reaſon of their Situation on the Borders of *Germany* and *Italy*, ſpeak both *High-Dutch* and *Italian* very well. Some Geographers have reproach'd them with the Character of *Germanorum Sentina*, and *Italorum Refugium*, as if it were a Place of Rendezvous of the worſt ſort of People of both Countries. But Dr. *Nicholſon* obſerves, That they are extreme obliging to Strangers, very faithful to their Promiſe, and tender of doing any thing inconſiſtent with Humanity or Friendſhip. The Biſhoprick was founded by St. *Hermagoras*, who made one *Jovinus* their firſt Biſhop. The Dioceſe was afterwards much enlarged by the Emperor *Conrad* II. and confirm'd by ſucceeding Emperors, who made the Count of *Tirol* Protector of the Biſhop, and obliged him to aſſiſt him in caſe of Invaſion. Since the Time of *Frederick* II. the Biſhops have been reckon'd Princes of the Empire. Several Princes of which, and of *Italy*, pay Fealty and Homage to this See, for ſome Part of their Eſtates they hold of it. The chief of 'em are, the Duke of *Mantua*, and the Count of *Tirol*, who pay them Annually a certain Quit-Rent, and many Earls and Barons do the like. In Temporal Matters, the Biſhop acknowledges the Supremacy of the Emperor, as Count of *Tirol*, who, during the Vacancy of the See, ſends a Governor, who preſides there till a new Biſhop be choſen. The Chapter is compos'd of People of the Firſt Quality, who chuſe a Biſhop from among themſelves. Dr. *Nicholſon* and *Baudrand* ſay, the Biſhop is Suffragan to the Patron of *Aquileia*; but *La Ferreſt* ſays, he is Suffragan to the Archbiſhop of *Saltzburg*, which is more probable, ſince by the Treaty of *Munſter* he was made Primate of *Germany*; and that *Trent* is included in the Circle of *Auſtria*. The Town is moſt remarkable for its Antiquity. 'Tis pretty populous, tho' not very large, and is defended by an old Caſtle. There are many ſtately Palaces in it, and ſeveral beautiful Churches. The Cathedral, dedicated to St. *Vigil*, is a fine Piece of Architecture, with Marble Pillars of an extraordinary Height and Thickneſs. The Church of St. *Mary Major* is noted for the Council of *Trent*'s being held in it, and the Hiſtory of that Council is finely painted on its Walls. 'Tis noted alſo for its Organ, which counterfeits all ſorts of Inſtruments, and the ſinging of Birds ſo naturally, that 'tis hard to diſtinguiſh them. This Town was bombarded from the 3d of *September*, 1703. to the 8th, by the Duke of *Vendoſme*, after he had made himſelf Maſter of the adjacent Country.

But that which makes it moſt famous, is the Council which was held here, being open'd the 4th of *January*, 1545, and continued till 1563; during which Time, there are ſaid to have been here no leſs than 4000 Perſons of a Publick Character, with their Attendants, who were all accommodated in this City; among whom were 7 Cardinals, 3 Patriarchs, 33 Archbiſhops, 235 Biſhops, 7 Abbots, 7 Vicars-General, and 146 Divines, beſides a great Number of Ambaſſadors. During the firſt 18 Years they ſat, they were ſeveral times aſſembled, and ſuſpended without doing any thing material; but in 1562, it was managed with ſo much Artifice by the Court of *Rome*, that nothing was determin'd by the Council, but what was firſt reſolv'd on by the Cardinals in their Conclave at *Rome*, which gave juſt Ground for the bitter Sarcaſm of the *Hungarian* Biſhops preſent at the Council, *That the Holy Ghoſt was ſent thither in a Cloak-Bag from* Rome. The Curious may find an Account of their Proceedings in the famous Hiſtory of this Council by Father *Paul*, and in the Review of it by *Du Ramchin*, a *French* Courtier, whoſe Work was tranſlated into *Engliſh* by Dr. *Langbain*, and printed at *Oxford* in 1638. But ſince this Council is the Standard of modern Popery in *Italy*, and all the other Popiſh Countries that ſubmit to its Deciſions, we ſhall, for the Satisfaction of the Publick, give a brief Account of it as follows:

Father *Paul*, in the 2d Page of his Hiſtory of the Council of *Trent*, ſays, "This 'Council was deſir'd and procur'd by Godly Men, to re-unite the Church, which 'began to be divided; but hath ſo eſtabliſh'd the Schiſm, and made the Party ſo 'obſtinate, that the Diſcords are become 'irreconcilable; and being managed by 'Princes for Reformation of the Eccleſiaſtical Diſcipline, has occaſioned the great'eſt Deformation that ever was ſince Chriſtianity began. And the Council being

Digitized by Google

'hop'd for by the Bishops, to regain the 'Episcopal Authority, which was for most 'part usurp'd by the Pope, has made them 'lose it altogether, and brought them into 'greater Servitude: And whereas on the 'contrary, it was fear'd and avoided by the 'See of *Rome*, as that which might mode-'rate their exorbitant Power, which, from 'small Beginnings, has by several Degrees 'come to an unlimited Excess; it has so 'establish'd and confirm'd the same over 'that Part of it which remains subject un-'to it, that it was never so great, and so 'firmly rooted.

There can be no better Proof of what Father *Paul* says, than the Review of that Council by *M. Ranchin* above-mention'd, who tells us, *Page* 1. "That this Council 'was call'd on purpose to reform those Abu-'ses of the Pope, and Court of *Rome*, that 'were the Occasion of the Schism, which 'had rais'd all *Christendom* in Arms, and 'had bred Disturbances for 200 Years and 'upwards in sundry Councils, which Pope '*Hadrian* confess'd in the Diet at *Nurem-'berg*, that some of the Reformers of Pope '*Paul* III. could not deny; but the Popes 'turn'd Cat in Pan, and carried the Matter 'so, that instead of a natural Birth, the 'Council was deliver'd of a Monster; and 'instead of a Synodical Decree, had brought 'forth a Papal Bull; instead of an Extirpa-'tion of Abuses, had brought forth a Nur-'sery of Errors; a Depravation, instead of 'a Reformation; a Source of Injustice, and 'a Legitimation of all the Pope's Usurpa-'tions upon the Authority of the Church, 'Emperors, Kings, and Commonwealths; 'and, in a Word, upon all *Christendom*, with 'all the Estates therein, as well Temporal 'as Spiritual. That the Pope and the Court 'of *Rome* were in a manner compelled by 'Violence to the holding this Council for 'excepting honest *Hadrian*, who went about 'it with an upright Intention; all the rest 'would have gladly been quit of it. *Cle-'ment* VII. did openly contradict the Pro-'posal of it, which *Charles* V. at his Coro-'nation caus'd to be made by his Chancellor 'at *Bononia*: But the Emperor pursuing 'his Instances with the Successors of *Cle-'ment*, they were forc'd to make a Shew of 'an Inclination to it; yet so as they stood 'a consulting 25 Years about calling it, 'from 1522, that *Hadrian*, by his Legate 'at the Diet of *Nuremberg*, promis'd it, till '1546, still giving out fair Pretences, and 'studying new Occasions to delay it, posting 'it from one to another, and passing it over 'as a Debt to their Successors. And after 'they had set about it, they manag'd it so, 'that they kept it betwixt living and dying 'for 18 Years, taking their Time on pur-'pose, that they might level their Stroke 'right. Many of their Predecessors had left 'their Weapons in Councils; *Germany* was 'fatal to them; and the Remembrance of 'the Councils of *Constance* and *Basle* madded 'them, when they thought upon the De-'posal of so many Popes, the Discipline to 'which they had been made subject, and 'the cutting short of their Power by the 'Councils. They had observ'd the Saying 'of Pope *John* XXIII. *The Place of the Council 'is all in all*; and that he would not have it 'in a Place where the Emperor had the up-'per Hand; so that it necessarily concern'd 'them to save themselves by Slight, to shuf-'fle on the Time, to spin out Delays, to 'pump for Pretences; and at last, when 'they could no longer shift it, 'twas neces-'sary for them to pitch upon such a City 'as would be sure to them, as depended on 'them, and where they had absolute Au-'thority; and such at that Time was *Trent*. 'In the next Place, they would admit none 'for Members, but such as they had en-'gag'd before-hand, that they might make 'it more firm for them, and make them 'proceed slow or quick, as they saw Cause. 'Then they broke off and defer'd it; and 'when they found their Party uneasy, they 'adjourn'd it to another Place, particularly 'to *Bononia*, on Pretence of the Badness of 'the Air. Then they solicited all Catho-'lick Princes utterly to extirpate the Pro-'testants; and when that would not do, 'they scatter'd Reports among the Catho-'lick Princes to set them together by the 'Ears, and enter'd into Leagues with the 'stronger Side to support their Greatness, 'and raise it higher. They us'd all possible 'Means to win the Bishops, and the rest 'that had Voices; and the Council gave 'em 'great Promises, and made them Presents, 'till they could give them Dignities and 'Benefices, on Condition, That they should 'determine nothing but according to the

Digitized by Google

Pleasure of the Holy See; to anathematize all the Opinions of the *Lutherans* and *Calvinists*, without Exception; to make good Decrees in Appearance for the Reformation of Manners, and Ecclesiastical Discipline; about Points unnecessary, or such as never came in Question; and, under-hand, to forge others to confirm the groundless Usurpations of the Pope over Christian Princes, and to make his Power truly Monarchical; so as he would make all the Kings and Princes of the Earth to tremble at his Voice. They were also to disannul such Decrees of the Councils of *Constance* and *Basle* that were any way prejudicial to the Pope, and either covertly repeal them, or take such oblique Methods as might avoid the Force of them. And in the last Place, they were not to meddle with the Power of the Pope, with the Abuses and Misdemeanors of his Court, nor to suffer him to be charg'd with Neglect of his Spiritual Charge, and the Good of Souls, or with any unjust Attempts.

This Author gives us a further Account, 'That the Kings of *France* did always reject the Instances made by the Pope, and other Princes, and the Provincial Councils of *France* by the Pope's Instigation; 'That the Pope was a Party, and therefore could not call the Council, nor be Judge in his own Cause, according to his own Canon Law, because of the several Appeals put up against him by Protestants and Papists. That the Papacy stood in need of Reformation, as had been confessed by Pope *Hadrian* VI. by the Councils of *Constance*, *Basle*, and *Pisa*: Therefore the Pope could not be Judge. That he had condemn'd the Protestants before they were called to Council; therefore they were not obliged to obey his Summons, nor submit to the Judgment of their known Enemy. That the Pope had stir'd up several Wars in the Time of the Council, and particularly in *France*, which hinder'd many that ought to have been present. That the *Germans*, *English*, and *French*, had demanded that the Council should be kept in a free Place, which *Trent* was not, being subject to the Pope, and the Passes stopt and guarded, which was a just Objection, as had been own'd in the like Case by the Council of *Pisa*; and therefore they protested against the Council's meeting at the *Lateran*; that where the Place of Judgment is not safe, there may be an Appeal. He adds, That all were not call'd to this Council who ought to have been call'd, not all the Clergy, nor yet all the Laity, which was contrary to ancient Custom: That the Members of *Trent* were the Pope's Creatures, as was complain'd by the Emperor, the *French* King, and the *German* Protestants, and as good as confessed by the Popes: That the Number of Bishops was so few, it could not be call'd a General Council: That the Emperor and *French* King complain'd of the indirect Dealings in the Council: That the *Germans*, the *English* and *French*, protested against this Council: And that Justice was deny'd in Things demanded by the Emperor, the K. of *France*, the Catholick Princes of *Germany*, and the Duke of *Bavaria*; tho many of the Abuses they desir'd to be reform'd, were confessed by the Deputies of Pope *Paul* III."

The Curious may see these, and many other Things to prove the Nullity of this Council, in those Two Authors, who being both Papists, cannot be justly suspected of Partiality.

Dr. *Nicholson* gives us this summary Account of their Proceedings.

At their first Meeting, the Pope's Legate declar'd the Causes of the Calamities of the Church. In their second Session, they read and confirm'd the Articles of Faith profess'd by all Members of the Catholick Church, according as 'tis in the Missal. The *Summa Conciliorum*, by *Carranzam*, says, they likewise confirm'd the Books of the Old and New Testament, with those of the Apocrypha, and Traditions. They also order'd the old vulgar Latin Translation to be used as Authentick in Churches and Schools; and that the Rule of Interpretation should be the Church, and the ancient Fathers. In the 4th Session, they decreed, That all Men ought to believe Original Sin was utterly taken away in Baptism, insomuch, that the Concupiscence which remains in our Natures after Baptism, is not to be accounted a Sin, until we give the Consent of our Minds to it. They decreed,

That

That the Virgin *Mary* was without Original Sin; and that before Regeneration, Man has a free Will to do Good, which being rous'd up and awak'd by God, is an Assistant to his Grace. In the 6th Session, they resolv'd, That Man is justified partly by Faith, and partly by Works; and Justification does by no means consist in a free Forgiveness of Sins, and the Free Imputation of the Righteousness of Christ to all Believers. In the 7th Session, That all Men who would be reputed Members of the Catholick Church, ought to believe that there are 7 Sacraments. These Decrees being pass'd, the Pope's Physician declar'd the Air of *Trent* to be corrupted, on which most of the Bishops were perswaded to remove to *Bononia*; but the *Spanish* Bishops refus'd to go thither. The Emperor's Minister protested against this Translation of the Council, and, in his Master's Name, declar'd, That what was done at *Bononia* should be void. Thus, after two Years, their Meeting was broke up in a Huff.

Their second Meeting was again at *Trent*, in the Time of Pope *Julius* III. *September* 1551, when the *French* Ambassador declar'd, That his Master was so perplex'd with Rebellions, he could not send his Bishops; and that the Council of *Trent* was not a General Council, but a Synod assembled for the Views of a few private Men, and therefore protested against it. In their 2d Session at this Meeting, they confirmed Transubstantiation: And in the 3d Session, That Penance and Extreme Unction were Sacraments of the New Testament. The Protestant Ambassadors offer'd to exhibit a Confession of their Faith; but the Pope's Legate did not receive it, because in the Title they did not signify their Willingness to submit to the Determination of the Council in all Matters of Faith. During this Time, the Elector of *Saxony* and the Emperor came to an open Rupture; and the Elector having taken *Augsburg*, the *Italian* Bishops retired from *Trent* in Precipitation.

The *Spanish* Prelates assembled however, and adjourned the Council for two Years; but did not meet again till *January* 1562, in the Time of Pope *Pius* IV. when they condemn'd *Luther*'s Books, and order'd several Books that had been writ since the Springing up of Heresy, as they call'd it, to be revis'd and reported. They decreed, That the Laity were not bound to communicate in both Kinds; That the Church had Power to order the outward Administrations of the Sacraments as she thought most convenient for the Good of the Receivers; That the Mass was a Propitiatory Sacrifice for the Quick and Dead; and anathematiz'd such as should dare to affirm, That there was no more than a Sacrifice of Thanksgiving, and a Commemoration of Christ and his Sufferings. They likewise declar'd Ordination to be a Sacrament, and made certain Canons for the Administration of it, and anathematiz'd those who should say, That there was not a Hierarchy in the Church of Divine Institution, consisting of Bishops, Presbyters, and Ministers; or such as should say, That the Bishops were not superior to Presbyters, or that the Power of the one and the other was the same. They likewise decreed, That the Church of *Rome*, or her Representative the Pope, had a Power to dispense with the 18th Chapter of *Leviticus*, not only in allowing Persons to marry who are there forbidden, but also to forbid Marriage betwixt such as the Law of God and Nature had allow'd it. In the 9th and last Session held the 3d of *December*, 1563, they confirmed the Doctrine of Purgatory, the Invocation of Saints, the Worshiping of Images and Relicks, granting of Indulgences, Superstitious Fasts, *&c.* and then put an End to the Council. Here 'tis fit to observe, Thas there was as little Regard shew'd to the Demands of the Emperor, the King of *France*, and the Catholick Princes of the Empire assembled in the Diet, as to the Demands of the Protestants.

The Emperor, as *Natalis Comes*, in the History of those Times, informs us, demanded a Reformation both of the Pope and Court of *Rome*; That the Number of Cardinals should be reduc'd; That scandalous Dispensations should be abrogated; That Monasteries should be brought under the Jurisdiction of the Bishops of the Diocese; That the Multitude of Canons and Decrees should be lessen'd, and Superstitious ones repeal'd; That Ecclesiastical Constitutions should be reduc'd to the Rules of God's Law; That none should be excommunicated but for publick Scandal; That the

Digitized by Google

the Breviaries and Mass Books should be purged of all that was not taken out of the Scripture; That Prayers should be allowed in the Vulgar Tongue; That Communion should be in both Kinds; That the Rigour of Fasting should be mitigated; That eating of Flesh might be licens'd, Priests Marriage allow'd, and several Glosses upon the Gospels raz'd out. The *French* Court demanded the like, and also that Psalms might be sung, the Sacraments administred, and a Catechism made in the Vulgar Tongue, that the People might be instructed what they ought to believe concerning the Worship of Images, Indulgences, Pilgrimages, Relicks of Saints, Fraternities; and that all Superstitious Errors might be removed from them; That Publick Penance might be restored for heinous Offences, Publick Fasts appointed for appeasing God's Wrath, and General Councils held once in 10 Years; That holding of Benefices in Trust and Commendams might be abolish'd, and conferr'd upon none but Persons of Merit, with Consent of the Bishops and People.

The Catholick Princes of *Germany* complain'd of these and many other Things, as forbidding of Meats, Marriages, the Abuse of Indulgences, against the excessive Number of Holidays, and against the Usurpation of the Clergy. The Duke of *Bavaria*'s Minister pressed earnestly for the Marriage of Priests, alledging for it, That in the last General Visitation of *Bavaria*, 'twas found, that there were not 3 in 100 Priests but what were either common Whoremongers, or privately married. He pressed also for Communion in both Kinds, and Reformation in Doctrine. But all these Demands were to no purpose; nor are we to wonder at it, since *M. Ranchin* tells us, That Pope *Paul* III. in 1538, appointed 9 Cardinals, and other Clergymen, to consider and advise him what was best to be done for Reforming the Church, and to tell him upon their Oaths the Truth, on Pain of Excommunication; and thô they did it, and pointed at many Things that wanted Reformation, yet he had no Regard to what they said.

Mr. *Ray*, in his Travels, says, That on the Front of the Quire of the Cathedral Church at *Trent*, there's a Latin Inscription, giving a short Account of the Council; by which it appears, that there were at this Council 13 Cardinal-Legates, 9 that were not Legates, 29 Ministers from Princes, 3 Patriarchs, 33 Archbishops, 233 Bishops, 18 Abbots, 12 Generals of Orders, 148 Doctors of Divinity, 18 Proctors or Deputies, 3 Officials of the Council, 9 Chantors, 4 Notaries, and 2 Couriers from the Pope.

Misson, in his Travels to *Italy*, says, the City stands on a flat Rock, of a sort of Red and White Marble, which furnishes Materials for Building; and that the City is subject to dangerous Inundations from the overflowing of the River, and some neighbouring Brooks, which fall down sometimes with such Impetuosity from the Mountains, that they roll great Rocks along with them into the Town, which is fortified only with a single Wall. In one of the Chapels of the Cathedral, they have a Crucifix as large as the Life, which the fabulous Priests say bow'd its Head, in Token of its Approbation of the Councils Decrees when they were proclaim'd under it. They add, That this Crucifix was made without Hands, and that no body knows the Materials it is composed of. The Church of St. *Mary Major*, where the Council sat, is built of a base sort of Marble; and the Organ in it, besides counterfeiting the Singing of Birds, resembles the Cries of several Beasts, and the beating of Drums. In St. *Peter*'s Church, they have a Chapel for St. *Simonin*, a Shoemaker's Son, who in the 28th Month of his Age was stole and murther'd by the *Jews*, who drank his Blood at one of their Feasts, and threw his Carcass into a Water-Pipe, where their Synagogue stood; and being thence carried into the River, it was found by Fishermen: Upon which the Murder was discover'd, 39 *Jews* executed, and the rest for ever baniish'd the City. Pope *Sixtus* IV. canoniz'd this Child, which being embalmed, is kept in a Case on the Altar of his Chapel, with the Knife, Pincers, and 4 great Needles, they made use of to torment him, and two Silver Goblets in which they drank his Blood.

The 2d Town in this Bishoprick is *Pezen*, by the *Italians* called *Bolzano*, 18 Miles N. E. from *Trent*, on the Banks of the *Aysach*. The Town is more considerable for its

Digitized by Google

its Trade than Strength; for it has no other Fortifications but the River, and rocky Hills about it. They have 4 Annual Fairs, of 15 Days each, which are much frequented by Merchants from *Illyricum*, *Dalmatia*, and *Germany*: During which Time, they have a proper Magistracy, and Courts of Judicature of their own, distinct from those of the Town; and none are allowed to trade without being enter'd in their Judges Book, and receiving a Certificate from him, sealed with the Arms of their Corporation, which is a Globe of the Earth, surrounded with abundance of all sorts of Merchandize pack'd up, and this Motto, *Ex Merce pulchrior*; *i. e.* It becomes more beautiful by Trade. These Privileges were granted them by *Claudia* Arch-Dutchess of *Austria*. This Place was taken from the Bishop of *Trent* by *Minard* II. Count of *Tirol*, in 1295, and is now subject to the House of *Austria*.

3. *Roveredo*, or *Roverettum*, on the Banks of the *Adige*, and Frontiers of *Venice*, is a Town of good Note, was formerly subject to *Trent*; but by the Treaty of *Noyon*, was made over to the Emperor *Maximilian* II. It lies about 10 Miles S. from *Trent*, and has a strong Castle.

There are several other Market-Towns and small Cities within this Bishoprick; but are remarkable for little, except that all of them have good Wine. *La Forreſt* mentions *Toblino*, *Madruzzo*, *Arco*, *Nago*, and *Torbole*, which are all fortified Places in this Bishoprick, and were taken by the *French* under the Duke of *Vendôme* during the last War in *Italy*.

The Circle of BAVARIA.

The Bishoprick of Saltzburg.

THE City of that Name was anciently called *Colonia Hadriana Juvavia*, because the Emperor *Hadrian* plac'd a Colony here on the River *Juvavus*. The Inhabitants say, That the Emperors *Augustus* and *Tiberius* having subdued the *Salassii* and *Rhæti*, with other Inhabitants of the *Alps*, they invaded the *Vindelici*, the *Norici*, and *Pannones*; and to secure their Conquests, built a Fort here, which is frequently mention'd by *Antonin*; but 'tis sometimes corruptly writ *Juvavum*, *Ivavum*, *Ivarum*, and *Vivanum*. *Bertius* and *Cluverius* think it to be *Ptolemy's Ganaxadunum*. The present Name of the Town, and the River *Saltza*, on which it stands, is derived from the many Salt-Pits on its Banks. This Archbishoprick has Part of the Dutchy of *Bavaria* on the N. and W. *Carinthia* on the S. and E. with Part of *Stiria* and *Austria*; and on the W. it has Part of *Bavaria* and *Tirol*. Its greatest Length from S. W. to N. E. is about 100 Miles; and the greatest Breadth from N. to S. is 65. The Country affords, besides Plenty of Salt, Mines of Copper, Iron, Silver, *&c.* A little above the Town of *Saltzburg*, springs the famous Bath of *Gastein*; the Water is hot, tastes strong of several Minerals, and by Bathing and Washing cures the Stone, Cholick, Pox, and other Malignant Distempers; but is never taken inwardly. The chief Mines in this Country are at *Gastein*, *Rauris*, *Brixenthal*, &c. They have also many Stone Quarries, with Variety of Stones of different Forms. The large rough Jasper, which lies unregarded in the Court of the Emperor's Palace at *Vienna*, came from hence. The Archbishop is by his Place Legate of the Papal See, which has occasioned Quarrels betwixt him and the Archbishop of *Magdeburg* for Precedency, which the Imperial Court has not yet determin'd. Within this Province, there are reckon'd the Bishopricks of *Chiemsee*, *Gurck*, *Seccau*, *Lavant*, *Freisingen*, *Passau*, and *Brixen*. Some add *Ratisbon*. The first 3 are not Princes of the Empire, and therefore have no Vote in the Diet. There are 8 Cities in this Province, viz. *Saltzburg*, *Hallein*, *Lawfen*, *Titmoning*, *Muldorf*, *Friſach*, and St. *Andrew's*. The two last in *Carinthia*, formerly *Pettau* and *Stiria*, and *Gemund* in *Carinthia*, were reckoned in this Province; but they are not so now.

Towns of Note here.

1. *Saltzburg*, the Metropolis. *Aventinus* thinks it changed its Name of *Juvavia*, when St. *Rupert* began to preach here. The old Name being lost by the Irruptions of

Digitized by Google

of the *Goths*, *Heruli*, &c. about 476. *La Forreſt* ſays, the *Goths* ſack'd it in the firſt Century, and kill'd the Biſhop and all the Chriſtians; ſo that they had no Biſhop for 200 Years. After that the Salt-Springs were diſcover'd, and then it was rebuilt by the Princes of *Bavaria*. *Charlemagne* tranſferred hither the Title of Metropolitan of all *Bavaria* from *Paſſau* in 798. The Cathedral was built by St. *Virgilius* in 773, and by him dedicated to St. *Rupert*, who, according to *Strachan's* Account in *Bleau's* Atlas, was Son to a King of *Scots*, and the Apoſtle of *Bavaria*, as appears by *Canuſius*, in the Monuments of *Saltzburg*, *Antiq. Lect. Tom.* 4. Some ſay, *Virgilius* was alſo a *Scots-man*. Pope *Gregory* VII. made the Archbiſhop of *Saltzburg* perpetual Legate for *Germany* in 1073, and he was made Primate of *Germany* by the Treaty of *Munſter* in 1648. He is a Prince of the Empire, Codirector with the Elector of *Bavaria* of that Circle, has the firſt Voice in the Diet of any of the Eccleſiaſtical Princes after the Electors, and is choſen by a Chapter of 28 Canons, who muſt all prove their Nobility before they are admitted. The Town is very ſtrong, and well built; and thô it has ſuffered much both by Fire and Water, 'tis now one of the faireſt and ſtrongeſt Cities of the Empire. It was formerly an Imperial Town, but is now ſubject to its Archbiſhop. His Palace is a very magnificent Structure, ſtands upon a Hill, is well fortified, and called *Mirabel*. The great Hall, the Galleries, the Tapeſtry, and the Chamber of Rarities, are well worth a Traveller's ſeeing. The Gardens and Orchards are well order'd, and abound with Figs, Pomegraneats, and other choice Fruits; but the Archbiſhop's chief Garden of Pleaſure is at *Hellenbrun*, a Mile diſtant, where there are noble Water-Works of various Shapes, with abundance of ſtrange Beaſts, Fowls, Fiſhes, *&c.* of all Sorts; and at the further End of it, two curious Proſpects from Houſes of Pleaſure. The publick Inns of the City are ſo large, that they are capable to entertain the greateſt Princes of the Empire, with their Attendants. The Inhabitants have a good Trade from the Salt produc'd in the neighbouring Pits. The Cathedral was new built in 1628, and is reckon'd one of the moſt magnificent in *Europe*. In St. *Sebaſtian's* Church, lies buried the famous Phyſician *Theophraſtus Paracelſus*, who died the 24th of *September*, 1541. Some will have him to be a *Swiſs*; but *Quade*, in his Gallantry of the *German* Nation, ſays, he was Baſtard to one of the *German* Lords of *Brombaſt*, who order'd him to be made an Eunuch, and ſent him to a Monaſtery to ſtudy. It lies in Long. 32. 12. Lat. 47. 50. on the Borders of *Bavaria*, at the Conflux of the *Saltz*, and two other Rivers, 67 Miles S. E. from *Munich*, and about 50 S. W. from *Paſſau*. The Univerſity here is one of the moſt conſiderable in the Empire.

2. *Hallein*, two *German* Leagues S. from *Saltzburg*, on the Banks of the *Saltza*. The Latins call'd it *Halliola* and *Hallula*. 'Tis famous for employing multitudes of People in its Salt-Works, from whence it had its Name. Dr. *Nicholſon* ſays, That in 1563, there was found here in a Salt-Pit, 6300 Foot deep, in the midſt of a hard Rock of Salt, a Humane Body, with its Limbs, Hair, and Clothes, uncorrupted; which, by its Antick Dreſs, ſeem'd to have lain there ſome Ages. This is atteſted by *Megiſter* in his Chronicle of *Carinthia*, and by the Author of *Metrop. Salisb. Tom.* 1. *Fol.* 35.

3. *Lauffen*, a ſmall Town betwixt *Saltzburg* and *Titmoning*, on the *Saltz*, about 15 Miles N. W. from *Saltzburg*. In 1147, *Frederick* I. held a General Diet of the Empire here. 'Tis a pleaſant Town, and has a good Trade. *Lazius* fancies it to be the Remains of *Antonin's Laviacum*, becauſe of an old *Roman* Inſcription found near this Place.

4. *Titmoning*, a ſmall Town betwixt *Burckhauſen* and *Lauffen*, ſuppoſed to be *Antonin's Bidaium*. 'Twas almoſt wholly deſtroyed by Wild-Fire in 1571, and taken by *Maximilian* of *Bavaria* in one Day in 1611. 'Tis ſtill fortified, but not ſtrong.

5. *Radſtatt*, a conſiderable Market-Town on the *Ens*. Several Geographers make it the ancient *Taurina* or *Taurnia* of the *Norici Mediterranei*. *Lazius* approves this, becauſe the Names of ſeveral Mountains near this City end in *Taurn*, and in ancient Records 'tis called *Taurachſtatt*. *Albert* Duke of *Auſtria*,

ſtria, before he was Emperor, beſieg'd it two Months, but in vain, being obliged to a ſhameful Retreat.

6. *Muldorf*, famous for a Battle betwixt the Emperor *Lewis* of *Bavaria* and *Frederick* of *Auſtria*, in 1322. It lies on the *Inn*, a *German* League from *Oetingen*.

The Archbiſhop of *Saltzburg* has a Power of creating Knights of the Order of St. *Rupert*, who wear a Medal with the Effigies of that Saint, and the Red Croſs of the Order on the Reverſe.

The County of Tirol.

W*Armund Igle*, a *German* Lord, in his Deſcription of this Country, ſays, 'twas the *Rhætia Superior* of the *Latins*, which, with *Rhætia Inferior*, was by the *Romans* accounted Part of *Italy*; for this, he quotes *Pliny*, who makes *Trent* to be the *Urbs Rhætica*. He adds, That the *Rhætian*, a Dialect of the old *Tuſcan*, is ſtill ſpoke in many Parts of this Country.

Tirol has *Swabia* and *Bavaria* on the N. Part of *Switzerland* and the *Griſons* Country on the W. *Brixen* and *Saltzburg* on the E. and *Trent* on the S. *Moll* makes it 125 Miles from E. to W. and the greateſt Breadth about 52 from N. to S. Dr. *Nicholſon* ſays, for Riches, Number of Inhabitants, and Plenty of Proviſions, it is equal to moſt Dutchies in the Empire. They have ſtore of Silver and Copper Mines in their Mountains, eſpecially at *Braunugg*, *Kutzpuhel*, and *Schwatz*. The Mines at the laſt were found in 1448; and before 1560, were ſo much improved, that they employed 30000 People; but in 1600, they were diminiſhed to 2000, and are now fewer; ſo that the Revenues of the Count of *Tirol* from thoſe Mines fall now much ſhort of 300000 Gilders *per Annum*, which *Cuſpinian* ſays they yielded in his Days. The Country is well ſtock'd with Wine, Fiſh, Veniſon, Wood, and other Neceſſaries for Life; ſo that the Emperor *Maximilian* ſaid, It was like a Countryman's Coat, coarſe, but warm. The Rocky Mountains, almoſt perpetually cover'd with Snow, make no good Appearance to the Eye; but the Vallies about *Inſpruck* are as fruitful as elſewhere. The Populouſneſs of the Country may be gueſs'd at from *Graſſer*'s Account of the ſmall Province of *Nonſiberg*, which, thô but 12 *German* Miles long, and 3 broad, he ſays contains 350 Pariſhes, and 32 ſtrong Caſtles.

The whole is divided into many leſſer Provinces; the chief of which are, 1. *Eſchland*, ſo called from the River *Eſch*. 2. *Inthal*, or the Valley along the *Inn*, the pleaſanteſt Part of the Country. 3. *Funſtermuntze*. 4. *Paſſerthal*. 5. *Munſterthal*. 6. *Vinſtgow*. 7. *Wallerbeid*. 8. *Nonſiberg*, beſides ſeveral others of leſs Note, and 3 or 4 Lordſhips, taken from the *Bavarians* by the Houſe of *Auſtria*.

While this Country was ſubject to the *Romans*, 'twas governed by a Lieutenant ſent from *Rome*; but on the Fall of the Empire, was ſeized by the Princes of *Bavaria*, whoſe Deputies govern'd it under the Name of Marquiſſes, when 'twas joined to the Empire. *Frederick* I. when he proſcribed *Henry the Lion*, Duke of *Bavaria*, divided his Dominions among other Princes, and *Tirol* was divided among others, and ſubjected to ſeveral; the chief of 'em was the D. of *Meran*; but that Duchy and City fell at laſt into the Hands of the Counts of *Tirol*, the laſt of whom, of the *Bavarian* Line, was *Albrecht*, whoſe eldeſt Daughter was married to *Henry*, Son to the Emperor *Frederick* II. and the Country was divided betwixt the Poſterity of her and her Siſter. And in 1289, *Elizabeth* of *Tirol* marrying *Albert* of *Auſtria*, brought that Country to his Family; and by Advice of her Council, *Margaret* of *Tirol* having no Iſſue, ſettled it again upon the Family of *Auſtria* in 1363. Since which, it has always continued in their Hands.

The chief Towns.

1. INſprug or *Inſpruck*, Lat. *Oenipons*, ſo call'd becauſe of its Bridge over the River *Inn*, is the Metropolis of the Country. It lies in Long. 30. 33. Lat. 47. 12. about 12 Miles S. from the Frontiers of *Bavaria*, 28 N. W. from *Brixen*, and 66 N. E. from *Trent*. It appears by an old Inſcription, That *Otto* I. D. of *Meran*, wall'd this Town in 1234; but nothing of theſe Fortifications remain now, except three Gates. The Princes of *Tirol* thought it not worth while to

Digitized by Google

to make the Fortifications ſtrong, becauſe it lies in the Heart of their Territories, and was defended at ſome diſtance by the ſtrong Caſtle of *Ombras*, and the Town of *Hall*; ſo that on the E. Side, it neither has nor needs any Fortifications; but the other Part is defended by Walls and Ditches, which ſeem rather to be deſigned for Ornament than Strength. Beſides, the Entrance of the Country is ſo well guarded by ſtrong Caſtles, that 'twas thought ſtrange *Maurice* Elector of *Saxony* ſhould have been able to march an Army hither, as he did, when he almoſt ſurpris'd *Charles* V. The Town is well built, eſpecially the Suburbs, where there are many ſtately Houſes. The Cathedral or chief Church at the *Franciſcan* Monaſtery is a ſtately Fabrick of hewen Stone, built by the Emperor *Ferdinand* I. who erected a noble Monument here for his Grandfather *Maximilian* I. on the Top of which ſtands a vaſt Statue of that Emperor in Alabaſter, guarded by 28 Statues of Braſs, of exquiſite Workmanſhip, larger than the Life, which make a noble Appearance; 14 of 'em repreſent Emperors and Princes of that Family, and 8 of 'em Empreſſes and Princeſſes, and the reſt ſeveral other Princes. Under the Emperor's Statue, there's a Character of that great Prince in Golden Letters, upon black Marble. The chief Ornament of the Town is the Palace of their ancient Counts, which has ſince been the Reſidence of the Princes of the Houſe of *Auſtria*. 'Tis beautified with many fair Gardens, Groves, Walks, *&c.* The Palace is convenient and large, but not regular or beautiful, having been built at ſeveral times. *M. Miſſon* ſays, the Roofs of the Houſes are flat on the Top, and the Rafters, inſtead of riſing to a Point, are revers'd; ſo that the Rain is gather'd in the middle of them. In the City, there's a Houſe called the *Chancery*, the Porch of which the Inhabitants pretend to have been cover'd with Plates of Gold by Arch-Duke *Frederick*, when he return'd from his Exile; but *M. Miſſon* having view'd them narrowly, found the Plates, which reſembled Tiles, to be of Braſs, cover'd with a thin Plate of Gold, or at leaſt of other Metals gilded; and being about 15 Foot ſquare, he ſuppoſes it might coſt about 200000 Crowns. The Citizens have a good Armory, well furniſh'd for Horſe and Foot, as they pretend for 30000 Men. They have two Cannon of a vaſt wide Bore, and each Barrel 16 Foot long. They have 50 more of a conſiderable Size, one of which has 7 Barrels, that may be diſcharged ſeverally. Dr. *Nicholſon* ſays, That in the Palace, there's a vaſt Collection of Rarities, ſuch as Agates, Chryſtals, Corals, Jaſpers, Jacynths, *Turkey* Stones, *&c.* Several Lumps of Virgin Gold and Silver dug out of the Mines in *Germany*, and a vaſt Number of Medals, with ancient and modern Coins; a compleat *Perſian* Suit of Armour, richly adorn'd with *Turkey* Stones and Rubies; the Arms of the Houſe of *Auſtria*, exactly repreſented in Diamonds and Rubies; a large Crucifix of Coral; the Sword of an ancient *Switſer*, with an Almanack cut on the Hilt; a large Diſh of Chryſtal ſet in Gold, beautified with Pictures in lively Colours, and adorn'd with many different Precious Stones, with abundance of other Rarities, too tedious to inſiſt upon. In the City, there are many curious Fountains, and ſpacious Market-Places.

About an *Engliſh* Mile E. from the City, ſtands the pleaſant and ſtrong Fort called *Ombras*. They derive its Name from the Deſign of it, which was to be a ſhady Summer-Houſe. A large Book was printed here in 1601, with an Account of the Pleaſures and Rarities of this Place. In their Armory, the moſt conſiderable Things are, the Armour of *Charles* IX. King of *France*, and of the Duke of *Parma*; the Statue of King *Francis* I. on Horſeback in Plaiſterwork, exactly repreſenting him in his Armour, and his Horſe in his Trappings, as he was taken at the Battle of *Pavia*. They have likewiſe the Armour of ſeveral Emperors, Kings and Princes of other Nations, with the Picture of each Prince drawn to the Life by his Armour. In another Room, there's a Collection of Rarities, among which, the chief are, Part of the Trunk of an Oak, in the Body of which there's a Deer quite enclos'd with Wood, of which their Philoſophers give this Account, That this Deer did probably periſh in the Snow; and upon a Thaw, was hurl'd down by a Torrent from the neighbouring Hills a conſiderable Depth into the Ground, where 'twas firſt incircled by the Roots, and af-

Digitized by Google

terwards by the Body of the Tree: Several Drawers of *Roman* and other ancient Coins in Gold and Silver; many Pieces of ancient Armour; a Log of Wood and Wedges petrify'd, becauſe, ſay the ſuperſtitious People, the Carpenter ventur'd to work on a Holy-Day; ſeveral fair Copies writ by a *German* with his Feet; a Piece of Wood growing out of a ſmall Lump of Ore, which the Miners call a Farewel, becauſe, when they meet ſuch a Twig as this, they reckon the Ore holds no further. *M. Miſſon* ſays, there's a large Hall with all Sorts of Arms more curious than uſeful, among others a Lance us'd by Arch-Duke *Ferdinand* in Tournaments. They ſay, he was ſo ſtrong, that he could ſtop a Coach and Six by taking hold of a Spoke of the Wheel, and would break two Crown-Pieces join'd together. In an adjacent Gallery, there's the Effigies of many Princes on Horſeback in Armour, with all the Ornaments uſed at Tournaments; and the Skin of a Serpent, 15 Foot long, taken near *Ulm*. At the End of the Gallery, there's an Apartment fill'd with the Spoils and Arms taken from the *Turks*, with a Baſſa and Aga of the Janizaries, repreſented on Horſeback, with the ſame magnificent Habits and Harneſs, imbeliſh'd with Gold, Silver, and Precious Stones, they had when taken. In another Gallery, there are the Rarities mention'd by Dr. *Nicholſon*; among which, there are 7 large Volumes bound in black Velvet, with Edges and Claſps of Silver, which, inſtead of Leaves, contain ſmall Boxes fill'd with Medals. There's a Croſs-Bow, with 34 leſſer Bows within its Compaſs, diſcharging ſo many Arrows at a time. There are alſo abundance of MSS. and rare Books, and Stones naturally repreſenting Trees, Fruits, Shells, and Animals. They have many Sepulchre-Lamps, Urns, Idols, *&c.* and a Piece of Rope, which they pretend to be Part of that with which *Judas* hang'd himſelf. On the Walls and Sieling, there are admirable Paintings, among which, *Noah*'s Rain-Bow is ſo extraordinary, that they ſay, the Great Duke of *Tuſcany* offer'd 100000 Crowns for it. They have a Library, which is not in very good Order, and a Gallery full of Buſts, and other Pieces of Antiquity; beſides many other Apartments adorn'd with Pictures of great Value.

On the S. Side of the Town, croſs a pleaſant Field, ſtands the famous Monaſtery of *Wilsheim* or *Wilden*, called by *Antonin* in his *Itinerary*, *Veldidena*, from which the City of *Inſprug* took its Original. The Monks are of the Order of St. *Norbbert*, and pretend to great Antiquity. They ſay, their Founder was *Heymon*, a Gigantick Prince of this Country, of 12 Foot and a half long; and what they ſtill call his Grave, is above 15. They alledge, That he killed a monſtrous Dragon, which threw down as much of the Monaſtery by Night, as his Men built by Day; and they pretend to ſhew his Tongue, of 3 Span and a half long, which they keep as a valuable Relick. They have a Gallery with the Pictures of all the Abbots ſince the Foundation. The Monaſtery is encompaſſed with a Wall 16 Foot high, which they ſay was leap'd over by a Hart, when cloſely purſued by Dogs ſome Years ago. Before the Gates, there's a Pillar with an Inſcription, giving an Account, That the Road from *Italy* towards *Augsburg* lay croſs the Field where this Monaſtery ſtands; and that it was repaired near 100 Miles together in the Time of the Emperor *Septimius Severus*.

2. *Hall*, 8 Miles N. E. from *Inſpruck*, famous for its Salt-Pits, and great Trade in Salt. Their chief Pits are 4 Miles from the Town, in the Mountains, where they dig the Salt like Ore out of Mines, throw it into great Trenches, which they fill with ſweet Water, and let it ſtand a Month, till the Salt be diſſolved, and the earthy Part ſunk to the bottom: After which they carry it to be boil'd in the City. In their great Salt-Houſe, they have 4 huge Iron Pans, each of which is 48 Foot long, 34 broad, and 3 deep; 3 of 'em are continually boiling, and one of 'em reſts a Week by Turns. About 1000 Men are conſtantly employed in thoſe Mines, and cutting Fuel for them. They have very odd Habits, and Hats of all Colours; and they carry their Salt in little Carts with Wheels, which they draw themſelves. This Town, and that of *Trent*, were taken by the Elector of *Bavaria* in 1703; but he was ſoon obliged to quit them.

3. *Mitten*, on the Frontiers of *Trent*, 33 Miles S. from *Inſpruck*, formerly the Metropolis of the Country, and the Reſidence of

a

a Duke. In 1419, a great Flood broke in upon this Town, which deſtroyed 400 People; and they ſay, That a Child in a Cradle, with a Cat ſitting by it, were carried down the River 12 *Engliſh* Miles, and taken out alive. *La Forreſt* ſays, That 'tis a pretty Town, and a Place of good Trade. Near this Town, ſtands the ancient and fair Caſtle of *Tirol*, with a ſmall Market-Town of the ſame Name, whence the whole Country had its Denomination. 'Tis remarkable for little now but its Situation. *La Forreſt* mentions *Glurens*, a ſmall City, in one of the fineſt Countries of *Tirol*; *Pludentz*, Capital of a County of the ſame Name; *Sonneberg* and *Feldkirock* the like.

4. *Stertzingen*, 17 Miles S. from *Inſpruck*, near the Mountains called *Brenner*, noted by ancient Geographers for being almoſt continually cover'd with Snow; and are by ſome ancient Authors falſly called the *Pyreneen* Mountains, from whence they make the *Danube* to ſpring, which is another groſs Miſtake.

BAVARIA.

THis Country contains a great Part of the ancient *Rhætia*, *Vindelicia*, and *Noricum*; but chang'd its Name, as we formerly mention'd, when the *Boii* ſeiz'd it about 472, as *Jornandes* tells us.

The Country abounds with Corn of all Sorts, Fruit, Veniſon, Metals, Marble, Salt, Baths, *&c.* and ſome Wine, which would very much enrich the Inhabitants, were they allowed the ſame Freedom of Trade with other Parts of the Empire. But their Electors have for many Years monopoliz'd their three chief Commodities: For, 1. They are forbid, on great Penalties, to import Salt from any other Dominions, or to buy any that is imported; and the Elector's Agents are only allow'd to ſell their own Salt they dig at *Draveſtein* and *Oberhall*; which being coarſe, they mix it with the purer Salt brought from *Saltzburg*, and ſell it again to thoſe who want it. 2. He engroſſes all the Corn, ſo that none is permitted to ſell it but his Agents. 3. He monopolizes all the ſtrong Beer, which is ſo much valued, that 'tis exported to other Countries of the Empire, and ſold only by his own Servants; but the People are allow'd to brew a ſorry ſmall Beer for their own Uſe. The Biſhop of *Paſſau* has lately followed the ſame Method, by which he fills his own Treaſures, but impoveriſhes his Subjects; ſo that the chief Subſiſtence of the Peaſants is from the great Herds of Swine fed in their Woods by Acorns and Crabs. They have alſo great Numbers of Bears, Wild-Boars, and other Sorts of Veniſon, in their Forreſts, which they frequently make bold with, thô they are forbid it without the Elector's ſpecial Commiſſion. Their Deer are generally of an extraordinary Size; and their Hiſtorians ſay, That in 1562, there was a Hart caught which weigh'd 625 Pounds.

This Country has *Miſnia* on the N. *Saltzburg* and *Tirol* on the S. *Swabia* and *Francconia* on the W. and *Bohemia* and *Auſtria* on the E. From S. to N. is 155 Miles, and from E. to W. about 125.

Some Foreign Authors, and even ſeveral of their Neighbours, reckon them a rude and barbarous People in compariſon of other *Germans*, and commonly call 'em Hog-drivers; but thoſe who have travelled the Country of late find it otherwiſe, and that they are as hoſpitable and courteous as others; thô it muſt be own'd, that the abſolute Government of their Prince very much hinders their growing rich, as the Impoſitions of their Clergy keep 'em groſly ignorant in Matters of Religion; ſo that moſt of their Worſhip is paid to Images and Saints.

Their ancient Government was like that of the other *Germans*; thô there is little of their Hiſtory that can be depended on before *Charlemagne*.

The *Atlas Hiſtorique*, and Dr. *Nicholſon*, give the following Account of the Geneology of the *Palatine* Family, and of that of *Bavaria*.

Aldigerius is ſaid to have made himſelf King of *Bavaria* in 456, and died in 504. He was ſucceeded by his Son *Theodo* I. who had War with the *Romans*, and, according to Dr. *Nicholſon*, was the firſt who had the Title of Duke in that Country, becauſe the *Franks* having made him their Tributary, that Title was more ſuitable to his Circum-

cumſtances. His Son *Theodo* II. ſucceeded, who was ſirnam'd, *The Great*, becauſe he drove the *Romans* out of his Country beyond the *Alps*. The *Atlas* places his Reign in 512. He was ſucceeded by *Theodo* III. who, Dr. *Nickolſon* ſays, was their firſt Chriſtian Prince, being converted, with his Country, by St. *Rupert* the *Scots-man*, formerly mention'd. We have nothing remarkable of theſe other Princes till *Odilo* or *Utilo*, whom the *Atlas* makes their 13th Prince, but Dr. *Nicholſon* their 14th; who being encourag'd by the Succeſs of ſome of his Predeceſſors, re-aſſum'd the Title of King; but was defeated near *Augsburg* by *Carloman* and *Pepin*, and forc'd to content himſelf with his old Title of Duke. He was ſucceeded by *Taſſilo* II. the laſt Duke of *Aldiger*'s Race, who was depoſed by *Charles the Great*, and *Taſſilo* and his Son *Theodo* were ſhut up in the Monaſtery of *Laureſheim* or *Lorſch*, within 4 *German* Miles of *Heydelberg*, where his Monument is ſtill to be ſeen, with an Inſcription in Rhiming Latin Verſe, giving a ſhort Account of his Story. Dr. *Nicholſon* ſays, That *Charlemagne* having thus ſeiz'd *Bavaria*, he enlarg'd its Boundaries a great way into *Hungary*, and made it once more a Kingdom. After this Emperor's Death, his Son *Lewis the Pious* gave his own Son *Lotharius* the Title of King, tho' he rul'd only as his Father's Deputy. He was ſucceeded by his Brother *Lewis*, whoſe Kingdom, ſays *Aventinus*, reached from the River *Lech*, which runs by *Augsburg*, as far as the *Save* and the *Teiſſe* in *Hungary*. *Lewis* died in 876, and was ſucceeded by his eldeſt Son *Carloman*, who being ſlain in a Battle near *Oetingen*, his Brother *Lewis* ſucceeded, who being choſen Emperor, *Arnolf*, his Brother *Carloman*'s Baſtard, Prince of *Stiria* and *Carinthia*, ſucceeded to *Bavaria*. He alſo being choſen Emperor after his Uncle's Death, made his own Son *Lewis* King of *Bavaria*, who dying without Iſſue, and his Brother *Conrad* being Emperor, the *Bavarians* choſe *Arnolf* II. called *The Wicked*, a Prince of *Charlemagne*'s Lineage, to be their King; who revolting againſt *Conrad*, was by him and the Emperor *Henry* I. forc'd to lay aſide the Title of King, and to re-aſſume that of Duke. The *Atlas* ſays, That this *Arnolf* is by ſome accounted the Founder or Origine of the preſent Families of *Bavaria* and the *Palatinate*, and was Son, as ſome Hiſtorians inform us, ſays Dr. *Nicholſon*, to *Leopold* Marquis of *Auſtria*. He walled *Ratisbon*, and died about 937. From him deſcended the Counts of *Schiren*, who were for ſome Time deprived of their Succeſſion; but *Werner*, one of thoſe Counts, recover'd it again, and from him the preſent Family proceeds. *Henry* III. one of his Succeſſors, is obſerv'd by ſome to have been the firſt Emperor who came in by Election, according to the Order made by Pope *Gregory* V. After which, *Bavaria*, ſince this Emperor died without Iſſue, was transferred to ſeveral Families, according as the Emperors thought fit. But *Conrad* II. *Henry* III. and *Henry* IV. who ſucceeded him in the Empire, kept it in their own Hands, and their Deputies had the Title of Dukes: At laſt, the Dukedom was given by the Emperor *Henry* IV. to *Guelph* Count of *Ratisbon* in *Swabia*, who died in 1101, and was ſucceeded by *Guelph* II. He by *Henry* V. and he by *Henry* VI. ſirnam'd *The Proud*, who married the only Daughter of *Lotharius* the Emperor, and was made D. of *Saxony*. After the Emperor's Death, he diſputed the Title of the Empire with *Conrad* Duke of *Swabia*, who was elected Emperor, for which he was proſcribed. After this, *Bavaria* was given to his Half Brother *Leopold* of *Auſtria*; who dying in 1141, he was ſucceeded by his Brother *Henry* VII. who, at the Emperor's Command, reſign'd it to *Henry* VIII. Son to *Henry* VII. who, for his great Performances in the *Holy Land*, had a Lion given him for his Coat of Arms, and on that Account was call'd *Henry the Lion*. But rebelling againſt the Emperor *Frederick* I. he was proſcribed, and ſucceeded by *Otho* Landgrave of *Witelſpach*, who was deſcended from *Arnolf* of *Shiren*, formerly mention'd: And thus *Bavaria* return'd to the Family of its ancient Maſters. He died in 1183, and was ſucceeded by his Son *Lewis*, who, as *Aventinus* ſays, was made Count *Palatine* of the *Rhine* by *Frederick* II. Others ſay, this Honour was confer'd firſt on his Son. This Prince being murder'd by a Ruffian, was ſucceeded by *Otho the Illuſtrious*, who married the only Daughter of *Henry* Duke of *Saxony*, and Count *Palatine*; whereupon the Electoral Dignity was firſt brought into the Family of *Bavaria*, as is

con-

Digitized by Google

confirmed by an ancient Rhime under the Picture of this Prince in the Electoral Prince's Gallery at *Heydelberg*, where he died, and was ſucceeded by his Son *Lewis the Conſtant*, or *the Severe*, Count *Palatine* of the *Rhine*, and Duke of *Bavaria*. He died in 1294, and from his Son *Rodolph* I. came the preſent *Palatine* Family; and from his Son *Lewis*, came that of *Bavaria*. Here Dr. *Nicholſon* and the *Atlas* differ; for the former makes *Lewis* and *Rodolph* the Sons of *Otho the Illuſtrious*, and the latter makes them Sons to *Lewis the Conſtant*. Dr. *Nicholſon* adds, That *Lewis*, called by Hiſtorians *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, was choſen Emperor, and maintain'd his Title againſt *Frederick* of *Auſtria*, and his Brother *Rodolph*, whom he baniſh'd; but confirm'd the Title of the *Lower Palatinate* and *Amberg* to his Children, and order'd, that the Electoral Dignity ſhould remain by Turns in his own and his Brother's Poſterity. The Emperor *Charles* IV. and his Succeſſors refuſed to obſerve this Edict, and gave the Electoral Dignity to *Rodolph*'s Branch, againſt which the Dukes of *Bavaria* always proteſted at the Election of the Emperor; and many Treatiſes *pro* and *con* have been writ on this Subject, which were printed at *Munichen* and *Heydelberg* about 1612, and 1614. *Stephen* ſucceeded his Father the Emperor in the Dukedom of *Bavaria*, and died in 1237, leaving three Sons, who for ſome Time were joint Governors; but at laſt the greateſt Share fell to *Frederick*, the 2d Brother. But here Dr. *Nicholſon* and the *Atlas* differ in the Succeſſion; for the latter ſays nothing of *Frederick*, or of his Son *Henry*, his Grandſon *Lodowick*, or *George the Rich*, whom the Doctor makes Succeſſors one after another to *Stephen*. The Doctor ſays, That *Lewis*, Grandſon to *Frederick*, baniſh'd the *Jews*, ſeiz'd their Goods, and died 1479. That *George the Rich*, who ſucceeded him, founded the Univerſity of *Ingolſtat*, and died in 1503, without Iſſue-Male, having married his only Daughter to *Robert* Elector *Palatine*, who expected the Dignity of *Bavaria* as her Dowry; but *Maximilian* I. being unwilling that the *Palatine* Family ſhould riſe ſo high, he encouraged the Princes of the Houſe of *Bavaria*, who reſided at *Munichen*, to diſpute the Power of *Palatine*'s Pretenſions by War; ſo that laſt the Dutchy of *Bavaria* came to *Albert*, who was lineally deſcended from Duke *Stephen*; and he dying in 1577, was ſucceeded by his Son *Albert* II. or, as ſome call him, *Albert* V. who was ſo zealous a Papiſt, that he built and endowed ſeveral Colleges for Jeſuits in *Lantzberg*, *Ingolſtat*, and *Munichen*. He was ſucceeded by his Son *William*, as zealous a Papiſt as his Father, who dying in 1626, was ſucceeded by his Son *Maximilian*, who having join'd with *Ferdinand* II. againſt *Frederick* Elector *Palatine*, that was choſen King of *Bohemia*, he was inveſted in the *Upper Palatinate*, and the Electoral Dignity at firſt for Life, when ſeveral Electors proteſted againſt it; but afterwards, in a Diet at *Prague* in 1628, it was confirmed to him and his Heirs, and ratified by the Treaty of *Munſter*. He died in 1651, and was ſucceeded by his Son *Ferdinand*, who was noted for Reſtleſſneſs and Piety, but not much for Valour or Learning. He died in 1679, and was ſucceeded by the preſent Elector *Maximilian Emanuel*, who was born in 1662; and declaring againſt the Emperor in Favour of *France*, and his Siſter's Son the D. of *Anjou*, did, with the *French* Forces, raiſe War in the Empire, ſubdued Part of *Tirol*, and puſhed his Conqueſts to the Frontiers of *Auſtria*; but his Army, and that of *France*, being routed at the famous Battle of *Hochſtet*, he is diſpoſſeſs'd of his Dominions, as is alſo his Brother the Elector of *Cologne*, and he was put into the Ban of the Empire in 1704. His eldeſt Son, *Albert Cajetanus John Joſeph George*, was born in 1697. From the Branch of *Bavaria* came that of *Wartenberg*, by a Son of *Albert* V. The preſent Prince is *Francis Marquardus*, Count of *Wartenberg*, who is a Knight of the *Golden Fleece*.

The Elector's Titles are, - - - By the Grace of God, Duke of *Upper* and *Lower Bavaria*, and of the *Upper Palatinate*, Duke and Count *Palatine* of the *Rhine*, Elector and Grand Maſter of the Houſhold to the Empire, Governor and Captain-General for his Catholick Majeſty in the *Netherlands*, Landgrave of *Luchtenberg*, &c.

His Pretenſions are, to the County of *Tirol*, to the Towns of *Ratisbon* and *Donawert*, to the Marq. of *Burgaw*, to the Vicariate of the Empire, and to ſome neighbouring Countries.

The

The Dominions belonging to him are, the *Upper* and *Lower Bavaria*, the *Upper Palatinate*, the County of *Cham*, the Landgraviate of *Luchtenberg*, the County of *Hag*, the Lordſhips of *Wiſenſterg*, and of *Mindelheim*, and the Town of *Donawert*.

His Arms are, *Lozenge-wiſe*, *Argent* and *Azure*, of 21 Pieces Bend-wiſe, for *Bavaria*; 1. and 4. *Sable*, a *Lion* Or, Crown'd *Langued*, and Arm'd *Gules*, for the *Palatinate*; 2. and 3. *Gules*, with an Imperial Globe Or, as Elector, and Grand Maſter of the Houſhold of the Empire.

The Elector of *Bavaria* was reckoned one of the powerfuleſt Princes in the Empire. His Territories are very populous; but his Subjects are not commonly reckon'd ſuch good Soldiers as thoſe in the neighbouring Countries, ſays Dr. *Nicholſon*. He adds, That his Monopolies before-mention'd, with the great Impoſts on all Commodities carried along the *Danube*, and other Navigable Rivers in his Country, with his own particular Domains, are ſufficient to keep as great an Army as any of the other Electors.

His Court was very ſplendid, and his Great Officers and Miniſters were generally Counts and Barons. His principal Councils were, 1. That call'd the *Court-Council*. 2. The *Privy-Council*. 3. Another call'd the *Chamber*. The Chief Lieutenants or Governors under him were, the Governor of the *Upper Palatinate*, the Adminiſtrators of *Burghauſen Landſhut*, and *Straubingen*, with the Governors of *Munichen*, *Ingolſtat*, and *Rodenberg*. His Standing Troops conſiſted of 14 Regiments of Foot, whereof 2 were of 2400 Men each, 5 of 2100 each, 2 of 1800 each, and 5 of 1200 each. His Cavalry were 10 Regiments, *viz.* the Partizan, Carabinier and Horſe-Granadier Guards, of 130 Men each; 3 Regiments of 940 Men each, 2 of 900 each, and 1 of 940; 7 of 'em being Horſe, and 3 Dragoons.

The Country is divided into *Upper* and *Lower*: The former, which lies under the *Alps*, is cold and barren, affords but little Corn, and no Wine; but the latter, which lies on the Banks of the *Danube*, is ſcarce inferior to any Province of the Empire in Fruitfulneſs, Riches, and Pleaſantneſs. There was formerly a ſtrict Alliance betwixt the Family of *Bavaria* and thoſe of *Brandenburg* and *Brunſwick*; but ſince the Reformation, that good Underſtanding betwixt them is broke off.

The chief Rivers are, the *Danube*, which runs through it, and divides the *Palatinate* from the Dutchy; the *Lech*, which divides it from the Biſhoprick of *Augſburg*; the *Inn*, the *Amber*, the *Iller*, the *Saltz*, the *Nab*, and the *Regen*.

The chief Towns in Upper Bavaria.

1. MUnich or *Munchen*, Lat. *Monachium*, ſuppoſed to be the Καμηδουν of *Ptolemy*. *Aventinus* ſays, Duke *Henry* XII. founded this City out of the Ruins of a Monaſtery; whence it had the Name of *Munchen*, and has the Picture of a Monk for its Arms. 'Tis the Metropolis of *Bavaria*, and the Seat of the Duke. It ſtands on the River *Iſar*, in Long. 30. 30. Lat. 48. 3. 40 Miles S. from *Ingolſtat*, about 60 N. from *Inſpruck*, and about 100 Miles W. from *Linz*. 'Tis eſteemed one of the moſt pleaſant, rich, and populous Cities of *Germany*. The *Iſar* runs in Channels thrô many of the Streets; ſo that the richer Citizens have fair Fountains and Water-Works in their Houſes, and the whole Town the Conveniency of Mills within their Walls. This City has quarter'd 18000 Soldiers for a conſiderable Time. Moſt of its Inhabitants are Glaſiers and Silk-Weavers, intermix'd with Nobility and Gentry that attend the Court. The adjacent Country hardly affords Corn to ſupply the Town. Great Quantities of Salt and Wine are vended here, eſpecially at their two Fairs at St. *James*-Tide, and the Week after the Feaſt of the Three Kings. 'Tis govern'd by a Common-Council of 36, whereof 24 are called the Outer-Houſe, and 12 the Inner; all ſuperintended by 6 Aldermen, uſually Perſons of good Extraction.

The moſt remarkable Buildings are, The Elector's Palace, a ſtately and Royal Structure, fit to receive the greateſt Monarch in *Europe*, with his Attendants and Guards. 'Twere endleſs to give a particular Deſcription of all the Curioſities in it. The chief of 'em are, the Long Gallery; the *Antiquarium* or *Statuarium*, containing a vaſt Number of old and new Pieces in Marble, Wood, Stone, *&c.* The noble Foun-

Digitized by Google

Fountain in the middle of the Garden, on the Top of which ſtands *Perſeus*, holding *Medusa*'s Head in his Left Hand, and a drawn Sword in his Right, and her Body at his Feet; the Water guſhing out of the Head and Neck in ſmall Streams, as out of the Veins of a Body newly diſſected: The ſeveral rare Water-Works and Grotto's: The Old Palace, wherein are reſerv'd the Sword, and ſeveral other Relicks of Duke *Chriſtopher*: The Library, wherein, beſides a vaſt Collection of printed Books in all Languages, Ancient and Modern, there are a great many MSS. of good Note; amongſt which, are theſe that follow: A Latin Treatiſe in Folio, in an old ſquare Character, pretended to be written by Pope *Clement* I. to St. *James* the Apoſtle: The New Teſtament in the *Indian*, *Armenian*, and *Wendiſh* Tongues: Three noble Volumes in Royal Paper, Folio, of Muſical Compoſitions, by *Orlandi di Laſſo*, and other famous Artiſts: A large Book of Medicinal Preparations, by that famous *Italian* Phyſician *Gratiano di Francolino*, &c. In the Chamber of Rarities, Things moſt obſervable are, A neat Perſpective Globe, in the Circumference whereof you have the whole Hiſtory of our Saviour's Paſſion; which being inverted, ſhews the Elevation of the Serpent in the Wilderneſs on one Side, and the Crucifixion of our Saviour on the other: A Landskip in Coral: The Figure of *Parnaſſus* in the ſame Subſtance, with the 9 Muſes plac'd round it: Flowers and Plants caſt in Gold: Several Drawers full of ancient and modern Coins and Medals: A Landskip lively repreſenting Buildings, Fields, Woods, &c. in their proper Colours, made of Stones of different Colours, laid in Wood: Idols, and Heatheniſh Gods and Goddeſſes, of various ſorts: The Picture of *Chriſtopher Froſchamer*, a notorious Murderer, who is ſaid to have committed 345 Murders with his own hand, and to have been privy to 400 more, committed by other Perſons: With many other Curioſities in Art and Nature.

The next Place worth ſeeing is the Jeſuits College, a Princely Fabrick, by ſome reckoned the ſtateliеſt Piece of new Building (next to the *Eſcurial* in *Spain*) that *Europe* affords. It conſiſts of two large Quadrangles, beſides Cloiſters, wherein are a Number of Lodging and Dining-Rooms, Schools, &c. and 800 Croſs-Windows. The Church, built after the *Italian* Manner, and dedicated to St. *Michael* the Archangel, is now the uſual Burying-place for the Electors and Princes of *Bavaria*. The firſt of that Race here entomb'd was *Renata*, a Daughter of *Lorrain*, and Wife of *William*, the Founder of this Church and College, who died *May* 23, 1602. Behind the Quire they have their Treaſury, where there's a vaſt deal of Wealth, beſides Golden and Silver Crucifixes, Candleſticks, Chalices, rich Tapeſtry, and other Church Ornaments.

The *Dom Kerch*, or chief Church in the City, dedicated to the Virgin *Mary*, is beautified with two delicate Towers, each of 'em 333 Foot high, and enrich'd with the Relicks of St. *Benno*. 'Twas at firſt only a Chapel of Eaſe to St. *Peter*'s Church; but in 1271, was made a Pariſh-Church. 'Tis govern'd by a Provoſt, Dean, and 13 Canons.

The *Franciſcan* Monaſtery is worth an *Engliſhman*'s View; 1. Becauſe of the neat Piece of Clock-Work, which repreſents the Poſtures of two *Engliſh* Cavaliers, to whom an Angel blows a Trumpet. 2. For our Countryman *William Occam*'s Sake, who having for ſome Years ſtoutly maintain'd Duke *Ludowick*'s IV.'s Cauſe againſt the Pope, was here buried in 1347. This City was built in 962, and walled round in 1156. *Guſtavus Adolphus* took it in 1632; but would not ſuffer the Palace or Town to be ſack'd, ſaying, It were pity to deprive the World of ſuch a City, and to ruine ſuch a Palace, that ought to ſtand to the End of Time. Moſt of the Houſes are well built, and finely painted on the Outſide. The Market-place is extreme fine, and the Houſes round it uniform, with Piazza's under them, in which there are many rich Shops. Mr. *Ray*, in his Travels, ſays, 'tis the faireſt City in *Germany* for its Bigneſs: The Streets are broad and regular; and in the Elector's Gardens, there's a vaſt Number of Aloe-Trees: He thinks *Europe* cannot produce the like in Number, both for their Stalk and Flowers. There's an *Engliſh* Nunnery in this City, with Pews after the *Engliſh* Faſhion, which is not cuſtomary in Popiſh Countries, where they have generally moveable Chairs and Benches. M. *Miſſon*,

Digitized by Google

in his Voyage to *Italy*, says, Tho' the City be beautiful, 'tis but indifferently fortified, scarce half so big as *Augsburg*, and has little Trade; but we suppose he excepts the Time of their Fairs. He says, the Jesuits shew'd him a Joint as big as that of an Elephant, which they pretended to be one of St. *Christopher's* Back-Bones. He says, the Outside of the Electoral Palace does not answer the Inside; for tho it be a vast Structure, 'tis not very regular, because built at several Times. The great Hall of the Elector's Apartment is 118 Foot long, and 52 broad, full of curious Historical Pictures, the Sacred on the one Side, and the Prophane on the other; and each of 'em has a Latin Inscription in Verse annex'd. In the little Chapel belonging to the Electress's Apartment, there's nothing almost to be seen but Gold, Pearls, and Gems. The Parlour of Perspectives is extreme fine; but the Hall of Antiquities brought hither from *Rome* exceeds all the rest, there being no less than 192 Busts, and 400 other Pieces here, much esteemed for their Workmanship and Antiquity. The Furniture of the Palace is rich, beyond Imagination; and besides the Tapestry in Use, they reckon'd in the Wardrobe to the Value of some Millions of Crowns. In the Treasury, there are whole Services of Gold, and many other Precious Vessels, vast Numbers of Pearls, Diamonds, Rubies, and other Precious Stones, with a vast Number of rare Pictures, curious Works, Medals, and such like Rarities; and among the rest, a Cherry-stone, with 140 Heads distinctly engraven upon it, and a Boat of Palm-Tree Wood turn'd into Stone. Wherever one turns their Eye in this Palace, there's nothing to be seen but Marble, which Mr. *Misson* says is an artificial Composition, but so well harden'd and polish'd, that it looks like natural Marble.

2. *Freysing*, which for its Antiquity deserves the next Place. 'Tis supposed to have been founded by the *Romans*, when they subdued *Noricum*, &c. and by them to have been called *Fruxinum*, *Fruxinium*, or *Fruxinia*, from whence comes its present Name. The neighbouring Hill, on which stands St. *Stephen's* Monastery, was formerly called *Teutonis Mons*, because of an Altar there to their Idol *Teut*. Others call it *Theodonis Mons*, from the Palace of *Theodo*, one of their Princes, where he and his Successors kept their Court, and among others King *Pepin*, whose Name, *Pepinhausen*, and some other neighbouring Villages, still retain. The Town and Bishop's Palace, with its Dependencies, lies pleasantly on the Bank of the *Mosach*, 20 Miles N. E. from *Munichen*, where there's abundance of fair Fields and Parks. Christianity was planted here about 444, when there was a Chapel dedicated to the Virgin, where their Cathedral now stands. Pope *Gregory* II. made it a Bishop's See about 716, and his Successors continued there till most of the Town was destroyed by the *Swedes* in 1632. The See was restor'd in 1639, and is commonly enjoy'd by a *Bavarian* Prince, who owns the Archbishop of *Saltzburg* for Metropolitan. The famousest Bishop of this See was *Otto* I. Son to *Leopold* Marquis of *Austria*. He founded the large Monastery of *Newstiff* near this Town, with several others. He attended *Conrad* II. to the *Holy Land*, and died in 1158. His Memory is still famous for his Work, called, *Ottonis Frisingensis Chronologia*, which gives a Judicious Account of the most remarkable Revolutions of all the chief Governments of the World, from the Creation to his own Time. *Waldo*, their 9th Bishop, is famous for having translated the Four Evangelists into old *Frankish* Rhimes, for the Use of the common People. Bishop *Rhenanus* concludes from this Book, That the *French* had their Origine from this Country, and that their ancient Language was *High-Dutch*.

3. *Ingolstadt*, near the *Danube*, about 27 Miles N. W. from *Freysingen*. This, with other Towns in *Germany*, and *Angleria* in *Italy*, are thought by *Cambden* to have derived their Names from the *Angli*, who sent Colonies into these Countries. Hence some Historians call it *Anglopolis*. Others call it *Oreapolis*, and *Oreatum*. *Bertius* says, the Emperor *Ludowick* IV. first made it a City, and wall'd it about 1412, it being a large Town before. *George the Rich* founded a strong Castle, which is still its chief Defence; and Duke *William* compleated the Fortifications about 1537. It stands in a plain and fruitful Country: The Houses are generally well built, and the Streets uniform and fair. 'Tis famous for 3 Things;

1. The

1. The *Gymnasium*, which has the same Privileges with the Universities of *Bononia* and *Vienna*; and here the great *Bellarmin*, *Obertus*, *Gisanius*, and *Petrus Sapianus*, were educated. 2. For the great Siege it held out against the Protestants in 1545; of which, *Sleidon* and others give an Account. It likewise held out against *Gustavus Adolphus* in 1632. 3. For its impregnable Castle, mention'd before; to which Dr. *Nicholson* adds a 4th, *viz.* the Image of the Virgin in their great Church, which, with its Workmanship and Jewels, cost 50000 Crowns: 'Tis of pure Gold, and a considerable Bulk. Before it, there kneels a *French* King of the same Metal, but of a less Size, with a long Purple Robe, enamell'd with yellow Flower-de-Luces; and near it, stands another small Image of St. *Michael*, compos'd of Jewels and Precious Stones, with a Pair of Scales in his Hand. This is reckoned the strongest Place of *Bavaria*, and has one of the finest Arsenals in *Germany*. 'Twas surrender'd to the Confederates after the Battle of *Hochstet*.

4. *Donawert*, has its Name from the *Danube*, on which it stands, about 25 Miles W. from *Ingolstat*. All Travellers who go up or down the River are obliged to land here, and pay a small Toll, which brings the Town a great deal of Money; as does likewise the Passage of their Bridge over the *Danube*, because it stands near so many great Towns, *viz.* about 14 *German* Miles from *Munichen*, 12 from *Nuremberg*, 3 from *Nordlingen*, 5 from *Weissenburg*, and 6 from *Augsburg*. 'Tis a strong Town, revolted from the Duke of *Bavaria* in 1420, was made an Imperial Town by the Emperor *Sigismund*, and continu'd so till 1607, that it was proscrib'd by *Rodolph* II. for embracing the Protestant Religion, and afterwards taken by the Duke of *Bavaria*. The *Swedes* took it twice in the Civil Wars of *Germany*; but 'twas restor'd to *Bavaria* by the Treaty of *Munster* in 1648. Near this Town lies *Schellemberg*, a fortified Mountain, which serves instead of a Castle to the Town, famous for the Defeat given to the *French* and *Bavarians* there in *July*, 1704. chiefly by the *English* and *Scots*, when they forc'd the Enemy's Trenches with incredible Bravery, and soon after made themselves Masters of *Donawert*.

5. *Rain*, on the *Lech*, 10 Miles S. E. from *Donawert*, a very well fortified Town, and one of the Keys of *Bavaria*.

6. *Landsperg*, on the River *Lech*, 6 *German* Miles from *Augsburg*. The Jesuits have a College here, which is one of the first they had in the Empire, from whence there's a fine Prospect of the neighbouring Country.

7. *Oetingen*, Old and New, in a Plain, betwixt the River *Inn* and the Mountains, about 50 Miles E. from *Munichen*. These Towns were formerly one, and much larger than now. Some fancy it to have been the *Oenipons* of the *Romans*. *Otto* Duke of *Bavaria*, and his Brother *Theodo*, had their Palace here, and were baptiz'd by St. *Rupert* about 616, as some would prove from an old Inscription found here. These Princes founded the two ancientest Churches in the Empire, dedicated to the Virgin, the one at *Ratisbon*, where *Theodo* usually kept his Court, and the other at *Otten*. In the latter, there's a fair Image of the Virgin, curiously done in Wood, which is said to have been presented to *Theodo* by St. *Rupert*. In 910, all the Town was destroy'd by the *Huns*, except the Virgin's Chapel. 'Tis the *Loretto* of *Germany*, and much enrich'd by the Presents of superstitious People, whom the Jesuits perswade that many Miracles have been done by this Image, St. *Philip*'s Arm, and other Relicks they keep here.

8. *Tegernsee*, so called from the *Lacus Tigurinus*, on which it stands. It has a famous Monastery betwixt the *Iser* and *Inn*, about 30 Miles S. E. from *Munichen*, near the Foot of the *Alps*. 'Twas founded by *Albert* and *Ocker*, two *Bavarian* Princes, is well fortified with a Wall and Ditch, and the Abbot takes Place in publick Convocations before all the Abbots and Priors of the Country.

9. *Schyren*, in Latin *Schyrum*, formerly a Town of good Note, and the Residence of the Dukes; but now remarkable only for a Monastery of *Benedictines*, where 120 Dukes and Dutchesses of *Bavaria* lie entomb'd.

10. *Wasserburg*, on the River *Inn*, about 32 Miles S. from *Munichen*, a pretty little Town, strong by its Situation, at the Conflux of another River into the *Inn*, and Capital of a County of the same Name, which

Digitized by Google

was united to *Bavaria* by *Otho the Illuſtrious*, in 1247.

11. *Hag*, a little Town near the *Inn*, about 5 Miles N. from *Wofferburg*, Capital of a County united to *Bavaria* in 1567. 'Tis govern'd by its own Laws.

12. *Muldorf*, on the *Inn*, about 12 Miles N. E. from *Hag*. 'Tis a ſmall Town, but famous for a Victory gain'd here by the Emperor *Lewis* of *Bavaria* over *Frederick* Duke of *Auſtria*, whom he took Priſoner in 1322.

13. *Burkhauſen*, a ſtrong Town on the River *Saltzach*, the *Bedacum* of the Ancients, 10 Miles S. E. from *Muldorf*.

14. *Branaw*, on the *Inn*, 22 Miles E. from *Muldorf*, a Town very well fortified, which held out a ſtrong Siege againſt the *Swedes* in 1632.

15. *Scharding*, a very pretty Town, on the Conflux of the Rivers *Inn* and *Ratt*, 17 Miles N. E. from *Branaw*.

The chief Cities and Towns in Lower Bavaria.

1. *Ratiſbon*, by the *Germans* called *Regenſpurg*, the chief City in the Circle of *Bavaria*, and the only Imperial Town in the Elector's Dominions. It lies on the S. Side of the *Danube*, in Long. 31. Lat. 49. near 60 Miles N. E. from *Munichen*, and 60 from *Augſburg*. There are two old Inſcriptions here, the one over the outermoſt Gate upon the great Stone-Bridge, the other in a Tower near St. *Peter*'s Gate, which ſay, That *Tiberius*, Son-in-Law to *Auguſtus*, pitch'd his Tents here, and called the Place *Auguſta Tiberii*, or *Auguſta Colonia Tiberii*; but this is not taken Notice of in *Antonin*'s Tables, or in the *Notitia Imperii*, and ſeems to be contradicted by *Tacitus*, who ſays, the *Romans* had but one Colony in *Rhætia*, which was the *Auguſta Vindelicorum*, now *Augſburg* in *Swabia*. The modern Name comes from the River *Regen*, which runs by one Side of the Town into the *Danube*; and the Name of *Ratiſbona* was given it, becauſe of its being a Harbour for Veſſels on the *Danube*. *La Forreſt* ſays, the Dukes of *Bavaria* poſſeſs'd it till 1180, that the Emperor *Frederick Barbaroſſa* made it an Imperial Town. It has ſtill the Remains of the Palaces and Houſes of the chief Nobility of the old Dukes of *Bavaria*, which are venerable Pieces of Architecture; and there's yet a Place in the Corn-Market called the Duke's Palace, tho' there are ſcarce any Remains of it now to be ſeen. The Elector *Palatine* had formerly two other fair Palaces here, one of 'em ſold to St. *Emeran*'s Monaſtery, and the other by the Wooden Bridge which leads to the *Under Werth* of the *Danube*; but he was forced to quit his Pretenſions to any Thing in this City, by reaſon of his Quarrel with the Citizens about the Royalty of the *Danube*, which ſtill occaſions Controverſies betwixt them and the Houſe of *Bavaria*. The City is large, populous, and well fortified, with a double Wall, Ditches, and Rampires; and the Situation is ſuch, as affords every Thing for the Pleaſure and Profit of the Inhabitants. The neighbouring Fields abound with all ſorts of Corn and Paſturage, beſides Vineyards, which produce a ſtrong and palatable Wine, ſcarce inferior to the beſt Rheniſh. They have a large Trade, by reaſon of the *Danube*; and the *Regen* and other neighbouring Rivers ſupply them with Plenty of Fiſh. The Houſes are generally well built, and the Streets large. In one of the old-faſhion'd Houſes over againſt the Town-Hall, there's a famous Monument, repreſenting the Emperor *Henry the Fowler*, and a Duel betwixt a *Turk* and a Nobleman of this City in 913, with the exact Figure of the Lances, Armour, and Habit of thoſe Times. The *Turk*'s Armour continued above 600 Years in the Church of the Monaſtery of *Nider Munſter*, till *Charles* V. begg'd it of the Abbeſs. His Helmet was of caſt Braſs, and weighed 20 Pound. His Harneſs was a long Coat of an Elephant's Skin, almoſt cover'd over with thick Boſſes of Iron nail'd upon it. His Shield was of well poliſh'd Steel, upon which was engrav'd the Picture of a Devil, with a Spear in his Hand. His Sword was two Yards and a half long, and near 5 Inches broad. 'Tis the See of a Biſhop, who, *Goldaſtus* ſays, is not ſubject to the Archbiſhop of *Saltzburg*, but depends immediately on the Pope. They embrac'd the *Augſburg* Confeſſion in 1442; but the Biſhop, who is Lord of the neighbouring Territory, has Maſs ſaid in the Cathedral every

Digitized by Google

every Week. The moſt remarkable Thing in this Cathedral is St. *Emeran* or *Hemeran*'s Monaſtery, who came hither from *Poictiers* in *France* to preach about 640. During his Stay, Duke *Theodo*'s Daughter being got with Child by a *Bavarian* Knight, he perſwaded her to lay the Baſtard to *Emeran*, who being then on his Journey to *Rome*, was purſued and killed by her Brother. But his Innocency being afterwards diſcover'd, his Corps was brought hither, and buried in St. *George*'s Church, where Duke *Theodo* immediately founded a *Benedictine* Monaſtery, and enjoin'd them to own St. *Peter* and St. *Emeran* for their Patrons. In this Monaſtery, they pretend to ſhew the Tomb of *Dionyſius* the *Areopagite*, whoſe Bones they alledge were brought hither by the Emperor *Arnulf*, their great Benefactor. This occaſioned a great Diſpute betwixt the Monks of this Place, and thoſe of St. *Denis* in *France*; for both of them pretended to his Body, as they do ſtill; thô Pope *Leo* IX. who was a *German*, forbad thoſe of St. *Dennis* to lay Claim to it. The Monks here boaſt alſo of ſome of the Virgin's Hair, a Piece of the Crown of Thorns, and a Part of the Croſs. They have three Books of great Antiquity and Value; the firſt, a Latin Copy of the Four Evangeliſts, writ in Gold Letters, and in an old *Lombard* Character, by two of this Fraternity, in 870. 'Tis adorned with Boſſes of Pearl, and Claſps of Gold, and was preſented to the Emperor *Charles the Bald*, whoſe Picture is before it, and was given to this Monaſtery by the Emperor *Arnulf*. The 2d is another MSS. of the Goſpels, writ in 754, by an Anonymous Biſhop of 90 Years of Age, in a delicate ancient Character; but not ſo richly embelliſh'd as the other. The 3d is a curious Regiſter of the Exploits of *Attila* the *Hun*. The Abbot depends immediately on the Pope, to whom he pays an Annual Tribute. *Apollonius* ſtudied the Greek, of which he was ſo great a Maſter, in this Monaſtery about 697. The Biſhops of *Ratiſbon* did uſually make their Reſidence here. The Stone Bridge over the *Danube* is worth a Traveller's Obſervation: It was built at the equal Charge of *Henry* X. of *Bavaria*, and the City, was begun in 1135, and finiſhed in 1156. It conſiſts of 15 large Arches, ſupported by ſquare Pillars, defended from the Violence of the Water, and the Shoals of Ice in Winter, by ſharp three-corner'd Butreſſes. 'Tis 23 Foot broad, and 1091 long. There are 3 fair Towers built upon it, and they ſhew Travellers the greateſt Stone uſed at the Building of it, with the leaſt of the ſame Figure inclos'd in it; by which they are enigmatically given to underſtand, that all the Stones uſed in this Structure are cut exactly into one and the ſame Figure. The *Germans* will not believe that any Traveller has been here, whatever Account you give him of the Town, except you give them an Account of thoſe Stones, and their Meaning. *La Forreſt* ſays, the Papiſts here have the Cathedral, and 90 other Churches; but the Lutherans are moſt numerous, and have the Government. He alledges, the Burgers have a Privilege to throw their Children into the *Danube* if they be incorrigible, without being call'd to an Account for it.

That which makes this City moſt famous, is the Diet of the Empire held here. For their Manner of Sitting, we refer to the Cut of the Diet, *Page* 509. Dr. *Nicholſon* and the *Atlas Hiſtorique* give us the following Account of the Colleges which compoſe the Diet, and of their Manner of Proceeding.

'Tis a General Aſſembly of all the Eſtates of the Empire, and may properly be called its Parliament. 'Tis ſummoned by the Emperor, with Advice of the Electors, after they have agreed upon the Time, Place, and Occaſion. Upon which the Emperor ſends Letters ſign'd with his own Hand, and counterſign'd by the Vice-Chancellor of the Empire, to each of the Princes and States 6 Months before it be open'd, to come thither in Perſon, or to ſend their Deputies, which they are obliged to obey upon their Allegiance. He does not write to ſuch Abbots and Biſhops as are not Princes, but only to their Directors, who give them Notice of it.

While the Empire was in the Hands of the *French*, the Princes were all obliged to appear in Perſon, except they were excuſed by the Emperor and Electors; but now moſt of 'em ſend their Deputies, to ſave Charges, which makes their Proceedings much ſlower, becauſe their Deputies are fre-

Digitized by Google

frequently obliged to send to them for Instructions in Cases of Importance: And since the Time of *Maximilian*, many of 'em have even forborn to send Deputies; yet they are as much obliged to submit to the Resolves of the Diet as if they did: But sometimes, in Cases of great Importance, the Emperor not only sends Letters, but Ambassadors, to require their Presence; and in such Cases as require Dispatch, those who do not send, make their Ambassadors Plenipotentiaries. The Emperor has Power, with Advice of the Electors, to call the Diet at what Place he pleases, provided it be within the Bounds of the Empire; but 'tis now generally held here, because of the Conveniency of its Situation, and of the easy Passage which many of the Members have by the *Danube*; and all the Princes bear their own Charge, or that of their Deputies. When they arrive, they give Notice to Count *Papenheim*, Hereditary Marshal of the Empire under the Elector of *Saxony*, who assigns each of 'em their Lodgings according to their Quality, and writes down their Names. If the Emperor be present, they beg Audience of him, shew him their Summons, thank him for calling the Diet, and promise Concurrence for the Good of the Empire. If the Emperor be not there, the Princes send Gentlemen to acquaint the Director of *Mentz* with their Arrival; but if they be Deputies, they send their Secretaries with their full Powers; and the Deputies of Towns do the same. When they are all arrived, the Marshal of the Empire acquaints them with the Time and Place, where the Emperor or his Commissary is to tell them what he has to propose. If the Emperor be there, he goes in his Robes to the Place, and sits down on his Throne, to which he ascends by three Steps. The Electors sit on a Bench, to which they ascend by two, and the Princes upon other Benches not raised so high. If the Emperor be absent, his Commissary, or a Prince whom he chuses, acquaints them with the Occasion of their Meeting. If the Emperor be there before they proceed to Business, they attend him to Church, where publick Prayers are made for a Blessing upon their Consultations. Then they return to the Place of Diet, and having heard the Proposals, the Elector of *Treves*, in the Name of the States, thanks the Emperor for calling a Diet; and the Secretary of the Empire receiving the Proposals from the Vice-Chancellor, reads them. After which, each of the Colleges retire to their particular Apartments to deliberate upon them; and after having maturely consider'd them, they agree upon a Day when they are to meet, and to communicate their Thoughts to one another, in order to agree on a Resolve; which being done, they send it to the Emperor; and if it be approved by him, it becomes a Law or Constitution of the Empire. The Princes of the Empire are divided into two Benches, called the Spiritual and Secular. The first Reason of which was, as Dr. *Nicholson* says, because formerly the Secular Princes did not meddle with the Affairs of the Church, nor the Ecclesiasticks with those of the State; but when the Popes brought all Ecclesiastical Affairs to their own Tribunals, such of the Prelates as had no Temporal Jurisdiction were excluded from the Diet. The Arch-Dukes of *Austria* and the Dukes of *Burgundy* sit on the Ecclesiastical Bench, because they are Princes of more than ordinary Eminence; and the Master of the *Teutonick* Order is allow'd the same Privilege. The *Lutheran* Prelates were formerly excluded from the Diet; but could have no Redress, notwithstanding their frequent Protestations, till by the Treaty of *Westphalia* they were allow'd a Place by themselves. All the Ecclesiastical and Secular Members have not equal Votes; for such of both as have Princely Dignities, are allow'd single Votes; but those who have not, give their Votes by Companies, as the Deputies of the Towns of the Bench of the *Rhine*, and of the Bench of *Swabia*. Formerly the Counts and Barons were also divided into two Benches, called those of *Wetteravia* and *Swabia*, when each Bench was allowed but one Vote; but now the Counts of *Francomia* and *Westphalia*, which includes those of *Saxony*, are allow'd two Benches and two Votes; the former since 1641, and the latter since 1654.

The Deputies of the Imperial Towns make up the Third Rank of Members; but when they came to that Privilege, is not certain; tho the Chronicle of *Spires* says, That several of 'em had this Privilege in the

Digitized by Google

the 12th Century, which Dr. *Nicholſon* thinks to have been only the Cities of *Italy*; and that thoſe called Imperial in the Empire, were not allowed a Vote till the 14th Century. The Deputies of the City where the Diet is held ſit at a Table by themſelves, and there take an Account of the Voices of the other Delegates which are brought to them, and regiſter'd by the two Regiſters of *Ulm* and *Spires*; the former repreſenting the Cities in the Circle of the *Rhine*, and the latter thoſe of *Swabia*.

Hiſtorians tell us, That the greateſt Diſputes in the Diet happen about Precedency, in which they ſpend more Time than in debating the Emperor's Propoſals. Another Part of their Time they ſay is too frequently ſpent in Drinking-Matches, for which the Emperor *Ferdinand* did ſharply reprehend them. A third Part of their Time is ſpent about the Power of the Diet, ſhewing in what Caſes they may or may not be controlled or curbed by the Emperor: And the laſt Part of their Time is ſpent on the Emperor's Propoſals about Peace or War, making or annulling of Laws, regulating the Coin, or raiſing Taxes, and ſuch other Affairs of State.

They ſit in a large and ſtately upper Room in the Town-Hall, richly hung with curious Tapeſtry and Needle-work. The Emperor's Throne is cover'd with Cloth of Gold, and the Chairs and Benches of the other Princes and States are cover'd with Cloth of Silver, Velvet, Satin, Silk, &c. according to their ſeveral Qualities.

The Order of their Sitting is thus: The Way how the Electors ſit, may be ſeen in the Cut, *Page* 509. The Eccleſiaſtical Princes ſit on the Right Hand thus:

The Arch-Duke of Auſtria.
The Duke of Burgundy.
The Archbiſhop of Saltzburg. } A.
The Grand Maſter of the Teutonick Order.

The Biſhops of
Lubeck.
Oſnabrug.
The Biſhops of
Bamberg. } A.
Wurtzburg. }
Aichſtet.
Spires.
Straſburg.
Conſtance.
Augſburg.
Hildeſheim.
Paderborn.
Freiſengen.
Ratisbon.
Paſſaw.
Trent.
Brixen. } A.
Baſle. }
Liege.
Oſnabrug. } C.
Munſter. }
Chur *or* Choire. }
The Abbots of
Fulden.
Kempten.
Elwangen.
Luders.
Mourbach.
Great Maſter of Malta. } C.
Bergtholſgaden.
Weiſſenburg.
Prume.
Stablo.
Corveii.
The Prelates of
Swabia *and the* Rhine. A.

The Secular Princes ſit on the Left Hand thus:

The Dukes of
Bavaria. } C.
Lawteren.
Simmeren.
Neuburg.
Magdeburg.
Bremen.
Deux-Ponts.
Saxe-Altenburg.
..... Coburg.
..... Weimar.
..... Gotha.
..... Eiſſenach.
..... Simmeren.

N. B. *Thoſe marked with* A, *have the Precedency of one another alternatively. Thoſe marked with* C, *contend for Precedency.*

The Abbeſſes who are Princeſſes ſend Deputies.

The

The Dukes of
Brand. Culmbach.
. . . . . Anſpach.
Brunſw. Wolfenbuttel.
. . . . . Zell.
. . . . . Grubenhagen.
. . . . . Calemberg.
Halberſtadt.
Verden.
Pomerania Ult. } C.
Pomerania Poſt. }
Mecklenburg Swerin. }
. . . . . Guſtrow. }
Wirtemberg.
Heſſe-Caſſel.
Darmſtat. } A.
Baden Baden. }
. . . . . Durlach. }
. . . . . Hochberg. }
Saxe-Lawenburg.
Minden.
Holſtein-Glückſtat. } A.
. . . . . Gottorf. }
Savoy.
Luchtemberg.
Anhalt.
Henneberg.
Swerin.
Ratzburg.
Hirſhfeld.
Lorrain.
Nomeni.
Montbelliard.
Aremberg.
Hohenzollern.
Eggenberg.
Lobkowits.
Salms.
Dietrichſtein.
Piedlomini.
Naſſau Hademar.
. . . . . Siegen.
. . . . . Dillenberg.
Aversberg.
Ooſtfrize.
Furſtemberg.
Octingen.
Schwartzenburg.
Mindelheim.
The Counts of
Swabia.
Wetteravia.
Franconia.
Weſtphalia.

The Imperial Cities of the Bench of the *Rhine* are,

Cologne.
Aix la Chapelle.
Strasburg.
Lubeck.
Worms.
Spires.
Francfort am Main.
Wetzlar.
Gelnhauſen.
Haguenaw.
Colmar.
Homburg.
Bremen.
Goſlar.
Mulhauſen.
Northauſen.
Schleſtat.
Weiſſenburg.
Landaw.
Obernheim.
Keiſſersberg.
Munſter au Val de St. Gregorie.
Roſheim.
Turcheim.
Dortmont.
Friedberg.

The Imperial Towns of the Bench of *Swabia* are,

Ratisbon.
Augsburg.
Nuremberg.
Ulm.
Memmingen.
Kaufburen.
Eſſlingen.
Revelingen.
Nortlingen.
Dinkelſpiel.
Bibrach.
Alen.
Bopfingen
Gingen.
Rotemburg.
Burchaw *on the* Tee-der-See.
Lentkerch.
Swinfort.
Hall *in* Swabia.
Rotweil.
Uberlingen.
Pfulendorf.
Weil.
Hailbron.
Buchorn.
Wangen.
Gemond.
Lindau.
Ravensburg.
Winſheim.
Wempfen.
Offenburg.
Zell à Namersbach.
Kempten.
Weiſſemburg.
Gengenbach.

The *Atlas Hiſtorique* ſays, That the Princes who have a Right to ſit in the College of Princes, are thoſe who have a deliberative and deciſive Voice, and who contribute to the Support of the Empire, according to the *Matricula*. The Directors of this College are, the Archbiſhop of *Saltzburg*, the Arch-Duke of *Auſtria*, and the Duke of *Burgundy*, who preſide by Turns, as every new Matter comes to be debated; and the Votes are alternatively taken of the Secular and Eccleſiaſtical Bench. They are gather'd

Digitized by Google

ther'd by Count *Papenheim*: After which, the Archbishop of *Saltzburg* and the Arch-Duke draw up the Result, to report it to the Diet. Such Princes as possess several Dominions, which have a Right of Voting, have so many Votes accordingly. Thus the Elector of *Bavaria* has two, as Duke of *Bavaria*, and Prince of *Liebtenberg*: The Elector of *Saxony* has five, and the Elector of *Brandenburg* four. We have mention'd already, That in the College of the Towns, the Magistrates of the City where the Diet is held are the Directors of that College; and in the Electoral College, the Elector of *Mentz* is Director.

The *Atlas* informs us, That there is another Assembly of the States of the Empire, called the *Assembly of Deputations*, where the Deputies chosen for that End determine Things that have been referred to them by a Diet; or when the Elector of *Mentz*, in the Emperor's Name, summons the Deputies, at the Request of the Directors or Captains of one or more Circles, to take Order about their Affairs, or to appease Controversies, which they are not able to do of themselves.

2. *Straubingen*, on the *Danube*, 20 Miles E. from *Ratisbon*, a Town of good Trade, well fortified, and has a Bridge over the *Danube*.

3. *Landshut*, the chief Town in *Lower Bavaria*, and the Seat of the Elector's Lieutenant, who has a Court here, and several Officers for the Government of the Country, which consists of 6 Bailiwicks, 32 Market-Towns, 14 Monasteries, and 74 Noblemen's Seats, with their Dependencies. 'Twas built by *Otho* of *Bavaria*, the first of that Name of the Line of *Wittelspach*, when *Ratisbon* threw off his Yoke, and became an Imperial Town; and being in the middle of his Territories, and a pleasant Country, he built a Palace here, fortified the Town as much as he could, and call'd it by this Name, which signifies the Bulwark of the Country. His Son Duke *Lodowick* enlarged it, and added the Castle about 1204. The Town is generally well built, being formerly much frequented by the Nobility, who attended the Court, and now by the Elector's Officers above-mention'd. St. *Martin*'s Church, the Chief in the Town, has a Tower, which is thought to be the highest in the Empire. The new Buildings in the Duke's Palace are a neat Piece of Architecture, after the *Italian* Manner.

4. *Passaw*, in Latin *Passavia*, or *Patavia*. Some derive the Name from its being a Passage over the River, which the two *German* Monosyllables, *Pass* and *Aw*, seem to import. Others say, That it comes from the Word *Battavi*, because it formerly held out a great Siege against the *Dutch*; but this seems too much strain'd. *Cluverius*, *Bertius*, and other Learned Men, think, that the Part of the Town called *Instadt*, on the S. Side of the *Danube*, and the E. Side of the *Inn*, is the ancientest, and was the *Boiojurum* of the Ancients. That properly called *Passaw*, lies on the S. Side of the *Danube*, and on the W. Side of the *Inn*; and that called *Ilstat*, lies on the N. Side of the *Danube*, and on the E. Side of the *Ilz*. The River *Inn*, which gives Name to that Part of the Town called *Instadt*, empties it self into the *Danube* with such Force, that it keeps its Stream unmix'd for a long way, which is easy to be seen from the different Colours, tho' in the same Channel. The *Ilz* or *Ilitz*, which gives Name to that Part of the Town on the N. Side of the *Danube*, is also discernable for several Furlongs, tho' in the same Channel with the *Danube*. This City is fortified on all Sides by Rocks or Rivers, and therefore is as strong by Nature almost, as any Town in *Bavaria* is by Art. This City is large, is an Imperial Town, but under the Protection of its Bishop, who is a Prince of the Empire, and the Magistrates act by his Commission, tho' the City pays some Acknowledgment to the Elector of *Bavaria*. The Bishop, who is Lord of the City, and of the Country about 20 Miles in Extent on the N. Side of the *Danube*, has a stately Palace here, and is Suffragan of *Saltzburg*. Most of the Houses are of Timber; but the Bishop's Palace, and the Castle on a Mountain near *Ilstadt*, are handsome Stone Buildings. Their Churches are likewise fair and stately, especially the Cathedral dedicated to St. *Stephen*, which is a neat and sumptuous Fabrick, adorn'd with a great many fair Tombs and Monuments. This City is famous for the Treaty of Peace betwixt the Emperor *Charles* V. and *Maurice* Elector of *Saxony* in 1552, by which the

Digitized by Google

Lutherans had the free Exercise of their Religion granted them in the Empire. It was taken by the Elector of *Bavaria* in 1703; but he was soon after obliged to abandon it. It lies 52 Miles E. from *Landshut*, and 60 S. E. from *Ratisbon*. The Bishoprick has *Bohemia* on the N. *Bavaria* on the S. and W. and *Austria* on the E. Several Towns in *Austria*, and Lordships in *Bavaria*, are Parts of the Diocese, which of late has commonly been govern'd by an *Austrian* Prince, and has 80000 Crowns of Annual Revenue. The River *Ilz* produces Pearls, which belong to the Emperor and the Elector of *Bavaria*, each of whom have an Officer here to take Care of their Interests. Dr. *Brown* says, That most of the City was not many Years ago consum'd by Fire; so that 'tis now rebuilt after the *Italian* Manner, and reckon'd one of the 10 considerable Cities on the *Danube*. There is a Bridge over the *Inn* betwixt *Passaw* and the Town called *Instadt*.

In this Diocese there's likewise *Oberneberg*, a small City, with a good Castle, which has a Privilege to exact a Toll of all those that pass by the River *Inn*, and is the usual Residence of the Bishop of *Passaw*. It lies about 15 Miles S. W. from *Passaw*. *Reichersperg*, a small City near *Oberneberg*, is likewise a Place of the Bishop's Residence.

5. *Mospurg*, a Town and County betwixt *Landshut* and *Freysing*, betwixt the Conflux of the *Isar* and *Amber*, and mid-way betwixt *Freysing* and *Landshut*. Some reckon it, next to *Ratisbon*, the oldest Town in *Bavaria*, but without any Reason. 'Tis a fair and pleasant Town, was annexed to *Bavaria* by Duke *Ludowick*, and has 28 Towns of good Rank, besides a great many Villages, which come to a Court held there for Justice. 'Twas formerly govern'd by Counts of its own.

6. The great and famous Monasteries of *Upper* and *Lower Altaich*, about 5 *German* Leagues from one another, on the Banks of the *Danube*. Latin Authors call them *Altahn*, from two great old Oaks under which the Heathen Priests used to sacrifice; but the *Bavarians*, when converted, built Churches here, that were afterwards turn'd into Monasteries. The Counts of *Pegen* were formerly Protectors of those Monasteries; but now they are immediately subject to the Elector of *Bavaria*, who disposes of the Revenues and the Government as he pleases.

7. *Abach*, a fair Market-Town on the *Danube*, about 8 Miles S. W. from *Ratisbon*, noted for the Birth of *Henry* II. and for several Pieces of *Roman* Antiquities which have been dug up in the Neighbourhood. It has likewise a good Bath, which being artificially heated, is a ready Cure for Melancholy, Apoplexies, Dropsies, *&c.*

The Upper Palatinate *of* Bavaria *or* Nortgow.

IT has the latter Name, because 'tis the most Northerly Part of the Dutchy of *Bavaria*. It has *Bohemia* on the E. *Franconia* on the W. *Missnia* on the N. and the *Danube* on the S. which separates it from the rest of *Bavaria*. *Moll* makes it about 77 Miles long from N. to S. and where 'tis broadest, 'tis much of the same Extent. The Country is rocky and rough, but pleasant to the Eye. They have Plenty of a harsh sort of Wine, and in some Parts store of Corn and Grass; but their chief Riches come from Mines of Silver, Copper, and Iron. They export great Quantities of the latter to neighbouring Countries. In 1664, there were found at *Freyung* in this Country two remarkable Sorts of Lead-Ore, which were sent, with some Specimens of other Metals, to our Royal Society. One of 'em is a kind of Chrystalline Stone, almost all good Lead; the other not so rich, but both of singular Use for Essays upon the Coppel. On the S. W. Corner of this Province there are two small Rivers, *Altmuhl* and *Regnitz*; the first falls into the *Danube*, and the latter into the *Main*, and by consequence into the *Rhine*. Betwixt the Heads of those two Rivers, which are at no great distance, *Charles the Great* began a Canal, with a Design to make a Passage betwixt the *Rhine* and the *Danube*. Part of this Canal is still to be seen near *Weissenburg*, towards the Head of the *Regnitz*; but Dr. *Nicholson* informs us, That the Men employ'd in it were obliged to desist by the Fall of excessive Rains, and the Appearance of strange Specters; of which, we leave the Reader to make his own Judgment.

This

This Country was, upon the Partition of the Dutchy by *Lewis* of *Bavaria* the Emperor betwixt him and his eldeſt Brother *Rudolph*, left for ever to the Family of the *Lower Palatinate*; but *Rudolph* having forfeited the ſame, by oppoſing his Brother the Emperor, 'twas confirmed to *Rudolph*'s Sons by the Decree of *Pavia* in 1329, and enjoyed by that Branch afterwards, till *Frederick* V. Elector *Palatine*, was proſcribed in 1623, when 'twas reſtored to the Family of *Bavaria*; but the Count *Palatine* of the *Rhine*, the Landgrave of *Lichtenburg*, and the City of *Nuremberg*, have laid Claim to it ſince.

Cities and Towns of Note here.

1. *Amberg*, the Metropolis of the *Upper Palatinate*, ſubject to the Elector of *Bavaria*. It lies on the Banks of the *Vils*, 30 Miles N. from *Ratiſbon*, and is ſo well fortified, that 'tis reputed one of the ſtrongeſt Towns in *Upper Germany*. Some ſay, 'twas built by the Emperor *Henry* I. but others, by the Biſhop of *Aichſtat* about 1297, and wall'd round in 1326. 'Twas formerly ſubject to the Dukes of *Swabia*; but the laſt Duke gave it to the Houſe of *Bavaria*. Its chief Ornaments are the Caſtle and Armory, which are both curious Structures. The greateſt Trade of the Town is from their Iron Mines, and the Iron-Works made from 'em, which are ſent down the *Nab* to *Ratiſbon* and other Cities. *La Forreſt* ſays, this is the *Cantiebis* of the Ancients, the Metropolis of the *Armalauſii*. The Town has great Privileges, which were granted 'em by the Emperor *Robert*, and lies conveniently for Trade, being almoſt in the Center betwixt *Ratiſbon*, *Ingolſtat*, and *Nuremberg*.

2. *Sulzbach*, on the top of a Hill near the River *Vils*, about 7 Miles N. W. from *Amberg*. It had formerly Counts of its own, who were ſo conſiderable, that *Erneſt*, who liv'd in the Time of the Emperor *Henry* III. had one Daughter married to *Conrad* III. Emperor of *Germany*, and another to *Emanuel* Emperor of *Conſtantinople*. Their laſt Earl *Gebhard* died of the Plague at *Rome*, in the Reign of the Emperor *Frederick* II. and leaving no Iſſue-Male, this City and its Territories came to the Duke of *Bavaria*, and afterwards to the Family of *Neuburg*, a Branch of which does ſtill reſide here, where they have a ſtately Palace, and call'd themſelves Counts *Palatine* of the *Rhine*, Dukes of *Newburg*, *Bavaria*, *Juliers*, *Cleves*, &c. from whom the preſent Elector *Palatine*, of the Family of *Newburg*, is deſcended. The adjacent Country is ſo ſtony, that they have no Water but from one ſmall Rivulet, with which they brew excellent Beer, that ſupplies their Want of Wine. The Duke's Palace and the Church are fair Structures. 'Tis well built, and the Streets uniform; but it ſuffered much by the Civil Wars of *Germany*; the Effects of which are ſtill to be ſeen by ruinous Houſes.

3. *Cham*, on the Rivers *Champ* and *Regen*, 35 Miles S. E. from *Amberg*, formerly rul'd by a Marq. of its own, who govern'd the Borders of *Bavaria* and *Bohemia* for the Emperor. The laſt of their Princes, about 1210, ſold it to the Duke of *Bavaria*. Their chief Traffick is from Travellers, who come this Way out of *Bavaria*, and other Parts of *Germany*, to *Bohemia*.

4. *Waldſaſſen*, a rich *Ciſtertian* Monaſtery, a *German* League from *Eger* or *Egra*, on the Frontiers of *Bohemia*, to which belongs the Market-Town of *Durſenreuth*, with many adjoining Villages. 'Tis noted for the Monuments of ſeveral Landgraves of *Leuchtenberg*, Counts of *Saltzbach*, and other *German* Princes, who lie buried here. The Archbiſhop is a Prince, and pays 144 Florins *per Annum* to the Emperor.

5. *Caſtel*, another famous Monaſtery, on the River *Lauter* or *Lauterbach*, one of the pleaſanteſt Countries of the *Upper Palatinate*, formerly govern'd by Counts of its own, who came from *Zeland* upon an Irruption of the Sea into that Country, and built a Caſtle and three Churches here, at the Mouth of ſo many Springs. His Poſterity turn'd it into a *Benedictine* Monaſtery about 1098, and Count *Otto* endow'd it nobly ſome Time after. The Jeſuits have lately got Poſſeſſion of it, as they have done of many other rich Houſes and Mannors in *Bavaria*. Among other ancient Monuments in their Chapel, the moſt remarkable is the Epitaph of *Sigefrid Schwepperman*, a great Champion in the Days of the Emperor *Lewis* IV. which

ends thus, *Let every Man have his Egg, but stout.* Schwepperman *two*; which was occasion'd thus: The Emperor having obtain'd a great Victory against his Competitor *Frederick* III. chiefly by the Conduct of this General, there being nothing left after the Battle but Eggs, he commanded that every Soldier should have one, and this Champion two, which has since become a Proverb in those Parts.

6. *Newburg*, for Distinction-sake called *Vormwalds*, because situated not far from the *Bohemian* Forrests. 'Tis a small City with a Castle, of no great Strength, and was taken in 1634 at one Assault by the *Swedes*. It lies on the River *Schwartzach*, but is poor, the Country affording no Commodities for Trade.

7. *Luckrenberg*, noted only for giving Title to a Landgrave. 'Twas formerly govern'd by Princes of its own, but now subject to the Elector of *Bavaria*. 'Tis defended by a Castle, and lies about 18 Miles N. E. from *Amberg*.

8. *Averbach*, at the Head of the *Vils*, noted for the fair and strong Monastery of *Michelfeld*, founded by *Otto* Bishop of *Bamberg*, the Great Apostle of *Pomeren*, about 1119.

Cities and noted Towns in this Country subject to the Dukes of Newburg.

1. NEwburg, on the S. of the *Danube*, a neat little City, 12 Miles W. from *Ingolstadt*, and 15 E. from *Donawert*. 'Twas formerly the Seat, and still gives Title of Duke to the Elector *Palatine*; which Dukedom, *Heylin*, by Mistake, ascrib'd to the other *Newburg* last mention'd. It had its Name in Opposition to *Altemberg*, or the Old Town; the Ruins of which are still to be seen near it. *Velserus* says, it was a Bishoprick in *Charlemagne*'s Time, when their Bishop *Manno* took Place of all the rest in a National Council held in 711: But *Brunner*, in his Annals of *Bavaria*, says, he was the first and last Bishop of this Diocese, which was united to that of *Augsburg*; and *Maximilian*, when he finished the *Bavarian* War in 1505, annex'd this City, with many other great Towns of the Circle, to the *Upper Palatinate*. Soon after it was made a separate Dutchy, of which *Newburg* is still the Metropolis. The Dutchy is, according to *Moll*, 50 Miles long on both Sides the *Danube*, and 32 where broadest. This new Principality being erected, *Otto Henry*, Count *Palatine* of the *Rhine*, and Duke of *Newburg*, built out of the Ruins of an old Castle a stately Palace, which was the Residence of his Successors; one of whom fortified this City. The noble Nunnery of *Benedictines*, formerly the chief Ornament of the Town, was founded by the Emperor *Henry* II. and his Empress *Cunigund*, about 1007; or, as some say, they only repair'd it. It was dissolv'd in 1555, when the Duke embrac'd the *Augsburg* Confession. But *Wolfgang William* turning Papist, he built a fair Church and College out of the Ruins of this Nunnery, and gave them to the Jesuits, who still possess them. The great Trade of this Town is in Wine, which is sold Weekly in their publick Markets; and the Duke has a great Revenue from a Toll on the Vessels that pass up and down the *Danube*, over which they have a Bridge. 'Tis noted for an Image of the Virgin, known by the Name of *Our Lady of Newburg*, to which the superstitious People ascribe many Miracles. This City was taken by the Elector of *Bavaria* in 1703. *Philip William*, Duke of *Newburg*, succeeded to the Palatinate of the *Rhine* in 1685, being the nearest Male of Kin to that Illustrious Family. He was the first Popish Prince who succeeded to that Electorate since the Reformation, to the great Disadvantage of the Protestants of that Country, and of all *Germany*. He was very fortunate in his Issue, having 4 Daughters married to great Princes; the first to the late Emperor *Leopold*, the 2d to the late King *Charles* of *Spain*, the 3d to the late King of *Portugal*, and the 4th to Prince *James* of *Poland*. His eldest Son the present Elector, married the late Emperor's Daughter; his 2d Son is Great Master of the *Teutonick* Order; his 3d married the Princess *Radzeville*, Widow to a Marq. of *Brandenburg*; his 4th is Dean of *Augsburg*, and President of the Chapter of *Constance*; and his 5th Bishop of *Breslaw*; so that 'tis now one of the most potent Families of the Empire.

2. *Laugingen*, a strong and well fortified Town on the *Danube*. Some call it *Lauingen*.

Digitized by Google

wingen. It lies 22 Miles W. from *Donawert*, is a neat City, and has a good Trade. By the many *Roman* Antiquities found in the Neighbourhood, there's Ground to ſuppoſe, that it was formerly one of their Colonies. 'Twas anciently ſubject to the Dukes of *Swabia*; but was ſold by *Conradine*, their laſt Duke, to the Houſe of *Bavaria*, who in 1505 annex'd it to the *Palatinate*. The famous *Albertus Magnus* was born here, of a Noble and Ancient Family, and his Memory is much honour'd by the Citizens. In his Time, a ſtout Shoemaker of the Town procur'd them great Reputation, by killing a *Hungarian* Giant in a Duel; for which, the Emperor *Otto* I. among other Favours, gave them for their Arms a Moor's-Head crown'd, with a Gold Chain about his Neck, which they bear ſtill. The chief Ornaments of the Town are, their Bridge over the *Danube*, the Caſtle, and great Church, which is cover'd with Copper, and has a Tower of 301 Foot high. 'Twas formerly the Sepulchre of the Dukes of *Newburg*, and other Princes of the *Palatine* Family; but they are now commonly entomb'd at *Neuburg*.

3. *Hochſtadt*, on the *Danube*, about 8 Miles E. from *Lavingen*. The Biſhop of *Bamberg* lays Claim to this Town; but the Duke of *Newburg* keeps Poſſeſſion by Strength. In 1634, the *Croats*, during the Civil Wars of *Germany*, did barbarouſly cut off many of the Inhabitants, and ruin'd moſt of the Town; but they have ſince rebuilt it pretty well, are defended by a very ſtrong Caſtle on the *Danube*, and well ſupplied with all Neceſſaries, there being rich Corn-Fields and good Paſtures in the Neighbourhood; but that which eternizes its Fame, is the famous Victory obtain'd here in *Auguſt*, 1703, by the Duke of *Marlborough* and Prince *Eugene*, over the *French* and *Bavarians*. In Remembrance of which, there's a noble Pillar, with an Inſcription upon it, erected in the Field of Battle.

4. *Blenheim*, about 8 Miles N. from *Hochſtadt*, famous for the taking of 20 *French* Battalions of Foot, and 12 Squadrons of Dragoons, after a ſtout Reſiſtance, by the Earl of *Orkney*, where the late Lord *Cutts* did alſo gain immortal Honour. The chief Particulars of this great Victory, we gave an Account of, *Page* 494, *&c.*

5. *Dillingen*, on the *Danube*, betwixt *Lavingen* and *Hochſtadt*, is a pretty little City, with a fine College of Jeſuits. It has the Title of a County, and belongs to the Biſhop of *Augsburg*, who has a fine Palace here, in which he uſually reſides.

6. *Naburg*, a pleaſant City on the River *Nab*, from whence it has its Name, about half a *German* League from *Amberg*, ſtands on the top of a Hill, and is a great Road for Travellers betwixt *Bohemia*, &c. and *Ratisbon*.

7. *Aichſtadt*, about 12 Miles N. from *Ingolſtadt*. 'Tis a Biſhop's See, upon the River *Altmuchl*. Their firſt Biſhop is ſaid to have been St. *Willibald*, by ſome thought to be deſcended from an *Engliſh Saxon* King; but others ſay, he was Son to *Richard* Duke of *Swabia*. The Biſhop's Palace, a Mile from the Town, ſtill bears his Name. This City is but ſmall, and noted for ſome Relicks, to which the Prieſts aſcribe Miracles. The *Scheffer* Stones, mentioned in the Deſcription of *Manſfeld*, are found in the neighbouring Fields. *Mol*, *La Forreſt*, and *Sanſon*, reckon this Biſhoprick in *Franconia*, where we have given a further Deſcription of it.

The City and Territories of Newmarckt *in the* Upper Palatinate.

1. *Newmarckt*, a fair City on the Banks of the *Sultz*, about 5 *German* Leagues from *Nuremberg*, and 2 from *Altorf*. 'Twas formerly ſubject to the Marquiſſes of *Vochburg*, afterwards to the Kings of *Bohemia*, the Dukes of *Swabia*, the Dukes of *Bavaria*, and the Electors *Palatine*, from whom it was taken during the late Civil Wars; before which, there was a conſiderable Proteſtant College here, but deſtroy'd by the Duke of *Bavaria*, who reduc'd the Town, that was formerly an Imperial City. It ſtands in a pleaſant and fruitful Country; but the Air is too ſharp for Vines. Their chief Commodity is Iron, and their Rivers are cover'd with Iron Mills.

2. *Gnadenberg*, *i. e.* The Hill of Grace, noted for a Monaſtery of the Order of St. *Salvator*. It lies on the Banks of the *Schwartzach*, half a *German* League from *Altorf*. 'Tis divided into two Parts, one for Monks, and another for Nuns, with one Church betwixt them, which was a magnificent

Digitized by Google

ficent Fabrick, and had 36 Altars. *Catharine* Dutchess of *Pomern*, who had for her Husband *John* Duke of *Bavaria*, founded this Monastery about 1426, and is buried here. It embraced the Reformation in the 16th Century; but since the restoring of Popery, has lost its former Grandeur, and the Revenues are shar'd by two Jesuits, and one of the Elector's Lieutenants.

3. *Allerberg*, on the W. of this District, is a Town of Trade, which, with its Territory, is subject to the Duke of *Newburg*.

Other Places of Note in *Newmarckt* are, 1. *Freyenstattlein*, destroyed by the *Swedes* in 1632, and afterwards came to Count *Tilly*, whose Heirs pretend to it, with a Salvo to the Elector of *Bavaria*'s Right. 2. *Sultzburg*, from whence the adjacent Country is called *Sulzgow*. 3. *Hellenstein*, a Wall'd Town and Castle on the Confines of the Bishoprick of *Aichstat*, famous for the Iron Mines in the Neighbourhood. There are so many Proprietors of this Country, that 'tis hard to distinguish their Bounderies; but the Chief are the Elector of *Bavaria* and the Duke of *Newburg*.

The Circle of SWABIA, *or* SWEVIA.

DR. *Nicholson* observes, That when the *Romans* came first into these Parts, *Swevia* was a large Kingdom, lying as far W. as the *German* Ocean, and as far N. as the utmost Bounds of the *Swedish* Dominions; so that *Tacitus* reckons no less than 54 different Branches of the *Swevian* Nation, of whom we have given a particular Account from *Cluverius* in Ancient *Germany*. The Doctor observes further, That there's Reason to think, that *Swevia* and *Germany* were at first Synonimous Terms with the *Romans*, who afterwards appropriated the Name of *Suevi* to the *Hermunduri*, the most considerable Branch of 'em, who inhabited that now called *Swabia*. *La Forrest* says, That on the Fall of the *Roman* Empire, it contained all the Country betwixt the *Rhine*, the *Alps*, and the *Elb*, and they call'd their Governors, Kings; but *Clovis*, King of *France*, depriv'd them of that Title after the Battle of *Tolbiac*, when he gave it to *Thierry*, his eldest Son, and it continued under the *French* Kings of the first Race. *Charlemagne* made some of his Officers Governors of this Country, with the Title of Dukes, and the Sovereignty was usurp'd by their Successors. This Dutchy fell afterwards to several Families, till about 1078, when the Emperor *Henry* IV. invested his Son-in-Law *Frederick* Count of *Hohenstauffen* with it. His Posterity kept it till 1269, that the Dutchy of *Swabia* was re-united to the Crown, says *La Forrest*, by the Death of *Conradine*, who was beheaded by Order of *Charles* of *France*, King of *Naples*. The Emperor *Rodolph* I. invested *Rodolph* his eldest Son with it about 1288; but *John* Duke of *Swabia* was deprived of it, for having assassinated the Emperor *Albert* his Uncle.

Dr. *Nicholson* says, That no Prince of the Empire does now pretend a Title to the whole Dutchy, which is subject to many Rulers. The Dukes of *Wirtemberg* have the largest Share; the Arch-Dukes of *Austria* and the Elector of *Bavaria* have another great Part of it; and the rest is possessed by the Marquisses of *Baden*, and the Imperial Cities of *Augsburg*, *Ulm*, &c. as may be seen in the *Matricula* of the Empire, *P.* 515. The Boundaries of *Swabia* at present are, on the N. the Palatinate of the *Rhine*, and *Franconia*; on the S. *Switzerland*, and the County of *Tirol*; on the W. *Alsace*, and the Upper Part of the Palatinate of the *Rhine*; and on the E. *Bavaria*, and Part of *Franconia*. 'Tis in Length from E. to W. if we include the Marq. of *Baden*, 140 Miles; and where broadest, from N. to S. 132. 'Tis commonly divided into 4 Parts; the first contains the Dutchy of *Wirtemberg*, and the Cities of *Ulm*, *Reutlingen*, *Eslingen*, *Nordlingen*, *Hailbron*, and *Hall*: The 2d contains the Marq. of *Baden*, the City of *Rotweil*, &c. The 3d has the Bishopricks of *Constance* and *Kempten*, with the Cities of *Bibrach*, *Ifina*, and *Lindaw*: The 4th has the City and Diocese of *Augsburg*, with the Cities of *Kaufbeuren*, *Memmingen*, &c.

La Forrest says, That the House of *Austria* has in this Country the Marq. of *Burgow*, the Bishoprick of *Constance*, the Landgraviate of *Nellemburg*, the County of *Hohenberg*, the *Ortnaw*, the *Brisgaw*, and the Forrest Towns.

Chy-

Cluytzius and *Frecherus* are of Opinion, That *Heidelberg* ſtands in *Swabia*, and that the *Neckar* is the Boundary betwixt *Francon.* and *Swabia*.

This Country was anciently called *Alemannia*, which was afterwards communicated to the whole Empire. *Swabia* in general has Plenty enough of Corn, tho' in many Places 'tis full of large Woods and Forreſts, which abound with Veniſon of all Sorts, good Breeds of Horſes, Kine, and Sheep; and in their Mountains, they have Mines of Silver, Copper, and other Metals. Moſt of their Woods are Pine and Fir. Their Air is healthful; and beſides Corn, the Country produces abundance of Wine and Flax; and of the latter, the Inhabitants make much Linen Cloth, which they ſell in great Quantities, and in this Trade employ moſt of their Poor. *Plutarch* ſays of the ancient Inhabitants, That they were the braveſt, boldeſt, and beſt Warriors, of the *German* Nation. The modern Inhabitants being accuſtomed to ſpare Diet, and mean Lodgings, are fit to endure all the Fatigues of War: Yet not only Strangers, but their own Authors, accuſe both Sexes of being exceſſively inclin'd to Venery.

The Diverſities of Sovereigns occaſion the Diverſities of Religions in this Country, where there are *Papiſts*, *Lutherans*, *Calviniſts*, and *Jews*.

'Tis commonly divided into *Upper* and *Lower Swabia*.

The chief Towns of Upper Swabia.

1. AUgsburg, in Latin *Auguſta Vindelicorum*, and anciently *Licationam Damaſia*, on the Conflux of the *Lech* and the *Wertach*, in Long. 29. 47. Lat. 48. 20. 25 Miles S. from *Donawert*, and 62 S. W. from *Ratiſbon*. It had its Name from *Auguſtus Ceſar*, who about 12 Years before our Saviour ſubdued theſe Parts, and planted a *Roman* Colony here under *Druſus Nero*, Brother of *Tiberius*. The *Vindelici* were a Branch of the *Illyrians*, who inhabited Part of this Country, and gave it the other Part of its Name; and the *Licatii*, who probably derived their Name from the River *Lech*, occaſioned its being called *Licatiorum Damaſia*; and the *Vindelici* are ſuppoſed to have had their Name from the *Vinda*, now the *Wertach*, which falls into the *Lech* near *Augsburg*. This City continued under the *Romans* and *Goths* 550 Years, and was afterwards poſſeſſed by the Kings of *France*, till the Empires of *Germany* and *Rome* were joined to the Crown of *France* by *Charlemagne*. After which it became ſubject to the Dukes of *Swabia*, till *Conradin*, their laſt Duke, ſold them their Freedom, and obtained a Confirmation of their Privileges from the Emperor. Some of the old Chronicles of this City ſay, That Chriſtianity was firſt planted here by *Lucius*, the firſt Chriſtian King of *England*, then called *Britain*, about 190, after he had eſtabliſh'd Chriſtianity at home. But Dr. *Nicholſon* juſtly obſerves, this ſeems to be a Monkiſh Fable, contriv'd for the Honour of the Monaſtick Life, as preferable to that of a King, eſpecially ſince they ſay he travelled alſo to *Coire* in the *Griſons* Country, and was martyr'd there for his Religion; whereas *Matthew* of *Weſtminſter* ſays, he died at *Glocester* in 201. But the whole Story of this King has been ſo much expoſed by the Learned of late Years, that it deſerves no Credit. However this may be, there's good Authority to prove, that Chriſtianity was planted here in *Dioclesian's* Time, for which *Narciſſus Gerundenſis* and others were martyr'd by his Lieutenant *Gaius* about 303: And in 400, we have an Account, That *Theonneſtus* and *Albanus* oppoſed the *Arian* Hereſy in this City. *La Forreſt* ſays, 'twas taken by *Attila* the *Hun* in 452, and by *Clovis* of *France* in 496. It came afterwards to his Son *Thierry* King of *Auſtraſia*, and then to the ancient Dukes of *Bavaria*. *Charlemagne* took it in 787. His Son *Louis* the Emperor annex'd it to the Kingdom of *Bavaria* in 817. But in 912, when the *Carlovingian* Race was extinguiſh'd, it became a Free City, and was endow'd with many Privileges by *Charles* IV. and other Emperors. In 1518, *Luther* gave an Account of his Faith at the Diet here; and in 1530, the Proteſtants alſo preſented their Confeſſion of Faith to the Emperor *Charles* V. in the Diet here, from hence call'd the *Augsburg Confeſſion*, as before-mention'd; but the Proteſtant Princes being perſecuted, levied an Army for Defence of their Liberty and Religion, which obliged the Em-

peror

Peror to call a Council for determining those Differences, where Matters were debated by 7 Deputies on each Side. For the Papists, there were named the Bishop of *Augsburg*, and *Henry* Duke of *Brunswick*, two Lawyers, and three Divines, *viz. Wimpin*, *Eccius*, and *Cochleus*. For the Protestants, *George* Marquis of *Brandenburg*, *John Frederick* Elector of *Saxony*, *Melancton*, *Brentius*, and *Schepfius*. *Luther*, who was one of 'em, durst not appear with them, for fear of the like Treatment which *John Hus* and *Jerome of Prague* met with at *Constance*; but staid at *Coburg*, on the Borders of *Franconia*, from whence he gave them his Advice. The main Things debated were, the Mass, Priests Marriage, Jurisdiction of Bishops, Monastick Vows, and Transubstantiation. The *Saxons*, says Dr. *Nicholson*, inclin'd to give the Bishops more Respect and Authority, than *Luther* would allow them, who published a Book, Entituled, *Contra Statum Ecclesiæ, & falso nominatum ordinem Episcoporum*; *i. e.* Against the State of the Church, and the Order of Bishops, falsly so called. With him agreed the *Hessians*, *Lunenburgers*, and *Nurembergers*; so that Heats arising, the Deputies were contracted on both Sides, and the whole Dispute left to *Melancton* and *Eccius*, assisted by two Lawyers each: But *Charles V.* being displeas'd with the Demands of the Protestants, and hearing that the *Turks* prepared to invade the Empire, he dissolved the Council by an Edict, wherein he order'd, That no other Doctrine should be taught concerning the Lord's Supper, but what had hitherto been received in the Church of *Rome*; That the Cross should be us'd in Baptism; That Statues and Relicks of Saints should be restored and esteemed as formerly; That to deny Free-will, should be an enormous Crime; That the Doctrine of Justification by Faith should be abolish'd, and the Merit of Works maintain'd. In a Word, That the whole Doctrine and Discipline of the Church of *Rome* should be received, and those of the contrary Opinion prosecuted as Hereticks. But the Protestants being too strong to be thus treated, he was obliged to revoke his Decree next Year, and return again to *Augsburg*, where he propos'd that call'd the *Interim*, to accommodate Religious Differences, which contain'd a mix'd Model of Religion and Church Government, permitted a few *Lutheran* Doctrines, and enjoin'd most of the Popish, so that it pleased neither Side: And the Protestants persisting in their Demands, they were allowed the Freedom of their Religion in a Diet held here in 1555.

The Curious may find an Account of this *Interim* in *Sleidan's* Commentaries, *Anno* 1548, and how 'twas opposed by both Sides, for different Reasons. The Court of *Rome* and the bigotted Papists oppos'd it, because it allow'd Communion in both Kinds, and the Marriage of Priests; and the Protestants rejected it, because it enjoin'd most of the Popish Doctrines; so that the Emperor's Edict, commanding it to be observ'd, had no Effect. The Senate of *Augsburg* embrac'd *Luther's* Reformation, as *Sleidan* informs us, in 1535, and sent to him for Ministers. They afterwards, as *La Forrest* says, expelled their Bishop and Clergy; but *Sleidan* says, they deserted the City upon the Change of Religion, and the Senate publish'd a Paper against them, directed to the Emperor, and States of the Empire, with an Account how ill they had behaved themselves, and had attempted to raise Tumults in the Town. But the Emperor, set on by the Popish Clergy, took the Town, and restored Popery in 1551; and next Year 'twas restored to the *Lutherans* by the Treaty of *Passaw*. Since 1555, the Magistracy of the City has been half Papists, and half *Lutherans*, according to *La Forrest*; but Dr. *Nicholson* says, they consist of 23 Papists, and 22 *Lutherans*, and that their Common-Council has 150 of each. In 1634, the Duke of *Bavaria* took it after a long Siege; but they were restored to their Liberty by the Treaty of *Munster*. 'Tis also famous for the League form'd here in 1687, betwixt the Emperor, the King of *Spain*, the Princes of the Empire, the Prince of *Orange*, the *Dutch*, the Duke of *Savoy*, &c. to declare War, says *La Forrest*, against the King of *France*, and to dethrone the late King *James* of *Great Britain*: But perhaps there is more Truth in what he says of the Elector of *Bavaria*, who took it in 1704, after 13 Days Siege, with a Design, by that and his other Conquests, to pave his Way to the Empire, which had been possessed by several of his Ancestors.

Most of the Houses are built of Timber and Clay; but near a 4th Part of the Town is built of Free-stone. The Publick Buildings,

Digitized by Google

ings, as the Cathedral, the Churches, Town-Hall, Conduits, &c. are in general magnificent and ſtately; but the Glory of the Town, ſays Dr. *Nicholſon*, is that called the *Fuggery*, which conſiſts of ſeveral ſtately Streets and fair Palaces, built and poſſeſſed by the Noble Family of the *Fuggers*, who are Lords of a great Part of the adjacent Country. Four of theſe Streets in the *Fuggery* are built croſs-wiſe, make a fair Town of themſelves, and are inhabited by poor People, who have an Annual Penſion. Over the Gate of this Princely Hoſpital, there's an Inſcription in Latin, ſignifying that 3 Brothers of this Noble Family, out of Thankfulneſs to God, had, for the Good of the Commonwealth, out of their large Eſtate, built theſe 106 Houſes, of which the Four Streets conſiſt, for the Uſe of the frugal Poor of the City. They are under the Inſpection of their Chaplain, who has a noble Salary allow'd him. There's a vaſt Number of *Roman* Monuments in and about this City, of which ſeveral Authors have given a large Account. There's a Library in this City, famous for a good Collection of MSS. *Conringius* makes it equal to that of *Vienna*. The Learned *Welſer* left them the greateſt Part of thoſe Rarities; and a great Number of Greek MSS. have been added ſince by ſeveral Citizens. A Catalogue of this Library was publiſhed by *Raiſer*, their Library-Keeper, in 1675.

Monconys commends this City for the Largeneſs of the Streets, and the Beauty of the Houſes, many of which are painted on the Outſide. They have alſo many noble Fountains, with Brazen Statues of different Figures, ſuch as *Mercury*, *Hercules* killing the *Hydra*, and ſome of 'em are adorn'd with the Statues of Emperors. He gives a large Deſcription of the Town-Hall, which is reckon'd ſecond to that of *Amſterdam*: 'Tis very lofty, the Front is 38 Foot broad, and the Length of it 111 Foot. 'Tis divided into 3 Stories: The firſt is enter'd into by a fine Porch, adorn'd with two Columns of Marble, and ſupported by 8 Pillars. The 2d is a Hall of the ſame Size, with a delicate Sieling of Joyners-work, ſupported by 8 Columns of green Marble, whoſe Baſes and Chapiters, of the *Corinthian* Order, are of Braſs. The 3d Story is a large Hall of the ſame Size, 110 Foot long, 38 broad, and 52 high: The Sieling is of Joyners-work, fram'd in Compartiments, painted and gilded. It has two great Gates by which one enters it on each Side of curious Architecture in Joyners-work, painted and gilded; and there are two other on each Side, which enter into as many large Chambers on both Sides the Hall, but not ſo high. The Upper Hall is pav'd with Marble: And *Miſſon* ſays, the Walls are adorn'd with Paintings, intermix'd with Emblems and Devices, relating to the Government; but the Roof, he ſays, exceeds all the reſt for its ſingular Beauty, the Squares and Pannels of the Compartiments being enriched with Sculptures, richly gilt, and beautified with curious Pictures, and other Ornaments. In the upper Chambers, there are very fine Stoves, as there are likewiſe in the lower, where the Magiſtrates uſually meet; but they are ſunk in the Floor, and do not appear but only by a round Copper Grate, which lets the Heat through. There are two Platforms from the Chambers on the Sides, whence one looks down into the great Hall; and the whole Fabrick is of fine hewn Stone.

The next remarkable Structure is their Arſenal, which is very large: The Porch is a fine Piece of Architecture of hewn Stone, with 5 great Figures in Braſs over it, one of 'em being the Genius of Peace, with a Flaming Sword in her Hand, trampling upon the Devil of War, and 3 little Cupids about her. By another Gate, one enters into a great Court, where, on the Right Hand, and at the further End, there are two Structures, one 76, and the other 40 Paces long, and each of 20 broad. The two Halls below are full of Cannon, moſt of 'em Braſs, and among them a Leather Culverine, a Six Pounder 26 Foot long; and on the Side by the Walls, there are Pyramids of Bullets handſomely pil'd up. Over each of thoſe two Magazines there are 5 Stories. In the firſt, are 300 Harquebuſſes. In the 2d, 3000 new Muskets. The 3d has old Muskets and Arms for Horſe: And in the 5th, are Pikes and other Arms for 15000 Men. In a Word, 'tis one of the beſt furniſh'd Magazines in *Germany*. There's a Gate in the Town called the Secret Gate, which was contriv'd to let in People in Time of War without any Dan-

Digitized by Google

ger, and has so many Engines and Divisions with Gates and Keys, and Apartments for Guards at some Distance from one another, where the Passengers are examin'd, that 'tis impossible for the Town to be surpris'd by such as are thus let in. They make use of it in Time of Peace, to let People in and out at all Hours of the Night, paying 6 *d.* for a Horseman, and 2 *d.* for a Footman. *Misson* says, the Fortifications of the City are not very considerable; yet it has bravely held out many great Sieges. The *Lutherans* are much more numerous than the Papists; but they live in a good Understanding. Their Poor are maintain'd in one and the same Hospital.; and to avoid giving Offence, the *Lutherans* pull off their Hats to the Priests and the Company when the Host is carried through the Streets. The *Jews* are confin'd to a separate Place; and for every Hour they stay in the other Parts of the City, are obliged to pay a Florin. They have brought a Branch of the River *Lech* into the City, whose Water is clear and good, and upon this they have several Towers, with great Cisterns on the Top, fill'd by Pumps, which are mov'd by Mills, and convey the Water all over the Town.

'Twas formerly a Place of great Traffick; but is much decayed since Commodities from the *Mediterranean* cease to be brought this Way from *Italy*, and from thence conveyed to other Parts of the Empire. The Cathedral has a Gate of Brass, over which there are represented several Scripture-Histories in *Basso-Relievo*. Their Mechanicks are equal to those of *Nuremberg*, and excel them in Clocks, Goldsmiths-work, and Ivory, in which they are very curious. They make Chains of Steel so very fine, of a Span long, that when they put them about the Neck of a Flea, it will lift it up when it leaps; and these they sell for 10 *d.* a-piece. The Citizens have great Variety of Habits, which are so regulated by the Magistrates, that every one's Quality and Religion may be discern'd by them. The City carries a Pine-Apple for its Arms, which seems to have been a very ancient Bearing in this Place; for a Pillar of 5 or 6 Foot high was lately dug up here, with a Pine-Apple on the Top, and certain Medals of *Augustus*, with such a Pillar on the Reverse; by which 'tis probable, that this City was then the Boundary of the Empire on that Side. Mr. *Ray* says, it is about 8 *English* Miles round.

2. *Ulm*, on the *Danube*, about 37 Miles W. from *Augsburg*, reckon'd the second for Grandeur, thô not for Antiquity, in *Swabia*. Yet *Cluverius* thinks it to be as ancient as any of its Neighbours, and takes it to be the *Alcimannis* of *Ptolomy*; but if so, it must have decreased much afterwards, for 'twas only a Village, till *Charlemagne* added the rich Monastery of *Augaa* to it. After which, it grew by degrees till it came to be an Imperial City. Its Name is derived from the Elm-Trees, of which there are many in the Neighbourhood. Soon after it was made Imperial, they purchased the County of *Helfenstein*, with some other Towns and Castles, from neighbouring Princes; so that their Territory in a little Time came to be 6 *German* Miles long, and 4 broad. The *Danube* begins first to be navigable here by Vessels of any great Burthen, which advances their Trade of Linen and Cottons. Their Government is by 41 Aldermen, most of which are of the Noblity, and the rest Tradesmen: Out of the Nobility, they chuse Annually two Bayliffs, who preside in their Councils. Their chief Ornament is the Cathedral, which is scarcely exceeded by any in the Empire, except by the great Church of *Strasburg*. 'Tis said to have been 111 Years in building; during which Time, they had a great Number of Architects in constant Pay. It has 5 stately Spires, the highest of which is supported by 36 vast Pillars, and is 102 Foot high. Their Organ is very remarkable, and has been described by two Learned Men. 'Twas 23 Years a making, is 93 Foot high, 28 broad, has 16 Pair of Bellows, with 125 Pounds of Lead on each, and has above 3000 Pipes of pure *English* Tin, the largest of which is 40 Inches in Circumference, and above 13 in Diameter: But Dr. *Nicholson* thinks it to be short of the Organ in the Cathedral of *Exeter*. There are many other stately Buildings in this City; among which, the Town-House is most remarkable. *La Forrest* says, the City is large, populous, and has a good Trade. They embrac'd the Reformation in 1529, and most of the Inhabitants, and all the Magistrates, are *Lutherans*. Their Territory

Digitized by Google

tory contains 40 Bailiwicks and Lordships. *Munemys* says, the *Danube* ſerves for a Ditch on one Side, and the reſt is encompaſſed with a good Wall; beyond which, there is a Ditch 25 Paces broad, which is filled by Water from a little River that runs through the Town. It has beſides very fine Ramparts, with 11 Royal Baſtions, with Fauſſebrays, large Ditches, fine Counterſcarps, and Half-Moons, before the Courtains, all fac'd with Brick, with deep Ditches full of Water, and Cavaliers on ſome of the Baſtions all along the Walls; and within the Town, the Soldiers of the Garriſon have very pretty ſmall Houſes aſſign'd 'em. He adds, That they have a Stone Bridge of 4 Arches over the *Danube*, which forms ſeveral Iſlands near it; and that they have abundance of ingenious Mechanicks, eſpecially for Clock-work. The great *Franciſcan* Monaſtery was, upon the Reformation, turn'd into a College, where they have Profeſſors of all Arts and Sciences. This Town was taken by Surprize by the Elector of *Bavaria* in 1702; but retaken after the Battle of *Hochſtat*.

3. *Bibrach*, *i. e.* a River of Otters, ſo call'd from the Multitude of thoſe Creatures near this Place, from whence it had an Otter for its Arms. 'Tis ſaid to have been an Imperial City ſince the Year 800, and was wall'd in the Reign of *Frederick* II. It ſtands in a pleaſant fruitful Valley, encompaſſed with fair Fields, Gardens, and Meadows. The River affords them Plenty of Fiſh, and their Woods Store of Timber. There's a hot Sulphureous Bath in the Town, which draws great Concourſe of People of Quality and others hither in the Spring; and their Number is the greater, becauſe it lies almoſt in the Center of a great Circle of Imperial Cities. It ſtands upon the River *Ruſs*, and the States of the Circle of *Swabia* meet here. The Magiſtrates are half Proteſtants, half Papiſts. The Elector of *Bavaria* took it in 1702. The moſt remarkable Things in the Town are, St. *Martin*'s Church, and the neighbouring Hoſpital, where Proviſion is made for many decay'd Citizens. It lies about 20 Miles S. W. from *Ulm*.

4. *Bucaw*, or *Buchaw*, a ſmall Imperial Town, about 11 Miles S. W. from *Bibrach*. 'Tis remarkable for little but its Nunnery, where all the Nuns are Counteſſes or Baroneſſes, and have Liberty to marry, except the Abbeſs, who is obliged to take the Vow of Chaſtity. She is one of the Fourteen who is a Princeſs of the Empire, and has a Vote in the Diet, according to *La Forreſt*, and the *Matricula* of the Empire; which ſhews the Miſtake of ſome Geographers, who made this an Abbey of Men, and the Abbot a Prince of the Empire.

5. *Memmingen*, on the *Bach*, betwixt the *Danube* and the *Liller*, about 17 Miles S. E. from *Bibrach*. 'Tis thought to be the *Roſtrum Vemania* of *Antonin*. 'Tis well fortified on one Side with a Marſh, and elſewhere with a ſtrong Wall, and deep Trenches. 'Tis almoſt as large as *Ulm*, but much ſhort in Buildings, and Number of Inhabitants. It has 7 Gates, and a ſmall Rivulet that runs through it. The Inhabitants are Lutherans and Papiſts; the former have two Churches and a School, and the latter a Monaſtery of *Auguſtine* Fryars, and a Nunnery. Their chief Trade is in Linen, Cotton, and Paper: The latter is reckon'd as good as any in *Germany*. They have great Privileges, and are exempted from the Imperial Chamber at *Rotweil*.

6. *Leutkirch*, a ſmall Imperial City, but tolerably well built. It ſtands on a ſmall River about 12 Miles S. W. from *Memmingen*. Some derive the Name from the Multitude of People who flock'd to it upon the firſt Preaching of Chriſtianity, and maintain'd abundance of Preachers. St. *Martin*'s Church here is a ſtately Fabrick, poſſeſſed by the Papiſts, who allow only a ſmall Chapel to the Proteſtants. Half the Magiſtrates or more are *Lutherans*. This is a great Thoroughfare for Travellers to and from *Italy* and *Tirol*; and they have a good Trade in Linen-Cloth, Corn, and Flax. The Citizens have a Privilege to dig for Metals in any of the neighbouring Fields.

7. *Kempten*. This is reckon'd as ancient a Town as any in *Germany*. Their Antiquaries ſay, it was the *Cretica* of the Ancients, and inhabited by the *Cretici*; but being ſubdued by one of *Tiberius*'s Generals, he called it *Campodunum*, becauſe of the Hill which commands the whole Plain where it ſtands, and from which he play'd upon it. Hence by Corruption 'twas called *Kempten*. When it came under the

Digitized by Google

French, they call'd it *Vermetica*, from the multitude of Snakes and other venomous Worms about it; but it has since resum'd its old Name. It was made an Imperial Town by *Frederick* IV. who gave them for Arms the Spread-Eagle of the Empire, half *Or*, and half *Sable*, crown'd with the Imperial Crown. 'Twas taken by the Imperialists in 1633, who burnt 140 Houses, with the great Church, and put 450 of the People to the Sword. Their greatest Trade is in making and whiting Linen, and in lodging Travellers betwixt *Italy* and the Empire, and by the *Swissers*, who bring Salt from *Tirol*, which makes it one of the richest Towns in *Swabia*. They embrac'd the Reformation in 1530. 'Twas formerly the Seat of the Dukes of *Swabia*, and is famous for its Monastery, founded by *Hildegard*, Wife to *Charlemagne*. The Abbot is a Prince of the Empire, and Lord of the adjacent Territory, as he was formerly of the City, before it was made Imperial. It lies 15 Miles S. from *Memmingen*.

8. *Isne*, or *Isna*, on a River of the same Name, mid-way between *Kempten* and *Lindaw*, about 13 Miles from each. It appears, by an Inscription on an old Marble Monument, to have formerly been inhabited by a *Roman* Colony; and that the High-ways betwixt this City and *Kempten*, which is the Road betwixt *Italy* and the *Rhine*, was then repaired at the Charge of *Septemius Severus*, and *M. A. Antoninus*. In the neighbouring Fields, they have no Wine nor Wheat; but Oats, Rape-Seed, Beans, and Flax, Cattle and Corn, are brought from the *Alps* and other neighbouring Places to their Market. In 1631, in 12 Hours Time, 380 Houses, with most of their Publick Buildings, were burnt down, and the Brass Guns on their Bulwarks melted; but 'tis since rebuilt, and as flourishing as ever.

9. *Lindaw*, an Imperial City, upon an Island in the Lake of *Constance*; into which there's an Entrance by a Stone-Bridge of 290 Paces long. Part of the City lies upon the Bank of the Lake, on the N. E. Side. The Inhabitants shew the Ruins of an old Tower, which they pretend was built by *Tiberius*, in his Expedition against the *Vindelici*; but this is disputed, for 'tis said to have been first founded by *Adelbert*, one of *Charles the Great's* Courtiers, Lord of this Part of the Country, who being seiz'd by a Tempest on the Lake of *Constance*, and drove ashore on this Island, did, in Remembrance of his Deliverance, build a Nunnery here about 810, and called it *Lindaw*, from his landing in this Place: But *Dresser* denies this Etymology, and says, it had its Name from the Linden Trees planted round the Nunnery; and in Confirmation, alledges the Arms of the City, which are, a Linden-Tree *Vert*, in a *Field Argent*. However this be, the Nunnery gave Occasion to the building of the Town, and is govern'd by an Abbess, who is a Princess of the Empire, and has Sovereign Jurisdiction within the Precinct and Territories of the Nunnery. The Nuns must be all of Noble Families, and Papists, but may marry when they please. The Magistrates, and most of the Citizens, are *Lutherans*. The Situation of the City is pleasant and healthful, and it lies so convenient for Trade, because of the Lake, and the *Rhine* which runs through it, that they call it the *Venice* of *Swabia*. In that Part of the Town on the Bank of the Lake, they have Plenty of Vines, which yield a rough and harsh Wine. The Town on the Island is inhabited mostly by Fishermen, Watermen, and Weavers. They have several Springs of good Water, and on the N. Side of the Town many fair Fields and Meadows. It was made Imperial by *Rodolph* I. and lies about 27 Miles S. W. from *Kempten*. Its Castle and Situation make it very strong, so that the *Swedes* could not take it in 1647.

10. *Bregentz*, or *Bargentz*, on the same Side of the Lake, 5 Miles S. E. from *Lindaw*, from whence the Lake was called *Lacus Brigantinus*, was formerly a famous City, and by *Antonin* I. called *Brigantia*: 'Tis now inconsiderable, but is Capital of a small County of the same Name. It lies at the Mouth of a little River that falls into the Lake, which Dr. *Nicholson* says is the largest in *Germany*, being 7 *German* Miles long, in some Places two, and in others three broad. 'Tis divided into two Parts, the largest of which reaches from *Bergentz* to the old Fort *Podmen*, from whence it first had the Name of *Podmensee*, and by Contraction *Bodensee*: Tho' others say, 'twas so called because of its Depth. The other Branch is that which begins at *Constance*, and is usually called *Zeller-*

Digitized by Google

Ierse, from *Cell*, a conſiderable Village on its Banks.

11. *Buchorn*, on the ſame Side of the Lake, 12 Miles N. W. from *Lindaw*. It derives its Name from the adjoining Woods of Beech. 'Twas formerly govern'd by a Count of its own, deſcended, as they pretend, from *Charlemagne*, and then by the Counts of *Altorf* and *Ravenſpurg*. It belongs now to the Houſe of *Auſtria*, who have made it a Dependance of the City of *Uberlingen*. The Town is not large, but has a good Trade by Ships, which daily paſs from it to *Swiſſerland*, and from thence again into *Swabia*. The Air here is unwholeſome.

12. *Ravenſpurg*, or rather *Gravenſpurg*, 10 Miles N. E. from *Buchorn*, on the ſame River. 'Twas firſt walled in 1100, afterwards made an Imperial City, and endow'd with many Privileges. In the middle of the Town, there's a very high Tower, called *Blaſerthurn*, or the Watch-Tower, which in 1552 was blown down by a Whirlwind, when the Watchman or Trumpeter, who, according to the *German* Cuſtom, ſounds with his Trumpet to give Notice of the Hour of the Night, fell down from the Top of it without receiving any Hurt, tho' his Wife and Son were killed by it, as appears by an Inſcription made upon it when rebuilt. There's little elſe worth Notice here, but the Town-Houſe, and ſome Churches. *La Forreſt* ſays, 'tis well built; and that the Town-Council is compoſed of Lutherans and Papiſts.

13. *Altorf*, lies, according to Dr. *Nicholſon*, within two *Engliſh* Miles of *Ravenſpurg*, is an ancient and famous Town; from the former Earls of which, proceeded a great Branch of the ancient Dukes of *Bavaria*, and the preſent Dukes of *Brunſwick* and *Luneburg*. Here was formerly the ancient Monaſtery of *Wingarten*, where the *Guelphian* Family was uſually buried. It belongs now to the Houſe of *Auſtria*; and is the uſual Reſidence of the Emperor's Lieutenant for *Suevia*, who keeps a Court here, to determine all Cauſes brought before him from any of the Imperial Cities in *Swabia*.

14. *Wangen*, 10 Miles N. E. from *Lindaw*; is a ſmall Imperial City on the River *Arg*, famous for Sickles, whith are made here in great Numbers, and ſent over the Empire. They have alſo a conſiderable Trade in Paper and Flax, but no Wine of their own Growth; tho' ſome Geographers have ſaid the contrary.

15. *Uberlingen*, a fair Imperial City on the Banks of the Lake of *Conſtance*, 27 Miles N. W. from *Lindaw*. 'Tis encompaſſed with fine Orchards and Vineyards, and ſituate upon the top of a Rock; at the bottom of which, they dig Stones for building their Houſes and Fortifications. The Situation is ſo pleaſant and magnificent, that the ancient Dukes of *Swabia* made it their Reſidence. Upon the Failure of that Family in 1267, it came to the Emperor's Hands. They have a very good Harbour, from whence they ſend Veſſels with Wine and Fruit to the neighbouring Countries and Towns, which makes the Place rich. Among other Privileges, they have this, That they are not to appeal from the Sentence of their Common-Council any further than to *Friburg* in *Brifgow*, *Rotkwel*, or *Ravenſpurg*. In the neighbouring Vineyards and Orchards, there are many cool Springs and Mineral Fountains; one of which is particularly famous againſt the Stone in the Bladder or Kidneys, and a decay'd Appetite. It ſprings out of a Rock on the E. Side of the Town, and is conveyed by Pipes into a Bath-Houſe in the City for the Uſe of Patients. The Water has a Tincture of Lead, Copper, and Brimſtone, and its Virtues are treated of at large by *Eſchen Reutter*, a Phyſician and Native of the Place, in a *German* Treatiſe of the wholeſomeſt Baths. He ſpeaks likewiſe of another Mineral Spring in one of the Vineyards called *Am-Stollen*, which taſts ſomething like *Sal Armoniac*, and by once or twice waſhing removes Warts from any Place of the Body. The Grapes of this Vineyard, which is a hot and ſandy Soil, are the beſt in the Country. They have an Hoſpital, accounted the richeſt in *Swabia*, for poor and decrepit People, of which they have as little need as any of their Neighbours, being generally a laborious and frugal People, and have ſo good a Trade, that in Time of War they maintain 6 Horſemen and 60 Foot, ſays Dr. *Nicholſon*, which is as much as many of the Princes are oblig'd to do by the *Matricula*; but their Proportion ſeems to be raiſed ſince

since that was constituted, for then they paid only 20 Foot.

16. *Rattolfzell*, or *Cella Ratolfi*, on that Part of the Lake called the *Cellerſee*, to which it gives Name. *Ratolf*, Biſhop of *Verona*, built a Palace here in 875, and gave Name to the Town, which afterwards fell, with many other Places, into the Hands of the Emperor. The Princes of *Wirtemberg* got Poſſeſſion of it in 1632, but were forc'd to quit it after the Defeat of the Proteſtant Forces at the Battle of *Nordlingen*; ſince which, the Houſe of *Auſtria* have taken Care to ſtrengthen its Fortifications, chiefly on the Account of the impregnable Caſtle of *Hoben-Dwiel*, which lies near it. This Caſtle ſtands on the top of a high and inacceſſible Hill, in the middle of a fine Plain on the Banks of the Lake, according to *Sanſon*: But Dr. *Nicholſon* ſays, near the Banks of the *Rhine*. A few Men may hold it out againſt an Army, the Hill is ſo very high and ſteep. Beſides, the Soil is ſo full of Flints, that there's no ſpringing of Mines to annoy it; nor can they be eaſily ſtarv'd out, becauſe on the top of the Hill they have a good Annual Crop of Corn and Wine. 'Twas formerly one of the Seats of the ancient Dukes of *Swabia*; and when that Family fail'd, it fell to other Maſters, and at laſt, by Marriage in 1520, to the Dukes of *Wirtemberg*.

17. *Conſtance*, by the *Germans* called *Coſtnitz*, or *Coſtantz*, is the Metropolis of this Part of the Country, which *La Forreſt* calls *Auſtrian Swabia*. Dr. *Nicholſon* ſays, That all the Country on both Sides the Lake is called by the Name of *Hegow*, and this Lake is commonly taken for the true Boundary betwixt *Swabia* and *Switzerland*. This City lies on the S. W. Side of the Lake of that Name, in Long. 28. 5. Lat. 47. 8. about 8 Miles E. from *Uberlingen*, 12 W. from *Buchow*, and 27 S. E. from *Schaffhauſen*. Some derive its Name from *Conſtantius*, Father to *Conſtantine the Great*, who is ſaid to have founded it, and made his Head Quarter here during the Winter. Others aſcribe it to *Conſtantine* himſelf, who gave it this Name in Honour of his Father. But from an old Marble Monument, Part of which is ſtill to be ſeen in the Chapel of St. *Blaſius* here, which mentions the Emperors *Diocleſian*, *Maximilian*, and others, ſome think it to be much more ancient; which Dr. *Nicholſon* obviates, by ſuppoſing this Monument to have been brought hither from the Ruins of the old *Vitodurum*, which the Learned *Schedelius* thinks to have ſtood near this Place. However that is, 'tis certainly an ancient City, ſince we find it was taken by *Attila* the *Hun*. It came afterwards into the Hands of the *French* Kings, and in ſome of their ancient Records is called, *Villa Regia Dagoberti Regis*. Upon which Dr. *Nicholſon* obſerves, That the *French* Kings would not ſuffer the great Towns, which they took at any diſtance from their own Seats, to be fortified, leſt they ſhould revolt. *La Forreſt* ſays, That when *Childebert* King of *Auſtraſia* ſack'd the Town of *Windiſh*, which was a Biſhop's See, the Biſhoprick was transferred to this Place in 594. The Biſhop is a Prince of the Empire, and one of the Directors of the Circle of *Swabia*, but Suffragan to the Archbiſhop of *Mentz*, and has his Reſidence at *Merſburg*. After 'twas made a Biſhoprick, it increas'd daily, and was ſo well fortified in 938, that it reſiſted the *Hungarian* Army, which over-ran the neighbouring Country. 'Twas formerly an Imperial Town; but having refus'd the *Interim* in 1534, was proſcribed, and forced to ſubmit to the Houſe of *Auſtria*, who governs 'em by a Deputy, allows 'em moſt of their ancient Privileges, and to retain the Name of an Imperial City. *La Forreſt* ſays, 'tis very populous, well built, has abundance of fair Structures, and is well fortified both by Art and Nature. It has a good Trade by the Neighbourhood of the *Rhine*, which paſſing by this City out of the great Lake into that called the *Cellerſee*, runs through in a fair Stream, without mixing with the Water of the Lake. Their Churches, and particularly the Cathedral of St. *Stephen*, are very magnificent; and their Exchange, Town-Houſe, Market-Places, and Bridges, are very ſtately. The Biſhop has a ſumptuous Palace in the Suburb called *Peterſhauſen*, which was fortified in 1635, when the *Swedes* beſieg'd the City. That which makes it moſt remarkable, is the Council held here in 1414, being called by the Emperor *Sigiſmund*, to remove the Schiſm occaſion'd in the Church by three Popes at a Time; the *Italians* having ſet up one, the *French* another, and the *Spaniards*

a

Digitized by Google

third, to the general Disturbance of the Christian World. The Council began, as usual, with Mass; at which, while they were singing the Hymn, *Veni Sancte Spiritus*; i. e. Come Holy Ghost, some body clap'd a Paper on the Door with these Words, *Aliis Rebus occupati, nunc adesse vobis non possumus*; i. e. We are taken up with other Affairs, and cannot be present with you now. This the Clergy took for an ill Omen. They quickly agreed to depose all the three Popes; and *John*, who was set up by the *Italians*, came hither, according to their Summons, in Expectation, that since he obey'd them, which neither of the other did, they would confirm him in the Chair; but finding it otherwise, he repented of his Forwardness, fled, was pursued, brought back, imprison'd, and depos'd; the other two who were absent had the same Fate; and the Council chose *Martin* V. at which the Emperor was so overjoy'd, that he immediately went to the Conclave, and kissed the new Pope's Foot. In the 8th Session, they condemn'd *Wickliff*'s Doctrine, in which they inserted many false Articles, and order'd his Bones to be dug up and burnt. In the 15th Session, they condemn'd *John Huss*, notwithstanding his Safe-Conduct from the Emperor, who at first oppos'd it; but at last, as *Sleidan* informs us in his Commentaries, being told by the Council, *That Faith was not to be kept to Hereticks*, he comply'd, join'd in the Sentence against him, and order'd him and his Books to be burnt. To justify this, the Council made a Canon, That Faith should not be kept with Hereticks, or those suspected of Heresy, tho' they should come thither with the Emperor's Safe-Conduct, in order to be try'd or examin'd. In the 21st Session, they passed the like Sentence upon *Jerome of Prague*, who was burnt in the same Place with *Huss*, which the Burghers shew to this Day to any stranger who desires it. This Council asserted their own Authority to be above that of the Pope, as is own'd by *Carranzam*, of the Order of the *Predicants*, in his *Summa Conciliorum*, printed at *Lyons* with Allowance in 1683; tho' many of the Papists be loth to own it. This Council lasted 4 Years; during which Time, there are said to have been in this little City 4 Patriarchs, 29 Cardinals, 346 Archbishops and Bishops, 564 Abbots and Doctors, 10000 Secular Princes and Nobles, 450 common Harlots, 1600 Barbers, and 320 Musicians, as Doctor *Nicholson* informs us.

The Bishoprick of *Constance* lies on the Banks of the *Lech*, on the Borders of *Switzerland*, and is commonly reckon'd among the Allies of the Cantons. He is, besides being a Prince, a Count and a Baron of the Empire, was Sovereign of the Town before it was made Imperial, and is said to have 1000 Castles and Villages under his Jurisdiction.

In an Island in this Lake stands the rich Abbey of *Reichenaw*, or *Auge*, founded by a Bishop of *Meaux*, who retir'd hither in the 9th Century. It was united to the Bishoprick of *Constance* in 1540. *La Forrest* says, this Bishoprick is one of the richest and largest in *Germany*; and that *Merspurg* on the same Lake, the Place of his Residence, is a very pretty City. It lies 12 Miles N. W. from *Buchorn*, over against *Constance*. Geographers are not agreed as to the Divisions of *Upper* and *Lower Swabia*, and therefore, without determining in which of the Parts the Towns stand, we shall only take Notice, That *La Forrest* places many of the Towns in *Upper Swabia*, which Dr. *Nicholson* places in the *Lower*; nor do our Maps exactly distinguish their Boundaries.

La Forrest, besides the Bishoprick of *Constance*, reckons in that which he calls *Austrian Swabia*,

I. *The Marq. of* BURGAW,

Which lies on the S. of the *Danube*, and had formerly Princes of its own, till 1282, that their Issue failing, the Emperor *Rodolph* gave it to his own Son *Rodolph* Duke of *Swabia*.

The Places of Note here are, 1. *Burgaw*, on the *Mindel*, the Capital of the Country, about 20 Miles N. W. from *Augsburg*. The Emperor *Lewis* of *Bavaria* besieg'd it in vain in 1321. 2. *Guntzburg*, a small City on the *Danube*, 8 Miles N. W. from *Burgaw*. It has a Castle, where the Lords of the Country formerly resided, and is now the Seat of the Emperor's Governor. The whole Coun-

Digitized by Google

Country of *Burgaw* is about 30 Miles long, and as much in Breadth.

II. *The Landgraviate of* NELLEMBURG.

'Twas Part of the ancient Landgraviate of the *Henow* or *Hegow*, formerly govern'd by Princes of its own; upon the Failure of whom, the Emperor *Rodolph* II. gave it to Arch-Duke *Ferdinand*.

The Places of Note here are, 1. *Nellemburg*, about 4 Miles S. from the *Danube*, and 12 N.W. from *Uberlingen*. 2. *Stokeim*, a small City about 7 Miles E. from *Nellemburg*. The Country is about 27 Miles long, and 12 broad.

III. *The County of* HOHENBERG,

Formerly govern'd by Princes of its own; but came to the Emperor *Rodolph* I. in the 13th Century, on his marrying the Heiress. It lies betwixt the Dutchy of *Wirtemberg* and the Principality of *Furstemberg*.

The chief Places are, 1. *Hohenberg*, a strong Castle near the Head of the *Neckar*, about 13 Miles N. W. from *Nellemburg*. 2. *Rotemburg* on the *Neckar*, 27 Miles N. E. from *Hohenberg*, which some make the Capital of the Country. 'Twas built by *Albert*, their last Count, in 1271. 3. *Willingen*, on the *Birg*, a large Village, noted for its wholesome Baths. 4. The *Ortnaw*, by some called *Mornaw*. It lies on the *Rhine*, contains no remarkable Cities, belonging properly to the House of *Austria*; but there are 3 Imperial Towns here which are under the Emperor's Protection, *viz.* 1. *Offemburg*, on the *Kintch*, or, as some call it, *Offingen*, within a League of the *Rhine*, and 10 Miles S. E. from *Strasburg*, where M. *de Villars* took a great Train of Artillery, that the Imperialists design'd to have put into Fort *Kheil*. 2. *Zell*, on the *Nagole*, near the *Rhine*, 8 Miles S. E. from *Offinburg*. 'Twas taken by M. *de Villars* in 1703. 3. *Gengenbach*, mid-way betwixt *Offenburg* and *Zell*, which was taken by M. *de Villars* at the same Time. *Sanson* makes this Country about 24 Miles long, and 18 broad. The two Bailiwicks of *Oberkirk* and *Oppinaw* in this Country belong to the Bishoprick of *Strasburg*.

IV. *The* BRISGOW,

Which lies in the Neighbourhood of the *Rhine*, betwixt the *Ortnaw* and the Principality of *Furstemberg*.

The Places of Note here are, 1. *Friburg*, on the River *Treisem*, upon a Hill, where the *Black Forrest* begins. 'Tis now the Capital of *Brisgow*; but was first only a Village, built by Miners, who wrought in the Silver and Gold Mines betwixt it and *Brisac*. In a little Time they grew so rich, as to purchase the Estates and Titles of Noblemen; and the City grew so large, that, on a short Warning, they were able to send 3000 Men to the Field. It belong'd formerly to the Dukes of *Zeringen*, and afterwards by Marriage to the House of *Furstemberg*, from whom they revolted, and submitted to the House of *Austria* in 1386. 'Tis very populous and strong. 'Twas several times taken and retaken during the Civil Wars of *Germany*, particularly three times by the *Swedes*, in 1632, 1634, and 1638; and twice since by the *French*, in 1671, and 1677. 'Twas confirmed to them by the Treaty of *Nimeguen*. After which, they made the Fortifications very strong; but 'twas reftored to the Emperor by way of Exchange at the Treaty of *Ryswick* in 1697. 'Tis also noted for a great Victory obtain'd near it by the Prince of *Conde*, then Duke of *Enguien*, over the *Bavarians* in 1644. 'Tis the Seat of a Sovereign Court, and of an University, founded by Arch-Duke *Albert* in 1450. There are 14 Religious Houses in the Town, and the Citizens are famous for polishing Precious Stones found in *Lorrain*, and the neighbouring Countries. *Baudrand* says, 'twas built in 1120 by the Duke of *Zeringen*, and that it was formerly an Imperial Town. He adds, that the Chapter of *Basle* resides here, tho' the Town be in the Diocese of *Constance*. It lies 30 Miles S. from *Strasburg*, and 10 Miles E. from *Brisac*.

2. *Brisac*, called by *Antonin*, *Mons Brisiacus*; and the ancient Inhabitants are by the Latins called *Brisigavi*. 'Twas formerly the Metropolis of *Brisgow*. Historians say, it was built by the Emperor *Valentinian*. It stands on the top of a round Hill, and is so well

Digitized by Google

well fortified by Nature and Art, that 'tis reckon'd one of the ſtrongeſt Places in *Europe*. But they have only one deep Well, which furniſhes Water to the whole City. In 1638, during the Civil Wars of *Germany*, it held out a great Siege againſt the *Swedes* and *French*, commanded bythe D. of *Sax-Weimar*, for 4 Months: During which, Dr. *Nicholſon* ſays, they were reduc'd to ſuch Straits, as to dig up the dead Bodies of their Soldiers, and eat them, after they had been buried ſome Days; and on both Sides there were 80000 Men ſlain, and 1100000 Crowns ſpent in Ammunition; but being taken, it was given to the *French* by the Treaty of *Munſter*. After which, the *French* King repair'd its Fortifications, and ſet up a Court of Judicature there, like the Chamber of *Spires*, to determine all Controverſies. It was confirmed to him by the Treaty of *Nimeguen*: After which, he laid Claim to ſeveral other Towns and Villages, as its Dependencies. 'Twas reſtored to the Empire by the Treaty of *Ryſwick*; but retaken by the Duke of *Burgundy* in 1703, after 13 Days open Trenches. It is joined to ſome Iſlands in the *Rhine* by Bridges, which are fortified. On the W. Side, it has 8 Baſtions fill'd with Earth, and fac'd with Brick; and before every Curtain, there's a Half-Moon. The Ditch is broad, and the Counterſcarp, Cover'd-way, and Paliſadoes, in very good Order. It has alſo a ſtrong Citadel. On the W. of the Town, the Fortifications are a League in Circumference, and the Town is capable of 10000 in Gariſon. It lies 32 Miles S. from *Strasburg*, and 10 W. from *Friburg*. It had a fair ſtrong Bridge over the *Rhine*, which was deſtroyed by the *French* after the Treaty of *Ryſwick*.

To *Auſtrian Swabia*, belong alſo thoſe called the Four Forreſt Towns, becauſe they lie at the Entrance of the *Black Forreſt*.

Theſe TOWNS *are*,

1. *Rheinfeld*, a ſmall City, with a Bridge over the *Rhine* above *Baſle* in *Switzerland*. It was the Capital of a County, which came to the Emperor *Rodolph* I by his Marriage with *Anne* Counteſs of *Hohenberg*. The Duke of *Sax-Weimar*, General of the *Swedes*, took it in 1638; but 'twas reſtor'd to the Empire by the Treaty of *Weſtphalia*. It lies on the S. Side of the *Rhine*, 28 Miles S. from *Briſac*, and 8 E. from *Baſle*.

2. *Seckingben*, in an Iſland of the *Rhine*, 8 Miles E. from *Rheinfeld*. 'Twas taken by the Duke of *Sax-Weimar* in 1638, and reſtored to the Emperor in 1648.

3. *Laufenburg*, about 7 Miles E. from *Seckingben*. The *Rhine* divides it into two Parts. 'Twas taken and reſtored by the *Swedes* at the ſame Time with *Rheinfeld*.

4. *Waldhuſt*, or *Waldſhut*, on the Conflux of the *Schult* and *Rhine*. It has its Name from being a Key into the *Black Forreſt*, part of which it covers.

La Forreſt, beſides the Places already mention'd in *Upper Swabia*, takes Notice of thoſe that follow.

1. *Arbon*, or *Arbonne*, a City near the Lake of *Conſtance*, which is inclos'd by the Dominions of the *Swiſſers*, and was formerly called *Arbor Felix*. *Sanſon* places it 8 Miles N. E. from *St. Gall* in *Swiſſerland*, and 15 S. E. from *Conſtance*. 2. *Birchoffzell*, a ſmall Town on the *Sitter*, about 8 Miles W. from *St. Gall*. 3. *Kiburg*, on the *Danube*, a City which gave Title to the ancient Counts of that Name, who poſſeſſed ſeveral Lordſhips in *Swiſſerland*. *Guſtavus Adolphus* paſſed the *Danube* near this Place in 1632. 4. *Lechpruck*, on the River *Lech*, a ſmall City, which was ruin'd during the Civil Wars of *Germany*. He mentions alſo 14 Abbies in this Country, beſides thoſe we have already deſcribed; ſeveral of whoſe Abbots are Princes of the Empire; but we ſhall not inſiſt upon them, becauſe he ſays nothing remarkable of them.

Beſides the Secular States already mention'd in *Upper Swabia*, he takes Notice of thoſe that follow.

The Principality of FURSTEMBERG,

A ſmall Country on both Sides the *Danube*, extended about 70 Miles in Length. It has the Fountains of that famous River within its Boundaries, and comprehends Part of the Landgraviate of *Bar*, of the County of *Heyligenberg*, and other Lordſhips, and was erected into a Principality in 1677.

Digitized by Google

The chief Town is *Furſtemberg*, on the *Danube*, about 12 Miles N. from *Schaffhauſen* in *Switſerland*, and 22 N. E. from *Waldſhut*. It gives a Title to the ancient Family of *Furſtemberg*, which is deſcended from the Counts of *Friburg*, and divided into two Branches; that of *Heyligenberg*, call'd Princes; and that of *Blamberg*, call'd Counts. The Principality is ſubject to its own Prince, who is a Count of the Empire. His Family has produced ſeveral great Perſons; among others, the Cardinal of *Furſtemberg* Biſhop of *Straſburg*, who being in the *French* Intereſt, helped to bring that City under the Subjection of *France*, and procur'd himſelf to be choſen Archbiſhop of *Cologne*, which was one of the Cauſes of the late War betwixt the Empire and *France*.

In this Country lie alſo, 1. *Huffingen*, a large open Town near the Fountains of the *Danube*. 2. *Doneſchingen*, another large Town, within a League of the former, upon the Confines of the old *Hercinian* Forreſt. 3. *Heyligenberg*, a Caſtle on a Mountain, with the Title of a County, belonging to the eldeſt Branch of the Family. It lies 9 Miles N. E. of *Uberlingen*, and came to this Family by marrying the Heireſs in 1534.

The County of FURSTEMBERG,

Adjoining to the Principality, contains the Bailiwick of *Blamberg*, the Barony of *Moeskirk*, the Landgraviate of *Hulingen*, and two Lordſhips. Its Counts poſſeſs likewiſe *Gundelfingen* in *North Swabia*. The Family of *Blamberg* is divided into the Branches of *Moeskirk* and *Hulingen*. *Moeskirk*, the Title of the eldeſt Branch, is a pretty ſmall Town, on a little River that falls into the *Danube*. *Hulingen*, the Title of a Landgraviate, belonging to the younger Branch, lies on the Frontiers of *Schaffhauſen*. In this Country lies *Engen*, near the Lake of *Conſtance*; and *Wildenſtein*, a large open Town with a Caſtle, near *Walburg*.

The County of SULTZ,

Lies near the Frontiers of *Zwrich* and *Schaffhauſen*, and takes its Name from a large open Town called *Sultz*, which gives Title of Counts to one of the oldeſt Families in *Germany*.

The County of EMS,

Derives its Name from a Caſtle near the *Rhine*, towards the Frontiers of the Canton of *Appenzel*, and gives Title to the Counts of *Ems*. It lies about 10 Miles S. from *Brigentz*, is about 10 Miles long, and 5 broad. This Family is divided into two principal Branches, called the *Roman* and *German*; and the latter is divided into the Branches of *Hohenelms* and *Wadutz*.

The County of MONTFORT,

Lies S. of *Ems*, about 12 Miles long, and 6 broad, derives its Name from a fine Caſtle towards the Frontiers of *St. Gall* and *Appenzel*, within two Leagues of the *Rhine*. It gives Title of Count to the Family of *Montfort*, one of the oldeſt in *Swabia*.

The County of WALDBURG,

Which lies S. from *Ravenſpurg*, derives its Name from a fine Caſtle belonging to the Family of this Name, which is divided into the 4 Branches of *Wolfeck*, *Zeil*, *Scheer*, and *Trauchburg*. This County is 20 Miles long, and 18 broad; comprehends the Lordſhips, 1. Of *Walſee* near *Waldburg*, a large open Town, fortified with a Caſtle. Here are the Tombs of the Counts of *Waldburg*. 2. Of *Wurtzach*, another large open Town, half a League from *Walſee*. 3. *Friedberg*, which has a fortified Caſtle, betwixt *Memgen* and *Saulgen*. 4. *Sheer*, an open Town, with a ſtrong Caſtle, on the *Danube*.

The County of KOENIGSECK,

A pretty open Town, near the River *Schuſs*, which gives Title of Count to the Family of this Name, deſcended from the ancient Family of the *Guelphs*, ſo well known in Hiſtory. 'Tis divided into the Branches of *Rottenfels* and *Aulendorf*. *Rottenfels* is the principal Town of a Bailiwick of that Name in the *Algow*, and lies 23 Miles E. from *Bregentz*. *Aulendorf* is the chief Town

Town of a Lordſhip of that Name, and lies 8 Miles N. W. from *Waldſee*.

The County of KIRKBERG,

On the *Lifter*, otherwiſe call'd the County of *Sugar*, gives Title to Counts of that Name. The County is 18 Miles long, and 8 broad. This Family is divided into ſeveral Branches, who are very rich. The Town of *Kirkberg* lies about 7 Miles S. from *Ulm*. Theſe Counts poſſeſs likewiſe the Lordſhip of *Kircheim*, a large open Town, within two Leagues of *Urſperg*; and the Lordſhip of *Oberndorf*, a conſiderable open Town on the River *Lech*, 7 Miles S. from *Donawert*.

The Barony of MINDELHEIM,

In the *Algow*, lies betwixt the Biſhoprick of *Augsburg* and the Abbacy of *Kempten*. *Mindelheim*, the chief Town, lies on the River *Mindel*, is a large open Place, 18 Miles N. from *Memmingen*, and 25 S. from *Augsburg*. It was formerly ſubject to Princes of its own, of ſeveral Families, and particularly to the Dukes of *Teck*, and afterwards to the Lords of *Rechberg* and *Fronsberg*, whoſe Iſſue failing, the Emperor *Rodolph* II. inveſted *William* V. of *Bavaria* with it. It continued in that Family till the Proſcription of the late Elector; and after the Battle of *Hochſtat*, was erected into a Principality for the Duke of *Marlborough* and his Poſterity, as a Reward for his Grace's Share in that great Victory. He has a Vote in the Diet, and the Principality is always to be in the Hands of a Proteſtant. *Sanſon* makes it, where longeſt, about 18 Miles, and the greateſt Breadth about 16. It contains, beſides *Mindelheim*, the Towns of *Ingenried*, and *Schwabik*.

La Forreſt mentions alſo in *Upper Swabia* the City of *Kaufbeuren* on the *Wertach*, formerly govern'd by Counts of its own, who ſold 'em their Freedom in 1024; and next Year it was made an Imperial Town by the Emperor *Conrad* II. It lies 18 Miles N. E. from the Abbey of *Kempten*, and 33 S. from *Augsburg*. *Pfullendorf*, on the River *Sel*, a ſmall and neat City, which was made Imperial by the Emperor *Frederick* I. It lies 10 Miles S. of the *Danube*, and 14 N. from *Uberlingen*, on the Lake of *Conſtance*.

La Forreſt mentions the following Places in *Lower Swabia*.

The Principality of HOHENZOLLERN,

Which lies betwixt the Principality of *Furſtemberg* and the Dutchy of *Wirtemberg*. It took its Name from the Caſtle of *Zollern*, built by the Emperor *Henry* V. in 1122. 'Tis, according to *Moll*, 34 Miles in Length, and about 10 where broadeſt; but in other Places ſcarce 5. 'Tis govern'd by its own Princes, deſcended from the ancient Counts of *Zollern*, whoſe Pedigree is derived from *Taſſilo* Count of *Hechingen*. This Family is divided into the two Branches of *Hechingen* and *Sigmaringen*, who were made Princes of the Empire by *Ferdinand* II. They are Chamberlains of the Empire, and Vicars to the Elector of *Brandeburg* in that Office. They and their Subjects are Papiſts.

The Places of Note here are, 1. *Hechingen*, a ſmall City, with the Title of a County, betwixt the *Danube* and the *Neckar*, 8 Miles S. from *Tubingen*. It gives Title to the eldeſt Branch of the Family. 2. *Zollern*, an ancient Caſtle on the River *Zollern*, which gives Title to the Lords who reſide there. 3. *Heicherlock*, or *Hagerlach*, upon the ſame River, a ſmall City, with the Title of a County. 4. *Sigmaringen*, a great open Town on the *Danube*, which gives Title to the younger Branch of this Family.

The Principality of OETINGEN,

A ſmall Country betwixt the Marq. of *Anſpach* and the Dutchy of *Newburg*. *Sanſon* makes it 28 Miles long, and 18 broad, including *Nordlingen* and its Territory. The Lords of this Country are Proteſtants, and were made Princes of the Empire in 1674.

The chief Places are, 1. *Oetingen*, or *Oettingen*, on the *Wernitz*, 15 Miles N. W. from *Donawert*, and 10 N. E. from *Nordlingen*. One half of the Town belongs to the Princes of this Name, and the other to the Counts of *Oetingen*. 2. *Allerheimb*, on the ſame River, the Capital of a Bailiwick.

Digitized by Google

The County of *Oettingen* comprehends 3 Bailiwicks, belonging to the younger Branch of the Family, ſub divided into 4 other Branches, all Papiſts, who obſerve Seniority in Point of Succeſſion among one another.

3. *Wallerſtein*, on the *Eyer*, a great open Town, which gives Title to a Branch of the Family, and is Capital of a Bailiwick.

4. *Nordlingen*, called by the Latins, *Alæ*, *Alie Flaviæ*, and *Nerolingæ*. It lies on the River *Eyer*, in the Confines of the *Norgaw*. 'Tis a ſmall Imperial City, 10 Miles S. W. from *Oettingen*, 8 N. from *Blenheim*, and 15 N. W. from *Donawert*. 'Twas made an Imperial Town in 1251; and for their Security, is in League with the *Swiſſers*. 'Tis remarkable for two great Battles; the firſt in 1634, betwixt the *Germans* and the *Swedes*, when the latter were defeated; and the 2d in 1646, when the *Swedes* and the *French*, who came to the Aſſiſtance of the Proteſtants of the Empire, under the Prince of *Conde*, defeated the *Bavarians*.

5. *Dunkelſpihel*, on the *Wernitz*, a ſmall Imperial City in the County of *Oettingen*, taken by the *French* after the Battle of *Nordlingen* in 1646. One half of the Magiſtrates are Papiſts, and the other *Lutherans*.

6. *Gingen*, on the *Prentz*, half-way betwixt *Ulm* and *Nordlingen*, a ſmall Imperial City, whoſe Magiſtrates are Proteſtants.

The County of WASSENSTAING,

Enclos'd by the Dutchy of *Wirtemberg*, was acquir'd by the Duke of *Bavaria* in 1627. The chief Place is *Weiſſenſtain*, an open Town in a very fruitful Valley, defended by a ſtrong Caſtle.

The County of LOEWENSTEIN,

Within two Leagues of the *Neckar*. It takes its Name from a Caſtle, and is partly included in the Dutchy of *Wirtemberg*. The Elector *Palatine* bought it in 1441, from the laſt of its ancient Counts; ſo that the preſent Count is a Branch of the *Palatine* Family, and has ſeveral other Lands, particularly the County of *Wertheim* in *Franconia*.

The County of HOHENRECHBERG,

Betwixt the Dutchy of *Wirtemberg* and the Territory of *Ulm*. 'Tis poſſeſs'd by a Family deſcended from *Hildebrand*, ſirnam'd the *Sale*, or *Ugly*, which is divided into ſeveral Branches. The only Place of Note here is the Caſtle of the ſame Name, which gives Denomination to the County.

The County of GRAVENECK,

Betwixt the Dutchy of *Wirtemberg* and the Principality of *Hohenzollern*, belongs to Lords of the ſame Name, one of the oldeſt Families in *Swabia*. The Places of Note are, 1. *Graveneck*, a large open Town, with a fine Caſtle, well fortified, the uſual Reſidence of the Counts. 2. *Eglingen*, a ſmall City near *Nordlingen*, which belongs to this Family.

The Dutchy of Wirtemberg.

'TIS a Province of the Circle of *Swabia*, and abounds with every Thing that can bring Profit or Pleaſure to the Inhabitants. Their Mountains are full of Mines and Vineyards, and the Vallies ſtock'd with large Herds of Cattle. They have abundance of pleaſant Meadows and Foreſts, with Variety of Game. 'Tis water'd with many ſmall Rivers, and has ſeveral Lakes full of Fiſh. It has the Palatinate of the *Rhine* and *Francenia* on the N. the *Danube* on the S. the Principality of *Baden* on the W. and the Biſhoprick of *Augsburg* on the E. *Mull* makes it about 70 Miles from N. to S. and including the *Black Breſt*, 90 from E. to W. 'Tis ſo populous, that 'tis ſaid to contain 63 Cities, 158 great Towns, 645 Villages, and 14 Abbies. Before the Civil Wars of *Germany*, the Duke was able to raiſe 24000 Men in 24 Hours; but that calamitous War leſſen'd the Number of People here, as in other Places of the Empire. It was made a County in 1078, and a Dutchy in 1495, by the Conſent of the Diet, becauſe their Princes had much improv'd their Eſtates, which at firſt conſiſted only of the Caſtle of *Wirtemberg*.

Digitized by Google

berg, that gives Name to the County, with the Villages that depended upon it.

The *Atlas Hiſtorique* gives the following Account of their Origine and Genealogy: Authors differ as to their Origine: Some derive them from *Everard*, Great Maſter of *Charlemagne*'s Houſhold, who was Son to *Henry* Lord of *Butelsbach*: Others derive them from *Conrad* of *Wirtemberg*, who was made a Count of the Empire by *Henry* IV. for his good Services. His Son *Everard the Debonaire*, or the Good, enlarged his Dominions, by marrying the Heireſs of the Duke of *Teck*, and was ſo potent, that he had always 6 Princes, 8 Counts, 5 Barons, and 70 Gentlemen, in his Retinue. His Son *Everard* acquir'd the County of *Montbelliard*, by marrying the Heireſs. His Son *Louis* purchas'd 3 Lordſhips from the Count of *Helfenſtein*. His Succeſſor *Everard*, ſirnam'd the *Bearded*, was made Duke and Knight of the *Golden Fleece* by the Emperor *Maximilian* I. and dying without Iſſue, was ſucceeded by *Everard* VII. a Prince of the ſame Family. *Ulrick* VI. who was born in 1487, embrac'd *Lutheraniſm*, and enter'd into the League of *Smalkald*. He died in 1550, and was ſucceeded by his Son *Chriſtopher*, who deliver'd his Country from the *Spaniſh* Yoke, and died in 1568. His Son *Louis* II. ſucceeded, founded the Univerſity of *Tubingen*, and having no Iſſue, appointed his Couſin *Frederick* to ſucceed. His Country ſuffer'd much by the Duke of *Guſe*, who ravag'd it in 1608. He was ſucceeded by his Son *John Frederick*, who in his Youth travelled over the World, and died in 1628. The preſent Duke *Everard Louis*, his Great Grandſon, was born in 1676. He is Knight of the *Golden Fleece*, and General of the Emperor's Horſe. His eldeſt Son, *Frederick Louis*, was born in 1698. This Prince and his Subjects are Proteſtants, and are call'd the Branch of *Stutgard*, which is the eldeſt of the Family. The other Branches of this Family are that called the *Julian* and *Sileſian* Branch, and that of *Bernſtad*. They deſcended from *Frederick* above mention'd. The preſent Prince is *Charles Frederick*, who was born in 1690. From *Julius Frederick* H. of this Branch, came that of *Weillingen*, whoſe Prince is *Frederick Ferdinand*. From *Sylvius Nimrod*, the 2d of the *Julian* Branch, came that of *Juliuſburg*, whoſe Prince is *Charles*, born in 1682. From the abovemention'd *Frederick* did alſo proceed the Branch of *Montbelliard*, whoſe Prince *George* was deſpoil'd of his Dominions by the *French*, but reſtor'd by the Treaty of *Ryſwick*, and died in 1699. His Son *Leopold Everard*, the preſent Prince, was born in 1670, and is Knight of the Order of the *Elephant*. From *John Frederick*, the great Traveller, came the Branch of *Newſtat*, by a 2d Son. The preſent Prince is *Frederick Auguſtus*. From *Everard* VIII. who was born in 1614, proceeded the Branch of *Wirtemberg*, whoſe preſent Prince, *Frederick Charles*, was born in 1652. He was General of the Emperor's Horſe in the laſt War. His Son *Charles Alexander* is General Major of the Empire.

The Titles of the Princes of *Wirtemberg* are, Dukes of *Wirtemberg* and *Teck*, Counts of *Montbelliard*, Lords of *Heidenheim*, &c.

Their Dominions are, 1. The Dutchy of *Wirtemberg*. 2. The County of *Aurach*. 3. The County of *Groningen*. 4. The Caſtle and Bailiwick of *Teck*. 5. Of *Kirkheim*. 6. Of *Owen*. 7. Of *Guttemberg*. 8. Of *Achalmen*. 9. Of the Fort of *Hohenſtauffen*. 10. The Bailiwicks of *Balingen*. 11. Of *Dutlingen*. 12. Of *Blaubeuren*. 13. The Lordſhip of *Heidenheim*. 14. The County of *Kalbe*. 15. Part of the County of *Eberſtein*. 16. The Lordſhip of *Tubingen*.

The Titles of the Princes of *Oels*, another Branch of this Family, are, Dukes of *Wirtemberg*, *Teck*, and *Oels*, Count of *Montbelliard*, Lord of *Heidenheim*, &c. Their Dominion is, the Principality of *Oels*.

The Dominions of the Branch of *Newſtat* are, 1. *Newſtat* and its Diſtrict. 2. *Weiſsberg*. 3. *Mockmuehle*. The Dominions of the Branch of *Montbelliard* are, 1. The County of *Montbelliard*. 2. The Lordſhip of *Blamont*. 3. Of *Herricourt*. 4. Of *Chaſtelet*. 5. Of *Clemont*. 6. Of *Clereval*. 7. Of *Paſſavaut*. The 6 laſt are Fiefs of the County of *Burgundy*. The Branch of *Weiltingen* has *Weiltingen* and its Diſtrict.

The *Atlas* ſays, the Dutchy of *Wirtemberg* is one of the fineſt and moſt fruitful Countries in *Germany*. The *Danube*, which runs by its Neighbourhood, and the River *Neckar*, which runs through the Country, enrich the Inhabitants, by the Conveniency of tranſporting their Commodities: And the

Digitized by Google

the Duke of *Wirtemberg* is ſtill able to raiſe 20000 Men in a little Time. When the Emperor commands his Armies, the Duke carries the Imperial Cornet or Standard, which is *Or*, a *Baton Sable*, pointed *Argent*, with a *Spread Eagle Sable*. He is alſo Great Huntſman of the Empire, and Joint Director of the Circle of *Swabia* with the Biſhop of *Conſtance*.

The Arms of *Wirtemberg* are, *Or*, 3 *Demi-Perches* or Branches of *Stags-Horns Sable*, laid Face-wiſe one above another, charg'd with 4 Antlers, each of the ſame, for *Wirtemberg*. In the 1ſt, *Lozenges Or* and *Sable*, for *Teck*. In the 2d, *Azure*, a *Standard Or*, plac'd Bend-wiſe, charg'd with a *Spread-Eagle Sable*, for the Standard of the Empire. In the 3d, *Gules*, 2 *Trouts Or*, Back to Back, and fac'd Pale-wiſe, for *Montbelliard*. The Helmets are *Or* Crown'd, ſurmounted with a *Horn*, with white Feathers in its Mouth, for *Wirtemberg* in the 1ſt. *Or* Crown'd, a Dog's-Head Lozeng'd *Or* and *Sable*, for *Teck*. The 2d *Or* Crown'd, ſurmounted with a Lady Crown'd *Argent*, and clad *Gules*, with 2 *Trouts Or*, inſtead of Arms, for *Montbelliard*.

Dr. *Nicholſon* obſerves, That Duke *Ulrick* was drove out of his Dominions in 1519, when they were ſold to the Emperor *Charles* V. But he was reſtor'd in 1534, by the Aſſiſtance of the King of *France*, and the Landgrave of *Heſſe*. Whereupon 'twas agreed, That he ſhould pay Homage to the Houſe of *Auſtria*. But in 1599, the Duke was reſtored to his ancient State, the Houſe of *Auſtria* reſerving only the Title and Arms, and the Right of Succeſſion on the Failure of the Duke's Heirs Male.

The Confeſſion of Wirtemberg.

WAS one of thoſe added for explaining the Confeſſion of *Augsburg*, and preſented to the Council of *Trent* by the Miniſters of the Dukes of *Wirtemberg* and *Montbelliard* in 1552. It agrees in Doctrine with that of *Augsburg*, which it explains; and in many Things, is more particular and expreſs. In the Head of Order, they declare againſt Sacrificing Prieſts, and for the Identity of Biſhop and Presbyter; alledging, That except a Presbyter be appointed in the Church for Teaching, he cannot rightly be called either Presbyter or Biſhop. They declare alſo againſt ſignificant Ceremonies, ſuch as lighting of Wax Candles to adumbrate the Revelation or Light of the Goſpel, and the Sign of the Croſs, to denote Chriſt's Victory by it, *&c.*

Their chief Towns.

1. *Stutgard*, the Metropolis of the Country It lies near the *Neckar*, about the middle of the Durchy, in Long. 28. Lat. 48. 38. 62 Miles W. from *Nordlingen*, and 52 S. from *Strasburg*. 'Tis the Reſidence of the Duke, who has a Caſtle there very well fortified. 'Tis a noble Fabrick, adorn'd with delicate Groves and Gardens, with fair Rows of Orange-Trees, fine Grotto's and Water-works, and a Pleaſure-Houſe, as ſtately as that of any Prince of the Empire. The City is pretty large; but moſt of the Citizens Houſes are built of Wood, and low. The Town is much reſorted to, becauſe of its natural Baths, which cure many Diſeaſes. Some derive the Name from its being formerly a Place for breeding young Horſes. This, they think, is confirmed by the Arms of the City, which is a young Colt let looſe.

2. *Tubingen*, the 2d City of the Dutchy. 'Twas not long ago govern'd by Counts of its own, who had their Reſidence at *Leichteneck* in *Alſace*. It lies upon the *Neckar*, about 17 Miles S. from *Stutgard*; is a fair City, and adorn'd with an Univerſity, founded by Count *Everard*, formerly mention'd, in 1477. The College was projected by Count *Chriſtopher*, built by Count *Lewis*, endow'd by Count *John Frederick*, and advanc'd in Reputation by Duke *Everard*. None are admitted here but ſuch as are deſcended from ancient Families, and accounted Gentlemen. Here's a Supreme Court of Judicature, where all Cauſes, Civil and Criminal, are determin'd by 5 Nobles, 4 Doctors of the Univerſity, and 4 Burghers. There's likewiſe a Conſiſtory of Divines and Civilians, who determine Eccleſiaſtical Cauſes. The firſt Rector of the Univerſity was *Nauclerus*, whoſe Hiſtorical Works were publiſh'd by *Melancton* in 1500, and are much commended by *Camerarius*. The chief

Digitized by Google

chief Scholars they can boaſt of, of late, are *Cruſius* and *Schickard*, both well vers'd in the Oriental Languages. In the Church of this City, are the Tombs of the Princes and Princeſſes of *Wirtemberg*. Some Antiquaries pretend, that the Emperor *Caracalla* had a Palace here, where he entertain'd the *Germans* with Publick Games.

3. *Wirtemberg*, a very ancient Caſtle on a Hill upon the *Neckar*, which gives Title to the Dukes, and the Name to the Country.

4. *Eſſingen*, on the *Neckar*, 10 Miles S. E. from *Stutgard*. 'Tis a ſmall Imperial City, under the Protection of the Duke. 'Twas walled by the Emperor *Frederick* II. and made Imperial in the 16th Century. 'Tis a Place of good Trade, and the Magiſtrates are Proteſtants.

5. *Reitling*, or *Rutlingen*, on a ſmall River which falls into the *Neckar*. 'Twas made Imperial by *Frederick* II. in 1240. It lies 12 Miles S. E. from *Tubingen*, is under the Protection of the Duke, and moſt of the Citizens are Proteſtants.

6. *Gemund*, on the Frontiers of the County of *Hohenrechtberg*, 28 Miles E. from *Stutgard*. *Frederick* I. made it Imperial in 1186. The Magiſtrates are Papiſts. 'Twas formerly noted for Tournaments held here by the Nobility of *Swabia*.

7. *Rotweil*, on the *Neckar*, at the Entrance into the *Black Forreſt*, 37 Miles S. W. from *Tubingen*. 'Tis a ſmall Imperial Town, fortified after the ancient Manner. An Imperial Chamber was eſtabliſhed here by the Emperor *Conrad* III. when he made it Free in 1147. The *French* took it in 1643, under the M. *de Guebriant*, when they join'd the *Swedes*. The Marſhal died of his Wounds next Day after it was taken. 'Twas alſo ſeized by the M. *de Villars* in 1703, after he paſs'd the *Black Forreſt*.

8. *Hailbron*, *i. e.* a Fountain of Health, ſo called from its famous Medicinal Springs. It ſtands in the Limits of this Dutchy, on the *Neckar*, 28 Miles N. from *Sturgard*. 'Tis a neat well built Town, and has a fine Bridge over the *Neckar*. 'Twas made Imperial by *Frederick* II. in 1240, and was ſeveral times taken and retaken during the Wars with the *Swedes*. Moſt of the Inhabitants are Proteſtants.

9. *Hall*, on a little River of the ſame Name, on the Frontiers of *Franconia*, 22 Miles E. from *Hailbron*. It has its Name from a Salt Fountain in the Neighbourhood. It depended formerly on the Dukes of *Wirtemberg*; but was made Imperial by *Charles* IV. in 1360.

10. *Weil*, on the *Worm*, 12 Miles W. from *Stutgard*. 'Twas made Imperial by *Frederick* II. in 1240. The Inhabitants are Papiſts.

La Forreſt takes Notice of the other Places following in this Country; 1. *Kunſtatt*, on the *Neckar*, a pretty Town, of good Trade. 2. *Heidenheim*, on the Frontiers of the Territory of *Ulm*, a large Town, well fortified. 3. *Schorndorf*, on the *Rems*, a ſmall City, noted for the great Quantity of Salt made there. 4. *Marback* on the *Neckar*, a ſmall, but a pleaſant Town. 5. *Lauffen*, another ſmall Town on the ſame River, ſeated the moſt pleaſantly of any in *Swabia*. 6. *Newſtatt*, on the *Koker*, near the Borders of the Palatinate of the *Rhine*, a ſmall City, which gives Title to a Branch of the Dukes of *Wirtemberg*. 7. *Befigheim*, on the *Ems*, a little above where it falls into the *Neckar*. 8. *Nagelt*, a ſmall City on a River of the ſame Name. 9. *Neifen*, within a League of the *Neckar*, a ſmall City, which formerly belong'd to the Counts of *Weinſperg*. 10. *Aurack*, a ſmall City, with a good Caſtle, on a riſing Ground betwixt the *Neckar* and the *Danube*. 11. *Schultz*, on the *Neckar*, near the Borders of *Hohenzollern*. 12. *Hornberg*, a ſmall City, upon a River at the Entrance into the *Black Forreſt*. 13. *Reinſtat*, an important Paſs at the Entrance of the *Black Forreſt*, which has been lately fortified, and the Foundations of a Town are marked out within the Fortifications. 14. *Dutlingen*, near the Fountain of the *Danube*, famous for a Battle betwixt the *French* and Imperialiſts in 1643.

The Marquiſate of Baden.

THis Country lies on the Eaſtern Banks of the *Rhine*, has the *Palatinate* on the N. *Switzerland* on the S. the *Black Forreſt* on the E. and *Alſace* on the W. *Moſt* makes it; including *Briſgow*, 87 Miles long, and the greateſt Breath about 20. 'Tis exceeding fruitful in Corn, Wine, and Hemp, and every where ſo full of Villages, that ſome compare it to a continu'd City, interlac'd with

Digitized by Google

with fair Gardens. The *Rhine*, *Ems*, *Wurmb*, *Phints*, and other Rivers, afford them Plenty of Fish. Their Chases and Parks are so well stock'd with Venison and Fowl, that the Rusticks have them for their ordinary Diet. They sell vast Quantities of Hemp and Flax to the *Dutch* and the *Flemings*. They have many Woods of Chesnuts, in which they have great Herds of Swine. They have many Quarries of Free-Stone, and Marble of all Colours; so that they build fair Houses at a small Charge. In the County of *Spanheim*, they have Agate, which they polish and export. But their chief Advantage is from their great Numbers of excellent hot Baths, and Mineral Springs, that occasion a great Resort of the Nobility from most Parts of the Empire, which has mightily civiliz'd the Inhabitants, and makes them very complaisant to Strangers. The People are stout and Warlike, inur'd to Labour and Hardships, and make as good Soldiers as any in the Empire.

The *Atlas Historique* gives us the following Account of the Genealogy of the Princes of this Family: *Archinoald*, *Major-domo* to *Clovis* II. King of *France*, is reckon'd the Founder of it. The next taken notice of is *Hugh* Count of *Ferette*, the 6th from *Archinoald*. After him came *Everard* Count of *Alsace*, from whence, according to some Authors, proceeded the Family of *Lorrain*. Next to him came *Guntran the Rich*, Count of *Altenburg*, from whence came the Branches of *Baden* and *Austria*: From whom, after 6 Descents, came *Herman* III. from whom sprung the first Branch of *Baden*, and that called the Branch of *Baden-Hochberg*, which were reunited in the 15th Century. 'Tis fit to observe here, That Dr. *Nicholson* says, the *German* Heralds can scarce determine the Pedigree of this Family, 'tis so ancient. Some derive them from the *Ursins*: Others from the House of *Della Scala*, or the *Scaligers*: But the most probable Opinion is, That they are of the same Origine with the House of *Austria*. The Branch of *Hochberg* came from *Berthold*, Lord of *Brisgaw*, first Duke of *Zeringen*, and afterwards made Duke of *Carinthia*, who died in 1077. *Herman* IV. Son to *Herman* III. above-mention'd, married into the *Palatine* Family of the *Guelphs*, and died in 1190. His Son *Herman* V. conquer'd Part of *Austria*, and his Son *Frederick* was beheaded at *Naples* in 1269. So that his Brother *Rodolph* succeeded. From him, after 8 Descents, came *Christopher*, who united the Branches of *Hochberg* and *Baden*, and died in 1527. From him proceeded the Branches of *Baden Baden*, and of *Baden Durlach*. From him, after 7 Descents, came the late famous *Louis William*, who was Generalissimo of the Army of the Empire, signaliz'd himself by his great Victories against the *Turks*, and his Defence of the Empire against the *French*, in very discouraging Circumstances. He died in 1706, and has left behind him a Son, born in 1702, who is under his Mother's Guardianship.

The Princes of this Family are Papists; and a Branch of 'em, descended from Prince *Louis*'s Grandfather, is that of *Lobeschutz* in *Bohemia*, whose present Prince, *Leopold William*, has a Defect in his Speech.

The Branch of *Baden Durlach* is *Lutheran*. The present Prince is *Frederick* III. call'd *The Great*, who was born in 1647, and has a numerous Issue; among whom, there's a Son, and two Grandsons.

Their Titles are, Margraves of *Baden* and *Hochberg*, Landgrave of *Sausenberg*, Count of *Spanheim* and of *Eberstein*, Lord of *Rotelen*, *Baden Weiler*, *Lahr*, and *Mahlberg*.

The Dominions of the Margraves of *Baden Baden* are, the Upper Marq. of *Baden*, Part of the County of *Eberstein*, Half the County of *Spanheim*, the Lordship of *Usenberg*, 9 Towns in *Bohemia*, which came to them by Marriage; the Earldom and Castle of *Guntzburg*, betwixt *Ulm* and *Augsburg*, given to Prince *Louis* by the late Emperor, as a Reward of his great Services; and the Fort of *Kheil*.

The Dominions of *Baden Durlach* are, the Lower Marq. of *Baden*, the Marq. of *Hochberg*, the Landgraviate of *Sausenberg*, the Lordships of *Rotelen*, *Lahr*, *Baden Weiler*, and *Mahlberg*.

Their Arms are, *Or*, a *Brochant Gules*, for *Baden*. 1. *Checkee*, *Argent* and *Gules*, for *Spanheim*. 2. Quarter'd, a *Rose Gules*, and a *Bear Sable*, on a Green Hill, for *Eberstein*. 3. A *Lion Gules*, Crown'd *Or*, for *Brisgaw*. 4. three *Cheverons Sable* for *Baden Weiler*. 5. *Azure*, a Wing expanded *Argent*, charg'd with a Demi-circle *Or*, for *Usenberg*. 6. *Coupee*, Wav'd *Or*, a *Lion Naissant*, *Gules*, Fess'd and Wav'd

Wav'd *Argent Azure*, for *Rotelen*. 7. Or, a *Fess Gules*, for *Lahr*. 8. Or, a *Lion Sable*, and Crown'd Or, for *Mahlberg*. 9. *Checkee*, Or and *Azure*, for *Spanheim*.

The Difference betwixt the Arms of the two Families, is, That the Arms of *Eberstein* has only one Quarter in the Arms of *Baden Baden*; but two in those of *Durlach* and *Spanheim*, has two in the former, and but one in the 2d.

These two Families associate themselves with other Princes, according to their different Religions.

Their chief Towns.

1. *Baden*, the Metropolis of the Marquisate. It derives its Name from its numerous hot Baths, of which 'tis said to contain about 300. The Town stands among Hills, upon a rocky uneven Ground, so that the Streets don't lie streight: Some of the Baths are scalding hot; and all of 'em running from Rocks of Salt, Allum, and Brimstone, have the same Taste. Out of that called the *Kettle*, the Water boils at a wonderful rate, and smoaks as if it were set over a Furnace. They are Sovereign against the Cramp and Gout, and some other Distempers, and therefore much frequented. *Keiffer* has given a Learned Description of 'em. The Marquis has his Palace here, which, with the Baths, occasions the chief Trade of the Town. The Palace is well fortified, stands on a rising Ground, and is the principal Defence of the Town. It lies in Long. 27. Lat. 48. 45. 5 Miles E. from the *Rhine*, 18 N. E. from *Strasburg*, and 15 E. from *Fort Louis*.

2. *Stolhoffen*, a small Town fortified by Art, and strong by its Situation, near a Morass. It lies 5 Miles S. W. from *Baden*, and about half a League E. from the *Rhine*. 'Tis famous for the Lines cast up here in the late and present War for Defence of the Empire.

3. *Gersbach*, a small City on the River *Murg*.

4. *Khiel*, on the E. Side of the *Rhine*, over against *Strasburg*, a strong Fortress, which was taken by the Marshal de *Villars* in 1703.

The Marq. of Baden Durlach.

IT lies contiguous to that of *Baden Baden* towards the N. E.

Their chief Towns.

1. *Durlach*, the Capital of the Country, 18 Miles N. E from *Baden*, and 10 S. W. from *Philipsburg*. 'Tis the Residence of the Prince, who has a magnificent Palace here, which far exceeds that of *Baden*, and is capable of entertaining the greatest Monarch in *Europe*: The Town lies on the Banks of the *Pfintz*, at the Foot of a Mountain; on the Top of which there's a strong Tower, with a continual Guard for the Security of the City. The Streets of the Town are straight and fair, and the Buildings stately and uniform. The Marquis has a large Collection of ancient Coins and Medals in his Closet, and a Library with many good Books. There's a *Gymnasium*, with Professors of the several Faculties.

2. *Pforzheim*, 15 Miles S. E. from *Durlach*, by the Latins called *Porta Hercynia*, because it stands at the Entrance of the *Black Forrest*, Part of the *Hercynia Sylva*. On one Side the Town, there are fair Meadows and Pastures; and on the other, Woods and Mountains. It lies on the Conflux of the *Ens* and *Neckar*. It was formerly subject to the Dukes of *Swabia*, but now to the Marq. of *Baden Durlach*.

3. *Gersbach*, a small Town, with a *Lutheran* and Popish Church. Here the Marquis has a Palace, and Court of Judicature for determining Causes belonging to the County of *Eberstein*.

4. *Baden Weiler*, betwixt *Friburg* and *Basle*, near the *Rhine*, about 12 Miles S. from *Brisac*, in the Territories of which it lies, tho' Part of the Marq. of *Baden*. The hot Baths of this Place, which spring from Hills of Allum, Brimstone, and Nitre, are not so hot as those of *Baden*, Being drunk, they cure Asthma's, and all sorts of Stoppage and Shortness of Breath, old inveterate Agues and Fevers; and by washing and bathing, are excellent against Itch, Scabs, Leprosies, old Sores, and Bruises.

Digitized by Google

5. *Hochberg*, an ancient Caſtle, which gives Name to a Marq. and was the Title of a Branch of the Family, which fail'd in 1503. It lies on the Confines of the *Briſgaw*, 7 Miles N. from *Friburg*, and has a great open Town called *Emertingen* near it.

6. *Sauſenberg*, an ancient Caſtle, which gives Title to a Landgraviate, and lies a little above *Baden Weiler*.

7. *Rotelen*, about 7 Miles S. W. from *Baden Weiler*, a Caſtle where the Branch of *Hochberg* had their Reſidence. *Spanheim* and *Mahlberg* are Caſtles which formerly gave Titles to Princes; but are otherwiſe of no great Note.

Alſace, *or* Elſace,

HAS its Name from the River *Ell* or *Ill*, which runs through it, and not from *Edel Saſſin*, as being one of the beſt Countries poſſeſſed by the *Saxons*, as ſome have imagin'd. It has the Palatinate of the *Rhine* on the N. *Switzerland* and Part of *Burgundy* on the S. *Lorrain* on the W. and the Marq of *Baden* on the E. From S. to N. 'tis about 100 Miles long; and where broadeſt, from E. to W. excluding *Briſgaw*, about 25.

This Country is as rich and noble a Province, and as well furniſh'd with Neceſſaries, eſpecially Corn and Wine, as any in the Empire. Their Hills are cover'd with Cheſnut Groves; and *Lebert-Hall*, with others of their Vallies, abound with Mines of Copper, Lead, *&c.* In other Places, they have rich Meadows and fat Paſtures; ſo that they have Butter and Cheeſe equal to the beſt in *Holland*.

'Twas formerly ſubject to the Kings of the *Franks*; and *Hildrick*, one of them, beſtow'd the Title of a Duke on his Favourite *Eticio* in 684. His Succeſſors were drove out by *Charles Martel*, Maſter of the *French* King's Houſhold; and in the Time of the Emperor *Otho* I. the Count of *Keiſburg*, one of his Kinſmen, was made Landgrave of this Country. Others ſay, That the Emperor *Otho* III. divided it into two Landgraviates, and gave the *Upper* to the Counts of *Hapſburg*, and the *Lower Alſace* came afterwards to the Counts of *Ottingen*, who ſold it to the Biſhop of *Straſburg*. 'Twas ſince ſeiz'd by the *French* King, and confirmed to him by the Treaty of *Munſter* in 1648. But being always accounted a Part of the Empire, we deſcribe it here. 'Tis uſually divided into *Upper* and *Lower*, beſides the leſſer Territories of *Ortenaw*, *Briſgow*, *Haguenaw*, *Sungaw*, &c. moſt of which are by ſome reckon'd Part of *Upper Alſace*, and by others Part of *Swabia*.

Their chief Towns.

1. *Straſburg*, on the W. Side of the *Rhine*, in Long. 26. 43. Lat. 41. 42 ½. about 12 Miles S. from *Fort Louis*. The Latins call it *Argentoratum*, *Argentina*, and *Straſburgum*. It ſtands on the Conflux of the *Ill* and *Breuſch*, which a little below it fall into the *Rhine*. *Cluverius* derives the Name from *Argen Straaten*, which ſignifies a bad Street. It was at firſt deſign'd only for a Fort; but is now one of the moſt populous and beſt Trading Towns in *Germany*. The Citizens are generally rich and courteous, and have Houſes to entertain Princes. 'Twas formerly an Imperial Town, being made Free by *Frederick* II. and ſo continued till it was treacherouſly taken by the *French* King in 1681. 'Tis pleaſantly ſituated in the middle of a Plain, and embrac'd the Reformation in 1529. Since the *French* took it, it has loſt much of its Religion, Liberty, and Trade. 'Tis the See of a Biſhop, who is Suffragan of *Mentz*, and has many ſtately Buildings; among which, the Town-Houſe, Arſenal, and Cathedral, are moſt remarkable. The laſt is one of the Wonders of *Germany*, and was deſcribed at large in a Treatiſe writ on purpoſe by *Schadæus*, and publiſh'd there in 1617. The Tower of the Cathedral is reckon'd the higheſt in *Germany*, and by ſome of the whole World. From the Foundation to the Top of the Spire, *Schadæus* reckons it 489 Feet, and 8 Inches; others reckon 575 Geometrical Feet. But that which makes it moſt famous, is the great Clock in it, which, by Mr. *Boyle* and others, is uſually given as an Inſtance of the late great Improvement in Mechanicks. 'Twas finiſhed in 1574, at the Charge of the Magiſtrates, by one *Habrecht*, a great Artiſt, of whoſe Work, they have many famous Pieces

Digitized by Google

Pieces of the ſame kind. He had his Inſtructions from two Learned Mathematicians, *Wolkenſtein* and *Dafypodius*; the latter of whom publiſh'd a Treatiſe about this Clock. The firſt Thing it preſents to our View, is a Celeſtial Globe, with all the Motions of the Planets, Fix'd Stars, *&c.* behind which, there's a Perpetual Almanack, in which the Day of the Month is pointed out by a Statue: The Hours are firſt crow'd by a gilt Cock, and then ſtruck on a Bell by an Angel; near whom ſtands another, with an Hour-Glaſs in his Hand, which he turns as ſoon as the Clock has ſtruck. The firſt Quarter is ſtruck by a Child with an Apple; the 2d by a Youth with an Arrow; the 3d by a Man of full Age, with a Tip-ſtaff; and the 4th by an old Man with his Cane. On the Outſide of the Church, are ſhewn the true Increaſe and Decreaſe of the Moon, with the Courſe of the Sun through all the Signs of the Zodiac. *Miſſon*, in his Travels, ſays, this Clock does much exceed that at *Lyons*, both in the Variety and Curioſity of its Motions. *Ray* ſays, the Cathedral is a noble Structure, with a Pair of folding Gates of Braſs at the W. End; That the Steeple is curiouſly built of carv'd Stone, and has 662 Steps from Bottom to Top. He went up 640 of them to a Place called the *Crown*, from whence there's a fine Proſpect of the City and adjacent Country. He ſays, the City is of a great Circumference, well fortified with Walls and Outworks. *Miſſon* ſays, its Fortifications, ſince the *French* took it, are ſo prodigious, that he would not venture on deſcribing them, but referred to the printed Platform for an Idea of them. They reach within 100 Paces of the *Rhine*, and the *French* King built a Citadel betwixt the City and the *Rhine*, which is reckon'd impregnable. The Arſenal is one of the nobleſt in *Germany*. *Ray* ſays, 'tis govern'd by two Councils, one of 71 Men, in which there are 6 Burgo-maſters, 6 Stadt-maſters, 15 *Patres Patriæ*, and 13 choſen out of the Militia. The other is called the Great Council, and conſiſts of 300 Men choſen by the ſeveral Companies of the City. *La Forreſt* ſays, That after they embrac'd the Reformation, they expelled the Biſhop and Canons, and left the Papiſts only one little Church, belonging to the Commandery of *Mukn*; but when the *French* King took it, he reſtored Popery, with the Biſhop to his See, and the Canons to the Cathedral, after they had been diſpoſſeſs'd 152 Years. *Ray* ſays, their Publick Granaries, Store-Houſes, and Wine-Cellars, are remarkable; That the Women there are generally handſome; That moſt of the Inhabitants were *Lutherans*; and in his Time, the Papiſts had but one Church, two Monaſteries for Men, and two Nunneries: That the Biſhop had a Palace in the City, where he was not allowed to ſtay above 3 Days at a time; but he might ſtay in an Inn 8. *Miſſon* ſays, their noble Arſenal was almoſt emptied by the *French*, who, beſides the Citadel and other Forts, have added a great Horn-work on the Side next the *Rhine*, with ſeveral Forts on the Iſlands, which ſecure the Bridge, and command the River. This Town was left to the *French* by the Treaty of *Ryſwick*; and Fort *Kheil* at the ſame Time was reſtored to the Empire. The Women here are noted for their odd and phantaſtical Dreſſes, as well as for their Beauty. *Mr. Coney* takes Notice, That the Rivers which run through the City occaſion abundance of Bridges; and that they have many Wells in the Streets, with Pails of Braſs handſomely turn'd like ſmall Mortars, with which they take up their Water. He mentions likewiſe abundance of Cannon of an extraordinary Size, and great ſtore of Arms in their Arſenal. They have an Univerſity, founded in 1538, by the Proteſtant Magiſtrates, to which *Ferdinand* II. allow'd great Privileges.

2. *Zabern*, or *Elſaco-Zabern*, to diſtinguiſh it from others of the ſame Name. 'Tis thought to be *Antonin's Tabernæ*, one of the old *Roman* Gariſons, demoliſhed by the ancient *Germans*, and rebuilt by *Julian* the Apoſtate. The City is defended by a ſtrong Caſtle on the top of a high Rock, to which there is only a narrow Paſſage cut out of the Rock by one of the Biſhops of *Strasburg*, who uſually kept their Reſidence here, and a Court of Judicature for determining Cauſes in their Dioceſe. It lies about 15 Miles N. W. from *Alſace*. *La Forreſt* ſays, 'tis noted for the Defeat of the *Lutheran* Army near it in 1525, by *Anthony* of *Lorrain*.

Digitized by Google

3. *Phaltzburg*, a little City, with the Title of a Principality, 12 Miles N. W. from *Zabern*. 'Tis pretty well fortified, at the Foot of a Mountain, on the Frontiers of *Lorrain*, to which it formerly belong'd.

4. *Lutzelſtein*, a Fortreſs with the Title of a County, on the Frontiers of *Lorrain*, about 6 Miles N. E. of *Phaltzburg*.

5. *Hagenaw*, an Imperial City, 15 Miles E. from *Zabern*, between the Rivers *Mottern* and *Zorna*, 6 Miles W. from the *Rhine*, and 14 N. from *Straſburg*, encompaſſed with thick Woods, Corn-Fields, and fruitful Vineyards. 'Tis conſiderable for the Court of Judicature eſtabliſh'd here in 1230 by *Frederick* II. It was given by *Charles* IV. to the Dukes of *Auſtria* in 1371, and was quitted to *France* by the Treaty of *Munſter*. 'Twas anciently reckon'd one of the four chief Villages of the *German* Empire. The *Germans* beſieg'd it in vain in 1674, and moſt of it was burnt by the *French* in 1677. 'Tis the Seat of the Great Baily of *Alſace*, and had the Supreme Court of Judicature for both *Alſaces*. The Emperor *Frederick* I. built a Palace here, where he kept his Reſidence. The Jeſuits had in their College here a large old *Roman* Battering-Ram, a Piece of Antiquity of great Value, which 'tis ſuppoſed the *French* have either removed or deſtroyed.

6. *Fort-Louis*, on an Iſland in the *Rhine*, over againſt *Baden*, from which it lies about 6 Miles N. W. 'Tis ſmall, but very ſtrong, and was built by *Louis* XIV. to command the Paſſage of the River.

7. *Weiſſenburg*, an Imperial City in the Province of *Hagenaw*. Latins call it *Sebuſium*, becauſe 'tis ſuppoſed to have been the Seat of the ancient *Sebuſii*. It lies 14 Miles N. E. from *Hagenaw*. *Dagobert* King of *France* preſented them with a Crown of Silver gilt, adorn'd with a great many Turrets, and other Flouriſhes of Art, whoſe Diameter was 24 Foot. In Remembrance of this, the Citizens hung up a Crown of Copper of the ſame Size in their great Church, where 'twas broke by the Soldiers in the Civil Wars of *Germany*, and carried away. That ſame King granted them Privileges to hunt and fiſh for many Miles round; and the Emperor *Charles* IV. made the Abbot of this Place a Prince of the Empire, and allow'd him to ſit at his Feet in the Diet. *La Forreſt* ſays, the Abbey was ſecularized by Pope *Alexander* IV. in 1496, and erected into a Provoſtſhip.

8. *Landaw*, on the *Queich*, 11 Miles N. E. from *Weiſſenberg*. 'Tis properly a Part of the *Palatinate*, tho' now reckon'd Part of *Alſace*, becauſe 'twas formerly under the Juriſdiction of *Hagenaw*. It was yielded to the *French* by the Treaty of *Munſter*; and in 1702, was beſieged by the King of the *Romans*, now Emperor, and taken, after great Loſs on both Sides; the Confederates having loſt 3 Princes, and, as *La Forreſt* ſays, 16000 Men. M. *Tallard* took it again next Year, after having obtained a conſiderable Victory over the Allies near *Spires*. But it has ſince been retaken by the Confederates, who are ſtill Maſters of it. The Plunder of moſt of the Towns of the *Palatinate*, which the *French* lodg'd here in 1688, was deſtroyed by an accidental Fire in 1689.

9. *Druſenheim*, 8 Miles S. E. from *Hagenaw*, had its Name from *Druſus*, who built a Fortreſs here, to ſtop the Incurſions of the *Germans* on this Side the *Rhine*.

10. *Moltzheim*, on the River *Bruch*, 10 Miles W. from *Straſburg*, whither the Canons of this City retired when they were chaſed out by the Proteſtants. 'Tis a ſmall City, and was almoſt ruin'd by the Imperialiſts in 1677.

11. *Roſtenheim*, on the *Mogel*, one of the 10 Cities that *Frederick* II. included in the Juriſdiction of *Hagenaw*. It lies 10 Miles W. from *Straſburg*.

12. *Benfeld*, upon the *Ill*, a ſmall City, well fortified, and formerly very conſiderable, but now almoſt in Ruins. It lies 15 Miles S. W. from *Straſburg*.

13. *Schleſtat*, a pretty ſmall City, on the *Ill*, 7 Miles N. W. from *Benfeld*. 'Twas formerly an Imperial City, but taken by the *French*, and yielded to them by the Treaty of *Munſter*. The Fortifications were demoliſhed by the Confederates in 1673; but ſince rebuilt, and now made very ſtrong.

All theſe are reckoned in *Lower Alſace*.

The

The Towns in Upper Alsace.

Brisac and *Freburg* are by some reckon'd in this Country; but by modern Geographers in *Swabia*, where we described them: So that the first Town here is,

Colmar, Lat. *Colmaria*, or *Columbaria*. It lies on the *Ill*, 12 Miles S. from *Schlestat*, and is now the Capital of *Upper Alsace*. Dr. *Nicholson* says, 'twas built out of the Ruins of the ancient *Argentuaria*, conquer'd by the Emperor *Gratian* in 378, and afterwards destroyed by *Attila* the *Hun*. This City stands in a plain and fruitful Country, and was formerly so populous, that in the great Church at *Easter*, 'twas usual to have 4000 Communicants. The Duke of *Saxe-Weimar* took it in 1636, and after his Death, it was put into the Hands of the *French* in 1639, and quitted to them by the Treaty of *Munster*: Since which, they have established the Sovereign Council of *Alsace* here, which was formerly at *Ensisheim*; but the Town is much short of what it was formerly.

2. *Keiserberg*, in a Valley, through which runs the River *Weils*, a City formerly belonging to the Jurisdiction of *Hagenaw*. It lies 8 Miles N. W. from *Colmar*.

3. *Turcheim*, formerly an Imperial Town on the River *Fecht*, at the Foot of the Mountains.

4. *Munster*, formerly an Imperial Town in the Valley of St. *Gregory*, 10 Miles W. from *Colmar*.

5. *New Brisac*, a small City, built since the Treaty of *Ryswick*, about a Mile from the *Rhine*, over against *Old Brisac*.

6. *Murbach*, a famous Abbey at the Foot of the Mountains, which separate *Alsace* from *Lorrain*, 14 Miles S. W. from *Colmar*.

7. *Ensisheim*, on the *Ill*, 10 Miles S. from *Colmar*, a very ancient City, where were formerly the Sovereign Courts of *Alsace*.

8. *Mulhausen*, an Imperial City, in Alliance with the Cantons, 15 Miles S. from *Colmar*. It formerly belong'd to the Bishop of *Strasburg*.

9. *Hunningen*, a very strong Fortress, half a League below *Basle* on the *Rhine*. 'Twas built by the *French* King after the Peace of *Nimeguen*. 'Tis large enough to hold 4 or 5000 Men. 'Tis composed of 5 Bastions, and has a Magazine vaulted with Bricks, so strong, that 'tis Proof against Bombs. Besides the Tenailles, Ravelins, Counterscarp, and double Ditch, two large Hornworks to the N. and S. and a 3d on the other Side the River, and from the Ramparts, there went Vaults to the Horn-works, for conveying Men to them; but all these were destroy'd, as was agreed by the Treaty of *Ryswick*.

10. *Pfird*, by the *French* called *Ferett*, a small City, the Capital of *Suntgow*. It lies towards the Frontiers of *Basle*, is a pretty City, and well fortified, about 10 Miles S. W. from *Hunningen*. 'Twas quitted to the *French* by the Treaty of *Westphalia*, and belongs now to the Duke of *Mazarin*.

11. *Before*, or *Betfort*, formerly the Capital of this Country; but was almost ruin'd by the Wars. It stands about 17 Miles N. W. from *Pfird*; and *La Forrest* says, 'tis well fortified, and defended by a strong Castle.

The County and City of MONTBELLIARD.

It lies W. from the *Suntgow* and *Before*, is about 22 Miles long, and 12 broad. It belongs to a Branch of the Family of *Wirtemberg*, to whom it gives Title. Dr. *Nicholson* says, the Name is derived from the sweet Air breath'd from the neighbouring Hills. The Capital City is of the same Name, and lies 33 Miles W. from *Basle*, and 8 S. W. from *Before*, in a very pleasant Country, on the utmost Border of the *German* Empire towards *Burgundy*; whence the Inhabitants are a Mixture of *French*, *Dutch*, *Lorrainers*, *Savoyards*, *Swissers*, and *Burgundians*, and their Language a Mixture of *French* and *German*. The Houses are generally built of Stone, and 3 or 4 Stories high. The Streets are uniform and large; and without the City, there are fine Groves and Gardens, the chief of which is the Duke's Garden of Pleasure, with a stately Summer-House, and all manner of rare Plants and Herbs. It stands upon the Side of a Hill, on the Top of which there is a good Citadel. The Inhabitants of the City and County are *Calvinists*. Some reckon it Part of the *French* County.

The

The Circle of FRANCONIA,

HAS *Saxony* on the N. *Swabia* and Part of *Bavaria* on the S. Part of *Hesse*, *Westerawia*, and the Palatinate of the *Rhine*, on the W. Part of *Bavaria* and *Bohemia* on the E. *Mose* makes it about 125 Miles from S. to N. and from E. to W. about 135. 'Tis Chief of the 10 Circles of the Empire. It has its Name from the *Franks*, its ancient Inhabitants, of whom we gave an Account in Ancient *Germany*, *Page* 417. Dr. *Nicholson* says, they were not one particular People, according to some Authors, but many of the ancient *Germans*, who enter'd into a League to defend themselves against the *Romans*, and took the general Name of *Franks*, to denote that they fought for their Liberty. Or, as others say, there being a great Controversy betwixt the *Swabians* and *Thuringians*, about 316 Years after Christ, the latter sent to *Clodomir* King of *France* for Assistance: Accordingly *Genebald* his Brother came with a great Army, fix'd himself in the Territories round *Wurtzburg*, and making himself Master of all the adjacent Country, gave it the Name of *Franconia*. 'Tis encompassed with Woods and Mountains, but has no Hills of any extraordinary Height. They have several Forrests and Parks well stock'd with Deer, Wild-Boar, and other Sorts of Game. Most of the Hills, especially along the *Mayn* and *Tauber*, are cover'd with Vines, which yield as rich and as good a Wine as the best Vineyards on the *Rhine*. The Fields about *Bamberg* are very fruitful in Corn, Grapes, Apples, and other Fruit; and such Plenty of Liquorish, that 'tis usually carried off the Fields by Waggon-loads. The Citizens of *Bamberg* have also store of Melons and Saffron, and indeed of every Thing necessary for Profit or Pleasure. *La Forrest* says, this Country was the usual Seat of the *French*, before they settled in *Gaul*; That the *French* Kings of the First Race established Lieutenants there, who first had the Title of Dukes, and afterwards became Proprietors of the Country, which was possessed by several Lords, when *Pepin* gave it to the Bishop of *Wurtzburg*; but those who were in Possession of this Dutchy maintain'd it against the Bishop, and became so potent, that *Conrad* Duke of *Franconia* was the first of the *German* Princes who possessed the Empire after the Posterity of *Charlemagne*. There were several other Emperors of that Family, and one of them, *Henry* V. gave this Country to *Conrad* of *Swabia*, his Nephew, who was afterwards Emperor. His youngest Son dying of the Plague at *Rome* in 1167, *Frederick* I. reunited this Dutchy to the Empire.

This Circle is divided into 6 lesser Principalities, 4 of which are subject to Spiritual Princes; *viz.* the Bishops of *Bamberg*, *Wurtzburg*, *Eichstat*, and the Great Master of the *Teutonick* Order. The Temporal Princes are, the Burgraves of *Nuremberg*, and two Princes of the Family of *Brandenburg*. Besides these, there are some other small Counties and Lordships subject to other Princes of the Empire, and several of 'em swear Fealty to the Elector of *Mentz*; of all which in their proper Places. The Bishop of *Bamberg* has the Pre-eminence, and claims a sort of Archiepiscopal Jurisdiction over the rest; but the Bishop of *Wurtzburg* is more potent than he. The Bishop of *Eichstat* has not much in *Franconia*, most of his Territories lying in *Bavaria* and *Swabia*. The Great Master of the *Teutonick* Order has little but a Title to a few Bailiwicks, which seldom take Notice of him as their Governor.

Dr. *Nicholson* says, the old *Françick* Language of this Country, or *Lingua Theotisca*, is the Origine of the present *High Dutch*, in which he gives an Account of many Pieces still extant: Some of 'em were presented by the Learned *Junius* to the Publick Library of *Oxford*.

The prevailing Religion of this Country is *Lutheranism*; but they have likewise *Papists*, *Calvinists*, and some *Jews*.

Their chief Rivers are, the *Main*, the *Regnitz*, the *Altmult*, the *Saal*, and the *Tauber*; all of which have their Rise in this Country.

La Forrest divides the Country into Ecclesiastical and Temporal Dominions, and Imperial Towns.

The

Digitized by Google

The Eccleſiaſtical Dominions are,

I. *The Biſhoprick of* WURTZBURG,

WHich has its Name from the City ſo called, is the Metropolis of *Franconia*, and lies on the River *Main*, in Longitude 28. 50. Lat. 49, 50. 65 Miles S. E. from *Francfort am Main*, and 58 N. E. from *Heidelberg*. The ancient Latins call it *Papolis*, and *Marcopolis*; but the Moderns, *Herbipolis*, according to the *German* Name, which ſignifies a Town of Herbs, becauſe of the great Variety which grow in and about this Place. The Situation is very pleaſant, and the adjacent Country abounds with all ſorts of rich Fruits and Plants, in which it exceeds the neighbouring Provinces. The City is divided into two Parts by the *Main*, and joined by a Bridge. There are likewiſe ſeveral little Streams that run thrô the Streets, which adds to the Pleaſantneſs of the City. *Guldmayer*, an Aſtrologer, born in this Place, alledges, the City was built 3 Years before our Saviour; but *Genebald* ſays, 'twas built 236 Years after. The Biſhop has a ſtately Palace on the Top of a high Hill beyond the River, which ſome fancy to have been built before the City, becauſe 'tis called *Old Wurtzburg*. The Biſhoprick was founded in the 8th Century, by St. *Boniface*, Archbiſhop of *Mentz*, and is ſtill Suffragan to that See. The Biſhop has ſupreme Juriſdiction over the City in Temporals as well as Spirituals; and when he appears in Publick, there's a Sword carried before him with this Inſcription;

Herbipolis ſolo judicat enſe & ſtolo.

Denoting both Juriſdictions; and when he ſays Maſs, the Sword lies down before him on the Altar. Other remarkable Things here are, 1. the Hoſpital, one of the richeſt and moſt magnificent in *Europe*: The other is the Univerſity or great College, founded in 1043, which Dr. *Nicholſon* ſays is very regular and uniform, and equal to moſt of the new-built Colleges in *Oxford*. The Biſhop's Palace is join'd to the Town by a Wall flank'd by 4 Baſtions. The City was formerly Imperial, but reduced by one of the Biſhops, and has ſince been ſubject to their See. He is a very potent Prince, has 400 Villages and Towns under him, and is able to raiſe 15000 Men. He has the Title of Duke of *Franconia*, and has above 100000 Crowns Revenue. His Chapter is compos'd of 24 Capitular Canons, and 29 who are domicil'd. They muſt all make Proof of the Nobility of their Deſcent; and when a new one is admitted, he muſt walk through the reſt drawn up in a Lane, and each of 'em gives him a Laſh with a Whip on the Back. *Memconys* ſays, the Fortifications of this City are not regular, but the Caſtle is very ſtrong both by Nature and Art; the Cathedral is ancient, but not very magnificent, and is filled with the Tombs of their Biſhops. The Bridge over the River is of Stone, and 300 Paces in Length. There is a good Arſenal in the Caſtle, well provided with Cannon and Arms. In one of the Courts of the Caſtle, there's a fine Fountain; and below the Caſtle, there's a Pump with 3 Branches, which raiſes the Water as high as the Caſtle, thô it be at leaſt 200 Fathom high, which is very much wonder'd at. In the Biſhop's Cellar, there are above 60 great Tuns of curious Workmanſhip, the leaſt of which contains 22 or 23 Waggon-loads of Wine, reckoning 6 Hogſheads to each Waggon-load; and there he ſaid he drank Wine, which they told him was above 123 Years old, and was clearer than the beſt *Spaniſh*.

The Places belonging to this Biſhoprick are, 1. *Oſchenfurt*, a pretty ſmall Town on the *Main*, 10 Miles S. E. from *Wurtzburg*. 2. *Kitzingen*, a good Town on the N. Side of the ſame River, about 8 Miles S. E. from *Wurtzburg*. Half of this City belongs to the Marquis of *Anſpach*. 3. *Wilkach*, a large open Town on the *Main*. 4. *Carlſtat*, upon the ſame River, a very pretty Town, 12 Miles N. from *Wurtzburg*. 5. *Schonwin*, on the S. Side of the *Main*, 12 Miles N. W. from *Carlſtat*: 'Tis Capital of a Bailiwick, formerly Part of the County of *Reinek*, but acquir'd by the Biſhop of *Wurtzburg* in 1559. 6. *Konigſhoven*, a ſtrong Town towards the Frontiers of the County of *Henneberg*, taken by the *Swedes* in 1631. It lies 45 Miles E. from *Wurtzburg*.

H. BAM-

II. BAMBERG.

Which derives its Name from *Baba*, the Emperor *Henry* I.'s Sister: Or, according to others, from *Papen*, as being anciently the Residence of Priests. It lies on the *Regnitz*, 43 Miles N. E. from *Wurtzburg*. 'Twas formerly Imperial, and govern'd by Earls of its own, who had their Residence at *Altenburg*, about a Mile from the Town, but is now subject to its Bishop, who has a Palace on an Island in the River *Regnitz*, which runs through the middle of the City, and a little below it falls into the *Main*. The Palace is very magnificent and beautified, with fair Gardens and Orchards. The adjacent Country abounds with rich Fruits and Plants, and the Bishoprick is reckon'd 60 Miles in Length, and 30 in Breadth, besides several Manors in *Carinthia*, and Royalties elsewhere. *La Forrest* says, he is the first Bishop of the Empire, and depends immediately on the Pope. His Subjects are Papists, and cannot Appeal from him in his Decisions. The King of *Bohemia*, the Electors of *Bavaria* and *Brandenburg*, hold several Lordships of this See. He is Joint Director of the Circle with the Marquis of *Culmbach*, and has a Right to receive the Oath which the Secular Electors swear to the Emperor, for the Offices of the Houshold which they bear. This Cathedral is one of the most Magnificent in the Empire, with a lofty Steeple and 4 noble Spires. The Chapter is composed of 20 Capitular Canons, and 15 Domicil'd. The Jesuits have a stately College here. Formerly when the Emperors had no Hereditary Countries in the Empire, *Bamberg* was the Place of their Residence, and in that case the Bishop was oblig'd to retire to *Villach* in *Carinthia*. The Bishoprick was founded by the Emperor *Henry* II. in 1106.

Other Places belonging to this Bishoprick, are, 1. *Forcheim*, a strong Town on the Conflux of the *Regnitz* and *Wisnet*, 10 Miles S. E. from *Bamberg*. 2. *Chronach*, a Fortress on a small River of the same Name.

III. AICHSTAT, or EICHSTAT;

A Bishoprick which takes it Name from the principal Town that lies on the *Altmul*, 12 Miles N. W. from *Ingolstat* on the *Danube*, 12 N. E. from *Newburg*, and 12 S. E. from *Weissenburg*. The Bishoprick is about 30 Miles from E. to W. and from 8 to 15 and 16 in Breadth. The *Latins* call this Town *Ala-Naristea*, and *Eistadium*. The Bishop is Suffragan of *Mentz*, and was founded by Archbishop *Boniface* at the same time with *Wurtburg*, and has been richly endow'd since by several Emperors and Princes. The Bishop is a Prince of the Empire, and has a Chapter of 16 Capitular Canons, and 15 Domicil'd. *John Conrad* of *Gemmingen*, says *la Forrest*, presented the Cathedral with a fine *Pyxis* for the Sacrament of pure Gold, weighing 40 Marks, enrich'd with 350 Diamonds, 1400 fine Pearls, 250 Rubies, and several other precious Stones. This Town was taken in 1703, by a Detachment of *French*.

Other Places in this Bishoprick, are, 1. *Willibaldsburg*, a Fortress built by one of the Bishops near this City. 2. *Dolfustein*, a small City on the River *Altmult*.

IV. *The* DOMAIN *of the Great Master of the* Teutonick Order;

Of whom we gave a large Account in *Prussia*. After *Albert* of *Brandenburgh*, their Great Master, had imbrac'd *Luther*'s Doctrine, he appropriated Part of that Country to himself, and quitted the other to the King of *Poland*: The Knights of the Order remov'd their Chapter to *Mariendal* in *Franconia*, where they chose *Walter* of *Cronberg* for their Great Master, who sued *Albert* at the *Aulic* Council of *Vienna*, where he obtain'd a Decree against what he had done, which never had any Effect. This Order possesses still Eleven Commendaries, and the Commanders have a Right to chuse their Great Master, who is always a Prince of the Empire. The Knights before Admission must prove the Nobility of their Extract by 16 Descents, both by Father and

Digitized by Google

ioned such a Difference betwixt him and *Bessancourt*'s Nephew, who succeeded his Uncle, that the King was forced to send thither one *Pedro Barba*, who having forced the *Frenchmen* thence, gave them as a Dowry with his Daughter to one *Perrera*, who stiling himself King of the *Canaries*, try'd to make himself Master of all by the Conquest of the remaining Part of the Island; but not succeeding, he sold 4 of them to *Ferdinand* the Catholick, K. of *Aragon*, only reserving to himself that of *Gomera*, with the Title of Earl; but King *Ferdinand* soon found Means to reduce the two great Islands.

Captain *Dampier* says, these Islands abound with Beans, Pease, and Cockle, a Grain like Maiz, Papahs, Apples, Pears, Plumbs, Cherries, choice Peaches, Apricocks, Guavoes, Pomegranates, Citrons, Oranges, Limons, Limes, Pumkins, the best Onions, Cabbages, Turneps, Potatoes, *&c.* and with Horses, Cows, Asses, Mules, Sheep, Goats, Hogs, Coneys, and Deer. Sir *William Monson* says, that in 1599 the *Dutch* sent a Fleet hither of 13 Ships, under the Command of *Peter van Dorst*, and at their Return published a Book, intituled, *The Conquest of the Grand Canaries, made that Summer by 73 Sail of Ships sent out by the Command and Direction of the States General, &c. with the taking of a Town in the Island Gomera*; by which Title our Author observes they endeavoured to make the World believe that they had conquered all the *Canary* Islands, whereas they only surprised and took the City of *Palmes* in the Island of *Grand Canary*, where they took no Prisoners nor Booty, the Inhabitants being retired with all their Goods into the Mountains, so that they only delivered 36 Prisoners; but after they had taken the Town, some of the Soldiers, without their Officers Leave, did so much Mischief in the Country, that (for want of knowing the Passages) the *Spaniards* killed Scores at Times, and made the rest retire. Nevertheless they rifled their Cloysters, Monasteries, and Churches, and then burnt them to the Ground, for which Reason Sir *William Monson* severely reflects upon them. After this, the *Dutch* General took *Gomera* without Opposition, for all the People fled to the Mountains, where they killed many of the *Dutch* Stragglers.

Le Maire, who made a Voyage to these Islands in 1682 under M. *Dancourt*, Director-General of the *French* Royal *African* Company, says, they abound with Bread, Corn, Barley, Honey, Fowls, and all other Necessaries for good Living, particularly *Malmsey* Sack, which is imported every Year into *England*, *Holland*, *France*, and *Spain*, so that the Pagans thought them the *Elysian* Fields. Their Water is not very good, but they purge and make it wholesome by pouring it into Vessels of porous Stone made in the Shape of Mortars. Their Harvest is commonly in *March*, sometimes in *April*, and in several Places twice a Year, and the Soil is so fat, that a Cherry-Tree Slip bears Fruit in 6 Weeks time after grafting, and Flowers grow without Cultivation. He observes, that *Lanzerota*, *Forteventura*, *Gomera*, and *Fer*, first embraced Christianity; but that the other three continued in Idolatry some Time after the Conquest of the *Spaniards* in 1460. However at last they followed their Example. He adds, that the *Spaniards* sent abundance of the Inhabitants for Slaves to *Spain*, in order to make an entire Conquest of the Country; but that those who stay'd behind became civiliz'd, and liv'd like their Conquerors. He tells us, that they are very fond of Strangers; that all the Islands are very mountainous, and well Peopled; and that the least is 60 Miles in Compass.

La Croix places these Islands between N. Lat. 26½. and 29½. tho *Ptolomy* extends them no farther than the 16th and he takes Notice, that some confound them with the Cape *Verd* Islands. Some by the Islands of *Ombrio* and *Junonia* understand *Porto Santo* and *Madera*; by *Plutralia*, *Lancerota*; by *Casperia* or *Capraria*, *Forteventura*; and by *Canaria*, the *Great Canary*, which still retains its Name. *Purchas* and others include among the *Canaries* the small Islands of *Lobos*, *Roca*, *Graciosa*, *Sante Clara*, *Alegranca*, and *Inferno*, to which *Ortelius* adds the *Salvages* Islands in the same Rank of that of *Alegranca*, together with those of *Graciosa* and *Coro*, which *Thevenot* calls the *Isle of Stags*, the chief of which we shall hereafter describe in their Order. *La Croix* sets these Islands over against Cape *Nun* in *Morocco*, 70 or 80 Leagues from the Continent, and 9 or 10 Leagues from one another. He tells us,

Digitized by Google

that the above-mentioned *John de Betancour* was a Native of *Caux* in *Normandy*; and that as soon as *John* King of *Caſtille* had transferred to him his Right to theſe Iſlands, he furniſhed him with all Neceſſaries for the Conqueſt; that at his firſt Arrival he ſeized the Harbour and Caſtle of *Lancerota*; after which he built the Cloyſter of *St. Francis*, and a Church there, and then returned into *Spain*, where, according to *Gramaye*, he made over his Right to *Diego de Herrera* for a Sum of Money. Upon this, the latter took the Iſle of *Fortaventura*, which he called by that Name in Honour of St. *Bonaventure*, on whoſe Feſtival he made the Deſcent. *Sanutius* ſays, that when *Betancour* arrived at the Iſlands of *Lancerota* and *Forteventura*, he took Poſſeſſion of them by the Conſent of the Queen of *Caſtille*, and that his Heirs ſold it after his Death to K. *John* while he was but young. The ſame Author ſays likewiſe, that *Diego de Herrera* made himſelf Maſter alſo of the Iſles of *Ferro* and *Gomera*; and that after he had made a vain Attempt upon the others, he ſold his Right to King *Ferdinand*, who made himſelf Maſter of *Grand Canary*, after an obſtinate Fight with the Iſlanders. *La Croix* ſays, that *Alfonſus* and *Bartelt de Lugo* being afterwards ſent thither in 1512, conquer'd the Iſle of *Fer* and 4 others before he was Maſter of *Palma*; but on the contrary *Sanutius* ſays, that *Gomera* and the Iſle of *Fer* were diſcovered by *Ferdinand Doriac*; and the *Grand Canary*, *Palma*, and *Teneriff*, by *Alfonſes de Lugo*, and *Peter de Vera*, a Gentleman of *Xeres*; and that all five were conquer'd by the Commiſſion of King *Ferdinand* and Queen *Iſabella*, *viz.* *Palma* and *Teneriff* by *Alfonſis de Lugo*, and the three others by *Peter de Vera* and *Michael de Mexica*.

La Croix obſerves, that the Nearneſs of theſe Iſlands to the Tropick of *Cancer* expoſes them to the vehement Heat of the Sun, as appears from their early Harveſt. He ſays, the Soil is equally good, and produces that famous *Canary* Wine which is ſo much eſteemed all over the World; but *Sanutius* ſays, that at firſt there was but one of theſe Iſlands which produced this Wine and Corn. Among other Fruits, they abound with Figs, Sugar-Canes, Palm-Trees, *&c.* which grow on the Bank of Rivers. It alſo produces abundance of the Plants commonly called *Oriſelle*, which moſt Herbaliſts think the ſame that *Phalaris* of *Dioſcorides*, and *Daletchamp* upon *Pliny*, take for the ſecond Sort of Barley of *Theophraſtus*, which bears *Canary* Seed. The Inhabitants cultivate this Seed with a great deal of Care for the Nouriſhment of thoſe called the *Canary* Birds, and it thrives very well too if tranſported into *Europe*. There's a Sort of black Gum or Pitch called *Bee*, which abounds in the Iſle of *Teneriff*, where they take it off of the Pines in this Manner: They cut and cleave thoſe Trees into little Billets till they have 10 or 12 Waggon-load, and then lay them croſs-wiſe one upon another over a great deep Hole, into which the Pitch drops by the Heat of the Fire, which they light firſt at the Top: But ſome only dig a Trench round the Tree, and then put in the Fire. The Sea here abounds with Fiſh, eſpecially Sturgeons, which is the poor People's principal Food, and all the Iſlands have certain Marſhes and Ditches, into which the Sea flows at high Tide, and afterwards the Water turns by Degrees and the Heat of the Sun, into Salt.

La Croix tells us, that the Inhabitants are ſtrong, neither white nor black, but of a brown ſwarthy Complexion, and have flat wide Noſes. They are very brisk and mettleſome. Thoſe few of the ancient Barbarians that are left have abandoned their native Roughneſs, are called *Guanchas* by the *Spaniards*, and conform to their Way of Living. They talk little, and liſp; but they have good Stomachs, ſo that ſome of them can eat 20 Rabbets and a Goat at a Meal. They all ſpeak good *Spaniſh*, beſides the different Languages of the Country, and are of the *Romiſh* Religion. 'Tis ſaid, that ſome of the Inhabitants fled to the Mountains at firſt out of Obſtinacy, but that now they are all diſperſed. He adds, that their chief Merchandize and Wealth conſiſts in their Wines, Goats-Skins, Sugar, *&c.* *Dampier* ſays, they have Cocks, Hens, Ducks, Pigeons, Partridges, and other Fowl, beſides Mackrel, and Plenty of other Fiſh; but all Proviſions are deareſt on the three moſt Trading Iſlands, which are *Grand Canary*, *Teneriff*, and *Palma*. He obſerves, that they are beſt noted for their *Malmſey* and other Wines, *Lancerota* for Horſes, *Forteventura* for Dunghil-Fowls, and *Gomera* for Deer.

The

Digitized by Google

'he Governor in 1699 was Don *Pedro de onte*, a Native of *Teneriff*, and formerly Pre-dent of *Panama* in the South Seas, from 'hence he brought Pearls to the Queen of *pain*, and was therefore made Governor of ne *Canaries*. He gives him the Character f a very worthy Perſon, and ſays, he was ell beloved for his Moderation and Juſtice. *oberts*'s Map of Commerce ſays, they make reat Quantities of Marmalade and other onſerves of their Sugars, and that they ave excellent Woad for Dying. He adds, hat they export 2000 Tuns of Wine every 'ear to *England* and *Holland*, beſides their Woad and Sugars, for which the *Engliſh* ring hither Says, Serges, Bays, Linens, and he like. The ſame Weights, Meaſures, nd Coins, are uſed here as at *Seville*.

Heylin obſerves, that the Ancients fixed he firſt Meridian among theſe Iſlands, which s ſince removed to *St Michael*'s, one of the *Azores*. He ſays, that then they made 'riſoners and condemn'd Perſons their or-linary Butchers, and obliged them to live in ſeparate Quarter. Each Iſland had a King of its own, yet they had a Common-Coun-il out of all, conſiſting of 130 Perſons, who had the chief Direction of all Matters ſpiritual and Temporal, and us'd to have he firſt Night's Lodging with every Man's Bride. He adds, that they were of a mild Diſpoſition, own'd one God, Creator of the Word, but agreed in nothing elſe, wore Goats-Skins, lived in Caves, and that they eat Dogs-Fleſh to this very Day.

He gives a Hiſtory of theſe Iſlands, which, ſince it differs in ſome Things from the Account already given, we ſhall briefly touch upon as follows: After the Decay of the *Roman* Empire, they lay undiſcovered till about 1330, when they were found out by an *Engliſh* or (as ſome ſay) *French* Ship drove hither by Tempeſt. K. *Alphonſo* IV. of *Portugal* ſent *Lewis de Orde* to conquer them; but being repulſed at *Gomera* in 1334, he gave over his Enterprize. Nevertheleſs the *Portugueſe* found their Claim to theſe Iſlands upon this Ground. But Pope *Clement* VI granted them to Prince *Lewis* of *Spain*, Son of *Alphonſo de la Corde*, the right Heir of *Caſtille*, by the Name of the *Fortunate Iſlands*, and cauſed Soldiers to be levied in *France* and *Italy* to aſſiſt him in the Conqueſt, which gave ſuch Umbrage to the *Engliſh* Ambaſſadors then at *Rome*, who thought there were no other *Fortunate Iſlands* than thoſe of *Great Britain*, that they poſted an Expreſs to the *Engliſh* Court to prevent the Danger of the ſuſpected Conveyance. But nothing being done in Purſuance of the Pope's Grant, in 1393 ſome *Biſcayners* fell among theſe Iſlands, and having pillaged *Lancerota*, returned into *Spain* with great Store of Wax, Hides, and other Commodities of the Iſland. Upon this *Katherine*, one of the Daughters of *John* Duke of *Lancaſter*, the Dowager of K. *Henry* of *Portugal*, did, during the Minority of *John* II. commit the Conqueſt of them to *John* of *Betancourt* above-mentioned, who died in 1417, after he had ſubdued 4 of the Iſlands, and left his Son, who not being able to ſubdue *Canary*, whither moſt of the Iſlanders were retired, fortified himſelf in *Lancerota*, and took the Title of King, which he left ſoon after to one *Menault*, in whoſe Time the Iſlands under his Command received the Goſpel, and had an Epiſcopal See in *Lancerota*. But Complaint being made at the Court of *Caſtille* that this King ſold his Subjects for Money, *Pedro Barva de Campos* was ſent againſt him with three Men of War; after which the King of *Caſtille* gave him Leave to ſell his Intereſt in theſe Iſlands to *Fernando Xeres*, a Knight of *Sevil*, who was aſſiſted by that City to maintain his Purchaſe, and left the 4 leſſer Iſlands to his Succeſſors, while *Canary*, *Teneriff*, and the Iſles of *Palmes*, were each under their own Kings. Thus it continued, ſays our Author, till 1483, when *Ferdinand the Catholick*, under the Conduct of two great Commanders, *Alphonſo* of *Mexico* and *Pedro de Vera*, became Maſter of them, and tranſlated the Biſhop's See to the *Great Canary*; ſo that our Author obſerves, the Poſſeſſion hath always belonged to the *Caſtillians*, notwithſtanding the Claim of the *Portugueſe*. He ſays, 'tis now divided into two Eſtates, the one ſubordinate to the other, *Gomera*, *Lancerota*, and *Hierro*, being in the Hands of private Subjects, and *Canaria*, *Palma*, *Teneriff*, and *Forteventura*, belonging to the Crown, to which 'tis ſaid they yield 50000 Ducats a Year. He adds, that the Seat of Juſtice is fixed in the *Grand Canary*, whither all reſort upon Occaſion.

Digitized by Google

Luyts and the *Sanſons* place theſe Iſlands over againſt the Capes of *Bojador* and *Nun* in *Teſſet* in *Biledulgerid*, and extend the chief of them betwixt Lat. 26. and 28 or 29. Several Maps extend them from the firſt Meridian to the 7th Deg. of Long. *Luyts* adds, that the *Orſeelum* above mentioned is much uſed in the dying of Cloths with a Purple Colour. *Morery* computes that they ſend 16000 Hogſheads of Wine every Year into *England*. He makes the Number of theſe Iſlands 12, including the leſſer ones, and ſays, the People value Iron more than Silver or Gold. He adds, that in 1598 the Earl of *Cumberland* fitted out 11 Ships at his own Charge, with which he took *Lancerota*, *Beriquema*, and *Porto Rico*, where he would have ſettled a Colony; but his Men fell ſick and died. The *Sanſons* prove that theſe are *Ptolemey's Fortunate Iſlands* by a particular Diſcuſſion, to which we refer the Curious. *Morden* ſays, the *Spaniſh Weſt-India* Fleets often rendezvous among theſe Iſlands, to receive Orders at what Part of *Spain* they ſhall unlade their Wealth. *Gordon* reckons Dragon's Blood and Plantanes among the Commodities of theſe Iſlands.

We come now to the particular Deſcription of the *Canary* Iſlands, as they are ſet down in the Maps, beginning with

1. *The* SALVAGES *or* SALVATICÆ ISLAND.

Tho' 'tis not ſo conſiderable as any of the 7 principal Iſlands, and by ſome not reckoned among the *Canaries*, yet we mention it firſt, becauſe it lies nearer to the *Maderas* than the others. The *Sanſons* ſay 'tis deſert. Captain *Woodes Rogers*, who was at the taking of the rich *Acapulco* Ship, and viſited this Iſland in 1708, ſays, that at a Diſtance it looks like the Iſland *Lundy* in *Briſtol* Chanel, and that 'tis high, and two Miles long. *Luyts* makes it two Iſlands, and ſo does *Villalam*, who adds, that tho' they are barren and uninhabited, yet they are often frequented for the getting of *Canary* Birds, which are ſo numerous here, that there's no walking without cruſhing their Eggs.

2. *The Iſland* PALMA.

Mercla ſays, it lies 70 Leagues from *Madera*, and 216 from Cape *Verd*. *Herbert* 10 Leagues from *Fer* Iſland, and 20 from *Teneriff*. He ſays, 'tis very high and woody. *La Croix* makes it the Weſtermoſt of all the *Canaries*, and places it 12 Leagues N. from *Fer*, and 4 from *Gomera*, in N. Lat. 28. He ſays 'tis ſmall, but very fruitful, abounds in Cattle and good Paſture, Grapes, Sugar, *&c.* that the Inhabitants make abundance of Milk and Cheeſe; and that its principal Traffick is in Wine. The *Sanſons* think it to be the *Capraria* of the Ancients. They place it 12 or 15 Leagues N.W. of *Gomera*, and ſay, 'tis round or oval, 25 Leag. in Compaſs, and abounds in Corn, *&c.* It has a Town of its own Name, a ſafe Harbour, well frequented for Wines, which ſome reckon the beſt of the *Canaries*, and like *Malmſey*. They are tranſported thence to the *Weſt Indies* and elſewhere. The beſt comes from the Neighbourhood of *Brenia*, from whence they ſend above 12000 Pipes a Year. They add, that they have little Corn beſides what is tranſported from *Teneriff*, and that there are 4 fine Sugar Engines, beſides the Church and the Governor's Palace. *Mordon* ſays, 'tis the Victualling-place of the *Spaniſh* Fleet in their Paſſage to *Peru* and *Braſil*. *Du Pleſſis* tells us, that in 1493, or as *Heylin* ſays in 1491, this Iſland was conquered for the *Spaniards* by *Alphonſus Fernand de Lugo*. He makes it 26 Leagues in Compaſs, and ſays, it has a Volcano and ſeveral Villages, beſides its Capital *Santa Cruz de la Palma*. *Luyts* ſays, 'tis well cultivated, 10 Miles long, and 7 broad. Dr. *Heylin* ſays, that this, and the Iſlands *Canary* and *Teneriff*, make up the Biſhoprick of the *Canaries*, the reſt being in the Dioceſe of *Madera*. *Morery* tells us, that in 1677, its Volcano ſent forth Fires, accompanied with Earthquakes, remarkable for their Quality and Continuance. *Nuno de Penna*, in his Hiſtorical Memoirs, ſays, that on the 13th of *November* 1677. a little after Sun-ſet, the Earth ſhook for 13 Leagues with a frightful Noiſe, that laſted 5 Days, during which the Earth opened in ſeveral Places; but the greateſt Gap was upon that called

Mor

Digitized by Google

Mont aux Chevres, a Mile and a half from the Sea, from whence proceeded a great Fire, which caſt up Stones and Pieces of Rock. The like happened in ſeveral Places thereabouts, and in leſs than a quarter of an Hour it made 28 Gaps about the Foot of the Mountain, which vomited up abundance of Flames and burning Stones. It took its Courſe over the Plain of *Las Caſas*, and ran with Violence towards the Holy Fountain; but coming near the Brink of the great Deſcent, turned to the Right, and forced its Way towards the Old Port, where the *Spaniards* landed when they made themſelves Maſters of theſe Iſlands. He adds, that on the 20th of *November* following, there was a ſecond Eruption of the *Mont aux Chevres*, from whence came forth Stones and Fire, with great Earthquakes and Thunders for ſeveral Days, ſo that black Cinders were taken up at 7 Leagues Diſtance, the adjacent Ground was entirely waſted, and the Inhabitants forced to quit their Habitations.

3. FERRO, FERRAIN, FER, FIERRO, or HIERRO *Iſland.*

Herbert ſays, it lies S. S. W. from *Grand Canary*, and appears very high at Sea. He places it 10 Leagues from *Palma*, and makes it but 6 Leagues in Compaſs. He ſays, 'tis famous for a Tree called *Garre* by the Natives, and *Santo* by the *Spaniards*, which affords freſh Water to all the Inhabitants. 'Tis covered with a cloudy Miſt ſome Part of the Day, which caſts ſuch a plentiful Dew upon the Leaves, as diſtils in Streams of clear ſweet Drops into Stone Ciſterns, that hold enough for all the People and Cattle, ſo that they never drink out of Rivers or Ponds. Sir *Richard Hawkins* ſays, this Tree ſtands upon the Declivity of a Hill, and is ſhaded with a multitude of ſtately Pines. 'Tis as big as a middling Oak 6 or 7 Yards high. The Bark is white, the Boughs ragged, the Leaf white on one ſide, and green on the other; but it bears neither Fruit nor Flower. He ſays, the Miſt covers it in the Night, and that the Inhabitants have laid Leaden Pipes, which carry all the Water to a great Pond in the Valley, which is handſomely paved, and holds 20000 Tun of Water; but he obſerves 'tis generally filled in a Night's time, and communicates its Water to ſeveral leſſer Fountains, which diſperſe it thro' the Iſland. He adds, that the Iſland contains 7 or 8000 Inhabitants. *Mandelſlo* ſays, it claims the next Place to *Teneriff*, and is ſo called from the Dryneſs of the Soil, which is as hard as Iron; for except a few Springs near the Shore, the whole Iſland has no Rivulet, Brook, Well, or Spring. He ſays, the Tree ſtands in the middle of the Iſland, and is like no other that he ever ſaw. It has very long narrow Leaves, which are always green. *La Croix* ſays, this Iſland was taken for the *Spaniards* in 1512 by *Alphonſus* and *Bartelt de Lugo*. On the other Hand *Sanutius* tells us, this and *Gomera* Iſland were taken by *Diego de Herrera*, who afterwards ſold his Right to King *Ferdinand*, and that both were diſcovered by *Ferdinand Dorias*. *La Croix* places this Iſland 8 Leagues from *Gomera*, in N. Lat. 2. Some think it the *Pluvialia* of *Ptolemy*, and the *Ombros Pluitalia* of *Pliny* and *Solinus*. It has ſome Towns, and in its Capital there's a Cloyſter and a Church called *St. Francis*. He ſays, the aforeſaid Miſt never retires but in the Heat of the Day, and that its Water is received into two Stone Baſins on the N. Side of the Tree, each 20 Foot ſquare, and 4 deep. If it happens that this Miſt fails in *Auguſt*, 'tis obſerved that its Abſence is ſupplied by a Vapour which comes from the Sea-Side, and ſpreads about the Tree, where it turns into Dew, and runs along the Leaves like the Miſt. Our Author tells us, that when the *Spaniards* landed here, the Inhabitants told them they had none but Rain Water, and hid this Tree with Sugar-Canes, Earth; *&c.* in Hopes to oblige the *Spaniards* to retire when they ſaw no Water; but a Harlot of the Iſland told the Secret to a *Spaniard*, who reveal'd it to his Commander; but it proved the Woman's Ruin. He ſays, its Leaves are a little bigger than thoſe of the great Walnut-Tree, and that it bears a Fruit which reſembles an Acorn, eſpecially in its Husk, which contains a Kernel of a choice, ſweet, aromatick Taſt. He adds, that 'tis encompaſſed with a Stone Wall, and that its Soil is very fruitful, notwithſtanding its Want of Water, and abounds in Corn, Sugar-Canes, and ſeveral Sorts of Fruits and Herbs, and feeds a good

Digitized by Google

good Number of Cattle, which furniſh the Iſlanders with Milk and Cheeſe. *Hackluyt* calls the above-mentioned Tree an Olive, and ſays, the Iſland abounds with Orchel and Goats, and belongs to the Earl of *Gomera*, but has only one Vineyard, planted by one *Hill* of *Taunton* in *England*. *Heylin* ſays, 'tis called *Fierri*, becauſe of its Iron Mines, and that ſome think it the *Aprofitus* of *Ptolomy*. *Luyts* ſays, this is the moſt Weſtern Iſland of all the *Canaries*, and that 'tis barren and untilled for want of Rain. The Tree above-mentioned is ſaid to be extremely ancient, and that it never fades; but ſome deny that it has any ſuch Property, and ſay there are others of the ſame Kind, eſpecially in the Iſland of *St. Thomas*. The *French* have made the firſt Meridian to paſs thro' the W. Part of this Iſland ever ſince 1634. by the Command of King *Lewis* XIII. after he had conſulted the moſt able Aſtronomers and Geographers. *John Nun de Pena* makes this Iſland 6 Leagues broad, 7 long, and 22 in Compaſs, and ſays, that it has a Town of its own Name, with a convenient Harbour. The *Sanſons* place it 15 or 16 Leagues from *Palma*, and but 5 or 6 from *Gomera*. They obſerve the great Difference there is between Authors who have wrote of the Bigneſs of the Iſland, the Nature of its Soil, and its Water. The Hiſtory of the Conqueſt of the *Canaries*, writ by two of the Sieur *Bethencour*'s Domeſticks, makes it 7 Leagues long and 5 broad. *Maynal* an *Engliſhman*, who was Factor here in 1526 for ſome *London* Merchants, makes it but 6 Miles in Compaſs, which ſeems very improbable. Another Writer ſays, here is Plenty of Sheep, Pigs, Wild-Fowl, *&c.* The Hiſtory of the Conqueſt of theſe Iſlands ſays, the Coaſt is unpleaſant here, but the Inland Country very high and delightful, where they have Plenty of Water, and frequent Rains. It adds, that the Water of the Tree is of a ſingular Virtue, and concoſts in an Hour's time: *Jackſon* an *Engliſhman*, who ſays he ſaw and meaſured this Tree in 1618. tells us, that it dries up and withers by Day. The aforeſaid Hiſtory of the Conqueſt mentions ſeveral Trees here of this Sort. Some place it on the Top of a very high Mountain, two Leagues from the Sea. *Sanutus* ſays, the Miſt begins to riſe about Noon, and that it continues till next Day-break; but moſt ſay, that it always hangs about the Tree. From hence the *Sanſons* judge that the Iſland is above 6 Leagues in Compaſs; that it abounds with all neceſſary Proviſions for Men and Cattle; that there is Water upon the Coaſt and within Land, beſides the Trees juſt now mentioned in the Middle of the Country, whoſe Water is uſed more than that of others, becauſe of its ſingular Virtue. *Du Fer* ſays, this wonderful Tree is 40 Foot high, and the Trunk 12 Foot in Diameter, with no Branches. *Le Maire* ſeems to grant that there is ſuch a ſort of Tree here; but he was informed it never furniſhed ſo much Water.

4. GOMERA *Iſland.*

Herbert places it 5 or 6 Leagues W. from *Teneriff*, and 12 from *Palma*, and makes it 8 in Length. Sir *William Monſon* ſays, 'tis a poor weak Iſland, and that the *Dutch* took it the Beginning of the laſt Century without Oppoſition, while the Inhabitants fled to the Mountains, and killed many of the *Dutch* Straggglers. *La Croix* places it in Lat. 26½. and ſays 'tis barren, but that Wine and Sugar would thrive here if cultivated; and that there's a Town of its own Name, with a Harbour on the Side of *Teneriff*, which the *Sanſons* ſay is one of the beſt and moſt frequented in the *Canaries*. They place it 8 or 9 Leagues from *Teneriff*, and 12 or 15 S. E. from *Palma*, and make it 10 or 12 in Length. They ſay, that the *Spaniſh Weſt India* Fleet often comes into its Harbour, and takes in Corn, Fruits, Sugar, Wine, *&c.* and that the Country is high, plain, feeds ſmall Cattle, produces many Dragon Trees, and is encompaſſed with great deep Roads. *Heylin* ſays, that now 'tis as civil and well cultivated as any other of the Iſlands; but that the Men lie reciprocally with one another's Wives, and that the Siſter's Son us'd to claim the Inheritance. He makes it 22 Leagues in Compaſs, tho' but 8 in Length, and ſays, the Haven is large; that the Ancients called it *Theode*; and that the Proprietor of it is an Earl. *Hackluyt* ſays, it yields Corn, Fruit, Wine, and Sugar; and *Morery*, that it has *Fer* on the W. *Luyts* places it on the S. of *Palma*, and ſays, it has Plenty of Apples.

Du

Digitized by Google

Du Pleſſis ſays, 'twas diſcovered in 1445 by Ferdinand Peraza, a Spaniard.

5. TENERIFF.

Herbert ſays, 'tis 50 Miles long, and as populous as the *Grand Canary*. This Iſland is chiefly noted for that called the famous Pike of *Teneriff*, or the Pike of *Adam*. Moſt ſay 'tis 15 Miles high, but *Scaliger* reckons it 60, *Patricius* 70, *Thevet* 54, and one *Nicholls* an *Engliſhman*, who lived here, 47; but then 'tis ſuppoſed they compute the oblique Aſcent; for *Varenius* ſays, 'tis but 3 Miles and 15 Furlongs perpendicular, and *Raymundus* but 3. Sir *Thomas* tells us, 'tis ſo high, that the Top is ſeen in clear Weather 120 Miles; and that there's Plenty of Wood at the Bottom, Snow in the Middle, and Flames on the Top, where there are Veins of Brimſtone burning, which the People call the Devil's Cauldron. It riſes from the Middle of the Iſland, and has a Ledge of Hills on each Side, which divide it. He places it 13 Leagues from *Grand Canary*, 20 from *Palma*, 5 from *Gomera*, 75 from the Continent of *Africa*, and 80 from *Madera*. He adds, that thoſe who aſcend it uſually ride round for the Space of 9 Leagues, and then foot the reſt. *Mandelſlo* ſays, 'tis called *El Pico de Terraira*, and reckoned the higheſt in the World, ſo that it requires 3 Days time to aſcend it, and that muſt be in *July* or *Auguſt*, it being cover'd with Snow all the reſt of the Year, tho' there falls none in any of the other Iſlands. For this Reaſon 'tis ſuppoſed to be the *Nivaria* of *Pliny*. M. *Rennefort* ſays, 'tis 47812 Foot high, and that the Middle is never without Snow, but that the Top is always dry, becauſe 'tis above the middle Region. *Le Maire* ſays, the Snow never falls off nor freezes. *Dampier* ſays, 'tis beſt ſeen by Ships that are to the W. and Captain *Rogers*, that 'tis generally clouded, but that the Top is often viſible above the Clouds when all the reſt is covered with them. *La Croix* ſays, the *Moors* call it *El-Bard*, others the Pike of *Teyde*, and that the Top is plain and even. The *Sanſons* ſay, 'tis ſteep and round, and 45 *Engliſh* Miles in perpendicular Height. It often vomits Fire and Brimſtone, and the Top reſembles a Sugar-Loaf. Within two Miles of the Top there's nothing but Aſhes and Pumice-Stones, and the Wood at Bottom conſiſts of Trees called *Vinatico*, whoſe Timber is heavy, and does not rot in the Water, and below them are pleaſant Woods of Bay or Lawrel-Trees for 10 or 12 Miles, frequented by the Singing Birds of the *Canaries*. *Snellius* ſays, it riſes up after the Manner of a vaſt Pillar of a Conical Figure, the loweſt Parts of which are moſt ſpacious, and contracting by degrees to a ſharp Point at the Top. Many of the *Dutch* Maps reckon the Beginning of Longitude from this Mountain. *Morery* makes it 15 Leagues high, and ſays, it does not vomit Flames now. *Hakluyt* ſays, 'tis half a Mile broad at Top, and hollow like a Cauldron. *Gordon* ſays, it looks like a large Maſs of Rocks heaped up together in Form of a rugged Pyramid, and is thought by ſome natural Philoſophers to have been raiſed on a ſudden by a mighty Conflagration of ſulphurous Matter; and in Favour of this Opinion 'tis alledged, that there's ſtill a great Quantity of Sulphur nigh the Foot of the Pike, and that the Colour of the Rocks looks as if they had been long burnt in a Fire.

But the beſt Account of this famous Pike is to be ſeen in the Hiſtory of the Royal Society of *London*, publiſhed by Dr. *Sprat*, late Biſhop of *Rocheſter*, from a Relation of ſome conſiderable Merchants and others of Credit who went to the Top of it. For our Reader's Satisfaction, we have extracted it as follows:

They ſet out from *Orotavia*, and paſſed over ſeveral bare Mountains and ſandy Places, till they came to the Foot of the Pike, where there are many huge Stones, which ſeem to have fallen down from ſome upper Part. After they had aſcended about a Mile, they were obliged to quit their Horſes, and tho' the Air was very mild in the Day-time, yet it was ſo cold and ſtrong after Sun-ſet, that they were forced to keep great Fires all Night. The black Rocks begin a Mile above, and lie flat like a Pavement. From hence they proceeded to the Sugar-Loaf, where they began to travel again in a white Sand, with Shoes whoſe ſingle Soals are made a Finger broader than the upper Leather, to facilitate the Paſſage. When they had climbed to the Top of the Pike, they found a ſtrong Wind, and a continual

Digitized by Google

tinual breathing of a hot ſulphurous Vapour, which made their Faces ſore, but no ſuch Smoak as there was below. The Top on which they ſtood being not above a Yard broad, is the Brink of a Pit called the *Caldera*, which they judged to be a Muſket-ſhot over, and near 4 Yards deep, in Shape like a Cone, hollow within like a Cauldron, and covered all over with ſmall looſe Stones mixed with Sulphur and Sand, which ſend forth a hot ſuffocating Steam. They deſcended 4 or 5 Yards into the *Caldera*, but no farther, becauſe of its ſliding from their Feet, and the Difficulty; but ſome have ventured to the Bottom. They obſerved a clear Sort of Sulphur upon the Stones like Salt; and from hence they kenned the *Grand Canary*, 14 Leagues diſtant, *Palma* 18, *Gomera* 7, and *Fer* above 20. So ſoon as the Sun appears, the Shadow of this Mountain ſeems to cover not only this and the *Grand Canaries* Iſland, but even the Sea to the very Horizon, where its Top ſeems to turn up, and caſt its Shadow into the Air. Sometimes, eſpecially during the N. W. Wind, the Clouds ſeem to hang above or to wrap themſelves about the Pike, which they call the *Cappe*, and ſay 'tis a certain Sign of approaching Storms. There are ſeveral choice Springs on the Tops of the other Mountains. The ſandy Way to the Foot of the Sugar-Loaf is ſteep, almoſt to a Perpendicular. There's a Cave 10 Yards deep and 15 broad, in Shape like an Oven or Cupola, with a Hole at the Top near 8 Yards over, by which they ſwung down by a Rope that their Servants held at the Top, till they came to a Bank of Snow. They were forced to ſwing thus, becauſe in the Middle of the Bottom of this Cave, oppoſite to the Overture at the Top, there's a round Well of Water, the Surface whereof is about a Yard lower than the Snow, but as wide as the Mouth at Top, and about 6 Fathom deep. This is not ſuppoſed to be a Spring, but only diſſolved Snow blown in, or Water dropping thro' the Rocks. About the Sides of this Grot, for ſome Height, there's Ice and Icicles hanging down to the Snow. When they returned to *Oratava* from this Mountain, their Faces were ſo red and ſore, that they were forced to bath them with the Whites of Eggs, *&c.* to cool them. The whole perpendicular Height of this Mountain is reckoned two Miles and a half. There are no Trees, Herbs, nor Shrubs, in all the Paſſage, but Pines, and among the whiter Sands a buſhy Plant like Broom. On one Side there's a Sort of Cordon, which hath Stems of 8 Foot high, with a Trunk near half a Foot thick, every Stem growing in four Squares, and riſing from the Ground like Tuffets of Ruſhes, upon the Edges of which grow ſmall red Buttons or Berries, which contain a poiſonous Milk, that immediately fetches off the Hair from the Skin. 'Tis ſaid, this Plant is ſpread over all the Iſland, of which we come next to give an Account.

Hylin ſays, 'tis leſs than the *Grand Canary*, but that it is equally fruitful. He makes it 17 Leagues in Length, 48 *Spaniſh* Leagues in Compaſs, ſays 'tis rich, and has been ſubject to the *Spaniards* ever ſince 1496. He obſerves, that many late Geographers count the firſt Meridian from this Iſland, and places it in N. Lat. 27½. He ſays, the Land lies all very high, and that it yields more Corn than any of the reſt, beſides the ſame Fruits which all the others produce. He adds, that before the Conqueſt of it, ſeven Kings reign'd in it, who dwelt in Caves, and wore Goats-Skins; and that this and the Iſlands of *Grand Canary* and *Palma* pay 30000 Ducats a Year to the King of *Spain* for Cuſtoms, beſides 12000 to the Biſhop. *Luyts* ſays, the Inhabitants and *Spaniards* call it *Theneriſe*, and that it lies next to *Gomera* on the E. and almoſt in the Middle of the 7 *Canary* Iſlands. He makes it 8 *Spaniſh* Leagues in Breadth. He ſays, 'tis a very pleaſant Iſland, and that after two Years War with the Natives, the *Spaniards* took it in *September* 1496, under *Alfonſo Ferdinando de Lugo*. He places it 36 *Spaniſh* Leagues E. of *Forteventura*, 10 from *Grand Canary*, 55 from the neareſt Coaſt of *Africa*, 8 from *Gomera*, and 18 from *Ferro*. Some place it 16 Leagues N.W. from *Grand Canary*, and make it 24 or 25 Leagues in its greateſt Breadth. The *Sanſons* ſay, that it produces Wines, which are tranſported to the *Weſt-Indies*, Honey, Sugar, Wax, Flax, Silk, *&c.* and that their beſt Vines grow on the Side of *Ramble*. There are certain Shrubs that yield a Liquor like Milk, which becomes thick, and turns into a choice Gum called *Tayhuyba*. They cut the Dragon-Tree at

Digitized by Google

the Bottom, and it ſends forth a red Liquor called Dragon's Blood, which is uſed by the Apothecaries. *La Croix* places this Iſland 5 Leagues W. from the *Grand Canary*. *Thevet* and *Sanutius* make it the biggeſt of all the *Canaries*, and extend it 40 Leagues in Length; but *Gramaye* differs from them. M. *Rennefort* makes it 18 Leagues long, and 10 broad. He ſays, the Hills are full of Orange, Citron, and Pomegranate Trees. The Perſons of Quality here are very civil, but the common People haughty and lazy like the *Spaniards*, ſo that they had rather live upon Radiſhes and Pulſe than to take the Pains to hunt, tho' they have Plenty of Game. The Women go always covered with a Mask, and make a little Hole in it, thro' which they only look with one Eye. Their Corn is like that of *Turkey*. They have abundance of Malmſey, which generally coſts 20 Ducats *per* Pipe, beſides 17 Reals for the Duties of Exports, ſo that it amounts to 489 Livres of *France*, and contains 486 Pints of *Paris*. Money is common enough here, and the Merchants trade either with great Advantage. The chief vendible Commodities here are Swords, Piſtols, Knives, Coats, Habits, Cloaks black and grey, broad brimm'd Hats, Ribbans, Linen, *&c.* He adds, that this Iſland yields abundance of Sulphur, which they tranſport elſewhere, and that it contains about 5000 Souls.

Du Pleſſis ſays, 'tis the biggeſt and richeſt of all the *Canaries*, and is ſaid to yield above 18000 Tuns of the choiceſt *Canary* Wine. He makes it near 60 Leagues in Compaſs, and 25 Leagues in Length, but ſays, the Breadth is very unequal. He adds, that about the End of *December* in 1704, a terrible Earthquake happen'd here, which continued two entire Months without ceaſing, when above 80000 Perſons were killed, whole Towns overthrown, and others ſwallowed up by Fire, which, with the prodigious Eruption of Sulphur and Bitumen out of the Volcano's in the Mountains, burn'd the fineſt Country in the World into Deſert. *Dampier* ſays, it lies for moſt part N. and S. and that 'tis pretty full of deep craggy Mountains, with Riſings and Fallings, ſo that 'tis very troubleſome to travel, except in the Cool of the Mornings and Evenings, and they uſe Aſſes both for Riding and Carriage. The true *Malmſey* Sack grows here, which is ſaid to be the beſt in the World, beſides *Canary* Wine, and *Verdona* or Green Wine. The former grows chiefly on the W. Side of the Place, and is commonly ſent to *Oratavia*, where the *Engliſh* Merchants have a great Trade for it. *Verdona* is a green ſtrong Wine, harſher and ſharper than *Canary*; but 'tis not ſo much eſteemed in *Europe*; therefore 'tis exported to the *Weſt Indies*, where it will alſo keep beſt. 'Tis made chiefly on the E. Side of the Iſland, and ſhipped off at *Santa Cruz*. 'Tis ſaid, they can raiſe 12000 armed Men on this Iſland. *Le Maire* ſays, that in his Time it contained about 15000 Souls.

Dr. *Sprat*'s Hiſtory of the Royal Society gives this Account of it, from the Information of a judicious and inquiſitive Man that lived 20 Years here as a Phyſician and Merchant. His Opinion is, that the whole Iſland being mightily impregnated with Brimſtone, did formerly take Fire, and blow up all or moſt Part of it at the ſame time, and that many Mountains of huge Stones calcin'd and burnt, which appear every where about the Iſland, eſpecially in the S. W. Parts of it, were raiſed out of the Bowels of the Earth at the Time of that general Conflagration; and that the greateſt Quantity of this Sulphur lying about the Center of the Iſland, raiſed the *Pico* to its preſent Height; for he ſays, theſe calcin'd Rocks lie 3 or 4 Miles almoſt round the Bottom of the *Pico*, in ſuch Order one above another almoſt to the Sugar-Loaf, as if the whole Ground, ſwelling up together by the riſing of the Brimſtone, the Torrents and Rivers, did with a ſudden Eruption tumble them from the reſt of the Rocks, eſpecially to the S. W. where, from the Top of the Mountain almoſt to the Shore, there are huge Heaps of theſe burnt Rocks one under another. And there remain to this Time the very Tracts of the Rivers of Brimſtone as they ran over all this Part of the Iſland, which has ſo ruin'd the Soil, that 'twill produce nothing but Broom; but there are few or none of theſe Stones on the N. Side of the *Pico*, ſo that he concludes the Volcano diſcharged it ſelf chiefly to the S. W. He adds farther, that ſeveral Metallick Mines were broke and

Digitized by Google

blown up at the same time, and that some of these calcin'd Rocks resemble Iron Ore, some Silver, and others Copper: Particularly in the S. W. Parts called the *Azuleios*, which are very high Mountains, where never was any *Englishman* but himself, that he heard of, there are vast Quantities of a loose bluish Earth, intermixed with blue Stones, which have a yellow Rust on them like that of Copper and Vitriol, and there were many Springs of Vitriolate Waters, where he supposes was a Copper Mine; and a Bell-founder of *Oratavia* told him, that out of two Horse-loads of this Earth, he got as much Gold as made two large Rings; and a *Portuguese* who had been in the *West-Indies* told him, that his Opinion was there were as good Mines of Gold and Silver as the best in the *Indies*. There are likewise hereabouts Nitrous Waters and Stones, cover'd with a deep Saffron-colour'd Rust, and tasting of Iron. He also mentions a Friend of his, who out of two Lumps of Ore brought from the Top of this Side the Mountain, made two Silver Spoons. All this he confirms from the late Instance of the *Palme* Island, where a Volcano was fired about 12 Years since, the Violence of which made so great an Earthquake in this Island, that he and others ran out of their Houses for fear they would fall. They heard the Noise of the Torrents of flaming Brimstone like Thunder, and saw the Fire very plain by Night for 6 Weeks together. In some Part of this Island there grows a crooked Shrub called *Legnan*, which they bring for *England* as a sweet Wood. There are likewise Abricots, Peaches, *&c.* in Standard, and Pear-Trees which bear twice a Year, Almonds of a tender Shell, Palms, Plantans, Oranges and Limons, especially the Pregnadas, so called because they have small ones in their Bellies. They have also Sugar-Canes, a little Cotton, Colloquintida, *&c.* The Roses blow at *Christmas*. There are good large Carnations, but Tulips will not grow or thrive there. Their Rocks abound with Samphier, and their Meadows with a kind of Clover. There's another broader leav'd Grass near the Sea, which is so luscious and rank, that it kills all Horses that eat it, but no other Cattle. Some of their Wheat bears 80 Fold; but it grows not very high. Its Corn is bright like the purest yellow Amber, and one Bushel has produced 130 in a seasonable Year. The *Canary* Birds breed in the *Barancos* or Gills, which the Water hath fretted away in the Mountains, and are very cold Places. There are also very beautiful Quails and Partridges, larger than ours, great Wood Pigeons, Turtles at Spring, Crows, and sometimes Falcons that come over from the Coast of *Barbary*. Their Bees thrive exceedingly in the Mountains, where they have wild Goats, which climb sometimes to the Top of the *Pics*, besides Hogs, and Multitudes of Coneys. Among other Fish, they have the Cherna, a choice large Fish, better tasted than any of ours, besides the Mero, Dolphin, Shark, Lobsters without the great Claws, Muscles, Periwinkles, and the Clacas, which are reckoned the best Shell-Fish in the World. They breed in the Rocks, 5 or 6 under one great Shell, that has Holes at the Top, out of which they peep with their Nebs, and are taken out by breaking the Shells. There's another Fish like an Eel, with 6 or 7 Tails of a Span long, and its Head and Body is of the same Length. Besides, they have those called Turtles and Cabridos, which are better than our Trouts. The Island is full of Springs of pure Water that tasts like Milk; and in *Lalaguna*, where the Water is not so clear, they strain it thro' a kind of spungy Stone cut in Form of a Bason. Their best Vines grow within a Mile of the Sea, and will not thrive in any other Islands. He gives this Account of the *Guanchies* or ancient Inhabitants: A great Number of those who derive themselves from this People live at the Town of *Guimar*. They have such a Veneration for the dead Bodies of their Ancestors, and are so averse against molesting them, that 'tis Death for a Stranger to visit 'em in their Caves without Leave, which they seldom or never give. Their Corpses are various'ly sow'd up in Goat-Skins, with Thongs of the same closely fitted to their Bodies. Most of them are entire, the Eyes closed, Hair on the Head, Ears, Nose, Teeth, Lips, Beard all perfect, only discolour'd, and a little shrivell'd. He saw 3 or 400 of them in several Caves, some standing, others on Beds of Wood so harden'd by Art, (which the *Spaniards* call *Curar*, *i. e.* to cure a Piece of Wood) that no Iron can pierce it. He says,

Digitized by Google

says, that one Day when he was hunting Rabbets, which is the common Diversion here, a Ferret with a Bell about its Neck ran after a Coney into a Hole, where they lost the Sound of the Bell; upon which the Owner seeking after the Ferret among the Rocks and Shrubs, found the Mouth of a Cave, into which he no sooner enter'd, but he cry'd out for Fear at the Sight of one of those Bodies, lying with his Head on a great Stone, his Feet on a little Wall, and the rest of the Body upon a Bed of Wood. The Fellow was no sooner recovered of his Fright, but he cut a great Piece of Skin off of the Breast, which the Doctor says was more pliant than Kid's Leather, and so far from being rotten, that the Man used it for his Flail many Years after. These Bodies are very light, and in some broken Limbs he distinguished the Nerves and Tendons, and some Strings of the Veins and Arteries. The Doctor made it his chief Enquiry to know what Tradition they had concerning the Manner of preserving dead Bodies, and had this Account from some of them who were above 110 Years old, which, for the Information of the Curious, we have inserted as follows:

Anciently they had a particular Tribe of Men, who were their Priests, that kept this Art secret to themselves, and for this End never married out of their own Tribe; but upon the Conquest of the *Spaniards*, most of them were destroyed, and the Art lost with them, only they retained some Traditions of a few Ingredients. They took Butter of Goat's Milk, (mixed as some say with Hog's Grease) which they kept for the Purpose in the Skins, and in this they boiled a sort of wild Lavender, which grows very plentifully on the Rocks, an Herb called *Lara*, of a gummy Substance, which grows only under the Tops of the Mountains, a kind of *Cyclamen* or Sow-bread, and wild Sage, (which is very plentiful here) which, with other Herbs bruis'd and boil'd in the Butter, made it a perfect Balsam. This done, they unbowelled the Corps. The poorer Sort, to save Charges, had only the Brain taken out behind, and were sow'd up in Skins with the Hair on, whereas the richer Sort were wrapt in Skins finely dressed, as is said before. After the Body was thus ordered, they had a *Lixivium* ready made of the Bark of Pine-Trees, with which they washed the Body, drying it in the Sun in Summer, and in Stoves in the Winter, which they repeated very often. Then they spread the Balsam on both Sides, drying it again as before, which they continued till the Balsam had penetrated into the whole Habit, and the Muscles in all Parts appeared thro' the contracted Skin, so that the Body became exceeding light. Then they sow'd them up, as already mentioned. Our Doctor was told by these old People, that they have above twenty Caves of their Kings and great Persons, with their whole Families, which are unknown to any but themselves, and which they will never discover. Lastly, he says, that Bodies are found in Caves of the *Grand Canary* in Sacks, and quite consumed, not as these in *Teneriff*. Thus far of their Bodies and Embalming. We shall conclude our General Description of this Island with his Account of the People.

He says, they are poor, yet will not marry with the best *Spaniard*. Anciently, when they had no Knowledge of Iron, they made their Lances of Wood harden'd by Art, as above. He saw Earthen Pots so hard, that they cannot be broke, and that some of them are found in the Caves and old Bavances, which are used by the poor People that find them, to boil Meat in. They also harden'd Stone, *viz.* a kind of Slate now called *Tabona*, which they first formed to a proper Edge or Point, and then used either as Knives or Lancets. Their Food is Barley roasted, and then ground with little Mills made of Stone, and mixed with Milk and Honey, which they carry in Goat-Skins upon their Backs. They drink no Wine, nor eat much Flesh, and are generally very lean, but tall, active, and courragious. He tells us, that he saw them leap from one Rock to another from a vast Height till they came to the Bottom, and that sometimes they leap 10 Fathom deep at once after this Manner: They poise their Lance, which is about the Bigness of a Half-Pike, then aim the Point of it at any Piece of the Rock on which they intend to light, (tho sometimes not half a Foot broad) and at their going off clap their Feet close to the Lance, and so carry themselves in the Air. The Point of

Digitized by Google

the Lance first comes to the Place, which breaks the Force of their Fall; then they slide gently down by the Staff, and pitch with their Feet upon the Place at first intended, and so from Rock to Rock till they come to the Bottom. He added several Stories to this Effect, and how 28 of them escaped from the Battlements of a very high Castle in this Island, when the Governor thought them very secure; but he says, that sometimes their Novices break their Necks in learning. He told also, (and the same was seriously confirmed by a *Spaniard*, and another *Canary* Merchant then in Company) that they whistle so loud as to be heard 5 Miles off, throw Stones with as great a Force almost as that of a Bullet, and that they now use them, as they did anciently, in all their Fights.

The chief Towns here are, 1. *St. Christoval de Laguna*, *Lagena*, or *Linogona*. *Herbert* says, it stands at the Bottom of a Hill called *Garachico*, and exceeds all the Towns in the other Islands for abundance of choice Grapes, so that some say it yields 28000 Buts of Sack a Year. *Dampier* calls it the Metropolis of this Island, and says 'tis the Seat of the Governor-General of the *Canary* Islands. The Road from *Santa Cruz* to this Place is all the Way up a pretty steep Hill, yet Carts pass it up and down laden. There are some Taverns by the Way for Accommodation. The Land on each Side seems rocky and dry, but in many Places there are Spots of good Corn. At farther Distances there are small Vineyards by the Sides of the Mountains, intermixed with abundance of waste rocky Land, that bear nothing but Dildo Bushes, and are not fit for Cultivation. Here our Author met with some *English* Merchants, who treated him at Dinner, and shew'd him the Town. He tells us 'tis pretty large and compact, and yields an agreeable Prospect, but stands part against a Hill, and part in a Level. The Houses for most Part have strong Stone Walls, and are cover'd with Pantiles; and tho' they are not uniform, look pleasant enough. It has many fair Buildings, particularly two Parish Churches, with pretty high square Steeples, which over-top the other Buildings; two Nunneries, an Hospital, 4 Convents of St. *Austin*, St. *Dominick*, St. *Francis*, and St. *Diego*, besides Chapels, and many handsome Gentlemen's Houses. The Streets are not regular, but for most part spacious, and pretty handsome, and near the Middle of the Town there's a large Parade, adorned with good Buildings. There's a strong Prison on one Side on't, and a large Conduit of good Water near it that supplies the Town from the Hills behind the Plain. They have many Gardens planted with Oranges, Limes, and other Fruits, with Pot-Herbs, Sallads, Flowers, *&c.* in the Middle; and our Author thinks that the Inhabitants might improve them more than they do, because the Town stands high from the Sea on the Brow of a Plain that is all open to the E. and has the constant Benefit of the true Trade Wind, which is commonly fair, and the Town is blessed with cool refreshing Breezes all the Day. There's a large Plain behind it three or four Leagues in Length, and two Miles wide, which produces a thick Sort of Grass, as green as ours at Spring. On the E. Side on't, near the Back of the Town, there's a natural Pond of fresh Water, which is half a Mile in Circumference; but being stagnant, 'tis only frequented by the Cattle. There is Plenty of several Sorts of Wild-Fowls. Mr. *Dampier* observes, that the Town is called *Laguna*, because that Word in *Spanish* signifies a Lake or Pond. The Plain is bounded on the W. N. W. and S. W. with steep Hills, as high above this Plain as the latter is above the Sea. From the Foot of one of these Mountains, the Water of the Conduit, which supplies the Town, is carried over the Plain in Stone Troughs raised on Pillars. It has a large Prospect to the E. Side as far as the *Grand Canary*. There are several Gardens, Arbors, a pleasant Plain, green Fields, Ponds, and Aqueducts. The Island is so mountainous, steep and craggy, that 'tis very troublesome travelling up and down, unless in the Cool of the Mornings and Evenings; and they use Mules and Asses for Riding and Carriage, as fittest for the stony uneven Roads. M. *Rennefort* places this Town two Leagues from the Pike, and says, there are thick Woods of very high Trees on both Sides the Spring above-mentioned. The same Author tells us, that the neighbouring Hills are cover'd with Orange, Citron, and Pomegranate Trees; and that at the Foot of the

Moun-

Digitized by Google

Mountain, there's a very pleaſant Wilderneſs, with a Spring on one Side which falls from the Deſcent of the Hill, and runs with an eaſy Channel for a League and a half thrô the adjacent Plains, from whence 'tis conveyed by an Aqueduct half a League in Length, till within 200 Paces of the City, where there are two very large Ciſterns with Cocks. The *Sailors* place it 4 or 5 Leagues from the Sea, others but 3.

2. *St. Cruze*, *St. Croce*, or *St. Crux*. *Dampier* ſays, 'tis a little unwalled Town at the E. End of the Iſland, defended only by two Forts, where in 1657, in 6 Hours time, Admiral *Blake* burnt 16 *Spaniſh* Galleons, bound home from the *Weſt-Indies*, thô they were well manned, and had a Caſtle and Forts well provided to defend them. The Wrecks ſtill lie in 15 Fathom Water. 'Tis one of the beſt Ports of the Iſland, eſpecially in *January*. There's Anchorage from 30 to 50 Fathom in a black ſlimy Ground, not above half a Mile from the Shore; and if there are many Ships, they muſt ride cloſe one by another. The Shore is generally high Land, and in moſt Places ſteep. It lies very open to the E. Winds, and when they reign, it makes the Sea ſwell, ſo that 'tis then bad Landing for Boats, and Ships are often forced to put to Sea, and ſometimes to cut or ſlip their Anchors. The beſt Landing is in a ſmall ſandy Cove about a Mile to the N. E. of the Road, where there's good Water, which ſupplies Ships that lade here, and many times thoſe that ade at *Oratavia* ſend Boats hither for it. Between this and *Santa Cruz* ſtand two little Forts, beſides thoſe which guard the Road, and there are ſome Batteries along the Coaſt. The Town contained in 1699 about 200 Stone Houſes, ſtrongly built, two Stories high, and covered with Pantiles. Its chief Buildings were two Convents and a Church. The *Engliſh* under Admiral *Blake* battered the Town very much, and the Captain ſays, the Marks of the Shot are ſtill in the Fort-Walls, and that 'tis ſaid moſt of the Plate lies in the Harbour, thô ſome on't was haſtily carried aſhore at *Blake*'s coming in Night. The Governor lived in the main Fort cloſe by the Sea. He gives him the Character of a civil, diſcreet Man, and ſays he keeps a Porter or Centinel, beſides other Servants, and has 200 Muskets and ſome Pikes hung up againſt the Walls, but no Wainſcot, Hangings nor much Furniture, beſides a few old Chairs, a Table, and two or three Forms. *Heylin* ſays, it ſtands three Leagues from the Sea. *Rennefort* ſays, the chief Fort has 4 Baſtions, and that on the N. Side along the Coaſt there are three Sconces, and on the S. a Fort in Form of a Tower.

3. *Oratavia* or *Rotavia*, another Port on the W. Side of the Iſland. *Dampier* ſays, 'tis an ordinary Harbour, and worſe incommoded by the W. Winds, than *St. Cruz* by the E. but that 'tis the chief Port for Trade, eſpecially for Wine, and that therefore the principal Merchants reſide here, with their Conſul. He ſays, he was told that 'tis bigger than *Laguna*; that it has many Convents, thô but one Church; and that before the N. W. Winds come on, a great Sea tumbles in on the Shore, and there's a black Sky in the N. W. upon which Ships put to Sea, and ply off and on till the Weather is over, and ſometimes they muſt do ſo two or three times before they can take in their Lading, tho' the Weather be otherwiſe fair. The Relation publiſhed in Dr. *Sprat*'s Hiſtory of the Royal Society ſays, it lies on the N. Side of the Iſland, two Miles from the main Sea.

6. GRAND CANARY *Iſlands.*

'Tis agreed to be the *Canaria* of the Ancients. Mr. *Davis* of *Lime-houſe* places this Iſland Lat. 27. 40. Sir *Thomas Herbert* ſays, 'tis the Reſidence of the Grand Inquiſitor, and the Grand Council of Juſtice among the *Canaries*; that it abounds with Goats, Beeves, Aſſes, Hogs, Barley, Rye, Rice, Variety of Flowers, Grapes, *&c.* and Sugar-Houſes, where they grind their Canes, and boil the Juice for Sugar. He extends it 50 Miles in Diameter, almoſt as broad as long, 13 Leagues from *St. Croix* in *Teneriff*, 20 from *Forteventura*, and 18 from *Lancerota*, and ſays, it has a large Bay at the S. End on't called *Maſpatomba*, which yields freſh Water. *Mandelſlo* ſays, 'tis the Seat of the Biſhop of the *Canaries*; that the Inhabitants were reckoned about 9000 in his Time; and that beſides its famous Wine, it produces Wheat, Honey, and Wax; and that they drive a great Trade in Leather with the

Digitized by Google

the *Spaniards*, *English*, *Dutch*, and *Hamburghers*. He adds, that the firſt take in moſt of their freſh Proviſions here for their *Weſt-India* Voyages. Sir *William Monſon* makes the Length and Breadth but 12 Leagues, and ſays, that beſides many Villages, it has one Town bigger than the reſt, which they call the City of *Palmes* or *Canary*. *La Croix* places it W. of *Lancerota* near Cape *Bojadore*, but a little more to the N. He makes it 30 *French* or 18 *German* Leagues in Length. *Thevet* ſays, 'tis of a round Figure. *La Croix* tells us, that there are ſeveral Cloyſters here, built for moſt part at the Charge of the *Genoeſe* Merchants; and that its Government and Juriſdiction extend over all Affairs Eccleſiaſtick and Secular. *Le Maire* makes it about 30 Leagues in Compaſs, and ſays, 'tis a very pleaſant Iſland. The *Sanſons* extend it 18 or 20 Leagues either Way, and ſay, 'tis not inferior to any of the Iſlands in Bigneſs, Fertility, and a good Air. They tell us, that it abounds in Potatoes, Melons, Apples, Pears, Oranges, Citrons, Pomegranates, Figs, Olives, Peaches, and eſpecially in a Tree called *Plantano*, which thrives beſt near the Water, is cut, and ſprouts again every Year with three or four Branches, which bear each 30 or 40 Apples like Cucumbers, and when ripe, turn blackiſh; but they eat more deliciouſly than Comfits. They abound with Fir-Trees, Dragon-Trees, Palm-Trees, and Wild-Fowl, but no Wood. *Heylin* ſays, 'tis reckoned the biggeſt of all the Iſlands, and 90 Miles in Compaſs, and that here are Plenty of Camels, of which, with their Cheeſe and Beaſts-Skins, they make great Profit, but moſt of all from Dying-Woad. He adds, that they uſed to ſend 3000 Tuns of Wine every Year to *England* and the *Netherlands*. *Morery* ſays, here are 12 Sugar-Mills. *Luyts* makes it the moſt South of all the *Canary* Iſlands, between *Forteventura* on the E. and *Teneriff* on the W. and ſays, 'tis as pleaſant as any of the other Iſlands. He places it 30 Leagues W. from Cape *Bojador*, and 100 S. from *Madera*, and extends it 11 *Spaniſh* Leagues in Length, 12 in Breadth, and 38 in Compaſs. *Du Pleſſis* ſays, the Harveſt here is twice a Year, *viz.* *February* and *May*, and that 'twas diſcovered in 1483 by *Peter de Vera*, a *Spaniard*. He makes it 40 Leagues in Compaſs. *Dampier* ſays, 'tis much ſuperior to *Teneriff* Iſland in Bulk and Value. *Leguat* ſays, the *Turkiſh* Ships generally cruiſe hereabout, to ſeize what Veſſels they can that are outward-bound with Wines.

The chief Town here is *Canary* or *Palmes*. *La Croix* calls it the Capital of all the Iſlands, and ſays, 'tis the Seat of a Biſhop, ſubject to the Metropolitan of *Sevil*, and has a Cathedral, with a Convent of St. *Francis* and others. The *Sanſons* place it at the Bottom of a Bay on the E. Side of the Iſland, and ſay, 'tis a pretty Town, whoſe Inhabitants wear neat Apparel; and that its Streets, which are only of Sand, are always dry, tho' it rain never ſo much. They have good Wheat, and make very white Bread. *Le Maire* ſays, 'tis a League and a half from the Road, and defended by a ſorry Caſtle. There's good Anchorage in the Road in 18 Fathom; but Ships muſt not come too near the Town, becauſe there are Rocks under Water. The Caſtle which guards it ſtands on a Hill, and our Author ſays here are 12000 ſtout Inhabitants. He makes its Precincts near a League in Compaſs, and ſays, moſt of the Houſes are well built, but no higher than two Stories, and flat Roofed, without any Ridge. He obſerves, that in the Day-time ſcarce any body is ſeen in the Streets, and adds, that there are 4 Religious Foundations here, one belonging to the *Dominicans*, one to the *Franciſcans*, and two to the *Bernardins* and *Recollects*. *Luyts* ſays, 'tis a neat Town, with a convenient Harbour, and a fine Caſtle. *Morery* tells us, that the Inhabitants are rich. *Nicholls* an *Engliſhman*, who lived here 7 Years, ſays, the Air is very temperate, and that the *Spaniards* call it *La Cividad di las Palmas*, or the City of Palm-Trees. Thoſe who accompanied the Earl of *Cumberland* in his 11th Voyage to the *Weſt-Indies* ſay, that 'tis a finer Country than *Teneriff*; yet the King of *Spain* is fonder of the latter, and keeps a greater Force to defend it.

7. *FORTEVENTURA* or *FUERTAVENTURA*, *or the Iſland of Good Luck.*

Herbert makes it 15 Leagues long, and 8 broad, and ſays, that this and *Lancerota* were taken by the *Engliſh* in 1596, ſo that both are ſince better fortified. Captain *Peyton* ſays, 'tis placed a Degree too far N. *Gra-*

Digitized by Google

maye and others reckon it the *Casperia* of *Ptolomy*, and the *Capraria* of *Pliny*. *La Croix* places it near *Barbary*, in Lat. 28 N. from *Lancerota*, and E. from the *Grand Canary*. He makes it but 3 Leagues broad. He adds, that it contains 3 or 4 little Towns, and a safe Harbour on the W. Side. The *Sanſons* say, 'twas formerly call'd *Erbania*, and place it but 10 or 12 Leagues from Cape *Bojadore*, 16 or 18 from *Grand Canary*, and 6 from *Lancelotta*. They extend it 25 Leagues in Length, and 15 or 16 where broadeſt, but ſay, that in the Middle 'tis not above a League or two over, where there's a Wall that divides it into two Parts. The Soil is partly mountainous, and partly champaign, bounding in Wheat and Barley. There are ſeveral Brooks of freſh Water along the Coaſt, and ſoft crooked Trees on their Banks that yield Gum, of which they make white Salt. There are Palm-Trees which bear Dates, Olive and Maſtich Trees, Orichel for Dying, and a ſort of Fig-Tree which yields Balm as white as Milk, that is of great Vertue for ſeveral Medicines. They make Cheeſe of the Milk of their Goats, of which it breeds above 50000 a Year. Beſides, their Fleſh is very good, and they make great Profit of their Skins and Fat, each Beaſt weighing 30 or 40 Pound. They add, that their Harbours are only fit for middling Veſſels. *Heylin* makes it 70 Leagues broad, and places it 50 Leag. W. from Cape *d'Aguer* on the Continent, and 24 E. from *Grand Canary*, in Lat. 27. He ſays, it has Plenty of Oxen, but very little Wine. *Morery* places it S. of the Iſland *Lobos* or Wolves, and makes it 70 Leagues in Compaſs, but ſays 'tis not above 4 Leag. over in the Middle, and is ſubject to the King of *Spain*. *Luyts* places it but 18 Leag. from the Continent, but ſays 'tis 25 in Length, 8 in Breadth, and 56 in Compaſs, and that 'tis well cultivated. *Du Pleſſis* deſcribes its Diſcovery to *John Betancourt*, a *French* Gentleman, in 1417.

3. *LANCEROTA, LANSAROTE, LANZAROTTA, LANCELOTTA, LANCHAROTA,* or *LANGAROTA Iſland.*

Mr. *Davis* of *Limehouſe* places it N. Lat. 28. 50. Long. 5. 24 and ſays, the Compaſs varies here 6 Deg. 6 Min. from N. to E. The Account of the Earl of *Cumberland*'s Voyages to the *Weſt-Indies*, bound up with *Hariot*'s Collection, ſays, that in 1596, when the Earl came with his Fleet into the Road, which bears E. S. E. of the Iſland, he had Notice of a very rich Marquis here, who commanded this and the next Iſland of *Fortaventura*: Upon which he ſent 5 or 600 Soldiers aſhore under Sir *John Barkley*, who purſued the Natives, but could not overtake them, for they ran like Bucks. When they came to their Town, which was 10 Miles from the Landing-place, they found every thing carried away except a little Cheeſe and ſome Wine, and the Governor with his Guards was fled from his Caſtle, tho' it was built of ſtrong ſquare ſtone, flank'd and fortified to Advantage, and defended with a great many Braſs Guns, beſides abundance of great Stones laid about in proper Places to knock out the Brains of the Aſſailants, and the Entrance was ſo high, that 'twas impoſſible for a Man to get in without a very long Ladder; ſo that 'twas thought 20 Men might eaſily have defended it againſt 500 only by ſhutting the Door, and pulling in the Ladder. *Cambden* ſays, the Earl was forced to give over his Deſign by the Sickneſs of his Men. The Account above-mentioned adds, that the Town conſiſted of 100 and odd Houſes roughly built, and for moſt Part of one Story, with flat ſloaping Roofs to caſt off the Rain. They were cover'd with Canes and Straw laid upon Rafters, and dawbed over with Mud which the Sun had harden'd. There was but one old ratter'd Church in it, with an Altar at one End, but no Chancel, Veſtry, or other ſeparate Room. There were no Seats, except Stone Benches along the Sides, nor no Windows, ſo that all the Light came in at the Doors. The prettieſt and moſt convenient Structure was the Fryar's Convent, which had fine Gardens and Waters. The Inhabitants are ſtrong and very tall. Their Arms are Lances and Stones. When a Man preſents a Gun at them, they fall flat upon the Ground, and after the Diſcharge riſe again, throw their Stones and Lances, and then run away. They are very ſtupid, and have little Religion. Abundance of Popiſh Bulls and Pardons were found in their Houſes.

The

Digitized by Google

The Island it self, says the same Account, is somewhat oblong, and extends to the N. E and S. W. 'Tis rather bigger than the Isle of *Wight*, and parted by a Ridge of Mountains, which afford nothing but Pasture to the Sheep and Goats; but the Valleys produce very good Wheat and Barley, tho' they seem sandy and dry. Besides Sheep and Goats, here are Asses, Kine, Camels, and a few small Horses. There's a Harvest the beginning of *April*, and another about *Michaelmas*. *Mandelslo* says, that it was once surprised by the *Biscayans* and *Andalusians*, who brought away abundance of Wealth. Some take this Island for the *Pluitalia* of *Ptolomy*, and the *Pluvialia* of *Pliny*; but *Bochius* and others with more Probability the Island *Fer*. *La Croix* places it N. of *Forteventura*, and W. of *Grand Canary*, in N. Lat. 29 ½. and says, 'tis 12 Leagues long, and 7 broad. In this Island *Gramaye* places the Town of *Ceyar*, which was plunder'd in 1618, with the whole Island, by the Corsairs of *Algier*, when they carried off 1648 Persons into Slavery. *Herbert* says, 'tis less than *Teneriff*. The *Sansons* make it 16 or 18 Leag. in Length, and 10 or 12 in Breadth. They say, 'tis difficult of Access on the N. and W. Sides, and that the Country is plain towards the E. and has the same Properties as *Forteventura*. *Hylin* says, 'tis the first of the *Canary* Islands that was subject to the *Spaniards*; that the *Biscayners* discover'd it in 1493, pillag'd it, and carried off 170 of the chief Inhabitants Prisoners into *Spain*; upon which Discovery the Kings of *Castille* claimed a Propriety in all these Islands. Our Author places it Lat. 26. makes it 12 Leagues in Length, and adds, that Pope *Martin* V. erected an Episcopal See here, which in the Time of *Ferdinand the Catholick* was removed to the *Grand Canary*; and that it was formerly an Earldom, belonging to the Family of *Herrera*, who was also possessed of *Forteventura*. *Luyts* says, it took its Name from a *Portuguese*, and makes it the 7th and last of the chief *Canary* Islands, over against *Forteventura*. He makes it 24 Leagues in Compass, and 10 in Length, but scarce 4 in Breadth. *Du Plessis* says, 'twas discovered by *Betancourt* in the same Year as *Forteventura*. *Dampier* gives several Views of this and the Islands *Teneriff* and *Allegrance*, to which we refer the Curious. *Morden* says, 'tis so difficult of Access sometimes, that 'tis called the Inaccessible or Enchanted Island.

Having thus described the chief *Canary* Islands, we proceed now to,

IV. *The Islands of* CAPE VERD.

'TIS generally agreed that these Islands are so called because they lie over against the Cape of that Name, and that they were first Peopled by the *Phœnicians*. *Harris* says, they were discover'd about 1440, a little before the Death of K. *Henry* of *Portugal*, by *Antonio de Nolle*, a *Genoese*, in his Commission. *Herbert* says, he was a *German*, and discover'd them in 1445, at the Charge of King *Alphonsus* V. *De la Val* extends them from N. Lat. 14. to 20. Sir *Richard Hawkins* says, they are so hot and unhealthy, that it cost him near half his Company by Fevers, Fluxes, and other Distempers; and that sometimes it does not rain in 3 or 4 Years, when the Earth is so scorched, that a Man can scarce endure to go where the Sun shines, tho' he be never so well shod, which makes the People impatient to cool themselves at any Rate, and so lay themselves open to the N. E. Wind, that generally blows very fresh every Afternoon at 4 a Clock, by which Means they expose themselves to many dismal Disorders. To prevent this, Strangers who are most liable to these Inconveniencies cover their Heads with a Night-Cap, a Montero, and a Hat, and their Bodies with a Suit of thick Cloth, and a Gown furr'd or lin'd with Cotton or Bays, by which means they feel less of the Heat, and are more out of Danger of catching Cold. 'Tis also found here, that the Moon has very pernicious Effects upon such humane Bodies as are exposed to its Rays, therefore they never sleep in the open Air, or with their Windows open; and Sir *Richard Hawkins* tells us, he knew a Person who for sleeping one Night in his Cabbin on the Coast of *Guinea* with the Moon shining upon him, had such a violent burning Pain in his Shoulder, that for above 20 Hours he was like a Madman, and was not freed from it at last without a great many Applications, and abundance of Pain.

He

Digitized by Google

He makes these Islands 6 in Number, and says, they belong to the Crown of *Portugal*; but the Anchorage is generally bad about them. They abound with Ambergreece, Civet, Elephants Teeth, Gold which they have from *Guinea*, Salt, Rice, Cotton, Wool, and Cloth, Spunges, Pumice-Stones, and Sugar. *Mandelslo* makes them 10 in Number, and extends them from Lat. 15. to 19. He says, the *Dutch* call them the Salt Islands, because they abound with Salt. He makes the nearest 70, and the most remote 100 Leagues from the Continent, for which Reason he thinks they cannot be the *Gorgonides* of *Ptolomy*, because 'tis not probable that he who left so confused an Account of the *African* Coast should have any Knowledge of the Isles at so great a Distance. Some think they are called *Verd* or Green Islands, from a green Weed called *Sargasso*, like our Water-Cresses, which is so thick upon the Sea from Lat. 20. to 24. that Ships are sometimes stopped in their Passage without a strong Gale. He observes, that none of this Herb is seen any where else within 150 Leagues of the *African* Shore; but does not favour their Opinion who think 'tis washed from the Rocks in the *West-Indies*, and forced hither by the Winds, because the N. E. Winds reign here all the Year. He tells us, that when they were first discover'd by the *Portuguese*, they were uninhabited and desert, but that now they produce Millet, *Turky* Wheat, Oranges, Limons, Citrons, Bananas, Ananas, Ignanes, Potatoes, Melons, Citruls, Cucumbers, Pomegranates, Coco-Nuts, Figs and Raisins, twice a Year; and that they send whole Ship loads of Cattle, especially Goats, to *Brasil* from the three Islands of *Mayo*, *Sal*, and *Bonavista*. The *Portuguese* have also stored them with all Sorts of tame and wild Fowls, which are so increased, that they may be had almost for nothing. There's a sort of Bird here which the *Portuguese* call *Flamincos*, as big and white all over their Bodies as Swans; but their Wings are of a high red Colour. There are vast Numbers of Rabbets, and the Sea abounds with Fish, which great Numbers of the *Portuguese* Fisher-Boats catch, and carry hence to *Brasil*. Our Author observes, that these Islands lie extremely commodious for such Ships as trade to the *Indies*, because going they may take in Refreshments at a very easy Rate in the Isle of *Mayo*, and in their Return at that of *St. Anthony*, the *Portuguese* Inhabitants being not in a Condition to prevent it. *Dampier* makes them as many in Number as *Mandelslo*, and extends them from Cape *Verd* about 5 Deg. of Long. in Breadth, and from 14 to 19 of N. Lat. and says, they are inhabited by *Portuguese* Banditti's, but that most of them seem mountainous and barren. He tells us the *Flamences* are of the Shape of a Hern, but larger, and that they are very shy, and live in Ponds or muddy Places When many of them stand together, (which they do one by one in a Row, except when feeding) they look at a Distance like a Brick Wall. They build their Nests with the Mud in the shallow Places of Ponds, which they raise up like Hillocks, tapering to the Top two Foot above the Water, where they have a Hole to lay their Eggs in, which when they do, or are hatching them, they stand with their long Legs in the Water close to the Hillocks, and so cover the Hollowness only with their Rumps; for if they should sit down upon them, the Weight of their Bodies would break them. They never lay more than two at a time, and seldom fewer. Their first Colour is light Grey; but as their Wing-Feathers spring out, they grow darker. The young ones cannot fly nor come to their true Colour and Shape till they are 10 or 11 Months old, but run very fast. Their Flesh is lean and black, but well enough tasted. They have large Tongues, and a Piece of Fat near the Root of them, which is counted a great Dainty He adds, that the Natives have got the Way of adulterating Ambergreece: that they are all very poor, except those of *St. Jago*; and that he saw abundance of Flying Fish in his Passage hither from the *Canaries*. He observes, that 'tis a general Rule never to anchor to the Windward of any Island between the Tropicks. *Merolla* says, there's a Sort of Worms in these Islands that pierce into a Man's Heel, and creep under the Skin like a Horse-hair; and that the Way to extirpate them is either to scarify the Flesh, or else to seize them by one End, and draw them out by degrees. Admiral *Columbus* says, the Currents among these Islands set violently to the N. and N. W. Sir *William*

ham Monſon obſerves, that a conſtant Wind blows betwixt the N. and E. from the *Canaries* to the *Weſt-Indies*. *Macquet* ſays, theſe Iſlands are very much ſubject to Storms and high Winds, which come out at certain Hours of the Day, and drive ſometimes to Land, and ſometimes to Sea, which gives Occaſion to ſome to ſuppoſe that they are repulſed by the Sea-Winds. *Schouten* ſays, the neighbouring Sea ſwarms with Monſters, ſome called Sea Devils, an ugly Fiſh almoſt like Thornbacks, but bigger, and they ſwim very faſt. Beſides theſe, there are Sea-Dogs, Tunnies, Sea Hogs, *&c.* which are of very hard Digeſtion. The Dogs are coarſe Meat; but they taſt well with *French* or *Rhenish* Wines, or ſuch good Sauce, and the Hogs eat well if ſeaſon'd with Pepper and Vinegar; but the Dorades, Bonites, Corettes, and Flying Fiſh, are much better Food. They catch great Quantities of the former with the Angle. The Flying Fiſh are purſued in the Sea by great Fiſh and Sea-Monſters, and in the Air by Mews, ſo that they often fly a Ship board, where they are eaſily taken by the Mariners, who broil them upon a Gridiron. They have two Fins on their Back like Wings, with which they fly while they are wet; but as ſoon as they begin to dry, they fall down to the Water again, and wet them. *Struys* ſays, theſe Iſlands are very ſubject to thick Miſts of a reddiſh Colour, and a naſty Smell. He places them betwixt the Line and the Tropick of *Cancer*, ſo that the Sun is twice a Year over their Heads, and they have two Summers a Year. It rains almoſt continually from the End of *June* to the Middle of *October*, and 'tis accompanied with terrible Winds, Thunder and Lightning. When this Seaſon draws near, the Air grows thick and dark, the Salt in their Pits melts into Brine, the S. Winds riſe, and the Current runs faſter along the Coaſt. *Le Blanc* ſays, the Iſlands of *Mayo*, *St. Vincent*, *St. Nicholas*, *St. Lucia*, *St. Anthony*, and *Bonaviſta*, abound with Cattle and Veniſon, which the Inhabitants live by hunting, for they powder the Fleſh, and ſell it with the Skins to Strangers.

Some reckon that theſe Iſlands are the *Gorgades* of *Pliny*, which, as the Poets feign, were the ancient Reſidence of the three Siſters or *Gorgons*, the Daughters of *Phorcus*; and others, that they were anciently called *Heſperides*, from *Ptolomy*'s Cape of *Heſperia*, which is not far diſtant; yet *La Croix* thinks they were unknown to *Ptolomy*. The former places them betwixt the Capes *Blanc*, and 42 Leagues from the Continent, and extends them above 90 into the Sea. He obſerves, that Authors differ about the Number of theſe Iſlands, of which ſome reckon 12, others 11, and others 9; but that moſt are agreed there are 10 principal ones, *viz. Sal*, *Bonaviſta*, *Mayo*, *St Jago*, *Fogo*, *Brava*, *St. Nicholas*, *St. Lucia*, *St. Vincent*, and *St. Anthony*, beſides other leſſer ones, whoſe Names are not known. *Jarric* ſays, they were firſt diſcover'd in 1446 by the *Portugueſe*; and *Sanutus*, by a certain *Venetian* called *Lewis*, of the Family of *Cadamoſto*, who was ſent by the Infanta of *Portugal* to diſcover unknown Countries. *La Croix* adds, that now they are almoſt all Peopled. *Jarric* ſays, it never rains here but in *Auguſt*, *September*, and *October*. *La Croix* tells us, that ſome Years the Salt in the Pits hardens in *January*, but commonly in *February* or *March*; that their Goats breed every three or four Months; and that they have Hens, Herons, Turtles, Turkies, Partridges, and Quails. He adds, that the chief Riches of theſe Iſlands conſiſt in their Goat-Skins and Salt, which laſt they tranſport in great Quantities to *Europe* from *Sal*, *Bonaviſta*, *Mayo*, and *St. Jago*.

Mr. *Ovington* places theſe Iſlands 150 Leagues from the Shore of *Africa*, and ſays, that 10 of them are conſiderable, tho' not inhabited. Captain *Rogers*, who makes theſe Iſlands 10 in Number, as they are ſet down in *Moll*'s Map, and in the Tables of *Luyts* and the *Sanſons*, ſays, that *St. Jago*, *St. Nicholas*, *St. Anthony*, *Bonaviſta*, *Brava*, *Mayo*, and *Fogo*, are inhabited. *Herbert* thinks them the *Heſperides* of the Ancients.

The *Sanſons* extend them from Long. 153. to 157. and ſay, that they compoſe a Semicircle, of which the Convex Part faces the Continent, and the Points the Ocean. The N. W. Point is formed by the Iſland of *St. Anthony*. Thoſe of *St. Vincent*, *St. Nicholas*, and *St. Lucia*, follow between the E. and S. Thoſe of *Sal*, *Bonaviſta*, and *Mayo*, from the N. to the S. and are the moſt E. of all. Thoſe of *St. Jago*, *Fogo*, *and Brava*, are the moſt S. and run from E. to W. but

Digitized by Google

advance a little to the S. so that *St. Anthony* and *Bravo* are the two Extremities of the Semicircle to the W. and *Bonavista* the Middle of it to the E. They make *St. Lucia*, *St. Nicholas*, and *St. Jago*, the biggeſt, *St Anthony* and *St Vincent* not half ſo big, and the others the leaſt of all. They ſay, that *St. Jago* and *St. Lucia* are the moſt populous, and that *St. Nicholas*, *St. Vincent*, and *St Anthony*, were reckoned deſert by ſome formerly, becauſe they had not near ſo many Inhabitants as they could maintain. When the Ships of the United Provinces came hither in 1622. they found 500 Souls in *St. Anthony*, all *Ethiopians*, as many in *St Vincent* and *St. Nicholas*, and there are others at *Mayo*, who are ſtrong and well ſhap'd; but 'tis believed there are *Portugueſe* every where to keep them in Awe. Their Salt is formed in ſuch Abundance out of the Sea-Water which is thrown upon the Iſlands, that they ſend 100 Ship-loads every Year into Foreign Parts, beſides what they ſpend and waſte; for 'tis ſaid, the Iſland of *Mayo* is able to load 2000 Ships a Year with it, and each of the others almoſt as much. There are ſuch Multitudes of Goats, that they go 1000 in a Flock. Their Skins are ſent to *Braſil*, *Portugal*, &c. and they make good Marroquins of them. They ſalt the Fleſh, and ſell it to Ships that paſs to or from the *Indies*. They have abundance of wild Horſes, Oxen, Aſſes, and Apes. Their Turtles are two or three Foot long. They lay their Eggs in the Night, hide them in the Sand, and the Heat of the Sun hatches them. They have Wines in *Fogo* and *Bravo* as good as the *Canaries*. *Linſchotten* and *Dawity* ſay, that the Sea is covered with the green Weed formerly mentioned, call'd *Sargaſſo*, as far as Lat. 34. and the *Sanſons* ſay, the Sea is called by the ſame Name. The latter obſerve, that 'tis like Sea-Parſley, but yellower, and bears Grains or Berries at one End, which has no Taſt nor Subſtance. They are above 60 Leagues from the Continent and Iſlands, and the *Sanſons* think they are the ſame which hinder'd *Sataſpes* from finiſhing his Voyage round *Africa*, after he was forced to this Enterprize by *Xerxes* for raviſhing the Daughter of *Zopyrus*, the Son of *Megabyſes*. They add, that the Poſition of theſe Iſlands anſwers more to *Ptolomy's Fortunate Iſlands* than the *Canaries*, ſince he places the former between Lat. 10 and 16. whereas the *Canaries* are beyond 16. Alſo the Meridian of *Ptolomy's Fortunate Iſlands* is Long. 8 W. from the *African* Shore, the ſame as thoſe of Cape *Verd*; but the ſame Meridian of the *Canaries* touches the *African* Coaſt. Beſides, *Ptolomy* ranges his Iſlands in one and the ſame Meridian, and extends them from N. to S. 5 Deg. of Lat between 10 and 16. And tho' the Cape *Verd* Iſlands are not exactly in the ſame Meridian, yet they take up the ſame Number of Deg between Lat. 13 and 19. whereas the *Canaries* lie from E. to W. almoſt under one and the ſame Parallel, *viz.* Lat. 27. and extend from Long. 1. to 6. Yet for all theſe Reaſons, the *Sanſons* obſerve, that *Ptolomy's* Poſitions are often falſe, and they prove, as we formerly ſhew'd you, that the *Canaries* anſwer to his *Fortunate Iſlands*.

Heylin makes the chief Iſlands but 9, excluding *Bravo*; and *Luyts* ſays, ſome reckon 20 in all; and that when they were firſt diſcovered, they abounded with Flocks of tame Doves. Some aſcribe the Diſcovery of them to a *Venetian* in 1445, and *Nicoloſſo* to the *Portugueſe* in 1572. *Du Pleſſis* diſtinguiſhes them into 5 great ones, *viz. St Jago*, *St. Nicholas*, *St. Lucia*, *St Vincent*, and *St. Anthony*, and 5 leſſer ones, *viz. Sal*, *Bonaviſta*, *Mayo*, *Fogo*, and *Bravo*. *Gordon* ſays, ſome of theſe Iſlands are fruitful, the others very barren; that the Length of their Days and Nights is the ſame as in *Negroland*, both lying under the ſame Parallels of Lat that the Inhabitants, who are *Portugueſe*, reſemble thoſe on the Continent in their Way of Living; and that the Governor for the King of *Portugal* has the Title of Viceroy. *Legant* ſays, that the Birds formerly mentioned, *viz. Flamengos*, are called *Flamans*, from *Flamboyant* Flaming. Moſt Authors deſcribe their Beak like a *Spatula* or little Spoon; but Mr. *Willoughby* makes it ſharp, and the latter thinks they were called *Flamantes*, becauſe the Colour of ſome of their Feathers is like a Flame. Captain *Cook*, who in 1710 accompanied Captain *Rogers* in his Voyage to the *South Sea*, makes the chief Iſlands 11 in Number, by adding that called *Rouses*. *Chriſtopher Columbus* ſays, they are falſly named, for in his third Voyage he found them to be dry and barren. *Morden* ſays, that in ſome of them there are only Goats,

Digitized by Google

and no Inhabitants. We come now to describe the chief Islands of Cape *Verd*, and shall begin with the Westermost, *viz.*

1. *St.* ANTHONY *or* ANTONIO *Island.*

Nieuhoff places it three Leagues from the Island of *St. Vincent*, over against it, and says, that at the Foot of its E. Point there's a small sandy Bay, fit only for small Vessels, and called by the *Portuguese*, *Es Pracadon Simao*, where there are about 30 Huts, inhabited by *Portuguese* and Negroes, who live for most Part by Fruit, which tho' scarce, before 'twas transplanted hither by the *Portuguese*, yet abounds now in great Plenty, notwithstanding the Isle is full of high barren Rocks. Their Vines and most of their other Fruit-Trees bear twice a Year. They have abundance of all Sorts of Wild-Fowl and Goats; but the Heat is intolerable at Noon-Day. Captain *Rogers* says, there's a Governor here, who, tho' poor, reckons himself a great Man; that there's Plenty of Cattle, Hogs, Fowls, Musk, and Water-Melons, Oranges, Bananas, Potatoes, Limes, ordinary Brandy, Tobacco, *Indian* Corn, *&c.* that they exchange for Cloths or other Necessaries, which the Natives of all these Islands prefer before Money. The Inhabitants of this Island are poor, and will truck at any Price for what they want in such Payments as they can make. He adds, that there's a Deputy-Governor, and that the Landing-place is far from the inhabited Part of the Island.

La Croix says, 'tis the most N. of all the Islands, in N. Lat. 17. two Leagues or two and a half from the Isle of *St. Vincent*, with a Canal between both, which runs from S. W. to N. W. He extends the Island from N. E. to S. W. and says, it has two high Mountains, one as high as the Pike of *Teneriff*, and generally cover'd with the Clouds, especially its Top. He makes the Inhabitants about 500, and says, there's a Village at the N. End with about 20 little Houses, and 50 Families of Negroes and Whites, who have a Captain, a Priest, and a Schoolmaster. They all speak *Portuguese*. There's a Road near a Plain on the N. Side, in Lat. 16. 56. where there's a vast Heap of Waters when it rains, because of the neighbouring high Mountains; but in dry Weather there's not a Drop to be seen there. There's abundance of Wood, Palm-Trees, Pomegranates, Sugar-Canes, and Bacoves, and there's an Orchard, of which only one Tree, that is a very high Palm, is seen at Sea. Mariners commonly come hither from St. *Vincent*'s Bay with a Boat for Fruit, which they buy for Knives and such Trifles. There are three little Houses over against the Palm-Tree. There's another Orchard farther in the Island, from whence the Negroes bring their Fruit upon Asses to the Sea-Side to sell it to the Mariners. About the End of *December* they have great ripe Citrons and Limons. The *Sansons* say, this Island is less by above one half than the biggest, and that 'tis not above 100 Miles in Compass.

2. *St.* VINCENT.

Beaulieu says, the common Anchorage of this Island lies in Lat. 17 20. the Needle varying 2 Deg. ¼. N. E. About the Middle of *August* it affords great Plenty of excellent Tortoises, called Free Tortoises, and distinguished from the others called *Cabaumes* by the Smoothness and Greenness of the Shell, the Largeness of their Body, the Smallness of their Head, and the Form of their Snout, which is like the Teeth of a Saw. They eat as well as a young Heifer, and some of them are 3 Hundred Weight. They lay their Eggs in the Night upon the Sand in *June* and *July*; and bury them a Foot deep. Those who hunt them take this Opportunity to slip behind, and turn them over upon their Backs; after which they cannot get again upon their Feet, but lie there till the Morning. Most of them have 250 Eggs shell'd, and as many unshell'd in their Bellies, which are very good.

There's abundance of young Kids; but Admiral *Beaulieu* saw no Fruit here except wild Figs, which were all spoiled with Worms. Under a high Mountain to the E. there are vast Quantities of Purslain. There's a great Number of wild Pines, but no other Wood besides some Shrubs, that have a milky Juice, which is very dangerous and painful to the Eyes if it touches them. There's very good Fishing along the Rocks, especially at a little Rock at the Entry of a Bay,

Digitized by Google

Bay, about a quarter of a League from the Anchorage, where 7 or 8 Men may catch Fish enough in two Hours time to ſerve 200. In ſhort, our Author ſays 'tis as good a Place for Refreſhment as St. *Helens*, only the Water is brackiſh; but then 'tis more acceſſible all over, and furniſhed with pleaſant Walks. He makes it about 9 Miles in Circumference, and ſays, it has always the Wind at N. E. and ſeveral pleaſant Bays, eſpecially that called *St. Vincent*'s, towards the Iſle of *St. Anthony*, which is the beſt Road that can be for Ships, there being 5 Fathom Water, on an excellent ſandy Ground, ſhelter'd from all Winds. He adds, that they travell'd over moſt of the Iſland, but ſaw neither Men nor Houſes. In 1602, or as *Nieuhoff* ſays in 1596, Captain *William Parker* of *Plimouth*, with two ſmall Ships and 180 Men, took this Iſland, burnt the Town of the ſame Name, and gave the Spoil to the Soldiers The latter adds, that it abounds with Oranges, Limons, Bakoras, and Pompions, which the Inhabitants exchange for Toys; but that otherwiſe 'tis rocky and barren, and affords nothing but Graſs for the wild Goats. He makes it about 5 Leagues in Compaſs, and ſays, 'tis under the Command of a *Portugueſe* Governor; and that the Inhabitants are Negroes, tranſplanted hither from ſeveral Parts to catch wild Goats, whoſe Skins they ſend to *Portugal*, and the Fleſh which they can't ſpend they throw away. They have no Women, and lead wretched Lives. They have no freſh Water but what they gather in Bags of Goat-Skins at the Foot of the higheſt Rock, which being always cover'd with Clouds on the Top, ſends a conſiderable Quantity of Rain-Water down to the Bottom by ſmall natural Chanels. The Governor's Reſidence is on one Side of the great Rock, not far from the Shore, and 3 Leagues from the Harbour. His Officers live in Huts cover'd with Tortoiſe-ſhells among Trees. Our Author went to the Top of the higheſt Rock, where he had a full Proſpect of the Iſland: The Inhabitants have a ridiculous Story of a King's Daughter turned into a Serpent here.

La Croix places it about 30 Leagues W. from *Sal*, and two from *Lucia*, makes it 5 Leagues in Length, and extends it to the W. and S. W. He ſays, St. *Vincent*'s Bay on the N. W. is a League and a half broad at the Entrance, and encompaſſed with high Mountains, but runs half-way into the Iland. There's a great round Rock near the E. Point, and 'tis the ſafeſt Road in all the Iſlands, being ſecured from the W. and N. W. Winds by the Mountains of *St. Anthony*'s Iſle, and yet the Acceſs to it is dangerous, becauſe of the violent Winds which come down from the Side of the Mountains. There's a high Tide here every Morning and Night, which runs N. There are ſeveral other little Bays on the S. Side of the Iſland, where the *Portugueſe* come to load their Barks with Skins, and there's a ſmall Spring in a Valley upon the S. W. Point of the Bay, where the Anchorage is, which if cleanſed and deepen'd, would afford Plenty of freſh Water. The S. E. Side of the Iſland is a ſandy Shore over againſt the ſandy Bay of *St. Lucia*. The dryeſt Part of all the Iſland is about that called the Monks Rock, where there's no Herb, Leaf, nor any thing but a little ſorry Wood for Firing, and there's no Fruit or other Refreſhment, but an incredible Number of Apples of *Coloquintida*. Their Tortoiſes are ſo large, that Mariners are forced to tie them to the Ship by a great Cord. Their Goats lie chiefly about the Rocks, where the Natives hunt them with Dogs. 'Tis ſaid, that in 1613, when a *Dutch* Veſſel ſuffered Shipwreck near this Iſland, the Mariners found but 19 Souls in it, *viz.* 8 Men, 7 Women, and 4 Girls. *La Croix* adds, that the *Dutch Eaſt-India* Ships commonly anchor here, and that formerly the *Eaſt*- and *Weſt-India* Fleets uſed to meet here.

The *Senſons* make it almoſt of equal Extent with the Iſland of *St. Anthony*. *Du Pleſſis* makes it one of the five largeſt Iſlands. Captain *Rogers* ſays, that Monks Rock is high and round like a Sugar-Loaf, and lies almoſt in the Entrance of *St. Vincent*'s Bay. He cautions Mariners from running too near under the high Land of the N. Point, for fear of being becalmed and ſurpriſed by ſudden Flaws on every Side, and to avoid a ſmall Shoal about three Ships Length almoſt without the Point. There's good Landing at this Bay, eſpecially at the N. Point. The Wood lies in the Middle of the ſandy Bay, and the Water between the N. Point and the Place of Anchorage, half a Mile from the

Digitized by Google

the latter; but he says, there's good Anchoring all over the Bay, and that the Monks Rock will direct any Stranger into it, there being no other like it about the Island on the Side oppolite to that of *St. Anthony*. A constant Trade-Wind blows here betwixt the E. by N. and the N. N. E. except in *October*, *November*, *December*, and *January*; but it sometimes blows S. with Tornadoes and Rain. Several Negroes come hither from the Islands of *St. Nicholas* and *St. Anthony* to make Oil of Turtle, there being very good green Turtle about *October*. They have wild Asses, *Guinea* Hens, Curlews, and abundance of Sea-Fowls. Captain *Dampier* and others say, that thô this Island is not often frequented by Ships, yet 'tis preferable to *St. Jago* for stopping outward, because 'tis a much better Road for Ships and Landing, and more convenient for Wood and Water; but the Island is mountainous and barren, and the plainest Part lies against the Bay of its own Name. They have very large Spiders here, as big as small Walnuts, which weave their Webs so strong betwixt the Trees, that 'tis difficult to get thrô them. He adds, that thô this Island was formerly inhabited, and had a Governor, yet at present 'tis only frequented in the Season (by the Inhabitants of the other Islands, who are for most Part poor *Negroes* and *Mulatto's*) for catching Tortoises; that the wild Goats are almost all destroyed by the People of *St. Nicholas* and *St. Anthony*; and that the Heats here are excessive. Captain *Cook*, one of our Author's Companions, places this Island in Lat. 16. 55. and Long. 25. 36. from the Meridian of *London*.

3. *St. LUCIA, LUCE*, or *LUZIA Island.*

La Croix says, 'tis high and mountainous. He makes it 8 or 9 Leagues in Length, and says, it runs from the S. End, which is in Lat. 16. 18. towards the N. E. and by E. There are two little Islands at the S. E. End very near one another, and at that End which is on the E. S. E. there's a Harbour. It has a fine sandy Shore, and contains a little Island, encompassed on all Sides with a sound clean Bottom. It has a safe Road over against *St. Vincent*'s Isle, at the S. W. End, in 20 Fathom Water. He adds, that it abounds with Forrests and fresh Water, which they find at the Foot of a Hill pretty far in the Island; that 'tis not inhabited on the W. Side, where there's no fresh Water, but a great many Field Mice and Tortoises, especially in *October*. The *Sansons* reckon this one of the largest of Cape *Verd* Islands, but *Moll* makes it the least, and they say 'tis the most populous, next to that of *St. Jago*. *Heylin* calls it *St. Lucie*'s Island. *Du Fer* says, that this and the Islands of *St Nicholas* and *St Jago* are each 100 or 120 Miles long, and 20 or 30 broad.

4. *St. NICHOLAS Island.*

Dampier places it 22 Leagues W. S. W. from *Sal*, and 40 W. by N. from *Mayo*. He says 'tis triangular, the longest Side to the E. being 30 Leagues long, and the other two 20 Leagues each. 'Tis rocky and barren near the Shore, but has some Valleys farther in the Country, where the *Portuguese* have Vineyards and Plantations, and Wood for Fuel. There's Grass too for Goats, which, tho' poor, are better than those of *Sal*. They make a palish Wine here, which tasts like that of *Madera*, but is muddy. The Governor and chief Gentlemen are pretty well cloathed, and carry Swords and Pistols; but the rest are ragged. The chief Village contains about 100 Families, and lies in a Valley 14 Miles from a Bay on the S. E. Side. The Inhabitants are of a dark swarthy Complexion. There's no fresh Water here but what they dig for. *Luyts* makes this the biggest, and Captain *Rogers* the most populous Island next to *Jago*. *La Croix* places it but 17 Leagues from *Sal*, in Lat. 16. 20. and differs very much from *Dampier*, for he makes it but 5 or 6 Leagues long, and 3 broad, at the W. End, and not above a League and a half at the E. He says, there's a Rock or little Island against the most S. Point of the E. End, which Ships may glance upon without Danger. The Road lies about a League from the most E. Point of the W. Side, and there's a fine Bay on the S. Side, on a very commodious Bottom, where Ships come close to the Shore. The Harbour, according to M. *Figueredo*, is on the S. Side, and the *Portuguese* call it *Porto de Perguira*. There's a little Island at its Entrance, and beyond a Point

to

Digitized by Google

to the N. W. there's another Harbour, where there's always good fresh Water. There are several Hills on the N Side of the Island but the highest is exactly in the Middle, and the S. E. End is lower than the W. He adds, that there are but few Trees on the Island, but that it abounds with wild Cats and Gold-Fish, and that there's a Pond of fresh Water over against the Shore, which in rainy Weather overflows into the Sea.

5. *S A L*, or the Island of *S A L T*.

Mr. *Davis* of *Limehouse* places it in Lat. 10½. Long. 12. 12. and 3 Deg. ½ Variation from N. to E. He observes, that when one is in the Mid-way between Cape *Verd* it self and these Islands, there's 2 Deg. 15 Min. Variation to the E. and that the nearer one comes to the main Land, there's the less Variation. *Dampier* makes it one of the most Eastern Islands, in Lat. 16. Long. 19. 33. from the *Lizard* in *England*, 8 or 9 Leag. from N. to S. and about two Leagues wide. It has its Name from the abundance of Salt that is naturally congealed there, the whole Island being full of large Salt Ponds, but no Trees or Grass, except some Shrubs near the Shore, upon which a few poor Goats feed. There are some Wild-Fowl, especially *Flamingo's*. There was not above 5 or 6 Men on the Island, and a poor Governor, who exchanged 20 Bushels of Salt and 3 or 4 poor Goats for some old Clothes and Powder and Shot, for he was very ragged, and said there had not been a Ship there in 3 Years before. *La Croix* says, it appears at a Distance like a little Hill to those that sail to it from the *Canaries*; and that when one comes very near it, it looks like two; but the other Parts are low, and the S. E. Side is very barren. There's a little River at the N. End, and a little Harbour at the S. E. and just beyond it there's another small Island, with a Sand-Bank in a sort of Bay. A Musket shot S. from the W. End there's a very safe Road for Ships, into which a little Brook of fresh Water runs from the Mountains thro' a deep sandy Valley. The Heart of the Island is very stony and barren. At the S. E. Point of the Island, near a Hill of white Sand, there are 72 great and small Salt-Pits. There's Plenty of Turtles and Fish about the Rocks, whose Bodies are cover'd with large pointed Fins of a Finger's Length, which the Slaves of the Island boil in Whale-Oil. They kill a great Number of Goats every Year for their Skins, and there are some Horses and Asses. *Luyts* says, it abounds with wild Horses. *Baudrand* says, this Island belongs to the *Portuguese*; that 'tis but thinly inhabited, and lies 40 Miles E. of *St. Nicholas*, and 70 N. of *St. Jago*. *Du Plessis* makes it about 20 Leagues in Compass, and the biggest of the 5 lesser Islands of Cape *Verd*. *Legnat* and his Company anchor'd in a Creek to the Southward of the Island, in 8 Fathom Water. He says, they brought a Swallow hither from the *Canaries*, which was let fly every Morning, and return'd at Night to the Vessel; and that they catched several Birds here, particularly those called Long-Tails, Fools, and Frigats. They lie in wait upon Trees for Turtles, of which they destroy so many while young, that scarce 10 in a Hundred can be saved. They live only on Fish, and build their Nests on Trees. They have a rank Taste, but their Eggs are very good. The Fools come every Night to roost in this Island, and the Frigats, which are larger, and so called because they are light and admirable Sailers, lie in wait for them upon the Trees, from whence they flounce down upon them like Falcons, not to kill them, but to make them bring up the Fish that is in their Craw, which the Fool immediately does as soon as he is thus seized. The Frigat always catches it before it comes to the Ground. This Bird is blackish, and as big as a Duck. It has large Wings, Talons, and a Beak above half a Foot long, a little crooked at the End. The old ones of the Males have a sort of red Flesh under its Neck like a Cock's Comb. The Fools are so called, because they perch inconsiderably about the Ropes of the Ships, and easily suffer themselves to be taken. Their Backs are of a Chesnut Colour, their Bellies whitish, their Beaks sharp, 4 Inches long, and big towards the Head, a little indented at the Edges. Their Legs are short, and their Feet of a pale Yellow like those of a Duck. *Legnat* and his Company could find no Water here but what was brackish. The Heat of the Sun is very vehement, and the more tron-

Digitized by Google

troublesome because there's no Shade. They saw a handsome wild Horse here of a reddish bay Colour, with a long Mane and Tail, and a noble Chest; and a sort of Cat which one of them took for a Fox. For want of Wood, they roasted their Goats Flesh with a Fire made of Asses and Horse Dung. They found some Cow-Dung here, but could see no Cows. He says, the Island is not 8 Leagues round, and that the Salt is very good in its kind, and lies in Crevices of the Rocks on the S. Coast of the Island. He adds, that all the Birds they met with on Shore were Sparrows like ours, but not half so big, and that there's abundance of fine Shells of various Colours over all the Coast.

6. BOA-VISTA, BUENAVISTA, BONA-VISTA, or the Island of *Good Sight.*

It lies N. from *Mayo* and *St. Jago*, and S. from *Sal*. Admiral *Middleton* says, that this and *Mayo* Isle bear S. W. by S. at 12 Leagues Distance. *Lopez* says, the Discoverers gave it that Name, because they were overjoy'd with their Success; but *La Croix* ascribes it to the agreeable Prospect it gives to the Mariners when they see it at a Distance; and Admiral *Columbus* says, 'tis a wretched dull Place. The former places the N. End 8 Leagues from the Island of *Sal*, and the S. End but 7. He observes, 'tis easy to distinguish it a great Distance at Sea from *Sal* by several white Rocks which lie along the N. Coast, whereas the Island of *Sal* has none on that Side. He says, 'tis also higher than that of *Sal*, and 20 Leagues in Compass. The E. Side runs for most Part from N. W. to S. E. and is full of Downs; but farther within the Island there are Hills. There's a long Chain of Shelves and Rocks from the N. End towards the N. E. and the N. E. and by E. which run for half a League, or as some say a whole League, into the Sea, and have occasion'd divers Shipwrecks. There's another Shelve which may be discover'd by the Stones above the Water, and runs from the S. Point of the Island towards the E. and the E. by N. E. a League and a half beyond that Point. The best Road and Harbour of all the Island has 15 or 16 Fathom Water on a sandy Bottom, and lies under the S. E. Point, where the Coast runs from E. N. E. to W. S. W. The *Sansons* say, it abounds with Salt as well as *Sal*, *Mayo*, and *St. Jago*. Admiral *Columbus* anchor'd in a Chanel near a small Island on the W. Side on't, where the Inhabitants had 6 or 7 Houses for Lepers, who he was told were cured here partly by the Goodness of the Air, and by eating Tortoises, and anointing with their Blood; but that those who are born so, are longer a curing. He says, this Island is very barren, but abounds with Goats and Tortoises, which, because the Shores are all sandy, come hither in *June*, *July*, and *August*, to sleep and lay their Eggs. The People pursue them in the Night along the Shore with Lanterns, and find them by their Track, for their coming so far tires them, so that they sleep, and are daily surprised and turned upon their Backs, as formerly mentioned; after which they let them lie till the Morning, (for they cannot recover their Feet) and then go and chuse the biggest, and let the least go. They have no Springs, but Wells of thick brackish Water. The Owner and four more, who had Charge of the Island for the *Portuguese*, had no Employment but to kill and salt Goats to send into *Portugal*, of which 'twas said there were then such Multitudes on the Mountains, that some Years they killed as many as amounted to 3 or 4000 Ducats, and that they all came from 8 Goats carried thither by *Rodrick Alfonso*, the Proprietor of the Island, and Secretary of the King of *Portugal*'s Customs. He adds, that the Hunters are often 4 or 5 Months without any Provision, except Goats Flesh and Fish. M. *Renefort* says, 'tis a very long Island, and that when he was here, the low Lands were only inhabited by some *Portuguese* Shepherds that kept Goats. *Leguat* says, 'tis as dry and barren as *Sal* Island, and more mountainous.

7. MAGO, MAI, or *St. MAGO Island.*

'Tis reported in Sir *Francis Drake*'s Discoveries, that good Store of dry'd Goats us'd to be made ready here every Year for such of the *Portuguese* Ships as called there, and that there are Mountains on it three Days Journey in Length. Part of it is well cultivated,

Digitized by Google

tivated and fruitful, and lovely Grapes are in their Prime here about *January*. It lies in the Torrid Zone, and has the Sun twice a Year in its Zenith, so that they have two Summers in a Twelvemonth. It abounds with Coco-Trees, wild Hens, and Salt, which the Sea throws up in great Quantities upon the Land, and the Heat of the Sun condenses; after which the People gather it in Heaps, and sell it to their Neighbours. Admiral *Middleton* says, that the N. and N.N.W. Part of *Mayo* is all very bad and foul Ground, and that 'tis dangerous riding there for Ships. He adds, that full North from the high Hammocks, there's a great Ledge of Rocks from the Land 5 or 6 Miles off, and 20 Fathom Water a Mile without them. Sir *John Narborough* says, it appears high and craggy to the E. Part, but low to the N.W. and that 'tis 18 Leagues S. by W. from *Bonavista*. The Road of Anchorage is a Mile from the Shore, in 7 Fathom Water, sandy Ground, the N. Point of the Road bearing N.N.W. half a Point to the W. and the S. Point of the Road a Mile and a half S.E. He says, there are craggy Rocks near the Shore to the S. of the Road, but that 'tis low and sandy to the N. that the Road lies in the N.W. by W. Part of the Isle, in a sandy Bay, a Bow-shot from the Shore, and that there's a Salt Pond in the flat Grounds, where he saw 20 Tuns of Salt. He adds, that he caught here abundance of Mullets, with some Cavalle, Silver Fish, *&c.* which they split, pickled and dry'd; and that they bought several Goats of the Inhabitants at half a Piece of Eight *per* Head, and Cows at 6 Pieces of Eight each. They hunt the Goats with Dogs. He places the Road 9 Leagues N.E. from Port *Praya* in *St. Jago*. *Dampier* places it 40 Miles E. by S. from *St. Nicholas*, and 4 or 5 Leagues E. of *St. Jago*. He says, the Island is better stocked with Beeves and Goats than the rest, and that the Natives would not suffer the *English* of his Company to land, because not long before, one Captain *Bond* of *Bristol* carried the Governor and chief Inhabitants aboard, and made them send ashore for Cattle to ransom their Liberties, yet after that sailed away with them. This Island is but small, and the Coast full of Shoals; yet our Author says, it has a great Trade in Salt and Cattle. The Tortoises lay their Eggs here in the wet Season in *May*, *June*, *July*, and *August*. The Natives plant Corn, Yames, Potatoes, and some Plantanes, and breed a few Fowls, but are very poor, tho they live better than any others of Cape *Verd* Islands, except *St. Jago*. *Dampier* says, the Road lies in the Leeward Part of the Island, in 14 Fathom clean sand, and smooth Water. He places the Island in N. Lat. 15. makes it roundish, and 7 Leagues in Compass. He says, that those who come here to lade Salt, take it up as it kerns, and lay it in Heaps. The Inhabitants are Negroes, descended from the *Africans*, whom they resemble. As they are Subjects to *Portugal*, they follow their Religion and Language; but they have Priests and a Governor of their own Nation. Their Fruits are only sorry Figs and Water-Melons; and their best Land Animals, Asses, Goats, and wild Horses. Among other Fish, here are Dolphins, Bonettas, Snappers, Salmon, Trout, and Garfish. It has many small rocky Points shooting out a Mile or more into the Sea, and 'tis said there are dangerous Shoals on the N. and N.W. Side that lie farther off at Sea. There are two Hills of a considerable Height on the Island, one pretty bluff, the other peeked at Top. The rest of the Island is pretty level, and a good Height from the Sea. The Shore clear round has sandy Bays between the above-mentioned rocky Points. The Salt Pont lies in a large sandy Bay and Sand-Bank 40 Paces wide, and two or three Miles along the Shore. 'Tis two Miles long, and half a Mile wide; but above half on't is commonly dry, except the N. End of it, which is deepest, and never wants Water, but produces Salt all the dry Season from *November* to *May*. In the Spring Tides, the Salt Water works in there from out of the Sea thro' a Hole in the Sand-Bank like a Sluice, and fills the Pond more or less, according to the Height of the Tides. If there is any Salt in the Pond when the Water bathes in, it presently dissolves; but then in two or three Days after, it begins to kern, till all or most Part is congeal'd, or till a fresh Supply comes in again from the Sea. *Dampier* says, he was told the Water never works in but at the New Moon Spring-Tides, and 'tis observed that the

Salt kerns only in the dry Season, contrary to the Salt Ponds in the *West Indies*, the Reason of which he leaves to the Judgment of Philosophers. The *English* he says have commonly a Man of War here to guard their Vessels that come hither to take in Salt for *Newfoundland*, of which he was told that in some Years there have been no less than 100, and it costs them nothing but the Labour to rake it together, and wheel it out of the Pond, except the Carriage thence to the Frape-Boat, (so called by the Seamen because 'tis girded with Ropes) whereby 'tis conveyed aboard, which is very cheap, and performed by Mules, which the Inhabitants lade and drive themselves, for they have scarce any other Employment to live by. The Pond is not above half a Mile from the Landing-place, so that the Asses make a great many Journies in a Day, and they have a set Number of Turns for both Forenoon and Afternoon, which the Owners will not exceed. The Boat which lies to take in the Salt is made for the Purpose, with a Deck reaching a third Part of the Boat from the Stern, and a Bulk head that rises two Foot above the Edge of the Deck, all very well calked. The Use of it is to keep the Waves from dashing into the Boat, when it lies with its Head to the Shore to take in the Salt, because otherwise the great Sea which commonly runs here would break in over the Stern, and soon fill the Boat. To keep the Boat thus with the Head to the Shore, and the Stern to the Sea, there are two strong Stantions set up, one at the Head, and the other in the Middle of the Boat against the Bulk-head, and a Foot higher, and there's a Notch cut in the Top of each big enough for a small Rope to lie in, one End of which is fastened to a Post ashore, and the other to a Grappling or Anchor off at Sea, to hale the Boat in and out, while the Stantions keep her fast, so that she cannot swing to either Side when the Rope is hal'd tight, otherwise the Sea would fill or toss her ashore: But to prevent this, there are two Sets of Rope more, the first of which going athwart from Gunnal to Gunnal, binds the Sides of the Boat so hard against the Ends of the Rowers Benches when they are laid, that the Boats Sides can't fall asunder, nor the Benches be crush'd inwards. There are commonly but two of these Ropes dividing the Boat's Length as they go across the Sides into three equal Parts. The other Set of Ropes are more in Number, and so placed as to keep the Ribs and Planks from starting off; for which Purpose there are Holes made thro' the Edge of the Keel that runs along the Inside of the Boat, thro' which these Ropes pass along the Ribs, and are fasten'd to them by Rattans or small Cords twisted close about both Ropes and Ribs up to the Gunnal, by which Means, tho' several of the Nails or Pegs of the Boat should be shaken out, yet the Ropes of both Sets would hold her together, especially with the Help of a Rope quite about the Gunnal on the Outside. Two Men suffice to hale the Boat in or out, and to take in the Salt and put it out again. As soon as the Boat is brought near enough to the Shore, one stands by the Bulk-head, who takes a sudden Turn with the Hozer round the Bulk head Stantion, which stops her fast before the Sea can turn her aside; and when they have got in their Lading, they hale off to Sea till they come a little without the Swell, where they remove it into another Boat that carries it aboard the Ship. *Dampier* observes, that without such a Frape-Boat, there would be bad Landing here at any time, because of the great Sea which falls on the Shore, tho' 'tis commonly very smooth in the Road, so that he advises every Ship that comes here to bring, make or borrow, such Boat of some other Ships here, because the Inhabitants have none. We have been so particular in the Description of these Frape-Boats for *Dampier*'s own Reason, *viz.* because 'tis of the same Use in any Places where a great Sea falls in upon the Shore, as it does especially in many open Roads in the *East* and *West-Indies*. We come now to its Natural History.

He tells us, that on the sandy Bank that pens in the Salt Pond, grows a Sort of Silk Cotton, and a Plant that runs along the Ground, with thick broad Leaves branching out like a Vine. The Silk-Cotton grows on tender Shrubs 3 or 4 Foot high, in longish Cods as big as an Apple, which when ripe open at one End, when the Cotton breaks forth, and parts by degrees into 4 Quarters; but the Cotton is only fit for stuffing Pillows, or the like. *Dampier* says, he laid some of the Cods in a Chest before they

Digitized by Google

they were quite ripe, and that in two or three Days they threw out the Cotton; that he bound others so fast, that the Cod could not open; but a few Days after, when he slacken'd the Strings, it burst, and the Cotton flew out like the Pulp out of a roasting Apple, till all was exhausted. He says, the right Cotton Shrub grows here also, but not on the Sand Bank. There are some Bushes of it near the Shore, but the most on't, which is but little, is planted in the Middle of the Isle, where the Inhabitants live chiefly by making Cotton-Cloth. There are also other Trees within the Island, but none on the Shore, except a few scattering Bushes against the Sides of the Hills. The Soil is generally sandy and barren, without any fresh Water, except Showers in the wet Season, which run off as fast as they fall, and a small Spring in the Middle of the Island running thro' a Valley, where the Inhabitants have three small Towns, with each a Church and Padre, and 6 or 7 Miles from the Road. *Pinose* is said to be the chief, and to have two Churches, *St. John*'s the next, and *Lagoa* the third. The Houses are very little and mean, and built with Fig-Tree, for they say here are no others fit for Building. The Rafters are a sort of wild Cane. Among other Fruits, they have Callavances (a sort of Pulse like *French* Beans) and Pumpkins for ordinary Food. Their Fowls are Flamingo's, great Curlews, and abundance of *Guinea*-Hens, which the Natives call *Gallinas Pintadas*, or the painted Hens. They seem to be much of the Nature of Partridges. They are bigger than our Hens, have longer Legs, and run faster. They can fly too, but not far, because they have heavy Bodies, but short Wings and Tails. They have thick, strong, sharp Bills, and long Claws. They feed either on Worms which they scrape out of the Ground, or on Grasshoppers. Their Feathers are so prettily speckled with dark and light grey Spots, that they look more beautiful than Birds of finer Feathers. Their Necks are small and long, and their Heads but little. The Cocks have a small Rising on their Crowns like a Comb, which is very hard, and of the Colour of a dry Walnut-Shell. They have a small red Gill on each Side of their Heads strutting down like Ears; but the Hens have none. They are very hardy, and so strong, that one can't hold them. They are good tender Meat, and in some the Flesh is extraordinary white, but in others black, yet both are sweet Food. The Natives run them down with Dogs, and sometimes there are 2 or 300 of these Fowls in a Company. Our Author says, some of them throve well aboard for 16 or 18 Months, but then began to pine; and that when they are taken young, they'll grow tame. Their other Fowls are Pigeons and Turtle-Doves, Miniota's, a sort of Land Fowls as big as Crows, of a grey Colour, and good Food; Crusia's, another sort of grey-colour'd Fowl almost as big as a Crow, which are only seen in the Night, and said to be good for consumptive People, for none else eat them; and Rabeks, a large grey sort of eatable Fowls; with long Legs and Necks like Herons, besides many small Birds. They had abundance of Bulls and Cows; but *Dampier* says, the Pyrates have carried off most of them, as well as many of the Inhabitants; and not long before he was there they took away the Governor, and carried him about a Year or two; and then restor'd him. There are large Mullets here a Foot and a half or two Foot long, besides Porpoises and little Whales, that commonly visit the Road every Day. The People of both Sexes are of a yellowish Complexion, but lusty, well set, and fleshy, and their Children round and plump, notwithstanding the Barrenness of the Island. Our Author was told there were about 230 Souls on it when he was here, and there was a Negro Governor, who had his Patent from the *Portuguese* Governor of *St. Jago*. He praises him for his Sense and Civility, and says his Subjects are generally a good sort of People. He expects a small Present from every Commander that lades Salt here, and is fond of going aboard their Ships. In the Salting Season, which is his Harvest, he spends most of his Time with the *English*, on whom the Islanders place their chief Dependence for Trade, for they have no Vessels of their own, and scarce any come hither but the *English*, who give them Victuals, some Money, or old Clothes, for their Salt, yet some of them go almost naked. They hunt Turtles by Night, as well as those of the other Islands, and have small Huts about the sandy Bays

Digitized by Google

for Shelter from Rain and for Sleep; but when the Turtle Season is over, they have little else to do besides hunting *Guinea* Hens, and managing their small Plantations. When any of them are desirous to go over to *St. Jago*, they get a Licence from the Governor, and desire Passage in some *English* Ship that is going thither, as they are generally obliged to do for fresh Water, for there's none here fit for drinking. He adds, that several of our Ships come hither to lade Asses for *Barbadoes*, and our other Plantations. *Dampier* gives the View of this Island at several Bearings, for which we refer to his Book. Captain *Roger's* says, the People have Salt enough to load several Thousand Ships in a Year if they had Vent for it, and that they make fine Marroquin Leather of their Goats-Skins. *Struys* places it but 8 or 9 Leagues from *Bonavista*, and makes it the least of all the Cape *Verd* Islands. He says, that on the N. Side on't there's a Plain above a League in Breadth, and a great Sand-Bank which runs very far into the Sea, besides another a League farther W. At the Foot of a small Point of Land, a little N. from the S. W. Road, there's a Village of 10 or 12 Houses, where Foreigners may have some small Refreshment. All the Verdure of the Country consists in some Herbs that grow between the Rocks. Their Figs are very ill tasted. There are wild Horses, Partridges, Geese, and other Fowls, which are unknown to *Europeans*. Great Part of the People's Employment is Hunting and Fishing. He adds, that in many Pits there's reddish Salt, which is form'd partly by the Water of the Sea, and partly by some subterranean Springs. When the Pits are full, they stop up the Holes.

La Croix says, its W. Coast runs from N. to S. and that which faces the S. W. from N. W. and by N. to S. W. and by S. There is good Angling below the Island in 25 Fathom Water upon the Brink of the Shore when the Tide rises; but there's none in 25 Fathom. The Pond he says is about the Height of a Man, Waste deep, and receives a Brook of fresh Water, which runs down three Leagues above from the high Grounds. The Water is clear, but not very wholesome, because 'tis brackish, especially when 'tis a very dry Season, and the Water of the Pond is sunk, at which Time there's good Fishing for Breams. There are so many Goats, that they export above 5000 Skins every Year. Their Partridges are as big as Pheasants, with white and black Spots. The Island is inhabited by Whites and Negroes, which are commonly sent hither every *November* from *St. Jago*. He tells us, that in 1505 here were 225 Souls, but in 1628 no more than 50, without any Women. They have their Meal and Wearing Stuffs from *St. Jago*, and give the Inhabitants of that Island Notice how many Ships they have in the Road by lighting Fires.

8. *St. JAGO* or *St. JAMES's Island.*

Sir *Francis Drake* reports, that 'tis a fair large Island, inhabited by *Portuguese*, and that there are Mountains in it possessed by the *Moors*, who have fortified themselves ever since they fled hither from Slavery. Sir *Richard Hawkins* says, 'twas plunder'd twice by the *English*, *viz.* under Sir *Francis Drake* in 1585 with less than 1000 Men, and under Sir *Anthony Shirley* in 1596, and once by the *French* in 1582. *Mandelslo* says, 'tis the chief of all the Cape *Verd* Islands, and and that it has a Town of its own Name, which is the ordinary Residence of the Governor and Archbishop, whose Jurisdiction extends not only over all these Islands, but such of the *African* Coasts as belong to the *Portuguese*. Admiral *Columbus* says, the Island is unhealthy, and that there was such a thick Fogg all the Time he was here, which was the four first Days of *July*, that he never saw the Sky nor any Star, insomuch that three Parts of the Inhabitants were sick, and they had all a base Colour. *Le Blanc* says, it has been in the Hands of the *Portuguese* ever since 1446, where they have a well fortified Town and a Bishoprick stil'd *Civitad*. He makes it 60 Miles long, and 36 broad, and says, they have no Rain but in *September* and *October*, which is their Winter. The Vallies yield choice Melons all the Year round, with abundance of Dates and Sugar-Canes, all Sorts of Flesh, Fowl, and Venison, and good Horses. 'Tis inhabited by People of all Nations; and because the Air is unwholesome, they transport those that are infirm to an Island two Leagues

Digitized by Google

Leagues distance called *Praya*, of which by and by. *Struys* makes it the biggest of all the Cape *Verd* Islands, 45 Leagues from the S. E. to N. W. where longest, 10 where broadest, and 95 in Compass. He says, it has a fine River called *Coren*, which yields a lovely Prospect, and is planted on both Sides with Coco's, Oranges, Limons, Pomegranates, Figs, and other Fruit-Trees, and some Cedars. It also abounds with Cotton, Rice, Maiz, or *Turkey* Wheat, and all Sorts of other Fruit, and as much Cattle as *Mayo*. *La Croix* makes it but 12 Leagues in Length, and places it 25 S. S. W. from *Sal*. He says, *European* Herbs and Plants brought hither from *Portugal* thrive very well if the Seed be renew'd every Year. They have no Vines, but have all their Wine from *Lisbon*. The *Sansons* say, they abound most with Goats; that they bring forth three or four at a time every four Months; and that their Flesh is very fat and tender. *Luyts* says, 'tis more populous than the other Islands; that here are vast Numbers of Tortoises, and an incredible Quantity of Salt. *Heylin* says, 'tis but 7 Miles long; and that thô 'tis rocky and mountainous, it has several fine Vallies.

But the best Account we find of this Island is given by Mr. *Ovington* and Captain *Dampier* as follows:

The former says, that when he was here, which was in 1689, the Island was very dry and barren, for he was told they had not one Shower of Rain in three Years before. The Island is not so pleasant as *Madeira*, nor so mountainous; and the Wine drunk here, which is but little, is imported from thence. Among other Fruits, they have a few Vines, Coco-Nuts, and Bononoes, better than those at *Madera*. They had few Cattle, but Plenty of Fowl, which, with other Commodities, they sold for old Clothes, for the *Portuguese* here are so vain as to strut in the Sailors cast-off Garments, and so thievish, that while one or two of them hold a Man in Discourse, another shall steal his Hat or his Sword; and when they have an Opportunity, they'll strip Strangers naked. They know not how to make Butter or Cheese, so that a Couple of Cheese, a Sea-Bisket, 12 Stock-fish, and two Dozen of Poor Jack, were an acceptable Present to the Governor, who was a *Romish* Prelate, that presided in all Affairs both Civil and Ecclesiastical, and admitted the native *Africans* to officiate in their Oratories and Convents. Most of the Inhabitants are Negroes, transported hither from *Africa*, and converted to the *Romish* Faith. Their Habit is a sort of *Indian* like Stuff wrapped carelessly about their Middle, and a thin Stuff over their Breasts and Shoulders; but the rest of their Body is naked. The Women here are very loose, and easily led away by the Sailors, whose Extravagancies of this kind have given Rise to an *English* Proverb us'd in *India*, *That in sailing from hence thither, they leave their Consciences on this Side the Cape; and in returning from thence to* Europe, *they leave them on t'other Side.*

Captain *Dampier* places it 5 Leagues W. of *Mayo*. He was told they make a great deal of Wine here like that of *St Nicholas*. He says the Natives, for want of Boats to carry their Salt from one Island to another, are forced to buy it of Strangers, and that he truck'd it with them for Fowls and Maiz, which the Governor order'd them to bring by a Cryer; but that they won't part with their Cattle without Money. The People are generally black, or at least of a mix'd Colour, except the Governor, Bishop, a few of the chief Gentry, and some of the Padres. He owns, that the People about Port *Praya* are thievish, but says that those of *St. Jago* are orderly, because they live under the Governor's Eye; but they are generally poor, and have little Trade; yet besides chance Ships of other Nations, a *Portuguese* Ship or two come hither every Year in their Way to *Brasil*, which sell them a few *European* Commodities, and take off their chief Manufactures, *viz.* strip'd Cotton-Cloth, which they carry to *Brasil*. Another Ship comes hither from *Portugal*, and returns with Sugar, for 'tis said there are several small Sugar-works on the Island, from whence they send home near 100 Tun every Year; and they have so much Cotton up in the Country, that besides what they wear themselves, they send a great deal to *Brasil*. Among other Fruits, here's abundance of Plantanes, Limes, Guava's, Quinces, Custard Apples, Papahs, *&c.* He says, the Custard Apple is as large as a Pomegranate, and like it in Colour. The Outside Husk is for Substance between the

Shell

Digitized by Google

Shell of a Pomegranate and the Peel of a *Seuil* Orange, yet ſofter than the latter, and more brittle than the former. The Coat is beſet round with ſmall regular Knobs, and the Inſide is full of a white, ſoft, ſweet Pulp, like a Cuſtard in Colour and Taſt, from whence our Author thinks it had the Name. In the Middle there are a few black Kernels, but no Core. The Tree is as big as a Quince-Tree, with long, ſmall, and thick-ſet ſpreading Branches. The Fruit grows upon a ſlender tough Stalk 9 or 10 Inches long, and hanging down with its Weight. One large Tree ſeldom bears above 20 or 30 Apples. He obſerves, that this Fruit grows in moſt Countries between the Tropicks, and in both the *Indies*, as does alſo the Papah, which he thus deſcribes. 'Tis as big and hollow as a Musk-Melon, and like it in Shape and Colour; but in the Middle there's a Handful of blackiſh Seeds, of the ſame Size and Taſt as Pepper-Corns. The Fruit is ſoft and luſcious when ripe; but while green, 'tis hard and unſavoury; tho' even then, when boil'd and eaten with ſalt Pork or Beef, it ſerves inſtead of Turneps. The Tree is 10 or 12 Foot high, the Body near the Ground a Foot and a half or two Foot diameter, and tapering to the Top without any Branches, but only large Leaves growing immediately upon the Stalks from the Body. The Leaves are roundiſh and jagged, and their Stalks are longer or ſhorter as they are nearer or farther from the Top. They begin to ſpring out of the Body of the Tree at 6 or 7 Foot high from the Ground, the Trunk being bare below, but above that the Leaves grow ſtill thicker and larger towards the Top, where they are cloſe and broad. The Fruit grows only among the Leaves, and in moſt Plenty where they are thickeſt, ſo that towards the Top of the Tree the Papahs are as thick as they can hang one by another; but then lower down, where the Leaves are thinner, the Fruit is larger; and at the Top, where they are thick, 'tis no bigger than a Turnep, thô of the ſame Taſt as the others.

Dampier adds, that this Iſland abounds with the ſame Beaſts, Fowls and Fiſh, as *Mayo*, particularly Bullocks, for which they asked him 20 Dollars apiece; Horſes, Aſſes, Mules, Deer, Goats, Hogs, and black fac'd long tail'd Monkeys, Cocks and Hens, Ducks, wild and tame *Guinea* Hens, Parakites, Parrots, Pigeons, Turtles, Herons, Hawks, Crab catchers, (of which there's a large Sort called *Galdens*) and Curlews. Captain *Rogers* ſays, it produces ſome Indigo and Tobacco, which they ſend with Goats-Skins and others to *Lisbon*.

The chief Places here are, 1. *Praya*. *La Croix* ſays, 'tis a *Portugueſe* Word to ſignify the Shore; that 'tis very commodiouſly ſituate, and naturally fortified by a Mountain on each Side on't, and as others ſay upon a riſing Ground, encompaſſed with two Rivers, which fall into the Sea, and form two Bays; the firſt of which, called *Porto Praya*, is large enough for 100 Veſſels to anchor in, in 14 Fathom Water, beyond the Reach of Cannon from the Shore, and behind an Iſland which ſhelters it from the Winds. *Le Blanc* ſays, it lies in a fine Climate, and that the other Iſlanders affect to land here, becauſe the other Ports are full of Sands. Sir *John Narborough* places this Road 9 Leagues S. W. from *Mayo*. He ſays, that called Port *Praya* is no Port, but only a round Bay, with ſteep Cliffs on the E. Side, and a Hill in the Bottom, on which ſtands a mean Caſtle, furniſhed with only 4 Cannon, and that there's another on the Top of a Hill on the E. Side which has but three. He adds, that the N. W. Side of the Bay has a gravelly ſandy Shore, and a fine Grove of Coco-Trees; that a Brook of good freſh Water runs thro' the Valley into the Sea; that there's a little Iſland cloſe to the Shore near the W. Part of the Bay, which yields very good Paſture; and that tho' a Man of War may venture into the Harbour without any Danger from the Forts, yet Fireſhips may ſoon deſtroy a whole Fleet here, for every Day blows a freſh Gale, and there are but two Points of Land whereby one may fetch into any Part of the Bay, which lies open to the Sea from the E. and Southerly to the W. S. W. *Dampier* ſays, it lies on the E. Side of the Iſland, and in Time of Peace is ſeldom without Ships, which touch here for Water and Proviſions, as do the *Engliſh*, *French* and *Dutch*, bound to the *Eaſt-Indies*, or to the Coaſt of *Guinea* and *Surinam*, and the *Portugueſe* to *Braſil*; but few Ships call here in their Return to *Europe*, nor do ſo many *Engliſh* call in their Paſſage to the *Eaſt-*

Digitized by Google

Indies as formerly. When Ships are here, the Country People bring down their Commodities to ſell to Seamen and Paſſengers for Shirts, Drawers, Handkerchiefs, Hats, Waſtcoats, Breeches, or almoſt any ſort of Cloth, eſpecially Linen.

2. *St. Jago. Mortry* ſays, it lies in the Form of a Triangle, and has two rocky Mountains on the E. and W. Sides, the Tops of which are fortified. The main Sea lies on the S. Side, and a Valley on the N. between the two Mountains, which growing narrower next the Town, is not above 240 Paces over. A Rivulet of freſh Water runs in the Middle on't, which makes a Pond near the Sea to water the Ships. But farther from the Town the Valley is broader, and well planted with Gardens, Orchards and Vineyards, full of Limons, Oranges, Sugar-Canes, Cocoes, Plantans, Potatoes, Cucumbers, Onions, and Garlick. He adds, that Sir *Francis Drake* took it without Reſiſtance, but was forced to leave it in fourteen Days, becauſe his Men fell ſick of Calentures. *Dampier* places it in the S. W. Part of the Iſland, N. Lat. 15. and ſays, the Entrance to its Harbour is ſubject to many uncertain Flaws of Wind. It ſtands ſcattering againſt the Sides of the Mountains above mentioned. He makes the Valley 200 Yards wide againſt the Sea, but ſcarce 40 within a quarter of a Mile higher. In the Valley by the Sea there's a Street of ſtraggling Houſes on each Side, and a Run of Water in the Bottom, which falls into a fine ſmall Cove or ſandy Bay, where the Sea is commonly very ſmooth, ſo that there's always good Watering and Landing here, tho' the Road be rocky and bad for Ships. Juſt by the Landing-place there's a ſmall Fort almoſt level with the Sea, where there's a conſtant Court of Guard, and there's another on the Top of the Hill above the Town, which, by the Wall that is to be ſeen from the Road, ſeems to be a large Place. 'Twas mounted with Cannon, but our Author knew not how many, nor could not ſee for what Uſe, unleſs for Salvo's. He adds, that the Town contains 2 or 300 Houſes, all built of rough Stone, with a Convent and a Church; but he ſays the Road is one of the worſt that he ever was in, for there's ſcarce clean Ground enough for three Ships. *Du Pleſſis* ſays, there's no Town here of this Name, and with *Heylin* calls it *Ribeira Grande*. The latter ſays, when 'twas plunder'd by the *Engliſh*, they found great Store of Meal, Wine and Oil. *Baudrand* ſays, it lies at the Mouth of a River, capable of containing the largeſt Ships. The *Sanſons* and *M. Fer* ſay, *Ribeira* contains about 500 Houſes, and *Du Pleſſis* makes it the Capital of the Iſland, and the Reſidence of the *Portugueſe* Governor and Biſhop. Captain *Rogers* ſays, it lies towards the W. and has a good Harbour, which *Struys* tells us is very ſecure, becauſe of its Situation between two Mountains, and that a River runs in the Middle to the Sea with a Mouth, which is about a Bow-ſhot in Breadth. *Dampier* gives ſeveral Views of this Iſland, for which we refer to his Book.

9. *FOGO*, *FOGHO*, or *PUEGO*, or the *Iſland of Fire.*

Sir *Francis Drake* ſays, 'tis inhabited by the *Portugueſe*, and that on the N. Side on't there's a Volcano that is continually ſending out Smoke and Flame. Sir *Richard Hawkins* ſays, the Flames are ſeen 20 Leag. off at Sea in the Night-time. Admiral *Columbus* ſays, the S. Side is high Land, and looks at a Diſtance like a great Church, with a Steeple at the E. End. He adds, that the Volcano is a vaſt high Rock, which ſends forth much Fire before the E. Winds riſe. *Struys* places it 12 Leagues S. W. of *St. Jago*, and ſays, that it has a little Fort at the Foot of a Mountain on the N. W. for the Defence of ſuch Ships as anchor in the neighbouring Harbour, which is not very commodious, becauſe of the Rapidity of the Current. The eaſieſt Way to come at the E. Side on't is to go about by the N. The Iſland is ſubject to great Whirlwinds and Tempeſts, and the Water is every where ſo deep, that there's no anchoring in any Place except near the little Fort abovementioned. *Le Blanc* ſays, there's as good Wine in this Iſland as at the *Canaries*. *La Croix* places it in Lat. 14. 20. *Luyts* ſays, 'tis not far E. from *Bravo*. *Heylin* ſays, that when Sir *Anth. Shirley* took this Iſland in 1595, the Flakes of Fire fell ſo thick upon his Ship, that the upper Deck was cover'd with

Digitized by Google

with Ashes. Mr. *Ovington* says, the burning Mountain sends forth vast Numbers of Pumice-stones, which swim upon the main Ocean, and are carried by the various Currents to several distant Places, and some to *St. Jago*. He says, the Volcano is above two Stories high in the Clouds. *Dampier* says, the Inhabitants live at the Foot on't near the Sea; that they have some Goats, Fowls, Plantanes, Coco-Nuts, *&c.* and that their Subsistence is much the same as in the other Islands.

10. *BRAVA, BRAVO, BRANO,* or *BRAMA.*

Sir *Francis Drake* says, 'tis a delightful Island on the S. Side of *Fogo*, well planted with flourishing Trees, and refreshed with cooling Streams; but the Sea is so deep here, that there's no Anchorage for Ships. Nevertheless Sir *Richard Hawkins* says, the best Watering-place of all the Islands is in the W. Side of this, where there's a great River. *Struys* places it 4 Leagues S. W. from *Fogo*, and says, 'tis in a manner desert and uncultivate; but that it has a Watering-place on the S. E. Side, better than that on the W. which is 15 Fathom deep, so that the greatest Vessels may come to the Shore without Danger. Above the Harbour there is a populous Village, and a pleasant Ermitage. He adds, that their chief Fruits are Figs, Mulberries, Melons, and Maiz, but fewer Cattle than in the two others. *Mosquet* says, it bears Tobacco, abundance of Mace, and yields sweet Water, dry'd Fish, and other Refreshments, and that 'tis very mountainous. *Le Blanc* says, 'tis full of Venison and wild Beeves, with thick and tough Hides.

V. *The* Islands *in the Gulph of* GUINEA *or* St. THOMAS, *between* Guinea *and* Lower Ethiopia.

The chief are, 1. *FERNANDO POO*, or *FERDINAND PO*, *PAO* or *POI*.

Harris says, this and the other Islands here were discovered in the Reign of *Alphonsus*, Successor to King *Henry* of *Portugal*. *Purchas* ascribes the Discovery of this Island to one *De Poo* in 1472, who called it after his own Name. *Luys* says, it lies nearest to the Continent, and is larger than the *Prince*'s Isle, but much of the same Nature, and has several Villages with a Castle. He observes, that the Possession of these Islands and other Places in the Kingdom of *Congo* has given the King of *Portugal* an Opportunity to stile himself King of the hither Side of the *African* Ocean. *La Croix* says, 'twas discovered by *Fernand Lopez*, a *Portuguese*, who called it *Ilhas dos Formosas*, or the Fair Isle. He places it in N. Lat. 3 ½. between the high Country of the *Ambisis* and the River of *Camarones*, about 4 Leagues and a half from the Continent, between which the Bay is very navigable. He makes it larger than *Prince*'s Island or those of *St. Thomas* and *Annobon*, or at least of the same Bigness as *St. Thomas*. He says, 'tis very high, and produces Mandihoca, which they grind in Hand-Mills; Tobacco, Rice, and Fruit-Trees. The Inhabitants are wild and faithless, and govern'd by 7 Kings, who spend most of their Time in War, and allow no *Europeans* to anchor here for Traffick, but only for Wood and Water. *Du Plessis* says, it lies a little to the N. of *Prince*'s Island; that 'tis 26 Leagues in Compass; and that the Air, Soil and Government, are the same as in the others. *Morden* says, 'tis not inhabited, but produces Fowls, Wild-Beasts, and Fish.

2. *PRINCE's Island*, or *DEL PRINCIPE.*

Oliver Neort places it N. Lat. 1 ½. He and his Company were surprised here by a Body of *Portuguese* in Ambush, and most of them made Prisoners, after Pretence of Friendship; but the *Dutch* revenged this Treachery, by burning all their Sugar-Houses. *Purchas* says, it was first discovered about 1472 by *Sequeira*, together with the Island of *St. Thomas*. *Heylin* says, it had this Name because its Revenues were allowed to the Prince of *Portugal*. He places it N. Lat. 3. 120 Miles N. E. from *St. Thomas*, and almost as much from the Continent. He says, 'tis very fruitful, and that 'twas taken for the *Dutch* in 1598 by *Julian Gerchogen*, but soon aban-

Digitized by Google

abandon'd. *Luyts* says, 'tis somewhat long, and abounds with Sugar, and that it has a considerable Town, with some Villages. *La Croix* says, 'twas called *Prince*'s Island because a *Portugueſe* Prince firſt diſcovered it. He makes it the leaſt of all the Iſlands in the Gulph, and places it N. Lat. 2. 38 Leag. from the Continent, and 24 N. from *St. Thomas*. He ſays, it has a much more wholeſome Air than the latter, and a Village of 200 Houſes on the Shore, encompaſſed with a Parapet 3 Foot deep, and defended by 5 Cannon, which the Inhabitants took out of a Veſſel that was wrecked on their Coaſt. The whole Iſland is covered with Trees, eſpecially Oranges, Limons, Bananas, Cocoa-Nuts, Sugar-Canes, a few Vines, and the like. There is Cotton, of which the Women make Callicoes for their own Uſe, and Mandihocs, which they grind to Meal. They have Hogs, Hens, and River and Salt Fiſh. The Inhabitants in our Author's Time were 30 or 40 *Portugueſe Mulatto's*, *Negroes*, and about 3000 Slaves, who were employed in the Sugar-Mills, and in planting Rice, Tobacco, Millet, and other Neceſſaries. The *Sanſons* ſay, that among other Fruits it has Ginger. *Du Pleſſis* places it N. E. from that of *St. Thomas*, and ſays, that the *Portugueſe* here are long liv'd. Mr. *Boſman*, whoſe Letters we quoted ſo often in our Account of Guinea, ſays, that at the latter End of the 17th Century, 'twas ſubject to a conſiderable Merchant of *Amſterdam*, till the Diſſention of the *Dutch* themſelves, and the Treachery of the *Portugueſe*, obliged them to quit it. The latter have now a ſtrong Fort here, and have indifferently well Peopled the Iſland, and ſo well cultivated it, that it yields them vaſt Quantities of Proviſions, with which they ſtore their own Ships, and ſell the reſt to others. He adds, that all Ships which go for Slaves touch at ſome of theſe Iſlands for Refreſhments, except thoſe of the *Dutch* Company, which he thinks are not permitted, leſt they ſhould drive a clandeſtine Trade, to the Prejudice of the Company.

73. *St.* THOMAS *or* *St.* THOME,

The chief of all the reſt, and from whence 'tis ſaid this Gulph is denominated. We have already obſerved when and by whom this Iſland was diſcover'd. *Mandelſloo* ſays, the *Portugueſe* gave it this Name, becauſe 'twas diſcover'd on *St. Thomas*'s Day, and that it lies under the Line, in an Air ſo unwholeſome, and ſuch exceſſive Heats, that tho' ſome of the Natives live to 100 Years of Age, yet few *Europeans* exceed 50. The Days and Nights are equal here throughout the Year, and it never rains except in *March* and *September*; but a Dew falls every Night, which renders the Soil very fruitful. When 'twas firſt diſcover'd, Trees were found here with very ſtrait Branches, and formerly it produced 40 Shiploads of Sugar in a Year, but in our Author's Time ſcarce enough to lade 6. Nevertheleſs it yields Wheat, Wine, Millet, Rye, Barley, Melons, Cucumbers, Figs, Ginger, red Parſnips, Cabbages, Navews, Lettuce, Radiſhes, Sage, Beet, Parſley, and all Sorts of Roots, Pulſe, and Pot-Herbs, particularly Muſhrooms with a black Rind; but the Meat is white like the *French* Navew, only it ſhoots forth divers Branches below. The Inhabitants reckon them a Dainty, bake them on the Embers, and then eat them as we do Cheſnuts; but they have a better Flavour. The *Spaniards* have planted Olive, Peach, and Almond-Trees here, which thrive well enough, but bear no Fruit, becauſe of the exceſſive Heat and Moiſture. Here's abundance of Land Creviſſes, which work under Ground like Moles, with great Numbers of Partridges, Quails, Black-Birds, Parrots, *&c.* and the Sea abounds with excellent Fiſh, eſpecially great Whales. There's a Mountain in the Centre of the Iſland, cover'd on the Top with a Cloud, which moiſtens the Trees, and makes them drop Water enough for the Sugar-Canes; and 'tis obſerved, that the higher the Sun mounts above the Horizon, the more Water falls from the Cloud. The Natives are Negroes; but ſuch Foreigners as ſettle here keep their natural Colour to the 3d or 4th Generation. 'Tis affirmed, that the Lice and Fleas, with which the Negroes are peſter'd, never afflict any Strangers.

Le Blanc ſays, 'twas diſcovered by the *Portugueſe* in their firſt Navigation to the E. that it has 50 Leagues of ſound Land; and that it bears little beſides Sugar-Canes, planted by the *Portugueſe*; but the Trees are ever green. They built a Town here call'd

Digitized by Google

Povoaſon, with a Harbour towards the Continent of *Ethiopia*. It was at firſt inhabited by all Nations, who had a free Trade here, but now all pay Tribute, except the *French*, who enjoy the ſame Immunities as the *Portugueſe*, becauſe a *French* Jeſuit was very laborious and ſucceſsful in propagating the *Roman* Faith here. The Natives are ſome white, ſome black, and marry ſtill in their own Colour. The Town is pleaſant, and the whole Iſland full of Sugar-Canes, and conſequently of Flies. In our Author's Time, a Hundred Weight of Sugar here might be purchaſed for 8 Reals; but 'twill not eaſily dry. They exchange it for Wines, Cheeſe, Leather, and Clothes. Their Gardens abound with all Sorts of Herbs and Fruit, except Stone-Fruit. It yields the Root Igname, which is very wholeſome either boil'd or raw. They make choice Diſhes of Millet and Sugar. The Soil is ſtrong, yellowiſh, in ſome Parts reddiſh, and the Dew of the Night ſo moiſtens it, that it never turns to Duſt. They bend their Sugar-Canes to the E. and ſay they then thrive beſt; and they have about 70 Sugar-Mills, which are like that called the *Samaritan* at *Pont-Neuf* in *Paris*. They pour it into great Cauldrons, and when 'tis like Honey they make it into Loaves before 'tis ſtarce dry; but 'tis not ſo ſound nor ſo good as that of *Madera*, tho' they uſe all poſſible Art, and refine it with Cinders. The Blacks fetch Water to ſet the Mills at work from the Plantations, which are at a conſiderable Diſtance. When the Sugar is drawn, they give the Canes to fat the Swine, which makes their Pork well taſted and wholeſome. From the Middle of *May*, to the Middle of *Auguſt* they have E. Winds, which dry their Sugars, otherwiſe they could never do it, for all other Winds are rainy. Their Houſes are good, and built and cover'd with Timber, of which they have great Plenty. The Corſairs bring many Slaves hither from *Guinea* for Sale. Captain *Ribaut Dreppin* took a Veſſel with ſeveral entire Families on board, whom he ſet aſhore, but cauſed two Blacks to hang the Maſter and 5 Mariners. They marry the Slaves among themſelves for Breed, which makes them hereditary Slaves; whereas in the E. at 10 Years end they are made Freemen. They have but one Day in the Week to themſelves, which they ſpend in dreſſing to pleaſe their Miſtreſſes. The *Portugueſe* here, like thoſe of their Nation, affect to have their Slaves rich, and that they ſhould walk with the ſame Gravity as themſelves, and therefore give them 100 or 200 Crowns to buy *Turks* for their Gain and Eaſe. They cauſe moſt of them to be baptized, and to marry together, and give them a Livelihood. They celebrate Feaſts like the *Banks*, by beating of Drums, and ſinging under the Trees. The Slaves chuſe one among them every Year for their Prince to govern at their Meetings, and then they give him a Drum, which he beats in Conſort with Flutes and other Inſtruments, while the Muſicians ogle their Miſtreſſes, and play 1000 apiſh Tricks to them as they dance. They go together to fetch their Prince from his Maſter's Houſe, where they have a Collation. Then they bring him forth decked with Flowers, a Scepter in one Hand, and a Noſegay in the other, and carry him on their Shoulders in a Palanquin to the Dancing-place, where their Miſtreſſes meet them. The Prince dances firſt with his, and then the others follow. The Prince *de l'Amour*, call'd the *Arcadit*, ſalutes his Lady, and then gravely preſents her the Poſie, which ſhe receives, and dances with Smiles. Afterwards they all attend the Prince to his Maſter's Houſe, where, if they are Chriſtians, the Nuptials are conſummated.

La Croix ſays, *Thevet* and others call it *Dame dus Humre*, and the *Barbarians*, *Ponam*; and that the Equinoctial Line croſſes the Town of *Povoaſon* over the great Church. The Iſland is almoſt of a round Figure, about 40 Leagues in Compaſs, 12 broad, and as many in Length. Two Brooks run thro the Town, which lies in the Middle of the Gulph on a Plain in the N. Side of the Iſland. 'Tis of an oval Figure, near half a League in Compaſs, and contains 500 Houſes, all two Stories high. On the Sea-Side 'tis encompaſſed with Stone Ramparts, which the *Portugueſe* Governor cauſed to be built here in 1607; and ordered all that paſſed thro' the Town to bring a Stone for that Purpoſe. Their Timber with which they build their Houſes is white and hard as Oak, and the Bront and Roof are made of Planks inlaid into one another. There

were

were but 3 Stone-Houſes in the Iſland in our Author's Time, and in one of them lived the Governor. There are 3 Churches in the Town, the biggeſt of which is the Cathedral, call'd the *Conception*; the ſecond *Iſabella*, with a Hoſpital join'd to it; and the third *St. Sebaſtian*, which is but ſmall, and lies over againſt a Caſtle of the ſame Name. There are ſeveral others without the Town, as *St. Anthony*'s within two Muſket-ſhots, *St. John*'s a little nearer, that call'd *Matre Dios* a League to the S. E. *Trinity* Church two Leagues to the E. and *St. Ann*'s three to the S. E. *St. Sebaſtian*'s Caſtle has four-pointed Baſtions, and lies on a Point of Land to the N. Side of the Town and Gulph. 'Tis neatly built of hard Freeſtone, and the Walls are 25 Foot high, which, together with its Situation, makes it impregnable, if there be but 100 Soldiers in Garriſon, and all Warlike Neceſſaries, which may be ſafely brought to it by Sea in Yachts. The Iſland is water'd by ſeveral Rivers and Brooks of clear freſh Water, which render the Soil very fruitful, and fall for moſt part into the Sea. The Air is not only exceſſive hot, but moiſt; and 'tis affirmed, that 'tis ſo prejudicial to Foreign Youth brought hither, that they ceaſe growing at their Arrival, and are never no bigger. The Heat is ſo violent here, that dead Bodies rot in leſs than 24 Hours, ſo that they don't keep them above Ground as we do. Some aſcribe the Malignity of the Air to its Moiſture, join'd with the intemperate Heat; but others ſay, it has its bad Quality no where in the Iſland but in the Town, which lies in a low Place; for ſince it rains as faſt as it can when it begins, and the Water naturally runs to the deepeſt Places, the Heat raiſes the Vapours out of the Water, turns it every Morning and Evening into Dew, becauſe of the freſh Air, and falls upon People's Bodies. For this Reaſon our Author obſerves, the Air is not ſo unwholeſome in the N. and S. Parts of the Iſland as in this City. Sometimes he ſays 'tis darken'd by Miſts and Fogs, which make the *Portugueſe* confine themſelves to their Houſes. But this exceſſive Heat and Dampneſs of the Air abate in the Summer Months of *July* and *Auguſt*, becauſe of the freſh dry S. W. Winds that blow from the Coaſts of *Ethiopia*, for which Reaſon they are called the Windy Months. Theſe Winds purify the Air, and revive Strangers; but they are very troubleſome to ſuch of the Natives as are lean. They have no N. nor E. Winds, which *La Croix* thinks are interrupted or diverted by the high Mountains of *Africa*. They have two Winters as well as all other Countries under the Line, which are more wet than cold; one falls out in the Spring, and the other in the Autumn, or in *March* and *September*, when the Sun is directly over their Heads, and caſts no Shadow, which happens exactly twice a Year about Noon, for then it exhales ſuch a vaſt Quantity of Vapours from the Sea, as loads the Air with Clouds, which diſſolve into Rain, ſo that the Sun-beams having not Power enough to penetrate thro' the Miſts and continual Rains, cauſe the Air to be freſher at that Time than any other. The Rains laſt here from *December* to *April*, and drown all the low Lands. Our Summer is their Spring, and their Summer holds from *December* to *March*, during which Seaſon the Air is ſo hot and moiſt, that Strangers are obliged to keep under Ground, and run the Hazard of Death or dangerous Diſtempers, becauſe of the intolerable Heat and Moiſtneſs of the Air, while the Natives, who are of a cold, dry, and hagged Conſtitution, enjoy perfect Health. But when the Heat is moſt violent, it makes them ſo lazy and weak, that they are not able to walk, and the Ground is ſo hot, that they are obliged to wear double Soles, with a Piece of Cork underneath. Their chief Maladies are hot malignant Fevers, with which Strangers, eſpecially Whites, are ſoon overtaken, and are very often carried off the 4th, 7th, or 14th Day. They begin with a great Cold and Shiverings, which are ſucceeded by a Heat that runs over all the Members for two Hours. If the Patient labours under it above a Fortnight, he commonly recovers, except he relapſes by intemperate Eating or Drinking, ſo that the beſt Remedy they obſerve is to eat little, and faſt very much; yet ſometimes they bleed as we do; but our Author ſays, 'tis ſeldom ſucceſsful, and condemns it. They purge generally with the Pulp of Caſſia, and let the Patients drink as much Water as they will. The Diſtemper call'd *Bitios de Cu* makes great

Digitized by Google

Havock here, and they cure it with Limon-Juice; as we observed in *Lower Ethiopia*. Venereal Maladies are also very common here, but the Negroes soon cure them with Mercury; yet they kill many, especially Foreigners, who catch them of Negro Women. They are also very subject to the Dropsy, but cure it in a few Days by swallowing the Oil of Coco-Nuts, with a certain Herb, and chafing it into the Body. Above 100 Years since, the Kings of *Portugal* being informed of the Fruitfulness of the Soil, sent some Men hither, who all dy'd by the Malignity of the Air; wherefore those that were sent afterward stopped first in *Guinea*, and thence went to stay a while at *Angola*, in order to accustom themselves by degrees to the Badness of the Air before they came to settle in this Island. 'Tis said also, that *John* K. of *Portugal* sold for Slaves all that refused to embrace the Christian Religion; and after having baptized their Children, transported them into this Country, from whence those are descended who now inhabit the Island. The *Dutch* had a great many Men sick, and others that dy'd here when they took it in 1641 under Admiral *Jol* or *Houtebeen*, who dy'd himself, besides several others of the Commanders, and there were scarce 12 healthy Men left in each Company. Nay the Disease increased so much, that they had scarce Men enough for the Centries, nor Sailors enough to man their Vessels; upon which they wrote to C. *Maurice* at *Brasil* to send them a Supply of Men, Wine, and other Provisions. Most of them dy'd mad with a violent Pain in the Head, and some were carried off in 3 or 4 Days by a Pain in the Belly. They said, that some fell into this Distemper by heating themselves with their Negro Mistresses, and then exposing themselves to the Cold, and others by eating black Sugar, or the Milk of Coco-Nuts, which causes the Flux in the Belly. Besides, they did not go home and shut themselves within Doors, as the *Portuguese* commonly do when the Island is covered with Mists, for they are generally charged with certain Arsenical Particles full of Malignity. *La Croix* tells us, that this poisonous Air was much more fatal to Admiral *Peter Verdoes*'s Men when he took this Island in *November* 1610, for in a Fortnight's Time it carried off above 1000 with Pains and Disorders in the Head and Belly. The Admiral himself and the Vice-Admiral died, besides 17 Captains of Ships, and all the Soldiers of the Land Army except one. Some of their Bodies were opened, in which the Fat of their Bellies were dissolved into Water. Therefore C. *Maurice* advised the States, when they were in Possession of this Island, to do as the *Spaniards* had done, *viz.* to send none but condemn'd Malefactors here to people and defendit. Our Author says, the Soil is so good, that so soon as any Plain or Field is left uncultivated, it produces very high Trees in a little Time, which they cut and burn, and plant Sugar-Canes in the Ashes, which grow very high in the Valleys, but don't yield as much Sugar as those in *Brasil*, tho' they are planted, cut and ground, in the same Manner, only the Mills here are smaller, and not so much clogged, because they purify no more Sugar in the Island than what every one wants for his own Use. The Canes require 5 Months Growth after they are planted in the Ashes, so that they don't cut till *June* those planted in *January*, nor those planted in *February* till *July*, by which Means they cut Sugar-Canes every Month of the Year; nor do the Sun-beams, which dart directly upon the Island in *March* and *September*, hinder their Growth, because of the continual Rains in that Season, which do great Service to the Canes. When they are ripe, they cut and grind them in Mills, which are drove either by the Currents of Rivers, and where there's none by Slaves, or by Oxen; after which they boil and purify the Juice or Pith in great Cauldrons over the Fire. In our Author's Time they used to load 7 Ships a Year with the Sugar, *viz.* four for *Portugal*, two for the *Madera* and *Canary* Islands, and one for *England*. They could also have drawn much more, and have made white Sugar; but they had not Pots, *&c.* to refine it, nor Men that understood it. The *Portuguese* sent for several Master Workmen from the Island of *Madera* to make their Sugar whiter and harder; but they could never compass it, because they could not divest it of the Smell and Fat of the Soil which produces it. Besides, the Air would not dry it, for 'tis commonly hot and moist, except when the fresh Winds blow from *Ethiopia*; but our Author says, that

Digitized by Google

that Air does not dry it as it should be, therefore the Workmen are obliged to lay it upon low Planks shut up close all round, and to lay Branches of great dry Trees upon them, which, when kindled, produce neither Flame nor Smoke, but burn like Coals. By this Means they dry their Sugar as it were in Stoves, and keep it in close Places, lest the Air should enter; for then it would soon dissolve, as it will certainly do after it has been kept two or three Years. They had no Ginger here before 'twas planted by the *Portuguese*. In 1645, there were 54 Sugar-Mills in this Island, each of which had a Month marked for grinding, and might all together furnish every Year 6 or 700 Load of black Sugar, more or less, according as the Canes thriv'd. There were 61 Mills before; but they were ruin'd by the *Dutch* in 1610, and continued useless a long Time for want of Coppers, Cauldrons, and other Necessaries, and Slaves to work them. The Corn they sow never comes to Perfection, but only yields a long Stalk without Ear or Grain, because the Soil is too fat and moist. They have a great many Vines, which bear all the Year white and black Grapes, some ripe, others unripe and in Blossom, for they never thrive. They have sweet and sower Oranges, Limons, and Coco-Nuts, and their Water-Melons are ripe in *June*, *July*, and *August*. For want of Corn, the Inhabitants use Batata's, which they call Ignames, and are their common Food instead of Bread. There are four Sorts on t us'd here, which all take their Names from the Places from whence they are brought. One Sort is sweeter than the rest, and another keeps longest. They also plant the Root Mandihoca, which they grind into Meal; but the Inhabitants eat very little, and send most Part on't to *Angola*. When 'tis at its highest Growth, 'tis as big as a Man's Arm or Leg, and from one to three Foot high. They dry it as soon as 'tis grated, and they eat as much as they please on't without any Harm. It produces Banana's, Bacoves, Cusco Apples, two or three Sorts of Jojoos or little Beans, of which they make good Putties, and *Turkey* Wheat or Maiz, which serves them instead of Corn. There's also a Tree called *Pessigot*, whose Fruit that grows along its Stem or Trunk looks like Bottles of Water, and has Leaves at the End of its Branches. The Fruit is cover'd with Hairs, which they cut off before they eat it. They are pretty fleshy, have a tender Kernel, and are very sweet and refreshing. They have another Fruit called *Gola*, which grows upon a great Tree. 'Tis as big as a Nut, and lies in a palish green Husk as big as one's Arm, and a Foot and a half long. It properly consists but of red Pippins, with 4 or 5 Angles, cover'd with a white Skin, and placed near one another. The Negroes eat them. They have a bitterish Taste like raw Chesnuts, which turns sweet if you drink a Glass of Water upon it. They drive a great Trade with these Fruits, and carry a vast Quantity of them to *Loando St. Paulo* in their Husks, that they may keep the longer. There are a great many Palm-Trees, from whence the Inhabitants draw their Wine, and make Oil of the Kernels, which they send to *Angola*. They have abundance of Cotton, which they manufacture for little dark Stuffs, and others of a Sky Blue, for their own Use, like those of *Benin*; but they are much coarser, and of a worse Dye. They drive a profitable Trade with them to *Loando St. Paulo*.

Besides Swine, *La Croix* says they have Cows, Sheep, Goats, and small red Horses. Among other Fowls and Birds, they have *Turkey* Hens, Geese, Ducks, Turtles, Hens, Thrushes, and Starlings. The Rivers are full of Fish. In short, our Author thinks this Island would deserve to be called a Terrestrial Paradise, if the Temper of the Air was answerable to its Abundance of Animals and Fruits. He says, the Land Crevisses are of a greenish Colour, like those of the Sea, gnaw the Plants, and do abundance of Mischief. Their Flies are much bigger than ours, and are very troublesome to those who go into the Forrests to cut Wood for boiling the Sugar. Some Years ago there was abundance of Ants, that gnaw'd all the Sugar Canes they could find; but they dy'd as soon as the Weather began to change. There are also Rats and Worms, which do great Mischief to the Sugars.

The Inhabitants, says the same Author, are the *Portuguese* who first discover'd and peopled it, and Negroes brought hither from *Angola* to work. Those descended from *Portuguese* Parents, notwithstanding their

Digitized by Google

their long Residence in the Country, are as white as those born in *Portugal*; but those born of a *Portuguese* and a Negro are brown or tawny, and called *Mulatto's*. They usually send hither from *Lovando St Paulo* near 5000 young Negro Slaves to bring them up. Those who are originally *Portuguese* imitate the *Portuguese* Habit, as do also the trading Negroes and their Children; but the Slaves of both Sexes go stark naked, except a Rag of Linen or Palm-Tree Cloth before their Privy Parts. Their common Drink is Palm-Tree Wine, Water, or Goat's Milk. In the extreme Heats, 5 or 6 Families join and dine together with their Wives and Children in a Place under Ground, whither they bring their Necessaries, and sit round a long Table.

Their chief Merchandize is black Sugar, of which they export to *Europe* every Year 200000 Arobs, each 32 Pounds Weight, packed up in Leaves. Those who live far within the Island bring it in Canoes along the Rivers to the Town; but those who live nearer bring it in Waggons drawn by Oxen. Their other Merchandize is Cotton, Stuffs, Colas, and the like. Those which the *Portuguese* bring, as the *Dutch* did before, consist in Cloths of *Holland*, *Rouen*, &c. Threads of all Colours, Serges, Silk Stockings, *Leyden* Camlets, Serges of *Mesmes*, mix'd Serges of *Saignour*, Hatchets, Bills, Iron, Salt, Olive-Oil, red Copper in Plates, Copper Cauldrons, Pitch and Tar, Cordage, Sugar-Mills made of Earth from 25 to 30 Livres apiece, Aquavitæ, and all Sorts of Distill'd Liquors, *Canary* Wines, Olives, Capers, fine Flower, Butter, Cheese, and the like.

The Yearly Revenues which the *Portuguese* draw from hence amount to a pretty good Sum. All the Merchandizes which they export (for those that they import pay nothing, only what they pay in *Portugal*,) are to pay a Tenth to the King, whether they are sold for ready Money, or exchang'd for Sugar, Palm-Oil, or Stuffs. Those who fish by the Shore with a Net give one Fifth of those they catch, and the others who fish at Sea with Canoes pay 3 *d.* a Week; besides, something is paid to the King out of all Plants.

La Croix tells us, that all the Inhabitants are *Roman* Catholicks, except Slaves, or such Merchants as have no fix'd Residence here. The Ecclesiastical Government belongs to a Bishop, whose Seat is in the Capital, and is Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Lisbon*. The Temporal Government is in the Hands of the *Portuguese* Viceroy, who also resides in the Capital, and of a Corregidor or Judge, who administers Justice. The Differences of all the Inhabitants, both in Town and Country, are carried first to the Governor of the Island to be determin'd before him, from whence there's an Appeal to *Lovando St. Paulo* without Resort. The Inhabitants are obliged to keep the Governor's House, Castle, and the *Corps de Guard*, from Fire, and are obliged to rebuild the Palace at their own Charge, as well as to keep in Repair all the Ways and Bridges built about the Town and Country, to facilitate the Transportation of Merchandizes, and the Passage of Horses and Waggons; but our Author observes, 'tis impossible to keep the Ways good during the great Rains from *December* to *April*.

He adds, that while there was a Treaty of Truce on foot between the Crown of *Portugal* and the States General, (tho' the Reasons of the War were still in Force) the *Dutch* took this Island in *October* 1641, after 40 Days Siege, under Admiral *Jol* before-mentioned, who landing with his Men two Leagues from the Town notwithstanding the Resistance of the Negroes, took the Cover'd-Way of the Castle, which was destitute of Men and Ammunition, and fortified only with 6 Cannon; after which they attacked the great Fort, that was encompassed with a Wall of 20 Foot high; but were obliged to retire with considerable Loss, after an obstinate Dispute, for want of Ladders to scale the Walls. However they enter'd the Town without Resistance, the Burghers and Soldiers who were to defend it being fled. Some Days after the Garrison of the Fort, being attacked all that Time from a Battery of 6 Pieces, capitulated, and the Governor went out with 80 Men, Negroes, Whites, and *Mulatto's*, and embarked, according to the Agreement, for *Lisbon*, with 25 of the King's Soldiers. The *Dutch* found in the Place 36 great Cannon, of which 20 were of Brass, with a great Quantity of Powder, Match, and Ball; but they had scarce Provisions for a Month.

Digitized by Google

Then the *Dutch* Admiral ſummoned all the *Portugueſe* that had left the Town to appear in a Fortnight, to treat of Amity. Two of the chief Burghers came accordingly, and for 55000 Croiſadoes, and 10000 Arobs of Sugar, purchaſed the Preſervation of their Mills, and the Enjoyment of their ancient Laws and Liberties, on Condition that the Conquerors ſhould have all the King's Revenues and Treaſure. Several of the Negroes and Proprietors of the Sugar-Mills obtained Leave to retire with Paſſports. Our Author tells us, that the *Dutch* took this Iſland before under Admiral *Verdoes*, formerly mentioned, in 1610, and made themſelves Maſters of the two Caſtles, one of which ſurrender'd after they had landed 7 Cannon, and the other was abandon'd by the Garriſon. Then the Town refuſing to give 10000 Ducats to ranſom it from being plunder'd, was laid flat in Aſhes, and a Booty was carried on board, conſiſting of 1000 Cheſts of Sugar, a great Quantity of Ivory, Silk and Woollen Stuffs, and 25 Cannon.

Some ſay this Iſland is 30, others 40, and others 60 Miles in Diameter, and that 'tis 180 Miles in Compaſs. The *Sanſons* encline to the latter, and ſay the Town has 700 Houſes, and ſome Forts to defend the Haven; that the Iſland formerly furniſh'd 150000 Arobs of Sugar; that the *French* import here Meal, Stuffs, Beads, Glaſs-Bowls, and Shells, which are current in *Ethiopia* inſtead of Money; that the Inhabitants trade to the Rivers of *Boreo*, *Campo St. Benito*, *St. Juan*, and the Iſle of *Coriſco*; and that they reckon their Pork a nicer Dainty than their Fowls. *Nieuhoff*, who was here in 1640, makes it 36 Leagues in Compaſs, and ſays, the high Mountains in the Middle of it are always cover'd with Snow, which melts down and moiſtens the Sugar-Fields below; and that the Fogs here diſperſe at 10 a Clock in the Morning; but they are not ſeen at Sea. In his Time there were above 60 Sugar Mills there, and the Town contained 800 Houſes and 3 Churches. Its firſt Inhabitants were *Jews* baniſh'd out of *Portugal*, who have a very odd Complexion, and there's abundance of Negroes among the Mountains, who are run away from the *Portugueſe*, and make Excurſions ſometimes to the City Gates. *Loyer* ſays, the Town is alſo called by the Name of the Iſland; and *Merry* obſerves, that the *Portugueſe* Name *Povoaſon* ſignifies a Colony. The latter ſays, that *European* Women who live here are ſubject to Iſſues of Blood, which kill them after 3 or 4 Years Stay here, ſo that the *Portugueſe* have choſe rather to marry with the Women of *Congo*. He adds, that the *Dutch* firſt took it in 1599, and then abandon'd it, but took it again in 1641, and the *Portugueſe* retook it ſince by Force of Arms. He places it 180 Miles from the Coaſt of *Africa*. *Heylin* ſays, that on the W. Side of the Iſland there's a high Pike, which is very ſmall and ſtrait like a Church Steeple, and this he places exactly under the Line. Two or Three Hundred Slaves belong to each Sugar-houſe. He obſerves, that the Art of Boiling and Refining Sugars was firſt found out by a *Venetian*, who is ſaid to have got above 100000 Crowns by it, and to have left his Son a Knight, before which our Anceſtors us'd rough Sugar, as it came from the Canes, or elſe Honey.

Boſman obſerves, this Iſland was ſo fatal to the *Dutch*, his Countrymen, when they were here, that in *Europe* they called it the *Dutch* Church-yard. He ſays, the Valleys are full of thick ſtinking Miſts in the hotteſt Time of the Day, and that ſome of the *Portugueſe* bleed themſelves 50 times a Year. They have great Plenty of Cattle, larger and finer than thoſe on the Gold Coaſt. He was here about 1699, when he ſays there were two Convents, one of St. *Peter*, and the other of *St. Auguſtin*. He adds, that the *Portugueſe* Ships in their Paſſage to the *Weſt-Indies*, and indeed all that by reaſon of contrary Winds cannot reach *Prince*'s Iſland, put in here for Refreſhment. Mr. *Robotier*, in his Map of Commerce ſays, they ſend 50 Ships every Year laden with Sugar from hence to *Spain* and *Portugal*.

4. *ANNOBON*, *ANNOBOON*, or *ANNABOA Iſland.*

The Name ſignifies a good Year. *Oliver Nouts* places it S. Lat. 2. When Mr. *Adams* and his Company, who ſerved the *Dutch*, were here in 1598, he ſays they found Peeves, Oranges, and other Fruits, but an unhealthy Air. They took the Town, conſiſting

sisting of 80 Houses. He adds, that betwixt this and 4 Deg. of S. Lat. they had always S.E. and S.S.E. Winds. *De la Val*, who was here in 1601, says, 'twas possessed by the *Portuguese*, who had a Viceroy here, that had the Gift on't from the King of *Spain*, the other *Portuguese* who inhabit it being only his Factors and Commissaries. The Natives, who are all Negroes, are his Slaves, and go naked, but cover their Privities with Cotton. Their Women's Breasts are very long, so that they carry their Children upon their Backs, and suckle them over the Shoulder. He places it in Lat. 2 ½, and makes it 5 or 6 *French* Leagues in Circumference, and 2 in Length. He says, 'tis high, mountainous, and always green. There's a Road on the N. W. Side, but 'tis dangerous, because of Flats and Rocks. It abounds with Fruit and Cotton, in which all the Revenues are paid. Mr. *Ovington*, who was here in 1689, makes the Circumference 10 Leagues, and says it had this Name because 'twas discover'd on New-Year's-Day. Provisions are so plenty, if we may believe him, that a Sheet of Paper will purchase a roasting Pig. It yields a fragrant Smell of fresh Herbs and Flowers 3 Leagues distance at Sea. When he was entring the Harbour, the Inhabitants made Fires on the Shore in the Night to give him Light, and sent him a Canoo with Oranges and Fowls, rowed by 6 Men, born in *Africa*, who confessed themselves to be *Romans*; but such Heathens, that they scarce knew what the Mass meant, nor the Pope from the Great Mogul. Our Author says, contrary to Mr. *Adams*, that the Air is very healthy, but the People very poor. He adds, that there's a convenient Road here on the Lee-Side, as Providence has order'd it in *St. Thomas*, *Ascension*, *St. Helena*, *St. Jago*, and many other Islands, where the Winds generally hang towards one Quarter.

La Croix places this Island 25 Leagues from the Isle of *St. Thomas*, and 45 from Cape *Lopez Gonsalves*, upon the Continent. He says, here are several Springs and Brooks of fresh Water, which turn Salt in the New and Full Moon, when the Tide is high. It has some Mountains which reach to the Clouds, whose Tops are always cover'd with Snow. Both the Hills and Valleys abound with all Sorts of Plants, and yield a charming Prospect. The Sides of the Rivulets are planted with Palm-Trees, from whence the Inhabitants draw their Wine, Ignames, Infantas, Potatoes, Bananas, Ananas, Oranges, Sugar-Canes, and Tamarinds. They have also Rice, Maiz or *Turkey* Corn, several Sorts of Beans, small black purging Nuts, and all other Kinds of Plants. Here are a great many Wild-Boars, Deer, and Goats, Hens, Pigeons, black and white Herons, and several other Birds. The Sea abounds with several Sorts of Fish and Oysters. *Mercator* and others say, this Island is both uncultivate and uninhabited, which is false, for *La Croix* tells us it is very populous. 'Tis true, some Years only a few *Portuguese* liv'd here, with 50 or 60 Negroes, upon Tillage and Fishing. But the *Dutch* in 1605 found two *Portuguese* and 200 Negroes here. The Town is encompassed with a Parapet, and contains 100 Houses built with Canes, except some Timber ones which belong to the *Portuguese*. The *Samsons* say, that in 1623 the *Dutch* Fleet had 200000 Oranges from hence in less than 4 Days, and there are some here which weigh 12 Ounces. *Heylin* says, there's abundance of Crocodiles and other venomous Creatures about the Shore, which destroy the Fish. *Bosman*, who was here in 1699, says, 'tis frequented by a great Number of Ships, as well those bound from *Guinea*, as those bound to *Angola* and the *East-Indies*. He tells us, 'tis better stocked with Cattle and Fruit than *St. Thomas*'s or *Prince*'s Island; but not above half so big as either. 'Tis commonly cover'd with a thick Mist like the former, yet the *Portuguese* here say 'tis more wholesome. The Land is full as high as *St. Thomas*, and the *Portuguese* report, that in the highest Place on't there's a Lake of very good fresh Water, about which the Air is cold as the severest Autumns in *Holland*. The Soil is good half-way up the Hills, therefore the *Portuguese* have till'd it so far; but below it seems dry and barren, tho 'tis all over planted with Fruit-Trees, particularly Coco's, Limons, and Bakovens, so that 100 Coco Nuts are sold for a Rixdollar, 1000 Oranges or Limons at the same Rate, and other Fruits in Proportion. In short, our Author calls it *Amalthea* and *Cornucopia*. They exchange their Hogs, Sheep, &c. for old Linen and Woollen

Digitized by Google

Woollen Clothes. The Inhabitants are Negroes, except the *Portugueſe*, who treat them as Slaves, becauſe they are deſcended from thoſe Slaves which they firſt ſet on the Iſland, and they are all of them thieving Rogues. The Women are common Whores, and almoſt all of them very ugly. The *Portugueſe* Governor has the honourable Title of Governador; but our Author ſays, he that had this high Poſt in his Time was ſo poor, that he would have been glad of a Crown, and ſo little reverenced, that he believed his Subjects would have broke his Head, and ſurrender'd the Iſland to our Author, if he had deſir'd them, becauſe being appointed a Rent-gatherer by the Proprietor of the Iſland, who was a *Portugueſe*, to collect a Third of all their Cattle, Fruit, and Income, he fleeced the Inhabitants of one half, which has made him ſo hated, that they want to be rid of him. But our Author obſerves, it would not be ſerviceable to any Nation; for unleſs the Negroes are tranſported, they would fly on the leaſt Difference with the Poſſeſſors to the Hills, which no *Europeans* could approach, and from thence oblige them to abandon it, as he ſays they ſerved the *Engliſh* when we were in Poſſeſſion of it. There were two *Capuchin* Prieſts here, great Brandy Drinkers, who were very profuſe of their Holy Water, and ſhew'd him their Churches, which were very handſome, and large enough for four times the Number of Inhabitants then on the Iſland. There were ſome ſmall Cannon, which they took out of a little *French* Pyrate that ſtranded here. One *Tho. Kent*, an *Engliſh* Captain here, at that Time, agreed to carry the Men and their Booty to the *French* Iſlands for Part of the Prey: Accordingly the Men put their Goods on board; but Captain *Kent* fir'd upon them as they were going to embark, and obliged them to keep aſhore, while he and his Men ſailed away with their Goods. *Merdn* ſays, the *Portugueſe* live towards the N. Part of the Iſland.

5. ROLLES *Iſland.*

Mandelſloe places it 35 Leag. S. of *St. Thomas* Iſland, and ſays, it abounds with Oranges, Citrons, Bananas, Ananas, Ginger, Poultry, Hogs, and other freſh Proviſions; that 'tis one of the moſt convenient Places for Ships to refreſh themſelves in; and that it has a commodious Haven at 10 Fathom Water. *La Croix* ſays, it lies three Muſket-ſhots from *St. Thomas*, and that there are 7 Rocks that appear above Water betwixt it and *Ilha del Cabres*; but that there's good Anchorage and Paſſage for Ships betwixt this and *St. Thomas*. He adds, that there's another called *Goat Iſland*, the ſame Diſtance from *St. Thomas*, which is hilly, and full of wild Limon-Trees. There's the ſame good Road betwixt both Iſlands.

6. CARACOMBO.

La Croix places this Iſland at the Mouth of a River near the Equinoctial, lower than the Iſland *Ferdinand Po*, below the River of *Gaba* or *Gabon*, and ſays, it abounds with Fruits unknown to *Europeans*, and ſeveral Sorts of Birds and other Animals, ſo that ſometimes (if we may believe *Linſchotten*) there are 100 Birds-Neſts on one Branch, wonderfully ſecured from Serpents and Lizards. *La Croix* tells us, that the Women here proſtitute themſelves publickly to all Comers. Some of the Men went aboard a *Dutch* Veſſel here, with a Drum and a hollow Stick inſtead of a Flute, a green Bow with a Bell, and certain little Birds of the Size of a Sparrow, which they let fly about the Veſſel, while they tingled the Bell, which the *Dutch* interpreted as Tokens of their Friendſhip, and gave them a Pot of Palm Wine. Then ſome *Dutchmen* landed with them to truck Iron for Ivory, and when they came to their Village, they ſaw a little Houſe 3 Foot high, cover'd at the Top, but open on one Side. There was a ſort of Gallows on the Top, with a little Net ſpread over it; but they would not ſuffer any one to lift it up to ſee what was under. Over againſt this there was a Child's Skull upon a Stick, with a Bone in one of the Balls of its Eyes, and ſeveral others near it, the Earth being cover'd with Fiſh and other Animals, which made them believe it to be ſome Burial Ground. He adds, that the Inhabitants obſerve Circumciſion, tho' they live without Faith and Religion.

Before we leave this Gulph, we will give a brief Account of the merry Cuſtom us'd by Sailors when they paſs the Line.

Angelo, a *Capuchin*, and Miſſionary to *Congo*, ſays, that the *Portugueſe*, who have never been under the Line, muſt give the Sailors Money or a Treat, not excepting the Admiral or *Capuchins* themſelves, of whom they take Beads, *Agnus Dei's*, or the like, which are ſold for Money, wherewith they purchaſe Maſſes for the Souls in Purgatory. If any Man refuſe to pay this Duty, the Sailors in the Habit of Officers carry him bound to a Tribunal, where a Seaman ſits as Judge in a long Robe, examines him, and orders him to be thrice ducked in the Sea after this Manner: The condemn'd Perſon is ty'd faſt with a Rope, and the other End of it run thro' a Pully at the Yard-Arm, by which he is hoiſted up, and then plunged three times under Water. Our Author obſerves, that there ſeldom fails one or other that thus expoſes himſelf to the Diverſion of the reſt, and that the ſame Cuſtom is practis'd in paſſing the Streights of *Gibraltar* and the Cape of *Good Hope*. *Merolla*, another Miſſionary, ſays, 'tis a ſort of Court erected by Conſent of Commanders of Ships; that there are two Judges who ſit at a Table, examine and lay a Mulct upon thoſe that have not paſſed the Line, according to their Quality, as if they had omitted an indiſpenſible Duty; and that the Money ſo raiſed is laid out in maintaining a Church. *Le Maire* ſays, this Ceremony is called Baptiſm, and us'd by all Sailors; and that 'tis alſo put in Practice upon all that never yet paſſed the Tropick. He gives a particular Deſcription on't as follows: They ſet a great Tub of Water at the Foot of the Main-maſt, with a Stick laid acroſs it: Then thoſe that have been already *Seaſon'd* in former Voyages ſmut their Faces, and walk in ſtately Proceſſion round the Deck with Cutlaſſes, Frying-pans, and other Kitchen Utenſils, and the Sound of Drums and Trumpets. The Pilot diſtinguiſhes himſelf by turning his Coat, and carrying a Rag for his Colours. When the Proceſſion is over, they baptize the Ship, by ſlinging Pails of Water about the Deck, till the Captain gives the Crew ſome Drink and Money. Then they go firſt to the moſt conſiderable Men aboard, and make them ſit one after another upon the Stick juſt now mention'd. The Mob gets about him with a Baſon to receive what they call his Baptiſmal Offering, holding a Scymiter acroſs his Neck. Then the Pilot brings his Book of Charts, and makes the Patient put his Hand upon the Tropick Line, and ſwear to obſerve the ſame Ceremony for the future to thoſe that are freſh Travellers. At laſt they mark his Forehead with a black Croſs, ſling a little Water upon his Head, and diſmiſs him, after a Preſent thrown into the Baſon. Thus they uſe Men of Note very civilly; but if he be a mean Man, and will not pay ſomething, they draw the Stick from under him, ſouce him into the Tub, ſling Buckets of Water on him, and thump him with the Stick he ſate upon. *Leguat*, who agrees pretty well in the Deſcription, ſays, 'tis an ancient Cuſtom, that they make rough Muſick with the Kitchen-Veſſels; that he was diſcharged from all this Penance for a Crown; and that the Captain was obliged to give Drink and Money to the Sailors to ſave the Beakhead of his Ship, for elſe they pretended they had a Right to cut it off. He obſerves, that every Nation practiſes this ridiculous Cuſtom after a different Manner. Captain *Rogers*, Commander of the *Duke* Frigat, who begun a Voyage round the World in 1708 from *Kingroad* near *Briſtol* along with the Ship *Dutcheſs*, and was preſent at the taking of the famous *Acapulco* Ship, ſays, that 60 of his Company were ducked after this Manner, and that others choſe to pay Half a Crown Fine to be ſpent at a publick Meeting of all the Ships Companies when they returned to *England*, and that ſome deſir'd to be duck'd 8 or a dozen times to have the better Title to the Treat.

VI. *The Iſlands againſt* Caffaria.

The chief are, 1. *St.* MATTHEW's or *St.* MATHEO.

Hylin ſays, 'twas diſcover'd much about the ſame time with the Iſlands in the Gulph of *Guinea*, and on the Feſtival of its own Name, according to *La Croix*, who places it in S. Lat. 1. 50. He ſays, the *Portugueſe* lived here ſome Years, and that it has a Brook

Digitized by Google

Brook or Lake of freſh Water, Fruits, Fowls, Wild-Beaſts, and Fiſh; but that 'tis now deſert.

2. *ASCENSION* or *ACEMSAON.*

Admiral *Beaulieu* ſays, 'tis very high, and has good Anchorage over againſt a ſandy Creek, but has no Wood, freſh Water, Herbs, nor nothing except dry Rocks and Mountains, but not ſo high as thoſe of *St. Helena*, thô 'tis larger. Nevertheleſs it affords ſome Hogs, and a great many Fowls as big as Geeſe, with abundance of Fiſh, particularly Flying ones, and Tortoiſes upon the Rocks and in the Road, which are eaten either freſh or ſalted. He places it in S. Lat. 8. and makes it 8 Leagues in Circumference. *Purchas* ſays, 'twas diſcover'd about 1501 by *John de Nova*, a *Portugueſe*, and on the Feſtival ſo call'd, according to *Herbert*, who places it Lat. 7. about 720 Miles N. W from *St. Helena*, and makes it above 30 Miles in Compaſs, but ſays, it has nothing remarkable. *Mandelſlo* makes the Diſtance from *St. Helen*'s 190 *Spaniſh* Leagues, and places it Lat. 8 ½. *Struys* ſays, ſome of the Tortoiſes are two or three Hundred Weight, and that the Mountains are full of Birds-Neſts. *Navarette*, a *Dominican* Friar and *Spaniſh* Miſſionary, who was here about 1673. ſays, there's a high Pyramidical Mountain near the Bay of Anchorage, with two great Croſſes on the Top, ſet up by the *Portugueſe*. He places this Iſland almoſt Half-way between *Guinea* on the E. and *Braſil* on the W. which are 400 Leagues aſunder. He ſays, thoſe that ſail this Way leave Letters in Bottles, and put them in a ſafe Place where they may be ſeen, to inform the next that come who are gone by, and the Succeſs of their Voyage. *Heylin* ſays, 'twas diſcover'd by *Triſtan d'Acuna* in 1508. *Morery* places it but 100 Leagues from *Braſil*, makes it 4 Leagues long, and one broad, and ſays, that Rain-Water ſtinks here in 24 Hours. M. *Rennefort* places this Iſland Lat. 7. 40. and Long 7. 36. and ſays, he anchor'd here on the N Side, when ſo many Thouſand Birds crying like Crows, perch'd about the Rigging, that the Seamen, *&c.* killed 500 in a quarter of an Hour, and ſtunn'd as many others, ſo that they could only flutter about the Ship, where they entangled and took them. They were ſo troubleſome when aſhore, that they ſtruck off People's Hats and Caps, ſo that there was no Paſſage without beating the Air. They roaſted ſome of them, which were very bitter, lean, and taſted of the Sea. He makes this Iſland but 7 Leagues in Compaſs, and ſays, there's very white Salt here, form'd by the Sun between the Rocks on the Shore. The Anchorage is from 14 to 17 Fathom, on a red ſandy Bottom; the Croſſes on the Mountain above-mentioned are of Fir, the leaſt very ancient, and cover'd with obſcure Characters; but on the biggeſt, which was new, there was *October* 23, 1669 and ſeveral Names, beſides this Inſcription the Year after, *viz. June* 24, 1670 *the* French *Ship* la Force *anchor'd here, and fiſh'd for Tortoiſes.* He adds, 'tis a little bigger than *St. Helena*, and not ſo mountainous, but has more barren Plains, and abundance of tame Sea-Birds, particularly thoſe called *Boobies*, which freely ſuffer themſelves to be touch'd. Mr. *Ovington* ſays, that notwithſtanding its Sterility, 'tis generally us'd by our homeward-bound *Eaſt India* Ships as a Place of Refreſhment. The Soil is cover'd with Cinders and Aſhes, which makes ſome think here was once a Vulcano; yet in ſome Parts 'tis fit for Tillage, and has a ſafe convenient Harbour, where the Mariners ſometimes hunt and feed upon Turtles for 10 or 15 Days together, which they reckon both pleaſant and wholeſome Food. There are a few Goats here, but they are lean. Our Author ſays, when the Hunters turn the Tortoiſes upon their Backs, they ſhed abundance of Tears; that they are ſo ſtrong beyond the Proportion of their Size, that ſome not above 8 Inches broad are able to bear the Weight of a Man, and ſo hardy, that after their Necks have been cut off, except by a ſmall Piece of Skin, and their Guts taken out, ſome of them have open'd their Mouths, and their Hearts have moved for two or three Hours, tho' out of the Body. Nay, he ſays, that ſome have lived 12 Hours after their Heads were off. He diſtinguiſhes the Turtles or Sea-Tortoiſes into three Sorts, *viz.* the Hawk Bill, the Loggerhead, and the Green Turtle, which ſwim in the Water, and creep and eat Graſs on Land. They have two Fins before like

Digitized by Google

Wings, and two broad and long ones behind like Feet. Their Head and Eyes are like thoſe of a Hawk. Their Fleſh is white, better than Veal, and is ſaid to be good againſt the Scurvy and foul Diſeaſe; yet the *Dutch* won't touch them, and the *French* are ſo barbarous, that when they have turn'd more than they can ſpend upon their Backs, they ſail away, and leave the reſt to ſtarve and ſtink above Ground. But our Author ſays, the *Engliſh* turn no more than they have Occaſion for. He tells us, the Place here where the Mariners leave their Letters is called the *Poſt-Office*, and ſays they are commonly put in a cloſe cork'd Bottle, which the next that comes breaks, and leaves another in its ſtead. *Du Pleſſis* places this Iſland in Lat. 4.

3. *St.* HELENA *or St.* HELEN's *Iſland.*

Columbus ſays, that in 1497 a Skirmiſh happen'd here between the Negroes and the *Portugueſe* under *Vaſco de Gama*, in which many of the latter were wounded by the ſharp long Poles darted by the Negroes, and forced to abandon the Iſland. Mr. *Francis Pretty*, who accompanied Mr. *Candiſh* of *Suffolk*, the ſecond Admiral that ſailed round the World, ſays, there's Anchorage here in 12 Fathom Water, in a good Bay, under the N. W. Side of the Iſland, two or three Cables Length from the Shore. He places it as it were in the midſt between Cape *Negro* in *Guinea*, and *Rio Grande* in *Braſil*, in S. Lat. 15. 48. and between 5 and 600 Leagues from the Cape of *Good Hope*. He ſays, that in 1588, when he was here, there was a Church with a fair Cauſey leading to it, a Frame with two Bowls, and a Free-ſtone Croſs near it, and the Inſide was hung with painted Cloths, having an Altar with the Virgin *Mary*, and the Story of the Crucifixion pictur'd in a Table. It ſtood in a very pleaſant Valley, full of choice Fruit-Trees and Plants, like a Garden, particularly Limon, Orange, Citron, Pomegranate, Date, and Fig-Trees, nicely trimm'd in long Rows, that preſented the Eye with Bloſſoms, green and ripe Fruit all at once. It was water'd by ſeveral ſmall Streams, proceeding from a clear Spring that roſe at a Diſtance, and in ſhort every Part of the Garden was bleſſed with the Productions either of Art or Nature. From hence 'twas called *Church* or *Chapel Valley*. The Iſland abounded with Partridges and Pheaſants, much larger and fairer than ours, and black and white Turkies with red Heads; but their Eggs are quite white; and wild Goats as big as Aſſes, with Horſes Manes and Beards down to the Ground, which ſometimes go together in a Herd that reaches a Mile in Length. There are alſo vaſt Herds of fat Swine, that keep chiefly upon the Mountains, as the Cabrito's do; but they are ſo wild, that there's no coming near them, except when they are aſleep, or rumbling in the Mire. He adds, that the Wind is commonly off the Shore here. Admiral *Noort*, who was here in 1599, ſays, they refreſhed themſelves with good Water, Fiſh, and ſome Fleſh, but could not meet with any Cabrito's or Fowl, (which are both hard to be taken) nor no Oranges. Mr. *Davis* of *Limehouſe* places it in Lat. 16. and Long. 4. 30. E. from the *Lizard*, and 23 ½. W. from the Cape of *Good Hope*, and ſays, 'tis one of the beſt Iſlands in the Ocean for a good Air, Road, and Refreſhment; that the Anchorage is in a good ſafe Ground, from 7 to 12 Fathom; and that the Variation here is 7 Deg and a half from N. to E. Mr. *Halley* ſays, that about 1600, the Needle declin'd 8 Deg. to the E. in 1623, but 6; in 1677, but 40 Min. and in 1692, 1 Deg. W. of the N. Admiral *Beaulieu*, who was here in 1623, ſays, there's good Fiſhing here, and ſeveral choice Herbs, *viz.* Purſlain, abundance of Tarragon, ſome Fenugreek, Tobacco, and Mayoc; that here are ſome Pigeons and Oxen; and that thô the Iſland is mountainous, and looks as if it was wither'd, yet there's a great deal of Moiſture on the Top, and not a Gap or Valley without a Brook or Rivulet, the greateſt of which runs in the above mentioned Valley, where a Chapel is built, tho' the Valley is not above 150 Paces broad, and 1000 long. He adds, that there's a ragged Cleft-hill of Rocks at the End on't, upon which a Stream of Water falls down from a very high Mountain; and that the Needle vary'd here in his Time 5 Deg. ½. N E and has always the Wind at S. E. *De la Val* makes its Diſtance from the Cape of *Good Hope* quite 600 Leagues. He ſays, that upon the Altar of a Chapel here he found

Digitized by Google

found several Letters, advising that the *Dutch* had passed this Way, and that the Air, Fruit, Flesh, and Water, of this Island, are so healthy, that his Men, who were much oppressed with the Scurvy, recover'd here in 9 Days. *Purchas* says, this Island was found in 1501 by *John de Nova*, a *Portuguese*. Sir *Thomas Herbert* says, it lies in a rough Sea, without any Isles near it, and that 'twas so called by *John de Nova* on *May* 3, the Day which is dedicated to the Empress *Helena*, the Mother of *Constantine the Great*. He places it Long. 22. W. or 1740 Miles from the Cape of *Good Hope*, 400 Leagues from the Continents of *Africa* and *America*, 3000 Miles from *Madagascar*, 6600 from *Surat*, 6900 from *Bantam*, and 4500 from the Land's-End in *Cornwal*. He says, 'tis not above 30 Miles in Compass, but very high, and blessed with moderate Rains. The Sea here is very deep, so that the Tide is hardly visible, and there's bad Anchorage, except at the N. W. where 'tis 20 Fathom, so that he advises to carry the Anchors ashore. The Land is so steep and difficult of Ascent, that the Sailors say, *That a Man may chuse whether he will break his Heart in going up, or his Neck in going down.* But he says when a Man is up, no Place can yield him a better Prospect. The Land is very plain at Top: It has some Springs, which tho' sweet at their Rising, become brackish by running thro' the Salt Hills, and drawing near the Sea. There are but two Rivulets of Note, *viz.* one running down to the Chapel which was built by the *Spaniards* in 1571, but pulled down by the *Dutch*, and put to common Uses, the other running into *Limon Valley*, so called from a Limon Tree growing there. There are the Ruins of a little Town demolished by the *Spaniards*, because it was a Magazine of a private Trade from both the *Indies*; but there are no other Monuments or Antiquities. There were no Inhabitants in our Author's Time, and he saw none of the Fruits mention'd by Mr. *Candish*, except one Limon-Tree, but Store of Pouts, Quails, and Hens, among other Birds, and Plenty of Herbs and Roots sown by a *Portuguese* in 1509, such as Wood-Sorrel, three Leav'd Grass, Basil, Parsley, Mint, Spinage, Fennel, Anniss, Radish, Mustard-Seed, and the like. He adds, that Captain *Parker* found a Mariner here that was left ashore 18 Months before by Captain *Kendal* in 1591, who dy'd with Joy at the Ship's Arrival, for then the Island was uninhabited; and that when he wrote, which was in 1677, the *English* and *Dutch* us'd to dispute the Propriety of this Island with the *Portuguese*. He gives a View of it, for which we refer the Curious to his Book. *Mandelslo* places it in Lat. 16. 12. 350 Leag. from *Augusta* or the Cape of *Angola*, 550 from that of *Good Hope*, and and 510 from *Brasil*, and makes it but 7 Leagues in Compass. Our Author says, that in 1639, when he was here, it excelled most *European* Provinces in the Plenty of Fruits, and all Sorts of Creatures, which some say were first planted and brought hither by the *Portuguese*, and he says they improved to such a degree, that 'twas then able to furnish whole Fleets with Refreshments; Figs, Pomegranates, Oranges, Citrons, Goats, Hogs, *Barbary* Hens, Pheasants, Partridges, Quails, Peacocks, and Pigeons, being to be had here at all Seasons of the Year, besides vast Quantities of Fish and Salt, enough for keeping them. It produces so many wholesome Herbs, that the *Portuguese* used to leave their sick Men here, who certainly recover'd against their coming back the next Year. Its Mountains are so high, that they are seen 14 Leagues off at Sea. The *Portuguese* never attempted to make a Settlement upon it, for fear of giving Umbrage to other Nations trading in these Parts, and because of its great Distance from the Continent. There are daily Showers of Rain, to which, and the Sun's extraordinary Heat at Intervals, he ascribes the Fruitfulness of the Island. He says, Ships may take in fresh Water at the Mouths of three Rivers which rise in the Mountains, and fall into the Sea. They abound with Snakes, which the *Dutch* eat as a better Dainty than Eels. *Struys* says, there's a well tasted Sorrel here, as purgative as Sena.

Navarette observes, that if the *Portuguese* had kept Possession of this Island and the Cape of *Good Hope*, they might easily have lorded it in *India*, because Ships would be at a loss for fresh Water and Provisions; but he says the *Dutch* took it till they six'd at the Cape, when they lost it to the *English*. Nevertheless the *Dutch* retook it afterwards,

Digitized by Google

wards, and the *English* beat them out on't again. *Struys* says, it was retaken from the *English* with about 300 Men the beginning of the Year 1673; but that 'twas surrender'd 4 Months after upon honourable Terms to the *English*, who landed under Captain *Monday*, and climbed up the Rocks in the Night, from whence they fired next Morning on the Fort. *Navarette* tells us, the Island is encompassed with very high Rocks, and looks like a great Castle; and that there's no Harbour, but safe Anchorage in *December*, because then the Winds come over the Island. The *English* in his Time, which was about 1673, lay in a Valley, without Tree, Bush, or a Foot of Strand. There is no Wood, and beyond the Rocks 'tis said there's a pleasant plain Ground, well water'd. Here he says there's a little Town of *English*, who till the Ground, sow Rice, and make Butter and Cheese, and have some Fruit, Swine, and Goats, that were put in by the *Portuguese*. The Governor in his Time was Mr. *Richard Cung*, an *Englishman*, and there was a pretty good Fort and Garrison. He adds, that about 27 Years before, a *Portuguese* Carrack being cast away, the Men set the Swine, Goats, and other Cattle which were aboard, upon the Island, where they increased so fast, that 12 *English* and *Dutch* Ships putting in there soon after, found Provisions enough for them all. Nay, the very Dogs multiplied, and hunted the Calves and Kids. There's abundance of Pigeons here all white, which are called the Pigeons of *St. Helena*, to distinguish them from those that have been carried from several Parts of *India*.

Mr. *Nieuhoff*, who was here in *March* 1658, places it in Lat. 16 ¾. and says, it has many fine Valleys, planted with Oranges, Limons, Pomegranates, and all Sorts of Trees; that there's one called the *Apple Valley*; and that in the *Church Valley* are still to be seen the Ruins of the *Portuguese* Chapel above-mentioned. He tells us, that after the *Portuguese* left the Island, an Hermit here us'd to kill great Number of Goats, and sell their Skins; but the *Portuguese* having Notice on't, remov'd him; and that at another Time some Negroes, with two Female Slaves, got into the Mountains, where they increased to 20, and then were forced away by the same Means. The Valleys are excessive hot, but the Hills are cool enough, and the Springs are so clear, and reckon'd so wholesome, that the Seamen drink and bath in them as soon as they arrive. Their Timber is fit for nothing but to burn. Their wild Hogs are sprung from the tame ones brought over by the *Portuguese*. Their Partridges, Pigeons, and Peacocks, are so tame, that there's no catching them without a good Company. It produces no ravenous nor poisonous Creatures, except large Spiders and Flies; but there are vast Multitudes of Sea Gulls about the Island, which feed upon the Fishes. There are several choice Dying Colours here, especially a good Red, and a fine white Salt form'd by the Sun out of the Sea-Water. The neighbouring Sea is full of Mackarel, Carps, and other Fish, which are only to be catched with the Angle, because 'tis so deep. There are also vast Quantities of Craw-fish, Crabs, Oysters, and Muscles, near the Shore. Our Author gives a View of this Island, for which we refer to himself. Sir *William Monson* makes it but two Miles in Compass, and says, the Fish hereabouts are better tasted and wholesomer than all others. *La Croix* says, there's a great Rock on the S. Side a quarter of a League from the Shore, which is haunted by the greyish Birds call'd *Foals*, and the white and black ones call'd *Frigats*; that the *Apple Valley* is so named, because it yields Fruit enough to load 5 or 6 Ships; that there's good Anchorage on the E. Side of the Chapel close under the Island; that 'tis extraordinary cold upon the Mountains; that the Soil produces wild Pulse in untill'd Places, together with Radishes, Turneps, Cabbages, Ananas, Bananas, Melons, and whole Woods of Orange, Limon, and Pomegranate Trees, which are hung all the Year with Flowers and Fruit, besides great Forrests of Ebony and Lignum Rhodium; and among other Antiscorbutical Herbs, wild *Roman* Cammomile, and Alkekengi. Among other Animals, there are Woodcocks, Wild-Boars of divers Colours, and Horses so wild, that they would sooner fall down the Precipices than be taken. Their Flies are as green as Grashoppers, and there are Thousands of black and grey Water-Hens, that lie about the neighbouring

Digitized by Google

ing Rocks and Islets on the S. There are some Mountains that contain choice Saltpetre, red Bolus, and a fat greyish Clay like *Terra Lemnia*. On the S. E. Side there's a Mountain full of red Earth, and on the E. there's one of a fine Azure Colour, clear at Top, and dark at Bottom. Among other Fish, here are Flying Fish and Breams, which, together with their Mackarel, differ from ours in Colour. Their Snakes are as big as one's Arm, their Oysters are better than ours, and their Muscles stick so fast to the Rocks, that there's no dividing them without a Knife. M. *Rennefort*, who was here in 1666, says, there's a Water-fall between two great Rocks by the *English* Fort, from whence a Current is turned thro Pipes for Mariners to fill their Vessels. The Governor's House is at the Left Hand of the Entrance into the Fort, built after the *English* Model, and cover'd with the Tiles which served to ballast a Ship. There was an Ascent by a Balcony of 6 Steps into a great Hall of Arms, kept in excellent Order. At the 4 Corners, there were 4 Apartments of three Rooms each, hung with *India* Stuffs and *Persian* Tapestry, and furnished with Beds and Seats of grey and black Ebony, turn'd and trimm'd with gilt Buttons. They were adorned with Pictures, particularly that of King *Charles* II. in the best Place of the Governor's Chamber, and that of *Cromwel* at his Bedside upon the Hangings. The Soldiers of the Garrison have 20 Rooms in a Row at the Right Hand of the Fort, which is encompassed with Rocks. It is triangular, and has three Bastions, two of which are mounted with 7 great Iron Cannon pointed towards the Water, and the 3d, which is behind, has four, and would serve instead of a new Fort, if the Place was in Danger. On the Side of the two first there were two Redoubts, with two Cannon each, pointed towards the Sea. There's no Landing-place in all the Island but at this Fort, where the Ascent is with great Danger on the Right Side from Ladder to Ladder for near a quarter of a League. 'Tis so healthy, that for 6 Years, before our Author's Time, there dy'd but one Man, and he killed himself by a Fall in ascending it. Vines will not thrive here, and there are abundance of Rats which gnaw the Rice and Corn. The Governor's Name was *Robert Stringer*, who had a Wife, a Son, and 5 Daughters; but they afterwards went over to *England*. His Lieutenant was *Alex. Bouhler*, and the Inhabitants were about 50 Men and 20 Women, that were maintained with Bisket, Oil, and Salt-Beef, at the Charge of the *English East-India* Company. Most of them had Houses here, and came in their Turns to the Fort to watch and ward; but when a Ship comes in Sight, they all assemble there together in an Instant. Some of them were appointed to take Care of about 80 Bulls and Cows, which multiplied exceedingly, and the Governor kept 4 Women to milk his Cows, and make his Butter. There were also 6 Negroes taken by some *English* Captains at *Madagascar*, and presented to the Governor. He shewed our Author the Rarities of his Cabinet, such as the Skin and Bones of a Sea-Cow, a Flying Fish, Ambergreece, *Indian* Stuffs, 5 Pounds of Civet in a Glass Bottle, a bluish Stone, and other Curiosities. The *French* that accompanied our Author bought Boxes of Civet, Cornelian Rings, Agat Hafts, *China* Sattin, Porcellane, Japan Canes, and other *Indian* Merchandizes, with which the *English* here were well provided. The *French* paid 60 Piasters for two Civet-Cats, and they made the Governor a Present of *Spanish* Wine. In 1670, several Ships were here in the Spring, which made Provisions so dear, that the *English* rated a Calf at 7 *Spanish* Pistoles, and a Kid at 15 Franks. There were no Hens nor Sheep to sell, yet they kept 200 Cows for Butter and Cheese. At that Time there were 34 *English* Men, 14 *English* Women, and 18 Negroes of *Madagascar* and *Angola*. There's good Water to be had on the Left Side of the Entrance into the Fort; but there's no Wood to be got, except in the Mountains a League from the Harbour. That Year some Apple-Trees began to come up, and they gather'd a Bushel of Corn. Our Author makes this Island but 5 Leagues in Compass, and adds, that there are abundance of Rabbets.

Dampier, who was here in 1691, says, the Air is commonly clear, except in the rainy Months, and that there are certain moist Seasons to plant and sow. He extends it 9 or 10 Leagues in Length, and places it 3 or 400 from the main Land. He says, there's

Digitized by Google

there's Landing at two or three Places, and that he was informed there are some Trees in the Valleys fit for Building. This Island has belong'd ever since 'twas taken by Captain *Monday* to the *English East-India* Company, who have strengthen'd it with Men and Guns enough for its Security. The common Landing-place is a Bay like a Half-Moon, scarce 500 Paces wide, between the two Points. Close by the Sea-Side there are good Guns, planted at equal Distances from one End of the Bay to the other, besides a small Fort a little farther from the Sea, near the midst of the Bay, so that 'tis impossible to force it. The small Cove where Captain *Monday* landed his Men when he took the Island, tho' scarce fit for a Boat to land at, is also fortified. The *English* Town here contain'd in our Author's Time 20 or 30 little Houses, whose Walls are built of rough Stone, and but meanly furnished within, for they stand empty except when Ships are here, because the Owners have all Plantations farther in the Island, which afford Potatoes, Yames, Plantanes, and Bonanoes, Plenty of Hogs, Bullocks, Cocks and Hens, Ducks, Geese, and Turkies, which they sell at a low Rate to the Sailors in Exchange for Shirts, Drawers, or any light Clothes, Callicoes, Silks or Muslins, Arack, Sugar, and Lime-Juice: But while our Author was here, they were in Hopes to have Wine and Brandy of their own, for he was told they already began to plant Vines, and had some *Frenchmen* to manage them. There are Sea-Lions here. Most of the Islanders are very poor, but keep several Punch-houses, and have proper comely Daughters, which often marry the Seamen or Passengers, on purpose to see the World.

Mr. *Ovington*, who was here much about the same Time with *Dampier*, brought over several *French* Refugees with him, who were kindly entertained by the Company, and some advanced to considerable Posts. He saw this Island 25 Leagues at Sea. He says, the Serenity and Temperateness of the Air gives the Islanders as fair and fresh a Complexion as those in *England*. He observes, that one Cause of the Poverty of the Place is, because they are not permitted to trade with so much as one single Vessel, and have no Clothes but what are transported from *Europe*, or come by Accident. Nevertheless the Island was very populous at his Arrival, and upon his Enquiry how so many Women came thither, he was told that they were decoyed hither by a false Report spread in *England*, that all the single Men upon the Island were either Commanders or Lord's Sons; whereas they only found them poor honest Husbandmen and Mechanicks. He says, the Soil is fruitful enough to bear many Hundreds for one Grain of *Indian* Corn that is sown in it; but then it requires several Inches of Ground for its Growth, and before it comes to Maturity most Part on't is devour'd by the Rats and other Vermin. Their common Pasture, instead of Grass, is Mint and Purslain. The Company's Affairs here are managed by a Governor, Deputy-Governor, and Storehouse-keeper, who have standing Salaries allow'd by the Company, besides a publick Table well furnish'd, to which all Commanders, Masters of Ships, and eminent Passengers, are welcome. The Natives sometimes call the Results of their Consultations severe Impositions; and tho' Relief may perhaps be had from the Company in *England*, yet he observes that the unavoidable Delays in returning a Redress at that Distance does sometimes put the Addressers under a Hardship; and he thinks, that were not its Situation very serviceable to our *East-India* Ships homeward bound, the constant Trouble and Expence would induce the Company to abandon the Island, for tho' 'tis furnished with Conveniencies for Life, yet it has no Commodities of any Profit to Merchants. He says, Turkies are of late wonderfully increased, and that the Governor's and some other Gardens are stocked with Plantanes, Bonanoes, and other choice Fruits brought from the E. The Soil is generally of a reddish Colour. The Inhabitants are lewd, tho' the Company allow a Minister here 100 *l.* a Year, besides Gratuities from the Inhabitants, which he partly ascribes to the Poverty of the Place.

Mr. *Lockyer*, who was here in 1706, makes it 20 Miles in Circumference, and says, that in *Chapel Valley* was *James* Fort, of 10 small Guns, which he was told was demolished afterwards, and a much larger erected in its stead. There was also a Platform of 29, and 3 at the Landing-place. *Bank's* Pla-

Digitized by Google

Platform had 6, *Rupert's* Platform 17, and in *Limon Valley*, where the *Dutch* formerly landed, was a Platform of 6 more; all which have received considerable Additions since the Loss of the *Queen* and *Dover*. There is no landing to the Windward, and all the Creeks and Bays are secur'd as above, besides Alarm Guns on the Hills. All Things are dear to Strangers, except choice Roots and Limons. They had then about 1500 Head of Black Cattle, with Plenty of Hogs, Goats, Turkies, and all Sorts of Poultry. Their chief Grain is Kidney-Beans, from 8 to 12 *s.* a Bushel. A small Ox is sold for 5 *l.* and Turkies for a Dollar apiece. The common People subsist chiefly on Potatoes, Yams, Plantanes, Pulse, and Fish, as Horse-Mackarel, Conger-Eels, Water-Snakes, *&c.* and if they can get Flesh once a Week, they reckon it good Living. The Company allow the Soldiers salt Meat; but how often, our Author does not say. Both these and the Mechanicks may earn a great deal of Money by their Labour. Their common Drink is plain Water or Mobby, which is but one Remove from it. The chief Town, which is in *Chapel Valley*, had 40 or 50 Houses in his Time. Many of the Girls that belong to the Punch-houses dress up while Ships are here; but as soon as they are gone, run up and down again bare-foot. The Masters of the Plantations keep a great many Blacks, who upon severe Treatment hide themselves for a quarter of a Year together, keeping among the Rocks by Day, and roving at Night for Provisions; but they are generally discover'd and taken. The Island produces here and there a Drug like Benjamin, and great Plenty of wild Tobacco on the Hills, which the Slaves use to smoke for want of the right Sort. The Inhabitants are supplied with Necessaries twice a Month out of the Company's Store, at six Months Credit. The chief Commodities for Sale here are Cherry-Brandy, Malt, and Cyder, Spirits, Beer, *Madera* and *Canary* Vines, and *Spanish* Brandy, which may be taken in at those Islands, *Batavia* Arack, Sugar, Sugar-Candy, Tea, Fans, China, Jacker'd Ware, Silks, *China* Ribans, coarse Chrip'd Ginghams, ordinary Muslin, coarse Chints, blue and brown Longcloths, Salampores, and all Sorts of coarse Callicoes. An *English* Shilling goes for the same Value here, but a Crown is 6 *s.* in Account; but to be chang'd into small Money, Five Shilling Pieces are a Crown. A *Spanish* Dollar is reckon'd 6 *s.* and a *Venetian* Ducat 9 *s.* Their Weights are the same as ours.

Wyts makes it about 13 Leagues in Compass, and thinks it deserves to be called the *Inn* or *Storehouse of the Sea*. He places it 1550 *Spanish* Leagues W. from *Goa*, 1000 from *Lisbon*, 520 from the Cape of *Good Hope*, 370 from *Angola*, and 540 from the E. Coast of *Brasil*. *Morery* says, 'twas first discover'd by *John Pimentel*, Vice Admiral of the first Fleet *Emanuel* King of *Portugal* sent to the *Indies*, who was drove on Shore here by a Tempest. Most of the Waters have a Mineral Taste, and the Island is very subject to sudden Storms of Wind, and dreadful Thunder and Lightning, especially about the Time that the Sun approaches the Equinox, insomuch that Masters of Ships are obliged to carry little Sail, and they are commonly follow'd by great Calms, which are very troublesome to those that want Water or Provisions, when they chance to miss of this Island in their Passage between *Mozambique*, or the Isle of *Madagascar* to the Cape *Verd* Islands. *Heylin* says, our *East-India* Company first settled a Colony here in 1660. 'Tis reckon'd to be farther from the Continent than any other Island in the World. Some say, there's another Island call'd *New St. Helena*, 160 Leagues farther W. but *Du Plessis* says, this and the invisible Island of *St. Borondon* among the *Canaries* are both equally Fables.

There are two other Islands about the Cape, which we shall just touch upon before we proceed to *Madagascar*.

1. *CONEY Island*, in Lat. 33. 27. near the Coast on the W. Side of the Cape. Mr. *Davis* of *Limehouse* says, it has bad Ground about it, and a dangerous Ledge of Rocks on the W. Side to the Seawards, but that there's safe Passage betwixt it and the Shore. Sir *Thomas Herbert* says, 'tis but small, yet abounds with Coneys, from whence it has the Name, Pengwins, and Seals.

2. *PENGWIN Island*. Captain *Middleton* says, it lies near *Soldania*, and has abundance of those Fowls, from whence it has the Name, so that they go 500 in a Flock, besides great Numbers of Seals all about the Shore, Geese, Ducks, Pelicans, and several Sorts of Wild Fowls.

Digitized by Google

VII. *The* ISLANDS *over against* Zanguebar.

1. *MADAGASCAR* or *St. LAWRENCE Island.*

De la Val places it between S Lat. 14 and 26. *Herbert* from 16 to 26. Some begin it at the 11th, and others at the 12th Deg. but *Moll* from Lat. 11 ½. to 24 ½. and the *Sanſons* begin it on this Side the 12th Deg. and extend it beyond the 26th. *La Croix* ſays, 'tis called *Madecaſe* in the Language of the Country, *Magaſter* according to *Paul* the *Venetian*, or *Alboreo* according to *Thevet*, and *Sarandib* by the *Perſians* and *Arabians*. *Mercator* calls it *Inſula Santi Georgii*. The *Portugueſe* call it *San Lourenco*, from its firſt Diſcoverer *Laurence Almeida*, Son to *Francis Almeida*, chief Viceroy of the *Eaſt Indies* for the King of *Portugal*, who in 1506 anchor'd here the firſt time; but our Author thinks it owes its Name to the Saint's Day on which it was diſcover'd. Some ſay that *Pliny* call'd it *Cerne*; *Ptolomy*, *Menuthias*; and *Diodorus*, the Iſland of *Jol*; but our Author does not believe that the Ancients had the Knowledge of any Countries S. of *Sierra Leona*. It extends in Length from N.N.E. to S.S.W. beyond the Line, *viz.* from Cape *St. Sebaſtian* to that of *St. Mary*. *Linſchotten* places it 126 Leagues from Cape *Corientes* on the Continent, 110 from *Sofala*, and 44 from *Mozambique*.

'Tis ſaid to be one of the biggeſt Iſlands in the World: Some make it 200 and 220 *German* Leag. from N. to S. 70 in Breadth, and 600 in Compaſs. *Cauche* extends it 260 *French* Leag. in Length, 100 where broadeſt, and 800 in Compaſs. *La Croix* ſays, the Sea is very ſtrong betwixt this Iſland and the Continent, and forms a Canal that *Moll* calls the *Mozambique* Chanel, the S. W. End of which is 85 Leagues over, the Middle over againſt *Mozambique*, where 'tis narroweſt, but 44; but then it enlarges it ſelf on the N. E. Side, where there are ſeveral Iſlands. 'Tis the common Paſſage for Ships between *Europe* and the *Indies*, unleſs ſtormy Weather obliges them to another Route.

La Croix divides this Iſland into ſeveral Regions or Provinces, of which he treats in their Order, and ſays, that moſt of them are of the ſame Name with the ſeveral Rivers which water them; that all the E. Side of the Iſland runs directly from N.N.E. to S.S.W. *viz.* from the Cape of *Itapera* or *Fitorah* to the Bay of *Antongil*, and from thence to the End of the Iſland N. From the Cape of *Itapera* to the Country of *Carem Boule*, the Coaſt runs W. in the Figure of a quarter of a Circle. From *Carem-Boule* to the Mouth of the River *Sacalites*, the Coaſt runs towards the N. W. From thence to S. Lat. 17. it runs almoſt N. inclining a little to the E. and from thence to the 14th Deg. it runs directly N. It has ſeveral Rivers, fine Bays, good Roads, and Harbours. The greateſt Part of the South Coaſt, from Cape *Itapera* to *Carem Boule*, was formerly poſſeſſed by *Europeans*, eſpecially the *French*; but our Author ſays, the ill Management of the Directors of the *French Eaſt-India* Company obliged them to abandon it. He tells us, that they were the firſt Diſcoverers of the Coaſt between the Bays of *Antongil* and *St. Auguſtin*, and fortified themſelves in the S. E Side of the Province, which he calls *Carcampi*, where they built Fort *Dauphin*, of which more hereafter, and diſcover'd the Inland Countries from S Lat. 19. to the S. End of the Iſland. He owns, that the *Portugueſe* and *Dutch* have diſcover'd ſeveral Maritime Places of the Iſland, but ſays, that neither of them ever went ſo far into it as the *French*.

Herbert ſays, 'twas diſcover'd by *Triſtan d'Acuna* in 1508; but he obſerves, that the *Spaniſh* Writers differ very much in this Point. He extends it 1000 Miles from Cape *Roma* in the S. S. W. to that of *St. Sebaſtian* in the N. N. E. and 100 where narroweſt, which ſome make 230, and *Oſorius* 400. Sir *Thomas* ſays, the N. End parallels *Cuama* in *Quiloa*, and the S. End the River *Magnice*. *Struys* places it between S. Lat. 11. and 26. and Long 72. and 81. and extends it 350 Leagues where longeſt from N. to S. 120 where broadeſt, and 900 in Compaſs. The *Sanſons* extend it from N. N. E. to S. S. E. *viz.* from *St. Sebaſtian*'s Cape to that of *St. Romain* 400 Leagues, and make it 60 or 75 Leagues broad towards the Equator, and 120 or 150 towards the S. Side. They obſerve, that ſome interpret *Madagaſcar* for the

Digitized by Google

the Island of the Moon. Sir *William Monſon* places it 500 Leagues from the Cape of *Good Hope*. M. *Rennefort* extends it from Lat. 11. to 25. 50. or 336 *French* Leagues in Length, and 120 where broadeſt towards the S. Some affirm the Length to be 1200 Miles, and the Compaſs 4000. *Heylin* extends it from Lat. 17. to 26. and places it 170 Miles from the Point, which *Ptolomy* call'd *Praſum* in *Moſambique*. The *Nubian* Geographer makes it but 1200 Miles in Compaſs, and 80 Leagues ſquare. *Pory* makes it but 400 in Compaſs, and yet ſays 'tis bigger than *Italy*. *Morery* ſays, the *French* call'd it the *Dauphin's* Iſland in the Reign of *Henry* IV. He makes it but 50 Leagues long, and 100 or 80 broad, and places it under the Torrid Zone and the Tropick of *Capricorn*. M. *Dellon* extends it to S. Lat. 27. and makes it 750 *French* Leagues in Compaſs. *Morden* places it 90 or 100 Leagues from the Continent, and makes it 340 Leagues in Length. *Du Pleſſis* ſays, that 'tis not ſo big as *California*, and makes it 300 Leagues in Length.

La Croix ſays, it abounds with Iron and Steel, which their Smiths forge and purify with more Eaſe than ours. They lay the Oar after they have redue'd it to Duſt over burning Coals, between 4 Stones plaiſter'd all over with Clay, and blow with Bellows made like a Piece of Ordnance, or a Wooden Pump, which melts the Metal in leſs than an Hour. Then they take out the caſt Iron, and caſt it into Bars of 3 or 4 Pounds Weight by means of a great Fire. There are alſo Mines of fine Steel in ſome of the Provinces, and in others Iron, which differs not from it in Goodneſs. There are no Mines of Silver, but 'tis very common here ſince the Shipwreck of a certain *Dutch Eaſt-India* Veſſel (that was laden with it) on their Coaſt. They have three Sorts of Gold; that of the Country, which is a little paliſh, melts as ſoon as Lead, and is almoſt 20 Florins an Ounce. The ſecond is the Gold of *Mecca*, which the *Rohandrians* bring with them from their Country. 'Tis very fine and good Ducat Gold. The third is that brought hither by the Chriſtians, which is more difficult to melt in their Way. Their own Gold is of three Sorts, one very fine, another coarſer, and the 3d Sort between both.

There are Precious Stones of ſeveral Sorts in their Rivers and Brooks, particularly Chryſtals, Topazes, Granats, Amethyſts, Eagle-ſtones, Emeralds, Saphires, Hyacinths, Jaſpers, Blood-ſtones, Cornelians, Touch-ſtones, and the like. *La Croix* thinks it evident, that here are all Sorts of Minerals, from the many Saline, Sulphurous, Bituminous, and other Waters, which attract Medicinal Qualities from the different Soils and Metals which they paſs thro'. They have 6 Sorts of Honey, all of a different Taſt, *viz.* that of Bees, that of certain green Flies, and two Sorts of the Honey of Ants, one of which is made by the Ant-Flies that gather in the Holes of Trees, and the other by that Sort which is bigger, but not winged, and make their Honey on the Hills of their own raiſing. There's another Sort of Honey, or rather Sugar, which is dropped by Flies upon little Shrubs, and turns afterwards into Spots, or little yellow, green, or red Bits. There's another Sort of Honey too that is ſuppoſed to be venomous, and made by Bees that ſuck the Bloſſoms of a poiſonous Tree. The Inhabitants make three Sorts of Wine; firſt Mead, which is common, and another Sort from Sugar, which is bitteriſh. They boil the Sugar-Canes in Water to the Conſumption of one Third, then pour it out into great Gourds, which in three Days makes it ſo ſtrong, that it will eat thro' an Egg-Shell in leſs than a Night. They make a 3d Sort from the great Bananas boil'd 4 or 5 Hours, which is ſoweriſh. There are ſeveral Sorts of Oil with which they rub themſelves, tho' ſometimes for want on't they uſe the Fat of Oxen mix'd with Wax. They have ſeveral Sorts of Earth, *viz.* Red Earth, which is good as the Bole-Ammoniack of the Apothecaries, and that called *Terra Sigillata*, the ſame that is brought from the Iſle of *Lemnos*; and *Flacourt* ſays, that of *Madagaſcar* is as good as the other. There's another white Earth like Chalk, which ſerves to whiten Linen inſtead of Soap. There are ſeveral Gums, ſome fragrant, ſome ſtinking, and others without any Smell at all, ſome of which are uſed inſtead of Glue, and there's one white Sort made by Ants, that hangs at the Branches of Trees. They have Musk, and two Sorts of Dragon's Blood.

Digitized by Google

It abounds with divers Sorts of Plants, *viz.* Rice of ſeveral Sorts, two of which are barbed and white, the others without a Beard, with a red Chaff or Husk, which turns to the Colour of a Roſe when boil'd. One Sort grows only in Winter, and another only in Summer. There are ſeveral Sorts of the Root Igname, ſome white, ſome of a Violet Colour, and others of a light Grey, which are very well taſted: Some are as big as a Man's Middle, ſo that two Negroes can ſcarce carry them; but moſt of them are as big as a Man's Leg, and 100 or 150 of them purchaſe an Ox. There's one bitter Sort, which the Iſlanders ſoak, and boil the Bitterneſs out. Then they ſell it, and the Negroes count it a Dainty, and ſome dry them in the Sun till they are hard as Wood, ſo that they'll keep a Year or two. There's another Sort of an agreeable Taſt, of which one Plant only ſhoots forth 10 or 12 Roots, which are no bigger than a Hen's Egg, and have the Taſt of Cheſnuts, only they are more ſavoury, and don't load the Stomach; but they are cover'd with a little Skin, which is bitterish. One Sort is like Vine Roots, bears black Berries, and has a Muskiſh Taſt. Its Wood dies every Year, and its Leaves are like thoſe of a Vine. 'Tis very inſipid, and difficult to digeſt, ſo that 'tis only eaten in Time of great Scarcity; and there's another Sort which grows in the Ground, is as big as a Man's Head, with a grey Skin, and they eat it either raw or dreſs'd. There are other Roots with a reddiſh Skin that grow under little Shrubs, ſome of which are as big as a Man, and very ſweet, but moiſt, ſo that they ſatisfy both Hunger and Thirſt, are eaten raw, digeſt well, and cauſe Urine. They have a Sort of Cabbages with round Leaves, large enough for Umbrella's, which they boil with Meat, and are as good as Artichokes. There's another Root like a Turnep as big as one's Thumb, which is ſo fruitful, that one Plant produces 100 Roots in a Year. There are three Sorts of Nenuphar, with white, yellow, and violet Flowers, and may be eaten boil'd or roaſted, as we do Cheſnuts. The violet Sort is very ſweet, and eaten by both Sexes to provoke Luſt; but the others have the contrary Effect.

They ſow a great deal of Barley here, which grows to the Height of a Pike, is ripe in *June*, and is hard of Digeſtion. They have little Beans, which are well taſted, whether ripe or not, but load the Stomach. They are ſown in *June*, and are ripe 3 Months after. They ſow ſmall Peaſe at the ſame time, which come up well, and they have a ſort of *French* Beans. There's one Sort which comes up well enough, but the Fruit lies under Ground, and every Husk contains but one Bean. It has Leaves like thoſe of Trefoil, but no Branch nor Stalk. There's another Tree which in every Kid bears one ſmall Pea, and grows as big as a Cherry-Tree; and in one of the Provinces they maintain Silk-Worms, with its Leaves. They have Plenty of Bananas, which in ſome Places they put in all their Preparations. Some are as big and long as a Man's Arm, and ſome bear Fruit half ſo big. The Bananas are very nouriſhing, and they roaſt them like Apples when ripe. They often gather the unripe Grapes, and hang them up to the Cieling, where they ripen in leſs than a Fortnight. In ſome Parts they ſpin the Bark of this Tree, and make Habits on't. They have Plenty of Ananas, and Water-Melons of two Sorts, ſome black, and others red. The Inhabitants eat them to cool their Thirſt in the exceſſive Heats. There are other Melons like ours, and Gourds that thrive well, whoſe Seed was firſt brought from *France*. They are of two Sorts, *viz.* long and round. They boil the long ones before they are quite ripe, and eat them with Milk or the like; and when they are dry, they uſe them inſtead of Bottles. There's abundance of Sugar-Canes; but the Inhabitants know not how to take out the Sugar, ſo that they only draw a Wine from them, which is not ſo good as Metheglin, and will not keep above 3 Days. There's a great Tree on the Coaſt which bears a Fruit called *Voanate*, that is nouriſhing, but clammy, and the Inhabitants eat it alone, or with Milk and Salt. The Wood is very ſubſtantial, fit for Building, very even and ſmooth, and not ſubject to rot. There's another Fruit called *Ventaca*, as big as a Quince, with a Skin as hard as that of a Gourd, and full of flat Kernels. The Juice and Pap, when 'tis ripe, taſts and ſmells well; but 'tis bad for the Stomach if it be not ripe. *Garcias* calls them the Quinces of *Bengala*. They draw

a

Digitized by Google

a Wine from them which taſts like Beer, and looſens the Belly, but cauſes Gripings. They fatten Hogs with the Fruit when 'tis ripe. They have white Pepper enough to load a Ship every Year. The Turtles and Wood-Pigeons feed upon it, and it ripens in *Auguſt*, *September*, and *October*. They have the Great Cardamum, Malaguetta, or the Grain of Paradiſe, which bears a red Fruit and a white Pulp, of a pleaſant ſharp Taſt, with black Kernels. There's alſo very good Ginger. *Flacourt* ſays, they have but little; but *Cauche* tells us, there's great Plenty of it over the whole Iſland, and that the Iſlanders plant nothing elſe about their Houſes to keep off the Rain, and near the Hives to feed the Bees. There's another Sort called Hog's Ginger. They have a few Coco-Nuts, ſuppoſed to have been firſt drove upon the Shore above 60 Years ago by the Sea, and ſometimes there are Coco-Nuts ſtill to be ſeen floating near the Shore, which 'tis ſaid come from ſome Country where the Coaſt is planted with thoſe Trees. There's alſo *Indian* Saffron, and Buck-Wheat, which is yellow in the Inſide, and taſts like Ginger, only 'tis not ſo biting, and ſerves for dying or ſeaſoning Victuals. There's another Fruit called *Voatzatre*, which grows upon a pretty large Tree with broad Leaves. The Fruits grow together like a Bunch of Onions, are each as big as an Egg, and full of Juice, and the dry Paring has an Aromatick Taſt, and is good to eat. The Natives uſe the Leaves to make Cords, Mats, and Baskets. There are abundance of Vines, whoſe Grapes are ripe in *January*. There's a little Plant called *Anbouton* like Flax, which has a bitteriſh Stiptick Taſt. The Natives chew it to blacken their Teeth, Lips, and Gums, and to ſweeten their Breath. 'Tis corroborative, and much uſed in Time of Famine. There's another wild Fruit called *Lengou*: The Natives chew its Skin to blacken their Mouth, Teeth, and Gums. It has ſeveral Angles, and taſts like a great green Nut. There's another ſtinking Herb call'd *Zanale*, that creeps upon the Ground, and is very much coveted by the Natives for the ſame End as the former, and to cure ulcerated Gums; but thoſe that chew it contract an intolerable ſtinking Breath. There's alſo Betel, which they chew with a little Lime as they do in the *Eaſt Indies*; but in ſome Parts they chew it with a certain Fruit like the *Indian Areca*. There's a Plant called *Bangbeh*, of which they make Indigo for Dying, by infuſing the Stalks and Leaves when they begin to bloſſom in Water, and ſtirring them every Day with a Stick. Two or three Days after, when 'tis rotten, they ſtrip off the Shanks and Fibres, draw off the Water, which is charg'd with a Violet Colour, into a Tub by a Hole at the Bottom of the Veſſel, ſtrain it thro' a Sieve, put ſome Olive-Oil into it, mix them well together, and ſtir them. Then they let the Dye ſettle to the Bottom; after which they draw the Water off again by ſome Pipe, or elſe ſpunge it out till there's nothing at the Bottom but the Lees, which is the true Indigo, and then they dry it upon a broad clean Stone. There's a Sort of Balm with great Leaves, that grows two Inches high, and ſmells like Cloves and Cinnamon. There's a great deal of Oriental Cypreſs along the Rivers and Marſhes, which they uſe againſt Pains in the Head. There's a Plant called *Aromatico*, two Inches high, which bears a hollow Flower and Fruit like a Veſſel with a Cover to it. There are two Sorts, ſome with red Flowers, and others yellow. The Inhabitants dare not gather them, and pretend that ſuch Travellers as do will be ſuddenly overtaken with Rain. Theſe Flowers will hold each a Gallon of Rain-Water, if we may believe *La Croix*. There's another Plant that creeps on the Ground, and bears ſmall Peaſe or red Beans. Their Goldſmiths uſe it to ſolder Gold inſtead of Borax, which they know nothing of. For this Purpoſe they grind them to Flower, and mix them with the Juice of Limons. There's another Plant called *Fenouxs*, with yellow Flowers, and thick Leaves. The Women apply it to certain Parts of their Body to fetch off the Hairs. They alſo burn it while green, when it ſmells like Melilot, and of the Aſhes they make a Coſmetick. There's a Tree call'd *Fimpi*, which is as big and as high as an Olive. The Bark is of an Aſh-grey Colour. It ſmells like Muſk, and has a more biting Taſt than Pepper. The Wood is very white and hard, and ſmells like Aloes, and the Leaves have the ſame Scent as the Bark. They are jagged, a little bigger than thoſe of the Great Myrtle,

Digitized by Google

Myrtle, and have almoſt the ſame Smell, which cauſes Sneezing. There's Ebony, which grows in the Trunk of a great Tree that has little Leaves of a dark Green like thoſe of a Myrtle. There are 3 or 4 Sorts on't. There's another Tree which bears a Fruit a little longer than one's Finger, of an Aſh grey Colour, with Leaves like thoſe of a Pear-Tree. The Fruit contains a white ſweet Juice, which they uſe to curdle Milk. There are Box-Trees, and another Sort that bears Pulſe. There's another Tree whoſe Wood has a Smell almoſt like Cummin-Seed, but ſtronger, and the Bark is like that of Elder. The Inhabitants uſe it againſt the Fever and all Wounds, for which Purpoſe they bray it upon a Stone with Water. There's another Sort of Wood, the Heart of which is full of Veins of a green Colour, which has the Smell of Roſes, and is commended as a Remedy for Pains in the Heart, and for Swoonings, if apply'd to the Stomach after 'tis bray'd on a Stone with Water. The Tree of which the Inhabitants make their Canoes is never Worm-eaten, and it produces a Gum which is ſaid to be good for Wounds. There's another Tree that produces Benjamin, and a very ſtrait high Tree, whoſe Wood is blacker than Ebony, and without any Knot, Fibre or String, ſo that it may be plan'd as ſmooth as a Horn, and the biggeſt Part of its Trunk is not above 7 Inches thick. But there's a Sort of black Wood which is more crooked, grows in ſtony Places, is encompaſſed with Thorns, and has very few Leaves. Its Bloſſom ſmells well, as does alſo the Wood when 'tis kindled, and there are ſome of theſe Trees that have a thick Trunk and Branches. There's a Sort of Tree called *Zaga*, of which they make Handles for their Zagays. There's an Apple-Tree, whoſe Fruit when ripe opens into 4 Parts. The Pith is full of Kernels, and cover'd with a thin Orange-colour'd Skin, that makes a Sort of Dye. There are alſo a great many Tamarinds, and a little Shrub called *Vahats*, the Bark of which, when ſtripp'd from the Roots, ſerves for Dying. While the Roots are freſh, they are eaſily ſeparated by Water; but when they are dry, it can't be done without a little Wooden Knife. When they uſe it, they boil the Bark over a ſober Fire with the Silk or Wool they would dye, in Lye made of the Aſhes of the ſaid Bark. There's a Tree called *Anghive* of two Sorts, one bigger than the other. The leaſt bears a Fruit as big as Gooſeberries, and the biggeſt a Fruit as large as a Hen's Egg, and both are of a Scarlet Red, and well taſted. The Decoction of its Roots is preſcribed for the Heat of Urine and the Gravel. There's a Plant called *Varancoco*, which twines about great Trees, and bears a Violet-colour'd Fruit as large as a Peach, of an agreeable Taſt, but ſweetiſh and clammy, with four great Kernels in the Middle. The Wood is fit to make Hoops, but they'll not laſt above a Year, becauſe they are apt to be Worm-eaten. There's a red roſinous Sort of Gum in the Bark, which melts and ſmells like a Candle. The Tree called *Rhoa* or the Dragon-Tree is as big as a Nut-Tree. The Bark, Branches, and Trunk, contain a Juice as red as Dragon's-Blood, for which Reaſon the Apothecaries have given it that Name. The Wood is white, and ſoon ſubject to rot. The Leaves are like thoſe of a Pear-Tree, but a little too long. The Flower is as red as Fire. The Fruit is as big as a little Pear, only 'tis bigger towards the Tail or Stem, and forms as it were five Horns. It contains a Stone within it, which is cover'd with a ſingle Membrane, and has the ſame Form, Colour and Smell, as a Nutmeg. Some ſay, that when this Fruit is par'd, it ſhews the Mark of a Dragon; but *Flacourt*, who par'd ſeveral, denies it. There are three Sorts of this Tree, ſays *La Croix*, which bear different Fruits. They draw an Oil from the Stones, which is commended for a ſovereign Remedy againſt Inflammations, Burnings, St. *Anthony*'s Fire, the Itch, and Scabs. 'Tis alſo ſaid to be anodyne, and that the Decoction of the Bark is good to ſtop the Bloody Flux. There's a Sort of Jeſſamin-Tree like ours, with fragrant Flowers, which the Women infuſe in the Oil of Seſamum to perfume it. There's a little Tree called *Langhare*, which commonly grows in the Hedges and Thickets, with long jagged Leaves, and ſtrait Stem and Flowers that grow in the Bark of the Trunk without any Shank, which are of a Blood Colour, and ſo biting, that if chew'd they cauſe Spittle, and looſen the Belly. 'Tis ſaid, that the Wood bruis'd and ſwallow'd,

Digitized by Google

low'd, or only hung about the Neck, is good to ſtop the Hiccough. There's a Tree called *Mimbouhe*, that bears fragrant Flowers that chear the Heart, and a great Tree called *Horame*, that produces a certain Gum well known among the Apothecaries by the *American* Name of *Tacamahaca*, which is properly Roſin. The Tree is about the Size of a Poplar, with long ſtrait Leaves, and thick roſinous Fruits as large as a Prune or a great Nut. The Wood is fit to make Planks for Barks and Ships. Here grows alſo the Banian or ſpreading Fig-Tree of the *Indies*. There's a great Tree called *Endraebendrach*, the Wood of which is yellow, and ſmells like Sandal. 'Tis heavy and as hard as Iron, and loſes no more by lying under Ground than Marble. There's a Shrub called *Erocoſſe*, that bears little round Cabbages good to eat. There's another called *Sira Moughits*, the Wood of which ſtrengthens the Heart. The Leaves have the ſame Smell as white and yellow Sandal, the Bark ſmells of a Clove, and it yields a fragrant Roſin. That called *Fouraha* yields a green fragrant Balm, which is a powerful Remedy againſt all Sorts of Wounds and Bruiſes. The Women mingle it with their Oils to anoint their Hair, and it bears a large Fruit. There's another Tree called *Arindranto*, whoſe Wood, when rotten and burnt, yields a wonderful good Smell. *Laſſa* is a creeping Plant, which yields a Gum like Scammony. It purges very violently. *Laldits* is a fine woody Plant, which bears red Flowers in a Bunch like a Plume of Feathers. The Seed provokes Vomits, but the Root ſtops them. *Pendre* is a Tree like *Rauver*, and of the ſame Height. It caſts forth Leaves very ſharp towards the End, and higher than thoſe of Aloes, and produces 10 or 12 white Flowers of an admirable Smell, which in the Sun-ſhine the Women infuſe in the Oil of Seſamum. That called *Apocapouc* is a Tree with Leaves and Flowers like thoſe of the Lawrel: The Fruit is rank Poiſon, yet they extract an Oil from the Stones, which are as big as an Almond, to anoint the Hair. There's another Tree call'd *Oviau*, which bears a Sort of Almond, from whence they draw a choice Oil for anointing their Hair, and ſeaſoning their Proviſions. There are alſo a Sort of Bamboo-Canes: The Natives cut and burn them, and dung their Rice-Fields with the Aſhes. Some are as big as a Man's Leg. They are all high, black, round, and the chief Ornament of the Country. Every three Years they bear a Fruit no bigger than a ſmall Bean, of which they make as good Meal as we do of our Corn. 'Tis as uſeful to theſe Iſlanders as the Coco-Tree is to the *Indians*, for they make Pots of it for boiling their Rice, Buckets and other Veſſels for drawing Water, Bottles, Knives, Pens, Violins, Harps, Meaſures for their Rice, Stables, Pipes, Tinder-Boxes, little Wherry-Boats for only two Perſons, Roofs, Cielings, Planks, and Props for Houſes and Chairs to carry great Perſons in; for which End they bend them as ſoon as they begin to grow. The Bark of the Tree *Amporefitchi* is good to make Cordage. The Leaves of the Tree *Taovoule* have no Shank, and grow round the Branches as if they were glued. *Ouvave* is a kind of knotted Reed like the *Indian* Canes: The Root is good to eat. The Wood is of a Violet Colour, and ſerves for dying Red. There are a great many true Grapes in ſome Parts of the Iſland, but the Inhabitants dare not taſt them, becauſe they know not their Quality. There is good Tobacco every where, beſides ſeveral Sorts of Jeſſamin. They have alſo a great deal of Hemp, which *Flacourt* ſays the Natives cultivate with a great deal of Care, and ſmoak the Leaves when dry'd inſtead of Tobacco, which makes them ſleepy; but when they awake, they are brisk and merry, and pretend that they have had pleaſant Dreams; but none except their old Women and Prieſts, and ſome Negroes, uſe this Cuſtom to drive away Care and Melancholy. They throw away the Stalk of the Hemp, inſtead of ſpinning it into Cordage. They have Leeks, Purſlane, Lettice, Skirwort, Cabbages, Radiſhes, Dill, *Turkey* Wheat, Muſtard, and White-Thorn. There's a great Tree called *Voarats*, whoſe Leaves are like thoſe of an Olive, which, with the Height and Extent of its Branches, makes it yield a fair Proſpect. The Fruit is very tart, and as big as a Cherry, with a thick Shell like that of a Nut. There are three Sorts of them, *viz.* the white, black, and red. There's another ſweet Fruit of a Violet Colour, no bigger than a red Gooſeberry, which gives a Black and a Violet Dye.

There

Digitized by Google

There are white Mulberries here of such a strong Taſt, that they fetch the Skin off one's Tongue. The Fruit is like ours, but the Leaves are different. *Tumbeba* is the Fruit of a Tree like a little Pear-Tree, which kills Dogs. The Tree is very high, the Wood is of a Musk Colour, harder, and more manly than any Tree in this Country; but it may eaſily be poliſhed. The Leaves are long, like thoſe of an Almond-Tree, and bear Flowers like thoſe of Roſemary. It has no Smell, and turns at laſt into Fruit. There's another Fruit call'd *Voanane*, half a Foot long, which is compoſed of 4 Parts, and taſts like ſtony Pears. 'Tis a ſovereign Remedy againſt Looſeneſs. There's a Plant call'd *Fouts or Douron*, which grows in Form of a Plume of Feathers, the Leaves being a Fathom in Length, and two Foot broad. There are ſome that are above 8 or 10 Foot long, beſides the Stem, which is ſometimes two Foot more. *Vos* is another Fruit like a Grape, but as long as an Ear of *Turkey* Wheat. It lies in a hard Huſk. Every Grain or Berry is like a large Pea, encompaſſed with a blue Skin, of which they make Oil, and of the Grains or Berries they make Meal to eat with Milk. The Inhabitants commonly chew it with a Sort of Betel-Leaf and a little Lime, as formerly mentioned, to preſerve Health and a ſweet Breath. They build the Walls of their Houſes with the Stalks of this Plant, and they'll laſt 6 Years, as will alſo the green Leaves, which ſerve for Mats, Plates, and Cups. The *Alamatou* are ſuppoſed to be a Sort of black Prunes, becauſe they taſt like them when ripe; but they have no Stone, and only 10 or 12 ſmall flat Kernels. They grow alſo upon a Shrub, whoſe Leaves are like thoſe of our Prune-Trees. There's a great Number of theſe Prunes about a certain Harbour here, which the *French* have for that Reaſon named the *Port of Prunes*. There is another Sort of the Size of a wild Prune, which has the like ſmall Kernels inſtead of a Stone, and taſts like Figs. Too many of them cauſe a Pain in the Stomach. There's Plenty of ſweet and ſower Pomegranates, which ripen in *November* and *December*, as alſo ſeveral Sorts of Oranges, particularly ſmall ones of a delicate Taſt, that is ſweetiſh. They are no bigger than a Prune, have a very fine Colour, and hang 10 or 12 upon one Stem. There are 7 Sorts of Citrons, ſome ſweet, large and fair, ſome common, and others ſharp, and no longer than Prunes. Two Sorts have the Taſt of Muſk, and are long, of which ſome are large, and others ſmall. There's another Sort as big as an Infant's Head, cover'd with a thick Shell, which is good to candy. *Ravenſara* is a great Tree like a Lawrel, only the Leaves are ſmaller. The Fruit is like a great green Nut, and taſts like Cloves, as does alſo the Rind and Leaves. The Bloſſom has the Form of a Clove, as well as the Taſt, Smell, and Vertue; but the Tree only bears Fruit once every three Years. When the Inhabitants have a mind to the Fruit and Leaves, which they ſtrew with Onions and Ginger in a Diſh of Fiſh, they don't climb the Tree, but cut it near the Root. *La Croix* adds, that this Tree grows upon the Mountains, and that it is Male and Female. He and *Flacourt* mention ſeveral other Trees, Fruits, Herbs, and Plants; but theſe being the chief, we refer the Curious for the reſt to their Books.

Admiral *Lancaſter* ſays, that here's Plenty of Limons. Captain *Keeling* tells us of a ſtrange Plant here, which he ſuppoſes to be a wild Coco Nut. 'Tis of a ſhrubby Nature, and comes up with ſeveral prickly Stalks near two Yards long, with a Leaf at the End of each, indented half round like Sword-Graſs, and as big as that of a Cabbage. Out from the Tops of theſe Stalks, among the Leaves, ſhoot forth great Numbers of woody Branches, very thick ſet with Fruit, of the Colour and Size of a large Catherine-Pear, and like a Sheep's Bell in Form, with a Rind bearing forth near the Head, which is flat at Top, ſmooth within, and hard almoſt like the Coco-Shell, and there's a Kernel within which is hard, but may be eaten, and contains a Spoonful of cool clear Water like that of Coco. There's another Tree he ſays as large as a Pear-Tree, thick ſet with Boughs and Leaves like thoſe of the Bay-Tree, which bear a mighty, great, round Fruit, that hangs on a ſtrong Stalk, divided by Seams thro' the whole Length of it into 4 Parts. The Rind is vaſtly thick, and if cut while green, it yields a ſort of Turpentine. It has a Kernel of a darkiſh Colour, hard, bitter, and very ill taſted. Admiral *Beaulieu* ſays, they have

white

The chief TOWNS *are,*

1. *Liege*, called *Leodium*, *Leodicum*, and *Legia*, by the Latins. 'Tis the Capital of the Country, and lies on the *Maes*, 17 Miles S. W. from *Aken*, 12 S. from *Maestricht*, 10 N. E. from *Huy*, and 17 N. W. from *Limburg*, in Long. 24. 15. Lat. 50. 40. 'Twas but an ordinary Village before the Time of *Charles the Great*; but the making it a Bishop's See, drew a Concourse of People to it. The See is said to have been founded by *Hubert*, Son to *Bertrand* Prince of *Aquitain*; tho' some make it of a much older Date. They say, he came into *Brabant* on the Account of his Religion, which had not much Footing in his own Country: That at *Maestricht* he contracted a Friendship with *Lambert*, Bishop of that Place; and going afterwards to *Rome*, was made his Successor by Pope *Sergius*; those of *Maestricht* having murther'd *Lambert*: And tho' *Hubert* was much caress'd by the Inhabitants of that Town, yet not trusting 'em, he remov'd to *Liege*, where he built the Cathedral, which he dedicated to St. *Lambert*, and order'd his Corps to be interr'd he. bout 713. The Bishop is Suffragan of *Cologne*, and Prince of the City and Country of *Liege*, Marq. of *Franchemont*, Count of *Loos* and *Harbaye*, &c. He calls himself likewise Duke of *Bouillon*, because of some Pretensions he has on that Dutchy. *La Forrest* says, the Chapter is compos'd of 60 Canons, all Nobles or Doctors. He is of the Opinion of those who say, the Town was founded by *Ambiorix*, K. of the *Eburones*, after he had cut off the *Roman* Legion. He says, 'twas walled by St. *Hubert* Bishop of *Maestricht*; that 'twas ruin'd by the *Normans* in 881; that *Henry* I. Duke of *Brabant* took it in 1212, and let his Men pillage it for 6 Days. There have been frequent Disorders here about the Elections of their Bishops, and many Quarrels betwixt them and the Magistrates of the City about the Sovereignty of the Town, which they pretend to be independent of him. In 1409. *John* Duke of *Burgundy* killed above 36000 *Liegois*, for having made War upon their Bishop; and *Charles the Bold*, Duke of *Burgundy*, chastis'd them so severely on the like Account, that ever since they have entertained an irreconcileable Hatred to the *Burgundians*. We have formerly taken Notice, That of late Years, they have generally chosen the Elector of *Cologne* for their Bishop.

The City is now large and beautiful, about 4 *English* Miles in Circumference, and much resembles *Roan* in *France*. Within the Walls, there are several Vallies, Hills and Islands, form'd by the *Maes*, which runs through it in two Streams. Most of the Streets are spacious and well built, and have a clear Stream running through the middle of 'em. Besides which, many of the best Houses have two or more Fountains with cool Spring Water. In the City and Suburbs are reckon'd above 100 Churches: The most stately of which is the Cathedral; for which, and many other excellent Fabricks, *Liege* has this Character given it by Travellers, That for fair Churches, Convents, and other Religious Foundations, no City in *Germany* or *France* is able to compare with it. The *English* Jesuits have a College here, well seated on the top of an Hill; and not far from thence, there's an *English* Nunnery. In St. *William's* Convent without the City, lies Sir *John Mandeville*, the famous *English* Traveller, whose Works are better esteem'd in *France* and *Germany* than here. Having viewed most Cities in the World, he chose this to spend his last Days in. Near his Grave are kept his Saddle, Spurs, and Knife, that he made use of in his Travels; and on his Tomb, there's an Inscription in old barbarous *French*, requesting those that pass over him to pray for him. They have an University here, once so famous, that at one Time they had 9 Kings Sons, 24 Dukes, and 29 Counts Sons, besides many others of Quality, who studied here; and, if we may believe *Meibomius*, in 1131, there were 21 Kings Sons in this University. This City is still very populous; but the Account given by some Historians, that *Charles* Duke of *Burgundy*, when he lack'd it, put 100000 of the Inhabitants to the Sword, as is mentioned by Dr. *Nicholls*, seems to have no good Authority; for *Comminus*, who was present in that War, and gives an Account of the sacking and burning the City, says no such Thing; but he owns, that abundance of 'em were drown'd. The Citizens are form'd into 32 Companies of Freemen; among whom the Goldsmiths have the Preeminence.

Digitized by Google

The Dioceſe of *Liege* was formerly more conſiderable than at preſent; for *Luxemburg*, *Namur*, and *Hainault*, have enrich'd themſelves with its Spoils, beſides what it has ſuffered in the late and preſent Wars. It contains, or has a Right to, 52 Baronies, 18 Wall'd Towns, and 400 Villages, well Peopled. Dr. *Brown* ſays, the Biſhop's Palace in the City is a very noble Structure; That the Cathedral is built of red Stone, and has abundance of fine Carving about it; That the Canons of the Church are very rich and powerful. They have 60 called *Canonici Majores*, who muſt all be of Noble Extraction, except a few Learned Men they admit among them. Theſe 60 elect the Biſhop. They have 12 called *Canonici Mediocres*, and 12 more called *Minores* or *Parvæ Menſæ*, according to Mr. *Ray*, who ſays, the Three States of this Dioceſe, compos'd of the Clergy, Gentry, and Commons, have a conſiderable Share in the Government, there being no Tax rais'd, or other Matters of Weight tranſacted, without their Conſent. Dr. *Northleigh*, in his Deſcription of the *Spaniſh Netherlands*, ſays, they have a Key of a quarter of a Mile long upon the *Maes* for landing their Goods; That it reaches to their new Bridge over the *Maes*, which has 6 Arches, every one twice as large as thoſe of *London* Bridge, and not much inferior to the celebrated Arch of the *Rialto* at *Venice*. Veſſels paſs eaſily through 'em. The Bridge riſes high in the middle, is broad enough for 5 or 6 Waggons to go a-breaſt, and is mounted with ſome Cannon. The Form of the City, he ſays, is Triangular, and their Citadel lies on a ſteep Hill; was built by the Archbiſhop of *Cologne* in 1650, was afterwards demoliſhed by the *French*, but ſince rebuilt, and ſtrongly fortified. He mentions great Variety of Dialling invented by the famous Mathematician *Linus* in the pleaſant Garden belonging to the *Engliſh* Jeſuits; and among them, that in the middle of the Garden is the moſt curious, by its ſeveral Ways of ſhewing the Hours: 1. By a Wine-Glaſs; in the middle of which, a perpendicular Gnomon directs to the Figures on the Outſide. 2. By a Glaſs reflecting like a Looking-Glaſs; in which, if one centers his Eye, he ſees a little Star, cauſed by the Penetration of the Sun-Beams, that points at the Hour. 3. A round Glaſs full of Wire, and ſmall Braſs Bars that ſurround it, from which, to the Point of Time, the Sun-Beams are reflected in a *Punctum*, as from a Burning-Glaſs; ſo that by counting the Number of theſe little Bars, from the firſt to the Point, where the Heat centers, a blind Man may, by his Fingers, find the Hour of the Day. 4. Reflexions on a Globe of Conſtellations for a Night-Dial. 5. By the Elevation of the Pole-Star, and the Light of the Sun trajected. 6. By the receding of the Gnomon, till it caſt no Shadow, the Reverſe of ordinary Dials. He ſays, the Convent of St. *James* is a noble Structure, with two beautiful Monuments, one of their Founder, and the other of one of their Abbots, both curiouſly wrought in *Relievo*; as is the Paſſion of our Saviour in the Skreen. They pretend to abundance of Relicks; among which, they ſhew a Tooth, ſaid to be one of our Saviour's; ſeveral Pieces of the Croſs; ſome of *Mary Magdalen*'s Hair; a Shift of one of the Children murder'd by *Herod*'s Command; ſome of the Apoſtles Skulls; and many Relicts of Martyrs. Among the laſt, they ſhew an *Antipendium*, made of the embroider'd Cloak that our King *Charles* I. wore on the Scaffold when he was murther'd; which the Doctor ſuppoſes, if it be true, muſt have been given them by his Queen. He adds, That in this City there are two or three handſome Squares; and that the Biſhop's Palace is a noble Fabrick, with ſeveral Courts; one of which is more ſpacious than our *Royal Exchange*, and has fine Piazza's. *Miſſon* ſays, the adjacent Coal-Mines have drawn thither a great many Armourers; and that the Vineyards on the neighbouring Hills afford them a tolerable ſort of Wine, but not ſtrong; the neighbouring Woods ſupply them with Plenty of Veniſon; and they have excellent Mutton, fed in the Forreſt of *Ardenne*. This City was taken by the *French* in 1675, and next Year they deſtroy'd the Caſtle. It was retaken in 1702 by the Confederate Troops. Pope *Innocent* II. held a Council here in 1131, and crown'd the Emperor *Lotharius* II. in the Cathedral, when the Chapter, as their Annals ſay, conſiſted of 9 Kings Sons, 14 Dukes Sons, 29 Counts, and 8 Barons.

2. *Ban-*

Digitized by Google

Bouillon, on the River *Semay*, is by Dr. *Nicholſon* reckon'd to belong to this Diocese; but *La Forreſt* and *Mall.* reckon it in *Luxemburg*: To the Deſcription of which, we refer it.

3. *Tongren*, called by the Latins *Tungrorum Oppidum*, and anciently *Atuatuca Tungrorum*. 'Tis the oldeſt Town in theſe Parts, and was formerly very conſiderable, when there lay a pav'd Road from it to *Paris* of 200 Miles long; ſome Pieces of which are ſtill to be ſeen. Many *Roman* Coins, and other Antiquities, have been found in and about this City. There's one very remarkable in the great Church, ſuppoſed to be the Image of *Minerva*, worſhip'd here before they were converted by *Maternus*; but others think, the Image agrees better to the Deſcription of *Hercules*, who had a Temple in this Town. *La Forreſt* ſays, a Biſhop's See was founded here very early; but was tranſported firſt to *Maeſtricht*, and then to *Liege*; and ſome ſay, there were 100 Churches in it when it was deſtroyed by *Attila*; but it has nothing now of its ancient Luſtre. The *French* King ſeiz'd it in 1672, but quitted it next Year. The Marſhal *de Villeroy* took it by Surprize in 1703, with a Confederate Garriſon of 700 Men; but abandon'd it again in 1705, upon the Approach of the D. of *Marlborough*. Dr. *Northleigh* ſays, they pretend it was built 1100 Years before our Saviour; and that 'tis generally believ'd, the Ruins of the old Caſtle, and the old Wall on Biſhop *Maternus*'s Chapel, are older than the Time of our Saviour's Birth. He ſays, he obſerv'd in the Moulding the Images of *Sol*, *Venus*, and *Jupiter*. Their old Church is a very handſome *Gothick* Structure, and has a Dean and 22 Canons. The *French* demoliſhed the Jeſuits Church there, which is ſince rebuilt. It had certainly a conſiderable Territory in the Time of the *Romans*, as appears from *Ceſar*, *Strabo*, *Tacitus*, *Julius Capitolinus*, &c. About half a Mile from the Town, there's a Mineral Water of a Chalybiat Taſt, which tinges the Earth and Stones with an Iron Ruſt, which ſome take to be the Spring deſcrib'd by *Pliny* in his Natural Hiſtory, *Lib.* 3. *Cap.* 2. but moſt Antiquaries apply it to the preſent *Spaw*, about 8 Leagues from hence; tho' conſidering the former Largeneſs of the Territory of this City, it may perhaps include both. This Town lies 15 Miles N. W. from *Liege*, and 9 S. W. from *Maeſtricht*.

4. *Hoy*, on the *Maes*, 12 Miles S. W. from *Liege*, and 17 N E. from *Namur*, is a fair old City, in a pleaſant Valley, on a ſmall River that falls here into the *Maes*, over which there's a fine Stone Bridge, that joins the two Parts of the Town. 'Tis the Capital of the *Condros*, and, according to ſome Antiquaries, was formerly a potent City call'd *Beneſactum*, and afterwards *Hesum*, or *Huyum*; but being ruin'd by the Incurſions of the *Barbarians*, it loſt its Juriſdiction. 'Tis defended by a ſtrong Caſtle on a neighbouring Hill, and well fortified. It had formerly Counts of its own; but the laſt of 'em reſign'd it to the See of *Liege*. They have Iron Mines in the Neighbourhood, which employ moſt of the Inhabitants. 'Twas taken by the *French* in 1675, who diſmantled it. The Biſhop of *Liege* fortified it again. The *French* retook it in 1693; but the Duke of *Marlborough* recover'd it in 1703.

5. *Dinant*, a very ancient City on the *Maes*, 12 Miles S. from *Namur*. 'Tis fortified with a ſtrong Caſtle on a ſteep Rock, and has a Bridge over the *Maes*. The *French* diſmantled it in 1554; but it was ſince more regularly fortified. It had formerly a conſiderable Trade; but has ſuffer'd much that Way by the late and preſent Wars. Their chief Income is from Black Marble, Iron and Braſs. The *French* took it in 1675, but reſtor'd it to the Biſhop of *Liege* by the Treaty of *Ryſwick*.

6. *Franchimont*, or *Franckenberg*, anciently a large and populous City, but now reduc'd to a Village. 'Tis defended by a Caſtle, and gives Title of Marquis to the Biſhop of *Liege*. The Inhabitants of its Diſtrict were always accounted the beſt Soldiers of the Dioceſe. 'Twas ruin'd by *Charles*, the laſt Duke of *Burgundy*, and the Inhabitants diſpers'd after he took the City of *Liege*, as above-mentioned. They have a good Mine of Lead, and a fine Quarry of Marble, in the Neighbourhood. It lies about 8 Miles S. W from *Limburg*.

7. *Walcourt*, near the Head of the ſmall River *Heur*. According to *La Forreſt*, 'tis the Capital of the Country belonging to the Biſhop of *Liege* betwixt the *Sambre* and

Digitized by Google

the *Maes*, and was noted for an Advantage which the Confederates obtain'd near it over the *French* in the beginning of the laſt War.

8. *Spaw*, called in Latin *Spadanum Vicus*, is a neat Village, ſeated in a Valley in the Forreſt of *Ardenne*. 'Tis encompaſſed on all Sides with Hills, and on the N. it has high ſteep Mountains. It lies 14 Miles S. E. from *Liege*, and 7 S. W. from *Limburg*. 'Tis noted for its Mineral Waters, much frequented by People from all Parts of *Europe*, and on that Account has been always allow'd a Neutrality during the hotteſt Wars. 'Tis ſuppoſed to be the Fountain that *Pliny* mentions, as we took Notice above, to be near *Tungri*, a City of *Gaul*, whoſe Waters he ſaid had a Taſt of Iron or Steel, was Purgative, cur'd Tertian Agues, and the Stone: When boil'd, it grew turbid, and at laſt of a red Colour. *Cluverius*, in his *Germania Antiqua*, *Lib.* 2. ſays, That this muſt be meant of the *Spaw*, and anſwers the Objection from *Pliny*'s ſaying it belong'd to *Tungri*, a City of *Gaul*: That by *Civitas*, *Pliny* meant the Community of People called *Tungri*, and not the Town of *Tongeren*; and that 'tis certain, the *Spaw* lay within their Boundaries. Dr. *Brown*, in his Account of thoſe Waters, ſays, his Hoſt inform'd him when there, That he had ſent this Water as far as *Saragoſſa* in *Spain*; That he had then 30000 empty Bottles ready to fill; and the moſt convenient Time to do it was the hotteſt and drieſt Seaſon in the Summer, or the hardeſt Froſt in the Winter, becauſe at ſuch Times the Water is ſtrongeſt, ſparkling and brisk. The chief of theſe Mineral Fountains, he ſays, are Four, *viz. Geronſter*, *Sauviniere*, *Tonnelet*, and *Pohnt*. The firſt ſprings in the middle of a thick Wood, a Mile and a half S. from the *Spaw*: 'Tis the ſtrongeſt of any, according to Dr. *Brown*, and the beſt adorn'd, having a Pavilion over it, ſupported by 4 Stone Pillars, and a green Place clear'd in the Wood near to it, with a little Houſe for the Patients to warm themſelves in cold Weather. It ſmells ſtrong of Brimſtone, cauſes many that drink it to vomit, paſſes chiefly by Urine, as the reſt do, and ſtrikes a Purple with Nut-Galls, more inclining to Red than the *Tunbridge* Waters. The Sediment is of a light Blue in the Fountain, but of a dark dirty Red every where elſe. Near this, there's a large Spring in the Wood much like it, but not built or adorn'd. 2. *Sauviniere*, lies a Mile and a half E. from *Spaw*, and is built up like a Tower. The Waters are not ſo ſtrong as the former, but peculiarly good againſt the Stone and Gravel. 3. *Tonnelet*, riſes in the Meadows near the Town, and having no Shades about it, is not ſo pleaſant as the other two. *Henricus ab Heers*, in his *Spadacrene*, ſays, 'tis more nitrous than the reſt, and cauſes ſuch a Chilneſs in the Mouth and Stomach, that few can drink it. 4. *Pohnt*, in the middle of the Town, where moſt of the Water that is ſent abroad is taken up, except there be Orders to the contrary. They ſometimes call it the Fountain of St. *Remaclus*, a Biſhop of *Liege* of that Name, who beautified it with handſome Stone-Work. Over the Mouth of the Well, there's this Inſcription, *Sanitati Sacrum*, *i. e.* Conſecrated to Health; and the following Diſtich, with an Account of its Virtues:

Obſtructum reſerat, durum terit, humido ſiccat,
Debile fortificat; ſi tamen arte bibas.

i. e. It opens Obſtructions, diſſolves hard Swellings, dries up too much Moiſture, and ſtrengthens weak Parts, if drunk according to the Advice of Phyſicians.

Dr. *Northleigh* ſays, That the Waters of *Pohnt* have a Vitriolate Taſt; and that if we put into it any thing auſtere, as Galls, Oak-Leaves, *Balauſtium*, &c. it turns black; That thoſe in the Woods are of a more Piquant Taſt, and of quicker Operation, than our Chalybeat Waters; That, according to Mr. *Boyle*'s Experiments, they weigh two Grains in three Ounces more than *Tunbridge*, and four Grains more than ſome of the *Iſlington* Waters, yet both leſs than the common Water by ſeveral Grains; but a conſiderable Allowance muſt be given for what they evaporate bringing hither. The Doctor ſays, they are cleerer on the Place than the *Engliſh* Chalybeats; and that 'tis worth Obſervation, that tho' by the exacteſt Scrutiny of Glaſſes, no viſible Difference has been found hitherto betwixt the Contexture of the Minute Parts of Com-

Digitized by Google

Common and Mineral Water, yet by Chymical Precipitations and ordinary Solutions, and ſometimes by ſubſiding, conſiderable Separations of a different Subſtance are made without much Difficulty. He adds, That theſe Waters are much colder than thoſe commonly mix'd with Rhenſiſh Wine upon the *Rhine* and *Moſelle*, which generally paſs under the Name of *Spaw* Water, and make a ſtrong Ebullition with the Wine; whereas the true *Spaw* Water, tho' mix'd with Sugar, produces no ſuch Ebullition, and is always bottled up in the Place in little Wicker Flasks; but the other in Stone Bottles. He adds, That near the great Well in the Town, there's another leſſer one arch'd, the Water of which ſeems to be ſtronger than the other; and he thinks it deſerves Obſervation, that there are ſeveral Springs both in the Town and Wood near thoſe Chalybeat Waters, which have nothing either of their Taſt or Virtue.

Other Places in this Dioceſe are, 1. *Horn*, a ſmall Town with a Caſtle, on the *Maes*, Capital of its County, formerly belonging to the Dukes of *Burgundy*, afterwards to particular Lords, but now to the See of *Liege*. 2. *Maſeick*, a little Town within a quarter of a League of the *Maes*, 18 Miles N. from *Maeſtricht*, of Importance, becauſe of the Paſſage over that River. 3. *Loos*, *Lotz*, or *Borchlen*, a rich ſtrong Town betwixt *Tongeren* and St. *Truden*, Capital of its County, and about 6 *Engliſh* Miles diſtant from each. It had formerly Counts of its own, but was united to the See of *Liege* in 1372. It has a Collegiate Church, dedicated to St. *Odulphus*. 4. *St. Truden*, or *St. Tron*, a Wall'd Town on the Frontiers of *Brabant*, in the County of *Hasbaye*. It has its Name from St. *Trudo*, who was martyr'd here in the 7th Century, and has a Monaſtery of *Benedictines* dedicated to his Memory. Sometimes 'tis called *Centron*, whence ſome have thought it was the Seat of the *Centrones* mentioned in *Cæſar*'s Commentaries. One half of the Town is ſubject to the Biſhop of *Liege*, and the other to the Abbot of the *Benedictines*. 'Tis fortified with a good Wall. 5. *Bilſen*, a ſmall Town two *German* Leagues from *Maeſtricht*, and 4 from *Liege*. 'Twas deſtroyed by Fire in 1636, but well rebuilt ſince. Near this Town, there's a Nunnery called *Munſterbilſen*, richly endow'd for young Ladies of Quality, who are allow'd to marry at Diſcretion. Among other Rarities here, they have a compleat Unicorn's Horn near 7 Foot long. 6. *Haſſelt*, a well built and populous Town on the *Demer*, 4 *German* Miles from *Maeſtricht*, and 6 from *Liege*, where the Biſhop has a noble Palace, in which he reſides ſometimes. 'Tis noted for the Birth of *Haſſelius* and *Textelmannus*, two eminent Writers. Near this City lies the rich *Ciſtertian* Nunnery of *Hirchenrod*. 7. *Cowin*, in the Forreſt of *Lagne*, a ſmall City, purchas'd by the Biſhop of *Liege* from the Counts of *Hainault* about the End of the 11th Century. It lies 12 Miles S. W. from *Chârleroy*. 8. *Verviers*, a large Town, well built, on the ſame River with *Franchimont*.

The Dutchy of Berg.

HAS its Name from its Mountainous Soil, has the Dutchy of *Juliers* on the W. the County of *March* on the N. the Dutchy of *Weſtphalia* on the E. and Part of the Electorate of *Cologne* on the S. 'Tis about 50 Miles long on the Banks of the *Rhine*, and 20 where broadeſt. 'Twas govern'd formerly by Lords of its own, but at laſt came to the Houſe of *Juliers*, and was made a Dutchy in 1389, and came to the Family of *Cleves* in 1505; whoſe Male-Iſſue failing, a Diſpute happen'd about the Succeſſion by ſeveral Deſcendants from Daughters of the Family, which occaſion'd great Troubles in *Germany*. The Family of *Brandenburg*, with the Aſſiſtance of the *Dutch*, maintain'd their Pretenſions; and the Family of *Newburg* maintain'd theirs by the Aſſiſtance of the *Spaniards* in like manner; but at laſt they came to an Agreement, as we have formerly mentioned, in 1614, which was renewed and confirmed in 1651.

The chief PLACES *are*,

1. *Duſſeldorp*, the Metropolis of the Dutchy, and Reſidence of the Duke of *Newburg*, now Elector *Palatine*, on the E. Banks of the *Rhine*. 26 Miles below *Cologne*, and 6 above *Keyſerſwart*. The Publick Buildings towards the *Rhine* make a very good Appearance, particularly the Duke's Palace, which

first hold a red-hot Iron in his bare Hand, and go bare-foot over some burning Ploughshares, which the Legend says he perform'd without any Hurt. Near the Altar, they show the Stump of the Tree, guarded with Bars of Iron; and an Annual Fair is still kept on the Hill, which from thence is called the *Vision Market*.

Engern, or *Angrivaria*, so called from the *Angrivarii*, the ancient Inhabitants of those Parts. 'Twas formerly a famous Town, and the Residence of King *Witekind*, who founded a Collegiate Church here of the Order of St. *Denis*. *Witekind* was buried in it, and his Epitaph was still legible within these few Years; but the Town being destroyed, and now only a poor Village, the Members of the College remov'd to *Herford*, where they still show some Relicks and other Rarities belonging to their Ancestors. This Town gives Title of Duke to the Elector of *Cologne*.

Blotho, on the *Weser*, 15 Miles E. from *Herwerden*, was anciently a Barony, that reached as far as *Herwerden*, but has for some Ages been reckoned Part of *Ravensberg*. The Castle was built by the Dukes of *Brunswick* for the Count of *Waldeck*, then Baron of this Place. The Town is conveniently seated for Trade; the River there being capable of large Ships.

The Dutchy of Cleve,

IS reckon'd one of the oldest Principalities in *Germany*, being first conferred upon *Ælius Gracilis*, or *Gratius*, the Companion of *Charles Martel*, in his Expeditions against the *Persons*, *Saxons*, and *Bavarians*: But *La Forrest* says, 'twas given him by King *Pepin* about 759. His Posterity match'd with the Family of *Marck* in 1532, by which they procured that County, and one of their Successors was created Duke of *Cleve* by the Emperor *Sigismund* in 1417. The Country is well furnished with Woods, Corn, and Pasturage, and is watered by the *Rhine*, the *Ruer*, the *Lippe*, and the *Nierse*. The chief Forrest is that of *Duysburg*, which almost encompasses that Town, and is thought by some to be that mention'd by *Tacitus*, and other ancient Authors, under the Name of *Saltus Teutoburgensis*. This Dutchy has the *Dutch Netherlands* on the N. The Territories of *Cologne* and *Berg* on the S. Part of *Guelderland* on the W. and the Bishoprick of *Munster* on the E. *Moll* makes it 46 Miles long from S. E. to N. W. and about 20 where broadest.

The chief TOWNS *are*,

Cleve, so call'd from its Situation on the Rising of a Hill. It stands above 60 M. below *Cologne*, and about 12 S. E. from *Nimeguen*, within a League of the *Rhine*, in one of the finest Countries in *Germany*. *Cluverius* thinks it to be the Remains of the old *Colonia Ulpia Trajana*; the Main of which he supposes was at *Kellen*, about an *English* Mile from *Cleve*. It appears by several remarkable Ruins to have been formerly much larger than now, which favours *Cluverius*'s Opinion. Over the S. Gate, there's the Monument of *Eumenius Rhetor*, who is said to have taught Oratory here; and under it there's an Inscription, which says, he liv'd here in the Time of *Julius Cæsar*, who founded the Castle; of *Augustus*, who garrison'd it; of *Ulpius Trajanus*, who made it a Colony; and of *Ælius Adrianus*, who made it a City: But *Eumenius Rhetor*'s being here, is strongly argued against by *Lipsius*, and stoutly defended by *Pighius*. The Castle is a Place of no great Strength, but pleasantly seated on the Top of an Hill; and there's a curious Prospect of the neighbouring Country from the Top of that called the *Swan Tower*. The City is little, but well Peopled, being the Residence of the Elector's Deputies who govern the Country, and the Place where the States assemble, who hold their Meeting in the Castle. There are several fine Houses here belonging to Persons of Quality; but those of the ordinary Burgers are mean. The great Church, a Monastery of *Capuchins*, and another of *Franciscans*, are the only Publick Buildings of Note, except the Castle. The Government of the City and Country is in the Hands of the *Calvinists*, who have a large handsome Church here; but the Publick Churches are possessed by the Papists in most Places of this Dutchy, by Agreement with the Duke of *Newburg*, who upon that Account is obliged to allow the Protestants a Liberty in his Dominions.

Men-

Montanus ſays, the Town has no Fortifications; that the Caſtle is large, but irregular, and has two old ſquare Dungeons; that it has very Majeſtick Apartments, and a great Hall, in the End of which there's an Alcove, to which they go up by 20 Steps, the whole Breadth of the Hall; from whence there's a Proſpect of the neighbouring Country further than one's Eye can reach, with a great Number of Cities and Villages, and a noble View of the Courſe of the *Rhine*, and of the River *Hel*, which runs by the Foot of the Caſtle. On the W. Side of the Town lies Prince *Maurice*'s Parks, where there are a great many pleaſant Ponds and Water-Works, Grotto's, *&c.* Above them, lies the high Hill called *Sternberg*, from whence one may ſee *Utrecht*, tho' 51 Miles diſtant, with near 40 other Cities and great Towns, 12 of which are ſeen through Walks cut in the Wood; at the End of each of which appears a fair rich City. On the E. Side ſtands the Prince's Houſe in the Wood, where, among other Rarities, there's a notable Collection of old *Roman* Urns, and other Monuments of Antiquity, with ſeveral Inſcriptions, omitted by *Gruterus*.

2. *Embrick*, on the E. Side of the *Rhine*, 4 Miles from *Cleve*. The Emperor *Rudolph* prevailed with the States of *Holland* to reſign this Town to the Duke of *Cleve* in 1600, and at the ſame Time engaged the *Spaniards* to reſtore *Rhinberg* to the Elector of *Cologne*; but the *Spaniards* failing in their Performance, the States repoſſeſs'd themſelves of *Embrick*, which they fortified; but reſtor'd it, with other Towns in that Dutchy, to the late Elector of *Brandenburg*. The Jeſuits have a College here, where they teach Youth. The Fortifications conſiſted of 8 or 9 very fine Baſtions of Earth, Half-Moons of the ſame, and large deep Ditches on the Land Side; but on the Side of the *Rhine*, which is very broad there, they have only a Wall. They have always a ſmall Garriſon; but the Fortifications are neglected of late. 'Twas taken by the *French* when they invaded the *Netherlands* in 1672, but was reſtored in 1674. 'Tis a very ancient City, one of the Hans-Towns, and has a pretty good Trade. Over againſt it, there's a large Iſland in the *Rhine*, on the Corner of which, next the Town, there was a Fortification; which, together with the Cannon of the Place, commanded the River.

3. *Griet*, betwixt *Embrick* and *Rees*, on the *Rhine*, formerly a ſtrong Place; but was taken by the *Netherlanders* in 1636.

4. *Gennep*, at the Mouth of the *Nierſe*, over againſt *Guelderland*. 'Twas anciently a large populous City, well fortified, and the chief Defence of theſe Parts; but of late the Fortifications have been demoliſhed. 'Tis well ſeated for Trade; but lying on the Frontiers of *Guelderland*, and being ſubject to frequent Attacks, it has loſt its Commerce. The *Dutch*, becauſe of its Situation in the Road betwixt *Nimeguen* and *Venlo*, took it in 1641. The River *Nierſe* abounds with delicate Eels, and there's a very ſtrong Fort at a ſmall Diſtance from the Town. 'Twas taken by the *French* in 1672, but reſtored after they demoliſhed its Fortifications.

5. *Goch*, on the *Nierſe*, a little above *Gennep*, a ſmall fortified Town, which was taken by the *Netherlanders* in 1641.

6. *Calcar*, on the River *Meu*, 7 Miles S. E. from *Cleve*. 'Twas built for a Place of Refuge in caſe of any ſudden Invaſion from *Guelderland*, or the Electorate of *Cologne*, and grew populous and rich by their Trade in Linen-Cloth, Malt, and Beer. Duke *Adolph* I. built a vaſt Granary here, where moſt of the neighbouring Boors bring their Corn to be made into Malt. It has a ſtrong Caſtle, a fine Market-Place, and a ſtately Town-Houſe. St. *Nicholas*'s Church, and the *Dominican* Monaſtery, where they have a great Library, are noble Structures. In the Road betwixt this Town and *Santen*, ſtands the rich Monaſtery of *Marienboom*; on the Wall of which, next to the Road, there's a Latin Inſcription, to teſtify their Gratitude to the late Elector in 1650, for accepting their great Collection of MSS. on Condition that he would not turn them out, and ſecularize their Revenues.

7. *Santen*, near the Banks of the *Rhine*, 10 Miles S. E. from *Calcar*. 'Tis an ancient Town, which ſome ſay was built by *Trojans*, that came hither under *Francus*, one of *Hector*'s Sons, who call'd it *Troja Francorum*. Others ſay, 'twas built by the *Sicambri*, and that 'twas called *Santen*, becauſe the *Theban* Legion ſuffer'd here under the

Digitized by Google

Emperor *Maximianus*, which is just as true as that it was built by the *Trojans*. *Pighius* is of Opinion, That it was the *Ulpia Trajana*; but *Cluverius*, with more Reason, thinks it is the *Vetera Castra* of *Tacitus*, where *Julius Cæsar* resided for some Time. 'Tis now very much decayed; but in their great Church, there are many fine Altars of good Workmanship, with abundance of Relicks; and if you will believe them, they have a MS. of St. *Paul*'s writing.

8. *Wesel*, called *Nether Wesel*, to distinguish it from *Wesel* in the Dominions of *Treves*. It lies on the E. Side of the *Rhine*, 6 Miles from *Santen*, and is the largest and best built Town in the Dutchy. 'Tis a Hans-Town, and usually reckon'd among the Imperial Cities of *Westphalia*; but the Princes of *Cleve* freed it from the Monthly Contributions paid by other Imperial Towns. 'Tis strong, populous, and well seated for Trade. It first grew rich by the Concourse of Merchants who came hither from the *Netherlands*, to avoid the *Spanish* Persecution; but suffer'd much by the *French*, who took and plunder'd it in 1672, and exacted great Contributions from the Inhabitants, which forc'd many of 'em to retire. 'Twas restored in 1674, and is govern'd by its own Laws; but owns the Elector for Sovereign. Among other Publick Buildings, there's a noble Hospital here, founded by a Chancellor of the Dutchy, and richly endowed for aged and decrepit People. In the Porch of the great Church here, was born *Peregrine Bertie*, afterwards Earl of *Lindsey*, by the Lady *Catharine*, Dutchess Dowager of *Suffolk*, who with her Husband fled beyond Seas in the Time of Queen *Mary*'s Persecution; and not daring to discover her Quality, was reduced to great Straits for some Time. *Menconys* says, the Ramparts of the Town are flank'd with 9 good Bastions, 4 of which are fac'd with Brick; that there are two Suburbs, well fortified with good Bastions, Half-Moons, and Ditches; and that in the middle of the Curtains, there are Galleries which enter into the Ditch, and have at the end of 'em separate Places for the Men and Women in case of a Siege. There's a small Harbour here for Vessels that sail on the *Rhine*, with several Monasteries.

9. *Rees*, 12 Miles N. W. from *Wesel*, a large well fortified Town. 'Twas taken by the *French* in 1672, and restored in 1674. 'Twas formerly garrison'd by the *Dutch*. There was also a Fort on the other Side the *Rhine*. The Protestants have a Church here, where they have preserved a very fine Altar, which has an excellent Sculpture on gilt Wood, containing the History of our Saviour's Life.

10. *Burich*, a fortified Town over against *Wesel*, within a quarter of a League of the *Rhine*. 'Twas taken by the *Netherlanders* during the *Belgick* War, and by the *French* in 1672, but restor'd again in 1674.

11. *Alphen*, a little City about half a League S. from *Burich*.

12. *Orsoy*, another little City on the W. Bank of the *Rhine*, about 6 Miles S. E. from *Burich*. 'Twas well fortified, but taken by the *French*, in 1672, and the Garrison and Burgers cruelly treated by the *French* King, because they offered to hold out against his Army.

13. *Dinslacken*, near the Banks of the *Rhine*, 7 Miles S. E. from *Wesel*, is called by the *German* Geographers *Locus Martis*, but without Ground. 'Twas taken by the *Netherlanders* in 1627; since which, it has never recover'd its ancient State.

14. *Roerort*, on the Mouth of the *Roer*, which was also taken and fortified by the *Netherlanders*.

15. *Duisburg*, on the Borders of *Cleve* and *Berg*, about 16 Miles N. E. from *Wesel*. 'Tis alledg'd by some to be the *Teutoburgum* of the Ancients; and some think that the *Saltus Teutoburgensis*, where *Varus* was slain with his *Roman* Legions, is that called the *Duisburg* Wood. They have had a long Controversy with the Princes of *Cleve* about their Title to be an Imperial City; but have hitherto paid all Subjection to the Elector of *Brandenburg*, who calls himself Supreme Lord of this Place. 'Twas formerly noted for Annual Fairs; but that Trade is now enjoyed by *Francfort*. 'Tis a small City, but strong, well fortified and populous. They have an University; and St. *Salvator* and St. *Mary*'s Churches, with several Monasteries, are very fair Structures. 'Twas taken by the *French* under Marshal *Turenne* in 1672, but restor'd in 1674.

The

Digitized by Google

The Barony of RAVENSTEIN,

A small Tract of Land betwixt *Guilderland* and *Brabant*, has for some Ages been added to the Dutchy of *Cleve*, and has its Name from the Castle of *Ravenstein* on the *Maes*, a *German* League below *Grave*.

The Bishoprick of Munster,

HAS that of *Osnabrug* on the E. the Dutchy of *Cleve*, and Part of the County of *Zutphen*, on the W. the Counties of *Bentheim* and *Steinfurt* on the N and the County of *Mark* on the S. The Country is generally barren and ill Peopled, is about 100 Miles in Length, but of an unequal Breadth, being in some Parts 20, in some 40, and in others 60. 'Tis entirely subject to the Bishop, who is a Count of the Empire, and able to maintain 15000 Men. The principal Commodity of this Country is *Westphalia* Bacon. Their Bishops, till the Time of *Bernard Van Galen*, were always reckon'd peaceable, and fond of a Neutrality when their Neighbours were at War, and paid 12000 Crowns Annually to the States of *Holland* for their Protection; but that Bishop join'd with the *French* and *English* against the *Dutch*; and because of his Military Inclinations, was courted by the greatest Potentates. In all the Variety of Fortunes, he was successful in his War, being so cunning as to change Sides opportunely. He made it his Business to foment Divisions among his Neighbours, and to receive Pensions on both Sides; but all his Conquests were not able to compensate the Ruin of his Diocese, and the Loss of so many Thousands of Men as were kill'd by his Means. He died in 1678, just upon the Peace betwixt *France*, *Spain*, and the *Netherlands*. Upon which his Neighbours and Subjects made this Remark, That 'twas time for him to walk off the Stage, when Men grew weary of War, and delirous of Peace.

Their chief PLACES *are*,

1. *Munster*, the Metropolis of *Westphalia*, in a fruitful Soil, near the Banks of the *Ems*, well fortified by Nature and Art. It lies in Long. 26. 7. Lat. 52. 52 Miles N E. from *Cleve*, and 22 S. W. from *Osnabrug*. The Houses are generally fair and well built, there being a good Quarry of Free-Stone at *Bamberg*, two *German* Leagues from the Town. It has 5 Collegiate Churches, and a College of Jesuits well frequented. The chief College is that of the Cathedral, consisting of a Dean and Chapter, who chuse the Bishop. The River *Aa* runs through the City, and the Fishing of it belongs to the Bishop. The Bishoprick was founded by *Charlemagne* in 758, who made St. *Ludgar* their first Bishop. It has a strong Castle, and was formerly an Imperial Town; but was taken by *Bernard Galen* in 1661, and has since lost that Privilege. The Revenues of the Diocese were reckon'd in 1661 at 300000 Crowns *per Annum*; but are now much abated. This City is famous for the bloody Tragedy acted there in 1533 by the Enthusiastical Anabaptists, under the Conduct of *John Buckholt*, a Taylor, born at *Leyden* in *Holland*, and on that Account called *John* of *Leyden*. He brought over to his Party *Rothman*, a Minister of the Suburbs, who had embrac'd *Luther*'s Doctrine, and successfully preach'd it in the City. The Senate endeavour'd to suppress those Disorders; but the Faction grew so strong, that they were obliged to give them a Toleration. After this, *Buckholt*'s Followers pretended to Revelations, and bawl'd about the Streets, commanding all Men to repent, and be baptiz'd. Then they seiz'd the Town-Hall, with the publick Arms and Ammunition, and usurp'd the Government; After which they sent *Rothman* and *Knipperdelling* privately to invite all of their Persuasion in the neighbouring Countries, which fill'd the Town with Anabaptists, who drove out the other Inhabitants. In 1534, the Bishop besieg'd them, but in vain. In the mean Time *John* of *Leyden* took the Title of King, and made one of his Concubines Queen, whom he afterwards beheaded, for shewing a Dislike at some of his Frantick Tricks. In 1535, the Bishop, assisted by the Landgrave of *Hesse*, and the Troops of *Cologne*, surpris'd the City, by the Direction of a Deserter, took the Mock King, with his two great Favourites, and sent them in Derision to the

Digitized by Google

neighbouring Courts. Next Year *John* of *Leyden* was torn to Pieces with hot Pincers, and his Bones hung in an Iron Cage on the Top of a Steeple. This City is alſo famous for the Treaty of *Weſtphalia*, concluded here in 1648. The Biſhop is Suffragan to the Elector of *Cologne*.

2. *Meppen*, at the Mouth of the *Haſe*, on the Frontiers of *Frieſland*, 43 Miles N. from *Munſter*. 'Twas fortified by *Guſtavus*, a *Swediſh* General, and afterwards ſold to *Charles Ludowick*, Count *Palatine* of the *Rhine*, for 60000 Crowns. 'Tis reckon'd the Key of *Eaſt-Frieſland*, and was taken by the *Netherlanders* in 1587. 'Tis the chief Town of *Lower Munſter*.

3. *Haſelunen*, 10 Miles E. from *Meppen*. In 1639, 70 Imperialiſts ſurpris'd and defeated 100 *Swedes*, who beſieged this ſmall Place, which was defended by 50 Men.

4. *Kloppenburg*, 16 Miles N. E. from *Haſelunen*. 'Twas taken by the *Swedes* in 1635, and regularly fortified; but ſoon after ſurrender'd to the Imperialiſts.

5. *Vecht*, a ſmall City near the Confines of *Oſnabrug*, 13 Miles S. E. from *Kloppenburg*, formerly ſubject to Lords of its own, and is Capital of a County of 15 Pariſhes, each of which contain 10 or 12 Villages; and in the whole, there are 31 Seats of People of Quality. In 1394, the Duke of *Luneburg* and Count of *Hoy* invaded the Biſhoprick of *Oſnabrug*, and carried off much Plunder; but were ſurpris'd and defeated by the Burgers of *Vecht*, who reſcued the Priſoners and Booty.

6. *Warenberg*, on the *Ems*, ſaid to have been built by *Varus*, a *Roman* Captain, who was kill'd at *Paderborn* in a Sedition, under the Reign of *Auguſtus*.

7. *Stromberg*, S. of *Warenberg*, Capital of a Burgraviate, for which the Biſhops of *Munſter* obtain'd in 1653 a Vote in the Diet.

8. *Coesfelt*, a ſmall fortified Hans-Town on the River *Berkel*, 20 Miles W. from *Munſter*, and the uſual Place of the Biſhop's Reſidence.

9. *Ahuſen*, or *Aſchenhuys*, on the *Regge*, Capital of a large Barony. It lies 15 Miles N. W. from *Meppen*.

10. *Borcklos*, on the River *Berkel*, Capital of a Barony, which belongs to the Counts of *Stirum*.

11. *Tilligt*, on the *Ems*, noted for a Convention of the States of *Munſter* in 1532, to oppoſe the Growth of *Lutheraniſm*.

12. *Rheyne*, a ſmall neat City on the River *Ems*, 18 Miles N. from *Munſter*.

There are ſeveral other Market-Towns in this Biſhoprick, of which we have no Deſcription.

The Biſhoprick of Paderborn,

IS ſo large, that it contains 24 Market-Towns, 20 Seats of Men of Quality, 16 Monaſteries, and 54 Pariſhes. It has on the E. the Dutchy of *Brunſwick*, and Part of *Heſſe*; on the W. the Dutchy of *Weſtphalia*; on the S. the County of *Waldeck*; and on the N. that of *Lippe*; and is, according to *Moll*, 43 Miles long, and 23 broad. There's a great Concourſe of Drovers from *France*, *Brabant*, &c. to their Annual Fairs. They abound with Deer and other Veniſon, rich Springs of Salt, and have ſome Iron Mines.

The chief TOWNS *are*,

1. *Paderborn*, on the River *Pader*, a large, fine, and populous City, and one of the Hans-Towns, in Long. 30. 28. Lat. 51. 40. 32 Miles S. W. from *Caſſel*, and 50 N. E. from *Munſter*. The Biſhoprick was founded by *Charlemagne* in 777, and is Suffragan of *Mentz*. 'Twas liberally endowed by neighbouring Princes. The *Romiſh* Legends make the Foundation of this Biſhoprick miraculous; and ſay, That *Charles the Great* encamping on that Ground where the City now ſtands, his Army being at that Time in great Want of Water, the firſt Pin that was ſtruck in the Ground to faſten his Pavilion gave Iſſue to a plentiful Spring, that now drives ſome Water-Mills; on which the Emperor order'd the Church to be built upon that Spring, from which the Town derives its Name: But if the opening of every Fountain be a Miracle, there are abundance performed by Labourers every Day. *La Forreſt* and others alledge, That 'twas here where the *Romans*, under *Varus* were defeated by *Arminius*, the General of the *Cheruſci*; but *Cluverius*, in the Third Book of his *Germania Antiqua*, offers many Au-

Digitized by Google

Authorities to prove, that *Varus* was defeated betwixt the Mountains and the Town of *Dietmelle*, which he takes to be the ancient *Teutobergum*, that lies about 12 Miles N. E. from *Paderborn*, and is by *Aimonius* call'd *Theothmelli*, which differs little from its preſent Name. To the Objection rais'd from *Ptolomy*, that this Battle happen'd near the River *Weſer*, he anſwers, That *Ptolomy* mention'd this, becauſe 'twas the moſt noted River near the Place of Battle, being within 11 or 12 Miles of it; which confutes thoſe who would have *Duysburg* in the Dutchy of *Cleve* to be the ancient *Teutoburgum*, and that *Varus* was defeated in that called *Duysburg* Wood, there being 95 Miles diſtance betwixt *Duysburg* and *Dietmelle*. *Pomarius*, in his Chronicle of *Magdeburg*, ſays, That *Charlemagne* order'd the greateſt Part of the *Weſtphalians* and *Saxons* to be baptiz'd in this Fountain at *Paderborn* in 776, and 777. The moſt remarkable Publick Structures in this City are, the Biſhop's Palace and the Cathedral, to which *Otho* II. gave a Golden Crucifix of 60 Pound Weight, valued at 60000 Crowns. *La Forreſt* ſays, the Chapter is compoſed of 24 Capitular Canons, who are all obliged to ſtudy in ſome *French* or *Italian* Univerſity; and that the Cathedral is one of the fineſt in *Germany*. They loſt their Privilege of being an Imperial City ſince 1604, when they were ſubjected to their Biſhop. In *Luther*'s Time, the Citizens began to embrace the Reformation; but *Herman* Archbiſhop of *Cologne* being elected their Biſhop, he condemned 16 of the chief Burgers who embrac'd the Reformation to die, and forc'd the reſt to ſwear, they would never endeavour any Alteration in Religion *Theodore* of *Furſtemberg*, their Biſhop, built the adjacent Caſtle in 1590, and founded their Univerſity in 1592.

2. *Lippeſpring*, or *Lippesburg*, about a *German* League N. from *Paderborn*, ſo called from the River *Lippe*, which riſes in a large Stream in this Town. It ſtands on the Edge of a Heath, two *German* Miles long, uninhabited, and much infeſted by Robbers. The Dean and Chapter of *Paderborn*, who are Lords of this Town, have a Caſtle here, near the Place where the River ſprings, which, before it leaves the Town, drives 3 or 4 Mills.

3. *Warburg*, a Hans-Town on the *Dymel*, 18 Miles S. E. from *Paderborn*, was formerly ſubject to Counts of its own, that were Members of the *Weſtphalian* States; but is now under the Biſhop It ſtands in a fruitful Soil, drives a great Trade in brewing ſtrong palatable Beer, and has a conſiderable Income from the neighbouring Mines of Iron and Lead.

4. *Lude*, *Ludge*, or *Leys*, a Town properly in the County of *Pyrmont*, but ſubject to the Biſhop. It lies 27 Miles N. E. from *Paderborn*, and is noted for a Medicinal Fountain, called the *Holy Well*, reckon'd a ſovereign Remedy for moſt Diſtempers, and upon that Account much frequented. 'Tis alſo noted for *Charlemagne*'s Encampment here in 787.

5. *Brackel*, on the River *Brug*, formerly an Imperial Town, but now ſubject to the Biſhop. It lies 18 Miles E. from *Paderborn*.

6. *Herſel*, on the *Weſer*, built by *Charlemagne* in the 8th Century, when he held a Meeting of the Eſtates there. It had a fine Caſtle, which was burnt by the *Heſſians* in 1637.

7. *Buren*, 5 Miles S. from *Paderborn*, purchas'd from its own Lords by the Biſhop in the 16th Century: 'Twas burnt by the *Swedes* in 1636, but ſince rebuilt.

8. *Welsburg*, on the River *Alme*, famous for the Cruelty of the *Huns* to the Inhabitants about 451.

9. *Solkot*, 8 Miles S. W. from *Paderborn*, noted for its Salt Pits, which bring in a conſiderable Revenue.

Our *Philoſophical Tranſactions* of *December*, 1665, tell us of a Spring in this Biſhoprick which loſes it ſelf twice in 24 Hours, but returns again with ſuch Violence, that it drives 3 Mills not far from its Source; and becauſe of its Noiſe, is called by the Inhabitants *Bolderburn*, or the Boiſterous Spring. *Mottery* ſays, it lies near *Oldenbeck*, in *Teutburg* Forreſt; that it ſometimes runs about an Hour, and then ſtops for three; that it ceas'd running from 1630, to 1638; after which it had a regular Courſe like other Springs: But the *Philoſophical Tranſactions* being later, we may ſuppoſe that it now runs and ſtops by Turns. The *Philoſophical Tranſactions* of *January*, 1665, gives us an Account of another Fountain called *Marborn*, about two Miles from *Paderborn*, which

ſeats

ſes with a treble Spring; two of which, thô not above a Foot and a half diſtant, differ ſo much in Quality, that whereas one of 'em is limpid, bluiſh, luke-warm, bubbling, and holding Sal Armoniac, Ochra, Iron, Vitriol, Allum, Sulphur, Nitre, Orpiment, us'd againſt Epilepſies, bad Spleens, and the Worms; the other is ice-cold, turbid, and whitiſh, much ſtronger in Taſt, and heavier than the former, holding much Orpiment, Salt, Nitre, Iron, and ſome Sal Armoniac. All Birds that drink of it, are obſerved to die of Convulſions; but if they have common Salt given them immediately after, they do not die ſo ſoon: If they have Vinegar given them, they do not die at all; but in 7 or 8 Days after are troubled with the Pip. The Lungs of ſuch as dy'd being open'd, they were found quite ſhrivel'd up: Yet People who are troubled with the Worms, taking a ſmall Quantity of it mix'd with common Water, it kills the Worms, and brings them away in great Numbers; but makes the Patient very ſick. The 3d Stream, that lies lower than the other two, and 20 Paces from them, is greeniſh, very clear, and of a pleaſant Taſt, partaking both of Sowr and Sweet. 'Tis of a middle Weight, betwixt the other two, and is ſuppoſed to be a Mixture of both: For the Gentleman who ſent this Account to the *Royal Society*, ſays, he mix'd an equal Quantity of the two former with a little common Fountain Water, and when they were ſtir'd together, and ſuffer'd to ſettle, they made a Water of the ſame Colour and Taſt with the 3d Spring. We refer the Curious for a further Account of theſe, and other Springs in this Country, to the Works of *Taberna Montanus*.

The Abbacy of CORBEY,

Lies on the E. of this Biſhoprick, betwixt it and the River *Weſer*. Its Juriſdiction is about 16 Miles long, and 8 broad. The Town of *Corbey*, from whence it has its Name, lies on the *Weſer*, 27 Miles E. from *Paderborn*, and, with the adjoining Country, is ſubject to its Abbot, who is a Prince of the Empire. *La Forreſt* ſays, the Abbey was founded by St. *Adelard*, Abbot of *Corbey* in *France*, about 822, and by him called *New Corbey*. But others ſay, 'twas founded by the Emperor *Lewis* I. It ſtands in the *Solenger* Forreſt, and is half encompaſſed by the *Weſer*. He alſo founded an Univerſity here, where ſeveral *German* Biſhops have been bred. Their firſt Rector was *Auſcharius*, ſeveral of whoſe Scholars were ſent by the ſame Emperor to convert the Iſland of *Rugin*; for which the Emperor *Lotharius* beſtow'd it upon this Abbey, according to his Vow, when he went to conquer it, That he would beſtow it on St. *Vite*, who lay buried in that Monaſtery, as appears by his *Diploma*, ſign'd at *Aix la Chapelle* the 20th of *May*, 844. *Lætzner*, in his Chronicle of this Abbey, gives an Account of all the Abbots and famous Writers buried here; among whom he reckons *Witekind*, a famous *Saxon* Hiſtorian. Near this Place was found the *Saxon* Idol *Irmenſewl*, formerly mentioned.

To this Monaſtery belongs the City of *Hoxter* or *Huxer*, on the *Weſer*, 4 Miles S. W. from *Corbey*. 'Tis a fair Town, of good Trade, by the Conveniency of the River, which occaſions many of the *German* Nobility to keep their Houſes here, for the Improvement of their Eſtates by Trade and Merchandize; a Practice not common to *Germans* of Quality. This Town ſuffered much during the Civil Wars, when 1500 Men were kill'd in one Siege, and thrown into the *Weſer*; but it has ſince recover'd much of its ancient Luſtre, has 3 fair Pariſh-Churches, and has ſeveral other Publick Buildings of Note. *La Forreſt* ſays, it's now a Free Town, under the Protection of the Dukes of *Brunſwick*. There are ſeveral other Towns and Mannors belonging to this Abbey, but not worth deſcribing.

The County of Lippe,

IS a ſmall Tract of Land S. of the Biſhoprick of *Paderborn*. *Mill* makes it 35 Miles where longeſt, and about 11 where broadeſt. The Princes of this County are Counts of *Ritberg*, and ſome other Places in the Neighbourhood, which make them more conſiderable than the firſt View of their Dominions in the Map would ſeem to do. Some *German* Heralds derive their Pedigree from *Maulius*, who ſo bravely defended

Digitized by Google

ded the *Roman* Capital againſt the *Gauls*. Others bring them from the two *Urſini*. But all agree, that they are of ancient *Roman* Extract. They are divided into the Branches of *Diethmold*, *Brackel*, and *Buckemburg*, and have married into great Families.

Their TOWNS *of Note are*;

1. *Dietmelle*, *Dethmold*, or *Diethmold*, about 12 Miles N. E. from *Paderborn*, and is the chief Reſidence of the eldeſt Houſe. *Cluverius* derives the Name from *Dith* or *Diet*, the ſame with *Teuto*, the old *German* Idol; and, as we have mention'd before, makes it the ancient *Teutoburgum*. 'Tis alſo remarkable for a great Overthrow given to the *Saxons* in its Neighbourhood by *Charlemagne*, in his 6th Expedition againſt thoſe People. The Town is ſmall, and ſubſiſts chiefly upon the Court of the Prince.

2. *Lippe*, or *Lippeſtat*, Lat. *Lippia*, on the River *Lippe*, 20 Miles W. from *Paderborn*, 35 S. E. from *Munſter*, and 36 S. from *Oſnabrug*. 'Twas built by Count *Bernard* II. in 1150, who was Son to *Bernard* I. Count of *Oberwal*, Favourite to the Emperor *Lotharius* II. The Town is well fortified, and by the Inhabitants reckon'd impregnable. It made a brave Reſiſtance againſt *Dietrich* Archbiſhop of *Cologne* in 1447. The Fortifications have been much improved ſince, and 'twas the firſt Place in thoſe Parts which reſiſted the *French* with any Succeſs in their late Wars, that were concluded by the Treaty of *Nimeguen*. Their chief Trade is in preparing Timber for building Veſſels on the *Rhine*, to which it has an eaſy Conveyance by the River *Lippe*. 'Twas formerly the chief Reſidence of the oldeſt Houſe of *Lippe*, to whom the County ſtill belongs; but the City is now poſſeſſed by the King of *Pruſſia*.

3. *Horn*, an old Town near *Diethmold*, thought to be ſeated in or near the Place where *Varus* was defeated. It had Counts of its own till 1567, that it was made ſubject to the Counts of *Lippe*.

4. *Lemgow*, 15 Miles N. E. from *Paderborn*, and 5 N. from *Diethmold*, a rich and neat Hans-Town on the River *Pega*, in a Country abounding with Corn. The Citizens are ingenious and induſtrious; two Qualities, ſays Dr. *Nicholſon*, not very common in thoſe Parts. Tho' they be ſubject to the Counts of *Lippe*, they have as large Privileges as other Hans-Towns, and are one of the Eſtates of *Weſtphalia*. The People are generally *Lutherans*, and have a good *Gymnaſium*, and a Preſs for the Uſe of the Scholars.

5. *Uffen*, or *Salzuffen*, in the Road betwixt *Lemgow* and *Herwordren*, noted for a noble Salt-Spring, and a ſtrong Cloth made here, and exported in great Quantities.

6. *Pyrmont*, a ſtrong Fort near *Ludge*, about two *German* Miles from *Hamelen* in the Dutchy of *Brunſwick*. It had formerly Counts of its own, who were alſo Counts of *Spigelberg*; but their Male-Iſſue failing, it came by Marriage to the Counts of *Lippe* in 1557.

7. *Ritberg*, a large Town with a Caſtle, on the *Ems*, 10 Miles N. E. from *Lipſtat*. It had formerly Counts of its own; but *John*, the laſt of 'em, who rais'd a Diſturbance among the States of *Weſtphalia*, was unanimouſly oppos'd by them, taken and impriſon'd at *Cologne*, where he died. Upon which *Ritberg* came to the Count of *Lippe*, who married one of his Daughters; but it pays ſome Acknowledgment to the Biſhop of *Paderborn*.

The County of Schawemburg,

HAS the Dominions of the Houſe of *Brunſwick* on the N. E. and S. and of the latter Part of the County of *Lippe*, with the Principality of *Minden*, on the W. *Molt* makes it 30 Miles long, and 17 broad. It abounds with Corn and Hay, Quarries of Free-Stone, of which they export great Quantities, Salt-Pits, Timber, Coal, Allum, Chalk, Veniſon; and ſome Years ago they had Copper Mines, in which there were ſome ſmall Quantities of Gold, and Silver-Ore, which Dr. *Nicholſon* thinks now to be loſt. 'Tis water'd by the *Weſer*, *Hamel*, *Awe*, *Caſpaw*, and the *Exter*; from which, and the *Steinhuder-See*, a Lake 5 Miles long, and 2 broad, they are plentifully ſupplied with Fiſh, eſpecially Perch, for Conſumption and Export. *La Forreſt* ſays, this County was given by the Emperor *Conrad* II. to *Adolph*, a *Saxon* Lord, about 1032; whoſe Poſterity failing in 1459, *Chriſtian* of *Oldenburg*, King of

Digitized by Google

of *Denmark*, deſcended from a Daughter of the Family, fell Heir to it. *Otho*, deſcended from another Daughter, had the County of *Pinnenberg*; but his Poſterity failing, *Pinnenberg* was divided betwixt the King of *Denmark* and the Duke of *Holſtein*; and moſt of *Schawenburg* fell to the Landgrave of *Heſſe-Caſſel*, with which the *Atlas Hiſtorique* agrees.

The PLACES *of Note here are,*

1. *Schawenburg*, an old Caſtle on the Top of an high Hill on the E. Side the *Weſer*, 17 Miles E. from *Minden*, and was the ancient Seat of their Counts.

2. *Buckenburg*, the Seat of the 2d Branch of the Houſe of *Lippe*, 12 Miles W. from *Schawenburg*. *Cluverius* thinks it to be the *Ars Bructerorum* of the Ancients, well known in the Time of *Tacitus* for Sacrifices offer'd there to *Hercules*, or an Idol that reſembled him. It has nothing remarkable but the Count's Palace, which is a ſtately Fabrick.

3. *Rentelen*, on the W. Bank of the *Weſer*, about 17 Miles N. E. from *Lemgow*, where there is a *Gymnaſium*.

4. *Stathagen*, a pleaſant little Wall'd City, in the middle of a large Forreſt, 17 Miles W. from *Hanover*, and 8 N. from *Schawenburg*. 'Twas built by Count *Adolph* for a Reſidence of Pleaſure, as appears by the Inſcription on the Seal of the Town.

5. *Oldendorf*, a little ſtrong Town about 5 Miles S. E. from *Schawenburg*. The Imperialiſts beſieg'd it in vain in 1633, but took and plunder'd it in 1639. The Counts of *Lippe* have a Cuſtom-Houſe here, where all Veſſel's that paſs up and down the *Weſer* pay a Duty.

6. *Saxenhagen*, a Town with a ſtrong Fort in the moſt Northerly Part of the County, about 16 Miles N.W. from *Hanover*.

The Principality of Minden.

MOſt makes it about 26 Miles where longeſt from S. to N. and much the ſame Breadth from E. to W. It has the County of *Hoy* on the N. and *Lippe* on the S. and abounds with Corn, of which they export great Quantities; and in the N. and W. 'tis full of Woods and Hills, which abound with Game.

The PLACES *of Note here are,*

1. *Minden*, a large and rich Hans-Town, on the W. Bank of the *Weſer*, 30 Miles W. from *Hanover*, and 38 E. from *Oſnabrug*. *Charles the Great* made it a Biſhoprick, and it continued ſo till 1638, that 'twas ſecularriz'd by the Treaty of *Munſter* in Favour of the Elector of *Brandenburg*. The Cathedral is ſtately, but dark, and is ſaid to have been formerly King *Witekind*'s Palace, which upon his Converſion he turn'd into a Church. The Town is neat, and well fortified. 'Twas taken by the Imperialiſts in 1628, and by the Duke of *Brunſwick* in 1634.

2. *Peterſhagen*, on the ſame River, about 3 Miles below *Minden*. 'Tis defended by a good Caſtle, formerly the Reſidence of the Biſhops, where now the Chancery for the Principality is kept.

The County of Hoy,

HAS *Bremen* on the N. *Minden* on the S. *Lunenburg* on the E. and *Diepholt* on the W. is 28 Miles long, and 20 broad. The chief Town, of the ſame Name, lies on the E. Side the *Weſer*, 30 Miles N.E. from *Minden*, 40 S.W. from *Zell*, and 25 S. E. from *Bremen*. 'Tis a ſmall Town, but well fortified, and has one of the ſtrongeſt Caſtles in *Weſtphalia*. It had formerly Counts of an ancient *Saxon* Family, to whom 'twas given by the Emperor *Lotharius*. They were much reſpected in the Empire; but the laſt of 'em dying in 1582, the County was divided betwixt the Families of *Brunſwick* and *Heſſe*; the latter of which gave their Share, which was *Uchte* and *Freudenburg*, to the Counts of *Bentem*. The moſt conſiderable Place next to *Hoy* is *Nyenburg*, on the E. Side the *Weſer*, 10 Miles E. from *Hoy*. 'Tis a well fortified Town, and ſuſtained ſeveral Sieges during the Wars of *Germany*.

The Dutchy of VERDEN *or* FERDEN,

Is by the *Matricula* made Part of *Weſtphalia*; but we have formerly deſcrib'd it as Part of the Dutchy of *Bremen*, to which 'twas united by the Treaty of *Weſtphalia*.

The

Digitized by Google

The County of Diepholt,

LIes betwixt *Hoy* and the Bishoprick of *Osnabrug*. *Moll* makes it 30 Miles long; but its Breadth is unequal, the broadest Place being about 18 Miles. The Capital, of the same Name, lies on the Lake *Dummer*, 27 Miles W. from *Hoy*. It had Lords of its own, whose Posterity failing in 587, it fell to the Dutchy of *Lunenburg*. The Town was almost ruin'd during the Civil Wars of *Germany*; but is since rebuilt, and defended by a Fort. In this County there's a Hill called *Hulfemburg*, or the Mountain of Help, because, says the Chronicle of *Brunswick*, *Charlemagne* pray'd here against *Witekind* and his Idols; and having obtain'd the Victory, he built a Chapel on the Top of an Hill, which being much frequented, a large Village was built in the Neighbourhood, which they call St. *Hulp*. They had afterwards an Annual Fair granted them, where the Monks sold Indulgences; but since the Reformation, that Custom is abolish'd.

The Bishoprick of Osnabrug,

HAS Part of the Bishoprick of *Munster* on the N. the County of *Ravensburg* on the S. *Minden* and *Hoy* on the E. *Lingen* and Part of *Munster* on the W. *Moll* makes it 39 Miles from S. to N. and 28 where broadest from E. to W.

This is the first Bishoprick founded by *Charles the Great* after he subdued *Witekind* the *Saxon* about 776, when he dedicated the Cathedral to St. *Peter*, and the two Martyrs, *Crispin* and *Crispinianus*. It appears by his Diploma, that he exempted this Bishop from all manner of Homage and Service, except to go in an Embassy at the Emperor's Charge to negotiate any Match that should be proposed betwixt the Families of the Emperors of the E. and W. Dr. *Nicholson* says, That since the Reformation, which was introduced here in 1634, there has been little more than the Name of a Bishop; the *Lutherans* not allowing the Execution of Episcopal Jurisdiction, and the Papists not being strong enough to obtain it for one of their own Opinion. By the Treaty of *Westphalia*, the House of *Brunswick* is to enjoy this Bishoprick by an alternate Succession. 'Twas lately enjoyed by *Ernest Augustus* of *Hanover*, but now, says *La Forest*, by a Prince of *Lorrain*. There are 25 Canons, 18 of which are enjoyed by Popish Ecclesiasticks; the Revenues of 4 by the Jesuits, for the Support of their College; and the other 3 by *Lutherans*. When they have a Popish Bishop, he is Suffragan to the Elector of *Cologne*.

The TOWNS *of chief Note are,*

1. *Osnabrug*, so called from a Bridge over the *Hasa* or *Ose*. It lies 22 Miles N. E. from *Munster*, and 37 W. from *Minden*. It stands on a fair Plain. Some say, 'twas founded by *Julius Cæsar*, but without any good Authority. *Charles the Great* erected a School for Latin and Greek, which is since become a *Gymnasium*, with 3 or 4 Professors of several Faculties. They have a considerable Trade by brewing a palatable thick sort of Beer, which they call *Buse*, and in baking the best white Bread in *Westphalia*. 'Tis noted for a Treaty betwixt the Emperor and the King of *Sweden* in 1648, wherein all the Affairs of the Protestants were concerted, which was a Branch of the Treaty of *Westphalia*. 'Tis a neat City, and adorn'd with several noble Publick Buildings. 'Tis divided into the Old and New Towns by the River *Ose*. 'Tis pretty strong, encompassed with Walls and Ditches, but commanded by a neighbouring Mountain within half a Cannon-shot, upon which there's an Abbey of Men of Quality. The Ancient and Present State of *Germany* says, it stands in the fruitfulest Part of *Westphalia*, and the Inhabitants are industrious, breed abundance of Cattle, particularly Hogs, which make the best *Westphalia* Bacon. They have also a considerable Trade by making Linen. The same Author adds, That the *Lutheran* Canons are capable of electing a Bishop, but not of being elected; whereas the Popish Canons are capable of both. The Papists have the Cathedral Church, and the Church and Monastery of the *Dominicans* in the Old City, and the Collegiate Church of St. *John* in the New. The Protestants have the great Parochial Church of St. *Mary* in the Old City, and

Digitized by Google

have a Voice in chuſing Magiſtrates in both. The Biſhop's Palace and Caſtle of *Petersburg* is well fortified, and a great Defence to the Town. Not far from the City, there's the Ruins of an old Church and Caſtle called *Beelem*, which ſome ſay was built by King *Witekind* upon his Converſion; and the Country People have an old Song with the whole Story of it, by which they pretend to prove he was baptiz'd here, and not at *Minden*; and this they ſing with great Veneration. About two *Engliſh* Miles from hence lies the Monaſtery of *Rulle*, on the Bank of a Lake, ſo deep, that it could never yet be fathom'd.

2. *Iburg*, S. from *Oſnabrug* about 12 Miles, with a commodious Caſtle, in which the Biſhop formerly reſided. 'Twas taken and plunder'd by *Philip the Great* of *Brunſwick* in 1553.

3. *Quakenbrug*, a ſmall and neat City on the River *Oſe*, 28 Miles N. from *Oſnabrug*.

The County of TECKLENBURG,

Lies on the S. W. of *Oſnabrug*, is about 16 Miles long, and 9 broad. The only Place of Note in it is the Capital of the ſame Name, a large open Town, with a Caſtle, formerly the Seat of its Counts. It lies 7 Miles W. from *Oſnabrug*. The Counts of this Place had formerly large Dominions in the Neighbourhood, which are now parcel'd out among other Princes; but this Town, with the Title, came to the Counts of *Bentem* about 1560. Some will have it to be the Remains of the ancient *Teſelia*, the City of the *Angrivari*, who inhabited thoſe Parts.

The County of LINGEN,

Lies on the N. W. Part of *Oſnabrug*, is 15 Miles long, and about 10 broad. The only Place of Note in it is the Capital of the ſame Name. It came to the Houſe of *Naſſaw* by the Marriage of the only Daughter of the laſt Count of *Buren* to *William* Prince of *Orange* about 1560. The Inhabitants are *Calviniſts*.

The County of STEINFORT,

Is encompaſſed with the Biſhoprick of *Munſter*, and lies N. W from the City of *Munſter*. 'Tis about 15 Miles long, and 9 where broadeſt. The only Town of Note in it is *Burchſteinfort*, on the Banks of the *Aa*, 10 Miles N. W. from *Munſter*. It belongs to the Counts of *Bentem*. It has a *Gymnaſium* for the Languages and Liberal Arts.

The County of BENTEM,

Lies N. from *Steinfort*, is 30 Miles long, and 13 where broadeſt. It has the United Provinces on the W. and N. Theſe two Counties were formerly ſubject to different Families; but thoſe of *Steinfort* ſucceeded to the other by Marriage. They are both full of Woods, except about *Bentem* and *Nienhuys*, where there are pleaſant and fruitful Vallies on the River *Aa*. Count *Arnold*, who founded the *Gymnaſium* at *Steinfort*, brought in the *Augsburg* Confeſſion in 1564; but their Count *William Henry*, who turn'd Papiſt in 1668, gave ſome Trouble to his Proteſtant Subjects, till the States of *Holland* interpoſed. The only Place of Note is *Bentem*, the ancient Seat of their Counts, which lies 30 Miles N. W. from *Munſter*. It lies in the middle of a Wood, and is of no great Note.

The County of DELMENHORST,

Lies S. E. from *Bremen*, is about 17 Miles long, and 7 broad. The only Place of Note is *Delmenhorſt*, on the *Delm*, a ſmall Town, fortified with a Caſtle, 10 Miles S. W. from *Bremen*. It formerly belong'd to the Counts of *Oldenburg*, and now to the King of *Denmark*.

The County of OLDENBURG,

Has the Sea on the N. Part of the Biſhoprick of *Munſter* on the S. the County of *Embden* on the W. and the Dutchy of *Bremen* on the E. 'Tis about 50 Miles long from S. E. to N. W. and about 30 where broadeſt. 'Tis generally barren, full of large Heaths and Marſhes, which breed only a ſmall ſort of Cattle. The Inhabitants are generally poor, and live in mean Cottages of Clay and Turf; ſo that were it not for the Barony of *Jevern* in *Eaſt-Frieſland*, with ſome other Acceſſions elſewhere, the Counts

Digitized by Google

Counts of *Oldenburg* could ſcarce maintain the Rank of a Prince of the Empire, thô they boaſt of as much Antiquity as any in *Germany*, and derive their Pedigree from *Witekind* King of the *Saxons*, who they alledge call'd himſelf Count of *Oldenburg*: but Dr. *Nicholſon* thinks it muſt have been of the Country of that Name in *Holſtein*. Their own Counts fail'd upon the Death of *Anthony Gunter*, the laſt of 'em, in 1656; and the King of *Denmark*, who was of the ſame Family, ſucceeded, having agreed with the Duke of *Holſtein* for his Pretenſions. *Crantzius*, *Chytræus*, and *Helmoldus*, ſpeak very honourably of the Antiquity of the Inhabitants.

The only Place of Note is *Oldenburg*, the Capital, on the River *Hund*, which falls into the *Weſer* a little below, where there's a Cuſtom-Houſe, at which Ships pay Toll to the King of *Denmark*. The Town is well fortified with Walls and Ditches; and large Barges come up from the *Weſer* as far as the Bridge, which brings them a good Trade. The Caſtle, in which the Count reſided, is round, uniform, and ſtately; but the Houſes of the Burgers are mean, and ſcarcely one of 'em of Stone. Dr. *Nicholſon* ſays, That upon the Diviſion of this County betwixt Count *Chriſtian* and his Brother *Otho* about 1247, the latter built a Palace on the River *Delma*, which gave Riſe to the Town of *Delmenhorſt*, formerly mentioned, which was afterwards fortified, and grew conſiderable. He founded alſo a Monaſtery there, which upon the Reformation was converted into a Church, a Free School, and an Hoſpital. It was taken in 1482 by the Biſhop of *Munſter*, but retaken in 1547 by the Count of *Oldenburg*. There are ſome other ſmall Towns in this Country, of which we have no Deſcription.

The County of EMBDEN,

Has the Province of *Groningen* on the W. the County of *Oldenburg* on the E. the Biſhoprick of *Munſter* on the S. and the Sea on the N. *Moll* makes its greateſt Length from N. W. to S.E. 47 Miles, and its greateſt Breadth about 36. Moſt of the *Germans* call it *Emmerland*, and will not allow the Name of *Eaſt-Frieſland* to be Authentick.

Pliny makes the ancient Inhabitants to be the *Chauſi Minores*, to which *Cluverius* agrees; and by the Deſcription *Pliny* gives of their Manners, ſome of the modern Inhabitants do well enough anſwer the Character. Dr. *Nicholſon* thinks from their Language, that they are of the ſame Stock with the *Hollanders*; and that ſome of the Remains of thoſe *Netherlanders* who fled hither from the *Spaniſh* Perſecution, may ſtill be among them; but in general they differ much from the *Hollanders* and *Flemings*, and fall much ſhort of them in Point of Induſtry. He adds, That the ancient *Friſii* were originally from the Province of *Utrecht*, and extended their Limits as far N. as *Denmark*, formed themſelves into a Monarchy, and choſe themſelves a King upon extraordinary Occaſions; but when thoſe were over, obliged him to lay down his Authority, according to the Practice of the ancient *Saxons*. *Charles the Great* reduc'd them to a Province of his Empire; and thus they continued, till the Earldom of *Holland* was erected by *Charles the Bald* in 840, when this Country was made a Branch of the *German* Empire, and govern'd by the Emperor's Deputy, till 1453 or 1441, according to *La Forreſt*, *Ulrick Sirſene*, Governor of the Province, and one of the chief Lords of the Country, was created Count of *Eaſt-Frieſland* by the Emperor *Frederick* IV. in Conſideration of his great Services: Since which, the Title is continued to his Poſterity. The firſt of whom was *Ezard* his Son, who ſucceeded him in 1468, and recovered *Fredeberg* from the Citizens of *Brunſwick*, who much diſturbed the Trade of *Embden*. He was ſucceeded by his Son *Enno* I. in 1528, who recover'd *Greetzyl*, a conſiderable Port on the N. Point of *Embſtand*, which had been ſurpris'd by the Duke of *Guelderland*. His Son *Ezard* II. ſucceeded in 1540, and by marrying the King of *Sweden*'s Daughter, advanc'd his Intereſt and Reputation. His Son *Enno* II. received the *Augſburg* Confeſſion. He was ſucceeded by his Son *Rudolphus Chriſtianus*, who being a zealous *Lutheran*, and falling into a Controverſy on that and ſome other Accounts with the Citizens of *Embden*, who were *Calviniſts*; they diſpoſſeſſed him in 1595, wherein they were aſſiſted by the *Dutch*, under whoſe Protection they put themſelves. His Son *Enno*, ſays *Meurſy*, en-

Digitized by Google

deavour'd to re-assert his Right, but in vain; and afterwards married his Daughter to his Brother *John*, by the Pope's Dispensation. In 1606, a Peace was made betwixt that City and the Count, by the Intercession of our K. *James* I. Since which Time, they have been govern'd by their own Magistrates; but have a Dependance on the States of *Holland*, as *Bertius* informs us. His Great Grandson *Enno Ludowick* II. was in 1641 married to *Henrica Catharina*, Daughter to *Henry Frederick* Prince of *Orange*, and created Prince of the Empire by *Ferdinand* III. in 1653; but dying without Issue-Male in 1660, he was succeeded by his Brother *George*, who married a Daughter of *Wirtemberg*, by whom he had *Christian Everard* in 1665, who succeeded him. *La Forest* says, there are 4 Branches of this Family, *viz.* that of the Eldest or the Prince, that of *Creange*, and two of *Nordeland*. The eldest Branch is *Lutherans*.

The chief PLACES *of Note in this Country are,*

1. *Embden*, on the N. Side of the *Ems*, in Long. 25. 35. Lat. 53. 21. 70 Miles N. W. from *Bremen*, 47 from *Oldenburg*, and 20 N. E. from *Groningen*. 'Tis a rich, large, and populous City, fortified towards the Land with a double Ditch, regular Bulwarks and Bastions, and on the S. by a strong Wall and the River. *Ubbe Emmius* calls it the *Eye of Friesland*, because 'tis so conveniently situated, that from hence one may see a great way into the Ocean, and over the neighbouring Country. The Island *Nessa*, which lies in *Dallert* Bay, over against *Embden*, and is about 3 *English* Miles in Circumference, makes the Harbour as large and convenient as any on the *German* Coast. They have likewise artificial Canals, by which they can bring large Vessels into the Heart of the Town; and by opening their Sluces, can lay the neighbouring Country under Water, and make the Town inaccessible. Their Houses are generally neat and high, and the Town-Hall very magnificent. The Count keeps his usual Residence in their Castle, but has no Jurisdiction over them, nor will they allow him to fortify his Castle; but they pay him this Deference, that as when he writes to them, he calls them Loving Friends; when they answer, they sign themselves his Humble Servants. They are very industrious, much addicted to Commerce, zealous Asserters of their Liberties, excellent Soldiers, make good Provision for their Poor, and allow Freedom of Worship to all but Papists. Our *English* Merchants formerly kept their chief Storehouse of Cloth here, upon some Difference with those of *Hamburg*; then they remov'd it to *Antwerp*, and at last return'd again to *Hamburg*.

2. *Norden*, a pleasant Sea-Port, about 12 Miles N. E. from *Embden*. The Town is well built, but not fortified, nor is their Harbour capable of great Ships. 'Twas anciently the Burying-place of the Counts; but the great Church, with Part of the Town, being burnt down by the Baron of *Esens* in 1531, their Monuments were removed to *Embden*, where they have since been buried. 'Tis remarkable for the Defeat of a great Army of *Normans*, of which 10000 were killed near this Place.

3. *Aurich*, 15 Miles N. E. from *Embden*. It gives the Name of *Auricherland* to the adjacent Country, which is rough, woody, and barren, but abounds with Venison and other Game. There are 7 great Fairs of Cattle here every Year. 'Tis encompassed by a slight Wall. They have also a Castle well fortified, the Residence of a Branch of the Family. In this Town are held the Courts of Judicature for the County, of which a Nobleman is always President, and a Doctor of Laws their Chancellor. They have 9 Assessors, 3 of which are Noblemen, and 6 Civilians. The President is obliged to attend the Prince's Court out of Term-time, and to determine Causes within the Verge of the Palace.

4. *Jevern*, 34 Miles N. E. from *Embden*, a fair Town, which gives Title to a Baron, whose Lordship is about 40 Miles in Circumference, and contains many stately Seats of Nobility and Gentry. The Town is defended by a strong Castle, and has a good Trade by a Canal from the Sea. These Barons pretended formerly to be Sovereign Princes, but are now subject to the Counts of *Oldenburg*.

5. *Esens*, 25 Miles N. E. from *Embden*, and 10 W. from *Jevern*. It stands on a River of the same Name, which a little below falls

Digitized by Google

falls into the Sea. They have have a ſtrong Caſtle, the uſual Reſidence of their Barons. They had a long Quarrel with the Counts of *Eaſt-Frieſland*, to whom they pretended to be ſuperior; by Vertue of Grants from the Emperors *Frederick* IV. and *Charles* V. they alledged, it was not in the Power of the Emperors to grant it; but the Controverſy was ended in 1581, by the Marriage of the Count of *Eaſt-Frieſland* with the Heireſs of *Eſens*, which brought that Barony into the Counts Family. A great Part of this Town was burnt by thoſe of *Bremen* in 1540.

6. *Witmund*, the Capital of a large Barony, which held of the Count of *Eaſt-Frieſland* at the ſame Time with *Eſens*. 'Twas formerly a Town of good Trade, but now much decayed. It lies about 5 Miles E. from *Eſens*.

Other Places of Note in this Country are, 1. *Leer*, or *Lora*, on the *Ems*, a ſtately Market-Town, which ſurpaſſes many *German* Cities, and has a good Trade. 2. *Fredeberg*, 30 Miles N. E. from *Embden*. It formerly belong'd to the Citizens of *Brunſwick*. There are many more Towns and Villages, as neat and populous as thoſe in *Holland*, which we cannot inſiſt upon; but refer the Curious to the Chorographical and Hiſtorical Account of that Country, publiſh'd at *Leiden* by the Learned *Ulbo-Emmius* in 1616.

The principal RIVERS *of* Germany *are*,

1. The *Danube*, which is ſo famous in all ancient Greek and Latin Hiſtorians, that *Eratoſthenes* and *Apollodorus* are very ſevere upon *Homer*, for omitting it in his Account of the many large Rivers that fall into the Ocean. 'Tis known by the Name of *Iſter*, eſpecially below *Belgrade*; but is promiſcuouſly call'd by both Names, as appears by *Ovid*, who ſpeaking of ſome memorable Places near its Banks, ſays,

Stat vetus urbs, ripæ vicina binominis Iſtri.

Mela will not allow it had the Name of *Iſter*, till after it had run ſome Hundreds of Miles, wherein he has been follow'd by others; but the contrary appears by *Polybius* and *Herodian*, compar'd with *Dion*; for they give the ſame Deſcription of the whole by the Name *Danubius*, that he does of it under that of *Iſter*. Some think, that the Difference of its Names happen'd from the Difference of the Language of the People who dwelt upon it. Authors do not agree as to the Etymology of the Name; but that given by *German* Writers ſeems moſt probable, ſince *Dona* in their Language ſignifies a Ruſhing and Noiſy Stream; for every one knows that it runs with a rapid Courſe for many Miles, and makes a great Noiſe at ſeveral Cataracts. 'Twas known by the Name of *Iſter* in the Time of *Jaſon* and his *Argonauts*. It riſes in *Swabia*, not far from a Village called from thence *Dona*, or *Thona Eſchingen*, in the *Black Forreſt*. The Hill at the Foot of which it ſprings is not above 15 or 16 Cubits high; and *Cluverius* ſays, the Fountain is inclos'd with a Wall. Soon after it leaves the Village, it receives two other Streams, that riſe 15 *German* Miles higher up in the Country, which by others have been reckon'd the true Fountains of the *Danube*; and it receives 10 other conſiderable Rivers before it comes to *Belgrade*. Its whole Courſe, from its Fountain to the ſeveral Mouths, is reckon'd to be about 27 Degrees, which, reckoning 60 to a Degree, is 1620 *Engliſh* Miles, without including its Turnings and Windings, which muſt certainly make it much longer. 'Tis doubtleſs the greateſt and nobleſt River in *Europe*, and by *Ovid*, who knew it very well, is reckon'd equal to the *Nile*, and reſembles it in many Things, as may be ſeen by comparing it with an Account of the *Nile*, tranſlated from a *Portugueza* MS. by Sir *Peter Wich*, at the Requeſt of the *Royal Society*, and publiſh'd in 1673. It begins to be navigable at *Ulm*, which it encompaſſes with two fair Streams. There are Three remarkable Cataracts in it before it leaves *Germany*: The Firſt is that called *Der-Saw-Ruſſel*; *i. e.* The Swine's Snout, ſo called from a ſharp pointed Rock which hangs over Part of the River near *Lintz* in *Auſtria*, about 92 *Engliſh* Miles above *Vienna*; under which there's a dangerous Whirlpool, that ſucks in the Veſſels which come near it, without extraordinary Care and Management. *Athanaſius Kircher*, in his

Mun-

Digitized by Google

Mundus Subterraneus, ſays, whatever it ſucks in, is thrown up again in a Lake near *Canifch* in *Hungary*. The Second is that called *Der-Strudel*, from the Noiſe which the Waters make at its Fall near *Grenon* in *Auſtria*, where it runs with ſuch Violence among the Rocks, that it diſtracts the Watermen withits Noiſe and Smoak, and many times ſplits or over-turns their Veſſels; ſo that formerly few would venture to paſs it without an expert Pilot from the Neighbourhood, who made it his Buſineſs to underſtand all the Turnings and Windings of this dangerous Paſſage; but of late Years the Watermen in thoſe Parts are ſo well acquainted with it, that they reckon it no great Danger to paſs this Way. On the Top of one of the higheſt Rocks, there's the Ruins of an old Caſtle, formerly inhabited by Pirates, who us'd to plunder Veſſels on the River. The Third Cataract is called *Der-Wurbel, i. e.* Whirlpool, about a Furlong from the *Strudel*, but not ſo dangerous. As ſoon as you paſs this, a Fellow comes on board from a Chapel dedicated to St. *Nicholas*, on the Bank of the River, with the Picture of that Saint, and an Alms-Box for the Paſſengers to throw in ſomething as a Thank-Offering to St. *Nicholas* for their Deliverance. On the Top of a great Rock here, there's the Ruins of an ancient Fort, call'd the *Devil's Tower*, on this Occaſion, as *Aventinus* informs us. *Bruno* Biſhop of *Wurtzburg* attending the Emperor down the *Danube*, when they came to this Tower, one appear'd from it like a Black Man, and cry'd out, *Bruno, I am thy evil Genius, will do thee no Miſchief at preſent, but meet with thee again e're long*: And when they came to *Boſenburg*, 10 Miles from hence, where they lodg'd, the Chamber in which the Emperor and the Biſhop were fell down, and kill'd *Bruno*.

The ſwift Current of the *Danube* makes the Water muddy and whitiſh; ſo that the Waters of other Rivers which fall into it may be diſtinguiſh'd for a great way. Some Authors alledge it reſembles the Ocean in this, that notwithſtanding the many Rivers which fall into it, it is ſcarce ever diſcernably augmented, thô thoſe Rivers themſelves overflow their Banks; and one Cauſe they aſſign for it is, that in the Summer the melted Snow from the Hills keeps the Channel almoſt as full as the Floods do in the Winter, which has ſomething of Truth in it, and is very diſcernable in thoſe Rivers which fall into it from the *Alps*; which keeping the Stream always muddy, makes its Increaſe at other Times leſs viſible.

The Trouts, Perches, Carps, and other ſorts of Fiſh, are much larger in the *Danube* than other Rivers of *Europe*. Some aſcribe this to the Saline Tinctures of its Water, which waſhing ſo many Mines, are ſuppoſed to contain more Principles of Fecundity and Nouriſhment than other Rivers; but this we leave to ſuch as make Natural Philoſophy their Study. The rarer Kinds of Fiſh here, that are not common elſewhere, are, 1. *Coppen*, a ſort of *Capito*. 2. *Biſturn*, which looks like a ſort of a Lamprey. 3. *Grundel*, or a ſpotted ſort of *Cobites*, with 6 Beards, 2 ſhort, and 4 long. 4. The *Scheyden*, or *Silurus Geſneri*, ſomewhat reſembling a Pike, but much larger. 5. The moſt remarkable of all is the *Huſo* or *Houſon*, as they call it, which we formerly mentioned in our Deſcription of *Auſtria*, P. 618. 'Tis a Salt-Water Fiſh, reſembling our Sturgeon, and is ſuppoſed to come from the *Euxine* Sea. 'Tis ſo much valued by the *Hungarians* and *Germans*, that they reckon it one of the greateſt Dainties for Perſons of Quality, and ſeldom to be met with but at their Tables. We refer the further Deſcription of this River to *Hungary*, and other Countries through which it paſſes; this being the chief of what is to be ſaid of it, in ſo far as it relates to *Germany*.

The 2d great River in *Germany* is the *Rhine*. Authors are likewiſe divided about the Etymology of its Name. Some derive it from the Greek Word Πειν, which ſignifies to flow, becauſe of its rapid Stream: Others from the *Celtick* Word *Ryen*, which ſignifies to ſeparate, becauſe it was the ancient Boundary betwixt *Gaul* and *Germany*; and others from the *German* Word *Rein*, which ſignifies Pure and Clean, becauſe the ancient Inhabitants, as *Cæſar* tells us, if they ſuſpected their Wives, threw their new-born Children into it, fancying they would ſwim if legitimate; but ſink if otherwiſe. *Schottelius* ſays, this occaſioned the *German* Proverb, *When a Man was guilty of any notorious Crime, that the* Rhine *could never waſh it*

Digitized by Google

it off. Tacitus says, the old *Germans* worship'd it as a God: To which *Martial* seems to allude, when he calls it the Father of Nymphs and Rivers.

It rises from two Springs 40 Miles distant, says Dr. *Nicholson*, but according to *Sanson* not above 4. The first near a small Village called *Tavetsch*, out of a high Mountain named St. *Gottards*. The 2d from another Mountain near *Reinwald* in *Rhetia*; both of 'em among the *Alps*. These two Currents meet about 8 Miles from the City of *Coire* in the *Grisons* Country, and after a Course of 45 Miles, according to *Sanson*, falls into the Lake of *Constance*, runs thrô *Switzerland*, and then thrô the rest of *Germany* and the United Provinces, till it fall into the Sea by several Mouths in the Dominions of the *Dutch*. The Cataracts of this River are reckon'd 9, whereof 7 are small, and all of 'em short of those in the *Danube*. The most dangerous and terrible of 'em is a little below *Schaffhuysen* in *Switzerland*, where it falls from the Top of a Rock 75 Foot high, and is not passable by Vessels. The other great Cataract is near *Lawffenburg* in *Switzerland*, where sometimes Watermen let down their Vessels by Ropes. It runs through a Country above 400 Miles long; but if we reckon its Turnings and Windings, it runs above 600, and is navigable by Vessels of a lesser Size at least 400. There's a great Dispute among ancient and modern Geographers about its Mouths. Formerly there were two known Channels by which it emptied it self into the Sea. They divided at *Schenkenschans*, a Fort about 5 Miles below *Cleve*, from whence the Southern Branch, call'd the *Vahalis*, runs by *Nimeguen*, and mixing with the *Maes*, falls with it into the Sea below *Rotterdam* and the *Brill*. The other, which retains the Name of the *Rhine*, passing by *Arnheim*, *Utrecht* and *Leiden*, fell into the Sea at *Catwic*; but in 860, or, as some say, in 1170, an extraordinary Spring-Tide fill'd up the Harbour at *Catwic*, and obstructed the Current of the *Rhine*, which still runs with a slow Stream towards the Ruins of *Catwic*, but sinks before it comes near it, and is probably convey'd by a subterraneous Passage into the Sea, or some other River. Another Channel by which it empties it self into the *Issel*, and with it falls into the *Zuyder* Sea, was made by the *Roman* General *Drusius*, and still bears the Name of his Ditch: But we shall have Occasion to touch further on this Subject in the Description of the *Netherlands*.

The 3d great River is the *Elb*, which Name, some say, was given it, because it rises from 11 Fountains; and the *Saxon* Word *Elve* signifies 11. *Tacitus* and *Ptolomy* were both mistaken about the Head of this River; but *Dubravius* gives the exactest Account of it, *viz.* That it has its Rise from the Mountains near *Kirschberg* in *Silesia*, on the Confines of *Bohemia*, from 11 Fountains, which 'tis needless to name. It receives several others as it passes through *Bohemia* and *Saxony*, and at *Hamburg* bears Merchant-Ships, as large as most that traffick on the Ocean; it being usual to see in that Harbour, tho' 72 *English* Miles from the Sea, Vessels of 300 Tun, which is farther than Ships of that Burthen can sail in any other River of *Europe*. On the S. of *Hamburg*, it divides it self into a great many Branches, which form a vast Number of Islands; and a little below *Glucstadt*, it empties it self by two Mouths into the *German* Ocean. 'Tis navigable by lesser Vessels a great way up into *Germany*, which very much promotes the Trade of the Country, especially by its Communication with the *Spre* and the *Moldaw*, the former in the Marq. of *Brandenburg*, and the latter in *Bohemia*; which has occasioned some to think it practicable to form a Communication betwixt this River and the *Danube*, and by that means betwixt the *German* Ocean and the *Black Sea*.

The other most remarkable Rivers in *Germany* are, 1. The *Oder*, which rises in *Moravia*, and after running 300 *English* Miles thro' Part of *Brandenburg* and *Pomerania*, falls into the *Baltick* by 3 Mouths. 2. The *Weser*, which begins in the Mountains of *Thuringia*, runs thro' *Hassia* and *Westphalia*, and falls into the *German* Ocean about 40 Miles below *Bremen*.

For such as are of less Note, 'tis needless to say any more of 'em than we have done in the particular Descriptions of the Countries through which they run.

CHAP.

Digitized by Google

CHAP. XXVIII.

The NETHERLANDS.

INcluding the 17 Provinces, has the *German* Ocean on the N. *France* on the S. *East-Friesland*, *Westphalia*, the Dioceſe of *Cologne*, the Dutchy of *Juliers*, and the Dioceſe of *Trevet*, on the E. the *Britiſh* Ocean, and Part of *France*, on the W. If we take in the *French* Conqueſts, the Country, according to *Sanſon*, is about 290 Miles from the Borders of *Picardy* to the Mouth of the River *Ems*; and the greateſt Breadth, from the Frontiers of *Treves* to *Gravelin*, is about 200; but the Breadth of the other Parts is very unequal, eſpecially towards the United *Netherlands*.

The ancient Name of the Country was *Belgica*, according to *Cluverius*, and took its Name from its Inhabitants the *Bellovaci*; but 'twas then of a much larger Extent, having on the E. and N. the *Rhine* and the Ocean; on the W. the *Seine* and the *Marne*; and on the S. the Countries of the *Sequani*, *Leuci*, and *Lingones*, comprehending *Lower Alſace*, *Lorrain*, the *Weſtereich*, the Dioceſe of *Treves*, the Dutchies of *Luxemburg* and *Limburg*, the Biſhoprick of *Liege*, Part of that of *Cologne*, the Dutchy of *Guelderland*, the S. Part of *Holland*, all *Zeland*, *Brabant*, *Flanders*, the County of *Boulogne*, the 3d Part of *Normandy*, the greateſt Part of the Iſle of *France*, half *Champagne*, *Picardy*, *Arras*, *Hainault*, the County of *Namur*, and the Dutchy of *Bouillon*. He cautions Authors againſt the Miſtake which ſome have fallen into of confounding *Belgium* with *Belgica*, the former being only a Part of the latter. We have formerly given an Account of the ancient Inhabitants of moſt of that at preſent called the *Netherlands*, in our Deſcription of Ancient *Germany*, P. 405, *&c.* The Reaſon *Cluverius* gives why this Country was rather called after the *Bellovaci*, than any of the other numerous People that dwelt in it, is, that he ſuppoſes in *Cæſar's* Time they were at leaſt the moſt noted People, if they had not the Sovereignty of the whole. He adds, That the ancient Inhabitants of that Part of the Country which lies on the N. Side the *Rhine*, were ſubdued by *Druſus* in the Reign of *Auguſtus*; and that thoſe who lay on the S. Side in *Gaul*, had been formerly ſubdued by *Julius Cæſar*. They continued under the *Roman* Empire, eſpecially thoſe on the S. Side, till the Time of *Theodoſius*, when the Empire being over-run by Strangers, ſeveral People of *Germany* came hither one after another. Some of which having afterwards removed into *France* and *Britain*, the Inhabitants created Princes over themſelves, and recover'd their Liberty. In Proceſs of Time, all this Country was divided into 17 Provinces; ſome govern'd by Dukes, as *Brabant*, *Limburg*, *Luxemburg*, *Guelderland*; ſome by Counts, as *Flanders*, *Arras*, *Hainault*, *Holland*, *Zeland*, *Namur*, *Zutphen*; one by a Marquis of the Empire, as *Antwerp*; and 5 by Lords, as *Weſt-Frieſland*, *Mechlen*, *Utrecht*, *Overiſſel*, and *Groningen*. *Frieſland* he ſays, after it ſhook off the *Roman* Yoke, was govern'd by Kings for near 400 Years; but theſe being extinguiſhed, they were brought under by *Charlemagne*; after whom they begun to chuſe their ſeparate Princes, as the reſt had done before

Digitized by Google

before them. The ſeveral Princes marrying into one another's Families, they came all at laſt under the Dominion of the Duke of *Burgundy*, whoſe Heireſs being married to the Houſe of *Auſtria*, the Government of them fell into the Hands of that Family.

But the Inhabitants finding their Liberties invaded, from the Time of *Charles* V. his Great Grandſon, they reſolv'd to defend their Privileges by Arms; and after a War of 47 Years, 10 of them ſubmitted to the Arms of *Spain*, and are now called, *The Spaniſh Netherlands*; and 7 recover'd their ancient Liberty, which are now called, *The United Provinces*, or *Netherlands*.

The Revolt of the Netherlands *from the Crown of* Spain: *With a brief Hiſtory of the Republick of* Holland, *from its Riſe to this preſent Time.*

THE *Spaniſh* and *Italian* Writers, ſuch as *Strada*, &c. aſcribe this Revolt to the Stubborneſs of the People, to the Change of their Religion, and to the Ambition of the Princes of *Orange*; but the *Dutch* Writers, Sir *William Temple*, Mr. *Peers* in Vol. IV. of *Pitt's Atlas*, and others, give the following Account of that Matter.

Their former Princes, the Dukes of *Burgundy*, being engag'd in War with *France*, began to raiſe greater Taxes upon 'em than they had been accuſtom'd to, which made them uneaſy; but upon the Succeſſion of the Houſe of *Auſtria*, the bringing firſt of *German* Troops, and then of *Spaniards* and *Italians*, into the Country, heighten'd both their Charge and Diſcontents; yet *Charles* V. being a Prince of great Reputation, Conduct and Succeſs, and having a natural Kindneſs to the *Netherlanders*, among whom he was born, and employing their Great Men in his Court, Camp, and other Poſts, he left them in a peaceable Condition, when he reſign'd the Government to his Son *Philip* II. in 1556. This Prince being a *Spaniard* born, reſolv'd to return to *Spain*, and to leave the *Low Countries* under a Subordinate Government, which, till his Father's Time, had been the conſtant Seat of their own Princes. He likewiſe gave the chief Offices and Poſts of Honour to *Spaniards*, introduc'd their Cuſtoms, Language, and Habit, into the Court of *Flanders*; and after the Peace, continued the *Spaniſh* and *Italian* Forces, and the ſame Taxes he had demanded from them during the War, which quickly loſt him the Love of his Subjects. This he regarded ſo little, that when he return'd to *Spain*, he was ſo far from thinking their Grievances worth hearing or redreſſing, that he added new ones, by ſubverting their Conſtitution, and changing all their ancient Forms. At his Departure, he left his natural Siſter, the Dutcheſs of *Parma*, to be Governeſs of the Country, with Cardinal *Granvell* to aſſiſt her as her Chief Miniſter; and order'd her to continue the Foreign Troops, and the former Taxes; to eſtabliſh the 14 Biſhops he had agreed with the Pope to add to the former three; to revive the Edicts of *Charles* V. againſt *Luther*, publiſh'd in a Diet of the Empire in 1550, thô never executed in the *Low Countries*, even in that Emperor's Time; but this *Philip* was reſolv'd on, in order to bring the Inquiſition into the *Netherlands* againſt the Proteſtants, as 'twas practis'd in *Spain* againſt the *Moors* and *Jews*.

Sir *William* ſays, when theſe Things came to be known and executed, it made a general Uneaſineſs in the Minds of the People. The Inſolency of the *Spaniſh* Troops, and the Charge of maintaining them in a Time of Peace, made the *Netherlanders* hate them, as the Inſtruments of their Slavery and Oppreſſion. Therefore the States began their Complaints with this Grievance, with the general Conſent and Concurrence of People of all Ranks; but meeting with no Redreſs, the States firſt refuſed to pay any more Money either for their own ſtanding Troops, or for the *Spaniards*; and the People were ſo much diſcourag'd and enrag'd, particularly in *Zealand*, that they gave over working at their Dykes or Banks, and ſuffer'd the Sea to gain upon them, reſolving rather to be drown'd, as they ſaid, than to be made Slaves by the *Spaniſh* Soldiers. So that after many Diſputes with the Governeſs, the King, upon her Remonſtrance, remov'd thoſe *Spaniards*, to the great Satisfaction of the People.

Digitized by Google

The next Controverſy was about the 14 new Biſhops. The Lords oppoſed it as a leſſening of their Power to introduce ſo many great Men into the Council. The Abbots, out of whoſe Lands they were to be endow'd, decry'd it as an Uſurpation upon the Rights of the Church, and contrary to the Will of the Deceas'd, who had mortify'd thoſe Lands to particular Uſes. The common People oppos'd it as much as any, and complain'd of it as the higheſt Degree of Oppreſſion upon their Liberties and Conſciences to erect 17 Spiritual Courts of Judicature inſtead of 3, eſpecially when they muſt entirely depend upon the Pope or the King; every one exclaim'd againſt it; and *Strada* himſelf confeſſes it was a Breach of the King's Coronation-Oath, who at his Acceſſion to the Government had ſworn to preſerve the Church and State as he found them. This Point however was gain'd by the Governeſs, but not without the general Diſcontent of the People, which in a little Time had fatal Effects.

At the ſame Time Sir *William* obſerves, a great many Proteſtants were drove out of *France*, *Germany*, and *England*, by Perſecution, which in a little while fill'd the Country, but eſpecially the Cities, with new Inhabitants; who being in Favour with the People, becauſe of their Doctrine and Piety, as well as for the Riches and other Advantages they brought them, their Numbers increas'd every Day. This made Work for the Court of Inquiſition, in which *Granvell* ſcrew'd up his Maſter's Authority to the greateſt Height. On the other hand, this Court became univerſally hateful to the Lords, becauſe 'twas a new and arbitrary Judicature, unknown to their Anceſtors; and 'twas no leſs odious to the People, becauſe of the Cruelty of their Executions.

Theſe Things occaſion'd angry Debates in Council, which were increaſed by the abſolute Power aſſumed by the Cardinal, a *Burgundian* of mean Birth, and more remarkable for his Parts than his Piety. This made the Prince of *Orange*, the Counts of *Egmont* and *Horn*, and other chief Lords of the Country, proteſt that they would not attend at Council while a Perſon ſo abſolute ſat there, to the Ruin of their Country. This at laſt oblig'd the Court to turn out the Cardinal: Upon which, the Prince of *Orange* and other Lords return'd to Council, the Rigour in Affairs of Religion was abated, a Redreſs of other Grievances was promiſed, and the Governeſs was both honour'd and obey'd. But about the beginning of 1565, there was a Conference at *Bayonne* betwixt *Catharine* Queen Mother of *France*, her Son *Charles* IX. thô very young, and his Siſter *Iſabella* Queen of *Spain*, to which none was admitted but the Duke of *Alva*. King *Philip* excus'd his own Preſence, in order to make it paſs for an Interview of Kindneſs betwixt the Mother and the Children; whereas 'twas own'd afterwards, that the Subject of the Conference was about Religion; and the Prince of *Orange* declar'd, That he had diſcover'd their Deſign to be a Combination betwixt the two Crowns, to aſſiſt one another in extirpating all Proteſtants out of their Dominions. The Truth of which was confirm'd by the Orders that ſoon after came from King *Philip* to the Dutcheſs of *Parma*, to put all Hereticks to Death without Remiſſion; to publiſh and obſerve the Emperor's Edicts, and the Council of *Trent*; and to give her utmoſt Aſſiſtance to the Court of Inquiſition, which was quite contrary to what he had promiſed to Count *Egmont*.

When this was divulg'd, the People were at firſt ſeiz'd with Aſtoniſhment, which ſoon gave Way to their Rage, as appear'd by their Looks, Speeches, Meetings, and Libels. Their Reſentments were heighten'd by ſo many cruel Executions on the Account of Religion, and the Conſtancy of the Sufferers, that they breath'd nothing but Revenge againſt the Authors of thoſe Proceedings, of whom the Duke of *Alva* was reckon'd the chief. In the beginning of 1566, the People mutiny'd in many Cities, hinder'd Executions, and forc'd Priſons and Officers, which was follow'd by a Confederacy of the Lords, never to ſuffer the Inquiſition in the *Low Countries*, as being contrary to all Laws Sacred and Prophane, and exceeding the Cruelty of all former Tyrannies. After this, the Count *de Bredorode*, at the Head of 200 Gentlemen, went through the Provinces to *Bruſſels*, and boldly petition'd the Governeſs to aboliſh the Inquiſition, and the Edicts about Religion; and that thoſe Affairs ſhould be left to a general Meeting of the States. While the Go-

Digitized by Google

Governeſs look'd upon them with ſome ſort of Aſtoniſhment, *Barlemont*, one of her Confidents, ſtanding by her, ſaid, *Madam, I hope you are not afraid of thoſe Gueux*, which in their Language ſignifies Beggars; but the Count, and thoſe who adher'd to him, were ſo far from being aſham'd of the Reproach, that they glory'd in the Name, cloath'd themſelves ſoon after in mean Apparel, and hung Budgers at their Girdles, with a Medal, having this Inſcription on it, *We will be true to the King, even to our Budgets*.

Theſe Proceedings oblig'd the Governeſs to milder Methods, and ſhe promis'd to repreſent their Deſires to the King, at which, tho' he was ſtartled, his Anſwer came too late; and the People having loſt all Confidence in him, a great Inſurrection enſued, wherein they ſpoil'd many Churches of their Ornaments, pull'd down Images, and, which is unavoidable in ſuch Caſes, committed many Diſorders. After this, the Proteſtants began to elect Magiſtrates of their own, and to ſet up Conſiſtories in each Town, to form publick Confederacies, and to raiſe private Contributions for the Support of the Common Cauſe: But the Nobility and richeſt Citizens dreading the Effects of ſuch Proceedings, tho' they were unſatisfied with the Government, yet on the Arrival of the King's Conceſſions, they join'd with the Governeſs to ſuppreſs the Inſurrections, wherein the Authority of the Prince of *Orange*, and the Count of *Egmont*, who were belov'd by the People, was of great Uſe to her. But ſome Time after, the Government having reduced ſeveral Towns by Arms, others having ſubmitted, the Count of *Egmont* having deſerted the Confederacy, which afterwards prov'd his Ruin, Count *Brederode* dying, and the Prince of *Orange* being forc'd to fly into *Germany*, the Country ſeem'd to be entirely reduc'd to their former Obedience.

King *Philip* had been long preſs'd by his wiſeſt Counſellors to go into *Flanders*, where his Preſence was thought neceſſary to ſuppreſs thoſe Diſorders: But inſtead of that, he ſent the Duke of *Alva* with 10000 Veteran Troops to execute his firſt Reſolutions with all Violence and Rigour; which, as *Bentivoglio* informs us, was not only contrary to the Advice of the Governeſs, and his other beſt Friends, but diſpleaſing to many of the *German* Popiſh Princes, who dreaded the Effects of ſo ſudden a Change in a neighbouring Government; but the King was unmoveable in his Reſolutions. Upon the Approach of this Army of *Spaniards* and *Italians*, under the moſt expert Officers in *Europe*, the adjoining People left the Country in ſuch Numbers and Precipitation, that, as the Governeſs inform'd the King, above 100000 of 'em went off in a few Days with their Effects: So great is the Antipathy, obſerves Sir *William*, between Merchants and Soldiers. When the Duke arrived, firſt he ſeized the Counts of *Egmont* and *Horn*, which, with the ſuſpected Death of the Marquis of *Bergen*, and the Impriſonment of *Montigny*, who had been ſent to *Spain* with Inſtructions by the Governeſs, oblig'd her to deſire Leave to retire. This was eaſily obtain'd, and ſhe went for *Italy* the beginning of 1568.

The Duke of *Alva* having receiv'd the Government, with greater Powers than any of his Predeceſſors, he ſeiz'd the Count of *Buren*, the Prince of *Orange*'s eldeſt Son, who was ſtudying at *Louvain*, and ſent him under a Guard to *Spain*: Then he erected a Council of 12, who determin'd all Civil and Criminal Cauſes ſovereignly, without Appeal, put great Numbers of People to Death every Day, impriſon'd, baniſh'd, and confiſcated others, exceeded the Inquiſition in Cruelty, and treated the Country with as much Barbarity, as if it had been a Conqueſt: Upon which Account, the People juſtly call'd it the *Council of Blood*. They utterly ſubverted the Conſtitution, depriv'd the Towns of their Charters, the People of their Liberties, the Knights of the *Golden Fleece* of their Privileges, and all other Courts of their Power; making as much Havock among the Subjects on Pretence of the above-mentioned Inſurrections, as the Inquiſition did among them on Pretence of Hereſy. This occaſioned People of all Ranks to complain of the laying aſide the States, and of governing them by a ſtanding Army, but without Redreſs. The Duke of *Alva* being naturally cruel, and inexorable, wanted nothing ſo much as Rebellion to make Work for his Army. The People were enrag'd, but over-aw'd, and without a Head. The Prince of *Orange* was

Digitized by Google

fled, and proclaim'd a Traitor, and the Counts of *Egmont* and *Horn* publickly executed at *Bruſſels*, notwithſtanding all the great Services they had formerly done to *Charles* V. and King *Philip*, and their late Merits in ſuppreſſing the Inſurrections of the People. After their Murther, the Prince of *Orange* was ſummoned to appear and take his Tryal; which not having obey'd, he was condemn'd as a Traytor, and his large Eſtate in the *Netherlands* and *Burgundy* confiſcated; and a Proclamation was publiſh'd in King *Philip*'s Name, authorizing any Man to kill him, and promiſing a Reward to them that ſhould do it, or aſſiſt in it. This was publiſh'd through all the Provinces in 1580, which occaſioned the Prince to publiſh that noble Piece, well known by the Name of his *Apology*, wherein he vindicates himſelf, and gives a large Account of all the Tyrannical Proceedings, Perjury and Treachery, of King *Philip*, and his Governors. This was publiſh'd at *Delft* in *Holland* the 25th of *January*, 1581, with a Letter directed to all the Kings and Potentates of *Chriſtendom*; and this Apology was juſtified by the *States General* of the *Low Countries*. The Prince at the ſame Time made uſe of his Intereſt with the Princes of *Germany*, where he was living quietly when the Proclamation was publiſh'd, againſt him, to obtain ſome Forces. He was was alſo join'd by great Numbers who flock'd to him out of the Provinces, which were univerſally enrag'd at the Execution of Count *Egmont* their Darling, and likewiſe by Troops from the Proteſtants of *France*, who had then taken Arms under the Prince of *Condé*. With theſe Troops he enter'd *Brabant*, and after many Encounters with various Succeſs, not being able to do much againſt the Duke of *Alva*'s Veteran Troops, eſpecially ſince his own began to mutiny for want of Pay, he was oblig'd to disband his Army, and to return to *Germany*. The Duke of *Alva* after this return'd to *Bruſſels* in Triumph; and out of the Cannon taken from *Lewis* of *Naſſau*, who was defeated at the Battle of *Gemming* on the Borders of *Weſt Friſtland*, he order'd his own Statue to be caſt in Braſs, treading upon two ſmaller Statues, repreſenting the two Eſtates of the *Low Countries*. This Statue was ſet up in the Citadel of *Antwerp*, that he had newly built for curbing that City. Nothing could more raiſe the Indignation of the *Flemings* than this Piece of Inſolence, conſidering that they had now loſt the Liberties enjoyed by their Anceſtors for ſo many Ages: But the Duke of *Alva* thinking them to be abſolutely brought under, would be no longer ty'd to any Forms or Meaſures, but demanded larger Taxes than what had been uſually granted, particularly the Hundredth Part of every Man's Eſtate at once, and for the future the Twentieth of all their Immoveables, and the Tenth of all that was ſold. The States, with much Reluctancy, agreed to the firſt, as a Thing finiſh'd at once; but refuſed the other two, becauſe of their Poverty, and the Ruin of Trade. But the Duke perſiſting, they petition'd the King for a Redreſs, without obtaining it: Upon which the Duke publiſh'd an Edict, commanding the People to pay it without the Conſent of the States; which being refuſed, the Soldiers began to levy it by Force: The Townſmen ſhut up their Shops, and the Country People forbore coming to Market; ſo that there were no Proviſions to be had in the Town. This ſo much enrag'd the Duke, that he order'd ſeveral of the Burgers, who refus'd Payment, to be hang'd immediately on their Sign-Poſts; and as the Soldiers were going to put it in Execution, News came that the *Brill* in *Holland* was ſurpris'd, and a general Revolt in *Holland* expected, which forc'd the Duke to put a Stop to thoſe barbarous Proceedings, for fear likewiſe of a general Revolt in *Brabant*. This Seizure of the *Brill* having begun the ſecond Inſurrection of the *Low Countries* in 1570, which ended in the Loſs of the United Provinces to the Crown of *Spain*, we ſhall give the following Account of it:

A great many of the People who fled from the Duke of *Alva*'s Cruelty, put themſelves under Protection of the Count of *Marck*, who hated the Duke and his Government, while others of 'em fled into the Woods, and liv'd upon plundering the *Spaniſh* Soldiers, and their Adherents, to whom they did a great deal of Miſchief, when the Prince of *Orange* firſt enter'd the Country with his Army. Some of the former, who had ſav'd Money for their Subſiſtence, put out to Sea in Ships with the Prince of

Orange's

Digitized by Google

Orange's Commiſſion, called themſelves by the Name of the *Water Gueuſe*, took all the *Spaniſh* Ships they met with, and by this Means acquir'd conſiderable Riches, ſheltering themſelves ſometimes in the Harbours of *England*, and at other Times in the Mouth of the *Ems*, and other Ports of *Frieſland*; but being prohibited the *Engliſh* Ports by Queen *Elizabeth*, then at Peace with *Spain*, *Strada* ſays, they were drove to the *Brill* by a Tempeſt, which they took by Storm. Upon this, the People being provok'd, as above, moſt of the Towns of *Holland*, *Zealand*, and *Weſt-Frieſland*, revolted, pull'd down the Images in their Churches, declar'd publickly for the Proteſtant Religion, and againſt the *Spaniſh* Tyranny, renounc'd King *Philip*, and ſwore Obedience to the Prince of *Orange*. They publiſh'd Libels againſt the D. of *Alva*, and pictur'd him with the Count of *Marck* ſtanding behind him, putting a Pair of Spectacles on his Noſe, becauſe *Brill* ſignifies Spectacles in their Language. At the ſame Time Queen *Elizabeth*, upon ſome old Pretenſions, ſeiz'd a great Sum of *Spaniſh* Money, as 'twas going to *Flanders* to pay their Army, and would never reſtore it, which prov'd a great Mortification to them in their then Circumſtances.

The Prince of *Orange* having levy'd ſome new Troops in *Germany*, made uſe of this Opportunity to poſſeſs himſelf of *Holland* and *Zealand*, march'd up within 5 Leagues of *Bruſſels*, ſeiz'd ſeveral other Towns, and had like to have reduc'd all the Provinces, had not his Men been diſcourag'd, and the Duke of *Alva*'s Party reviv'd by the horrid Maſſacre of the Proteſtants at *Paris*, contriv'd by the joint Councils of *France* and *Spain*, and one of the Effects of the Interview at *Bayonne*, formerly mention'd. This oblig'd the Prince of *Orange* to retire into *Holland*, becauſe of the natural Strength of the Country, and the Genius of the People, who being proud of their ancient Fame, recorded in the *Roman* Hiſtory, as noble Defenders of their Liberty, they ſcorn'd to come behind their Anceſtors in defending themſelves againſt the Tyranny of *Spain*. They were confirm'd in this Reſolution by the Cruelty of the Duke of *Alva* and his Son, who upon the taking of *Naerden*, put off all the People, without Regard to the Capitulation, Age or Sex, and deſtroy'd the Town; and upon the Surrender of *Haerlem* by Famine, after an obſtinate Siege of 10 Months, kill'd 400 of the Burgers in cold Blood, which made their Averſion to the Government of *Spain*, and their Hatred to the Duke of *Alva*, incurable. In 1572, the Duke of *Alva* ſat down before *Alkmaer*; but after a long and fierce Siege, was oblig'd to riſe from before it, becauſe of the Plague in his Camp; and the King becoming at laſt ſenſible of the Danger of a total Defection of the Provinces, he recall'd the Duke of *Alva*, who had made himſelf ſo hateful to the People, and ſent in his ſtead Don *Lewis de Requiſenes*, great Commander of *Caſtile*, who arriv'd here in 1573, and endeavour'd to appeaſe the People, by pulling down the inſolent Statue the Duke of *Alva* had ſet up in the Citadel of *Antwerp*: But the Diſtemper was too far gone to be cur'd; for they were ſo provok'd by the Duke of *Alva*'s Cruelty, who boaſted, beſides what he had ſlain in Battles and Sieges, of his having brought 18000 Men to their End by the Hand of Juſtice, that they would hear no more of the *Spaniſh* Government. In 1574, the *Spaniards* beſieg'd *Leiden*, and not being able to take it by Force, they reſolv'd to ſtarve it; but were prevented by the Boors, who open'd the Sluces, drown'd the Country, and forc'd the *Spaniards* to raiſe the Siege, which gave a great Turn for the worſe to the Affairs of *Spain*. In the mean Time Don *Lewis de Requiſenes* died without any appointed Succeſſor; ſo that the Government, by the Cuſtom of the Country, devolv'd upon the High Council, which *Bertivoglio* ſays, occaſioned the moſt violent Agitations that ever were known in *Flanders*; for the *Spaniſh* Army having taken *Zirickſea*, and being deny'd the Plunder of the Town, and alſo in want of Pay, they ſeiz'd and plunder'd *Aloſt* near *Bruſſels*: Upon which the People ſhut up their Shops, the Country-men gave over their Labour, and all took to Arms. They forc'd the Senate of *Bruſſels*, pull'd out ſuch as were for the *Spaniſh* Government, kill'd all the *Spaniards* they met, demanded an Expulſion of all Foreigners out of the *Low Countries* and an Aſſembly of the States; to which the Council was forced to agree. In the mean Time,

Time, the chief Men of the Provinces agreed with the Prince of *Orange* to carry on their common Affairs by joint Councils; ſo that when the States aſſembled at *Ghent*, they agreed upon that Act, call'd, *The Pacification of* Ghent, in 1576. The chief Articles were; To drive all Foreign Soldiers out of the Province; To reſtore the ancient Conſtitution, which had been ſubverted by the Duke of *Alva*; To refer Matters of Religion in each Province to their own States; and that for Performance of it, the reſt of the Provinces ſhould enter into a Confederacy with *Holland* and *Zealand*. Here we muſt obſerve, That the Prince of *Orange* had acquir'd great Reputation by bringing King *Philip*'s Commiſſioners to the like Agreement for *Holland* and *Zealand* the Year before, which pav'd the Way for this Agreement; which, ſays Sir *William Temple*, made the firſt Period of the *Low Country* Troubles, and prov'd to King *Philip*, by dear-bought Experience, that the beſt Conduct, and the boldeſt Armies, are not able to withſtand the Torrent of a ſtubborn and enrag'd People, which ever bears all down before it ſo long as it laſts. Upon the paſſing of this Act, not only the *Spaniards*, but the *German* Troops, were order'd to depart the Country; and upon their Refuſal, were declared Rebels. The *Spaniards* being enrag'd at this, plunder'd ſeveral Towns, and *Antwerp* among the reſt, which alienated the Affections of many People from King *Philip*, who till then had adher'd to him. The *Spaniards* defended themſelves in ſome of thoſe Places till the Arrival of Don *John* of *Auſtria* to take the Government upon him.

The States refuſed to admit him, except he would confirm the *Pacification of* Ghent, which at length he did, by Conſent of the King, and ſent away the Foreign Troops; but ſoon after, on Pretence of complimenting Queen *Margaret* of *Navarre* upon her Journey from *France* to the *Spaw*, he ſurpris'd the Caſtle of *Namur*. Upon which the Provinces renounc'd the *Spaniſh* Government the third time, and called the Prince of *Orange* to *Bruſſels*, where the States made him Protector of *Brabant*; ſo that *Spain* had nothing left but the Provinces of *Namur* and *Luxemburg*. The reſt of the Provinces, that did not chuſe the Prince of *Orange*, ſent and offer'd their Government to Archduke *Matthias*, the Emperor's Brother. This was occaſioned by the Envy of ſome of the Grandees againſt the growing Greatneſs of the Prince of *Orange*. Upon which they form'd a third Party, who declar'd their Adherence to the Church of *Rome*, and agreed in nothing with the Prince but in driving out the Foreign Troops, and Defence of their old Conſtitution. The Head of this Faction was the Duke of *Arſchot*; but the Archduke having neither the Conſent of his Brother, nor the King of *Spain*, could do nothing to the purpoſe, and therefore return'd to *Germany*. In the mean Time Don *John* died ſuddenly, not without Suſpicion of Poiſon by a *Spaniſh* Lady, and the Duke of *Parma* ſucceeded as Governor for *Spain*. The Malecontent Party offer'd their Government to *John Caſimir*, of the *Palatine* Family; but being afterwards diſcontented with him, they ſent for the Duke of *Alençon*, Brother to the *French* King, who came to their Aſſiſtance with a conſiderable Army. The Queen of *Navarre* had made an Intereſt for him on Pretence of going to the *Spaw*, as before-mentioned, whither Don *John* went foolihly to compliment her: But the very Day when the Duke of *Alençon* enter'd *Antwerp* in 1582, a *Biſcayner* ſhot at the Prince of *Orange*, and wounded him, which began a Jealouſy betwixt the *French* and the *Netherlanders*, that afterwards increas'd upon the Duke's Endeavours to poſſeſs himſelf of the Town by Violence, and make himſelf abſolute; ſo that he was forced to return to *France*, after having been ſhamefully drove out of that City, and died of Grief at the Caſtle of *Thierry*. Upon the Growth of the Malecontent Party, and the Breach of the *Pacification of Ghent* by Don *John*, the Deputies of *Guelderland*, *Zutphen*, *Holland*, *Zealand*, *Utrecht*, and the Omlands of *Frize*, enter'd into the Union of *Utrecht* in 1579; wiſely foreſeeing, that the ſaid Party, which pretended to follow a middle Courſe, would at laſt betray the whole to *Spain*. The chief Articles of that Union conſiſted in theſe Points, drawn out of the Inſtrument it ſelf.

" The 7 Provinces unite themſelves ſo " as if they were but one Province, and ſo " as never to be divided by Teſtament, Do-

na-

Digitized by Google

" nation, Exchange, Sale, or Agreement; " reſerving to each particular Province and " City all Privileges, Rights, Cuſtoms, and " Statutes. In adjudging whereof, or Dif- " ferences that ſhall ariſe between any of " the Provinces, the reſt ſhall not inter- " meddle, further than to intercede towards " an Agreement.

" They bind themſelves to aſſiſt one ano- " ther with Life and Fortunes, againſt all " Force and Aſſaults made upon any of " them, whether upon Pretence of Royal " Majeſty, or reſtoring Catholick Religion, " or any other whatſoever.

" All Frontier Towns belonging to the " Union, if old, to be fortified at the " Charge of the Province where they lie; " if new, to be erected at the Charge of " the Generality.

" All Impoſts and Cuſtoms, from three " Months to three Months, to be offer'd to " them that bid moſt; and, with the In- " comes of the Royal Majeſty, to be em- " ployed for the common Defence.

" All Inhabitants to be liſted and train'd " within a Month, from 18 to 60 Years " old. Peace and War not to be made " without Conſent of all the Provinces.

" Other Caſes, that concern the Manage- " ment of both, by moſt Voices: Differen- " ces that ſhall ariſe upon the firſt, between " the Provinces, to be ſubmitted to the " Stadtholders.

" Neighbouring Princes, Lords, Lands, " and Cities, to be admitted into the U- " nion, by Conſent of the Provinces.

" For Religion, thoſe of *Holland* and *Zea-* " *land* to act in it as ſeems good unto them- " ſelves. The other Provinces may regu- " late themſelves according to the Tenor " eſtabliſh'd by *Matthias*, or elſe as they " ſhall judge to be moſt for the Peace and " Welfare of their particular Provinces; " provided every one remain free in his " Religion, and no Man to be examin'd " or entrapp'd for that Cauſe, according to " the *Pacification of Ghent*.

" In caſe of any Diſſention or Differen- " ces between Provinces, if it concern one " in particular, it ſhall be accommodated " by the others; if it concern all in general, " by the Stadtholders: In both which Ca- " ſes, Sentence to be pronounc'd within a " Month, and without Appeal or Reviſion.

" The States to be held as has been for- " merly mentioned; and the Mint in ſuch " manner as ſhall hereafter be agreed by all " the Provinces.

" Interpretation of theſe Articles to re- " main in the States; but in caſe of their " differing, in the Stadtholder's.

" They bind themſelves to fall upon and " impriſon any that ſhall act contrary to " theſe Articles; in which Caſe, no Privi- " lege nor Exemption to be valid.

This Act was ſigned by the Deputies of of *Gueldrland*, *Zutphen*, *Holland*, *Zealand*, *Utrecht*, and the Omlands of *Friſe*, *Jan.* 23, 1579. but was not ſign'd by the Prince of *Orange* till *May* following; and with this Signification, judging that by the ſame the Superiority and Authority of Arch-Duke *Matthias* is not leſſen'd.

That ſame Year the Cities of *Ghent*, *Nimegnen*, *Arnheim*, *Leewarden*, and ſome of the Nobles of *Frieſland*, with the Towns of *Venlo*, *Ipres*, *Antwerp*, *Breda*, and *Bruges*, enter'd into the Union; but the Confederates were in ſo low and uncertain a State, becauſe of the different Humours and Intereſts of the Parties they were made up of, and becauſe of the great Preparations againſt them by *Spain*, that on their firſt Coin they caus'd a Ship to be ſtamp'd, toſſed by the Waves, without Sails or Oars, and this Motto upon it: *Incertum quo fata ferant*; i. e. *We know not what Providence will do with us.*

Not long after the Duke of *Anjou*'s unhappy Management, the States renewed their Union in 1583, obliging themſelves to ſee ſuch Points of it as had been neglected during the Fury of the War, carefully obſerv'd; in caſe any Doubt happen'd, to ſee it clear'd; and any Difficulties that were ariſen, compos'd: And as to Religion, whereas in the firſt Union Popery was allow'd in all the Provinces, the States finding that many of the Papiſts were for ſubmitting again to the *Spaniſh* Yoke; they agreed, That in thoſe Provinces which continued firm to the Union, the Proteſtant Religion only ſhould be openly exercis'd. The Prince of *Orange* was barbarouſly murther'd at *Delft* by one *Balthazar Gerard*, a *Burgundian*, who ſhot him *Anno* 1584, in the 51ſt Year of his Age, with a Piſtol charg'd with

Digitized by Google

with three Bullets, juſt as he was riſing from Table, and ordering the Villain a Paſſport to go to a certain Place whither he was ſending him; for he had got into the Prince's Service on purpoſe, pretending to be a Proteſtant, and that his Father had ſuffer'd Martyrdom for his Religion: Upon which Account the Prince employ'd him on ſeveral Meſſages, without ſuſpecting his Fidelity. Thus the Court of *Spain* effected his Death at laſt, which they had ſeveral times attempted before: For beſides the Shot by which he was wounded at *Antwerp* by a *Spaniard*, in hopes of the Reward promis'd him in King *Philip*'s Proſcription, the Baron *de Maurier* informs us in his Lives of the Princes of *Orange*, That *Salviedo*, a *Spaniard*, who was in a Conſpiracy with others to have murther'd him, confeſs'd before his Execution, by Order of the Parliament of *Paris*, that the Prince of *Parma* had given him 4000 Crowns to murther the Prince of *Orange* by Poiſon or otherwiſe. After the Prince received his Wound, he died immediately, with theſe Words in his Mouth, *Lord have Mercy on my Soul, and on this poor People*; which was an effectual Confutation of the Calumnies thrown upon him by the *Spaniards*, that his Ambition and Deſire of Government was the Cauſe of his Revolt, ſince with his laſt Breath he plainly diſcover'd it to be the cordial Affection which he bore to his Country, as became ſo noble a Patriot. The People lamented his Loſs as that of a common Father, and never was a Funeral attended with greater Pomp, and more real Sorrow. The execrable Aſſaſſin was ſoon after put to Death, and died ſo harden'd, that he ſaid, If it were to be done again, he would do it: Yet this Villain is enroll'd by the Papiſts among their Martyrs.

The Murder of this great Prince was ſo far from diſcouraging the United States, that it confirmed them in their Reſolution never to ſubmit again to the *Spaniards*: And after having done what they could in Honour to the Prince's Memory, they conferred upon his Son Prince *Maurice* all his Honours and Employments, and bravely rejected all the Propoſals that were made them by the Court of *Spain*, being encourag'd and ſupported under-hand by Queen *Elizabeth* of *England*, as a juſt Repriſal for the Encouragement given to her *Iriſh* Rebels by the Court of *Spain*. K. *Philip* had lately increas'd his Dominions by invading and uſurping *Portugal*; and aiming at the Univerſal Monarchy, he embrac'd at once the Protection of that call'd the *Catholick League* againſt *Henry* III. and IV. of *France*, and the Donation of *Ireland* made him by the Pope, which brought on his War with *England* and *France*, and engag'd both thoſe Crowns in the Aſſiſtance of the *Dutch*; for thô Queen *Elizabeth* refus'd their Sovereignty when they petition'd her to accept it, yet in 1585 ſhe enter'd into Articles with their Deputies, to furniſh them great Supplies of Men and Money, upon their putting the *Brill*, *Flushing*, and *Ramekins*, into her Hands as Cautionary Towns. She ſent Sir *John Norris* with Forces to aſſiſt them; and in 1587, being then at open War with *Spain*, who were preparing their Armado to invade her, ſhe ſent over greater Forces under the Earl of *Leiceſter* to aſſiſt them, and the States ſwore Obedience to him as Governor of the United Provinces. But his Government was of no long Duration, the States growing jealous that he affected an abſolute Dominion, and having juſt Cauſe to be offended with his Male-Adminiſtration, particularly with the ſcandalous Loſs of ſeveral of their Towns by his Governors, and the ill Management of their Naval Affairs, as we find in *De Witt's Intereſt of Holland*: And thô they were jealous alſo that the Queen would make a Peace with *Spain*, thoſe Suſpicions were ſoon removed by her Majeſty's recalling the Earl of *Leiceſter*, and continuing her Supplies to them; and they on the other hand aſſiſted her very frankly by Sea againſt the *Spaniards*. After the Earl of *Leiceſter*'s Removal, they choſe Prince *Maurice* to be their Governor, with a Reſervation to Queen *Elizabeth*, to whom they paid the greateſt Deference that ever they did to any Foreign Prince; and her Memory, their Succeſſors ſtill revere. Prince *Maurice* anſwer'd the Expectations which the States conceived of him, proved the greateſt Captain of his Age, particularly for the Diſcipline of his Armies, and the Ways of Fortification he invented. Before his Father's Death, the Prince of *Parma*, by his Conduct, Valour, and other good Qualities, did, with the Aſ-

Digitized by Google

Aſſiſtance of the Malecontents, reduce moſt of the Provinces to the Obedience of *Spain*; which he effected the more eaſily, becauſe of the Differences which were fomented by the Popiſh Clergy betwixt the Proteſtants and Papiſts that were united againſt *Spain*; ſo that the Papiſts chas'd the Proteſtants out of *Boiſleduc*, and the Proteſtants chas'd the Papiſts out of *Antwerp*. The Duke of *Parma* improving thoſe Diviſions, took ſeveral Towns, and endeavoured to bring off the Prince of *Orange* by large Promiſes, but in vain. The Duke of *Parma* recover'd all *Flanders*, with ſome other Provinces, and took *Antwerp* after a long Siege; ſo that the Affairs of the Confederate Provinces ſeem'd to be reduc'd to a deſperate Condition by thoſe Loſſes, and the Murther of the Prince; but were happily retrieved by Prince *Maurice*'s Conduct, and Queen *Elizabeth*'s Aſſiſtance. The reducing of *Flanders* by the Duke of *Parma*, forced all the Proteſtants to retire from thence into the United Provinces, which much contributed to their Strength, and to the Eſtabliſhment of the Reformation there. Prince *Maurice* gain'd great Reputation by his firſt Eſſay, which was the Surpriſal of *Axel*, and taking it by Scalade. The *Spaniards* at the ſame Time endeavour'd to amuſe Queen *Elizabeth*, and to raiſe Jealouſies betwixt her and the States, by making Propoſals of Peace to her. But King *Philip*'s Diſſimulation was ſoon diſcover'd by the Equipment of what he call'd his *Invincible Armada*; with which, and his Army in the *Netherlands*, he flatter'd himſelf with Hopes of conquering *England* and *Holland*; to which Pope *Sixtus* V. encourag'd him, by laying *England* under an Interdict, excommunicating Queen *Elizabeth*, and giving her Crown to any that could ſeize it. The *Atlas Hiſtorique* ſays, That both *England* and *Holland* were too negligent at firſt in preparing for their Defence; but if it were ſo, that Defect was happily ſupplied by the Care of Providence, and their after Diligence. The *Spaniſh* Armado was deſtroy'd by the Hand of Heaven, which ſcatter'd them by Tempeſts, and by the Valour of the *Engliſh*, who attack'd them with a Fleet far inferior in Number and Greatneſs of Ships, while the *Dutch* block'd up the Mouth of the *Scheld*, and hinder'd the Duke of *Parma* from ſending an Army that Way to invade *England* by Land; ſo that very few of the *Spaniſh* Fleet return'd home with the News of their Diſaſter, which occaſion'd an univerſal Conſternation and Mourning in *Spain*, and laid the Foundation of the Declenſion and Weakneſs which has ſince come upon that Monarchy.

After this, the Duke of *Parma* laid Siege to *Bergenopzoom*, but was forc'd to raiſe it. *Gertrudenberg* revolted to the *Spaniards*, and Prince *Maurice* reliev'd the Town of *Heuſden*, which they had cloſely beſieg'd, while the Duke of *Parma* took *Rhinberg*, after a long Defence; and the brave *Schenk* was unhappily drown'd while he attack'd *Nimeguen*, and had almoſt taken it in Behalf of the States. But Prince *Maurice* had better Succeſs in ſurpriſing *Breda* by 70 Men, who got into the Citadel under a Load of Turf, which was carried in a Boat for Fuel to the Gariſon. Sir *William Temple* obſerves, That the Affairs of the States had a mighty Turn for the better by the ſharp Wars which Queen *Elizabeth* made upon the *Spaniards* in the *Indies* by Sea, and the Expeditions againſt *Lisbon* and *Cadix*; to which Turn, the Declenſion of the Affairs of the League in *France* did very much contribute; for whoſe Support K. *Philip* was ſo paſſionately engaged, that he twice commanded the Duke of *Parma* to interrupt the Courſe of his Victories in the *Netherlands*, and march into *France* for the Relief of *Roan* and *Paris*, which were then much preſſed by the Forces that the *French* King had rais'd againſt thoſe of the League; and this, as Sir *William Temple* juſtly obſerves, did very much increaſe the Fame of this great Captain; but as much impair'd the State of the Affairs of *Spain* in the *Netherlands*, where Prince *Maurice* took ſeveral Places, notwithſtanding the Oppoſition made to him by Count *Mansfeld*, an old and experienc'd Captain; and after the Duke's Return in 1590, the Prince took *Hulſt* and *Nimeguen*, and oblig'd the Duke to raiſe the Siege of *Knodſemburg*. After theſe and ſeveral other Conqueſts during that Campaign, Prince *Maurice* return'd to *Holland*, loaden with Glory; and his Fame was ſpread through all *Europe*. In 1592, the Duke of *Parma* was commanded again into *France* to aſſiſt the Leaguers, but without much Effect; for their Affairs,

Digitized by Google

and thoſe of *Spain*, received a fatal Blow by the Succeſſion of *Henry* IV. to the Crown of *France*, and the good Correſpondence he entertain'd with Queen *Elizabeth* and the States of *Holland*. This Year the Duke of *Parma* died, and with him the Succeſs and Diſcipline of the *Spaniſh* Armies in the *Netherlands*. In the mean Time Prince *Maurice* appeaſed ſome Seditions in *Utrecht* and *Zealand*, and took *Stenwick*, *Coeworden*, and *Otmarſen*. In 1593, he retook *Gertrudenberg*, and puniſh'd thoſe who occaſioned its former Revolt. In 1594, Archduke *Erneſt* ſucceeded the Duke of *Parma*. Prince *Maurice* miſcarried in his Deſign on *Maeſtricht* and *Boiſleduc*, but reduced *Grouingen*. The Archduke made Propoſals to the States, which they rejected; and ſoon after he and ſome other great Men form'd a Conſpiracy to murther the Prince, and ſome of the principal States, as appear'd by the Confeſſion of ſeveral of the Aſſaſſins who were ſeiz'd: Upon which the Deſign was happily defeated. In 1595, the Archduke died, and King *Philip* left the Government of the *Netherlands* to a Senate, under the Direction of the Count *de Fuentes*, their Preſident. They ſent Deputies to treat with Prince *Maurice*, but without Effect. About this Time the *Dutch* began to enlarge their Navigation to the *Eaſt-Indies*. In 1596, King *Philip* ſent Archduke *Albert* to govern the *Netherlands*, where his Armies had been very mutinous ſince the Death of the Duke of *Parma*. Sir *William Temple* ſays, That the ſending of Archduke *Albert* had a deeper Root and Deſign than appear'd at firſt; of which he gives the following Account:

King *Philip* finding his Body broke with Age and Infirmities, and his Mind with Care and diſtemper'd Thoughts, was willing now to be at Reſt and Quiet, which he had never yet allow'd the World or himſelf. His Deſigns upon *England* by his Invincible Armado, had ended in Smoak; and thoſe upon *France* had Events quite contrary to his Expectation. Inſtead of eſtabliſhing a Tyrannical Government in the *Low Countries*, he had loſt 7 of his Provinces, and kept the reſt only by a War, which coſt him more than they were worth. He had lately made a Peace with *England*, and deſired it with *France*; and tho' he ſcorn'd to make Peace with the *Dutch* in his own Name, yet he wiſhed it in another's, and was unwilling to entail a Quarrel upon his Son, which had ruin'd all his own vaſt Projects. He therefore committed the Management of this Affair to Archduke *Albert*, to whom he gave the Title of Governor and Prince of the *Low Countries*, who, if he could reduce them, was to govern them as *Spaniſh* Dominions; but if he could not, he was to marry *Clara Iſabella Eugenia*, King *Philip*'s beloved Daughter, and to receive the 10 Provinces as her Dowry, on Condition they ſhould return to *Spain* if ſhe died without Iſſue. He hop'd that the Birth and Manners of the Archduke, who was a *German*, and the generous and obliging Temper of *Iſabella*, might gain more upon the *Netherlanders* than his own Tyrannical Conduct, and that at worſt they might make a Peace, if they were not ſucceſsful in War, without intereſſing the Honour and Greatneſs of the *Spaniſh* Monarchy. In Purſuit of this Determination, King *Philip*, while he intended nothing but Peace, made Preparations as if he deſign'd nothing but War, well knowing that his own Deſires of Peace would ſignify nothing, except his Enemies were brought to deſire it too. He therefore ſent the Archduke with an Army into *Flanders*; and believing that Peace with *France* muſt be the firſt in Order, and make Way for that of the *Low Countries*, he marched into *France*, took *Amient*, the Capital of *Picardy*, and gave the *French* Court ſuch an Alarm, as they had not received in the former Wars. But we return from Sir *William*'s judicious Reflection to the Courſe of the Hiſtory, part of which has been anticipated by this neceſſary Digreſſion. The Archduke brought with him *Philip* Prince of *Orange*, Prince *Maurice*'s eldeſt Brother, whom we mentioned before to have been carried off from his Studies at *Louvain*, contrary to the Privileges of that Univerſity, thinking by his Means to bring the United Provinces to a Compliance. The Archduke had Succeſs againſt the *French* at firſt, having taken *Amiens*, *Calais*, and *Ardres*, from them, as well as *Hulſt* from the States. Soon after this, the Queen of *England* and the *Dutch* ſent a Fleet againſt *Spain*, where they took *Cadiz*, as above-mentioned: But a Miſunderſtanding betwixt the Commanders hinder'd the Advan-

Digitized by Google

vantage that might have accrued from it both to *England* and *Holland*. After this, the *Dutch* made an Alliance with *France* and *England*. King *Philip* ſent a Fleet of 128 Sail againſt the *Engliſh* to revenge their plundering of *Cadiz*; but they were overtaken by a Tempeſt off of Cape *Finiſterre*, that drove 40 of their Veſſels aſhore, and drown'd 5000 Men, which made this Expedition abortive. The ſame Year the *Dutch* continued their Navigation to the *Eaſt-Indies*, and ſent a Veſſel a third time to diſcover a Paſſage by the N. E. but miſcarried in the Deſign, the Ship being frozen up, and the Men Wintering in *Nova-Zembla*. They all died but 12, who return'd with a melancholy Account of that fatal Adventure. In 1597. Prince *Maurice* defeated the Count *de Varax* with the *Spaniſh* Veteran Troops at *Turnhout*; but fail'd in his Deſign to ſurpriſe *Venlo*. This Year there happen'd a Difference betwixt the City of *Groningen* and the neighbouring Country, and likewiſe betwixt the Provinces of *Holland* and *Zealand* about a Tax on Merchandize; but they were both accommodated. Ambaſſadors from *Poland* and *Denmark* endeavoured to mediate a Peace betwixt the States and *Spain*; but the former rejected the Propoſals, and publiſh'd their Reaſons. This Year 4 *Dutch* Ships return'd from the *Eaſt-Indies*, after a Voyage of 3 Years; and their Succeſs laid the Foundation of their *Eaſt-India* Company, which is ſince become ſo powerful. The Prince took *Rheinberg*, *Meurs*, *Grol*, *Bredefort*, *Othmarſen*, *Oldenſeel*, *Lingen*, and all the other Towns beyond the *Rhine*, from the *Spaniards*, during the Archduke's Expedition againſt *France*; and the Prince, upon the Cloſe of this Campaign, return'd to *Holland*, where he was received with great Pomp, and the loud Acclamations of the People. In 1598. Archduke *Albert* married *Iſabella*, King *Philip*'s Daughter above-mentioned, and had with her *Burgundy* and the *Netherlands*. He hop'd by this Means to have brought the *Dutch* to ſubmit, on the Proſpect of having a Prince of their own continually dwelling in the Country, whoſe Poſterity would be Natives, and govern them according to their own Laws and Cuſtoms. He made uſe of the Prince of *Orange* to perſwade them to it, but in vain; for they look'd upon it to be only a Trap to enſnare them. After this, the States ſent two ſplendid Embaſſies to *Henry* IV. of *France*, and Queen *Elizabeth*, being the firſt they had ſent ſince they form'd their Republick, and made a new Treaty with *England*. At this Time a Ruſſian had undertaken to murther Prince *Maurice*, but was diſcovered and puniſh'd. This Year King *Philip* II. of *Spain* died, having been a Prince of great Qualities as well as Dominions, but guilty of great Defects, being a Diſſembler, Revengeful, Superſtitious, and of unmeaſurable Ambition. His whole Reign was a Courſe of War, during which he acquir'd *Portugal*, that was no laſting Conqueſt, and he loſt the United Provinces. About this Time *Mendoza*, the Admirant of *Arragon*, commanded the *Spaniſh* Army in the *Netherlands*, paſſed the *Maes* into *Guelderland*, and marched to the Frontiers of *Germany*, where he committed great Diſorders and Cruelties on Papiſts as well as Proteſtants, his luſtful *Spaniards* not ſparing the Nuns, which obliged the *German* Princes to raiſe Troops, and repulſe him. In 1599, the *Dutch* Army being inconſiderable, it made Prince *Maurice* very uneaſy, ſince he had not above 4000 Men to defend the Paſſages of the *Rhine* and the *Iſſel*. The States put out a conſiderable Fleet under *Peter la Douze*; but he was unſucceſsful, having only burnt the Fort and Town of the *Canaries*, but loſt his own Life, and part of his Equipage, in the Expedition. *Frederick Spinola* brought 6 Gallies into the *Netherlands* to infeſt the *Dutch* Trade, and was to have all the Prizes he took for a Reward. The *Dunkirkers* would not let him have their Harbours, ſo that he brought them to *Sluys*, and cruiſed upon the *Zealanders*, who were very much afraid of them at firſt; but at laſt defeated them in ſeveral Rencounters. The Republick endeavour'd to raiſe a Tax for the Support of the War; but ſome of the Provinces oppos'd it, and the Elector *Palatine* ſollicited other Princes of *Germany* to aſſiſt them. *Breaute*, a *Norman* Gentleman in the Service of the States, with 19 of his Countrymen, challeng'd 20 *Spaniards* of the Garriſon of *Boiſleduc* to a Combat, which they accepted: *Breaute* kill'd the *Spaniſh* Commander at firſt, and the Conflict was ſo ſharp, that half the Men on

Digitized by Google

both Sides were kill'd in a little Time; but the *French* fled, and *Breaute* yielding, was barbarouſly kill'd by the *Spaniards*, tho' they promis'd him Quarter. The States of *Zealand* having repreſented the Neceſſity of making War in *Flanders*, Prince *Maurice* went thither in 1600 with an Army, and the Archduke encounter'd him near *Newport*, where the Victory fell to the *Dutch*, chiefly by the Bravery of the *Engliſh*, under the Conduct of Sir *Francis Vere*. The Archduke was wounded, and very near taken in this Battle, where he had 6000 Men killed, and 600 taken, with 300 Colours; but the Badneſs of the Seaſon hinder'd Prince *Maurice* from improving this Victory. Some Conferences were held at *Bergenopzoom* this Year about Peace, but without Succeſs. In 1601, the Archduke form'd the Siege of *Oſtend*, where the Garriſon of the States made ſuch a brave Defence, as very much diſhearten'd him, and made him deſpair of Succeſs; but being recruited by 8000 *Italians*, under the Marquis *de Spinola*, he left the Direction of the Siege to him, who took it after 3 Years, 3 Months, 3 Weeks, 3 Days, and 3 Hours; not ſo much by any want of Men or Proviſions within, the Haven being open all that while, ſo that they had conſtant Supplies by Sea, but perfectly for want of Ground, which he gain'd from them Foot by Foot, till they had not ſo much left as would hold Men to defend it. Prince *Maurice* attempted to relieve it ſeveral times, but in vain, the *Spaniards* were ſo ſtrongly intrench'd, and his Army not large enough to force them. In the mean time the *Dutch* increas'd in their Trade, *Oliver de Nord* having diſcover'd the Streights of *Magellan*, and their Navigation being ſucceſsful in the *Indies*, from whence in 1602 they had Ambaſſadors ſent them. They likewiſe burnt *Spinola*'s Gallies, formerly mentioned, in 1603, and took *Sluys*, which he came to relieve, where his Troops were defeated, and himſelf kill'd. The King of *Spain* publiſh'd an Edict, allowing the *Dutch* to trade in his Kingdom; but becauſe of the great Impoſts he laid on their Goods, they would not accept it. The ſame Year they ſent a Squadron to the *Eaſt-Indies* and *Brazile* to pillage the *Spaniards*. In 1604, the Emperor wrote to the *Dutch* to perſwade them to Peace, which they refuſed, and excuſed themſelves, by alledging that they could not rely upon any Treaty with the *Spaniards*. This Year concluded the Siege of *Oſtend* above-mention'd, when the Garriſon obtain'd very honourable Terms, and retir'd to *Sluys*, where Prince *Maurice* receiv'd them with as much Honour, becauſe of their brave Defence, as if they had come from a Conqueſt. *Puffendorf* ſays, the *Dutch* loſt 70000 Men during that Siege; but the *Spaniards* a great many more, beſides the Loſs of *Rhinberg*, *Grave*, and *Sluys*, which Prince *Maurice* took in the mean time. The *Engliſh* under Sir *Francis Vere* did the *Dutch* great Service in Defence of this Town while he continued Governor, as both they and the *Scots* did on other Occaſions; for they had Troops from *Scotland* before King *James* came to the Crown of *England*, the *Spaniards* having eſpouſed the Cauſe of his Mother, in order to dethrone him; and *Strada* takes particular Notice of the Intrepidity of ſome of the *Scots* during this War, who in Engagements ſtrip'd themſelves, and fought naked, with amazing Courage. In 1605, the *Spaniards* made freſh Propoſals of Peace, but without Effect, thô *Spinola* took *Lingen*, *Groll*, and *Rhinberg*, from the States, and Prince *Maurice* miſcarried in his Deſign upon *Antwerp*. This Year a *Dutch* Squadron return'd from the *Eaſt-Indies* and *Brazile*, with a great Booty they had taken from the *Spaniards*; and they ſent out more Ships, under the Director of their *Eaſt-India* Company. In 1606, the *Spaniards* enter'd the United Provinces with ſeveral Armies, againſt whom Prince *Maurice* made a brave Defence on all Sides; ſo that they only took *Rhinberg*, but were repulſed at *Nimeguen* and *Zwol*. In 1607, the States continued ſucceſsful in the *Indies* againſt the *Spaniards*, and in their Negotiations with the Princes in thoſe Parts, by which in a manner they engroſſed the Spice Trade. The *Portugueze* ſuſtaining great Loſs by theſe Expeditions, they adviſed the King of *Spain* to make Peace with the *Dutch*, wherein *Spinola* concurred with them, and Deputies were accordingly ſent to the *Hague*, but without Succeſs, tho' there was a Ceſſation of Arms for ſome Time. After this the *Dutch* ſent *Heemskirk* with a Fleet againſt *Spain*. He attack'd the *Spaniſh* Fleet in the Har-

Digitized by Google

Harbour of *Gibraltar*, tho' they were very ſtrong, and had a numerous Artillery, and ſeveral Regiments of the beſt Land-Forces aboard. This brave Admiral was kill'd in the Battle; but his Fleet obtain'd a compleat Victory over the *Spaniards*. The Kings of *France*, *Denmark*, and *Sweden*, with ſeveral Princes of *Germany*, interpoſed for a Peace; but the Ratification of the Articles ſent from *Spain* not being anſwerable to the Archduke's Promiſes, 'twas not then concluded; yet a great many Troops were caſhier'd on both Sides on the Proſpect of an Agreement. In 1608, the Negotiations were again ſet on foot; as to which, Sir *William Temple* gives us the following Account: The *Dutch* had purſued their *Eaſt-India* Trade with ſo much Application and Advantage, that they made themſelves Maſters of moſt of the Colonies and Forts belonging there to the *Portugueze*, then Subjects of *Spain*; That *Holland* became the great Magazine of all the Commodities of thoſe Eaſtern Regions. In the *Weſt-Indies*, tho' the Attempts of the *Dutch* were neither ſo frequent nor proſperous, the *Spaniſh* Plantations there being too numerous and ſtrong, yet by the Multitude of their Ships ſet out with publick and private Commiſſions, they infeſted thoſe Seas, laid wait for the *Spaniſh* Plate-Fleets, and ſometimes attempted their Coaſts in that New World, which was to touch *Spain* in the moſt ſenſible Part, and was a ſtrong Motive to their Court to endeavour a Peace, in order to ſecure thoſe Treaſures, and preſerve them in *Spain*, by ſtopping the Iſſue of thoſe vaſt Sums that they continually ſent out to maintain the War in the *Netherlands*. This occaſioned the Propoſals of Peace to come wholly from the *Spaniards*; but the *Dutch* would never hear of it, till the Archduke declared he would treat with them as with Free Provinces, upon whom neither he nor *Spain* had any Pretences: And the *Spaniſh* Court condeſcended ſo far as to treat at the *Hague*, the Seat of the Sates General; and the Archduke's Four chief Miniſters were appointed to go thither to manage the Treaty, *viz.* their General *Spinola*, the Preſident of the Council, and the Secretaries of State and War. The *Dutch* proceeded with the greateſt Coldneſs imaginable, criticiz'd upon every Word of the Archduke's Declaration to treat with them as Free Provinces and upon the King of *Spain*'s Ratification of it; ſo that they forc'd them to ſend Expreſſes to *Spain* upon every Occaſion, and to attend their tedious Returns: For the Succeſs of the States in 30 Years War by Land, and the mighty Growth of their Naval Power and Trade, had made all thoſe concern'd in the War by Sea or Land averſe to a Peace, as well as the greateſt Part of their People, whoſe Hatred againſt *Spain* was ſtill as great as ever; and not a few of them had Hopes of raiſing their Fortunes by the War, of which they had many great Examples among them: But that, ſays Sir *William*, which chiefly contributed to bring them to a Peace, was, 1. Their Jealouſy of the Growth of *France* under the Conduct of *Henry* IV. who had then made a Peace with *Spain*: For they knew that the hot Spirits of the *French* could not long continue without ſome Exerciſe; and they were afraid that King *Henry*'s great Preparations for War might be deſigned againſt *Flanders*, and that the Neighbourhood of the *French* would prove more dangerous to them than the Government of *Spain*, whoſe Power they now ſaw declining very faſt. The 2d was their Jealouſy of Prince *Maurice*, whoſe Credit and Power being founded on that of his Father, and advanc'd to a great Height by his own Perſonal Merit and Succeſs, they were afraid he might aim at an abſolute Power, he being then Stadtholder of 4 of the Provinces, and two of his Couſins of the other 3. Theſe Jealouſies were heighten'd by *Barnevelt*, Penſioner of *Holland*, a Perſon of great Abilities and Authority. This had more Influence upon the Peace than the Interceſſion of neighbouring Princes, or any other Conſideration; yet the Treaty was like to break off on the Points of Religion, and the *Indian* Trade. But the latter of thoſe Difficulties being referr'd, a Truce of 12 Years was ſign'd in 1609; and Foreign Powers did after this receive the Deputies ſent them by the States as Ambaſſadors. The principal Things agreed on at this Treaty were, 1. The Declaration by the Archduke, owning that he treated with them as with a Free People, which was afterward ratified by the King of *Spain*. The States a long time debated the Word *As*, conceiving it might bear a double

ble Meaning; but by the Advice of the *French* Ambaſſador, they paſs'd from it, he having ſaid, as *Puffendorf* informs us, that this Word could not add much to the Strength of *Spain*, nor diminiſh theirs. 2. That all Priſoners ſhould be relieved on both Sides without Ranſom. 3. That each Party ſhould enjoy what they then poſſeſs'd. 4. That all Hoſtilities during the Truce ſhould ceaſe. 5. That a free Commerce ſhould be reſtored on both Sides as before the War. 6. That no new Fortifications ſhould be raiſed on either Side during the Truce. About this Time the Differences betwixt the *Calviniſts*, who had the Publick Eſtabliſhment, and the *Arminians*, began to break out. *Hudſon*, an *Engliſhman*, ſays the *Atlas Hiſtorique*, being ſent this Year by the *Dutch Eaſt-India* Company to ſeek a Paſſage to the *Indies* by the N. was ſtop'd by Ice; and afterwards going to ſeek a Paſſage by *Davis*'s Streights, diſcover'd that ſince called *Hudſon*'s Bay. He went to *England* in his Return, where he was detain'd; and oblig'd to ſerve his own Country, who made uſe of his Diſcovery. The *Eaſt-India* Trade being referred at the Treaty, as above-mentioned, new Controverſies happen'd betwixt the *Dutch* and the *Spaniards*, and mutual Hoſtilities enſued in the *Indies* on that Account. In 1611, the Difference betwixt the *Calviniſts* and *Arminians* occaſioned great Diſturbances in the State, the latter being countenanc'd by *Barnevelt* and others, who rais'd Suſpicions of the Prince, as if he deſign'd to make himſelf abſolute. In 1612, the *Spaniards* and *Portugueze* envying the Succeſs of the *Dutch* in their Trade, they oppos'd their Commerce, and pretended that none but themſelves had any Right to paſs the Line, which oblig'd the States to ſet out a Fleet to ſecure their Navigation. In 1613, King *James* I. of *Great Britain* made Prince *Maurice* a Knight of the Garter. In 1614, new Differences happen'd betwixt the *Dutch* and the *Spaniards* about the Succeſſion of *Cleve* and *Juliers*, which was claimed by the Elector of *Brandenburg* and the Duke of *Newburg*. *Puffendorff* ſays, the Emperor, upon the Death of the laſt Duke of thoſe Countries in 1609, had a Mind to annex them to his own Houſe, and ſent the Archduke *Leopold* to make a Sequeſtration of them: Upon which he took the ſtrong City of *Juliers*; but was beat out again by the *Dutch* and *French*. The Elector of *Brandenburg* and Duke of *Newburg* came afterwards to an Agreement; but differing again, the Duke was ſupported by the *Spaniards*, and the Elector by the *Dutch*; ſo that the States and the *Spaniards* made War upon one another in the Name of their Allies, tho' the Truce was ſtill continued betwixt themſelves. During theſe Wars, *Spinola* took *Weſel* by Surprize, and the *Dutch* put Garriſons into *Rees* and *Embrick* in the Dutchy of *Cleve*; but were ſo much alarm'd at the taking of *Weſel*, which might give the *Spaniards* a new Opportunity of invading their Provinces on that Side, that they engaged the *Engliſh* and *French* to mediate an Agreement betwixt the Elector and the Duke, who divided thoſe Dominions betwixt them, and engaged neither to call the *Dutch* nor the *Spaniards* afterwards into thoſe Countries. In 1616, the *Dutch* ſent *Barnevelt* into *England*, upon King *James*'s Demand of the Money which Queen *Elizabeth* had advanc'd to them on the Security of the Cautionary Towns. *Barnevelt* agreed to repay the Sum, and had thoſe Towns reſtor'd, which the States were the more willing to have effected, becauſe till that Time the *Engliſh* Ambaſſador had not only the Preference of all others in their Dominions, but likewiſe a Vote in their Council of State; which, Sir *William Temple* ſays, was by Agreement with Queen *Elizabeth*, becauſe of the Aſſiſtance ſhe gave them; tho' the *Dutch* pretended, that 'twas on the Account of the Cautionary Towns being poſſeſs'd by the Crown of *England*, and that this Privilege was to ceaſe upon the Redemption of thoſe Towns. Sir *William* alſo obſerves, That when the States made the Truce with *Spain*, they enter'd into a mutual Alliance with *Henry* IV. of *France* for preſerving the Peace, who, in caſe of a Breach, was to aſſiſt them with 10000 Men; and if he was invaded, they were to ſend him 5000. This King maintain'd a Body of Horſe and Foot at his own Charge in their Service after his Truce with *Spain*, in order to oblige the *Dutch*, and to make himſelf the Arbiter of Peace and War, he being their chief Support after Queen *Elizabeth*'s Death. In 1617, *James le Maire* diſcovered a new Paſſage near the Streights of

Digitized by Google

of *Magellan*, by him call'd, *Le Maire's Streights*. He diſcovered alſo two Countries, one of which he called, *Maurice* of *Naſſau*; and the other, *The Country of the States*. In 1618, the Troubles increaſing in the Country by the Practices of the *Arminians*, and the Oppoſition made to them, the States aſſembled a National Synod at *Dort*, at which Divines aſſiſted from *England*, *Germany*, *Switzerland*, and *Geneva*, wherein the 5 Articles of *Arminius* and his Adherents were condemned; but more of this when we come to the Account of their Religion. This Year *Philip* Prince of *Orange* died at *Bruſſels* without Heirs: Upon which Prince *Maurice*, his Brother, ſucceeded to his Title and Dominions. In 1619, *Barnevelt*, *Hugo Grotius*, and others, who had ſupported the *Arminians*, were Heads of the Faction that oppos'd Prince *Maurice*, and countenanc'd the levying of Troops to the Diſturbance of the State, were impriſon'd; for the Differences were come to that Height, that one of the Parties muſt be ſuppreſs'd, or the Ruin of the State endanger'd. Upon which *Barnevelt* was condemned to loſe his Head in an Aſſembly of the States General, and was accordingly executed in the 72d Year of his Age, much lamented by many, becauſe of the great Services he had done the State, and his having always profeſs'd himſelf a Patriot of his Country's Liberty. This made the Prince's Enemies write bitterly againſt him, as aiming ſtill at an abſolute Power. At the ſame time *Grotius* was condemn'd to perpetual Impriſonment in the Caſtle of *Louveſtein*, from whence his Wife got him convey'd in a Cheſt by which ſhe ſent him Books. After this he retir'd into the *Spaniſh Netherlands*, and from thence into *France*, where he was kindly received by *Lewis* XIII. He return'd afterwards to the *Netherlands*, upon Encouragement from Prince *Henry Frederick*; but the States would not ſuffer him to ſtay there: Upon which he went to *Chriſtina* of *Sweden*, who employ'd him in Affairs of the greateſt Importance, to *France*, and elſewhere; and he died at *Roſtock* in *Mecklenburg* in 1649. But tho' he was a Man of extraordinary Learning and Parts, it muſt be own'd, that his Unſteadineſs in Matters of Religion and Politicks, gave too great Ground to the Adverſaries of the then *Arminians* in *Holland*, one of whoſe Leaders he was, to ſay, that they intended very dangerous Innovations in Matters of Religion, if not in the State. Theſe Controverſies laid the Foundation of that called the *Louveſtein* or the Republican Faction, and that called the Prince's or Stadtholder's Faction, who, as Sir *William Temple* obſerves, have ever been very liberal in their mutual Reflections; the *Calviniſts* charging the *Arminians* to be Enemies to the true and purer Reformation, and the *Arminians* charging them as Enemies to the true and free Liberty of the State. But this Matter will appear in a clearer Light when we come to the Synod of *Dort*.

In 1620, the Differences which happen'd betwixt the Emperor and the Elector *Palatine* occaſion'd the *Spaniards* to aſſiſt the former, and the States the latter; ſo that they made War upon one another a ſecond time in the Name of their Allies, without breaking the Truce.

In 1621, the Truce ending, both Sides prepared to renew the War. That Year the Archduke *Albert* died at *Bruſſels*, much below'd of his Subjects, becauſe of his ſweet Temper. He was much troubled at his Death, becauſe he had not been able to eſtabliſh a laſting Peace with the *Dutch*.

In 1622, the War began afreſh with *Spain*. *Spinola* took *Juliers*; but was obliged to raiſe the Siege of *Bergenopzoom*, after he had loſt 10000 Men before it; becauſe Count *Mansfeld*, and *Chriſtian* Duke of *Brunſwick*, having defeated the *Spaniards* near *Fleru*, were marching to the Aſſiſtance of the *Dutch*.

In 1623, a Conſpiracy was form'd againſt the Prince, but the Authors diſcover'd and puniſh'd. That ſame Year the States ſettled their *Eaſt-India* Company by an Edict, were ſucceſsful in their Navigation, and took St. *Salvador* from the *Spaniards*.

In 1625, *Spinola* beſieg'd *Breda*, and ſo fortified his Camp, that the Prince was not able to raiſe the Siegé; ſo that it was taken after 9 Months Attack. The Loſs of this Town, and the Miſcarriage of his own Deſign on *Antwerp*, threw the Prince into a Melancholy, of which he died, extreamly lamented, having been a wiſe and valiant Commander, and endowed with all the Qualities requiſite in a great Captain.

In

In 1626, his Brother *Frederick Henry* ſucceeded. He hinder'd the *Spaniards* from finiſhing the Canal which they had begun to dig betwixt the *Rhine* and the *Maes*, and deſign'd to have brought by the Town of *Gelder*.

In 1627, he was made Knight of the Garter: The Marquis *de Spinola* was called back to *Spain*, and the Prince took *Grol*.

In 1628, General *Carpenter*, ſent out with a Fleet by the *Eaſt-India* Company, diſcovered that Part of *Terra Auſtralis* called *New Holland*. *Peter Adrian*, with 12 Veſſels, attack'd the *Spaniards* at the Iſle of *Cuba*, drove their Veſſels aſhore, and brought home a rich Booty to *Holland*. Admiral *Heyn*, who the Year before had defeated and taken the *Brazile* Sugar Fleet, did this Year take the *Spaniſh* Plate Fleet, and brought home in 1629, in Plate and Goods, above 60 Millions. The Prince receiv'd him with great Honour, gave him noble Preſents, and the States made him Knight and Admiral, and preſented him with a Crown of Gold, in Form of a Lawrel. The Prince took *Boiſleduc*, notwithſtanding the brave Defence of the Garriſon, and that the Count *de Berg* came with a great Army to relieve it. At the ſame Time the Governor of *Embrick* ſurpris'd *Weſel* for the States, which put a Stop to the Invaſion of the *Spaniards*, who had paſſed the *Iſſel* to ravage the United Provinces.

In 1630, the *Dutch* were ſucceſsful in the *Weſt* and *Eaſt Indies*, and obliged the Emperor of the Iſle of *Java* to raiſe the Siege of *Batavia*, which he attack'd with 200000 Men, and the Year after with 150000; but alſo in vain: And their *Weſt-India* Company poſſeſs'd themſelves of *Brazile*. Cardinal *Richelieu* had corrupted the Governor of *Orange*; but the Prince having Notice of it, turn'd him out, and fav'd that Principality.

In 1631, the *Spaniards*, with a great Fleet of Gallies and other Ships, endeavour'd to cut off the Communication betwixt *Holland* and *Zealand*; but Vice-Admiral *Hollart* defeated them; and of 6000 Men on board that Fleet, only 11 eſcaped, beſides the Governor of *Breda*, and one Captain.

In 1632, the Prince took *Venlo*, *Ruremond*, and *Maeſtricht*. The Imperial General *Papenheim* came with a great Army to relieve the latter; but the Prince intrench'd himſelf, ſo as to repulſe him in ſeveral Attacks, which obliged the Town to ſurrender.

In 1633, the *Spaniards* deſpairing to reduce the United Provinces, made new Propoſals of Peace, but in vain; and the Prince took *Rheinberg*, and all the Towns which the *Spaniards* had in *Guelderland*. This Year the Archdutcheſs *Iſabel* died at *Bruſſels*, in the 67th Year of her Age, much lamented by her Subjects, becauſe of her Juſtice, Wiſdom, and Exemplary Piety in her Religion.

In 1634, the Cardinal Infant, Brother to *Philip* III. of *Spain*, ſucceeded her as Governor of the *Spaniſh Netherlands*. The Count of *Naſſau* defeated the *Portugueze* in *Brazile*, and the *Dutch* made a conſiderable Progreſs in the *Indies*.

In 1635, *France* declar'd War againſt *Spain*, and join'd their Troops with the *Dutch*; ſo that the *Spaniſh Netherlands* ſuffer'd much on both Sides. The Confederates took *Tillemont*, and beſieg'd *Louvain*; but their Progreſs was hinder'd by Jealouſies betwixt the *French* General and the Prince of *Orange*; and the *Spaniards* ſurpris'd the important Fort of *Schenk*.

In 1636, the Prince retook it by a vigorous Siege; and the *Dutch* Fleet defeated the *Dunkirkers* near *Diep*.

In 1637, the *Dutch* were ſucceſsful in the *Weſt-Indies*, took two or three Places, and gain'd a Battle. That ſame Year the Prince recover'd *Breda*.

In 1638, the Count *de Naſſau* was oblig'd to raiſe the Siege of *Calo*, attack'd by the *Spaniards* with a ſuperior Force, obliged to retire, and loſt his Son in the Action.

In 1639, *Van Trump* defeated the *Spaniſh* Fleet on the Coaſt of *Flanders*, made their Admiral run aſhore, burnt their Vice-Admiral, took two of their Ships, and forc'd the reſt aſhore. The *Spaniards* in Revenge ſent out a greater Fleet to attack *Van Trump*. The Battle continued two Days; but the *Spaniards* were defeated, and few of 'em eſcap'd to *Dunkirk*. The *Spaniſh* Power being broke at Sea, the Prince enter'd *Flanders* next Year, but without any great Succeſs. The States poſſeſſed themſelves of the Streights of *Malaca*, which was a great Advantage to their *Eaſt-India* Company.

In

Digitized by Google

In 1641, the Prince's Son *William* married K. *Charles* I. of *Great Britain*'s eldeſt Daughter *Mary*, and the Prince took *Gennep*. The Cardinal Infant died, and was ſucceeded by *Caſtel Rodrigo* as Governor of the *Spaniſh Netherlands*.

In 1642, there was no great Matter done on either Side.

In 1643, the *Portugueze* ſhook off the *Spaniſh* Yoke, and choſe the Duke of *Braganza*, a Prince of their own Blood Royal, for King, with whom the *Dutch* made an Alliance. Count *Maurice* of *Naſſau*, who commanded in *Brazile*, ſent ſome of his Men to *Chili*: They diſcover'd that call'd *Brewer's Streights*, from the Name of their Commander, and took ſeveral Forts; but his Death ſtop'd their Progreſs. He was ſucceeded by *Herkman*, with whom the Natives were ſo well pleas'd, that they revolted from under the *Spaniards*; but he was obliged to retire for want of a ſufficient Number of Troops. The *Dutch Eaſt-India* Company made themſelves Maſters of the Streights which forms the *Peninſula* of the *Eaſt-Indies*, from Cape *Comorin* as far as the Coaſts of *Coromandel*.

In 1644, Negociations of Peace were ſet on foot betwixt the *Dutch* and *Spain*, but without Effect. The States renewed their Alliance with *France*, and engaged themſelves to make no Peace without them. The *French* beſieg'd *Gravelin* by Land, and *Van Trump* ſo block'd it up by Sea, that the *Spaniards* loſt it. In the mean time the Prince took *Hulſt* and *Sas van Ghent*.

In 1645, while the Preliminaries of Peace were treating at *Munſter*, the Prince attempted to take *Antwerp*, but miſcarried, becauſe the *French* General refus'd to let him have 3000 Horſe. This Year the *Portugueze*, during a Truce, and contrary to the publick Faith, ſays the *Atlas Hiſtorique*, poſſeſs'd themſelves again of *Brazile*, which was a great Prejudice to the *Dutch Weſt-India* Company.

In 1646, Cardinal *Mazarine* propoſed the Siege of *Ghent*, in order afterwards to form that of *Antwerp*. The *Spaniards* being inform'd of this, ſent to propoſe a Truce at the *Hague*; and the States of *Zealand*, with the City of *Amſterdam*, oppos'd the Deſign againſt *Antwerp*, becauſe they thought the taking of that Town would damage their own Commerce.

In *March* 1647, the Prince of *Orange* died of a Dropſy, having been, ſays the *Atlas Hiſtorique*, the Ornament of his Country, the Support of the Republick, and the Inſtrument of its Liberty and Power.

He was ſucceeded by his Son *William* II. with general Applauſe. Some were for impoſing hard Conditions upon him; but the more moderate Party carried it.

In 1648, the Peace was concluded betwixt *Spain* and the *Dutch* at *Munſter*, wherein the King of *Spain* own'd them to be a Free and Sovereign People, and renounc'd for himſelf and his Succeſſors all Pretences to Dominion over them. But as this Peace was an Authentick Acknowledgment of the Liberty of the Provinces, the Prince's Faction reckon'd it a Check to his Power. New Treaties were afterwards made with *Spain*, to clear ſome Things relating to Commerce: And Admiral *Boucher* did in Part retrieve the Affairs of the *Dutch* in *Brazile*; but was obliged to return to *Europe* for want of Soldiers and Ammunition, which prov'd a great Loſs to their *Weſt-India* Company; but that of the *Eaſt-Indies* gain'd by it: For this having occaſioned a War with *Portugal*, which laſted till 1661, the *Dutch* took from the *Portugueze* almoſt all the Places they were poſſeſs'd of in the *Eaſt-Indies*.

In 1650, a General Aſſembly of the States met, to conſider of Methods for diſcharging the publick Debts, and eaſing the People of the Taxes they had been obliged to pay during the War. Some of the States, and particularly thoſe of *Holland*, as *Puffendorf* and the *Atlas* inform us, were for caſhiering a great Part of their Troops. The Prince took it ill that they ſhould talk of diſbanding ſuch a great Part of the Army, that had ſo faithfully ſerv'd their Country. He repreſented how dangerous this might be to the States during the War betwixt *France* and *Spain*, and that in *England* betwixt the King and the Parliament. The States being divided about this Matter, 'twas agreed upon by the Majority of the States General who were Friends to the Prince, that he ſhould viſit the Cities in Perſon, and endeavour to convince them; but this was petition'd againſt by ſome of the Cities in *Holland*, and particularly by *Amſterdam*, alledging, that if he ſhould come thither in Perſon, he might, by changing their Ma-

Digitized by Google

giſtrates, and other Alterations, invade their Liberty. The Prince, diſſatisfied with thoſe Proceedings, alledg'd they did it to affront him and his Officers. He went to *Dort*, *Haerlem*, and *Amſterdam*, to prevent their disbanding the Troops; and deſir'd the Magiſtrates of the latter might be aſſembled, which being deny'd, provok'd him to the higheſt Degree. He demanded Reparation; but the Cities continued in their Reſolution, alledging that it was according to their Privileges. Upon this the Prince took into Cuſtody 6 of the States, whom he thought to be moſt oppoſite to his Deſigns, and among them *De Wit*, the Burgomaſter of *Dort*, whom he ſent Priſoners to the Caſtle of *Louveſtein*. He likewiſe form'd a Deſign to ſurpriſe *Amſterdam* by his Army, but miſcarried, ſome of the Troops having miſtaken their Way in the Night, and their March being diſcover'd by the *Hamburgh* Poſt, who rode through them without being diſcern'd. Upon this the *Amſterdammers* aſſembled their Senate, and ſent Deputies to acquaint the Prince, That if he had put himſelf at the Head of ſo great an Army to execute any Deſign for the publick Good, they had 60000 Men ready to follow his Banner. He anſwer'd, That he had no other Deſign but the publick Service, and to reduce thoſe to Reaſon, who, out of a ſeditious Principle, endeavour'd to break the Fundamental Union of the Provinces, of whom their Burgomaſter *Bicker* being one of the chief, he was come at the Head of 30000 Men to puniſh him, according to the Laws of their Country; and bid the Deputies tell thoſe of *Amſterdam*, That his Army being the ſame which had ſo frequently made *Spain* to tremble, and ſecur'd the Liberty of the Provinces, their 60000 Burgers would find it a hard Task to oppoſe them. The City being ſtartled at this reſolute Anſwer, put themſelves in the beſt Poſture of Defence they could, open'd their Sluces, and threaten'd to pierce their Dykes, in order to hinder his nearer Approach; but at the ſame time enter'd upon a Treaty with him. In order to give him ſome Satisfaction, they turn'd out Burgomaſter *Bicker*, on Condition that he ſhould releaſe the 6 Gentlemen whom he had impriſon'd. Thus the Affair was compromiſ'd; but the Prince was ſo much vex'd at the miſcarrying of his Deſign, and the diſbanding of his Army, which made him uncapable of doing any thing to relieve his Father-in-Law King *Charles* I. againſt the Deſigns which *Oliver* had then form'd upon his Life, that he was oppreſs'd with a heavy Melancholy; and going to compoſe ſome Differences betwixt the Nobles and Cities of *Guelderland*, he was taken ill, and returning to the *Hague*, his Phyſicians let him Blood; ſoon after which the Small-Pox appear'd, and he died the 6th of *November* following, when his Phyſicians thought him to be paſt all Danger, which gave occaſion to a Diſcourſe, that he had been poiſon'd. He was a Prince of excellent Qualities, of a ſtrong Conſtitution, and a Majeſtick Countenance, which commanded Reſpect from all that beheld him. He was popular, valiant, able in Counſel, and indefatigable, well vers'd in Languages, Hiſtory, and Mathematicks; and had he liv'd, was like to have equall'd, if not exceeded, any of his great Anceſtors. Seven Days after his Death, the Princeſs was brought to Bed of a Son, *William* III. who was afterwards Stadtholder, and King of *Great Britain*; of whom in his Place.

In 1651, the Republick being without a General and Stadtholder, it occaſioned a ſolemn Meeting of the States, to whom the Princeſs of *Orange* wrote, and recommended the Intereſt of the young Prince her Son: But the Remembrance of his Father's Attempt upon *Amſterdam*, and the Sollicitations of *Cromwel*, who had then uſurp'd the Government of *Great Britain*, occaſion'd them to ſuppreſs the Office of Stadtholder; and they renew'd the Union of *Utrecht*. *Cromwel*, ſays the *Atlas*, having attain'd his ambitious Ends, he made uſe of ſeveral Pretexts to declare War againſt the *Dutch*, and one of them was, That the States had not done *England* Juſtice for the Murther of Dr. *Doriſlaus*, who was ſent from the Parliament as a Publick Miniſter to the *Hague*; but having been one of K. *Charles* I.'s Judges, was aſſaſſinated there by ſome *Scots* and others that belong'd to King *Charles* II. before he had his publick Audience of the States. To prevent a Rupture, the *Dutch* ſent Ambaſſadors to *England*, who could effect nothing, ſays the Author of *The Life of Van Trump*. In the mean time the *Engliſh*, according

cording to that Author, had taken near 200 Merchant Ships, by which the *Dutch* suffered some Millions of Loss. The *English* likewise pretended to the Dominion of the Narrow Seas, and would allow no Flag to appear there but their own.

In 1652, the *English* declar'd War against the *Dutch*, and Admiral *Trump* put to Sea to convoy home some Merchant Ships; but had Orders to avoid engaging with the *English* if possible, and to pay the usual Respect to their Flag, if he chanc'd to meet them in the Narrow Seas. *Trump* was forc'd by a Tempest on the *English* Coast, but quitted it again as soon as possible, and made towards *Calais*: But being inform'd that the *English* were pursuing some Merchant Ships, he advanc'd to their Relief, and met *Blake* with the *English* Fleet, who, the *Atlas* says, had Orders to attack the *Dutch*. *Trump* prepared to give the usual Honours to the *English* Flag, and order'd one of his Captains to go on board with a Compliment to the *English* Admiral; but *Blake* having no Regard to these Marks of Submission, fir'd twice at *Trump*'s Ship, who made no Return till he receiv'd a third Shot, and then the Fight began, which lasted till Night parted them; and both Admirals sent an Account of the Action to their Principals. *Trump*'s Letter to the States was sign'd by all his Officers, to prove that he was not the Aggressor; and by *Blake*'s Letter to the Parliament, after he retir'd to the *Downes*, 'twould seem to be true. The States sent *Trump*'s Letter to their Ambassadors, to lay it before the Parliament; but the *Dutch* Ambassadors being at *Chelsey*, the Letter was kept up, and the Mob went to *Chelsea* to attack them, which obliged the Parliament to give them Guards; and *Cromwel* march'd with some Forces to the Coast to appease the People, and secure them against their Apprehensions of being ravag'd by the *Dutch*. The Curious may see more of this in *The Life of Van Trump*, with what *Blake* and his Officers said in their own Defence, alledging, that *Trump* when he came to an Anchor before *Dover* Castle, refus'd to strike his Flag, tho the Garrison fir'd three times to give him Notice of his Duty: And they pretended likewise, that *Trump* came up to the *English* Fleet on purpose to brave them; and to justify their Charge, produc'd a Copy of the Commission which *Trump* had given to his Captains. Yet by that Commission it does not appear there was any sufficient Ground for the Accusation; but it serv'd *Oliver* for a Pretext to cover his ambitious Designs. In the mean time the *Dutch* Ambassadors obtain'd Audience of the Parliament, to whom they made a Speech, and did what they could to renew a good Understanding betwixt *England* and *Holland*, but in vain. They sent another Ambassador, who made Application to the Parliament and Council of State, but without Success; so that the *Dutch* Ambassadors return'd home, and an Engagement happen'd betwixt *De Ruyter*, and the *English* Admiral *Ashew*, who had the worst. The *English* had also the Disadvantage in an Engagbment near *Leghorn*, betwixt Commadore *Bodley* and the *Dutch* Commander *De Galen*; but the *Dutch* were worsted in the Fight betwixt *Cola* and *Dover* under *De Ruyter* and *De Wit*, the *English* Fleet under *Blake* being much superior in Force. Another Engagement happen'd betwixt *Trump* and *Blake*, wherein the *English* were obliged to retire into the *Thames*: But afterwards in another Engagement betwixt *Trump* and *Blake*, which lasted three Days, the *Dutch* were worsted. *De Galen* obtain'd another Advantage over the *English* in the *Streights*, but lost his Life in the Action. The *English* after this, in 1653, inclin'd to a Peace; but were prevented by *Cromwel*, who dissolv'd the Parliamnt. That Year a cruel Battle happen'd betwixt *Van Trump* and the *English* Admirals *Dean* and *Monk*, wherein the *Dutch* were worsted, which occasioned Tumults in *Holland*: And in *August* that Year, there happen'd another terrible Battle, wherein the *Dutch* were defeated, and *Trump* killed. He was buried with great State in *Holland*, and had a sumptuous Monument erected for him by the States.

In 1654, the *Dutch* made a dishonourable Peace with the *English*, in which there was an Article excluding the young Prince of *Orange* from all publick Offices in the Commonwealth, which occasioned some Mutinies in *Holland*, the People having a great Love for him, because of the glorious Actions perform'd by his Ancestors in the Defence of their Liberty; but the prevailing Faction abolish'd the Office of Stadtholder and Cap-

Digitized by Google

tain-General, except in the Province of *Frieſland*, where the People continued that Dignity in the other Branch of the Family of *Naſſau*.

In 1655, Differences happen'd in *Overiſſel*, where ſeveral of the Nobility choſe the Prince of *Orange* for their Stadtholder, and nam'd Count *William* of *Naſſau* for his Lieutenant, whence Quarrels enſu'd; but the Matter was accommodated by the Mediation of the States General.

In 1656, the States, on Account of their Trade, concern'd themſelves in the Quarrels betwixt *Charles Guſtavus* King of *Sweden*, and *John Caſimir* King of *Poland*, whom they brought to a Peace by the Treaty of *Elbing*, their Admiral *Obdam* having over-aw'd both of them with his Fleet. This Year, the ſumptuous Stadthouſe at *Amſterdam*, which they began in 1654, was almoſt finiſh'd. The Plague cut off many People in the Provinces of *Holland* and *Utrecht*, and 13000 died at *Leiden* in a ſmall Time.

In 1657, Differences happen'd betwixt the *French* and the *Dutch*, becauſe of ſome *French* Privateers, which took their Ships, and diſturb'd their Commerce. The *Dutch* complain'd of it in vain, and took the Privateers, for which their Ships were ſeiz'd in *France*, and the *Dutch* made Reprifals; but M. *de Thou* being ſent into *Holland* by the Court of *France*, made up the Difference, and the Ships were releaſed on both Sides.

In 1657, the *Weſt-India* Company diſcover'd the *New Netherlands*, built *New Amſterdam*, and made War on the *Portugueze* to recover *Braxile*.

In 1658, they ſent a famous Embaſſy to *China*; but the Jeſuits hinder'd the Succeſs of it. Their Embaſſy in *Japan* had a better Effect. The States concern'd themſelves in the War betwixt the *Danes* and *Swedes*, and deliver'd the King of *Denmark*, who was much ſtreighten'd in his Capital. The *Dutch* Admiral *Obdam* defeated the *Swediſh* Fleet, reliev'd *Copenhagen*, and enter'd it in a triumphant Manner.

In 1659, *De Ruyter* ſail'd to the North, and joining his Troops with thoſe of *Denmark*, defeated the *Swedes* at the Battle of *Nitung*; for Grief of which, the King of *Sweden* died.

In 1660, a Peace was concluded in the North by the Mediation of *England* and *France*. The States were ſucceſsful in the *Eaſt-Indies* againſt the *Portugueze*.

In 1661, the *Dutch*, by their Negligence, gave the *Chineſe* an Opportunity to ſeize the Iſle of *Formoſa*, which was a great Prejudice to their *Eaſt-India* Company.

In 1662, an Alliance of 25 Years was renewed betwixt *England*, *France*, and *Holland*; and *John de Wit*, the Penſionary of *Holland*, got the Right of *Aubaine* taken off the *Dutch* Subjects in *France*, by which the *French* King was before intitled to the Eſtates of all Strangers that died in his Dominions.

In 1663, the *Dutch* had ſome Difference with the Biſhop of *Munſter*, but obliged him to keep the Peace, and were ſucceſsful againſt the *Portugueze* in the *Indies*.

In 1664, an *Engliſh* Squadron under Commadore *Holmes* unexpectedly ſurpris'd and took ſeveral Forts from the *Dutch* on the Coaſt of *Guinea*; but *De Ruyter* quickly retook them. The *Dutch* did all they could to avoid a War with *England*, but in vain; ſo that they came to an open Rupture in 1665; the Duke of *York* and his prevailing Faction at Court refuſing all the advantagious Propoſals made by the *Dutch*, who put a Fleet to Sea under Admiral *Obdam*, to whom they gave poſitive, but imprudent, Orders to fight the *Engliſh*, let the Wind behow it would; which being forced to obey, contrary to the Opinion of his Officers, it had a fatal Effect to the *Dutch*; for the *Engliſh* Fleet, commanded by the Duke of *York*, Prince *Robert*, and the Earl of *Sandwich*, defeated the *Dutch*, burnt and ſunk 19 of their Men of War, kill'd about 6000 of their Men, with the Loſs only of 4 Men of War, and 1500 Men, on our Side, among whom were Rear-Admiral *Samſon*, the Earls of *Marlborough* and *Falmouth*, the Lords *Portland* and *Fitzharding*, with 14 other Perſons of Note. The Lord *Obdam*, in the beginning of the Action, attack'd the Duke of *York*, ſunk the 3 Yachts that attended him, and had almoſt diſabled him; but he was ſeaſonably reſcued by Vice-Admiral *Lawſon* and Captain *Smith*; and *Obdam* being engaged with ſeveral other *Engliſh* Ships who had the Wind of him, he was blown up, either by an accidental Shot that enter'd his Powder-Room, or, as the *Dutch* ſay, by the Treachery of an *Engliſh* Gunner that ſerv'd on board him. *Obdam* wa

Digitized by Google

was interr'd with great State in *Holland*, and had a noble Monument erected for him, being one of their ancient Nobility.

In 1666, *De Ruyter* succeeding *Obdam* as Admiral, he fought the *English* Fleet under General *Monk* for 4 Days; and thô the *English* behav'd themſelves with their uſual Gallantry, they loſt, ſays the Author of *The Hiſtory of the United Provinces*, 23 large Men of War, beſides many others, and had 6000 Men killed, beſides 2600 taken; the *Dutch* having loſt about 6 Capital Ships, and 2300 Men. Notwithſtanding which, our Court made publick Rejoycings at *London*, as if they had obtain'd the Victory. In *Auguſt* that ſame Year, another Engagement happen'd, wherein the *Engliſh* had the Advantage, for which *De Ruyter* blam'd the Conduct of *Van Trump*, who was thereupon diſcharged from his Employment, while *De Ruyter* himſelf acquir'd as much Glory by his Gallantry in the Fight, and brave Retreat, as if he had obtain'd the Victory: And beſides the Honours he receiv'd from the States, the *French* King, who was then their Ally, ſent him the Collar of the Order of St. *Michael*, with a Gold Chain, and his own Picture richly ſet with Diamonds. Soon after this Engagement, the States ſent a Squadron to join 36 *French* in the *Mediterranean*, in order to deſtroy our Commerce there; a Treaty was ſet on foot by the Mediation of the Queen Mother of *England*, which had no Effect. And the *French* and *Dutch* having join'd their Fleet near *Dunkirk*, ours retir'd before 'em, after having loſt one Ship of 50 Guns. Not long after this, 20 Men of War, under Commadore *Holmes*, made a Deſcent on the *Dutch* Coaſt near the *Vlie* and the *Texel*, where they burnt two Frigats, miſs'd narrowly of deſtroying their *Ruſſia* Fleet, and committed ſome other Hoſtilities, to countenance a Rebellion againſt the States, rais'd by one *Heemskirk*, who revolted with ſome of their Ships under his Command, burnt about 100 of their Merchant-men, and ſome Men of War on the Stocks; but being purſued by a *Dutch* Squadron, he was killed in the Engagement, ſeveral of his Ships taken, and the Men on board them executed in *Holland*, while the reſt made their Eſcape to *England*.

In 1667, the *Dutch* made Propoſals of Peace, which were treated of at *Breda*: But while the *Engliſh* protracted the Negociation, *De Ruyter* put to Sea, and anchoring at the Mouth of the *Thames*, ſent 17 of his lighteſt Ships, with 4 Barks and 4 Fireſhips, into the River, where they took *Sheerneſs* Fort, demoliſhed the Fortifications, and burnt or carried off the Naval Stores laid up there. After this, *De Ruyter* advanc'd as far as *Chatham*, where he met with little Reſiſtance, except from a few *Scots* under the Command of Captain *Douglas*, who was burnt on board one of our Men of War as he bravely defended her. The *Dutch* came from thence to *Graveſend*, where they burnt 6 of our largeſt Ships, among whom were the Admiral and Vice-Admiral of the White, took the *Royal Charles*, and a Frigat of 44 Guns, which haſten'd the Concluſion of the Peace to the Advantage of the *Dutch*, who preſented their Commanders *Ruyter*, *De Wit*, and *Ghent*, with a Gold Cup each, on which was engraven the Action of *Chatham*, to perpetuate in their Families the Memory of this great Enterprize. This Diſgrace to *England* was chiefly aſcrib'd to the Treachery of the *French*, who puſh'd the *Dutch* on to it during the Treaty, it being their Intereſt to foment a Diviſion betwixt thoſe Proteſtant Maritime Powers, in order to deſtroy both. That ſame Year, the *Dutch Eaſt-India* Company brought the King of *Madageſcar*, and ſome other neighbouring Princes, to a Submiſſion.

In 1668, the *French* King having treacherouſly declar'd War againſt *Spain* the Year before, on Pretence of the Rights of his Queen, which he had ſolemnly renounc'd at his Treaty of Marriage; the *Dutch* being alarm'd at his Progreſs, rais'd 25000 Men, and ſollicited *England* to enter into an Alliance with them, which brought on the Peace of *Aix la Chapelle*.

In 1669, they ſollicited the Triple Alliance betwixt *England*, *Sweden* and themſelves, which broke the *French* King's Meaſures, and provok'd him ſo much, that he found Means to break the ſaid Triple Alliance, and engage *England* with him in a War againſt *Holland*, as we ſhall hear anon.

In 1671, the *Dutch* did all they could to prevent a Rupture with *England* and *France*, but in vain; for the *French* King, by the Interview betwixt King *Charles* II. and his Siſter the Dutcheſs of *Orleans*, at *Dover*, had

Digitized by Google

had riveted that Prince in his Intereſt. The *Dutch* upon this prepar'd for War; but their Force was very unequal to that of their Enemies. Beſides, they were divided into three Factions at home. The firſt was for continuing the Excluſion of the Prince of *Orange* from all the Dignities and Offices enjoyed by his glorious Anceſtors; the 2d was for reſtoring him; and the 3d was Neuter, but at laſt join'd with the 2d, and carried it for the Prince; who in 1672, tho' very young, put himſelf at the Head of their Forces, which were then but inconſiderable. Tho' King *Charles* II. of *Great-Britain* endeavour'd to perſwade them by his Ambaſſador Sir *George Downing*, that he would faithfully adhere to the Triple Alliance, he at the ſame time prepared his Fleet to attack the *Dutch* by Sea, and ſent Forces into *France*, under the Conduct of his natural Son the late Duke of *Monmouth*; and ſoon after, without any Declaration of War, order'd Commadore *Holmes* to attack their *Smirna* Fleet in their Return home off of the Iſle of *Wight*; which he did, and took ſome of 'em, after two Days Fight, wherein the *Dutch* made a brave Defence, and got home with moſt of their Fleet, having only loſt one of their Convoys, and three Ships. This Conduct of King *Charles* was diſpleaſing to the People, and the Houſe of Commons, becauſe it was contrary to the late Treaty of *Breda*, and done without any Declaration of War. But the King notwithſtanding order'd 4 of their *Eaſt-India* Ships to be taken in their Return from *Batavia*, and all their other Veſſels to be ſeiz'd in his Harbours. In *April* following, he publiſh'd his Declaration of War, alledging they had broke the Treaty of *Breda*, diſturb'd our Commerce in the *Indies*, injur'd the *Engliſh* at *Surinam*, and affronted his Perſon by inſolent Medals and Pictures, and burnt his Effigies in *Perſia*. The *French* King and the Biſhop of *Munſter*, with the Archbiſhop of *Cologne*, declar'd War againſt the *Dutch* at the ſame time; for which the *French* King alledged no other Reaſon, but that he was diſſatisfied with their Conduct; and that he could no longer diſſemble his Indignation, without a Diminution of his Glory. The Declarations of the two Biſhops were every whit as frivolous: But we refer the Curious for the Motives of this War to the Hiſtory of it, publiſh'd in the Firſt Volume of *State Tracts*, collected ſince the Revolution, tranſlated from the *French* Copy printed at *Paris* in 1682; but ſuppreſſed at the Inſtance of the *Engliſh* Ambaſſador, becauſe of the Diſcoveries it made of the League betwixt the Kings of *France* and *England* for enſlaving *Europe*, and introducing Popery into *England* and *Holland*.

In the mean time the Prince of *Orange* did all that he could for the Defence of his Country, and *De Ruyter* put to Sea with a Fleet. The *French* King at the ſame time invaded the *Netherlands* with 100000 Men in 4 Bodies, and took 6 of their Frontier Garriſons in the Dutchy of *Cleve*, in ſo little a Time, as ſtruck an univerſal Terror into the *Dutch*, which was very much heighten'd by his paſſing the *Rhine*, while the Prince of *Orange*, who was encamp'd on the *Iſſel* with about 13000 Men, marched to cover the Country, and ſuch Towns as were moſt expoſed. At the ſame time *De Ruyter* attack'd the *Engliſh* and *French* Fleets in *Solbay*, commanded by the Duke of *York*. The Battle was fierce, and maintain'd with great Bravery on both Sides, and almoſt with equal Advantage; tho each aſcribed the Victory to themſelves, and made publick Rejoycings accordingly. The Loſs of Men was computed to be near the ſame; but the *Engliſh* loſt four Ships, and the *French* one; whereas the *Dutch* loſt but three. In this Engagement, we loſt the brave Earl of *Sandwich*, who commanded the Blue Squadron, himſelf, with his Son, and 850 Men, being blown up, with his Ship of 102 Guns: But had it not been for the Advantage of the Wind, the *Dutch*, being much ſuperior in Number, might probably have done us more Miſchief. The Account of this Naval Engagement, in which the *Dutch* pretended to have the Victory, did ſerve to keep up the Spirits of their People; but the *French* Army having paſſed the *Rhine*, not without a Mixture of Treachery and Cowardice in ſome, that the Prince of *Orange* ſent to oppoſe their Paſſage. They took ſeveral important Places, with the ſtrong Forts of *Schenk* and *Knodſenburg*, while the Biſhop of *Munſter* took *Deventer*; and the *French* being Maſters of the *Betaw*, the Prince was obliged to retire towards *Utrecht* where.

Digitized by Google

where being refuſed Admittance by the mutinous Faction, he was obliged to decamp, and to divide his ſmall Army into 4 Bodies, to cover the Country as well as he could; and the *French* took ſo many Towns, and made ſuch a Progreſs, that the Penſionary *De Wit* adviſ'd the *Dutch* to ſue for a Peace on the beſt Terms they could. Accordingly they ſent Deputies to the *French* King, who inſiſted on ſuch hard Conditions, that they reſolv'd to abide the laſt Extremity rather than agree to them. The People in the mean time were ſo enraged at the Management of the two *De Wits*, whom they charged with all their Misfortunes, that ſome of them attempted to aſſaſſinate them both, for which one of the Aſſaſſins was executed. During theſe Diſorders, *Zutphen* and *Utrecht* ſurrender'd to the *French*; and the Approach of their Army to *Naarden* occaſioned an univerſal Confuſion in the Cities of *Holland*, where the People beſieged their Magiſtrates in their Houſes, and threaten'd to kill 'em, except they would declare the Prince of *Orange* their Stadtholder, being of Opinion, that none but the Family that founded the Republick, were able to reſtore it. The City of *Amſterdam* was under ſuch a Conſternation, that the greateſt Part of the People were for ſurrendring betimes, to ſave their Riches; but were diſſwaded by their Magiſtrates, who prepar'd for a vigorous Defence, and laid the neighbouring Country under Water to hinder the Approach of the Enemy. Their Example being followed by other Towns, did, with the Conduct of the Prince, ſave their Republick, when it was brought to the Brink of Ruin. The Calamity of the Country, and the Inclinations of the People, being improv'd againſt the *De Wits* and their Party by the Princeſs Dowager, Grandmother to the Prince, and others of his Friends, ſupported by the Elector of *Brandenburg* who was his Uncle, the People threaten'd to aboliſh the perpetual Edict themſelves, which excluded the Prince from the Dignities of his Anceſtors, if the States would not do it. The Peaſants of *Weſt-Frieſland*, who make the beſt Soldiers in the *Dutch* Dominions, refuſed to take Arms till they were admitted to ſwear to be true to the Republick, and to obey the States, and his Highneſs the Prince of *Orange*. Upon which he was unanimouſly choſen General by the States, and enter'd upon his Office after taking the Oaths. Then he went to the Army intrench'd at *Newrop*, and kept his Poſt with ſo much Courage and Conduct againſt *Lewis* XIV. who commanded his Army in Perſon, that he forc'd him to retire with Loſs, and to abandon his Works, when he thought to have beat the Prince out of his Trenches. But in the mean time the *Dutch* Frontier Towns and Garriſons fell ſo faſt into the Hands of the *French*, that the People ſuſpecting Treachery, would not be ſatisfied till the Prince was created Stadtholder, and poſſeſſed of all the Poſts enjoyed by his Anceſtors. The Inhabitants of *Dort* were the firſt that took Arms on that Account, and forc'd their Burgomaſter old *De Wit*, Father to *Cornelius* and *John*, to draw up an Act, to abſolve themſelves and the Prince from the Oath they had taken to obſerve the perpetual Edict, which excluded him from the Stadtholderſhip, and ſent for the Prince to accept it. He modeſtly repreſented the Danger that might accrue to them by his leaving the Army; but they would not be deny'd. He came to the City, where he was received with great Solemnity; but refuſed to be Stadtholder, till he was abſolved from his Oath by Conſent of the States General. They ſent Miniſters to confer with the Prince, and convince him that he might lawfully do it; and accordingly an Act was drawn in the Name of the Magiſtrates, by which they renounc'd the Perpetual Edict, and made the Prince their Stadtholder; which *Cornelius de Wit* refus'd to ſign, till he was prevail'd on by the Tears of his Wife and Children. The Example of *Dort* being followed by the other Cities, and confirmed by the States General, who abſolved the Prince and the People from their Oath to obſerve the Perpetual Edict, he was by general Conſent created Stadtholder, and reſtored to all thoſe Dignities which his Anceſtors had purchas'd with their Blood. The People inſiſted likewiſe, that thoſe whom they charged as the Occaſion of their Calamities ſhould be turned out of their Poſts in the Government, and deſir'd their new Stadtholder to interpoſe his Authority for that End; but he wiſely aſcrib'd

Digitized by Google

another Part, conſidering the Danger of the Juncture, and writ Circular Letters to the Cities, declaring it to be his Opinion, that the Deputies of the States, and the Magiſtrates of their Cities, had perform'd their Duties; and that ſuch diſorderly Practices deſerv'd to be reſtrain'd by Corporal Puniſhments. From this Time the *Dutch* were inſpir'd with new Courage. The ſmall Town of *Arſemburgh* repulſed 5000 *French* that attack'd them, and killed a great many of their Officers and Perſons of Quality. Thoſe of *Groningen* oblig'd the Biſhop of *Munſter* to raiſe their Siege, with the Loſs of 10000 Men, after a prodigious Expence he had been at in the Undertaking. A Stop being thus put to the Courſe of the *French* King's Victories, the *Dutch* ſent Deputies to *England* to ſollicite a Peace with King *Charles* II. They were very grateful to the People, but coldly receiv'd at Court; yet the King gave them Audience, and having heard their Propoſals, ſent the Duke of *Buckingham*, the Marquis of *Halifax*, and Mr. *Silvius*, to the *French* Court then at *Utrecht*. My Lord *Hallifax* and Mr. *Silvius* went directly thither; but the others going to the *Hague*, they had a Conference with the States, and another with the Prince of *Orange* at his Camp; and declar'd to them both, that the King had not enter'd into the Alliance with *France* to reduce them under the *French* Yoke, but only to humble them; and that *England* being alarm'd at the Progreſs of the *French*, was much enclin'd to the Intereſt of *Holland*: But notwithſtanding this, ſays the Author of *The Hiſtory of the United Provinces*, when they came to *Utrecht*, and knew the Inſtructions given by the King to the Lord *Hollifax* and Mr. *Silvius*, they labour'd all they could to renew the Alliance betwixt the two Crowns, while Preparations were making in *England* for a Deſcent upon *Holland* by our Fleet, which was accordingly attempted, but diſappointed by a violent Tempeſt, which obliged our Fleet to return, without being able to put to Sea again that Year. In the mean time the Towns of *Grave* and *Nimeguen* were ſurrender'd to the *French*. The King of *France* having made the Duke of *Luxemburg* Governor of *Utrecht*, return'd to *France*, and in his Way was met by the *Engliſh* Ambaſſadors, who renewed a Treaty with him for three Years; by which the two Crowns were to communicate to one another whatever Propoſals of Peace were made: After which, their Demands were deliver'd to the *Dutch* Deputies that were ſent to attend the *French* King and our Ambaſſadors.

The Demands of the *French* were, 1. That all Placaets againſt *French* Wine and Manufactures ſhould be recalled. 2. That the Papiſts ſhould have Freedom of Worſhip, with publick Churches and Maintenance for their Prieſts through all the Dominions of the States. 3. That his Majeſty ſhould leave the Provinces in their preſent State, and reſtore ſuch as he had conquer'd, except as follows. 4. The States ſhould yield to the *French* King all the Countries, Towns and Places, they poſſeſs'd in *Flanders* and *Brabant*, that were yielded him by the King of *Spain*, except the Town of *Sluys* and the Iſland of *Cadſant*. 5. That they ſhould alſo quit *Nimeguen*, *Knodſenburg*, *Schenckenſchantz*, and that Part of *Gueldерland* on the W. Side of the *Rhine*, together with the Iſland and Town of *Bommel*, the Iſland and Fort of *Voorn*, the Fort of St. *Andrew*, *Louveſtein*, and *Crevecœur*. 6. The City of *Grave*, and the County of *Meurs*, for which the States ſhould make the Prince of *Orange* a Compenſation. 7. That the States ſhould quit all their Pretenſions to ſuch Places as his Majeſty had ſeiz'd in the Empire, together with the County of *Embden*, and the Fort of *Liercort*, to the Count of *Eaſt-Frieſland*. 8. That the *French* Subjects of all the Places to be yielded to the *French* King, ſhould have Liberty to paſs and repaſs through all the Dominions of the States by Sea or by Land, and all Rivers and Canals, without having their Goods, Baggage, Ammunition, or Proviſions, viſited, or paying any Duty. 9. That the States ſhould reſtore all the Commanderies belonging to the Knights of *Malta* in their Dominions. 10. That they ſhould reſtore the Count of *Bentheim*, his Children to be bred Papiſts. 11. That they ſhould pay for the Charge of the War 20 Millions. 12. That in Conſideration of the Peace which his Majeſty was willing to give them, they ſhould Annually, on a certain Day, by an Ambaſſador ſent on purpoſe, preſent him with a Gold Medal weighing a Mark, with this Inſcription, That

they

they owe the Preservation of their Liberty to his Majesty, which he and his Ancestors had in a great measure procur'd to them. 13. That if they did not accept these Proposals in 10 Days, his Majesty would not stand to them; and if they did, they must also give Satisfaction to the King of *Great Britain*, and to the Princes of the Empire, who were the *French* King's Allies. His Majesty likewise further declar'd, That without tying himself to the Terms which he had propos'd to them by way of Alternative, he would content himself with the Conquests he had already made, or should yet make, before they accepted his Proposals; *viz.* the whole Province and Dutchy of *Guelderland* belonging to the said States, the Lordship of *Utrecht*, the County of *Zutphen*, and all the Towns and Forts he had possess'd himself of: And that he might the better secure the Possession of 'em, the States should resign to him the absolute Sovereignty of the Towns of *Maestricht* and *Wyck*, and all that they possess'd on the *Upper Maes*, *Dalen*, *Fauquemont*, the Town and Mayory of *Boistduc*, with its Dependencies, and the Fort of *Crevecœur*. And further, That the States should withdraw all their Garrisons in Towns and Places belonging to the Empire.

The Demands made by the King of *Great Britain* were, 1. That the *Dutch* should give him the Honour of the Flag without any Dispute; and that their whole Fleet should strike their Flags, and lower their Top-Sails, to any one *English* Ship bearing his Majesty's Flag, in any Part of the *English* Sea, as far as the Roads of *Holland*. 2. That the *English* remaining in *Surinam* should be allowed a whole Year to retire whither they pleased with their Effects, according to the Treaty of *Breda*. 3. That all his Majesty's Subjects, who had by him been declared Criminals, should for ever be banish'd their Dominions, and likewise all others whom his Majesty should signify to them had publish'd Seditious Books, or conspir'd against the Peace of his Kingdoms. 4. That towards the Charge of the War, they should pay his Majesty a Million of Pounds Sterling at certain Terms. 5. That they should pay him Annually 10000 *l* Sterling for Liberty to fish for Herring on the *British* and *Irish* Coasts. 6. That the Prince of *Orange* and his Posterity should from henceforward enjoy the Sovereignty of the United Provinces, except such Parts of 'em as were to be yielded to the two Kings and their Allies; or at least, that the Prince and his Heirs should for ever enjoy the Dignities of General, Admiral, and Stadtholder of the said Provinces. 7. That in three Months Time they should make a Treaty of Commerce. 8. That they should yield to his Majesty the Island of *Walcheren*, the Town and Castle of *Sluys*, the Islands of *Cadsant*, *Goree*, and *Voorne*, as Cautionary Places for the Performances of the Conditions. 9. That they should give full Satisfaction to the most Christian King.

These exorbitant Demands, which we have from the Author of *The Lives of the De Wits*, publish'd in *Holland* in 1677, were rejected both by the Prince and the States, who applied themselves to the Princes of *Germany* for Assistance, and sent them Copies of those Demands, which had the desir'd Effect. The Elector of *Brandenburg* arm'd first on their Behalf, and the Prince of *Orange* fortify'd the Places that were most exposed, and changed many of the Magistrates to satisfy the People, who still made Complaints of the *De Wits* and their Faction. They publish'd Libels against the Pensionary, whom they charged with mismanaging the Publick Money, and their Military Forces. Upon which he wrote a Letter to the Prince, desiring him to justify his Conduct in both those Respects. To which, says the Author of *The History of the United Provinces*, and the Author of *The Lives of the De Wits*, the Prince answer'd, That he ought to despise those scurrilous Pamphlets, as he himself had been frequently forc'd to do; and for what related to the Publick Money, he referred it to the Council of State, because he himself knew nothing of the Matter. This Answer, says the Author of *The History of the United Provinces*, confirmed the Suspicion of *John de Wit's* Enemies, tho' he procured a Discharge from the Council of State. His Brother *Cornelius de Wit* had the same Misfortune, tho' he was vindicated by *De Ruyter* as to his Behaviour in the Fleet; and not only they, but their Friends were pursued by the Hatred of the People, particularly *Peter Grotius*, who with much ado escaped their

Digitized by Google

Fury, by retiring out of the Country; but he return'd afterwards, vindicated himſelf, and died of the Gout, or, as ſome ſay, of Poiſon, according to the laſt mention'd Author. The Count *de Mombas*, Brother-in-Law to *Cornelius de Wit*, was likewiſe condemned by a Council of War to loſe all his Employments, and to be impriſon'd for 15 Years; but making his Eſcape, he was condemned to loſe his Head, and executed in Effigie. He was charged among other Things with not having defended the Paſs of the *Rhine* as he ought to have done, when the *French* ſwam that River. While the Faction of the *De Wits* labour'd under theſe Misfortunes, a Barber-Surgeon called *Tichelaer* came to the Prince's Camp, and informed the Lord *Zuylenſtein*, Natural Uncle to the Prince, that *Cornelius de Wit*, the Burgomaſter of *Dort*, and Brother to the Penſionary *John de Wit*, had given him Money, and promis'd him a great Reward, to poiſon or murder the Prince, becauſe, as he ſaid, they could not otherwiſe preſerve their Liberty, the Prince being now made Stadtholder, contrary to the Perpetual Edict, and that they might come to fall under a Foreign Power, by a Match betwixt ſome Foreign Potentate and a Daughter of the Prince, if he ſhould have any. The Surgeon having given in this Information upon Oath, the Prince communicated the ſame to the Court of *Holland*, who thereupon committed *De Wit* to Priſon; and after having examin'd both Parties, confronted them, and enquir'd into the Matter by Torture and otherwiſe, the Author of *The Lives of the De Wits* informs us, That conſidering all Circumſtances, with the ſtedfaſt Adherence of the Surgeon to his Accuſation, and the perplex'd Anſwers of the Defendant, they condemn'd the latter to loſe all his Offices and Employments, baniſh'd him for ever out of *Holland* and *Weſt-Frieſland*, and order'd him to depart as ſoon as poſſible, without ever returning, on Pain of ſeverer Puniſhment, condemn'd him in Coſts of Suit, and ſet his Accuſer at Liberty. *De Wit*'s Wife and Friends preſented ſeveral Petitions and Informations to the Court to vindicate the Defendant; inſiſting upon the well known Services he had done to the State for a great many Years, and that he was but juſt return'd home from on board the Fleet, where his very Enemies would bear Witneſs to his Courage and Conduct. They alledged alſo the whole Tenor of his Converſation as a ſufficient Defence againſt this Calumny, and referred to the Records of ſeveral Courts, where the Surgeon had been condemned for Perjury, and ſcandalizing ſeveral Perſons of Note: That he was under Sentence at the ſame Time for a Rape, for which he was anſwerable to a Court of the Defendant's Juriſdiction, who was thereby entitl'd to his Forfeiture, for which he ow'd the Defendant a Grudge: That the Defendant never ſaw him but once, which was ſoon after his Return from Sea, when the Surgeon, after ſeveral Applications, was admitted to his Bed-Chamber, on Pretence of having ſomething of Importance to diſcover to him, without any body's being by: That Mrs. *De Wit* diſtruſting the Fellow becauſe of his ill Looks, and becauſe of the univerſal Clamour that was rais'd againſt her Husband and his Brother, who had narrowly eſcap'd being murther'd by Aſſaſſins a very little before, ſhe order'd the Chamber-Door to be kept open, and her Son and her Servant to ſtay in the next Room in view of the Bed upon which her Husband then lay, becauſe of his Indiſpoſition: That they heard all that paſſed betwixt her Husband and the Surgeon: That the latter, after ſome Diſcourſe about the Calamities of their Country, and the preſent ill Poſture of Affairs, ſaid, He had ſomething to propoſe to him, if he would keep it ſecret, and give him Aſſiſtance. To which her Husband anſwer'd, That if what he had to propoſe was good, he would do what he deſir'd; but if otherwiſe, he might get him gone. To which the Surgeon reply'd, *Since you will not hear me*, Sir, *I'll be gone*. And ſo bidding him farewel, was let out of the Houſe by her Servant, after he had ſtay'd about a quarter of an Hour. That *De Wit* reflecting upon what had paſſed, ſent for the Town-Clerk, gave him an Account of what the Fellow had ſaid, and deſir'd him, ſince he was not able to go himſelf, that he would go to the preſent Burgomaſter, and get a Warrant to take up and examine the Surgeon. A Warrant was accordingly had; but the Witneſs could not be found till after he had given in his Accu-

Digitized by Google

Accuſation upon Oath, to which he was encourag'd by the Clamours of the People againſt her Husband. All which Mrs. *De Wit* and her Friends offer'd to prove, as may be ſeen at large in *The Lives of the De Wits* above-mention'd, together with the Surgeon's Defences. The Subſtance of which was, That the Courts, who had condemn'd him for the Crimes above-mentioned, had proceeded unjuſtly againſt him: That he came to *De Wit* in order to repreſent his Caſe to him, and to deſire a Redreſs, which *De Wit* promis'd him, if he would do ſomething he had to propoſe to him; and that he readily undertook it, provided it were in his Power. Upon this, *De Wit* having taken his Oath to keep the Propoſal ſecret, perſwaded him to poiſon or kill the Prince, for which he laid down ſeveral Schemes, promis'd to give him Money, and a conſiderable Poſt; and if he loſt his Life in the Attempt, to reward his Friends. The Surgeon deſir'd a Security under *De Wit*'s Hand, which he refuſed; but told him, there were 30 more Perſons of Note engaged in the Deſign againſt the Prince, that would ſee to the Performance of what he had promis'd him. Upon this, the Surgeon, not daring to refuſe for fear of his Life, conſented to it, and *De Wit* gave him 6 Ducatoons in Hand, telling him, 'twas all the Money he had about him; and that he would not call for more, for fear of giving Cauſe of Suſpicion. The Surgeon going home, was uneaſy in his Mind until he had reveal'd it, as above; and that *De Wit* being ſenſible of his Danger, in order to prevent it, had ſent for the Town-Clerk, as above-mentioned; and that they might eaſily have taken the Surgeon up if they would, ſince he was well known in the Town, and appear'd publickly there ſeveral Days after, before he made his Diſcovery.

But however that Matter was, the Surgeon being ſet at Liberty, and telling about the *Hague*, that *De Wit* was convicted upon his Accuſation, the People, eſpecially after *De Wit*'s Sentence was publiſh'd, began to murmur, and to grow tumultuous; to which they were prompted by the Surgeon, who told them, That if they did not prevent it, *De Wit* would ſoon be carried out of the Priſon: Upon which they took Arms, and went to the Priſon. In the mean time the Penſionary, who had been ſent for by his Brother, went to him, contrary to the Advice of his Friends; and as he was bringing him out of Priſon, in order to depart according to Sentence, a Woman cry'd out to the Guard of Burgers who ſtood before the Priſon-Door, *What the Devil! Man, there's the Traytors going off; drive them up again, or knock them dead.* Upon which, the Guard order'd them both to go up again, or they would fire upon 'em; and while the Penſionary ſpoke to them with Authority to forbear, they forc'd 'em both in again, and oblig'd their Coach to ride off, in which 'twas reported their Father ſat, in order to have carried them to Dinner. In the mean time the Tumult increas'd, and the Report being ſpread, that *Cornelius* had eſcap'd, the People would not be ſatisfied till two of the Burgomaſters and four Burgers went up, and ſatisfied them to the contrary. The Penſionary prevail'd with the Magiſtrates to dine with him and his Brother. But in the mean time all the Companies of Burgers came in Arms about the Priſon, drew up in good Order, and would ſuffer no Man to go in for fear of an Uproar. Three Troops of Horſe, which then lay in the *Hague*, did alſo mount: One of 'em went to the uſual Place of Rendezvous, and the other two endeavour'd to get into the outer Court of the Priſon; but the People kept them off with their Pikes and Muskets, and the arm'd Rabble got up to the Tops of the neighbouring Houſes, to ſee that neither of the *De Wits* ſhould eſcape; and perceiving that the Officers ſtay'd long in the Priſon, and apprehending them to be murder'd, they began to throw Stones, and to fire their Pieces at the Doors and Windows, till the Officers ſpoke to them out at the Windows, and told them, All was well. In the mean time a falſe Report was ſpread, That the Mob of the neighbouring Villages and Towns had taken Arms, and were coming to plunder the *Hague*. This increas'd the Tumult, and ſome of the Burgers cry'd out, *We ſtay here to guard a couple of Rogues, who will certainly be reſcued e're next Morning by Force or Craft; and if they eſcape, the Town will be next Day all in Blood and Confuſion, and our Houſes plunder'd.* Upon which, many requeſted that the *De Wits* might be carried

ried to the Town-House, where they would be kept securely without any Trouble. Others cry'd out, *Let us tie them to the Gibbet, and shoot them.* Upon which one of the Mob bid them follow him, and he would be their Leader; and then with their Muskets and Smiths Hammers they broke up the Doors, and came to the Chamber, where they found the Pensionary sitting upon the Foot of the Bed, reading in his Bible, and his Brother laid down in his Night-Gown. The Pensionary ask'd them, What they would have, and why all that Violence? One of 'em answer'd, *You must walk down, for we will have your Lives.* *Cornelius* rising from his Bed, spoke roughly to the Fellow, and bid him go down; but the Pensionary seeing that no Reason would do, he took his Brother by the Hand to go down Stairs, where he was wounded by a Pike over the Eye: Upon which he held up his Hands and Eyes to Heaven, recommending his Soul to God; and as he went out, was forced by the Mob to the very Place where he had been assassinated two Months before, and barbarously murder'd, covering his Face with his Cloak, says the Author of their Lives, as *Julius Cæsar* did; and his last Words were, *Well Men! Well Citizens!* And soon after his Brother had the same Fate. Upon this, the Companies retir'd under their respective Colours in good Order, while the barbarous Mob carried their dead Bodies to the Gallows, where they hung the Pensionary a Foot higher than his Brother, and afterwards mangling their Corps, cut their Clothes in a Thousand Pieces, and sent them about the Country as if they had been Trophies of a Conquest; and, says *The History of the United Provinces*, and the Author of *The Lives of the De Wits*, some of 'em cut out large Pieces of their Flesh, which they broil'd and eat.

Thus fell those two great Men by popular Fury, *Cornelius* in the 49th, and the Pensionary in the 47th Year of his Age, both equally zealous, says that Author, for the Glory and Liberty of their Native Country, and formerly as much belov'd, as now they were hated by the People, who look'd upon them to be the Causes of all the Calamities with which their Country was at that time overwhelmed. The *Atlas Historique* says, the Cause of their Ruin was the too great Opposition they made to the Prince's Party; with which Sir *William Temple* seems to agree in *The Causes of the Fall of this Republick*, where he says, "That the "chief Thing which concurr'd to weaken, "and indeed to break the Strength of their "Land Force, was the Alteration of their "State, which happen'd by the Perpetual "Edict of *Holland* and *West Friesland* upon "the Death of the last Prince of *Orange*, "for the Exclusion of the Power of Stadtholder, or at least the Separation of it "from the Charge of Captain-General; "for after that Time, the main Design and "Application of those Provinces had been "to work out by degrees all the old Offi"cers both Native and Foreign, who had "been formerly sworn to the Prince of "*Orange*, and were still thought affectio"nate to the Interest of that Family, and "to fill the Commands of their Army with "the Sons or Kinsmen of Burgomasters, "and other Officers or Deputies in the "State, whom they esteem'd sure to their "popular Constitution, and good enough "for an Age, wherein they saw no Ap"pearance of an Enemy to attack them by "Land. But the Humour of Kindness to "the young Prince, both in the People and "Army, was not to be dissolv'd or dispers'd "by any Medicines or Operations either of "Rigour or Artifice, but grew up insensi"bly with the Age of the Prince, ever "presaging some Revolution in the State, "when he should come to the Years of "aspiring and managing the general Af"fections of the People; being a Prince "who join'd to the great Qualities of his "Royal Blood, the popular Virtues of his "Country; silent and thoughtful; given "to hear, and to enquire; of a sound and "steady Understanding; much Firmness "in what he once resolves, or once denies; "great Industry and Application to his Bu"siness, little to Pleasures; Piety and Re"ligion of his Country, but with Charity "to others; Temperance unusual to his "Youth, and to the Climate; frugal in the "common Management of his Fortune, and "yet magnificent upon Occasion; of great "Spirit and Heart, aspiring to the Glory "of Military Actions, with strong Ambi"tion to grow great, but rather by the "Service, than the Servitude of his Coun"try.

Digitized by Google

" try. In short, a Prince of many Virtues, without any appearing Mixture of Vice. At the same time the Prince was approaching the 22d Year of his Age, which the States of *Holland*, ever since their Alliance with *England* in 1668, pretended should be the Time of advancing him to the Charge of Captain-General and Admiral of their Forces, tho' without that of Stadtholder; but the nearer they drew to this Period, which was like to make a new Figure in their Government, the more desirous some of their Ministers seem'd either to decline or restrain it. On the other side, the Prince grew confident upon the former Promises of *Holland*, and the concurring Dispositions of the other Six Provinces, to his Advancement; and his Party, spirited by their Hopes, and the great Qualities of this young Prince, now grown ripe for Action, resolved to bring this Point to a sudden Decision; against which the other Party prepared, and united all their Defences. — Besides, those Ministers who had still the Direction of Affairs, bent their chief Application to the Strength and Order of their Fleet, rather than of their Army. — Perhaps content that some ill Successes should attend the Prince of *Orange* at his first Entrance upon the Command of their Armies, and thereby contribute to their Designs of restraining his Authority, while they were to leave him the Name of Captain-General. This indeed was not likely to fail, considering the ill Constitution of their old Army, the hasty Levies of their new, and the Height of the Faction now broken out in the State, which left both the Towns and the Troops in Suspence under whose Banners they fought, and by whose Orders they were to be governed, the Prince's or the States. — In this Posture were the Affairs of this Commonwealth when the War broke out, with those fatal Events that must needs attend any Kingdom or State where the Violence of a Foreign Invasion happens to meet with the distracted Estate of a Domestick Sedition. — Their Towns were without Order, their Burgers without Obedience, their Soldiers without Discipline, and all without Heart; and indeed it was the Name of *England* joining in the War against them that chiefly broke their Hearts, and contributed more to the Loss of so many Towns, and so much Country, than the Armies of *Munster* and *France*.

These judicious Reflections of Sir *William*'s are confirmed by the Account given even by the Author of *The Lives of the De Wits*, who, tho' a Friend to that Faction, yet does not dissemble the great Opposition made in the United Provinces to the Exclusion of the Prince from the Dignities of his Ancestors, which was so very ungrateful to the People in general, and so manifestly contrary to their Fundamental Union concluded at *Utrecht*. That those who were for it thought it necessary to vindicate themselves, as not being the first Movers of it, but meerly forc'd to it by *Cromwel*, who would listen to a Peace on no other Terms but the Exclusion of the Prince, lest he should some Time or other revenge the Murder of his Grandfather upon him and his Party, as *Van Beverning*, the *Dutch* Ambassador who negotiated the Treaty in *England*, did afterwards openly declare in the Assembly of the States General.

However that was, the Author of *The History of the United Provinces* says, the Prince of *Orange* was so far from shewing the least Countenance to these barbarous Proceedings, that when the States of *Holland* wrote to him, expressing their Abhorrence of so detestable an Action, he order'd a strict Enquiry to be made after the Authors and Promoters of it; but upon several Petitions by the Burgers of the *Hague*, who excus'd the same by the vast Numbers of those concern'd in it, these Proceedings went no further than summoning the Guilty before the Court of Justice. Soon after this the Sieur *Teckhart*, Head Bailiff of the Mayoralty of *Bois-le-duc*, and Cousin-German to the *De Wits*, was accused by his own Coachman of the like Conspiracy against the Prince, but acquitted, because the Coachman could not make good his Accusation. We have been the larger on this Particular, because the *Dutch* were then so much divided in their Opinions about it, as they are still, that both the Factions make it a Handle for bitter Reflections on one another. And as the one

Digitized by Google

one Side was ſo much enraged againſt the Memory of the *De Wits*, that after their mangled Corps were buried, they threaten'd to take them up, to burn them, and ſcatter their Aſhes, leſt they ſhould afterwards have Monuments erected for them as Martyrs of State, as ſome had talk'd of doing for *Barneveld*: The other Party ſtruck Medals in Honour of their Memory; of which the Curious may find an Account in the Hiſtory of their Lives: And we leave the Reader to make his own Judgment on the whole.

Fagel was choſen Penſionary after the Murther of *De Wit*; and having obſerv'd the Fate of his Predeceſſors, becauſe of their violent Oppoſition to the Family of *Orange*, he ſteer'd a contrary Courſe.

Much about this Time the Elector of *Brandenburg* wrote to the States, to whom he recommended the Prince, as inheriting all the Virtues of his Anceſtors; and ſaid, He thought himſelf oblig'd to have aſſiſted him in recovering thoſe Dignities, which they had ſo dearly purchas'd; but ſince the States had reſtor'd him, he doubted not that Heaven would proſper a Reſolution ſo advantagious to the Publick.

After this, the Prince chas'd the *French* advanc'd Guards as far as their Trenches before *Utrecht*, and beſieg'd *Naerden*, but without Succeſs, the *French* being directed by ſome treacherous Peaſants how to throw Succours into the Town; but not without Loſs, the Prince having defeated 5 of their Regiments, and killed or wounded moſt of their Officers. Then he marched with 24000 Men to the Country of *Liege*, obliged the *French* to retire, and inveſted *Charleroy*, to bring them to a Battle, which they avoided, and the unſeaſonable Weather obliged the Prince to riſe from before *Charleroy*; but he took *Bins*, made the Garriſon Priſoners of War, demoliſhed the Fortifications, and put his Army into Winter Quarters. During this Expedition, the Duke of *Luxemburg*, with 40000 Men, attempted to conquer and plunder the Province of *Holland* by the Favour of the Ice; but was prevented by a Thaw, and retir'd with Loſs, having narrowly eſcap'd being drown'd himſelf. His Men made themſelves more odious to the *Dutch* than ever by their Cruelties and Rapes, in ſome ſmall Places that had been abandon'd by the Garriſons; but the Return of the Prince ſoon reſtor'd Things to their former State.

In 1673, the Prince took *Naerden*, *Rhineberg*, and *Bonne*, which oblig'd the *French* to abandon moſt of their Conqueſts in the United Provinces. This, with the taking of *Coevorden* by Surprize, and ſome other Advantages, very much raiſed the Spirits of the *Dutch*; thô the Elector of *Brandenburg*, for want of being duly aſſiſted by the Empire, was obliged to come to a Neutrality with the *French* King, on Condition of having what the *French* had taken in the Dutchy of *Cleve* reſtored to him. That ſame Year the *Dutch* under *Van Trump* had another Engagement by Sea againſt the *Engliſh* and *French* commanded by Prince *Robert* near *Dungenneſs*, in which both pretended to the Victory; the *Engliſh* and *French* loſt moſt Ships; the *Dutch* made Rejoycings in *Holland*, and order'd a Day of Thankſgiving for their Advantage. In *July* after, there was another bloody Engagement betwixt the Fleets at Sea, while the *Engliſh* prepared for a new Deſcent upon *Holland*; but after a ſharp Engagement, they both retired without claiming the Victory, and the Deſcent miſcarried. That ſame Year the *French* King took *Maeſtricht*, after a vigorous Siege; but his further Progreſs was ſtopp'd, by laying the Country about *Bergenopzoom* and *Boiſleduc* under Water. At the ſame time the *Dutch* recover'd moſt of the Places that had been taken from them by the Biſhop of *Munſter*.

In 1674, the Parliament and People of *England* being diſſatisfied at the War with the *Dutch*, and uneaſy at the Progreſs of the *French* in the *Netherlands*, a Treaty for a General Peace was ſet on foot at *Cologne*, but without Effect, becauſe the Emperor order'd the Prince of *Furſtemberg*, a Native of the Empire, but Plenipotentiary for *France*, thô under Pretence of being ſo for the Elector of *Cologne*, to be carried off. In Conſideration of the Prince of *Orange*'s great Services, the States of *Holland* and *Weſt-Frieſland*, and the States General, made his Dignities Hereditary to him and his Heirs-Male lawfully begotten; ſo that he was exalted above any of his Anceſtors in the 23d Year of his Age. This Year was alſo fought the Battle of *Seneff*, where the *French* had

Digitized by Google

had the Advantage at firſt; but the Prince of *Condé* loſt the Honour and Profit of it by his too great Eagerneſs. Both Sides claim'd the Victory; but the *French* avoided coming to a ſecond Engagement, tho' the Prince of *Orange* did all he could to bring them to it. He gave ſuch Proofs of his Courage and Conduct in this Battle, that the Prince of *Condé* gave him this Teſtimony, That he ſhew'd himſelf equal to the oldeſt Generals; but that he too frequently expos'd his Perſon, an Error which his high-wrought Courage would never allow him to reform. After this Battle, the Prince took *Grave*, which put an End to the Campaign.

In 1675, the States, upon Hopes of a Revolt on the Coaſts of *Normandy*, ſet out a Fleet under *De Ruyter* and *Van Trump*; but the Conſpiracy was diſcovered, as 'tis ſuppos'd by the King of *Great Britain*, ſays *The Hiſtory of the United Provinces*, for which the Chevalier *de Rohan* was beheaded, and ſome others executed in *France*; ſo that the Deſign miſcarried: But *Trump* returning from the Coaſts of *France*, defeated the *Swediſh* Fleet, and forc'd them to return into their own Harbours, in purſuance of the League the States had made with ſome Princes of the Empire againſt the *Swedes*, who had invaded the Elector of *Brandenburg*'s Dominions. The ſame Year the Prince took *Bimch*; and the States of the Province of *Guelderland* offer'd him their Sovereignty, which, by the Advice of the other Provinces, he wiſely refus'd, there being none of 'em for his accepting it but *Utrecht*; ſo that he thank'd them for their Proffer, ſays *The Hiſtory of the United Provinces*, but told them, he could not comply, becauſe it would prove the Occaſion of Jealouſy and Miſtruſt, as if he aim'd at nothing but his own Grandeur. Yet notwithſtanding his Modeſty, this gave Occaſion to the *Louveſtein* Faction to ſay, That he aim'd at the Sovereignty of all the Provinces: Upon which the States General, to prevent the ill Conſequences of ſuch Reflections, iſſued a ſevere Proclamation, forbidding all Perſons, of what Rank or Degree ſoever, to utter by Word or Writing, that the Prince ever aim'd at any ſuch Thing, or that the propoſing of it to him had ever been debated in their Aſſembly. The Prince being after this taken ill of the Small-Pox, the *French* King laying hold of the Opportunity, took *Liege*, *Dinant*, *Huy*, and *Limburg*. This Year the great Marſhal *Turenne*, who had defeated the *Germans* at *Sintſheim* the Year before, was killed by a Cannon-Bullet as viewing the *German* Camp; and the Duke of *Lorrain* defeated Marſhal *Crequi*, and afterwards took him with his Garriſon Priſoners of War at *Treves*, whither he had retired after the Battle.

In 1676, the Treaty of *Nimeguen* was ſet on foot by the Mediation of King *Charles* II. but without Effect; ſo that the *French* King invaded the *Netherlands* with his Army, and took *Conde* and *Bouchain*. *De Ruyter* being ſent to Sea againſt his Will, becauſe his Fleet was too ſmall, had two Engagements on the Coaſts of *Sicily* with the *French*, and loſt his Life in the ſecond, wherein both Sides claim'd the Victory; but the *Dutch* were defeated in a third Engagement, and their Army miſcarried in the Siege of *Maeſtricht*, where the Prince of *Orange* was wounded. That ſame Year he appeaſed ſome Religious Differences that had riſen in *Zealand* upon the Subject of *Coccieniſm*.

In 1677, the *French* took *Valenciennes*, *Cambray*, and *St. Omers*, and defeated the Prince near *Mont-Caſſel*, which made the *Dutch* inclinable to accept the Propoſals made by the *French* Plenipotentiaries at *Nimeguen*; but the Prince oppos'd it, as being contrary to their former League with the Princes of the Empire.

This Year the Prince was married to the Duke of *York*'s eldeſt Daughter, the Princeſs *Mary*, our late Queen of glorious Memory; which, with the enſuing Alliance betwixt *England* and *Holland*, put the Confederates in Hopes of obtaining an advantagious Peace with *France*; but the unſteady Management of the Court of *England*, and the Slackneſs of their Preparations to aſſiſt their Allies, together with the Clamours of the *Louveſtein* Faction in *Holland*, that the Prince's Match would prove fatal to their Liberties, prevailed with the States to clap up a ſeparate Peace with *France*, contrary to the Mind of the Emperor, the King of *Denmark*, the Elector of *Brandenburg*, and their other Allies. The Prince having oppos'd it with all his Power, did all he could, ſays the above-mentioned Author, to tra-

verſe

verse it, for which the *French* furnish'd him with a very good Opportunity, by continuing the Blockade of *Mons* during the Cessation of Arms. Upon this he attack'd the Duke of *Luxemburg*'s Head Quarter at the Abbey of St. *Denis*, from whence he chas'd him with great Slaughter, tho' not without considerable Loss on his own Side. After this the Prince design'd to have relieved *Mons*; but as he was consulting about it, he receiv'd Advice that the Peace was concluded, of which he sent the Duke of *Luxemburg* Word, which put an End to the War at that Time. In this Action the Prince ventur'd so far, that he was in Danger of being kill'd; but was happily rescued by the Lord *Auverquerque*, who shot a *French* Captain just as he was going to discharge a Pistol at him; for which the States made that Lord a very noble Present.

In 1679, the *Dutch* sent Ambassadors to *France* to promote a Peace betwixt that Crown and their Allies, who had not agreed to the Peace of *Nimeguen*; but the *French* King refused to give their Ambassadors the Respect due to those of Crown'd Heads; tho' at last, having proved that this had been allow'd them by *Henry* IV. his Father, and himself, he comply'd: And a Peace betwixt *France* and the *Dutch* Allies was concluded.

In 1680, the Prince of *Orange* had an Interview in *Germany* with the Elector of *Brandenburg*, the Dukes of *Zell* and *Hanover*; after which he came to see his Uncle King *Charles* in *England*. The *French* propos'd a Defensive Alliance with the *Dutch*, who rejected it, and new Differences happen'd betwixt them and *France*, because the *French* King delay'd to settle the Limits betwixt him and the *Spaniards* in the *Netherlands*; and urg'd, that the King of *Spain* should renounce his Title of D. of *Burgundy*, which the *Spaniards* were fore'd to comply with.

In 1681, the *Dutch East-India* Company reduc'd their Tributary the King of *Ternate* in the *East-Indies*, for taking Part with the King of *Bantam*: And the States being alarm'd at the *French* King's seizing *Strasburg* and *Casal*, they made an Alliance of Guarantee with the *Swedes*, and propos'd the same to King *Charles*; but the Duke of *York* dissuaded him from it. This Proposal provok'd the *French* K. to threaten the *Dutch*; and he sent an Officer with some Dragoons to take up a *French* Count, that had retir'd to their Dominions; but the *Dutch* took the Officer, condemn'd him to die, and sentenc'd the Dragoons to work 10 Years in their Rasp-House. Yet when the Officer was carried to the Place of Execution, they pardon'd both him and the Dragoons. The Emperor being provok'd with the *French* King's seizing of *Strasburg*, and his Pretences of reuniting several Places of the Empire by Vertue of the Treaty of *Nimeguen*, he enter'd into the Treaty of Guarantee, and made a League with the Circles of *Franconia* and *Upper Rhine* for Defence of that River. At the same Time the *French* King possessed himself of the Principality of *Orange*, and dismantled the Town, which was complain'd of by the *English* and *Dutch* Ambassadors: But the *English* Court, instead of being cordial in the Matter, quarrel'd likewise with the *Dutch*, for having supported the young King of *Bantam* against his Father, who was their Enemy, and had resign'd the Crown to his Son, which he afterwards would have reassum'd; but the young King having prevail'd, by the Assistance of the *Dutch*, he order'd the *English*, who had taken Part with his Father, to depart his Dominions, which the Court of *England* charged on the *Dutch* as an Intrigue of theirs; but they excus'd themselves, and alledg'd, they did the *English* there all the good Offices they could, tho' they took Part with the old King against them to ruin their Commerce: However they offer'd an amicable Composition about that Matter.

In 1683, and 1684, the *French* continued their Encroachments on the *Spanish Netherlands*, and took *Luxemburg*. Upon which the Prince and the *Dutch* propos'd to raise an Army to stop their Progress; but the City of *Amsterdam* oppos'd it, which brought on the Peace of *Ratisbon*, where a Truce of 20 Years was concluded; yet the Prince of *Orange* had not his Principality restor'd.

In 1685, *Charles* II. of *Great Britain* died, and was succeeded by his Brother *James* II. Upon which the Duke of *Monmouth*, being oblig'd to retire from the *Spanish Netherlands* at the Sollicitation of King *James*, went to *Holland*; as did others who were obnoxious to the Government in *England*. King *James* requir'd

Digitized by Google

requir'd the States to baniſh them; which they having agreed to, the Duke of *Monmouth* and the Earl of *Argyle* rais'd a Rebellion in *Great Britain*. Upon this, the States not only ſent the 6 *Britiſh* Regiments in their Service to help to ſuppreſs them, according to Agreement when they were firſt rais'd, but the Prince of *Orange* offer'd to come in Perſon with more Troops; the latter of which King *James* refus'd; and notwithſtanding this generous Offer, did not in the leaſt interpoſe in Behalf of the Prince, whoſe Subjects were barbarouſly perſecuted in *Orange*, and their Miniſters ſent Priſoners to *France*.

In 1686, King *James* allow'd the *Algerines*, then at War with the *Dutch*, the free Uſe of his Ports; and 20 of their Frigats in the Channel took above 30 rich *Dutch* Merchant Ships, moſt of whoſe Cargo they ſold in *England*. This, together with a Memorial from the Marquis *de Albeville*, King *James*'s Miniſter in *Holland*, about the Affair of *Bantam*, and the hindering of his Envoy to carry off Sir *Robert Peyton*, who had retir'd to their Country, gave the *Dutch* ſufficient Reaſon to perceive that King *James* deſign'd to quarrel with them. The *French* King being likewiſe offended, becauſe of the kind Reception they gave his perſecuted Proteſtants, a Squadron of his Men of War took a *Dutch* Man of War in the *Streights*; but that Matter was ſoon compromiſed.

In 1687, the Marquis *de Albeville* gave in freſh Memorials concerning the Affair of *Bantam*, and the ſeizing ſome *Engliſh* Officers whom *Skelton* had employ'd to take up Sir *Robert Peyton*: Upon which the *Dutch* deliver'd the Officers, after having proceeded againſt them judicially, and baniſh'd them their Provinces; but they refus'd to baniſh Dr. *Burnet*, now Biſhop of *Saliſbury*, tho' King *James* requir'd it, the Doctor being naturaliz'd in *Holland*.

In 1688, King *James* having given evident Proofs of his Deſign to ſubvert the Proteſtant Religion, and the Liberties of *Great Britain*, he continued to preſs the *Dutch* about the Affair of *Bantam*, and demanded they ſhould ſend home the 6 *Britiſh* Regiments in their Service; which the *Dutch* refuſed, becauſe, according to Agreement, they were not to be ſent home, except *Britain* was engaged in a War. Beſides, the old *Britiſh* Regiments there being disbanded in 1665, the new ones had taken an Oath of Fidelity to the States. However, they gave Paſſports to ſuch Officers as had a Mind to return, which 40 of 'em accepted; but the reſt, with the Troops, liſted themſelves afreſh in the Service of the States. In the mean time King *James*'s Queen pretended to be brought to Bed of a Son, tho' there were violent Suſpicions of the Truth of her Pregnancy: Beſides, neither the Princeſs of *Orange* nor the Princeſs of *Denmark*, who were the Perſons moſt immediately concern'd to know the Truth of it, were invited to be preſent at her Labour: The Archbiſhop of *Canterbury*, who ought to have been in the Bed-Chamber, by Vertue of his Office, at the ſame Time, was, with 6 other Biſhops, impriſon'd in the *Tower*, for refuſing to read King *James*'s Declaration for Liberty of Conſcience, which he had publiſh'd with the Advice of his Judges, by Vertue of his Diſpenſing Power. This heighten'd the Diſcontents in *Great Britain*, and gave new Cauſe of Jealouſy to the Prince of *Orange*, and the States. At the ſame Time the *French* King prohibited Commerce with the *Dutch* as to Woollen Manufacturies and Herrings; and the Elector of *Cologne* being dead, he threaten'd the *Dutch*, if they interpos'd in the Eleſtion of his Succeſſor, who he deſign'd ſhould be the Prince of *Furſtemberg*, that he would oppoſe them with his Troops, and began to march them accordingly. The *Dutch* perceiving plainly by theſe Steps, that *England* and *France* deſign'd a War upon them, they prepar'd for it. The *Engliſh* and *French* Courts demanded the Reaſons of thoſe Preparations. To which the *Dutch* anſwer'd, That they did it according to the Example of *England* and *France*. Upon this, the *Engliſh* Miniſter offer'd an Alliance with the *Dutch* againſt the Infractions of the Treaty of *Nimeguen*, and the late Truce; but the States perceiving that this was only propoſed to gain Time; and the Prince having a Memorial ſent him from many of the chief Proteſtants of *Great Britain*, repreſenting the Grounds they had to ſuſpect the Birth of the pretended Prince, by which the *Engliſh* Court deſign'd to defraud his Princeſs of

Digitized by Google

her R'ght of Succeſſion, and to overturn their own Religion and Liberties; the *Dutch* continued their Preparations with Vigour, and ſent Part of their Army and Fleet to the Prince, who, purſuant to the Memorial, landed in *England*, where, King *James* being deſerted, the Prince and Princeſs were declared King and Queen of *Great Britain*, and King *James* retired into *France*, having ſent his Queen and pretended Son thither before: But we refer the further Account of this Matter to the Hiſtory of *England*. The *French* King, to divert the Prince and States from this Enterprize, had threaten'd them with Memorials, and declar'd War againſt the *Dutch*, but without Effect.

In 1689, the *Dutch* ſent Ambaſſadors to congratulate King *William* and Queen *Mary*'s Acceſſion to the Throne; and the *French* King, inſtead of bending his Force againſt the *Dutch*, invaded *Germany*, and ruin'd the *Palatinate*. The Cloſe of that ſame Year, the *French* declared War againſt *Spain*, and invaded the *Netherlands*; but met with a conſiderable Repulſe from Prince *Waldeck*, who commanded the *Dutch* Army at *Walcourt*.

In 1690, the *French* being ſuperior in Number, defeated that Prince at the Battle of *Fleru*s; but bought the Victory ſo dear, that they did nothing more that Campaign. That ſame Year the *French* engaged our Fleet and a Squadron of *Dutch* off of *Beachy-head*, wherein the Confederates had the worſt: But we refer the Particulars to the *Engliſh* Hiſtory.

King *William* having defeated the late King *James* in *Ireland*, and oblig'd him a ſecond time to retire to *France* in 1691, his Majeſty went to the *Hague*, where, in a Congreſs of Princes and Ambaſſadors, he concerted Meaſures for carrying on the War againſt the *French* in the *Netherlands*. An Engagement happen'd near *Leuſe* betwixt the *French* and Prince *Waldeck*, where, tho' the *French* were ſuperior in Number, they had equal Loſs.

In 1692, the *French* King with 45000 Men, being cover'd by the Duke of *Luxemburg* with 60000, beſieg'd and took *Namur*. King *William* march'd to have reliev'd it; but the great Rains ſo ſwelled the Rivers, that he could not paſs them to effect it. That ſame Year, a Plot was form'd by the *French* and the *Engliſh Jacobites* to have murther'd Queen *Mary*, while the *French* Fleet was to have invaded *England*; but the Plot was diſcover'd, and prevented by the Vigilance of Mr. *Johnſton*, then Lord Secretary for *Scotland*; and the *Engliſh* and *Dutch*, under the Conduct of Admiral *Ruſſel*, defeated the *French* Fleet near *La Hague* on the Coaſt of *Normandy*, where the *French* loſt 18 or 20 of their Capital Ships. At the ſame time a Plot was diſcover'd to have murther'd King *William* in *Flanders* by *Grandval*, a *French* Officer, and other Aſſaſſins; for which *Grandval* was taken and executed at the Head of the Army. Soon after this, the *Engliſh* and *Dutch* were defeated at *Steenkirk*, where they were overpower'd by the *French*, thô the Loſs was almoſt equal on both Sides.

In 1693, the *French* ſeiz'd and diſpers'd moſt of the *Dutch Smirna* Fleet in their Return home. The *French* defeated the *Engliſh* and *Dutch* again at the Battle of *Landen*, while a great Part of their Army was detached to force the *French* Lines. The *Engliſh* and *Scots* perform'd Wonders in this Battle; and the Loſs of the *French* was ſo great, that tho' they kept the Field, they made no further Progreſs this Campaign. In the mean time the *French*, to divide the Confederates, made ſeparate Propoſals to the Emperor by the Pope, and to King *William* by the Miniſter of *Denmark*; but they were rejected.

In 1694, the *Engliſh* and *Dutch* made a Deſcent near *Breſt*; but their Deſign being betray'd, miſcarried. They bombarded *Dieppe* and *Havre-de-Grace*, and attempted *Dunkirk* and *Calais*, without Succeſs; but Admiral *Ruſſel*, with another Part of the *Engliſh* and *Dutch* Fleet, ſav'd *Barcelona*. King *William* fail'd in ſeizing *Pont d'Eſpierre* in *Flanders*, being prevented by the Vigilance of the *Dauphin*, who commanded the *French* Army; but the King took *Dixmuyd* and *Huy*. His Majeſty appeaſed ſome dangerous Differences in Religion, which begun then to appear in *Holland*, and order'd the Publick Eſtabliſhment, and the Canons of the Synod of *Dort*, to be duly obſerv'd there, according to the laudable Example of his Predeceſſors.

In

In 1695, the Confederates had a great Loſs by the Death of Queen *Mary* of glorious Memory; and the *French* loſt their great General the D. of *Luxemburg*. King *William*, notwithſtanding his juſt Grief for the Death of that excellent Princeſs, return'd to *Flanders*, where he took *Namur* in ſight of the *French* Army, after a vigorous Defence by M. *Bouffters*, who was arreſted by way of Repriſal for the detaining the Garriſons of *Dixmuyd* and *Deyuſe* by the *French*, contrary to the Capitulation. Prince *Vaudemont* being well nigh ſurpris'd with Part of the Confederate Army by the *French*, made a noble Retreat. This Year a dangerous Tumult happen'd at *Amſterdam*, which laſted ſeveral Days, on Occaſion of ſome Alterations introduc'd in their Way of Burying; but was happily ſuppreſs'd by the Magiſtrates and Train-Bands, and the Ring-leaders put to Death.

In 1696, a new Plot to aſſaſſinate King *William* was ſet on foot by the *French* Court and the *Engliſh Jacobites*, while the late King *James* marched with an Army to the Coaſts of *Normandy*, where he was to have embark'd, upon a Signal that the Murther was effected; but he was diſappointed, and the Inſurrection of his Friends in *England* prevented by the Diſcovery of the Plot, and the Seizure and Execution of ſome of the chief Aſſaſſins and Conſpirators. The *French* Magazine at *Givet* in *Flanders* was burnt by the Confederate Bombs, and *Calais* was a ſecond time attack'd in vain by the Confederate Fleet; but they bombarded St. *Martin* and *Olone*. This Year the *French* King found Means to break the Duke of *Savoy* off from the Confederacy. The Earl of *Galway*, then in *Italy*, gave Notice of the Deſign three Months before-hand; but it could not be prevented: The Duke, among other advantagious Terms, having obtain'd a Match betwixt his eldeſt Daughter and the Duke of *Burgundy*, eldeſt Son to the Dauphin. This prevail'd with the *Dutch* to liſten to the *French* Propoſals of Peace, which, by the Mediation of the K. of *Sweden*, was concluded at *Ryſwick* in 1697. The *Dutch* having obtained more advantagious Conditions than they had by the Treaty of *Nimeguen*, and the *French* King having alſo own'd King *William*: But more of this when we come to *England*. This Year the *Turks* did alſo agree to a Treaty of Peace with the Emperor at *Carlowitz*, by the Mediation of the *Engliſh* and *Dutch*.

In 1698, King *William* went into *Holland*, and from thence to *Zell*, where he had a Conference with the Duke of that Name about the Affairs of *Germany*. The ſame Year, a Treaty of Partition of the *Spaniſh* Monarchy was agreed upon betwixt *England*, *France*, and *Holland*, by which *Spain* and the *Weſt-Indies* were, in caſe of the King of *Spain*'s Death without Iſſue, to be ſettled upon the Electoral Prince of *Bavaria*, and *Naples*, *Sicily*, and *Guipuſcoa*, with the Places on the Coaſt of *Tuſcany*, were to remain to the Dauphin, and the Dutchy of *Milan* to be given to the Archduke *Charles* and his Heirs. The Elector of *Bavaria* was to be Tutor to his own Son during his Minority; and in caſe of his Death without Iſſue, the Elector and his other Poſterity were to enjoy his Share: But the Electoral Prince dying, another Treaty of Partition was agreed upon in 1699 between *England*, *France*, and *Holland*, by which *Spain* and the *Weſt-Indies* were to be ſettled upon Archduke *Charles* and his Heirs; and the Dauphin and his Heirs were to have *Naples*, *Sicily*, the Places belonging to *Spain* on the Coaſts of *Tuſcany*, *Guipuſcoa*, &c. The Emperor rejected this Treaty, as being contrary to his Intereſt; and the *French* King, ſays the *Atlas Hiſtorique*, tho' he was the firſt that mov'd it, on Pretence of preventing the Wars that muſt otherwiſe enſue in *Europe*, charg'd it upon the *Engliſh* and *Dutch*, in order to make them hateful to the *Spaniards*, who could not endure to hear of the diſmembring of their Monarchy.

In 1700, the *French* improving the Diſguſt which this Treaty had rais'd in the *Spaniards*, found Means to induce King *Charles* II. of *Spain*, as was pretended, to make a Will, or as others ſay, they and their Creatures, of whom Cardinal *Portocarero* was the chief, made it for him; by which, contrary to the Treaty of the *Pyrenees*, and his own Father's Will, *&c.* the Duke of *Anjou*, ſecond Son to the Dauphin, was declared Heir to the whole *Spaniſh* Monarchy; and *Charles* II. dying a little after, the *French* King fell in with the Will, and rejected the Treaty of Partition, for which he order'd his Miniſters in *England* and *Holland*

Digitized by Google

land to acquaint thoſe two Powers with his Reaſons; who being very much offended, they prepared to oppoſe his Pretenſions: But the *French* King, by gaining the Electors of *Bavaria* and *Cologne*, was before-hand with them; and the former, tho' he was made Governor of the *Netherlands* in King *Charles* II.'s Time, by the Intereſt of thoſe two Powers, made it eaſy for the *French* King to ſeize *Luxemburg*, *Namur*, *Charleroy*, and other Towns, where the *Dutch*, by K. *Charles* II's Conſent, had Troops in Garriſon for the Security of their own Frontiers, and thoſe of the *Spaniſh Netherlands*. At the ſame Time a War broke out in the North betwixt *Sweden* and *Denmark*, on Account of the latter's Pretenſions to *Holſtein*; but the *Engliſh* and *Dutch*, to prevent the dangerous Conſequences of it, brought thoſe Princes to a Peace.

In 1701, the *Dutch* were very much alarm'd at the Approach of the Troops of *France*, while ſo many of their own were detained in the Garriſons of the *Netherlands*; of which the *French* King had made himſelf Maſter by the Elector of *Bavaria*'s Treachery: But King *William*, who was their Stadtholder, having come into *Holland*, did, in the Meeting of the States General, make a pathetick Speech, and aſſur'd them of the Continuance of his Affection for their Republick, and to do his Utmoſt for their Welfare, as he had always done. This was one of the laſt Proofs that he gave them of his Affection, for he was then in a bad State of Health. In the mean time the *French* King, by his Miniſter, propoſed to enter into a particular Conference with the States; but they refuſed to do any thing without King *William*'s Participation. However, becauſe the *French* King pretended to detain their Troops in the *Spaniſh Netherlands*, becauſe they had not own'd his Grandſon as King of *Spain*, they removed that Objection by owning him, and recover'd their Troops; but they refuſed to enter into any further Treaty with him, except he would put *Venlo*, *Ruremond*, *Stevenſweert*, *Luxemburg*, *Namur*, *Charleroy*, *Mons*, *Dendermonde*, and St. *Donas*, into their Hands as a Security: And *England* demanded *Oſtend* and *Newport*; to which the *French* King return'd no Anſwer: But the States having recover'd their Troops, were more reſolute than they had been before. The late King *James* dying this Year at *St. Germains*, the *French* King, contrary to the Treaty of *Ryſwick*, own'd the pretended Prince of *Wales* as King of *Great Britain* and *Ireland*, which gave new Cauſe of Offence to the *Engliſh* and *Dutch*. The Elector of *Cologne* at the ſame time received *French* Troops into *Bonne*, *Rhinberg*, *Keyſerſwaert*, and the Citadel of *Liege*, where the *French* carried off the great Dean. All which did mightily incenſe the Empire. The Cloſe of this Year, King *William* return'd to *England*, where he call'd a new Parliament, in order to carry on the War againſt *France*.

In 1702, the Duke of *Anjou* ſent his Majeſty a Letter by a Gentleman, to notify his Marriage with a Daughter of the Duke of *Savoy*; to which King *William* return'd no Anſwer, and ſent the Meſſenger away. His Majeſty, whoſe bad State of Health we formerly took Notice of, being eas'd of his Aſthma, (with which he had been troubled moſt part of his Time) by vomiting at Sea when he came from *Holland*, did afterwards go a hunting for his Diverſion; but his Horſe falling, the Clavicula of his Neck was put out, but ſet again immediately; ſo that he found himſelf in a Condition to diſpatch publick Affairs, and ſeem'd to recover; but dy'd of a Fever the 8th of *March*, to the great Regret of the whole Confederates, and particularly of *Great Britain* and *Holland*, which he had ſav'd from Popery and Tyranny. Thus fell that great Man, the laſt of the Houſe of *Orange*, who, contrary to all Expectation, was rais'd by Heaven to do ſuch mighty Things. The *Atlas* gives him this Character, That he was a Prince of extraordinary Endowments, of a ſolid and piercing Judgment, of a ſuperior Genius, and invincible Courage. His Patience, Evenneſs of Temper, and Firmneſs of Mind, were Proof againſt all Attacks. He was ſober, vigilant, wiſe in Counſel, valiant in Arms, and ſo indefatigable, notwithſtanding the Weakneſs of his Conſtitution, that he continually apply'd himſelf to publick Affairs. He was always an Enemy to Diviſions, ſtudy'd the Peace of his Subjects among themſelves, was ready to forget Injuries, and as much contemn'd Flattery and vain Glory, as he purſu'd what was ſolid and true; nor was he ever diverted by Plea-

Digitized by Google

Pleaſures or Grandeur from the Love that he bore to his Country and his Subjects. This, with what we have formerly quoted from Sir *William Temple*, may ſerve to give the World a brief View of that Prince's Character, and makes it appear truly great both in Adverſity and Proſperity. Tho' to ſay he had no Failings, both as a private Man and a Prince, were a mean Piece of Flattery, and to make him more than a Man. By his Will, he left Prince *William* of *Naſſau*, Hereditary Governor of *Frieſland*, his univerſal Heir.

After his Death, the States confirmed their Alliance with his Succeſſor Queen *Anne*, and their other Confederates. The *French* King, whom he had made to tremble when alive, inſulted him in a Memorial preſented to the States by his Reſident after his Death, wherein he had this Expreſſion, *That being reſtor'd to themſelves, they would now be govern'd by their own Spirit.* To which they reply'd, " That their Repub-" lick was always animated by the ſame " Spirit; and that the Counſels of his *Bri-*" *tiſh* Majeſty were ever directed to their " Welfare, and the Preſervation of their " Liberty.

Tho' the War betwixt the Confederates and the *French* King was not then formally declar'd, it was continued in *Italy* in the Emperor's Name, where Prince *Eugene* made a ſurprizing Progreſs, notwithſtanding thoſe Difficulties, which to another would have been unſurmountable. The Elector of *Bavaria* having return'd to his own Dominions, embroil'd the Empire. Upon which, at the Emperor's Sollicitation, the *Engliſh* and *Dutch* declar'd War againſt *France* on one and the ſame Day. General *Coehorn* open'd the Campaign in the *Netherlands* by taking Fort St. *Dona*, and bombarding Fort *Iſabella*; and Count *Tilly* advanc'd with his Army to *Santen*, to cover the Siege of *Keyſerſwaert*, which proved one of the moſt bloody that happen'd during this War; but was at laſt reduc'd by the Allies. At the ſame Time the *French* under the Duke of *Burgundy* attempted to ſurpriſe *Nimeguen*, which they had well nigh effected; but were prevented by the Diligence of the Earl of *Athlone*. The *French* were alſo beat off from before *Huiſt*; and the Earl of *Marlborough*, now Duke, obliged the *French* to retire on the *Maes*, and took Fort St. *Michael*, *Stochem*, *Venlo*, *Stevenſwaert*, *Ruremond*, and *Liege*, in a little Time.

In 1703, the *Engliſh* and *Dutch* miſcarried in their Deſign upon *Cadiz*, but took the *Spaniſh* Galleons at *Vigo*, where they ruin'd Part of the *French* Fleet. In this Expedition, the Duke of *Ormond* and the late Sir *George Rooke* behav'd themſelves with great Gallantry. This Year the Allies took *Bonne*, forc'd the *French* Lines in the Country of *Waes*, but could not bring them to a Battle, they were ſo ſtrongly intrench'd. They endeavour'd to ſurpriſe the Allies at the Battle of *Eckeren*, which was bravely fought on both Sides, and almoſt with equal Loſs; but tho' the *French* were ſuperior in Number, the Allies kept the Field, and both Sides claim'd the Victory. The Duke of *Marlborough* took *Huy* and *Limburg*. *Gelders* and *Rhinberg* were alſo ſurrender'd to the Allies: And this Year the Archduke *Charles* being own'd as King of *Spain* by *England* and *Holland*, he viſited both thoſe Countries in his Way to *Spain*, whither he was conducted by the Confederate Fleet. The Death of the Earl of *Athlone*, and of the famous General and Engineer *Coehorn*, this Year, was a great Loſs to the States.

In 1704, the Duke of *Marlborough*, with Part of the *Engliſh* and *Dutch* Army, march'd from *Flanders* to the *Danube*, and fought the famous Battle of *Hochſtet*; of which we have already given an Account. Several Attempts were made to force the *French* Lines in *Flanders*, without Succeſs; but the *Dutch* took Fort *Iſabella* in *Flanders*, rais'd Contributions in the Enemy's Country, and fore'd *Bruges* to pay a conſiderable Sum to avoid a Bombardment.

In 1705, the States, in Conjunction with the Queen of *Great Britain*, preſſed the Emperor to take more Care of puſhing on the War upon the *Upper Rhine*, and to accommodate the Troubles in *Hungary*, and not leave the Burden of the War againſt *France* upon the *Engliſh* and *Dutch*, which produc'd large Promiſes, but faint Performances, from the Court of *Vienna* in both Reſpects. The *Engliſh* and *Dutch* under Sir *John Leak* defeated *Pointi* and the *French* Squadron, who came with freſh Supplies to the *French* and *Spaniards* that beſieg'd *Gibraltar*. The *French* took *Huy*, while the *Engliſh* and *Dutch*, by

Digitized by Google

by the Slowneſs of the Imperialiſts, miſcarried in their Deſigns upon the *Moſelle*; ſo that the Duke of *Marlborough* was oblig'd, at the Deſire of the States, to return with the Confederate Army to the *Netherlands*, where they retook *Huy*, and forc'd the *French* Lines near *Hilleſheim* in *Flanders*, deſtroy'd almoſt 24 Squadrons of *Bavarians*, with 3 Regiments of *French*, and took many great and inferior Officers, with about 1400 Men, and ſeveral Colours and Standards. Baron *Spar*, with a Detachment of the *Dutch* Army, forc'd the *French* Lines at *Lovendegem* near *Bruges*, and took 300 Men, with ſeveral Officers. After which the Confederates finiſh'd the demoliſhing of the *French* Lines, and took *Soutleuwe* and *Santvliet*, whilſt the *French* took *Dixſt*. The Confederates under the Conduct of the Earl of *Peterborough* took *Barcelona*, the Capital of *Catalonia*, wherein the *Engliſh* and *Dutch* were particularly ſerviceable: But we refer the Particulars till we come to the Deſcription of that Country.

In 1706, the *French* attack'd *Barcelona*, where the *Engliſh* and *Dutch* Troops made a brave Defence, and their Fleets contributed to the Relief of the Town; but we leave the Particulars to its proper Place. This Year was fought the Battle of *Rommelies* in *Flanders*, under the Conduct of the Duke of *Marlborough* and General *Auverquerque*, where the *Dutch* Troops, and particularly the *Scots* in their Service, diſtinguiſh'd themſelves with extraordinary Gallantry. The Heat of the Action being on the Left, where the *Dutch* were poſted, the Duke of *Marlborough*, as he brought up the Horſe of the Right to their Aſſiſtance, rallied ſome of the Troops, and gave others Orders to charge, was ſingled out by ſome of the Enemy, and being diſmounted, was in Danger of being kill'd or taken, had not Major-General *Murray*, the Duke of *Argile*, and others, come ſeaſonably up to his Reſcue, and repulſed the Enemy. While the Duke was remounting, Colonel *Brinfield*, his Gentleman of the Horſe, was killed with a Cannon-Bullet. By this time the *French* Horſe on the Right being entirely defeated, our Horſe broke their Foot, and the Lord *John Hay*, with his Regiment of *Scots* Dragoons, took the *French* King's own Regiment of Foot Priſoners of War, and made them ſurrender their Colours and Arms. The Purſuit continued all Night; and General *Auverquerque* following them with his *Dutch* Troops, took above 4000 of 'em, with about 80 Colours and Standards, moſt of their Artillery, Carriage, Baggage and Arms, with the Kettle-Drums and Standards of the Troops of the *French* King's Houſhold. The *French* were ſuppoſed to have loſt 8000 Men on the Field of Battle, and had about 6000 taken, among whom were two Major-Generals, two Brigadier-Generals, a Son of the Marſhal *de Tallard*, a Nephew of the late Duke of *Luxemburg*, with other Officers of Diſtinction; and two Princes in their Service were killed. The Allies had 1066 Men killed, and 2577 wounded: The chief of thoſe killed were, Prince *Lewis* of *Heſſe-Caſſel*, 1 Count, and 8 Colonels. The Deputies of the States, in their Letter to the States General, aſcribed the Glory of this Victory, chiefly under God, to the Courage and Conduct of the Duke of *Marlborough* and the Lord *Auverquerque*, who animated the other Generals and Officers of the Army, who all, without Exception of any Nation whatever, attack'd the Enemy with the utmoſt Bravery and Unanimity. The *French* after this Battle abandon'd *Louvain*, and retir'd over the Canal of *Bruſſels*, being purſu'd by the Allies: Upon which the City of *Bruſſels*, the States of *Brabant*, and the Towns of *Mechlen* and *Aloſt*, ſubmitted to K. *Charles*. *Ghent*, *Bruges*, *Audenard*, and *Antwerp*, follow'd their Example; and the States of *Flanders* own'd K. *Charles*. General *Churchill* was made Governor of *Bruſſels*, and all the *French* were order'd to depart the City. K. *Charles* was alſo ſucceſsful in *Spain*. The Earl of *Galway*, with the *Portugueze* and other Confederates, came to *Madrid*: *Carthagena* ſubmitted. The *French* this Year beſieg'd *Turin*, where the Duke of *Savoy* commanded in Perſon, having been oblig'd to ſend his Mother, his Dutcheſs, and the reſt of his Family, to *Genoa*; from whence the two Dutcheſſes ſent a Repreſentation of their Diſtreſs to the States General, with a Deſire that they would uſe their utmoſt Endeavours to contribute to their Relief. The Miniſters of *England* and *Holland* endeavour'd an Accommodation betwixt the Emperor and *Hungarian* Malecontents, without Succeſs, which they charged upon the Imperial Generals and Miniſters. Prince *Ragotzki* writ after this

Digitized by Google

this to the Queen of *Great Britain* and the States, thanking them for their Mediation, and gave them an Account, that he was willing to have ſurrender'd his own Dignity for the Sake of Peace, and deſir'd the Continuance of their good Offices to procure it, which hitherto have had no Effect. This Year the *Engliſh* and *Dutch* laid Siege to *Oſtend*, and in a little Time obliged the Garriſon to ſurrender on Terms, which was very extraordinary, conſidering how ſtrong that Town is both by Art and the Nature of its Situation, and that the *Dutch* formerly held it out above 3 Years againſt the great *Spaniſh* General *Spinola*. The Town of *Menin* in *French Flanders* was alſo ſurrender'd to the *Dutch*, while the D. of *Marlborough* cover'd the Siege, in which the *French* loſt 1300 Men, and the Allies about 517. Soon after the D. of *Savoy* and Prince *Eugene* defeated the *French* before *Turin*, and relieved that City, wherein the *Dutch* Troops behav'd themſelves with great Gallantry, as was own'd by both thoſe Princes in their Letters to the States: But we refer the Particulars, and the further Progreſs of the Imperialiſts in *Italy*, to its proper Place; as we do the Loſs which the *Dutch* Troops under the Prince of *Heſſe* ſuſtain'd ſome Time after at the Battle of *Medoli* in *Italy*. King *Auguſtus*'s Miniſter preſented a Memorial to the States, and deſir'd that they and the Queen of *Great Britain* would oblige the K. of *Sweden* to withdraw from *Saxony*, by invading his Dominions on the *Baltick*. *Dendermond* ſurrender'd on Terms to the D. of *Marlborough*; and the Confederates retook *Salamanca* in *Spain*, wherein the *Engliſh* and *Dutch* aſſiſted; and their Fleet at the ſame time reduc'd *Ivica* and *Majorca* to K. *Charles*'s Obedience. After this, General *Auverquerque* took *Aeth*, and made the Garriſon Priſoners of War. The Elector of *Bavaria* made Propoſals of Peace on the Behalf of *France*; but they were rejected by the Queen and the States.

In 1707, the *Dutch* ſent a Squadron to *Portugal*, with Recruits for their Forces; and K. *Auguſtus* of *Poland* being driven from thence by the K. of *Sweden*, who invaded him in his own Country, and forc'd him by a Treaty to renounce the Crown of *Poland*, deſir'd the States to be Guarantees in the Treaty betwixt him and the K. of *Sweden*; but the States were cautious in concerning themſelves with that Matter. This Year the Allies were defeated at the Battle of *Almanza* in *Spain*, where the *Engliſh* and *Dutch* Troops ſuffered very much. The *Dutch* Envoy in *Portugal*, the Count *de Noyelles*, and other *Dutch* Officers, complain'd in their Letters of the Earl of *Galway*'s Conduct in that fatal Battle: But we refer the Particulars to the Deſcription of that Country. The *French* made an Irruption into *Germany*, and forc'd the Lines of *Stolhoffen*, where the *Dutch* Troops under the D. of *Wirtemberg* made a brave and a noble Retreat, tho' overpower'd by the Enemy. The States and the *Engliſh* did this Year extend their Charity to the *Vaudois*, who had been forc'd to abandon their own Country, and were reduc'd to great Straits by the *French* Army. This Year the Siege of *Toulon* was form'd, wherein the *Engliſh* and *Dutch* bore a great Share: But we refer the Particulars, and how it came to miſcarry, to its proper Place. The States publiſh'd an Order againſt the negotiating of *French* Mint-Bills in their Country, to prevent the *French* King's drawing out their ready Money for thoſe Bills, which had loſt their Credit at home: And at the ſame Time they forbad the conveying of ready Money or Plate out of their Dominions. The Republick of *Genoa* made Application to the States for continuing a good Correſpondence with them, which was agreed to. This Year the States concern'd themſelves in the Election of the Biſhop of *Paderborn* to be Biſhop of *Munſter*, and carried it, after ſome Oppoſition made by the Imperial Court. They did likewiſe, in Conjunction with the *Engliſh*, and others of the Allies, promote the K. of *Pruſſia*'s Succeſſion to the Principality of *Neufchattel* and the County of *Vallengin*, in Oppoſition to the Prince of *Conti* and others, Pretenders ſet up by the *French* King. They made alſo ſeveral preſſing Inſtances to the Diet of the Empire for carrying on the War with more Vigour on the Part of the *Germans* againſt *France*. They did the like to the Court of *Vienna*, and join'd with the *Engliſh*, in deſiring that Prince *Eugene* might be ſent to command in *Catalonia*, in order to retrieve the Affairs of *Spain*; but without Effect.

In

In 1708, they renewed thoſe Inſtances; and the *Engliſh* and *Dutch* Squadron under the Command of Sir *John Leak* and the Baron *de Waſſenaer* took a *French* Convoy in the *Mediterranean*. This Year *Ghent* and *Bruges* were treacherouſly ſurrender'd to the *French*, which brought on the Battle of *Audenard*, where the *French* were defeated, loſt above 4000 Men in the Field, and had 8000 taken, with a Lieutenant-General, 4 Major-Generals, 5 Brigadiers, 14 Colonels, 6 Lieutenants, 96 Cornets, 186 Gens-d'Armes, and 47 Quartermaſters. The whole of their Officers that were taken amounting to 750. The Confederates loſt a Major-General, 2 Colonels, 1 Lieutenant-Colonel, 42 other Officers, and about 1000 Centinels. The Electoral Prince of *Hanover* diſtinguiſh'd himſelf in this Action. The *French* afterwards retir'd to *Ghent*, and the D. of *Marlborough*, Pr. *Eugene*, and General *Auverquerque*, ſent a Detachment, who demoliſhed the *French* Lines in *Flanders*, and laid the *French* Country under Contribution as far as *Arras*, and a great way into *Picardy*. The *French* in the mean time poſted themſelves on the Canal of *Bruges*, took the Fort of *Plaſſendal* near *Oſtend*, and made Incurſions into the *Dutch* Territories. At the ſame time the Allies form'd the Siege of *Liſle*, and the *French* Army march'd to raiſe it, without Effect. Prince *Eugene* was dangerouſly wounded in one of the Attacks, and the *French* threw in a Supply of Powder into the Town, which, with the Miſtake of one of our Engineers, did very much retard the Siege; and the *French* having ſtopp'd the Paſſage of the Confederate Convoys from *Oſtend* and other Places, the Allies were reduc'd to Straits. This brought on the Battle of *Winnendal*, where the Confederates, by the admirable Conduct of Major-General *Webb*, with 7000 Men, defeated 24000 *French*, who loſt above 4000 Men, and retired in Confuſion, which gave an Opportunity to a Confederate Convoy to reach our Army before *Liſle*. The Allies did not loſe above 1000 Men in this Expedition, and the Arrival of the Convoy enabled them to proſecute the Siege of *Liſle*, which brought the Marſhal *de Boufflers* to a Capitulation. The Loſs of the *French* in this Siege was computed to be about 7000, and that of the Allies about 9000. The *French* after this took the Poſt of *Leffinge*, with 150 Men, but loſt near 600 in the Action; and they ſurpris'd the Lord *Stairs* near *Furnes*, with ſome *Pruſſian* Squadrons and Battalions, whom, after a ſharp Diſpute, they obliged to ſurrender Priſoners of War. After this, the E. of *Bavaria*, with 10000 Men, having form'd a Correſpondence in *Bruſſels*, attack'd that City, and had well nigh carried it; but was bravely repulſed by the Conduct of the Governor Monſieur *Paſcal*, Major-General *Murray*, Baron *Wrangel*, and others, who were very much animated by the Preſence of the Deputies of the States General. The D. of *Marlborough* and Pr. *Eugene* hearing of the Danger of *Bruſſels*, march'd to its Relief, and paſſed the *Scheld*, notwithſtanding the ſtrong Lines and Intrenchments which the *French* had rais'd to prevent it; but were obliged to abandon them, with the Loſs of Part of their Baggage, Bread-Waggons, ſeveral Colours, Standards, and Kettle-Drums, and about 1000 Men killed or taken. In the mean time the Siege of the Citadel of *Liſle* was carried on with Vigour, and forc'd by Pr. *Eugene* to capitulate, where they left 90 Braſs Cannon, with many of Iron, and 20000 Weight of Powder, but little Proviſions. Thus this great and important City, with the Citadel, being reckoned one of the ſtrongeſt and moſt regular Fortifications in *Europe*, fell into the Hands of the Allies. After which the Confederates beſieg'd *Ghent*, which they forc'd to ſurrender in a little Time; and the *French* did hereupon abandon *Bruges*, *Plaſſendal*, and *Leffinge*, and retir'd into their own Territories, which brought the Campaign to a glorious Concluſion. After this, the Council of State of the United *Netherlands* preſented their Petition in the uſual Form to the States General, recapitulating the Advantages which it had pleaſed God to give to the Confederate Arms in the *Netherlands*, *Italy*, and the *Mediterranean*; towards which, the *Dutch* Forces by Sea and Land had very much contributed: And in this Petition, they laid before them ſuch Meaſures as they judged neceſſary for bringing the War to a happy Concluſion by a firm and a laſting Peace. On this Occaſion they put the States in Mind of the Treachery of *France* in all their Treaties ſince that of *Munſter*:

And

Digitized by Google

and concluded, That the Memory of this War, and the Animosities conceiv'd by the French against the Republick, for having oppos'd their Encroachments, were not immediately to be extinguish'd by a Treaty of Peace, as was plain from their former Conduct, since they founded the War of 1672 on the Measures the States had taken before to prevent their seizing the *Spanish* Provinces in the *Netherlands*, as they have since done, their keeping Possession of the whole Monarchy of *Spain*; besides, the Hatred that the *French* bear to them on the Account of the Protestant Religion, which that Court had design'd to extirpate every where; and therefore 'twas their Opinion, that no other Peace with *France* but a sure one was to be admitted. The *French* during the Winter endeavour'd to bring the *Dutch* and others of the Allies to a separate Peace by large Concessions; but finding it in vain, they obtained Leave to send Deputies to *Holland*, and at last their Minister of State the Marquis *de Torcy*, with further Propolals for a General Peace, in the Beginning of 1709, where the well known Preliminaries, according to the Demands of the Allies, were concluded and sign'd by the Confederate Plenipotentiaries, and those of the French King, the 28th of *May*, 1709: But being afterwards rejected by the *French* King, it occasioned the renewing of the War.

Their GOVERNMENT.

WE have formerly taken Notice, That the Basis of their United Government is the Union of *Utrecht*, whence Sir *William Temple* justly observes, that it cannot properly be call'd a Commonwealth, but rather a Confederacy of 7 Sovereign Provinces for their mutual Defence, without any Dependancy upon the other as to their particular Government. Each of the Provinces is likewise composed of many little States or Cities, which have several Marks of Sovereign Power within themselves, and are not subject to the Sovereignty of their Provinces, not being concluded in many Things by the Majority, but only by the universal Concurrence of Voices in the Provincial States. For, as the States General cannot make War or Peace, new Alliances, or levy Money, without the Consent of every Province; the States Provincial cannot conclude any of those Points without Consent of each of the Cities that has a Voice in their Assembly. And tho' in many Civil Causes there's an Appeal from the Courts of the Cities to that of the Province, in Criminal there's none; nor can the Sovereignty of the Province exercise any Judicature, seize upon any Offender, pardon any Offence within the Jurisdiction of the Cities, or execute any common Resolution or Law, but by the Justice and Officers of the City it self: So that each City has a Power of Justice, of levying Money, and of making Peace and War; but the Coining of Money is in the Generality of the Union, by common Agreement; so that the principal Ingredients in the Composition of this State, are the Freedom of the Cities, the Sovereignty of the Provinces, and the Articles of the General Union; to which we may add the Authority and Dignity of their Stadtholder, when they have one.

The States General,

IN whom resides the Sovereign Authority of the United Provinces, assemble at the *Hague*. Each of the Provinces send their Deputies hither, in what Number they please; yet the Deputies of each Province have but one Voice, and the Deputies of the respective Provinces preside by Turns every Week. 'Tis this Assembly which declares War, makes Peace, and gives Audience to Foreign Ministers. The States of *Guelderland* have the first Voice, the States of *Holland* the 2d, *Zealand* the 3d, *Utrecht* the 4th, *Friesland* the 5th, *Overissel* the 6th, and *Groningen* the 7th. Sir *William* observes, That the States General us'd formerly to be assembled on extraordinary Occasions by the Council of State, who call'd them but seldom, because they usually consisted of above 800 Persons, which made the Debates long, and sometimes confus'd, the Resolutions slow, and upon sudden Occasions out of Time. In the Absence of the States General, this Council of State represented their Authority, executed their Resolves,

Digitized by Google

and judged of the Neceſſity of a new Convocation; till after the Earl of *Leiceſter*'s quitting the Government, the Provincial States deſir'd of the General that they might, by their conſtant reſpective Deputies, continue their Aſſemblies under the Name of, *The States General*, which were never after aſſembled but at *Bergenopzoom*, for ratifying with more Solemnity their Truce with *Spain*. The Reaſon they alleg'd was this, That the Council of State aſſembled them but ſeldom, and at Will; and being to execute all in their Abſence, they aſſum'd too much Authority: But their weightieſt Reaſon was, That the *Engliſh* Ambaſſador, who, by Agreement with Queen *Elizabeth*, had a conſtant Place in their Council of State, ſhould not be preſent at the firſt Digeſtion of their Affairs, which was then uſually agreed upon in the Council of State. Since that Time, the States General have conſtantly ſat in the Court at the *Hague*, being indeed but a Repreſentative of the States General, whoſe Aſſemblies are now wholly diſus'd. Neither Stadtholder, Governor, or any Perſon in Military Charge, has Seſſion in the States General; and as every Province preſides in their Week by Turns, the moſt qualified Perſon among the Deputies of that Province is choſen for Preſident, and ſits in an Arm'd Chair, at the Middle of a long Table, capable of holding about 30 Perſons, which is the uſual Number of this Council. The *Greffier* or Secretary ſits at the lower End. When a Foreign Miniſter has Audience, he is ſeated at the Middle of the Table, over againſt the Preſident, who propoſes all Matters, makes the Greffier read all Papers, puts the Queſtion, calls the Votes, and forms the Concluſion: Or if he refuſes to conclude according to the Plurality, he is obliged to reſign his Place to the Preſident of the following Week, who concludes for him. This is the Method in all Affairs, except in Caſes of Peace and War, Foreign Alliances, raiſing or coining of Monies, or of the Privileges of each Province or Member of the Union: In all which, the whole Provinces muſt concur; for in thoſe Caſes, Plurality is not weigh'd. This Council, as Sir *William* obſerves, tho' they are ſaid to be Sovereign, only repreſents the Sovereignty; and therefore, tho' Ambaſſadors are both received and ſent in their Name, yet neither are their own choſen, nor Foreign Miniſters anſwer'd, nor any of the above-mention'd Affairs reſolv'd, without conſulting firſt the States of each Province by their reſpective Deputies, and receiving Orders from them; and in other important Matters, tho decided by Plurality, they frequently conſult with the Council of State. This Method has never been broken, ſays Sir *William*, ſince the Foundation of their Republick, except in 1668, when he himſelf being ſent by our K. *Charles* II. to conclude a League of Defence with the States, and another for the Preſervation of *Flanders*, then invaded, and much of it conquer'd by *France*, he prevailed with the States General to conclude 3 Treaties in 5 Days, without having Recourſe to the Provinces, who muſt likewiſe have conſulted their ſeveral Cities, where the Foreign Miniſters who oppos'd thoſe Treaties could not have fail'd to have prevented 'em, ſince the engaging the Voice of any one City muſt have outdone it. He owns, that the States General endanger'd their Heads by this Step, had they been diſown'd in it by their Provinces; but being unanimous, and knowing it to be the Intereſt of their Country, they ventur'd it, for which they were applauded by every Province, having thereby changed the Face of the Affairs of *Chriſtendom*, and laid the Foundation of the Triple Alliance, and the Peace of *Aix la Chapelle*, which at that time broke the *French* King's Meaſures. So great, ſays he, has the Force of Reaſon and Intereſt ever proved in this State, whoſe Safety and Greatneſs has been chiefly founded upon the ſtrict Obſervance of their Conſtitution; tho' being overpower'd by the ſupreme Law of Neceſſity, they diſpens'd with it in this Inſtance. Nor have they, ſays he, ever us'd any greater Means to unite the Members of their Union in neceſſary Reſolutions, upon the moſt preſſing Occaſions, but by ſending ſome of their ableſt Members to repreſent to the diſſenting Provinces their Reaſons, and the Intereſt by which they have been indue'd to this or that Reſolution.

The

The Council *of* State,

IS compoſed of one Deputy from *Guelderland*, ſays the *Atlas Hiſtorique*, three from *Holland*, two from *Zealand*, one from *Utrecht*, two from *Frieſland*, one from *Overiſſel*, and one from *Groningen*, which differs from what it was in Sir *William*'s Time, when *Guelderland* and *Utrecht* ſent two each, and *Frieſland* but one. The Reaſon of which is, That upon the Re-admiſſion of the Provinces conquer'd by *France* into the Union in 1674, the States General took one of the Votes from the Province of *Guelderland*, and gave it to *Groningen*, for the noble Defence which that City made againſt the Biſhop of *Munſter*, ſays the 4th Volume of *Pitt*'s *Atlas*. But ſince the *Atlas Hiſtorique* makes the Number of this Council but 11, ſome other Alteration muſt have been made ſince that Time. In 1650, the Provinces of *Utrecht*, *Overiſſel*, and *Groningen*, pleaded for more Deputies in this Council; but 'twas oppoſed by *Holland*, which then in a manner govern'd all the reſt, and was upbraided by thoſe of *Guelderland*, as deſigning to enſlave them. The Majority of Votes carries it in this Council, and every Deputy preſides by Turns. In this Council the Governors of the Provinces have a deciſive, and the Treaſurer-General only a deliberative Voice; yet he has much Credit, becauſe his Place is for Life. So is the Perſon deputed from the Nobles of *Holland*, and the Deputies of *Zealand*; whereas the reſt are but for two, three, or 4 Years. This Council of State executes the Reſolves of the States General, conſults and propoſes to them the moſt expedient Ways of raiſing Troops and Money, and the Proportion of both, ſuperintend the Troops, Fortifications, Contributions rais'd out of the Enemy's Country, the Forms and Diſpoſal of all Paſſports, and the Affairs, Revenues, and Government, of all the Places conquer'd ſince the Union; which being gain'd by the common Arms of the State, depend upon the States General, and not upon any particular Province. Towards the End of every Year, this Council forms a State of the Expence they think neceſſary for the enſuing Year, preſent it to the States General, and deſire them to demand ſo much of the States Provincial, to be raiſed according to the uſual Proportions, which are of 100000 Gilders.

	Grs.	St.	D.
Gelderland,	3612	05	00
Holland,	58309	01	10
Zealand,	9183	14	02
Utrecht,	5830	17	11
Frieſland,	11661	15	10
Overiſſel,	3571	08	04
Groningen,	5930	17	11

This was the old Rate; but a new one was ſince agreed on, according to the Proportion of 100 *l.* Sterling, which *Van Aitzma* gives thus:

	l.	*s.*	*d.*
Guelder,	7	00	00
Holland,	42	00	00
Zealand,	13	00	00
Utrecht,	8	00	00
Frieſland,	17	00	00
Overiſſel	5	00	00
Groningen, and the *Omlands*,	8	00	00

This Petition, as 'tis called, is made to the States General in Name of the Governor and Council of State; and every Province raiſes what Money, and by what Means, they pleaſe, ſend their Quota to the Receiver-General, and convert the reſt to the preſent Uſe, or reſerve it for the future Occaſions of the Province. The Council of State diſpoſes of all Money deſign'd for extraordinary Affairs, and gives Orders for the whole Expence of the State, according to the Reſolves of the States General; and theſe Orders muſt be ſign'd by 3 Deputies of ſeveral Provinces, as well as by the Treaſurer-General, and regiſtred in the Chamber of Accounts, before the Receiver-General pays them, which is then done without any Charge or Delay.

The Chamber of Accounts,

WAS, according to Sir *William*, erected about 90 Years ago, for the Eaſe of the Council of State, to examine and ſtate all the Accounts of the ſeveral Receivers, to controul and regiſter the Orders of the

Digitized by Google

Council of State, which disposes of the Finances; and this Chamber is composed of two Deputies from each Province, who are changed every three Years.

The Council of the Admiralty,

IS subdivided into 5 Colleges, of which 3 are in *Holland, viz.* one at *Amsterdam*, one at *Rotterdam*, and one at *Horn*. The 4th is at *Middleburg* in *Zealand*, and the 5th at *Harlingen* in *Friesland*. Each of these Colleges is composed of 7 Deputies, 4 of that Province where the College resides, and 3 nam'd by the other Provinces. The Admiral, or in his Absence the Vice-Admiral, has Session in all these Colleges, and presides when he is present. As soon as the Number and Force of the Fleets design'd for any Expedition is agreed by the States General, and given out by the Council of State to the Admiralty, each particular College furnishes their Proportion, which is as well known as that of the Money each Province is to raise. In all which, the Admiral has no other Share or Advantage besides his Salary, and Proportion of Prizes. The Captains and Superior Officers of each Squadron are chosen by the several Colleges, who appoint the Number of Men for every Ship. After this, each Captain uses his best Diligence to get his Number of as good Men as he can, and has the Care of Victualling his Ship for the Time appointed by the Admiralty at so much *per* Head. He likewise takes Care of Medicines; and, according to the Discharge of his Trust, he grows in Credit or otherwise with the Seamen, and according to their Report with the Admiralties, upon whose Esteem the Fortune of all Sea-Officers depends. This occasions an Emulation among the Captains who shall treat their Seamen best, instead of filling their own Purses by starving their Men, or giving them bad Diet. This Council of the Admiralty has Cognizance of all Crimes committed at Sea, judge Pirates, and all Frauds or Neglects in paying or collecting the Customs, which are appropriated to the Admiralty; and if not sufficient in Time of War, is otherwise supplied by the States: But in Time of Peace, when they are at little other Expence, except for Convoys, the Overplus is applied to the building of Men of War, and laying up Naval Stores. So much for their Government in general. For the particular Government of their Provinces and Cities, we shall instance in that of the Province of *Holland*, and City of *Amsterdam*.

The Government of the Province of Holland.

THE Sovereignty of this Province is represented by Deputies of the Nobles and Towns, consisting of 19 Votes, of which the Nobles have only the first, and the Cities 18, according to the Number of those call'd *Stemmt*, the other Cities and Towns having no Voice. These Cities were originally but 6, *viz. Dort, Haerlem, Delft, Leyden, Amsterdam*, and *Tergou*; but Prince *William* of *Nassau* added 12 more, *viz. Rotterdam, Gercum, Schiedam, Schenkoven, Brille, Alcmaer, Horn, Enchusen, Edam, Monickendam, Medenblick*, and *Purmeren*. The latter of which, being a very small Town, has an equal Voice in the Provincial States with *Amsterdam*, which pays almost half the Charge of the whole Province; as the Province of *Overissel* has an equal Voice in the States General with *Holland*, which bears more than half the Charge of the Union. This is ascrib'd to the Policy of Prince *William* I. to lessen the Power of the Nobles, and ballance that of the greater Cities by the Voices of the smaller, which were more easy to be gain'd. The *Atlas Historique* leaves out *Tergou* among the Towns that send Deputies; and instead of it, places *Gouda*. The Nobles, tho' few in this Province, send 8 or 9 to the Provincial States; and when one dies, chuse another to succeed; and tho' they have all but one Voice, yet they are very considerable in the Government, being possess'd of the best Charges, Civil and Military, and having the Direction of all the Ecclesiastical Revenue that was seiz'd by the State upon the Change of Religion. They likewise send Deputies to all the Councils both of the Generality and Province, and have the Nomination of one Counsellor in the two great Courts of Justice. They have the first

firſt Vote in the Aſſembly of the States, which gives them a great Weight in the Buſineſs under Conſultation. The Penſioner of *Holland* ſits with them, delivers their Vote, and aſſiſts at their Deliberations before they come to the Aſſembly; and thô he be but Servant to the Province, and ſits behind all their Deputies, yet he has always great Credit, becauſe he is ſeldom chang'd; tho' they have a Power to chuſe another, or continue him every 5th Year. He has Place in all the Aſſemblies of the Province, propoſes all Affairs, gathers their Votes, forms their Reſolves, and pretends to have Power not to conclude any important Affair by Plurality of Voices, if he think in his Conſcience that he ought not to do it, or that it will be prejudicial to the Province. He is likewiſe one of their conſtant Deputies in the States General.

The Deputies of the Cities are choſen out of the Magiſtrates and Senate of each Town, in what Number they pleaſe. They have altogether but one Voice, are maintain'd at the Charge of the Cities; and one of their Burgomaſters, with the Penſionary, are uſually of the Number. The States of *Holland* meet in the Court at the *Hague* in *February*, *June*, *September*, and *November*, every Year. In the former Seſſions, they fill up vacant Charges, renew the Farms of the Taxes, conſult about the common Affairs of the Province, and determine particular Differences that may happen betwixt Towns. In *November*, they meet about their Quota agreed upon by the States General for the Support of the Union the following Year. On extraordinary Occaſions, they are aſſembled by a Council called the *Gecommitteerde Raden*, or Commiſſion Counſellors, who are properly a Council of State for the Province, compoſed of one Deputy from the Nobles, one from each of the 8 chief Towns, and one from 3 of the ſmaller Towns; each of which chuſe a Deputy by Turns. This Council ſits conſtantly at the *Hague*, propoſes Matters to the Provincial States at their extraordinary Aſſemblies, and execute their Reſolves. In theſe Aſſemblies they muſt all be unanimous; but aiming all at the common Good, they generally agree in what, after reaſoning, appears to be their common Intereſt. When they come to a Reſolve, they ſend ſome of their Number to their reſpective Towns, with their Concluſions and Reaſons, and deſire Orders about it, which is generally granted: But if the Matter be intricate, and requires Delay, they adjourn till ſuch Time as the Deputies can go to their reſpective Cities, and obtain their Conſent.

The Province has likewiſe a Chamber of Accounts, who manage their Revenues, and have the abſolute Diſpoſal of the ancient Demeſne of *Holland*, without accounting to the States; only upon a Neceſſity of Money, the States call upon them for a Subſidy of 2 or 300000 Crowns, or more, as they have occaſion, or conceive the Chamber to be grown rich, beyond what is proportion'd to the general Deſign of increaſing the Eaſe and Fortunes of the Perſons that compoſe it, who are ſuch as have grown aged in their Service, and paſſed through moſt of the Employments of State with Reputation: This being provided for them as an honourable and profitable Retreat.

The Provinces of *Holland* and *Zealand*, as they had one Governor before their Revolt from *Spain*, have one common Judicature exercis'd by two Courts of Juſtice; each of them common to both the Provinces. The firſt conſiſts of 9 Counſellors from *Holland*, and 3 from *Zealand*, in which the Governor, by the old Conſtitution, us'd to preſide, and to name all the Counſellors except one, who is choſen by the Nobles. There lies no Appeal from them in Criminal Cauſes; but in Civil there does, to the other Court called the *High Council*; from which there is no Appeal, but by Petition to the States of the Province for a Reviſion. When the States think there's Reaſon for it, they grant Letters Patents, in which they name ſome Syndics out of the Towns, who being added to the Counſellors of the two former Courts, judge the Cauſe in the laſt Reſort.

The Government of the Province of Guelderland.

AGrees in general with that of *Holland*; but differs in this, that 'tis divided into the 3 Quarters of the *Betuwe*, the County of *Zutphen*, and the *Veluwe*; each of which

Digitized by Google

which have their States, compoſed of the Nobility, and of the Deputies of the Towns, in their ſeveral Juriſdictions; and the Provincial States are compoſed of the Nobility and Deputies of Towns of thoſe 3 Quarters. All the Nobles that have certain Fees or Lordſhips in the Province, have a Voice in the Provincial States, of which they compoſe one half, and the Deputies of the Towns the other; and tho' ſome from among them are deputed to the States General, all the Nobles of *Guelder* may have Place there, if they will attend at their own Charge. The Towns that ſend Deputies to the Provincial States are, *Nimeguen, Tiel, Bommel, Zutphen, Doesburg, Doetekum, Leckum, Grol, Arnheim, Harderwick, Hattem*, and *Dreburg*.

The Government of the Province of Zealand.

THE Nobility here being extinguiſh'd in the *Spaniſh* Wars, the Prince of *Orange* poſſeſſing the Marquiſates of *Fluſhing* and *Terveer*, is the only Nobleman of the Province, and has by himſelf or his Deputy the firſt Place and Vote in the Provincial States, the Council of State, and Chamber of Accounts; and as Sovereign of *Fluſhing* and *Terveer*, he creates the Magiſtrates there, and conſequently diſpoſes the Voices not only of the Nobles, but alſo of 2 Towns; whereas there are but 6 in all that ſend Deputies to the States, and make up the Sovereignty of the Province; the other 4 being *Middleburg, Ziricxee, Goes*, and *Tholen*.

The Government of the Province of Utrecht.

BEſides the Deputies of the Nobles and Towns, 8 Delegates of the Clergy have Seſſion, and make a 3d Member in the States of this Province. Theſe 8 are choſen out of the 4 great Chapters of the Town; the Revenues of which, ſince the Biſhoprick was ſeculariz'd, are poſſeſs'd by Gentlemen of the Province. The Towns that ſend Deputies are, *Utrecht, Amersford, Rhenen, Wyck Te Duurſtede, Montford*, and *Iſelſtein*.

The Government of the Province of Frieſland,

DIffers from the reſt, and is compoſed of 4 Members, *viz.* the Quarter of *Oſtergo*, conſiſting of 11 Bailiwicks; of *Weſtergo*, which has 9; of *Sevenwolden*, that has 10; and of the Towns of the Province, which are 11. Theſe 4 Members ſend each their Deputies to the Provincial States, *viz.* two from every Bailiwick, and two from every Town, who repreſent the Sovereignty of the Province, and conclude all Affairs of what Importance ſoever, without either Recourſe to thoſe who deputed them, or being obliged to know their Intentions, which the Deputies of the other Provinces are ſtrictly obliged to, as we have heard already. They differ likewiſe in this, that whereas in the other Provinces, the Nobles and the Towns chuſe the Deputies which compoſe the States. Here 'tis quite otherwiſe; for every Bailiwick, which is compoſed of a certain Extent of Country, and Number of Villages, from 10 to 20, is govern'd by a *Greetman*, or Bailiff, with a certain Number of Aſſeſſors, who with him determine all Civil Cauſes in the firſt Inſtance, but with Appeal to the Provincial Court of Juſtice. When the States are to be aſſembled, the Bailiff calls together all thoſe who poſſeſs a certain Quantity of Land within his Diſtrict; and theſe Men chuſe, by Plurality of Voices, the Deputies which each Bailiwick ſends to the Aſſembly. This Aſſembly of the States diſpoſes of all vacant Employments, chuſe the 9 Deputies which make a conſtant Council of State for the Province, and likewiſe 12 Counſellors, *viz.* 3 from every Quarter, who compoſe the Court of Juſtice for the Province, and judge of all Civil Cauſes in the laſt Reſort, but of all Criminal from the firſt Inſtance; there being no other Criminal Court in the Province. The Towns that ſend Deputies to the States are, *Leeuwaerden, Dockum, Franeker, Bolſwert, Sneek, Tiſt, Harlingen, Oſtergo, Weſtergo*, and *Sevenwolden*; which are but 10 according to the *Atlas Hiſtorique*, though Sir *William* make them 11.

The

Digitized by Google

The Government of the Province of Overiſſel.

ALL Gentlemen poſſeſs'd of Seigneurial Lands or Lordſhips, have a Seat in the Provincial States; and the Towns of *Deventer*, *Zwol*, and *Kampen*, ſend their Deputies.

The Government of the Province of Groningen.

AS this Province lies on the ſame Tract of Land, they chuſe their Deputies from the Country in the ſame Manner; and the Towns of *Groningen* and *Omlands* ſend their Deputies.

Sir *William* obſerves, That theſe 3 Provinces laſt mentioned, with the Countries betwixt the *Weſer*, the *Iſſel*, and the *Rhine*, were the Seat of the ancient *Friſons*, who under the Name of *Saxons*, becauſe their Swords were made like a Sythe, and by them called *Seaxes*, conquer'd *England*. He ſays, the Biſhop of *Munſter*, whoſe Territories lie in this Tract of Land, gave him the firſt certain Evidences that this was the Seat of our *Saxon* Anceſtors; in which he was confirmed by many Things he obſerv'd in the Hiſtory of thoſe Times, and by the great Affinity that he found betwixt the old *Engliſh*, and the ancient Language of the *Friſons*, whoſe Tongue to this Day has many Words of the ſame Signification and Sound with ours, and differs much from that of the *Hollanders*. He likewiſe obſerv'd many Things in their Conſtitution which looks like the Origine of ours, particularly their Bailiffs or *Greetmen* reſemble our Sheriffs; their Aſſeſſors, our Juſtices; their Provincial Courts, our Quarter-Seſſions; their 4 ſeveral Quarters, our Circuits; and the Compoſition of their States, our Houſe of Commons. To this Original he likewiſe aſcribes, that we never find in *England* upon Record any Lord or Lordſhip that pretends to the Exerciſe of High or Low Juſtice, which ſeems to be a Badge of ſome ancient Sovereignty, thô they be frequent among our Neighbours both in Monarchies and popular States.

The Government of their Cities.

FOR a Specimen of that, we ſhall, according to Promiſe, give an Account of the Government of *Amſterdam*. The Sovereign Authority of this City lies in their Senate of 36 Men, who adminiſter Juſtice according to their ancient Forms, in the Names of Officers and Places of Judicature. They levy Money in what Proportions they pleaſe, according to Occaſion. The Senators are for Life, and were anciently choſen by the Votes of all the Freemen; but to avoid Tumults, becauſe of their Number, about 140 Years ago the Burgers agreed, that they ſhould be choſen by the Senate for the Time being; and when any of 'em dies, the reſt chuſe a new one, which makes their Government a ſort of Oligarchy; and their Example was in a ſhort Time followed by the other Towns of the Province, but with different Numbers, according to their Extent. The Senate chuſes the Deputies which are ſent from the City to the States of *Holland*, and the Burgomaſters and Eſchevins of the Town. The Burgomaſters are 4, 3 of which are choſen Annually, and one of 'em continues two Years, and preſides the firſt 3 Months of the 2d: After which the other three, call'd the Governing Burgomaſters, preſide by Turns. They are choſen by the Majority of thoſe in the Senate, who have been Burgomaſters or Eſchevins. They reſemble our Lord Mayor and Aldermen, repreſent the Dignity of the Government, do the Honour of the City on all Occaſions, diſpoſe of the vacant Offices that fall in their Time, and pay the Money out of the Treaſury for the Occaſions of the City, as they judge neceſſary. They keep the Key of the Bank of *Amſterdam*, and have the Inſpection of it, which is never open'd except one of 'em be preſent. They likewiſe inſpect the Stadthouſe, Fortifications, and publick Buildings. This Office is of the greateſt Truſt, Authority, and Dignity, but not of any great Profit, their Salary being but 500 Gilders a Year each; only it paves the Way to other Employments in the City that are more gainful; and thô they have Officers at their Diſpoſal, worth 5000 Gilders

Digitized by Google

per Annum, they never take any Money for them, becauſe that would ruin their Credit, and prevent their being choſen to other Places of Profit; but they may beſtow Vacancies upon their Friends or Relations if they be capable. They are obliged to no extraordinary Expence in their Habits, Attendants, or Tables; but on all publick Occaſions, are waited on by Men in publick Salary from the Town; and the Charge of whatever Feaſts they make for Princes and Foreign Miniſters, *&c.* is defrayed out of the publick Treaſury, and proportion'd to their own Diſcretion. At other Times, they appear with all the Plainneſs and Modeſty of private Citizens; and when their Time expires, they are of courſe diſpoſed into other beneficial Employments of the Town, except they have loſt their Credit by Miſmanagement. There are 9 Eſchevins, of which 7 are choſen Annually, and 2 of the preceding Year continue. A double Number is nam'd by the Senate, out of which the Burgomaſters now chuſe whom they think fit, as the Prince of *Orange* did in the former Conſtitution. They are Sovereign Judges in all Criminal Cauſes; but in Civil, there lies an Appeal from them to the Court of the Province, if it exceed a certain Sum; yet they pronounce Sentence of Death upon no Man without firſt adviſing with the Burgomaſters, tho' they are not obliged to follow their Opinion; but this is reckon'd a neceſſary Precaution for the Lives of their Subjects, which are ſoon cut off, but never to be retrieved. Under theſe Sovereign Magiſtrates are the Treaſurers, who receive and pay all the publick Money; the *Scout*, who takes Care of the Peace, ſeizes Criminals, and ſees Juſtice executed; ſo that he reſembles our Sheriffs; the Penſioner, who is a Civilian, vers'd in the Cuſtoms, Records, and Privileges of the City; concerning which, he informs the Magiſtrates, vindicates the Privileges of the City, is Servant to the Senate and Burgomaſters, delivers their Meſſages, makes their Harangues on publick Occaſions, and reſembles our Recorder.

The Revenues of this City riſe from the conſtant Exciſe upon all ſorts of Commodities bought and ſold within their Precinct, from the Rents of Houſes or Lands that belong in common to the City; from certain Taxes upon every Houſe for charitable Uſes; Repairs and Ornaments of their Publick Buildings and Fortifications; from extraordinary Levies agreed to by the Senate for their Quota of the publick Charge laid on by the States of the Province, or by the Deputies of the States General, for the Support of the Union: And all theſe Payments are made into the common Stock of the City; ſo that their whole Revenue may be more eaſily calculated. Some compute it at 50000 Gilders *per* Day; and Sir *Wm. Temple* ſays, he has heard it affirm'd, that *Amſterdam* pays above 1600000 *l.* Sterling *per Annum* for the Uſe of the City, the Province and the Union. The Author of *The Hiſtory of the United Provinces* ſays, in 1650, the Exciſe of Beer, Fleſh, and Corn, carried to the Mill at *Amſterdam*, was lett at 1600000 Gilders, without reckoning the Exciſe of Wine, Turf, *&c.* the Taxes upon Houſes, and the Income of Weights, for which there are 3 noble Buildings in different Parts of this City; one of which, before the Stadthouſe, brings in above 100000 Gilders *per Annum*.

The Power of the Stadtholder.

THO' this Office be now extinguiſh'd by the Death of K. *William* in all the other Provinces but *Frieſland*, we ſhall give this brief Account of it from Sir *Wm. Temple*: He had the Command of all Land and Sea Forces as Captain-General and Admiral, with a Diſpoſition of all Military Commands, the Power of pardoning the Penalty of Crimes, the chuſing of Magiſtrates upon the Nomination of the Towns; for they preſented three to him, out of which he choſe one; nor did the States uſe to reſolve any important Matter without his Advice. Beſides, as the States General repreſented the Sovereignty, the Prince repreſented the Dignity of the State by the publick Guards, and the Attendance of all Military Officers, by the Application of all Foreign Miniſters, and all Pretenders at home, by the Splendour of his Court, and the Magnificence of his Expence, ſupported not only by the Penſions and Rights of his ſeveral Charges and Commands, but by a mighty Patrimonial Revenue in Lands, Sovereign Prin-

Digitized by Google

Principalities, and Lordſhips in *France*, *Germany*, *Burgundy*, and ſeveral Parts of the 17 Provinces; ſo as Prince *Henry* was us'd to anſwer ſome that would have flatter'd him into the Deſigns of a more arbitrary Power, that he had as much as any wife Prince would deſire in that State, ſince he wanted none beſides that of puniſhing Men, and raiſing Money; whereas he had rather the Envy of the firſt ſhould lie upon the Forms of the Government; and he knew the other could never be ſupported without the Conſent of the People, to that Degree which was neceſſary for the Defence of ſo ſmall a State againſt ſuch mighty Neighbours. The Greatneſs of this State, ſays Sir *William*, ſeems much to conſiſt in theſe Orders, how confus'd ſoever, and of different Pieces they may ſeem, but more in two main Effects of them, *viz.* the good Choice of the Officers of chief Truſt in the Cities, Provinces, and State, and the great Simplicity and Modeſty in the common Port, or Way of Living of their Chief Miniſters; without which, the Abſoluteneſs of the Senate in each Town, and the Immenſity of the Taxes throughout the whole State, would never be endur'd by the People with any Patience, being both of 'em greater than in many of theſe Governments, which are eſteem'd moſt arbitrary among their Neighbours; but in the Aſſemblies, and Debates of their Senates, every Man's Abilities are diſcover'd as their Diſpoſitions are in the Conduct of their Lives and Domeſtick Affairs. The Obſervation of which either raiſes or ſuppreſſes the Credit of particular Men, both among the People, and the Senates of the Towns, who, to maintain their Authority with leſs popular Envy, give much to the general Opinion of the People in the Choice of their Magiſtrates.

To this Sir *William* adds, That the Salaries of all the great Officers of this State are very ſmall, that of their Vice-Admiral not being above 500 *l. per Annum*, and that of the Penſioner of *Holland* not above 200. Thus, ſays he, this ſtomachful People, who could not endure the leaſt Exerciſe of arbitrary Power or Impoſitions, or the Sight of any Foreign Troops under the *Spaniſh* Government, have been ſince inur'd to all of 'em in the higheſt Degree under their own popular Magiſtrates, bridled with hard Laws, terrify'd with ſevere Executions, environ'd with Foreign Troops, and burthen'd with the greateſt Hardſhip, and Variety of Taxes, that was ever known under any Government; but all this, whilſt the Way to Offices and Authority lies through thoſe Qualities, which acquire the general Eſteem of the People; whilſt no Man is exempted from the Courſe of the Law; whilſt the Guard of the Inland and Trading Towns is left to the Burgers themſelves; whilſt no great Riches are ſeen to enter by publick Payments into private Purſes, either to raiſe Families, or to feed the Prodigality of luxurious Men: And while all publick Monies are applied to the Safety, Greatneſs, or Honour of the State, and the Magiſtrates bear an equal Share in all the Burthens they impoſe, the People bear it patiently.

Of their People, and Diſpoſitions.

Tacitus and other *Roman* Writers reckon'd the ancient *Batavi* or *Hollanders* to be the braveſt of the *Germans*, and the moſt ſteady Defenders of their Liberties, for which the *Romans* exempted them from Tribute, and demanded only Auxiliary Troops from them. Their Warlike Temper ſeems to have continued from that Time to the full Recovery of their Liberty from the *Spaniards*: Since which, if it has admitted of any Declenſion, it muſt be aſcrib'd to their general Application to Trade, and their Employment of Foreign Troops; but ſuch of 'em as are train'd to War, have even ſince that Time prov'd, that they ſtill retain the Bravery of their Anceſtors; and for their Love to Liberty, 'tis as prevalent as ever. Sir *Wm. Temple* divides them into 5 Claſſes, *viz.* the Boors, who cultivate the Lands; the Mariners and Watermen, who ſupply their Ships and Inland Boats; the Merchants or Traders, who fill their Towns; the Renteeners, or thoſe that live in their chief Cities upon their Rents or other Eſtates; and the Gentlemen and Officers of their Armies. The firſt, he ſays, are diligent, but dull, not to be dealt with by hard Words, but eaſily manag'd by fair Treatment, and will yield to plain

Digitized by Google

Reason, if allow'd Time to understand it. In the Country, not too near the great Towns, they are plain and honest, content with their own, and not covetous, feed most upon Herbs, Roots, and Milks, which he thinks to be the Cause why their Strength and Vigour falls short of their Bulk. Their Mariners, he says, are plain, but rough, surly, and ill-manner'd, which he ascribes to the Element they live on; to their Food, which is generally Fish and Corn; and partly to their Conversation. Their Valour, he says, is rather passive than active, which perhaps is a little strain'd; for we have felt to our Cost, that they can give Blows as well as take them. Their Merchants and Tradesmen living in great Towns, he says, are more mercurial, thô not very inventive; but so good at Imitation, that many times they exceed the Original. They are Men of Industry and Application, are apt to take Advantage of the Ignorance of those they deal with, and are great Exacters, where the Law is in their own Hand; but when they deal with Men of equal Understanding, and are under the Reach of Justice, they are the plainest and best Dealers in the World: But this he thinks proceeds more from Custom than Conscience. Those, he says, in great Cities, who live on their Patrimonies, are better bred, but like the others in Garb and Parsimony. They breed their Youth generally at Schools and Universities, but chiefly to the Study of the Civil Law, which has not the Force of Law among them, but is pleaded before their Courts, and complied with, where they have no Laws of their own to the contrary, as far as the Authority of Men esteem'd wise passes for Reason. After they have finish'd their Studies, they travel for some Years, chiefly into *England* and *France*, not much to *Italy*, and less to *Spain*, and seldom to the *North*, unless in the Train of their Publick Ministers. The chief End of their Breeding, is to fit them for the Service of their Country in the Magistracy and Government; and from these, he says, proceed most of their Civil Officers, being descended of Families who frequently have been Magistrates of their native Towns for many Years, and some for several Ages; and of such were the Chief of their Ministers and Councils when he was there, and not Mechanicks, as is commonly said among Foreigners; not but that many Merchants and Traders are frequently Magistrates, and deputed to their States: Nor do their States think it below them to apply their Stocks in carrying on some beneficial Trade by Servants, in Manufactures and otherwise; but the Generality of their States and Magistrates are of the other Sort, whose Estates consist in their Salaries, Rents of Lands, Interest of Money upon the Cantores, in Actions of the *East-India* Company, or in Shares upon the Adventures of great Merchants. Nor do those Families who are almost constantly in the Magistracy rise that Way to excessive Riches, but content themselves with the Honour and Esteem they acquire by being useful to the Publick, and a frugal Way of Living. The mighty Growth and Excess of Riches is among their Merchants and Traders, who apply themselves that Way, and are the better content with having little Share in the Government, since they are secure in what they possess. Yet when they attain to great Wealth, they frequently marry their Children into the Families of Magistrates, and by that Means pave their Way to Honour, which does not here lie in Titles, but in publick Employments.

Their Nobles are mostly employed in the Military and Civil Officers of the Provinces or State, differ from the rest in their Way of Living; and having been bred much abroad, affect rather the Garb of neighbouring Courts, than the popular Air of their own Country; value themselves more upon their Nobility, than in other Countries where 'tis more common; and think it dishonourable to match below their own Rank, even tho' they could better their Fortunes by it; and much imitate the *French* in their Mien and Way of Living, thô they copy them but sorrily, and would do better to improve the Customs and Virtues proper to their own Country; tho' otherwise, Sir *William* says, they are an honest, good-natur'd, Gentlemanly sort of Men, and generally acquit themselves with Honour in the Service of their Country. Their Military Officers, and the Sons of the rich Merchants, imitate the Gentry, and the latter affect Employments, rather in the Army than in the State; and are desirous to see a

Court

Digitized by Google

Court in their Country, that they may value themſelves at home upon the Cuſtoms they have learn'd abroad. Theſe, he ſays, are the general Diſpoſitions of the *Dutch*; and among all the ſeveral Ranks there's a great Frugality, it being reckon'd as diſhonourable here that a Man ſhould ſpend his whole Income, as 'tis to be vicious and profligate in other Parts. This enables them to bear their heavy Taxes with the more Eaſe: And they pay as willingly to the making of Canals, Bridges, Cawſeys, pleaſant Walks and Groves, near their great Cities, and to the Beauty, Conveniency, and ſometimes Magnificence, of their publick Works, in which they take as much Delight, and are as proud of them, as People in other Countries are of their private Poſſeſſions. What they have to ſpare beyond what is neceſſary for their private Maintenance, and the publick Impoſts, they lay out in the Ornament and Furniture of their Houſes. Thus, he ſays, their publick Works, as Cawſeys, Canals, *&c.* are always finiſhed in the appointed Time; and the Way they made from the *Hague* to *Skeveling* was a Work becoming the old *Romans*, conſidering how quickly 'twas diſpatched.

Their Charity, he ſays, is National, which appears by their Care to ſet their Poor at work, and to provide for ſuch as are not able in well endow'd Hoſpitals. He gives a particular Inſtance of this in one at *Enchuyſen* for aged Seamen, where, he ſays, he met with the only rich Man that ever he ſaw in his Life; for when he offer'd him a Crown for having ſhew'd him the Hoſpital, and the adjoining Church, and giving him a pleaſant Account of his Adventures by Sea, the Man refus'd it, and told Sir *William*, That he had no need of Money, being plentifully ſupplied with all Neceſſaries in the Hoſpital. He adds, That in general all Paſſions and Appetites ſeem to run lower here than in other Countries, Avarice excepted; and this they chiefly feed by Induſtry and Parſimony, which makes it ſcarce a Crime. They ſeldom quarrel, except in Drink; and both Sexes are generally chaſt, being little given to Amours. The Dulneſs of their Air diſpoſes them to ſtrange Aſſiduity, and Patience in every thing they undertake, which he thinks to be the main Reaſon of the great Progreſs they have made in Arts and Trade, and of the Fatigue they are able to endure in Arms. He thinks the ſame Quality in their Air inclines them to eating and drinking, in which they are charged with Exceſs; but they think it neceſſary for Health, conſidering their thick and foggy Climate, the Coldneſs of their Complexion, and conſtant Application to Buſineſs; but he ſeldom knew any of their Chief Miniſters or Officers guilty of drinking much; and if at any time they exceeded, it was rather in Complaiſance to their Company at publick Entertainments, than from Inclination; and their Merchants and Traders think it ſcarce lawful to drink, till after they have done their Buſineſs at the Exchange; but in the Evening, apply themſelves to their Diverſions.

For the Cruelty ſo frequently laid to their Charge, becauſe of what they barbarouſly did to ſome of our Men in the *Eaſt-Indies*, and the Murther of their Penſionary *De Wit* and his Brother. Sir *William* ſays, the latter at leaſt deſerv'd a better Return from his Country, after 18 Years ſpent in their Service, gives him a very great Character, and ſays, that whenever he was blinded, 'twas by the Paſſion he had for what he eſteem'd the Intereſt of his Country: But this Action, he ſays, is rather to be attributed to the Misfortunes they were then under, than to any Cuſtoms or Diſpoſitions he could obſerve among them; but he muſt confeſs, that Mankind is a various Creature, and not to be known, except he be ſeen in his Rage as well as in his Drink. They are generally not ſo long liv'd as in better Airs, and begin to decay early at *Amſterdam*: Yet at the *Hague*, he has known People a good deal above 70 in perfect Health and Senſe; but this is not ſo uſual in that Country, as in *England* and elſewhere. The Diſeaſes of their Climate are the Gout and Scurvy; and in hot and dry Summers, they have infectious Fevers, eſpecially at *Amſterdam* and *Leyden*, by which they either die ſuddenly, or languiſh long before they recover; but Plagues are not frequent, or at leaſt they ſuppreſs the Talk of 'em. Strangers, he ſays, are apt to complain of the Spleen among them, but the Natives ſeldom or never. In ſhort, he ſays, *Holland* is a Country where the Earth is better than the Air, and

Digitized by Google

Profit more in Requeſt than Honour; where there's more Senſe than Wit; more good Nature than good Humour; and more Wealth than Pleaſure; where a Man would chuſe rather to travel, than to live; may find more Things to obſerve, than to deſire; and more Perſons to eſteem, than to love.

Their Ancient Religion.

THE *Atlas Hiſtorique* ſays, while they were Heathens, they worſhip'd the following Idols, *viz.* 1. The *Sun*, from which they derive their *Sunday*, and repreſented it holding a burning Wheel upon a Pedeſtal. 2. The *Moon*, from whom they derive their *Monday*, and repreſented her as a Woman with large Ears, holding a Moon in her Hand, and ſtanding on a Pedeſtal. She was particularly worſhip'd by Travellers and Fiſhermen. 3. *Twiſco*, from whom they derive their *Tueſday*. He was the moſt eſteem'd, repreſented like an old Man in a looſe Robe, holding a Scepter in his Hand, and ſtanding on a Pedeſtal. 4. *Woden*, from whom they derive their *Wedneſday*. He was their God of War, and was repreſented ſtanding on a Pedeſtal, with a drawn Scimeter in his Right Hand, a Buckler in his Left, a ſort of a Crown on his Head, and a Coat of Mail girded about him. 5. *Thor*, from whom they derive their *Thurſday*. He was repreſented like an old Man on a Throne, with a Crown on his Head, a Scepter in his Right Hand, and Robes on his Body. They ſuppos'd him to preſide over Wind, Rain, and Thunder. 6. *Friga*, from whom they derive their *Friday*. They repreſented this Idol in Form of a Woman with a Helmet on her Head, a *Cornucopia* in her Right Hand, a Bow on her Left Arm, and worſhip'd her as the Goddeſs of Peace, Plenty, and Love, with Groves, Fruit-Trees, and Corn-Fields, about her, and a Perſon worſhiping before her. 7. *Seater*, from whom they derive their *Saturday*. They repreſented him as an old Man in a cloſe Habit, ſtanding on a Pedeſtal, with a Pail full of Fruit in his Right, and holding up a Wheel in his Left Hand. 8. *Ermenſeul*, the *Saxon* Idol formerly mentioned, whom they repreſented in Armour, with a Crown on his Head, a Spear in his Right Hand, and a Buckler in his Left; and him they worſhip'd after their Return from their Victories.

The ſame Author ſays, That their Converſion to Chriſtianity is aſcrib'd to St. *Willebroeck*, an *Engliſh* Biſhop, and 8 of his Companions, who about the Year 700 went from *England*, and preached to them.

Their Preſent Religion.

WE have formerly told how Popery was laid aſide, and the Reformation eſtabliſh'd; upon which they agreed on a Confeſſion of Faith, conſiſting of 37 Articles, call'd, *The Belgick Confeſſion*, in which their Church continued unanimous for a conſiderable Time, both as to Doctrine and Government, the latter being Presbytery, for which they declar'd in the 30th, 31ſt, and 32d Articles of their Confeſſion. But there happen'd Diviſions among them afterwards, of which we ſhall give a brief Account from the Preface to the Acts of the Synod of *Dort*, directed to all the Reform'd Churches, approv'd by that Synod, and publiſh'd, together with their Acts, by the Authority of the States General at *Dort* in 1620. This we judged the more neceſſary, becauſe thoſe Diviſions were fomented by that Faction of the State called *Barneveltz*, or the *Louveſtein* Faction, who made it a Handle to cover their Deſigns againſt the Family of *Orange*, in order to leſſen their Power, which they alledged was dangerous to the Republick.

The firſt that attack'd their Doctrine were 3 Popiſh Prieſts, who deceitfully pretended to embrace the Reformation, and were admitted as Miniſters, tho' ſtill Papiſts in Heart; but they were quickly ſuppreſs'd by the Care of the Church and State. The next who occaſioned their fatal Diviſions was *Jacobus Arminius*, in their Language called *Van Hermine*, one of the Miniſters of *Amſterdam*, a Man of a good, but luxuriant Genius, and fond of Novelty. He attack'd the Doctrine and the Reputation of the chief Reformers, firſt privately, but at laſt publickly, by ſpreading the *Pelagian* Errors; for which, being rebuk'd by the Church, he forbore for ſome Time in pub-

Digitized by Google

publick, but ſtill did it in private, and at laſt challeng'd *Franciſcus Junius*, Profeſſor of Divinity at *Leyden*, to a publick Diſpute on that Head. *Junius* dying in 1602, *Arminius*, contrary to the Mind of the Presbytery of *Amſterdam*, was by a Faction of the State and Church called to ſucceed him after a Conference with *Gomarus* before the Curators of the Univerſity, and the Deputies of the Synod, in which he renounc'd the *Pelagian* Errors, approv'd what St. *Auſtin* had writ againſt them, with their Condemnation by the Fathers, and upon this was admitted. In order to remove all Suſpicion at firſt, he defended the eſtabliſh'd Doctrine in the publick Diſputations againſt his own Opinion, as was ingenuouſly confeſs'd in Print by *Corvinus*, one of his Followers: But in a Year or two after he publickly maintain'd the contrary, by the Arguments of the Jeſuits and Socinians, which he gave out in Manuſcript, and his Opinions were ſpread by ſuch as he taught in the Univerſity. Upon this, the Synod ſent Deputies to confer with him, with Orders to report to them what paſs'd in the Conference; but he declin'd it. In 1605, he was admoniſh'd by the Magiſtrates of the City, and ſome of the Univerſity, to come to a friendly Conference with the Presbytery of *Leyden*; which he alſo declin'd. Upon this, the Synod of *South-Holland* laid the Matter before the Curators, and enjoin'd the Miniſters in their Diſtrict to ſubſcribe the receiv'd Confeſſion and Catechiſm, and deſired the Curators to command the Profeſſors of *Leyden* to do the like; but they refus'd, on Pretence of referring the Matter to a National Synod, which was to meet in a little Time. The *Arminians* being by this Means emboldened to preach publickly againſt the receiv'd Doctrine, and to contemn the Synod, the Deputies of the Church applied to the States in 1606 for a National Synod, which had been delay'd for many Years. This was agreed to in Appearance, on Condition of inſerting a Clauſe in the Letters for calling it, that the Confeſſion and Catechiſm ſhould be reviſed. The Church ſaid, there was no need of that Clauſe, ſince every Man had Liberty to propoſe his Objections in the Synod, and therefore deſir'd it might be called in the uſual Form: But the States of *Holland* inſiſting upon it, the Clauſe was added, and Letters were given to the ſeveral Churches of the Provinces, to ſignify the Conſent of the States for calling a National Synod. The Church rejoyc'd at this, tho' they were offended at the Clauſe, becauſe, as it happen'd afterwards, they apprehended the *Arminians* would take this as a Licence to publiſh their Doctrine. In the mean time, the Synod of *South-Holland* order'd ſuch of their Miniſters as had any Objections againſt the Confeſſion and Catechiſm, to lay them before their Presbyteries, that they might be referred to the National Synod; and they order'd the Profeſſors of Divinity to do the like: But the *Arminians* declin'd both, pretending they were not ready; and *Arminius* did the ſame, on Pretence that he would fully explain himſelf at the National Synod. In 1607, the States General called together Divines from the ſeveral Provinces, to conſult with them about the Time, Place, and Manner of holding this Synod; but *Arminius* and his Followers, who were called to this Meeting, would neither agree to be determin'd by the Synod, nor to exhibit their Opinions. This occaſion'd the National Synod to be put off, which further embolden'd the *Arminians*. Upon this, the Church preſſed for a Provincial Synod of *South* and *North Holland*, where Arminianiſm obtain'd moſt, to take Cognizance of the Matter; but the States put it off, on Pretence that they wanted Time, being then about treating with the *Spaniards*. *Arminius*, to avoid the Determination of the Synod, petition'd that he and his Adverſaries might be heard by the Sovereign Council. The Church oppos'd this, as being contrary to their Conſtitution to bring Church Controverſies in the firſt Inſtance before the Civil Magiſtrate, to whom in caſe of Neceſſity they were to be referred by the Synod; but 'twas carried againſt them by the States, who told them, The Sovereign Council would refer the Judgment of it to the Provincial Synod. When the Divines on both Sides came before the Sovereign Council in 1608, *Arminius* inſiſted, that his Adverſaries ſhould exhibit his Charge, and that he might act the Part of a Defendant. *Gomarus* oppos'd it, as a Thing not proper for Churchmen to accuſe one another in the firſt Inſtance before the Civil

Digitized by Google

Civil Magistrate; but declared, he was ready to prove before a lawful Synod, that *Arminius* had taught what was contrary to the Confession of Faith and Catechism; and that for the Satisfaction of the States, he thought it more proper that both of 'em should give a plain Declaration of their Doctrine before the Court, who would thereby be informed of the Matter of Fact, which was all they were to take Cognizance of; since the States had promis'd, that the Judgment of the Matter should be referred to the Synod. *Arminius* refus'd this, and boasted, that tho' he had been charged with Heterodox Doctrine, his Adversaries durst not accuse him. Upon this, *Gomarus* prov'd to the Court, by *Arminius*'s own Writings, that in the Point of Justification, he had taught what was contrary to the Confession. *Arminius* being thus convicted, had Recourse to another Subterfuge, and propos'd, that both of 'em should deliver their Opinion by Way of *Theses*, with their mutual Animadversions, which *Gomarus* agreed to. The Conference being ended, the Sovereign Council reported to the States, that the Difference betwixt 'em was of no great Moment, and related chiefly to Subtilties about Predestination. *Gomarus* shew'd the contrary, and said, which afterwards came to pass, that the Differences betwixt them were so many, and of such Importance, that he was afraid they would in a little Time set one Church, Province and City, against another. The States order'd however, that what passed at this Conference should be sealed up, and communicated to no body till the Meeting of a National Synod. The Church perceiving that this was done in Favour of *Arminius*, lest his Opinion should appear under his own Hand, they petition'd that a Provincial or National Synod should be called as soon as possible to determine the Matter; but instead of that, the *Arminians* prevailed to have the Provincial Synod put off, contrary to Custom, till *October* following. In the mean time the Church order'd the *Arminians* to give in their Objections to their respective Presbyteries in time, that they might be laid before the Synod, which they refus'd, and the Provincial Synod was put off for two Months longer; but they had Allowance to meet in their particular Synods. Upon this, the Synod of *South-Holland* order'd the *Arminians* in their District, and the Professors of *Leyden*, to exhibit their Objections in a Month's Time, on Pain of Church Censure. To avoid this, the *Arminians* prevail'd with the States to order those Objections to be sent to themselves, seal'd up, until the Provincial Synod should meet. *Arminius* being press'd to Obedience by the Deputies of the Church, he promis'd to give them an Answer: But in the mean time, in a General Assembly of the States, he made a large Speech, wherein he inveigh'd against the establish'd Doctrine, and endeavour'd to make it odious to the States. To which *Gomarus* gave a full and a solid Answer; and shew'd, that his Objections were the same made use of by the Jesuits and Socinians, and other Enemies of the Reformed Churches; and that his chief Design in appealing to the Civil Magistrate in the first Instance, was to pour Contempt upon the Church, before whom he knew he was not able to defend his Opinions; and therefore he labour'd all that he could to hinder the calling of a Synod. In 1609, the Deputies of the Church pressed *Arminius* to deliver them his Objections, according to his Promise; which he refused, on Pretence, that as the States had order'd the rest of the *Arminian* Preachers to deliver their Objections to them, he expected the like Order. By these Delays, the *Arminians* gain'd Ground. *Bertius*, Regent of the Divinity College at *Leyden*, did openly maintain their Doctrine; and *Adolphus Venator*, one of the Ministers of *Alcmaer*, and several others, did avowedly preach Pelagianism and Socinianism, for which they were suspended by the Church; and in *Venator*'s Censure, there was Notice taken of his lewd Life: But the *Arminians*, by Means of *Barnevelt*, *Grotius*, and others, procur'd an Order to have those Ministers restor'd, with which the Church declar'd they could not in Conscience comply, and petition'd the States for a Provincial Council, according to their Promise. *Arminius* and his Followers finding the States inclin'd to it, in order to divert them, propos'd another Conference before the States by a certain Number of Divines on both Sides, which was obtain'd. The Church desir'd that it might be manag'd in Writing,

Digitized by Google

ting, to prevent such Misrepresentations as had formerly happen'd; but the States order'd it should be *viva voce*, and afterwards writ, and laid before the Provincial Synod. They likewise appointed that *Venator*, tho' depos'd for his Lewdness, as well as his Errors, should be one of the Conference; but 'twas soon broke off, because of *Arminius*'s bad Health. The States order'd that both Sides should write what had pass'd, in order to be laid before the Provincial Synod, which was perform'd on the Part of the Church, who press'd for a Synod; and in the mean time *Arminius* died without performing what he had promis'd. The *Arminians* growing more bold by the Delay of the Synod from Time to Time, and being absolutely against one, they endeavour'd to perswade the States not to suffer one to be call'd, according to the Constitution, but to name such Persons to compose the Synod, as they themselves thought fit, and to deprive the Church of her Freedom of Election; alledging, that they design'd to set up an Ecclesiastical Jurisdiction, independant of the State. Having by this Means procur'd the Synods to be further delay'd, the *Arminians* met privately, without Authority either from Church or State, drew up their Remonstrance against the establish'd Doctrine, from whence they were called *Remonstrants*; and having subscrib'd and deliver'd it to the States, they separated from the other Ministers, and made an open Schism; but prevail'd with the States not to give out any Copy of their Remonstrance. At the same time, contrary to the Mind of the Church, and of the Chief Magistrates of the Cities of *Holland*, they procured *Vorstius*, who was Professor of Divinity at *Steinfurt* in *Westphalia*, to be called to succeed *Arminius* as Professor of Divinity at *Leyden*, tho' he was then accused by the University of *Heydelberg* of being a Socinian, and publishing a Book concerning GOD, and the Divine Attributes, wherein he asserted, That GOD was Finite, Corporeal, compos'd of Essence and Accidents; That his Will was mutable; That he was liable to Passive Power, and other Monstrous Doctrines. In the mean time another Conference was appointed betwixt the *Calvinists* and *Remonstants* before the States, to be manag'd by Writing; when the *Calvinists* having then got a Copy of the Remonstrance, prov'd that the *Arminians* had slander'd the Doctrine of the Reform'd Churches, and conceal'd their own Opinions. During this Conference, *Vorstius* came to the *Hague*, and endeavour'd to vindicate himself to the States. The Ministers charg'd him with the Book and Principles above-mention'd, and with having lately publish'd and interpolated *Socinus*'s Book concerning the Authority of the Holy Scriptures. After a Conference upon this Subject, the States asked the Ministers on both Sides, Whether he was fit to be Professor of Divinity? The *Arminians* answer'd, They had examin'd his Writings, and could find nothing in them inconsistent with Piety or Truth. The *Calvinists* maintain'd the contrary, and said, His Answers were so far from being satisfactory, that they confirmed their Suspicion of him, and humbly requested that he might not be admitted. *Vorstius* withdrawing, the Conference upon the 5 Articles was resum'd; which being continued for some Days, the States order'd both Sides to put in Writing what they had said, or had further to say, and send it to them. That in the mean time neither of them should boast of Victory; That they should be moderate in their Doctrine about the Articles, live in Peace and Charity with one another; and that the said Articles should remain as they were before; but they determin'd nothing as to *Vorstius*. Upon this, the Magistrates of *Dort* petition'd the States that he might not be called; in Compliance with which, they put a Stop to it. K. *James* I. of *Great Britain* having read *Vorstius*'s Book concerning the Divine Attributes, and marked his principal Errors with his own Hand, he admonished the States, by his Minister Sir *Ralph Winwood*, not to admit a Man to be Professor of Divinity who was guilty of such Blasphemies and Errors. But the Matter being delay'd, and *Vorstius* endeavouring to vindicate himself by Apologies and Answers, K. *James* insisted on his Demand; of which *Johnstoun*, in his *Lat. Hist. of Brit. Affairs*, Printed at *Amsterdam* in 1655, gives us this fuller Account; That the King sent *Vorstius*'s Book, with his own Remarks upon it, to Sir *Ralph*, with a Letter to the States, who had then admitted *Vorstius*, wherein he re-

pre-

Digitized by Google

preſented the Scandal they had given to the Reform'd Churches, and the Danger that would ariſe from it to the Proteſtant Religion, in which the Church of *England* and that of the *Netherlands* had hitherto agreed. The States anſwer'd, That *Vorſtius* was famous for his Learning, had writ well againſt *Bellarmin*; and upon hearing him and his Accuſers, they found no Cauſe to reject him, he having recanted his Errors. The King not being ſatisfied with this Anſwer, order'd his Book to be burnt in St. *Paul's* Church-yard; writ again to the States, quoted the blaſphemous Paſſages in *Vorſtius's* Book; and told them, he was ſo far from truly recanting his Errors, that he had maintain'd them in his Apology, and deſerv'd to be burnt as well as his Book. His Majeſty added, That he wonder'd how they could ſuffer his Apology to be publiſh'd in *Dutch*, and read by all their Subjects; That he had hop'd the Miſchiefs occaſioned by *Arminius* and his Followers to their Church and State would have made them more cautious; and told them, That one of their *Leyden* Divines had the Impudence to ſend a Book to the Archbiſhop of *Canterbury*, with a Letter, in both which he maintain'd the Apoſtacy of the Saints, and aſſerted, That this was not contrary to the Doctrine of the Church of *England*. The King inſiſted, That they ſhould baniſh *Vorſtius*, who was by his own Books convicted of Atheiſm and Blaſphemy, tho' he endeavour'd to deny it by Equivocations, to avoid the Puniſhment he deſerv'd; and adviſ'd them to chuſe another Profeſſor, who was free from Scandal. This Letter was dated the 7th of *October*, 1611. and ſent with Inſtructions to Sir *Ralph*, wherein the King took Notice, That he found *Vorſtius* had Patrons among the States, and order'd him to inſiſt on his being baniſh'd; and if he were not, to enter a Proteſtation in his Name againſt him. Sir *Ralph* obey'd his Orders, deliver'd them the King's Letter, with his Remarks on *Vorſtius's* Books and Apology; wherein, beſides what's above-mentioned, he aſſerted, That GOD was not Infinite nor Omnipreſent. Sir *Ralph* added, That 56 of the *Leiden* Students had petition'd againſt *Vorſtius's* Admiſſion; That he was condemn'd of many Errors by the Divines of *Baſle* and *Heydelberg*, and convicted by his own Books; and therefore inſiſted on his Baniſhment. The States deſired Sir *Ralph* to have Patience till they conferred about it, and anſwer'd him to this Effect, That the Curators of the Univerſity had, at their Requeſt, diſcharged him from being Profeſſor, but allow'd him to live at *Leyden* as a private Citizen, till the Matter ſhould be determined in the Meeting of the States in *February* next. Sir *Ralph* being diſſatisfied with this Anſwer, enter'd the King's Proteſt to this Effect, That their calling of *Vorſtius*, who was convicted of Blaſphemy and Hereſy, was diſhonourable to his Majeſty, who had oppos'd it, and a Scandal to all the Reform'd Churches: That inſtead of complying with his Majeſty's Requeſt, they obſtinately deny'd it: That their Anſwers were ambiguous and confus'd: That they had given *Vorſtius* Liberty to do that in private, which they were aſham'd he ſhould do in publick; therefore he proteſted againſt it, as an Injury and Reproach to the Reform'd Churches, and contrary to their League with the King, which was founded on their Communion in Religion; adding, That his Majeſty could not but expreſs his Reſentments, that *Vorſtius* was of more Account with them than their League with *Great Britain*: That he would publiſh the King's Proteſtation in Latin, that the World might ſee how much his Majeſty abhorr'd *Vorſtius*, and all the Abettors of his Blaſphemy and impious Hereſies; and that he would not ſpare the Blood of his Subjects, his Children, or himſelf, in Defence of the Purity of the Reform'd Religion. The States anſwer'd very reſpectfully, That tho' his Majeſty was partly diſappointed at preſent as to *Vorſtius*, they doubted not but the States would fully ſatisfy him at their next Meeting; which having not done, ſays *Johnſtoun*, but putting it off from Time to Time, his Majeſty publiſh'd a Book in Latin, Entitl'd, *Proteſtatio Antivorſtia*, wherein he prov'd *Vorſtius's* impious Opinions to be contrary to the Laws of GOD, Man, and Nature, and ſhew'd himſelf to be very well vers'd in Controverſial Divinity.

In the mean time, ſays the Preface to the Synod of *Dort*, ſome of *Vorſtius's* Diſciples in the Univerſity of *Franeker* publiſh'd a Book of *Fauſtus Socinus* about the Duty of Man, wherein they adviſed all ſuch as would be

Digitized by Google

be ſaved to leave the Communion of the Reform'd Churches, and to join with the *Photinians* and *Ebionites*; and this they recommended by a Preface. The States of *Frieſland* intercepted alſo ſome of their Letters, by which it appeared what Tricks they made uſe of to promote Socinianiſm with Privacy and Safety; in which Deſign, *Vorſtius*, *Utenbogardus*, and others, who appeared for the *Arminians*, were engaged. Upon this, the States of *Frieſland* order'd all thoſe Books to be burnt, baniſh'd the Students, and wrote to the States of *Holland* againſt *Vorſtius*; urging, that the Union of the Provinces, which was principally founded upon their Agreement in Religion, might not be broke for ſuch a Heretick. The States of *Zutphen* and *Guelderland* wrote to the ſame Purpoſe; upon which *Vorſtius* was order'd to remove to *Gouda*, where he might vindicate himſelf by Writing. Then the States order'd the Miniſters to draw up the State of the Controverſy about the 5 Articles, and to give their Advice how the Differences might be reconciled. The *Arminians* inſiſted on a mutual Toleration, and the *Calviniſts* urged to have the Doctrine on both Sides examin'd by the Word of GOD in a National Synod. The States were divided about it; but being informed, that they differ'd in other Things beſides the 5 Articles, they order'd that no Innovation ſhould be made in the receiv'd Doctrine.

After this, the *Arminians* ſtir'd up ſeveral Magiſtrates, by Slanders and Calumnies, to throw the *Calviniſts* out of the Churches, and put *Arminians* in their ſtead; who being forc'd upon the People in many Places, they left thoſe Preachers, and communicated with the *Calviniſts*. The firſt Violence of this Sort was done at *Alcmaer* in *Holland*, where *Venator* made the *Arminians* take Arms, throw out the *Calviniſt* Magiſtrates and Miniſters, and put *Arminians* in their Place. The like was done at *Rotterdam*, and *Epiſcopius* was forcibly impos'd on the Church of *Rhyſwick*; tho' he was ſo ſcandalous, that the Presbytery of *Amſterdam*, where he had been a Miniſter, refus'd to give him a Certificate of the Goodneſs of his Life and Doctrine. The *Arminians* rais'd a ſevere Proſecution in the Province of *Holland* againſt ſuch as ſeparated from them in 1612; and they did the like in *Guelderland*, *Utrecht*, and *Overiſſel*, where they threw out the *Calviniſts*, and ſet up a new ſort of Church Government, which was approved by the States of *Utrecht*, who gave a publick Toleration to the *Remonſtrants*; and in *Guelderland*, the *Arminians* hinder'd the Meeting of the Synod. *Epiſcopius* was, by the Intereſt of the *Arminians*, called to ſucceed *Vorſtius* as Profeſſor of Divinity at *Leiden*. The *Calviniſts*, to obviate thoſe Miſchiefs, ſent two Deputies from every Province to petition the States for a National Synod, according to Promiſe; but *Utenbogardus*, by his Intereſt with the Penſionary of *Holland*, prevented it. Upon this, the *Arminians* grew more inſolent every Day, and fill'd the Country with Tumults. Count *William Ludowick* of *Naſſau*, Governor of *Frieſland*, propoſed another Conference, in order to an Accommodation. The *Calviniſts* agreed to it, on Condition that the *Arminians* would declare their Agreement with the eſtabliſh'd Doctrine in every Thing elſe but the 5 Articles, which ſhould be referred to a National Synod. *Utenbogardus* promis'd a Compliance on the Part of the *Remonſtrants*, and a Conference was appointed in *Febr.* 1613. But by the Fraud of the *Arminians*, it came to nothing; for they would not ſubmit to the Deciſion of the Synod, nor forbear to innovate the eſtabliſh'd Doctrine, thô the States General had forbid them to do it.

About this Time, *Grotius* went over to *England* with a wrong State of the Controverſy; and by the Means of the Archbiſhop of *Canterbury* and *Caufabon*, (ſays *The Hiſtory of the United Provinces*) who had brought K. *James* to a more favourable Opinion of the *Arminians*, he obtain'd his Majeſty's Conſent for a Toleration to them. This (ſays the Preface to the Synod of *Dort*) being ſurreptitiouſly procured, and his Majeſty prevailed on to write to the States about it, according to a Copy given him by *Grotius*, made the *Arminians* more inſolent than ever; ſo that they drew up a Form of Toleration in 1614, which was pretended to be agreed to by the States, tho' oppos'd by many of 'em. However they publiſh'd it, and ſet up a new Way of calling Miniſters in 1615 by 4 Magiſtrates and 4 Preachers, in order to bring the *Arminians* into the Churches; and order'd this Method to be

Digitized by Google

obſerv'd through all the Provinces, which gave Occaſion to many new Tumults. Upon this, the Churches ſent Deputies to complain of it to the States; but when they came to the *Hague*, they were adviſed to forbear, till it was further urg'd upon them, ſince that Decree had not been confirm'd by all the States, and therefore could not have the Force of a Law. In the mean time the *Remonſtrants* prevail'd with ſome of the States to throw out ſuch Miniſters in their Juriſdiction as would not comply with it. Upon which, the ejected *Calviniſts* ſet up ſeparate Churches, which were countenanc'd and frequented by the Pr. of *Orange*, the Governor of *Frieſland*, and the Chief of the States. *Grotius* went to *Amſterdam* in 1616, to try if, with his Cunning and Eloquence, he could prevail with the Magiſtrates there to ſet up the new Form of Church Government, and eſtabliſh the Toleration; which they refus'd, and pleaded for a National Synod, in which they were ſeconded by the other chief Cities of *Holland*. The *Arminians* finding themſelves grown odious by thoſe Innovations and Tumults, they publiſh'd a ſecond Remonſtrance in 1617, wherein they endeavour'd to vindicate themſelves, and reproach'd the *Calviniſts* as Schiſmaticks, and the Cauſers of the Separation. To which they gave a ſolid Anſwer, and preſented it to the States.

In the mean time the Diſorders grew to ſuch a Height, as threaten'd the Ruin both of Church and State. Upon which, King *James* being better inform'd, he acquainted the States by Sir *Dudly Carleton*, his Miniſter, (ſays Mr. *Johnſtoun*) That they might expect his Aſſiſtance, if they would adhere to the eſtabliſh'd Religion; and Sir *Dudly*, according to his Inſtructions, repreſented to the States the Danger they were in of being either betray'd to *Spain*, or deſtroy'd by a Civil War: Therefore he adviſ'd them to make uſe of their Power and Authority againſt the impious Fury of the *Arminians*, who had tumultuouſly taken Arms, and to call a National Synod. Upon which, the States order'd the *Arminians* to forbear their diſorderly Practices, which they refus'd, ſtir'd up the People to Sedition, openly curs'd Prince *Maurice*, made the Burgers take Arms againſt their Garriſons, publiſh'd a ſcandalous Libel, call'd, *The Ballance*, againſt K. *James*, the Pr. of *Orange*, and the States, and inſulted K. *James*'s Miniſter. Upon this, the States declar'd the Author and Printer of the Libel to be guilty of High Treaſon, and promis'd a Reward to thoſe who could diſcover them. Complaints being brought to the States from all Places, of the Perſecution and Tumults raiſed by the *Arminians*, the Pr. of *Orange*, the States of *Zealand*, *Guelderland*, *Frieſland*, and *Groningen*, preſs'd for a National Synod. The *Arminians*, to prevent it, had Recourſe to their old Subterfuge of deſiring a Conference; which not being agreed to, they objected againſt a National Synod as contrary to the Union, by which every Province had a Sovereign Power in Point of Religion; and that this Right ought to be defended by Arms. To which 'twas anſwer'd, That they formerly had National Synods, which was their Conſtitution; and this being the common Cauſe of all the Provinces, and their Unanimity in Religion, the principal Cement of the Union, the Differences could not otherwiſe be determin'd. Upon this, the *Arminians* increas'd the Tumults, and enter'd into a Conſpiracy to raiſe Troops, which ſhould neither be ſubject to the States General nor the Prince of *Orange*, but obliged by Oath to defend the *Remonſtrants*, their Cauſe and Authority, as appear'd by their Letters. This oblig'd the States General at laſt to agree to a National Synod, and to invite all the Reform'd Churches to ſend Deputies to it, that it might have the greater Authority, becauſe the *Arminians*, as their laſt Shift, objected againſt a National Synod, alledging it would be partial, and appeal'd to an Oecumenical Synod. After this, particular Synods were order'd to chuſe their Deputies for the National Synod, which was perform'd in the uſual Manner in all the Provinces, except thoſe of *Holland* and *Utrecht*; where the *Arminians* being moſt numerous, and having form'd ſeparate Claſſes, both Parties choſe Deputies of their own. In the Synod of *Guelderland*, the *Arminians* were publickly convicted of ſlandering the *Calviniſts*, and ſeveral of 'em turn'd out for Immoralities and Errors.

The States General having ſeveral times ſent to thoſe of *Utrecht* to disband the Troops they

Digitized by Google

they had rais'd to defend the *Arminians*, in caſe they ſhould be condemn'd by the Synod, they refus'd to comply. Upon which, the States order'd the Prince of *Orange* with a Body of Troops to ſee it perform'd, which he did with great Prudence and Courage, and without any Effuſion of Blood, at *Nimeguen* and *Zutphen*, as well as at *Utrecht*, and ſeiz'd *Barnevelt*, *Hogerbert*, and *Grotius*, the chief Leaders of the Faction, who oppos'd the disbanding of the Troops. This great Service rais'd the Envy of the *Arminians* againſt him, ſays *Johnſtoun*, ſo that they threaten'd his Life, and put an Inſcription under his Statue, wiſhing that *Brutus* were alive again. After diſperſing their Troops, and ſeizing their Leaders, the chief of the *Arminian* Clergy, who had fomented the Tumult, ſuch as *Utenbogardius*, *Taurinus*, *Venator*, and *Grevinchovius*, fled out of the Country; and the *French* K. interpoſed by his Miniſter for *Barnevelt*, and their other Leaders, but without Effect. In the mean time the particular Synods turn'd out ſeveral of the *Arminian* Preachers for their bad Lives and groſs Errors; but cenſur'd none for their Opinion about the 5 Articles, becauſe they were referred to the National Synod, which met at *Dort* the 13th of *November*, 1618.

We have inſiſted the longer on this, becauſe thoſe Controverſies and Diſorders have made a great Noiſe in the World, and have been differently repreſented, according to the Inclinations of Writers; but this is the Subſtance of what was publiſhed by the Authority of the States, and the Synod, which we thought might be acceptable.

When the Synod met, the Foreign Divines were attended by Deputies from the State and Church to the Place appointed, received with much Honour by the Deputies of the States General, and plac'd according to their Rank; thoſe from *Great Britain* having the Preference. 'Twas agreed, that all the Proceedings ſhould be in Latin, becauſe of the Foreign Divines. 'Twas open'd by a Preface, Prayer, and Diſcourſe, in that Language, by *Balthazar Lydius*, Miniſter at *Dort*: Then one of the States Deputies, in a ſhort Speech, gave Thanks to the K. of *Great Britain* and the other Potentates for ſending their Deputies; acquainted them with the Occaſion of their Meeting, and how near both the Church and State of the United Provinces were brought to Ruin, had it not been for the Care of the States, and the Prince of *Orange*, in ſuppreſſing the Tumults, and calling the Synod. Then the reſpective Deputies exhibited their Powers; and the Articles of the States for calling the Synod, and ordering their Method of Proceeding, were read, in Subſtance as follows: 1. That there ſhould be a General Day of Prayer and Faſting for a Bleſſing on their Proceedings, and reſtoring Peace to the Church and State before they met. 2. That the 5 Controverted Articles ſhould be expreſly mentioned in the States Letter for calling it; but that other Grievances might be heard in their Place. 3. That every particular Synod ſhould ſend 6 of thoſe they thought fitteſt to the National Synod, 3 of 'em at leaſt to be Miniſters, and the other two or three Elders, or other Perſons of known Probity and Capacity. 4. That the *French* Churches in the Dominions of the States, and in the *Spaniſh* Provinces, ſhould be invited to ſend Deputies. 5. That the K. of *Great Britain*, the Proteſtant Churches of *France*, the Electors *Palatine* and *Brandenburg*, the Landgrave of *Heſſe*, and the Proteſtant Churches of *Switzerland* and *Wetteravia*, and the Republick of *Geneva*, ſhould be deſired to ſend 3 or 4 pious, peaceable, and learned Divines each. 6. That Profeſſors of Divinity ſhould be called from the Univerſities and Colleges of the United Provinces. 7. That ſome learned Divines ſhould be invited from the Churches of *Eaſt-Frieſland* and *Bremen*. 8. That any other Divines, beſides thoſe that were choſen, might have Liberty to propoſe their Difficulties, upon Leave aſk'd and given, provided they would ſubmit them to the Judgment of the Synod. 9. The 5 Controverted Articles ſhould be firſt debated. 10. That the Word of GOD ſhould be the only Rule to examine them by, and that every Member ſhould take an Oath accordingly; and that they had nothing before their Eyes but the Glory of GOD, and the Peace of the Church. 11. That what was approved by moſt Suffrages, ſhould be a Canon; but thoſe who voted otherwiſe, ſhould not be cenſured or ſuſpected on that Account. 12. That if any Thing doubtful happen'd in Debate, the Synod might have a Receſs

Digitized by Google

as long as they thought fit for Deliberation, and meet again without a new Summons. 13. That the States of each Province ſhould ſend two Delegates, to be continually preſent, and moderate in the Synod, to prevent Diſturbance and Confuſion. 14. That after the Concluſion, the whole ſhould be reported to the States General for their Approbation.

Then the Deputies of the States and the Synod agreed, that ſuch of the *Remonſtrants* as were known to be moſt learned in the Controverſy, ſhould be ſummon'd to attend in 14 Days, to give an Account of their Opinions; and that they ſhould have Liberty to explain and defend them as much as they could, and judged neceſſary, and to give in their Objections to the Confeſſion and Catechiſm. Accordingly the Deputies of the States ſummoned 14 out of the ſeveral Provinces, among whom was *Epiſcopius*; and beſides theſe, there were 3 *Arminians* choſen from the Synod of *Utrecht*. The whole Number conſiſted of 17 Deputies from the States, 56 Miniſters and Elders, 4 Profeſſors of Divinity from the *Dutch* Univerſities, and 1 from *Franeker*, 4 Deputies from the Church of *England*, 1 from *Scotland*, 3 from the *Palatinate*, 4 from *Heſſa*, 5 from *Switzerland*, 2 from *Wetteravia*, 3 from *Bremen*, 2 from *Geneva*, and 2 from *Embden*; in all, 104. Then they choſe a Præſes, 2 Aſſeſſors, 2 Clerks; and 2 of the Deputies of the States, with 4 Elders, were choſen to collect the Suffrages.

When the *Remonſtrants* came, they propos'd new Conditions and Methods of Proceeding; which the Deputies of the States and the Synod having examin'd, they unanimouſly declar'd them inſolent, unjuſt, unſeaſonable, contrary to what was preſcribed by the States their Sovereigns, and ſlanderous to the Synod and the *Belgick* Churches, whom they accuſed as Schiſmaticks. Upon this, the *Remonſtrants* proteſted againſt the Synod as their Enemies and Schiſmaticks, and by Conſequence not proper Judges. The Synod having examin'd their Proteſtation, unanimouſly condemn'd it, and told the *Arminians*, That according to their Way of Proceeding, no Hereſy or Error whatever could be cenſur'd; and that they had no Reaſon to make this Proteſtation, ſince the Foreign Divines could not be reckon'd Parties; and that their own Sovereigns the States, to avoid all Partiality, had order'd the Scriptures to be the only Rule for trying their Doctrine, and obliged all the Members to take an Oath accordingly; and therefore adviſed the *Remonſtrants* to lay aſide thoſe Tergiverſations, and exhibit their Objections againſt the Confeſſion and Catechiſm; with which they refuſed to comply, ſome of 'em pretending they were not ready; and when they were told that this could not be true, ſince they had long before given them into the States, they anſwer'd, That they had other Objections ſince ſome of the former they had alter'd; and that they had not yet agreed among themſelves about it. In ſhort, after many Delays, and much Trifling, the *Arminians* would ſtand to none of the Rules preſcrib'd, nor debate or deliver their Opinions when demanded, but as they pleas'd. Upon which, the Deputies of the States, with the Conſent of the Synod, agreed to diſmiſs them, and forbad them to come any more to the Synod, or to leave the City without the Conſent of the States, becauſe, as 'tis expreſs'd in the Decree, inſtead of giving Obedience, they contemn'd Publick Authority, and had Recourſe to all ſorts of Tergiverſations, Subterfuges, and Fallacies, in order to prevent the trying of their Opinions by the Word of GOD, and to prevent the happy Iſſue of the Synod, which the States had call'd and continu'd at ſo vaſt a Charge; and therefore 'twas unanimouſly agreed, they deſerv'd no more to be heard. When the *Remonſtrants* were called in to hear the Decree read, the Præſes told them, becauſe they had given out that the Foreign Divines favour'd their former Petition, they might now be ſatisfied, that all the Foreign Divines had declar'd, that the *Remonſtrants* had both begun and concluded with Frauds and Lies; for *Epiſcopius*, who was their Spokeſman, had been ſeveral times convicted of Falſhood by the whole Synod. *If any thing appear harſh, it is the very Words of the Acts of the Synod, not ours; for we ſhall give nothing but Matter of Fact.*

The *Remonſtrants* being thus diſmiſs'd, the Synod proceeded to examine the *Theſes* they had given in about the 5 Controverted Articles, and what appeared further from their publick Writings to be their Opinion concerning them, and condemn'd them by their Canons, *viz.* their Opinions, 1. About Pre-

Digitized by Google

Predeſtination. 2. About the Death of Chriſt, and the Redemption of Man by him. 3. and 4. Concerning the Corruption of Mankind, their Converſion to GOD, and the Manner of it. 5. Concerning the Perſeverance of the Saints; for which, with the Arguments given by the Proteſtant Divines from the ſeveral Countries abovementioned, we refer to the Book it ſelf. After this, the Canons of the Synod were approved by the States General the 2d of *July*, 1619. Then they all approved the *Belgick* Confeſſion, and the *Palatine* Catechiſm made uſe of in the *Netherlands* for the Inſtruction of Youth. They alſo condemned the horrid Confeſſions of the two *Arminian* Brothers, *J.* and *Pet. Geiſteranus*, Miniſters of *Alcmaer* and *Egmond*, as containing the execrable Errors of *Socinus*, and the Blaſphemies of the *Munſter* Anabaptiſts. They afterwards condemned *Vorſtius*'s Doctrine, and then were diſſolved, after a Speech by the Præſes, wherein he gave Thanks to the Foreign Divines, and concluded with Prayer. Then the Members took Leave of one another with mutual Embraces, Thanks, Tears, and Exhortations, to continue ſtedfaſt in the Doctrine of the Reform'd Churches, and gave one another the Right Hand of Fellowſhip the 9th of *May*, 1620.

The E. of *Brandenburg* had appointed ſome Divines to attend the Synod; but they being hinder'd from coming by Sickneſs, and other unforeſeen Accidents, he wrote to the States to excuſe it; adding, that the Confeſſion publiſh'd in his Dominions agreed with theirs, and thoſe of the other Reform'd Churches; and that his Divines ſhould approve of what the Synod did in Defence of that Doctrine. Their Confeſſion was alſo approved by a National Synod of the Proteſtant Churches of *France*, aſſembled at *Vitry*, *May* 25. 1585. where, at the Requeſt of the Deputies of the *Belgick* Churches, they teſtify'd their Agreement with them in Doctrine and Diſcipline, which was recorded in the Acts of the Synod of *Dort*, becauſe the *French* K. would not allow the Proteſtant Churches in his Dominions to ſend any Deputies to that Synod.

By all this, Sir *W. Temple* ſeems to have very good Authority for what he ſays concerning the *Arminians*, That they were rather a Party in the State, than a Sect in the Church; and that their Principles in *Barnevelt*'s Time were thought to lead them towards a Conjunction, or at leaſt a Compliance with the *Spaniſh* Religion and Government. He ſays, they are but few in Number, tho' in his Time they were conſiderable by the Perſons who were of the better Quality, and many of 'em in the Government. He adds, That the *Calviniſts* make the Body of the People, and are poſſeſs'd of all the publick Churches, as they have been ever ſince the Synod of *Dort* by the Decree of the States General. The Anabaptiſts, he ſays, are numerous, eſpecially in *North-Holland*, but of the lower Sort of People. The Jews have Synagogues in *Amſterdam* and *Rotterdam*; and in the former, there are publick Meeting-Places of moſt Sects known amongſt Chriſtians. The Papiſts are not allow'd their Worſhip publickly, but 'tis conniv'd at privately, and they have no Diſturbance on that Account; but are not admitted to publick, becauſe of their Dependance on the Pope. Upon the whole, he ſays, 'tis hardly to be imagin'd how all the Violence and Sharpneſs, which attends the Differences of Religion in other Countries, ſeems to be appeas'd or ſoften'd here, by the general Freedom which all Men enjoy, either by Allowance or Connivance; nor how Faction and Ambition are thereby diſabled, to colour their intereſſed and ſeditious Deſigns.

We ſhall add from *Pitt*'s *Atlas*, That of late ſome new Opinions in Matters of Religion have been broach'd among 'em by the Writings of *Cocceius* and his Followers, which were like to have occaſioned great Diviſions; but that they were ſuppreſſed in Time by the Pr. of *Orange* and the States. In 1676, the Curators of the Univerſity of *Leyden*, in order to prevent the ill Conſequences of thoſe Opinions, forbad the teaching or maintaining them within their Juriſdiction. By this Order it appears, that many of thoſe Opinions were vain and extravagant, and others of 'em were nearly allied to thoſe of the *Socinians* and *Pelagians*. Some of 'em were likewiſe ſuppos'd to be deriv'd from the Principles of *Des Cartes*: Upon which Account, the reading of his Metaphyſicks, either privately or publickly, were forbid in that Univerſity; and they turn'd

Digitized by Google

turn'd out *Heidanus*, Profeſſor of Divinity, for writing againſt that Order. The Pr. of *Orange* and the States of *Zealand* did likewiſe turn out a Miniſter, and ſeveral of the Magiſtrates of *Middleburg*, for favouring thoſe Opinions.

'Tis obſerv'd of the *Dutch*, that they are not ſo nice in obſerving the Lord's-Day as ſome of their Neighbours, it being uſual for the common People, eſpecially thoſe of the *Cocceian* Opinion, to buy and ſell, and to travel on that Day. They are ſaid to be more affected with ſinging of Pſalms, than any other Part of Worſhip; and being much addicted to Muſick, ſuch as are able, have Organs in their Churches, which play ſome Time after Sermon is over. The Pſalm to be ſung by the Congregation is mark'd upon Slates hung up in ſeveral Parts of the Church; and their Deacons make Collections for the Poor in the Church in a Purſe with a Bell hanging at the Bottom of it, which they reach by a long Pole to every one in their Seats.

Their TRADE.

SIR *W. Temple* ſays, there is no Inſtance to be found where ſo vaſt a Trade has been manag'd as in the narrow Compaſs of the 4 Maritime Provinces of this Commonwealth. 'Tis generally eſteem'd, that they have more Shipping than all the reſt of *Europe*; yet they have no native Commodities towards the Building or Rigging the ſmalleſt Veſſel, all which comes from abroad; as does their Wool for cloathing, and the Corn for feeding their People. They have nothing, he ſays, properly of their own Growth, conſiderable for their own Uſe or Traffick with others, beſides Butter, Cheeſe, and Earthen Ware. He adds, they have not one good Haven on their whole Coaſt. The beſt are *Helvoetſluys*, which has no Trade; and *Fluſhing*, that has little in compariſon of other Towns in *Holland*. *Amſterdam*, that triumphs in the Spoils of *Lisbon* and *Antwerp*, which before engroſſed the greateſt Trade of *Europe* in the *Indies*, is the moſt incommodious Harbour they have, being ſo ſhallow, that ordinary Ships cannot come up to it without the Advantage of Tides, nor great ones without unlading. The Entrance of the *Texel*, and the Paſſage over the *Zuyder-Sea*, is more dangerous than a Voyage thence to *Spain*, lying all in blind and narrow Channels: Upon which Sir *William* makes this Remark, That 'tis not an Haven which draws Trade, but Trade that fills a Haven, and brings it in Vogue; nor has *Holland*, ſays he, grown rich by any Native Commodities, but by Force of Induſtry; by the Improvement and Manufacture of all Foreign Growths; by being the general Magazine of *Europe*, and furniſhing all Parts with whatever they want; and by their Seamen's being the common Carriers of the World.

Since the Ground of their Trade cannot be deduc'd from Havens or Native Commodities, Sir *William* alledges the true Original and Ground of it to have been the crowding of ſuch vaſt Multitudes of People into ſo ſmall a Compaſs of Land, occaſioned, 1. By the Civil Wars, that were ſo fatal to moſt of their Neighbours ſome Time before that Republick was founded, as well as ſince. 2. By the Perſecutions in *Germany* under *Charles* V. *&c.* in *France* under *Henry* II. *&c.* in *England* under Queen *Mary*, &c. He ſuppoſes the Reaſons why thoſe People choſe rather to fix in *Holland* than in many better Countries, ſeems to have been, 1. The great Strength of their Towns, which, by their Situation, are capable of putting a Stop to the Approach of an Enemy by the opening of their Sluces; which natural Strength has been as much improv'd at *Amſterdam*, as could poſſibly be done by Money and Art. 2. The Conſtitution of their Government, by which neither the States General nor the Prince could invade any Man's Perſon or Property within their Cities; nor was it to be fear'd that the Senates of the Towns would commit any ſuch Violence, having no Soldiers in their Pay, the Burgers only being employ'd in Defence of the Towns, and the Execution of all Civil Juſtice. Theſe Circumſtances, he ſays, gave ſo great a Credit to the Bank of *Amſterdam*, that it invited People to come hither meerly for the Sake of ſecuring their Money in this Bank, which they knew not how to do at home: And many others remitted their Money hither, to provide for a Retreat againſt a Storm, becauſe it could be eaſily drawn from hence

to

Digitized by Google

to any Part of the World. 3. The general Liberty they gave in Point of Conſcience. 4. Becauſe they made it always the great Principle of their State, which runs through all their Provinces and Cities even, with Emulation, to make their Country the common Refuge of all miſerable Men, from whoſe Protection hardly any Alliance, Treaties, or Intereſt, have ever been able to remove them. And Parſimony being honourable here, thoſe who are brought low by Misfortune, may live as ſparingly at home as they pleaſe; and, without any great Charge, make as good an Appearance abroad as their chief Miniſters and richeſt Merchants. 5. The Reputation acquir'd by their Government for its ſteady and wiſe Conduct, as well as for the Succeſs in Arms and Treaties; ſo that People thought themſelves ſafe there from foreign Invaſions and civil Commotions. 6. The great Beauty their Country is arriv'd at by Improvements of Induſtry, in Spight of Nature, which draws a great many People thither on purpoſe to ſee them.

The United Provinces being thus crowded with People, they were forc'd to Induſtry and Labour, or elſe to Want. Thoſe that were vigorous, fell to Labour; and ſuch as were not, endeavour'd to ſupply that Defect by Inventions or Ingenuity; and Land growing dear, becauſe of the Multitude of the People, and Smalneſs of the Country, they were forc'd to apply themſelves chiefly to Trade by Sea.

Sir *William* mentions ſome other Circumſtances that have likewiſe advanc'd the Trade of that Country: 1. The low Intereſt for Money, which makes People venture it in Trade, or in any Projects by which Money might be gain'd, ſuch as cutting Canals, making Bridges and Cawſeys, levelling Downs, and dreining Marſhes. 2. The Uſe of their Bank, which ſecures Money, makes all Payments eaſy, and their Trade quick. 3. A publick Regiſter for Sale of Lands, which makes all Purchaſers ſafe. 4. The Severity of Juſtice againſt all Theefts, Cheats, Counterfeits of Publick Bills, which is Capital amongſt them; and againſt all common Beggars, who, if able to work, are put into Work-houſes; and if not, into Hoſpitals. 5. The good Convoys for their Merchant-Ships. 6. The Lowneſs of their Cuſtoms, and Eaſineſs of paying them; which, with the Freedom of their Ports, invites People to bring their Commodities hither, not only as to a Market, but as a Magazine, where they lodge them in caſe one Market fail, till another offers. 7. Their Order and Exactneſs in managing their Trade, which brings their Commodities into Credit abroad. This was firſt introduc'd by ſevere Laws and Penalties, but is now become habitual. Thus they had above 30 ſeveral Placaets about the Manner of Curing, Pickling, and Barrelling of Herring; and all Arms made at *Utrecht* are forfeited if ſold without a Mark, or mark'd without Tryal. 8. The Concern which the chief Perſons in the Government have in Trade by themſelves or their Friends, which makes the Traders ſure of all the Favour that the Government can give them. 9. The Cuſtom of every Town's affecting ſome particular Commerce or Staple, and valuing themſelves upon it, ſo as to improve it to the greateſt Height; as *Fluſhing* by that of the *Weſt-Indies*; *Middleburg* of *French* Wines; *Terveer* by the *Scots* Staple; *Dort* by the *Engliſh* Staple, and Rheniſh Wines; *Rotterdam* by the *Engliſh* and *Scots* Trade at large, and by *French* Wines; *Leyden* by the Manufacture of all ſorts of Stuffs, Silk, Hair, Gold and Silver; *Haerlem* by Linen, mix'd Stuffs and Flowers; *Delft* by Beer and *Dutch Porcelain*; *Surdam* by building Ships; *Enchuyſen* and *Maxlandſluys* by Herring-Fiſhing; *Frieſland* by the *Greenland* Trade; and *Amſterdam* by that of the *Eaſt-Indies*, *Spain*, and the *Streights*. 10. The great Application of the whole Provinces to the Fiſhing-Trade upon the Coaſts of *Great Britain*, which employs an incredible Number of Ships and Seamen, and ſupplies moſt of the South of *Europe* with a rich and neceſſary Commodity. 11. The mighty Advance they have made towards engroſſing the whole Commerce of the *Eaſt-Indies*, by their Succeſſes againſt the *Portugueze* and the Natives, by which they have forc'd them to Treaties of Commerce excluſive of all other Nations, and have built Forts upon the Paſſes, which command the Entrances into the Traffick of ſuch Places: But more of this Trade when we come to give an Account of their *Eaſt-India* Company. 12. The Situation of their Coun-

Country extended upon the Sea, divided by two ſuch Rivers as the *Rhine* and the *Maes*, with the Vicinity of the *Ems*, *Weſer*, and *Elve*, which gives them an eaſy Opportunity of conveying their Goods into the Continent; as their many Canals at home makes Commerce eaſy betwixt one Town and another.

Sir *William* adds, That as the only and certain Scale of Riches ariſing from Trade in a Nation, is the Proportion of what is exported for the Conſumption of others, to what is imported for their own. Never any Country traded ſo much, and conſumed ſo little, as the *Dutch*. They buy infinitely, but to ſell again, either upon improving the Commodity, or at a better Market. They are the great Maſters of the *Indian* Spices, and of the *Perſian* Silks, but wear plain Woollen, and feed upon their own Fiſh and Roots. They ſell the fineſt of their own Cloth to *France*, and buy coarſe out of *England* for their own Wear; and ſo of other Commodities. Their great Foreign Conſumption is in *French* Wine and Brandy; but what they ſpend in Wine, they ſave in Corn to make other Drinks, which is brought from Foreign Parts. Thus it happens, that much going conſtantly out, either in Commodities or in the Labour of Seafaring-Men, and little coming in to be conſumed at home, the reſt returns in Coin, and fills the Country to that degree, that more Silver is ſeen in *Holland* among the common Hands and Purſes, than Braſs either in *Spain* or in *France*; tho' the one be ſo rich in the beſt Native Commodities, and the other dreins all the Treaſuries of the *Weſt-Indies*.

Sir *William* obſerves however, That Trade ſeem'd to be declining among them, for which he aſſign'd the following Cauſes: 1. The general Application that many other Nations had made to it, eſpecially after the Peace of *Munſter*. 2. The great Import of *Eaſt-India* Commodities by their *Eaſt-India* Company, which leſſens the Rates of 'em, while the Charge of the Company is increaſed by War, Forts, Caſtles, Garriſons, Ships of War, *&c.* 3. The great Cheapneſs of Corn that had happen'd for many Years, which they us'd to purchaſe in the North with their Spices. And the laſt Cauſe he mentions, was the Increaſe of Luxury among them, and particularly in the Extent of the new Town of *Amſterdam*, and the Sumptuouſneſs of its Buildings, which had diverted a great deal of Money that had formerly been employ'd in Trade.

The 4th Volume of *Pitt's Atlas* gives this further Account of their Trade: About *Midſummer*, they begin to fiſh Herring near their own Coaſts, where they are but few, and lean, the Seas there not being reckon'd very agreeable to them. The beſt Seaſon for taking them is from the middle of *Auguſt* to *November*, when they are caught in greateſt Plenty from *Scarborough* to the Mouth of the *Thames*. After this, the firſt tempeſtuous Weather hurries them into the middle of the *Britiſh* Seas, where they continue till about *Chriſtmas*, and then return beyond *Scotland* and *Ireland* to the Northern Ocean, where they continue till *June*.

Guicciardin ſays, they are found no where but in the *Britiſh* and North Seas; and that they breed in the former, where they arrive earlier or later, according as the Winter comes on in the North Seas. The *Dutch*, to prevent Frauds to the Fiſhing Society by particular Perſons, have made an Order, That they ſhall not begin to fiſh till the 24th of *June*; and they ſuffer no Man to ſell any till they have been ſalted 10 Days at leaſt. They have alſo Searchers in every Fiſhing-Town, to ſee that their Pickling-Barrels be tight, and their Salt good; and to take Care that their Herring be ſalted anew as ſoon as they are brought home, in ſome publick Place, to prevent all Fraud. They have alſo Packers who attend the Searchers, and throw out all ſuch Herring as begin to decay: And that they may preſerve the Credit of the Herring-Trade to themſelves, they allow no Foreigners to take the like Care of their Fiſh in their Ports, but oblige them to carry them out as they brought them in. The Art of Curing Herrings was firſt found out by *Wm. Buckold*, a Native of *Bierfleet* in *Flanders*, where *Charles* V. erected a Monument for him. Sir *J. Burrows*, Garter King at Arms, in his Book, called, *The Sovereignty of the Sea*, publiſh'd in 1633, ſays, 1. That in the *Britiſh* Seas, at all Times of the Year, there may be taken Herrings, Pilchards, Cod, Ling, and other Sorts of good Fiſh: That not long before he wrote, in one Day, near *Minnegal* on the Coaſt

Digitized by Google

Coaſt of *Devonſhire*, there were taken 500 Tun of Fiſh. On another Day, there were taken to the Value of 3000 *l.* And near *St. Ives* in *Cornwall*, 20 Laſts of Herring were taken at one Draught. 2. That 10000 Foreign Ships, 1400 of which belong'd to *Embden* in *Eaſt-Frieſland*, were maintain'd by this Trade alone. 3. That the *Hollanders* employ 8000 Fiſhing-Veſſels on our Coaſts, by which they maintain 15000 Mariners by Sea, and treble the Number of People by Land in Trades that relate to the Fiſhery. 4. That this Trade occaſions Annually the building of 1000 Ships, by which they make Returns of the beſt Commodities of *Europe*, *Aſia*, and *America*, while this Trade is neglected by the *Britains*, for whom Providence ſeems chiefly to intend it. 5. That by Computation, the *Dutch* have made 5 Millions in a Year by fiſhing of Herrings; the Cuſtoms of which, and the 10th Fiſh brought into their Treaſury, make 800000 *l.* Sterling in a Year. The Curious may ſee more concerning the *Dutch* Fiſhing-Trade in a little Piece, Entitl'd, *John Keymor's Obſervations upon it*, about the Year 1601, which was Reprinted at *London* by the Order of the Lord Mayor, when a Fiſhing Company was erected here, after K. *Charles* II.'s Reſtoration, in which the D. of *York* and other great Perſons were concern'd, tho' it came to nothing, becauſe of Miſmanagement: But that Author demonſtrates in ſhort, That the *Dutch* and others raiſe more Wealth out of our Seas in one Year, than the K. of *Spain* had from the *Indies* in four; That there were 20000 Ships, and 400000 People, employ'd by their Fiſhing-Trade; and his Computation of the Advantage which the *Dutch* make by it, is as high as that of Sir *J. Burrows*. But that which puts the vaſt Advantage of this Trade beyond all Diſpute, is, the Proclamation of the States of 1624, where they call their Fiſhing-Trade the *Golden Mine* of their Provinces.

They had a *Weſt-India* Company form'd much after the Manner of that of the *Eaſt-Indies*; but 'tis very much decayed, partly by Miſmanagement, and partly by their Naval Wars formerly with *England*; for which we refer the Curious to the 4th Vol. of *Pitt's Atlas*. We cannot inſiſt on their particular Trade of Export and Import; but 'tis very conſiderable with moſt Trading Nations of the World.

Bleau's Atlas adds, That the Quantity of Raw Silk brought by their *Eaſt-India* Company out of *Perſia* is almoſt incredible, it being reported, that there's no fewer than 12000 People employ'd in ſeparating and winding the ſame up into Bottoms, of which they make ſeveral Sorts of Silk Stuffs, Ribbons, Scarfs, *&c.* They have invented a Mill for the more expeditious working of Scarfs; but the States forbad the Uſe of it, except in ſome Sorts of Ribbons, becauſe it hinder'd the employing of their Poor. They print vaſt Numbers of Books, of which they make great Profit; on which Account, the States are not very rigorous in putting their Laws for regulating the Preſs in Execution; though none ought to print any thing without a Licence from the reſpective States of the Provinces where they have Preſſes. There's greater Choice of Aſtronomical, Geometrical, and other Mathematical Inſtruments, in the United Provinces, than any where elſe in the World. They have alſo conſiderable Manufactures of Woollen Cloth, and exceed moſt other Nations in Dying, as they do in Painting. They are expert at making Muſical Inſtruments, eſpecially Organs, and very much affect Chimes of Bells. Their Bell-Founders, Letter-Founders, Jewellers, Gravers, Carvers, and Potters, are very ingenious in their ſeveral Arts. They are chiefly defective in Materials for a Trade to *Turkey*, ſuch as fine Cloth, Lead, Tin, *&c.* Their Merchants, he ſays, obſerve this general Rule, to buy Commodities where they are made and ſold cheapeſt, and vend 'em where they are bought deareſt: Nor do they think it below them to ſell by Retail, and accuſtom their Wives and Daughters to Merchandizing and Accounts, not only in their Shops, but to ſail from City to City, to manage their Trade.

Pitt's Atlas gives this further Account of their Cuſtoms and Diſpoſitions: They eat leſs Fleſh than other Nations, and moſt of that ſalt; and their freſh Meat is generally dreſs'd in Towns by common Cooks, of whom they have many; and they are obſerv'd very much to affect ſtew'd Meat. The Magiſtrates take great Care to prevent the ſelling of any bad Meat, and they keep

Digitized by Google

diſtinct Markets for the Offal. They kill their Beef in Winter, and ſalt or ſmoke it for the Summer; when they eat it with Butter and Sallet, and ſpread their Hung-Beef in Slices upon Bread and Butter. The Firſt Diſh at Entertainments is uſually a Sallet, of which they eat great Quantities. Boil'd Spinage minc'd, butter'd and mix'd with Currants, is a common Diſh. Milk is the cheapeſt of all their Proviſions. Their ſtrong Beer, which they call thick Beer, is above Threepence the *Engliſh* Quart. Meat and Drink are generally dear; which is aſcrib'd to their abounding with Money, and the Number of their Impoſts: So that their Day-workers and Labourers could hardly live, were not their Wages advanc'd in Proportion.

Their Land is commonly ſold at 30 or 40 Years Purchaſe, and Houſes let very dear, which, with the Lowneſs of Intereſt, puts them upon a Neceſſity of promoting Induſtry and Trade.

They have Aſſociations in their Towns, which are divided into ſeveral Neighbourhoods, each of which have a Maſter, Treaſurer, and Counſellors, whoſe Buſineſs is to make up Controverſies among their Neighbours, and prevent Law Suits. Theſe Societies pay to the Treaſurer certain Fines, for not waiting duly upon a Corps to the Grave when invited, for every Houſe they buy; and they are alſo paid certain Sums by the Heirs and Kindred of Perſons who die, according to their Quality, Age, or Sex; and when theſe Fines amount to a Sum, they are ſpent in a Feaſt by the Society, after reading their Laws, which are calculated to prevent Diſputes about Religion, and all other Occaſions of Quarrel. When the Maſter, Treaſurer, and Councellors are ſate, the reſt take their Places by Lots, and in the Evening they wait upon the Maſter to his Houſe, where they are entertain'd with Liquor.

In ſome of their Towns, they chuſe Commiſſaries from among their chief Burgers to take Care of Matrimonial Cauſes. They take the Names of the Perſons to be married, with a Certificate of the Conſent of the Parents or Guardians, which they deliver to the publick Preacher, who publiſhes the Banes 3 Times. The Papiſts, Remonſtrants, and Anabaptiſts, are allow'd to have Banes proclaim'd before the Town-Hall, where they are afterwards married in their own Way, in the Preſence of two Magiſtrates, and ſometimes in their own private Meetings. 'Tis look'd upon as a horrible Crime for a Man or Wife to beat one another. If a Man do it, ſays the *Atlas*, he muſt give the Neighbourhood a Gammon of Bacon, and if the Woman do it, ſhe muſt give two. They are noted for being too indulgent to their Children; for which they are frequently puniſhed by their Ingratitude and Rebellion; and this occaſions the Children frequently, either to be ſent to the *Indies*, or go thither of their own Accord.

The Times for their Burials are limited to a certain Hour, according to the different Way of the Places: But their Cuſtoms about Funeral Solemnities differ very much. In ſome Places, Men and Women are allow'd to follow the Corps together; in others, 'tis ſtrictly forbidden. In ſome Parts, the Company, after the Interment, meet to feaſt or drink; in others, 'tis prohibited under ſevere Penalties; and Perſons of the better Rank, inſtead of entertaining the Company at their own Houſes, give them a Sum of Money, which they ſpend elſewhere. In their Towns, they have Perſons on Purpoſe to invite People to their Burials, by printed Catalogues of their Names; and if the Corps be not carried out at the appointed Hour, the Friends of the Deceas'd muſt pay a conſiderable Fine, becauſe Loſs of Time is reckon'd equal to Loſs of Money, in this trading Country; and they generally wear Mourning for their deceas'd Relations above a Year. The Papiſts and Lutherans bury in conſecrated Places; which the reſt deſpiſe as ſuperſtitious. Thoſe who bury in the Church, pay a great Rate for it; and the ringing of the biggeſt Bell, coſts them uſually 20 Shillings: But moſt of them, except the Papiſts, and ſome Lutherans, look both upon this Cuſtom and the Charge as ridiculous.

Their Diverſions are Cards and Dice; but they allow no Actions for Debts contracted by Gaming. They have particular Places, for bowling with Wooden Bowls, thro an Iron Ring, for the Tennis, and for playing towards a fix'd Pale, with a Club and a Wooden Ball; and in the Winter, they

Digitized by Google

they divert themſelves upon the Ice with their Skates, or by banding a Ball with a Wooden or Leaden Club, till they bring it to the determin'd Goal. They uſe Dancings at Weddings, and on ſome other Occaſions, and have Comedies and other publick Shews, where, at the ſame time they pay Money to the Players, they pay a Tax to the States for the Uſe of the Poor, *&c.*

Their Houſes are generally cleanly and neat, their Glaſs painted, and their Floors ſtrow'd with Sand; and they are generally ſo nice, as to let none come into their Rooms without firſt cleaning their Shoes, or putting on Slippers; and thoſe of the better Sort, affect to have their Furniture ſplendid and rich. In Publick Houſes, their Beds are generally like Cabbins, ſhort and narrow; yet they generally exact 10 *d.* or 12 *d.* for every Night. There are few Thatch'd Houſes in theſe Provinces, and moſt of 'em have Gutters or Pipes to convey the Rain Water from the Roof into Ciſterns, where 'tis kept for Family Uſes.

Their Eaſt-India *Company.*

THE *Atlas Hiſtorique* gives us the following Account of it: The *Dutch* finding that ſeparate Companies were not able to defend themſelves againſt *Spain*, they form'd an *Eaſt-India* Company; towards the Capital Stock of which,

	Florins.
Amſterdam contributed	3674915
Zealand,	1333883
Delft,	470000
Rotterdam,	177400
Horn,	266868
Enchuyſen,	536775
In all,	6459840

Theſe 6 having advanc'd this Money, they ſettled a Chamber in each of the Towns, (that of *Zealand* being in *Middleburg*) from whence they chuſe the 17 Deputies who direct the Affairs of the Company. They meet 4 times a Year ſucceſſively at *Amſterdam* for the Affairs of the Company, and twice at *Middleburg* alternatively, but not at the other Towns. Thoſe Deputies are the Sovereigns of this Illuſtrious Company, but under the Authority of the States General. The *Atlas* ſays, they have had ſuch Succeſs, that they may well be eſteem'd the fineſt and greateſt Company in the World. That from the Time they were founded in 1602, to 1608, they augmented their Capital to 30000000; and ſince their Eſtabliſhment, they have paid above 15 times the Capital to thoſe concern'd; ſo that every Hundred Florins Stock is now worth above 600. They maintain in the *Indies* 15000 regular Troops, have 160 Veſſels at Sea; and in the different Countries they poſſeſs, they are able to raiſe 120000 Men.

The 17 Directors are choſen as follows; 8 by the Chamber of *Amſterdam*, 4 by that of *Zealand*; *Delft*, *Rotterdam Horn*, and *Enchuyſen*, one each; and the *Maes*, *Middleburg*, and *North-Holland*, chuſe one by Turns.

Theſe 17 Directors govern the Company, and repreſent the Sovereignty of the whole Body. By Plurality of Voices, they regulate all Affairs of Conſequence, as the making of Counſellors, Captains, Lieutenants, the Equipping of Ships, the Sale of the Goods, the Diviſion of the Profits; and all the particular Chambers muſt conform themſelves to their Orders. They likewiſe appoint the Time for the Sale of the Goods, one half of which is ſold in the Chamber of *Amſterdam*, a 4th in that of *Middleburg*, and a 16th in each of the other 4 Chambers, at the Time appointed, to the higheſt Bidder. But beſides thoſe 17 Directors, each of the Chambers have more belonging to the ſame Body. Thus *Amſterdam* has 16 more, beſides the 8 ſent to the Sovereign Court; and *Haërlem*, *Leyden*, *Utrecht*, *Dort*, and *Tergoe*, have each of 'em one there; as have the Provinces of *Guelderland* and *Frieſland*. *Zealand* likewiſe, beſides their 4 Directors, has 8 or 10 more from other Towns of the Province. All theſe Deputies are to give their Advice in their reſpective Chambers for the Good and Advantage of the Company; and when any of the Deputies die, the Towns to which they belong name three others in their ſtead, out of which

Digitized by Google

the Magiſtrates chuſe one. This Company meets twice a Week, and change their Preſident each Month; ſo that every one preſides in his Turn. There are two Advocates belonging to the Company, who make their Report of what is reſolv'd on to the *Indies*: Upon which, the Company there form their Reſolutions, and iſſue their Orders. There are 8 Deputies for the Affairs of the Marine, War, and Building of Ships; 4 to inſpect their Magazines, and the Goods that are ſent to and come from the *Indies*; 4 who take Care of the Money which the Company pays and receives; and the reſt take Care of the Accounts, and other Affairs relating to Order and Juſtice, which is done to the meaneſt Mariner, as well as to the Officers.

They have alſo a Sovereign Company at *Batavia* in the *Eaſt-Indies*, but it depends on that in *Holland*; yet they have Power to declare War and make Peace with the Kings and Princes of the *Indies*, as the Sovereign Council thinks meet, which is compoſed of a General, who maintains his Dignity with great Luſtre; of 2 Director-General, and 6 ordinary Counſellors, and ſometimes of 2 or 4 extraordinary Counſellors, as the 17 Directors think meet. They have alſo a Court of Juſtice, called the Supreme Council or Parliament, compoſed of a Preſident, a Vice-Preſident, and 12 Counſellors. They determine all Affairs Civil and Criminal, and have a Power to condemn the General to Death if he be found guilty of Treaſon. They have alſo a Council in the City, compoſed of a Bayliff and Eſchevins, in the ſame Manner almoſt as in *Holland*; and they have a Preſidial Council for determining ſmall Suits under 300 Florins. The General has his Office for 3 Years; but is often continued longer, if the Company think it for their Advantage. He has two Votes in the Council, and never goes abroad, nor gives Audience to *Indian* Ambaſſadors, without a Troop of Horſe, and a Company of Foot Guards. The 2d Perſon is the Major-General, who commands all the Troops under the General. The 3d is the Director-General, who keeps the Keys of all the Company's Magazines, and is obliged to give an Account of 'em. All thoſe Offices are conferred by the Sovereign Council of State, which the Company in *Holland* approves for moſt part; but ſometimes change them on Occaſion.

The General Governments of the Company in the *Eaſt-Indies* are on the Coaſt of *Coromandel*, the Iſlands of *Amboina*, *Banda*, *Ternate*, *Ceylan*, and the Peninſula of *Malaca*.

The Particular Governments are, the Cape of *Good Hope*, the Iſle of *Macaſſar*, at *Padam*, the Iſle of *Timort*, at *Andragery*, and at *Cochin*, &c.

The Particular Factories of the Company in ſeveral Places of the *Indies* are, at *Iſpahan*, *Gaumaron*, *Surate*, *Agra*, *Amadabat*, *Bengal*, *Palimbang*, *Bambi*, *Banka*, *Siam*, *Ligor*, *Tonquin*, and at *Japan*, &c. *New Amſterdam*, and *New Holland*.

Their Forces *and* Revenues.

SIR *W. Temple* ſays, the Force of theſe Provinces is not to be meaſured by the Number or Diſpoſitions of their Subjects, but the Strength of their Shipping, and ſtanding Troops, which they maintain in Time of Peace; by the Numbers of both they are able to furniſh in Time of War; by their conſtant Revenue to maintain the former; and by the Temporary Charge, they have been able to ſupply for the latter.

Their ordinary Revenues conſiſt either in what is levied from the conquer'd Towns, and Countries of *Brabant*, *Flanders*, or the *Rhine*, and the ordinary Funds provided by the 7 Provinces every Year, according to their Proportions; and this Revenue, he ſays, is about 21 Millions of Gilders *per Annum*, which is 1890000 *l.* Sterling. The chief Funds out of which this is raiſed, is the Exciſe and Cuſtoms. The firſt is ſo great in general, that he has heard it obſerv'd at *Amſterdam*, that in a Tavern, a certain Diſh of Fiſh, eaten with the uſual Sauce, has paid above 30 ſeveral Exciſes; but their Cuſtoms are low and eaſy, and applied particularly to the Admiralty. By this Revenue they pay all their Troops, publick Officers, Miniſters abroad, and the Intereſt of Money owing by the States, which in his Time was about 13000000 Gilders.

Their

Digitized by Google

Their ſtanding Forces in 1670, during a general Peace, were 26200 Men, being 10 Regiments of Horſe, and 19 of Foot, which coſt them Annually 6119000 Gilders. In Time of Peace, they uſually employ betwixt 30 or 40 Men of War in Convoys, beſides ſome ready in their Harbours on all Occaſions; which, with the building of Ships of War, coſts them about 6000000 Gilders *per Annum*. He adds, that beſides what was then owing by the States General, the Commons of *Holland* ow'd 65000000 Gilders, for which they paid Intereſt at 4 *per Cent.* which is paid ſo exactly, both Principal and Intereſt, that no Man ever demands it twice; ſo that 'tis reckon'd a Favour for any one to have their Money admitted, and they generally receive it back with Grief, becauſe they know not where to diſpoſe it with ſo much Safety and Eaſe; ſo that the common Revenue of particular Men lies much in the Cantores of the States General, or the particular Provinces, which are the Regiſters of their publick Debts.

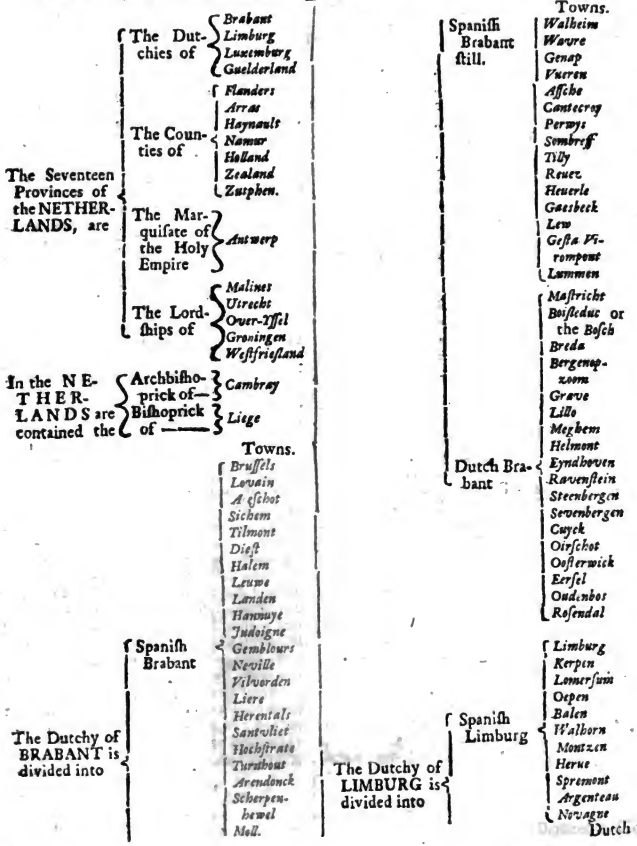
The Impoſts and Exciſes upon Houſes and Lands are collected by the Magiſtrates of the ſeveral Places, who pay them into the Receivers. The Exciſe on Conſumption is farm'd out to the higheſt Bidders for 3, 6 Months, or a Year. The Collection, Receipt, and Payment of all publick Money, is made without Fee to Officers who have certain Salaries from the State, which they dare not increaſe by private Practices or Extortions; ſo that whoever has a Bill for any publick Debt, it is as good as ready Money, being paid at Demand, without Charge or Trouble, and paſſes as readily in Payments, as the beſt Bills of Exchange.

Their extraordinary Revenue in caſe of a War, or other extraordinary Occaſions, is ſometimes rais'd by the Hundredth Part of the Eſtates of the People, Poll, or Chimney-Money, and ſometimes by Impoſts on every Man that travels in their common Roads in Coach, Waggon, or Horſeback, and in their Canals or Rivers by Boats. By this Means, during the War with *England* in 1665, they raiſed 42000000; and when the Biſhop of *Munſter* invaded them in 1666, they had above 60000 Land-men, and 100 Ships of War at Sea. And in *Oliver's* Time, about 1652, they prepared 150 Men of War to fight the *Engliſh*, as we are informed by *The Hiſtory of the United Provinces*: And beſides what they are able to do at home, their Company in the *Eaſt-Indies* is capable of putting 50 Men of War to Sea, and to raiſe at leaſt 30000 Men by Land, ſays Sir *W. Temple*; their Trade there being ſo large, that the ſame Gentleman ſays, he has known 22 Ships arrive from thence in one Year. On this Occaſion Sir *Wm.* obſerves, That the Greatneſs of the *Dutch* at that Time ſeems juſtly to have raiſed the Glory of our Nation, which, during the Years 1665 and 1666, maintain'd a War not only againſt this powerful State, but againſt *France* and *Denmark*, in Conjunction with 'em; and all at a Time when *England* ſtruggled at home with the calamitous Effects of a raging Plague, that in 3 Months of the firſt Year ſwept away incredible Numbers of People; and of a prodigious Fire, that in 3 Days of the 2d laid in Aſhes that ancient and famous City of *London*, the Heart and Center of our Commerce and Riches, conſuming the greateſt Part of its Buildings, and an immenſe Proportion of its Wealth. Yet in the midſt of theſe fatal Accidents, thoſe two Summers were renowned for 3 Battles of the mighti-eſt Fleets that ever met upon the Ocean, whereof two were determin'd by entire and unqueſtion'd Victories, and Purſuit of our Enemies into their very Havens; the 3d having begun by the unfortunate Diviſions of our Fleet, with the Odds of 90 of their Ships againſt 50 of ours; and in ſpight of ſuch Diſadvantages, having been continued or renewed for 3 Days together, wherein we were every Morning the Aggreſſors, ended at laſt by the equal and mutual Weakneſs and Wearineſs of both Sides, the Maims of Ships and Tackling, with Want of Powder and Ammunition; having left undecided the greateſt Action that perhaps is to be met with in Story. And in this Battle M. *de Wit* confeſſed to Sir *William*, that we gained more Honour to our Nation, and to the invincible Courage of our Seamen, than by the other two Victories: That he was ſure their Men could never have been brought on the two following Days, after the Diſadvantages of the firſt; and he believed no other Nation was capable of it but ours.

The

Digitized by Google

The Diviſion *of the Seventeen Provinces of the* Netherlands. *By M.* Sanſon, *Geographer to the* French *King.*



Digitized by Google

The Dutchy of LUXEMBURG is divided into

- Dutch Limburg — Towns: Wyck, Dalem, Fauquemont, Rolduc, Schierlach, Honsbrouck
- Spaniſh Luxemburg — Towns: Baſtogne, Arlen, Chiny, Marche, Roche, Rochefort, Durbuy, Salme, S. Wyt, Homfaliſe, Hoefingen, Clervaux, Diekry, Viane, Bidburg, Dudelſtorf, Reyel, Echter, Waſſerbillich, Greven-Macheren, Remich, Virton, Neufchaſtel, Herbemont, Orchimont, Villance, Behemal, Hotton, Eſch, Brandenburg, Merſche, La Rochette, Linſtre, Soleuvre, Bettingen, Breitbach
- French Luxemburg — Towns: Luxemburg, Thionville, Montmedy, Ivoix, Damvillers, Marville, La Ferte, Konings-Macheren, Rodemboch, Eſche

The Dutchy of GUELDERLAND is divided into

- Betuwe — Towns: Nimmegen, Bommel, Tiel, Buren, Culenbourg, Linden, Batenburg, Fort de Skenk or Schenken-Schans
- Veluwe — Towns: Aruheim, Harderwick, Elburg, Hattem, Wageningen, Iſelvort, Roſendael
- Guelder — Towns: Ruremonde, Guelder, Venlo, Wachtendonck, Stralem, Erkelens, Stephanwert, Montfort, Keſſel, Brey
- Zutphen — Towns: Zutphen

FLANDERS is divided into

- Spaniſh Flanders — Towns: Ghent, Bruges, Courtray, Oudenarde, Aloſt, Oſtend, Damme, Dixmuyde, Deynſe, Ninove, Gramont, Rupelmonde, L'Eſcluſe or Sluys, Hulſt, Axel, Ardenburgh, Biervliet, Yſendick, Sas-van-Ghent
- Dutch Flanders — Towns: Oſterburgh, Caſſandria, Philippine, Terneuſe, Middleburg
- French Flanders — Towns: Bouchoute, Doel

French

Digitized by Google

French FLANDERS, where are

- In the Inland Countries — Towns.
  - *Liſle*, now in the Hands of the Allies.
  - *Tournay*
  - *Douay*
  - *Caſſel*
  - *Ypres*
  - *Bailleul*
  - *Roulers*
  - *Armentiéres*
  - *La Baſſée*
  - *L'Eſcluſe*
  - *Orchies*
  - *S. Amand*
  - *Lannoy*
  - *Warneton*
  - *Commines*
  - *Warwick*
  - *Menin*, in the Hands of the Allies.
  - *Eſtayre*
  - *Poperingue*
- Towards the Sea
  - *Dunkirk*
  - *Gravelin*
  - *Berg S. Winock*
  - *Furnes*
  - *Bourbourg*
  - *Mardick*

The County of ARRAS, where are

- *Arras*
- *St. Omers*
- *Ayre*
- *Bethune*
- *Heſdin*
- *Lens*
- *Bappaumes*
- *S. Venant*
- *St. Pol*
- *Lillers*
- *Pernes*
- *Lisbourg*
- *Renty*
- *Blangis*
- *Freſſin*
- *Douriers*
- *La Broye*
- *Auxy le Chau*
- *Aveſnes le Comte*
- *Bucquoy*
- *Pas*
- *Oſſy*

The County of ARRAS ſtill. — Towns.

- *Arleux*
- *Ricquebourg*
- *La Gorgue*
- *Eſpinoy*

The County of HAYNAULT is divided into

- Spaniſh Haynault
  - *Ath*
  - *Binche*
  - *Fontaine l'Eveſque*
  - *Ligne*
  - *Beaumont*
  - *Le Rœulx*
  - *Soignies*
  - *Braine le Comté*
  - *Enghien*
  - *Halle*
  - *Leſſines*
  - *Chievres*
  - *S. Ghiſlain*
- French Haynault
  - *Mons*
  - *Valenciennes*
  - *Bavay*
  - *Maubeuge*
  - *Condé*
  - *Bouchain*
  - *Pecquencour*
  - *Landrechies*
  - *Le Queſnoy*
  - *Aveſnes*
  - *Marienbourg*
  - *Philippeville*

The County of NAMUR

- *Namur*
- *Charleroy*
- *Bouvignes*
- *Charlemont*
- *Valcour*

The County of HOLLAND is divided into South Holland, and North Holland.

SOUTH HOLLAND

- *Dort*
- *Haerlem*
- *Delft*
- *Leyden*
- *Amſterdam*
- *Goude*
- *Rotterdam*
- *Gorcum*
- *Schiedam*
- *Schoenhoven*
- *S. Gravezand*
- *S. Gertruydenberg*
- *Hueſden*
- *Worcum*
- *Vianen*
- *Woerden*
- *Oudewater*
- *Yſelſtein*

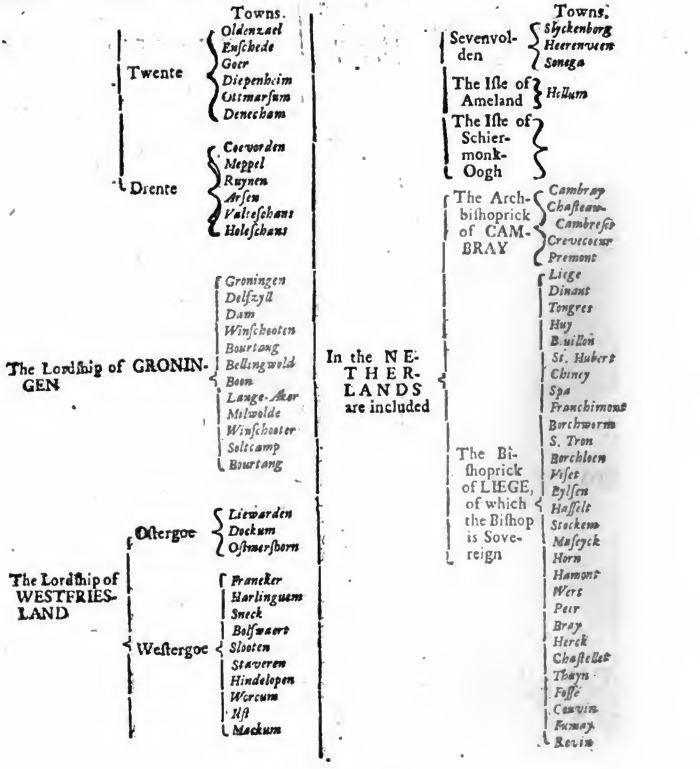
Digitized by Google

The

		Towns.
South Holland Isll.		*Asperen*
		Hockelem
		Leerdam
		Naerden
		Wesep
		Muyden
		Klundert
		Willemstat
		Hague
		Katwyck-op-Zee
		Nortwyck
The Isles of South Holland are	Voorn	*Brill*
	Gorée	*Goerée*
	Over-Flackée	*Somerdick*
	Putten	*Geervliet*
	Beyerland	*Beyerland*
	Korndyck	*Korndyck*
	Iselmonde	*Iselmonde*
NORTH HOLLAND, or Westfriesland.		*Alckmaer*
		Horn
		Enckhuysen
		Edam
		Muwickedam
		Medemblick
		Purmerendt
		Beverwyck
		Worner
		Schermer
		Beemster
		Egmont
		Petten
		Seagen
		Ninckel
The Isles of North Holland are	Texel	*Texel*
	Eyerlandt	
	Vlieland	
	Schelling	
	Grind	
	Vieringen	*Osterland*
	Urck	
	Ens	
The County of ZEALAND	The Isle of Walcheren	*Middleburg*
		Flushing
		Veere
		Armuyden
		Ramekens
	The Isle of South-Beveland	*Goes*
		S. Martin
		Gruyningen
	The Isle of Schouwen	*Zirickzée*
		Brouwersharen
		Pyanen

		Towns.
	The Isle of Tolen	*Tolen*
		S. Martensdyck
	The Isle of North-Beveland	*Beveland*
	The Isle of Wolfersdyck	*Sabbinge*
The County of ZUTPHEN		*Zutphen*
		Doesburg
		Grol
		Borckelo
		Lochem
		Dotekum
		Brewoord
		Lichtenforde
		S. Heerenberg
		Anholt
		Werde
		Burch
		Baer
		Eybergen
The Marquisate of the HOLY EMPIRE	ANTWERP.	*Antwerp*
The Lordship of MALINES.		*Malines*
The Lordship of UTRECHT		*Utrecht*
		Amersfort
		Montfort
		Wyck te Duerstede
		Rhenen
		Breukelen
		Kronenburg
		Abcoude
		Kamrick
		Cockenge
		Vreeswick
		Amerongen
The Lordship of OVER-ISSEL is divided into	Sallant	*Deventer*
		Campen
		Zwol
		Hasselt
		Steenwyck
		Blocxyll
		Kuynder
		Vollenhove
		Swartzburgh
		Gramsberg
		Havdenberg
		Ommen
	Twente	

Digitized by Google



The

Digitized by Google

The GEOGRAPHY *of the* United Provinces.

SIR *Wm. Temple* obſerves, That *Holland*, *Zealand*, *Frieſland*, and *Gromingen*, lie on the Sea, and make the Strength and Greatneſs of this State: The other three, *Guelderland*, *Utrecht*, and *Overiſſel*, with the conquer'd Towns in *Brabant* and *Flanders*, ſerve as Outworks and Frontiers. No Man, he ſays, can tell what Changes have been made in the Face and Boundaries of thoſe Provinces by the Inundations of the Seas and Rivers; but by the Deſcription in the *Roman* Hiſtory, the Face of their Coaſts, and the Nature of their Soil, eſpecially in *Holland*, was much as 'tis now 1600 Years ago, allowing only for the Improvements which have been made by Riches, Time, and Induſtry; and the Names and Courſe of the Rivers are much the ſame with what they were then. Any Changes that have happen'd ſince, he ſuppoſes to have been made by the Stoppages and the Rolling of the Sands upon the Mouths of the *Rhine*, the *Maes*, and the *Scheld*, which run through thoſe Provinces into the Sea.

The Province of Holland.

AUthors differ about the Origin of its Name: Some derive it from its low Situation; ſome from the *German* Word *Holt*; *i. e.* Wood, with which 'twas formerly cover'd. But others, with more Probability, derive it from *Holland* in *Denmark*. *Lotharius*, the 3d Son of the Emperor *Ludovicus Pius*, being oblig'd to grant this Province and *Zealand* to the *Danes* about the 9th Century, as *Curingius* ſays in his Book *De Finibus Germaniæ*; which is the more probable, becauſe before that Time this Province was called *Vlaerdingen*, from *Vlaerdingen*, formerly a Town of great Note at the Mouth of the *Maes*. That Part of the Country which lies S. of the *Old Rhine*, was anciently inhabited by the *Batavi*, and after them by the *Frizans*. *Bentivoglio* obſerves, that 'tis cut through in ſo many Places by Rivers and artificial Channels, that it may be doubted whether it conſiſts moſt of Land or Water; and that they abound ſo in Ships, that it may be queſtion'd whether the Number of their Ships and other Veſſels be not equal to that of their Houſes. Sir *W. Temple* ſays, That the Soil of the whole Province is generally flat, like the Sea in a Calm, and looks as if, after a long Contention between the Land and Water, it had at length been divided betwixt them; and that if the Number of Rivers and Canals, which lead not only to every great Town, but almoſt to every Village, and the innumerable Sails that courſe every where up and down, be duly conſider'd, 'twill appear, that the People who live by Water, bear a good Proportion to thoſe who live by Land.

The Effects of the Trade of this Province are ſuch, that 'tis ſaid of 'em, tho' they have no Wood of their own, they ſpend more than any Nation: Tho' their Fields bear little Corn, they have ſometimes kept the Granary of *Europe*: Tho' they have neither Vines nor Wool, and very little Flax of their own Growth, yet there is no Place better ſtor'd with Wines: And they make more Cloth of both Sorts than any other Country of an equal, and than moſt of a larger Extent.

The Soil produces ſeveral Sorts of Fruit, and in ſome Places good Corn, but in ſmall Quantities. The N. Part of the Province is Mooriſh, and unfit for Tillage. The other, which lies next *Brabant*, is moſtly Meadows that about the End of *October* begin to be cover'd with Water; which being augmented by frequent Rains and Snows, continues all Winter; ſo that the Towns and Villages ſeem to ſtand in the Sea. This however makes their Ground fruitful for Paſturage, and occaſions their making vaſt Quantities of Butter and Cheeſe; which, beſides what they ſpend themſelves, is reckon'd to bring them in Annually a Million of Carolins, which are about 3 *l.* 4 *d.* apiece. Beſides the overflowing of the Country, the Climate it ſelf does naturally abound in Moiſture and Rain; ſo that 'tis difficult ſometimes to diſtinguiſh the Spring, Summer, and Autumn. *Bentivoglio* ſays, their Winter is rather long than ſevere; but 'twou'd be all Fog and Miſt, if it were not cleared by the Sharpneſs of their Froſts, which never fail

Digitized by Google

with every E. Wind for about 4 Months in the Year, and are much fiercer than in the ſame Latitude with us, becauſe the Wind comes to them over a mighty dry Continent; but is moiſten'd by the Vapours, or ſoften'd by the Warmth of the Motion of the Sea, before it reach us. This, ſays Sir *William*, is the greateſt Diſadvantage of Trade they receive from their Situation, tho' neceſſary to their Health, becauſe their Havens are frequently ſhut up for two or three Months with Ice. The fierce Sharpneſs of theſe Winds makes the Changes of their Weather violent and ſurprizing, ſo as a warm faint Air turns in a Night to a ſharp Froſt, with the Wind coming into the N. E. and the contrary with another Change of Wind. The Spring is much ſhorter and leſs agreeable than ours, the Winter much colder, and ſome Part of the Summer much hotter. The extream Moiſture of their Air is the Occaſion of the great Neatneſs in their Houſes, and Cleanlineſs in their Towns; for without that Care, their Country would not be habitable by ſuch Crowds of People, the Air would corrupt upon every hot Seaſon, and expoſe them to infectious Diſtempers, which they hardly eſcape 3 Summers together, eſpecially about *Leyden*, where the Waters are not ſo eaſily renew'd; and therefore that City is kept the moſt neat and clean of all their Towns. The Moiſtneſs of their Air makes all Metals apt to ruſt, and Wood to grow mouldy, which they are forc'd to prevent by continual rubbing and ſcowring; as the Deepneſs of their Soil, and Wetneſs of their Seaſon, obliges them to keep the Streets well pav'd, and to make long Cauſways between many of their Towns, and in their Roads.

Their Inundations and Dikes, and the Cauſes of their High Tides.

THE Flatneſs of their Land expoſes 'em to Danger of Inundations by the Sea, and to infinite Charge in making and repairing their Banks and Dikes, which employ Annually more Men than all the Corn of the Province of *Holland* could maintain. They have lately found the common Seaweed to be the beſt Material for thoſe Dikes; which, faſten'd with a thin Mixture of Earth, yields a little to the Force of the Sea, and returns to its Poſture when the Waves give back. Their Dikes are uſually about 7 Ells high, and 17 broad at Bottom, made of the tougheſt Clay, fenc'd on the Land-ſide with Wood and Stone, and on the other with Mats of Ruſhes and Flags, ſtak'd down as high as the Tide generally riſes, or with Sea-weed, as formerly mentioned, which hinders the Water from ſapping and undermining the Body of the Dikes: But in *North-Holland*, when the Storm is very violent, they clap Sails on the outſide of their Dikes, which they look upon to be the beſt Defence.

Guicciardin ſuppoſes, that the Height and Violence of the Tides upon their Coaſts, proceed from their being ſhop'd in their Courſe from the great W. Ocean by the Interpoſition of *Great Britain*, which at each End of the Iſland ſwell into two vaſt and violent Currents; one of which coming through St. *George*'s Channel, he judges to meet and claſh with the other, whoſe Courſe is from the N. W. much about the Coaſt of *Holland*; ſo that when a Spring Tide, ſtrong S. W. but eſpecially N. W. Wind, and a conſiderable Land-Flood, happen together, the Coaſts of the United Provinces, and ſeveral Parts of *Flanders*, are very much in Danger. The N. W. Wind makes the higheſt Tides upon the Coaſt of *Holland* and *Flanders*, and the greateſt Inundations have happen'd during ſuch Winds, the Moon being moreover in *Apogeo*: Several Inſtances of which are brought in the *Philoſophical Tranſactions*, N° 64. The Reaſon why the N. W. Wind makes the higheſt Tide, is thought to be, becauſe that Wind drives in the Flood much with an equal Force at both Ends of *Great Britain*; but the Current which comes from the N. W. is ſuppoſed to be the moſt impetuous of the two, becauſe 'tis received out of a wider into a narrower Channel: Upon which Account it muſt needs ſwell higher; whereas the Channel of the other, which comes in betwixt *England* and *France*, is much enlarged by that Time it reaches the Coaſt of *Holland* and *Zealand*. There is another Reaſon given by Dr. *Wallis*, why the N. Tide muſt needs be the ſtrongeſt; *viz.* the Waters of the Sea, becauſe they cannot follow the

Digitized by Google

the Earth faſt enough in its diurnal Motion from W. to E. are thrown back upon the *American* Shore, which muſt be done with much the greateſt Violence under the Equator, where the Motion of the Earth is quickeſt, and conſequently the Sea is more deficient in accompanying its ſaid Motion: Wherefore, if, as is alſo ſuppoſed on each Side of the Equator, the ſame Waters are returned back again in an Eddy to the S. E. and N. E. then this Return, the nearer it approaches the N. towards which the Earth's diurnal Motion is ſtill ſlower and ſlower, muſt be made with the greater Violence and Rapidity.

Hiſtory gives us frequent Accounts of the Sea's breaking in upon their Banks, deſtroying Multitudes of People and Cattle, and ſwallowing up large Tracts of Land, particularly on the 5th of *November*, 1530, when it overflowed a great Part of *Zealand*. *Strada* mentions another on *All-Saints* Eve in 1568, when the Sea ſwelled ſo high, that it broke ſome Banks, and overflowed others, with ſuch a ſudden and unheard of Inundation, that it cover'd ſome Iſlands of *Zealand*, great Part of the Coaſt of *Holland*, and almoſt all *Frieſland*, was higher by a Foot than that which happen'd in 1530, and ſwallowed up 72 Villages; and in *Frieſland* alone deſtroyed above 20000 People, whoſe Bodies, with thoſe of their Cattle, their Houſhold-Stuff, and broken Veſſels, floating upon the drown'd Country, gave thoſe that eſcap'd a lively Repreſentation of *Noah*'s Deluge. Many People getting up to the Tops of Trees and Riſing Grounds, were in Danger of being famiſh'd, till they were brought off in Boats by the Care of the Magiſtrates. They ſuffer'd likewiſe much by an Inundation in 1655; but more by one in *Nov.* 1665, which drove in the Sea with ſuch incredible Violence between the *Texel* and the *Helder*, that it carried Part of the Village of *Huyſduynen* quite away, and laid all the Country between *Wiring* and *Zyp* under Water; the Dike near *Horn* was broke in two Places; the Water came to the Gates of *Medemblick*, overflowed many Villages, and of a ſudden turn'd a large Tract of the Country into a continued Sea, which deſtroyed much People and Cattle. The Dike of *Muydenberg* was alſo broke down; ſo that all the Country round *Naerden*, *Muyden*, and *Weſop*, as far as *Loren* in *Goyland*, and *Balcorm* in the Province of *Utrecht*, was under Water. The Gates and Ramparts of *Naerden* were ruin'd; and that ſtrong Rampart of Stone called the *Aſſes-Back*, built to repel the Waves, was hurry'd away, leaving a Hole where it ſtood of 36 Foot deep. In *Amſterdam*, the *Newen* Dike, with the Street upon it, and the neighbouring Market-place, was quite overflow'd. The Dike betwixt *Amſterdam* and *Haerlem* was broke in the Middle for 30 or 40 Rods; ſo that there was about 33 Foot Water in thoſe Parts. There were many other Dikes had the ſame Fate; the Country in many Places, and particularly a great Part of Water-Land, was entirely ſwallow'd up; ſeveral Dikes in *Frieſland* had Breaches made in them of 30 and 40 Rods long; ſo that a great Part of thoſe Coaſts ſeem'd to be irrecoverably loſt: Yet after the ceaſing of the Storm, by the incredible Induſtry of the People, thoſe Dikes were repaired, and made ſtronger than before in the *February* following. The ſame Tempeſt did a great deal of Damage in *Zealand* and *Flanders*, and was obſerved to have much exceeded that in 1568. See the Cut of the *Inundations*.

Their Banks, eſpecially thoſe on the Rivers, do likewiſe ſuffer frequently by Shoals of Ice, as happen'd in 1638, when the Ice of the *Rhine* broke down the *Iſſel* Dike near *Utrecht*, and laid moſt of *Holland* under Water: But this not having the continued Fury of the Marine Inundations, the Dike was ſpeedily repaired, and the Waters were drein'd by the uſual Help of Wind-Mills, of which they have great Numbers conveniently placed for carrying off the Winter-Rain, and Snow-Waters; which about the beginning of *February*, if the Froſt do not hinder, are forced up by the Mills to vaſt Currents, and drove into particular Channels; ſo that the Earth becoming dry in a little Time, it begins to look green about *March*, when their Cattle are put out to Graſs.

Beſides thoſe Dikes which are made by Art to ſecure them againſt ſuch Inundations, Nature has afforded them ſeveral Helps, particularly 4 or 5 little Iſlands in the *Zuyder-Sea*, beſides the *Texel*, the *Vlie*, and others on the Mouth of the ſaid Sea on the Coaſt of *Frieſland*, which break the firſt Fury of thoſe Tempeſts: And from the *Hunts-Boſſe* towards the upper End of *North-Holland*,

Digitized by Google

Holland, down to the *Beer* at the Mouth of the *Maes*, which is about 24 Leagues, the Violence of the Waves is curb'd by continu'd Rows of Sandy Hills; between which and the Sea, lies the fineſt Way in the World; and all along the Water is ſo ſhallow on the Shore, that in calm Weather a Man may go in a great Way without being put to ſwim. Upon this Shore many Ships are forced to run by contrary Winds, eſpecially in Winter, when the Nights are dark and long; but when the Sea is calm, 'tis very pleaſant to ſee the great Number of Ships under Sail on that Coaſt, ſome continually diſappearing, and others immediately coming into Sight.

But as they have thoſe Diſadvantages above-mention'd by the Flatneſs of their Country, and the Softneſs of their Soil, they have this great Advantage by it, That they have cut numerous Canals, not only in this but in other Provinces, with little Trouble and Charge, which makes the Paſſage eaſy and convenient, and Carriage cheap betwixt one Town and another; and both Paſſengers and Goods are brought to their Set Stages at the appointed Time in their *Treckſchuyts*, which are drawn by Horſes, and the Paſſengers and Goods are ſecured from Rain, *&c.* the Boats being cover'd by a Deck above, and having Windows in the Sides to let in the Air, by which alſo the Paſſengers may ſee the Country as they travel. They have cut many new Canals ſince their Peace with *Spain* in 1648.

As the overflowing of their Country in the Winter fructifies their Soil, it gives them alſo the Opportunity not only of diverting themſelves on the Ice, as formerly mentioned, but likewiſe of travelling expeditiouſly about Buſineſs with their Skates, by which ſome of 'em will make above 18 Miles an Hour, if the Ice be ſmooth and even; and they have likewiſe Sledges loaden with Goods, which the Men drive before them as they ſlide on their Skates; and they uſually carry long Poles upon their Shoulders, to ſupport them in caſe the Ice ſhould break.

Their Soil, Beaſts, Birds, Fiſh, Inſects, &c.

IN order to the better dreining of their Ground, 'tis cut thro with innumerable Ditches and Channels; and the Ways thro thoſe Grounds are diſtinguiſh'd by Rows of Trees, which make them very pleaſant. Their Paſtures are mighty rich, and produce excellent Graſs, mix'd with great Quantities of ſweet Trefoil; ſo that 'tis little inferior to Oats and Barley for feeding of Cattle, which they conclude from their Hay's being much apter to take Fire than that of other Countries, if not throughly dry'd before it be ſtack'd up. By the Abundance of this choice Graſs, they feed vaſt Herds of Cattle, and eſpecially Cows, which give more Milk than in other Countries; one of 'em in ſome Parts of *Holland* giving no leſs than 3 great Pails in a Day. This, yields them vaſt Quantities of Butter and Cheeſe; in making and preſerving of which, they excel moſt Countries, the Cheeſe of *Holand* being thought not inferior to *Parmeſan*.

The Landlords and Tenants are exceeding careful to improve their Lands: The former obliges the latter to apply certain Portions of Ground to ſuch and ſuch particular Uſes; not to feed above ſo many Cattle in ſuch a Number of Acres; to ſee that the old Ditches be well ſcower'd, and kept open; to cut new ones where they are wanting; to let the plow'd Fields lie fallow one Year in ſo many, and to improve them with a ſufficient Quantity of Dung: Which makes them vie with one another who ſhall beſt cultivate their Ground.

Some Years their Corn-Fields are very much infeſted with Field-Mice, which are of ſo productive a Nature, that they engender almoſt as ſoon as brought forth. They firſt deſtroy the Roots, and afterwards carry what's left above Ground into their Holes: Nay, they purſue the Corn into the Barns; ſo that the Husbandmen ſet Pots half full of Water in the Ground to intercept and drown them. *Ubbo Emmius* ſays, there's alſo a ſmall Inſect about an Inch long, and no thicker at firſt than a ſlender Thread, which comes along with their Winter Miſts and Fogs; and upon the firſt Approach of the warm Seaſon, feeds upon the new-ſprung Blades of Corn in the Nights and Mornings, but about Sun-riſing retires again under Ground, where it conſumes the Roots; but if the Heat of the Summer come early, thoſe Inſects do all periſh by the End of *May*, otherwiſe they grow as big

Digitized by Google

big as a Man's little Finger; and at length, caſting their Shells, change their Species, and become Volatiles. About the Beginning of the Spring, or as ſoon as the Trees put forth their Leaves, upon the firſt Eaſt Winds, they have vaſt Swarms of Caterpillars, which very much annoy their Corn and Fruits.

They are fond of Orchards and Gardens in moſt of the United Provinces; but there are feweſt of them in *Holland*, becauſe they have leaſt waſte Ground there. They are ſo curious in this Matter, that there's ſcarce any Tree, Shrub, Sort of Vine, Herb, Flower, Seed or Bulbous-Root, but what they have in their Gardens. Some Years ago they doted ſo extravagantly upon Flowers, eſpecially on Tulips, that the meaneſt Mechanicks neglected their Buſineſs to trade in them; and ſome, who could ill ſpare it, would give 2 or 3000 Florins for the Root of a fine Flower; but finding the Profit did not anſwer the Pains and Expence, the ordinary Sort were ſoon cured of this Phrenzy.

Minerals they have none in *Holland*, and their chief Foſſile is a Bituminous Earth, of which they make their Turfs. As they dig it in ſome Places, they find great Numbers of Trees under Ground, whoſe Boughs and Leaves appear ſo exactly, that ſome pretend to diſtinguiſh the Species of 'em. This is an Argument, that the Country was formerly overgrown with Wood, and thoſe Trees are ſuppoſed to have been overturn'd by Tempeſts and Inundations, and in Proceſs of Time cover'd over with Earth. In ſome Places they rake up Mud from the bottom of the Water, which they carry out in Boats, ſpread it upon the Ground as equally as they can, lay Boards upon it, tread it; and when the Water is ſqueez'd out, cut it in Form of Bricks, and dry it for Fuel. It is obſerv'd, that the Earth from whence they dig their Turf fills up again in a few Years, which affords the middling Sort a conſtant Fuel; the poorer in many Places making uſe of Cow's-Dung, which they dry up in the ſame Manner; but the better Sort do generally make uſe of *Scots* Coal.

They have no native Foſſile Salt. In ſome Places they collect ſome ſmall Quantities out of the Sea-Water. They are excellent at boiling and purifying what is brought to them from *France* and other Countries. They formerly gather'd Salt out of their burnt Turfs, which were ſuppoſed to be impregnated with it by the frequent Inundations of the Sea. Yet by their Induſtry and Trade, they have not only enough of Salt for themſelves, tho they uſe more of it than any Nation in *Europe*, but to ſupply other Countries.

The uſual Grain in the United Provinces are, Summer and Winter Wheat, another reſembling Barley in the Shape of the Ear, Buck-Wheat or Beach-Wheat, very much us'd by their Brewers; but the beſt and whiteſt Wheat is in *Zealand*. They have likewiſe Barley, Oats, Peaſe, Beans, and Rye, Colewort-Seed, and Rape-Seed; out of which they make Oil, Madder, Hops, and great Quantities of *French* Beans.

The Wild-Beaſts in theſe Provinces are, ſome few Boars and Wolves, and ſuch a Number of Foxes, that the States pay a Price for every one that's taken. They have Multitudes of Hares and Rabbets, which none but the Nobles have Licence to kill or take. They have but few Deer. In ſome Parts of *Drente*, they have a Creature of middle Nature, betwixt a Hog and a Bear. They have Multitudes of Squirrels, of which they tame great Numbers. Their Hogs are but indifferent Meat, being fed with Whey, and ſuch other waſhy Nouriſhment; yet they ſalt a great deal of Pork, which they ſend Annually to the *Indies*.

They have ſtore of Horſes, and have lately mended their Breed, ſeveral Villages contributing to keep a good Stallion, to which every Man of the Neighbourhood is obliged to bring his Mare. *Contingius* commends 'em for their large Size, delicate Colour, and excellent Shapes; but their Heads being thought too great and heavy, they have corrected that, by purchaſing the choiceſt Stallions from neighbouring Countries. They have a great Trade in feeding Black Cattle, of which they purchaſe Annually many Thouſands from *Holſtein*, *Eaſt-Frieſland*, &c. and fatting them in their own rich Paſture, ſell them off in *October*. They have great Numbers of Sheep; but their beſt Mutton is in *Zealand*, where they feed upon Graſs and Herbs, that abound with Salt.

Digitized by Google

Salt. In other Provinces, they feed much upon a low Shrub called Sweet-Broom, and an excellent Cheese is made of their Milk.

They have Multitudes of Storks, which build and hatch on their Chimneys in Towns as well as Villages. They take Flight with their Young about the Beginning of *August*, and, as *Conringius* says, go to *Africk*, from whence they return Annually about the End of *February*. They have vast Numbers of Wild-Ducks from *Norway*, and the Coasts of the *Baltick*, from whence they come to feed in their Channels and Marshes about the End of Autumn, or the Beginning of Winter. They have large Flocks of Wild-Geese, Herons, which build about the Houses of their Gentry, where none are allow'd to disturb 'em, and Wild and Tame Swans, kept at the publick Charge in Moats and Ditches, with Officers to take Care of them. They have great Numbers of Partridges, Snipes, Water-Hens, Quails, Lapwings, whose Eggs they count a Dainty, Larks, Thrushes, and Pigeons, which they allow no Man to shoot. They have likewise Plenty of all the other Sorts of Domestick Fowl. About the Feast of St. *Martin*, they have particular Markets for selling Geese, when the poorest among 'em will be sure to have one for his Family; the Origine of which is ascribed to the particular Respect they paid formerly to St. *Martin* Bishop of *Tours*.

The Fish in and near their own Rivers are, Salmons, which abound most in the Mouth of the *Maes* and *Leck*; Pikes, Mullets, Perches, Trouts, Shad-Fish, and abundance of Eels, many of which they salt up. In some Places, the Right of Fishing is restrain'd to the Nobles; in others 'tis free to every one, and they have Officers to keep the People within due Limits on this Head. The Fish upon their Coasts are, Habardine, Haddocks, great Numbers of Soles, Rays, Sturgeons, Sea-Crabs, Pollards, Congars, Mackrel, excellent Sole-Fish, Smelts, and Herrings; but the latter not being good, are sold very cheap to their Poor. They have Plenty of Muscles, Cockles, Crabs, and other Shell-Fish, but no Oysters. Some of the latter were found in 1620 on the Coast of *Zealand*, which being very good, the Magistrates forbid to disturb them; but the greedy Seamen taking them by Night before they had settled, they soon removed, and have not been heard of since. They have many Sea-Dogs on some Part of their Coasts, which the Fishermen take thus; They disguise themselves in Beasts-Skins at such Times as those Fish come out of the Water; and dancing and playing Antick Tricks before them, draw them from the Shore, where they place Nets betwixt them and the Sea, and then throwing off their Disguise, pursue them till they are entangled and taken.

The Description of this Province agrees to most of the rest; but we shall take Notice of the particular Differences as they come in our way.

The Boundaries of this Province, including *North-Holland* or *West-Friesland*, which in all publick Acts is mentioned apart, are, the *German* Ocean on the W. the Province of *Utrecht* and *Betuwe* on the E. the *Zuyder-Sea* on the N. and *Brabant* and *Zealand* on the S. It lies between 51 Deg. 40 Min. and 53 Deg. of Lat. 23 Deg 10 Min. and 24 Deg. 20 Min. Long. 'Tis about 80 Miles from N. to S. besides the Islands that lie in the Mouth of the *Zuyder-Sea*, and about 40 where broadest from E. to W. but in other Places scarce 25. 'Tis divided into N. and S. The N. is subdivided into *West-Friesland*, the Islands *Texel*, *Vlie*, and *Schelling*, *Waterland*, and *Kennemerland*, *Amsteland*, *Goiland*, *Rynland*, *Delfland*, and *Schieland*. *South-Holland* is subdivided into the Bailiwick of *Dort*, the Land of *Voorn*, the Islands of *Goree* and *Overflackee*, according to modern Geographers; but according to the Archieves in their Chamber of Accounts, the Province is divided, 1. Into *North-Holland*, the Dyck-Graviat of *Rynland*, *Delfland*, *Schieland*, and the Country of *Wordem*. 2. Into *South-Holland*. 3. Into *Voorn*. 4. Into *Kennemerland* and *West-Friesland*, which, according to this Division, is very improperly called *North-Holland*. The whole Province it said to contain 23 Wall'd Towns, and 400 Villages; but M. *de Fer*, in his *Methode Abregée*, reckons 32 Cities, 5 great open Towns, 407 Villages, 6 Fortresses, and 22 Islands; of which in their proper Places.

Their

Digitized by Google

Their Ancient GOVERNMENT.

Grotius, in his Book *De Antiquitate Reipub. Batavicæ*, endeavours to prove the Freedom and Independency of this Province in all Ages, not excepting the Time when the *Franks* enlarg'd their Kingdom in thoſe Parts. There's ſufficient Ground indeed from Hiſtory to ſay, that they were rather Allies than Subjects to the *Romans*; but Authors are not agreed that they preſerv'd their Liberty after the Declenſion of the *Roman* Empire. The *Atlas Hiſtorique* gives us the Names and Chronology of 35 of their Counts; of the chief of whom we ſhall give a ſhort Hiſtory, after premiſing what *Grotius* has ſaid of their ancient Conſtitution in 12 Heads: 1. If the Principality deſcended to a Female, ſhe was not to marry without Conſent of the States. 2. None but Natives ſhould be Senators, Treaſurers, or Prætors. 3. The States ſhould meet when and where they pleaſed, without being obliged to ask Leave of the Prince. 4. That no Tax ſhould be impoſed, or any one exempted from paying them, without Conſent of the States. 5. That no War, Offenſive or Defenſive, ſhould be undertaken without their Approbation. 6. The Prince in his Letters ſhould uſe the *Dutch* Language. 7. He ſhould not coin or alter Money without Conſent of the States. 8. He ſhould not alienate any of his Dominions. 9. He ſhould not aſſemble the States out of their own Country. 10. If he ſtood in need of Money, he ſhould deſire it of the States in Perſon, and levy none but what they granted. 11. Juſtice ſhould be adminiſtred by the ordinary Judges. 12. If the Prince decreed or commanded any thing contrary to their ancient Cuſtoms and Laws, no Man ſhould be obliged to obey him.

The Counts of *Holland* were alſo Sovereigns of *Zealand*: The firſt of 'em was *Thiery* or *Theodorick*, by ſome called *Diderick*, and *Childrick*, Son to *Sigebert* D. of *Aquitain*, who they ſay was of *Trojan* Race; and that the Emperor *Charles the Bald* being informed, about 863, that *Holland* was infeſted by the *Danes*, he did, at the Requeſt of Pope *John* VIII. confer the Principality upon *Thiery*, who coming thither with an Army, ſubdued the *Frizons* and *Danes*, and took Poſſeſſion of the Country, againſt the Will of many of the People, who therefore rebelled, and drove him out; but being reſtored by the Emperor's Aſſiſtance, he puniſhed the Rebels, and married, ſays *Scriverius*, *Jenna* (as ſome will have it) Daughter to *Pepin*, with whom he lies buried at *Egmond*. His Son *Theodorick* ſucceeded in 903, defeated the *Frizons* in two Battles, rebuilt the Monaſtery of *Egmond* they had burnt down, married *Hildegard*, Daughter to *Lewis* of *France*, died in the 50th Year of his Reign, and was buried at *Egmond*.

He was ſucceeded by his Son *Arnolph*, or, as the *Atlas* ſays, *Thiery* III. about 947, who reign'd but 5 Years, being ſlain, with the greateſt Part of his Nobility, by the *Frizons*, and buried at *Egmond*. *Scriverius* makes *Thiery* III. Succeſſor to *Arnolph*, and ſays, he took *Adebold* the Biſhop of *Utrecht* in Battle, that had ſtir'd up the *Frizons* againſt him; whom having reduced, he gave *Frieſland* to his youngeſt Son *Florent*; after which he went on a Pilgrimage to the *Holy Land*, died as he return'd about 947, in the 46th Year of his Reign, and was buried at *Egmond*, where long after, the Epitaphs of the 3 *Thieries* were found in Monkiſh Rhyming Latin. The *Atlas* makes *Arnolph* his Succeſſor in 988, and ſays, he was ſucceeded by *Thiery* IV. in 993, who having in a Tournament at *Liege* kill'd the Biſhop of *Cologne*'s Brother, fled to his own Country, and was purſued by the *Germans*, who ſeiz'd *Dort*; but being ſurpris'd by the Earl, he kill'd them, with 400 Perſons of Quality, and next Morning was ſhot into the Thigh with a poiſon'd Arrow by a ſculking *German* as he paſs'd careleſly thrô the Street, which on that Account is ſtill called the *Earl's Street*, and died two Days after, in the 9th Year of his Reign. The *Atlas* makes *Thiery* V. his Succeſſor in 1039; but *Scriverius* makes it *Florent* his Brother, who ſucceeded in 1049, and by digging Pits in the Ground, cover'd with Hay and Straw, routed the Archbiſhop of *Cologne*, the Biſhop of *Liege*, and the Count of *Lorrain*. Four Years after he defeated the *Germans* again; but in his Return was ſurpris'd, defeated and ſlain, by the Earl of *Cuik*, at *Hemert*, betwixt the *Maes* and the *Waal*, in the 14th of his Reign over *Holland*, and the 21ſt over *Frieſland*,

Digitized by Google

and interr'd at *Egmond*. His Widow *Gertrude* of *Saxony* govern'd for ſome Time as Guardian to her Son *Thiery*, and afterwards married *Robert*, ſirnam'd the *Frizon*, becauſe he conquer'd that People; and in 1066 he aſſum'd the Government of *Holland*, which he manag'd with great Integrity; but was drove out by *Godfrey*, ſirnam'd the *Crookback'd*, Count of *Lorrain*, and the Biſhop of *Utrecht*.

Godfrey aſſum'd the Government in 1070, built *Delft*, and ſubdued the *Frizons*, who beſieg'd him afterwards in *Alcmaer*; but the Biſhop of *Utrecht* raiſed the Siege, and defeated the Enemy: After which, a Servant of young *Theodorick* kill'd *Godfrey*, by thruſting a Javelin up his Fundament as he was eaſing himſelf in a Room over a Ditch.

Thiery V. or, as ſome reckon him, the VIth, ſucceeded in 1075, reduced the Biſhop of *Utrecht* and the *Frizons*, whom he defeated in two Battles, and ſpar'd neither Age nor Sex.

He was ſucceeded by *Florent the Fat* in 1092, who was a peaceable and religious Prince, and died in the 3d Year of his Reign.

He was ſucceeded by his Son *Thiery* VI. or VII. in 1123. He defeated the *Frizons*, and afterwards beſieged the Biſhop of *Utrecht* in that City; but upon the Biſhop's putting on his Pontifical Habit, and appearing at the Head of his Clergy in order to excommunicate *Thiery*, that Prince beg'd his Pardon, and retir'd. In his Time a great Part of *Utrecht*, with the principal Churches, was burnt. He died in the 40th Year of his Reign.

Florence III. ſucceeded him in 1163, who married the K. of *Scotland*'s Daughter, was reconciled to the Biſhop of *Utrecht* by the Emperor *Frederick*, defeated the *Frizons*, who invaded his Country, and burnt *Alcmaer*, for which he made them pay a prodigious Sum. After this, he went to the Recovery of the *Holy Land*, and died at *Antioch* in the 27th Year of his Reign.

He was ſucceeded by his Son *Thiery* VII. or VIIIth. He had War with his Brother *William*, which was ended by granting him *Eaſt* and *Weſt Frieſland* in Fee. He had afterwards War with the Duke of *Guelder*, invaded *Brabant*, and took *Boiſleduc*, with a great many Priſoners of Quality; but in his Return was defeated and taken by the D. of *Lorrain*, who forc'd him to repair the Damages he had done to *Boiſleduc* before he ſet him at Liberty: After which he died at *Dort*, in the 13th Year of his Reign.

He was ſucceeded by his Daughter *Ada*; who dying without Iſſue in a Year after, her Uncle *William* I. ſucceeded in 1204. He had War with the Biſhop of *Utrecht*, but purchas'd a Peace by his Money, rigg'd out a Fleet, and landed in *Scotland* to poſſeſs himſelf of that Crown, upon the Death of the King his Uncle, to whom he pretended to be next Heir; but hearing that the Count of *Looz* had invaded *Holland*, he return'd, and died in 1223. The *Scots* Hiſtories make no Mention of his Expedition to that Country; therefore we leave the Reader to his own Judgment about it.

He was ſucceeded by his Son *Florent* IV. a valiant Prince. The Counteſs of *Clermont* having heard much of his Courage, and being deſirous to ſee him, ſhe prevailed with her Husband to appoint a ſolemn Tournament; to which it being uſual for all fam'd Soldiers to reſort, *Florent* came thither, and by his gallant Deportment did ſo charm the Counteſs, that ſhe could not forbear praiſing him before her Husband; who being jealous at it, enter'd the Liſts with ſome arm'd Men, and barbarouſly murder'd him in the Flower of his Age, and 12th Year of his Reign.

He was ſucceeded by his Son *William* II. in 1235, who was a Warlike Prince, and on that Account choſen K. of the *Romans*, when ſcarce 20 Years old. He appointed the Court at the *Hague* for determining the Law-Suits in *Holland* and *Zealand*. He ſent his Brother *Florent* againſt the *Flemings* that had invaded his Country, and defeated them in a bloody Battle. K. *William* ſpar'd the Lives of the Priſoners, but ſent them home naked. He went afterwards to *Italy*, where he received the Imperial Crown from Pope *Innocent*, and on his Return was received with great Reſpect in the Empire. He defeated the *Frizons* in a Battle; but as he was marching againſt them a ſecond time, the Ice broke under his Horſe, and he was ſlain by ſome of the Enemy that lay concealed among the Oziers in 1255.

He was ſucceeded by his Son *Florent* V. who obtained two Victories over the *Frizons*,

Digitized by Google

xms, and compoſed his Differences with the Earl of *Flanders*, by marrying his Daughter. He built ſtately Palaces in ſeveral Cities of *Holland*, and is ſaid to have gone over into *England*, with a Deſign to purſue his Title to *Scotland*; but returned, becauſe the *Flemings* had invaded his Country. In his old Age, he forc'd the Wife of *Gerard van Velſon*, his Favourite, who had diſoblig'd him, by refuſing to marry his Concubine; for which *Velſon*, with his Wife's Father and others, ſurpris'd and kill'd him in the 41ſt Year of his Reign. *Velſon* being afterwards taken, was put into a Hogſhead full of ſharp Nails, and roll'd up and down the Streets of *Leyden* till he died. Some others of the Conſpirators were alſo put to Death, and the reſt died miſerably in Foreign Parts.

John I. Son to *Florent*, ſucceeded in 1296. He was in *England*, where he had married the King's Daughter, when his Father died; but haſten'd over, defeated the *Frizons* in two Battles, and died without Iſſue at *Haërlem* in the 4th Year of his Reign, *Ann.* 1299.

He was ſucceeded by *John* II. of *Hainault*, who was Son to his Grandfather's Siſter. He was 5 Years Earl of *Holland*, defended his Brother, who was Biſhop of *Utrecht*, againſt his Enemies; and his Son *William* defeated the *Flemings* by Sea, where they loſt 10000 Men in one Battle. The Writers of thoſe Times ſay, there were ſtrange Apparitions of Fleets on the Sea before this Action. *John* died in 1304.

He was ſucceeded by his Son *William* III. who for his Piety, Juſtice and Mildneſs, had the Sirname of *Good*; as his Brother *John*, who was kill'd by the *Flemings*, was for his contrary Temper call'd, *John without Mercy*. In *William*'s Reign, *Holland* was afflicted with Plague and Famine, which deſtroyed many of their People. In 1328, *Philip* of *France*, by the Aſſiſtance of *William*, obtain'd a great Victory over the *Flemings*. There's a memorable Story of an Act of Juſtice done by this good Earl not long before his Death upon the Bailiff of *South-Holland*, who had taken away a poor Man's Cow, (he refuſing to ſell her, becauſe ſhe gave ſuch a prodigious Quantity of Milk, that his whole Family ſubſiſted thereby) and in Exchange ſent him another, nothing comparable to her; whom the Earl commanded in the firſt place, for the Wrong done, to pay the Countryman 100 Crowns; and afterwards, for the Injury done to himſelf and his Government, to be beheaded. He adviſed his Son *William*, upon his Death-Bed, to maintain Peace with his Neighbours, and lay no grievous Impoſitions upon his Subjects. He reign'd 33 Years. He had by his Wife *Jane* of *Valois* 3 Sons, *William*, *Lewis*, and *John*; with 4 Daughters, *Margaret* Dutcheſs of *Bavaria*, and Empreſs, *Joan* Counteſs of *Juliers*, *Philippa* Queen of *England*, and *Elizabeth*.

He was ſucceeded by *William* IV. in 1337, died without lawful Iſſue, leaving only one natural Son behind him. He was very zealous for the Propagation of the Chriſtian Religion: Upon which Account he aſſiſted the King of *Spain* in Perſon with a conſiderable Army againſt the *Moors*; and by his Valour againſt thoſe infidels, gain'd immortal Fame. When he return'd, he beſieg'd *Utrecht*; and being ready to take and ſack the Town, was perſwaded by his Nobles to agree to a Peace, or rather Truce, upon Condition that 500 of the principal Citizens ſhould come forth with their Heads and Feet bare, and upon their Knees beg his Pardon. After this he fought the *Frizons*; but engaging too boldly, was ſlain not far from *Staveren*.

He was ſucceeded by *Margaret*, Daughter to *William the Good*, and Wife to *Lewis* of *Bavaria* the Emperor. She came with a great Retinue into *Holland*, and having taken Poſſeſſion, reſign'd the Government to her Son *William*, who was to allow her an Annual Penſion; but he afterwards return'd her the Provinces: Upon which there happen'd War between *Holland* and thoſe of *Utrecht*, wherein the latter were worſted. In Revenge for her Brother's Death, ſhe confiſcated and put to publick Sale all the Goods of the *Frieſlanders* that were found in *Holland*.

Her Son *William* V. Earl of *Holland*, *Zealand*, and *Hainault*, and Lord of *Frieſland*, ſucceeded. The Biſhop of *Utrecht*, provok'd by his Hoſtilities, invaded *Holland*, and burnt two Towns. In his Time a great Part of *Haërlem* was burnt down; but the Incendiaries never diſcover'd. After he govern'd 7 Years, he fell mad, and kill'd *Gerard* of *Wateringen*, a Perſon of Noble

Digitized by Google

Extraction, for which he was ſecur'd, and the Adminiſtration taken from him.

He was ſucceeded by *Albert* I. about 1368. He was oppoſed by the *Cabillautin* Faction, who were for ſetting up the Lady *Matilda*, Wife of the diſtracted Earl. *Albert* beſieg'd the Town of *Delph* for burning ſome of his Caſtles, and ſetting at Liberty ſome Perſons he had impriſon'd, he compell'd them to make Reparation, and to diſmantle the greateſt Part of their Town. He had Wars with the *Gueldrians* and *Frizons*, govern'd 30 Years in his Brother's Name, 16 in his own, died, and was interr'd at the *Hague* in 1404.

His Son *William* VI. ſucceeded, made War with the D. of *Guelderland*, with whom he afterwards maintain'd a ſtrict Friendſhip. He got his Daughter *Jaqueline* recogniz'd Heireſs in an Aſſembly of the States, and died in 1417.

Jaqueline ſucceeded; and ſoon after *William* of *Arkel*, a powerful Lord, who had often bid Defiance to the Earls of *Holland*, ſurpris'd the Town of *Gorcum*, where the Lord of *Brederod* beſieg'd him for *Jaqueline*, and recover'd it; but both of 'em loſt their Lives in the Action. *Jaqueline* married the Dauphin of *France* for her firſt Husband; who dying in a Year after, ſhe married *John* D. of *Brabant*. *John* D. of *Bavaria*, her Father's Brother, having the Emperor's Conſent, claim'd the Province, becauſe his Brother left no Iſſue-Male: Upon which *Dort* and ſeveral other Cities revolted to him. He continued as Guardian to his Neece for 3 Years, who falling at Variance with her Husband, a Divorce enſued: But after *John* of *Bavaria*'s Death, the *Hollanders* renounc'd *Jaqueline*, and choſe her Husband the D. of *Brabant*. She afterwards married *Humphry* D. of *Glocester*; and upon his Death, *Francis* of *Borſales*, the D. of *Brabant* being ſtill alive; but finding no Hopes of Iſſue, ſhe reſign'd *Holland*, *Zealand*, *Hainault*, and *Frieſland*, to her Couſin *Philip* of *Burgundy*, and ſoon after died at the *Hague*, in the 36th Year of her Age.

Philip of *Burgundy* took Poſſeſſion, beſieg'd *Calais*, then in the Hands of the *Engliſh*; but miſcarried in his Deſign. He was the firſt that inſtituted the Order of the *Golden Fleece*; and by his Aſſiſtance, *Lewis* the Dauphin was advanc'd to the Crown of *France*. One *John* of *Kouſtein*, whom he advanc'd from the Dunghill to be his Favourite, attempted to poiſon him, which was diſcover'd by the Fellow he employ'd to buy it, becauſe he did not give him the promis'd Reward: Upon which he was beheaded; and the Fellow having own'd, that he would not have diſcover'd it had he paid him the Money, he was alſo put to Death. *Philip* died at *Bruges* in the 34th Year of his Reign.

His Son *Charles the Bold*, formerly called Count of *Charolois*, ſucceeded him in the Dukedoms of *Burgundy*, *Brabant*, *Limburg*, and *Luxemburg*, the Earldoms of *Flanders*, *Artois*, *Hainault*, *French County*, *Holland*, *Zealand*, and *Namur*, the Marquiſate of the Empire, the Lordſhips of *Frieſland*, *Salins*, and *Mechlen*. He took and almoſt ruin'd the City of *Liege*, and drove the D. of *Lorrain* out of his Country, which was recover'd by the Aſſiſtance of the *Swiſſers*, who defeated *Charles*, and kill'd 16000 of his Men near *Morat*. He afterwards laid Siege to *Nancy*, the Capital of *Lorrain*, where being betray'd by *Compobacchio*, an *Italian*, in whom he truſted ſo much, that he hanged a Gentleman who reveal'd the Conſpiracy. He was kill'd, and his Army routed. He was one of the greateſt Princes of his Time, and terrible to *Lewis* XI. of *France*, who had a Hand in his Ruin. He was ſo ſucceſsful at firſt, that his Subjects reckon'd him invincible, and would not for a long Time believe he was dead, but gone on a Penance to *Germany*, where, *Naucleras* ſays, a poor Beggar receiv'd conſiderable Alms under the Notion of being that Duke.

He was ſucceeded by *Mary* his only Child, at 14 Years of Age. She was courted by the Archduke *Maximilian*, the Dauphin of *France*, the Prince of *Wales*, and other great Princes, whom her Father kept in Suſpence. Her Inclination was to the Dauphin, afterwards *Charles* VIII. but his Father *Lewis* XI. making too much Haſt to ſeize Part of her Dominions on her Father's Death, ſhe was ſo much provok'd at it, that ſhe married the Archduke *Maximilian*, Son to the Emperor *Frederick*, with whom her Father had formerly been in Treaty about it, and procured her Conſent by a Letter to the Archduke.

Maxi-

Digitized by Google

Maximilian, as ſoon as married, defeated the *French* in *Flanders*, and took *Tournay*. He died in 1519, and was ſucceeded by his Son Archduke *Philip*: He by his Son the Emperor *Charles* V. and he by *Philip* III. who was the laſt Count of *Holland*, and the ſecond of that Name K. of *Spain*, in whoſe Time the *Dutch* revolted; of which we have already given an Account.

Their chief Towns.

1. *Amſterdam*, the Metropolis of the United Netherlands, lies in *Amſtelland*, in Long. 23. 30. Lat. 52. 23. 10 Miles E. from *Haerlem*, 18 N. E. from *Leyden*, 27 N. E. from *Rotterdam*, and 18 N. W. from *Utrecht*. It takes its Name from the Dam or Sluce on the River *Amſtel* that runs thrô it, and falls into the *Ye*, a River, or rather an Arm of the S. Sea, which lies on the N. Side of the Town, and ſerves as a Port to this City, which is one of the richeſt and greateſt Trading Towns in the World. 'Tis ſcarce mentioned in Hiſtory before 1299, it being in thoſe Days only a Village of Fiſhermen. The Ground on which it ſtands being Mooriſh, the Foundations were laid upon Maſts, and other large Pieces of Timber, drove by vaſt Force, and at a prodigious Expence, into the Earth. It has received conſiderable Additions at different Times, as the Curious may ſee by *De Witt's* Maps of it. In 1342, 'twas only a ſmall Town on the E. Side of the *Amſtel*, with one Street in the middle, and 5 or 6 acroſs. In 1400, 'twas enlarged as much more on the W. of that River. In 1482, 'twas increas'd ſo much on both Sides, that *Mary* of *Burgundy* thought fit to encompaſs it with ſtrong Brick Walls of extraordinary Workmanſhip, as appears by two of the Gates ſtill remaining, the reſt of thoſe Fortifications being demoliſh'd, to make Way for its further Enlargement. In 1585, it became the chief Seat of the Trade of thoſe Provinces, and was much enlarged. In 1601, 600 Houſes were new built by private Perſons. In 1612, 'twas reckon'd 9100 Paces in Circuit: The Butchery, Guard-Houſe, and the ſtately *Haerlem* Gate, being built about that Time; as was the New Church ſome Time before, and the W. and N. Churches ſome Time after. In 1656, they took in a very large Space of Ground, which is ſince built up, and the whole incloſ'd with new Walls of Brick, Gates of Stone, and a large Ditch all round, which gives it the Form of a Semi-circle. 'Twas above 60 Years ago reckon'd to contain 54000 Houſes; whereas *Paris* then contain'd but 46000: And about 40 Years ago, an *Engliſh* Traveller reckon'd it full as big as *Venice*, and half as big as *London*; ſince which, it has received ſuch conſiderable Additions and Improvements, that 'tis juſtly reckon'd one of the greateſt and fineſt Cities in the World. Sir *W. Temple* ſays, that called the *New Town* is ſo ſpacious for Extent, and its Buildings ſo much more ſumptuous and beautiful than thoſe of the Old Town, that it muſt needs have diverted a great Part of that Wealth which was formerly applied to Trade. The City is exceeding populous, and neatly kept; the Streets are large, with Canals of Water in the Middle, over which there are many Stone Bridges, beautify'd with Iron Rails and Ballaſters. The Houſes are all of Brick or Stone, and very beautiful, eſpecially thoſe in the Streets of the New Town, called the Lords, Kings, and Emperors Channels, where many of the Houſes are of Freeſtone, adorn'd with Columns and Chapters of the *Corinthian* Order. Theſe three, with thoſe called the *Haerlem* and *Cinghel* Street, are the chief of the City. Upon the Approach of the *French* in 1672, the Citizens willingly agreed to the ſpoiling of their fine Gardens for raiſing new Fortifications, which were made very regular and ſtrong; and at the ſame Time a Dike being cut on the Side of the Land, they had freſh Water convey'd into the Town, which they very much wanted. The particular Buildings of moſt Note are, 1. The *Old Church*, a large and majeſtick Structure of the *Gothick* Order. 'Twas founded in 1360; but the fair Steeple, now its great Ornament, was not finiſhed till 1566. In this Church was buried their famous Admiral *Haemskerck*, who defeated the *Spaniards* in the *Streights* in 1607, when he loſt his Life in the Action, for which he has a noble Monument erected by the States, with a lofty Inſcription. 2. The *New Church*, ſo called to diſtinguiſh it from the other. 'Twas founded about

bout 1414, burnt down in 1645, but ſoon rebuilt with much greater Splendour. At the ſame Time 6334 tall Trees were drove into a Plat of Ground of 100 Foot ſquare, to raiſe a Tower for it of extraordinary Height; but the Foundation not being reckon'd ſtrong enough, the Tower was not rais'd above 40 Foot high. In the Windows of this Church, the Emperor *Maximilian* is repreſented receiving a large Sum from the City, for which he gave them an Imperial Crown as a Creſt to their Arms, being 3 St. *Andrews* Croſſes, in 1490. In this Church Admiral *De Ruyter* lies buried, and has a ſumptuous Monument erected for him by the States. It has alſo a Skreen before the Chancel of caſt Braſs, which is kept very beautiful and bright; and they have an Organ (ſupported by rich Marble Pillars) of extraordinary Workmanſhip, with a vaſt Number of Pipes, which imitate melodious human Voices. 3. The *Weſt Church*, is a magnificent Structure, with a beautiful Tower, and a large Imperial Crown of Copper on the Top, 260 Foot from the Ground. 4. The *South Church*, is alſo a ſtately Building, with a Steeple 237 Foot high. They have ſeveral other Churches, which are very neat, but not comparable to theſe for Magnificence. M. *Ray* ſays, They have 24 eſtabliſh'd Miniſters belonging to the City; That the Pulpit of the *New Church* is valued at 1000*l.* Sterling; and that there's a ſumptous Monument there for Admiral *Van Gal.n*, who ſignaliz'd himſelf againſt the *Dunkirkers*, the Pirates of *Barbary*, and defeated the *Engliſh* Squadron at *Leghorn* in 1653. 5. The *STADT-HOUSE*, Dr. *Brown* ſays, is the nobleſt Structure in all this Country, and one of the fineſt in *Europe*. 'Tis built of Free-ſtone, 110 Paces in Front, which is more than St. *Peter*'s at *Rome*, 81 Paces deep, and 116 Foot high. 'Tis adorn'd with Pillaſters, Chapters, and Corniſhes, of the *Corinthian* Order. Mr. *Ray* ſays, the Foundation coſt 100000*l.* Sterling, it being built upon 13659 great Piles of Timber drove into the Ground; and ſome compute the Charge of the whole at 3000000. Dr. *Northleigh* ſays, 'tis adorned on the Outſide with Statues and Hiſtory in *Relievo*, beſides the *Corinthian* Pillars; but the *Portico* is not anſwerable to the Magnificence of the reſt. At the Entrance on the Right Hand, lies Hall where the Malefactors receive their Sentence, adorn'd with Marble Statues hanging down their Heads, as if they bewail'd the Fate of the Criminals. The Floors are cover'd with Marble, and the Roofs finely carv'd, painted and gilt. The great Hall is a noble Room, adorn'd on all Sides with fine Marble Pillars of the *Corinthian* Order; the Roof finely painted, and the Floor of Marble, of ſurprizing Workmanſhip; for the Stones, without any other Lines but the joining of 'em, repreſent both the Celeſtial and Terreſtrial Globes. The Ground-Rooms, which are us'd for the Offices belonging to the Bank, and the Priſons, *&c.* are 20 Foot high, and the firſt and ſecond Stories 30 Foot high each: The Gallery and Door-Caſes of the Offices are adorn'd with Marble, carv'd with exquiſite Art: And all the Chambers have Marble Floors, with curious Painting on the Sielings and Chimney-Pieces. Over the Middle of the Front, which is ſomewhat more advanc'd than the reſt of the Work, there's a Bevel above the Corniſh, the Face of which is Marble, with a *Baſſo-Relievo* of curious Carving, a large Statue of Braſs on the Top, and one more on each Side, repreſenting Juſtice, Fortitude, and Plenty. Behind them, there's a handſome Tower in Form of a Pavilion, ſupported by Pillars, in which there's a fine Chime of Muſical Bells. On the Back Front, there's another Bevel with *Baſſo-Relievo*; and on the Top of it, a large Atlas in Braſs, bearing on his Shoulders a Copper Globe of 10 Foot diameter, which Dr. *Brown* ſays is much larger than that of St. *Peter*'s at *Rome*, or than any of thoſe at *Florence*, *Morocco*, or any *Turkiſh* Moſque that ever he heard of. This noble Structure was begun in 1648, and is ſcarce yet finiſhed, at leaſt as to the Paintings and other Ornaments. The Magiſtrates had their firſt Meeting in it the 23d of *April*, 1655. There's in it an Image of the Bleſſed Virgin, on a Pedeſtal of Black Marble, with a Latin Inſcription, importing, that the firſt Stone was laid the 28th of *October*, 1648, when the War, which they had carried on above 80 Years for their Religion and Liberty againſt 3 *Philips* of *Spain* by Sea and Land, almoſt in all Parts of the World, was happily

Digitized by Google

pily concluded, and their Liberty asserted, such and such Persons being Consuls. In this House are kept their Courts of Judicature; and, which is an odd Custom, the Doors of such City Tenants as do not pay their Rent at the Day appointed, are brought hither, and not restored till they have made Satisfaction. In a Vault under the Stadthouse, is kept the *FAMOUS BANK OF AMSTERDAM*, supposed to be the greatest Treasure of the World. Sir *William Temple* says, That there's constantly an Appearance of infinite Riches there, such as Bars of Gold and Silver, Plate, and numberless Bags, which are said to be Gold and Silver, and may be so for ought that can be discovered by such as have only a transient Sight of them. The Burgomasters alone have the Inspection of it; and no particular Account being taken from Age to Age of what passes in and out, 'tis impossible to make any Guess at the Proportion between the real Treasure and Credit of it, which is not to be valued, being the same with that of the whole City, whose Stock and Revenue equals that of some Kingdoms; and they are bound to make good all the Money brought into it. 6. The *EXCHANGE*, a very stately and magnificent Structure, much after the Manner of the *Royal Exchange* at *London* before the Fire, but of an oblong Form. 'Tis built of Brick, with Pillars of Stone along the Walks; and in the Shops above, vast Quantities of all sorts of Goods are exposed to Sale. 'Tis exceeding large, frequented by an incredible Number of People and Merchants from all Nations. *Misson* says, 'tis 200 Foot long, and 120 broad: The Galleries above are supported by 46 Pillars, but not so spacious or many, as those of the Exchange of *London*. 7. Their *Spin-house*, for the Correction of loose young Women, and such as are taken walking in the Streets at Night, or in suspicious Places. Sometimes the Citizens send their Daughters hither for Chastisement, for which they have particular Chambers allotted. 8. Their House of Correction for idle Men, especially Youth, which was formerly the Nunnery of *Santta Clara*, but converted to this Use in 1595; as was that of St. *Ursula* for Correction of Females in 1596. At the Entrance of the House, there are two Lions bridled, with this Inscription:

Virtutis est domare quæ cuncti pavent.

A very proper Emblem, since 'tis designed for curbing of the Vices of those who refuse Obedience to their Masters or Parents, and live disorderly. Such as come hither, are forced to earn their Bread, by rasping *Brazil* Wood; and if they cannot be brought to it by Blows, are put into a Cellar, where Water is gradually let in upon them, which they must pump out or drown. Some are put into this House during Life, and others longer or shorter, according to the Nature of their Crimes. To curb that barbarous Practice among their common People of slashing one another with Knives, there's a Law, That such as draw a Knife for that End, shall either pay down 100 Livres, or work 3 Months in this House. 9. Their Hospital for Children, where 600 Orphans are educated, and well look'd after. 10. Their *Dolhuys*, for delirious People, like our *Bedlam*. They have two other Hospitals, where above 2400 Children are maintain'd, and taught to read and write. They have two more, one of which is for decrepit or old Men, and another for 300 old and decrepit Women, besides an Hospital for the Sick; their Pest-house, a large Building, founded in 1631; and another Hospital where all poor Travellers, without Distinction, are lodg'd and entertain'd for 3 Nights, and no longer. In order to defray the Expence of so many charitable Foundations, besides what's given towards them by well-dispos'd People, they impose several little Taxes, as a Penny upon every one that passes through the Gate after Candle-light, half the Money receiv'd at the Play-house; and upon Appointments at Taverns, or any other Publick House, they have Boxes to put in Forfeitures from those that do not keep their Time, for the Use of the Poor. Dr. *Northleigh* says, there's scarce a Window where you do not see a Box, with, *Remember the Poor* on it; and at every Bargain, something is reserv'd for that Use, which is collected Quarterly by the Parish-Officers, who also on every *Wednesday* of the Month collect the Charity of the Inhabi-

tants.

Digitized by Google

tants at their Doors; and the Officers of the Hoſpitals do the ſame twice a Week. He adds, That the Mountebanks, Rope-dancers, and Muſick-Booths, pay the 3d Penny; and 'tis reckon'd, that there's 80000 Gilders *per Annum* collected at the Play-houſe. By all which, with what's collected in Churches, and the appropriating of the Revenues of ſome former Monaſteries, they maintain 20000 Poor Annually; and their Hoſpitals are ſo large, that ſome contain 500, ſome 1000, and others 1500 Perſons. 10. Their publick *RAWN OFFICE* or Lumbard-Houſe, is a mighty Conveniency to this great City, for it prevents Extortions and Thefts; and as all forfeited Goods are ſold here by open Sale, the Owners may buy their Goods again. Fraudulent Bankrupts are forc'd to pay Fines, and undergo Bodily Puniſhment; and ſuch as are prov'd to be guilty of Perjury in giving an Account of their Eſtates, are put to Death. But on the other hand, Creditors are oblig'd to maintain their Debtors if they put them in Priſon; and 'tis a Capital Crime for the Debtors to defraud their Creditors. Dr. *Northleigh* ſays, the publick Licences they give to Muſick-Houſes, where Men and Women make lewd Bargains, is what's moſt blameable in the Government of that City, and exceeds what's practis'd at *Rome* it ſelf. 11. They have a *Schola Illuſtris*, where in the Summer 6 Profeſſors read Lectures in their ſeveral Faculties. It was formerly the Church of St. *Agnes*'s Monaſtery, and converted to this Uſe in 1631. They have likewiſe a ſmall Anatomical Theatre. 12. Their *EAST-INDIA HOUSE* contains an incredible Store of Spices, and other *Indian* Commodities. 13. Their *MAGAZINE* or *ADMIRALTY-HOUSE* is a ſtately large Brick Building by the Water-ſide, in the N. E. Part of the City. It is 3 Angles of a Square, in the Middle of which there's a Yard for building Men of War. The Front is 220 Foot long, and the Wings 200. The Rigging, Stores, and Arms, belonging to their Men of War, are kept in very good Order in ſeveral Chambers. 'Twas built in 1655, ſurrounded with a Ditch for its greater Security; and 72 Men of War lie near it. On the Top of this Houſe, as in moſt others of Note in this City, they have a Ciſtern to receive Rain, to ſupply the Defect of Spring-Water, which is very ſcarce here. A little E. from this Houſe, ſtands the *EAST-INDIA COMPANY*'s *MAGAZINE*, which is a ſtately Row of Brick Buildings: Behind which there's a Yard with Docks for building Ships, a Rope-Yard, and Shops for Anchor-Smiths, and others concern'd in building of Veſſels. Here they lay up their Stores and Wares, which they have not Room for in their other Warehouſes, and in the *Eaſt-India* Houſe that lies in the middle of the City. 14. Their Sluces are Works of prodigious Expence and Art, which deſerve a Traveller's View. They were built to prevent the overflowing of their Cellars and lower Stories, which frequently happen'd when a ſtrong N. E. Wind drove the Water of the *Zuyder-Sea*, and the River *Y* or *Ye*, out of their Channels. Theſe Sluces are built at the Mouth of the 4 Channels that open to the *Y*, are of ſolid Brick-work, 10 or 12 Foot thick from the Bottom of the River to the Surface of the Earth, and built croſs the Channel, leaving only a Paſſage for Ships, which are afterwards ſhut up with ſtrong Flood-Gates, that are capable at all Times to reſiſt the Force of the Water. 15. Their *Weſt-India* Houſe is a ſtately Building. 16. The *Jews* Synagogue is a very fair Structure, they having the Liberty of their Worſhip here, being allowed to live in a particular Quarter of the City, and a Walk for themſelves on the Exchange. They live richer here than any where elſe, and are reckon'd about 20000 in Number. Dr. *Brown* ſays, they had Perſons of Learning and other good Qualifications among them; and that he ſaw them perform Circumciſion thus; They thruſt a Probe betwixt the Glans and Præputium, dilating it ſo, that both the inward and outward Skin are drawn forward, and cut by a certain Inſtrument; after which the remaining Skin is immediately put back, the Blood ſtopt, and the Plaiſter applied; and thoſe preſent ſung all the while, to drown the Cries of the Infant. Dr. *Northleigh* ſays, they have two Synagogues here, the worſt of which is more ſumptuous than thoſe at *Rome* and *Venice*; and that they have Schools to educate their Youth in their Language and Religion. *Miſſon* ſays, there remains in this

Digitized by Google

this City a Convent of Nuns called *Beguines*, consisting of Maidens and Widows who have no Children, and need no other Qualification to be admitted, but a Certificate of their good Behaviour, and of having a Competency to live upon by themselves, or in Society with others of the Sisters, as they think meet. There were when he wrote about 130 of them. The Convent is built like a little Town, with a Wall and Ditch round it, and a Church within it, where they are obliged to perform their Devotions at stated Hours. They wear an odd black Habit, receive and pay Visits, and may quit the Convent when they please. He adds, That because the City is founded on Piles of Wood, they allow no Coaches there, but to some Physicians and Strangers of Note; and instead of them, use Sleds made like Coaches, but slow and uneasy. He computes the Number of Inhabitants to be 200000, and says, it may vie with any City in the World for Riches and Trade. Their standing Militia some Years ago consisted of 8250 Men. Mr. *Ray* says, That none but those of the establish'd Religion are allow'd Steeples or Bells in their Churches. Near the *Jews* Quarter, they have a Physick Garden, well stor'd with curious Herbs and Plants. This City has produc'd many famous Men in all Faculties. *Bleau* says, That in his Time the Presbytery or Consistory of *Amsterdam* consisted of 15 Ministers, 16 Elders, and 24 Deacons; one half of the two last being changed every Year. In 1685, their Bill of Mortality amounted to 6245. The Air of the City is not wholesome, and they were formerly (says Dr. *Northleigh*) much infested with the Plague; but not since 1663, that they laid aside their Wells, and made use of Rain-Water in their stead. We refer the Curious, who would know more of this City, to *Bleau*'s *Theatrum Urbium*. Their Government we have mentioned before, as a Specimen of that of the other Cities in the *United Provinces*.

Having begun with *Amsterdam*, because 'tis the principal City of the United Provinces, we come next to *Haerlem*, and from thence Southward along the Coast round the Province, according to the Course of the Map, for the Ease of such Readers as think fit to compare our Description with the Map.

2. *Haerlem*, in the District of *Rhinland*. Some derive the Name from the *Heruli*; others from the *Dutch* Words *Eere* and *Lammer*, which signify Glory purchas'd with the Sword, which is Part of its Arms. This City lies 10 Miles W. from *Amsterdam*, and 5 S. from the Sea. 'Tis large, populous, and pleasant: The Houses are of Brick, many of 'em splendid, and all of 'em neat: The Streets are large and even, and some of 'em have Canals. The Town is well fortified with strong Walls, and a broad Ditch; but the neighbouring Sand-Hills are so high, that they cannot be drown'd with its Sluces, which lessens its Strength. 'Twas burnt down in 1340, but rebuilt and enlarged beyond the River *Sparn* in 1400. 'Twas made a Bishop's See in 1559. The Cathedral, now call'd the great Church, is the most beautiful, strong and spacious, of that kind in the Province. Among others, here's the Epitaph of *Schenatus* their Schoolmaster, who, for his *Comedia Sacra*, was call'd the *Terentius Christianus*. It had formerly a strong Castle, in which they besieged the Lord of the Place for his Tyranny; which had cost him his Life, but that his Lady capitulated to surrender, on Condition that she should be allowed to bring out as much of her most valuable Goods as she could carry on her Back: Upon which she brought him out betwixt her Shoulders, sav'd him from their Fury, and left the House to their Mercy. Their chief Trade is in weaving Damasks, Velvet, Sattin, Taffety, with other Silk Stuffs, and Linen, the finest and whitest in the Province. They have also a considerable Trade in Thread, Tape, and whitening of Cloth, the Water of their Lake being the best for that Purpose of any in the Country. Some Time after the *Spaniards* became possessed of these Provinces, there were reckoned 25000 People in this City of full Age employed in Trade and Manufacture. Their Town-House and Butchery are handsome Structures. We have formerly taken Notice of their Controversy with the City of *Mentz* about the Invention of Printing, which is not without Reason ascrib'd to *Laurence Coster*, one of their Citizens; over the Door of whose House, which stood about the middle of the City, there was a Latin Inscription, importing, that he in-

Digitized by Google

vented it in 1440. There was likewiſe a Statue erected for him on that Account, ſay *Boxhornius* and *Bleau*; but they were both removed by a late Proprietor, becauſe they drew ſo many People to gaze at his Houſe.

Their Government is by 4 Conſuls, 7 Eſchevins, a Burgomaſter for Life, and a Council of 32. 'Tis famous for the Siege it held out againſt the *Spaniards* for 10 Months, ſays *Strada*, in 1573, when the Town was attacked with asmuch Violence, and defended with as great Obſtinacy, as ever was known. The Townſmen were reduc'd to eat Leather, Graſs, and the vileſt ſort of Animals. They kept a Correſpondence with the P. of *Orange* by Carrier-Pigeons; which being diſcover'd at laſt by the lighting of one of 'em upon a Tent of the *Spaniſh* Camp, the *Spaniards* ſhot all the Pigeons they ſaw about the Town, and prevented it. One *Kenava*, a Woman of the Town, commanded a Regiment of Women, who help'd in defending the Works, repairing the Breaches, and frequently ſallied upon the *Spaniards*. The latter having ſhot two Men's Heads into the City, ſignifying that one of 'em was *Philip Conte*, who came to relieve the Town with 2000 Men; and that the other was *Anthony Pointer*, who betray'd *Mons* to the *French*. The Citizens, by way of Reprifal, put the Heads of 11 *Spaniards* in a Barrel, which they threw over the Walls to the D. of *Alva*, with a Letter, ſignifying that they had paid him 10 Heads, that he might have no further Pretence of making War upon them for the Tenth Part, alluding to a Tax of the Tenth Part of every Man's Eſtate demanded by the *Spaniards*, the Refuſal of which was one of the Occaſions of the War; and to'd him, That ſince they had been long in his Debt, they had ſent him the 11th for Intereſt. Being forc'd at laſt to ſurrender, on Promiſe of being ſecure from Plunder and other Violence, the *Spaniards*, ſays *Bleau*, put 2000 of 'em to Death in cold Blood, contrary to the Capitulation. The Soldiers in Garriſon conſiſted of 4000, and were reduc'd to 1600, 900 of whom were thus barbarouſly put to Death. *Strada* would excuſe this as a Judgment of God upon them for their mocking at Holy Things, meaning Images and Relicks, *&c.* And others charge it to the Rage of the Soldiers, becauſe they were depriv'd of the Plunder, which the City redeem'd by paying 34000 *l.* Sterling. *Bleau* gives an Account of the Learned Men that have been bred in this City. Their Arms are, a Sword between 4 Stars, and a Croſs over the Point, with this Motto, *Vim vincit Virtus*; *i. e.* Valour overcomes Power. They ſay, this Atchievement was given them in the 12th Century by the Emperor *Frederick*, and the Patriarch of *Conſtantinople*, becauſe, during the Holy War, when *Damiata*, anciently *Peluſium*, was beſieg'd by the Chriſtians, and their Fleet could not approach it, by reaſon of Chains drawn acroſs the River, and faſten'd to ſtrong Towers on both Sides, the *Haërlemers* in the Service arm'd the Keels of their Ships with ſharp Saws, ſail'd up the River with a ſtrong Gale, and cut the Chains, which made Way for the reſt of the Fleet, and occaſioned the taking of the Town. In Confirmation of this, they ſay there are two Bells in the high Tower of their Church made of *Corinthian* Braſs: And as a Memorial of it, there are 3 Ships hung up in the great Church, and the Youth of the City make an Annual Proceſſion about the Streets with little Ships, whoſe Prows are ſet with Saws. Dr. *Northleigh* ſays, there are 3 or 4 Organs in their great Church, and the Stalls of many Princes and others of Quality who have been Knights of the *Golden Fleece*, with their Arms painted on the Stalls. *Miſſon* ſays, in their Town-Houſe the Magiſtrates keep the firſt Book that was printed by *Coſter*, in a Silver Caſe wrap'd up in Silk, where they have alſo his Statue. *Meyerus* and *John Gerard* of *Leyden* ſay, That in 1403, a Mermaid was caſt aſhore by a Tempeſt near this City, was brought to eat Bread and Milk, and to ſpin, and liv'd many Years. She would frequently pull off her Clothes, and run towards the Water: She could not ſpeak, but made a confus'd Noiſe; and having learn'd to make the Sign of the Croſs, was buried in the Church-yard when ſhe died. The latter ſaid he had the Relation from ſeveral who had ſeen her.

Without the Walls there's a pleaſant Wood, where the Citizens divert themſelves. Here *Florence* V. built a Palace, which is call'd the Prince's Palace, where are the

Digitized by Google

the Pictures of all the Earls of *Holland* very well done; and in the Summer-Houſe in the Garden, there's that of *Lawrence Coſter*. In the other Rooms, there are ſeveral excellent Pieces by *Heimskirk* and *Goltzius*; but the beſt are thoſe of *Cornelius* of *Haërlem*: And here alſo is the Picture of a Ship with Saws in her Poop, in Remembrance of the Exploit of the *Haërlemers* at *Damiata* abovementioned, by which they ſet at Liberty the Count of *Holland*, who was carried Priſoner into that City. They have two Hoſpitals handſomely kept for Aged and Sick. Dr. *Brown* ſays, he ſaw there ſome Malefactors puniſh'd by Whipping in this Manner; Upon a Scaffold they erect a Poſt, to which they tie the Criminals Hands ſtretch'd up as high as they can, and putting an Iron round their Middle, gave them ſo many Laſhes with Rods as the Judges had appointed. From this City, that called *Haërlem Meer* has its Name, being a Lake above 20 Miles long, and ſo ſhallow, that it might eaſily be dreined, which would make a vaſt Addition to a Country where they want Ground; but the City of *Leyden* will not conſent to it, becauſe from hence they have Water to refreſh their Canals, except the old Channel of the *Rhine* were cleanſed; and this *Amſterdam* will not agree to, becauſe it would bring *Leyden* a Trade by Sea, and injure their own Commerce. There are many old Caſtles and Gentlemen's Seats in the Neighbourhood of *Haërlem*; for which the Curious may conſult *Bleau*'s *Theatrum Urbium*.

3. *Leyden*, Lat. *Lugdunum Batavorum*, *Leyda*, and *Leydæ*, the chief Town of the Diſtrict of *Rhinland*. It lies, according to *Moll*, about 14 Miles S. W. from *Haërlem*, about 18 from *Amſterdam*, 15 N. W. from *Rotterdam*, and 8 N. E. from the *Hague*. 'Tis one of the neateſt and pleaſanteſt Cities in *Europe* for the Beautifulneſs and Statelineſs of its Buildings, the Largeneſs and Cleanlineſs of its Streets, the Commodiouſneſs of its Channels, and the agreeable Rows of Trees planted on each Side of 'em; but the Water not having a good Current, the Channels are apt to ſtink in Summer. It ſtands on the Old or Middle Channel of the *Rhine*; the Mouth of which being choak'd up, as we have formerly mentioned, occaſions the Waters to ſtagnate. 'Tis encompaſſed by a great Number of Cities and large Villages, with which it has an eaſy Communication by Canals. 'Tis called *Lugdunum Batavorum*, to diſtinguiſh it from *Lyons* in *France*; but the Etymology of *Lugdunum* is uncertain, thō ſome derive it from *Legio* and *Dunum*, as having been a Station of a *Roman* Legion; and there being a Hill in the Middle of the City which is expreſſed by the Latin Word *Dunum*. 'Tis ſuppoſed to be older than *Haërlem* or *Dort*, tho' they have the Precedency in voting. *Cellarius* takes Notice of its being mention'd by *Ptolomy* and *Antonin*, and that 'tis there called *Caput Germaniæ Magnæ*, which he takes to be meant of the old *German* Provinces in theſe Parts; tho' he owns, that it could not be then any thing ſo conſiderable as now. Some Ages ago it did not contain above 25 *Rhinlandiſh* Acres. It has been enlarged at ſeveral Times, *viz.* in 1294, 1313, 1389, 1510, and in 1644. It has 8 Gates, the chief of which, called the *White Gate*, was ſplendidly rebuilt in 1650; and the reſt, together with their Bridges, have been lately rebuilt and beautified. *Bleau* ſays, it has 23 Wards, ſubdivided into 90 leſſer Partitions, call'd Neighbourhoods, 30 Iſlands, 24 Channels, 180 Streets, 95 Bridges, and 40 Turrets on the Walls. Every Ward has 4 Magiſtrates, who take Care of Inſtruments to extinguiſh Fire. Each Neighbourhood has a Maſter and two Aſſeſſors to compoſe Differences between the People, and to ſee that Funerals be decently ſolemniz'd. The principal Church is that of *St. Peter*, a handſome Building, adorn'd formerly with a lofty Tower, which fell in 1512, and deſtroy'd their Archives that were kept in it. In this Church are the Epitaphs of many conſiderable Men. *St. Pancras*'s Church is alſo very ſtately; and by the Foundations, it appears to have been deſign'd to have exceeded that of *St. Peter*'s at *Rome* for Bulk. *St. Mary*'s, now called the *French* Church, is a neat Building, but inferior to the other two. There's a Monument erected here for the great *Joſeph Scaliger*, in the Place where he us'd to ſit and hear Sermon, with a Long Inſcription; tho' he himſelf order'd no more to be writ upon it, ſays *Hercuticus*, but *Joſephus Scaliger*. *Jul. Cæſ. Fil. hoc expoſito reſurrectionem*; and upon the Edge of the Stone, *Terra hæc ab Eccleſia empta eſt nemini Cadaver hu-*

Digitized by Google

huc inferre licent. Here is alſo the Monument of the famous Herbaliſt *Cluſius*, with a Latin Inſcription, ſignifying that he was called thither to adorn the Academy, where he lived 16 Years, and died in 1609, in the 84th Year of his Age, and this Diſtich under it:

Non potuit plures hic quærere Cluſius Herbas,
Ergo novas Campus quærit in Eliſiis.

Which may be *Engliſh'd* thus:

Since no more Herbs the Earth to Cluſius *yields,*
He's gone a ſimpling to the Elyſian *Fields.*

They have alſo lately built a new Church of a Circular Form, much admir'd for its Workmanſhip, eſpecially in the Inſide. Their Hoſpitals are, 1. That of St *Katharine*, founded about 1348, but much enlarged ſince. *Blau* ſays, it conſiſts of 7 diſtinct Buildings, with 144 Beds for the Sick and Decrepit, and a great Number of Pallets for the Cure of the Diſeas'd; a particular Apartment for thoſe who have the *French* Diſeaſe, that are look'd after by the City Surgeons; one for entertaining poor Travellers for 3 Nights; another with 68 Beds for ſuch as were diſtracted, or infected with the Plague, but now us'd for the Eaſe of the other Apartments when they are too full. Six Men and Six Women, called *Fathers* and *Mothers*, have the Charge of this Hoſpital. 2. St. *Elizabeth*'s Hoſpital, for Women, which has 65 Beds, and an Apartment to entertain poor Women Travellers for 3 Nights. To this there's annex'd another Houſe of 19 Beds, and there are 4 Men and 4 Women to look after the whole. 3 The Hoſpitals of St. *James* and St. *Barbara*, now made uſe of for Clothworkers. They have an Hoſpital for Orphans, that has been enlarged ſeveral times, where, Dr *Northleigh* ſays, there are 900 entertained, better than in any other Place in the *Low Countries*. 'Tis govern'd by a Man and a Woman, who have the abſolute Management of it, with 4 Men and 4 Women to aſſiſt them. They have likewiſe an Almshouſe, where 12 Almoners diſtribute at Times Bread, Turf, and Money, to the Poor, according to the Number and Condition of their Families. 'Tis ſaid, they diſtribute Alms to 20000 Perſons within the City. They have 13 other Tenements for the Accommodation of the poorer Sort. They have two great Annual Fairs, during which no Man can be arreſted for Debt: The firſt begins on *Aſcenſion*-Day; and during ſome Part of the Fair, the Citizens divert themſelves with Croſs-Bows, and ordinary Bows and Arrows. Their chief Trade is in Cloth and Camblets; and they make great Profit of their Gardening, their Parſnips being carried as far as *Amſterdam*, and much valued. Their Gardners have 4 or 5 Crops a Year from the ſame Ground; ſo that their Gardens are ſold for 250, and ſometimes 300 *l.* an Acre, thô Arable Land yields but 200 *l.* and Meadow or Paſture but 140. They have 3 Boats that go every Day to *Amſterdam*, 8 to the *Hague*, and as many to *Delph*, at ſet Hours; and the like Number comes hither from thoſe Places. They have likewiſe conſtant Paſſage-Boats to *Utrecht* and *Haerlem*. The great Court is a noble and large Structure; in the lower Part of which, beſides what's applied to other Uſes, there are Apartments for 3 Courts of Judicature, one belonging to the City, the other to the Univerſity, and the 3d to the Affairs of the *Rhinland*. Over theſe there are ſeveral Chambers for the Meetings of the Magiſtrates, and other Publick Offices. In that of the City there are many excellent Paintings, and the famous Siege of this Town in 1574 wrought in Tapeſtry. The Draught of the Laſt Judgment, by *Lucas Leydenſis*, was ſo much valued by the Emperor *Rodolph* II. that he offered as many *Hungarian* Ducats of Gold for it as would cover it over. That called the *Rhinland-Houſe* is alſo remarkable, where the Dyk-Grave, with his Aſſiſtants, meet about their Buſineſs, which is to take Care of the Sluces, Banks, Dikes, and Channels, in the *Rhinland*, to prevent Inundations, and to levy the Rent from the Lands which is appointed for this Uſe. That called the *Rhinland* is bounded on the W by the Coaſt of *Holland*; on the E by Part of the Dioceſe of *Utrecht* and *Amſtelland*; on the N. by Part of the *Y*, along the Courſe of the Dike that goes from *Haerlem* to *Amſterdam*, and by the Shallows and Waſhes as far as *Beverwick*; and on the S. by a Line drawn from

Mont-

Digitized by Google

Montfort to *Oudewater*, from thence to *Goude*, and afterwards to the *Hague*. It had the Name of *Rhinland* from the middle Branch of the *Rhine*: And all the Inhabitants of this Diſtrict are obliged, by Laws agreed on among themſelves, to provide for the Maintenance and Reparation of the Dikes, Channels, and Sluces, in that Country; and they have ſeveral Councils, form'd of a Dyk-Grave, and 7 Aſſiſtants called *Heemraaden*, who are all ſworn to the faithful Execution of their Office. They have alſo a Hall call'd the *Prince's*, and another for the Archers; upon the Windows of which, all the Earls of *Holland* are curiouſly painted. They have a magnificent Building for examining and ſealing of Cloth, which much exceeds our *Blackwell-Hall*, whereof they are ſaid to have made 100000 Pieces in one Year. The *Burg*, formerly built for a Defence, but now only an Ornament to the City, ſtands about the middle of it, in an Angle made by the Channels of the Old and New *Rhine*. From hence the Burgraves or Governors of *Leyden*, frequently met with in Hiſtory, had their Name. Some ſay, 'twas built by the *Romans*, as a Garriſon to one of their Legions. Others aſcribe it to *Hengiſt* the *Saxon*, as a Trophy for his Conqueſt of *England*. 'Tis a ſtrong round Fortification, built of Stone, has an Aſcent of 50 Steps, and is encompaſſed with a Wall 21 Foot high, the ſurrounding Arch being 610 Foot in Circuit. From hence there's a pleaſant Proſpect of the Town, the neighbouring Country and *Haerlem* Lake. It has a deep dry Pit in the middle, ſuppoſed to have been the Gate of a Paſſage under Ground from hence to *Catwick* on the Sea, which is about 4 Miles. Over the Gate of it ſtand the Arms of the City, being the Croſs-Keys, with a Lion Rampant Gardant, and a Sword in his Right Paw, with this Motto on one Side, *Pugno pro Patria*; *i. e.* I fight for my Country; and on the other, *Hæc Libertatis ergo*; *i. e.* Theſe are the Marks of my Liberty. The chief Streets are, *Rapinburg*, the pleaſanteſt; that which reaches from the *Hague* Gate to that of *Utrecht*, which has the beſt Trade; and the *Haerlem* Street which is the largeſt. The Canal of the Old *Rhine* has 6 Bridges, 4 of Wood, and 2 of Stone: One of the latter is their Market for Corn, and the other for Fiſh. This City was beſieged by the *Spaniards* in 1574, who knowing the Strength of it, encompaſs'd it with 60 Forts, in order to ſtarve them out. The Siege continued with great Vigour above 5 Months, which reduc'd the Inhabitants to the greateſt Extremity by Hunger and Fatigue, during which above 10000 of 'em periſhed; but conſidering the barbarous Uſage that *Haerlem* met with, they reſolved to hold out to the laſt, and gave this Anſwer to one of the Enemy's Summons, *That they would not yield ſo long as they had one Hand to eat, and another to fight.* But their Neceſſities preſs'd ſo hard upon them at laſt, that they were forc'd to have Recourſe to a deſperate Remedy, which the Prince of *Orange* had adviſ'd them to before, *viz.* to cut the main Banks of the *Maes* and *Iſſel* betwixt *Goude* and *Rotterdam*, to lay the Country under Water; which at firſt riſing but ſlowly, gave them little Help; but towards the End of *September*, all the Country about was turn'd to a Sea, and drown'd 1500 *Spaniards* before they could retire. The firſt Relief they received was on the 3d of *October*; the Anniverſary of which they ſtill obſerve as a Day of Thankſgiving, and every Year they have a Tragi Comedy to repreſent this Siege; and the Money receiv'd from the Multitudes that come to ſee it is applied to the Uſe of their Poor. They were forc'd to make Paper Money during the Siege, which was afterwards chang'd into Silver, being two Pieces of different Value. The bigger had ſtamp'd on the Face, a Lion holding up a Hat on a Spear, with this Legend round the Side, *Hæc Libertatis ergo*; and on the Reverſe the City Arms, and theſe Letters in the Middle, N. O. U. L. S. G. I. P. A. C. *i. e. Nummus obſeſſæ Urbis Lugdunenſis ſub Gubernatione Illuſtriſſimi Principis Auriaci Cuſus.* In *En liſh*; The Money of the beſieg'd T. of *Leyden*, coin'd under the Government of the moſt Illuſtrious Pr. of *Orange*. The leſſer Piece had on the Face, a Lion with a Croſs-Keys, and this Legend, *Pugno pro Patria*; and on the Reverſe, *Lugdunum Batavorum*. In 1575. the Univerſity was founded here by the States General, to reward the Inhabitants for their Bravery; in Remembrance of which, they kept a Jubile the 8th of *February*, 1675. their Stile being then 100 Years from its Foundation: And

Digitized by Google

And tho' the Country was then in great Diſtreſs becauſe of the *French* Invaſion, they gave the Pr. of *Orange*, the States, and others of the Nobility, a ſplendid Entertainment. The Schools of this Univerſity conſiſt of a large Pile of Brick Building, 3 Stories high, and 2 Rooms on a Floor. In the uppermoſt, the famous Printer *Elzevir* kept his Shop. The Students have ſometimes been 2000. Adjoining to it is the Phyſick Garden, well ſtor'd with Plants, and a long Gallery, where the Profeſſor of Botany reads his Lectures. Here there are abundance of Curioſities; among others, a Sea-Horſe as big as a Bull, whom it reſembles in Shape, brought from the Cape of *Good Hope*; and a Bird's-Neſt made of Sea-Froth, by a certain Fowl in the Kingdom of *Coramandel* in the *Eaſt-Indies*, which the *Chineſe* diſſolve in Pottage, and reckon it an excellent Diſh. There's another Building for Publick Lectures near the Garden. There are only two endow'd Colleges in this Univerſity, the reſt of the Students living where they pleaſe in the Town. The Profeſſors, when they read Lectures, or preſide in publick Diſputations, wear Gowns, but not otherwiſe; and the Students wear no diſtinct Habit. Each Profeſſor, beſides what he has from the Students, has a Salary of about 2 or 300 *l. per Annum* from the States. They confer no Degrees but that of Maſter of Arts and Doctor in each Faculty. Thoſe matriculated in the Univerſity-Regiſter have very large Privileges, and are exempted from paying Exciſe, if above 20 Years of Age, for a certain Quantity of Beer and Wine. The Rector *Magnificus*, who was formerly choſen out of three preſented to the Stadtholder, and now to the States General, is choſen Annually, and enters on his Office the 8th of *February*, the Day when the Univerſity was dedicated. Beſides him, there are 3 Curators, who have the 4 Burgomaſters for their Colleagues, and the Syndic for their Counſellor. The Univerſity-Senate conſiſts of 12 Profeſſors, being 3 of each Faculty; but the Curators may augment their Number, under certain Limitations. The Rector, with his 4 Aſſeſſors, the Burgomaſters, and ſome of the Eſchevins, determine all Cauſes Civil and Criminal; and the Rector gives Sentence without Appeal. The moſt conſiderable Thing in the Library are the MSS. which are numerous, and of great Value *Joſeph Scaliger* gave 'em 87, Dr. *Warner* 956, *Golius* brought 221 from the *Eaſt*: They have 9 that came from *Mauritania*, 370 Greek and Latin, and 6 belonging to the old Library. In the Anatomy Theatre, which is much better than that of *Padua*, or our Chirurgeon's Hall, they have vaſt Numbers of Skeletons of all Sorts and Sizes, ſeveral Mummies, Heathen Relicks and Idols, Habits of divers Countries, the Skeleton of a young Whale above 6 Yards long, taken out of an old one; a Man's Bladder, that holds two Gallons of Water; the Mummy of an *Egyptian* Prince, ſaid to be 1800 Years old; and a Toadſtool that grew in *Haërlem* Lake, ſaid to be 1000. The Curious may ſee more of this in Dr. *Northleigh*'s Deſcription of the *United Netherlands*. There have been many famous Profeſſors in all Faculties in this Univerſity, whom we have not Room to name. This City is alſo noted for the Birth of the Taylor, *John* of *Leyden*, King of the *Munſter* Anabaptiſts. The Government of this City being like that of *Amſterdam*, we paſs it over, as we do the Lordſhips, Villages, and Diſtricts, under its Juriſdiction; of which the Curious may inform themſelves from *Meurſius*'s *Athenæ Batavæ*, and *Boxhornius*'s *Theatrum*. Dr. *Northleigh* ſays, the Apothecaries and Chirurgeons, of the latter of which there's above 100, have each a Hall; and without the Walls there's a Peſt-houſe, with a ſtately Walk of tall Trees to it. The Houſe is well built, nobly endow'd, and a Revenue laid up for it every Year.

The chief Places in the Neighbourhood of *Leyden* are, 1. *Rhinsburg*, anciently a ſtrong Town, that had a Nunnery for Women of Quality, and lies 4 Miles N. W. from *Leyden*. 2. *Nortwyck*, 4 Miles further N. W. a pleaſant Place, inhabited by many Gentlemen. 3. *Valkenburg* noted for a great Annual Horſe-Fair in *September*, where Foreigners come to buy Horſes. 4 *Britain*'s Houſe or Caſtle, 5 Miles N W. from *Leyden*, and about 1 ½ N. from *Catwyck* on the Sea. 'Twas diſcovered about 300 Years ago, upon the retiring of the Ocean from the old Mouth of the *Rhine*; but more in 1550 and 1552, when the Sands were left bare for 20 Days. It has been a Square of

Digitized by Google

of 960 *Roman* Foot in Compass. At that Time many large Stones, Bricks, and old fashion'd Vessels, and *Roman* Coins of several Metals, were dug up, with this Inscription, *Ex Ger. Inf.* Some think 'twas built by *Caligula*, for a Granary of Corn brought out of *Britain*. 5. *Alphen*, about 8 Miles S. E. from *Leyden*, supposed to be *Antonin's Albiniana Castra*, or the Camp of *Alphenus Varus*, the *Batavian* General mentioned by *Tacitus*. 6. *Rombureh*, between *Alphen* and *Leyden*, called by *Velleius*, *Pretorium Agrippinæ*, where many *Roman* Coins of Silver and Brass, and old Statues, &c. have been found. The District of *Rhinland*, of which *Leyden* is the Metropolis, contains above 57 Villages and Gentlemen's Seats; which, with the numerous Canals and pleasant Walks, make a most charming Prospect from the neighbouring Sand-Hills. Many of these Villages have their Annual Fairs, where formerly the Boors us'd to play at Back-Sword, and mangle one another with as much Fury as the *Roman* Gladiators, till 'twas forbid by the States. 7. *Bodegrave*, about 11 Miles S. E. from *Leyden*, the Seat of the ancient *Bagonda*, mentioned by *Cornelius Aurelius*, supposed to have been a sort of Banditi. 'Twas a very fine Village till burnt by the *French* in 1672. 'Twas afterwards fortified by the *Dutch*, and noted for the Prince of *Orange*'s Camp to cover the Country against the *French* at that Time. 8. *Woerden* or *Voerden*, about 7 Miles E. from *Bodegrave*. 'Twas built to be a Curb on *Utrecht* by Bishop *Godfrey* about 1160, and the Cause of bloody Wars betwixt the *Hollanders* and those of *Utrecht*. *Herman* of *Woerden*, one of the Assassins of Count *Florent* V. harbour'd there; upon which the *Dutch* took it. The *French* took it in 1672, fortified and put 2000 Men in it. The Pr. of *Orange* kill'd 2000 *French* before it, but fail'd of taking it. The *French* deserted it in 1703, after destroying most of the Fortifications, and made the Town pay 16000 Gilders to be rescued from the Flames. 9. *Oudewater*, about 7 Miles S. from *Woerden*, upon the *Issel*, noted for good Hemp produced in its Soil, and for several Learned Men. The *Spaniards* burnt it in 1575, when they were forc'd from before *Leyden*, and cut off most of the Inhabitants: Since which, it has never recover'd its ancient Splendour.

In the Neighbourhood of *Leyden*, between *Rhinland*, the Ocean, the Body of *North-Holland*, the *Ye*, and Lake of *Haerlem*, lies *Kennemerland*, which *Hadrianus Junius* thinks to have been the Seat of the ancient *Caninefates*, mentioned by the *Roman* Historians. *Conringius* supposes it was called by the present Name, which signifies the King's Palace, because the ancient Counts of *Holland* resided here. The Latin Name *Caninefates* is said to come from their feeding on Conies, which abound in this Country. The Inhabitants formerly, under the Conduct of *Gysbrecht* Lord of *Amstel*, in the Reign of *Florent* V. took Arms against their Magistrates, out of a levelling Principle; but were afterwards reduced, and prosecuted the Murtherers of Count *Florent* with great Zeal, tho' their Leader *Gysbrecht* was one of 'em.

4. The *Hague*, Lat. *Haga Comitis*; in *Dutch*, *S. Gravenhaghe*; *i. e.* The Grove of the Earls. It lies about 8 Miles S. W. from *Leyden*, 6 N. W. from *Delph*, 12 N. W. from *Rotterdam*, and about two S. E. from *Scheveling*. 'Tis reckon'd the principal Village in *Europe*, is encompassed with a broad Ditch, enjoys all the Privileges of a City, except sending Deputies to the States; and is so large and populous, that it exceeds several considerable Cities: The Streets are long and large, the Buildings are stately, and it abounds with shady Walks. On the Side of *Delph*, there are lovely Meadows, through which there's a Way cut to *Scheveling* with infinite Expence. 'Tis a hollow, streight, and pav'd Road, where all Passengers, except the Fishermen of *Scheveling*, pay a certain Tax towards reimbursing the Charge, and keeping it in Repair; which Taxes are said to arise to 4000 Gilders *per Annum*. On the Side of *Leyden*, there's a large Wood, which abounds with Oaks, there being none else in the Province. 'Tis about 1500 Paces long, but nothing near so broad, well stor'd with Deer, Hares, and other Game; and is of great Use to the Inhabitants for taking the Air. In this Wood, there's a fair Structure built for a House of Mourning by *Amalia* of *Solms*, Widow to Pr. *Henry Frederick* of *Orange*, which is signified by an Inscription of Gold Letters round the Gallery. It has a spacious Garden, with many pleasant Groves adjoining to the House

A

Digitized by Google

At the Entrance on the Right, are two white Marble Statues of *William* I. and Prince *Maurice*; and on the Left, thoſe of Prince *Henry Frederick* and *William* II. and further in on the ſame Side, a Chamber floor'd with Cedar, and hung with Arras, repreſenting the glorious Actions of Prince *Henry*. In the Lantern on the Top, there's a Gallery for Muſick; and in the middle of the Sieling, the Picture of Princeſs *Amalia* in Mourning. The Prince's Palace in the Town was built in 1250 by *William* II. Count of *Holland*, and K. of the *Romans*, who removed hither the Court of *Holland* from *Grave-ſand*. Part of the old Buildings, with a large Hall fill'd with Trophies taken from their Enemies, Stationers, and Picture-ſellers, like that of *Weſtminſter*, but nothing ſo large, ſtill remain. The Palace added by Pr. *Maurice* makes it a noble and ſpacious Building: It contains the Prince's Lodgings, and the Places where the States General and Provincial, and the Supreme Court of *Holland*, meet. 'Tis fortified with good Ditches, and Guards are conſtantly kept at the Gates. On the N. Side, there's a large Pond, with ſtately Walks of Tile-Trees on its Banks. There are two Churches belonging to it, one of 'em formerly a *Jacobine* Cloyſter, and the other lately built, of a round Figure, but no Pillars within, and ſo beautiful on the Outſide, that 'tis ſcarce to be match'd in the *Netherlands*. There are two fine Piazza's, one before, and another behind the Palace, with ſtately Houſes. Here Foreign Ambaſſadors are lodg'd, and in this Part of the Town the States General have their Houſes. Every City has built Houſes for their Deputies: That of the Deputies of *Leyden* is reckon'd the fineſt. A ſumptuous Houſe for founding of Cannon was built here in one Year during their War with *England*. In 1661, a Hoſpital was built by one *Newport*, a Popiſh Woollendraper, for 60 poor Popiſh Widows; but the States oblig'd him to allow one half for Proteſtants. 'Tis built uniform, and every Widow has a Garden. The Market-place faces the great Church, which is a high ſquare Tower. In this Church Admiral *Obdam* has a ſtately Monument, with an Account of his great Actions, particularly that wherein he was killed by the *Engliſh* in 1666, and blew up his own Ship, as is ſaid in his Epitaph. The Inhabitants refuſed formerly to have the Town walled or fortified, reckoning it more glorious to be the chief Village of *Europe*, than an ordinary City, which coſt 'em dear: The D. of *Guelder*'s General having invaded the Country meerly for the Plunder of this Town, which occaſioned it afterwards to be encompaſſed with a Ditch. This Place has produc'd many Learned Men, among whom was *Joannes de Haga*, called otherwiſe *Joannes de Indagine*: But for this we refer to *Bleau* and *Guicciardin*.

Within two Miles of this Place lies the Village of *Ryſwick*, where the Prince has a noble Palace, with fine Gardens. 'Twas formerly called *Newburg-Houſe*, becauſe built by a D. of *Newburg*. 'Tis famous for the Treaty concluded there betwixt the Confederates and *France* in 1697; is adorned with a Marble Stair-Caſe, Marble Floors, and Paintings by the beſt Maſters; has a fine Terraſs, and a noble and lofty Front of Free-ſtone.

5. *Scheveling*, 2 Miles N. W. from the *Hague*, lies on the Sea: Part of it is Annually carried off by the Waves; ſo that from being a Town of good Note, 'tis now become an inconſiderable Village; yet it retains its Privileges: And 'tis ſaid, no Malefactor can be condemned at the *Hague*, except the Eſchevins of this Town pronounce Sentence. 'Tis noted for Fiſhing, and for a Sailing-Chariot belonging to Prince *Maurice* kept here. 'Twas made by *Stevinus*, a great Mathematician, and in two Hours Time would ſail from *Scheveling* to *Putten*, which is 42 Miles, with 28 Perſons in it; and thô the Wind were ſtrong, 'twas not diſcern'd by the Paſſengers, it ſail'd ſo ſwift. *Grotius* made ſeveral fine Epigrams and Copies of Verſes upon this famous Machine and its Author; for which we refer to *Bleau*. The Form of it reſembled a Boat: It mov'd upon 4 Wheels of an equal Bigneſs, and had 2 Sails, was ſteer'd by a Rudder, plac'd behind the 2 hindermoſt Wheels, and was ſtop'd by letting down the Sails, or turning it from the Wind; ſo that it ſeem'd to exceed for Art the Chariots made uſe of by the *Chineſe* in their Champion Countries. They likewiſe make uſe of a little Veſſel in this Province capable of holding two Perſons, with a Bottom like a Sledge,

Digitized by Google

Sledge, which they drive upon the Ice; and 'tis form'd so much like a Boat, that if the Ice should break, the Passengers are in no Danger. The *Atlas Historique* takes Notice, That in 1672, when *England* and *France* design'd to have invaded *Holland* by Sea, the Tide chang'd its usual Course, and was stop'd for 12 Hours, tho' very regular at other Times, to the great Astonishment of the Inhabitants; and next Morning the *French* and *English* Fleets were scattered by a dreadful Tempest. About 10 Miles S. W. from the *Hague* stands *Honstaerdyk*, a stately Palace belonging to the Pr. of *Orange*, with fine Gardens, beautiful Fountains and Statues, and among them some Antick ones, as *Roman* Gladiators, *Samson* tearing a Lion, *&c.* Dr. *Northleigh* says, 'tis superior to many noted Places in *Italy*: The lower Rooms are pav'd with Marble, and those above are very sumptuous. There are two Galleries full of excellent Paintings; and the Princess's Closet is curiously wainscotted with fine Japan-work. On the Backside there's a pleasant Grove, with several regular Plantations of Greens, which make a Square of half a Mile from each Angle to the Center; and beyond this they have a Place for Foreign Birds and Beasts, that are kept there in great Numbers.

About 6 Miles N W. from the *Hague*, is the Village of *Losdun*, in whose Church lies entomb'd *Margaret*, Wife to *Herman* Count of *Hennenberg*, Daughter to *Florence* Count of *Holland* and *Zealand*, and Sister to *William* K. of the *Romans*; who, in the 40th Year of her Age, meeting with a poor Woman that had two Twins in her Arms, upbraided her as unchast; alledging, that one Man could not get two Children at once: Upon which the Woman, being provok'd, wish'd the Countess might have as many Children at a Birth as there were Days in the Year; which they say came to pass in 1276, when she was brought to Bed of 365 Sons and Daughters, that were all baptiz'd by *Guido*, a Suffragan of *Utrecht*; all the Males being called *John*, and the Females *Elizabeth*. *Guicciardin* quotes *Erasmus* and *Ludovicus Vives* for the Story. 'Tis also mentioned by Mr. *Ray*, Mr *Misson*, and Dr *Northleigh*; but the latter suspects it as a Popish Legend: Yet in the Church there's a Table fix'd to the Wall, with an Inscription relating the Fact. This Inscription appears to be new, because that related by *Guicciardin* 100 Years ago is shorter, and of another Nature. They shew here two Brass Basons in which the Children were baptiz'd, with this Latin Distich under them:

En tibi monstrosum nimis & memorabile factum,
Quale nec a Mundi Conditione datum.

Importing, that such a Monstrous Birth was never heard of since the Creation. *Bleau* and *Johnson* do likewise relate the Inscription different from what 'tis now. From all which we may conclude, that there was certainly such a Monstrous Birth, since 'tis told by so many Authors of Credit, but aggravated with fabulous Circumstances by the Monks.

6. *Delph*, Lat. *Delphum*, and *Delphi*. It had its Name from the Ditch cut between it and the *Hague*. It lies 6 Miles S. E. from the *Hague*, 10 S. W. from *Leyden*, and 8 N. W. from *Rotterdam*. 'Tis a large, neat, and stately City, and has spacious Streets, with Currents of Water running through them. The Stadthouse is a noble Structure, with a Court of Justice, and 6 other large Apartments for the Magistrates. There's a spacious Square betwixt it and the New Church, which has a lofty Steeple. In this Church there's a noble Mohument, erected to the Memory of Pr. *William* I. of *Orange*, who was barbarously murther'd here, as we formerly mentioned, with this Inscription:

D. O. M. Et æternæ Memoriæ Gulielmi Nassovii, Suprem. Arausionensium Principis. Patr. Patr. qui Belgii Fortunis suas posthabuit & suorum, valedissimos exercitus ære plurimum privato his conscripsit, his induxit. Ordinum Auspiciis Hispaniæ Tirannidem propulit. Veræ Religionis cultum; Avitas Patriæ Leges; revocavit, restituit. Ipsam denique Libertatem tantum non asservam, Mauricio Principi, Paternæ virtutis hæredi Filio, Stabiliendam reliquit. Heroes vere pii; prudentia, invicti, quem Philip. II. Hisp. & Europæ Timor timuit; non domuit, non terruit; sed empto Percussore fraude nefanda fusulit. Fœderat. Belg. Provinc. Perenni Memor. Monum. fec.

" To the great and good GOD, and to
" the immortal Memory of *William* of *Nas-*

Digitized by Google

" *ſau*, Sovereign Pr. of *Orange*, the Father " of his Country, who preferr'd the Proſperity of the *Netherlands* to that of himſelf and his Family; did twice levy and " bring in an Army at his own Charge; " repell'd the Tyranny of *Spain* under the " Conduct of the States; recover'd and " reſtor'd the true Religion, and the ancient " Laws of his Country, and left its Liberty to be eſtabliſhed by his Son Pr. *Maurice*, the Heir of his Father's Virtues: " The States of the United *Netherlands* have " erected this Monument, to perpetuate " the Memory of that truly pious, prudent and invincible Hero, whom *Philip* II. of *Spain*, the Terror of *Europe*, " dreaded; but not being able to terrify or " conquer, he hir'd an Aſſaſſin treacherouſly " to murther.

Dr. *Northleigh* ſays, Pr. *William*'s Tomb has his Effigies upon it in Marble, and his Statue ſtanding by it in Braſs, arm'd Capa-pé, and a Fame ſounding over him, with this Motto, *Te vindice tuta Libertas*; *i.e.* You were the Champion and Preſerver of our Liberty; and another Emblem of his going on ſteadily in a Storm, with this Motto, *Sævis tranquillus in Undis*. At his Feet there lies the Repreſentation of a Dog, which they ſay dy'd of Grief when he was murther'd. The Dr. adds, That this Monument is adorn'd with as good Braſs Statues and Marble as any he ſaw in *Italy*. There are 4 other Princes and Princeſſes of his Family contain'd in this Monument. In the Old Church, which is alſo a ſtately Fabrick, but inferior to the New, are the Monuments of the great *Van Trump* and *Van Heine*, two of their Admirals, who were ſlain at Sea.

This City is two Miles in Circumference, and fortified with a Wall and Ditch, but after the ancient Manner. The chief Magazine and Armory of the States is kept here, where they have two Pieces of Ordnance caſt at *Lubeck* in 1669, which weigh 8000 Pounds each. 'Tis noted for its excellent Earthen Ware, in Imitation of Porcelain. It formerly had a great Trade in Beer, and likewiſe in Cloth; but the latter is much decay'd, (tho' they value themſelves upon it) becauſe of their Differences with our *Engliſh* Merchants, who removed from hence to *Rotterdam*. This City lies in a Plain among pleaſant Meadows, which they can overflow at Pleaſure by their Sluces. 'Twas built by *Godfrey the Crooked* of *Lorrain*, who was Count of *Holland* for ſome Years. *Albert* of *Bavaria* took it after 7 Weeks Siege, becauſe it favour'd the Faction of the *Hoecks*: Upon which he diſmantled it, and fin'd it in 10000 Crowns. In 1536, moſt of it was burnt down, when the old Storks, which build in their Chimnies, choſe rather to be burnt than to leave their Young. In 1654, the States Magazine was blown up here by an unknown Accident, which beat down about 200 Houſes, killed and wounded many People, and others were miraculouſly ſav'd under the Ruins. It has produced many Learned Men in all Faculties, for whom we refer to *Bleau*; but they are aſham'd of the blaſphemous Heretick *David George*, who was born here of mean Parentage, and perſonated our Saviour, but fled from hence, and died under a Counterfeit Name at *Baſle* in 1556, where his Corps was expoſed to publick Diſgrace, and his Eſtate confiſcated. *Delph*'s Haven belongs to this Town, and lies within half a League of *Rotterdam*, with which, and *Delph*, it has a Communication by a Canal. *Albert* of *Bavaria* allow'd thoſe of *Delph* to build this Haven, for the good Services they did him. The *Eaſt-India* Company have a ſtately Houſe here. 'Tis conveniently ſeated for a ſtrong Fortification, and ſends out Buſſes, *&c.* for Fiſhing. It has a tolerable Court and a Church, and is defended by 3 ſtrong Banks againſt Inundations and Tempeſts.

Seven Miles S.W. from *Delph* lies *Maesland-Sluce*, formerly a ſmall Village, but now become a conſiderable Town by their Fiſhery. About 3 Miles further S. lies *Vlaerdingen*, Lat. *Vlaerdinga*, now a poor Village; but once ſo conſiderable a Town, that anciently it gave Name to the whole Province. 'Twas moſtly deſtroyed by Inundations, and their Trade is now enjoy'd by *Delph* and *Rotterdam*. Near the Mouth of the *Maes*, about 7 Miles from *Delph*, lies *Graveſond*, Lat. *Comitis Arena*, formerly a well fortified Town, the Seat of the Counts of *Holland*, and of the Provincial States; but now a ſmall Village. In 1546, upon digging up ſome old Foundations, ſeveral curious Earthen Veſſels, ſuppos'd to be 1400 Years

Digitized by Google

Years old, were found here. The adjacent Country produces the beſt Wheat, and ſweeteſt Graſs, in *Holland*, which makes the *Graveſand* Cheeſes highly eſteem'd. Near this Place ſtood the ancient Palace of the Lords of *Polan*, which, with ſeveral neighbouring Caſtles, were burnt by thoſe of *Delph* in 1359. This Eſtate now belongs to the Family of *Orange*. Betwixt *Vlaerdingen* and *Delph*'s Haven, lies *Schiedam*, at the Mouth of the *Schie*, which gives Name to *Schieland*. This Town is very ancient, was made a City in 1274, and ſtill has Magiſtrates, and ſome Villages under its Juriſdiction. 'Tis chiefly noted for Herring-fiſhing, and making of Nets.

7. *Rotterdam*, lies at the Mouth of the *Rotter*, 8 Miles N. E. from *Delph*, about 3 E. from *Schiedam*, 7 S. W. from *Goude*, and 8 N. W. from *Dort*. 'Tis the chief City of *Schieland*, and, according to *Guicciardin* and *Trithemius*, was founded by one *Ruterius*, a King of the *Francs*, in the 89th Year of Chriſt: The Truth of which is doubted. 'Tis of a Triangular Figure, and ſo much increas'd of late, that, next to *Amſterdam* and *Leyden*, 'tis ſuppoſed to be the biggeſt Town in *Holland*; but in Trade, is certainly next to *Amſterdam*. It lies on the N. Side of the *Maes*, which is very broad there, and makes a good Harbour, tho' 15 Miles diſtant from the Sea. By the deep Canals which run into the Heart of the City, Ships of great Burden come into it, lade and unlade at the Merchants Doors, where they lie ſafe from all Danger. The City is large, and exceeding populous; and their Port is frequented by more Ships from *Great Britain* than that of *Amſterdam*, becauſe 'tis more commodious. The Greatneſs of their Trade has occaſioned them to enlarge the Town, and to purchaſe new Privileges. They have a conſiderable Trade in Beer, which is tranſported to *Amſterdam* and other Places; and every Hour of the Day, at the ringing of a certain Bell, a Paſſage-Boat goes off to ſome of the neighbouring Towns. The Houſes are of Brick, and many of 'em magnificent, with Door-Caſes, Window-Caſes, and Stair-Caſes, of Marble. The Streets are large and neat. The *Stadthouſe*, *Exchange*, *Eaſt-India* Houſe, and *Admiralty*, are good Structures; and their Glaſs-Houſe one of the beſt in the 7 Provinces, where they make abundance of Glaſs Toys and Enamel'd Bowls, which they ſend to the *Indies*. They have 4 Churches, of which St. *Lawrence*'s is the largeſt. From the Top of its Steeple there's a fair Proſpect of *Delph*, the *Hague*, *Leyden*, *Dort*, and the greateſt Part of *South-Holland*. This Town is noted for the Birth of ſeveral great Men, and particularly *Eraſmus*, who was born in a little Houſe near the great Church, and over the Door there's his Picture, with this Diſtich:

Ædibus hic Ortus Mundum decoravit Eraſmus,
Artibus ingenuis, Religione, Fide.

Importing, That *Eraſmus* was born here, to adorn the World with Arts, Learning and Religion. There are other Inſcriptions of the ſame Nature in *Spaniſh* and *Dutch*. On the great Bridge in the ſpacious Market-place, there's a ſtately Braſs Statue of *Eraſmus*, in a fur'd Gown and a round Cap, with a Book in one Hand, and the other upon it, as if he were turning a Leaf. There are ſeveral Latin Inſcriptions on the Pedeſtal in Commendation of this great Man, and they have likewiſe his Picture, which was ſent them from *Baſil* 4 Years before his Death. The *Engliſh* and *Scots* have two conſiderable Churches here. In the great Church are the Tombs of *Cornelius de Wit* and *de Cortenaer*, two of their Admirals, who were ſlain at Sea. Their faireſt Structure is that called the *Cheminhuys*, or Senate-Houſe, where they conſult about Publick Affairs. 'Tis a ſpacious ſquare Building, whoſe Front is of Free-ſtone, curiouſly adorn'd with Fret-work. The Air of this City is not very good; for its low Situation makes it liable to Fogs, and their Canals have not Current enough to carry off their Filth, which makes them noiſome in the Summer; but there are many curious Walks about the City, which make it very pleaſant, and its Situation is ſtrong. Their Dock for building Ships deſerves alſo a Traveller's View.

8. *Goude* or *Tergou*, is about 8 Miles N. E. from *Rotterdam*, ſtands on the Conflux of the *Iſſel* and *Gouwe*, from which 'tis named. 'Twas founded by Count *Florent* V. about 1262, who granted it many Privileges. 'Twas burnt down about 100 Years after, and likewiſe in 1420, during the War betwixt

Digitized by Google

twixt *Jaqueline* of *Bavaria* and *Philip* of *Burgundy*. 'Tis almoſt of a round Figure, ſtands in a mooriſh Soil; and by their Sluces, can drown the adjacent Country, which makes it unacceſſible, except by two Banks on each Side the *Iſſel*, which are ſo well fortified, that no Enemy can come that Way; and the Town is likewiſe encompaſſed with a broad and deep Ditch. They had formerly a Caſtle, where the Archives of *Holland* were kept; of which nothing remains now but a high Tower. The Market-place is very large; the Town-Houſe ſtands in the middle, and near it the great Church, which is ſaid to exceed the Cathedral of *Cologne* for Bulk. It had a ſtately Tower, which, together with the Church, was burnt down by Lightning in 1552. After which, 'twas rebuilt in more Splendour than before. The Painting of its Windows is ſo extraordinary, as ſcarce to be equall'd. The whole Town was burnt down in 1438, all but 5 Houſes. Their Buildings are for moſt part more neat than ſtately. The City is kept very clean by a multitude of Canals and ſmall Currents, which are cleanſed by the Tide. The Air is ſo good, that 'tis ſeldom or never troubled with the Plague. 'Tis encompaſſed with Multitudes of Gardens; and the Generality of the Citizens are obſerv'd to be ſuch as have retired from the World, to ſpend the Remainder of their Time in Quiet and Pleaſure. The Cheeſe made in its Diſtrict is much eſteemed. For the Learned Men born in this Place, we refer to *Bleau*.

Goudeſtuce, which takes its Name from this Place, lies near the old Channel of the *Rhine*, between *Bodegrave* and *Leyden*. 'Twas ſtrongly fortified by the States, to ſtop the Incurſions of the *French* in 1672 and 1673.

9. *Schoonhoven*, lies 8 Miles S. E. from *Goude*, 10 Miles W. from *Vianen*, and 13 E. from *Rotterdam*. It takes Name from its fine Gardens, and lies on the N. Side of the *Lech*. *Florent* IV. caſt up a huge Bank between *Amerongen* and this Town in 1252, which brought great Profit to it and the neighbouring Country. 'Twas almoſt quite burnt down in 1330. 'Twas taken from *John* of *Brabant*, to whom moſt of the Cities of *Holland* had ſubmitted, in 1424, by the Troops of Counteſs *Jaqueline*, when all the Garriſon, except *Albert Beyling*, one of the Governors of the Caſtle, were put to Death immediately; and he having only a Month's Time given him to viſit his Friends, and ſettle the Affairs of his Family, he return'd, ſay the *Dutch* Writers, like *Regulus* the *Roman*, and put himſelf into the Hands of his Enemies, who cruelly buried him alive. Its Trade is advanced by a Stream of the *Iſel*, which falls here into the *Lech*, and they have a conſiderable Advantage by Herring-fiſhing. 'Tis ſo well fortified, that the *French* were repulſed before it in 1672 with conſiderable Loſs. Its Fortifications have been much improved ſince that Time *John Tates*, a Man of a Gigantick Stature, was born here ſince 1660, and carried about moſt Countries of *Europe* for a Show. A Man of a middle Stature might eaſily ſtand under his Arm-Pit. From the End of his middle Finger, which was 7 Inches long, to his Elbow, were 25 Inches and an half. The Length of his Hand to his Wriſt was 11 Inches, and all his Limbs proportionable. *Oliver van Nort*, one of the firſt that ſailed round the World, is buried here in the great Church. The famous *Longolius* and other Learned Men were born in this Place.

10. The *Brill*, lies in the Iſland called *Voorn*. *Hadrianus Junius* derives its Name from *Breheel*, as being ſituated on that broad Mouth of the *Rhine* called anciently *Helius*, which ſeems confirmed by the neighbouring Town called *Helvoetſluce*, at the Bottom of the ſaid Channel. This Town is noted for being taken by the *Sea Geuſe*, as formerly mentioned, which retrieved the Affairs of the United Provinces, and ruin'd thoſe of *Spain*. 'Tis very ſtrong, and has a convenient Port, which brings it a good Trade, and makes it populous. 'Twas one of the Cautionary Towns given to Qu *Elizabeth* for aſſiſting the *Dutch*, and reſtor'd to them 30 Years after by K. *James* I. The great Sir *Francis Vere* was Governor of it for ſome Time. The City is neat and well built, lies 12 Miles below *Rotterdam* to the W. and was the uſual Place where Packet-Boats arriv'd from *England* formerly, till they found *Helvoetſluce* more convenient. The Streets are large and handſome: Their great Church is a good Structure, and the Steeple a Land-mark to Sailors. There are

plea-

Digitized by Google

pleasant Walks of Trees on the Walls. The Island in general is fruitful in Wheat and other Corn; but the Air too moist by the Neighbourhood of the Sea and the *Maes*.

11. *Helvoetsluce*, lies 3 Miles S. from the *Brill*, has a convenient Harbour, where the Packet-Boat from *England* usually arrives. 'Twill be for ever memorable for the Pr. of *Orange*'s setting out from hence with his Fleet and Army in 1688, to rescue *Great Brittain* and *Ireland* from Popery and Slavery. The Land of *Putten* makes Part of the same Island, and is only divided from the Territory of the *Brill*, and that called *Beyerland*, by some Dikes and Channels. The chief Town is *Geervliet*, seated among fruitful Fields; which, besides Corn, produces a Turf, and a prickly Herb like *Spanish* Broom, which Providence seems to have furnished on those sandy Downs, to prevent their being carried away by the Wind, and exposing the Country to Inundations. The two *Beyerlands* have likewise good Arable Land, and Pasture Grounds.

Three Miles S. W. of *Helvoetsluce* lies the small Island called *Goeree*, which signifies a good Road for Ships, by which the Town of that Name grew very rich; but the Harbour is of late choak'd up by Sand, which has lessen'd its Trade. There's a Tower here, which is a Land-mark for Sailors.

East from this Island lies *Over-Flackee*, about 13 Miles long, and 4 where broadest. It has many Villages and Towns, the chief of which is *Summersdyck*, that belongs to *Zealand*. It had formerly a good Trade, which is now decay'd. This Island has much good Corn Land, but little Pasturage. Betwixt *Voorn* and *Rotterdam*, lies the Isle of *Isselmond* or *Overmaes*, where the *Issel* empties it self into that River. 'Tis equal to any Part of the Province for Fruitfulness and Richness of Soil, is about 10 Miles long, and 4 where broadest. 'Twas recover'd from the Sea by *Charles the Warlike* of *Burgundy*.

12. *Dort*, is Capital of its Bailiwick, and the first in Dignity of the Province of *Holland*. This Bailiwick was made an Island in 1421, when a Tempest drove the Waters up the *Maes* and *Maruwe*, with such Violence, that it overflow'd the Banks, and swallow'd up a large Tract of Land between *Dort* and *Brabant*, with 72 Villages, and 100000 People. Some say, That a wicked Boor, bearing a Grudge to one of his Neighbours, made a Hole in the Bank to let in the Water to drown him and his Family by Night, designing afterwards to have made up the Breach; but the Wind being high at the same time, the Waves broke in with such Force, that the Fellow was drown'd in the Attempt, and occasioned the Desolation above-mentioned. This City is very ancient, and, according to *Scriverius*, was so considerable in 898, that it held out a Siege against one of the Counts of *Holland*. It stands on the *Maruwe*, which being made up of the *Maes*, the *Rhine*, and the *Ling*, gave Occasion for some Geographers to say, that it stood upon 4 Rivers. 'Tis so strong by Nature since its Bailiwick was made an Island, that it has little need of Art. 'Twas formerly the Seat of the Earls of *Holland*, and the Place where they and their Subjects swore mutual'y to one another upon their Inauguration. The Name of *Dordrecht* signifies a Ferry on the River *Dort*, upon which it formerly stood; but this River is now swallowed up by the Channel of the *Maes*. It lies about 9 Miles S. E. from *Rotterdam*, and 11 S. from *Goude*, is a large, rich, and populous City. The Houses are high, and of Brick, scarce inferior to those of *Antwerp*: The Streets are kept neat and clean, pav'd in the Middle with Stone, and on the Sides with Bricks set Edge-wise. The *English* Merchants keep a Court here, where they have great Privileges, and two Churches, as the *French* have one. From the Steeple of the principal Church, there is so large a Prospect, that one may see as far as *Breda*. In one of the upper Rooms of the Gunners-Hall or Guild, sate the famous Synod which condemn'd the *Arminians*. It has the Staple of Wines brought down the *Rhine*, and has close and strong arch'd Cellars for keeping it; but *Rotterdam* has now a large Share of that Trade. It has also the Staple of Corn, Wood, and other Merchandize, brought down the *Rhine*; and abundance of Salmon and other good Fish are taken near it. 'Tis called the Maiden City, because, as they say, 'twas never taken by an Enemy, tho' frequently besieged: Yet we have heard before, that the *Germans* possessed them-

selves

Digitized by Google

ſelves of it when they purſued Count *Thierry*; but perhaps that was by Surprize. It muſt be own'd however to be very ſtrong, being guarded on the W. and N. by the *Maes*, and a Channel from thence towards the Neck of the *Biesbos*, and the *Holland-Diep*; and on the S. and E. by the ſaid *Biesbos*, which is a large Bay that reaches to *Gertruydenberg*, and is ſo called from the Bulruſhes that grow in it. It has long enjoyed the Royalty of a Mint, being the Place to which the old Counts confin'd their Coinage. Dr. *Brown* ſays, the Steeple of the great Church has 312 Steps. The Apartment where the Synod was held is very fair and large, in which their Seats are ſtill preſerv'd, and ſhew'd to Strangers. The Government of this City differs much from the reſt in *Holland*; therefore we ſhall give a ſhort Account of it. 'Tis managed by a Schout, a Conſul or Burgomaſter, Senators, Eſchevins, Ex-Senators, and a Council of Eight. The Schout or Judge repreſents the Governor of the Province, by whom he is choſen out of 3 preſented to him by the other Magiſtrates, and votes after all the other Senators, his Buſineſs being chiefly for the Province. The Burgomaſter is choſen every 4 Months by the Senators, Ex-Senators, and Council of Eight. He is choſen out of the Ex-Senators, has a ſort of Supreme Authority, and 3 Halberdiers conſtantly to attend him, which is peculiar to him and the Governor of the Province. There's alſo another who is a ſort of a Proconſul, and ſupplies his Place in caſe of Abſence. Juſtice is adminiſtred by the Conſul, 9 Eſchevins, and 5 Senators, who are all changed once in two Years; in the firſt of which, 4 Eſchevins and 3 Senators; and in the 2d, 5 Eſchevins and 2 Senators, go out of Office, and theſe are called the Ex-Senators. The Eſchevins differ from the Senators only in this, that they are more concern'd in examining the Pleas of thoſe who have Law-Suits. The Council of Eight is choſen by the Governor of the Province, or the Court of *Holland*, out of 24 preſented by the 4 Guilds of Tradeſmen, each of which names 6. Their Buſineſs is to aſſiſt the Ex-Senators in the Election of a Conſul, and to inform the Magiſtrates of what's amiſs in the City. Their Learned Men are accounted for by *Blean*.

13. *Willemſtadt*, lies 10 Miles S.W. from *Dort*, on the Frontiers of *Dutch Brabant*. 'Twas built in 1583 by Prince *William* of *Orange*, after whom 'twas called. The Town is ſmall, but very ſtrong, defended by a Wall, 7 Baſtions, a double Ditch, and other Fortifications. It has a good Harbour, and lies conveniently to ſecure the Trade between *Holland* and *Zealand*, upon the Point of the Iſle of *Ruggenhil*; the Houſes are neat. They have a good Market-Place, Church, and Common Hall; but the Air is unwholeſome and moiſt, and occaſions dangerous Fevers and Agues, eſpecially to Strangers. The Iſland on which it ſtands was recovered from the Water, that had a long Time overflow'd it, in 1654. This Iſland and that of *Finart* did formerly belong to *Brabant*, the States of which gave them to Pr. *William*.

14. *Clundert*, lies about 2 Miles S. E. from *Willemſtadt*. 'Twas formerly ſo conſiderable a Harbour, that the Earls of *Holland* had one of their principal Cuſtom-Houſes here. In 1583, 'twas given to the Pr. of *Orange*, who fortified it with 8 Baſtions and ſome Ravelins. It has a fine Church, and a good Chime of Bells.

15. *Sevenbergen*, lies 2 Miles E. from *Clundert*, was formerly a Wall'd Town, but diſmantled by *Philip* of *Burgundy* in 1426, and is now only a populous Village.

16. *Gertrudenburg*, lies about 9 Miles E. from *Sevenbergen*, had its Name from *Gertrude*, a reputed Saint, who died here in 664. 'Tis in the Diſtrict of *Dort*, belong'd formerly to *Brabant*, but was added to *Holland* by Count *William* in 1213. In 1611, the States gave the Sovereignty of it to Prince *Maurice*; ſo that 'tis Part of the Patrimony of the Family. 'Tis a Place of ſuch Conſideration, that the Province of *Holland* bound their Princes by Oath to keep it; and the States of *Brabant* laid the ſame Obligation upon theirs to recover it. It lies upon the *Maes* or *Meruwe*, which is ſo broad there, that it reſembles a Sea. 'Tis very ſtrongly fortified; and beſides the Defence of the *Maes* on one Side, it has a Marſh on the other. 'Twas taken by the *Dutch* in 1573, but baſely ſurrender'd to the Pr. of *Parma* in 1588. 'Twas afterwards beſieged by Sea and Land, and forced to yield to Pr. *Maurice* in 1595, in Sight of Count

Digitized by Google

Count *Manisfeld* and the *Spaniſh* Army. The Prince, thô then but young, did fortify his Camp ſo well, that the *Spaniards* could not attack him; and he kept his Army in ſuch Diſcipline, that the Peaſants labour'd their Ground within the Circuit of his Camp without any Moleſtation. They are ſupplied by the neighbouring River with good Salmon, Sturgeon, and ſuch Plenty of Shads, that 18000 of 'em have been taken near it in one Day.

17. *Heuſden*, lies about 10 Miles E. from *Gertrudenburg*. 'Tis a very ancient Town, having had Lords of its own in 857, who held it in Fee of the Counts of *Cleve*, but at laſt it came to the Count of *Holland*, which occaſioned great Wars betwixt that Province and *Brabant*; but they were at laſt compromis'd by a Match betwixt a Son of *Holland* and a Daughter of *Brabant*, with whom 'twas quitted to the *Dutch* by way of Dowry. In 1407, the Citizens defeated the *Gueldrians*, who contended with *Holland* about the Poſſeſſion of the Town, and gave them ſuch a compleat Overthrow, that they brought home more Priſoners than they themſelves were in Number. 'Tis well fortified, and has a ſtrong Caſtle, which is the Reſidence of a Governor appointed by the States. It has ſeveral Villages, Lordſhips, and ſmall Forts, under its Juriſdiction. The Powder of their Magazine being ſet on Fire by Lightning in 1680, the Caſtle, with the greateſt Part of the neighbouring Street, were blown up, the Town extreamly ſhatter'd, and about 260 People killed. It ſtands on a Stream of the *Maes*, where it forms an Iſland, called the *Hemerder Waert*.

18. *Crevecœur*, lies 5 Miles S. E. from *Heuſden*, upon the ſame River, is a little Town, but ſtrongly fortified, which is ſuppoſed to be the Reaſon of its Name. It was taken and retaken during the *Spaniſh* War, and taken by the *French* in 1672, but abandon'd afterward.

19. *Worcum*, lies 8 Miles N. W. from *Heuſden*. 'Tis a very ancient Town, and in old Writings called *Woudrichemum*. 'Tis the Capital of the Country of *Altena*, which formerly belong'd to the Counts of *Cleve*, from whom 'twas purchaſed by Count *William* in 1333, and afterwards held in Fee by the Lords of *Horn* till 1600, when the Count of *Horn* being executed at *Bruſſels* by the D. of *Alva*, his Widow ſold it to the States of *Holland*, with the Lordſhip of *Altena*, for 90000 Florins. 'Tis well fortified by Nature and Art, being ſituated on a Point of Land near the Conflux of that Branch of the *Rhine* called the *Waal* and the *Maes*.

20. *Loevenſtein*, lies 2 Miles S E. from *Worcum*, on the Point of the Iſland called *Bommelwaert*, is one of the ſtrongeſt Caſtles in *Holland*, and noted for giving Name to the Faction, the Chiefs of whom us'd to aſſemble there, to contrive how they might leſſen the Power of the Princes of *Orange*; and 'twas afterwards made their Priſon.

21. *Gorcum*, lies about 2 Miles N. from *Worcum*, on the other Side the *Maes*, and on the Mouth of the *Ling*. 'Tis called *Gorichemum* in old Writings, is a neat well built Town, ſtrongly fortified by Nature and Art; and is, as well as *Worcum* and *Loevenſtein*, reckon'd one of the Keys of *Holland*. It formerly belong'd to the Lords of *Arkel*, who built a Caſtle here, and oblig'd their Subjects to build Houſes near it; ſo that it quickly grew from a poor Fiſher-Village to be a conſiderable Town, and was walled in. They have a daily Market for Corn, Butter, Cheeſe, *&c.* brought down the *Ling* from the fruitful Country of the *Betaw*, by which, together with the People's applying themſelves to Navigation, the Town is become exceeding rich. They have a good Church, from the Steeple of which may be ſeen 22 Wall'd Towns, with an infinite Number of Villages, which make a Proſpect that's ſcarce to be parallel'd. Their Lords formerly nam'd their Senate; but in 1651, the States gave them Power to name their own Magiſtrates. Over the Water-Gate there's this Inſcription, *Civitas in qua maxime Cives Legibus parent, & in Pace beata, Bello invicta*; *i. e.* A City happy in the Loyalty of its Inhabitants, bleſs'd in Peace, and unconquer'd in War. The *French* could not take it in 1672. Near this City, they ſhew a Place where they pretend *Hercules* of *Germany* formerly encamp'd, and gave Name to the Country of *Arkel*; the Lords of which were formerly ſo powerful, as to make War with the Counts of *Holland*; but being at laſt overpower'd, they ſold their Lands to the Dukes of *Guelder*, who afterwards ſold moſt of it to the Counts of *Holland*. *Bleau* gives an Account of the great Philoſopher *Henry* of *Gorcum*, and others of their Learned Men.

22. Hier

Digitized by Google

22. *Heuclom*, or *Hockelum*, lies 3 Miles N.E. from *Gorcum*. 'Twas anciently called *Hercules*'s Home, and said to have been the Residence of the *German Hercules*. It had formerly a ſtrong Caſtle, which is now demoliſh'd.

23. *Aſperen*, lies 2 Miles E. from *Hockelum*. 'Tis a ſmall Wall'd Town, belonging to the Family of the *Boetzlaers*, and is noted for giving Birth to ſome eminent Divines.

24. *Leerdam*, lies 5 Miles N.E. from *Gorcum*. It belongs to the Family of *Orange*, was formerly a conſiderable, but now a ſmall Town, with the Remains of an ancient Caſtle, from whence the *Gueldrians* us'd to inſeſt *Holland*.

25. *Vianen*, was built in 1190. 'Tis walled and fortified, enjoys great Privileges, and is an *Aſylum* for poor Debtors. It ſtands on the S. Side of the *Lech*, a Branch of the *Rhine*, 5 Miles N. from *Leerdam*, had formerly Lords of its own, who pretended to be independent; and one of 'em maintain'd a long Suit upon that Account with *Philip* II. of *Spain*. It lately belong'd to the Noble Family of the *Bredenrodes*, now extinguiſh'd. 'Tis a neat City, encompaſſed with pleaſant Fields, and has a ſtately high Tower adjoining to the Caſtle of *Batteſtein*, the Seat of its Lords, which has fine Gardens, Statues, Pyramids, and Paintings.

26. *Newport*, lies 9 Miles W. from *Vianen*, on the Left Side of the Lake, formerly a large and rich Town, but now only a Village.

27. *Iſſelſtein*, near 3 Miles N. from *Vianen*, on the Borders of *Utrecht*, formerly a Bone of Contention betwixt that Province and *Holland*. It belong'd to the Lords of *Egmond*; one of whom being accuſed of Treaſon againſt the Count of *Holland*, was beſieged and taken here, and forc'd to reſign it for an Annual Penſion in 1417. After which, thoſe of *Utrecht* took and burnt the Town, as the *Gueldrians* did in 1466; but it was rebuilt and fortified by *Frederick* of *Iſſelſtein* in the Time of *Charles* of *Burgundy*, and came afterwards to the Family of *Orange*, who enlarged the Fortifications, and encompaſs'd it with pleaſant Gardens and Incloſures. Their chief Trade is in Cables, Cordage, and other Materials for Shipping.

28. *Sevenhuyſen*, 4 Leagues from *Leyden*, a Village remarkable for a pleaſant Grove half a League long, and a Furlong broad, with a Channel in the Middle. Here abundance of Wild-Fowls are bred, the Profit of which, and from the Grove, is ſo conſiderable, that 'tis lett for 300 *l.* Sterling *per Annum*. The neighbouring Inhabitants flock hither in great Numbers to ſee the young Birds taken by ſhaking the Neſts down from the Trees. Our K. *James* I. is ſaid to have had two Veſſels with young Birds from hence every Year. The chief of 'em are, Shags, reſembling Cormorants, Lepelars or Spoonbills, Quacks or Night-Ravens, which make a Noiſe in the Night like one a vomiting; Herons, Wood-Pigeons, and Turtles.

29. *Naerden*, the Capital of *Goyland*, lies upon the *Zuyder-Sea*, 12 Miles S.E. from *Amſterdam*, among Marſhes, occaſioned by the River *Vecht*. The old Town is ſwallow'd up by the Sea, the Ruins of which are to be ſeen at Low Water 200 Perches from the preſent Town. 'Tis ſmall, but ſtrong. 'Twas baſely abandon'd by the Garriſon when the *French* came before it in 1672, and retaken by the *Dutch* upon Terms in 1673, tho' the Garriſon conſiſted of 3000 *French*, well furniſh'd with all Neceſſaries, and in daily Expectation of Relief, for which the Governor was degraded, condemned to perpetual Priſon, and all the Officers caſhier'd, but one who proteſted againſt the Capitulation. This Town was ſurpris'd by thoſe of *Utrecht* in 1481, who ſent Soldiers thither dreſs'd like Market-Women; but that ſame Year the *Naerdeners* defeated thoſe of *Utrecht* in Battle, kill'd 1500 of 'em on the Spot, deſtroy'd ſeveral of their Caſtles, and with the Plunder built a Tower at *Naerden*, on which they plac'd this ſhort Inſcription, *Swijcht Utrecht*; *i. e.* Brag no more *Utrecht*, but hold thy Peace. In 1572, this Town ſurrender'd to the D. of *Alva*'s Son, when he barbarouſly order'd all the Inhabitants to meet in the Market-place, and after having ſent Prieſts to confeſs them, made his Soldiers cut 'em all off. Some Writers ſay, that moſt of 'em were Papiſts; and that when the Prieſts confeſſed them, they ask'd, If they were Catholicks? And when anſwer'd, Yes, told 'em, *That was good for their Souls*. *Bentivoglio* ſays,

Digitized by Google

ſays, 'twas a Neſt of Hereticks; and *Strada*, tho' he thinks they deſerv'd Puniſhment for their Hereſy, yet ſays, this Cruelty was a Crime, and attended with ill Conſequences to the *Spaniſh* Affairs, becauſe it made the *Hollanders* deſperate, and occaſioned their obſtinate Defence of *Leyden* and other Places, being reſolved to ſuffer all Extremities rather than ſubmit to the *Spaniſh* Yoke. The States have made it very ſtrong of late with Brick-Walls, Ravelins, Half-Moons, Counterſcarps, and double Ditches; ſo that 'tis now as regular a Fortification as any in the Country, and a great Security to *Amſterdam*. The adjacent Country being high and ſandy, the Air is better than in moſt Places of *Holland*.

30. *Muyden*, lies alſo on the *Zuyder-Sea*, 5 Miles W. from *Naerden*, at the Mouth of the *Vecht*. 'Tis a pretty ſmall Town, extreamly well fortified, with a Sluce, by which they can drown the adjacent Country. 'Tis reckon'd one of the ſtrongeſt Poſts in *Holland*, and has an ancient Caſtle, whither Count *Florent* V. was carried by the Traitor *Veſſen*.

31. *Woſop*, upon the *Vecht*, 3 Miles S. from *Muyden*. 'Tis alſo well fortified, held out againſt the *French* in 1672, and is noted for good Beer, called *Flemiſh* Phyſick.

Weſtfriesland *or* North-Holland.

IT has the former Name, becauſe anciently the Seat of the *Friſii Minores*; and the latter, becauſe of its Situation. The chief Places which we ſhall take, according to the Courſe of the Map, are,

1. *Monnikendam*. It lies on the other Side the *Pampus*, 6 Miles N. E. from *Amſterdam*, and 6 N. from *Muyden*. It has its Name from the ſmall River *Monnick*, which runs through it. 'Tis an ancient City, mentioned in the *Dutch* Annals of 1236, is well fortified with a Rampart and Walls, and has a Monk for its Arms.

2. *Saerdam*, lies on the River *Saren*, 8 Miles W from *Monnikendam*; and tho' but a Village, is populous and large, and ſo remarkable for building of Ships, and well ſtor'd with Ship-Carpenters, that they commonly ſay, they can build as many in a Year's time as there are Days in it. Their chief Trade lies in this, by which the Town is grown very rich. The Old Town ſtands below the Dam of the River, to which there has been added a long Row of Houſes, called the New Town, on both Sides the River, out of which Ships are hawl'd over the Dam upon Rollers.

3. *Edam*, above 2 Miles N. from *Monnikendam*. It has its Name from a great Bank, to hinder the Inundation of the River *Ye*. It lies on the *Zuyder-Sea*, and on the other Side has a very rich Country, formerly a great Lake, about 5 Miles long, and above 2 broad, now called the *Purmer*. Their chief Trade is in building of Ships, and making excellent Cheeſe. The Mermaid, formerly mentioned in our Deſcription of *Haërlem*, is ſaid to have been caught in the Mud here by ſome Maids going to milk their Cows in the *Purmer*.

4. *Purmerend*, ſo called becauſe it ſtands at one End of the *Purmer*, 4 Miles W. from *Edam*. It had anciently a neat and ſtrong Caſtle, was fortified in 1573, and is grown very rich ſince the dreining of the *Breemſter* Lake, which has added a fruitful Tract of Land to it. It belong'd to the Family of *Egmond*, who ſold it to the States in 1590. The *Beemſter* was drein'd in 1612, after 4 Years Labour. It contains 7090 Acres, beſides the Highways and the Dikes that ſurround and croſs it in ſeveral Places, which make in all 10000 Acres. Sir *W. Temple* ſays, the *Beemſter* is ſo well planted with Gardens, Orchards, Rows of Trees, and fruitful Incloſures, that it makes the pleaſanteſt Summer-Landskip he ever ſaw.

5. *Alcmaer*, lies about 14 Miles N. W. from *Purmerend*, and took its Name from the Marſhes with which it was encompaſſed. 'Tis a very ancient City, ſuffered much by the Incurſions of the *Frizons* about 600 Years ago, which obliged Count *Wm.* to build a Caſtle for its Defence, and afterwards to fortify, and endow it with large Privileges. 'Tis one of the moſt beautiful and beſt built Towns in this Country, is ſurrounded with pleaſant Gardens and rich Paſtures; and from the Milk of their numerous Herds of Cows, make vaſt Quantities of Cheeſe and Butter, which enriches the Town. 'Tis called the Gate of the Waterland, was burnt in 1328, but afterwards rebuilt with more Splendour. This Town repulſed the

Digitized by Google

Spaniards in their firſt War with the *Netherlanders*, being then very ſtrong by its Situation among Marſhes, which are ſince drein'd. It has produc'd ſeveral Learned Men, and among others *Cornelius van Drebbel*, who pretended to the Invention of a perpetual Motion; and that he could, by Optick Glaſſes, make himſelf appear in all Shapes and Habits: For an Account of which, we refer to *Hegenitius*. The City is wall'd round; and at the End of it, there's a large Grove regularly planted, which adds much to the Pleaſantneſs of the Place.

6. *Hoorn*, lies on a Bay of the *Zuyder-Sea*, 11 Miles E. from *Alcmaer*, is a pleaſant, rich, and large Town, encompaſſed with ſo many broad Dikes and Channels, that 'tis reckon'd impregnable. The Inhabitants are alſo noted for Courage. Some derive the Name from its crooked Harbour. On the Land-ſide, there are rich Paſtures, fine Gardens, and pleaſant Walks. They have an Annual Fair in *May*, where vaſt Quantities of Butter and Cheeſe are ſold. They have alſo a conſiderable Trade by Sea, and in building of Ships, which has made it a rich and ſplendid Town. 'Twas built about 1300, and was afterwards noted for a great Trade in *Daniſh* Cattle. *Petrus Junius*, the famous Hiſtorian, and other Learned Men, were born here.

7. *Enchuyſen*, on the *Zuyder-Sea*, lies 9 Miles N. E. from *Hoorn*. 'Twas formerly built with Wood; but having ſuffered much by Fire, they build now with Brick. 'Tis very ſtrong by its Situation and Art. 'Twas much enlarged in 1591, and will take an Hour and an half to walk round it. The Steeple of their Church is admired for its extraordinary Height. 'Tis one of the beſt Harbours in this Country; but the Mouth of it being liable to be choak'd by Sand, which made it impracticable for large Veſſels, about 60 Years ago the Inhabitants cleans'd it, and made a new Harbour within the City. They build many Ships, drive a great Trade in fiſhing Herring, and ſend out large Fleets to the *Baltick* and other Places. In *Bentivoglio's* Time, it exceeded all the Towns of this Country in Number of Ships, and for Skill in Maritime Affairs. 'Twas the firſt Town in *Holland* which revolted from *Spain*, has a great Trade in *Daniſh* Cattle, and refining *French* Salt. *Toppe-rus* and other Learned Men were born here. The Cloſet of Rarities collected by *Paludanus*, a Phyſician of this Place, is much commended by *Hegenitius*, who, among other Things in it, took Notice of a Chamæleon that was kept alive ſome Days; during which Time, it appear'd of all Colours but Red and White.

8. *Medenblick*, lies about 7 Miles N. W. from *Enchuyſen*, upon the *Zuyder-Sea*. 'Tis reckon'd the moſt ancient City of *North-Holland*, was formerly its Capital, and, as ſome ſay, the Seat of *Radbodus*, the famous *Frizon* King. Their Caſtle was repaired by *Florent* V. about 1282. The Town is ſmall, but has a noble Harbour, capable of 300 large Veſſels, and the largeſt and ſtrongeſt Dikes againſt the Sea of any Town in this Country. The neighbouring Soil is very fruitful. It was formerly govern'd by a a Dykgrave; but now they chuſe their own Magiſtrates, after the Manner of other Cities in *North-Holland*.

9. *Schagen*, 10 Miles N. W. from *Medenblick*, is a rich Village, and the adjacent Country is reckon'd the richeſt Soil in *Europe*. Land is ſold here at double the Rate of any other in *Holland*; there having been Trees upon it, one of which yielded as much Fruit at once, as brought the Owner 10 *l.* And there's the Picture of a Sheep bred here, hung up in the Shambles at *Amſterdam*, where 'twas ſold for the like Sum. *Egmond*, a noble and well built Village, which gave Title to that Noble Family, lies in this Country, 3 Miles W. from *Alcmaer*. It had formerly a fine Caſtle, and a large Monaſtery. Six Miles further S. lies *Beverwick*, formerly noted for Pilgrimages to it. It has pleaſant Incloſures, and a good Harbour on the Mouth of the *Wickermer*.

The Drein'd Lands of North-Holland *are*,

The *Zype*, the *Beemſter*, and *Purmer*, formerly mentioned; the *Wormer*, and *Schermer*. The *Zype* was firſt drein'd and encompaſſed with Banks by *William* Lord of *Schagen*, and ſecur'd by ſtronger Fences in 1552; but the Sea broke 'em down in 1570. After which 'twas drein'd again, and ſecur'd by a Mole of prodigious Height and Bulk, Proof againſt all Attacks of the Sea, and is a very fruitful Soil. The Noiſe made by the

Digitized by Google

the Waves which break upon it reſemble the barking of a Pack of Hounds, from whence 'tis called the *Hounds Wood*. 'Tis ſupported by large Beams of Timber, firmly plac'd in the Ground, and ſtrongly faſten'd together, the Diſtance betwixt 'em being fill'd with large Stones that reſemble Rocks; and the Mole is ſtrengthen'd by 3 vaſt Banks caſt up againſt it. There were no leſs than 30 Mills made uſe of to drein the *Beemſter*, which is encompaſſed by a Channel from 4 to 8 Rods broad, and is join'd to *Purmerend* by a Bridge at the South End.

To North-Holland *belong the following Iſlands.*

1. The *Texel*, about 6 Miles long, and 5 broad. 'Tis defended from the Sea by Sand-Hills and ſtrong Banks. Moſt of the Soil is applied to feed Sheep, of which they have great Flocks, and the Cheeſe made of their Milk vies with *Parmeſan*. It contains beſides ſeveral fair Villages, a large Town on the E. Side called *Burch*, which enjoys the Privileges of a City. The Inhabitants apply themſelves to Agriculture and Herring-fiſhing; and the States, becauſe of the Importance of this Place, which lies at the Mouth of the *Zuyder-Sea*, have built a ſtrong Fortreſs here, where they have always a good Garriſon.

2. *Flieland*, N. of the *Texel*, about 9 Miles long, and 2 broad. It has only one ſmall Village, and is chiefly remarkable for the vaſt Quantity of Muſcles that are found here.

3. *Schelling*, lies N. from *Flieland*, about 11 Miles long, and 3 broad. It has two Villages with Churches, and three without: The chief of 'em, containing about 1000 Houſes, was burnt, with 120 Merchant-Ships, by Sir *Robert Holmes*, with an *Engliſh* Squadron, in 1666. Some reckon this Iſland to belong to *Eaſt-Frieſland*. Theſe Iſlands lying along the Mouth of the *Zuyder-Sea*, do, with ſeveral large Banks of Sand, break the Rage of the Ocean, and form two good Harbours at the *Texel* and *Vlie*; the firſt being a noted Station for Ships bound to the S. and the other for thoſe bound to the N.

4. The *Wieringe*, ſo called from the great Quantity of Sea-Weed nam'd *Ware*; is a Number of little Iſlands, which lie further in on the Coaſt of *North-Holland*. The chief of 'em is 5 Miles long, and 2 broad, has ſeveral good Villages, a rich Soil, and large Flocks of Sheep. Sir *William Temple* thinks, that the *Zuyder-Sea* was form'd by ſome great Inundation, there being no Notice taken of it in ancient Authors; which is the more probable, becauſe of the great Shoals of flat Sands that lie all over it, and of the Iſlands above-mentioned, that lie like the broken Remains of a continued Coaſt. This Sea is remarkable for a Battle betwixt the *Spaniſh* and *Dutch* Fleets in 1572. The Arms of the Province of *Holland* are, *Or*, a *Lion Gules*.

The Province of Zealand.

FRom *Weſt-Cappell* to the Frontiers of *Dutch Brabant*, taking in the Channels which divide the Iſlands, 'tis about 30 Miles long; and from the W. Mouth of the *Scheld* to the Channel betwixt it and *Goeree*, is about 17 broad. Some deriye the Name from its Situation, and others from *Zealand* in *Denmark*, from whence a Body of *Danes* invaded it, and ſettled here. The Air is ſharper and leſs healthful than that of the neighbouring Countries, and Strangers who come hither are very ſubject to Agues and Fevers; yet that of *South-Beveland* is reckoned mild, and the Air of *Walcheren* is more temperate than in former Ages. The Nightingales frequent it of late, which they did not in former Times, when it was not ſo well planted with Gardens and Orchards as now. The Soil is generally fruitful, produces excellent Wheat, abundance of Colewort, of whoſe Seed they make great Profit, and Madder for Dying. They have good Paſture for Sheep, eſpecially on the Shores; which being often overflow'd, impregnates the Earth, and gives the Graſs ſuch a Reliſh, that their Mutton is preferr'd to that of the other Provinces. The People are of a middle Stature, ſtrong and well ſet. Their Hiſtory ſpeaks of a Woman born here, and brought by the Counteſs of *Holland* to the Marriage of *Charles the Fair* of *France* about 1323, where ſhe was much admir'd for her great Bulk and Stature, the talleſt Men looking like Children

Digitized by Google

to her, tho' both her Parents were of an ordinary Size. Her Strength was such, that she could easily lift up with each Hand a Barrel full of *Hamburgh* Beer, and could carry as much Weight as 8 strong Men. The better Sort are courteous and liberal, but the meaner rough and boisterous, and chiefly employ'd in sailing. They are the best Mariners of the 7 Provinces; and during a War, make great Advantage by Privateering. They have not many Artificers, their chief Application being to Fishing and Foreign Trade; and they are very dextrous at refining of Salt. In their Customs and Humours, they come nearer the *Brabanders* and the *French* than the *Germans* and *Dutch*; and their Women are very neat in their Dress. They were formerly under the same Count with *Holland*, but had their own particular Laws. A great Part of it was subdued by the Earls of *Flanders*, but recover'd again by their own Counts. Their Islands are divided into those on the E. and W. Side of the *Scheld*, which are under the Jurisdiction of two Treasurers, that have the Power of Judges, take Care of the Peace, and punish Offenders; but the Power of him on the E. Side of the *Scheld* is much eclips'd of late by the Bailiffs of *Zirick-zee* and *Tolen*. The Treasurer of the other has his Court at *Middleburg*. The Islands are 8, 4 beyond the *East-Scheld*, viz. *Schowen*, *Duweland*, *Tolen*, and *Oresand*; and 4 between that and the *West-Scheld*, viz. *Walcheren*, *South-Beveland*, *North-Beveland*, and *Wolferdike*. Three of 'em being more expos'd to the Ocean than the rest, the Inhabitants are at great Charge to preserve themselves by Dikes. In this Province there are 8 Cities, and 100 Villages.

The chief Island is *Walcheren*, Lat. *Walachria*, of a round Form, at the Mouth of the *Scheld*, about 9 Miles long, and 8 broad. It exceeds the rest in Number of Inhabitants, Splendour of its Cities, Villages, and Trade; has the Sea on the W. *South-Beveland* on the E. *Schowen*, with the Sea, on the N. and the Mouth of the *Scheld* on the S.

The TOWNS *are*,

1. *Middleburg*, so called because it stands about the middle of the Island, and not from *Metellus*, a Roman Consul, as some would have it. 'Tis large and populous, has many wealthy Merchants, the Streets are spacious, its Churches magnificent, and 20 in Number. One of 'em has an exceeding high Tower, sumptuously built, with a fine Clock and Dial, which is said to have cost 150000 Florins. The Stadthouse is a noble Fabrick, adorn'd with Statues and Images: It had very splendid Monasteries before the Reformation, especially that of St. *Nicholas*, whose Abbot represented the Clergy in the Meeting of the States. *Philip* II. made it a Bishop's See; but the States have since converted it to the Use of their own Meeting, a Chamber of Accounts, a College of Admiralty, and a Mint. This City is much enriched by the Staple of Wine from *France*, *Spain*, and *Portugal*. They purchas'd the Town of *Armuyden* above 100 Years ago; and their old Haven being choak'd up, they have cut a deep and broad Channel from that Town, by which Vessels of great Burden are brought into the City. 'Tis strongly fortified with a Wall, encompassed by large Ditches, and those Ditches surrounded by another Wall. The Lutherans, Anabaptists, and Jews, are allowed Places of publick Worship here. Their Government is by 2 Consuls and 11 Eschevins, chosen by a Council of 24; half of which are such of Quality and Reputation, as cannot be chosen themselves. For their Learned Men, such as *Paul* of *Middleburg*, &c. we refer to *Bleau*. Dr. *Brown* says, the new Church is Octogonal, with a Cupulo, and the Piazza of the Town-House Circular. They constantly maintain at the Entrance of the Town-House 3 Eagles, in Consideration of certain Privileges granted them by the Emperor. This Town lies 32 Miles S. W. from *Rotterdam*, in Long. 22. 30. Lat 51. 45.

2. *Flushing*, 5 Miles S. from *Middleburg*, on the Mouth of the *Scheld*. About 300 Years ago, 'twas only a Ferry to *Flanders*; but increas'd so much by reason of its good Port, that 'twas wall'd by *Adolphus* of *Burgundy* about 160 Years ago. 'Tis of such Importance, that *Charles* V. order'd his Son *Philip* to take Care to preserve it. 'Tis not so large or well built as *Middleburg*, and the Streets are not so spacious; but it has several fine Structures, and particularly their Stadthouse, where they have the Pictures of all

all the Princes of the Houſe of *Naſſau*. The Houſes are generally well built, and the Town well fortified, and rich. The D of *Alva* order'd a Citadel to be built here; but the Inhabitants hang'd his Engineer; and the Town was the firſt that revolted after the *Geuſe* ſeiz'd the *Brill*. 'Twas one of the Cautionary Towns given by the States to Queen *Elizabeth*, when the great Sir *Philip Sidney* was made Governor of it. 'Tis almoſt ſurrounded by the Sea, and their Canals bear Ships of great Burthen, which makes it a Place of vaſt Trade. They built a Church for the *Engliſh* in Q. *Elizabeth*'s Time, with a new Stadthouſe, and a Palace for the Pr. of *Orange*. It belong'd formerly to the Marquiſſes of *Ter-Vere*; but was purchaſed, with the Marquiſate, by the Pr. of *Orange* in 1581. when they ſwore Allegiance to him and his Heirs, and were ever after great Lovers of the Family.

3. *Ter-Vere*, or *Camp-Vere*, about 3 Miles N. from *Middleburg*, is well fortified, with a broad Ditch and 3 Bulwarks, anſwerable to the Number of its Gates. 'Tis a good Harbour, and the beſt furniſh'd Arſenal of the Province. It has been the Staple of the *Scots* Trade ſince 1612, from which it has received great Profit. The *Scots* are allow'd the old Pariſh-Church here. It has been frequently in Danger by the Sea, which overturn'd the Tower that ſtood on the N. Side of the Harbour in 1630. 'Tis govern'd by its own Magiſtrates, who are 2 Conſuls and 9 Eſchevins, aſſiſted by a Council of 24, but ſubject to the Family of *Orange*. Our noble and ancient Family of the *Veres*, Earls of *Oxford*, lately extinguiſh'd, were ſaid to derive their Origin and Name from this Town.

4. *Arnmuyden*, ſo called from the River *Arn*, that runs from hence to *Middleburg*, lies above two Miles E from it. The old Town of this Name is long ago ruin'd, and nothing of it left but a fair Church and a Hall. The new Town above 100 Years ago exceeded *Middleburg* in Magnificence and Riches, and had a good Harbour, capable of Veſſels of 300 Tun. 'Twas purchaſed by the *Middleburgers* from *Philip* of *Burgundy*; but their Harbour being ſpoil'd by Sands, their Trade is decay'd, and their chief Subſiſtence now is from refining Salt. 'Tis encompaſſed with Walls, and has its own Magiſtrates.

5. *Ramekens*, lies 2 Miles E. from *Fluſhing*, is a ſtrong Fort, built by *Mary* Qu. of *Hungary*, when Governeſs of the *Low Countries* for *Charles* V. It ſtands pleaſantly, encompaſs'd with Villages, Meadows, and Fields; and on one Side has a Creek, which is a ſafe Harbour for Ships. 'Twas one of the Cautionary Towns given to Qu. *Elizabeth*. *Weſt-Cappel* lies on the W. Coaſt of the Iſland, was formerly a Place of great Trade, had a commodious Harbour, and is famous for the Maritime Laws us'd in the 7 Provinces, called by its Name; but was ruin'd by Inundations, and now reduc'd to a Village. Two Leagues and a half W. from *Middleburg* ſtands *Domburg*, formerly a rich and populous Town, with large Privileges, and abundance of *Roman* Antiquities, with Trunks of Trees, have been dug up in the Neighbourhood. The Palace of the Abbots of *Middleburg*, called *Weſthove*, is pleaſantly ſituated among Woods near this Place, which is now alſo reduced to a Village, being ruin'd by Inundations; yet both it and *Weſt-Cappel* enjoy their former Privileges, and are govern'd by their own Magiſtrates. At *Weſt Souburg*, between *Fluſhing* and *Weſt-Cappel*, there's a large ancient Palace where *Charles* V. reſided in 1555, when hinder'd by contrary Winds from ſailing to *Spain*.

South-Beveland lies on the E. of *Walcheren*, extended towards *Brabant* in *Flanders*. 'Twas formerly 20 *Dutch* Leagues in Compaſs; but ſo much diminiſhed by Inundations, that 'tis now but 7 Miles long, and 7 broad. In 1532, the Town and moſt of the Lordſhip of *Borſales* were ſwallowed up, and *Rommerſwael* divided from the reſt, and made an Iſland by it ſelf. *Rommerſwael* was a very ancient Town, of good Note, but ruin'd by 6 Inundations and Fire. The only Place of Note in *South-Beveland* is *Ter-Goes*, ſuppoſed to take its Name from a Goſe, which is its Arms. It had large Privileges from *William* of *Bavaria* in 1350, and was wall'd in 1417. It ſuffer'd much by Inundations in 1539, but was reſtor'd by the Care of the Magiſtrates, and the Favour of *Charles* V. 'Twas beſieged by the *Dutch* in the D. of *Alva*'s Time, but relieved by 3000 of his Men, who waded through the drown'd.

drown'd Part of the Island with Ammunition and Provision in Sacks, which oblig'd the *Dutch* to raise the Siege. They afterwards took it, and fortified it in 1585. Since which, it has increas'd in Riches and People, tho' not very large. It has 6 Gates, is neatly built, 3 Market-Places, a Grammar-School, and 3 Hospitals, all fine Structures. The chief Church was burnt down in *1618*, but is since rebuilt very stately. It has a Channel to the Sea, by which small Vessels come up to the Town. The Lordship of *Borsales* belongs to it, and they appoint Magistrates to govern it. This City chuses their own Magistrates, who are a Prætor, 2 Consuls, and 9 Eschevins. There are 31 Villages in this Island, most of which have high Towers, that are Sea-Marks for Sailors; and there are many Gentlemen's Seats here, most of which are moated about.

Wolfardike lies on the N. of *South-Beveland*, is about 6 Miles long, and 1 broad, has some Villages and good Pastures. Part of it was swallowed up by Inundations, but has since been recover'd. The Streams about it are so violent, that they seem to contend which shall first devour it.

N. from this lies *North-Beveland*, formerly so pleasant a Country, that 'twas reckoned the Garden of *Zealand*; but in 1532, 'twas overwhelm'd; and *Corrgheene*, a Town of Note, with several Villages, were destroy'd. Great Part of the Island has since been recover'd, and particularly 2000 Acres not many Years ago near the Village of *Catzkoeke*.

The Islands beyond the East-Scheld *are*,

1. *Schowen*, called in Latin *Schaldia*, from the River *Scheld*. 'Tis the largest of this Division, is 15 Miles long, and 5 or 6 broad. 'Twas formerly much larger, and divided only by a narrow Channel from *North-Beveland*, but was diminished by Inundations. It abounds with populous Villages, Gentlemen's Seats, rich Farms, and Inclosures.

The TOWNS *are*,

1. *Zirickzee*, reckon'd the oldest in *Zealand*, and to have been founded by one *Zieringus* about 849. It lies on the S. Side of the Island, 10 Miles S.E. from *Middleburg*. It has a good Trade in Salt and *Madder*, the latter abounding more here than in the other Islands. Their Harbour has suffer'd of late by Sands. 'Tis a large Town, with several good Buildings. Their Church, called the *Munster*, dedicated to St. *Levinus*, one of their Apostles, is a very beautiful Structure, and the best in the Province, but not so splendid as formerly, having suffered much by Lightning in *1466*. The Walls of the Town are old, and the Ditches but ordinary; yet 'tis so strong by Situation, and the Conveniency of laying the adjacent Grounds under Water, that 'tis not easy to be attack'd. It held out 8 Months against the *Spaniards* in 1575, when it surrender'd on Terms, which occasion'd a Mutiny in the *Spanish* Army, who expected the Plunder of the Town. 'Tis govern'd by 2 Consuls, 12 Eschevins, and a Council of 24, who have the Jurisdiction of the whole Island. 'Tis noted for the Birth of *Sufius* the Antiquary, and the Physicians *Lemnius* the Father and Son, *&c.*

2. *Brewershaven*, on the N. Side of the Island, 5 Miles from *Zirickzee*. It had its Name from their great Trade in Beer brought from *Holland*. 'Twas walled during the Civil Wars, has the Privileges of a City, but is much decreas'd, and subsists now chiefly by Husbandry and Fishing. It belong'd formerly to the Counts of *Holland*; but was annex'd by *Philip* II. in 1558 to the Province of *Zealand*.

3. *Bommenee*, about 2 Miles E. from *Brewershaven*. 'Twas fortified in the first War with *Spain*, is impregnable by Land, and may be easily relieved by Sea.

The 2d Island is *Duweland*, divided from *Schowen* by a small Channel on the E. Side, is about 7 Miles long, and 4 broad. It has its Name from the Multitude of Doves bred there. Most of it belongs to the Town of *Zirickzee*, who have divided it into several Jurisdictions. 'Tis noted for a bold Attempt of the *Spaniards* in wading hither from *Philipsland* during the War, as is mentioned by *Strada* and *Bentivoglio*. 'Tis since joined to the Isle of *Schowen* by a Bank, has no Place of Note in it, but only some Villages.

The

Digitized by Google

The 3d Island is *Tolen*. Its chief Town has the same Name, and lies on the E. Side of the Island, which is about 6 Miles long, and 5 broad, separated from *South-Beveland* by a small Channel on the S. and by a lesser from *Dutch Brabant*. 'Tis a pleasant and fruitful Place. The Town and Island had its Name from a Custom-house erected here by the Counts of *Zealand*. 'Tis very well fortified, and the whole Island is so strong, that 'tis capable to resist a great Army. It has been augmented by the Addition of a large Tract of Ground belonging to the Family of *Orange*, called St. *Martin*'s Dike. The Town is govern'd by 2 Consuls, 8 Eschevins, a Bailiff, Syndic, and Secretary.

The 4th Island is that called *Oresand* or *Moersand*, betwixt *Schowen* and *North Beveland*, but much nearer the last. 'Tis of small Extent, and has no Place of Note, but only Villages.

The Arms of the Province of *Zealand* are, *Or*, a *Lion Gules*, rising out of a Sea *Wavee*, *Argent* and *Azure*.

The Province of Utrecht.

HAS the *Zuyder-Sea* on the N. Part of *Guelderland* and *Holland* on the S. Part of *Holland* on the W. and Part of *Guelderland* on the E. 'Tis in Length from S. E. to N. W. about 30 Miles, and from S. W. to N. E. the greatest Breadth about 25. The Ground is higher, much pleasanter, and fitter for Husbandry, than *Holland*, and the Air much better. It abounds with Gardens and Orchards, except about *Arumersfort*, on the Borders of *Guelderland*, where 'tis barren and heathy. The Inhabitants appear by History to have been formerly of a very martial Disposition; but lost much of their Credit that Way by their easy Submission to the *French* in 1672, which some ascribe to Treachery, and others to the Decay of their Military Genius by a long Peace. But however that be, there was a great Alteration made in the Government of that Province in 1674, as a sort of Punishment, by which the Stadtholder had a much greater Power given him by the Provincial States in the Government of that Country than in the rest. They are said to have been converted to Christianity by the *English*, and to have been subject to Bishops of their own for 900 Years. As to their Dispositions, some reckon them to come nearer the *Germans* than the rest of the *Dutch*, and not to be so much inclin'd to Trade as the Maritime Provinces. The common People are courteous and hospitable, which is owing in part to the great Number of Gentry who have been invited to live among them by the Wholesomeness of their Air.

The Province is divided into 4 Districts, under so many Marshals, *viz.* the Upper and Lower Diocese, *Emeland*, and the Land of *Montfort*.

The chief TOWNS *are*,

1. *Utrecht*, formerly called *Antonina*, and therefore, as well as from *Roman* Coins and other Monuments of Antiquity found about it, supposed to have been a *Roman* Colony; but *Junius*, *Bleau*, and others, are not agreed whether it was so called from *Antonius* a *Roman* Senator, who is said to have fled from *Nero*, and settled here; from *Marcus Antonius*, *Cæsar*'s Legat in *Gaul*; or from *Antoninus Pius*, who is said to have rebuilt it. *Cellarius* says, the *Trajectum* in *Antonin*'s *Itinerary* appears by its Situation to be *Utrecht*, which had its Name from a Passage there over the *Rhine*; and that in *Charlemagne*'s Time, the Epithet *Vetus* was added; and hence the common *Dutch* Word *Oudt* or *Alt* being join'd to *Trecht*, form'd the present Name; which is more probable than *Junius*'s Conjecture, that it was form'd by the ignorant Vulgar from the Words, *V. TRIC. LEG. STAT.* as being the Station of the 35th Legion. 'Tis said to have been taken from the *Wilts* by *Dagobert*, Son to *Clotharius* of *France*, by whom 'twas enlarged and fortified. He is also said to have conferr'd it upon St. *Willebrod*, an *Englishman*, its first Bishop, who, *Bede* says, died in 636, and was succeeded by St. *Boniface*; after whose Martyrdom by the *Normans*, the See was translated to *Cologne*; but restor'd by *Pepin* and *Charlemagne*, and the Diocese extended to most Part of the old *Batavia*, which made the Bishop one of the most powerful in *Christendom*, and enabled his Successors to make War with the Counts of *Holland*, as we have heard before. It continued to be a considerable Principality till the

the Time of *Charles* V. to whom 'twas resign'd by their Bishop *Henry* of *Bavaria*. This City lies on the Channel of the old *Rhine*, 19 Miles S. E. from *Amsterdam*, 25 from *Leyden*, and 19 N. E. from *Rotterdam*, in Long. 23. 47. Lat. 52. 7. 'Tis a fair, large, populous City, the Houses of Brick, and many of 'em stately; but the Streets not kept so neat as those of the Towns in *Holland*. They have curious and neat Cellars, and their Churches are magnificent. The chief is that of St. *Martin*, formerly the Cathedral, where *Charles* V. in 1536 held a solemn Meeting of the Knights of the *Golden Fleece*. 'Twas formerly mean, but splendidly rebuilt by Bishop *Adelbold* in 1023. 'Tis usually called the *Dome*, and has a Tower with 460 Steps, from whence there was a fine Prospect of the adjacent Country; but a great Part of the Church was demolished by a great Tempest in 1674. Here lies buried the Baron *Van Gaunt*, with a noble Monument: The Inscription shews, that he commanded when the *Dutch* Fleet came up to *Chatham*. The Church of St. *Mary*, commonly call'd the *English* Church, was built, as they say, by the Emperor *Henry* IV. to attone for his destroying one of that Name at *Milan*. When the Workmen were about it, they found a Vorago in the Place where they were to build one of the Pillars, but knew not how to secure the Foundation upon such a Quagmire. An ignorant Fellow called *Fuso* undertook it, but ask'd an exorbitant Rate; which the Bishop not being willing to grant, he suborn'd the Man's own Son to pump out the Secret, which was, to cover the Quag with Bulls-Hides. Upon this, *Fuso* being disappointed of his Reward, stabb'd the Bishop, according to the Story. There's the following Inscription upon the Pillar, asserting it to be so founded:

Accipe Posteritas, quod post tua Secula narres,
Taurinis cutibus fundo solidata columna est.

And over it there are ancient and odd Characters, which Dr. *Northleigh* supposes to be the Date of the Year. But he observes very justly, that it was *Frederick Barbarossa* who sack'd *Milan* 100 Years after *Henry* IV. and was commanded by the Pope to build this Church: So that it must either be a Legend, or a gross Mistake as to the Founder; but the latter is more probable, for some ascribe it to *Frederick*. This Church has a small Library, with some old Books and MSS. and among others, a Bible of the old Translation in 6 Volumes, finely writ in an ancient Character, besides some Pagan Idols, and other Curiosities, as the Horns of Sea-Unicorns, and other Things given them by Emperors. Dr. *Brown* says, the great Church has 3 Steeples, one above another, from whence they have a Prospect of the adjacent Country, with 51 wall'd Towns, all within a Day's Journey of the Place. He also mentions the *English* Church and the Pillar above-mention'd, said to be founded in 1099, which can neither agree with the History of *Henry* IV. nor *Frederick* I. Before the Reformation, there were several large Monasteries and Religious Houses in and about this City, that are now turn'd to other Uses. The Streams which run through several of the Streets contribute much to the Beauty of the Town; and the Suburbs, which are large and convenient, and equal to the Number of its Gates, have likewise Channels running thro' them. The two principal Channels which run through the Length of the City are the *Vaert* and the *New Gracht*. The Buildings on each Side the latter are very splendid, and there are 35 arch'd Bridges of Brick over both. The City is surrounded with an Earthen Wall and a deep Ditch, with several Bulwarks; and Mr. *Ray* says, in his Time 'twas encompassed with a thick high Wall and a deep Trench. They were said to be out of Repair when the *French* came before it; but that can be no Apology for their Surrender, since they would not admit them to be repaired for fear of spoiling their Gardens and Walks; nor would they receive above two Regiments of the Troops offer'd them by the Prince of *Orange*: Which very much confirms the Suspicion, that they had a private Understanding with the *French* King, who made it his Head Quarter for near a Year and an half; but they had no other Reward for their Treachery, than being forced to pay him 2268000 Gilders during that Time. The *French* made it the Storehouse of the Plunder they took from the rest of the Provinces, which they were 14 Days a carrying off

Digitized by Google

off when they left the Town in 1673. They had prepared Materials to build a Citadel, of which the D. of *Luxemburg* laid the firſt Stone, with the *French* King's Arms upon it. A publick School was erected here by one of their Biſhops in 1459; and in 1634, the Provincial States turn'd it into an Univerſity, which has ſince flouriſh'd very much; tho' it has not the full Privileges of other Univerſities, being wholly ſubject to the Magiſtrates of the City. It has produc'd ſeveral great Men, and been noted for eminent Profeſſors in all Faculties. Their Library has more Printed Books, but fewer MSS. than that of *Leyden*. The Market-place or Piazza is very fair, and the Center of ſeveral long Streets: The Painters Hall abounds with fine Pieces; and the Pall-mall without the Town, with 5 Rows of tall Trees on each Side, is extraordinary pleaſant. There are likewiſe fine Walks about the old Walls, and a Phyſick Garden, but of no great Note. Pope *Adrian* VI. was born here, whoſe Epitaph, order'd by himſelf, beſpeaks his Humility; as did his Refuſal to change his Name, tho born of mean Parentage. His Epitaph is thus:

Adriano Sextus hic ſitus eſt, qui nihil ſibi infelicius in vita duxit, quam quod imperaret.
i. e.
Adrian VI. *lies here, who reckoned it his greateſt Misfortune, that he ſhould ever have been called to Government.*

But that which perpetuates its Fame, is the Union of the 7 Provinces, the Foundation of which was laid here. Their Government is manag'd by 2 Scouts and 4 Burgomaſters, 2 of whom are choſen Annually. They have likewiſe a Council of 40 Men to aſſiſt them.

2. *Amersford*, about 12 Miles N. E. from *Utrecht*, upon the River *Eems*, which runs by its Walls, and falls into the *Zuyder Sea*. 'Tis ſuppoſed to take its Name from a Ford on this ſmall River. 'Tis an ancient Town, and was the uſual Retreat of the Biſhops of *Utrecht* when drove out by the Citizens; and the Inhabitants of this Place frequently help'd to reſtore them. 'Twas formerly but ſmall, as appears by the Remains of its ancient Fortifications. 'Tis now much larger, and will take near an Hour to walk round it. 'Tis of no great Strength, being commanded by a neighbouring Hill. The Buildings, eſpecially thoſe of the old Town, are very neat. They have two Churches, one of which is a large and ſtately Fabrick. Their Hoſpitals are equal to thoſe of the greater Cities; and they have a publick School, where ſeveral eminent Perſons have had their Education. It ſuffered much formerly by the *Gueldrians*, who took it in 1543. 'Twas alſo taken by the *Spaniards* in 1629, but afterwards quitted by them, and better fortified by the States. Their Government reſembles that of *Utrecht*. They had formerly a great Trade in brewing Beer, but now ſubſiſt chiefly by feeding Cattle and Husbandry, there being good Arable and Paſture Ground on the E. and S. but on the W. and N. there's nothing but Hills, Woods, and barren Heaths.

3. *Wickt-te-Duurſtede*, the famous *Batavodurum* of the Ancients, lies 11 Miles S. E. from *Utrecht*, where the middle Branch of the *Rhine* leaves its ancient Channel, and runs into the *Lech*. 'Tis mention'd by *Tacitus* in his 5th Book, where he ſays, That a Body of *Germans* endeavour'd to break down the Bridge there. 'Twas afterwards deſtroyed by the *Normans*, but rebuilt, becauſe of the Conveniency of its Situation, and continues to be a neat and pretty rich Town. 'Twas formerly uſed as a Place of Receſs by the Biſhops of *Utrecht*.

4. *Rhonen*, a wall'd Town upon the *Rhine*, 6 Miles further E. an ancient Place, ſuppoſed to be the *Grinnes* of *Tacitus*. In the Fields, betwixt this Town and *Utrecht* are dug moſt of the Turfs that ſerve the neighbouring Country for Fuel.

5 *Montfort*, lies near the *Iſſel*, 6 Miles S W. from *Utrecht*. 'Tis a neat Town, well fortified, and was built by *Godfrey* Biſhop of *Utrecht* againſt the Incurſions of the *Hollanders*. 'Tis the Capital of a ſmall Territory, and noted for the Birth of *Lambertus Hortenſius*, a Writer of good Fame. M. *de Fer* ſays, the whole Province contains 5 Cities, 65 Villages, and 64 Gentlemen's Seats.

Digitized by Google

The Province of Guelderland, *and County of* Zutphen.

Dutch Guelderland, from *Gennep* on the *Maes* to *Campen* on the *Zuyder-Sea*, is 48 Miles from N. to S. and from the Frontiers of *Holland* to those of the Bishoprick of *Munster*, including the County of *Zutphen*, 'tis above 50. Some derive the Name from the Castle of *Guelder*, built by its first Lord *Wichardus a Ponte*; and others from the City *Geldubo*, mentioned in these Parts by *Tacitus*; but this cannot be the present *Guelder*, because that was in the Country of the *Ubii*, near *Nuys* on the *Rhine*. The ancient Inhabitants are supposed to have been the *Menapii* and *Batavi*. This Dutchy and the County of *Zutphen* have been for several Ages reckon'd one Principality, and gone by the common Name of *Guelder*. It has the *Zuyder-Sea* and Part of *Over-Issel* on the N. *Dutch Brabant* and Part of *Cleve* on the S. *Over-Issel* and Part of the Bishoprick of *Munster* on the E. *Utrecht* and Part of *Holland* on the W.

The Air is much better than that of *Holland* and the Maritime Provinces, because 'tis of a much higher Situation. The Soil is fruitful in Corn and Pasturage; and great Droves of Cattle are Annually brought from *Denmark* and *Friesland* to be fatten'd here. 'Tis not alike fruitful in all Places; for a great Part of the *Velaw* lies upon a Gravel, and is full of Heaths, Woods, and barren Hills. *Zutphen* has good Pasturage, but not much Corn, because of its low and mooriſh Situation. The Inhabitants have in all Ages been valued for their Courage above most of their Neighbours, occasioned by the continual Wars of their ancient Dukes, and the Barrenness of a great Part of their Country, which made them chiefly apply themselves to Arms. Their Cavalry was esteemed all over *Europe*; and 'tis observ'd of *Charles* V. that in order to abate their Military Genius, and secure the Possession of this Country to his Family, he excluded the *Guelderians* out of his Armies. The Commons are reckon'd courteous and industrious, and much to resemble the *Germans*. *Cominginus* says, they are more unanimous in Matters of Religion than their Neighbours, and more successful in Arms than Arts.

Their Ancient GOVERNMENT.

IN the Ages succeeding to *Charles the Great*, Authors say, they were under an Hereditary Governor, called by the Name of Advocate, Guardian, or Tutor, who was succeeded by Earls, and then by Dukes.

The first Earl mentioned is *Otho* of *Nassau*, who was invested by the Emperor *Henry* IV. in 1079, died in 1107, and was succeeded by his Son *Gerard*, who died in 1131, and was succeeded by his Son *Henry*, who marrying a Daughter of *Brabant*, had the *Velaw* for her Dowry, and died in 1162. He was succeeded by his Son *Gerard*, who died without Issue in 1180. He was succeeded by his Brother *Otho* II. who died in 1202, and succeeded by his Son *Gerard* III. who died in 1271, and was succeeded by his Brother *Reinold the Warlike*, who was imprison'd by his own Son, and died in 1325. He was succeeded by his Son *Reinold* II. who was made the first D. of *Guelder* by the Emperor *Lewis*. He was succeeded by his Son *Reinold* III. who died without Issue in 1371. He was succeeded by *William* of *Juliers*, Grandson to *Reinold* II. who died without Issue in 1402. He was succeeded by his Brother *Reinold* IV. who died without Issue in 1423. He was succeeded by *Arnold* of *Egmond*, his Nephew by his Sister, who was imprison'd by his Son *Adolph*, and rescued by *Charles the Warlike* of *Burgundy*, who would have reconciled his Son to him upon very good Terms; which *Adolph* barbarously refus'd, and said, He would rather be thrown into a Well with his Father upon him, alledging that he was unreasonable, who had been 44 Years D. of *Guelder*, not to let him have the Government now. *Adolph* being after this slain in the War, *Arnold* resign'd the Government, with the Emperor's Consent, in 1473, to *Charles* of *Burgundy*; who being kill'd before *Nancy* in 1476, was succeeded by his Daughter *Mary*; but the *Guelderians* revolted, and sent for *Katharine*, *Arnold's* Daughter, to whom they submitted during the Nonage of *Charles*, Son to *Adolph*, whom they solemnly recognizi'd. He died without Issue in 1539, and the

Digitized by Google

the Succeſſion was diſputed by *William* of *Cleve* as next Heir; but *Charles* V. came with an Army into the Country, and obliged him to reſign, thô he had been publickly inveſted by the States, and had a fair Title. To *Charles* V. ſucceeded his Son *Philip* II. of *Spain*, from whom *Guelderland* revolted with the other Provinces in 1580.

The Arms of this Province are Quarterly; 1. *Azure*, a *Lion* Or, crown'd *Gules*, for the Dukedom of *Guelder*. 2. *Azure*, a *Lion Gules*, for the Earldom of *Zuiphen*.

The States of this Province did formerly conſiſt of the Nobles, and the Knights of the Province, the Governors of the Country Diſtricts, and the Deputies of the Cities; but the 4 chief Cities of *Nimeguen*, *Ruremond*, *Zutphen*, and *Arnheim*, were, according to *de Laet*, the main Supporters of the publick Liberty againſt the Incroachments of their Princes; between whom and them 'twas agreed, That when any Subject was wrong'd by his Prince, he ſhould complain to the Magiſtrates of the chief City of his Quarter, who were to demand a Redreſs from the Prince; which if not granted in two Months, the City was to ſeize all the Revenues of the Prince in that Quarter; and if he continued obſtinate, the other Cities were to join with them. M. *de Fer* ſays, the whole Province, including *Spaniſh Guelderland*, contains 5 Counties, 16 Cities, 230 Villages, and 5 Fortreſſes.

The Quarter of Nimeguen.

THis City is, by *Adrianus Junius*, reckoned to be the *Batavorum Oppidum* mentioned by *Tacitus*, which was burnt by *Civilis* when he retir'd into the *Batavorum Inſula*, now called the *Betuwe*, juſt over againſt it, after he was defeated by the *Romans*; but *Cluverius* rather thinks it was that now called *Batenburg*, thô the other be more probable. This City and its Territories having afterwards thrown off the *Roman* Yoke, maintain'd its ancient League with the *Gauls*, or rather *France*, and was for a long Time ſubject, for Protection at leaſt, to the Kings of *Auſtraſia* or the Emperors.

Smetius, in his *Antiquitates Neomagenſes*; printed at *Nimeguen* in 1678, is of Opinion, that this City was the *Batavorum Oppidum* mentioned by the *Romans*; which ſeems to be very probable, from the vaſt Number of *Roman* Antiquities found in and about that City, of which he and his Father made the nobleſt Collection that is perhaps to be found in any private Hand. They conſiſt chiefly of Rings, Gems, Keys, Writing Inſtruments, Bells, Buckles, Lamps, Altars, Marbles, Meaſures, Weights, Statues, Seals, Pitchers and other Veſſels, 11000 Coins Idols, Inſcriptions, *&c.* For which we refer the Curious to his Book, where ſuch as love Antiquities will meet with grateful Entertainment, his learned Explications tending very much to illuſtrate the *Roman* Hiſtory in that and other Parts of the World, and eſpecially of their Emperors. Several of thoſe Inſcriptions upon Stones, *&c.* are fix'd on the Wall of their Town-Houſe; but ſince very few of 'em relate to the Antiquity of this Place, we ſhall not inſiſt upon them.

Charles the Great repair'd the Caſtle, which was built here by the ancient *Batavi*, where he and ſucceeding Emperors frequently reſided, and held Conventions of the States. *Aſchafnaburgenſis*, in the Year 1046, calls it a Princely Palace, of incomparable Workmanſhip. Some pretend that this Caſtle was firſt built by *Julius Cæſar*, and 'twas particularly aſſerted in an Inſcription upon Marble fix'd to the Wall of it, taking Notice of its being repaired by the Emperor *Frederick Barbaroſſa* in 1155; but this is controverted by the Learned, who alſo reject the Story of the Town's being firſt built by *Bato*, who is ſaid to have brought the *Catti* into this Country: But *Cluverius* owns, that 'tis mentioned by *Antonin* and the *Itinerary* Table as a famous City in their Time. It had the ſame Privileges allow'd it by *Frederick* II and *Henry* VII. that were granted to *Aix la Chapelle*, and other Cities of the Empire; and 'tis noted for the Birth of the Emperor *Henry*, Son to *Frederick Barbaroſſa*. They had a Right to determine all Cauſes without Appeal, to the Royalties within their Territory, and were not oblig'd to march out of the City but under their Conſul, and that no further than they might be able to return at Night. They were exempted from all Taxes throughout

Digitized by Google

the Empire, and to this Day they are exempted from Tolls upon the *Maes*. They have always been tenacious of their Liberty, and were ſo much inrag'd at the K. of *Spain*'s Proclamations for apprehending all Perſons ſuſpected of Hereſy, without any Regard to their Privileges, that in 1566 they demoliſhed all the Statues and Images in their Churches, and eſtabliſh'd the Proteſtant Worſhip there. This City lies on the S. Side of that Branch of the *Rhine* called the *Waal*, about 29 Miles S. E. from *Utrecht*, 10 S. from *Arnheim*, 22 E. from *Boiſleduc*, and 10 N. W. from *Cleve*. 'Tis pleaſantly ſituated on 5 little Hills in Form of a Semicircle, in Long. 24. 30. Lat. 51. 58. has a delicate Proſpect towards *Cleve*, the *Maes*, the *Waal*, the *Rhine* and *Iſſel*. From all which, thoſe that travel by Water, have a very fine View of the City, which is well built of Brick for moſt part, and the Houſes ſlated. It has been much enlarged at ſeveral Times, as appears by its old Walls. It has 5 Gates towards the Land, and as many towards the *Waal*; which, in the Opinion of ſome Learned Men, either deriv'd its Name from the *Gauls*, or gave it to them; the Tranſmutation, according to the Dialect of thoſe Countries, of G. and *W.* being very frequent. Upon a high Hill adjoining to the River, ſtands the Caſtle called *Valckhoff*, which *Blaau* ſays ſhould be *Waalhoff*; *i. e.* a Palace on a *Waal*. 'Tis encompaſſed with high Stone Walls, has 3 large Courts, and 2 Chapels, the largeſt ſupported by 8 Pillars on each Side, and abounding with ancient Inſcriptions; of which *Smetius* gives an Account, and among other Things of *Roman* Urns, with black *Calculi* found in 'em, denoting the Aſhes to be thoſe of Malefactors; and of Leaden Medals found there, which are very rare. There's as pleaſant a Proſpect from the middle Tower of this Caſtle as is to be ſeen almoſt any where in *Europe*. Here's an Arch of a prodigious Bigneſs, with the Ruins of other Arches and Pillars, which amaze the curious Beholders. About 200 Years ago, the Fortifications were enlarged ſo as to take in both the Suburbs and Caſtle. The Remainders of the old Gates ſeem to reſemble Triumphal Arches: The outer Wall is exceeding high, built with Brick, and guarded with ſtrong Towers: Some of whoſe Walls are 18 Foot thick. The chief of 'em is called the *Crown Tower*, becauſe of the Pinnacles on its Top. Near this Tower there's a deep dry Ditch, with another adjoining full of Water, which was a Harbour for their Veſſels in the Winter; but now they have built a larger on the Bank of the River, well ſecur'd with Fortifications. In the higher Part of the City, there are 3 large Ponds fed with hidden Springs; and through the whole, there are many deep Wells, which are obſerv'd to riſe and fall as does the *Maes*, thô 6 Miles diſtant from it; whereas the *Waal* runs cloſe by it, but in a Valley, towards which the Deſcent is conſiderable. Upon the Gate to the N. W. of the Caſtle, there are theſe Inſcriptions; *Pes Imperii, Hucuſque jus Stauriæ. Melior eſt Bellicoſa Libertas quam Servitus Pacifica*; *i. e.* "This is the Border of the "Empire. So far reaches the Right of *Stau*"*riæ*. 'Tis better to have Liberty with "War, than Slavery with Peace." The Reaſon of 'em is ſuppos'd to be, That this was the Limits of the *Roman* Empire on this Side, and the Impoſt called *Stauria* reached not them, becauſe, as we have heard before, they were exempted from Taxes. In 1608, a Canal for Veſſels was dug betwixt hence and *Arnheim*, croſs the *Betaw*, about 8 Miles long, at the Charge of thoſe two Cities. Before the War with *Spain*, they had many Churches and other Religious Buildings; but now they have only 10, adorn'd with ſtately Towers: The chief is that of St. *Stephen*, a ſumptuous Structure, ſupported by 35 Pillars of extraordinary Workmanſhip, with a magnificent Tower, beat down in the War, but ſince rebuilt. Their Archives are kept in a Part of this Church, inclos'd with Iron Grates; and in the Quire there's the Tomb of *Katharine* of *Bourbon*, Wife to *Adolphus* Duke of *Guelder*, with her Image in Braſs, and 16 Coats of Arms expreſſing her Lineage. Near this Church ſtands the publick School, where their Youth are inſtructed in the Languages and Liberal Arts. 'Tis a Princely Structure, has the Images of the Apoſtles, ſeveral Doctors of the Church, and a noble Repreſentation of the Laſt Judgment. They have two Hoſpitals for the Education of Orphans, two for old People, two for the Cure of Diſeas'd, one for Lepers, and another

Digitized by Google

ther for Lunaticks. The Town-Houſe is a magnificent Fabrick, with the Statues of ſeveral Emperors their Benefactors. The Seats for their Magiſtrates are beautifully adorn'd, and over the Heads of their Conſuls there hangs a naked Sword, as an Emblem of Juſtice. They have alſo the Sword here with which the Counts of *Egmond* and *Horn* were executed at *Bruſſels* by the D. of *Alva*'s Order. This City was Imperial till 1248, that 'twas given in Fee to *Otho* III. of *Naſſau*, Count of *Guelder*, by the Emperor *William* Count of *Holland*. Their Government is by two Conſuls, who have Maces born before them, a Council of 24, and 12 Eſchevins. The Conſuls are choſen Annually; and after the Expiration of their Office, are made Captains of the City Companies. Their chief Governor was formerly a Burgrave, who dwelt in the Caſtle, and extended his Juriſdiction over the City and Diſtrict. They pay to the Biſhop of *Liege*, for their Exemption from Toll on the *Maes* there, Annually on *Low-Sunday*, a Pair of Buff Gloves, and two Pounds of Pepper.

The Arms of this City are, a *Field Or*, with a *Spread-Eagle Sables*, on his Breaſt, a *Scutcheon Vert*, with a *Lion Or*, and an Imperial Crown, for their Creſt.

The Citizens are addicted to Trade, War, and Learning, and ſeldom infranchiſe Strangers, but ſuch as are like to adorn their Community. They make great Profit by brewing of Beer, and feeding of Cattle. This Town ſurrender'd to the *French* after 6 Days Siege in 1672, when the Garriſon was made Priſoners of War. This ſcandalous Surrender, conſidering the Strength of the Place, was aſcrib'd to the ſame Treachery which brought ſo much of that Country into the Hands of the *French*. They knew the Importance of it ſo well, that they began a Citadel there, employ'd 3000 Men daily on its other Fortifications, and 2000 in caſting up Lines in the Neighbourhood. They made it one of their Storehouſes for Plunder; and when they abandon'd it in 1674, they threw a Ship-load of Arms into the River, and forc'd 82000 Crowns from the City. 'Tis famous for the Treaty held here in 1678 and 1679, when a Peace was concluded betwixt the *French* and the Confederates. 'Twas well nigh ſurpris'd by the *French* in 1702, not without Suſpicion of Treachery; but was ſav'd by the happy Retreat of the Earl of *Athlone* towards it, who oblig'd the *French* to march off with Loſs. 'Twas frequently taken and retaken by the *Dutch* and *Spaniards* in the Beginning of the Civil Wars.

2. *Knodſenburg*, on the other Side the *Waal*, over againſt *Nimeguen*, ſo called, ſays *Bleau*, from a Sedition of the Inhabitants of *Nimeguen*, who appear'd there with knotty Clubs. 'Twas finiſh'd by Prince *Maurice* in 1590, to curb the *Spaniſh* Garriſon of *Nimegun*, tho' Count *Manſfeld* march'd with the *Spaniſh* Army to hinder him, but in vain. The Town was afterwards galled ſo much with the Cannon of this Fort, that the Duke of *Parma* laid Siege to it; but part of his Forces being defeated by Sir *Francis Vere* and Count *Solms*, he ſhamefully rais'd the Siege. Upon which the *Dutch* ſoon after took *Nimeguen*: The Duke pretended to excuſe this, which was one of the moſt inglorious Actions of his Life, by his Orders from K. *Philip* to march into *France* and aſſiſt the Leaguers; but his Stay in thoſe Provinces 5 Months after, diſcover'd the Weakneſs of his Apology.

3. *Battenburg*, Lat. *Arx Batavorum*, ſuppoſed by *Cluverius* to be that called their *Oppidum*, is now a ſmall Town on the *Maes*, about 10 Miles S. W. from *Nimeguen*.

4 *Mook*, or *Mouch*, higher on the *Maes*, a ſmall Village about 9 Miles S. from *Nimeguen*, famous for the Victory which the *Spaniards* obtain'd over Count *Lodowick*, Brother to *William* Pr. of *Orange*, in 1574, as he was coming to join the Prince, which was a great Diſcouragement to thoſe who had revolted from *Spain*, and endanger'd their total Deſtruction, had not Providence order'd it otherwiſe.

5. *Tolhuys*, about 10 Miles E. from *Nimeguen*, on the other Side the *Waal*, formerly a Cuſtom-Houſe belonging to the D. of *Cleve*. It has a Caſtle, with one great Tower, within Musket ſhot of the River. 'Tis noted for the Paſſage of the *French* Army in 1672, by the Treachery of *Mombas*, formerly mentioned; tho' 'twas not effected without Loſs, the Prince of *Conde*, with ſeveral other great Men, being wounded; and the D. of *Longueville*, with ſeveral others of Quality, kill'd in the Action.

6 Schen-

Digitized by Google

6. *Schenkenſchans*, 2 Miles S. from the *Tolhuys*, upon the Point of the *Betaw*, where the *Rhine* divides it ſelf into two Branches, the greater call'd the *Waal*, and the leſſer retaining the old Name. 'Twas founded by *Martin Schenck* for the *Dutch* in 1588. He had deſerted the Service of *Spain*, becauſe another was preferr'd to him in the Government of *Frieſland*. He did ſo much annoy the Places ſubject to *Spain* from this Fort, that when he was afterwards drown'd in attempting to ſurpriſe *Nimegnen*, the *Spaniards* there made publick Rejoycings for ſeveral Days; and when the Town was ſurrender'd to Prince *Maurice*, he did ſo much Honour to his Memory, that tho' he was born but of mean Parents in that City, he order'd his Corps to be buried in the Sepulchre of the Dukes of *Guelder*. This Place is ſo ſtrong by its Situation, that the D. of *Parma* would never attempt it by Force. 'Twas betray'd to the *Spaniards* in 1635, but ſoon after recover'd by the Pr. of *Orange*, after 8 Months Siege, and ſtrongly fortified. 'Twas afterwards betray'd to the *French* in 1672, but recover'd in 1674. It commands both Branches of the *Rhine*, with the Wind-Mills and Ditches that prevent the *Betuwe* from being overflowed, is fortified with a great Ditch, good Baſtions, and a ſtrong Rampart, on the Side next the Land, and by the *Rhine* and the *Waal* every where elſe; ſo that 'tis reckon'd one of the Keys of the *Netherlands*. It anciently belong'd to the Dukes of *Cleve*, and on that Account the K. of *Pruſſia* has Pretenſions to it.

7. *Tiel*, on the S. Side of the *Waal*, 13 Miles W. from *Nimeguen*, is Capital of its Diſtrict, a ſtrong Town, of a long Figure, with a Marſh on the N. The Streets are narrow and crooked, and the Air unwholſome. 'Twas attacked in vain by *Charles* V. in 1528, but yielded to the *French*, and by them diſmantled in 1672.

8. *Buren*, 5 Miles N. W. from *Tiel*: It has an ancient Caſtle, with a Wall and a deep Ditch, and is the Capital of a Lordſhip, which came to the Family of *Orange* by the Wife of *William* I. Daughter to the Count of *Buren*.

9. *Culenburg*, on the *Lech*, 4 Miles N. W. from *Buren*, Capital of a ſmall County.

10. *Bommel*, 9 Miles S. W. from *Tiel*, a pleaſant Wall'd Town, with broad and regular Streets. 'Tis very ſtrong, with good Curtains, Baſtions, and Towers, a double Wall, and double Ditches. It ſtands low, in a marſhy Ground, which they can overflow from the *Waal* and the *Maes*. 'Twas yielded to the *French* in 1672, who ſpent 14 Days in deſtroying its Fortifications, carried off the Artillery and Ammunition, and oblig'd the Town to pay 36000 Gilders to prevent being burnt. 'Twas afterwards ſtrongly fortified when recover'd by the States. 'Twas firſt walled in and made a City by *Otho* of *Naſſau*, Count of *Guelder*, in 1299. 'Twas ſurpris'd and taken from the *Spaniards* in 1572 by a ſmall Detachment, who were drove out by the Inhabitants, becauſe they broke down the Images in their Churches. 'Twas afterwards taken by the *Dutch*, and twice after attack'd by the *Spaniards* in 1589 and 1599; but they were repulſed both times with great Loſs. The Town chuſes their own Magiſtrates, under whoſe Juriſdiction are many good Villages, and all the Diſtrict called *Bommelward*, which is an Iſland about 12 Miles long, and 4 broad, betwixt the *Waal* and the *Maes*. 'Tis noted for the Birth of *Monringius* the Divine, and other Learned Men.

11. *Fort St Andrew*, 3 Miles S. from *Bommel*, was founded by Cardinal *Andrew* of *Auſtria* near the Point of the Iſle of *Bommel*, to command the *Waal* and the *Maes*, which communicate near it by a Canal. He fortified it with 5 Royal Baſtions, good Curtains, a deep Ditch, a Cover'd way, and many Redoubts; ſo that 'twas reckon'd one of the ſtrongeſt Forts in the Country. Prince *Maurice*, in 1599, took it with 3000 Men, while the *Spaniards* attempted to relieve it with 8000; the Garriſon having mutinied, and agreed to ſurrender for 125000 Florins, in Conſideration of their Arrears. 'Twas ſurrender'd to the *French* in 1672. About a Mile further W. on the Point of the Iſland lies Fort *Voorn*, ſince called Fort *Naſſau*, becauſe founded by Pr. *Maurice*, after the taking of Fort St. *Andrew*. 'Tis ſo ſtrong as to be reckon'd impregnable. 'Twas baſely ſurrender'd to the *French* in 1672.

The

Digitized by Google

The BETUWE.

HAving thus given an Account of the chief Towns and Places of Note in this Country, we think fit to give a brief Deſcription of it ſelf, becauſe 'tis the ancient *Batavia*, and the Seat of the *Batavi*, that make ſuch a Figure in the *Roman* Hiſtory. We have formerly taken Notice from *Tacitus*, that they were part of the *Catti*, who leaving their ancient Country, becauſe of inteſtine Seditions, ſettled firſt here, and afterwards extended their Limits over that Part of the Country betwixt the *Waal* and the *Maes*. 'Tis controverted amongſt Authors, whether they or the Country gave Name to one another? Some think they gave Name to it, becauſe there ſeems to be ſome Footſteps of their Name in the Towns of *Battenberg* and *Battenhauſen* in *Heſſia*, from whence they came. Others think the Country gave Name to them, and that 'twas called *Betawe*, which in the old Language of the Country ſignifies a better Soil, to diſtinguiſh it from the neighbouring *Velawe*, which ſignifies a Soil of a heathy Colour. Their Territories are ſuppoſed to have extended from *Rhinberg* in the Dutchy of *Cleve* to *Catwick* on the Sea, which is thought to have derived its Name from the *Catti*, and is not improbable, ſince *Tacitus* aſſigns them the Ocean for their Boundary on one Side. But the Curious may ſee more of this in *Cluverius's Germania Antiqua*, and *Cellarius's Notitia Orbis Antiqui*. The Country at preſent called the *Betawe* reaches from *Schenkenſchans* on the E. to *Wiricum* on the W. which is 40 Miles in Length; and the greateſt Breadth betwixt *Gravve* on the *Maes*, and *Arnheim* on the *Rhine*, is 17.

The Quarter of Arnheim,

HAS its Name from *Arnheim*, its chief City, which lies on the N. Side of the *Rhine*, about 8 Miles N. from *Nimegun*. Authors agree, that 'tis the *Arenacum* of *Tacitus*. 'Tis the Capital of the *Velawe*, and the Seat of the Supreme Council of *Guelder*. 'Tis very ſtrongly fortified, with a large Ditch fac'd with Free-ſtone, Brick Walls, and Ramparts. It has alſo 5 Gates, ſo very ſtrong, that anciently they ſerv'd as Fortreſſes. That called the *Rhine* Gate was the chief, and has a ſtrong Bulwark near it. 'Twas walled and fortified in 1233. by *Otho* Count of *Guelder*, exempted from Toll through the Dutchy, and had other great Immunities. In 1443. 'twas made one of the Hans-Towns. 'Tis overlook'd by a Hill on the Side of the *Velawe*, from whence there's a pleaſant Proſpect of the City and neighbouring Country. From this Hill there flows a large Current of Water, which turns their Mills, and fills their Ditch. Before their Revolt from the *Spaniards*, there were many Monaſteries and Religious Houſes in and about this City, but moſt of 'em now in Ruins. It ſuffered much by Fire in 1525. The Church of St. *Martin*, called alſo St. *Euſebius*, is a noble Structure, with a ſtately Tower. The Dukes of *Guelder* had a Palace here; but moſt of it was blown up by Accident in 1589. They have an Hoſpital for ancient and poor Citizens nobly endow'd, with two others of leſs Note. In the adjoining Village of *Oſterbeek* was born the Emperor *Henry* III. in 1027. The News of which being carried to the Emperor his Father by the Paſtor of the Place, he rewarded him with the Biſhoprick of *Utrecht*. 'Twas taken from the *Spaniards* by the Count of *Maurs*, who join'd with the *Dutch* in 1585, and was ſurrender'd to the *French* after one Day's Attack in 1672, when they preſently begun to enlarge its Fortifications, and erect a Magazine; but when they left it, they forc'd the City to pay 'em 170000 Gilders. Near the *Rhine* Gate, there's a Bridge of Boats into the *Betawe*. Their Government is by a Judge, who has Juriſdiction over the City, and a great Part of the *Velawe*, and two Burgomaſters, choſen out of their 12 Eſchevins. They have alſo 6 Maſters of Corporations, choſen out of a certain Number preſented to the Conſuls and Eſchevins by their Fraternities; and 48 Jurats, choſen in the ſame Manner to aſſiſt in the Management of Publick Affairs. For their Learned Men, we refer to *Bleau*.

2. *Wageningen*, on the *Rhine*, 10 Miles W. from *Arnheim*. 'Tis ſuppoſed to be the *Vada* of *Tacitus*, that was ſo ſtoutly defended

Digitized by Google

ded by *Jul. Brigantius* againſt his Uncle *Civilis*, the fam'd *Batavian* General. It ſtands on a mooriſh Ground, which adds to its Strength. On one Side, there's a large Heath above 5 Leagues broad; and on the other, good Paſtures, and Arable Land. 'Twas taken by the *French* without Reſiſtance in 1672.

3. *Harderwick*, on the *Zuyder-Sea*, 20 Miles N. from *Arnheim*. 'Twas walled by *Otho* of *Naſſau*, Earl of *Guelder*, and had a Staple of Fiſh, called *Den Aſſlagh*, granted them by D. *Arnold* in 1443. Moſt of it was burnt down in 1503, but ſince rebuilt, much after the Faſhion of *Hamburg* and *Lubeck*, the Porches being large, and the Houſes high. The Church of St. *Mary* exceeds the reſt, being a ſtately Structure, and the Roof and Arches of excellent Workmanſhip. It has an exceeding high Steeple, ſeen at a great Diſtance by Land and Sea. It alſo ſuffered much by the Civil Wars, and moſt of their Religious Houſes are now demoliſhed, or converted to other Uſes. In one of 'em is kept their Univerſity, which was founded in 1648, having been a *Schola Illuſtris* long before. They have a good Library, furniſhed with excellent Books in Latin, Greek, and the Oriental Tongues, with ſeveral Volumes printed in *Chineſe*. The Rector, who is the Supreme Magiſtrate, is Annually choſen by the 6 Curators. In the neighbouring Woods, they have ſuch Plenty of Blue-Berries in the Seaſon, which continues but 6 Weeks, that the very Freight of what they ſell to *Amſterdam*, where they are much eſteem'd as a ſecond Courſe, amounts to 400 Crowns. This City was taken by the *French* in 1672. They diſmantled and burnt moſt of it in 1673, and demanded 12000 Gilders to ſave the reſt: Since which, it has not recover'd its former State. Among other Learned Men, *Gerardus Voſſius*, the famous Lawyer, was born here. 'Twas he and *Albertus Leoninus* who are ſaid to have form'd the Model of the preſent Commonwealth of the United Provinces. The *Zuyder-Sea* has made great Incroachments on the S. Side of the Town, ſwallow'd up ſeveral Meadows, with a Church and Village, which obliges them to ſecure the City on that Side with Dikes and Fences. A little from hence lies the ſmall Iſland of *Urk*, ſuppoſed to have been the Seat of the ancient *Urii*. It has been much diminiſhed of late by Inundations, which is another Proof of Sir *William Temple*'s Aſſertion, That the *Zuyder-Sea* is much larger than what it was in former Ages. This City was formerly one of the Hans-Towns.

4. *Elburg*, lies on the S. Sea, about 10 Miles N. E. from *Harderwick*. 'Tis an ancient Town, and was walled by Count *William*, Son to *Reinold* III. about 1400, and was alſo one of the Hans-Town. 'Tis of a ſquare Figure, has 3 Gates, and a ſmall River runs through it, with 5 Stone Bridges over it, on one of which they keep their Fiſh-Market.

Theſe are the Towns of the *Velawe*, which is 34 Miles long, and near 30 where broadeſt. 'Twas firſt ſeparated from *Germany* by *Druſus*'s Ditch. It formerly belong'd to the Dutchy of *Brabant*, but came to the Duke of *Guelder* by Marriage. Some of the Country is barren; in other Places there are large Woods of Oaks and Beech. There are many Gentlemen's Seats and good Manors in it; and the whole is divided into ſeveral Diſtricts, which have their particular Courts of Judicature, from which there lies an Appeal to a Place called *Engelander Holt*, which lies 2 *German* Leagues N. E. from *Arnhtim*. In this Country lies the Palaces of *Loo* and *Dieren*, belonging to the Family of *Orange*. The firſt lies 17 Miles N. of *Arnheim*, on a riſing Ground, in the middle of a large Plain, where there's good Hunting. 'Tis a noble Structure of modern Architecture, with fine Gardens, ſhady Walks and Grotto's, with admirable Fountains, eſpecially one called the Baſon of *Venus*. It has alſo two great Caſcades, where the Water falls ſo eaſily from one Baſon into the other, that the whole reſembles a broad Mirror. *Dieren* lies near a Village of the ſame Name, about 10 Miles N. E. from *Arnheim*, is much inferior to *Loo*, but a noble Houſe, with pleaſant Avenues, and conveniently ſeated for Hunting.

The County of Zutphen,

HAS *Gualderland*, properly ſo called, on the W. the Biſhoprick of *Munſter* on the E. *Over-Iſſel* on the N. and the Dutchy of

of *Cleve* on the S. is about 24 Miles from N. to S. and 28 from E. to W.

This County came to *Otho* Count of *Guelder*, who married the Heireſs. Its Name is derived from its lying on the South Fens, ſo called with reſpect to the Situation of the *Frizons*, who formerly inhabited this Country.

The chief TOWNS *are*,

1. *Zutphen*, a rich and populous City; and ſince the Revolt from *Spain*, made one of the ſtrongeſt in the 7 Provinces. It lies on the River *Iſſel*, 15 Miles N. E. from *Arnheim*. 'Tis an ancient City, tho' of nothing ſo long ſtanding as the others we have already mentioned in *Gutlderland*. 'Tis divided by the River *Iſſel* into Old and New. The Buildings are fair and neat. Many People of Quality live in this City. The chief Church is that dedicated to St. *Peter* and St. *Walburg*. Some ſay, 'twas founded by Count *Otho* III. of *Naſſau*; but *Bleau* reckons it much older. 'Tis a ſumptuous Building, with an exceeding high Steeple, which was twice burnt by Lightning, *viz.* in 1446, and 1600; but rebuilt with more Splendor in 1635. It had a College of Canons, of which the Earls of *Guelder* were formerly Provoſts. They have a large Font of Braſs of curious Workmanſhip, and in the E. Side of the Church a good publick Library. 'Tis noted alſo for the Monument of Count *Otho* III. and his Lady. There's the Ruin of a Palace near the Fiſhers-Gate, formerly the Seat of the Count of *Zutphen*; and near it, a very high Brick Tower, built in the Manner of a four-corner'd Pyramid, which is a great Ornament to the City, and affords a pleaſant Proſpect over the neighbouring Country. Near St. *Peter*'s Church, there's a large and magnificent Structure, with 3 Fronts; in one Part of which, the Provincial States hold their Aſſemblies. The Counts of *Bronkhorſt* have alſo a Palace here. There are two Bridges over the River, which join the Old and the New Town. The Air is healthful, and the Citizens courteous, being poliſh'd by the Numbers of Gentlemen who live here. They had formerly many Monaſteries, now turn'd into Hoſpitals for Aged, Sick, Orphans, and Strangers. Thoſe without the Walls are demoliſhed. The neighbouring Country abounds with Paſture and Arable Lands. 'Twas ſack'd during the firſt War with *Spain* by the D. of *Alva*'s Army, and the Inhabitants cruelly uſed. 'Twas afterwards retaken by the *Dutch* thus: They dreſs'd a Number of Soldiers like Women going to Market, with Arms under their Clothes, who coming early in the Morning, ſeiz'd the Gate as ſoon as 'twas open'd; and being follow'd by ſome Hundreds of Men from an Ambuſh, they made themſelves Maſters of the Town. The great Sir *Philip Sidney*, who ſerv'd under Sir *Francis Vere*, died of a Wound he received in this Siege. 'Twas baſely ſurrender'd to the *French* in 1672, and the Garriſon made Priſoners of War, tho' 'twas then fortified with 9 Baſtions, 4 Half-Moons, 2 Horn-Works, 2 broad Ditches, treble Ramparts, and ſuch other Works, as 'twas reckon'd impregnable. They abandon'd it again in 1674. Their Government is by Conſuls, and 12 Eſchevins, of whom the two Seniors are call'd Conſuls. The Senators are for Life, except upon Miſdemeanor or Reſignation. They are aſſiſted by a Council of 9, choſen out of the Commons, who have no Vote, but only give their Advice. There lies an Appeal hither from the inferior Cities to this Court, who have a Power of final Deciſion: But in extraordinary Caſes, they are aſſiſted by the Nobles of the City, and the Deputies of the Towns. This City had anciently a Mint, and was one of the Hans-Towns. *Gerard* of *Zutphen*, Maſter to the famous *Thomas a Kempis*, and other Learned Men, were born here.

2. *Doesburg*, 6 Miles S. from *Zutphen*, is by ſome called *Druſiburgum*, and ſuppoſed to have been built by *Druſus*, becauſe it lies near the Place where he cut his Ditch to bring the *Rhine* into the *Iſſel*. By this Ditch, *Tacitus* ſays, *Germanicus* ſail'd into the Lake *Flevus*, as his Father *Druſus* had done before him. This Town was fortified by the States during the War with *Spain*. 'Tis defended on one Side by the *Iſſel*, and on the other by a great Marſh; ſo that 'tis only acceſſible by a Neck of Land. 'Twas ſurrender'd to the *French* in 1672, after a very feint Reſiſtance, and abandon'd by them in 1674, when they diſmantled it.

Digitized by Google

3. *Dotecom*, ſtands on the Old *Iſſel*, about 6 Miles S. E. from *Doesburg*, is a wall'd Town of no great Strength, and ſurrender'd to the Pr. of *Condé* in 1672.

4. *Groll*, 15 Miles S.E. from *Zutphen*, on the River *Slink*, where it falls into the *Berkel*. 'Twas fortified by *Charles* V. becauſe it lies on an important Paſs betwixt *Germany* and the *Netherlands*. 'Twas afterwards made ſtronger by the *Spaniards*; and when taken by Pr. *Maurice* in 1627, is ſaid by *Grotius*, in his Account of this remarkable Siege, to have then 5 Baſtions, join'd by ſtrong Curtains, a Wall under the Baſtions, a broad Ditch, and a Rampart beyond it, ſloaping in ſuch a manner, as the Shot from the Town had direct Paſſage to the Enemy; whereas theirs flew over the Town, without doing it much Hurt. In this Siege Count *William* of *Naſſau*, a young Prince of great Hopes, was ſlain. It had been formerly beſieg'd in vain by Pr. *Maurice* in 1595, but was taken by him in 1597. 'Twas retaken by *Spinola* in 1606, but recover'd by Pr *Maurice*, as we have heard, and ſo well fortified, that 'twas reckon'd one of the ſtrongeſt Towns in the Provinces. It yielded after a ſhort Reſiſtance to the Biſhop of *Munſter* in 1672, but was recover'd afterwards by the States.

5. *Breeſort*, 5 Miles S. from *Groll*. 'Twas fortified about 140 Years ago, and is ſo encompaſſed by Marſhes and Fens, that there's no Acceſs to it but by a narrow Path; and the adjacent Soil is ſo ſpungy and moiſt, that 'tis not eaſy to be drein'd. Prince *Maurice*, when he beſieg'd it in 1597, contriv'd ſwimming Machines, by which he attack'd it. He loſt ſo many Men before it, that the Soldiers, when they took it by Storm, were ſo enrag'd, that the Prince was not able to reſtrain them from the Cruelties and Diſorders that are uſual on ſuch Occaſions; ſo that they plunder'd it, and had a very rich Booty, the People of the adjacent Country having brought thither their beſt Effects.

6. *Lochem*, lies about 8 Miles E. from *Zutphen*, upon the River *Berkel*, is a Place of ſome Strength, and was taken by the Biſhop of *Munſter* in 1672; but he afterwards abandon'd it.

There are ſeveral Baronies, Præfectures, and conſiderable Villages, in this County.

The Province of Over-Iſſel,

IS from S. E. to N. W. 60 Miles long, of an unequal Breadth, but 40 where broadeſt. It has *Groningen* on the N. *Zutphen* and Part of the Biſhoprick of *Munſter* on the S. the *Zuyder-Sea* and the Quarter of *Arnheim* on the W. and *Weſtphalia* on the E. It lies more open to Incurſions from *Germany* than any of the 7 Provinces, and is but ill furniſh'd with the natural Guards of Rivers and Forreſts. The Soil in many Places is barren, being full of Sands, Heaths or Marſhes; but in ſome Parts they have good Corn and Paſturage. 'Tis the worſt inhabited of any of the Provinces, partly on the Account of the Barrenneſs of ſo great a Part of their Soil, and becauſe their Situation is not convenient for Trade. 'Twas the Seat of the ancient *Bructeri*, and after of the *Frizans* and part of the *Saxons*, of whoſe Language, Manners, and Immunities, they ſtill retain more than their Neighbours. The Biſhop of *Utrecht* did formerly ſubdue this Province, and had it confirmed to him by Grants of Emperors; but 'twas reſigned to *Charles* V. by Biſhop *Henry* of *Bavaria*. In ſome Parts of this Province, particularly the County of *Drent*, there are Stones of ſo prodigious a Bulk, which, not being the Product of the Soil, ſtrike the Spectators with Amazement to think how they could be brought hither. Some of 'em lie upon the top of others, with Room for a Man to creep through betwixt them. The Inhabitants have a Tradition, that they were Heathen Altars; and that ſuch miſerable Wretches as were ſacrific'd to their Idols, were forc'd to creep thorough betwixt thoſe Stones, where they were all bedawb'd with Humane Ordure. The Province is divided into 3 Parts, the *Iſſeland* or *Salland*, which lies next the *Iſſel*, *Twente*, and *Drent*.

The chief TOWNS *are*,

1. *Daventer*, on the E. Side of the *Iſſel*, about 6 Miles N. from *Zutphen*, a large, populous, and neat City, whoſe Inhabitants, ſays *Conringius*, are much addicted to Traffick and Learning. 'Tis an ancient City, and

Digitized by Google

and has been well fortified a long time. 'Twas formerly an Imperial and Hans Town, and made a Biſhoprick, Suffragan of *Utrecht*, in 1559; but in 1580, the Biſhoprick was aboliſhed, when the Town, with the reſt of the Province, revolted from *Spain*. 'Twas treacherouſly deliver'd up to them again in 1587 by Sir *William Stanley*, a Papiſt, who was made Governor by the Earl of *Leiceſter*: but recover'd by Pr. *Maurice* in 1591, when he very much added to its Fortifications. It ſtands in a pleaſant Country, abounding with Paſtures and Arable Lands. It has a large Market-Place, with a Guard-Houſe, where ſome of the Citizens continually keep Guard. They have a Cathedral, with two other Churches, and a ſpacious Guildhall of ancient Architecture. They had formerly 5 Monaſteries, with a Church each, 5 Hoſpitals for Strangers, and one for Orphans. They have a Power of Coinage, Weekly Markets, and 5 Annual Fairs. *Eraſmus* had part of his Education in their Free-School, which about 60 Years ago had Profeſſors of Philoſophy, Divinity, Law, and Hebrew, aſſign'd it by the States. It has 6 Gates, ſome of 'em of curious Workmanſhip, eſpecially that called the *Brink Port*, adorn'd with Statues and Inſcriptions, and particularly that of *Charles* V. ſet up in 1544, as a Monument for his defending the Town. The Tower of *Noremberg*, adjoining to the Gate of that Name, is their moſt remarkable Building for Strength and Neatneſs: The Walls are 18 Foot thick, the Fabrick exactly round, the lowermoſt and uppermoſt Part of Stone, and the middle of Brick. 'Twas betray'd to the Biſhop of *Munſter* in 1672, when there were at leaſt 10000 reſolute fighting Men in it; and deliver'd to him at Night without Conſent of the Garriſon or Burgers, by the Treachery of ſome of their Magiſtrates. 'Twas quitted again in 1674 by the Biſhop of *Cologne*, to whoſe Share it fell for 42000 Crowns, to ſave their Fortifications and Guns. *Gerard*, called the *Great*; *Hegius*, *Eraſmus*'s Schoolmaſter; and the Geographer *Jacobus Davantrius*, were born here. Their Government, ſays *Conringius*, is by Conſuls, Eſchevins, and Senators, in all 16; two of whom are Conſuls, choſen every two Months out of the Eſchevins. They are aſſiſted by a Common-Council of 48.

2. *Zwoll*, called anciently *Middelwick*, but now *Zwoll*, becauſe of a ſwelling Diſeaſe, ſays *Bleau*, that formerly infeſted their Cattle. 'Twas made a City in 1230 by the Biſhop of *Utrecht*, for the Service they did him in his War with the County of *Drent*. It lies 15 Miles N. from *Deventer*, upon a ſmall Stream from the *Vecht*; which mixing with thoſe of the black Waters, forms ſeveral Currents that run through the City, and contribute much to its Neatneſs. They fall into the *Vecht* without the Town, and make a Channel to the *Zuyder-Sea*, from whence the Tide flows up, which advances its Trade. The adjacent Country has many Orchards and Meadows, which, with the Walks of Trees within and without the Fortifications, make the City very pleaſant. It has 3 large and ſtrong Gates, which open into Suburbs, equal to good Villages. There are 24 Towers upon the old Walls, that were formerly its chief Defence; to which have ſince been added a double Ditch, 10 good Baſtions, and a Trench between the *Zwoll* and the *Iſſel*, upon which there are 4 good Fortreſſes, 3 of 'em ſo large, that they reſemble little Towns. Their Trade conſiſts chiefly in Timber, Cattle fatted in the neighbouring Paſtures, *Benthem* Stones, Wool, Corn, Butter, and Cheeſe. The Inhabitants are reckon'd courteous to Strangers, and charitable to the Poor. Their chief Buildings are, 1. St. *Michael*'s Church, in the great Market-Place, a large Structure of good Workmanſhip, noted for its fine Organ, Pulpit, harmonious Bells, and wonderful high Steeple. They have another Church called St. *Mary*'s, with ſeveral that formerly belong'd to Monaſteries. Their Guildhall is noted for its Antiquity, and the adjoining Tavern for the Image of St. *Chriſtopher*. They have ſeveral Hoſpitals, a Granary, and a good Arſenal. They have likewiſe a College, wherein, *Bleau* ſays, there were uſually 500 Students, and gives us an Account of their Learned Men. They have a Court, where all Cauſes are finally determin'd, and to which Appeals are made from the inferior Towns of the Province. The Government is much like that of *Deventer*. The Pro-

Digitized by Google

vincial States meet in this Town, *Daventer*, and *Campen*, by Turns. They have 18 large and populous Villages under their Juriſdiction. They had anciently within their Diſtrict two famous Monaſteries: The firſt was that of *Windſem*, which had 70 Convents of the ſame Order under it; the other was that of Mount *Agnie*, of which the famous *Thomas a Kempis* was Prior. This City was treacherouſly yielded to the Biſhop of *Munſter* in 1672, and, in the Name of the Provincial States, ſent Deputies to the other Cities of the Country to do the like. 'Twas quitted by the Biſhop of *Cologne*, to whoſe Share it fell in 1674, when he ſent two of their Magiſtrates to *Maaſtricht* as Hoſtages for 100000 Gilders demanded of the City. As a Puniſhment for this Treachery, the Towns of this Province were deprived of their Power to chuſe their own Magiſtrates without the Prince's Conſent. Their ancient Arms was St. *Michael* the Archangel beſtriding the Dragon, and bearing a Shield in his Hand, with a white Croſs painted upon it; but now only a *Croſs Argent* in a *Field Azure*.

3. *Campen*, lies about 7 Miles N. W. from *Zwoll*, upon the W. Side of the *Iſſel*, a little above where it falls into the *Zuyder-Sea*. It has its Name from the pleaſant Fields which ſurround it. 'Tis a large and neat City, with capacious Churches of curious Workmanſhip, and a noble Guildhall. Their Cuſtom-Houſe is admir'd by the beſt Architects, and is ſo ſtately, that Princes and others of the greateſt Quality are lodg'd and entertain'd in it. The Bridge over the *Iſſel* is of a great Length, ſtands upon vaſt Pieces of Timber drove into the Bottom of the River, and is defended at the further End by a ſtrong Fort, that has ſeveral Baſtions. The City is encompaſſed by a thick Wall, with many high Towers, after the ancient Manner; ſo that its chief Strength lies in its Situation. This City has the Privilege of a Mint, with other large Immunities. Their Trade is decay'd of late, the Harbour being ſo much choak'd up, that it does not admit large Veſſels. The Learned *Albertus Pighius*, fam'd for his Skill in Mathematicks, Coſmography, and writing againſt *Luther*, for which he was much eſteem'd and enrich'd by 3 ſucceſſive Popes, was a Senator of this Place. The Government of this City reſembles that of *Zwoll*. 'Twas ſurrender'd in 1672 to the Biſhop of *Munſter*; and being allotted to the *French*, was quitted by them in 1673, when they exacted 80000 Gilders to ſave the Town and its Fortifications; ſeveral of which they deſtroy'd notwithſtanding.

4. *Haſſelt*, lies on the *Vecht*, 7 Miles N. E. from *Campen*, was made a City by the Biſhop of *Utrecht* in 1252, and built to oppoſe the *Frizons*. 'Tis a pleaſant City, pretty rich, and govern'd in the ſame Manner as the reſt.

Ommen, 13 Miles E. from *Zwoll*, a Wall'd Town, with the neighbouring Fortreſs of *Ommer. Sconce* belongs to *Friesland* and *Groningen*; and *Hardenberg*, another Wall'd Town, 7 Miles N. E. from *Ommen*, are both in the Juriſdiction of *Salland*.

5. *Geelmuyden*, lies on the *Vecht*, 4 Miles N. E. from *Haſſelt*. 'Twas made a City by *John* of *Naſſau* Biſhop of *Utrecht*, and had formerly a ſtrong Caſtle, now in Ruins.

6. *Vollenhoven*, above 3 Miles E. from *Geelmuyden*, on the *Zuyder-Sea*, is a neat fortified Town, with a great Market for Corn from the *Baltick*, &c. and Capital of its Diſtrict of the ſame Name. 'Twas the Seat of the K. of *Spain*'s Grand Council in thoſe Parts, and there was no Appeal from the Magiſtrates of the Town, only they were to pronounce Sentence in Preſence of the Governor of the Province, who generally reſided here, as many of the Nobility of the Province do ſtill.

7. *Swartſiuys*, 5 Miles S. E. from *Vollenhoven*, is a ſtrong Fort, was taken by the Biſhop of *Munſter* in 1672, when he enlarged the Fortifications ſo much, that the *Dutch* could not take it after 3 Attempts; but they recover'd it at laſt.

8. *Steenwick*, lies 7 Miles N. E. from *Vollenhoven*. 'Tis a ſmall, but very ſtrong Town, held out a Siege of 3 Months againſt the *Spaniards* in 1581, when they were obliged to riſe from before it by the *Engliſh* under Colonel *Norris*. 'Twas afterwards taken by the *Spaniards*, and retaken by Pr. *Maurice* in 1592, after a ſharp Siege, wherein the *Spaniſh* Governor ſaid, He had been dug out like a Fox. The adjacent Country has good Paſtures and Arable Land. 'Twas ſurrender'd to the Biſhop of *Munſter*, who quitted it in 1673, and baſely ruin'd their

Digitized by Google

their Fortifications, tho' he had obtain'd 10000 Gilders to ſpare them; but 'twas ſince re-fortified.

9. *Blockzyll*, lies 6 Miles S. W. from *Steenwick*, at the Mouth of the River *Aa*, and on the Bank of the *Zuyder-Sea*, which it commands in Part. 'Tis a Place of conſiderable Trade, very populous, and well fortified.

The Diſtrict of TWENTE.

Is divided into 9 Juriſdictions, each of which have their Courts.

The chief PLACES *here are,*

1. *Oldenzyll*, ſuppoſed to have been the Capital of the ancient *Salii*, and from them to have had its Latin Name *Salia*. It has been of more Note for its frequent changing of Maſters, than for its Bulk or Strength. It lies on the Frontiers of the County of *Benthem* in *Weſtphalia*, 25 Miles N. E. from *Deventer*. 'Twas 4 times taken and retaken during the War with *Spain*, and at laſt recover'd by Prince *Henry Frederick*. 'Twas taken by the Biſhop of *Munſter* in 1672, but retaken by the *Dutch* in 1674.

2. *Gramberg*, about 3 Miles N. E. from *Hardenberg*, and 6 S. W. from *Coevorden*, is an ancient Caſtle, memorable for the brave Defence which its Garriſon of 36 Men made againſt the Troops of *Munſter* in 1672, when they ſtood out two Storms by 900 Men, and yielded at laſt upon good Terms; but the Garriſon was made Priſoners of War, contrary to Capitulation. The Biſhop fortified it ſtrongly afterwards, to diſtreſs *Coevorden*, and to facilitate his March into the Marſhes of *Drente*, by caſting up a Bank croſs the *Vecht*; but he afterwards abandon'd it.

3. *Ottmarſen*, 5 Miles N. from *Odenzyll*, ſaid to have been founded and taken its Name from *Odomarus* K. of the *Francs*, becauſe one *Vechtanus*, a Learned *Druid*, and one of his Familiars, was buried here: Or according to others, 'twas the Sepulchre of *Odomar* himſelf, and therefore called by his Name. 'Twas taken by the Biſhop of *Munſter* in 1672; but afterwards quitted by him. There are other Towns in this Diſtrict, ſuch as *Almelo*, *Homberg*, *Delden*, *Enſchede*, *Goor*, and *Diepenhem*; of which we find no Deſcription.

The County of Drente, *and Lordſhip of* Weſterwold.

THis is a large Country, has *Groningen* on the N. *Sallant*, *Twente*, and the County of *Benthem*, on the S. *Eaſt-Frieſland* on the W. *Embden* and other Parts of *Weſtphalia* on the E. A great Part of it has Marſhes and Heaths, and other Parts abound with Turf, which are carried to *Holland* and elſewhere. 'Tis a diſtinct County, and not properly one of the United Provinces, thô obliged to contribute to all their publick Taxes. They have a Right to chuſe their own Governor, an Itinerant Court, from which there's no Appeal; and alledge, that they had formerly a Stadtholder; that they ſign'd the Union with the reſt of the Provinces, and were look'd upon as a diſtinct Member of the United States, till torn from them by the Biſhop of *Munſter*'s Invaſion: But we do not find that their Plea was much regarded, or that they have been allowed to ſend Deputies to the States General.

Their chief PLACES *are,*

1. *Coevorden*, on the Frontiers of *Weſtphalia*, 22 Miles N. E. from *Zwoll*, and 6 from *Hardenberg*. 'Tis, thô a ſmall Place, as ſtrong a Fortreſs as any in *Europe*, and of great Importance by its Situation, becauſe it commands the Paſſes into both the *Frieſlands*, *Drente*, and the *Omlands*. All the publick Ways about it, except what leads to *Groningen*, are ſo narrow, that an Army cannot march in that Country without great Difficulty. 'Tis ſtrengthen'd on the N. E. and W. by unpaſſable Marſhes. It has the Village *Dalen* on the N. and a large Heath that reaches as far as *Groningen*; and on the other Sides, ſuch Fens as, together with its ſtrong Works, make it impregnable. In 1581, 'twas ſurrender'd to the *Spaniards*, after the Confederate Troops under Count *Hohenlo* were defeated near *Hardenberg*; but recover'd ſoon after by *Hohenlo*, when he was reinforc'd. The *Spaniards* having defeated him a ſecond time, it fell again

again into their Hands. In 1592, Pr. *Maurice* having defeated the *Spaniards* under *Verdugas*, who was ſent to relieve it, took it again. In 1593, *Verdugas* attack'd it once more, but was forc'd by Pr. *Maurice* to raiſe the Siege. In 1672, 'twas treacherouſly ſurrender'd to the Biſhop of *Munſter*, almoſt without Oppoſition, tho' defended by 7 good Baſtions, bearing the Name of the United Provinces, with excellent Parapets, Fauſſe-Brays, and other Outworks; their Caſtle reckon'd impregnable, a large and deep double Ditch, and exceeding high and ſtrong Ramparts; but in *December* following 'twas recover'd by the *Dutch* with very little Reſiſtance, tho' the Garriſon was ſtrong, and well provided, and had Notice of their Approach; but the *Dutch* coming ſeveral Hours later than the Garriſon was informed by Deſerters, they took it for a falſe Alarm; and relying on the Strength of the Place, moſt of 'em went to Bed, being tir'd out with watching; the *Dutch* approach'd it under a Fog, and making their Aſſault, recover'd it with the Loſs of 150 Men. In the cloſe of 1673, the Biſhop of *Munſter* block'd it up, encompaſs'd it with a high Bank, and ſo coop'd up the Waters, that they very much annoy'd the Town, and made them deſpair of Relief: But while they were contriving to cut the Banks, they were broke down by a Storm, which relieved the Town, and drown'd ſome of the Biſhop's Troops.

In the ſame Country, near *Weſterwold*, lies *Valterſchanz*, 12 Miles N. E. from *Coeverden*, ſo good a Fortreſs, that 'tis able to reſiſt the ſtrongeſt Enemy: And nearer *Coeverden*, there lies another ſtrong Fort called *Schanz-Ten-Hole*; but not ſo conſiderable as the former.

The reſt of this Country contains ſeveral neat and large Villages; the chief of which are, 1. *Meppel*, a large open Town, noted for furniſhing Turfs to the Neighbourhood. 2. *Aſſen*, towards the N. of the Province, a ſmall City, where there's a Court of Judicature. This Country is divided into 6 Diſtricts, who have each 4 Judges, choſen Annually out of the Gentry and Peaſants, that every Week diſtribute Juſtice and determine Suits in their reſpective Juriſdictions. They meet all together three times in a Year to determine Cauſes of a higher Nature; but there lies an Appeal to the Supreme Court of the Province, which finally determines the Matter. Beſides, every Village has an Officer called a *Scout*, who determines leſſer Cauſes, and has a Power to diſtrein upon Goods. *Coeverden*, and the Lordſhip of *Runen*, are exempted from all thoſe Courts; the latter being ſubject to ſome Nobles, and the other to the Governor of the Province, who generally reſides in the Caſtle of *Coeverden*. The Lordſhip of *Weſterwold* lies betwixt *Drente* and *Eaſt-Frieſland*, and is generally mooriſh, except where it lies on the Bay of *Dullart*; contains about 12 Villages, and 2 Monaſteries. It had formerly particular Lords, belong'd afterwards, with the County of *Drente*, to the Province of *Utrecht*, then to *Guelderland*; and at laſt 'twas given by the Houſe of *Burgundy* to the City of *Groningen*, on Condition they ſhould not change its Laws, nor diminiſh the Liberty of the Villagers; and under their Juriſdiction it ſtill remains.

While *Over-Iſſel* was under the Biſhop of *Utrecht*, the States of the Province had the Supreme Power, he being only Preſident, and oblig'd to put their Reſolves in Execution: Nor had he any Juriſdiction over the Clergy, or the three chief Cities of *Daventer*, *Campen*, and *Zwoll*; but he being unable to protect them, they ſubmitted to the Emperor *Charles* V. on Condition that he ſhould preſerve their ancient Liberties and Privileges. They had ſome Difficulty after the *Munſter* Invaſion to be reſtor'd to their Privilege of ſending Deputies to the States General; but at laſt they were allowed it in 1674. M. *de Fer* ſays, the whole Province contains 9 Cities, 10 large open Towns, 210 Villages, and 5 Fortreſſes.

The Province of Groningen,

HAS the Ocean on the N. *Over-Iſſel* on the S. *Frieſland* on the W. and *Embden* on the E. The greateſt Length from S. E. to N. W. is 46 Miles; but its Breadth is unequal, the greateſt being about 24; and that Part of the Province which lies betwixt *Over-Iſſel* and *Embden*, or rather Part of *Weſtphalia*, is a very narrow Tract of Ground. 'Tis debated by Authors, whether the ancient Inhabitants were the *Frizoni*?

Digitized by Google

zons? But the preſent Inhabitants are agreed to be deſcended for moſt part from *Weſtphalia* and *Drente*. The Air of this Country is ſharp, and well purified by continual Breezes; ſo that People of 70, 80, and 90 Years of Age, are frequent here. They have little Stone or Wood, but Plenty of Turf for Fuel: They have good Paſture Ground, and large Herds of great and ſmall Cattle, but few Wild-Beaſts. They have ſtore of Salt and Freſh-Water Fiſh, and are in Diſpoſition much like the *Frizons*, but more induſtrious and cautious, which is aſcribed to their Trade and frequent Commerce with Strangers. *Ubbo Emmius* ſays, That an Age before he wrote, 'twas called the *Leſſer Frieſland*; and that tho' the whole went under the Name of *Groningen*, yet in their publick Acts 'twas only called *Omland*: But the Stile at preſent is *Groningen* and the *Omlands*.

Groningen is divided into the Lordſhip of *Gorecht*, a ſmall Tract in the middle of the Country; the *Old Ampt*, lying E. from hence to the Bank of *Dollart* Bay; the *Weſterwold*, which lies S. from hence, and runs like a ſmall Wedge betwixt *Drente* and the Biſhoprick of *Munſter*.

The *Omlands* is divided into the W. Quarter betwixt *Frieſland* and the *Gorecht*; *Hunſingo*, which is the N. Part of the Province; and *Five-Linge*, which lies betwixt *Hunſingo* and the *Old Ampt*.

The chief PLACES *are*,

1. *Groningen*, 30 Miles N. W. from *Coeworden*, 21 S. W. from *Embden*, and 29 E. from *Leewarden*, in Long. 25. 12. Lat. 53. 12. Some derive the Name from *Grunius*, a *Trojan* or *Franc*. It ſtands on the Rivers *Hunniſus* and *Aha*, in a Point of Land where they join; ſo that 'tis water'd with ſeveral Channels, artificial and natural. The *Aha* is received and let out of the City by ſeveral large Arches under its Fortifications; and where it goes out, receives the *Hunniſus*, which encompaſſes the E. and N. Parts of the City, and forms a Channel capable of a great Number of Veſſels. The *Aha* has a Bridge of Brick over it within the City, which has been much enlarged at ſeveral times, particularly in 1615, when 'twas made one half larger than before. It has 17 great Baſtions, with other Fortifications in proportion, and is encompaſſed with a Ditch of 270 Foot broad. The City is large and populous, and, if well garriſon'd, reckon'd impregnable. It has a Communication with the *German* Ocean and the River *Ems*, which makes it a Place of great Trade; having likewiſe the Conveniency of Commerce with the neighbouring Country by Rivers and Canals. It had formerly 3 Pariſh Churches, beſides 5 belonging to Monaſteries, and 4 to Hoſpitals. The chief of 'em, at the End of the great Market-place, is St. *Martin's*, where there was formerly an Organ made by *Rodolphus Agricola*. St. *Walburg's* and St *Mary's* have a high Tower each; the firſt is of a round Form, is a ſtrong Building, and has a Fountain in it, which ſprings continually. Its Tower is the beſt in the Country, and has 16 Bells, one of 'em very large. It has now but 3 Pariſh Churches, to which the other Pariſhes are united. The Church and Monaſtery of the *Franciſcans* ſtands about the middle of the City, and thoſe of St. *James* and the *Dominicans* on the N. near the Walls, but now turn'd to other Uſes. The Friary near St. *Walburg's* is now the Reſidence of the Governor of the Province. They have 3 Market-Places; the largeſt of which, called the Ox-*Market*, is about 180 Paces ſquare, in which ſtands their Town-Houſe: The other, called the *Fiſh-Market*, is longer, thô not ſo broad. Into theſe two Market-Places run 17 large Streets, 6 of which are in a ſtraight Line to ſo many Gates of the City; and thoſe in the Old Town are ſo neatly pav'd, that a Man may ſafely walk them in the darkeſt Night without any Light. They have 27 ſpacious Streets in all, ſeveral of 'em adorn'd with curious Buildings; and moſt of the Houſes have Gardens and Fruit-Trees, which yield them both Profit and Pleaſure. The City has great Privileges, was formerly one of the Hans-Towns, was exempted from appearing at other Tribunals. They had alſo the Privilege of coining Gold and Silver. It had the Benefit of a Staple, and has many particular Laws: The chief of which are, 1. That the Names of Bankrupts, if the Creditors require it, are publiſh'd from an upper Window of the Town-Houſe, upon which they were formerly

out-

Digitized by Google

outlaw'd; but now 'tis only a Reproach. 2. Upon the Death of the Parents, the Son has only a double Portion to that of the Daughter; and the Husband and Wife cannot sell or mortgage one another's immoveable Estates without mutual Consent. 3. Those that are not baptiz'd according to the Church establish'd by Law, cannot inherit. 4. A 4th Part of such Estates as devolve to Persons dwelling beyond the *Ems* and the River *Laers*, comes to the publick Treasury of the City. The Emperor *Henry* III. gave to *Berthold* Bishop of *Utrecht* what he possessed in *Groningen*. The succeeding Bishops made this a Handle to lay Claim to the whole City, which occasioned many Quarrels betwixt them and the Citizens, till in 1392 the Bishop quitted his Pretensions; but in 1401, another Bishop renewing them, they submitted to the Earl of *East-Friesland*, then to the Duke of *Guelder*, and at last to *Charles* V. They revolted from *Spain* in 1579; but returning again under their Dominion, Prince *Maurice* in 1594 took the Town for the United Provinces. In 1672, they made such a brave Resistance against the Bishop of *Munster*, that he lost 10000 Men before it, and was obliged to raise the Siege; for which this City was rewarded with a double Vote in the Council of State of the United Provinces. There have always been great Controversies betwixt this City and the *Omlanders* about the Extent of their Jurisdiction, from which the latter plead Exemption; and 'twas accordingly determin'd in their Favour by the Pr. of *Orange* and the States. The Citizens are said to be haughty, great Lovers of Liberty, profuse in Diet and Habit, industrious in Trade, and tenacious of their Religion; yet they allow the Lutherans and Anabaptists a Toleration. Their Inclination to Profuseness has occasioned a Law to regulate their Expences at Weddings and other Solemnities. In 1614, an University was founded here, with Professors in all Faculties. Their first Rector was the famous *Ubbo Emmius*. There's a Settlement for 40 Scholars, who pay no more each but 45 Crowns *per Annum*; the rest of their Charge being born by the States. In their Library there's an Inscription, attested by credible Persons, giving an Account, That a Soldier liv'd there 16 Days after a Wound received in the right Ventricle of his Heart. Their University is liberally endow'd out of the Revenues of the Monasteries. They have also a publick School, with 7 Masters for the Languages, who have each of 'em a House, and a handsome Salary. At the Entrance of the School, there's this Motto:

Hoc age quo morieris facta fuisse velis.
i. e.
Live as you would die.

The Prince's Palace is on the N. Side of the City, and in one of its Chambers are the Pictures of all the Princes of *Orange* and Counts of *Nassau*. Near to this there's a very fine Garden, and the Stadthouse, with a Latin Inscription, importing, That here the Magistrates of the City, and Nobles and Rusticks of *Omland*, meet for the publick Affairs of the Province. Their Government is by 4 Consuls and 12 Senators, whose Office continues for two Years, one half of 'em going out Annually, the like Number being chosen by the 24 Jurats in their Place; who, after hearing a Sermon, meet in the Town-House, when the Consul for the Time puts 24 Silver Beans into a Hat; 5 of which being colour'd, those who draw them are the Electors, and are shut up until such time as they chuse 2 Consuls and 6 Senators, in the Room of those that go out. The Jurats are chosen in the same Manner. The Consuls and Senators have the Sovereign Power in the City; but in Matters of Peace and War, they take the Advice of the 8 Senators that went out last, and the Jurats, who represent the Corporations of the City. On extraordinary Occasions, they likewise call to their Assistance some other Citizens of the best Rank. There were formerly two Ædiles or Tribunes of the Corporations; but it having been found that they made use of their Sway to promote Faction and Sedition, they were laid aside, and the Jurats are all sworn against such Practices when admitted to their Office. They have another Council called *Hoofmen*'s, into which no Citizen is admitted but such as have been Consuls. Their Jurisdiction is over the Territory of the City and the *Omlands*, from whence 3 Members are admitted into this

Digitized by Google

this Council, where they preſide in their Turns by Lot. This City is noted for the Birth of the famous *Rodolphus Agricola*, whom *Eraſmus* calls the greateſt Scholar that any Age has produc'd; and of *Weſelius* his Cotemporary, ſo univerſally learned, that he was called, *Lux Mundi*. For the reſt, we refer to *Blaeu*.

2. *Dam*, 11 Miles N. E. from *Groningen*, and about 2 Miles from the Bay of the *Ems*. It lies in a rich and pleaſant Soil, is well built, but not fortified, becauſe of the Jealouſy of thoſe of *Groningen* againſt the *Omlanders*, in whoſe Territory this Town is ſeated.

3. *Winſchoten*, 15 Miles S. E. from *Groningen*, a Fortreſs in the *Old Ampt*, was taken and plunder'd by the Troops of *Munſter* in 1674, and is remarkable for the firſt Battle betwixt the *Spaniards* and the *Dutch* in Defence of their Liberty in 1568, when Count *Lewis* of *Naſſau* defeated the *Spaniſh* General *Arenberg*.

4. *Billingwolderſchans*, near the Bay of *Dullart*, 6 Miles S. E. from *Winſchoten*: It commands one of the moſt important Paſſes betwixt *Weſtphalia* and *Groningen*; and the Tide coming up to it, they have Sluces, by which they can drown the neighbouring Country. This Fort was taken by the Biſhop of *Munſter* in 1672; but afterwards recover'd by the *Dutch*.

5. *Bourtangerfort*, lies 7 Miles S. E. from *Billingwolderſchans*. 'Tis almoſt encompaſſed by unpaſſable Moraſſes, and was built by Prince *William* of *Naſſau* in 1593, becauſe of the Conveniency of its Situation, and repulſed *Verdugas* the *Spaniſh* General before 'twas quite finiſh'd.

6. *Langakerſchans*, lies on the Bay of *Dullart*, 20 Miles S. E. from *Groningen*. 'Twas taken by the Biſhop of *Munſter* in 1672; but retaken by the brave General *Rabenhaupt* in 1673, when he found a great Booty there, the Troops of *Munſter* having made it a Storehouſe for their Plunder. There's another Fort called the *Old* or *Bonnerſchans*, betwixt *Langaker* and *Billingwolder*; which Forts, with the Moraſſes, make a very ſtrong Frontier betwixt *Groningen*, the County of *Embden*, and *Weſtphalia*.

7. *Delfzyl*, lies on the *Dullart* Bay, 2 Miles E. from *Dam*, is a very good Harbour, which for Situation, and other Advantages, exceeds that of *Embden*. 'Tis a Place of ſuch Importance, that 'twas always well fortified by ſuch as had it in Poſſeſſion. The D. of *Alva* deſign'd to have built a good City here, but was prevented by the Wars to which his bloody Government gave Riſe. 'Twas taken in the beginning of thoſe Wars by the *Dutch*; but ſurrender'd to the *Spaniards* after the Defeat of the *Dutch* at the Battle of *Ardenburg*, and recover'd in 1591. 'Twas lately very well fortify'd by the States General, who have taken in as much Ground as makes it equal in Extent to a great Town. In 1672, their *Eaſt-India* Fleet of 14 Ships, whoſe Cargo was valu'd at 16000000 *l.* Sterling, eſcap'd hither from the *Engliſh* Fleet, which purſu'd them very cloſe.

In the *Old Ampt* ſtands the ancient Village of *Midwold*, formerly a flouriſhing Place, but moſt of it now ruin'd by the *Dullart* Sea, which above 400 Years ago ſwallowed up 33 good Villages in thoſe Parts.

The *Omlands*, as we have heard before, act in ſome Things jointly, and in others independant of the City of *Groningen*; which having occaſioned many Differences betwixt them, the States General, to prevent the like, made ſeveral new Orders relating to the Government of that Province; particularly, That none ſhould have any publick Employment unleſs a Proteſtant, having an Eſtate of ſuch a Value, and of good Reputation; with ſome other Orders relating to a more equal Diſtribution of publick Offices, and what ſort of Perſons ſhould be admitted to ſit in the Provincial Aſſemblies.

The Province of Weſtfrieſland,

HAS the *Zuyder-Sea* on the W. and Part of the S. the Province of *Groningen* and Part of *Over-Iſſel* on the E. and S. and the Ocean on the N. *Mull* makes it about 40 Miles from N. to S. and 25 from E. to W. We have formerly taken Notice from *Cluverius*, That the *Friſii* were its ancient Inhabitants; and from Sir *W. Temple*, That Part of the *Saxons* who conquer'd *England* came from hence. Some ſay, this Country was much larger formerly, and join'd to the

Digitized by Google

three Islands on the N. of it, which have been separated by Inundations: That the Districts of *Oostergo* and *Westergo* were also divided by a large Bay; at the Mouth of which, where now stands *Berlecum*, there was a Town of great Trade, the Ruins of which are still to be seen; and that the *Lawers* was formerly a deep and navigable River, but now choak'd up.

The Air of the Country being purified with frequent Winds, is better than could be expected from its low Situation; tho' in the Winter, the Fields are generally so full of Water, that there's no travelling but on Banks. In Summer, 'tis dry'd by the Season and Art, and in many Places affords good Pasturage and Arable Land, especially in *Oostergo*. *Westergo*, which is the larger Tract, is more level and fenny, but abounds with Fish and Fowl. Neither of 'em have any Woods; but they are supplied with Turf from a Bituminous Earth, which *Guicciardin* says did formerly take Fire of it self in this Province, near the *Zuyder-Sea*, and could not be stopp'd by Art or Industry, till it had burnt two Leagues in Length, and as much in Breadth, when the subterraneous Waters burst out and extinguish'd it, and form'd that Lake now call'd the *Jonkermeer*. *Becanus* says, the like happen'd in *Brabant* in 1541, and in the Province of *Utrecht* in 1567. *Ubbo Emmius* and *Guicciardin* say, the Inhabitants are fair, tall, stout, great Lovers of Liberty, frugal, affable, and modest; but when provok'd, grow outragious. Few of 'em marry young, which is thought to be the Cause of their strong and healthful Constitution, and of the Vivacity of their Children. Jealousy is rare among them, and their Women chast; but Adultery, when discover'd, severely punish'd. The Men are said to bear Cold, Hunger and Thirst, better than most other People. They are of a Martial Disposition, and not much addicted to Trade, which is ascrib'd to the Temper of their Nobility and Gentry; many of whom despise Commerce, or to match with a Citizen's Family; yet their Ladies are much addicted to Spinning, and other Parts of good Housewifry, while their Husbands follow the Court and Camp, or divert themselves by Hunting. The Food of the meaner Sort is salt and smoak'd Flesh, Bacon, Barley-Broth, Cheese, and Butter; but they affect to have good Tables on *Sundays*. They are reckon'd good Companions; and tho' not so much addicted to Drinking as some of their Neighbours, carrouse frequently in Wine and Ale, and will very much resent the Refusal of being pledg'd. They usually drink in Horn Cups tip'd with Silver, encompassed with Rings of the same Metal; and when they have drank, 'tis common with both Sexes to reach out the Cup and their Hand, to be kiss'd by the courteous Pledger. The Nobility are splendid in their Apparel, live sumptuously, keep many Servants, and are great Admirers of Coaches and Calashes. Both Sexes follow the *French* Fashion in their Dress; and the elder Women affect much Gold and Silver in their Apparel on solemn Occasions. Their Language comes nearer the old *English* than any other in *Europe*. They were formerly said to chuse their Wives more for their Beauty and good Nature, than for their Riches; but of late, they look after good Portions as well as their Neighbours. When a Bride comes home, she takes Possession of the House by drinking to the Guests, and bidding them welcome. When a Husband dies without Issue, the Widow returns to her Kindred; and 'tis reckon'd scandalous if she marry within a Year after. The Relations of the Deceas'd mourn for a Year in black Vestments down to their Ankles; but in some Places they mourn only 30 Days. The Men were formerly noted for Strength and Courage, that the *Hollanders* us'd to say, *As strong as a Frizon*, by way of Proverb.

Their Religion is that of the other Provinces establish'd by Law; but they tolerate Anabaptists, and connive at Papists. We have formerly taken Notice, That they were long subject to the *Romans*; and after they shook off their Yoke, subdued and possessed most of *Old Batavia*, till they were harrass'd by the *Normans*. They are said to have had 7 Princes, 7 Dukes, and 9 Kings, of their own, who kept their Court at *Staveren*, and were called Kings of *East-Friesland*, to distinguish them from those of *North-Holland* or *West-Friesland*, who resided at *Medenblick*. 'Twas formerly join'd to *North-Holland*, as appears by their ancient Annals, when that Part of the Country was

Digitized by Google

was poſſeſſed by one *Ivo Happer* about 1013, who ſold it off upon the finding of a live Herring in a Pool in the middle of one of his Fields, which he took as a Preſage of the Inundation that happen'd ſoon after. They were afterwards ſubdued by the *Francs* under *Charlemagne*, who allow'd them great Privileges, and to chuſe their own Governors, call'd Poteſtates, of whom they had 16. They were much troubled with Diſſentions by the Factions of the *Schyringers* and *Vetcoopers*; at the ſame time when the *Hollanders* were plagued with the *Hoecks* and *Cabillaux*; the *Italians* with the *Guelphs* and *Gibelins*; *Flanders* by thoſe who wore Hoods of different Colours; and *France* by Factions of the like Nature: As if ſome malignant Conjunction had then reign'd over all *Europe*. And tho' theſe Factions us'd to join in oppoſing Foreign Enemies, they gave Opportunity firſt to the *Saxons*, and then to the *Gueldrians*, to invade them, till they came to the Houſe of *Burgundy*; after which they revolted with the other Provinces from the Crown of *Spain*.

The Province is divided into *Ooſtergo*, *Weſtergo*, and the 7 *Wolden* or Forreſts: The firſt lies next to the River *Laars*, and the *Omlands* on the N. contains the Cities of *Leuwarden* and *Doccum*, with 12 Juriſdictions, 127 Villages, and had formerly 21 Monaſteries, beſides many ancient Caſtles and Noblemen's Houſes. *Weſtergo* is the largeſt and moſt populous Diviſion, contains the Towns of *Franeker*, *Sneek*, *Bolſwarden*, *Hatlingen*, *Slooten*, *Stavern*, *Hindelopen*, *Worcum*, and *Iſt*, 8 Juriſdictions, 127 Villages, and formerly 24 Monaſteries. It lies S. from *Ooſtergo*, and W. from *Sevenwolden*. The latter is for moſt part mooriſh, in other Places ſandy and barren; but abounds with Turf, Lakes well ſtor'd with Fiſh, and has ſeveral ſmall Woods, from whence it takes its Name. It has no Towns, but is divided into 9 Juriſdictions, containing 77 Villages, and formerly one Monaſtery. In ſome Places they have good Corn, but little Paſturage; and the Inhabitants living hard, are reckon'd the beſt Soldiers of the Province. During the *French* Invaſion in 1672, they were miſerably divided into Factions, and ſet up two different Provincial Aſſemblies, who enacted contrary Orders, and could not be brought to Reaſon by their own Stadtholder, till the Prince of *Orange* march'd thither with a conſiderable Army in 1673, when he appeas'd their Differences among themſelves, and reconcil'd them with thoſe of *Groningen*.

The chief TOWNS *are*,

1. *Franeker*, in Long. 24. 15. Lat. 53 10. 9 Miles W. from *Leuwarden*, 32 W. from *Groningen*, and 4 Miles E. from the *Zuyder-Sea*. 'Tis ſaid to have been founded in 1191, and to take its Name from the Portion of Land on which 'twas built. It abounds with Channels, two of which run through the Length of the Town; and by their Communication with others, make it very neat, and advance its Trade. 'Tis encompaſſed with a good Rampart, a broad and deep Ditch; and the Air is ſo wholeſome, that many Gentlemen have choſe it for their Place of Reſidence, and built ſtately Houſes in it. On the W. Side there's a Caſtle of Brick, ſurrounded by a deep and broad Ditch, and is ſo very ſtrong, that it commands the City, and was the Seat of their Governors, till the Time of *Charles* V. The whole Town conſiſts but of one Pariſh, with a large Church, called St. *Martin's*, adorn'd with a tall and handſome Steeple. They have an Hoſpital for 30 Orphans of both Sexes, where they are taught Reading, Writing, and Handycrafts; and the Girls, when marriageable, are provided with competent Portions. The Fields on the N. and W. lie high, and produce good Corn; but thoſe on the other Sides are low, and cover'd with Water in Winter. The Channel which comes from *Leuwarden* runs through the City, is navigable, and has high Banks for the Convenience of Paſſengers, and of the Horſes that draw their Boats when the Wind is contrary. Their Univerſity was founded in 1584, where they have 14 Profeſſors, endow'd by the Revenues of the old Monaſteries; and the Students, beſides other Immunities, are exempted from Taxes on Wine and Beer. The Rector *Magnificus* is choſen Annually out of the ſeveral Faculties by Turns, and has the Cognizance of Civil Cauſes; but the Criminal are referr'd to the Court of the Province. For their Learned Men, we refer to *Eleuſ*. They have likewiſe a Gram-

Digitized by Google

mar School of good Note. Their Government is like that of the other Cities formerly mentioned; but only this Town and *Leuwarden* in the whole Province chuſe their own Magiſtrates, the reſt being nam'd by the Stadtholder, out of a double Number preſented to him.

2. *Leuwarden*, lies 9 Miles E. from *Franeker*, is the largeſt, richeſt, beſt built, and moſt populous, of the Province, tho' not ſo ancient, as ſome others 'Twas walled in 1190, when it conſiſted but of one Pariſh. The Streets are cleanly, their Houſes ſplendid, their Bridges well pav'd, and their Gardens pleaſant. Their Churches, the Provincial Court, the Governor's Palace, and the Houſes of their Nobles, are fine Structures. The Figure of the City is a fort of a Square, encompaſſed with a ſtrong Rampart, a broad deep Ditch, 5 Bulwarks of Earth, with a Ditch each. It ſtands in a fruitful Soil; and by its navigable Canals, the largeſt of which runs to the Ocean, they have a good Trade with *Hamburg*, *Bremen*, *Embden*, and *Holland*, and are plentifully ſupplied with Neceſſaries from the neighbouring Country. One of their Canals to the Weſtward is commanded by ſtrong Sluces. They had formerly 4 Monaſteries, now turn'd to other Uſes. They have two Hoſpitals, one of 'em nobly endow'd for 100 poor People of both Sexes, and Accommodations for their Aged, Sick and Lunatick, and entertaining poor Strangers for two Nights at a time. They have ſeveral good Laws for regulating their Government, in which they admit no Military Men, nor any but thoſe of the eſtabliſh'd Religion, and of competent Eſtates. *Blau* gives an Account of their Learned Men.

3. *Dotcum*, lies 10 Miles N. E. from *Leuwarden*, in a fruitful Country, abounding with Corn and Paſture, good Villages, and Gentlemen's Seats. *Hegnitius* ſays, he ſaw a Piece of Coin here with an Inſcription, importing, That 'twas built by *Obbo* D. of *Frieſland* in 248; wall'd by King *Gondebald*, who coin'd Gold there in 739; That its Walls being demoliſhed in 1422, were rebuilt in 1516, demoliſhed again in 1531, and rebuilt in 1592: But *Emmius* ſays, the firſt time 'tis mentioned in any Record, is in the Story of the Martyrdom of St. *Boniface* about 1255; tho' ſome will have it earlier, in a Village near this Place, which, as the Legend ſays, was occaſioned by his turning the Bread of an uncharitable Woman into Stones, for refuſing to relieve him and his Companions in Extremity of Hunger. They pretended to have his Stole, Chalice, and Skull, there, which they ſhew'd to Strangers. It ſtands on the River *Ee*, by which it communicates with the Ocean and *Leuwarden*. Their Buildings are rather neat than ſtately, and their Houſes well furniſh'd. Their Guildhall is a handſome Structure: The Stone Bridge near it ſo broad, that it ſerves for a Market; and the Arches ſo large and high, that Veſſels paſs under 'em. They have two other Bridges. The Town was fortified by the States in 1582, with a large Ditch, Rampart, and Bulwarks. One of their Bridges is drawn up with Chains, to let Veſſels paſs without pulling down their Maſts. The River where it comes in and goes out of the Town is commanded by good Block-houſes, and a ſtrong Boom in the middle, left open by Day for the Paſſage of Ships, but let down by Night. On each Side of the Channel there's a fair beautiful Street, with a Bank to keep in the River, neatly pav'd with Flint, and fac'd with Stone. They have but one Pariſh-Church, and had formerly a handſome Cemetery, of which nothing remains now but a ſtately high Tower.

4. *Harlingen*, 4 Miles W. from *Franeker*, at the Mouth of the Canal, and on the Bank of the *Zuyder-Sea*. 'Twas formerly an inconſiderable Village, but now one of the moſt conſiderable Towns next to *Leuwarden* in the Country. It has been ſeveral times enlarged, and was ſtrongly fortified by *William* Prince of *Orange* about 1579. 'Twas further enlarged, together with its Harbour, in 1597, and the adjacent Country may be overflowed by the Sluces in an Hour's time, which makes it very ſtrong. Tho' the Harbour be large, and much frequented, 'tis not fit for Veſſels of great Burden, which muſt either lie off a good Diſtance at Sea, or unload Part of their Cargo before they can get in. Their chief Trade is in making Sails, in importing and exporting Corn, Pitch, Tar, Fir-Trees, and Deal. On the S. Side was formerly a ſtrong Caſtle, the Reſidence of *Albert* the *Saxon*, and

Digitized by Google

and other Tyrants, who plagu'd the Country, for which 'twas demoliſhed by the Inhabitants. It has a Grammar-School and two Hoſpitals, and is govern'd by its own Magiſtrates, appointed out of a Number preſented to the Provincial Council.

5. *Bolſwaert*, on the Sea, 6 Miles S. from *Harlingen*. 'Tis an ancient City, ſtands on a riſing Ground, encompaſſed with good Arable Lands and Paſturage. It had formerly a conſiderable Trade by Sea, but now deals chiefly with the neighbouring Towns by Canals. 'Tis one of the Hans-Towns, well Peopled, the Houſes neatly built, and it has ſeveral Channels, which run through the Town, capable of ſmaller Veſſels. It has 5 Gates, 4 Sluces on its Rivers, a ſmall Market-Place, a Town-Houſe, 1 Church with 2 Miniſters, a Grammar-School with 3 Maſters, 2 Monaſteries, now converted to other Uſes; with Hoſpitals for the Poor and Orphans. 'Tis govern'd by its own Magiſtrates, and encompaſſed by a good Ditch and Rampart.

6. *Sneek*, 5 Miles S. E. from *Bolſwaert*, is an ancient, populous, neat, and well fortified Town. They trade in Fiſhing and other Commodities, are well furniſhed with Freſh-Fiſh by neighbouring Lakes, both for Conſumption and Sale; and have a publick School, which, for the Salaries of the Maſters, and Number of Scholars, is the beſt in the Province, next to that of *Leuwarden*. *Joahimus Hopperus*, the famous Lawyer, who was Preſident to the K. of *Spain's* Council at *Madrid*, was bred here. The adjacent Country has good Paſturage; but the Ground lying low, is not fit for Corn. It has a good Trade with the neighbouring Towns by Means of Canals.

6. *Worcum*, lies on the Sea, 8 Miles S. W. from *Sneek*, in a rich Soil. The Harbour is choak'd up by Sands; but it drives a good Trade with the neighbouring Country by Means of Canals, and is well ſupplied with Fiſh from the neighbouring Lakes. 'Tis alſo govern'd by its own Magiſtrates.

8. *Hindelopen*, lies on the ſame Bank of the Sea, 3 Miles S. from *Worcum*. It has a ſmall Harbour, is govern'd by its own Magiſtrates, and ſubſiſts chiefly by Fiſhing and Husbandry.

9 *Slooten*, or *Sloot*, lies 7 Miles S. E. from *Hindelopen*, upon a navigable Current which comes from a neighbouring Lake, called the *Slooten Meer*, and falls into the Sea about a League below the Town, by which it has a Trade with *Holland* and other Parts. This Canal is ſhut up at Night by a Boom. The Streets are very neat. They have a handſome Town Houſe, 1 Church, 3 Gates, one of 'em large and ſtately; but the Fortifications not conſiderable, having been ruin'd in the *Spaniſh* Wars. Their Government is by 4 Conſuls and 4 Senators, without any Common-Council.

10. *Staveren*, lies on the Bank of the *Zuyder-Sea*, 9 Miles S. W. from *Slooten*. 'Tis by Latin Writers called *Stavia*, and *Staveridia*. *Ubbo Emmius* alledges, 'twas built and fortified in the firſt Year of Chriſt by a Prince of the Country, who appointed 3 Weekly Meetings of Sword-Players there, to inſtruct the Youth in the Art of Defence. The *Frieſland* Writers ſay, 'twas not only the Metropolis of the Country, and the Seat of their Kings, but the greateſt Emporium of both *Germanies*. That 'twas formerly a Place of great Trade, and particularly in the *Sound*, is evident from the Privilege they ſtill enjoy, of being diſpatch'd before all others by the Receivers of the K. of *Denmark*'s Cuſtoms; and 'twas the only Town in the *Netherlands* which was allowed a Trade with *France* during the War betwixt *Charles* V. and the *French* King. 'Twas prodigious rich; but their Trade is now decay'd by the choaking of their Harbour, which is aſcrib'd to the Divine Juſtice that puniſh'd the Pride and Avarice of the Inhabitants; of which they give this remarkable Inſtance, That a Merchant's Wife being enrag'd at her Husband's bringing home from the Eaſt Country a Ship full of Wheat, which was then very cheap, ſhe perſwaded him to throw it over-board; where, being quickly cover'd with Sand, the Harbour was choak'd up a little time after. The firſt of the *Frizon* Kings is ſaid to have built a Temple and Sanctuary betwixt this Place and *Medenblik* in *North-Holland* about 463; and *Rathodus*, their 6th King, is ſaid, when going to receive Baptiſm, to have return'd to his Idolatry, becauſe the Biſhop then told him, That his Anceſtors were all damn'd. *Ubbo Emmius* alledges, That this Prince extended his Dominions as far as *Nimeguen*; which he takes

takes to be imply'd by the Inſcription we have already mention'd on one of its Gates: *Hucuſque jus Stavriæ*, and, *Hic eſt Pes Imperii*. But *Scriverius* ſays, the Word *Stavria* denotes a Tribute that was paid through the *Roman* Empire, of which *Nimeguen* was then the Boundary on that Side; which is confirmed by the Chronicle of *Bohemia*, where the General Tax is called by that Name: And in ſeveral Places of *Germany*, the Tax for ſupporting the War againſt the *Turks*, and in the old Laws of the *Francs*, an Impoſt for clearing the Roads of Highwaymen, is called by the ſame Word. *Staveren* is ſaid to derive its Name from *Stavo*, a Log of Wood, which the Pagan *Frizons* worſhip'd under the Notion of *Jupiter*. 'Tis alſo recorded, That the Mouth of the River *Flevus* was anciently near this Town; and that about 1250, there was a Paſſage almoſt by Land from this City through a great Forreſt to *Enchuyſen* in *North-Holland*, which is now a Road for Ships. About a Quarter of a League from *Staveren*, into the Sea, there's ſtill to be ſeen, a little under Water, the Ruins of an old Monaſtery, which the Mariners carefully avoid. This is another Proof that the *Zuyder-Sea* has been form'd by ſucceſſive Inundations, of which *Staveren* it ſelf is an Inſtance; the greateſt Part of the Old Town being thus ſwallowed up; ſo that at preſent 'tis reduced chiefly to two Rows of Houſes on each Side of a ſmall River, over which there are ſeveral Wooden Bridges. The Streets are kept very neat, and the Water penn'd up by Sluces, to let it out or in on Occaſion. They have ſtill ſome Trade, eſpecially in Fiſhing, and Paſſage Boats over the Pools and Lakes of the neighbourhood. 'Tis fortified with a good Ditch and Rampart, and govern'd by its own Magiſtrates. 'Twas formerly the 3d of the Hans-Towns, and ſo powerful, ſays *Ubbo Emmius*, that in 1335 it wag'd War with *Hamburg* and *Lubeck*.

11. *Kuyndeſchans*, lies on the *Zuyder-Sea*, 15 Miles S E. from *Staveren*, on the Mouth of the River *Kuynder*. 'Tis an ancient Village, which enjoys the Privilege of Trade, is ſtrongly fortified with 5 good Bulwarks, and has another Fortification in the Neighbourhood called *Slykenburg*, which lies at the Conflux of two Rivers.

The Iſlands of *Ameland* and *Schiermonikoege*, on the N. of this Province, are not deſcrib'd, being inconſiderable, and having only 6 or 7 Villages upon them. M. *de Fer* reckons in the whole Province 11 Cities, 480 Villages, and 2 Iſlands.

Having finiſhed the 7 United Provinces, we come to their Conqueſts in *Flanders* and *Brabant*.

DUTCH BRABANT,

HAS the Province of *Holland* and *Dutch Guelderland* on the N. *Spaniſh Brabant* and the Biſhoprick of *Liege* on the S. *Zealand* on the W. Part of the Dutchy of *Cleve* and *Spaniſh Guelderland* on the E. *Moll* makes it 55 Miles from E. to W. and the greateſt Breadth 31 from S. to N.

The chief PLACES *are*,

1. *Breda*, 8 Miles S. from *Gertrudenberg*, about 20 Miles W. from *Boiſleduc*, and 25 N. E. from *Antwerp*. 'Tis a large, well built, populous, and very ſtrong City, encompaſſed with thick Walls and Mounts of Earth, two Trenches full of Water, one of 'em very broad and deep; ſo that 'tis reckoned one of the ſtrongeſt Towns in the *Netherlands*. Dr. *Brown* ſays, it has a large Ditch round the Counterſcarp, a Ravelin betwixt each Baſtion join'd to the Rampart on the inſide of the Ditch, beſides a good Number of Half-Moons and Horn-Works, and a Parapet, ſtrengthen'd with a double Row of Elms. 'Tis ſubject to the *Dutch* Commonwealth, but without any Share in the Government: Yet it pays its ancient Quota to the Support of the Union. The Lordſhip of it belongs to the Family of *Orange*, having been annexed to the Family of *Naſſau* by Marriage above 300 Years ago, together with the Barony, which contains 17 Villages. It ſtands on the Rivers *Had* and *Merk*, in a pleaſant Country, abounding with Arable Land, intermix'd with Meadows, Paſtures, and Copſes. The Palace, belonging to the Family of *Naſſau*, is a handſome Structure, with a pleaſant Garden between the Body of the Town and the Works. Prince *Henry* built another in the

Digitized by Google

the Citadel, in the Form of a Caſtle, after the Antick Way, with a noble Portico and handſome Gallery. It has alſo a fine Garden, where the Box-work is extreme curious. The great Church, with its Tower, are ancient and ſtately Structures. In the Side-Iſle of the Quire, there's the Tomb of Prince *Henry* I. having the Effigies of himſelf and his Princeſs at length on a Marble Baſe, and a Marble Canopy over them, ſupported by 4 ancient Heroes kneeling, and Latin Inſcriptions at the Corners, comparing him to *Julius Caſar* for Valour and Fortitude, and to *Attilius Regulus* for Magnanimity. There are ſeveral other Inſcriptions in the Church relating to the Revolutions of the Town, particularly to the taking of it by *Spinola* in 1634, and the retaking of it by Pr. *Frederick Henry* in 1637. 'Tis noted for the Treaty to reſtore King *Charles* II. of *Great Britain*, and his Declaration from thence to his Subjects. Some ſay, the Union of *Utrecht* was likewiſe concluded here. 'Twas ſurpris'd by the *Spaniards*, who had a Correſpondence with ſome Papiſts in the Town, in 1581; but retaken in 1590, 80 Soldiers being convey'd under a Load of Turf into the Caſtle. 'Twas afterwards beſieged in 1624 by *Spinola* with 30000 Men, who ſurrounded it with ſuch incredible Works, that 'twas not poſſible for Pr. *Maurice* to relieve it; ſo that almoſt after a Year's Siege 'twas forc'd to ſurrender by Famine. During the Time, the Garriſon had rais'd ſuch Fortifications, as made it one of the ſtrongeſt Cities in the World. 'Twas retaken after an obſtinate Defence by Pr. *Frederick* in 1637. The firſt Prince of the Houſe of *Orange*, who had Poſſeſſion of it about 1400, eſtabliſh'd an Academy here, with Profeſſors of the 4 Faculties, for the Inſtruction of Youth.

2. *Boiſleduc*, *S. Hertogen Boſch*, Lat. *Sylva Ducis*, and commonly *Boſch*, lies 20 Miles E. from *Breda*, on the Banks of the *Dromele*; which receiving there the *Aade* and the *Dieſe*, falls into the *Maeſe* at *Crevecaur*, about 4 Miles N. from thence. It had its Name from a neighbouring Wood, where the Dukes of *Brabant* us'd to hunt; which being cut down by D. *Godfrey* in his March againſt the *Gueldriens* in 1172, the Town was then built, and walled about 1196, having been ſince much enlarged. It ſtands on a riſing Ground in the middle of Fens, of a great Extent, in moſt Places unpaſſible, and always overflow'd in Winter, which makes it of very difficult Acceſs, there being no coming to it but by Cawſeys made on purpoſe, half a Mile long. 'Tis of a triangular Form, and has 7 large Bulwarks, which make it 7660 Paces in Compaſs. It has ſeveral Canals, which bring up Veſſels of good Burthen into the City. 'Tis encompaſſed by a ſtrong Wall and a deep Trench. The Avenues are commanded by ſeveral Forts, and the Citadel commands one Side of the Town, and the Country towards *Bommel*; ſo that 'tis reckon'd almoſt impregnable. There are 51 Stone Bridges, and 38 Wooden ones, for publick Uſe over their Canals, and as many others belonging to private Families. It has a ſpacious Market-Place, encompaſſed with fair Buildings; and there are 10 broad Streets which center in it. The Houſes in general are not ſo well built as thoſe in *Holland*; but they have a ſtately Town-Houſe, built after the Model of that of *Amſterdam*. The Church of St. *John*, formerly a Cathedral, is ſplendid and ſumptuous; in the Quire of which are the Arms of many of the Knights of the *Golden Fleece*, and over their Seats an Account of their Inſtitution, in Subſtance thus: "The moſt High and "Mighty Prince *Philip*, call'd *The Good*, by "the Grace of GOD, Duke of *Burgundy*, "*Lorrain*, and *Brabant*, did in 1429, in the "City of *Bruges*, in Imitation of *Gideon*, "inſtitute to the Honour of GOD and "the Virgin, and for the Sake of St. *An-"drew*, Patron of *Burgundy*, a Society of "Honourable Knights, into which might "be received Emperors, Kings, Dukes, "Marqueſſes, and other Perſonages, his "own Subjects or Foreigners, provided "they were of Noble Blood and good "Fame, to be called Knights of the *Golden "Fleece*; and the lawful D. of *Burgundy*, "if poſſeſſed of the *Low Countries*, to be "their perpetual Chief. They were to be "only 24 in Number, including the Chief, "with a Chancellor, a Treaſurer, a Secre-"tary, and King at Arms: And for their "Regulation, he made ſeveral Ordinances. The Town was the firſt, as appears by their Inſtrument given in to the States in 1651, for being admitted as a Governing Member

of

of the Union, that own'd their Zeal by countenancing the preaching of the Proteſtant Religion, and ſeiz'd the Chancellor of *Brabant*, and another Grandee, ſent thither by the Governeſs to hinder it; for which, in 1587, they were proſcrib'd, and the Proteſtants forc'd to leave the Country, upon the Prince of *Orange*'s Retreat. From that Time they were oppreſſed by the *Spaniards*, till reſcued by the *Germans*. In 1576, they ſign'd the *Pacification of Ghent*. In 1578, they ſwore the Peace of Religion, and in 1579 embrac'd the Union of *Utrecht*. 'Twas after taken by the Pr. of *Parma*, when the Proteſtants were again baniſh'd. Pr. *Maurice* beſieg'd it in vain in 1601; but Prince *Henry Frederick* retook it after an obſtinate Siege. The Mareſchal *Turenne* inveſted it in 1672, but ſoon after rais'd the Siege. Their Government is by two Prætors, who are generally Perſons of Noble Deſcent, the one for Civil, and the other for Criminal Affairs. They are aſſiſted by Eſchevins and a Common-Council; but there lies an Appeal from this, and all the other *Dutch* Cities in *Brabant*, to the Tribunal inſtituted for that End at the *Hague* in 1591, conſiſting of 7 Senators, a Secretary, a Treaſurer, and Attorney-General, who finally determine all Cauſes relating to *Dutch Brabant*. For Cardinal *Enckevondius*, and other Learned Men born here, we refer to *Bleau*. Their chief Trade is in making Needles, excellent Knives, and in Woollen and Linen Cloth. The Inhabitants are courteous, and of a more Martial Temper than any of their Neighbours. This City has a large Juriſdiction, comprehending *Campin*, *Peeland*, *Maefland*, the Diſtrict of *Oſterwick*, and the Towns of *Helmont*, *Eindhoven*, *Megen*, *Raveſtein*, and *Grave*.

Boxtel, 6 Miles S. from *Boiſleduc*, and of great Importance, becauſe it commands the Sluces which keep in and let out the Waters all over the neighbouring Country.

Helmont, or *Helmond*, 19 Miles S. E. from *Boiſleduc*, is a good wall'd Town, Capital of that call'd the *Peeland*, lies on the River *Aa*, and is noted for the Birth of the learned *Andreas Helwondanus*.

Eindhoven, a wall'd Town on the *Dommel*, about 9 Miles S. W. from *Helmont*, is the Capital of the Diſtrict of *Campin*, has a Church dedicated to St. *Katharine*, and a College of Canons belonging to it. 'Tis the Capital of the Diſtrict called *Campinland*.

Megen, a handſome Town on the *Maes*, 11 Miles N. E. from *Boiſleduc*, which gives Title to an Earldom, and has a Juriſdiction of good Extent.

Raveſtein, on the *Maes*, 4 Miles S. E. from *Megen*, is a neat Town with a good Caſtle, and a pretty large Juriſdiction. 'Twas formerly a Place of Strength; but the Fortifications demoliſhed by Agreement betwixt *Charles* V. and the D. of *Cleve*.

3. *Grave*, on the *Maes*, 4 Miles E. from *Raveſtein*, and 16 N. E. from *Boiſleduc*, a Town very ſtrong by Situation and Art, and of great Importance, becauſe it commands a conſiderable Paſs on the *Maes*, whoſe Waters fill the Trenches that encompaſs its Bulwarks. On the other Side, there's a great Marſh always full of Water, which makes the Town unacceſſible that Way. 'Tis beſides exceedingly well fortified with Ravelins, a Counterſcarp, Pallizado, and a great Horn-work, ſecur'd by a Cover'd-way. The Town of it ſelf is very neat and pleaſant, and eſteem'd the ſtrongeſt and eaſieſt to be defended in the *Netherlands*. It had formerly a Collegiate Body of Canons belonging to St. *Elizabeth*. The Lordſhip of it belongs to the Family of *Orange*, one of whoſe Anceſtors purchas'd the Fee-Farm of it of the Crown of *Spain*. 'Tis Capital of the Earldom of *Cuyck*, which is about 4 Miles long, and 1½ broad, and contains about 17 Villages. The Country adjacent to this Town is low, and conſiſts chiefly of Meadows and Paſturage. In 1586, 'twas by the Cowardice of the Governor ſurrender'd to the Pr. of *Parma*; and in 1602, recover'd again by Pr. *Maurice*. In 1672, 'twas treacherouſly ſurrender'd to the *French*, who fortified it ſtrongly, and made it one of their Store-houſes for Plunder. In 1674, the Pr. of *Orange* retook it after a Siege of 4 Months, the Garriſon being reduced to eat Horſe-Fleſh, and there being a great Breach made in the Cover'd-way. 'Tis ſaid, that 100000 great Shot were ſpent on both Sides; that the *French* loſt 2000 Men, and the *Dutch* 5000: Yet they reckoned the taking it of ſuch Importance, that they appointed a Day of Thankſgiving for it. Their Government is by a Judge and Scout,

Digitized by Google

Scout, 2 Conſuls, and 7 Eſchevins, that were Annually appointed by the Prince of *Orange*. They have alſo a Common-Council of 8, whoſe Advice they take in Matters of great Concernment. They enjoy great Immunities, and particularly an Exemption from moſt ſorts of Impoſts in the neighbouring Provinces.

4. *Bergenopzoom*, ſometimes called only *Bergen*, and in Latin *Berga*, or *Montes ad Zoiam*. It has its Name from its high Situation on the River *Zoom*. It lies 16 Miles S. W. from *Breda*. 'Twas formerly a Barony, but afterwards made a Marquiſate by the Emperor *Charles* V. 'Twas likewiſe a Place of good Trade, till its Commerce was engroſſed by *Antwerp*, which lies 17 Miles S. E. from it. 'Tis ſeated conveniently between *Brabant*, *Flanders*, *Holland*, and *Zealand*. The greateſt Part of the adjacent Country lies very low, and is made habitable only by Banks. It ſecures the Intercourſe betwixt *Holland* and *Zealand*, and opens the Way into *Spaniſh Brabant*. Its Harbour is pretty commodious, defended by 2 Forts and a Half-Moon, 4 Redoubts, and another Fortification; ſo that it can eaſily be relieved by Sea. The Town it ſelf is exceeding ſtrong; for beſides the Wall and Trench, it has Half-Moons, Horn-Works, and other Fortifications. The Buildings are neat and handſome. It has 3 Market-Places; and that called the Great Market is very capacious. Its principal Buildings are, St. *Lambert*'s Church, and the Marquiſſes Palace. They had formerly a Nunnery, which is now made an Hoſpital. The Town was in Poſſeſſion of the *Spaniards* at the Beginning of the Civil War; but upon a Mutiny, deliver'd to the *Dutch*. The D. of *Parma* endeavour'd to recover it in 1588, but in vain, 'twas ſo ſtoutly defended by the *Engliſh* Auxiliaries. In 1622, *Spinola* laid Siege to it, and attack'd it furiouſly; but Pr. *Maurice* oblig'd him to raiſe the Siege with the Loſs of about 12000 Men. The Garriſon fir'd 200000 great Shot at the *Spaniards*. The Arch-Dutcheſs *Iſabella* in a few Years after fortified *Santvliet*, and raiſed other Works in the Shallows near and upon the *Scheld*: Upon which the States ſuſpecting that theſe Things portended another Siege, they thought of making this Town ſo ſtrong, that it ſhould not be eaſily taken. In 1628, they made a Communication between *Steenbergen* and this Place by a Channel, which united and made paſſable the 3 Marſhes betwixt 'em. They alſo erected ſtrong Forts in ſuch Places as they found requiſite; and the Sluce near *Steenbergen* was well fortified, becauſe thereby the neighbouring Fields might be quickly overflown, and ſo the harraſſing of the Land of *Tolen*, and the laying cloſe Siege to *Bergen* on that Side, prevented; for it was ſuppoſed tenable enough on the S. Side by its own Works and Fortifications. The Marquiſate of *Bergenopzoom*, with its Appendances, was reſtored to the Count of *Auvergne*, by the Peace of *Nimeguen* in 1678.

5. *Steenbergen* lies near the Sea, about 4 M. from *Bergenopzoom*, is a ſmall Town, that was taken by the *Spaniards* without any Difficulty in 1622, in order to proſecute the Siege of *Bergenopzoom*; and after the raiſing of that Siege, was with as much Eaſe retaken by Prince *Maurice*. In 1627, it was ſtrengthen'd with new Ramparts and Bulwarks, ſeveral Redoubts and ſmall Forts in the adjoining Part of the Country, and united to *Bergen* by the Canal above mentioned for their mutual Defence. The firſt Fort ſtands in a Place called *Sanſtract*, from its ſandy Soil, is about 180 Geometrical Rods in Circuit. The 2d, which is of the ſame Compaſs, lies cloſe upon the Sand-Hills, in the middle between the other two. The 3d is the largeſt, being 220 Rods in Circumference, with a Horn-Work and Half-Moon. The *Spaniards* drew Forces together to hinder the Proceeding of this Work, but in vain, for it was cover'd by the Pr. of *Orange*.

6. *Santvliet* is 8 M. S. from *Bergenopzoom*, was begun by the *Spaniards* in 1627, with ſome other Forts in the Neighbourhood, in order to attack *Lillo*. They made it very ſtrong, and it continued in their Hands after the taking of the other neighbouring Places. It was taken in 1705 by the Confederates, when the Forces under Command of the D. of *Marlborough* forc'd the *French* Lines, by which they had made this Place very ſtrong on the Side of the Land; but 'twas diſmantled by the Confederates.

7. *Lillo* on the *Scheld*, 9 M. N. W. from *Antwerp*, and 4 S. from *Santvliet*. It was

Digitized by Google

fortified and garriſon'd by the Citizens of *Antwerp* about 1584, to ſecure the Paſſage of the River, and made ſo ſtrong during the Siege of that City, that the *Spaniards*, after they became Maſters of *Antwerp*, could not take it, but were repulſed from before it with the Loſs of 2000 Men. It has continued in Poſſeſſion of the *Dutch* ever ſince; is now enlarged to a pretty little Town, and reckon'd much ſtronger ſince its Harbour was choak'd up. It has a Right of demanding Toll upon the *Scheld*, and, with ſome other Forts in Poſſeſſion of the *Dutch*, curbs the Trade of *Antwerp*.

Theſe two Places are not properly in *Dutch Brabant*; but ſince they adjoin to it, and are under their Subjection, we chuſe to deſcribe them here, thô they be Part of the Marquiſate of the Holy Empire.

Betwixt this Town and *Santvliet*, there lies alſo a ſtrong Fort for the further Security of *Lillo*, called by the Name of *Henry Frederick*.

DUTCH FLANDERS,

Lies S. of *Zealand*, from which 'tis ſeparated by the *Scheld*. 'Tis 31 Miles long, and 13 where broadeſt.

The chief PLACES *are*,

1. *Sluys*, about 5 Miles N. E. from *Bruges*, and 13 N. E. from *Oſtend*. It has a very large Harbour, capable of containing 500 Ships. 'Tis one of the ſtrongeſt Frontier Towns belonging to the States, and was formerly a Place of good Trade, which is now much decay'd. 'Tis extremely well fortified, and has always a good Garriſon. 'Twas taken by the D. of *Parma* in 1587, but retaken by Pr. *Maurice* in 1604. After which he fortified it with great Care, becauſe of its Importance.

2. *Ardenburg*, within a League of *Sluys* to the S. E. formerly the Capital of Maritime *Flanders*; but fell to Decay after the Removal of the Trade to *Bruges*. 'Twas taken by the *Dutch* in 1604, and made ſuch a brave Defence againſt the *French* in 1672, that it repulſed them with the Loſs of 1200 Men, tho' then but ill fortified.

3. *Middleburg*, a ſmall Town 4 Miles S. E. from *Sluys*.

4. *Sas van Ghent*, a very ſtrong Place among Marſhes, 11 Miles N. from *Ghent*. It has Sluces by which they can lay the Country under Water in a little Time. It has been in Poſſeſſion of the *Dutch* ever ſince 1644.

5. *Hulſt*, in that called the Country of *Waes*, a very ſtrong Town, which was taken by the *Dutch* in 1645, and confirmed to them by the Treaty of *Munſter*. 'Tis a Place of good Trade, and lies 9 Miles E. from *Sas van Ghent*.

6. *Axel*, about a League W. from *Hulſt*, was formerly only an open Town; but afterwards fortified by thoſe of *Ghent*. *Philip the Good*, D. of *Burgundy*, diſmantled it in 1452. 'Twas fortified by the *Dutch* during the *Spaniſh* War, and has ſince continued in their Poſſeſſion.

7. *Lieſkens*, on the Bank of the *Scheld*, over againſt *Lillo*, is a Fort which was rais'd by the States to ſecure the Paſſage of the *Scheld*.

8. *Ter-Neuſe*, a Place well fortified on the Bank of the *Scheld*, about 6 Miles N. from *Axel*.

9. *Philippin*, 4 Miles N. W. from *Sas van Ghent*, was a Fortreſs built by Order of *Philip* II. of *Spain*, about the Beginning of the laſt Century.

10. *Bier Vliet*, a little Iſland in the Mouth of a Branch of the *Scheld*, with a Town of the ſame Name, 4 Miles N. W. from *Philippin*. 'Tis a very important Fortreſs, becauſe it commands the Paſſage from that Part of the Country into *Zealand*.

11. *Iſendyck*, lies above 2 Miles W. from *Bier Vliet*, on the other Side of the Canal, is a little Town well fortified.

12. *Oſburg*, on the Canal which ſeparates the Iſle of *Cadſant* from the Continent, is alſo a fortified Town.

13. *Cadſant*, an Iſland in the Mouth of the *Scheld*, over-againſt the Iſle of *Walcheren* in *Zealand*, is 9 Miles long, and 4 broad. It has a Fortreſs of the ſame Name of great Conſequence to the *Dutch*, becauſe it preſerves the Communication between *Zealand* and *Flanders*. This Iſland produces very good Wheat and Graſs.

DUTCH

Digitized by Google

DUTCH LIMBURG,

THE *Dutch* poſſeſs in this Country, which is ſeparated from *Dutch Brabant* by Part of the Biſhoprick of *Liege*, ſays *La Foreſt*, the Counties of *Falkenburg*, or *Fauquemont*, *Dalem*, and *Rolduc*. Some pretend that theſe never belong'd properly to the Dutchy of *Limburg*, but were only annex'd to it.

The chief PLACES *are*,

1. *Fauquemont*, or *Falkenburg*, on the *Gutle*, about 8 Miles N. E. from *Maeſtricht*, and 19 W. from *Juliers*. 'Tis a large and neat Town, was formerly well fortified, and had a ſtrong Caſtle. 'Twas taken by the *French* in 1672, who made it much ſtronger; but being obliged to reſtore it by the Treaty of *Nimeguen*, they diſmantled it.

2. *Dalem*, on the *Berin*, 9 Miles S. W. from *Falkenburg*, and 7 S. E. from *Maeſtricht*. 'Tis a ſmall Town, with an ancient Caſtle. It had formerly Earls of its own, who had a large Territory. It came afterwards to the Dukes of *Brabant*. The *French* took it in 1672, demoliſhed the Fortifications, and reſtored it to the *Dutch* by the Treaty of *Nimeguen*.

3. *Rolduc*, on the E. Side of the Country, lies on the Frontiers of *Juliers*, 5 Miles N. from *Aix la Chapelle*, and 10 S. E. from *Falkenburg*, is a ſmall Town, Capital of its County, and defended by an old Caſtle.

4. *Maeſtricht*, lies on the Frontiers of this Dutchy; therefore we chuſe to deſcribe it here, tho' it be commonly reckon'd Part of *Dutch Brabant*. It ſtands on the W. Side of the River *Maes*, 11 Miles N. from *Liege*, 18 N. W. from *Aix la Chapelle*, 28 W. from *Juliers*, and 33 E. from *Louvain*. It has its Name from its Paſſage over the *Maes*, which runs through one Side of it. The leſſer Part on the E. Side, called *Wiick*, belongs to the Biſhop of *Liege*; but he leaves the Military Government of it to the *Dutch*. 'Tis a very ancient City. St. *Servatius* tranſported hither the Biſhop's See from *Tongeren*. There is a Church here dedicated to that Saint, where they have many Relicks, and of which the Kings of *Spain* were formerly Canons. It has three *Dutch* Churches, and one in common to the *Engliſh* and *French*. The City is about 4 Miles in Circuit, and has two Monaſteries of both Sexes, the Papiſts being allowed the Freedom of Religion here. The Stone Bridge, which joins the two Parts of the City, conſiſts of 9 Arches, and is remarkable for its Beauty and Uſefulneſs. This City has been of late much enlarged, and advanced in its Trade. The Streets are large, the Houſes of Brick, well built, and cover'd with Slate, ſince it came into the Hands of the *Dutch*; but the old Buildings come ſhort of the modern. They have alſo a neat Stadthouſe, reſembling that of *Amſterdam*. The City is ſtrongly fortified, encompaſſed with a good Wall and a Ditch, with ſeveral Outworks, after the modern Way; and a very high Baſtion on the S. E. Side, to cover the Town from a Hill that would otherwiſe command it. On the Top of that Hill there ſtands an old Caſtle. It revolted from *Spain* with the reſt of the Provinces, and was beſieged by the Pr. of *Parma* in 1579, when it made a brave Defence, and repulſed the *Spaniards* in two bloody Attacks; but at laſt, the Garriſon being wearied out, a Detachment of *Spaniards* ſtole over the Works by Night, and having killed the Guard, which they found aſleep, they were ſoon followed by others, and became Maſters of the Town, which, tho' then under Treaty with them, they almoſt diſpeopled by their Cruelty and Rapine, ſo that 'twas a long Time before it could recover. 'Twas retaken by the Pr. of *Orange* in 1632, and continued in Poſſeſſion of the States till 1673, when 'twas taken by the *French* King in Perſon after 13 Days open Trenches; when having maſter'd all the Outworks, the Garriſon and Burgers forc'd the Governor to ſurrender upon advantagious Terms. He was much obliged for the taking of this Town to the Valour of the *Engliſh* and *Scots*, who were then in his Service under the late Duke of *Monmouth*. The *French* King put a ſtrong Garriſon into it, and added 6 Baſtions to its Fortifications. The Prince of *Orange* attempted to retake it with an Army of 30000 Men in 1676; but the *French* approaching with a

Digitized by Google

greater Army to relieve it, he was oblig'd to raiſe the Siege; ſo that 'twas not reſtored to the *Dutch* till the Treaty of *Nimeguen*. That Part called the *Wiick*, on the E. Side the River, is reckon'd ſtronger than the Town. The *French* attempted this City in 1703; but were prevented by the late Lord *Auverquerque*, who commanded part of the Confederate Army in the Neighbourhood.

Within Cannon-ſhot of the Town, there's a Quarry of ſo extraordinary a Nature, as deſerves a particular Deſcription. It lies in a Hill on the Bank of the *Maes*, where there are 25 Fathoms of Rock and Earth over Head. The Hill is ſome Miles in Length, lies along the River towards *Liege*, is in ſome Places half a Mile broad, and in others three quarters. The Quarry has an Entrance towards the River, where Carts come with great Eaſe, and unload the Stones for Tranſportation, the Quarry lying level with the Bank of the River. The whole Hill being almoſt undermin'd, affords the moſt ſurprizing Proſpect that can be imagin'd, to thoſe who enter it with Torch-light: For there are Thouſands of ſquare Pillars in large level Walks, moſt of 'em above 20 Foot high, and others much higher, all cut with ſo much Neatneſs and Regularity, that it looks more like the Contrivance of curious Architects for an Under-ground Palace, than the Work of common Quarriers, to ſupport the Earth over them while they dig out the Stone. This Quarry ſerves the People of the Neighbourhood as an impregnable Retreat for themſelves and their beſt Effects when Armies march that Way, for there is Room in it for above 40000 People; and thoſe who ſhould attempt to ſeek them out in it, run a Hazard of being knock'd on the Head, or kill'd by their Fire-Arms, from the Multitudes of the Turnings and Windings amidſt the Rows of Pillars. The Curious may ſee more of this in our *Philoſophical Tranſactions*, N° 79.

CHAP.

Digitized by Google

CHAP. XXIX.

The SPANISH NETHERLANDS.

FOR the Countries which make up the Dominions of this Name, we refer to *Sanſon*'s Diviſion of the 17 Provinces, *P.* 856. They are called ſo, becauſe of their continuing under that Crown.

The General Deſcription we have given of the *Netherlands*, agrees to theſe Provinces as well as to the reſt; ſo that all we have to add is, That the Air of the *Spaniſh* Provinces is cold, but very healthful; That they have no Wine of their own Growth, but excellent Beer; That their Native Fuel is Turf. They have ſome Wood of their own from the Forreſt of *Soignies*, and are ſupplied with what further they have occaſion for from the Forreſt of *Ardenne*, which belongs to *France*; from whence, and from *Germany*, they are furniſhed with Wine.

The Inhabitants are call'd *Flemmings*, from one of the Provinces, ſays *La Forreſt*; but he does not tell us which. Their Cuſtoms are a Mixture of *German* and *French*: From the latter, they have their Gaiety and Civility; and from the former, according to the ſame Author, for which his own Country is not much oblig'd to him, they have their *Sincerity*, and Inclination to good Cheer. He adds, That they are handſome and well ſhap'd; That their Women for Beauty are inferior to none in *Europe*, and they take Care to improve it. Their Religion is Popiſh, which he ſays they profeſs with greater Purity than in moſt other Places. They have a Court of Inquiſition, which is more moderate than formerly, becauſe of the Revolt it occaſioned.

Their Government is by a Vice-Roy or Governor-General, under the K. of *Spain*. The laſt appointed by that Crown was the late Elector of *Bavaria*, who ſtill has the Title under the D. of *Anjou*, to whom he betray'd them. But tho' moſt of the Provinces be reconquer'd by the Confederate Arms for King *Charles* III. there is no Governor-General as yet nam'd by that Prince.

The Governor-General is aſſiſted by three Councils: The 1ſt is that called the *Council of State*, where the Affairs of Peace and War, Leagues and Alliances, are tranſacted, and from whom, with the Governor, the Miniſters they ſend to Foreign Courts have their Diſpatches. This Council was appointed after the Revolt of the *Dutch*, thoſe Matters being formerly managed by the Privy Council. It conſiſts of a Preſident, and ſuch a Number of Counſellors as the King thinks fit. 2. The *Privy Council*, which conſiſts of a Preſident and 12 Counſellors, nam'd by the King, or the Vice-Roy by his Order. Their Preſident is Keeper of the Great Seal. Here they determine Appeals from other Courts, adminiſter Juſtice, grant Privileges, give Pardons, iſſue Edicts and Ordonnances, determine the Boundaries of Provinces, and decide all Controverſies about the Right of Lordſhip and Dominion, both with Relation to the King and Subjects. Theſe two Councils adviſe with one another upon Occaſion. 3. The *Council of Finances*, or of the Revenues, ſays *Guicciardin*, conſiſts of 3 Superintendants, a Treaſurer, a Receiver-General, 3 Commiſſaries, 2 Secretaries, and inferior Officers. They take Care of the Prince's Domain, of Taxes and Subſidies, call the ordinary Receivers to an Account, take Care of the Fortifications,

Digitized by Google

tions, adjuſt the Charges of War, and farm out the Revenues.

Subject to them is the Chamber of Accounts, conſiſting of a Preſident and 7 Members, to whom all Treaſurers and Receivers of the Revenue in the ſeveral Provinces give in their Accounts. All theſe Councils follow the Court, as does the Grand Provoſt, who carries a red Wand as an Emblem of Juſtice. There are Provoſts under him in every Province; but his Power is extended over all; and his Buſineſs is, with the Aſſiſtance of a Comptroller, to paſs Sentence upon Robbers, Murderers, and Vagabonds. There's likewiſe a great Council or Tribunal at *Melins*, which judges Affairs in the laſt Reſort upon Appeal from the other Provinces. They make uſe of the Civil and Canon Law, except where they are oppoſite to the Edicts of the Prince, and the Laws of the Country. There's a Court of the ſame Nature in every Province, with a Preſident, and 12 or 18 Counſellors, who paſs Sentence not only relating to the Officers of the Prince in their reſpective Provinces, but alſo with Matters relating to the Prince himſelf upon a legal Accuſation: But from them there lies an Appeal to the Council of *Melins*, except in *Brabant* and *Hainault*, where the Sentence of thoſe Courts is definitive.

Every Province has a Governor appointed by the King, but ſubject to the Vice-Roy. They have a limited Power with relation to the Affairs of the Countries, eſpecially in Matters of War. There are Commiſſioners Annually diſpatched to the principal Cities of each Province, to enquire into all Things relating to the Intereſt of the Prince; and in *Brabant*, their Power extends by a Privilege from the Pope to Eccleſiaſtical Perſons and Things.

They have alſo an Admiral, who commands in Chief at Sea, has a Share of all Prizes taken in War; and without his Approbation, no Licence given by the Vice-Roy or the King, to export and import prohibited Goods, is valid. In ſhort, at this Court they have all the uſual Officers that are found at the Courts of any Prince in *Europe*.

Theſe Provinces abound with Nobility, ſeveral of whom have the Title of Princes, Dukes, Marquiſſes, *&c.* which we cannot inſiſt upon. Their chief Order of Knighthood is that of the *Golden Fleece*, of which we have already given an Account. They had at firſt a Scarlet Robe; but *Charles the Hardy* chang'd it into Silk at a Chapter held at *Valenciennes*, where he aſſign'd them a Collar of Gold, with a Piece of Steel interlac'd, which ſeem'd to ſtrike Fire out of a Flint. At the End of the Collar hangs the Golden Fleece, with this Motto, *Pretium non vile Laboris*; *i. e.* A Reward ſuitable to the Merit. And the Steel and Flint have this Motto, *Ante ferit quam Flamma micet*; i. e. You muſt ſtrike before you can have Fire. The Knights at firſt were but 25; but *Charles* V. made them 50, who muſt all be Men of Quality, and ſuch as in *Spain* are called Grandees.

The chief Government is in the Convention of Eſtates, which is call'd by the Vice-Roy in the King's Name, when Money is to be levy'd, Laws enacted, or other great Matters taken into Conſideration. They uſually meet at *Bruſſels*, becauſe 'tis the Seat of the Government; and the *Brabanters* have a ſpecial Privilege, That they cannot be ſummoned out of their own Province; nor can thoſe of *Luxemburg* and *Guelders*, except on ſome extraordinary Occaſion; and therefore their States uſually meet at home. This Aſſembly, ſays *d'Avity*, is made up of the Clergy, Nobility, and the Deputies of the chief Cities. They meet not all together, but by Provinces; and ſince the Revolt under the D. of *Alva*, the Prince's Propoſals are made to them, according to their old Conſtitution, in very obliging Terms. If they refuſe to conſent, the Miniſtry make uſe of the beſt Arguments they can to bring 'em to it; which if they cannot effect, the Matter is referr'd to another Opportunity; for the Diſſent of any one City prevents the paſſing the Reſolve into a Law: And, as *Bentivoglio* ſays, the Prince had never the abſolute Diſpoſal of thoſe People's Purſes, it being the ancient Cuſtom for them to deſire only what was needful for his Occaſions; the frequent Denial of which ſhew'd, that the granting of it was in the People's free Will.

The Power of theſe Provinces was very great under the laſt Dukes of the Houſe of *Burgundy*, who were able to raiſe 100000 Men upon Occaſion, and kept *France* in awe;

Digitized by Google

awe: But 'tis much decay'd since the Revolt of the *Dutch*, as is also their Revenue and Trade. The former, before that Revolt, was reckon'd at 3000000 of Crowns *per Annum*; which was accounted more than that of any King in *Christendom*, except *France*. In 1550, the States granted to *Charles* V. an Aid called the *Noventel*, or 9th Part of their Revenues, which brought him in 150000 Crowns *per* Month; but since the Revolt under *Philip* II. the Crown of *Spain* has been obliged to send great Sums thither for the Support of the Government: so that 'twas scarce worth while for them to retain those Provinces, had it not been to divert the Arms of *France* from invading the Kingdom of *Spain*.

It appears by the *Roman* Historians, That the *Belgæ*, the chief of the ancient Inhabitants, were a very warlike People, and so savage in *Cæsar*'s Time, that they would admit no Commerce of Wine or any Thing else. Their Temper was plain and sincere; but if provok'd, fierce and untractable. They were eager in Pursuit of Honour, tenacious of their Liberty, fantastical in their Habit, insolent when victorious, and dispirited when beat. They liv'd for most part upon Milk and Flesh, especially that of Hogs, fresh and salt; and lay upon Beds spread on the Ground. They wore Trouses, much like those of the Highland *Scots* and *Irish*, and over them a Jacket with long Sleeves, and the Skirts of their Jackets reach'd to their Buttocks. Some of them had Raiment of several Colours, streak'd with Threads of Gold, and their chief Ornaments were Gold Chains and Bracelets. Their Arms were very long Swords, large Shields and Lances: Some of 'em had Bows and Arrows, and others Slings and Darts. If any one made a Disturbance in their Assemblies, or interrupted another when speaking, if they did not desist upon Admonition, the publick Executioner cut off so large a Piece of his Jacket, as made the rest useless, and himself ridiculous.

D'Avity, *Barclay*, and *Bunn*, give this Character of the modern Inhabitants, That they are for most part handsome enough, strong set, and well proportion'd. They are generally tall, surpass their Neighbours in Stature; but come short of the *Hollanders*, who are more remarkable for Men of an extraordinary Size, as has been mentioned already; to which we shall add the Instance of one *Nicholas* in 1298, of whom Writers say, the largest of his Countrymen seem'd but Dwarfs to him, his Shoe being so large, that 4 Men together could put their Feet in it. They are commonly of a lively Complexion, and their Women fair, who begin to be wrinkled about 30. They are generally chast, thô free in their Conversation, and particularly in their Cups, as well as the Men; yet they are careful in their Houshold Affairs, and many of 'em so much entrusted by their Husbands in Matters of Trade, *&c.* that they grow imperious. The People are great Talkers, Lovers of Novelty; and thô otherwise frugal, are much addicted to Feasting and Carousing, when they are apt to quarrel, which generally occasions another merry Meeting to make up the Difference.

Since the Revolt of the *Dutch*, those of Quality in the *Spanish Netherlands* have affected the *Spanish* Customs, and are more fond of pompous Titles than formerly. The common People live in greater Subjection to their Governors, seem to be fond of the *Spanish* Government, have an Aversion to that of *France*, and not much less to the *Dutch*, of whom they have a natural Jealousy, both upon the Account of their Trade and Religion; so that they do not much care for their Assistance, even when they want it. *Strada* says, they are not much taken with Gifts and kind Offices, which they are apt to forget, as well as Injuries, except they think themselves despised, and then they grow implacable. The *Walloons* do much resemble the *French* in Customs and Language; and *Grotius* says of 'em in general, That as the *Netherlanders* lie between *France* and *Germany*, they partake of the Virtues and Vices of both Nations.

Their Naval Power is much decay'd since the Revolt of the *Dutch*, their only Harbours being *Newport* and *Ostend*, which are neither of 'em extraordinary; nor are *Gravelling* and *Dunkirk*, now in the Hands of the *French*, of much Account.

For their Inventions and Arts, the *Flemings* lay Claim to the teaching of others the Way to make Cloth, Arras, Hangings, Clocks, Watches, and the Perfection of the

Ma-

Mariners Compass; the Invention of which is allow'd them by some, but deny'd them by others. They also claim the Invention of Chariots, Painting with Oil, the making of Pictures and Glass, and the working of Worsteds, Says, Tapestries, and other Stuffs, which they taught the *English* when some of them were drove hither by the D. of *Alva's* Persecution. For their particular Manufactures, we shall take Notice of 'em in the Description of their Towns, and refer the Particulars of their Soil, *&c.* to the Description of the Countries.

Their general Language is the *Low Dutch* or *Flemmish*; but in Part of *Brabant*, *French Flanders*, the Countries of *Namur*, *Artois*, *Hainault*, *Luxemburg*, and quite through the *Ardennes*, they speak a corrupt *French*, which some call *Walloon*, and others *Romant*, as being mix'd with Part of the Language which the *Romans* left in those Provinces. Most of those about Court speak *Spanish*, and the People of Fashion speak good *French*.

Having already described *Dutch Guelderland*, we come next, according to the Course of the Map, to

SPANISH GUELDERLAND,

WHich has *Dutch Brabant* and Part of the Bishoprick of *Liege* on the W. Part of the Dutchy of *Cleve* on the N. Part of the same Dutchy, and of the Electorate of *Cologne*, on the E. and Part of the Dutchy of *Juliers* on the S. The greatest Length from S. to N. is about 35 Miles. The Breadth is unequal, and about 20 where broadest.

The chief TOWNS *are*,

1. *Ruremond*, on the Mouth of the *Roer*, where it falls into the *Maes*, about 25 Miles N. E. from *Maestricht*, and 10 S. W. from *Venlo*. 'Tis a rich and populous Town, its Walls strong, its Situation important, and the Buildings neat. The principal Church is dedicated to the Holy Ghost, and was made a Cathedral by *Philip* II. Here's a large and rich Monastery of *Carthusians*, much taken Notice of by Travellers. The adjacent Country is fertile in Corn, Pasturage, and Fruit. The City was sack'd in the first War with *Spain* by the Prince of *Orange's* Army. 'Twas afterwards recover'd by the *Spaniards*, and retaken from them by the *Dutch* in 1632, when Count *Ernest Casimir* of *Nassau*, Governor of *Friesland*, was kill'd before it. 'Twas restored, together with the Country, to the Crown of *Spain* by the Treaty of *Munster*; and being seiz'd by the *French* upon the Death of *Charles* II. of *Spain*, 'twas surrender'd to the Confederates in 1702. *Bleau* gives an Account of the Learned Men that have been born here.

About 7 Miles N. lies *Kassel*, supposed to be the *Castellum* of *Ptolomy*, and the Metropolis of the *Menapii*. 'Tis now only a large Village on the top of an Hill, subject to its own Lord, and the Capital of its District.

2. *Venlo*, 10 Miles N. from *Ruremond*, on the *Maes*, a populous, trading, and well fortified Town. Their chief Commodities are, Corn, Free-stone, Marble, Brass, and Coal, brought hither from *Germany* by the *Maes*. It revolted from *Spain* during the Government of *Margaret* of *Austria*, who besieg'd it in vain; but it submitted to *Charles* V. in 1543, on Condition that they and the other Cities of *Guelderland* should enjoy their ancient Liberties. It has its Name from its Situation among Fens, and was made a City by *Reynold* D. of *Guelder* in 1343. 'Twas taken by the *Dutch* after it had surrender'd to *Charles* V. retaken by the *Spaniards* in 1636, and was recover'd from the *French* by the D. of *Marlborough* in 1702. 'Tis noted for the Birth of *Goltzius*, the famous Medalist.

3. *Geldre*, which gives Name to the Province, lies about 9 Miles N. E. from *Venlo*. It receives the River *Niers* into its Trenches, lies in the middle of Marshes, and is so well fortified, that 'tis reckon'd one of the strongest Places in the *Netherlands*. It has an ancient Castle, formerly the Seat of its Governors, supposed to have been built by *Wichard*, their first Lord, who erected this Country into a Principality, after the Death of *Charles the Bald*. The Heiress being afterwards married to *Otho* of *Nassau*, who was created Count by the Emperor *Henry* IV. about 1069, one of his Descendants was made Duke by the Emperor *Lewis* of *Bavaria* in 1339; but his Posterity failing, it came to the Count of *Egmont*, who sold it to

Digitized by Google

to *Charles* D. of *Burgundy*, as formerly mentioned; by whose Daughter it came to the House of *Austria*, to whom it continued firm after the Revolt of the other Provinces. It was taken by the *Dutch* in 1532, but retaken by the *Spaniards* in 1536, and recover'd from the *French* by the *Prussians* under General *Lottum* in 1703, after a Blockade of 15 Months. It has several Villages under its Jurisdiction, and has produc'd divers Learned Men, for whom we refer to *Bleau*.

4. *Stralen* lies 5 M. S. W. from *Geldre*, is Capital of a small Territory; and near it lies the Village of *Zant*, supposed to be *Antonin's Sablones* or *Sabulones*.

5. *Wachtendonck*, lies about 6 Miles S. from *Geldre*, on the River *Niers*, is chief of its District, and one of the strongest Towns in the Province, because of the neighbouring Marshes. It revolted from *Spain*, and was besieged 3 Months by Count *Mansfeld* in 1588; to whom 'twas surrender'd by Treachery. 'Twas surpris'd by Count *Lodowick* of *Nassau* in 1600, who marched some Troops over the Ice, which the Garrison had neglected to break. 'Twas taken again by the *Spaniards* in 1605.

6. *Stevenswaert*, 6 Miles S. from *Ruremond* on the *Maes*, a strong Fortress.

FLANDERS,

HAS *Dutch Flanders* on the N. E. the Province of *Artois* and *Picardy* on the S. W. the Sea on the N. W. and *Spanish Brabant* and *Hainault* on the S. E. The greatest Length, taking in that narrow Tract which runs in betwixt the *Artois*, the *Hainault*, and the Archbishoprick of *Cambray*, is, according to *Moll*, 76 Miles; and the greatest Breadth, from *Graveling* to the Frontiers of *Brabant*, is 65.

The ancient Inhabitants of this and the other *Spanish* Provinces, mentioned by the *Romans*, were the *Adustici*, *Nervii*, *Centrones*, *Grudii*, *Levaci*, *Pleumosii*, and *Gravii*; these 5 latter being afterwards called *Suecomi*. For all whose Boundaries, we refer to *P.* 409, and 410, in our Account of Ancient *Germany*. Authors are divided as to the Origin of the Name. Some derive it from the *Dutch* Words *Veld* and *Anderen*, which signify many others, alluding to the *Danes*, *Normans*, and other People who over-run it; as *Germany* had the Name of *Allemannia* from the several Sorts of People that possessed it; but *La Forest*, and other *French* Geographers and Historians, say, 'twas so called from *Flandrina*, Wife to *Liderick* II. Prince of *Buck*, whose Predecessor was made Great Forrester of the Country by *Clotarius* II. of *France* in 621, which is more probable.

This Country is by some reckon'd the richest Piece of Ground in *Christendom*, considering the Goodness of its Soil, the great Number of its Towns and Villages, Rivers and Canals; and is so well inhabited, that the *Spaniards*, who came thither with *Philip* II. took it for one continued Town. The Air is wholesome throughout; but that of the S. Part is reckon'd best. It lies almost upon a Level, is in few Places Hilly; but in no where can be said to be Mountainous. The Soil is generally fruitful; but that Part which lies next the Sea and *France*, exceeds in Fertility most Countries in *Europe*. They purchase great Numbers of Colts from neighbouring Countries, which in a little time are wonderfully improv'd in Shape, Size, and Swiftness, by their excellent Air and Pasture. That called *Flemmish Flanders* has no great store of Wheat, but abounds in good Fruit, Rye, Oats, Beans, Pease, Vetches, Hemp and Flax; by the latter of which they make great Profit of their most barren Ground. That called *French Flanders* produces an extraordinary Quantity of the best Wheat, Madder and Woad, and has as rich Pasturage as any in *Europe*. 'Tis reckon'd to have been for most part cover'd with Wood, till about the 9th Century, and was called the *Coal Forrest*, because of the great Quantity of Charcoal made there; which, *La Forest* says, contributed much to destroy those vast Woods. He adds, That when it came under the *French*, they appointed 6 Forresters to oversee it, and divided it into two Parts; one called *Nemorosa*, from the Woods; and the other *Æstuaria*, because of the Marshes, and frequent Inlets of the Sea by the Mouths of the Rivers, *&c.* And by the Patents granted to those Forresters, they were to secure the Woody Parts against Robbers, and the Coasts against the Northern Pirates.

Digitized by Google

Twas in after-Ages divided into the *Flemmiſh* or *Teutonick*, *French* or *Walloon*, and *Imperial Flanders*. The former was ſo called, becauſe of their Language, and that *Charlemagne* planted 4000 *Saxons* here. This is the largeſt, richeſt, and moſt populous Part, and lies betwixt the *Scheld*, the *Lis*, the *Aa*, and the Ocean. *Walloon Flanders*, ſo called becauſe they ſpoke *French*, is divided from the other by the *Lis*, and reaches to the Frontiers of *France*. *Tournay* and *Douay* were its chief Towns before *Liſle* was built. *Imperial Flanders*, ſo called becauſe it was under the Emperor's Juriſdiction, lies betwixt the *Scheld* and the *Dender*. The chief City is *Aloſt*, whoſe Earls paid Homage to the Emperor.

Their Earls having been famous in Hiſtory, we ſhall give a brief Account of them.

The firſt Forreſter, according to *French* Authors, was *Liderick*, Son to *Salvert* Pr. of *Dijon*, who was appointed by *Clotarius* II. of *France* in 621. He was ſucceeded by 6 others of that Title, till the Time of *Charles the Bald*, who made *Baldwin*, ſirnam'd *Iron-Hand*, their firſt Count about 860. The *Flemmings* ſay, they were the firſt Counts in *Europe*; but that muſt be underſtood of *French* Creation: For it appears by *Selden's Titles of Honour*, Part II. Cap. 1. That there were *Comites* before *Conſtantin's* Time. However, upon this Account the Earls of *Flanders* valued themſelves ſo much, that they deſpiſed the Title of Duke, when their neighbouring Princes aſſum'd it. The Title of Count or Counteſs deſcended to their Poſterity immediately upon the Death of their Predeceſſor, and they were ſolemnly inveſted with the Dignity by the Three Eſtates at *Ghent*, where they and their Subjects ſwore mutually to one another; and the like Ceremony was performed in all the other chief Towns and Caſtles of the Country. Before *Francis* I. of *France* renounc'd the Sovereignty of *Flanders*, they us'd to do Homage both to the Kings of *France* and the Emperor as ſoon as they took Poſſeſſion. They perform'd it to the *French* Kings ſitting on their Throne, came up to them bare Headed, without a Sword, bended their Knee to the Ground, put their Hands betwixt the King's, and ſwore Fealty, according to a Form repeated by the Chancellor of *France*: After which they were admitted to kiſs the King's Cheek, ranked among the Peers, and inveſted with the Marks of the Dignity; but when they did Homage to the Emperor for the County of *Aloſt*, and Country of *Waes*, he demanded no other Ceremony but their Oath, and then admitted them among the Counts of the Empire. When the *French* Kings were crown'd, the Earl of *Flanders*'s Office was to gird on their Sword, and carry it before them: But notwithſtanding this Homage, they had all the Rights of Sovereignty in *Flanders*, and were not obliged to appear in Judgment as other Peers, except their Succeſſion were diſputed, or when their Subjects appealed to the Court of *France* upon Denial of Juſtice by the Earls. But to come to their Hiſtory; *Liderick* I. of *Buck* was ſo called, becauſe he reſided as Forreſter in the Caſtle of *Buck*, now ſaid to be the old Caſtle of *Liſle*. *Liderick* II. one of his Succeſſors, was entruſted by *Charlemagne* to govern the *Saxon* Colony he ſettled in *Flanders*, and died in 808. His Son *Ingebram* ſucceeded, defended the Country againſt the *Huns* and *Vandals*, and died in 824. *Odoacer* his Son enlarged his Dominions, improved the Country, and died in 837. He was the laſt of the Forreſters, and ſucceeded by

1. *Baldwin*, the firſt Earl, call'd *Iron-Hand*, becauſe of his great Strength. He ſerv'd *Charles the Bald* againſt the *Saracens* and *Normans*, married his Daughter *Judith* without his Conſent, for which he was excommunicated by the Pope; but afterwards reconciled to *Charles*, who enlarged his Dominions. He had Wars with the *Normans*, built the Caſtle of *Burgh* in *Bruges* to curb them, and died in 879.

2. *Baldwin* II. his Son, ſucceeded, took Part with his Couſin *Charles the Simple* of *France* againſt the Earl of *Anjou* and other Rebels, had Wars with the *Normans*, was a Prudent and Religious Prince, and died in 918.

3. *Arnold* his Son, by a Daughter of *Elfred* K. of *England*, ſucceeded. He had the Sirname of *Great*, becauſe of his good Qualities, ſignaliz'd his Valour againſt the *Danes*, *Huns*, and *Vandals*, died in 964, and was ſucceeded by his Son

4. *Baldwin* III. to whom he had in his old Age reſign'd the Government by Conſent

Digitized by Google

ſent of the States. He was a valiant Prince, encouraged Trade, ſettled Manufactures, and died univerſally lamented in 961.

5. *Arnold* II. his Son, ſucceeded when very young. *Lotharius* K. of *France* invaded his Country during his Minority, and took from him the Counties of *Bullen*, *Teroenne*, and *St. Paul*. He took Part with *Charles* of *Lorrain* againſt *Hugh Capet*, who uſurp'd the Crown of *France*, was remarkable for his Piety and Juſtice, and died in 988.

6. *Baldwin* IV. his Son, ſirnamed *Goodly Beard*, ſucceeded. The Emperor *Henry* II. made War upon him; but was afterwards reconciled to him, and gave him *Valenciennes* and *Zealand*. He was a brave, learned, and juſt Prince. In his Reign, *Flanders* was ſo afflicted with the Plague, that the Living were ſcarce enow to bury the Dead. He married *Ogina* of *Luxemburg*, who having no Child till the 50th Year of her Age, he order'd a magnificent Tent to be erected for her in the Market-Place of *Arras*, where ſhe was brought to Bed of a Son, in the Preſence of all the Citizens Wives that pleas'd to go in, becauſe her former Barrenneſs had rais'd a Suſpicion, that ſhe deſign'd to impoſe a ſuppoſititious Prince upon 'em. This Son afterwards rebelled againſt his Father, and drove him out of his Country, which he recover'd by Help of the D. of *Normandy*, whoſe Daughter he had married upon the Death of *Ogina*. *Baldwin* died in 1036, and was ſucceeded by his unnatural Son.

7. *Baldwin* of *Liſle*, ſo call'd becauſe he lov'd and adorn'd that City more than any other in *Flanders*. He aſſiſted his Son-in-Law, *William the Baſtard* of *Normandy*, to take Poſſeſſion of that Country, and likewiſe to conquer *England*, on Condition, ſay the *Flemmiſh* Hiſtorians, that he and his Succeſſors, Kings of *England*, ſhou'd pay to him, and the ſucceeding Earls of *Flanders*, an Annual Penſion of 300 Marks in Silver, which was continued to *Baldwin* and his Son; but was afterwards with-held. *Henry* I. of *France* had ſo great an Opinion of *Baldwin*, that he left him Guardian to his Sons, and Governor of the Kingdom, till the eldeſt came of Age; which he perform'd with great Integrity. He had Wars with the Emperor *Henry* III. took from him the County of *Aloſt*, and afterwards obtain'd from him by Treaty ſeveral other Lordſhips, with all *Zealand*. He married his ſecond Son *Robert* to the Counteſs of *Holland*, and gave him the County of *Aloſt*, and Part of *Zealand*, upon taking an Oath, That he ſhould make no further Pretenſions to his Succeſſion. Upon his Death-Bed, he ſent for his eldeſt Son *Baldwin*, gave him pious Inſtructions relating to his Government and Perſonal Conduct, order'd him to keep firm to the Intereſt of *France*, from whom he had receiv'd ſuch Honour and Advantage; and that tho' he himſelf had Pretenſions to the Crown of *France*, as being of *Charlemagne*'s Lineage, that he ſhould ſubmit to the Race of *Hugh Capet*, to whom he was nearly related; and ſoon after this he dy'd in 1067, having effac'd the ill Character he had at firſt for rebelling againſt his Father; and by his after Conduct acquir'd that of a brave, wiſe, and religious Prince. He was ſucceeded by

8. *Baldwin* VI. his Son, who by his Marriage acquir'd *Hainault*, and was call'd *Baldwin* of *Mons*, becauſe he choſe that City for the Place of his Reſidence. He was a courteous, religious, and juſt Prince, dy'd in the 3d Year of his Government, *Anno* 1070, gave Part of his Dominions to his Sons by a ſecond Marriage, and recommended the Care of his Sons to the States.

9. *Arnold* III. his Son, ſirnam'd the *Unhappy*, ſucceeded, was ruin'd by the Pride and Covetouſneſs of his Mother, and the Treachery of his Uncle *Robert the Frizzled*, who making War upon him, *Arnold* was kill'd fighting valiantly at *Mont-Caſſel* in 1072; many of the *Flemmings* having revolted from him becauſe of his Mother's Hatred to them. He was ſucceeded by

10. *Robert* I. his Uncle, who making Intereſt with *Philip* of *France*, and doing him Homage, was by him ſupported in his Uſurpation. In his Reign, the Country ſuffered much by a ſharp and long Winter, tempeſtuous Weather, Earthquakes, and a Plague, which deſtroyed ſuch Multitudes of People in 1092, that 'twas called the *Fiery Diſeaſe*. The *Flemmiſh* Writers ſay, That his Ambaſſadors going to pay Homage to the Emperor, were told by an Apparition in Form of a Majeſtick Woman, That *Robert*'s Male-Iſſue ſhould fail in his Grandſon for his Wickedneſs; and that he him-

Digitized by Google

ſelf going to *Jeruſalem* in Pilgrimage to attone for his Sins, was frighten'd by Viſions in the Holy Sepulchre; and after his Return, died ſuddenly in 1093. He was ſucceeded by

11. *Robert* II his Son, ſirnam'd of *Jeruſalem*, becauſe that City was taken from the *Saracens* chiefly by his Valour. In his Reign, *Flanders* was mightily afflicted with Plague, Famine, and Inundations, and continual Rains from *October* to *April* 1109, which forc'd many of the Inhabitants to retire to *England*, where they were planted in a Colony in the E. Part of the Country by *Henry* I. *Robert* took Part with *Lewis the Groſs* of *France* againſt the *Engliſh*, by whom he was kill'd in a Sally from *Mante* on the *Seyne* in 1111. 'Tis ſaid, that his Wife *Clemence* having 3 Sons by him, and being afraid ſhe ſhould burden the Family by her Fruitfulneſs, took Medicines to make her barren; for which ſhe was puniſhed by the Death of her 3 Sons without Iſſue, and by ſeeing the Government come to another Family. *Robert* was ſucceeded by

12. *Baldwin* VII. his Son, ſirnam'd the *Hatchet*, becauſe he conſtantly carried one, with which he performed Juſtice upon Malefactors in Perſon. He was a great Juſticiary, executed ſeveral Gentlemen with his Hatchet for robbing Merchants, and order'd one of his Lords to be caſt into a Caldron of boiling Oil, which was prepar'd in the Market-Place of *Bruges* for a counterfeit Coiner, becauſe he had robb'd a poor Woman of her Cattle, which was all ſhe had to ſubſiſt on. He was very careful in appointing Judges, inſpected their Behaviour himſelf in his Progreſs through the Countries for that End, and puniſh'd ſeverely ſuch as took Bribes. By ſitting frequently in Judgment, he was Maſter of the Laws of his Country, and acquir'd the Love of his Subjects; it being his conſtant Maxim, That Princes ought to do Juſtice in Perſon as much as they could, and not leave it to Subſtitutes, ſince they demanded Perſonal Service from their People. He took Part with *Lewis the Groſs* againſt the *Engliſh*, becauſe they would not pay the Penſion promis'd by *William the Conqueror*, and died of a Wound he received from them at a Siege in *Normandy* in 1119. He died without Iſſue, and on his Death-Bed declared his Couſin *Charles*, Son to *Canutus* K. of *Denmark*, who had fled to him after the Murder of his Father, his Heir.

13. *Charles* I. ſirnam'd the *Good*, ſucceeded; but was oppos'd by *William* of *Ipres*, Nephew to *Robert* of *Jeruſalem*, aſſiſted by *Stephen* of *England*, who made him Earl of *Kent*, for having deliver'd him out of Priſon, and reſtoring him to his Scepter, ſay the *Flemmiſh* Writers; but *Charles* was too hard for him, obtain'd peaceable Poſſeſſion, and the Reputation of a valiant and religious Prince. He puniſh'd ſeverely Blaſphemers and common Swearers, Witches, Soothſayers, and Magicians; and mix'd ſo much Courteſy with his Juſtice, that he was belov'd by his Country. In his Reign, the Corn being frozen by a ſevere Winter, ſuch a Scarcity enſu'd, that he forbad the brewing of Beer, the keeping of Dogs, or giving Corn to Beaſts, and in one Day diſtributed near 8000 Loaves, beſides Money and Clothes, to the Poor of *Ipres*; and underſtanding that the *Vinſtraets*, a rich Family in *Bruges*, had hoarded up a great Quantity of Corn, which they ſold at exceſſive Rates, he condemn'd them to Death for Extortion; which he afterwards mitigated, by ordering their Houſes to be pulled down, their Corn to be ſold at moderate Rates, and the Money they had extorted to be reſtored to the Poor. One of this Family being Chancellor of *Flanders*, Provoſt of St. *Donatian* at *Bruges*, and concern'd in this Extortion, *Charles* ſent for him to a publick Hall, where he himſelf was diſtributing Bread to the Poor, rebuk'd him for his Avarice, and ſent him away without inviting him to Dinner with the reſt of the Clergy, for which this wicked Prieſt diſguis'd himſelf in the Habit of a Beggar, and murder'd the Prince at his Devotion in the Church in 1126. After which the Chancellor, with the reſt of the *Vanſtraets*, who were privy to the Deſign, invaded the Palace, kill'd the Prince's chief Officers, and fortified themſelves in the Tower of St. *Donatian*, from whence he afterwards made his Eſcape; but he and his Accomplices were all overtaken by Juſtice, thô they fled to ſeveral Countries, and were deſervedly put to Death. Twenty eight of 'em were thrown Headlong from St. *Donatian*'s Tower, their Houſes demoliſh'd, their

Eſtates

Eſtates confiſcated; and to perpetuate the Memory of their Crime and Puniſhment, an Order was made, That the whole Family ſhould be curs'd Annually on the 26th of *March* at the Gate of that Church, where at the ſame time the Praiſes of this excellent Prince were juſtly celebrated. The Hiſtory of *Flanders*, lately publiſh'd in *French*, ſays, the Conſpirators were emboldened to this execrable Fact, becauſe *Charles* being born a *Dane*, was not acceptable to many of the Nobility; but the Kings of *England* and *France*, and other neighbouring Princes, countenanc'd thoſe who took Arms to revenge the Parricide. This Hiſtory adds, That *Charles* had a Part of Scripture read and explain'd to him every Night after Supper by 3 Doctors of Divinity. *Charles* dying without Iſſue, he was ſucceeded by

14. *William the Norman*, Grandſon to *Wm. the Conqueror*, deſcended by the Mother from *Baldwin* of *Liſle*. He was put in Poſſeſſion by *Lewis the Groſs* of *France*, tho' the Kings of *Denmark* and *England*, and others, were nearer a-kin to *Charles*; but he prov'd ſuch a Tyrant, that the *Flemmings* revolted, killed him in a Siege, and he was ſucceeded by

15. *Thierry* of *Alſace*, who was reckon'd next a-kin to *Charles the Good*, and Grandſon to *Robert the Frizzled*. He was an affable, juſt, and wiſe Prince, made 4 Expeditions into the *Holy Land*, where he behav'd himſelf ſo well, that he ſtood fair to be made King of *Jeruſalem*, had not the Jealouſy of other Princes prevented it. He aſſiſted at the Coronation of *Henry* II. of *England*, and built *Graveling*, where he died in 1169. He was ſucceeded by

16. *Philip* of *Alſace*, his Son, with whom he had ſhar'd the Government. He acquir'd by Marriage the Counties of *Vermandoiſe*, *Valois*, and *Amiens*. He defeated and took *Florence* of *Holland*, ſubdued the County of *Aloſt*, and the Country of *Waes*, and was much in Favour with the Emperor *Frederick* I. who on his Account exempted the *Flemmiſh* Merchants from Tolls in the Empire. He accompanied the Emperor *Henry* VI. with a magnificent Train to *Rome* for the Election of a Pope, and had ſo great a Kindneſs for *Philip* II. of *France*, that he challeng'd *Richard* I. of *England* to a Duel, in order to determine the Quarrel betwixt them, and married his Neece to *Philip*, with whom he gave the Earldom of *Arras*, which prov'd fatal to his Succeſſors, by opening a Paſſage to the *French* into their Dominions. He died of the Plague at the Siege of *St. John d'Acres*, when he went to aſſiſt the K. of *Jeruſalem* in 1191; and having no Iſſue, on his Death-Bed he appointed for Succeſſor his Siſter

17. *Margaret*, who married *Baldwin* IV. of *Hainault*. Their Dominions were diminiſhed by *Lewis* VIII. of *France*, who ſeiz'd all *Weſt-Flanders*. Upon this the City of *Ghent* pretended to be Capital of the Country, and claim'd ſuch Privileges as intrench'd on the Prerogative of their Sovereigns, whom they would not ſuffer to publiſh any Law there without their Conſent. *Margaret*, who was much extolled for her Beauty and Piety, died in 1194, as did her Husband a few Years after.

18. *Baldwin* VIII. her Son, ſucceeded both to *Hainault* and *Flanders*. He went with other Princes on a Croiſado to the *Holy Land*, and in his Way aſſiſted the *Venetians* to take *Zara* in *Dalmatia*. While he was there, *Alexis Comnenus*, Son to *Iſaac* Emperor of *Conſtantinople*, intreated his Help againſt his Uncle *Alexis Ducas*, who had dethron'd his Brother *Iſaac*, and put out his Eyes. *Baldwin* took *Conſtantinople*, reſtor'd *Iſaac*, and defeated *Ducas*. *Iſaac* dying, his Son *Alexis Comnenus* ſucceeded; but being murther'd, and his Throne uſurp'd by *Alexis Murzupla*, *Baldwin* and the other Princes return'd from the *Holy Land*, took *Conſtantinople* by Aſſault, drove out the Uſurper; and there being no lawful Heir, *Baldwin* was choſen Emperor in 1200. He obliged the *Greek* Church to ſubmit to the *Roman*, which occaſioned the *Greeks* to revolt, and *Baldwin* was taken by an Ambuſh as he beſieg'd the Chief of the Revolters in *Adrianople*, where they cut him in Pieces, upon an Accuſation, as they pretended, by *Jane*, their Prince's Daughter, that he offer'd to marry and ſhare the Empire with her, if ſhe would deliver him out of Priſon; but the *Greek* Hiſtorians deny this, and ſay, he dy'd a natural Death in 1207. His Brother *Henry* ſucceeded in the Empire of the Eaſt, and died in the 11th Year of his Reign. He was ſucceeded in the Empire by *Peter de Courtenay*, Earl of *Auxerre*, who

Digitized by Google

who was taken by the *Greeks* in an Ambush, and afterwards put to Death. He was succeeded by his Son *Robert*, who made himself hateful by debauching a Gentleman's Wife at *Conſtantinople*, which the Gentleman reveng'd by killing his Wife, and her Mother who had betray'd her, in the Emperor's Preſence. *Robert* died in the 9th Year of his Reign, and was ſucceeded by his Son *Baldwin* II. who, after a Reign of 36 Years, was forc'd to fly from *Conſtantinople*, which was deliver'd up by Treachery to *Michael Paleologus*, who recover'd the Empire, and reſtor'd it to the *Greeks*, after it had continued in *Baldwin* VIII. and his Succeſſors for 60 Years. But his Poſterity could never regain it, becauſe of the Averſion the *Greeks* had to the *Roman* Church. To *Baldwin* VIII. ſucceeded

19. *Jane* of *Conſtantinople*, his Daughter, who being deliver'd up to the K. of *France* by her Uncle, that was left Guardian by her Father upon his Departure to the *Holy Land*, the *French* King, to prevent her Match with the K. of *England*, married her to *Ferrand* Pr. of *Portugal*; at which the *Flemmings* being angry, they refuſed to ſubmit to *Ferrand* till he brought his Wife with him; which having done, they received him joyfully, and he ſoon after enter'd into a Confederacy with *England* and others againſt the King of *France*, who took and kept him 12 Years in Priſon, and he dy'd ſoon after his Releaſe. *Jane* married for her ſecond Husband Pr. *Thomas* of *Savoy*, and died in 1244.

20. *Margaret* II. her Siſter, ſucceeded. She was married firſt to *Bochart d'Avenes*, of the Family of *Rouſſillon*, and afterwards to *William de Bourbon*, Lord of *Dampiere*. She had Children by both Marriages, who contended with one another for the Principality, becauſe the Legitimacy of the firſt was diſputed, their Father *Bochart* having been in Orders, which he conceal'd from his Wife; who, as ſoon as ſhe knew of it, got him excommunicated, for which he dy'd of Grief. *St. Lewis* of *France* eſpous'd the Cauſe of her Son *John* by her firſt Husband, who took Arms againſt her, and was made Earl of *Hainault*, and a 2d Brother was made Lord of *Beaumont*. From them proceeded the Earls of *Hainault*, *Frieſland*, and *Holland*; betwixt whom, and the Iſſue of the 2d Marriage, there was always a mortal Hatred. *Margaret* inherited the Courage of her Father, appear'd frequently in Arms, encourag'd Trade, eas'd her Subjects from the Taxes they had paid to her Predeceſſors, by way of Attonement for her Sins, founded many Hoſpitals, made many good Laws, and died in 1279. She confirmed the Earldom of *Hainault* to her Grandchild *John d'Avenes*; her own Son *John*, who took Arms againſt her, having died before her, and ſhe was ſucceeded in *Flanders* by

21. *Guido* of *Dampiere*, her Son by the 2d Marriage, who had a long and miſerable Reign. He was taken by the *Hollanders*, againſt whom he made War in *Zealand*, and not releaſed till after a long Time. He was twice invited to *France* by *Philip the Fair*, who kept him Priſoner both times, and ſuffered him at laſt to die in Confinement. The *French* attempted to reduce *Flanders* as a Province to their Crown; but the People would not ſubmit to it, nor to the Treaties that *Guido* had made with the *French* King during his Confinement, from which he was releaſed, on Condition that he ſhould return to Priſon if he could not bring them to it; in which having failed, he return'd according to Promiſe, and died a Priſoner in 1034. During theſe Tranſactions, the *Flemmings* obtain'd a great Victory over the *French* near *Courtray* in 1302; but were defeated by them two Years after, and came to an Agreement with *Philip the Fair*, on Condition of reſtoring them *Guido*'s two Sons, whom they had fraudulently ſurpris'd, with 50 of their prime Nobility.

22. *Robert* III. Son to *Guido*, ſucceeded; but was obliged for his Releaſe to promiſe 20000 Livres to the *French*, and mortgaged *Liſle*, *Douay*, and *Orchies*, to them for a Security, which the *French* afterwards claim'd as their Property. He aſſiſted *Charles* D. of *Anjou*, Brother to *St. Lewis* of *France*, in the Conqueſt of *Naples*, and married his Daughter. He died in 1322, and was ſucceeded by

23. *Lewis* I. his Grandſon, whoſe Pretenſions were oppoſed by his Uncle and Aunt, and the *French* King, who impriſon'd him in the *Louvre*; but his Title being judg'd good by the Parliament of *Paris*, he was reſtor'd, upon doing Homage to *Charles the Beautiful*

Digitized by Google

Beautiful of *France*. His Conduct made him odious to his Subjects, who took Arms againſt him, under the Conduct of *Artevel*, a Brewer, becauſe he favour'd the *French*, and hated the *Engliſh*, with whom the *Flemmings* had enter d into a Confederacy, and upon that Account were excommunicated by the Pope, till a Truce was made betwixt *Philip de Valois* of *France* and *Edward* III. of *England*, in which the *Flemmings* were included, and the Excommunication taken off by the Cunning of the Brewer. *Lewis* was kill'd in the Battle of *Creſſy* in 1346, where he fought valiantly for *Philip de Valois* againſt the *Engliſh*.

24. *Lewis* II. his Son, ſucceeded. He was in the Battle of *Creſſy* with his Father, where he behav'd himſelf valiantly, tho' but 18 Years of Age, and narrowly eſcap'd, with the *French* King. The Citizens of *Ghent* had kept him from his Father to marry him with *Edward* III.'s Daughter, for the Sake of their Woollen Trade with *England*; but when *Edward* came over with the Princeſs to ſolemnize the Nuptials, *Lewis*, on Pretence of Hunting, made his Eſcape to his Father, then at *Paris*, where he married a Daughter of *Brabant*; which provok'd the *Flemmings* ſo much, that they form'd themſelves into a Commonwealth, and refus'd to admit him, till he confirm'd their Treaty with *England*. He gave himſelf up to lewd Women, one of whom his Counteſs getting into her Hands, ſhe cut off her Noſe, by which Wound ſhe died 6 Days after, with two Male Children that ſhe brought forth before her Time. This did ſo much alienate *Lewis* from the Counteſs, that he fill'd his Houſe with Concubines and Baſtards; which, with his Prodigality, and vindictive Temper, made thoſe of *Ghent* take Arms againſt him, under the Conduct of *Artevil* the Brewer: But this Commotion being appeas'd, he recover'd *French Flanders*, by marrying his only Daughter to the *French* King's Brother; and the Earldoms of *Artois* and *Burgundy* fell to him as Heir to his Mother *Margaret* of *France*. During his Reign, an Inundation overflow'd 17 Villages in *Flanders*, *Anno* 1377. He built a Palace at *Ghent*, with a Chamber for every Day of the Year. He was very magnificent to Foreign Princes, and was viſited at *Ghent* by the Kings of *Cyprus* and *Denmark*. He deſign'd to have reveng'd himſelf on the Citizens of *Ghent* after they were defeated by *Charles* VI. of *France* at *Roſebeck*, and their General the Brewer kill'd; but he died ſuddenly in 1383.

25. *Margaret* III. his Daughter, ſucceeded, being married to *Philip the Bold* of *Burgundy*, Brother to *Charles* V. of *France*, 15 Years before her Father's Death. She had been contracted before to *Edmund*, Son to *Edward* III. of *England*; but the Marriage was prevented by her Grandmother *Margaret*, who hated the *Engliſh* ſo much, that ſhe untry'd her Robes in Preſence of her Son, threaten'd to cut off her own Breaſts, which had given him Suck, and throw them to the Dogs, if he did not break off that Match, and marry her to Philip of *Burgundy*, who obtain'd the Sirname of *Bold*, becauſe he fought ſo gallantly to prevent his Father King *John* of *France*'s being taken by the *Engliſh* at the Battle of *Poitiers*, where he was taken with him, for which his Father gave him the Dutchy of *Burgundy* by Letters Patents in 1363, which was afterwards confirmed to him and his Heirs by his Brother *Charles* V. He was a Prince of great Courage and Prudence, gain'd the Citizens of *Ghent*, by pardoning them after 7 Years Rebellion, was Govérnor to his Nephew King *Charles* VI. of *France* during his Minority, and died in 1404, ſo much in Debt, notwithſtanding the great Opportunities he had to enrich himſelf by his own large Dominions, and the Management of the Revenues of *France*, that his Widow, rather than be at the Expence of his Funeral, renounc'd her Charge in his Moveables. She died in 1406.

26. *John* of *Burgundy*, her Son, ſirnam'd the *Undaunted*, ſucceeded. He was bred in *France*, and was ſent to aſſiſt *Sigiſmund* of *Hungary* againſt the *Turks*, where he was taken, and in Danger of being cut off, as was the greateſt part of the *French* Nobility who were taken with him after the Battle, had not a Soothſayer perſwaded the Grand Seignior *Bajazet* to ſave him, by telling him, That *John* would one Day occaſion a great deal of Miſchief to *Chriſtendom*, and particularly to *France*, whither he return'd after being ranſom'd, and was received there with great Honour. His Repreſentation to the D. his Father, and to *Charles* VI. of *France* his Couſin,

Digitized by Google

Couſin, how contemptible the Schiſms betwixt the Popes and Antipopes made the Chriſtians to the *Turks*, and the Church of *Rome* to the *Greeks*, occaſioned their putting an End to it. He was a Prince of great Courage and Prudence; and notwithſtanding the War betwixt *England* and *France*, he procur'd a Freedom of Trade to his Subjects from both; but he ſtain'd his Character, by perſwading Aſſaſſins to murther the Duke of *Orleans*, his Couſin-German and mortal Enemy, in 1407. He diſſembled his Concern in it for ſome time, but at laſt openly own'd it, and got *John Petit*, a *Franciſcan*, and Doctor of Divinity in the Univerſity of *Paris*, avowedly to defend it, as an Act like that of *Phinees*; for which the Duke deſerv'd a Reward, alledging, that the Duke of *Orleans* had made uſe of Magick, and other wicked Arts, to poſſeſs himſelf of the Kingdom. There were others ſo bold as to offer to juſtify this Action before the Council of *Conſtance*. The Cauſes of this mortal Hatred were, 1. His Envy againſt the D. of *Orleans*, becauſe he had the Government of the Kingdom during the Incapacity of his Brother *Charles* VI. 2. Becauſe the D. of *Orleans* put Jeſts upon him, gave him ridiculous Names, and, as 'tis ſaid, hit him a Box on the Ear in a publick Aſſembly. 3. Becauſe the D. hinder'd him to beſiege *Calais*, then poſſeſs'd by the *Engliſh*, for which he had made great Preparations. 4. Becauſe 'twas alledg'd the D. of *Orleans* had offer'd Violence to the Dutcheſs of *Burgundy*, who was a very beautiful Princeſs. The D. thinking himſelf ſufficiently excuſed by thoſe Pretences, he had the Boldneſs to demand a Reward for this abominable Action in the Preſence of the Dauphin, the Grandees of the Kingdom, and of the Univerſity and chief Citizens of *Paris*, at a publick Aſſembly. But however that was, *Charles* VI. gave him a Pardon, and ſeemingly reconcil'd the D. of *Orleans*'s Children to him; but they quickly diſcover'd, that nothing leſs than his Blood would ſatisfy their Reſentments. The Duke of *Burgundy* had not only provok'd the Houſe of *Orleans*, but many of the Grandees of *France*, and particularly the Conſtable *d'Armagnac*; but the Citizens of *Paris* favour'd the Duke, and hated the Faction of *Orleans* or *Armagnac*, becauſe they would not ſtand to the Agreement, that the D. of *Burgundy* ſhould govern the Kingdom jointly with the Dauphin, his Son-in-Law, during the Life of *Charles* VI. And while the D. of *Burgundy* was in *Flanders*, they let 800 of his Horſe into the City, put on St. *Andrew*'s Croſs, the Device of *Burgundy* upon their Clothes, and taking Arms, murder'd the Conſtable, with ſeveral Officers of the Houſhold, 4 Biſhops, and above 3000 other Perſons of Note. The D. of *Burgundy* ſeem'd to diſapprove this, tho' 'twas ſuppoſed to be done by his Orders. All this together made the Faction of *Orleans* determine his Ruin. In order to which, they perſwaded the Dauphin, afterwards *Charles* VII. who appear'd at their Head, to invite him to a Conference, on Pretence to concert Meaſures for driving the *Engliſh* out of the Kingdom; and to prevent Suſpicion, the Dauphin took an Oath before the Legat, on the Croſs and the Goſpels, That the Duke nor his Party ſhould receive no Damage; and as a further Security, they promiſed to deliver to the Duke the Caſtle of *Montereau*, on the Bridge of which Town, that was rail'd in on purpoſe, the Interview was appointed. The D. truſting to theſe Promiſes, met the Dauphin on the Bridge, and paſſing through a Door in the Rails to ſalute him, he bow'd his Knee, and told him, He was come to receive his Orders, and to conſult how the *Engliſh* might be expell'd the Kingdom. The Dauphin charg'd him with Breach of Promiſe in not withdrawing his Garriſons; and while the Duke began to juſtify himſelf, the Dauphin gave him the Lye, and cry'd out aloud, *Now is the Time*. Upon which the Conſpirators murder'd him in Preſence of the Dauphin, which involv'd *France* in Blood and Miſery for many Years, occaſioned the Dauphin to be diſinherited by his Father and Mother, and *Henry* V. of *England* to be proclaimed Regent; ſo that *Charles* VII. would certainly have loſt the Crown, had it not been for the Aſſiſtance of the *Scots*, and the Courage his Troops were inſpired with by *Joan of Arc*, the well known Maid of *Orleans*. *John* D. of *Burgundy* being thus cut off in 1419, he was ſucceeded by

27. *Philip* III. his Son, ſirnam'd the *Good*, becauſe of his Clemency. He enter'd *France* with an Army, and join'd with the *Engliſh*

Digitized by Google

Engliſh, to revenge the Death of his Father; and prevailed with *Charles* VI. of *France*, and his Queen, whoſe Daughter he had married, to diſinherit the Dauphin, to match their Daughter *Katharine* with *Henry* V. of *England*, and to ſettle the Succeſſion on their Poſterity, as the only Means to deliver *France* from a dangerous War with *England*, and from the Stain which had been put upon the Honour of the Nation by the Dauphin. This brought on a War of 16 Years; but the Dauphin being come to the Crown, and the Duke being affronted by the Pride of ſome of the *Engliſh*, (ſays the Hiſtory of *Flanders*) and particularly by *Humphrey* D. of *Gloceſter*, who had carried away from her Husband the D. of *Brabant*, *Jaqueline* Counteſs of *Hainault* and *Holland*, and afterwards married her. He inclin'd to a Peace, partly becauſe being neareſt Relation to *Jaqueline*, who had no Iſſue, he expected to be her Heir; and partly becauſe he was troubled to ſee *France*, in which he was born, and whoſe Kings were his Anceſtors, reduced to ſuch a miſerable Condition: But chiefly, becauſe *Charles* VII. had in 1436 procur'd Ambaſſadors from ſeveral Crown'd Heads to meet at *Arras*, in order to mediate a Peace; and ſent to beg the Duke's Pardon for the Murder of his Father. The *Engliſh* refuſed to part with their Title and Poſſeſſion, and *Charles* ſent ſome of his Grandees, who falling on their Knees at Church before D. *Philip*, beg'd his Pardon in their Maſters Name for the Murder of his Father; to which he had been prompted to conſent by wicked Villains in his tender Age; with which Duke *Philip* being mov'd, he burſt out into Tears, and declar'd with a loud Voice, "That for "the Sake of our Saviour's Paſſion, out of "Pity to the People of *France*, and out of "Reſpect to the Pope and the Council of "*Baſil*, and the Interceſſion of Chriſtian "Princes, he would forgive the King of "*France*, on Condition that a Croſs ſhould "be erected on the Bridge where his Father "was murther'd; That all the Actors ſhould "be condemn'd; That the K. ſhould give "him the Towns and Counties he demanded, pay him 400000 Crowns, allow his Subjects in the Service of *France* to bear "St. *Andrew*'s Croſs, and exempt himſelf "from paying Homage." Upon this the Treaty was concluded, the Legat abſolv'd him from his Oaths and Leagues with the *Engliſh*, who reproach'd him bitterly for it, and hated him ever after. The Treaty being concluded, he order'd his Governor of *Paris* to drive the *Engliſh* from thence. Beſides theſe Additions to his Dominions from *France*, he fell Heir to the Dutchies of *Brabant* and *Limburg*, the Marquiſate of the Empire, *Hainault*, *Holland*, *Zealand*, *Frieſland*, and the Dutchy of *Luxemburg*, which made him the powerfuleſt Prince in *Europe*. He married for his 3d Wife the Daughter of *John* King of *Portugal*: She was received at *Bruges* with extraordinary Magnificence; and on the Day of his Nuptials, he inſtituted the Order of the *Golden Fleece*. He ranſom'd from the *Engliſh* for 400000 Crowns the D. of *Orleans*, Son to D. *Lewis*, whom his Father had caus'd to be murther'd, married him to his Neece, a Daughter of *Clevis*, and made him a Knight of the *Golden Fleece*. He entertain'd the Dauphin of *France*, afterwards *Lewis* XI. and his Wife, 7 Years at his Court, whither they had retir'd from the Diſpleaſure of the *French* King, who demanded him from *Philip*, and ſent to tell him, That his Son would reward him, if ever he came to the Crown; as *Æſop*'s Serpent did the Countryman, who took it up when ſtung by a bitter Froſt, and warm'd it in his Houſe, where it afterwards poiſon'd him: But *Philip* continu'd his Kindneſs to the Dauphin, and put him in Poſſeſſion of the Crown after his Father's Death; for which he rewarded him as his Father foretold he would. Duke *Philip* alſo entertain'd in her Diſtreſs *Margaret*, Wife to *Henry* IV. of *England*, and Daughter to *Rene* D. of *Anjou*, who had both been his Enemies. He likewiſe pardon'd his own Son *Charles*, whom he had confin'd for ſpeaking diſreſpectfully to him on the Account of his Favourites, and receiv'd him with Tears and Embraces when he came to make his Submiſſion. He likewiſe pardon'd the Cities of *Ghent* and *Bruges*, who had forſaken him when he beſieg'd *Calais*. For all which Actions of Clemency, he receiv'd the Sirname of *Good*, and died full of Honour and Glory at *Bruges* in 1467, the 80th Year of his Age, and the 48th of his Reign. He left behind him 40000 Lewis d'Ors, 771 Marks of uncoin'd Silver, and Moveables

Digitized by Google

to the Value of 2000000 of Gold, a vaſt Treaſure in thoſe Days. He was buried with as great Magnificence as he had liv'd. His Corps was cover'd with a Mortuary of Gold, on which there lay a Sword of the ſame Metal, and there were 17000 Torches carried before him to the Grave. He was eſteem'd by all the great Princes of the World; ſo that *Edward* IV. of *England*, when he fail'd to recover his Kingdom, truſted him with his two young Brothers, tho' *Philip* was related to the Houſe of *Lancaſter*, and *Edward* the Chief of the Houſe of *York*. *Thomas* and *Demetrius*, Emperors of the Eaſt, came to deſire his Aſſiſtance againſt the *Turks*, who had diſpoſſeſs'd them. *David* Emperor of *Trapeſond*, and the Kings of *Perſia*, *Armenia*, and *Meſopotamia*, ſent Ambaſſadors to deſire his Aſſiſtance againſt the *Ottoman* Family, and call'd him by the Title of, Great Duke of the Weſtern Regions. The Emperor *Frederick* III. deſign'd to have made him a Knight and Vicar of the Empire in *Gaul*, and courted his Grand-Daughter *Mary* for his Son *Maximilian*, which afterwards took Effect. But this great Prince was not without his Weakneſſes, for he made *David*, one of his Baſtard Sons, Biſhop of *Utrecht* by Force, and another of his Relations Biſhop of *Liege* by Bribery. He had likewiſe 7 other Baſtards by ſeveral Miſtreſſes.

28. *Charles* II. his Son, ſirnam'd the *Hardy* or *Terrible*, ſucceeded. He added the Dutchy of *Guelder* and the County of *Zutphen* to his Dominions, and was inveſted in the latter by the Emperor with great Pomp and Ceremony; when the Number of his Train, the Richneſs of their Apparel, and the Sumptuouſneſs of the Entertainment he gave to the Emperor and his Court, fill'd all that beheld it, and the Emperor himſelf, with Admiration. The Hiſtory of *Flanders* ſays, he had 6 Earls and 600 Gentlemen attending him, all clad in Brocard: His own Caſſock was embroider'd with Gold, and adorn'd with Precious Stones, valued at 200000 Ducats. At his Entertainment, his Table was cover'd with Diſhes and Veſſels of maſſy Gold, embelliſh'd with Diamonds. At the 2d Courſe, there was one Veſſel ſet before the Emperor valued at 6000 Ducats of Gold. His Chapel where he heard Maſs was adorn'd with 60 Images of Gold and Silver, and ſo full of Precious Stones, that they were valued at 200000 Ducats. The Reaſon of all this extravagant Pomp, was to induce the Emperor to make him King of *Burgundy*, and Vicar of the Empire on this Side the *Rhine*; upon which he was to give his Daughter in Marriage to *Maximilian*, the Emperor's Son. All Things were prepar'd for his Inveſtiture in the Royalty; but the Emperor of a ſudden departed from him without doing it, but on what Reaſon is not ſaid; tho' it may reaſonably be ſuppos'd, that the Emperor was offended to ſee himſelf outdone in Pomp by the Vanity of a Prince ſo much below him in Dignity, tho ſuperior in Riches. That ſame Year *Sigiſmund* of *Auſtria* came to *Flanders*, and mortgaged to him the County of *Ferrette*, in which ſtand the Cities of *Briſac* and *Rhinfeld*, with a Deſign to engage him againſt the *Swiſſers*, with whom *Sigiſmund* was then at War. He married for 3d Wife, *Margaret*, Daughter to *Richard* D. of *York*, in 1468, at *Bruges*, with extraordinary Magnificence. He fancy'd this Princeſs for her Beauty; but his politick Reaſon for the Match was to prevent *England*'s joining with *France* againſt him. In 1471, he received *Edward* IV. of *England*, his Brother-in-Law, with great Kindneſs when he was drove from his Dominions, and ſent him back with an Army, which reſtor'd him. He likewiſe entertain'd, anſwerable to their Dignity, ſeveral Princes of the Houſe of *Lancaſter*, who fled to him in their Diſtreſs. He made ſeveral advantagious Treaties with *Lewis* XI. of *France*, by which he enlarged his Dominions, exempted himſelf from paying Homage to that Crown, and his Subjects from Appeals to *France*. Upon which he erected the Sovereign Court at *Malins*, in Imitation of the Parliament of *Paris*. He rais'd a Regiment of 800 Horſe, arm'd Cap-a-pé, divided into 5 Troops, each of 'em commanded by a Knight of the *Golden Fleece*, to whom he allow'd extraordinary Salaries. He ſpent two or three Days a Week in determining Controverſies among his Grandees and Courtiers in Perſon. He had continual Wars with his Neighbours, which obliged him to levy great Taxes on his Subjects, and occaſioned the States to refuſe ſeveral of his extravagant Demands. He

Digitized by Google

He was ſo ſucceſsful in his Wars at firſt; that he became the Terror of *Europe*, obliged the Emperor to a diſadvantagious Peace, and *Lewis* XI. of *France* the like, after he defeated him at the Battle of *Montlheri*, and forc'd the Citizens of *Liege* to Submiſſion, tho' ſupported under-hand by *France*; in the Siege of which City, he had certainly been ſurpris'd in his Quarters by a Sally, if the *Scots* in the *French* Service, ſays *Commines*, had not with great Bravery repulſed the ſtrong Detachment that attack'd him and the *Fr.* K. by Night. We have already mentioned his ſevere Chaſtiſement of that City when he took it. He ſtain'd his Character, by delivering up to the *French* K. the Earl of St. *Paul*, Conſtable of *France*, who had retir'd to him for Protection, upon the *French* King's reſtoring him *St. Quintin*. He repented of it when too late, and ſent Orders to his Officers not to ſurrender the E. but his Command came 3 Hours too ſhort, ſo that the Conſtable loſt his Head; and tho' he fell unpity'd, becauſe he was a Man of no Faith, and had ſeveral times embroil'd the Courts of *France*, *England*, and *Burgundy*, yet the Duke could never wipe off the Reproach, which occaſioned a Satyrical Reflection upon him, That when he had the Fox, which was the Name ordinarily given to the Earl, he ſkinn'd him to make uſe of his Fur, and gave his Body to the *French* K. Soon after this he took *Nancy* in *Lorrain*: His Dread of miſcarrying in that Siege, by the Intrigues of the *French*, being one of the Cauſes of his Treachery to the Conſtable. But his Fortune ſoon after declin'd: He raſhly engag'd againſt the *Swiſſers*, whom having a Deſign to ſubdue, he made War upon them on the trifling Pretence of their having taken a Cart-load of Goat-ſkins from the Subjects of the Count *de Romont*, a Prince of the Houſe of *Savoy*, in whoſe Quarrel he had engag'd. He march'd into *Swiſſerland*, which he made no Doubt to conquer, and by that means to open his Paſſage into *Italy*; but was defeated by them at *Granſon*, where they took all his Baggage and rich Moveables. To revenge this, he attack'd them a 2d time at *Morat*, where they cut off moſt of his Army, and forc'd him to a ſhameful Retreat. This Diſgrace threw him into Melancholy, and impair'd his Health; but when he recover'd, being full of Revenge againſt the D. of *Lorrain*, he beſieg'd his Capital of *Nancy* a 2d time, againſt the Advice of his beſt Friends and Generals, in the Rigour of Winter, where he was betray'd by *Campo Baſſo*, an *Italian*, as formerly mentioned, who join'd the Enemy in the Time of the Battle, where the Duke was killed by a Gentleman of *Lorrain*, who being deaf, did not hear him when he deſir'd Quarter, and clove his Head with a Halbert. His Corps was found 3 Days after thrown into the Ditch, and generouſly interr'd with great Magnificence in St. *George's* Church at *Nancy* by his Enemy the Duke of *Lorrain*, from whence his Corps was removed by his Grandſon the Emperor *Charles* V. in 1553 to our Lady's Church at *Bruges*, where he erected a ſumptuous Monument for him before the great Altar. *Lewis* XI. of *France*, who dreaded him, gave an extraordinary Reward to the Meſſenger who brought him the News of his Death. The Duke was a Prince of very great Qualities, a good General, capable of all the Fatigues of War, us'd to go the Rounds of his Camp himſelf, a ſevere Juſticiary, but ſelf-conceited, and valued his own Judgment ſo much, that he would not liſten to the Advice of others, which occaſioned his Ruin; for tho' the *French* King had given him Notice, that *Campo Baſſo* had offer'd to him to murder him, and tho' one of that Traytor's Confederates had acquainted him with his Deſign to betray him, he would believe neither. He underſtood ſeveral Foreign Languages, particularly *Latin*, *Spaniſh*, *French*, *German*, and *Engliſh*, lov'd to read Hiſtory, and particularly the Lives of *Julius Cæſar* and *Alexander*, was temperate in Eating and Drinking, and puniſh'd Exceſs that Way in his Soldiers as much as Deſertion. He was particularly noted for his Chaſtity, would immediately cauſe ſuch of his Soldiers to be hang'd as offer'd Violence to Women when he took Towns by Storm, and condemn'd a Sheriff in *Zealand* to Death for refuſing to marry a young Woman that he had debauch'd. This great Prince fell thus in 1477, in the 43d Year of his Age, and 9th of his Reign.

29. *Mary*, his only Child, ſucceeded; and upon her Father's Death, was ungratefully and treacherouſly deſpoil'd of Part of her

Digitized by Google

Dominions by *Lewis* XI. of *France*, her Godfather, on Pretence of taking her under his Protection, which made many of the Governors of her Towns and Countries submit to him. This, with other Inſtances of his Treachery, verify'd the Saying of his own Father, That he would reward the Houſe of *Burgundy*, who gave him honourable Entertainment, as *Æſop*'s Serpent did the Countryman, who warm'd it when benumb'd with Cold. That which aggravated his Crime, was, that he had made a Truce of 9 Years with her Father, which he ſolemnly ſwore by all that was ſacred he would inviolably obſerve. He deprived her of *Burgundy*, and of all that had been given to her Predeceſſors by the Treaties of *Arras* and *Conflans*, demanded her to be put under his Protection, till the Dauphin, who was then but 7 Years of Age, ſhould be fit to marry her, tho' ſhe was then 20; and by his Artifices, and betraying ſome Letters to him relating to the Perſons ſhe deſign'd to entruſt with the Management of the Government, and deſiring him to direct all his Advices to them, he ſtir'd up the Citizens of *Ghent* againſt her, who hating her chief Counſellors that ſhe deſign'd to rely on, who were, the Lord of *Imbercourt*, and *Hugonet* her Chancellor, they put them in Priſon; and charging them with Treachery againſt the late Duke, and betraying the Government into the Hands of *France*, &c. they try'd and condemn'd 'em: And tho' the Princeſs came into the publick Market-place, where they were brought to Execution, in a Mourning Habit, with her Hair diſchevell'd, addreſs'd her ſelf to the People, and begg'd their Pardon with Tears, they put them to Death; which, tho' diſreſpectful in the higheſt Degree to their Sovereign, was reckon'd a juſt Judgment on them, becauſe they had adviſ'd her Father to deliver up the Earl of *St. Paul* to *Lewis* XI. as above-mentioned. That Earl's Son was one of the chief of the *French* Courtiers who ſtir'd up the People againſt them to revenge his Father's Death. In 1477, ſhe married *Maximilian* of *Auſtria*, who came to *Ghent* with ſeveral Electors and Princes of the Empire for that Purpoſe. But 5 Years after, this happy Couple were ſeparated by a fatal Accident; for as ſhe was riding a Hunting with her Husband, her Horſe ſtumbled, threw her againſt the Stump of a Tree, and being with Child, the Bruiſe caſt her into a Fever, which carried her off a few Days after in 1482, in the 25th Year of her Age, and the 5th of her Reign, univerſally lamented for her excellent Qualities. She had 4 Children, 2 of which died before her; but *Philip* and *Margaret* ſurviv'd. In 1485, *Maximilian* was proclaim'd Tutor to his Son, and took an Oath for the faithful Diſcharge of his Truſt; but when he was elected K. of the *Romans*, he carried his Son to *Malines*, where he bred him after the *German* Faſhion, which diſguſted the *Flemmings*; and having, by the Advice of his Counſellors, left out his Son's Name in the Money that he coin'd, and his *German* Garriſons having alſo diſoblig'd the *Flemmings* by their ill Diſcipline, thoſe of *Ghent* and *Bruges* impriſon'd the chief of his Counſellors, whom they try'd, condemn'd, and executed, for giving him ill Advice, particularly to levy Money contrary to Law; and ſummon'd himſelf to appear before their Deputies, where, to pacify them, he ſalured the 52 Maſters of the Companies of *Bruges*, ſpoke to them ſtanding, with his Hat in his Hand, agreed to all they deſir'd, conform'd himſelf to their Manners, and was familiar with 'em. Upon which they declar'd, They would live and die with him; that what they had done, was only to puniſh ſuch as had abus'd his Favour, and promis'd to protect his Perſon and Moveables, and not to deliver him to thoſe of *Ghent*, nor to the *French*, which he dreaded moſt. They kept him however 3 Months under a Guard, on Pretence to ſave him from the Mob; but by the Intreaties and Threats of the Pope, the Emperor his Father, and other Princes, they came to an Agreement to forgive what was paſt on both Sides, for which he gave them Hoſtages. He afterwards recover'd them by Craft, and the Emperor came with an Army and declar'd War againſt *Bruges* and *Ghent*, who enter'd into an Alliance with *France*, which filled the Country with Tumults and Seditions, till a Peace was concluded at *Tours* betwixt *France* and *Maximilian*; who being afterwards choſen Emperor, he left his Son in the *Netherlands* under Guardians, and died at *Newſtat* in *Auſtria* in 1519.

30. He

30 He was succeeded by his Son *Philip* IV. of *Flanders*, who became afterwards the first of that Name K. of *Spain*, by marrying the Heiress of that Crown. He was so much belov'd by the People, that the *Flemmings*, contrary to their Custom, put his Name in all their publick Acts at the Age of 17. He was the first that sold the publick Offices of their Government to fill his Treasury, by the Advice of his Counsellors; but had otherwise such excellent Qualities, that he was called the Delight of Mankind; and when he went to *Spain*, the *Flemmings* universally lamented his Absence, as that of a common Father. He died at *Burges*, the chief City of *Old Castile*, in 1506; from whence his Heart was brought to *Bruges*, and put in his Mother's Sepulchre.

31. He was succeeded by his Son *Charles* V. afterwards Emperor; of whom having given an Account already, we shall only add, That in 1540, he came from *Spain* through *France* to suppress the Rebellion of *Ghent*, where he put to Death 30 of their chief Burgomasters, banish'd and forfeited a great many of the chief Citizens, disarm'd the Burgers, depriv'd them of their Privileges, forc'd their Magistrates to walk in Procession with Halters about their Necks, and built a Citadel, the first of its kind in *Europe*, to prevent any future Rebellion. But his carrying his Resentments too far in this and other Instances, contributed to lay the Foundations of that Revolt in the *Netherlands*, which proved so fatal to his Posterity.

We have insisted the longer on the History of *Flanders*, because it has been a Theatre of War for so many Ages, and contains so many remarkable Passages which relate to our own History, and that of *France*, *Spain*, and the Empire.

The chief Towns of Flanders *are*,

1. GHENT, Lat. *Gandavum*, suppos'd to have at first been called *Wanda*, when possess'd by the *Vandals*. It lies on the *Lys*, *Mosrwater*, *Scheld*, and the *Lieve*, all navigable Rivers, 10 Miles S. from *Sas van Ghent* in *Dutch Flanders*, 20 S E. from *Bruges*, and 22 S. W. from *Antwerp*, in Long. 22. 37. Lat. 51. 7½. 'Tis the greatest City in the *Low Countries*, but has decay'd in Trade and otherwise since the Revolt of the *Dutch*. It has a Staple of Corn and other Grain, and has the Conveniency of Canals betwixt *Bruges*, *Sas van Ghent*, and *Antwerp*; besides the Advantage it has by the *Scheld* and other Rivers. There are 6 or 7 Forts on the Canal betwixt it and *Sas*, most of which belong to the *Dutch*, for the Security of that Passage. 'Tis reckon'd 7 Miles in Compass within the Walls, and about 10 Miles without, because of its Fortifications. There are several Corn-Fields and other wast Places within. The Body of the Town is well built, the Streets fair and clean, and the whole is well fortified with Walls and Ditches. It has 7 Churches, 55 Monasteries, of which that of the Jesuits is the fairest. There's a Cloyster here for *English* Nuns. The Cathedral is a stately Edifice. Its Tower, called *Belfort*, is between 4 and 500 Steps high, with a gilt Copper Dragon on the top as large as a Bull. From hence there's a pleasant Prospect of the City and adjacent Country, which is very fruitful; and they have a Bell in it called *Roland*, of 12000 Pounds Weight, with very fine Chimes. This Church is dedicated to St. *Bavo*, and the Abbot has a considerable Tract of Ground, with some Marks of Sovereignty, and many Villages, under his Jurisdiction. There are several noble Tombs here; and in the Lower Church, there's a Lady's Tomb of one entire Touch-stone. St. *Michael*'s Church is fam'd for its excellent Paintings, and that dedicated to St. *Peter* and St. *Paul* is a fine Structure. The Castle, formerly the Palace of their Princes, contains 300 Chambers; and in one of the least of 'em, *Charles* V. was born, on St. *Matthias*'s Day, as appears by this Inscription moulded over the Chimney in *Relievo*:

Matthiæ Luce exigua Cubili natus Carolus Quintus.

The Numerical Letters making the Year of his Nativity. In this City was also born the D. of *Lancaster*, so well known by the Name of *John* of *Gaunt*. The Town-House is of fine Stone-work in Sculpture, adorn'd with Pilasters after the modern Way. They have several large Market-Places, and in one of 'em a noble gilt Statue of *Charles* V. On a Scaffold over against that called the *Friday*'s Market, there's a great Cannon mount-

Digitized by Google

ted, with a larger Bore than any Mortar-Piece. On the Bridge called *Dagebrack*, there are two Statues in Brass, representing a Son beheading his Father, of which they tell the following Story: Being both condemn'd to die, a Pardon was offer'd to either of 'em that would be the other's Executioner; and the Son being perſwaded to it by the Father, as he was ready to give the fatal Blow, the Blade broke in his Hand; which being look'd upon as a ſingular Providence, and a Rebuke for the Barbarity of the Propoſal, they were both pardon'd. This City is pleaſantly ſituated in a good Air, and has ſo many Streams running through it, that 'tis divided into 26 Iſlands, join'd by 98 large Bridges, beſides ſeveral leſſer ones. Their chief Trade, beſides Corn, is in Cloths, Stuffs, and Silks, of which there's ſo great a Quantity made here, that a 3d of the 50 Companies of Tradeſmen in this City are employ'd about that Manufacture. The Citadel conſiſts of 4 little Baſtions, looks to the City on one Side, and to the Fields on the other. 'Tis regular, but much ſhort of the modern Fortifications of that Nature. 'Tis an Epiſcopal See, Suffragan to *Malins*, and the Seat of the Provincial Council of *Flanders*. 'Twas formerly ſo powerful, that in the Reign of *Philip de Valois*, they ſent 50000 Men to the Field. The Inhabitants have always been reckon'd Warlike, but much inclin'd to Tumults, as we have heard before. It has ſuffered much of late by the Wars; yet *La Forreſt* ſays, there are 30000 Burgers in it who live on their Rents. 'Tis ſaid to have been founded by *Julius Cæſar*, becauſe of the Conveniency of its Situation. 'Twas taken by *Lewis* XIV. of *France* in 6 Days, *Anno* 1678; but reſtored by the Treaty of *Nimeguen*. 'Twas poſſeſs'd by them again after the Death of *Charles* II. of *Spain*; but abandon'd after their Defeat at *Ramillies* in 1706. 'Twas betray'd to them in 1708, and retaken after a ſhort Siege by the Confederates that ſame Year.

2. *Bruges*, 20 Miles N. W. from *Ghent*, on the Canal of *Reye*, in a large Plain, and about 11 Miles S. E. from *Oſtend*. It had its Name from its numerous Bridges. It has a Canal to *Sluys* about 7 Miles long, cut at a vaſt Charge by the Inhabitants of *Sluys*, and ſecur'd by mighty Turn pikes from Inundations, by which Veſſels of great Burden come up to the Town. But after *Sluys* fell into the Hands of the *Dutch*, thoſe of *Bruges* dug another Canal to *Oſtend*, which brings Ships of 2 or 300 Tuns to the City, and advances its Trade. 'Twas once one of the greateſt Emporiums in *Europe*, and frequented by Merchants from all Countries, who had their Storehouſes here, and were form'd into 17 Fraternities. Beſides whom, they had 68 Companies of other Tradeſmen and Artificers, with a Guildhall for each. *Antwerp* was then ſubſervient to it; but the Merchants removed thither in 1500, becauſe of the Wars; ſo that their remaining Trade conſiſted in *Spaniſh* Wool, for which 'twas made the chief Mart by the *Engliſh* after their Loſs of *Calais* in 1558. *Spinola*, the *Spaniſh* General, cut a Canal betwixt this City and *Ghent* of 8 Leagues long, which he guarded with 200 Forts and Redoubts, as many Companies of Foot, and 6 Troops of Horſe. 'Tis the 2d Town in *Flanders*, is large, well built, moſt of the Houſes being 4 or 5, and ſome of them 6 Stories high; from the Tops of which there's a Proſpect of a Fleet of Ships, and a fruitful and pleaſant Country. The City is populous, of a round Form, and about 4 Miles in Circumference. It has 6 principal Streets, which center in the Market-place, and lead to the principal Gates. Moſt of the Streets are ſtraight and large, and their Publick Buildings ſumptuous. Near the Market-place, there's a Tower 343 Steps high, and not far from thence the Palace called *La Franche*, nobly adorn'd with the Pictures and Statues of Emperors, Kings, and Archdukes. There are 7 Pariſh-Churches here: That of *St. John* was made a Cathedral in 1559, when a Biſhop, Suffragan to *Malins*, was eſtabliſhed in this City by *Philip* II. who made him Chancellor of *Flanders*, as the Provoſt of the Church was before. The famous *Ludovicus Vives* is entomb'd here. They have 60 Monaſteries, 3 Colleges of Canons, and a College of Jeſuits, ſumptuouſly built at the Charge of the City. 'Tis well wall'd, fortified with Works of Earth, and deep Ditches. Beſides their Trade in *Spaniſh* Wool, they drive a conſiderable Commerce in Manufactures of Cloth, Fuſtians, Stuffs, Tapeſtry, *&c.* There's abundance of Ca-

nals

Digitized by Google

sals in the Town, over which there's a multitude of Bridges; and over one of those Canals, stands their publick Warehouse, where Vessels unload at the very Door. The first Decay of their Trade happen'd by the Rigour of their Magistrates, which occasioned many of their best Weavers to leave the City, and come for *England*. The *English* of Note are generally complimented here in the House where our K. *Charles* II. resided during his Exile; and several Houses have been erected with the Money given them by the Royal Family, where the Citizens exercise themselves with Bows and Guns: They are adorn'd with Pictures and other Monuments of the 3 Brothers. The Tower of our Lady's Church leaning on one Side by the Neglect of the Builder, he threw himself down from the Top of it, and was buried where he fell. The *English* have two Nunneries here; and in the Jesuit's Church there's a solid Fabrick, representing the Holy Sepulchre, the Plan of which was brought thither by a Lord, who went twice to *Jerusalem* on purpose, and is interr'd here.

3. *Damme*, on the old Canal of *Bruges*, 3 Miles N. from that City, a small Town, founded by Count *Baldwin the Couragious* in 1195, but ruin'd by those of *Bruges* in the 13th Century, because they were jealous of its Commerce, and kept by them above 60 Years; but towards the End of the 16th Century, 'twas strongly fortified by *Spinola*, the *Spanish* General.

Four Miles N. E. from *Damme*, lies Fort St. *Donat*; and about 2 Miles further N. lies Fort *Isabel*, on the Channel over against *Sluys*; and about 6 Miles W. from Fort *Isabel*, lies Fort *Blankenburg*, on the Coast; which were all taken by the Confederates in the present War.

4. *Ostend*, the Capital of the District call'd *Freeland*, or *Vryland*, because they shook off the Superiority of those of *Bruges*, lies on the Coast, 11 Miles N. W. from *Bruges*, and extends its Jurisdiction over the said Territory, which is about 7 Miles, and contains a great Number of Villages. 'Tis situated in a moorish Ground, among several Channels; two of the chief of 'em almost encompass it, and swell so high at full Tide, that the Town seems to stand in the Sea, and is so exactly fortified, that 'tis reckon'd one of the strongest Places in the *Netherlands*. It has a large and safe Harbour, capable of Ships of great Burden, and was lately enlarg'd by the *Spaniards*; and well defended by Forts. The Houses are well built, and uniform, but not high. The Streets are regular, well pav'd, strait, and neat; having been all built at once, after the Town was laid in Ruins, by the famous Siege which began in 1601 by *Spinola*, as we have formerly mentioned. We shall only add here, That it cost 100000 Men on both Sides, of which the *Dutch* and their Allies are reckon'd to have lost 30000. 'Twas so slightly fortified when the Siege began, that Princess *Isabella* is reported to have said, She would not shift her Smock 'till it was taken. Yet the Siege held out above 3 Years, and when surrender'd, 'twas reduc'd to a Heap of Rubbish. The *Spaniards* shot so many Bullets against the Sand-hill Bulwark, where they stuck, that it became a Wall of Iron, and dain'd all the fresh Bullets in Pieces when they hit it. 'Tis also remarkable for the Design form'd to surprise it by Treachery in 1658 by Cardinal *Mazarine*; when Mareschal *d'Aumont*, who had the Conduct of the Enterprize, thought himself so sure of it, that he sent the Cardinal Word, The Design was effected; and the Cardinal relying on this Intelligence, wrote confidently to *Francfort*; where the Electors were met to chuse an Emperor, that the Town was taken, which so confounded them for some time, that they suspended the Election; but when the contrary was known, and that the *French* Troops were entrapp'd, it very much expos'd his Reputation and Politicks. *Metteran* and some other Writers falsly charge Sir *Francis Vere* with the Design to have betray'd it, while he was Governor of it for some Time during the famous Siege; but they are contradicted by Authors of better Credit, and the whole Conduct of that brave Gentleman, which shew'd him to be uncapable of so much Baseness: He only gain'd Time by a Treaty with the *Spaniards* to fortify it, which sav'd it from immediate Ruin. The *French* possess'd themselves of it after the Death of *Charles* II. of *Spain*; but were obliged to surrender it in 1706, after a short Siege by the *English* and *Dutch*.

Plas-

Digitized by Google

Plaſſendal, a ſtrong Fort, with a Sluce for letting Ships paſs out and in, lies about 3 Miles E. from *Oſtend*, and commands the Canal betwixt that Place and *Bruges*, and the Entrance of the Canal from *Newport*. 'Twas taken from the *French* before they loſt *Oſtend*, and ſeiz'd by them again when they ſurpris'd *Bruges* and *Ghent*; but abandon'd after they loſt thoſe Towns in 1708.

5. *Newport*, lies about 8 Miles S. W. from *Oſtend*, and 14 from *Bruges*, near the Bank of the Sea, where a little River that runs by the Town falls into it, and makes a long and ſecure Harbour, but not capable of large Ships. The Town is well fortified with Walls, Ramparts, *&c.* the Streets broad and ſtraight; but the Houſes low built, and moſt of 'em of Timber. The Inhabitants maintain themſelves chiefly by Fiſhing, and the *Engliſh* Packet-Boat goes Weekly betwixt this Place and *Dover*. 'Twas inveſted by the *Dutch* under Prince *Maurice* in 1600, and Archduke *Albert* coming to relieve it, it occaſioned his memorable Defeat, mentioned *P.* 798. A little off of *Newport*, near the Sea, is a little Fort defended by a Wall, a Ditch, and Bulwarks. The chief Strength of this Town conſiſts in its Situation; for by their Sluces, they can in leſs than an Hour lay the adjacent Country under Water for two Leagues. By this means, the *French* not only kept it in Poſſeſſion, but interrupted the ſending of our Convoys from *Oſtend* to *Liſle* during the Siege of the latter in 1708.

6. *Deynſe*, a ſmall Town on the River *Lys*, 10 Miles S. W. from *Ghent*, was united to the County of *Flanders* in 1316 by Count *Robert*, and is famous for the glorious Retreat of the Prince of *Vaudemont* from thence in 1695, when almoſt ſurrounded with the *French*.

7. *Dendermond*, on the Mouth of the *Dender*, where it falls into the *Scheld*, about 10 Miles S. E. from *Ghent*, is a Place of Importance by its Sluces and Fortifications, is Capital of a Diſtrict of the ſame Name, and has a conſiderable Trade in Fuſtians and other Stuffs. The *French* were repulſed before it in 1667; but having poſſeſſed it after the Death of *Charles* II. of *Spain*, they ſurrender'd it to the D. of *Marlborough* on Terms in 1706.

8. *Rupelmond*, on the Mouth of the *Rupel*, where it falls into the *Scheld*, 20 Miles E. from *Ghent*, a pretty ſmall Town, the only Place of Note in the Country of *Waes*.

9. *Aloſt*, or *Aelſt*, on the River *Dender*, about 7 Miles S. from *Dendermond*, and 13 S. E. from *Ghent*, the Capital of that called *Imperial Flanders*, and of a County formerly ſubject to Lords of its own. 'Twas taken by the *Spaniards* in 1576, and by the D. of *Alençon* in 1582; after which 'twas garriſon'd by the *Engliſh*, but betray'd by the Governor to the D. of *Parma*. 'Twas taken by the *French* in 1667. Their King pretended to this Town and County in the Right of his Queen, but reſtor'd it by the Treaty of *Nimeguen*, after diſmantling it. He ſeiz'd it again after *Charles* II.'s Death; but his Troops abandon'd it after their Defeat at *Ramillies* in 1706. The Territories of this Town are large, *viz.* the County of *Aloſt*, the Country of *Waes*, and thoſe called the 4 Offices of *Hulſt*, *Axtel*, *Bouchut*, and *Aſtenede*, which comprehend above 150 Villages, and 4 Cities, which all together made up that called *Imperial Flanders*, becauſe it held in Fee of the Empire. *Aloſt* was noted formerly for its Hop-Market and Tapeſtry.

10. *Ninove*, lies 6 Miles S. from *Aloſt*, and is a pretty ſmall Town. *Grammont*, 5 Miles above it, is a ſmall Town, built by Count *Baldwin* in 1068.

11. *Audenard*, lies on the *Scheld*, about 16 Miles S. from *Ghent*. The River divides it into two Parts, and advances its Trade, which is chiefly in Tapeſtry and fine Linen. 'Tis Capital of a Caſtellany, which contains 33 Villages. 'Tis well fortified with ſtrong Walls and regular Outworks, and by the Caſtle of *Pamele*, join'd to it with a Bridge, but is commanded by a Hill on the Side of *Aloſt*. 'Twas taken by the Lord of *Ravenſtein* in 1484, by *Bimart* in 1567, by the Prince of *Parma* in 1582, and by the *French* in 1658; but reſtored by the Treaty of the *Pyrenees*. They took it again in 1667, had it confirm'd by the Peace of *Aix la Chapelle*, but reſtor'd it by the Peace of *Nimeguen*. They laid Siege to it in 1708, but were forc'd to abandon it, and receiv'd a remarkable Defeat near it, mentioned *P.* 826.

12. *Harlebeck*, on the *Lys*, 2 Miles below *Courtray*, the Capital of a ſmall Territory.

13. *Courtray*,

Digitized by Google

13. *Courtray*, on the *Lys*, 12 Miles W. from *Audenard*, and 12 E. from *Ipres*. 'Tis divided by the River, reckon'd one of the ancienteſt Towns of the *Netherlands*, and to have been conſiderable in the Days of *Cæſar*. 'Tis very ſtrong by its Situation, well fortified, and has a good Citadel, which was built by the *French* in 1646, when they took the Town. The *Spaniards* retook it in 1647, the *French* took it again in 1667, and reſtor'd it by the Treaty of *Aix la Chapelle*. They took it again once more; but 'twas retaken by the Allies in 1706. The Town is noted for making good Diaper and Cloth, in which they have a good Trade. *La Forreſt* ſays, they had an Annual Feaſt for a great Victory they obtained over the *French* in 1302, and about 80 Years after were ſurpris'd by the *French* as they celebrated that Feſtival, when the Town was burnt down, but rebuilt better than 'twas before.

14. *Menin*, lies on the ſame River, about 5 Miles above *Courtray*, is a ſmall Town, but ſo well fortified by the *French*, that 'twas reckon'd one of the ſtrongeſt and moſt regular Fortifications in *Europe*. 'Twas taken by the Allies in 1706, after 18 Days Siege. 'Tis noted for excellent Beer.

Commines, *Warwick*, and *Warneton*, are Places of Note betwixt *Menin* and *Liſle*. The former was the Birth-place and Inheritance of the famous Stateſman and Hiſtorian *Philip de Commines*.

15. *Liſle*, Lat. *Inſulæ*, and *Inſulæ*, by ſome called *Lilæ*, and by the *Dutch*, *Ryſſel*, lies about 12 Miles S. from *Courtray*, and 10 W. from *Tournay*, on the River *Deule*. It had its Name from its Situation among Marſhes, moſt of which are now drein'd. *La Forreſt* ſays, 'twas built in 1007 by Count *Baldwin* IV. and walled by *Baldwin* V. It ſuffered much in the 13th Century. *Philip Auguſtus* of *France* diſmantled it in 1213. 'Twas retaken next Year by Count *Ferrand*, and *Philip the Fair* ruin'd it in 1297. It had formerly Lords of its own, who had the Title of Caſtellans, from the 11th Century to 1234, that it came to the Family of *Peronne*, afterwards to the Family of *Luxemburg*, then to the Family of *Vendoſme*, next to the Family of *Burgundy*, and from them to the Houſe of *Auſtria*. *Lewis* XIV. took it in 1667, fortified it with a noble Citadel, flank'd with 5 Royal Baſtions, beſides many Half-Moons, and other Outworks. He fortified the Town ſo well, that 'twas one of the ſtrongeſt Places of *Europe*. He enlarg'd it alſo with a Suburb, adorn'd it with ſeveral fine new Streets, and built a good Arſenal. The Ditches are filled by the River *Deule*. 'Twas the only Town improved by his Conqueſts, and became very rich by their Trade in Linen Cloth, Camblets, Silks, *&c.* and by being in a manner the Center of Commerce betwixt *France* and the *Netherlands*, and many of the Inhabitants were concern'd in the Shipping of *Dunkirk*; and for the Conveniency of tranſporting Goods, there's a Canal cut betwixt the Town and the *Lys*. 'Twas confirmed to the *French* by the Treaty of *Aix la Chapelle*, is a Town of great Antiquity, the Metropolis of what was anciently called *French Flanders*, had a large Juriſdiction, and a Chamber of Accounts for *Flanders* eſtabliſh'd here by *Philip the Bold*. The Town is very large, populous, and well built, eſpecially the new Streets, which are of Brick and Free-ſtone; but moſt of the old of Wood. The Market-place is ſpacious; the Town-Houſe ſmall, but handſome, and a ſtately Church near it. The moſt conſiderable Church is that of St. *Peter*. The neighbouring Country abounds with Flax. The *French* laid a Cauſway near 20 Miles long betwixt this Town and *Ipres*, thro' the marſhy Grounds. For the famous Siege of the Town and Citadel, and their being taken by the Allies in 1708, we refer to *P.* 826. The Invention of Painting in Oil, and of making Says and other Worſted Stuffs, is aſcrib'd to this City. The *French* King order'd theſe blaſphemous Inſcriptions to be put on the new Caſtle in 1673; *Gentes laudabunt te, & Reges Terræ Gloriam tuam*; i. e. *The Gentiles ſhall praiſe thee, and the Kings of the Earth thy Glory*; and, *In Sole poſui Tabernaculum meum*; i. e. *I have plac'd my Tent in the Sun.*

16 *Tournay*, Lat. *Tornacum*; in *Dutch*, *Dornick*, 10 Miles S. E. from *Liſle*. It lies on the *Scheld*, over which it has ſeveral Bridges, is Capital of the fruitful and pleaſant Country of *Tourneſis*, the Seat of the chief Tribunal or Parliament for the *French* Conqueſts in the *Netherlands* ſince 1669, and a Biſhop's See, Suffragan of *Cambray*. *La Forreſt* ſays, it belong'd to the *Nervii*, and was

Digitized by Google

taken by *Cæsar* after he defeated them. 'Twas surrender'd to the Pr. of *Parma* on St. *Andrew*'s Day, 1581, after a brave Defence by the Princess of *Epinay* in her Husband's Absence. *Strada* observes, That St. *Andrew*'s Day has been fatal to it, it having been taken before on that Day by King *Henry* VII. of *England*, and the Emperors *Maximilian* and *Charles* V. *Henry* VIII. built a strong Castle here. 'Twas deliver'd to the *Fr.* in his Time by Cardinal *Wolsey*'s Intrigues. The Town and Castle were basely surrender'd to the *Fr.* K. almost without Resistance, in 1667, and continu'd in his Hands till surrender'd to the Confederates, after a sharp Siege, in 1709, upon Articles, and the Garrison of the Citadel made Prisoners of War some Time after. The City is large, populous, and has a considerable Trade, especially in a sort of Table-Linen, from hence called *Dornick*. Dr. *Northleigh* says, it has 17 Parish-Churches. The Cathedral is a noble Pile, adorn'd with 5 Towers, plac'd in Form of a St. *Andrew*'s Cross. The Buildings in general are handsome, and there are reckon'd 72 Companies of Traders in the Town, They had formerly a considerable Trade in Woollen Cloth, which is now decay'd. The Church of our Lady is a noble Fabrick, and the Quire adorn'd with excellent Marble Work. One of their ancient Structures of *Roman* Architecture is a Proof of their Antiquity. After the *French* King took it, he very much improv'd its Fortifications, which were, a double Wall, and a dry Ditch, with regular Bastions, and made many curious Mines or Vaults under Ground in the Citadel, which are very dark and deep, and so well contriv'd, that they look more like Terrass-Walks than Mines. In the Center of the Citadel there's a Well, whose Water is 50 Foot deep; and above the Brink of this Well, there are Balconies, which lead to the Vaults under Ground. *La Forrest* says, the *Scheld* begins to be navigable here, where there's a good Key; That they have still a considerable Trade in Stockings and Woollen Stuffs. 'Tis supposed to have been the Residence of *Childerick*, Father to *Clovis* of *France*, because when they were digging the Ruins in 1653, they found a Ring with that Prince's Name and Effigies engraven upon it.

17. *Orchies*, about 7 Miles S. W. from *Tournay*, Capital of its Chatellany, and noted for making Woollen Stuffs. 'Tis a small, but ancient Place on the River *Scarp*.

18. *Douay*, Lat. *Duacum*, on the *Scarp*, 20 Miles S. from *Lisle*, and 15 S. W. from *St. Amand*. 'Twas Capital of the *Catuagi* mentioned by *Cæsar*, as 'tis now of its Chatellany, is a large, strong and rich Town. 'Tis noted for the Seminary founded here for *English* Papists, under the Conduct of Jesuits, by *Philip* II. of *Spain* in 1569, from whence they removed about 20 Years after to *Rheims* in *France*, where they publish'd an *English* Translation of the Bible, well known by the Name of the *Rhemish* Version. 'Twas taken after a short Resistance by the *French* King in 1667, who has since fortified it very well. It has a Fort about a Cannon-shot below it on the *Scarp*, with Sluces, by which they can drown the adjacent Country. They have an Annual Fair in *September*, when they sell great Quantities of Worsted Camblets.

19. *St. Amand*, on the *Scarp*, above 10 Miles S. E. from *Tournay*, formerly a Place of good Strength, but dismantled by the *French* in 1667, who cut down the neighbouring Forrest. 'Tis noted for a rich Abbey dedicated to St. *Amand*, as lofty within and without as that of *Westminster*, with a double Row of Galleries or Corridores about it, both Sides excellently wrought in Stone-work and Mouldings. The Abbot has both Temporal and Spiritual Jurisdiction. 'Twas founded by *Dagobert* V. of *France* for 30 Canons, to whom there's now added 20 Jesuits. The adjacent Country is pleasant and fruitful.

20. *Mortagne*, on the Conflux of the *Scheld* and *Scarp*, 6 Miles S. E. from *Tournay* 'Twas taken and dismantled by the Emperor *Charles* V. in 1521.

21. *La Bassé*, on the *Deule*, 14 Miles S. W. from *Lisle*, on the Frontiers of *Arras*, a small Town, frequently taken and retaken by the *Spaniards* and *French*; but yielded to the latter by the Treaty of *Aix la Chapelle* in 1668.

22. *Armentiers*, 10 Miles N. W. from *Lisle*, on the *Lys*, noted for its Trade in Cloth. 'Tis a Place of considerable Strength, was frequently taken and retaken, but yielded

Digitized by Google

yielded to the *French* by the Treaty of 1668.

23. *Mont-Kaſſel*, or *Caſſel*, 20 Miles W. from *Menin*, and 14 N. W. from *Armentiers*. 'Tis ſituated on a Mountain, and ſuppoſed to be the *Caſtellum Morinorum* of the Ancients. 'Twas formerly a very large Town, but has ſuffered much by War. 'Tis noted for a great Victory gained by the *Flemmings* over *Philip the Fair* of *France*, for another over them by *Philip de Valois* in 1328, and for a 3d in 1677 by *Philip* Duke of *Orleans*, who defeated the Pr. of *Orange*, afterwards our K. *William*, when he came to relieve *St. Omers* with 30000 Men. The Prince had 3000 Men killed, and 3000 taken, and the *French* loſt 2000 Men. This Town is Capital of a Chatellany, which contains 500 Villages.

24. *Bailleul*, or *Belle*, about 8 Miles S. E. from *Mont-Kaſſel*, Capital of a ſmall Chatellany, noted for the Birth of *Meyerus*, a *Flemmiſh* Hiſtorian of good Note.

25. *Meſſine*, 4 Miles N. E. from *Armentiers*, and 5 S. W. from *Menin*, a handſome Town, where they make great Quantities of Cloth, and have a rich Nunnery, whoſe Abbeſs has both Temporal and Spiritual Juriſdiction.

26. *Ipres*, 9 Miles S. W. from *Menin*, and 11 from *Courtray*, Lat. *Ipra*; in *Dutch*, *Ypren*, from the River on which it ſtands. 'Tis Capital of its Chatellany, which is very large and fruitful, has a Vote in the Provincial States, and is honour'd with the Title of a Viſcounty. 'Tis one of the neateſt and richeſt Towns in *Flanders*, and vends a great Quantity of Says and Silks at their Annual *Lent* Fair, and would have been one of the largeſt Towns in the Country, but that it has ſeveral times been deſtroyed by Fire. 'Twas built in 960 by Count *Baldwin* III. and made a Biſhoprick in 1559, Suffragan of *Malins*. 'Twas beſieg'd and taken by the *French* in 1648, reſtored afterwards to *Spain*, but retaken by *Lewis* XIV. in 1678. Since which, it has continued in his Hands, being confirmed to him by the Treaty of *Nimeguen*. The Houſes are well built, but the Fronts of Timber, and fortified with new and regular Outworks, beſides a Wall. It lies low, and by its Sluces can lay the neighbouring Country under Water. Their chief Church is the Cathedral of St. *Martin*, where there are Monuments of ſeveral other Biſhops. Their Town-Houſe is ſtately, and has a ſpacious Front. Their Market-place is large, and has an ancient well-built Hall, the Repoſitory for their Wool. They have ſeveral Convents; and on the Altar-Piece of the Jeſuits Church, our Saviour's Reſurrection is admirably painted. In their Cloiſter, they have the Pictures of all the Jeſuits that have ſuffered in *England*, repreſented as Martyrs. The Chatellanies of *Bailleul* and *Kaſſel* belong to its Quarter.

27. *Bourburg*, 22 Miles W. from *Ipres*, and 3 S. E. from *Gravelin*, is a pleaſant little Town on the top of an Hill, Capital of its Chatellany, one of the oldeſt in *Flanders*, and very fruitful, formerly ſubject to Lords of its own. 'Tis noted for its Free Fairs, has been ſeveral times taken and retaken by the *French* and *Spaniards*, and quitted to the former by the Treaty of the *Pyrenees*.

28. *Gravelin*, Lat. *Gravelinga*, on the Mouth of the River *Aa*, 10 Miles N. E. from *Calais*, and 10 S. W. from *Dunkirk*, in a Plain, cut with ſeveral Canals, which make it inacceſſible on the Side of the Land. 'Twas ruin'd in the 11th Century by the *Normans*, but rebuilt in the 12th by Count *Thierry*. 'Twas formerly ſubject to the Chatellany of *Bourburg*, and chang'd Maſters ſeveral times, till it came to the Counteſs of *Flanders* in 1272. 'Twas ſtrongly fortified by *Charles* V. in 1528; and in 1558, Count *Egmont* gave the *French* a great Defeat near this Town, but was afterwards ungratefully beheaded by the D. of *Alva*. Sir *Philip Sidney* attempted to ſurpriſe it in 1586, but was diſappointed. The *French* took it in 1644, and the *Spaniards* retook it in 1652, with the Loſs of 2000 Men. 'Twas taken from them by the *Engliſh* and *French* in 1658, and quitted to the *French* by the Treaty of the *Pyrenees*. The Town is ſmall, and ill built, but ſtrongly fortified by 6 good Baſtions, defended with Ravelins, and other Outworks, with ſeveral Forts to defend the Approaches of the Town; and one muſt paſs 6 Draw-Bridges before they come into it. It has alſo a Citadel towards the Land, is defended by Fort *Philip* towards the Sea, and at a further Diſtance by the Forts of *Oye* and *l'Eclauſe*. When Strangers approach, the Centinels

tinels give Notice of their Numbers by ſo many Tolls of a Bell; and Wool brought from *England* or *France* pays Cuſtom here.

29. *Mardick*, a little Town and Fort about 2 Miles S. W. from *Dunkirk*, on the Bank of the Sea, noted for its Sieges. The *French* took and diſmantled it in 1645; the *Spaniards* retook it in 1652; the *Engliſh* took it in 1658; and 'twas quitted to the *French* by the Treaty of the *Pyrenees*; but there's nothing of the Fortifications now left, except a Wooden Fort with a few Guns.

30. *Winoubergen*, or *Berg St. Vinoc*, Lat. *Berga*, or *Mons Sanctæ Winocæ*, on the River *Colm*, 5 Miles S. E. from *Dunkirk*, with which it communicates by a Canal. It had its Name from a Monaſtery, built and dedicated here to St. *Vinoc*, an *Engliſhman*, by Count *Baldwin* V. in 1040. 'Tis Capital of a ſmall Chatellany, honour'd with the Title of a Viſcounty. They formerly made a great deal of Cloth; but that Trade is now much decay'd. The adjacent Country is very fruitful, feeds great Herds of Cattle, and abounds with excellent Cheeſe. 'Twas taken by the *French* in 1645, and confirmed to them by the Treaty of the *Pyrenees* in 1658.

31. *Dunkirk*, on the Bank of the Sea, and at the Mouth of the River *Colm*, lies 10 Miles N. E. from *Graveling*, 20 N. E. from *Calais*; 10 S. W. from *Furnes*, 15 from *Newport*, and 22 from *Oſtend*. It took its Name from a Church on the neighbouring Downs, and is ſaid to have been built in 966 by Count *Baldwin* III. It had particular Lords of its own, called Chatellans, about the 13th Century. It came afterwards to the Earls of *Flanders*, and was walled in 1327 by *Henry* IV. Count of *Bar*, to whom it fell by Marriage, as it did afterwards to *Lewis* of *Luxemburg*, Conſtable of *France*. It came to the Houſe of *Burgundy* with the reſt of *Flanders*, and the Emperor *Charles* V. built a ſtrong Fort here in 1535, which was made ſtronger by *Spinola*. 'Twas taken, ſack'd and burnt, by the *French* in 1558, while they were treating with it about a Surrender. 'Twas afterwards ſurpris'd by the Duke of *Alençon*'s Troops, when he attempted to make himſelf abſolute in the *Netherlands*, under the Notion of being their Governor. The Duke of *Parma* recover'd it from the *French* after a long Siege. He equipp'd part of a Fleet here to join the Invincible Armado that was to invade *England*; but the *Dutch* prevented their getting out. In 1590, Prince *Maurice* attempted it in vain by a Scalado. In 1647, the Prince of *Condé*, with the Aſſiſtance of the *Engliſh*, took it after a troubleſome Siege. In 1652, 'twas beſieged and retaken by Archduke *Leopold*, ſome *Engliſh* Frigats having block'd up the Harbour, and prevented its having any Relief by Sea. But in 1658, *Oliver* having enter'd into a League with *France*, a Body of *Engliſh* that join'd the Mareſchal *de Turenne* laid Siege to it, and after defeating Don *John* of *Auſtria*, who came with an Army to relieve it, the Town ſurrender'd, the Marquis *de Ledo*, their Governor, being kill'd in a Sally, and, according to Treaty, 'twas put into the Hands of the *Engliſh*, but ſold to *Lewis* XIV. by K. *Charles* II. in 1662. Since which, the *French* King has ſpar'd no Coſt to make it one of the ſtrongeſt Places of *Europe*. The Town is divided into the Upper and Lower, and is very much enlarged ſince it came into the Hands of the *French*. The Lower Town is the beſt fortified; but the whole is very ſtrong. On the Land-ſide, it has double Walls and Works, and very high Baſtions. Towards the Sea, it has treble Works. There are 3 great Forts at ſmall Diſtances, which command the River or Canal, the Sluces, and the neighbouring Country. It has a Canal on the S. Side, and on the N. is almoſt encompaſſed by the Sea, in Form of an Half-Moon. The Sands being very troubleſome, and frequently choaking the Harbour, the *French* King was at vaſt Expence to build two long Galleries on each Side of it, with a long Bank of Timber-work, Faggots and Faſcins, to ſecure it; and there are 4 Wooden Forts which defend the Entrance of the Port by Sea. He alſo erected two Risbanks, which are prodigious Forts, as ſtrong as Art and Labour could make 'em: They command the Canal by which Ships enter the Town, and the Baſin within, which is capable of holding 150 Men of War; and for the further Security of the Town, he erected a ſtrong Citadel, which is reckon'd one of the fineſt in *Europe*, its Baſtions reſembling Mountains, enough to fill the Beholders with Amazement, and thoſe

Digitized by Google

thoſe who attack it with Deſpair of Succeſs. The *Engliſh* begun this Citadel, which he has ſince finiſhed, and much exceeded the firſt Plan: But his principal Deſign of making this a Harbour fit for containing a ſufficient Number of Men of War to command the Channel, has been happily defeated by Providence, a great Tempeſt having ſo filled the Harbour with Sand, that it can never be able to anſwer his End, thô he had built 3 great Sluces a little above the Town upon 3 Currents, in order to ſend vaſt Flaſhes of Water into the Channel, to drive out ſuch Sands as might happen to lodge in the Mouth of it. He employ'd 14000 Men a long while on the Fortifications, Harbour, Baſin, and Dock. Dr. *Northleigh* ſays, the Town is much of the Size of *Oxford*, the Streets large and regular, and the Houſes neat. They have a large handſome Church, with a fine Altar, and a good Piece of Painting, repreſenting the Laſt Judgment; and in one of the Chapels dedicated to St. *George*, there's a Repreſentation of the Martyrdom of that pretended Saint, which is very much eſteem'd. There's an *Engliſh* Nunnery of poor *Clares* here, and another of *Benedictines*, called the *Rich Ladies*. There's a Cloiſter of *Franciſcan* Monks, and another of Nuns here; and the Tower of the great Church has 273 Steps to the top, from whence on a clear Day one may ſee *Dover* Cliffs. The Workmanſhip of the Marble Altar in this Church is ſaid to have coſt 20000 Florins. This was formerly a Town of good Trade, which is decay'd ſince 'twas ſold to the *French*; but in Time of War, the *French* Squadrons and Privateers which lie here do very much annoy the Channel.

32. *Furnes*, 10 Miles N. E. from *Dunkirk*, on the River *Colm*, is Capital of its Chatellany, and bears the Title of a Viſcounty. The Town is ſmall, but neat. 'Twas built or repaired about 870 by *Baldwin*, ſirnam'd *Iron Hand*, has been often taken and retaken by the *Spaniards* and *French*, and was quitted to the latter in 1668 by the Treaty of *Aix la Chapelle*. Their chief Trade is in Linen, and the Territory belonging to the Town is exceeding fruitful. 'Twas taken by the *Engliſh* in 1692, but retaken by the *French* next Winter.

33. *Dixmuyd*, lies about 5 Miles S. E. from *Furnes*, and belongs to that Territory call'd the Franc of *Bruges*. 'Tis noted for ſuſtaining ſeveral Sieges, its Strength, and the Importance of its Situation. 'Tis ſtill in Poſſeſſion of the *French*.

The Province of Artois *or* Arras.

HAS *Flanders* on the N. and E. Part of *Hainault* and the Biſhoprick of *Cambray* on the E. and *Picardy* on the W. and S. *Mol* makes it from S. E. to N. W. 60 Miles, and the greateſt Breadth from N. E. to S. W. about 32. The *Latins* call it *Arteſia*, and *Arthiſia*; the *French*, *Artois*; and the *Dutch*, *Atrecht*. In *Cæſar*'s Time, 'twas the Country of the *Atrebates*, and by him made Part of *Gallia Belgica*. *La Forreſt* ſays, K. *Clodion* of *France* having conquer'd it in 444, made it a Province of *France*. When that Monarchy was divided into 4 Kingdoms by the Children of *Clovis* in 511, 'twas comprehended in the Kingdom of *Auſtraſia*. *Charles the Bald* gave it with his Daughter *Judeth* in 863 to *Baldwin* I. of *Flanders*. *Iſabel* of *Flanders* brought it in Dowry to *Philip Auguſtus* of *France* in 1180. K. *Louis* VIII. gave it to his 3d Son *Robert* in 1226. It came afterwards by Marriage in 1318 to *Eudes* IV. of *Burgundy*, after the Death of *Charles the Hardy*. *Lewis* XI. ſeiz'd upon it in 1477, as a Fee-Male of the Crown of *France*. *Charles* VIII. quitted it in 1483 to the Emperor *Maximilian*; and it continued in the Houſe of *Auſtria* till 1640, that the *French* ſeiz'd it, and had it confirmed to them by the Treaty of the *Pyrenees*. The Air is mild and temperate, the Soil fruitful, particularly of excellent Wheat, with other Corn and Fruit; but has no Vines, which ſome aſcribe to the Neglect of the Inhabitants. *Guicciardin* ſays, it had 12 Wall'd Towns, 854 Villages, and was divided in his Time into 9 Chatellanies.

The chief TOWNS *are*,

1. *Arras*, Lat. *Atrebatum Civitas*, *Nemetocorna*, and *Nemetacum*. It lies on the *Scarp*, 13 Miles N. from the Frontiers of *Picardy*, 28 S. W. from *Liſle*, and 12 S. W. from *Douay*. The City is large, conſiſts of two diſtinct Towns, formerly ſeparated by a Wall,

Digitized by Google

Wall, now demoliſhed. The one was called the City, and the other the Town; the former ſubject to the Biſhop, and the latter to the Prince. The City is the leaſt, but pleaſanteſt, well fortified with good Bulwarks and Trenches; and among other fair Structures, has a Cathedral dedicated to the Bleſſed Virgin, with a Library well ſtor'd with MSS. of Divinity. 'Tis a Biſhop's See, which was founded in 531, was formerly Suffragan to the Archbiſhop of *Rheims*, but now to *Cambray*. They pretend to have a Wax-Taper drop'd from Heaven, which they ſay burns, and does not conſume; and this they keep in a particular Chapel. They have alſo a Pot of Manna, that they ſay was ſhower'd down from Heaven in St. *Jerome*'s Time; and this they expoſe in Time of Drought, to excite the People to pray for Rain. The other Part, called the Town, is very well fortified, and was reckoned ſo ſtrong, that while 'twas poſſeſs'd by the Houſe of *Auſtria*, they put an Inſcription over one of the Gates, importing, That the *French* ſhall never take *Arras*, till the Mice devour the Cats. They took it however after 7 Weeks Siege in 1640. The *Spaniards* laid Siege to it in 1654; but were defeated, and forc'd to raiſe it on St. *Lewis*'s Day. This Part of the Town has broad Streets, a ſpacious Market-place, and ſtately Churches: The Houſes are well built, with large and deep Cellars, to which the Inhabitants retire during a Siege. *La Foreſt* ſays, 'twas taken in 1427 by *Lewis* XI. and by the Emperor *Maximilian* in 1493, and quitted to the *French* by the Treaty of the *Pyrenees*, who have ſince fortified it very regularly. *Baudrand* ſays, it has alſo a ſtrong Citadel. 'Tis noted for making Says, and that rich ſort of Tapeſtry, which from thence is called *Arras*. The Abbey of St. *Vedaſtus* in this City has an Annual Revenue of 20000 Crowns. *Cluſius* the famous Herbaliſt, and other Learned Men mentioned by *Bleau* and *Guicciardin*, were born here.

2. *Bapaume*, lies on the Frontiers of *Picardy*, about 11 Miles S. E. from *Arras*, is a very ſtrong Town, and has a large Juriſdiction. 'Twas taken by the *French* in 1645, when their Commander *St. Preuil* attack'd the Garriſon after they came out upon Terms; but loſt his Head for breaking the Articles. 'Tis difficult to beſiege this Town, becauſe there are no Springs or Rivers for the Conveniency of the Beſiegers.

3. *Heſdin*, Lat. *Heſdinum*, and *Heſdina*, lies 22 Miles N. W. from *Arras*, on the River *Canche*. There was an old Town of this Name upon the ſame River, anciently the Seat of the Earls of *Flanders* and *Arras*; but not being capable of Defence ſince the Invention of Guns, *Charles* V. demoliſh'd it, and built the preſent Town on the ſame River, and ſo well fortified, that 'tis reckon'd one of the ſtrongeſt Towns in the Country, being a regular Hexagon, and ſituate in a Moraſs. 'Tis uſually called *Heſdinfort*, becauſe built by *Emanuel* D. of *Savoy*, who was General for *Charles* V. *F. E. R. T.* being the ancient Device of the Houſe of *Savoy*. The *French* took it in 1639, under the Conduct of M. *de Melleray*, for which the *French* King made him a Mareſchal next Day.

4. *St. Pol*, or *Paul*, Capital of a ſmall Chatellany in this Province, lies 9 Miles E. from *Heſdin*. This City was a long time poſſeſſed by Lords of its own; one of whom being Conſtable of *France*, and playing faſt and looſe with *Lewis* XI. *Edward* IV. of *England*, and *Charles the Warlike* D. of *Burgundy*, the two latter betray'd him at laſt to the *French* King, who cut off his Head, as *Commines* relates in his Memoirs.

5. *Lens*, Lat. *Lentium*, and *Lendum*, on the River *Souchez*, 15 Miles N. E. from *St. Pol*, is a City with a conſiderable Juriſdiction, which has been ruin'd by the Wars. 'Twas taken in 1557 by the *French*, pillag'd in 1582 by thoſe of *Cambray*, and ſack'd ſoon after by the *Spaniards*. 'Tis noted for a great Victory which the *French* under the Prince of *Conde* obtained near it over the *Spaniards* in 1648.

6. *Bethune*, on the *Biette*, 9 Miles N. W. from *Lens*, a pretty neat Town, well fortified, and noted for its Fairs. 'Twas anciently ſubject to Lords of its own, from whom the preſent Family of *Bethune* is deſcended. They make great Quantities of excellent Cheeſe here. 'Twas taken by the *French* in 1645, and confirmed to them by the Treaty of the *Pyrenees*.

7. *Aire*, or *Arien*, Lat. *Aria*, on the *Lys*, 10 Miles N. W. from *Bethune*. It ſtands in a Moraſs, which makes it almoſt inacceſſible. The *French* took it in 1641; the *Spaniards*

Digitized by Google

niards retook it ſoon after; and the *French* took it again in 1676, and had it confirmed to them by the Treaty of *Nimeguen*. 'Tis encompaſſed on 3 Sides by a Moraſs, fortified with good Ditches, Baſtions, Half-Moons, Redoubts, Horn-Works, and Counterſcarps. It can be cloſely beſieged only on one Side, where 'tis defended by the Fortreſs of St. *James*, which has 5 Baſtions, a Half-Moons, and a deep Trench.

8. *Teroüane*, or *Teroüenne*, Lat. *Teruana*, or *Civitas Morinorum*; was formerly the Capital of the *Morini*, a People of *Gallia Belgica*, in *Cæſar*'s Time. 'Twas beſieged in 1513 by K. *Henry* VIII. of *England*, when the Emperor *Maximilian*, in Honour of that Prince, fought under his Banner, and wore St. *George*'s Croſs. The Emperor *Charles* V. after having miſcarried in the Siege of *Metz*, took and demoliſhed this Place in 1553. Since which, its Dioceſe has been divided into the 3 Biſhopricks of *Boulogne*, *St. Omers*, and *Ipres*.

9. *Renty*, 5 Miles W. from *Teroüane*, is a Caſtle betwixt two Mountains, with a fair Village adjoining. 'Tis remarkable for a Victory obtain'd near it by the *French* over the *Spaniards* in 1554, when the latter loſt 3000 Men, and *Charles* V. narrowly eſcaped.

10. *St. Omers*, on the River *Aa*, 10 Miles N. W. from *Aire*, and 15 S. E. from *Calais*, Lat. *Fanum Sancti Audomari*, from *Audomarus*, a Native of *Conſtance* in *Germany*, and Biſhop of *Teroüane*, who built a Monaſtery here in 660; and the Reputation of his Sanctity occaſioned ſuch a Confluence of People to the Place, that it quickly grew a conſiderable Town, was firſt walled in 880, better fortified in 902, and at laſt became one of the ſtrongeſt and moſt important Places of the *Spaniſh Netherlands*, from whence the Garriſon infeſted the Frontiers of *France*, and laid the Country about *Calais* and *Boulogne* under Contribution. 'Twas made a Biſhop's See, Suffragan of *Cambray*, in 1559. Some are of Opinion, that 'tis the *Itcium Portus* mentioned by *Cæſar*, from whence he embarked to invade *Britain*; and by the Ruins of a Port, and the ſandy Soil in the Neighbourhood, they reckon the Sea did then come up to it; but this is rejected for very good Reaſons by *Cluverius* in his *Germania Antiqua*, *Lib.* 2. where he proves, that the *Itcium Portus* of *Cæſar* is that now called *Boulogne*. *St. Omers* is remarkable for the Riches of the Inhabitants, occaſioned by a new Canal betwixt it and *Gravelin*, for the Abbey of St. *Bertin*, and a Seminary of *Engliſh* Jeſuits. 'Tis fortified both by Nature and Art, having on one Side the River and Marſhes, and on the other is defended by a ſtrong Caſtle on a riſing Ground, ſeveral Baſtions, Half-Moons, and deep Trenches. In the Neighbourhood there's a great Lake, in which there are ſeveral floating Iſlands, that afford good Paſturage for Cattle, and Shelter for Fiſh in Extremity of Heat or Cold. *Guicciardin* ſays, theſe Iſlands are eaſily drawn from one Place to another, by tying Ropes to the Buſhes that grow upon them. On this Lake ſtands the noble and large Monaſtery of St. *Bernard*, by whom 'tis ſaid to have been built. This City was taken by the D. of *Orleans* in 1677, after the Defeat of the Pr. of *Orange*, who advanc'd as far as *Mont-Caſſel* to relieve it; and 'twas quitted to the *French* by the Treaty of *Nimeguen*.

The Archbiſhoprick of Cambray,

HAS *Hainault* on the N. and E. the *Archbiſhoprick of Tournay* on the W. and *Picardy* on the S. Its greateſt Length from E. to W. is about 25 Miles; the Breadth is unequal, being in ſome Places 12, and in others not above 4 Miles. This Country was a long time a Bone of Contention betwixt the Emperors, the Kings of *France*, and Earls of *Flanders*. *La Forreſt* ſays, *Cladius* K. of *France* took the City of *Cambray* in 441. That *Clovis* I. took it again in 504, and killed with his own Hand *Ragnacaire*, who called himſelf King of it. The Emperor *Charles* V. took it in 1544, and built a Citadel there. The Duke of *Alençon*, Brother to *Henry* III. of *France*, obliged the D. of *Parma* to raiſe the Siege of it, and afterwards gave it to *John de Monluc de Balagny*; and 'twas confirmed to him, with the Title of Prince, by *Henry* IV. but the *Spaniards* recover'd it next Year, and kept it till 1677, when 'twas taken by *Lewis* XIV. At the ſame time his Brother took *St. Omers*.

The

The chief PLACES *are,*

1. *Cambray*, Lat. *Cameracum*; in *Dutch*, *Cameriick*, from whence their Country is called *Cambresis*, and *Cameracensis Ager*. The City is large, neat, well built, and moſt of the Streets center in the great Market-place, where there's a Town-Houſe, with a famous Clock, much taken notice of. The Town is reckon'd one of the ſtrongeſt in *Europe*, being defended by 2 Citadels, 5 regular Baſtions, Ramparts, Walls, Half-Moons, and large deep Ditches, which they can fill with Water in a very little time. Its Situation is very advantagious on the *Scheld*, 9 Miles N. from the Frontiers of *Picardy*, 16 S. E. from *Arras*, and 14 S. W. from *Valenciennes*. On the W. Side, in a low Bottom, it has very large Suburbs, with fine Gardens and Meadows on the River. It has 9 Pariſhes, 3 Abbies, many Religious Houſes, Hoſpitals, and other publick Buildings. 'Twas formerly a Biſhop's See, Suffragan of *Rheims*, but made an Archbiſhoprick in 1559. 'Twas likewiſe an Imperial Town, under Protection of the County of *Aloſt*, but united to the County of *Hainault* by *Charles* V. and quitted to the *French* by the Treaty of *Nimeguen*. Dr. *Northleigh* ſays, the Chapter conſiſts of 48 Canons, and 95 other Eccleſiaſticks: That the great Church of our Lady is a handſome Structure, with many Statues and Tombs of Saints; amongſt which, thoſe of St. *Sebaſtian* and St. *Michael*, of curious Marble, are the chief. The Quire and Nave of the Church are ſeparated by Rails of Braſs of curious Workmanſhip; and they have a Clock, which upon ſtriking repreſents our Saviour's Paſſion. The Doctor adds, That in this Country he once met with a *Frenchman*, who by 15 Years Labour had made an artificial Head, which, by the Motion of certain Wire-work, Springs and Wheels, would utter whole Dialogues diſtinctly with a humane Voice, laugh, and expreſs ſome other Affections; but at laſt 'twas ſtole from him. The Ditches of the Citadel are cut out of a Rock, and they have Sluces by which they can drown the adjacent Country. This Place is noted for making the fine Linen, from hence called Cambrick. 'Twas a terrible Thorn in the Sides of the *French* while poſſeſſed by the *Spaniards*; and upon any Rupture, was able to lay the Country under Contribution as far as the *Seyne*. The Archbiſhop has both Temporal and Spiritual Juriſdiction, calls himſelf Duke of *Cambray*, and Count of *Cambresis*. The Soil of the Country is very fruitful in Corn, but has few Vines, tho' there be very good Fruit of other Sorts.

2. *Chateau Cambresis*, lies on the *Selle*, 13 Miles S. E. from *Cambray*, formerly a Town of Note, but ruin'd by the Wars. 'Tis famous for a Treaty in 1559 betwixt *Henry* II. of *France*, and *Philip* II. of *Spain*, to whom the *French* yielded up 198 conſiderable Places for *St. Quintin*, *Ham*, and *Chatelet*. 'Twas quitted to the *French* by the Treaty of *Nimeguen*, as was alſo *Cревecœur*, another walled Town in this Province, about 6 Miles S. from *Cambray*.

The County or Province of Hainault,

HAS *Flanders* and *Brabant* on the N. Part of *Picardy* and *Champaign* on the S. Part of *Flanders*, *Arras*, and *Cambray*, on the W. Part of *Brabant*, the Counties of *Namur* and *Luxemburg*, on the E. Its greateſt Length from S. E. to N. W. is about 60 Miles, and the greateſt Breadth from E. to W. about 46. Moſt of it was anciently poſſeſſed by the *Eburones*, or as ſome ſay the *Nervii*. It has frequently chang'd its Name, being firſt called *Pannonia*, becauſe the Inhabitants worſhip'd the Idol *Pan*; afterwards *Saltus Carbonarius*, becauſe of the great Quantities of Charcoal formerly made there: Then 'twas called *Lower Picardy*; and at laſt *Hainault*, from the River *Hain*. 'Tis called in Latin, *Hannonia*; in *Dutch*, *Henne-gow*. The Air is clear and ſweet, and the Soil fertile, being water'd with the *Sambre*, *Dender*, and other Rivers. It abounds with Corn and Paſture, Gardens and fruitful Orchards. Their Wheat is excellent, and they have Plenty of Lakes, Ponds, Springs, Mines of Iron, Lead, Marble, Touch-ſtone, and Coal. It has 24 wall'd Towns, 950 neat and pleaſant Villages, and is divided into three Principalities of *Chimay*, *Ligne*, and *Brabanzon*; 10 or (as ſome ſay) 16 Earldoms, and 22 Baronies. They have alſo 26 Monaſteries, 12 Seigneuries belonging

to

the higheſt Dignity, and the Magiſtrates of the City give Place to him. The Emperor *Charles* V. gave him the Right Hand at a ſolemn Proceſſion. On Holidays, and other Solemnities, he is attended by 8 Beadles, who go before him with Silver Maces, and he is followed by his Menial Servants. They have alſo a Promotor, who, by Leave from the Rector, apprehends and puniſhes Criminals, ſometimes by Death, but moſtly by Fines. The Rector has great Power elſewhere; but in the Senate, who ſhare the Supreme Authority with him, he is no more than Preſident. If a Citizen ſue a Scholar, the Cauſe is brought before the Rector; but if a Scholar ſue a Citizen, 'tis brought before the Conſervator, who is generally a Biſhop or Abbot skill'd in the Laws, and ſworn to preſerve the Privileges of the Univerſity; and his Court being Eccleſiaſtical, to which Appeals lie from any other Court of that ſort in *Brabant*, he has a Power to excommunicate upon Contumacy. They have a Chancellor, who confers Degrees, which is alſo perform'd by the Provoſt of St. *Peter*'s, who takes Place next to the Rector. For the Learned Men produc'd here, we refer to *Bleau*.

Notwithſtanding the above-mentioned Encomiums of this Univerſity, Dr. *Brown* ſays, *Oxford* may vie with it for Situation, and exceeds it in Buildings and Endowments. Mr. *Ray* ſays, the Gentlemen Students are plac'd in a peculiar Form, called *Scamnum Nobilium*: All of 'em pay Fines for Abſence from Lectures and Exerciſes; and the 12 appointed to Exhibitions above-mentioned have their Lodgings, Diet and Salary, in what College they pleaſe, chuſe what Profeſſion they think meet; and out of them the Profeſſors are uſually choſen. He adds, They give the Degrees of Batchelor Licentiate and Doctor; but can't be Licentiates in Divinity till after 11 Years Study, and ſeldom Doctors till 50 Years of Age, without extraordinary Proofs of their Ability. The Schools, he ſays, are better than thoſe of *Cambridge*, but inferior to thoſe of *Oxford*. In 1654, there were no leſs than 1600 Students here. In the chief College for Divinity, there are 120 Students maintain'd at the publick Charge; and in the 4 Pedagogies, there are 200 maintain'd in the like manner. Their Licentiate, he ſays, is a Medium betwixt a Batchelor and a Doctor.

This City has the Precedency of all the reſt in *Brabant*, becauſe of its Antiquity; and that 'tis the Place where the Prince and People do firſt take the Oaths mutually to one another. It has alſo the firſt Vote in the Provincial States, except in raiſing Money, when *Antwerp* has the Precedency, becauſe of its Wealth, and larger Proportion in its Share of the publick Taxes. 'Twas abandon'd by the *French* in 1706, after the Battle of *Ramelies*.

About half a League from this City, lies an ancient Palace belonging to the Dukes of *Arefchot*, formerly reckon'd one of the ſtatelieſt in *Europe*, but now ruinous; is ſtill noted for a noble Avenue about a Mile long, and 40 Foot broad, being cut down to an exact Level through a hilly Ground, with Rows of Linden Trees on each Side, by which 'tis ſhaded like an Arbour. The Park and Gardens are extraordinary fine.

2. *Tilmont*, *Tirlemont*, or *Tienen*, about 8 Miles S. E. from *Louvain*, on the River *Geet*. 'Twas formerly a Place of great Extent and Commerce, and one of the 4 principal Cities of the Province. 'Tis ſtill about a League in Compaſs, retains its ancient Privileges, but ſuffered much by the *French* in 1675.

3. *Leewe*, Lat. *Levia*, on the *Geet*, 5 Miles E. from *Tirlemont*, a ſmall, but ſtrong Town, having been fortified to prevent the Incurſions of the *Liegeois*, and enjoys the Privileges of the Second-Rate Cities of *Brabant*. 'Tis a neat City, and very ſtrong, by reaſon of its Forts and Sluces. 'Twas taken by the *French* in 1678, but reſtored by the Treaty of *Nimeguen*. 'Tis noted for a great Priory of *Auguſtins*, whoſe Prior is one of the 12 chief Nobles of the Province. It has a great Trade in Beer, which is much eſteem'd, and by ſome preferr'd to Wine.

4. *St. Trone*, or *Truyen*, Lat. *Centrones*, ſuppoſed to have been the Capital of that People. It lies 2 Miles S. E. from *Leewe*, 'twas ruin'd by the *French*, who diſmantled it in 1675, and carried from hence 40 Waggon-load of Arms to *Maeſtricht*.

5. *Landen*, 5 Miles S. from *Leewe*, on the ſame River, a ſmall, but ancient Town, noted for a dear-bought Victory obtain'd

League to the S. lies the Forreſt of *Soignies*, which furniſhes the City with Fuel, and the Court with good Game for Hunting. The City is encompaſſed with many Abbies and Monaſteries, and the neighbouring Country is well planted with Fruit-Trees of all Sorts, and watered with pleaſant Fountains and Streams, whoſe murmuring Noiſe, expreſſed by the *Dutch* Word *Ruyſſelen*, is by ſome thought to have given Name to the City. The River *Sinne* runs through it, from whence to the *Rupel* there was a navigable Channel, made in 1560 by *Charles* V. and *Philip* II. which coſt above 500000 Crowns. 'Tis 5 Leagues long, dug through a Mountain, which was reduced to a Level, has many Streams brought to it from the neighbouring Country, and 5 large Sluces built in convenient Places for collecting the Waters, and letting them out as Occaſion requires, for the Veſſels which trade with *Antwerp* and other Places; and 'tis obſerv'd, that the Bed of the Waters is 40 Foot higher at the Head of the Channel near *Bruſſels*, than at the Mouth of it where it falls into the *Rupel*. This City is far more populous than *Louvain*, thó the Walls be 200 Paces leſs in Circumference. 'Tis well built; the Streets are large, handſome and convenient. 'Tis the Seat of the Viceroy of the *Spaniſh Netherlands*, and of all the Courts belonging to the Government. They are fond of the Number 7 in many chief Things belonging to the City; as, 7 publick Fountains, 7 principal Streets that center in the great Market, 7 ſtately Houſes in the Market, let out by the Senate for the Uſe of the Corporation; 7 Pariſh-Churches, 7 Noble Families, eminent for their Antiquity and great Privileges; 7 Midwives, licens'd and ſworn by the Senate, who are obliged to go to the Poor as well as the Rich when call'd; 7 publick Gates of *Dorick* Work, remarkable for leading to ſo many Places of Pleaſure or different Exerciſe: The 1ſt, called the *Louvain* Gate, leads out to the beſt Fowling; the 2d, called *Algidomontana*, or Cold-Hill Gate, leads to a Place of Fiſhing; that called *Porta Obbruxellenſis*, leads to Hunting; that of *Anderlecht*, to pleaſant Fields; that of *Flanders*, to Paſture Grounds; that of *Laken*, to Springs and Vineyards; and that of *Mechlin*, to Gardens. 'Tis encompaſſed with a double high Wall, and very large Ditches On the Walls, there were formerly 74 Towers, but many of 'em now ruin'd by Age and War. The Walls are broad, and the Citizens walk on 'em as at *Antwerp*. The City is built on the Front of an Hill, and (ſays Dr. *Northleigh*) is larger than *Briſtol*. Their Houſes pretty much reſemble the *Engliſh*, and are cover'd for moſt part with Slate and Tiles. Their moſt remarkable Church is that of St. *Gudula*, formerly dedicated to St. *Michael*; but *Gudula*, a Daughter to one of their Counts, having richly endow'd it, they choſe her for their Patroneſs. It has two Towers, with 500 Steps each, and a Chapel, where they keep 3 conſecrated Hoſts, from which they alledge that Blood proceeded when they were ſtabb'd by ſome *Jews*, in Contempt of our Saviour, about 3 or 400 Years ago. They have an Annual Proceſſion in Remembrance of this ſuppos'd Miracle, when they expoſe the Hoſts as if they were ſtill bleeding. This Church is an old *Gothick* Fabrick, and has the Tombs of ſome Dukes of *Brabant*. In St. *Mary*'s Church are the Tombs of Archduke *Erneſt*, and the Count of *Iſſenburg*, with Inſcriptions, containing their Hiſtory. The Jeſuits College is very noble, and by its Front, Church and Tower, ſeems to have been the Model to that of *Antwerp*. They have a fine private Chapel, a pleaſant Garden, and a good Library; and betwixt the Windows, the Pictures of the chief Writers of their Society, with ſeveral *Roman* Antiquities brought from *Italy*. They have ſeveral Schools for Grammar, Rhetorick, and Philoſophy, and the Brothers of the Society are about 70 in Number. The *Franciſcans* and other Orders of both Sexes have Monaſteries here; and they have one for penitent Harlots, who enter into the Order of St. *Auſtin*. They have alſo an Hoſpital for the Cure of the Sick, and 4 for the Entertainment of poor Strangers for 3 Days, with a Bedlam for Lunaticks, and an Hoſpital for poor Children laid down in the Streets. The Palace where the Governor reſides is an ancient Fabrick in the Park, to which adjoins the Emperor's Palace built by *Charles* V. with a curious Groteſque and Water-works. *Blean* commends it as a ſtately and magnificent Palace, with Accommodations for the greateſt Prince in the

Digitized by Google

World; but it comes short of the Magnificence of the present Times. The adjoining Park is very pleasant, adorn'd with Water-works, Grotto's, an Aviary, fine Walks, and well stor'd with Deer. The Palace has two Galleries, one of 'em adorn'd with the Pictures of Emperors, Kings, Queens, Princes, and other great Persons: Among 'em, there's a curious Piece representing Archduke *Albert*; and upon a closer View, it likewise represents the Archdutchess *Isabella*; and there's a Picture of hers of the same Nature. The Town-House is an ancient and noble Fabrick, whose Front much exceeds that of *Amsterdam*, and Water is convey'd by Pipes to the very Top of it. The Tower is adorn'd with a Brass Statue of St *Michael*, the Guardian Angel of the City: The Statue is 15 Foot high, and so acurately pois'd, that it can easily be turn'd round. In the Hall, there's great Variety of Pictures by the best Masters; one of 'em by *Ruben*, representing *Solomon* judging the Controversy betwixt the two Harlots, valued at 3000 Florins. The Palaces of *Egmont*, *Alva*, *Orange*, and *Bournevill*, are noble Structures. The Royal Stable is also worth a Traveller's View, having Room for 127 Horses, with all Necessaries for them. Over it, there's a Magazine for Arms, belonging formerly to the Dukes of *Burgundy*, where are kept the Sword of *Charles the Bold* D. of *Burgundy*, with which *Charles* V. us'd to create the Knights of the *Golden Fleece*; Archduke *Albert's* Armour, that he wore at the Battle of *Newport*; and the Chariot in which Archdutchess *Isabella* enter'd *Brussels*, which cost 14000 Crowns. They likewise preserve here the Skins of 3 Horses, so artificially stuffed, that they resemble the Originals; one that belong'd to King *Philip* II. which they say cost 12000 Crowns; the 2d to the Archdutchess *Isabella*, when she enter'd *Brussels*; and the 3d to Archduke *Albert*, on which he escap'd from the Battle of *Newport*. They have a Custom here, and in other Towns of the *Netherlands*, to harnass 3 or 4 Mastiffs Side by Side, and make them draw Coaches, and little Carrs with Provisions and Goods; and they employ Women for Porters. This City abounds with People of Quality and Note, who take a Tour every Night in the Lower Town, but the Men and Women in different Coaches and Circles; yet they meet continually; and by their frequent Talk and Salutations, do many times interrupt the general Society. They have an Annual Custom on the 19th of *January*, says *Misson*, for the Women to undress their Husbands, and carry 'em to Bed; and the Husbands treat their Friends next Day. They assign two Reasons for it: The 1st is, That the City being once obliged to surrender to their Enemy, the Women were allowed only to carry out their Children, and what else they thought most valuable; upon which they took their Husbands on their Backs: The 2d, That having escap'd in a Battle which they undertook under St. *Lewis*, they came home in a Body, were met by their Wives out of Town, and carried home in their Arms. Some few Protestants live here; but they dare scarce own their Religion, adds *Misson*; which does not very well agree with his Assertion, That they have no Inquisition in the *Netherlands*. 'Tis observ'd, that the Houses of the Citizens are for most part stately and splendid, and well furnish'd with Springs and Gardens. They are noted for Extravagancy in adorning the latter with Flowers; so that those of a small Plat have been valued at 7 or 8000 Florins. They make use of the Filth of the City for dunging their Flower-Beds, which makes it bear a good Price. There's a Marble Pyramid erected upon the Place where stood the Palace of *Culemburg*, which was raz'd by the D. of *Alva*, because the Confederate Lords met there for Consultation at the beginning of the Revolt; and there's an Inscription upon it in 4 Languages, giving an Account of the Matter. Dr. *Brown* takes Notice, That before the Court of the Palace, there are 5 Brass Statues, and that one of the Water-works in the Park imitates the Sound of all Musical Instruments, by a kind of perpetual Motion; but the most surprizing Thing here is the Eccho in the Park, which makes 10 or 12, or, as some say, 15 distinct Replies, especially from the Gallery near the Riding-House. He adds, That about 5 Miles from this City, there's a Place called *Fontain*, where 3 Rivers cross one another, one of which is carried over a Bridge: That they have a Nunnery of *Beguins* with 800 Maids, who may quit the Convent and marry at Pleasure;

Digitized by Google

Pleasure; and that they have a new Church, which is Milk-white. There's likewise an *English* Nunnery in this City. The chief Manufactures are Lace and Tapestry. The Citizens are observ'd to be very courteous, especially to Strangers. In 1489, 33000 People died here of the Plague; and in 1529, they were grievously afflicted with the Sweating Sickness. At one time they had 2000, and some Hundreds of Houses, destroy'd by Fire, and at another time 1500 Weavers Shops. The Tradesmen of this City make 52 Companies, united into 9 larger Bodies, which they call Nations. The Armourers were formerly the most considerable, and noted, according to *Guicciardin*, for making Armour of Proof. The Townsmen have been accounted mutinous against the Nobility and Gentry, of whom the Magistrates consist; and the Weavers having been very active in some of those Mutinies, it occasioned a Law, which made it Capital for any of 'em to stay one Night in the City. When the *Netherlands* revolted, this Town was possessed for some Time by the Confederates, but reduced to Extremity, and forced to surrender to the Prince of *Parma* in 1585. Since which, it has continued under the Crown of *Spain*. Their Government is by two Consuls, one chosen out of the Nobility, and the other from the Commonalty; 7 Eschevins, chosen Annually by the Prince out of the 7 ancient and noble Families of the City; and 8 Common-Council-Men, chosen out of the chief Artificers. For their Learned Men, we refer to *Bleau*. This City suffered much in 1695, when 'twas bombarded by the *French* under M. *de Villeroy*; but the Houses which were then demolished have been since rebuilt with more Splendour. It missed narrowly of being surpris'd and taken by the Elector of *Bavaria* in 1708; of which we have given an Account, *P.* 826.

There are two Towns of Note which depend on this City; *viz.*

1. *Nivelle*, near the Head of the River *Sinne*, 15 Miles S. from *Brussels*, was formerly considerable, and well fortified, being one of the 4 Cities which constituted the Marquisate of the Empire. It still enjoys large Privileges. *Pepin*, eldest Son to *Charlemagne*, and Father to *Gertrude*, the Foundress of their chief Church and Abbey of Nuns, is said to be buried here. This Abbey entertains 42 Nuns, who must be Virgins, of Noble and Legitimate Extract by Father and Mother for 4 Generations. They chuse the Abbess by Consent of the Prince, and the Pope's Approbation. She has both Spiritual and Temporal Jurisdiction, and the Place is noted for making fine Linen, which vies with that of *Cambray*.

2. *Vilvorden*, on the Banks of the *Sinne*, 6 Miles N. from *Brussels*. 'Tis strong by Situation and Art, and has a Castle, in which the Duke of *Alva* imprison'd those whom he thought to be disaffected. The Records of the Province were formerly kept here, under the Charge of a Delegate, appointed by their Princes. In this Place the famous Mr. *William Tindal*, the first that translated the New Testament into *English*, suffered Martyrdom, contrary to the Laws of Nations, being a Subject of *England*.

The Lordship of Malins,

IS about 6 Miles long, and 6 broad. It belong'd anciently to the Family of the *Bartholds*, who being extinguish'd, the Bishop of *Liege* and the Count of *Gueldre* made War upon one another for it, and at last they agreed to divide it. They sold it in 1333 for 300000 Crowns to *Louis* Count of *Flanders*, who refused to do Homage for it to the D. of *Brabant*, as its former Possessors had done, which occasioned a War, that was at last made up by a Match betwixt the Families. *Philip the Good* of *Burgundy* erected it into a separate Jurisdiction.

The chief TOWN *is*,

Malins, or *Mechlin*, Lat. *Mechlinia*, on the *Dyle*, 12 Miles N. from *Brussels*. 'Tis one of the oldest and most considerable Towns in the *Netherlands*, lies in a healthful Air, and is divided into two Islands, which are join'd by a great Number of Bridges. The City is full of Channels and winding Currents, some form'd by Art, and others by Nature. The Tide flows up the River about a League above this City, which contributes much to its Trade. The Houses are neat and large, the Streets spacious, and very clean. The Town is fortified with good

Digitized by Google

good Walls; but its chief Strength lies in its Situation, for they can overflow the neighbouring Country with their Sluces. 'Tis divided into 7 Parishes, each of which has a magnificent Church; the chief is that of St. *Rumbold*, made an Archbishop's See in 1559, and Metropolitan of *Flanders*; their first Archbishop being Cardinal *Granvil*. The Statues of the Apostles are plac'd round the Walls. Among other Monuments, there's one containing an Inscription in *French*, but the Date worn out, importing, That there lies *Margaret*, Daughter of *Henry Stuart*, by her Royal Highness the Dutchess of *Orleans*, Daughter to *George Stuart* of the Illustrious House of *Stuart* and *Lenox* in *Scotland*, by Dame *Mary de Baqueville* of the Family of *Baqueville* in *Normandy*. The *Franciscan* Monastery is a curious, large, and stately Fabrick: The Nunnery of *Sancta Clara* is reckon'd as good as any of the Order. The Magazine was formerly stor'd to Admiration for Sea and Land Service, but not so of late; and the Palaces of the Emperor, *Hoogstraet*, *Nassau*, *Egmont*, and *Aremberg*, are now much out of Repair. On the Road to *Louvain*, near this City, there was formerly a Cherry Orchard, reckon'd the largest in *Europe*; and on the Road to *Antwerp*, stood the Nunnery of *Alexis*, where 'tis said 15000 Women liv'd by Spinning, and making of Cloth, but might leave the Convent, and marry. It was destroy'd in the late Wars with *Spain*. *Guicciardin* says, That by a Flash of Lightning during a great Tempest in *August* 1546, a Tower near the Sand-Port was blown up, with 2000 Barrels of Powder, and the Water beat out of the Town-Ditches, tho' very deep, for 600 Paces, all the Houses within 300 Paces demolished, and abundance of People killed and wounded. The Blow made the Earth to tremble as far as *Antwerp* and *Brussels*. There are 17 Companies of Tradesmen in this City, the chief of whom are the Bakers, Fishmongers, Dyers, Tanners, Brewers, and Butchers; out of which 6 Companies, 6 Eschevins are Annually chosen, who, with the like Number chosen from among the Nobility, make up their Magistracy. The Tanners are so numerous, that they formerly took up one Quarter of the Town, and still inhabit 3 entire Streets. This Company has such Privileges of Hunting and Hawking, as in other Places are allow'd only to the Nobility. They had formerly 3000 Weavers; but having taken Arms against the rest of the City, they were deprived of most of their Immunities, tho' they still take Place after the 6 other Companies above-mentioned. The chief Manufacture of this City is Lace and Point, so famous through all *Europe*, excellent Beer, Tann'd Leather, Bells, and great Guns, which are founded in this Place, Linen and Woollen Cloth. For their Learned Men, we refer to *Bleau* and *Guicciardin*. This City, and the Villages under its District, make one of the 17 Provinces. Their States consist of the Magistrates of the City, and the Representatives of the common People. Here also is held the great Council instituted by *Charles* of *Burgundy* in 1473, consisting of 35 Persons, the Prince himself being President. 'Twas new model'd by *Philip* I. of *Spain*, and reduced to 1 President, 16 Senators, 2 Graphiaries, 8 Secretaries, and some Assistants. To this Tribunal, before the Revolt, Appeals were brought from all the 17 Provinces, but now only from 10. They finally determine all Causes, tho' sometimes a Revision is allow'd. Hither also the Knights of the *Golden Fleece* are cited upon Misdemeanor.

The Marquisate of ANTWERP, *or the* Holy Empire,

IS, according to *Moll*, 35 Miles where longest from E. to W. and 25 from S. to N. 'Twas made a Marquisate by the Emperor *Otho* II. in 982, and given, with *Nether Lorrain*, to *Charles*, youngest Son to *Lewis* IV. of *France*; it came afterwards by Marriage to the Count of *Louvain*, and chang'd Masters in the same Manner as the Dutchy of *Brabant*, formerly mentioned.

The chief PLACES *are*,

1. *Antwerp*, which lies on the *Scheld*, 14 Miles N.W. from *Malins*, 22 N. from *Brussels*, 28 N.W. from *Louvain*, and 22 N.E. from *Ghent*, in Long 23. 7½. Lat. 51. 16. 'Tis

'Tis an ancient City; for St. *Willibrod* mentions a Church here committed to his Care in 656, in Lat. *Antwerpium*, and *Antwerpia*. The Origine of the Name is by ſome aſcribed to a Giant who liv'd in the Neighbourhood, and us'd to cut off the Hands of thoſe who did not pleaſe him, and throw them into the River; and to confirm this, they ſhew a Tooth which they pretend to be his, that is a Hand-breadth long, and weighs 16 Ounces; and the City has Hands cut off for part of its Arms; but this is rejected as fabulous, and the Name is derived from *Aen de Werve, i. e.* at the Wharf; part of the City near the Bank of the *Scheld* ſtill retaining this Name. It lies in Form of a Bow, on the E. Side of the *Scheld*, which is 500 of their Ells broad, and at low Water 22 Foot deep. It riſes 12 Foot more by the Tide, ſo that Ships of the largeſt Burthen can unload at their Keys. The *Scheld* runs through it by 8 Channels, ſome of them capable of holding 100 great Ships, which mightily advanc'd its Trade. *Guicciardin* ſays, in his Time it contain'd 13500 Houſes, and had waſte Ground for 3000 more. The Streets are ſtraight and large, and the Buildings magnificent. *Bocanus* ſays, in this Reſpect it exceeds all other in *Europe*; and Mr. *Ray* ſays, it excels *Florence* in Beauty. Dr. *Northleigh* thinks 'tis as large as *London* within the Walls. *Miſſon* ſays, the Houſes are built after a peculiar Way, half of Brick, and half of Wood, with Battlements at the Top, and very high Roofs, which make a handſome Appearance. Dr. *Brown* ſays, the Walls are very broad, fac'd with Brick and Free-ſtone, after the modern Way, being 110 Foot broad at Top, with ſeveral Rows of Linden Trees on them, where the Citizens divert themſelves by walking. The Baſtions are not very large, but the Ditch broad and deep; and on the whole, the Fortifications are more remarkable for their Beauty than Strength. The Citadel conſiſts of 5 Baſtions, is one of the beſt Fortifications of its kind in the *Netherlands*, and commands the City, River, and adjacent Country. 'Tis ſaid to have coſt above a Million of Crowns, and ſerv'd as a Model for moſt of the Citadels that have been built ſince. 'Twas begun by the D. of *Alva* in 1567, and finiſhed in leſs than a Year the Walls, conſiſting at firſt of Earth; but were afterwards lin'd with Brick and Stone. There's a good Space of empty Ground betwixt it and the City. 'Tis above a Mile in Compaſs, has large Storehouſes for Ammunition and Proviſion, and convenient Lodgings for above 3000 Soldiers. In 1577, a great Part of it was deſtroy'd by the Citizens in a Tumult; but it was afterwards repaired, and made much ſtronger. Formerly a Statue of Braſs of the cruel D. of *Alva* ſtood in the middle of the Place of Arms in the Citadel in compleat Armour, but without a Head-piece, extending his Right Arm towards the City, and his Hand open. He trampled under his Feet a Monſter with 2 Heads and 6 Arms, with 2 Diſhes hanging in its Ears, and a Satchel about its Neck, out of which came forth 2 Serpents. In its 6 Hands it held a Torch, a Leaf of Paper, a Purſe, a torn Cloak, a Club, and an Ax; and at the Feet of the Monſter lay a Vizor. On the Front of the Pedeſtal that fac'd the City there was an Inſcription, importing, that 'twas erected in Honour of the King's excellent and faithful Miniſter *Ferdinando Alvarez* of *Toledo*, Duke of *Alva*, General of the *Netherlands* for *Philip* II. of *Spain*, who had confirmed the Peace of the Provinces, by extinguiſhing Sedition, baniſhing the Rebels, and reſtoring Religion and Juſtice. The Monſter above-mention'd repreſented the chief of the Nobility who headed the *Geuſes*. But this inſolent Statue did not ſtand long, being demoliſhed by the People, who hated his Cruelty, and never ceaſed till he was recalled. Their moſt remarkable Structures are, 1. The Church dedicated to the Virgin, a magnificent Fabrick, which was made a Cathedral at the Deſire of *Philip* II. by Pope *Paul* IV. who aſſign'd it 7 Towns and 144 Villages for the Verge of its See, which is 50 Miles long, and 30 broad. This Church has 66 Chapels, and Altars ſo curiouſly built, and ſo ſumptuouſly adorn'd with Statues and Pictures, as cauſe Admiration in the Beholders. *Charles* V. was wont to ſay of its Steeple, That for its excellent Carving, it deſerv'd to be put in a Caſe, and only ſhewn upon Holidays. One of the two Towers adjoining to this Church is ſaid to be 420 Foot high, beſides its Cover, which is 5 Foot, and a Croſs upon that 16 Foot; ſo that *Ortelius* prefers it to the Tower of *Straſburg*.

Digitized by Google

burg. Dr. *Northleigh* says, he ascended it by 620 Steps, and then wanted 30 Foot to the Top, which is cover'd with Copper Pans; and on this they kindle a Fire when any Enemy approaches. From hence there's a Prospect of *Mechlin*, *Ghent*, *Louvain*, and other Cities, and likewise of the Isles of *Zealand*. It has 33 Bells, the largest of which, called *Charles*, from *Charles* V. is of a wonderful Bigness, and never rung but on extraordinary Occasions. They chime pleasantly every Hour, which is perform'd by one Man. Doctor *Northleigh* says, the Steeple is lower than that of *Salisbury*. The Skreen on the Side of the Church exceeds that of *Boisleduc*. The Paintings of the Altars, which are adorn'd with exquisite Workmanship of Marble, are most of 'em by *Ruben*. The Portico of this Church, with its Marble Statues, is inferior to none in *Rome*. This Church has a Dean and 24 Canons, and an Order called the *Confraternity of the Circumcision*, who pretend to have our Saviour's Fore-skin, sent by *Godfrey* of *Bouillon* K. of *Jerusalem*; and on this Account go in publick Procession every *Trinity Sunday*, which they call the Festival of the *Præputium*. They have several other Fraternities, who have their peculiar Chapels here, where they perform their Devotions on certain Festivals. 2. The Jesuits Church, which is the most magnificent on this Side the *Alps*. The Front is a noble Piece of Architecture, with the Statue of *Ignatius Loyola* on the Top; and an Inscription, importing, that it was built by the City, to the Honour of Christ, the Virgin, and St. *Ignatius*, in 1561. The Pillars that support the Galleries, and the upper Row which sustain the Roof, are of the finest Marble; and the Walls and Roofs are wainscotted with Pannels painted by *Ruben*, and other great Masters. The chief Altar is lofty and noble, of the most beautiful Marble, on which there's painted the Ascension of the Virgin by *Ruben*, and the Father represented, putting a Crown of Gold on her Head, with this Inscription, *Veni coronaberis*; *i. e.* Come, you shall be crown'd. Dr. *Northleigh* says, the Jesuits lead an idle and lazy Life here, have a very good Library, and a Chapel of their own, called that of the Society, with their Saints drawn by the best Masters, their Names in Capitals, and this Inscription under them, *Sanctus colitur*; with the Days of their respective Festivals, which fixes the Worship of Saints, and Images upon 'em, though they stifly deny it. The Doctor observes justly, that the Practice of the *Lutherans*, who have Crucifixes and Pictures in their Churches, is quite different, because they strictly forbid all Veneration to them, and keep them only as Remembrancers. 3. The Church of St. *James* is a noble Structure: Their High Altar is of the finest polish'd Marble, supported by two beautiful wreath'd Pillars of the *Corinthian* Order; and behind lies interr'd, in a by-Chapel of his own founding, the famous Painter *Ruben*, who painted the Banqueting-House at *Whitehall*; and among other noted Pieces, a Representation of the Last Judgment at *Antwerp*, valued at 500 *l.* Sterling. There's a great many Canons belong to this Church. 4. The Church of the *Praedicant Friars* is one of the largest of the City, and beautified with excellent Paintings. 5. The Abbey of St. *Michael*, belonging to the Remonstrants, is vastly rich, and has a noble Church, in which there's a Tomb of one of the Family of the *Stuarts*, and the Statues of the 12 Apostles round the Nave of the Wall. 'Tis also adorn'd with fine Paintings by *Ruben*. The Abbot has noble Apartments, in which there are 50 white Vestments. The Life of their Founder, who was Son to Count *Herebert*, a *Palatine*, in *Picardy*, is writ round the Wall in Latin Verse. 6. The Senate-House is a handsome Piece of old Architecture, built of curious speckled Marble: Being much impair'd by Time, 'twas rebuilt in 1460, burnt down soon after, but rebuilt again more splendidly in 1576. 7. The *Easterlings* House is a stately Fabrick, 97 Foot long, and 65 broad. 8. Their *Exchange* is a noble Structure, supported by 43 strong Pillars of white Marble, 180 Foot long, and 140 broad, in the Center of 4 large Streets. The *Royal Exchange* of *London* was built after its Model, but much exceeds the Original. 9. The House built by the Tapestry Merchants, which is 280 Foot long, and of a proportionable Breadth, and contains 26 Warehouses for that Commodity. 10. *Plantin's*, Printing-House, one of the noblest in its kind in the World, is a sort of a square College, with Lodgings for Officers and Work-

Digitized by Google

Workmen, who are chiefly employ'd in Printing Divinity. They had formerly almoſt 100 different Funds of Letters, 2 of which were Syriac, 10 Hebrew, 9 Greek, and 47 Roman. 11. Their Hoſpital for the Education of Children dropt in the Streets, and another for the Maintenance of 12 Perſons of Note of decay'd Fortunes, are very remarkable. 12. Their Glaſs-Houſe and Water-Houſe are extraordinary in their kind.

This City was formerly the moſt conſiderable for Trade in *Europe*. In 1550, 'twas reckon'd to amount to 33000000 of Gold, beſide the Bank, as appears by their Records, which likewiſe mentions one *John Dacnt*, a Merchant, ſo rich, that having lent a Million of Gold to *Charles* V. upon Bond, he afterwards invited that Emperor to an Entertainment, and making a Fire of Cinnamon in the Room, threw the Bond into it. *Guicciardin* ſays, That in his Time, when *Antwerp* was in its moſt flouriſhing Condition, there have been 2500 Veſſels lying together in the River; That 400 have come up with one Tide; and that 'twas uſual for 500 to go and come in a Day: That 200 Waggons arriv'd every Day with Paſſengers from the neighbouring Countries, and 1000 in a Week us'd to come from *Germany*, the Hans-Towns, *Lorrain*, and *France*: That 10000 Country Carts us'd to be employ'd *per* Week in carrying Goods to and again; and that there were then 500 Coaches for the Uſe of the better Sort: But the Perſecution by the D. of *Alva*, &c. the Revolt of the *Dutch*, and their blocking up of the *Scheld*, has ſunk their Trade; ſo that their Port is without Ships, their Exchange without Merchants, and moſt of their Trade is removed to *Amſterdam*, and other Towns in *Holland*: Yet the City retains much of its ancient Beauty, and there are ſtill many rich Families in it. About 30 Paces from the Jeſuits Church there's a Well, the Iron Branches of which, where the Pully hangs, are adorn'd with curious Foliage-work, made by a famous Smith, who falling in Love with a Painter's Daughter, her Father would not agree to the Match becauſe of his Trade, tho' he was very rich; upon which the Smith laid by his Hammer, took up the Pencil, and became ſo great a Maſter at Painting, that he carried his Miſtreſs, as appears by an Inſcription over his Tomb near the Gate of the Cathedral. The Water of the *Scheld* near this City is brackiſh; ſo that the Fountains of the City not being ſufficient to furniſh the Brewhouſes with Water, they were obliged, at vaſt Expence, to bring Water for that Uſe by a Canal of 30 Miles, which empties it ſelf into a great Ciſtern, from whence 'tis rais'd by Engines into a Baſon, and thence convey'd by Pipes to the ſeveral Brewhouſes. 'Twas formerly an Imperial City, and the Princes of *Naſſau* were its Burgraves. The famous Geographer *Ortelius*, and the great Painter *Rubens*, with other Perſons illuſtrious for Learning and Arts, were born in this City. The Particulars may be ſeen in *Bleau*. This Town join'd in the Revolt againſt *Spain*, and was well nigh being ſurpris'd by the D. of *Alençon*, Brother to *Henry* III. of *France*, who aim'd at an abſolute Power, when he was choſen Governor of the *Netherlands*. In order to this, *Bentivoglio* ſays, the *French* poſſeſſed themſelves of two Gates of the City, and let in a Body of their Troops; but having neglected to guard the Portcullis of St. *James*'s Gate, by which they were to have received further Aſſiſtance, the Citizens let it down, took Arms, and killed or made Priſoners all the *French*, while the D. was gone out on Pretence of Hunting, to wait for the Succeſs of his Plot: The miſcarrying of which loſt him the Government, and killed him with Grief, as we have formerly mentioned. This City was afterwards beſieged and taken by the Prince of *Parma*, Governor of the *Netherlands* for the K. of *Spain*, after he had lain before it a Twelvemonth. This was one of the moſt remarkable Sieges that ever was heard of, according to the Account that *Meteran* and *Strada* give of it, wherein that Prince could never have ſucceeded, had it not been for that ſtupendious Bridge which he laid over the *Scheld*, in order to carry it on. The Citizens did all that they could to ruin this Bridge, and to that End built ſeveral Fire-Boats of a very extraordinary Form: They were compos'd of large firm Planks, with Room for a Mine in the middle, which was inclos'd with Brick and Lime, leaving only a ſmall Paſſage for a Train to reach the Gun-powder, with which the Mine was filled; and over the Mine were laid great Quan-

Digitized by Google

tities of Stones, Bullets, and other Materials that were fit to do Execution. Being thus prepar'd, the Citizens let them loose above the Bridge; the *Spaniards* made a Paſſage, by which all of 'em went through but one, without Effect. This ſtopping near the End of the Bridge, while Men were ſent to take out the Powder, the Mine blew up, deſtroy'd thoſe who were on board, and many others in the Boats of the Bridge, in all about 500. The Shock was ſo dreadful, that it made the Earth to tremble for ſeveral Miles, and threw the Water of the River a great way beyond its Banks: But this Deſign of blowing up the Bridge having miſcarried, the Prince of *Parma* renewed the Siege with Vigour; and the rich Merchants being willing to ſave their Effects, they perſwaded the Garriſon to ſurrender in 1585. After which, the Prince of *Parma* re-eſtabliſh'd Popery there, and reſtored the City to the Crown of *Spain*. This City was burnt by the *Danes* in 807, and ſuffer'd much by accidental Fires in 1236, 1456, and 1461. 'Twas taken by the Confederate States in 1566, afterwards retaken by the *Spaniards*; and upon the Death of *Requeſenes* the Governor of the *Spaniſh-Netherlands*, the *Spaniards*, who mutiny'd for want of Pay, burnt down 500 Houſes, ſack'd the Town, and murder'd 7000 of the Inhabitants. The *French* hir'd one *Hoo* to betray the Citadel, and the Fort of *Montery* near *Bruſſels*, in 1674; but the Plot was diſcover'd, and diſappointed by hanging the Traitor. The *French* ſeiz'd it after the Death of *Charles* II. of *Spain*, but abandon'd it after the Battle of *Ramillies* in 1706. They attempted it again by Treachery in 1708, when *Ghent* and *Bruges* were betray'd to 'em; but were diſappointed. *Guicciardin* ſays, the Inhabitants in his Time were reckon'd 200000; that it had 13 Gates, 8 of which lie towards the River; and that they had 74 Bridges over the 8 Canals in the Town. They have 200 Streets, and 22 publick Places or Squares. Their Government is by 9 choſen out of the Nobility, 9 named by the Præfects or Maſters of the Streets, and 18 others choſen from among the Perſons of chief Note in the City; whoſe Names being all ſent to the Prince, he appoints one half of 'em for a ſtanding Senate, who afterwards chuſe two Burgomaſters, one of whom appears in behalf of the City at the Meeting of the States, and the other adminiſters Juſtice at home, having with the above-mention'd Senators a deciſive Power in all Cauſes. They have alſo a Scout, who apprehends Criminals, and executes their Sentences upon them; and they have a Solicitor, who pleads Civil Cauſes before them; and chuſe two Treaſurers nam'd by the People, and a Receiver propos'd by the Nobility, to manage the publick Revenue, according to the Order of the Senate, who likewiſe appoint a Council of 12 from among the Deans of the 28 Companies of Trades, to aſſiſt in the Government.

2. *Lire*, or *Liere*, about 10 Miles S. E. from *Antwerp*, very ſtrong by its Situation on the River *Nethe*. 'Tis a neat and pleaſant Town, inhabited by Perſons of Quality and rich Merchants, who leave off their Trade. It changed Maſters ſeveral times during the Civil Wars of the *Netherlands*, and is very well fortified. Its Market-place vies with any of the Country for Extent, and the ſtately Buildings which ſurround it; is noted for its Manufactures, and for a Fair of Cattle one Day each Week from St. *John*'s-Tide to *Martinmas*. The Collegiate Church of St. *Gummarus* is a magnificent Structure. They have alſo a fine Grammar School, and ſeveral Religious Houſes; among which, that of the *Carthuſians* is the chief.

3. *Horentals*, on the ſame River, about 8 Miles N E. from *Lire*, a pleaſant Town, and tolerably well fortified. 'Tis noted for the Birth of a Phyſician called *Peter* of *Horentals* famous for his kill in the ſecret and ſpecifick Virtues of Plants, by which he did great Cures, and communicated his Art to his two Sons *Peter* and *Theodore*, who ſucceeded him in Fame and Practice

4. *Eckeren*, a ſmall Town about 3 Miles N. from *Antwerp*, noted for a ſharp Battle betwixt the *French* and the Confederates in 1703, when both Sides pretended to the Victory.

4. *Hoogſtraten*, about 15 Miles N.E. from *Antwerp*, a large open Town, with the Title of an Earldom, and ſeveral Villages under its Juriſdiction. It belongs to the Noble Family of the *Lalaing*.

Lil

Digitized by Google

Lillo and *Sandfliet*, already deſcrib'd in *Dutch Brabant*, are reckon'd Part of this Marquiſate.

The Dutchy of Limburg,

HAS *Juliers* on the N. Part of the Biſhoprick of *Liege* on the S. Part of the ſame Biſhoprick on the W. and the Dutchy of *Juliers* on the E. is 28 Miles where longeſt from N. to S. and about 75 broad. We have already deſcrib'd the *Dutch* Part of it, *P.* 925. and come now to *Spaniſh Limburg*. *La Forreſt* ſays, 'twas anciently inhabited by the *Eburones*, poſſeſſed afterwards by particular Lords, and ſold about 1280 to the D. of *Brabant*: Since which, it has always followed the Fate of that Province, and is ſtill ſubject to the ſame Courts.

Limburg, the chief Town, lies on the River *Veſe*, upon a Rock almoſt inacceſſible, about 15 Miles S. E. from *Liege*, and 13 S. from *Aix la Chapelle*. 'Twas taken by the *Dutch* in 1633, retaken by the *Spaniards* ſome Time after, taken by the *French* in 1675, but reſtored by the Peace of *Nimeguen*. 'Twas ſeized by the *French* after the Death of *Charles* II. but recover'd by the Confederates under the D. of *Marlborough* in 1703. The Town is ſmall, conſiſts chiefly of one broad ſhort Street, and the Buildings not remarkable. 'Tis chiefly noted for its Strength, being encompaſſed with a ſtrong Wall and a Trench, and has but one Paſſage, extreme difficult, on the Edge of a Rock, commanded by the Gate of the Town, which is well fortified This is the only Place of Note in the Dutchy belonging to the *Spaniards*.

The adjacent Country abounds with all neceſſary Commodities except Wine, and is noted for excellent Wheat, ſtore of Fuel, and the beſt Iron Mines in all thoſe Parts.

The Dutchy of Luxemburg,

HAS the County of *Namur* and the Biſhoprick of *Liege* on the N. Part of *Champagne* and *Lorrain* on the S. the Electorate of *Treves* on the E. Part of *Hainault* and *Champagne* on the W. The greateſt Length from S. E. to N. W. is about 68 Miles, and the greateſt Breadth from S. W. to N. E. about 60. 'Tis commonly divided into the Diſtricts of *Arduenne* and *Moſelle*, or into the *Famenne* and *Arduenne*, and now into the *French* and *Spaniſh Luxemburg*. The Diſtrict of *Famenne* is fruitful in Corn, and yields ſome Wine, with Quarries of Stone and other Foſſils. That Part which lies towards *France* and the *Maes* is more woody and barren, has little Corn, but Plenty of all ſorts of Veniſon; and in ſome of the Mountains, there are Mines of Iron. The chief Rivers are, the *Moſelle*, *Elſe*, *Semay*, the *Ourte*, and the *Maes*, which run through *Arduenne*. The Dutchy has above 20 Wall'd Towns, and about 1200 Boroughs and Villages. 'Tis divided into 7 Earldoms, a great Number of Baronies and leſſer Seigniories, where the Lords have a greater Power over their Vaſſals than in any other Province of the *Netherlands*. The Provincial States are compoſed of the Prelates, Nobility, and Gentry, and the Deputies of the Cities. 'Tis ſaid to have had its Name from a Caſtle, which the *Treviri* built in Honour of the Sun, where *Luxemburg* now ſtands, which they call *Lucis Burgum*. *Sigefrid*, Son to *Ricuinus Arduennenſis*, famous in ancient Hiſtory, having obtained Part of this Country from the Abbot of St. *Maximus* of *Treves*, enlarged his Territory, built the City, and was the Founder of the Earldom. It came afterwards to the Count of *Namur*, and by Marriage to the Marquis of *Arlong*; one of whoſe Poſterity, called *John*, being choſen K. of *Bohemia*, divided his Dominions betwixt his two Sons. *Charles* the Eldeſt ſucceeded to the Crown of *Bohemia*, and was choſen Emperor. His younger Brother *Wenceſlaus* having *Luxemburg*, his Brother erected it into a Dutchy in 1346; and *Elizabeth*, who fell Heireſs to it afterwards, ſold it to *Philip the Good* of *Burgundy* in 1422, from whom it came to the Houſe of *Auſtria*, and continued under their Subjection till Part of it was quitted to the *French* by the Treaty of the *Pyrenees*.

The chief PLACES *under the* Spaniards *are*,

1. *Luxemburg*, Lat. *Lutzenburgum*, *Luxenburgum*, and *Lucemburgum*, is by *Guicciardin* thought to be *Ptolomy's Auguſta Romanduorum*,

Digitized by Google

and by others his *Augusta Veromanduorum*: But *Cellarius* thinks the latter to be St. *Quintin*. The City is divided into the Old and New; the former is now the Suburbs of the latter, because lying in a Bottom, and commanded by the Hill, 'twas not capable of being defended since great Guns came in Fashion. The Main of the New City stands now on that Hill, surrounded with good Walls, strong Bastions, Counter-Guards, Half-Moons, Ravelins, Ditches, two Cover'd-Ways, and other Fortifications. It lies in Long. 24. 45. Lat. 49. 43. about 20 Miles S. W. from *Treves*, 11 N. W. from *Thionville*, 44 S. from *Limburg*, and 64 S. E. from *Namur*. Dr. *Northleigh* says, it lies near the River *Alsith*, that runs under it, upon a Precipice of Rocks, which also surround it, Nature having made a Vale betwixt the Rocks on which 'tis seated and those that front it, which makes it almost impregnable by Art; and it has been so fortified since, that 'tis one of the strongest Places in *Europe*; yet there are some adjacent Rocks from whence it may be bombarded. On the W. Side of it lies a Promontory of the opposite Hill jetting out, which is join'd to the Town-Gate by a Bridge. In the New City, there are only two Springs, and those so deep in the Earth, that they are seldom us'd. They have large Cisterns for holding Rain Water; and the Maids have a great Drudgery to bring their Water from the River, which runs at the Foot of the Hill. The Jesuits have a handsome Church here, and the *Franciscans* a Cloister, said to have been founded in the Life of St. *Francis*. In the Chapel belonging to their great Church, there are the Tombs of *John* of *Luxemburg* King of *Bohemia*, Son to the Emperor *Henry* VII. and of the famous Count *Mansfeld*, Governor of the *Spanish Netherlands*, with the Effigies of himself and his two Wives in Brass. The Town is neither large nor well built, except some Houses erected by the *French* King for the Officers of the Garrison. This City was taken by the Duke of *Orleans* in 1542, and retaken by the Emperor *Charles* V. two Years after. 'Twas taken again by the *French* in 1684, but restored by the Treaty of *Ryswick*. They seiz'd it again after the Death of K. *Charles* II. of *Spain*, and still keep it. On the E. Side, there was a stately Palace belonging to the Counts of *Mansfeld*; with many noble Monuments of Antiquity; but 'twas ruin'd by the last Siege. *La Forrest* says, the *French* Family, entitl'd Dukes of *Luxemburg*, had formerly 3 Branches, but now only that of *Brienne St. Paul*, of which was the famous Mareschal *de Luxemburg*, Father to *Francis Frederick* D. of *Montmorenci*.

2. *Arlun*, or *Arlon*, about 10 Miles N. W. from *Luxemburg*, supposed to have been formerly a Place where the Moon was worship'd, and from thence called *Ara Lunæ*. 'Twas a handsome Town, but much endammag'd by the late Wars. 'Twas erected into a Marquisate in 1103.

3. *Chiny*, about 10 Miles S. W. from *Arlon*, Capital of a City of the same Name, formerly under Lords of its own, but united to the Dutchy of *Luxemburg* at the End of the 14th Century. 'Twas ruin'd by the *French* Wars, and has not recover'd its ancient Splendour. It has an independant Jurisdiction; and the supreme Administrators of Justice in both the County and Dutchy are co-ordinate in their Stiles, and call themselves the Governor, President, and Senators, of the Council of the Dutchy of *Luxemburg*, and of the E. of *Chiny*.

4. *Neufchattel*, about 6 Miles N. from *Chiny*, was formerly a Place of great Strength and Beauty, but now decay'd.

5. *Bastogne*, or *Bastonac*, about 13 Miles N. E. from *Neufchattel*, whose pleasant Situation makes it be called the Palace of *Ardennes*. 'Tis noted for its Horse-Fairs and noble Corn-Market.

6. *St. Hubert*, a famous Abbey, 9 Miles W. from *Bastogne*, so called because St. *Hubert* Bishop of *Liege* was buried there; to whom the Huntsmen address themselves in their Devotions.

7. *Rochefort*, 10 Miles N. W. from *St. Hubert*, remarkable for the Defeat of the *Spaniards* by the *French* near it in 1635.

8. *Marche-en-Famine*, Lat. *Martia*, supposed to have had its Name from the Idol *Mars*, who was worship'd there. It lies about 9 Miles N. E. from *Rochefort*. 'Tis an ancient Town, but remarkable for little else. *La Forrest* says, it has a pretty good Trade.

9. *La Roche en-Ardenne*, about 9 Miles S. E. from *Marche-en Famine*, a small Town, where the *French* Kings of the 2d Race frequently

quently diverted themſelves by Hunting, and where their chief Huntſmen reſided. It takes its Name from a Rock upon which it ſtands. 'Tis the Capital of a County of the ſame Name, which is generally barren; but the Inhabitants better the Soil by breaking it up with a ſtrong Team of Horſes, afterwards plowing it acroſs, and tearing off the Buſhes, Brambles, and Heath, with a great Harrow, which they burn with the Turfs of the Soil at convenient Diſtances. The Inhabitants ſhew a Hole in the Rock here, called K. *Pepin*'s Chair, where they ſay he us'd to reſt himſelf upon Occaſion, and gave Audience to the People that reſorted to him for Juſtice.

10. *Salm*, on a ſmall River near the Frontiers of *Limburg*, about 15 Miles N. E. from *La Roche*, Capital of a County, whoſe Lords were very famous in the 8th Century.

11. *Durbuy*, on the River *Urt*, about 10 Miles N. from *La Roche*, Capital of a County of the ſame Name, ſubject formerly to Lords of its own.

12. *St. Vit*, 15 Miles S. E. from *Durbuy*, a great open Town, chief of a Lordſhip, formerly belonging to the Counts of *Vianden*, but now to the Houſe of *Naſſau*. About a Mile from thence lies *Slude*, a neat open Town, Capital of a County, with Juriſdiction over ſeveral Villages, noted for being the Birth-place of the famous Hiſtorian *Joannes Sleidanus*.

13. *Vianden*, on a ſmall River, about 19 Miles N. E. from *Luxemburg*, a great open Town, with the Title of a County, belonging to the Houſe of *Naſſau*.

In this Country is that called the Dukedom of the *Moſelle*, which lies along that River between *Metz* and *Treves*, formerly a Principality of great Account for about 500 Years; but loſt its Name upon erecting the Caſtle of *Bar*, when *Frederick*, the Founder of it, order'd it to receive a new Appellation from that Caſtle. It has ſince been divided into ſeveral leſſer Portions, ſubject to ſeveral Princes. The Part which lies next to *Metz* fell under the Biſhops of that Town, and from thence as far as *Commerſnacheren* belong'd to the D. of *Luxemburg*, and the Remainder came to the Dukes of *Lorrain*, in Right of the Counts of *Bar*.

For the other Towns of *Echternach*, *Waſſenbillich*, *Grevenmacheren*, *Remich*, *Virton*, &c. there's nothing in them that merits a Deſcription.

Bleau mentions the Principality of *Ardenne*, which was ſuppoſed to have been erected in the Time of the firſt Race of the *French* Kings, and was govern'd by Princes deſcended from *Cladion* II. King of that Race. This Country was moſt of it barren, and cover'd with Woods, as a great Part of it is ſtill; but by conſtant Labour and Cultivation, it now produces all Neceſſaries for the Life of Man. It lies betwixt the County of *Namur*, *Hainault*, and the reſt of *Luxemburg*; and the great Forreſt of this Name was formerly worſhip'd by the idolatrous Pagans. The Women howl here at the Burials of their Relations like the *Iriſh*.

The Earldom of *Rauſſy*, formerly called that of St. *Paul*, lies about mid-way betwixt *Luxemburg* and *Thionville*, ſuppoſed to derive its Name from a *Ruſſian* Lord, who in ancient Times married the Heireſs. *Guicciardin* mentions a Town called *Marville*, Capital of a Lordſhip, 12 Leagues from *Luxemburg*, upon the River *Chier*, which is divided betwixt the King of *Spain* and the Dukes of *Lorrain*, and for that Reaſon called the Common Town. He mentions alſo the Lordſhips of *Arauxy* and *Reydefyd*, the Earldom of *Urſmont*, towards the Borders of *France*, the County of *Manderſcheid*, in which there's a ſtrong Caſtle; the Earldom of *Virneburg* near the Frontiers of *Treves*, which formerly belong'd to the Counts of *Manderſcheid*, who ſold it to the D. of *Luxemburg* in 1270, *Reacmacheren*, a neat little Town, with a good Caſtle, about 9 Miles S. E. from *Luxemburg*, and *Ren* upon the River *Chier*, formerly a conſiderable Town, but ruin'd by the War, and dismantled when reſtored by the *French*.

French Luxemburg.

Lies on that Side next to *Champagne* and *Lorrain*, and contains the following Places.

1 *Thionville*, Lat. *Theodonis Villa*; in Dutch, *Diedenhoven*, on the *Moſelle*, about 12 Miles S. E. from *Luxemburg*. This is very ſtrong by its Situation, and well fortified, but was taken by the *French* in 1643, and is one of the three Legal Places of Luxem-

Germany, and 'twas ſo ſtrong as to be thought impregnable. The *French* under the Duke of *Guiſe* took it in 1558, after a long Siege, which coſt them abundance of Men. 'Twas afterwards reſtored to the *Spaniards* by a Treaty of Peace, when they added to its Fortifications 6 Bulwarks, encompaſſed with a Wall of Brick and Stone, 4 large Hornworks, a broad and deep Ditch, ſet the ſloaping Curtain with Palliſadoes; and before the Gate of *Luxemburg*, they raiſed a vaſt Horn work. Notwithſtanding which, 'twas taken by the D. of *Bourbon* in 1643, after two Months Siege, and was quitted to the *French* by the Treaty of the *Pyrenees*. 'Tis reckon'd the Capital of *French Luxemburg*.

2. *Montmedy*, about 24 Miles S. W. from *Luxemburg*, Lat. *Mons Medius*, or *Mons Malediſtus*, ſtands upon a high Hill near the River *Chier*, is reckon'd a Place of Strength; but was frequently taken during the Wars, becauſe of its being ill provided, according to the uſual Neglect of the *Spaniards*. The *French* took it in 1657, and had it confirmed to them by the Treaty of the *Pyrenees*.

3. *Damvilliers*, Lat. *Dampvillerium*, or *Danvillerium*, about 8 Miles S. E. from *Montmedy*, in a marſhy Country. *Charles* V. fortified it as a Barrier againſt the *French*. The *French* took, plunder'd, and ras'd it, in 1542. The *Spaniards* rebuilt, and made it ſtronger than before; but the *French* retook it again in 1552. The *Spaniards* recover'd it afterwards; but the *French* took it once more in 1637, and 'twas quitted to them by the Treaty of the *Pyrenees*.

4. *Bouillon*, Lat. *Bullonium*, about 12 Miles N. W. from *Montmedy*, on the River *Semois*, a ſtrong Town, with the Title of a Dutchy, on the Frontiers of the Forreſt of *Ardenne*. 'Tis guarded with a ſtrong Caſtle, pleaſantly ſituated, and is famous for the Birth of *Godfrey* of *Bouillon*, a great and generous Prince, who, with his Brothers *Euſtace* and *Baldwin*, led the Chriſtians into the *Holy Land* againſt the *Turks* in 1096; and to enable himſelf to carry on that Expedition, mortgaged this Town and Dutchy to the Biſhop of *Liege* for a great Sum of Money. He ſucceeded ſo well in this Enterprize, that in 3 Years time he drove the *Turks* out of the *Holy Land*, and was made King of *Jeruſalem*; but refus'd to be crown'd there, ſaying, He would never wear a Crown of Gold, where our Saviour wore one of Thorns. His Succeſſors endeavour'd to recover the Town and Dutchy, by obliging the Biſhop of *Liege* to reſtore it for Money he ow'd them, but could not effect it. *William* Count of *Marck* enjoy'd it by the Treaty of *Tongres* in 1484. The Mareſchal *de la Marck* ſeiz'd it in 1552. *Charles* V. having taken it ſome Time before, and reſtor'd it to the Biſhop of *Liege*; but after ſeveral Differences, ſays *La Forreſt*, *Charlotte de la Marck*, Dutcheſs of *Bouillon*, brought it by Marriage to *Henry de la Tour d'Auvergne*, Viſcount of *Turenne*, ſo well known by the Name of the Mareſchal *de Bouillon*, and left it to him at her Death in 1594. He married for 2d Wife *Elizabeth* of *Naſſau*, by whom he had *Frederick Maurice* Duke of *Bouillon*, who in 1642 quitted to *Lewis* XIII. the Principality of *Sedan*, and the Dutchy of *Bouillon*, in Exchange for the Dutchies of *Albret* and *Chateau Thierry*, and of the County of *Evreux*. The Barons of *Sedan* and the Biſhop of *Liege* did both of 'em aſſume the Titles of Dukes of *Bouillon*.

The principal RIVERS *of the* Netherlands.

1. THE *Rhine*. To what we have ſaid of this River already, P. 784, in the Deſcription of *Germany*, we ſhall add, That at *Wiick te Duerſtede* in the Biſhoprick of *Utrecht*, it joins with a ſmall River called *Leck*, and being diverted from its ancient Courſe, paſſes not to *Utrecht* as formerly; but that City is forc'd to ſupply the Loſs of its noble Stream, ſays *Pitt*'s Atlas, by an artificial Channel cut from the *Leck*, and called by the Name of *Iſſel*. *Cluverius*, in his Book *De Tribus Rheni Alveis*, and in his *Germania Antiqua*, has many Arguments to prove, that the middle Channel of the *Rhine*, which runs by *Arnheim*, *Leyden*, &c. was its firſt Channel, according to *Tacitus*; and being derived into the *Leck* by *Civilis*, who broke down the Bank caſt up by *Druſus*, let that River almoſt into the middle of the Iſland of the *Batavi*; which, together with the ancient Branch called *Vahalis*, ſerv'd them as a double Trench againſt the *Romans*.

The

Digitized by Google

The ancient Channel of the *Rhine* being thus drein'd of its Water, and unable to carry down the Sand and Mud, he thinks might occaſion the ſtopping up of that ancient Channel. But others ſay, That about 1360, the *Rhine* being ſwell'd by a prodigious Land-Flood, and its Mouth being at the ſame time ſtop'd by a tempeſtuous Sea, the Stream forc'd it ſelf into the *Leck*, and under that Name runs by *Culenburg*, *Vianen*, &c. and falls into the *Merwe* near the Village of *Crimpen*, which is there alſo called by the Name of the *New Maes*. *Cluverius* likewiſe argues, that that Branch called the *Vahalis* cannot be the ancient Channel of the *Rhine*, becauſe the *Maes*, into which it falls, carries the Name from it; of which there's no Example, that a River of leſs Note ſhould carry away the Name from the greater. He refutes their Opinion who think, that the *Leck* was *Corbulo*'s Ditch mentioned by *Tacitus* and *Dio*; and proves it to be that Ditch which begins at *Leyden*, where 'tis commonly called the *Rhier*; runs from thence to *Delft*, *Maeſland*, &c. and falls into the *Maes* near the Village of *Sluys*. There are two Rivers called the *Iſſel*, Lat. *Iſſula*; one of 'em comes out of the *Leck* near *Vianen*, and divides it ſelf into 3 Branches: The firſt runs near *Schoenhoven* and falls again into the *Leck* near *Crimpen*; the 2d joins with the principal Stream near *Gouda*, which running from *Vianen* to *Iſſelſtein*, falls into the *Maes* between *Crimpen* and *Rotterdam*. The other *Iſſel* riſes in *Weſtphalia*, near *Raſfeld*, on the Borders of *Cleve*, and running through *Zutphen* by *Borg*, *Dotekum*, and *Doesburg*, is augmented by a Channel from the *Rhine* cut by *Druſus Nero*, and falls into the *Zuyder-Sea* at *Campen* with a large Channel.

2. The *Maes*, riſes from the Mountain *Vogeſus* near *Langres*, in the Confines of *Burgundy* and *Champagne*, begins to be navigable by ſmall Veſſels at St *Thibaut*, and runs through Part of *Lorrain*, *Champagne*, the Biſhoprick of *Liege*, Counties of *Namur* and *Brabant*, and falls into the Sea at the *Brill*, which is 250 Miles in a direct Line; but taking in all its Windings, is above 400. After receiving the *Chier*, the *Semois*, the *Sambre*, the *Mehaigne*, the *Roer*, and many other leſſer Rivers in its Way, it mixes with the *Vahalis* by two Channels betwixt *Bommel* and *Megen*; but its great Channel keeps its Name till it comes to the Village of *Beckeven*; and when it falls into the *Vahalis* at the Caſtle of *Louveſtein*, 'tis there called the *New Maes*; and below *Gorcum*, is called by its own Name, and that of the *Merwe*, from an old Caſtle, ſuppoſed to have been built by *Merovius* K. of *France*, whoſe Ruins are ſtill to be ſeen in the Water near *Dort*; and after it comes to *Vlaerdingen*, 'tis called by the Name of the *Maes*, till it falls into the Sea; but the old Channel is that called the *Old Maes*, which runs by the Village of *Hedickhuyſen*.

3. The *Scheld*, riſes in *Picardy* between *Artois* and *Hainault*, near a Town call'd *Beaurevoir*, begins to carry ſmall Veſſels at *Valenciennes*, runs through the Dioceſe of *Cambray*, *Hainault*, and *Flanders*, and falls into the Sea by ſeveral Mouths in *Zealand*, after receiving the *Scarpe*, the *Haine*, the *Lys*, the *Dender* and ſeveral other Rivers in its Courſe, which is through a Country in a direct Line of near 100 Miles; but including its Turnings, about 170 Miles; and Tide flows up as far as *Ghent*, which is above 30 Miles, if we reckon its Turnings.

The leſſer Rivers are very numerous, ſupply the Country with Fiſh, and ſeveral of 'em ſerve for a Communication with the greater; but they do not merit a particular Deſcription. The Lake *Flevum*, mentioned ſo often by the *Roman* Hiſtorians, *Cluverius* takes to be that now called the *Zuyder-Sea*.

The principal Woods and Forreſts in the Netherlands *are*,

1. *Ardenne*, Lat. *Arduenna Sylva*, frequently mentioned by *Caeſar*, as the largeſt Forreſt in *Gaul*. *Cluverius*, after a long Diſſertation to prove it, ſays, the greateſt Length of this Wood from E. to W. betwixt the Conflux of the *Moſelle*, the Borders of the *Atrebates*, and the Bank of the Ocean, was 240 Miles; and that the greateſt Breadth, from the Borders of the *Mediomatrices* to the *Vahalis*, was 150; and that the chief Remains of it in his Time were in the *Weſterraw*, the Biſhopricks of *Treves* and *Liege*, and the Dutchy of *Luxemburg*; and on this Side

Digitized by Google

Side the *Maes*, a great Part of the Country on both Sides that River ſtill retaining its Name, as we have mentioned above. On the S. 'twas joined by the great Forreſt called *Voſega* or *Voſaga*, from the Mountain *Voſego*, which reached from the Head of the *Maes* into *Lorrain*, *Alſace*, and other Parts of *Germany*; and the Tract of Mountains on which it grew does ſtill retain ſomething of the Name, being in *Lorrain* called the Country of the *Voſges*, and by the *Germans*, *Waſgaw*; and the chief Part of theſe Mountains is that which now ſeparates *Burgundy* from *Lorrain*.

2. *Mormaut*, Lat. *Mormotium*, begins in *Hainault* near *Quoſnoy*, reaches ſeveral Leagues towards *Vermandois*, contains ſome Towns and Villages, and many Hamlets. Some place it betwixt the *Sambre* and the *Maes*.

3. The Wood of St. *Amand* in the ſame Province, which begins on the Borders of *French Flanders*, and reaches near *Valenciennes*.

4. The Forreſt of *Faigne*, Lat. *Sylva Fagniacenſis*, begins near *Avesnes* in *Hainault*, and reaches to *Mezieres* in *Champagne*, above 16 Leagues, but formerly much larger.

5. The Forreſt of *Soignies* near *Bruſſels*, above 7 Leagues in Compaſs, and includes above 8000 Acres, 100 of which are cut down every Year, and replanted. 'Twas ſaid to yield the King of *Spain* 50000 Floxins *per Annum*. It contains a Caſtle, called that of the Three Fountains, ſeveral Villages, Abbies and Monaſteries, and Gentlemen's Country-Houſes.

6. *Meerdale*, *Zaventerlo*, *Grotenhout*, and *Tournhout*, between *Louvain*, *Bruſſels*, and *Vilvord*.

7. *Marlaigne*, on the Bank of the *Maes*, reaches from the Caſtle of *Namur* near *Philipville*.

8. *Niepe*, near the Borders of *Artois*, is the chief Forreſt in *Flanders*, reaches as far as the River *Lys*; and that of *Nonnen* near *Ipres*, which reaches a great way N. and comprehends a great many Abbies and Villages.

9. *Poodsberg*, on the Borders of *Flanders* and *Hainault*, between *Gramont* and *Leſſine*, a large Forreſt, almoſt of an orbicular Figure. Theſe 3 were Part of the Forreſt of *Ardenne*.

10. *Le Blois Guillaume* in *Artois*, near *Renty*.

11. *Echterwald* in the Dutchy of *Gueldreland*, near *Arnheim*.

12. *Sevenwolden* in *Frieſland*, formerly mentioned; but it muſt be obſerved, that the State of theſe Woods and Forreſts is much alter'd ſince *Guicciardin* writ, from whom we have this Acconnt. There are no Hills nor Mountains in this Country remarkable enough to merit a particular Deſcription.

CHAP.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Osterreichische Nationalbibliothek
+Z181781209
Digitized by Google


Digitized by Google